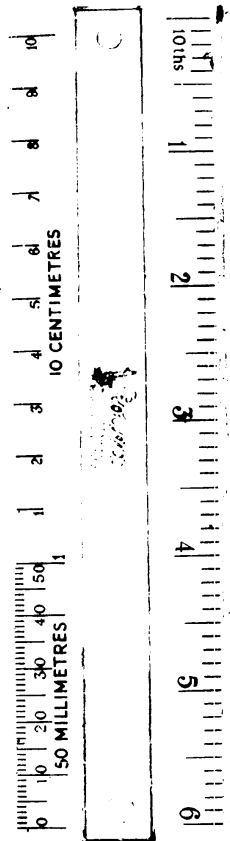


THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
WORLD:  
THE SECOND PART.

BY  
ALEXANDER ROSS.



# THE HISTORY OF THE WORLD:

## The Second Part,

### IN SIX BOOKS:

Being a CONTINUATION of the famous HISTORY of Sir WALTER RALEIGH, Knight:

Beginning where he left; *Viz.* at the End of the MACEDONIAN Kingdom, and deduced to these *Later-Times*: That is, from the Year of the WORLD 3806. Or, 160 Years before CHRIST, till the end of the Year 1640. after CHRIST:

BY

ALEXANDER ROSS.

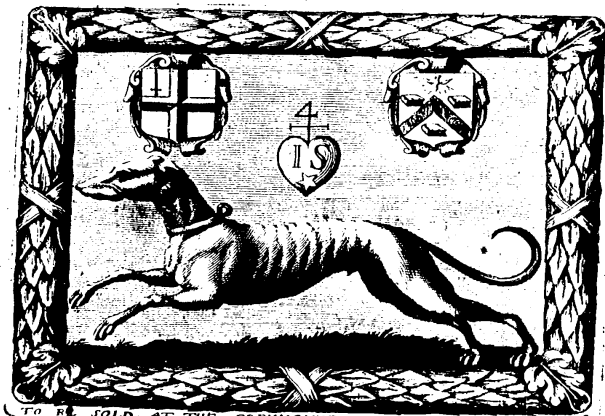


WHEREIN

The most Remarkable Passages of those TIMES, (both Ecclesiasticall and Civill) in the greatest States, Empires, and Kingdomes, are Represented:

Together with a CHRONOLOGIE of those TIMES, &c. and an Alphabetical-Table by the AUTHOR.

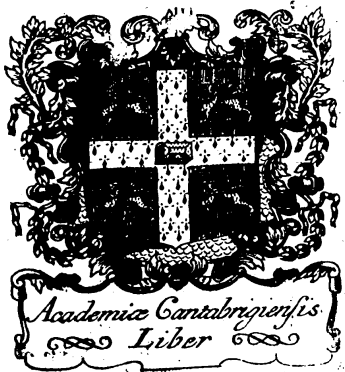
*In Historia hoc præcipue salubre ac fingiferum, omnis te exempli documenta in illustri posita intueri: ut inde tibi tueque Reipub. quod imitere capias; inde sædum inceptu, sædum exitu, quod vites. Liv. lib. 1.*



TO BE SOLD AT THE GREYHOUND IN LITTLE BRITAIN. E. S.

LONDON, Printed for John Saywell, and are to be sold at his Shop at the sign of the Greyhound in little-Britain without Aldersgate, M. DC. LII.





433:94



TO THE  
RIGHT HONORABLE  
**HENRY**  
EARL OF  
*ARUNDEL & SURREY*

Primier Earl, and Earl Marshal of *ENGLAND*,  
Baron *HOWARD*, Mowbray, Segrave, Brewes  
of Gower, Fitz-Allan, Clun, Ofvaldistry, Matra-  
vers and Graystock, &c.

MY LORD:



*Antiquity* did wittily adumbrate  
and represent unto us a Wise  
man, by the Fiction of double  
faced Janus, with a Serpent by  
him, biting his tail; intimating,  
that hereby wise men take notice,  
and make use both of things pre-  
sent and past; and withall are not  
unmindeful of their End, ex-  
pressed by the Serpent biting his tail. Now that which  
makes a man truly wise, and double faced with Janus,  
is *History* of things past; without the knowledge of  
which, a man hath but one face, and looks onely upon  
things before him; and such are Children, saith Tully,  
though they be aged, whereas *History* makes men ripe and  
aged in Knowledge, though they be children in Years. God  
(a) hath

## The Epistle DEDICATORY.

God hath appointed two Guides and Conductors of Mans life, while we are Pilgrims here in this Valley of Tears; namely, Precept and Example : The Law furnisheth us with Precepts, History with Examples ; which make our way more short and easie then the other, as Seneca tells us : (Longum iter per præcepta, breve & efficax per exempla) These two Guides are like the two Pillars that conducted the Israelites through the Desert ; and indeed, they are both so needful, that without them, we shall never attain to the Land of Promise, the Canaan of our Happiness. And as History is necessary to all, so chiefly to those who are set upon the Pinacle of Honour, whose actions are obvious to all eyes, and obnoxious to all mens censures ; who being placed upon Watch-Towers, had need of better eyes, and a longer perspective then those who live below ; Now History is the Perspective that lets them see the danger a far off: Had it not been for the knowledge of History, Lucullus the Roman had never subdued Mithridates the King of Pontus ; nor had Xanthippus the Lacedemonian overthrown the Romans ; whereas before this, the Carthaginian Commanders, for want of Historical Knowledge, were still worsted by the Roman Armies. In Histories great Men will find what uncertainty and vanity there is in outward splendor ; what it is that makes true and genuine Nobility, and discriminates it from that which is supposititious and adulterate ; and it will shew them that there is no confidence to be given to humane strength, Policy, nor Actions.

Edocet humanis quæ sit fiducia rebus.

They that sit at the Helm of Government, had need of the Historical Compass to steer by. Among other emoluments which accrew to Princes by History, they will finde them to be their truest friends, and wisest Councillors, both in admonishing and reproving them : For this cause

Deme-

## The Epistle DEDICATORY.

Demetrius Phalerius advised King Ptolemy to read Histories, that from them he might learn truth; For Friends, either out of fear or shame, will not tell Princes of those faults, which History blusheth not to demonstrate. Besides, great Men receive this benefit by Historie, That they are incited to vertuous actions, by the examples of those brave men who went before them. So was Alexander by reading the Storie of Achilles ; and Cæsar by reading the Stories of Alexander ; and the Turk by reading the actions of Cæsar. Thus Æneas animates his Son.

Tu facito mox quum matura adoleverit ætas  
Sis memor, & te animo repetentem exempla tuorum,  
Et pater Æneas, & avunculus excitet Hector.

And as they are encouraged to vertuous Atchievements by Historie ; so for the same Atchievements they shall be made glorious by Historie to all Posterity ; which will be of longer continuance then Brazen or Marble Statues: Therefore Theseus was more beholding to Connidas the Historian who wrote his life, then to Silamon that painted, or Pharrhæsius that ingraved him to the life : And for this cause the Historian was more honored by the Athenians, then the other two ; for Statues express the Lineaments of the body onely ; but Histories demonstrate the Endowments of the minde : Statues are for a time ; Histories for perpetuitie ; which had Pericles known, he would rather have entertained the Historian to register his actions, then Phidia the Painter to Delineat his Picture fighting with the Amazon upon Minerva's Target ; which is long since lost ; but the History remains. In a word, I may call Histories with Polybius, and Aristotle, ἡ ἀληθινώτατος παιδεία, ἢ χραιομένη γυμνασία, the truest kinde of Learning, and usefulest exercise in the world.

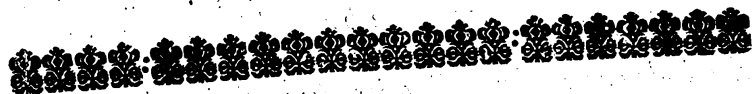
Now my Lord ; considering with my self, that what I  
( a 2 ) have

## The Epistle DEDICATORY.

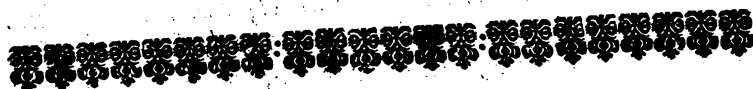
have spoken here, is the object both of your knowledge and practice; And duely weighing your noble extraction, your Learning, and love to learned men; your goodness, wisdom, and affability, with those other eminent parts in you, wherein you are nothing inferior to any of your honorable Progenitors; I was ambitious to send abroad this Piece under the shelter of your Honors Patronage, knowing it will receive the better acceptation, if it be graced in the Frontispiece with your Noble Titles. The chief end of this Dedication, is to shew to the world the dutifull respect and zeal I bear to the Ancient, and Honorable Family of the HOWARDS; and withall to your own Eminent Parts, by which you shine among others, (Velut inter stellas Luna minores.)

Your Honors most humble Servant,

ALEXANDER ROSSE.



The



## THE PREFACE TO THE READER.



Had scarce cast Anchor in the Harbour, and finished my Navigation in the Sea of Sir Walter Raleighs History, which I bounded within the narrow Streights of an Epitome, when I was sollicit by some of my Friends, to hoise Sail again, and to lanch into the Ocean of the Generall History of the World, that I might finish what he had begun, and begin where he had finished; descending from the times where he brake off abruptly, into these later Yeares, that so there might be a compleat Abridgement of all Memorable Passages from the beginning of the World till these present times. The Task I found somewhat difficult, being forced to be both Shipmaster, Pilot, and Mariner my self alone, as not having any Ammannensis; but was fain to read, digest, contract, and write all my self: Yet considering I was now at leisure, and naturally hated Idleneffe, the Mother of mischief, and the Devils Cushion, as the Fathers call it; and that I was not born for my selfe, but sent hither to doe service in this great House of the World; to imploy the Talent committed to me, and not to wrap it up in a Napkin; to impart the light of my Candle to the Family, and not

## The PREFACE.

not to hide it under a *Busbell*; to work in the *Vineyard*, and not to stand idle in the *Market-place* all the day long; to labour whilst it is *Day*, before the *Night* come wherein no man can work; and to be so employed, that when my *Master* cometh, he may say, *Ego, serve bone*; considering also how pretious time is, how quickly gone; how long a *Lesson*, and how short a *Life* (as *Theophrastus* complained) *Natura* hath given us; how great the account is we are to make up, of so many *Hours*, *Dayes* and *Tears* spent, either idly, or wickedly, or impertinently; and how uncomfortable must the end of those be, who spend their dayes like *Sardanapalus*, or *Hogges* rather, in eating, drinking, sleeping and playing, having no remorse with *Titus* for so many days and years which they have lost, wherein they have done no good, but like fruitless *Fig-trees* cumber the ground: When I considered, I say, these things, I adventured rather to undertake this *Task*, then with *Solomons* Sluggard to fold my armes, to sleep and slumber away the short remainder of my *Dayes* in *Idleness*, or vain and sinfull *Pleasures*; There are above three parts already of the *Glasse* of my *Life* run out, being now almost 62 years of age, I desire that the fourth part may not be worse, for that were (*desinere in Piscem*) to look like a *Syren* or *Mermaid*, to begin in the *Spirit*, and end in the *Flesh*, with the foolish *Galatians*; I shall be loath to degenerate with *Hercules*, of whom the Poet speaks:

*(Capisti melius quam desinis ultima primis  
Cedunt dissimiles hic vir, & illa puer.)*

I have been hitherto a careful dispenser of my time, and a Niggard of my dayes, having imployed as few of them as I could in *Idleness*, and even from my youth I have been more conversant among the dead then the living, though I have seemed to some of *Epicurus* his swinish *Schollars*, no better then one of those mad men in the *Gaspell*, who dwelt among the *Graves*; yet I have found more true content among these *Dead men* then ever I could enjoy among the living. But why should I call those dead, who are now more alive in their *Works*, then when they were alive in their *Bodies*, having attained to that life commended by the Orator (*De quis nulla nunquam conticescet aetas, quae memoria vivebit saeculorum omnium, quam ipse aeternitas semper inuebitur*) I have been content hitherto, rather to converse in the *Stoicall School* of *Zeno*, then in the voluptuous *Garden* of *Epicurus*; and with *Cæsar* (*Equitare per Britannos Scoticus pati pruinās*) then with *Florus*, *cursum per tenebras, pulices*

## The PREFACE.

*pulices pati rotundos*) But let men spend their days as they list, or as their good and bad *Genius* induceth them, I am sure, that they who have imployed their time in doing good according to their Calling, shall finde true content and comfort on their death-beds, when they are departing hence, to him that sent them hither; and who will exact a strict account of their time spent. Whereas the others must needs at their departure be accompanied with grief and horreur, remembring the pretious houres and years they have mis-spent, saying with old *Evander*,

*(O mihi prateritos referat si Jupiter annos!)*

*Virgil.*

Which the Poets did elegantly and wittily express unto us, by shewing that none went over the River *Styx* into the *Elysian Fields*, but such as had *Charon* for their Pilot; that is, The comfort and joy of a good conscience, which will never prove the guide or companion of pleasure and sin.

Some tell me, that it is now time for Me to give off writing, being old, and having the burthen of 62 years on my back. To whom I answer, That my age as yet (blessed be God) is to me no burthen; as it is to some who finde it heavier then *Aetna* was to *Enceladus*. I cannot accuse my age, as he said: (*Nihil habeo quod accusem Senectutem meam.*) But I may say with the old Italians in the Poet — *Nec tarda senectus*

*Cicero.*

*(Debilitat vires animi, mutatque vigorem)* and to whom God hath given, *crudam viridemque senectam*, a vivid and vegit old age, he expects of them more fruit in that age; who is so apt to write or speak as he who hath experience with maturity of Judgement, Wisdome and learning? which cannot be in young men; (*Temeritas florentis aetatis, prudentia, Senectutis*) young men may be fit in the great Ship of a Commonwealth, to hale the Ropes, to hoise the Sailes, to draw the Pump, to weigh the Anchor, and to clamber up the Masts; but old men are fittest to sit at the Stern, to Steer the Ship, and to keep her from falling on the rocks and quick-sands. Wine is ever best when it's old, and Fruits are sweetest when ripest. Young men are for action, Old men for direction; young men may see farther, but old men can judge better; the one may have a quicker Corporal, but the other hath a nimbler Mentall sight: *Τὴν διαβολὴν ἐπὶ ἀρχαῖα δὲ βλάπτει.* Therefore *Iſocrates*, *Plato*, *Homer*, *Hesiod*, *Sophocles*, *Ambrose*, *Augustin*, and many more, wrote most of their excellent Works in their old age. So I will with *Solon* be content, *Γηράσκουσιν δ' αἰεὶ πολλὰ διδάσκουσιν*, both

*Virgil.*

*Cicero.*

*Plato.*

## The PREFACE.

both to grow Old with Teaching, and Learned with Age.

It were weakness in me to claw the Reader with flattering terms for his approbation or favourable censure of these my pains, and to beg his good word for my good will in compiling this *Epitome*; for he that is Learned, Judicious, and Ingenuous, cannot speak ill of what is meant well, nor discommend his pains that are undertaken for a Publick benefit; as for the carping *Mome* who hath a sting with the Wasp, but no honey with the Bee, who can be content to take his ease, and carp at other mens pains, which every Duncce can doe, being farre more easie to play the *Mome* then the *Mime*, to reprehend, then to imitate; as for such, I say, they can no more refrain their tongues from carping and reproving even those things they know not, then Rats and Mice can forbear gnawing of Books and Papers they understand not; which doth argue want, both of judgment, learning, and ingenuity; for the inseparable companions of *Momus*, are Pride and Envy: Lasiness and Ignorance his Parents, which the Poets wittily expressed, by making him the Son of Night and Slumber.

Cicero.

I will not here digress into the commendation of History, which *Tully* calls the Light of Truth, the Witness of times, the Mistress of Life, the Messenger of Antiquity, and the Remembrancer of Life. It is indeed one of the most delightfull and profitable employments of a mans life, to read Histories, which stirs up men to vertue, and deterrs from vice, whilst they read how the one is rewarded, and the other punished; it makes a man serviceable, both to the Church and State; it is a Study fit for *Divines* to illustrate and confirm their Doctrins, whilst they exhort to Vertue, and dehort from Vice; it shews them also the increase and decrease of Religion, with the divers concomitants thereof; it is fit for the *Lawyer*, to shew him the original diversities, and changes of Laws and Governments; for the same cause it is a fit studie for all *Princes*, *Magistrates*, and *Politicians*, without which their Government will be but lame; and no less necessary is it to *Soldiers*, especially to *Commanders* and *Captains*, where they may see the divers causes, events, attendants, and Stratagems of War. *Physicians* also, *Philosophers*, and *Poets* may reap no small benefit by reading of Histories. *Alexander* made himself so expert a Warrior as he was, by reading the Life and Actions of *Achilles*. *Selymus* the Turk caused the Actions of *Julius Caesar* to be translated (whereas his predecessors slighted all Histories as fabulous) and by reading of these,

## The PREFACE.

these, he became so expert a Soldier, that in a short time he overran a great part of *Africa* and *Asia*. So *Cesar* was animated by reading the Life of *Alexander*, to undertake his great exploits. *Plutarch* tells us that *Paul Æmilins* who subdued *Perfes* the *Macedonian* King, spent all his idle time in reading of Histories, which made him so good a Soldier. *Charls* the Great was so affected with Histories, that usually as he sat at dinner and supper he caused them to be read to him. And *Alexander Severus* never undertook any great Action, till first he had consulted with Historians. And because of the great benefit which redounds to a Kingdome or State by History, we read how antient Histories have been honored. *Polybins* that wrote the *Roman* History, and their Wars with the *Carthaginians*, was honored at *Megalopolis* with a Statue on a high Pillar: The History of *Tacitus* is commanded by *Tacitus* the Emperor to be placed in all Libraries, and lest it should perish, he caused it every year to be written ten times over. *Pompey* the great honored *Theophanes* the Historian with the Priviledges of the City of *Rome*. *Titus Vespasian* bestowed great wealth and honors on *Josephus* the *Jewish* Historian, whose Statue was erected at *Rome*: And so did *Julian* the Apostate upon *Aurelius Victor*, the *Roman* Historiographer. The *Ægyptians* who were careful to preserve their Histories and antient Monuments, slighted the *Grecians* for their neglect herein, accounting them no better then children. And we read of *Alphonssus* King of *Arragon*, that he doated upon *Livies* History. But how needfull History is for Governors and Princes, let *Claudian* speak in his own Language to *Honorius* the Emperor.

Plutarch.

Lampridius.

Pausanias.

Cicero

Joseph.

Sigonius.

*Interea, Musis animus dum mollior iustus,  
Et quæ mox imitere legas: nec desinat unquam  
Tecum Graia loqui, tecum Romana vetustas.  
Antiquos evolve duces, assue futurae  
Militiae; Latium retro te confer in ævum.  
Libertas quæstita placet? mirabere Brutum:  
Perfidiam damnas? Metii satiabere pænis.  
Triste rigor nimius? Torquati despue mores.  
Mors impensa bonum? Decios venerare ruentes.  
Vel solus quid fortis aget, te ponte soluto  
Oppositus Cocles, Mutii te flamma docebit.  
Quid mora perficiat; Fabius: quid rebus in arctis  
Dux gerat, ostendet Gallorum strage Camillus.  
Discitur hinc nullos meritis obsistere casus.  
Prorogat æternam feritas tibi Punica famam*

( b )

Regule

## The PREFACE.

*Regule, successus superant adversa Catonis:  
Discitur hinc quantum paupertas sobria possit:  
Pauper erat Curius, reges cum vinceret armis  
Pauper Fabritius, Pyrrhi cum sperneret aurum.  
Sordida Serranus flexit dictator aratra.  
Lustrata Liſtor caſa, faſcesq; ſalignis  
Poſtibus affixi, collectæ Conſule meſſes,  
Et ſulcata diu Trabeato rura colono.*

Which are thus Englished by an ingenuous Gentleman.

**T**Hy mind to Books (whilst yet 'tis plyant) bend,  
And what thou soon should'st imitate, intend;  
Often conferre, and set before thine eies  
The *Roman*, and the *Greek* Antiquities:  
Peruse those antient Captains, and prepare  
For all the hardships of thy future Warre:  
Reflect upon *Rome's* elder Annals, there  
If purchas'd Freedom any pleasure beare,  
*Brutus* thy wonder and applause will be:  
Art thou an enemy to treachery?  
*Metius* thy spleen in's death shall satisfy;  
Is too much rigour cruelty? despise,  
*Torquatus* fatherless severities.  
Is death sustain'd, an honest bravery?  
Then reverence the falling Deity:  
What single valour may perform alone,  
Number-prest *Coeles* with his bridg broke down,  
And *Scevolas* burning hand will let thee know;  
What wise delay may compass, *Fabius* shew;  
How Captains should in worst extremity  
Deport themselves, *Camillus* Victory  
Over the *Gauls* will teach; And hence we finde  
No Chance can master the deserving minde,  
Thee, *Regulus*, the Punick cruelty  
Hath purchas'd an eternall Elogy:  
*Cato's* misfortunes triumph o're success.  
What an excessful fortune may express  
We hence may learn, *Curius* even then was poor  
When he subdu'd proud Kings by armed power:  
\*Who *Pyrrhus* gold despis'd was poor enough;  
*Serranus* the Dictator held the plough;

\* *Fabritium*.

The

## The PREFACE.

The *Liſtor* then the Cottage walk'd around,  
The faſces ty'd to willow poſts were found,  
The Conſul hous'd the Corn, the Country than  
Was till'd by a Senatoricall Husbandman.

History is also usefull to Oratorie, as *Tully* often sheweth; without which an Orator either in perswading or dissuading, will prove defective. It is also necessary for School-Masters; therefore *Quintilian* will have *Pædagogues* to read History to their Schollars, whereby they may have matter for their Exercises and Orations: To be brief, History hath this preheminence above Oratory and Poetry, that Oratory hath been rejected by the *Lacedemonians*; Poetry by *Plato*, *Tertullian* and others, as two pernicious instruments in a Commonwealth, to pervert mens minds; but History was never yet rejected by any; and how can it, abounding with so much profit and pleasure; for what can be more profitable then to learn Wisdom by other mens follies, to get experience by other mens cost and labours, and to be safe by other mens dangers (*Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum.*) History is like a watch-Tower on which we may see dangers a farre off, and so avoid them; and what can be more pleasant then to see a Tragedie acted to the life; which onely is to be seen in History; for here we shall see the whole world, but as a Stage on which men of all sorts have acted their parts; Princes, Prelats, Peſants of all ages acting the same things, on the same Stage; who after they have laid aside their discriminating Vizards, and personating garments, they are all alike, as they were before they put them on: For Kings and beggers have the same way of coming in, and the same way of going out: *Mors Sceptraligonibus æquat: Diogines* cannot distinguish King *Philips* skull from the rest; nor is there any difference in *Carons* Boat, between the greatest and the meanest; all must Row there alike.

This History which I have compiled out of many Writers, contains all the most memorable passages and events which have been Recorded since the second *Macedonian* War, in which that Kingdom ended about the year of the World 3790. and the 155 Olympiad after the building of the City, *Anno* 593. about 250 years before Christs Nativity; where Sir *Walter* concludes his History; so that from that time till this are about 1900 years; in all which space you shall see upon the same Theater of the World, the same Tragedies of Wars, Plagues, Famins, Oppressions, Tyrannies, Thefts, Murthers, Fires, Earth-quakes, Inundations, Massacres, Ruines of Castles,

(b 2)

Temples,

## The PREFACE.

Temples, Palaces, Devolation of Countreys, Kingdoms and Commonwealths, Devastation of Towns and Cities, Alteration of Laws and Governments, Transportation of Colonies of men, women, and children, from one place to another; I say you shall see the same Tragedies (with some variation of Circumstances) reiterated by different Actors, succeeding each other in their Generations: If you ask me to what purpose have all these stirr continually bin, and yet are stil in the World; I answer, to no other purpose, but that insatiable, covetous, and ambitious Mindes may have more of this earthly Turf to crawl and dominier upon (as if they wanted elbow-room) and some more clods of earth, whereof a little will content them, when their vast and ambitious thoughts are laid as low as their carcasses; then shall a short and narrow Coffin contain those, whom one, or more Kingdoms will not content: Within how little room was that *Pellean* Youth shut up, whom one World could not satisfie: *Ece vix totam Hercules implevit Urnam*, the huge body of *Hercules* did scarce fill an Urn, when he was burned to ashes. What madness is it then to turn the World upside-down, to cheat, oppress, and murther one another, for more room, whereas a little wil serve a contented mind; one world can contain many Elephants; many woods, fields, medows, hills and dales cannot suffice one covetous and ambitious mind; *tantus amor nummi, & dominandi insana cupido*; but if we wil truly consider the shortnesse of our life, the eternitie that comes after, the vanity, uncertainty and meannesse of the things we struggle for; we shall finde on our death-bed, that we have been striving all this while for Goats wool, an Asses shadow, Moon-shine in the water, for butterflies, nutshells, toies, and babies of clours, with children, saving that *Majora ludimus, & grandioribus pilis*, we sport our selves, and trifle away our time with greater bables then they do; so that we do little better then gather pebble stones with *Caligula* and his Army, and hunt all our days after flies with *Domitian*: and when we have toiled our selves in vain, we may say with *Peter*, That we have laboured all night, but have got nothing. In *Lucian* when *Mercury* lifted up *Charon* to the top of *Parnassus*, which they placed upon *Ossa*, *Pelyon*, and other high hills, he saw from thence *ποικίλον ἰνὰ τυφλὸν καὶ μέγαν λαόν* *for* *Blow*, &c. a various and confused multitude, whose life was full of troubles, some sailing, some fighting, others pleading, some ploughing, some hoarding up their moneys, and others begging: the houses looked like mole hills, and the men like Emmets, the Cities seem'd to him like bee-hives, wherein

Lucian.

## The PREFACE.

wherein each Bee had a sting, wherewith they did nothing but sting one another; some domineering like Hornets, carrying and pulling the weaker; some like Wasps, others as Drones; round about them did flie, hopes, fears, madness, covetousness, anger, hatred, besides multitudes of diseases; as Fevers, Consumptions, Inflammations, Swords, Theeves, Judges, Tyrants, and so forth, *ἔτι δ' ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐγενόμην*: If (saith he) Men would in time acknowledge themselves to be Mortall, and that after they had finished their short pilgrimage here, they must forsake all *terrene* things; and awake out of their sleep, having been in a Dream, and would live more prudently and circumspectly, they would be less troubled in the hour of death, and not depart howling and weeping to *Charon*, as they use to do: but the Poet *Buchanan* tells us, in few words, mens vanity in this point.

*Percipias rerum sit quantula portio, verbis  
Quam nos magnificis in regna superba secamus.  
Partimur ferro, mercamur sanguine fuso,  
Ducimus exiguae glebae de parte triumphos! &c.  
O pudor! O stolidi, praeceptis vesania voti!  
Quantula pars rerum est in qua se gloria tollit?  
Ira fremit, metus exanimat, dolor urit, egestas  
Cogit opes ferro, insidiis, flammâ atq; veneno.  
Scilicet & trepido fervent humana tumultu.*

Which may be thus Englished:

Behold how small the measure is of things,  
Which proudly parted is by earthly Kings.  
We share with swords, and with our blood we buy,  
Small Turfs on which we ride triumphantly, &c.  
O shame! O madness of our rash desires!  
What is't at which vain glory thus aspires?  
We fret, fear, grieve, we wants with wealth supply  
Got by fire, sword, poyson and treachery;  
We're full of tumults, fears and vanity.

Why then shall we set our affections, and doat upon this *Earth*, which compared to *Heaven*, is but a *Point*; how inconsiderable and smal then are the pieces of this point we strive for: we cheat, lie, steal, swagger, fight, swear, and forswear; we cut the throat, and squeeze the blood of each others heart; yea, we sell our Souls to the *Devill*, and hazard the loss of eternal happiness, for the uncertain, vexations, fugitive vanities of this world; we lay out our Money for that which is not Bread, saith the Prophet; and we dig for, or make to our selves Cisterns that will



## The PREFACE.

*Persius.*

hold no water; *quantum est in rebus inane*: O the vanity, emptiness, and madness of men, that consider not how their life is but a span in length; their body like glasse or earthen pitchers for britlenesse; the things they so much covet, are but smoak, or that vain Emperors painted Banquet, which did awhile please the eye, but no ways satisfie the stomach. And how the things we neglect are truly satisfactory and eternall, whilst we with *Æsops* Frog and Mouse, fight eagerly for nothing; Death, that great *Kite*, which is still hovering over our heads, comes and carries us all away in his talons. Why should we dream of long continuance here, when we see the great Empires, Monarchies, States, Cities, and Magnificent Buildings of former times, all fallen into dust and nothing. *Nunc segetes ubi Troja fuit*, Troy is a cornfield; *Jerusalem a heap of stones*, *In æternos collapsa cineres*, saith *Hierom*, fallen into perpetuall ashes; and Rome is ruine according to the old Prophecie, *Πῶς μὲν ῥῶμην ἑσθλαί*, of which *Bellay* the French Poet sings, as he is translated by *Spencer*.

*Ovid.*

*Hierom.*

Thou stranger which for Rome in Rome here seek'st,  
And nought of Rome in Rome perceiv'st at all;  
These same old Walls, old Arches, which thou seest,  
Old Palaces, is that which Rome men call.

Behold what wrack, what ruine, and what wast,  
And how that she which with her mighty power,  
Tam'd all the world, hath tam'd her Self at last;  
The prey of Time, which all things doth devour.

Rome, now of Rome is th' only funerall,  
And only Rome of Rome hath victory;  
Ne ought save Tyber hast'ning to his fall,  
Remains of all: O worlds inconstancie!

That which is firm doth flit and fall away,  
And that is flitting doth abide and stay.

So then that once glorious City and Queen of the world, is but now, as *Buchanan* calls her, *Tantum veteris cadaver Urbis*, a carcass only, or bare skeleton of that ancient City. When *Sulpitius* sailed by the ruins of *Corinth*, and other ancient Cities, he writes to *Cicero* (who was much grieved for the loss of his daughter *Tullia*) shewing he had no reason to be discontented at the death of a mortall Woman; whereas the carcasses of so many Cities in one place lay flat with the ground: (*Nos homunculū indignamur si quis nostrum interit, cum uno in loco tot oppidorum cadavera projecta jaceant*) the uncertainty therefore, and vanity of humane affairs, even in their greatest glory, have induced many brave

## The PREFACE.

brave men to quit their Dignities and high places, and to betake themselves to *privacie*; thus *Dioclesian* and *Maximilian* were contented to lay down their Imperiall Ornaments and Power, and to descend to a mean, yet a more secure condition of life; so that *Dioclesian* preferred his *Garden of Pothearbs* to all the Roman honors. *Amadeus* Duke of *Savoy* found more content and happinesse in his *Monastery* then in his *Dutchie*: And of late years, *Charls* the fifth, *Emperor*, after so many Triumphs and glorious Atchievements, was pleased to exchange all his dominions and *Imperiall Robes*, for a *Monks Habit*, and a place in the *Monastery* of *St. Lawrence* in the *Escuriel*, five miles from *Madrid*: And it's no wonder that Princes and great Men many times are out of love with their own greatnesse, if we consider the perpetuall anxieties, feares, cares, jealousies, discontents and dangers they are subject to; so that King *Antigonus* truly told his son, If he knew with what cares and troubles his Crown was stuffed, he would not take it up if he found it on the ground: therefore it is said of *Pythagoras*, whose Soule had lodged in so many Bodies, That he lived happier when he was a *Frog*, then when he was a *King*; the high Hills, not the low vallies, are most weather-beaten, as the Poet tells us.

*Sapius ventis agitatur ingens  
Pinus: & celsæ graviore casu  
Decidunt turres, feriuntq; summos  
Fulmina montes.*

*Horatius.*

The blustering Windes more often farre  
'Gainst lofty Pines doe threaten Warre:  
Brave Towers with greater ruine fall,  
And thunders highest hills enthrall.

I will conclude this Digression with that saying of *Petronius* concerning the *Cities of Greece*: *Omnes hic aut captantur aut captant, aut cadavera quæ lacerantur, aut corvi qui lacerant*. In this world all men either deceive or are deceived; they are either Ravens to teare others, or carcases to be torn in pieces by others. This world is a Sea full of great and small fishes; if great, they are devourers; if small, they are devoured. Now as for this *Piece* which I have extracted out of divers *Historians*, and contracted into a briefe *Epitome*, I have endeavoured to set down in it all remarkable Passages in as little room as I could. If any say that I have been too briefe and succinct in some things, he must know I write not a large *History*, but an *Epitome*,



## The PREFACE.

*Epitome*, in which if I had bin more prolix, the book would have swelled into too great a bulk. For this cause, and that the *series* of the Histories might not be interrupted, I have not inserted any *Theological*, *Political*, or *Chronological* Discourses or Digressions, as Sir *WALTER RALEIGH* hath done in his *History*, whereby his book is so voluminous; for what I have written here, is meerly *Historicall*; and I hold it fittest to reserve such observations to a book by themselves apart, which perhaps hereafter I may publish, if it shall please God to afford me so much *time*, *health* and *opportunity*. As for any encouragement, I expect none in this *illiterate Age*, wherein *Ignorance* is honored & *Knowledge* slighted, by our unlearned *Lacedemonians*; but the best is, *Learning* and *Wisdom* are justified of their own children; and *Vertue* is a reward to her selfe.

Horace.

*Virtus repulsæ nescia sordidæ,  
Intaminatis fulget honoribus:  
Nec sumit aut ponit secures  
Arbitrio popularis auræ:  
Virtus recludens immeritis mori  
Cælum negata tentat iter via,  
Cætusq; vulgares & nudam  
Spernit humum fugiente penna.*

Vertue that ne're repulse admits,  
In taintlesse honours glorious sits,  
Nor takes or leaveth dignities,  
Rais'd with the voyce of vulgar cries.

Vertue (to worth heav'n op'ning wide)  
Dauntlesse breaks thorow wayes deny'd,  
And (taught) the rabble to despise,  
Forfaking Earth, to Heaven flies.

The compendiousnesse of this *Chronological History*, or *Historicall Chronologie* (call it which you wil, for it contains both) wil be useful and acceptable to most sorts of men: 1. To those who have no time nor *Leisure* by reason of their other studies or employments in the world, to read over the many *Volumes* of Histories which have been written: In reading of this, they shal not need spend much time, which is but short; and every wise man wil be willing to husband it as well as he can. 2. To those who have no *Patience* to dwell too long upon prolix and tedious *Hystories*, from reading of which many are deterred, as growing weary before they be half way, despairing ever to attain

## The PREFACE.

tain the end of their journey. And indeed it's no wonder when we consider that *Ars longa, vita brevis*, that our life is a short Winters day, in which wee are to goe a great and tedious journey, and therefore had need to make the more haste; a man shall arrive sooner into the Harbour in a smal Pinnace, then in a great Ship. It's better and healthier to rise with an appetite from a short dinner, then with a surfeiting or fastidious stomach from a tedious Feast. 3. To them who have already read the Histories at large, who commonly loath to read them over again, to them I say, this Book will be as a Table, Index, or Remembrancer, to put them in mind of the chief things they had heretofore read; so that here they may have a short Collation after a long Feast. 4. To those also (*Quibus res angusta domi*) who either cannot because of their narrow *Means*; or will not because of their narrow *Minds*, part with too much money on Books; in this, they that cannot reach to the price of a long Gown, may buy a short Cloak. Lastly, This benefit will accrew to all men who read this History, that they shall buy at a far cheaper rate the Experiences of others Recorded here, then they can buy their own; for they that live long and travel far, pay soundly for their experience; but they who read Histories enjoy the experience of all that lived before, which is far greater and much cheaper.

I have for the greater ease of the Reader, subjoynd a *Chronologie* to this Historie, wherein as in a small Map may be seen the chief memorable Passages that have fallen out in the World, since the Overthrow of the *Macedonian Kingdom*, till these present Times. *History*, indeed, is the Body, but *Chronologie* the Soul of *Historical Knowledge*; for History without Chronologie, or a Relation of things past, without mentioning the Times in which they were Acted, is like a Lump or *Embryo* without articulation, or a Carcase without Life. I have not digested this Chronologie as others do, according to each particular year, but have reduced the whole time into so many *Decads* or Tens, so that we see at one view what hath fallen out every ten years; which way is more ready to be found, and more easie to the Readers memory. Besides, I finde much difference among *Chronologers*, and much incertainty in their Computation of years; it is not yet agreed what year of the World Christ was born in, there being four or five years difference in the Computation; nor can *Chronologers* yet agree when the World began: It is ordinarily Recorded that *Julius Caesar* Reigned five years; whereas in truth his Reigne lasted not above three years and 8 months; so that there are wanting of five years, almost 16 months;

## The PREFACE.

months; for the first year of his Reigne contained but 6 months and a few days; and his fifth year but 2 months 15 days; for he was murdered the 15 of March: so that *Emergent* years, wherein Computations take beginning from some memorable *Emergent* Accident, fall out some times in the middle, sometimes near the end of the *Tropicall* year, so that a part is used for the whole year; Besides, there is no certaintie when the *Olympicks* and the Citie of *Rome* had their true beginning, and yet our Computation dependeth upon them. The *Julian* year also which we use, is longer then the *Tropical* or *Celestial* by eleven *Horary* Scruples, whereof each Hour containeth 60. the *Æra* of *Nabonassar* in the space of 1460 *Julian* years, gaineth one whole year; so that 1460 *Julian*, make 1461 *Nabonassarian* years, because these years consist of 365 days, without Intercalation of the remaining 6 hours, which every fourth year makes a day; and as there be divers Computations of years, so they have divers *initiations*, the *Olympiads* take their beginning from the New Moon next the Summer Solstice, the year of *Iphitus* contained 10 *Olympiads*, or 40 of our years: the threefold *Seleucidan* Computation, hath different beginnings; for that which is called the *Judaicall*, begins the 13 of March, the *Alexandrian* or *Antiochian*, takes beginning in Autumn; the *Chaldean* in the subsequent Spring; so that the *Antiochian* Year begins in the middle way between the *Judaicall* and *Chaldaicall*. The *Dionysian Egyptian* Computation begins the 25 of March, the *Macchabæan* the 24 of November; the *Spanish* begins the 1 of January, but 6 years later then the *Julian*, because it was brought into *Spain* 6 years later then into other places: The Computation from the Consulship of *Augustus*, begins the 22 of September; the *Æliac* *Æra* is twofold, one begins the 2 of September, when *Augustus* at *Actium* defeated *Antony*; the other begins the 29 of August of the next following year; to wit, from the taking of *Alexandria*, and the death of *Cleopatra*: the *Augustan* Computation begins the 14 of February, when *Octavius* was stiled *Augustus* by the Senat. *Dioclesian* *Æra* begins the 29 of August, which is yet in use among the *Ethiopian Christians*; the *Hegira* or *Arabic* and *Turkish* Computation begins the 16 of July, in the year of Christ 622 and consists of *Lunary* years; the *Jezdagrid* or *Persian* *Æra* begins the 16 of June, Anno Christi 632. These and many more differences may be seen in *Scaliger*, *Calvisius*, *Helvicus*, *Petavius*, *Genebrard*, and other *Chronologers*. I have in this *Chronologie* set down the years of *Popes* and *Princes Reignes*, but have omitted the odd months and days for brevity sake, as being

## The PREFACE.

a thing of small concernment: I have likewise in every *Decad*, distinguished the *Church Affairs* from the *States* to avoid confusion; and I have set down the number of *Synods* in each *Decad*, but not the *Circumstances* of the Place, Acts, and occasion of their calling (except of some that are more famous) to avoid *prolixitie*, and that the Book might not swell too big: There are also some Passages touched in the *Chronologie*, which were omitted in the *History*; and what is either wanting or brief in the *Chronologie*, will be found more fully in the *History*, that there might be no defect in both together, though the one may seem to be lame without the other.

Lastly, I have in this *Work* performed the part of an *Historian*, not of an *Orator*, or *Tragædian*. Two things are commendable in an *Historian*, to wit, *brevity* and *simplicity*; *brevity* to distinguish *History* from *Oratory*; *simplicity* of words and phrases, to discriminate it from *Tragedies*, in which high and lofty Expressions are used to move the Affections. In *History* nothing is aimed at but a bare narration of things acted, or words spoken, which ought to be delivered without the painting of Tropes and lascivious dressings of luxuriant phrases, which oftentime adulterate the Truth; whereas she should be naked without any gorgeous attire, or gawdy trappings, for such are for a wanton courtesan; not for a modest matron. Therefore *Alcibiades* confesseth that he could never give credit to the Polished and painted speeches of *Pericles*; and could never but give credit to the simple and naked Expressions of *Socrates*. *History* then is to be sought for, not in the delightful Cave or Grove of the *Muses*, but in that deep and horrid well where truth lay hid so long; yet I denie not but an honest woman may be comly attired, and *Historicall* narrations may be sweetned with some *Oratoreall* Flowres; but *Ne quid nimis*: in this the *Historian* who writes at large, must be very sparing, much more he who writes an *Epitome*. Perhaps some will object to me, that *S. Hierom* commends *Livie* for his *Milkie Rivers of Eloquence*, the Flowres of *Nectar*, the Marrow of *Honey*, and the *Attic junkets* that are in him. To whom I answer, That *S. Hierom* in this Commendation looked upon the *Orations* and *Speeches* set down in that *History*, rather then on the *Historicall* Narrations themselves; Now in these speeches *Scaliger* observes, that *Livie* playes the Poet rather then the *Historian*, in fastning such *Eloquent* speeches on those who were never guilty of them.

To conclude all, I wish that Gentlemen who read *Histories*, may receive the same benefit in the cure of their spiritual maladies

## The PREFACE.

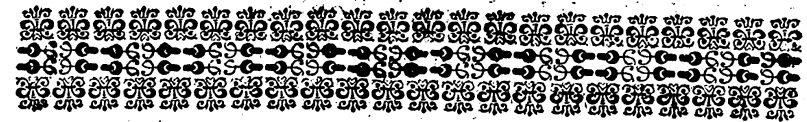
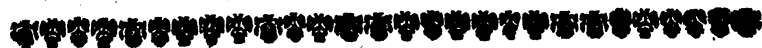
Badin.

dies by which the Soul is infected, that *Alphonso* King of Spain, and *Ferdinand*, King of *Sicily*, obtained in the cure of their bodily Diseases; for that *Health* which neither of them could have from the *Physician*, they had from the *Historian*; for the one by reading of *Livie*, the other by reading of *Curtius*, recovered their health again. Now this *spiritual* benefit they shall obtain in reading *Histories*, if they will but diligently observe how God hath shewed his *Presence* to the World in all Ages, by guiding this *Universe* in *Justice* and *Wisdom*; by *Punishing* wicked men in his *Anger*, and *Rewarding* good men in his *Mercy*; if they will look upon the various *Examples* of *Vertue* and *Vice*; of *Humane Imbecilities*, of various *Changes* in *Kingdoms*, *States*, and all *Governments*, of the *Mutability* that is in mens minds, of the *Inconstancy* in their affections, of the *Cunning* and *Falshood* that are in *Promises* and *Covenants*, and the *Vanity* that is in all *Humane Felicitie*: They will truly finde that there is no such *Antidote* against the *Infection* and *Poyson* of *Sin*, as the reading of *Histories*: And so I bid thee farwell.

A. ROSSE.



A



# A SUMMARY OF THE SECOND PART OF THE HISTORY OF THE WORLD.

The First Book:

Intreating

**O**f the Times from the end of the Macedonian Kingdome, till the Reign of Nerva the Roman Emperour; containing 273 yeares.

The Second Book:

Intreating

**O**f the Times from Nerva the Roman Emperour, till the Reign of Constantine alone; containing 233 yeares.

The Third Book:

Intreating

**O**f the Times from Constantine the Great, till Charls the Great; containing 476 yeares.

A

The

## The Fourth Book :

Intreating

**O**F the Times from Charles the Great, till Philip the Emperour in the West, & the French Empire in the East ; containing 400 yeares.

## The Fifth Book :

Intreating

**O**F the Times from Philip Emperour in the West, and the French Empire in the East, till Wenceslaus the German Emperour ; containing the History of 200 yeares.

## The Sixth Book :

Intreating

**O**F the Histories of the World, from the yeare 1400.

T H E



# THE CONTENTS Of the Chapters in the First Book of the Second Part of the HISTORY OF THE WORLD.

## CHAP. I.



**C** Antiochus, Epiphanes, and the Jewes under the Maccabees. 2. Of the affairs of Egypt and Syria, under Ptolemy, Philometor, Demetrius, Alexander, and others. 3. Of Cappadocia, Pontus, Bithynia, and Asia minor, under Ariarathes, Attalus, &c. 4. The last Carthaginian War under Scipio, &c.

## CHAP. II.

Corinth is taken. 2. The affairs of Egypt. 3. The affairs of Judæa under Simon and Hircanus. 4. The affairs of Syria under Tryphon, Demetrius, Alexander, &c. 5. The Roman Wars at home, in Sicily, in Spain, and in Asia.

## CHAP. III.

The Jewish affairs, under Hircanus, Aristobulus, and Alexander. 2. The Egyptian affaires under Cleopatra, Philometor, and Alexander. 3. The Syrian affairs under Seleucus, Eusebes, Philip, Demetrius, &c. 4. The Roman Wars with Jugurtha, the Cimbri, the Thracians, and Sicilian Slaves.

## CHAP. IV.

The Civil Wars of Rome, under Marius, Sylla, Cinna. 2. The Roman War with Mithridates.

## CHAP. V.

The affaires of Syria, under Tigranes. 2. Of Judæa, under Alexandra. 3. Of Egypt, under Ptolemy Auletes, &c. 4. The Sertorian, Spartick, and Mithridatick War, with Cataline's Conspiracie. 5. Pompey's actions, and some Roman passages about Cicero and Clodius.

## CHAP. VI.

Cæsars exploits in Gallia, Germany, and Britain. 2. The affairs of Rome, under Pompey, Crassus, and Marcellus. 3. Crassus his miscarriage in Asia. 4. Some passages of Judæa and Egypt. 5. Of Cicero and Cato.

## CHAP. VII.

The fatal Civil war between Cæsar and Pompey. 2. Cæsars divers Victories in Thessalia, Egypt, Affrick, Pontus, and Spain. 3. Pompey's death, and Cæsars.

## CHAP. VIII.

The affairs of Judæa under Antigonus and Antipater. 2. The actions of Octavius in his younger years. 3. The actions & death of Cassius & Brutus. 4. The actions & end of Sextus Pompeius. 5. The actions of Antonius & Lepidus.

## CHAP. IX.

The affairs of the Jews under Antigonus, Hircanus, Herod, and Archelaus. 2. The affairs of Rome and Egypt, under Antonius & Augustus. 3. The Birth of CHRIST, the life and death of Augustus, and the Insurrections in Judæa.

## CHAP. X.

The life and death of Tiberius and Sejanus, with their Cruelties. 2. The Baptisme, life and death, resurrection and ascension of CHRIST. 3. How the Gospel began to spread.

## CHAP. XI.

The life and death of Caligula; and of the Roman and Jewish affairs under him. 2. The life and death of Claudius, and of all the memorable accidents in Rome, Parthia, Judæa, and elsewhere under him. 3. Of Agrippa and Antipas.

## The Contents of the Chapters

### CHAP. XII.

*The wicked life and death of Nero. 2. The affairs of Germany, Britain, Parthia, and Armenia at that time. 3. The miserable condition of Judæa, Galilee, &c.*

### CHAP. XIII.

*The affairs of Rome under Galba, Otho, Vitellius, Vespasian, Titus and Domitian. 2. The utter destruction of Jerusalem, and slavery imposed on the obstinate Jews. 3. Some passages of Parthia, Armenia, and other parts.*

## The Contents of the Chapters in the Second Book.

### CHAP. I.

*OF the Roman affairs under Nerva, Trajan, & Adrian. 2. Of the affairs of Jews and Christians during that time.*

### CHAP. II.

*The Roman affairs under Antonius Junius, Antonius Philosophus, and Commodus. 2. The affairs of the Christians, and of foreign Nations at that time.*

### CHAP. III.

*The affairs of Rome under Pertinax, Didius, and Severus. 2. Severus his actions in the East, and in Britain. 3. The Christian affairs during that time.*

### CHAP. IV.

*The Roman affairs under Caracalla, Macrinus, Heliogabalus and Alexander. 2. The affairs of Christians, Persians and others during that time.*

### CHAP. V.

*The Roman affairs under Maximinus,*

*Philip, Decius, Gallus, Valerian, Gallienus and others. 2. The Christian, and foreign affairs of those times.*

### CHAP. VI.

*The Roman affairs under Claudius, Aurelianus, Tacitus, Probus, Proculus, Bonosus, Carus, Numerianus & Carinus. 2. Of Zenobia, and of the Christian and foreign affairs.*

### CHAP. VII.

*The Roman affairs under Diocletian, Maximianus, Galerius, Constantius, and Maxentius. 2. The horrible persecution of Christians under them. 3. Of the Persian and foreign affairs of those times.*

### CHAP. VIII.

*Of the Roman affairs under Constantine, Maxentius, Maximinus & Licinius. 2. Of the Christian persecutions, and foreign affairs during that time.*

## The Contents of the Chapters in the Third Book.

### CHAP. I.

*THE life, actions and death of Constantine the Great. 2. The history of his four sons. 3. The Church affairs under these Emperours.*

### CHAP. II.

*Of Julian, Jovinian, Valentinian, & Valens. 2. Of the Church, & foreign affairs.*

### CHAP. III.

*Of Gratianus, Theodosius, Arcadius, Honorius, & Theodosius the younger. 2. Of the Goths, Vandals, and other barbarous Nations. 3. The Church affairs of those times.*

### CHAP. IV.

*Divers alterations in the Empire under Theodosius, Martinus, Leo and Zeno. 2. The Western Empire ruined by the Goths, Vandals, Huns and Heruli. 3. Divers foreign passages of those times, & of the Church affairs.*

### CHAP. V.

*The Roman affairs under Anastasius, Ju-*

*stinus and Justinian. 2. Of the Persians, Goths, and other barbarous Nations of those times. 3. The affairs of the Church.*

### CHAP. VI.

*Of Justin, Tiberius, and Mauritius. 2. Of the Persians, Goths, Longobards, Suevi, Avars, and others of these times. 3. The affairs of the Church then.*

### CHAP. VII.

*The affairs of the Empire under Phocas, Heraclius. 2. Of Mahomet and the Sarazens. 3. Of the Church, and divers foreign passages of these times.*

### CHAP. VIII.

*The affairs of the Empire under Constans the 2. Constantine 4. Justinian 2. Philippus Bardanes, Anastasius 2. & Theodosius 3. 2. The affairs of the Sarazens, Longobards, Spaniards, French and others. 3. The affairs of the Church in that time.*

### CHAP.

## in the Fourth Book.

### CHAP. IX.

*The Roman affairs under Leo the third, and Constantine the fifth. 2. Of Pinus, and foreign affairs. 3. The Church-affairs of these times.*

### CHAP. X.

*The affairs of the Empire under Leo, Irene and Constantine. 2. Of foreign affairs under Charles the Great. 3. Of the Church-affairs in those times.*

## The Contents of the Chapters in the Fourth Book.

### CHAP. I.

*THE affairs of both the Empires, under Charls in the West, under Nicephorus, Michael, and Leo in the East. 2. Of the Nations subdued by Charles.*

### CHAP. II.

*The affairs of the Empire under Ludovic and Lotharius in the West, under Michael Balbus, Theodosius, Theodora, Michael the second in the East. 2. Foreign affairs of those times, and of the Church.*

### CHAP. III.

*The affairs of the Empire under Ludovic the second, Carolus Calvus, Ludovic the third, and Carolus Crassus in the West, and of Basilus in the East. 2. Of foreign affairs of these times.*

### CHAP. IV.

*Of Carolus Crassus and Ludovic the fourth in the West. 2. Of Leo and his son Constantine in the East. 3. Of the affairs of Italy, Germany, Spain, Scotland, and other passages of those times.*

### CHAP. V.

*The affairs of Italy, Germany, France, and other neighbouring Countries under Henricus Auceps, and Otho the Great. 2. The Eastern affairs under Constantine and his son Romanus. 3. The affairs of the Church.*

### CHAP. VI.

*The Eastern affairs under Nicephorus, Phocas, Zimisces, Basilus, and Constantine. 2. Of the Western, under Otho the second. 3. Of the Turks, and some other passages of those times.*

### CHAP. VII.

*The affairs of the Western Empire under Otho the third, Henry the second, and Conradus the second. 2. Divers passages of England, Scotland, Italy, France, and other parts of Europe. 3. Of some Popes.*

### CHAP. VIII.

*The affairs of the Eastern Empire under Argyropolis, Michael, Calaphates, Zoe, Theodora, and Monomachus. 2. Of the Turks and Popes of those times. 3. Of the Polonian, Hungarian, English, Scottish, and other affairs.*

### CHAP. IX.

*The troublesome affairs of the West under Henry the third, and Henry the fourth. 2. The affairs of Italy, Spain, Portugal, Sicily. 3. The Popes of those times.*

### CHAP. X.

*The Eastern affairs under Stratoticus, Ducas, Diogenes, Michael, Botoniates and Alexius. 2. The Holy-War, and Kings of Jerusalem, and new Orders of Knighthood. 3. The affairs of Cyprus, Portugal, England, Scotland, and the Popes of this time.*

### CHAP. XI.

*The Western affairs under Henry the fifth, and Lotharius Duke of Saxony. 2. The Eastern under Calojoannes. 3. The affairs of France, Spain, England, Denmark, &c. with the Popes of those times.*

### CHAP. XII.

*A brief History of Egypt from Augustus till the Turkish conquest. 2. The Western affairs under Frederick Barbarossa. 3. Divers passages of Italy, Germany, Denmark, and the other Holy-war. 4. Divers Occurrences, and the Popes of those times, with some passages of Tartaria.*

### CHAP. XIII.

*The Eastern affairs under Manuel Comnenus, Andronicus, Alexius, Isaacius and Alexius Angeli. 2. The affairs of France, Spain, Denmark, Constantinople, Rome, England and Scotland in these times, with divers other passages. 3. Henry the 6. Emperour.*

## The Contents of the Chapters in the Fifth Book.

### CHAP. I.

**T**he troubles of Europe under Philip, Otto the fourth, and Frederick the second, Emperors of the West. 2. The affairs of the Holy-Land. 3. Of the Danish and other European affairs.

### CHAP. II.

The true estate of the Eastern Empire. 2. The affairs of France, Tartary, Denmark, Poland, England, Scotland, Spain, and other places. 3. The Popes of these times.

### CHAP. III.

Fredericks posterity. 2. The affaires of the Western Empire under Rodolphus, and others. 3. Of France, England, Scotland, and other places. 4. Of the Popes of these times, and other memorable things.

### CHAP. IV.

The Eastern affaires, under Michael Palæologus, Andronicus the elder and younger. 2. The Turkish and Tartarian affairs. 3. The affairs of Hungary, Poland, Denmark, the Low-Countries, chiefly Holland, and the Switzers.

### CHAP. V.

The affaires of Germany, under Adolphus, Albertus, Henry the 7. and Ludovic of Bavaria. 2. The affairs of Sicily, Naples, Florence, Rome, Millain, and other parts of Italy, with the adjacent Countries, from the year 1298. till 1347.

### CHAP. VI.

The Eastern affaires, under the Palæologi. 2. A brief History of the Turks, till the year 1412. 3. The brief History of Sweden, Denmark and Norway, till the same year 1412.

### CHAP. VII.

The affaires of Italy, Germany, Bohemia, the Netherlands, under

Charles the 4. and Wenceslaus Emperours. 2. The wars between Venice and Genua for the Isle of Tenedos, from the year 1349. till 1400.

### CHAP. VIII.

The lives of the Popes, from the year 1305. till 1389. 2. The History of Holland and the next Provinces, from the year 1298. till 1404. 3. The History of Savoy, from the beginning till the year 1397.

### CHAP. IX.

The French story from the year 1313. till 1380. interwoven with divers passages of England, Flanders, Spain, Germany, Italy, &c.

### CHAP. X.

A prosecution of the French History from the year 1380. till 1407. In which are interlaced divers passages of Italy, Flanders, Navar, Africk, Britany, England, Scotland, Spain and Hungary.

### CHAP. XI.

The History of England, interwoven with some passages of France and Scotland, from the year 1301. till 1350.

### CHAP. XII.

A prosecution of the English story, from the year 1350. till the year 1399.

### CHAP. XIII.

The History of Scotland from the year 1306. till the year 1377.

### CHAP. XIV.

A prosecution of the Scottish History, from the year 1377. till the year 1400.

The

## The Contents of the Chapters in the Sixth and last Book.

### CHAP. I.

**T**he affairs of Italy, Germany, Hungary & Bohemia, under Wenceslaus, Rupert, Sigismund, Emperours. 2. The Council of Constance and Basil, with some other passages from the year 1400. till the year 1439.

### CHAP. II.

The History of Swethland and Denmark, from the year 1412. till the year 1587. Of Denmark and of Swethland, till 1590.

### CHAP. III.

The History of Holland, and the neighbouring places, from the year 1404. till 1514. with some passages of Utricht, till 1580.

### CHAP. IV.

The History of Savoy, and the neighbouring parts, from the year 1397. till the year 1452.

### CHAP. V.

A prosecution of the Savoyan History, from the year 1452. till the year 1503.

### CHAP. VI.

The Helvetian History, from the beginning till the year 1481.

### CHAP. VII.

A prosecution of the Helvetian History, till the year 1521.

### CHAP. VIII.

Of the Helvetian Confederates, till the year 1602.

### CHAP. IX.

The Swedish History, from the year 1590. till the year 1631.

### CHAP. X.

The prosecution of the Swedish History under Gustavus, from 1631. till the midst of 1633.

### CHAP. XI.

The Savoyan History from the year 1504. till the year 1580.

### CHAP. XII.

The History of Hungary, from the beginning till the year 1532.

### CHAP. XIII.

A prosecution of the Hungarian History, from the year 1532. till 1629.

### CHAP. XIV.

The affaires of Germany, Hungary, Poland, Turkey, Bohemia, Austria, Milan, Naples, Cyprus, and Borussia, under Albert and Frederick, Emperours, from the year 1438. till the year 1480.

### CHAP. XV.

The prosecution of the affairs of Germany, Italy, France, Spain, and the other neighbouring places, under Maximilian the Emperour, with the Coronation of Charls the fifth, from the year 1486. till 1520.

### CHAP. XVI.

The affairs of Italy, Germany, Netherlands, with the actions of the Popes of those times, and the Council of Trent, &c. under Charls the fifth, Ferdinand and Maximilian, from the year 1520, till 1576.

### CHAP. XVII.

The affairs of Portugal, Africk, Germany, the Netherlands, Spain, Poland, Hungary, Transilvania, Bohemia,

nia, Russia, Venice, &c. under Rodolphus 2. Emperour, from the year 1576. till 1612.

#### CHAP. XVIII.

The affairs of Germany, Denmark, Swedeland, Holland, Russia, Italy, Hungary, Bohemia, Transylvania, Poland, Grisons, France, Switzers, &c. under Matthias & Ferdinand 2. Emperours, from the year 1612. till 1626.

#### CHAP. XIX.

A continuation of the History of Germany, Denmark, Swedeland, Holland, Poland, Italy, &c. under Ferdinand 1. from the year 1626. till the end of 1630.

#### CHAP. XX.

A continuation of the affairs of Turkey, Persia, Egypt, Greece, Armenia and other adjacent parts, under Mahomet 1. Amurath 2. Mahomet 2. Bajazet and Selymus, from the year 1412. till 1520.

#### CHAP. XXI.

The Turkish History under Solyman, Selymus, Amurath 3. Mahomet 3. Achmat, Mustapha, Osman, and Amurath 4. from the year 1520. till the end of 1636.

#### CHAP. XXII.

The affairs of France, under Charls 6. Charls 7. and Lewis 11. from the year 1407. till the year 1483. interwoven with the History of Burgundy, and other bordering places.

#### CHAP. XXIII.

The prosecution of the French History under Charls 8. Lewis 11. Francis 1. Henry 2. Francis 2. Charls 8. Henry 3. Henry 4. Lewis 13. from the year 1483. till 1633. wherein the lives of the Popes, the affairs of Italy, Spain, and other bordering Countries are touched.

#### CHAP. XXIV.

A prosecution of the English History, under the reigns of Henry 4. Henry 5. and Henry 6. from the year 1399. till the year 1460. containing divers passages of the French and Scots affairs.

#### CHAP. XXV.

A prosecution of the Scottish History under Robert Duke of Albany and Mar- do Earl of Fife Governours; also under James 1. James 2. Kings, from the year 1400. till the year 1460.

#### CHAP. XXVI.

The English History under King Edward 4. Edward 5. & Richard 3. from the year 1460. till the year 1485.

#### CHAP. XXVII.

The English History under the reigns of King Henry 7. and Henry 8. from the year 1485. till the year 1548.

#### CHAP. XXVIII.

The affairs of Scotland under king James 3. and James 4. from the year 1460. till the year 1513.

#### CHAP. XXIX.

The Scottish History, under king James 5. and his young daughter queen Mary, from the year 1513. till 1544.

#### CHAP. XXX.

A continuation of the Scottish History under the two Regents, Hamilton & the Queen Mother, from 1544. till 1560.

#### CHAP. XXXI.

The continuation of the English History under king Edward 6. and Queen Mary, from the year 1546. till 1558.

#### CHAP. XXXII.

The English History, interwoven with the History of Spain, France, Ireland, and Netherlands, under Queen Elizabeth, from 1558. till 1602.

#### CHAP. XXXIII.

The History of Scotland under Queen Mary, from the year 1560. till the year 1567.

#### CHAP. XXXIV.

A continuation of the Scots History under King James 6. from 1567. till 1602.

#### CHAP. XXXV.

The history of England and Scotland together, from the coming in of King James to be sole Monarch of the whole Island, from the year 1602. till 1625.

#### CHAP. XXXVI.

A continuation of the history of Great-Britain, under King Charls, from the year 1625. till the year 1641.

A

## A CATALOGUE Of such Historians and Chronologers, which are made use of in the compiling of the ensuing HISTORIE.



*Mitianus Marcellinus.*

Venerable Bede, a Saxon- Presbyter, wrote many learned books, among the rest five books of the History of his own Nation: He lived about the year 731.

Flavius Blondus an Italian; He was Secretary to Pope Eugenius 4. He wrote the Roman History from the year 407. till the year 1400. He lived about the year 1440.

Hector Boetius a Scottish-man lived about 1500. in the University of Aberdeen, and wrote 17 Books of the Scots History, with a Description of Scotland and its Kings.

C. Julius Caesar wrote 7 Books of the Gallic war; the 8. was written by Hircius. Of the Civil war with Pompey 3 Books. These were printed at Venice and Basil, an. 1521.

Georgius Cedrenus a Greek Historian, wrote a compendious History from the Creation till the year of Christ 1057. He lived about the year 1076.

Marcus Antonius Coccius Sabellius, lived about the year 1500. His works are printed in 4 Tomes: in the first is his History from the Creation, divided into 5 Enneads or Nines, that is 45 Books; in the second is the Continuation of the History by six Enneads, the last of which hath but 2 Books, so that there are but 47 Books, there is also in this Tome the Venetian History; in the third are 20 Books; and in the fourth 10 Books of Examples: he wrote also divers other Tractates.

Paulus Diaconus of Aquileia, was Secretary to Desiderius King of the Longobards, at what time he was taken by Charles the Great, who overthrew his Kingdom, about the year of Christ 774. He wrote 6 Books of the affairs of the Longobards; and some think he wrote those Books of the Roman History, which are annexed to the History of Eutropius.

Ewagrius Scholasticus, wrote the Ecclesiastique History in 6 Books; beginning where Sozomen ended, till the 12. year of Mauritius the Emperour, about the year of Christ 597.

Eusebius Pamphilus Bishop of Caesaria, He lived in the time of Constantine the Great, whose life he wrote in 4 Books; he wrote also 10 Books of the Church History,

besides a Chronicle, and some other works.

Eutropius Presbyter, wrote 1 Book of Chronologie, and 10 Books of the Roman History, printed by Aldus at Venice.

L. Aneius Florus lived in the time of Hadrian and Trajan. He wrote 4 Books of the Roman History: Some think he was the Abreviator of Livy, which is unlikely, because he recedes from him in divers passages; He is by some called Seneca, and some think that Seneca the Philosopher wrote this Story; but the diversitie of stile, times and other circumstances shew the contrary.

Herodian lived in the time of M. Antoninus Emperour; he wrote the lives of 13 Emperours, in 8 Books.

Rogerus de Hoveden, wrote two Books of English Annals, ending at King John, who reigned about the year 1199. Roger lived about the year 1190.

Flavius Josephus a Priest at Jerusalem, coming to Rome, wrote 7 Books of the Jewish wars, & 20 Books of their Antiquities, from the Creation till the 14. year of Domitian, and 2 Books against Apion the Grammarian. These books of the Jewish wars, Antiquities, and against Apion, were first printed in Latine at Venice, an. 1499. and in Greek at Basil, an. 1544.

Isidor Bishop of Sevil, who died about the year 626. He wrote many books, among the rest, an Universal Chronicle, a Chronicle of the Goths, the History of the Vandals, the History of the Suevi, of the Ecclesiastique writers, &c.

Titus Livius Patavinus, wrote 3 Decads of the Roman History; besides other Peeces: his works were printed in 2 Tomes in fol. an. 1578.

William of Malinesbury an English Monk, who lived about the year 1130. Contemporary with S. Bernard, Peter Abbot of Cluny, Hugo de Sancto Victore, & Richardus de Sancto Victore. He wrote 5 Books of the English Kings till Henry the first, and 5 Books of the English Bishops, with some other Historical Tractates.

John Major a Scottish-man, lived about 1500. and besides other books, he wrote the History of Great-Britain.

Marianus Scotus lived about the year 1083. He was a Monk, and wrote a Chronicle from the Creation till the year 1083.

(a)

Martinius



*Martinus* called from his Country *Polonus*, Bishop of *Consentinum*, and the Popes Confessor, to wit, *Innocent 4.* He wrote a Chronicle printed at *Basil*, with a Chronicle of *Marianus Scotus*, in the year 1559. in folio; He writes the lives of the Popes and Emperours till his time, to wit ann. 1285.

*Matthew Palmerius* a Florentine, lived ann. 1440. at the time of the Council of Florence: He wrote a Chronicle beginning at the year 449. till the year 1449.

*Matthew Palmerius* of *Pisa* lived at the same time, and continued *Matthews* Chronicle, from the year 1450. till the year 1481.

*Matthew Paris*, a Monk of *St. Albans*, in the time of King *Henry the 3.* He wrote the English History from *William the Conquerour*, till the 35 year of *Henry the 3.* that is, from the year of Christ, 1067. till the year 1250.

*Matthew Westminster* a Monk, wrote three Books of the Flowers of History; He lived about the year 1377.

*Johannes Nauclerus* lived about 1500. He wrote a Chronicle of memorable things from the Creation till the year 1500.

*Nicephorus Callistus* a Greek Historian, lived in the time of *Andronicus* the elder; to whom he Dedicated his History, about the year of Christ 1300. He begins his History from Christ's Nativity, and ends in the year 625. It contains 18 Books.

*Nicephorus* Bishop of *Constantinople*, lived in the time of Pope *Leo 3.* ann. 811. He wrote a Chronicle extant in *Bibliotheca Patrum*.

*Paulus Orosius* a Spanish Presbyter, and a disciple of *St. Augustine*, he wrote 7 Books of Histories from the Creation.

*C. Velleius Paterculus* wrote two Books of the Roman History, printed at *Basil*, *Lions*, *Geneva*, and *Venice*, ann. 1571.

*Baptista Platina*, born at *Cremona*, he flourished about the year of Christ 1451. besides other Books, he wrote the lives of the Popes.

*Plutarchus Cheroneus* born in *Bœotia*, he flourished in the time of *Trajan*; He wrote many Books, among the rest, the Lives or Parallels of the famous Greeks & Romans, this Book was first printed by *Aldus* at *Venice*, an. 1519.

*Prosper Aquitanicus* a holy and learned Bishop, besides many Theological pieces, he wrote a Chronicle, beginning where *Eusebius* and *St. Hieron* left; he lived about the year 460.

*C. Crispus Sabinus*, wrote the conspiracy of *Cataline*, the war of *Jugurtha*, with other things, whose fragments are onely extant; these were printed at *Lipsæ*, ann. 1539.

*Siegebertus* a Monk, lived in the time of Pope *Gregory the 7.* ann. 1101. He wrote a Chronology from the year of Christ 381. till the year 1111.

*Socrates* and *Sozomen*, wrote the Church History, beginning where *Eusebius* ended, till the time of *Theodosius* the younger.

*C. Suetonius Tranquillus*, wrote the lives of the first twelve *Cæsars*, printed at *Lions* ann. 1539. He wrote also divers other books.

*Sulpitius Severus* Presbyter, a learned and wise man, as *St. Austin* calls him in his 205 Epistle; he lived in the time of *Hieron* and *Rufinus*; and was born in *Aquitania*; He wrote (besides a Dialogue, divers Epistles, and the life of *St. Martin* Bishop of *Turon*) two Books of the sacred Story.

*Aeneas Sylvius* born in *Sena* of *Tuscany*, who was afterward Pope *Pius 2.* besides many other Books which he wrote: He set forth the History of *Bohemia* from the original of that Nation, till *George* that succeeded *Ladislavus*; this work was first printed at *Basil*, ann. 1532. His *Fasciculus Rerum Expetendarum*, at *Colem*, ann. 1535.

*Cornelius Tacitus* was born in the time of *Claudius* the Emperour, and was in great account with *Vespasian* and *Titus*. He wrote 16 Books of *Annals*, 5 Books of Histories, one Book of the German manners, and one Book of the life of *Julius Agricola*.

*Johannes Zonaras* a Greek Monk, wrote three Books of *Annals*, containing the Universal History from the Creation, till the death of *Alexius Comnenas*; who died about the year 1118.

Of later and modern Writers, these have been perused.

*Bogislai Philippi* a *Chemnitz*, *Belli Sueco Germanici*, Vol. 1<sup>o</sup>. *Stetini*. 1648.

*Cæsar Baronius*, first a Priest, then a Cardinal, compiled the Ecclesiastique History from Christ's Nativity till the year 1200. in 12 Tomes. He died ann. 1607.

*Olaus Magnus* Archbishop of *Upsal*, wrote the History of the *Sueves*.

*Adolphus Brachetius* his History of these latter times from the year 1618. till the year 1650.

*Busbequius* who was Ambassador at *Constantinople* for *Ferdinand* and *Maximilian* Emperours, about eight years together, wrote four Epistles containing all the memorable passages in the Turkish Dominions at that time.

*Camdeni Anglica Normannica*, &c.

*Carion*; set out a brief Chronicle which is explained and enlarged by *Philipp Melancthon* and *Cassius Plicetus*.

*Johannis Cluverii Epitome*.

*Bartholomæus Facius* of *Genoa*, wrote ten Books of the actions of *Alphonus* first king of *Naples*; He wrote also a Book of the Venetian wars with *Genia*, and divers other Tractates.

*Genealogia Austriaca, cum figuris*.

*Francis Guicciardin* a Patrician of *Florence*, wrote

wrote the History of his time in 20 Books in Italian; which *Cælius secundus Curio* translated into Latine, Printed at *Basil* in folio, an. 1566.

*Historia Normannorum*.

*Paulus Jovius* wrote the History of his time in 45 Books; besides the History of the Turk from Ottoman, and ends with *Solyman*.

*Opus Chronographicum* { *Opmeri* & *Beyerlink*.

*Paræi Medulla Historiarum*.

*Petaui rationarium temporum*.

*Pezellii Mellificium Historicum*.

*Polydorus Virgil* wrote the History of England till *Henry* the eight.

*Respublicæ variis voluminibus*, 12<sup>o</sup>, 16. & 24. Impres. Amst. Lugd. Bat. &c.

*Saxo Grammaticus*, wrote 16 Books of the *Danes* & *Norwegians* to the time of *Canutus*; this *Saxo* was Provost of *Rosched*.

*Martinus Cramerus* wrote the History of the *Polanders*.

*Joseph Scaliger*, son to the learned *Jutius*, who besides his Notes and Observations upon *Varro*, *Festus*, *Virgils* Epigrams, *Caecilius*, *Tibullus*, *Propertius*, *Manilius*, *Ansonius*, and others; he wrote that usefull work *De Emendatione Temporum*, and *Theatrum Temporum*, or Chronology upon *Eusebius*; he lived and died at *Leiden*, ann. 1609.

*Carolus Sigonius* Professor of the Latine tongue at *Bononia*; wrote the History of Italy, and divers other Books, as *De antiquo jure Romanorum*, *De repub. Judæorum*, *De repub. Atheniensium*, *De Imperio occidentis*, &c.

*J. Joſtas Simlerus*, a Divine in *Zurich*, wrote many Books, among the rest, two Books of the League and Common-wealth of the *Switzers*; He died at *Zurich* or *Tigurum*, ann. 1576.

*John Sleidan* wrote the History of the Church and State under *Charles 5.* in 26 Books; and withall an Epitome of the four Empires of the World.

*Famianus Strada de Bello Belgico*.

*Jac. Aug. Thuanus*, second President of *Paris*, wrote a large history from the year 1543 till 1608. and was continued till 1618.

*Antonii Thysii Compendium Historiæ Bataviciæ*.

*Turfelini Epitome*.

*Raphael Volateranus* wrote 38 Books of Historical Commentaries, besides divers other works; He lived about the year of our Lord 1503.

English Chronicles and Histories.

Lord Bacon's, King *Henry 7.*

Baker's Chronicle.

Camden's Elizabeth.

Daniel and Trusell's Chronicle.

Godwyn's Annals.

Lord Herbert's King *Henry 8.*

*Martin's* Chronicle.

*Speed's* History.

*Stow's* and *Munday's* Chronicle.

Histories of Scotland.

*Buchanan*.

*Johnston*.

*Knox* his History of the Scots Reformation.

*Lesley*.

*Udal's* Queen *Mary* of Scotland.

A Manuscript of the Battel by the River *Avinum* in Scotland, fought between the Earles of *Huntly* and *Errol* against the Earle of *Argile*, in the year 1594. written by Mr. *Alexander Machoz*, an Eye-witnesse thereof.

French Histories.

*Paulus Æmilius*.

*D'Avila's* History of the Civil wars of France.

*Belle-forest*.

*Histoire du Monde*, f. 3 vol.

*Histoire du Cheſue*.

*Dupleix*.

*Froissard*.

*De Serres*.

*Lumières pour l'Histoire de France*.

*Le Mercurie Francois*.

*Philippe de Commines* of the actions of *Ludovic 11.* and *Charles 8.*

*Thivet*.

Histories in generall made use of.

*Ayscough's* History of England and Scotland.

Civil wars of England.

Council of Trent.

Dutch History.

*Sir Clement Edmunds* upon *Cæsar's* Commentaries.

Eastern and Empire.

*Fuller's* History of the Holy-war.

*Godwyn's* Roman and Jewish Antiquities, and

*Rous* his Greek Antiquities.

*Heylin's* Geographic.

History of Portugal.

Hungarian History.

Imperial History.

Interest of Princes, by the D. of Roban.

*Machiavel's* Florentine History.

*Powel's* History of Wales.

Spanish History.

*Swedish* Intelligence, with the later Occurrences, printed by Mr. Bourn and Butter.

Turkish History.

Venetian History, fol.

*Howel's* Survey of Venice.

Wars of Christendome, till 1640. by the Count *Galliazzo Priorato*.



*A Catalogue, &c.*

*For the Chronologie, these have  
been chiefly consulted with.*

*Bellarmini Chronologia.*

*Calvisii Chronologia.*

*Davidis Chytræi Chronologia.*

*Gilbertus Genebrardus, the Kings Professor  
of Divinity and the Hebrew tongue at Paris,  
wrote four Books of Chronographie, with  
divers other peeces.*

*Iac. Gordonii Lesmorei Chronologia.*

*Helvici Chronologia.*

*Isaacson's Chronologie.*

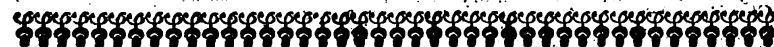
*With some others.*



Octob. 22. 1651.

IMPRIMATUR,

N A: B R E N T.



T H E

CHAP. I.



The Second Part  
OF THE  
UNIVERSALL HISTORY  
OF THE  
WORLD.

THE FIRST BOOKE,

INTREATING

Of the times from the end of the *MACEDONIAN*  
*KINGDOME*, till the Reigne of *NERVA*  
the *ROMAN EMPEROUR*, containing 273. years.

CHAP. I.

*of Antiochus Epiphanes, and the Iewes under the Macchabees. 2. Of the as-  
saires of Egypt and Syria, under Ptol. Philometor, Demetrius, Alexander, and  
others. 3. Of Cappadocia, Pontus, Bithynia, and Asia minor, under Ariarathes,  
Attalus, &c. 4. The last Carthaginian War under Scipio, &c.*



*Antiochus Epiphanes* (as we shewed in the end of the first part  
of this Universall History) having submitted himselfe to  
the *Romans* and left *Egypt*, he returns into *Asia*, where hee  
shewed himselfe to be *Epiphanes*, or illustrious in nothing  
but in wickednesse, and indeed *Epimanes* a madde man; for  
he gave himselfe to all kinde of scurrility, riot, gormandi-  
zing, cruelty, oppression, sacriledge, hee robbed the Tem-  
ple of *Ierusalem*, beat down the walls of the City, made  
the *Iews* to offer Sacrifice to the Heathen Gods, dedicated  
the Lords Altar to *Iupiter Olympius*, burned the Holy Scriptures, tortured *Elee-  
zer* the Scribe being 90 years old, and his Brethren, and perpetrated many hor-  
rid acts, murdering and captivating incredible multitudes of *Iews*. This monster  
of men, notwithstanding, the *Samaritans* in hatred of the *Iews* honoured with di-  
vine titles, which caused *Matthias* the Priest, and one of the *Assamonean* family,  
to bestirre himselfe, who having killed a *Iew* for polluting himselfe with idolatry,  
assembled a multitude of his kindred and alliance, and all such as loved God and  
their Countrey, who brake downe the profane Altars, circumcised children, and  
by degrees settled the true Religion, but *Matthias* growing aged and unfit for action,  
gave the charge of the Army to *Judas Macchabeus*, his son, and appointed *Simon*  
to look to the State.

*Apollonius* the Kings favourite having invaded *Iudea*, was by *Judas* overthrowne  
and slaine: so was *Seron* the Governor of *Syria*, to whom succeeded *Lysias*, who sends  
an army of 40000. foot & 7000 horse against *Iudea* under the conduct of *Ptolemy*,  
*Gorgias*

An. Mundi.  
3806.

3807.

A. M.

3809.

*Gorgias*, and *Nicanor*, *Judas* with 3000 fals suddenly on *Gorgias* his campe, (himselfe being then absent) which he burnes and spoils, so that *Gorgias* was forced to forsake *Judea*, *Lyfias* sends a new Army of 60000 horse and foot, which *Judas* with 10000 overthrew, killed 5000 of the enemies, and obtained a great booty; then hee began to purge the Temple which was left desolate three years. He repairs the Temple with souldiers, that the priests might not be hindered in their functions: but hearing of great preparations against him, by the *Edomites*, *Sidomians*, *Syrians*, *Ammonites*, and *Arabians*, resolves to hinder their combination. Therefore he first fals upon the *Edomites* and subdues them: then he invades the *Ammonites*, and *Arabians*, and sends *Simon* against the *Phenicians*; in the interim leaves *Iosephus*, and *Azarias* to governe *Judea*, with a charge not to hazzard their army upon a battell; but they being more forward then wile, would needs besiege *Iamnia*, where *Gorgias* brake out suddenly upon them, and routed them with the losse of 2000. *Antiochus* being disgracefully repulged by his owne subjects, as he was going to plunder the Temple of *Diana Elyman*, and hearing of the great losses his armies had received in *Judea*, fals desperately sick, and dieth, having reigned 12. years, to whom succeeded his son *Eupator*, a child.

*Lyfias* who took upon him the government of the young King, invades *Idaea* with an army of 100. thousand Foot, 20000. Horse, and 32. Elephants, he takes in *Bezfura*, then besiegeth *Ierusalem*; but hearing that *Philip* (whom *Epiphanes* on his death-bed had appointed governour) was now settled in *Antioch*, and meant to rule the kingdome, caueth the young King to make peace with the *Jewes*, which was performed, and *Judas* proclaimed President, who put to death *Menelaus* the priest, the chief plotter and cause of these last warres; to whom succeeded *Alcimus* in the priesthood; but two years after the death of *Epiphanes*, *Eupator* and *Lyfias* were both slain by their owne servants, after that their army had revolted to *Demetrius*, the son of *Seleucus*, who being an hostage at *Rome*, came suddenly into *Syria*, and seised upon *Tripolis*, and claimed the kingdome in the right of his Father *Seleucus*, who came by the elder son of *Antiochus* the great. In the mean while *Alcimus* accused *Judas* of rebellion, and caused *Demetrius* to send an army under his conduct and *Nicanor* against *Judas*; this army *Judas* overthrew, and so was made high priest by the people, and then enters into league with the *Romans*, but the next year he was overthrowne in a battell by *Bacchides* and slain; whose death was the occasion of much misery and oppression in *Judea*. His people for whom he had done so much, treacherously forsook and left him to be sacrificed by his enemies, and so multitudes flocked to *Bacchides*, who by him being put into offices, used all the cruelty they could upon the friends and followers of *Judas*.

3813.

*Jonathas* is then made Governour by the people, who in a battell upon the sabbath day was set upon by *Bacchides*, the fight was fierce, *Bacchides* lost a 1000 men. *Jonathas* with his army escaped to the other side of *Iordan*, in the mean while *Bacchides* fortifies *Bethell*, *Gaza*, and *Iericho*, with other townes, *Jonathas* plundered the *Amorites* for killing his brother *John*. *Alcimus* the priest, as he was going to pull down a wall within the Temple, was suddenly struck with a palfie and dyed. *Bacchides* returns to King *Demetrius* and *Jonathas* lived quietly for two years; in which time a plot against him was detected, and 50 of the plotters were put to death. Upon this his enemies invite *Bacchides* again into *Judea*, upon hopes of an easie victory, but he found such strong opposition and harth entertainment by *Jonathas* and *Simon*, that in a rage he fell upon those that sent for him, and put many of them to death, and then makes peace with *Jonathas*, who for four years lived quietly and governed *Judea*.

3816.

About this time *Ptolomey Philometor*, who had been driven out of his kingdome by his younger brother, is restored againe; and an agreement concluded, that one of the brothers should reign in *Egypt*, the other in *Cyrene*, in the mean while *Ariarathes* King of *Cappadocia* dieth, he had one son *Mithridates*, who di-

ed

A. M.

ed young, but his two supposititious sons *Ariarathes* and *Olofernes* who contended for the kingdome; *Demetrius* assisted *Olofernes* and made him King. But the *Romans* took part with *Ariarathes*, and established him in his kingdome in spite of *Demetrius*. About which time *C. Marius* the Consul subdued the *Dalmatians*, for molesting the *Illyrians*, confederates of the *Romans*; and they were at last totally conquered by *Cor. Nasica* the Consul. About this time *Spain* rebelled against the *Romans*, and *Antioch* against *Demetrius* for his tyranny, inviting *Alexander* who called himself the son of *Antiochus*, and claimed in right of his father the kingdome of *Syria*. He was assisted by *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt*, *Ariarathes* King of *Cappadocia*, and *Attalus* King of *Asia* who succeeded his brother *Eumenes*; that had reigned almost 50. years. *Alexander* having all this strength, and the assistance also of *Jonathas*, whom he declared high priest; two great battels were fought, in the first *Alexander* was worsted, but in the second he obtained the victory; in which *Demetrius* Soter or Saviour, so called for the justice he did upon *Heraclides* and *Timarchus*, (the two great oppressours of *Babylon*) lost both his life and kingdome, *Alexander* married the daughter of *Ptolemy Philometor*.

*Demetrius Soter* had two sons, the eldest called also *Demetrius* was invited by *Apollonius* governour of *Calusyria*, to take up armes against *Alexander*, who gave himselfe to all kind of luxury. This *Demetrius* having the assistance of the *Cretans*, comes suddenly into *Syria*, but was overcome by *Jonathas*, and lost 8000 of his men; *Jonathas* takes in *Afalon* and *Joppa*, burnes *Azotus* to the ground, and overthrowes the Idol *Dagon*; for which good services he is highly rewarded by *Alexander*. Shortly after this, *Prusias* King of *Bithynia* (who fawning upon the *Romans* kissed the threshold of their Senat, calling the Fathers his Gods) was for his wicked life slain by his owne son *Nicomedes*, being assisted by *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*. *Prusias* indeed had intended to have slain *Nicomedes*, and to have let up his other the *Romans* had sent three Embassadors to reconcile the father with his son. These were the three which *Caro* said, had neither head, feet, nor heart, because the one had many scarres in his head, the other was gowty, and the third was none of the wisest.

*Ptolemy* was much incensed against *Alexander* his son in law for his tyranny and dissolute life. Wherefore he comes into *Syria* with a great army, pretending he meant to defend *Alexander* against his enemies; the gates of the cities are opened to him, so that all the sea coast even to *Seleucia* is delivered up to him; then having taken his daughter *Cleopura*, and bestowed her upon *Demetrius*, he entred *Antioch* and put both the Crownes of *Syria* and *Egypt* on his head. *Alexander* brings an army out of *Cilicia*, but is overcome and flyeth to *Arabia*; all his souldiers revolting to *Demetrius*, *Zabdiel* or *Diocles* a prince of that countrey, cut off his head, and sent it to *Ptolemy*, who not long after dyed, whilst the Chirurgians were curing of the wound he had received in his head. Hee reigned thirty five years, to whom succeeded his younger brother King of *Cyrene*.

The third and last *Carthaginian* warre was occasioned by the difference between *Masaniissa* and *Carthage* about some lands. The *Romans* would have reconciled the difference, and *Masaniissa* was willing for peace sake to yeeld up his right. But such was the pride of *Carthage*, that they would hearken to no reason: besides, against the articles of peace, they had prepared an army and fleet. *Gisco*, *Amilcars* son, was a great stickler, and cause of this war, and so incensed the people against *Rome*, that the *Roman* Ambassadors were faine to flye, for fear of affronts. The *Roman* Senat was much exasperated against *Carthage*, yet by the perswasion of *P. Cor. Nasica*, ten Ambassadors are sent thither to try, if they would hearken to reason; the wars in *Spain* at this time, made the *Romans* the lesse willing to quarrell with *Carthage*. The Ambassadors returning to *Rome* acquainted the Senat with the preparations of *Carthage* both by land and sea; wherefore war is denounced against *Carthage*, and it was debated in the Senat, whether that city should be utterly destroyed or not. *Nasica* would have it reserved, shewing it suited

B 2

not

*A. M.* not with policy to destroy that place, which exercised the Roman forces, and kept their armes from rusting; nor was it consonant to the clemency of Rome; to destroy and undo such multitudes of people. But *Cato* told the Senat, that so long as *Carthage* stood, Rome could never be secure and quiet; this opinion prevailed. As soon as the war was proclaimed, *Vtica* submitted presently, and so did *Carthage*, delivering up their ships and townes, which *L. Martius*, and *M. Manilius* Consuls, burned in the sight of *Carthage*. Then command was given that all the chief citizens should depart from *Carthage*, and build them a city 10 miles off from the sea. This command was rejected, and so they all resolved to defend themselves and city; upon this the Consuls set down before it, and on 10 all sides so besiege it, that no provision of corne could be brought into it, many skirmishes, assaults, and eruptions there were, in which the Romans were sometimes worsted; sometimes the Carthaginians: this war was managed chiefly by *P. Scipio Emilianus*, the son of *Emilius*, but adopted by *Scipio* the son of that *Scipio* who overthrew *Hannibal*. This *P. Scipio Emilianus* had done good service in Spain, where he obtained a murall or wall crowne, and being Tribune of the souldiers, advanced the Roman cause much in Africa. He was chosen Consul younger then was usuall. After the Carthaginians both men and women had fought stoutly in their owne defence; at last they yeelded. The women had shewed such courage that they cut off their hair, and made ropes thereof for the 20 warlike engines.

This city had stood 700 years, it was 24 miles in compasse: the castle called *Byrsa*, held out some time after the city was taken. This last Carthaginian war fell out in the 604 year of Rome, the 52 year after the second Punick war, and lasted 4. years: they procured their own destruction by sending an army against their articles of peace of 58000 men in *Masaniissa's* country, which army was destroyed by famine, and the forces of that old King, for he was 94 years old when he dyed, at 86 he had a son, and used to goe bare-headed in all weathers. Before the city was taken *Scipio* gave way to all that would be gone: 50 thousand departed. *Asdrubal* submitted himselfe to the Consuls mercy, but his 30 wife with her two children flung themselves into the fire, which burned for 17. dayes together, before it could be quenched. When *Scipio* saw *Carthage* on fire, he wept, repeating that verse, *Ille dies veniet cum fato Troia peribit*; and presaging that the like calamity might befall Rome it self, as it did under *Totila* the Goth, 700 years after. *Masaniissa's* kingdome was parted between his three sons *Mycipsa*, *Gulussa*, and *Manastabelis*, by the advise of *Scipio*, who by the old King was chosen arbitrator for that purpose.

## CHAP. II.

40

1. *Corinth* is taken. 2. The affaires of Egypt. 3. The affaires of *Indea* under *Simon* and *Hircanus*. 4. The affaires of *Syria* under *Tryphon*, *Demetrius*, *Alexander*, &c. 5. The Roman wars at home, in *Sisily*, in *Spain*, and in *Asia*.

THE same year proved fatall as well to *Corinth*, as it did to *Carthage*. The Achæans and Boetians 50. years after Greece was made free by *Tit. Flamininus*, rebelled against the Romans, to whom the Spartans had complained of the wrongs done them by the Achæans: Ambassadors are sent from Rome to Greece, to dissolve the confederacy of the Achæans, and to restore every towne to its liberty; which so madded the Achæans that they fell upon the Spartan agents, plundered them, and being fled into the Roman Ambassadors lodgings for sanctuary, were thence violently drawn out & beat, so that the Ambassadors themselves were in some danger. *Critolamus* the Achean pretor gathers great forces together, which *Metellus* who then had the charge of Macedonia quickly dispersed and slew, the Pretor himself in his flight was drowned in the fords, *Dians* the next Pretor

tor undertook the war, against whom *L. Mummius* the Consul marcheth with 23000 foot, 3000 and 500 horse: the Achæans had not about 14000 foot, and 600 horse, who were quickly cut off by the Romans in the presence of their wives and children. *Dians* having first killed his owne wife, poisoned himselfe. *Metellus* had taken in Thebes and Megara, and was now laying siege to *Corinth*: but *Mummius* sends him into Macedonia, and sits down before *Corinth*, which at last he took by storme and burned: all were put to the sword except women and children, which were openly sold in the market. The chiefe ornaments and monuments of this rich city, were transported to Rome, such abundance of gold, 10 silver, and brasse statues were melted in that conflagration, that meeting all together made up a mixt mettle called the Corinthian brasse, and of greater esteem at Rome then gold. All the other cities were by the Consul disarmed and unvalled. And so now ended the liberty of Greece, which became a province, and had a Pretor sent from Rome, being called the Pretor of Achaia, not of Greece, because Achaia had the principality when Greece was subdued. This fell out the 160. Olympiad. 952. years after the building of *Corinth* by *Hales* son of *Hippotes*.

After these great victories over *Carthage* and Achaia, the Romans by degrees falling from their masculine vertues, gave themselves over to ease, luxury and 20 magnificent buildings. In Asia, Egypt, and Syria, both princes and people became extreme dissolute and profane. In Egypt after the death of *Philometor Physcon*, so called from *Physcon* the great gut (because he had so greata belly that he could not stand or walk without a staffe) succeeded King, and called himself *Ptolomie Evergetes*, but by the Alexandrians he was named and that deservedly *Kazuphne* for his wicked life: he had a good schoole-master, to wit, *Aristarchus* the Samothracian, a famous Grammarian; and he wrote some books himselfe. But became such a tyrant, that his subjects weary of his cruelties fell upon his house, and burned it to the ground: he fled away in the dark to Cyprus. *Cleopatra* his wife and sister is proclaimed Queen of Egypt; upon this *Physcon* divorceth her, and marries with his owne daughter; he murders his son which he had by her, and sends his head, hands and feet, for a present to the mother whom he resolves to persecute with open war: here we may see what difference there was between this monster, and his brother *Philometor*, who kindly entertained *Onias* the high priests son, and gave him leave to erect in *Heliopolis* a Temple, no lesse magnificent then that of *Jerusalem*, and punished the Samaritans for building a Temple at *Garizim* contrary to the Law of *Moses*.

*Demetrius Nicanor* the son of *Demetrius*, having recovered his fathers kingdome of Syria, he caused *Jonathas* the priest and captain of the Jewes, to give off the siege of *Sion*; and permitted to him the government of *Samaria*, *Gallilee*, and *Joppe*: but he became insolent with too much prosperity; he disbanded his old native souldiers, and retained the Mercenaries, which give offence to *Diodotus* his Generall, who perceiving how divers cities weary of the Kings cruelty began to fall off from him, caused *Antiochus* the son of *Alexander*, who was the son of *Epiphanes*, to be sent for out of Arabia, and sets him up, having in a battell overthrown *Demetrius*, and driven him into Cilicia. He employs the help of the two brothers *Jonathas*, and *Simon*, who had done good service for *Demetrius* at *Antioch*, and by their assistance he drives out of *Gaza*, *Bethzura*, and all *Galilee*, *Demetrius* his commanders. In the mean while *Jonathas* fortifies *Judea*, and renews the Covenant with the Romans and Spartans. But *Diodotus* 30 otherways called *Tryphon*, desirous to be King himself, resolves to make away with young *Antiochus*, and fearing the greatnesse of *Jonathas*, whose affection was true to the young King, perswades him to disband his forces, and come to *Ptolemais*; whither when he came, he was seized upon, clapt up in prison, and his guard being a 1000 souldiers were all slain. At last having treacherously murdered both *Jonathas*, and young *Antiochus*, made himselfe King of Syria: he caused the young King to be cut of the stone, pretending he died under the cure.

A. M. 3832. *Simon* in the government of Judea succeeds to *Jonathan*: he obtains the favour of *Demetrius*, takes in the tower and garrison of Sion, overcomes Gaza, and made his son *Hircanus* Generall of his forces, and so advanced the Jewish affaires, that after *Demetrius* they never admitted any Macedonian to reign over them. In the mean time *Demetrius* suffering *Tryphon* for a while to reign in Syria, made war against the Parthians, who under *Mithridates* their King, had subdued the Bactrians, Medes, and Elimæans, extending their Monarchy from the hill Caucasus to Euphrates. Therefore *Demetrius* by the help of the Persians, Greeks, Elimæans, and Bactrians, did in divers battels overcome the Parthians: but at length under pretence of peace he was taken and carried in the sight of those cities which had revolted from him, to be laughed at: then he was sent to Hyrcania where he was well used.

*Tryphon's* luxurious life and government began to be wearisome to his souldiers; therefore they fell off from him to *Cleopatra* the wife of *Demetrius*; she was then at Seleucia with her sons, and imployed *Antiochus* the brother of her captive husband, to pursue *Tryphon* with an army, which he did in hope to get both the kingdom and the Queen to boot. He overthrowes *Tryphon*, drives him out of upper Syria, and shuts him up within the Castle Dora. But escaping thence to Apamea he was slain, having reigned 3 years in Syria. *Antiochus* forgetfull of the assistance he had from *Simon* the Jew, against his enemy, sent *Cendebeus* to subdue Judea, but *Simon* overthrew him, having sent against him an army of 20000 men under the conduct of his two sons *Judas*, and *John*, so that *Cendebeus* was forced to flee into the Castle Cedro: but *Simon* was treacherously murdered at a feast, by his son in law *Ptolomie* whom he had made governour of Jericho. *Simons* wife and two sons were also put in chains; *Hircanus* or *John* the third son escaped by times, who succeeded to his father and drove the parricide out of Judea. Upon the death of *Simon*, *Antiochus Soter*, (so called from preserving of Syria, and *Sedetes* from his country) besieged Jerusalem, and in it *Hircanus*, so that there was great famine in the city, being the 7<sup>th</sup>. year wherein the land rested from tillage. And the feast of Tabernacles being come, *Hircanus* obtained truce for seven dayes of *Antiochus*, who sent thither also to the feast bulls with guilt hornes, gold and silver goblets full of spices: and made a great feast for the souldiers, wherefore he was call *Pius*. *Hircanus* in retaliation of so great favours, payeth tribute to *Antiochus*: He takes out of *Dauids* sepulchre 3000 talents: with five hundred of these he buyeth his peace, with the rest he hireth souldiers, which he employes for the Kings service against the Parthians, and there having overcome the *Hyrcanians*, he obtained the name of *Hyrcanus*.

*Demetrius Nicanor* being weary of his private life, though he lived plentifully and like a prince, having marryed the daughter of *Arsaces*, King of Parthia: yet as soon as his father in law was dead, he endeavoured to flye into Syria, but *Phraates* the successor of *Arsaces*, sent a troop of horse who overtook him in his journey and brought him back to his wife; a stronger guard then was set over him, yet he escaped again, and was retaken, and reproved: and to let him see his childlike levity, the King presents him with some golden dice, or huckle bones to play withall. In this interim, *Antiochus* with an army of 80000 men expert souldiers, besides cooks, bakers, skul lions a multitude, invades the Parthian, and having fought three battles, obtains a great victory, and takes in Babylon. Divers of the eastern Princes being weary of the Parthian government, submitted themselves to him, so that the Parthians were confined within their ancient bounds. In the mean time *Phraates* sends *Demetrius* with some Parthian forces in Syria, purposely to draw *Antiochus* into his owne country, which was now in danger. *Antiochus* had quartered his army in divers cities, which being offended with the burthen of free quarter, and the souldiers insolencies, revolted from him to the Parthians, and falling on the dispersed souldiers, killed them. *Antiochus* hearing of this, marcheth with such forces as he could at that time raise, and encountreth with the Parthian King: but being forsaken by his souldiers he was slain. *Phraates* bestowed on the dead body princely obsequies, and married

ried with the daughter of *Demetrius*, whom *Antiochus* had brought along with him. *Phraates* repenting that he had sent away *Demetrius*, would have recalled him again, but it was too late: for the troops of horse he sent to apprehend him, found him in his kingdom. *Phraates* employed his captive souldiers against the Scythians, and was killed by the Grecians.

*Demetrius* having regained the kingdom of Syria, was solicited by *Cleopatra* Queen of Egypt his mother in law, to raise an Army against *Ptolomy* her husband and brother too, who had devorced her. *Demetrius* set presently upon *Ptolomy*, but withall lost his owne Kingdom of Syria; for first the Antiochians, then the Apamenians, and at last all the other Cities wearied with *Demetrius* his Parthian insolencies fell away from him. *Ptolomy* understanding, that his Sister *Cleopatra* had fled with the chief wealth of Egypt to *Demetrius* her son in law into Syria, sends one *Zebina* a young man home to *Protarchus* a Merchant, with an Army to conquer Syria, pretending that he was the adopted son of King *Antiochus*: the Syrians were glad to accept of any King, rather then endure the cruelties of *Demetrius*, admitted this *Zebina*, calling him by the name of *Alexander*; in the mean while the Parthian King sent the corps of *Antiochus* in a silver coffin to be interred by *Alexander*, who expressing much sorrow (as if it had been true) obtained the love of the people. *Demetrius* being overcome by *Alexander*, was at last forsaken by his own Wife, and sons, so that he was forced to flee to Tyrus for Sanctuary, but as hee was comming out of the ship, hee was slaine by the Governours command: own of his sonnes *Seleucus* was killed by his mothers appointment, for crowning himselfe without her consent; the other sonne *Gryphus*, so called from his big nose, was crowned by his mother; so that hee carried the title of King, but the whole Government of the Kingdom was given her; but *Alexander* having got Syria, insolently began to slight *Ptolomy* by whose help he obtained that Kingdom: therefore *Ptolomy* being reconciled to his sister, resolved to destroy the now upstart King *Alexander*, wherefore he sends to *Gryphus* a great Army, and bestowes his daughter *Tryphena* on him in marriage, by which means the Cities fell off againe from *Alexander*, who being overcome in a battaile, fled to *Antioch*, where wanting money to pay the souldiers, he commands them to seise upon the golden Image of Victorie in *Jupiters* Temple, scoffingly saying that *Jupiter* had lent him Victorie for a while; shortly after commanding *Jupiters* own golden statue to be taken down, hee was set upon by the people, and forced to fly; at last his souldiers being overthrown in a storm he was forsaken, and taken by some robbers, by whom he was brought to *Gryphus*, and slaine.

About this time, the Jews enjoyed their liberties under *Iohannes Hyrcanus*, who having renewed the League with Rome, repealed all the Acts of *Antiochus* *Sedetes*; hee subdued Idumea, and forced it to receive Circumcision, hee pulled down the Temple of Samaria, which had stood 200 years, and was built under *Alexander*. He made *Antiochus Gryphus* leave the siege of Jerusalem which hee had begun, this *Gryphus* was like to be poisoned by his mother *Cleopatra* out of a desire to reign alone, which desire made her betray her husband *Demetrius*, and murder her eldest son. *Gryphus* had secret information of the poison prepared for him, which when it was presented by his mother to him, he caused her to drink it up her self, and so shee perished by her owne device. After this *Antiochus Gryphus* reigned 8 years peaceably, till he attempted to poison his Brother *Antiochus Cyzicenus* of the same mother, but begot of his Uncle *Antiochus Sedetes*, these two brothers quarrelled so long about the kingdom of Syria till they were both slaine, *Gryphus* by *Herodian*, *Cyzicenus* by *Seleucus*, the sonne of *Gryphus*. In the mean while *Ptolomy* King of Egypt dyeth having reigned 29 yeares, the government of Egypt was left to his wife, and to one of his sonnes.

The Romans about this time had their Armes exercised at home by the *Gracchi* in Sicily by the slaves in Spain by *Piratus*, in Asia by *Aristonicus*. *Tiberius Gracchus*

A. M.

3843.

3848.

3839.

*chus* Tribune of the people was petitioned by the poore souldiers to have the Lawes called *Agraria*, put in execution: by these Lawes none of the souldiers could enjoy above 500 acres of land; neither must the richer sort buy the poorer out of their estates: *Gracchus* urged the execution of these Lawes, as also that the treasure left by King *Attalus* might be distributed among the poor. In these things hee was opposed by the rich men chiefly by *C. Antonius* the Consul, and *Octavius* the Tribune, from whom *Gracchus* in an unusual way tooke away the Tribunate, hee also strove to continue in his Government against the Law: upon this *Scipio Nasica* the chief Pontifex calls up the Senat to the Capitoll, who being accompanied thither with a great multitude; made *Gracchus* his friends forsake him, 10 who striving to escape was slaine by his colleague *Satureius*, and 300 Citizens with him, whose bodies were flung into Tiberis, the body of *Tiberius* lay unburied; this fell out *an. urbis* 610. About 4 yeares after *Carbo* the Tribune of the people, made a motion in the Senat, that the same man might be chosen Tribun as often as he pleased; this was seconded by *C. Gracchus*, *Tiberius* his brother, but mainly opposed by *Scipio Emilianus*, who the next morning was found dead in his bed, not without suspicion of poyson by *Sempronia* his wife, and sister of *Gracchus* the 56 year of his life. *Carbo* killed himself. *C. Gracchus* and *Fulvius* having seised upon the hill *Aventin* with an armed multitude were slaine by *Opimius* the Consul: besides, 3000 citizens were killed in that sedition. *Opimius* after this was condemned of treason.

The Servill warre in Sicily began by means of one *Eunus* a Syrian, who encouraged the slaves (complaining of their hard usage) to rebell, this *Eunus* made them beleieve he was a Prophet, sent to foretell their prosperous successe, for confirmation of this he used to breath flames out of his mouth, having had within a nutshell fire and sulphur, the slaves chose him for their King, the prisons were broke open, and a great army of slaves were quickly raised. Another slave one *Cleon* of Cilicia gathered together 70000 runnegadoes; these overthrew the Roman Pretors, the charge of this warre was committed to *C. Fulvius* the Consul; after him to *Piso*, then to *Rupilius*, who after divers events overthrew the slaves, 30 by famine he caused the cities *Tauromenium* and *Euna* to yeeld. *Cleon* was slaine in the fight: *Eunus* was taken in a cave, where he hid himself, and died in prison being eat up with lice. These troubles were prefiged by the birth of an Hermaphrodite in Rome, by the growing of corn upon trees in the fields of Bononia and by the eruption of fire out of Etna in Sicily.

*Virgatus* a Portugall of a robber in the high wayes, became a terrour to Rome; for he overthrew the two armies of *C. Vetellius* the Pretor, and of *Plantius Claudius*, erecting the Roman Ensignes for Trophees on his Mountains; about that time 300 Lusitanians encountered with a 1000 Romans, and killed 320 of them having lost themselves 70 men. *Appius Claudius* the Consul, was beat by the *Salassii*, but in 40 the next battail he got the victory; for which he demanded a triumph, having killed 5000 men: but because of his former overthrow, it was denyed him, wherefore he triumphed on his own charges. *Q. Fabius* Consul drove away *Virgatus* from the siege of *Vacceia*, and took the City with many forts and castles, he cut off the hands of 500 Princes, who upon his invitation had yeelded themselves to him. *Pompejus* the next yeares Consul was beaten in Numantia having lost the greatest part of his army, and many men of quality, at last *Virgatus* after 14 yeares war, being betrayed to *Servilius Cepio*, was slain by him, but the traitors received not any reward or thanks from Romans. *Cepio's* army was rewarded by *Inn. Brutus* Consul the with lands, and a City called by them *Valentia*.

About this time the Plague was so hot at Rome, that scarce were there found men enough alive to bury the dead; this calamity was prefiged by the birth of a hermaphrodite at Rome, which by the *Haruspices* was drowned, *S. Cecilius*, *Metellus*, and *C. Fab. Max. Servilianus* Consuls; another was burned alive about the beginning of the Marfan warre. Much about this time *T. Manlius Torquatus* caused his sonne *Innius Silanus* Pretor of Macedon to be put to death,

death, for oppressing the Macedonians with unjust taxes, then also was *C. Marius* accused for deserting his army in Spain, for which he was whipped under the furca or gallows, being a long pole laid upon two erected forks, and was sold for a slave.

*Mancinus* the Consul at Numantia had such ill successe in his warres, that he was forced to make a dishonourable peace, which the Senat would not ratifie, for 30000 Romans were overthrowne by 4000 *Numantians*. *Mancinus* was made to stand naked, with his hands bound behinde him, at the gates of *Numantia* till night, being forsaken by all his friends, and exposed as a spectacle 20 of misery to his enemies. But *Inn. Brutus* in the inward parts of Spain overthrew 60000 Gallicians, who came to aide the Lusitanians, in that battail 50000 were slaine, 6000 taken, the rest fled; but in the hither Spain *Lepidus* the Proconsul was beaten by the *Vaccei*, and that deservedly; for they would have submitted to him, the Senat interceded for them, as being a harmlesse people, yet he would needs provoke them to fight, in which skirmish hee lost 6000 Romans, the rest fled. Rome to vindicate the losses and affronts sustained by the Numantians to *C. Pholius* joined *P. Scipio*, who was chosen Consul by all the Tribunes before his time; for none could by the Law be Consul twice, till after the expiration of ten yeares. *Scipio* therefore besieged Numantia, which was seated on a hill, having walls 3 miles in compasse. This towne had received and entertained the Roman fugitives, and had much afflicted the armies of *Pompey*, *Popilius*, and *Mancinus*. *Scipio* did not sodainly fall upon them, but first trained and exercised his souldiers, reducing them by degrees from their idleness and loose behaviour, to the old military severity, he was a man both fortunate, courageous and magnificent, for he gave a list of the rich presents sent him from *Antiochus Sedetes*, that the Senat might distribute them to the best deserving souldiers, whereas other Generalls used to conceal their presents sent them from Princes. The Numantians would have submitted upon tolerable conditions, which when they could not obtain, having drunk largely (not wine, which that 30 country did not afford) but a liquor made of wheat, prepared as we doe our malt of barley, made a fally out upon the Romans, but seeing they could doe little good that way, resolved to fly, which their wives hindered by cutting the horses girths and bridles; at last they set the towne on fire, and consumed themselves and all their wealth, leaving nothing for the Romans to triumph over.

*Aristonicus* in Asia made work for the Roman armes, hee was the bastard son of *Eumenes*, King of Pergamus. *Attalus Philometor* being now dead, and having left his vast estate to the Romans; *Aristonicus* made hast to take possession of his brothers Kingdome, he draws many to side with him; he took by storm Myndus, 40 Samos, and Colophon, which townes held for the Romans, against him was sent *Licinius Crassus* Consul and High Priest with a good army assisted by *Nicomedes* King of Bithynia, *Mithridates* King of Pontus, (against whom the Romans afterward made war) *Ariarathes* King of Cappadocia, *Pyllemenes* King of Paphlagonia a great battail was fought, and great slaughter on both sides, but *Crassus* lost the day and his life too, for being almost taken prisoner by a Thracian, he struck him in the eye with his rod, which so exasperated the Barbarian that hee ranne *Crassus* through with his sword, and so he escaped by his death his shame and captivity; upon the news of this overthrow, *Perpenna* the Consul hastneth to Asia, falls sodainly on *Aristonicus* being secure, forceth him to fly to *Stratonice* the towne, which being besieged, and almost famished, yeelded; *Aristonicus* is sent to Rome, and all the wealth of *Attalus*. *Perpenna* fell sick at Pergamus and died. *Aquilus* put an end to the Asiatick warre, who by poysoning the Wells and springs caused divers Cities to yeeld. *Aristonicus* was strangled in Prison at Rome, which now enjoyed both the vices and wealth of Asia. Whilest *Plantius*, *Hyppseus*, and *Fulvius* were Consuls Africk was so infested with Locusts, that after they had destroyed all the fruits, corn and grasse, they were

An. Urbis  
622.



A. M.

were carried headlong into the Sea by a strong winde; and drowned; but with tides they were driven on the shoare, and there left upon the ebbing of the Sea, whose putrefied bodies so infected the air, that thereby all living creatures were poysoned, so that there died in Numidia 800000 soules upon the coast of Carthage and Utica above 20000, and in Utica it selfe there died 3000, so that in one day there were carried out of the gates of the City 1500 dead bodies; about this time the Gauls marching in a great Army to aid the the *Allobroges*, were overthrowne by *Q. Fab. Max.* the Nephew of *Emilius* in the fight 120000 were killed and drowned in the Roan whilest their bridge of boats brook under them *Bituitus* the King and his son were imprisoned in Alba.

## CHAP. III.

1. *The Jewish affaires under Hyrcanus, Aristobulus and Alexander, the Egyptian affaires, under Cleopatra, Philometor, and Alexander. The Syrian affaires under Seleucus, Eusebes, Philip, Demetrius, &c. The Roman Wars with Jugurtha, the Cimbri, the Thracians and Sicilian slaves.*

THE Jews under *Hyrcanus*, by the favour of the Romans enjoied peace abroad, but were distracted with Sects at home, the Pharisees so called from separation from all other people, or from their exposition of the Prophets, placed merits in externall ceremonies and traditions, and looked for a Messias, that should be a temporall Prince, who should make the Jews Princes over the Gentiles; the Sadduces or Justiciaries were against traditions, they rejected all the Prophets, save *Moses*, they denied Angels and Spirits, the Immortality of Soules, and the Resurrection: the Essenes, that is, labourers from Asa, to consider and contemplate, (for they gave themselves to spirituall and corporall exercises) living a strict life, spending their time in reading, praying, studying of Physick, doing good workes, chiefly of charity to the poor, who had all things in common, and lived apart by themselves. *Hyrcanus* favoured the Sadduces, and rejected the Pharisees traditions, he besieged Samaria, & laid it even with the ground, *Antiochus* entred Judea, thinking to raise the siege, but was driven out againe by *Antigonus* and *Aristobulus*, the sons of *Hyrcanus* then returning with new Forces from *Ptolemy* King of Egypt, began to wast and spoil the country, but having lost the greater part of those 6000 men he brought with him, was forced to give off. Shortly after this, *Hyrcanus* dyeth having ruled Palestine 31 years; his sonne *Aristobulus* changed the pincipality of Judea into a Kingdome, and was the first that wore the Diadem since the Captivity: hee reigned not above one year, having murdered his brother *Antigonus* with his owne hand, fearing that hee aimed at the Kingdome, he killed his Mother also, and then being tormented in conscience, and vomiting out his bloody soule, dyed. He enlarged Judea by the addition of *Iturea*, to him succeeded his youngest brother *Alexander* surnamed *Lamys*.

This *Alexander* began his reign with the murder of one of his Brothers, the other he permitted to live a private life in his reigne. *Ptolemy Lamyrus* killed 30000 Jews, feeding the captives with the flesh of their slaine countrymen, after this hee took *Gadara*, *Amathus*, and *Gaza*, hee had divers encounters with *Demetrius*, and was oftentimes troubled with the factions, and conspiracies of the Jews against him, 800 of the rebels he caused to be crucified whilest hee was feasting with his Concubines; and banished 8000 of them. He subdued many places in Syria, Idumea & Phenicia, then having fallen into a quartane ague of three years continuance, got by his intemperate drinking, he dyed in the campe, leaving his wife, *Alexandra* successour, whom he advised to continue the siege of the castle *Ragaba* beyond Jordan, and to keep good correspondence with the Pharisees, who were

were then the prevailing faction and to deliver his body to them to be used at their pleasure; which was done accordingly, and interred honorably, having reigned 27 years and lived 49. A. M.

The kingdome of Egypt was left by *Ptol. Physcon* to his Queen *Cleopatra*, and to that sonne whom she should chuse; shee affected *Alexander* the younger, but was forced by the people to chuse the elder, who was surnamed *Lathurus*, because he obtained the kingdome as it were secretly and by stealth, for the hatred of his mother he was nicknamed *Philometor*. His mother made him repudiate his dear wife, and sister *Cleopatra*, and marry with the younger sister *Selene*. *Cleopatra* being divorced married in Syria with *Antiochus Cyzicenus*, who shortly after by the help of the Cyprians waged war with his brother *Gryphus*, but lost the battail, and was forced to fly to *Antioch*. *Gryphus* besieged the Town and took it, he would have preserved *Cleopatra*, as being sister to his wife *Triphena*, but this cruell woman sent souldiers to murder her, after shee had taken Sanctuary, but shortly after in another battaille *Cyzicenus* had the better of his brother, who tooke *Gryphus* his wife, whom he caused to be killed for murdering of her sister. 3856.

*Cleopatra Ptolemies* mother caused the people to rise against him, shee banished his wife *Selene* after shee had borne him two sons, shee made *Alexander* the younger son King, and peruses with open warre her eldest sonne into *Cyprus*, who escaped from thence, shee being enraged at the Generall of her Army, for causing her sonne to escape; caused him to be slaine. Shee had in great esteeme *Chelcias* and *Ananias* the sonnes of *Onias*, who built the Temple in *Heliopolis*, for these two were faithfull to her. Whilest *Gryphus* and *Cyzicenus* were striving for Syria, *Alexander* besieged *Ptolemy* and wastes the countries of the Gazeans and Doreneses, these expecting no succour from the Kings of Syria call in *Lathurus Alexanders* brother, out of *Cyprus*, who perceiving that his brother *Alexander* meant to betray him, falls with fire and sword upon Judea, and overthrowes *Alexander* in a battail neer Jordan, he killed 30000 Jews, takes *Ptolemais* with divers Castles which he throwes down, and was in some possibility to recover Egypt from his mother; but shee comes into Syria with a great Army under the command of *Chelcias* and *Ananias* the Jews, shee recovers *Ptolemais*, and frees the Jews from the feare of *Lathurus*; but *Alexander* fearing his mothers cruelty betooke himselfe to a private life. *Cleopatra* fearing lest *Cyzicenus* should assist her eldest sonne to recover Egypt, sends great Forces to *Gryphus*, and calls back her sonne *Alexander* to his kingdome; but intending to murder him, which hee knew well, therefore having got her into his power, hee slew her: the people understanding this parricide, drove him out of his Kingdome, and re-established *Ptolemy* again in his Throne.

*Antiochus Gryphus* being slaine the 29. yeare of his reigne, his sonne *Selencus* succeeded, who made warre upon his Uncle *Cyzicenus*, at last took him, and killed him not long after, his sonne *Antiochus Eusebes* revenged his fathers death, by driving the murderer quite out of Syria, who flying into *Cilicia*, for his exaction was burned in the Palace with his friends, his brother *Antiochus* was also overthrowne by *Eusebes* and lost both his Army and life. After him *Philip Gryphus* his third sonne reigned in a part of Syria. *Demetrius Eusebes* the fourth sonne was by *Ptolemy Lathurus* or *Lamyrus* as *Plutarch* calls him, sent for out of *Cnidus* and made King of *Damascus*. *Antiochus Eusebes* stoutly opposed these two brothers, but yet shortly after was slaine, as hee was fighting against the Parthians in defence of the Queen of the *Galatians*. So *Philip* and his brother *Demetrius* enjoied the Kingdome of Syria, this *Demetrius* was called in by the Jews against their owne King *Alexander* who in their civill wars had killed above 60000 Jewes; hee drove *Alexander* to the Mountaines after he had slaine all his Mercenary souldiers, but upon a supply of 6000 Jews *Alexander* made him to retire back; this *Demetrius*

**A.M.** *trius* would have driven his brother out of Syria; who for his owne defence calls in the Arabians and Parthians, these forced *Demetrius* to yeeld, and sent him prisoner to *Mathridates* the Parthian King; shortly after he sickned and died. Then did *Philip* enjoy Syria alone, but not long, for *Antiochus Dionysius* having seised upon *Damascus*, endeavoured to get the kingdome of *Coelosyria* from his brother *Philip*, but whilest he was making warre upon *Aretas* King of Arabia, *Philip* invaded *Damascus*, and thought to carry it by treason, but was disappointed, in the interim, *Antiochus* fighting against the Arabians was killed. *Aretas* challengeth *Coelosyria*, and overcomes *Alexander* King of the Jewes near *Adid*. About this time *Appion* brother of *Lathurus* by a concubine died, and left to by his last will to the Romans the kingdome of *Cyrene*, so that part of *Lybia* was made a province.

3861. About the time that *Hyrannis* besieged Samaria, the Romans overthrew *In-  
gurtha* and seized upon Numidia. This *Ingurtha* was *Masiniſſa's* Grandchilde,  
but adopted by *Myciſſa*. He made warre upon his brother *Hyempſales* and kil-  
led him: the like fact he intended againſt the other brother *Aderbales*, but  
he fled to Rome, wherefore *Ingurtha* ſends thither by his Legats a great ſum  
of money to draw the Senat to conſent, that the kingdome between him and  
*Aderbales* might be divided. Legats with *M. Scaurus* are ſent. But the Ro-  
mans perceiving *Ingurtha's* cunning and bribery, in corrupting their legats, 20  
denounce war againſt him as a Paricide. *Calphurnius Beſtia* the Conſul is ſent in-  
to Numidia, but the crafty King bought his peace, and ſeemingly ſubmitted  
himſelfe. He is ſent for by the Senat, and upon the publick faith repaires thir-  
ther; in the interim he cauſeth *Mafiva* competitor of the kingdome, being the  
nephew of *Masiniſſa*, to be murdered; wherefore *Sp. Albinus* is ſent over with  
an army, which the King corrupts with his gold, hereupon the army makes a  
voluntary flight, and gives him the victory: *Metellus* to revenge this diſho-  
nour, ſals upon the King in earneſt, being no wayes moved either with bribes,  
threats or prayers, waſts and plunders all his countrey, ſeiſeth upon his capital  
townes, and drives him quite out of his Kingdome, purſuing him through *Mau-  
ritania* and *Gethulia*. At laſt *Marius* is ſent, who being an upſtart himſelf raiſed  
an army of the meaner ſort, and with incredible valour took *Capſa* a city  
environed with ſands and ſerpents. He took alſo *Molucha* built upon a rocky hil, and  
inacceſſible. Shortly after he overthrowes not only *Ingurtha*, but alſo *Boc-  
chus* king of Mauritania, who laid claim to Numidia as being next in bloud:  
this *Bocchus* had in his army 60000 horſe; the fight continued three dayes:  
at laſt by the help of a great ſtorme of raine, which ſo moiſtned the *African*  
targets and weapons that they were made unſerviceable, the Romans prevail-  
led. This battell was fought near *Cirtha* the ancient towne and court of *Masa-  
niſſa*. *Bocchus* to ingratiate himſelf with the Romans, caught *Ingurtha* by a 40  
train and delivered him by *Sylla* the Legat to *Marius*. At laſt this crafty King, who  
wont to ſay, that it were an eaſie thing to ſell Rome if there were a buyer,  
was carried chained in Triumph with his two ſons before *Marius* his Chariot, and  
preſently after, was ſtrangled in priſon. *Marius* was the firſt that ever entred the  
Senat in a triumphant garment: he was continued divers years in his office be-  
cauſe of the Cimbrick war.

3859. The Cimbrians having much of their country overflowed by the sea, were forced to seek out new plantations. They first fall upon Illyria where they overthrew *Papyrius Carbo* the Consul : then they send a Petition to *Silanus* that they might have leave to plant themselves some where ; their request being denied, 50  
A. V. 642. they resolve to plant themselves by force of armes : therefore they fall furiously first upon *Silanus*, then upon *Manlius*, then upon *Cepio*, and overthrew all their three armies. Then the *Tigurini* overcame *L. Cassius* the Consul upon the borders of the Allobroges or Savoyens. *Aurelius Scaurus* also was beat with his army by the Cimbrians, and himself killed by King *Belus* for dissuading him to passe the Alpes, saying the Romans were invincible. At the river *Rhodanus* *C. Man-*

lius, and *Q. Servilius Cæpio*, were defeated by the Cimbrians, 80000 Romans were slain, besides 40000 pages, and drudges who carried wood and water for the army. *Cæpio* is condemned at Rome for his temerity to be strangled, and flung over the *Scala Cæmonia*, and his whole estate confiscated; his daughters died all miserably after they had been abused; this judgement fell on *Cæpio* for his sacrilege upon the Temple of Tolosa. The Cimbrians having wasted all about Rhodanus, and the Pyrenæans entered Spain, but were driven out by the Celtiberians: Then returning into France, they joyned their forces with the Teutones, and having divided their army into three parts, haste to crosse the Alps; *Marius* being now Consul the third time, sets upon the Teutones at the foot of the Alps. His army being pinched with thirst, complained to him, who told them if they were men, they would fight for the river, which was now in the possession of the enemy; upon this they fell furiously on the Teutones, beat them, and got the river, drinking almost as much blood as water. Of the Teutones and Ambrones were slain 200000 besides 90000 taken; scarce 3000 escaped. *Tentobodus* their Generall was slain: the women petitioned for their lives, which being refused, they first dash out their childrens brains, then they hang themselves.

The Cimbrians having beaten *Q. Catulus* the proconsul from the Alpes, 387.  
20 enter Italy: against whom *Marius* being now the fift time created Consul is sent.  
He taking his opportunity with the advantage of the sun and winde, being assisted  
by *Catulus* his forces, falls upon them unawares, and routs them; 140000 of them  
were slain, 60000 taken. *Marius* by this victory was honoured with the Con-  
30 fullip the first time; thus the Cimbrians invincible elsewhere, were easily  
conquered in Italy, being softned by the delights thereof. The Cimbrian women  
despairing of mercy, killed one another. *Marius* his triumph was accompanied  
with a sad dysalter; for *Publicius Malleolus* murthred his mother, for which  
wickednesse he was the first that was sowed in a sack and flung into the sea:  
this Cimbric war continued 8. years. *Strabo* thinks these Cimbri to be from  
30 the Cimmerii, and others, that both are from *Gomer* the sonne of *Japhet*: the Teu-  
tones were Westphalians as *Melanchthon* gathers out of *Tacitus* and *Ptolemie*. The  
Ambrones dwelt neare the Rhene.

About this time the Thracians sometimes the Macedonian tributaries rebelled, waſting Theſſalie, and Dalmatia, even to the Adriatic ſea. The Scordifci a people moſt fierce in Thracia, ſaith *Florus*, (but *Stadius* will have them a people in Gallia upon Iſter) totally routed the army of *Portius Cato*. *Didius* beat them home again into Thracia. *Drufus* confined them within Danubius. *Minutius* waſted them along the river Hebrus, in which many of them were drowned, the yce deceiving them. *Piſo* went as far as Caucaſus and Rhodope. *Curio* entred Dacia 40 on the North ſide of Danubius. *Lucullus* marched to Tanais, and the lake Maeotis. Theſe Barbarians were deſtroyed with fire and ſword; many of the captives were left alive in miſery and pain, having their hands and feet cut off.

*Licinius Narva* Prætor of Sicily, about this time, gave occasion to the slaves to break out again into an open warre. He was commanded to set all the *Ingeniari* at liberty, because of the Cimbrian wars, which he refused to doe; whereupon 30 slaves began the rebellion, and grew quickly into a great body, against whom *Titinius* a captain of the high way men was sent; whom the slaves slew: and being increased to 6000 made one *Salvius* a Soothsayer their King: then they lay siege to 50 *Morgantina*, and beat off *Licinius* as he was comming to raise the siege: *Salvius* seeing the Romans run away, made proclamation, that none should be killed who flung down his armes, whereupon he was supplied with sufficient armes. *Athenio* a Cilician Astrologer, and captain of the whole legion, joynes himselfe to *Salvius* who calls himselfe now *Tryphon*, and makes his regall seat at *Tricala*, which he fortifieth with wals and trenches, having the command of 40000 men: against him *Licinius Lucullus* is sent from Rome with 18000, who falls upon the slaves,

kills 20000 of them, in this conflict *Athenio* was wounded, the rest fly to *Tricala* which they held out against *Lucullus*; in the interim, *Tryphon* dieth. *Athenio* succeeds him: against him *M. Aquilinus* colleague to *Marius* in his first Consulship is sent, he kills *Athenio* fighting stoutly, and was wounded himself in the head, he overthrowes the 10000 that were left, and the last 1000 being taken prisoners, were condemned to be thrown to the beasts, which they prevented by killing one another.

## CHAP. III.

10

1. The civil wars of Rome under *Marius*, *Sylla*, *Cinna*. 2. The Roman wars with *Mithridates*.

*C. Marius* hitherto the pillar, now the caterpillar of his country, sheathes the conquering sword of Rome into her own bowels, which he had unsheathed against her enemies: Having got himself to be made Consul the sixth time by bribery and *Apulcius Saturninus* Tribune, he endeavoured to renew the Agrarian laws, purposely to bring down the nobility, which were a sore in his eye that was an upstart, or new man. He caused *A. Numius* the competitor of *Saturninus* to be murdered, and *Metellus Numidicus* to be banished, to the great grief of all the nobility: and because he was afraid that *Memmius* would be chosen Consul, *Saturninus* by his procurement, caused him to be murdered. *Glaucia*, who aimed at the Consulship, was a main man for *Saturninus*, the Senat and people incensed at these murders, made such a tumult in the forum, that they fell to skirmishing, *Marius* sided with the strongest party, which was the Senat, and drove *Saturninus* into the Capitol where he was besieged, and the Conduit pipes which conveyed water thither cut off, *Saturninus* openly professed, that *Marius* was the cause of all the trouble. Upon his submission he with his complices were received into the Curia: but the people breaking in furiously fell upon *Saturninus*, and tore him in pieces with *Saufeus* and *Tabienus*. *Glaucia* was drawn out of *Claudius* his house, and slain. *Cn. Dolabella* with *L. Geganus* as they thought to escape through the hearb market, were killed also. These incendiaries being slain and their estates confiscated, *Cato* and *Pompey* motioned that *Metellus* should be recalled home, but they were opposed by *Marius*, and *Furius* the Tribune, and honest *Rutilius* was banished into Smyrna, where he spent his time in study.

*Metellus* being brought back into the city with great honour, so discontented *Marius*, that he went to *Mithridates* king of Pontus, to incense him against the Romans. This was the sonne of that *Mithridates*, who for his service against *Aristonius*, was rewarded by the Roman Senat with Phrygia the greater. When he was young he used so many Antidotes fearing the treachery of his governours, that when he was old, he could, not poison himselfe. He spent 7 years together in hunting, never all that time entering into any house, so fearful he was to be murdered: but when he came to reign, he enlarged his Dominion by subduing the Scythians, and driving *Ariobarzanes* the Romans friend out of Cappadocia, whom *Sylla* restored again: he spake 22 languages.

A. U.  
659.

*Livius Drusus* Tribune of the people stirred up the Italians against Rome, they being denied the priviledges of the city, and understanding *Drusus* their patron was privately murdered, fell upon *C. Servilius* the pretor, who was sent as a Legat to the Picentes, Samnites and others, and slew him with divers other Romans. Hereupon *Cn. Pompeius* the Pretor was sent against the Picentes, with an army which was beat by them. So was *Jul. Cesar* by the Samnites. *Rutilius* the Consul was slain with 8000 Romans by the *Marfi*, which slaughter

Mari-

*Marius* repayed with the overthrow of 8000. *Marfians*. *Capio* with his army was overthrowen by the *Vestini*, but *Cesar* having renewed his forces subdued the *Samnites* and *Lucanians*: upon newes of this victory the Senat put off their Souldiers cassock which they had put on in the beginning of this war, and was their habit of mourning, and betock themselves again to the gowne. After this *Marius* puts 6000 *Marfians* to the sword, and disarms 7000. *Sylla* raiseth the siege from *Aeserina* where the Romans were shut up. *Pompey* overthrowes the *Picentes*. These good successes made the Senat put on their *Laticlavias* or white coates imbroidered with studs of purple resembling broad nail-heads. *Cato* overcame the *Etrusci*, *Plotius* the *Vmbri*. *Pompey* took the rich city *Asculus*, killed 18000 *Marfians*, took 3000 prisoners, and drove 4000 to the mountains where they died in the snow and yce. The *Picentes* were utterly defeated, whose Generall *Judacilius* poisoned himself.

*Posthumus Albinus Sylla's* Legat was in a tumult murdered by the souldiers which occasioned the death of 18000 *Samnites*. *Cato* for extolling his owne actions above those of *Marius*, was knocked down by *Marius* his son. *C. Gabinius* is killed. The *Vestini* and *Marrucini* are plundered, *Pompedius* and *Obsidius* Italian Commanders with their whole army are overthrowen by *Pompey's* Legat *Sulpicius* at *Asculus*. *Pompey* caused all the commanders to be whipped and beheaded, and the servants to be sold: At Rome the Senat and Roman Knights fell out about the Agrarian lawes. *Livius* the Tribune threatned *Capio* with death for resisting him, and beat *Philip* the Consul. But shortly after was so wounded in a tumult, that he was carryed home half dead. *Validus* was stabbed with a knife, *Philip* and *Capio* were suspected for this murder.

*Mithridates* upon these troubles in Italy, takes occasion to invade *Paphlagonia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*, threatens also *Bithynia*, and stirres up all the East against the Romans. *Sylla* then besieging *Nola*, is chosen to goe against *Mithridates*, but he resolved to take *Nola* first; whereupon *Marius* being now 70 years old, by the help of *Sulpicius* the Tribune, obtained the charge of this *Mithridatic* war, and got the act for *Sylla* to be repealed. The Tribune not content with this, kills *Sylla's* son in law, and sends to *Sylla* to deliver up his Commission and the army: *Sylla* in a rage hastneth to Rome, skirmisheth with the faction of *Marius* and *Sulpicius*, and drives them out of the city. *Marius* both father and son with 10 more are by the Senat denounced enemies to the State; *Sulpicius* was betrayed by his servant, and killed; the servant demanding his reward, was made free, but for his treachery to his master was flung downe from the *Tarpeian* rock. *Marius* the son goeth over to *Africk*. Old *Marius* hiding himself in some Marishes, was by the *Minturnians* condemned to die, but the executioner being deterred by the majesty of the man, returnes without doing him any hurt. So he sailes over to his son into *Africa*. *Sylla* reignes at Rome; his Colleague *C. Pompeius* Consul is slain by *Cn. Pompeius* the Proconsul, for demanding the army from him.

*Mithridates* in the mean time subdueth *Phrygia* and *Asia*, and causeth all the Romans that were found in *Asia* to be slain in one day. The city *Rhodus* held out for the Romans, and beat *Mithridates* by sea. He sends *Archelaus* into *Greece* with an army of 120000 men, who subdue *Achaia* and *Athens*. But whilst *Sylla* was about to raise the siege from *Athens*, the fire of discord breaks out again at Rome under *Corn. Cinna* and *Cn. Octavius* Consuls. *Cinna* would have *Marius*, and the others banished by *Sylla* to be recalled; herein *Octavius* resists him, and drives him out of the city. *Marius* in the interim returnes from *Africa*. The army at *Nola* under *Appius Claudius* joyned with *Cinna*; the Italians whose cause *Cinna* much favoured, unite themselves in a great body to him. So that the army consisted of 30 legions. *Cn. Pompeius* the father of great *Pompey*, after much wavering encounters with *Sylla* under the city wals, where a great battell was fought. In it were two brothers, the one having killed the other ignorantly, who as he was stripping his dead corps,

C 2

per-



A. M.

3884.

3888.

perceived it to be his brother; and with grief stabbed himselfe over his brothers body, so both were burned together in the same pile. *Cinna* and *Marius* divide their army into four parts, two whereof were committed to *Sertorius* and *Carbo*: after many skirmishes and much slaughter, *Cinna* is received into the city, and after him *Marius*. *Pompey* is struck dead with a thunderclap, his army destroyed by the plague. *Octavius* is murdered, and his head exposed to the publick view before the *Rostra* or pleading place, which was a great building within the *forum Romanum*, and in it a pulpit called *Rostra* beset with the sterns of ships taken from the enemies. The head of *Cn. Antonius* was presented upon *Marius* his table; *C. Cesar*, and *Fimbria* were murdered in their owne closets at home. *Craffus* both the father and sonne were slain in the fight of each other. *Bebius* and *Numitor* were dragged by the hangmen through the *Forum*. *Catulus* killed himselfe. *Merula*, who was made *Jupiters* priest, besprinkled his Idoll with his owne blood: no rich man at that time could escape. *Cinna* and *Marius* create each other Consul, without calling the *Comitia* or Parliament. But shortly after *Marius* dieth, being distracted in minde. In these troubles many of the nobility fled to *Sylla* in *Achaia* and *Asia*; who had recovered *Athens* from *Mithridates*, and had killed above 200000 of his men, and had taken near as many prisoners.

*L. Flaccus* succeeds *Sylla*, he was hated of the army for his covetousnesse, and slain by *C. Fimbria* who succeeded him. This had good successe against *Mithridates*, took *Pergamus*, and almost had taken the King in it. He overthrew *Ilion* the towne; and recovered a great part of *Asia* from *Mithridates*. *Sylla* in the interim overthrew the *Thracians* wasting *Macedonia*. *Cinna* and *Papirius Carbo* made themselves Consuls for two years: *L. Valerius Flaccus*, and other peaceable men, sent to *Sylla* to have peace established; but *Cinna* raised an army: and as he was forcing the souldiers to goe on ship-board at *Ancona* was stoned to death: then *Carbo* was Consul alone. *Sylla* took *Asia*, *Bithynia*, and *Cappadocia* from *Mithridates*. *Fimbria* being forsaken by his army which went to *Sylla*, made his owne servant to kill him. *Sylla* returnes this answer by the Legats to the Senat, that he would submit, conditionally the citizens banished by *Cinna* might be restored. This was resisted by factious *Carbo* and his crew. *Sylla*'s Legats who were sent with articles of peace, were abused by the Consuls *Narbonus* and *Gorn. Scipio Asiaticus*, both whom *Sylla* overcame near *Capua*, and let *Scipio* goe without any hurt. So moderate was he both in his victories over his country men, and carefull rather to subdue the common enemy, then to revenge particular wrongs; *Pompey* the son of him who took *Asculus*, having raised an army of Volunteers, joynd him selfe with *Sylla*, and so did all the Nobility.

Young *Marius* and *Carbo*, Consuls, to be revenged on the Senat siding now with *Sylla*, beset the Curia with souldiers under *Damasippus* the Pretor, and killed every one as he came out, and murders were committed every where in the city. *Pontius Telesinus* Generall of the *Samnites*, with an army of 40000 fought so with *Sylla* at the port *Collina*, that the city was in danger to have been destroyed utterly; for he said that Italy should never want wolves to devour their liberties, untill the wood that sheltred them were cut down. The fight continued till it was past midnight, at last the *Samnites* retreated, and *Telesinus* the next morning was found gasping for life; whose head *Sylla* caused to be carryed about *Præneste* where *Marius* was; who now despairing tryed to escape, but was prevented and slain. Then *Sylla* obtained the title of *Happy*, if there be happinesse in shedding of blood, for he slew above 70000 in his wars against *Marius* and *Telesinus*, by *Metellus*, *Lucullus* and the *Servilii* he overthrew the armies of *Carbo*. He killed 8000 of those that yielded to him, 2000 of those that were *Proscripti* (whose goods were confiscated, and the persons themselves to be banished) suffered death. *Marius* his brother was murdered by degrees, first having his hands and feet cut off, then his eyes put out; he killed

A. M.

led all the *Preneftinians*, he killed *Chrho* in *Sicilie* and many other cruell acts hee did, then he was made *Dictator*; none having had this honour till now, since *Hannibals* departure out of Italy; which was 120 yeares space: he had 24 fasces or bundles of rods with axes carried before him, hee weakened the *Tri-buniciall* power, by debarring them from making Lawes and publick speeches. Hee filled up the Senat with Knights; and killed his friend *Lucretius Asella* for offering without his consent to demand the *Consulship*: he increased the *Colledges* of Priests and Augures to 15: hee sold the goods of the banished and debarred their children of all honours; hee tooke *Nola*, and divided the lands of the *Samnites*, among 47. Regions. By *Cn. Pompejus* he overcame and slew *Domitius* that was banished; and *Iarbus* king of *Numidia*; hee was severe against the banished and those that received them, that *Bastia* the wife of *Metellus* refused to let him in though disguised, wherefore he slew himselfe, besprinkling his unthankfull gate with his owne blood, at last being slighted by the people and Senat having laid downe his *Dictatorship* 2 yeares after he dyed at *Cume* of the lowfie disease, and his body was burned honourably in the *campus Martius*. *M. Lepidus* would have repealed all his acts; but by *Catulus* his fellow Consul hee was banished Italy, and dyed in *Sardinia*. About this time the *Roman Capitol*, and the *Delphic Temple* were burned. These Civill broiles at *Rome* were presaged by fire from Heaven, by unusuall haile and stormes, by the running of Sheep and Oxen out of their stables and folds to the hills and woods, by blood gushing out of bread, and by the unusuall howling of dogs, and great Earthquakes.

## CHAP. V.

1. The affaires of Syria under Tigranes. 2. Of Judea under Alexandra. 3. Of Egypt under Ptolemy Auletes, &c. 4. The Sertorian, Spartic, and Mithridatic war, with Catilius conspiracy. 5. Pompis actions and some Roman passages, about Cicero and Clodius.

SYRIA being now torne in peeces by Civill wars, *Aretas* reigning in one part, and *Antiochus* in another, *Tygranes* King of *Armenia* is sent for, *Mithridates* not being able to assist them, because of his warres with the Romans, and *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt* they durst not trust, as aiming at Syria himselfe. Therefore having subdued the *Gordycans*, *Atropatenians*, and *Mesopotamians*, crosseth *Euphrates* and seisseth upon Syria and *Phenicia*; hee besiegeth *Ptolemais* with 4050000 men, at last hee tooke it, and in it *Cleopatra Seleme*, being banished out of Syria, whom hee slew. *Antiochus* was driven to a corner of *Cilicia*, and *Tigranes* possessed the greater part of Syria for 18 yeares together, in whose time there perished by Earth-quakes there 17000 men, and many towns, a presage of the great change that was at hand, for the whole kingdome of the *Seleucidae*, was seisseth upon by the Romans.

*Alexandra Alexanders* widow now reigned in *Palestine* under whom the Pharisees were so powerfull, that they ruled all and put many good men to death, who did not favour their faction. *Alexanders* eldest son *Hyrcanus* was then High Priest. *Aristobulus* the younger had no command, the Queen sent rich presents to *Tigranes* whilest he lay before *Ptolemais*, by which means shee kept her countrey in quietnesse 9 yeares, but whilest she lay sick, *Aristobulus* seisseth upon divers Towns and Forts, and so makes himselfe King, causing *Hyrcanus* to content himselfe with the Priest-hood.

In *Egypt* *Lathyrus* being dead, another *Ptolemy* succeeds: He was accounted the son of *Lathyrus* by a Concubine. *Ptolemy* the son of *Alexander* was with *Sylla*, whom he made King of *Alexandria*, but the Citizens not induring his infolency

**A. M.** lency killed him the 19 day of his reigne; his brother succeeds, and him they banished; at last *Arates* who called himselfe *Bacchus* succeeded, famous in nothing but in luxury, and piping, for which he was called *Anites*.

The valiantest of all those whom *Sylla* proscribed was *Q. Sertorius*, whose valour was known both in Africk, the Balears and the Fortunate Islands, at last Spaine under him rebelled; hee overthrew *L. Manlius* Proconsul of Gallia, and *M. Antonie* Legat, by *Hirtuleius* the Questor; hee took in many townes, and threatned Italy it selfe. But *Q. Metellus Pius* overthrew *Hirtuleius* his Army in Betica now called Granata or Granada; and *Pompey* (who being as yet but Questor, was honoured with Consular authority, a. 10 (who being as yet but Questor, was honoured with Consular authority, a. 10 thing not usuall) recovered Gallia; shortly after *Sertorius* overcame both *Metellus* and *Perpenna*, who within a while lay siege to the Towne *Calagurium*; which made *Sertorius* jealous of his friends, many of whom hee put to the sword upon suspicion of treason. *Mithridates* upon this enters in to league with *Sertorius* by whose helpe hee overthrew *M. Aurelius Cotta* the Consul neer Chalcedon, 12000 Romans were lost in the Sea fight, 5000 in the land skirmish. *Metellus* and *Pompey* were faine to give over the siege of *Calagurium*: at last *Sertorius* being betrayed by some of *Antonies* and *Perpenna's* followers was slaine at a feast, this *Perpenna* and *Marius* were afterward destroyed with their Armies by *Pompey*; who recovered Spain after 10 years war by the Roman Commanders striving for mastery. *Calagurium* was starved and at last burned.

**A. V.**  
679.

The Spartack war followes immediately upon the Sertorian, one *Spartacus* a Thracian souldier, then a highway-man, at last a Gladiator or Fencer, with 74 more Fencers being shut up in Capua by *Lentulus*, broke loose, and betake themselves to the hill *Vesuvius*, then *Claudius Pulcher* besets them round, but they suddenly fell upon *Claudius* his campe and surpris'd it; the like they did to *P. Vorenus* Pretor, or chiefe Justice; then they overrun Campania plundering all, even Nola and Nuceria, Thurus and Metapontum, their Army increased dayly, malecontents from all places flocking to them, for want of better arms they made themselves Targets of twigs covered with beasts skinnies and swords, and darts of the prisoners iron fetters, they quickly also horsed themselves, their Captaine *Spartacus* had the Faces carried before him, which were taken from the Pretors. These Rebels overcame both *Lentulus* and *Cassius*, and intended to fall upon Rome; but *M. Licinius Crassus* first overthrew 30000 of the Gauls and Germans, who assisted *Spartacus*, then he fell upon *Spartacus* his owne Army and killed 60000 fugitives, took 6000 prisoners, the rest that thought to escape to Sicily for want of shipping, were seized upon, and killed with *Spartacus* their Captain.

The war was scarce ended, when the Romans were forced to send an Army to suppress the Dardanians and Scordisci (a people of Pannonia, some say of Thracia) who overrun Macedonia; these Scordisci used to drinke out of dead mens skulls, against these *Ap. Claudius* was sent, and *Curio Scribonius*: ships are also rigged out to suppress the Cilician Pyrates who much infested the Sea. *P. Servilius* subdued Cilicia and Pamphilia, took the chief Towns of Lycia, and overcame the Isauri, whence he was called *Isauricus*; these Isauri are at the foot of Mount Taurus; the first Roman that passed this Mountain was this *Servilius*. *Cononius* the Proconsul conquered Dalmatia and after 2 years siege tooke Solone a great City.

*Mithridates* having broke the league he made with *Sylla*, invaded Cappadocia by *Tygranes* his son in law: against him the two Consuls *Licinius Lucullus* and *Aurelius Cotta* are sent. *Cotta* was worsted and driven into Chalcedon. *Mithridates* removes thence and sits downe before Cyzicum a rich and popular City in an Island of the same name within the Propontis, so called from the King *Cyzicus* whom *Vlysses* killed; this place was an inlet to Asia, but *Lucullus* comes and raiseth the siege, and drives him into Byzantium. *Mithridates* lost then also his fleet of 100 ships, with all his provision and furniture; and it's thought, that hee lost by Sea and land in the siege of Cyzicum above 300000 men

men, amongst whom *Varnus* dyed, with divers others proscribed by *Sylla*. Yet *Mithridates* though thus weakened will not yeeld but stirs up the Armenians, Iberians, Caspians and Albanians against *Lucullus*, who had now sent to the Senat his Laureat Letters in token of victory; for so Conquerors use to doe. Rich *Lucullus*, *Crassus*, and *Cn. Pompejus* were now Consuls: they restored the Tribunitian power againe, which *Sylla* had weakned. *Cotta* a little before had advanced the order of Knighthood; at that time *M. Tul. Cicero* being Questor drove *Verres* Pretor of Sicily out of his place by his eloquence, accusing him of oppression: And such corruption was at Rome, that *L. Gellius* and *C. Lentulus* 10 Censors, removed 64 Senators from their places. *Lucullus* in the interim recovers Paphlagonia and Bithynia: invades Pontus, takes the two chief Cities thereof, kills 30000 of *Mithridates* his Army, and pursues him to Comana: the crafty King to hinder the Romans from pursuing him, caused money and rich things to be strowed in the way, and so with 2000 horse he escaped to *Tigranes*, who did not admit him into his presence, but gave order hee should bee used like a King.

*Mithridates* now despairing of himself, sent *Bocchus* his Evneuch to his Palace, to kill all his wives sisters, and Concubines, which being done, the Governours of almost all the Garrisons fell off from him to *Lucullus*, to whom *La- chares* *Mithridates* his sonne sent a crowne of gold: hee tooke divers Sea townes, hee pursues *Tygranes* and defeats his army for refusing to deliver up *Mithridates* and overthrowes 300000 men being invited by the Grecians, he besiegeth and taketh *Tygranocerta* lately built: he makes *Antiochus* the sonne of *Cizyenus* King of Syria. *Mithridates* flies to Pontus; *Tygranes* into the remotest parts of Armenia; whom *Lucullus* could not pursue because of the winter, but upon a mutiny in *Lucullus* his Army for want of pay, the souldiers refused to march. Which gave opportunity for *Tygranes* and *Mithridates* to renew their Forces. *Mithridates* slew *C. Triarius*, *Lucullus* his Legat, and overthrew his Army, among the dead bodies were found 150 Centurions and 24 Tribunes 30 slaine: the Sea even to *Hercules* pillars, were so filled with Pyrats by *Mithridates* and the the Cretans, that all provision and commerce with Rome was intercepted, till Creet was subdued by *Q. Metellus* called therefore *Creticus*, and the Sea scoured of Pirates by *Pompey*, which was done in 40 dayes space, such of the Pirats as escaped had lands assigned them in Cilicia, far from the Sea, that in stead of piracy, they might be exercised in husbandry.

*Cn. Manilius* the Tribune, being assisted by *Cicero* and *Cesar* got an act to passe that *Pompey* should have the charge of the *Mithridaticke* warre; this caused great emulation between *Pompey* and *Lucullus*. *Pompey* accused *Lucullus* of avarice and profusion, calling him the gowned *Xerxes*, and he againe accused *Pompey* 40 of pride and ambition; yet notwithstanding full power is committed to *Pompey* over all the Roman Armies without Italy, with an ample Commission to declare friends or foes whom he pleased: never had any before him the like power; hee was also the first Roman Generall that ventured over *Euphrates*: who having made a bridge of Boates, falls upon *Mithridates* suddenly, and routs him in one battell, then pursues him to Colchi; but *Orontes* king of Albania and *Arreus* King of Heberia with 70000 in ambush thought to intrap him, but he understanding the plot beset the wood, where they were, and set it on fire; that the enemy was forced to submit and give hostages: in the meane while *M. Lucullus* Governour of Macedonia overthrowes the Bessi a people in Thracia neer Pontus about hill *Aemus*, and made all their country tributary whilest the other *L. Lucullus* was taking in Nisibis upon Tigris.

*Pompey* being now sure of *Mithridates*, marcheth against *Tigranes* his associate who having overthrown the *Seleucide* called himselfe King of Kings, hee had three sonnes by *Mithridates* his daughter, one of them he slew for rebelling, the other he killed in hunting, for not helping up his Father when hee fell from his horse, but supposing him dead with the fall, took the Crowne from his head, and set

3906.



**A. M.** answer of the Kings so dismayed the souldiers, that even the chiefest and stoutest of the maine body began to make their last wills: but *Cæsar* bravely roused their drooping spirits by his eloquence: *Ariovistus* did so beset his army round with wagons and carts, that no hope there was of flight, multitudes of women were employed, with their cries and stretched out armes to dissuade the souldiers from cowardise, the Germans came in so fast upon the Romans that they had no use of their darts, but fell to their swords hand to hand: the Germans defended their heads with their Targets, but the Romans fell so furiously on, that they plucked their Targets out of their hands, which caused the Germans to flye; in which flight multitudes were killed, *Ariovistus* escaped over the river Rhene, but 10 one of his daughters was taken.

The *Belgæ* fearing the losse of their liberty, raised an Army of 272000 men, with whom *Cæsar* would not encounter but broke them with delays, and weakened them with often skirmishes; in which he had alwayes the better: he subdued the *Soissons* in the Province of *Rhemes*: with the *Bellovac*i or people of *Beauvais* and the *Ambiani* also, or people of *Amiens* in *Picardie*. These gave *Cæsar* hostages for their fidelity: but the *Nervii* or those about *Tornay*, with the *Aduatici* about *Beaumont* were not so easily mastered; their liberty was not lost, without the losse of much blood, both of the Romans and of their own: the *Veragri* and *Seduni* inhabiting the *Alpes* did much trouble *Servius Galba* his 20 Winter quarters; after *Cæsar* was gone into Italy, *Galba* was left there for to secure the passages for Merchants that travelled that way. He by a sudden irruption put the enemy to flight: *Cæsar* supposing *Gallia* had been quiet, marcheth into *Illyricum*; the countrey being commanded to victuall his Army, raised great Forces against him, and were assisted by the *Osisini*, *Lexobii*, *Morini*, and others inhabiting the Sea coast of *Britaine* and *Normandie*, they also send for aid out of great *Britaine* over against them: it behoved therefore *Cæsar* to provide shipping, which he did; and though hee was much crossed both with the tides and windes, and unserviceableness of his ships, yet partly by the Roman valour, partly by the stratagem of sharp hookes fastned to long poles laid 30 athwart, by which the ropes of the crosse masts was cut, so that the sailes fell down, and could doe no service to the enemy, *Cæsar* got the victory. About the same time *Q. Titurius Sabinus* subdued the *Eburones*, or the people of *Eureux*, and *P. Crassus* mastered *Gasconia* not without much expence of blood.

3917.

The year following *Pompey* and *Crassus* being Consuls again, the Germans passed over with a great Army, the Rhene, but were so defeated, that there perished of them partly by the sword, partly by submerision in the river 430000; then did *Cæsar* make a bridge over the Rhene, and drove the *Suevi* into their woods and bogges, in this interim *Cato* being angry that *Vatinius* obtained the 40 Pretorship which he sued for, endeavoured to hinder the passing of that Act by which *Pompey* was made Governour of *Spain*, *Cæsar* of *Gallia* and *Germany*, and *Crassus* of *Syria* for 5 years: but the Act passed, *Cato* was laid in chains, and this *Triumvirat* ruled all in *Rome*. *Gabinus* is sent against the *Parthians*, with order to restore *Ptolemy* to his kingdome, and put out *Archelaus* whom the Egyptians had chosen for their King. *Ptolemy* remunerates *Gabinus* with the wealth of *Egypt*, puts *Berenice* to death, with the wealthiest men of his kingdome.

*Cæsar* passed over the Sea into great Britain, whose sudden arrivall so affrighted the Inhabitants, that they presently delivered up to him their armes and hostages, 50 hee did not march far at this time into the Island, because a great part of his Fleet was cast away in a storm, but the second time he came over, hee increased both his Fleet and Army, and drove the Britains all the way before him even into the *Calydonian* woods in *Scotland*: he laid in chains *Cingetorix* one of their Kings and so returned with a great booty; in the mean while *Aristobulus* escaped out of prison, and makes new work for *Gabinus* by seising upon a Fort which

which he could not hold above two dayes. Wherefore he was apprehended and sent back again to *Rome* with his sonne *Antigonus*: but *Alexander* the sonne of *Aristobulus* raised suddenly an Army in *Judea* and encountered with *Gabinus*, but hee lost the day, and withall 10000 Jewes. *Gabinus* having settled *Judea*, went against the *Nabatheans*, and defeated them. But hee was accused at *Rome* for letting goe *Mithridates* and *Orsanes* the sonnes of *Phraates*, who being banished by their brother *Orodes*, fled to the Romans for protection, but he was bribed; and so gave out that these two had made a private escape; he was also accused by *Cicero* lately returned from his banishment, that 10 hee had oppressed *Syria* with covetous exactions, and had re-established *Ptolemy* without cominand from the People, contrary to *Sibylla's* oracles. *Pompey* and *Cæsar* tooke *Gabinus* his part, and made *Cicero* to defend him, whom he had before accused, so that he got the name of *Trasfuga*, or turne-coat. *Gabinus* notwithstanding was condemned by the people, and *M. Licinius Crassus* put in his place.

*Crassus* more covetous then his Predecessor, robbed the Temple of *Jerusalem* of 10000 talents, and a golden beam weighing 300 mine. Every mine weighs 12 ounces and a half, which was more then the Roman pound, by 4. drachmes. Hee invaded the *Parthians*, having no Commission from *Rome*, and plundered 20 Mesopotamia. *Orodes* sent to know why hee broke the peace, hee answered, that *Seleucia* his chiefe City should know the reason. Hereupon *Orodes* sends to keep *Artabazes* the sonne of *Tygranes* from aiding *Crassus*, who passing over *Euphrates* being warned to the contrary was circumvented by the *Parthians* who laid an ambush for him; there was killed the sonne of *Crassus* a gallant young man, with many Senators and Consular men; at last *Crassus* was taken by *Surenus* the *Parthian* Generall and killed; they powdered melted gold into his motuh, to shew his covetousnesse; for he was wont to say, he was a poor man that could not maintaine an Army in the field: some of the Romans escaped to *Carræ* a City in *Mesopotamia* beyond *Edeffa*, where *Caracalla* also died. 30 *Cassius Longinus* having recollected the dispersed Forces quelled the insurrections of *Syria* and *Judea* upon this overthrow, he defeated *Antiochus Comagenus* and beat the *Parthian* Army from *Antiochia*, having slaine their two chiefe Commanders, *Osaces* and *Pacorns*. *Cicero* had now an Army in *Cilicia*, his own Province, where he tooke in the City *Pindevisus*, shewing that he deserved to bee. *Epist. fam. l. 1. called Pindevisinus*, as *Scipio* to be called *Africanus*, how ever, he was called *Imperator* or Lord Generall. *Epist. fam. l. 2. epist. 10.*

Whilest the state of things went thus in the east, *Cæsar* in the west was much vexed by the *Gaules*; *Ambiorix* their Generall had circumvented *Cotta* and *Sabinus* *Cæsars* Legats and by the helpe of the *Eburones*, and *Aduatici*, overthrew 40 the whole Roman Legion, then joining themselves to the *Nervii*, set upon *Q. Cicero's* winter quarters, and besieged him: he presently by a letter tyed to a *Javelin* implores *Cæsars* help, who returns him an answer in Greek fastned to the loope or string of the dart, which the bearer sling within the Fort. The *Gaules* being 60 thousand strong, left the siege, when they heard of *Cæsars* coming and march directly against him, hee by a counterfeit flight draws them to a place of disadvantage, where he killed multitudes of them, and disarmed the rest. *Labienus* overcame the *Treviri* and flew *Induciomarus* their Leader, *Cæsar* fearing the revolt of the *Gaules* procured from *Pompey*, being then at *Rome*, 3. new Legions, then hee passeth over the Rhene to chastise the Germans, for sending supply to the 50 *Treviri*; but understanding that the *Suevi* in the entry of the Forrest *Hircynia* waited for the Roman Army; hee cut downe a part of the bridge, and erected a Tower, and put a Garrison in it, on the banks, for he feared the want of Corn, seeing the Germans were not then addicted to husbandry, and so he pursues *Ambiorix*, who sheltered himselfe in the Forrest of *Arden* or *Arduena*, and so he lost his labour.

About this time *T. Annius Milo* killed *P. Clodius* his Competitor for the Con-  
fulship 700.

A. V.

A. U. fullship in *via Appia* which was a street paved by *Appius Claudius* the Consul reaching from Rome to Brundisium, this murder was done at Bovillæ a Town in Latium not farre from Rome, the body of *Clodius* being brought into the *Curia Hostilia*, or Councell-house, built by King *Tullus Hostilius*, was by the incensed multitude burnt with the whole building together, the City honours were taken violently by those that were strongest, for there were no Magistrates lawfully called, so that they were forced to make *Pompey* Consul the third time, who began to suspect *Cæsars* power, and *Cæsar* envied *Pompey's* honours, for the death of *Julia Cæsars* daughter, dissolved the amity that was between these two great Commanders, *Pompey* to take off the envy of his greatnesse, chose *Q. Scipio* for his colleague. *Cicero* pleaded for *Milo*, but not so resolutely as he was wont, because *Pompey* had filled the room with armed men. *Milo* was banished and retired himselfe to *Marseilles*.

*Cæsar* was forced to be absent from the City, because of the Gaules rebellions and conspiracies, therefore *Pompey* past an Act, that *Cæsar* should not be prejudiced in his Consulship, though in this he was thwarted by *M. Cato*: yet *Pompey* made *Marcellus* Consul, and *Curio* Tribune, *Cæsars* greatest enemies: the Gaules thinking that *Cæsars* employments at home would keep him from coming to the Army, began againe to struggle for their liberty, the *Carnutes* now called *Chartres*, fell first upon the Roman Factours, killed them, and seized on their Estates. This murder being committed at *Genabum*, which some think to be Orleans, others Gian about Sun-rising, the report of it came by Post that Evening to *Auverni* now called *Auvergne*, which is 140. miles distant, *Vercingetorix* *Celtillus* his son, whose Father ruled over all the Gaules, raised a mighty Army out of divers countreys, pressing all sorts of men to take up Armes under paine of death. *Cæsar* hearing of this preparation, resolves with all speed to prevent the uniting of the enemies Forces. Hee placeth strong Garrisons in all parts bordering upon the enemy; through snowie Mountaines he marcheth into the bounds of *Auvergne*, and had got all his Legions together, before the enemy knew of his coming, he took in three great townes at one clap.

At that time *Avaricum* now called *Chasteau neust* or *Bourges en Berrie* was a strong city and chief of the *Bituriges*; *Cæsars* souldiers being enraged, that the Gaules had burnt down 19 townes round about, purposely to starve the Romans, laid siege to that city, took it by storm, and put all to the sword, men, women, and children of 40000 scarce 800 escaped, who went to *Vercingetorix*. After this *Cæsar* divided his Army, foure Legions hee sent against the *Parisians* and *Senones*, whose fore-fathers under *Brennus* their leader, burnt Rome, and besieged the Capitol, six legions he conducted himselfe against the *Auverni*, or *Auvergne*, and sits downe before *Gergobia* now *Clermont* in *Auvergne*, within this strong city were 80000 men. Here *Cæsar* lost 46 Centurions, by the temerity of his souldiers venturing too hastily upon the enemy. The *Hedui* whose countrey now is possessed by the *Burgundions*, fell off from the Romans, who for their fidelity were wont to call them brethren. Whereupon *Cæsar* sends into Germany beyond the *Rhene* for a supply of Horse and Foot, by whose helpe hee overcame *Vercingetorix*, who assisted the *Hedui*, then he besiegeth *Alexia*, a city, now a Village in the Dutchie of *Burgundie* called *Alise*, and by famine forced them to surrender. There were now flockt together of Gaules 240000 Foot and 8000 Horse, which vast Army after many dayes fight was overthrown by *Cæsar*. *Vercingetorix*, beholding from the Towne: this great defeat of his Army, surrenders all, and so the *Hedui* return againe to the Roman obedience.

*Labiennus* had now subdued the *Parisians*. *Cæsar* in the interim marcheth against the *Bellovac*i, a people that lived about *Bayeux*, and subdues them. Others being weary of warre submit now themselves to the Romans. *Uxellodunum* called *Cadenac* in *Quercy* held out against *Cæsar* till thirst forced them to yeeld, for there was but one spring of water that served the Town, which *Cæsar* cut off.

off. He spared their lives, but cut off their hands to witnesse their rebellion. After this he placeth Garrisons every where, so that partly with fear, partly with fair words he brought all *Gallia* in subjection. About this time died *Ptolemy Auletes* King of Egypt in the 29 year of his reign, to whom succeeded *Ptolemy Dionysius* the last King of Egypt, he was now 13 years old, and married his sister *Cleopatra*, who afterward married with *M. Antony*.

## CHAP. VII.

10

1. The fatall civill warre between *Cæsar* and *Pompey*. 2. *Cæsars* Divers victories, in *Theffalia*, *Egypt*, *Afric*, *Pontus* and *Spaine*. 3. *Pompey's* death and *Cæsars*.

*Gallia* being now quieted by the losse of 400000 men besides many more prisoners, *Cæsar* returns into Italy where he is received with Sacrifices, joy, and triumphs by all the cities through which he went: an Act passed in the Senat, that *Cæsar* should part with two of his Legions for the *Parthian* war, which hee condescended to, but understanding by *Curio* the Tribune, (whom *Cæsar* by paying his debts, of an enemy had made his friend) that *M. Marcellus* the Consul had appointed them for *Pompey*, and so were retained in Italy, and withall that it was motioned in the Senat that *Cæsar* should lay down his Commission, and deliver up the Army, hee perceived that his enemies went about to ruine him; wherefore hee refused to part with his Army, except *Pompey* might doe the same. This was held reasonable by *Curio*, but *Pompey's* friends would not assent; wherefore *Cæsar* is commanded to repair to Rome, as a private man, and to petition for what hee desired, and if he did not by a certain day deliver up his Army, he should be proclaimed enemy to the State. *Cæsar* knowing that *Pompey* ruled the Senat, and that *Marcellus*, *Lentulus*, and *Cato* to his mortall enemies meant to bring all his actions in question if he should come to Rome as a private man, refuseth to lay down his Commission: therefore is by *Marcellus* and *Lentulus* Consuls, denounced enemy to the State, and commanded not to passe the river *Rubicon* now called *Rugum*, which divided Italy from *Gallia* of old.

Now begins this fatall War, which was prefaged by an eclipse of the Sunne, and caused by the ambition of *Pompey*, who retained his Armies in Spain all the three years space that he ruled in Rome, and yet could not endure that *Cæsar* should enjoy the like priviledge; he was favoured by the Senat, *Cæsar* by the Army, both presumed on the justice of their cause, but neither of them had any goodnesse or justice, who did sacrifice their countreys safety to their private quarrels. *Cæsar* passeth over *Rubicon*, and comes to *Ariminum*, where he acquaints the 5 Cohorts he had with him to be his Guard, of his wrongs, and that he meant to restore the Tribunes that were banished, these five Cohortes were half a Legion, which consisted of ten Cohortes, every Cohors of three Maniples; and each Manipule of two Centuries or 200. so his guard consisted now of 3000 men.

The first Towne *Cæsar* tooke was *Auximum* or *Osimum*: which so terrified Rome, that *Marcellus* and *Lentulus* the Consuls with the rest of the Magistrates forsooke the city. In the interim *Cæsar* takes 7 Cohortes which were at *Sulmo* from *Lucretius*, and procured the 3 Legions which with *L. Domitius* were at *Corfinium*, to join with him. *Pompey* who a little before bragged that if he did but knock the Italian ground with his foot, he should have armed men enough, hearing of *Cæsars* strength and preparations, intends with most of the Senat to leave Italy, therefore they betake themselves to *Brundisium* a Sea Port in *Calabria* upon the *Hadriatic* Sea, from whence was the ordinary passage into Greece.

D



A. M.

Greece. *Cesar* dispatcheth letters to severall places of Italy, complaining of *Pompey*, and desiring he might be brought to answer *Cesar's* accusations, hee desired the quarrell might be ended without blood-shedding; for that end, hee attempted to surprize *Pompey* in Brundisium, but though he let guards upon the harbour, yet *Pompey* escaped by night; therefore *Cesar* repaires to Rome, being now secure, enters the Senat, shews how he is forced to take up Armes in his owne defence. Then hee seisseth upon the Treasury, which *Pompey* in his sudden flight neglected; and having broken open the doores he taketh 4135 *l.* weight of Gold, and almost 900000 *l.* weight of silver: thence he goeth to the Legions at Ariminum, and from thence over the Alpes to Massylia, which he shut the gates against him. Hee gives charge to *Trebonius* with three Legions to take in that city, then he hastes to Spain, which was now subject to *L. Afranius*, *M. Petreius*, and *M. Varro*, *Pompey's* three Generalls. These in divers battells he overcame *Afranius*, *Petreius*, and *M. Varro* in the further Spaine yielded, and delivered up his Legions to *Cesar*. *Cato* was driven out of Sicilia by *Curio*, *Cotta* out of Sardinia by *Valerius*; *Tubero* out of Africa by *Varro*. Massylia also submitte, which is plundered of all, except life and liberty.

*Pompey* was now Master of the Sea; and gave a check to *Cesar's* victories, for *Octavius* & *Libo* *Pompey's* Legats did circumvent *Dolobella* and *Antonius* that were for *Cesar*, and who were appointed by him to guard the mouth of the Hadriatick Sea. *C. Antonius* held the Curictic or Corcyrean shoare, but submitted, and yielded up 15 Cohortes to *Octavius* his Fleet. *Libo* drove *Dolobella* from Illyricum or Dalmatia: the Ships also that *Basilus* sent to help *Antonius* were caught by the Pompejan Cilicians, with a new trick of ropes made like gins hid under the water. *Curio* also *Cesar's* Legat, after he had overthrown *Varrus* in Africa, lost both himselfe and *Cesar's* Army, in a rash battell with *Juba* King of Mauritania. *Pompey* chose *Epirus*, now Albania, a countrey famous for good horses, to be the seat of the war: and *Cesar* having made all the Provinces sure behinde him, makes all the speed hee can to encounter with *Pompey*, therefore ventures in a small Pinnace to crosse the Sea in the midst of Winter, and in a storm, wherein he shewed more courage then the fearfull Shipmaster, whom he checks for his timidity: Fear not (saith he) thou carryest *Cesar*. When he came on shoar, and had gathered his Forces together, being impatient of delayes, used all means possible by plundering of Towns, and taking in Forts, to draw *Pompey* to a battell, which he warily avoided, hoping by tergiversation to break the courage of *Cesar's* Army, but *Pompey's* souldiers did interpret his procrastination, cowardise: so that *Cesar* said truly when hee went to Spaine, that he went against an Army without a Captain: but when he came into Epirus, that he went against a Captaine without an Army, for his souldiers were young gallants, and raw in military affaires. Some skirmishes there were between the two Armies. *Cesar* fell upon *Torquatus* and his Legion, being in Garrison, *Pompey* came with his whole body to rescue him. Whereupon *Cesar* left the siege to encounter with *Pompey*, *Torquatus* follows him from his Garrison in the reare, but *Cesar's* Souldiers perceiving their danger, betooke themselves to their heels; so that *Cesar* could by no meanes hinder their flight: and if *Pompey* had not recalled his army from the pursuit, hee had got the day, and the quarrell had been ended, which made *Cesar* say, that *Pompey* knew not how to conquer. Many Roman Knights were killed, with 30 Centurions, and 4000 common souldiers.

3924.

Upon this defeat, *Cesar* makes hast through Epirus into Thessalia in Greece, famous for the Gyants warre against *Jupiter*, and there chooseth the Pharsalian fields called also *Philippici* (from the town *Philippi* close by) for his campaign. *Pompey* follows after, whose Army consisted of 40000 Foot, in the left wing were 7000 horse, in the right 5000. besides the Auxiliary Forces of the East, with the Nobility, Senators, Pretorian and Consular men. *Cesar* had not above 30000 Foot, and 1000 horse, but stout souldiers all. The battell continued

continued doubtful for a while, till the German cohorts fell so furiously upon *Pompey's* Horse, that they were forced to give ground, and at last betooke themselves to a disordered flight, the *Cesarians* pursue them with a command from *Cesar* that they should aim at the Pompejans faces, and withall to spare their fellow citizens. Of the Pompejans were slaine 15000. and 33 Centurions, *Pompey* himselfe escaped with the two *Levuli*, *Favonius* the Pretorian and his sonne *Sextus*. Some perswaded him to goe to Parthia, others to his friend King *Juba* of Africa, but he chose rather Egypt for his retreat, hoping to be kindly used by young *Ptolemy*, for old courtesies bestowed by *Pompey* on him, and his Father; therefore he came first to Larissa, then by Sea to Mitylene, thence he sailed with his wife *Cornelia* into Egypt, the base King sends to receive *Pompey* into his own Ship, and a warrant there to kill him, being perswaded thereto by *Pothinus* the Eunuch, and his Tutor, by *Theodotus* also, and *Achillas* his Generall; for they feared that *Pompey's* intertainment would draw all the Roman Forces thither, therefore *Achillas* and *Septimius* now a Colonell, but heretofore a Captaine in *Pompey's* his Army, first murder this brave Commander, and then cuts off his head in the sight of his wife and children; he was 58 years old.

*Pompey's* Generalship was profered to *Cicero*, which he refused, and betooke himselfe privately to Brundisium. *Cesar* not made insolent with his victory, gives a generall pardon to all his enemies. At Rome hee was created Dictator though absent, in three dayes he comes to Egypt, where *Theodotus* presents him *Pompey's* head and ring, at sight of which he weeped, and checkt the murderers, then he went to *Alexandria*, and demanded contribution, the Kings Governours pretend poverty, *Achillas* is commanded to dismisse his Army of 20000 men; but hee marcheth with him against *Cesar*, a battell is fought in which the Kings Fleet is set on fire, the flame whereof consumes a part of the city, and in it, *Ptolemies* famous librarie of 400000 volumes: in the Isle *Pharus* was a great fight in which *Cesar* lost many men, and *Pompey's* murderers slain, *Cesar* himselfe hardly escaped into a cockboat, which with the weight of the passengers sunk, but he saved himself by swimming with one hand, for the other in which he held his papers, he was forced to hold above the water; so having swimmied 200 paces hee came safely to his Ship: then hee renewes his Forces, and in a battell overthrowes the Egyptians, in which 20000 are slaine, 12000 with 70 long Ships taken, and the King himselfe was drowned in a boat overfet with passengers. So *Alexandria* being forced to yield, *Cesar* bestowes Egypt on *Cleopatra*, the Kings body was found in the muddes.

*Pharnaces* the sonne of *Mithridates* tooke occasion by this Roman discord to rebell against him. *Cesar* marcheth, and at the first encounter overthrowes him, so that hee truly said, *I came, I saw, I overcame*, *Pharnaces* having fled to Bosphorus Cimmerius in the mouth of the lake Meotis, distant from Bosphorus Thracius 500 miles. Here *Pharnaces* who would have betrayed his Father *Mithridates*, is betrayed by his friend *Asander* and murdered.

*Pompey's* faction enraged against *Cesar*, breakes out in two places; in Africa under King *Juba*, *Scipio* *Pompey's* Father in law, and *Cato* Governour of Utica; in Spain, under *Cn. Pompeius* great *Pompey's* eldest sonne. At Rome also they began to stir, but *Antonius* Generall of the Horse to *Cesar*, appeased the tumult with the murder of 800 citizens: in Africa, *Scipio*, *Juba* and *Afranius* are defeated by *Cesar*, 10000 men were slaine, and 60 Elephants taken. *Cato* at Utica killed himselfe, having first read *Plato's* Book of the immortality of the soule. *Juba* hired *Petreius* to cut his throat, which he did, and then killed himselfe with the same sword. *Scipio* being kept back by contrary windes from Spain, murdered himselfe on Ship-board. *Torquatus* also was killed. *Cesar* commanded *Pompey's* daughter and his Nephews to bee slaine, but

A. M.

but *Cato's* sonne, and others that begged for mercy, were pardoned. *Cesar* upon his returne to Rome, was honoured with four triumphs, answering his four conquests of Gallia, Egypt, Pontus, and Africa, he made a sumptuous feast, and exhibited magnificent shews, he pardoned *M. Marcellus* upon the Senats intreaty, and called him home from his banishment, for which Act of clemency he is highly commended by *Cicero* in his incomparable oration for *M. Marcellus*; but before he could returne he was murdered by *Magius* his client at Athens. After the war was ended a list was taken of the citizens, and there were not found above 150000 whereas four years before, about the beginning of the war, there were reckoned above 400000 citizens. *Cesar* was now made Consul the fourth time. He prepares for Spain against *Pompey's* two sonnes, *Cn.* and *Sextus*, but both their Fleets were spoiled at Sea, after divers townes were taken by both sides, a great battell was fought near the city Munda, wherein *Cesar* at first was defeated, but upon a fresh encounter he got the day. *Cn. Pompejus* fled into Munda, but *Cesar* making a rampire of dead bodies, took the town, *Pompey* fled, but was overtaken and killed by *Ceronius*, the younger brother escaped. *T. Labienus* that had done so much good service in Gallia for *Cesar*, but now adhering to *Pompey's* faction, was slain.

The civill war being every where composed, and *Cesar* returning from Spain was honoured with the fifth triumph, the title of *pater patrie*, and of *perpetuall Dictator*, and that he should be *sepius* *et* *avundus*; that is, *Holy* or *inviolable*, but he continued not long in honour, for he returned from Spain to Rome in October, and about the *Ides* or midst of the next March he was slain; this was not above five months. His great honours, felicity, and pride had procured him envy: for when the *Idlers* before the Temple of *Venus* came to confer these honours on him, he sat still in his chair of state, and did not stand up, as hee ought: and though he refused to wear the crown which *M. Antonie* put on his head, in the *Lupercall* solemnities, but sent it to *Jupiter* in the Capitol: yet when one had placed a crown on the head of his Image, hee was content it should remaine there, wherefore he thrust the two Tribunes out of their office, for questioning the man that crowned his image. A plot being then contrived by *M. Brutus*, *C. 30* *Tribonius*, *C. Cassius*, *D. Brutus* his favourite, and some others, he was murdered in the Curia of *Pompey*, having received 23. wounds, whereof the second was only mortall which he had in his brest, his murderers fled to the Capitoll, resolved to make an act of Oblivion, to sling *Cesars* body into the Tiberis, and to seize upon his estate, but they feared the greatnesse of *Antonius* and *Lepidus*. Such was the tragickall Catastrophe of this brave Commander, who had fought fifty pitched battells with the common enemies of Rome, besides his many victories in the civill war. He made many wholesome Laws, he reformed the Roman Calender by the help of *Sofigenes* the Mathematician of *Alexandria*, he not onely conquered his enemies, but his passions also, in advancing his greatest adversaries to honours and places of trust. When he took *Pompey's* cabinet at Pharsalia, and *Scipio's* at Thapsus, he burned all their Letters without looking into any one of them. Hee who was carried so often in triumphant Chariots, and whom no forraigne force could subdue, is now conquered by a few traitors at home, and carried by three of his meanest servants. So horrid was this murder, that the Sun is said to hide his face from it, by an eclipse: and so far was his death the cause of peace, as his enemies thought, that it presently occasioned more civill wars, and so little were his enemies secured by his murder, that none of all these traitors outlived him above three years, but all perished miserably, yet deservedly, even some of them with the same sword that wounded him; he was 56 years old when he died. 50

CHAP.

A. M.

## CHAP. VIII.

1. The affaires of Judea under Antigonus, and Antipater. 2. The actions of Octavius in his younger yeares. 3. The actions and death of Cassius and Brutus. 4. The actions and end of Sextus Pompejus. 5. The actions of Antonius and Lepidus.

*Aristobolus* being sent back in chains to Rome, *Cesar* in hatred to *Pompey* sets him free, and gives him the command of two Legions, but being in the way seized upon, by the Pompejans he was poisoned, and left his sonne *Alexander* should make any trouble in Judea, his head is cut off by *Scipio Pompey's* Father in law at Antioch: but after the death of *Pompey*, *Hyrcanus* and *Antipater* did good service for *Cesar* in Egypt, in helping to subdue *Ptolemy*. Wherefore *Hyrcanus* is established in the Pontificat, and *Antipater* is made Governour of Palestina, whose sonne *Phaselus* is set over Ierusalem, and *Herod* the other sonne over Galilee. This *Herod* caused *Ezechias* the high way man, with many others to be slaine, which so offended the 70 Elders, that they sent out their warrants to bring him to justice for meddling with their authority, hee by the counsell of his Father *Antipater*, gets him a strong guard of Souldiers, to awe the great Councell of the 70. which made old *Simeon* (called the just,) rise up and tell the Councell that *Herod* deserved death, for this his presumption. Which so incensed *Herod* against them, that hee never was at quiet, till hee had quite overthrowne that Councell, which hee did, as soone as hee was made King, and killed all the 70 except old *Simeon*, who escaped, being preserved by God, to receive Christ in his armes, and to prophesie of his Salvation.

At Rome *C. Octavius Cesars* nephew by his sisters Daughter *Atia*, or *Accia*, being adopted by his Uncles last will, and constituted heir to 9 parts of his estate, 3929. which was called *Heres ex dodrante*, resolves to revenge his Uncles death, hee was now about 19 yeares old, and of such parts and hopes, that *Cesar* meant to have made him his Colleague in the Getic and Parthian warre: the souldiers begin to flock to him amaine, from all parts, both because of their affection to *Cesar*, and that they saw the brave disposition of *Octavius*, and because *Antonius* impotent Government was distastfull to them; as likewise to the Senat and people, who had been also exasperated against *Antonie* by *Cicero's* invectives. *M. Antonie* likewise being madde that *Octavius* a youth, was preferred to him, in *Cesars* will, resolves to crush him betimes; but the people having large legacies left them by *Cesar*, adhere to *Octavius*, whom they call 40 *Cesar* from his Uncles, but now his Fathers name. *D. Brutus* being designed Consul, joines his Army with *Octavius* his Forces; the Senat also sends him the Consular Ornaments, gives him power to make war against *Antonie*: and honours him with the title of Imperator or L. Generall. *Hirtius* also, and *Pansa* the Consuls conjoyne their Armies with *Octavius*. *M. Brutus* seileth upon *Vatinus* his Army in Greece, and on the Province too for the use of *Octavius*; and in Epirus wreits the Legions from *C. Antenius Maroks* brother.

*Octavius* began his Government upon the death of *Julius Cesar*, which was 282 yeares after the death of *Alexander*, before the birth of Christ 42. and about the 711 yeare of the city: shortly after this *C. Trebonius* one of *Cesars* murderers was killed in Asia by *Dolabella* that succeeded him, this *Dolabella* was killed by *C. Cassius* at Laodicea, *D. Brutus* being besieged by *M. Antonie* in Mutina now Modena a Town in Lombardie or Gallia Cisalpina he is assisted by *Octavius*, *Pansa*, and *Hirtius*, the siege raised, and *Antonie* forced to flee into France in this fight *Pansa* and *Hirtius* lost their lives, but honored with a publick Sepulture. A triumph is appointed for *Brutus*, but no notice taken of *Octavius*, for the Pompejan faction began again to bare sway at Rome; he perceiving how hee was 50

D 3

frighted

A. M. slighted, and that in scorn he was called *childe*, sent *Cornelius* a Centurion with 400 souldiers to the Senat, to demand the Consulship for *Octavius* in the name of the whole Army: the Senat seeming averse was threatned by *Cornelius*, who drew his sword, and told them, that if they would not yeeld to *Octavius* his request, the sword should force them; the messengers returning to *Octavius* without satisfaction, hee by Letters invites *Antonius* and *Lepidus* into Italy with their Forces, who being united into a body, sit downe before Rome, whereupon *Octavius* is presently made Consul, who banisheth all that had any hand in *Cæsars* death, and accuseth *Cassius* with the two *Bruti* of his murder. *Plancus Brutus* his Colleague, and *Asinius Pollio* a great Anti-pompejan deliver up both their Ar- 10 mies to *Antonius*. *D. Brutus* is forsaken by *Plancus* and his souldiers, and is killed by *Antonius*.

*Lepidus* and *Antonius* being both proclaimed enemies by the Senat, and *Octavius* slighted as was said, they had no other way to save themselves but by uniting their Forces, therefore *Octavius* imbraceth the occasion, and closeth with *Antonius*, who otherways was resolved to join his Forces with *Brutus* and *Cassius* who had the command of 17 Legions, but *Octavius* unworthily banisheth *Cicero* the eloquent mouth of that glorious City, leaving him as a prey to *Antonius* his sworne enemy, who sent some of his troopers to murder him, which they did, and placed his head and right hand on the Rostra, to the great grief of the 20 city; *Fulvia Antonies* wife, abused the head with all kinde of indignities. In that proscription of these Triumviri were banished besides knights 130. Senators, and not onely *Cicero*, but all his family also: but *Cicero's* sonne was recalled.

3930. *Cassius* in the meane time possesseth Syria, and vexes Judea with taxes. *Malichus* who had poysoned *Antipater*, is by his sonne *Herod* slaine, *Hyrcanus* not daring to revenge this death of his friend *Malichus*, then *Cassius* takes *Rhodes*, and *Brutus* subdues the Lycii, then they passe over with their army to Macedonia where neer *Philippy* *Octavius* and *Antonius* fight with them, this second battell was fought with various successe, in that fatall field, the wing in which *Brutus* was, had the better of *Octavius*, then sick and not in the camp, but *Cassius* his wing was 30 defeated, who fearing *Brutus* had been in the like condition, forced his own servant to kill him, the souldier whom *Cassius* had sent to bring tidings to *Brutus*, returning too late, found his Generall dead on the ground, wherefore accusing his slownesse to be the cause of *Cassius* his death, fell upon his own sword. *Brutus* a few dayes after fought againe; but as his death and overthrow were foretold by his evill Genius the night before, so it came to passe. For seeing his Army defeated, he thrust *Stratos* sword through his left side, and so died immediately. Here died the sons of *Cato*, *Hortensius*, *Lucullus*, *Drusus*, *Livius*, *Quintilius*, *Varus*, and many more brave men.

*Sextus* the son of great *Pompey* at this time returning from Spain, first seized upon 40 Messana, then upon all Sicily, to whom there was great concourse both from Italy, and from the Brutian Army. The Senat had restored him to his Fathers estate, and made him Admirall of the Seas, when the Pompejan faction prevailed, now hee receives all fugitives and slaves, and with Piracies infests the Sea, which his Father had cleared, *Antonius* stayes to settle the Transmarine Provinces, *Octavius* returnes to Italy, which he findes full of tumults. For *Fulvia Antonies* wife stirred up the old souldiers against him; and *L. Antonius* the Consul, *Markes* brother accused also *Cesar* to the souldiers of his unjust dealing with them, and having raised an Army, marcheth to Perusia, at this day Perut a city in Hettruria: in which *Cesar* besiegeth him, who being forced by famine yeeldeth: and obtains 50 his life, so did *Fulvia*, and *Plancus*, and all the souldiers upon submission obtaine pardon, only the town was thrown down; & so this war ended without bloodshed.

Embassadors from all parts repair to *M. Antony* in Bithynia; among the rest were the prime men of the Jews, with an accusation against *Phaselus* and *Herod*: for incroaching upon *Hyrcanus* his Government, and for banishing unjustly *Antigonus* the son of *Aristobolus*: but *Herod* prevented them by bribing *Antonius*, and

and by the marrying of *Hyrcanus* his Neece, and so he obtained the title of Te- A. M. trarch: at Tyrus the Jews are some put to death, some imprisoned by *Antony*; for 3931. accusing *Herod* again: but the next year *Antigonus* taking occasion of *Antonies* dallying with *Cleopatra* Queen of Egypt, calls into Syria *Pacorus* the sonne of *Orodes* King of Parthia, who with force and fraud seized upon *Hyrcanus*, and *Phaselus*. *Herod* prevented the plot laid against him: the Parthians took and plundered Jerusalem, and then delivered it over to *Antigonus*, who cut off *Hyrcanus* his eares, that he might be incapable of the priesthood. *Phaselus* dashed out his own braines, to prevent the tortures intended by his enemy. *Herod* being weary of following *Antionius*, takes sail for Rhodes, and from thence to Rome: there *Antony* to make his peace with *Cesar*, marries his sister *Octavia*, having first put away his wife *Fulvia*, and betrayes his friend *Q. Rufus* to *Augustus*, against whom he was plotting mischief: Therefore *Cesar* to gratifie *Antony*, makes *Herod* King of Judea, and *Antigonus* for joining with the Parthians, is 2393. denounced Traitor. *Venidius* and *Silen Antonies* Legats are commanded to establish *Herod* in his Kingdome, but they being bribed by *Antigonus* in three yeares 3934. space did nothing.

*Sextus Pompejus* had now got all Sicily, and hindred provision from coming to Rome, therefore upon the desire of the people, *Cesar* and *Antony* conclude 20 a peace with him; and permitted him the Government of Sicilia and Achaja, and withall recalled divers of the Nobility from banishment: but this peace held not long, for *Pompey* contrary to the Articles of peace entertained fugitives, and *Cesar* received *Mena* who revolted from *Pompey* with 60 Ships. Him *Octavius* made Admirall of the same Fleet against *Pompey*, who had filled the Sea with Pyrats: a great battell was fought at Sea; but after *Cesar* had got the better, hee lost many of his Ships by a storm on Sylacæum upon the coast of Calabria, a place infamous for Shipwracks: *Cesar* had also a second losse neer Tauromenium 20 a Towne in Sicily; he lost also divers Ships, some whereof were burned by *Sylacæum*. *Mena* who revolted to *Pompey*, the same runnigado revolted again to *Cesar* with 30 6 Trire mes who gave him his life, but never employed him any more: in the last Sea fight against *Pompey*, *Agrippa Cesaris* Admirall took and sunk 103 Ships, of *Pompeys*, who hardly escaped to Asia with 17. where by command from *M. Antony*, *Titus* slew him.

*Cesar* had called *Lepidus* out of Africa with some Legions to aid him; but the vain man bragged that he and not *Cesar* had defeated *Pompey*; th refore hee challengeth Sicily to himselfe, and permits his souldiers to plunder Messana; at which insolencies *Cesar* being offended, comes into *Lepidus* his Campe, to expostulate with him, *Lepidus* commands his guard to knock him down, but hee 40 and having laid hold on the Eagle, puts spur to his horse, and carries it to his owne camp, upon this his Army falls upon *Lepidus* his quarters, whose Souldiers after some small skirmishes revolts to *Cesar*; *Lepidus* being forsaken puts off his Generalls habit called *Paludamentum* or *Chlamys*, and in mourning submits himself to *Cesar*, who gave him his life and goods, but degraded him from his honor and charge, and then banished him. *Cesar* now having 44 Legions under his command, which began to mutiny about their pay, he discharged 20000 of them, restored 30000 slaves to their masters, and crucified 6000 who were master- 50 umph or ovatio, so called from *ovis* the Sheepe, sacrificed then by the Conquerour.

In the East *Ventidius Antonies* Legat defeated the Parthians in a great battell, slew *Pacorus*, and carried about his head on a pole, that the revolted cities 3933. might see it: but *Antony* desirous to enlarge his Dominions, would needs with 16 Legions march through Media and Armenia against the Parthians, where hee lost two Legions, and was like to have lost all; had he not hearkened to the counsell of a Roman captive, who being taken in the Crassian overthrow, came by night



A. M. night into the Roman campe, and wished them not to march any further, but to returne with all hast through the woods and hills, which they did accordingly, yet were so beset with Parthian Archers, that had they not kneeled, and kept off the the storm of arrowes from their heads, by holding up their Targets they had been all lost; then *Antony* returning into *Armenia*, seisseth upon *Artavasdes*, the King, puts him in golden chains, and bestows that Kingdome on his son, which he had by his wife, or Concubine rather *Cleopatra*, but afterward *Artaxius* recovered his Fathers Kingdome:

## CHAP. IX.

The affaires of the Jewes under Antigonus, Hyrcanus, Herod, and Archelaus. 2. The affaires of Rome and Egypt under Antonius and Augustus. 3. The birth of Christ, the life and death of Augustus, and the insurrections in Iudea.

3935.

Iudea, Galilee and Samaria, were now in a combustion, because *Herod* an Idumean had got the Kingdome. *Herod* finding small aid in *Antonius* Legats, makes a journey to *Antony* himselfe, who at that time besieged *Samofata*, a town upon Euphrates, and assisteth him to take it, whereupon he obtaines two Legions under the command of *Sosius*, to subdue *Jerusalem*. With these he revengeth the death of his brother *Ioseph*, and of his six Cohortes who were overthrowne by *Mithra*, which gave occasion to the Galileans to drown all they found of *Herods* faction in the Sea of *Tyberias*, and because *Pappus* had killed his brother *Ioseph*, and *Antigonus* cut off his head: Therefore *Herod* having overcome the Galileans cuts off the head of *Pappus*, and sends it to *Pharoras* his younger brother: After this he besiegeth *Jerusalem* with 11 Legions and 6000 horse, besides the Syrian Auxiliaries: the Jewes stiffly held out against the besiegers, and would not be advised by *Sameas* a prime man in the Sanhedrin to submit to *Herod*, till first the lower city and outward Court of the Temple were taken, and at last the rest of the City and Temple was stormed, upon the Fast day the enraged souldiers spared neither man, woman, nor childe, so that *Herod* was forced to hire them to give off, asking them whether they meant to make him a King of bare walls: *Herod* had used all the meanes he could to make that stiffe-necked people accept him for their King; hee besieged them in three Sabbaticall years, when they could receive no fruites of the earth for their releife; he married with *Mariamne* the daughter of *Alexander Antigonus* his brother, he professed the Jewish Religion, he promised them all the happinesse they could desire under any King; but all this could not move them: so at last hee obtained by force which hee could not by intreaty that kingdome, which at first after the captivity was ruled by *Zorobabel*, *Nehemiás*, and other Princes, after them by Priests, and the 70 Elders, and at last by the *Assamoneans* 126 yeares.

*Antony* by the persuasions and bribes of *Herod*, first crucified *Antigonus* and then beheaded him; and because he knew there would be small security for him, so long as any were left alive, that might claime title to the Kingdome, hee invited *Hyrcanus* home from *Babylon*, *Herod* made great shew of love to him, in proffering a share of the Government, in calling him Father, and using him with all civility, till he had set himselfe fast in the saddle, and then destroyes him; he highly esteemed *Pollio* the Pharisee, and *Samias* his Disciple, two prime men of the councill; because they counsell'd the Jewes to submit to *Herod*, hee bestowes upon *Hannamelus* the Pontificat, but upon the intreatie of *Alexandra*, (whom notwithstanding he still suspected and persecuted) he took it from him, and conferred it on *Aristobulus Mariannes* brother; but being jealous of him also, in the second year of his Pontificat he drowned him, for whilest hee was swim-

swimming, *Herod* caused two that were swimming with him, as it were in sport, to hold his head under the water, till he was stifled; of this *Alexandra* complained, and so did *Cleopatra* who desired a part of the kingdome of *Judea*, but *Herod* with his bribes pacified *Antony*, and frustrated *Cleopatra*, whom he would have killed, had hee not been dissuaded by his friends.

*M. Antony* having wholly devoted himselfe to *Cleopatra*, and to all licentiousnesse, and puffed up with pride, wealth, and flattery, begins to despise *Octavius*, he puts away *Octavia* his sister, he refuseth to part with his triumvirat though the time was expired; hee calls himselfe Father *Liber*, he desires that *Egypt* and all the Provinces even to *Euphrates* may be conferred on his two sonnes by *Cleopatra*. *Cesar* understanding of this after his returning into the City, upon the conquest of *Dalmatia*, and *Pannonia*, perswades the people to make war against *Antony* and *Cleopatra*, which was easily assented to; therefore he was made Consul the third time, his Colleague was *Messala Corvinus*. *Antony* having subdued *Artabanes* King of *Armenia*, and having forced him to deliver up his treasure, which was very great, was now full of money, yet *Cesar* exceeded him in number of Ships, of good Commanders and souldiers. *Plancus*, *Dolabella* and *Domitius* revolted to *Cesar*. *M. Agrippa* in the fight of *Antonius* Fleet took *Leucas* a town in *Leucadia*, *Patra* a City in *Achaja* (famous for the Martyrdome of *St. Andrew*) and *Corinth* also. The two Fleets fought at *Actium* a promontorie in *Epirus*, where *Augustus* after this built a town and called it *Nicopolis* from his victory, the fight lasted doubtfull two houres, at last *Cleopatra* takes her flight with 60 sail. *Antony* follows after; the souldiers seeing this, submitted to *Octavius*, who pardoned them. The same successe he had by land against *Antony* the next yeer. *Cesar* persued *Antony* and *Cleopatra* into *Alexandria*, the war is renewed, but *Antonius* Fleet revolting; his foot Forces being beaten, and at last all his horse defeated, he fled into the Palace, and run him selfe through with his own sword, and then fell into the armes of *Cleopatra*, whom he thought had been killed, and in her bosome breathed out his spirit: the Queen courted *Augustus* with presents, and thinking to gain his love, betrayed to him *Pelusium* near *Arabia Petrea*, but fearing that *Cesar* would carry her in triumph, seeing *Alexandria* and all was lost, shee poysoned her self by applying an Aspe to her Breast; thus ended the Civill War.

*Herod* in this meane time being incensed against the Arabians, for killing his Embassadors, raiseth a great Army, and in two battels utterly defeats them: then hearing of *Antonius* death and overthrow, he was much perplexed: fearing lest *Cesar* would unthron him, for assisting of *Antony*, therefore he resolves to repair to him; and to make his peace if possible; but doubting lest *Hyrcanus* might step into the throne in his absence, he puts him to death upon suspicion that he held secret intelligence with *Malichas* King of *Arabia*: whereas indeed he wrote him a letter upon the importunity of his daughter *Alexandra*, only that he would permit him being now 80 years old, to end his dayes quietly in his countrey, seeing he could not in his owne by reason of *Herods* jealousy over him: so *Herod* having secured all at home, repaires to *Cesar* at *Rhodes*, to whom submitting himselfe, and promising him the same measure of service and love he shewed to *Antony*, and presenting him with 800 talents, he was received into favour, and the kingdome confirmed on him.

*Cesar* returning into the City obtained 3 triumphs, the Illyrian, Naval, and Egyptian. *M. Lepidus* the Triumvir sonne for offering to raise a new warre is put to death; so all things in the Roman Empire being now composed, which now was the twentieth year after the Civill war of *Cesar* and *Pompey*, *Octavius* is honoured with the name of *Augustus*, and the month *Septilis* is name *August* from him, as *Quintilis* was called *July* from *Iulius*. *Dalmatia* which held out in rebellion 220 yeares, the Alpes inhabited by barbarous people, Spain which had been vexed with 200 yeares war, and all other places submitted to *Augustus*: the Parthians also sent back to him the Roman Ensignes, which were taken by *Orodes* from *Crasus*, and by *Phraates* from *Antonius*: the Temple

A. M.  
3946.

Temple of *Ianus* which had stood open 200 yeares, was now shut by *Augustus* being 36 yeares older, it was now shut a second time in his reign, after the subduing of the Cantabrians and Astures in Spain, and of the Salassians in Infubria, that part of Italy where Millan now stands, Egypt which had stood almost 300 yeares under the *Ptolemies* or *Lagide*, so called from *Lagus* father of the first *Ptolemy*, yielded her neck to the Roman yoke; this generall peace gave way for the birth of the prince of peace now at hand, who came in the fulnesse of time to destroy idolatry, which was now at the hight; for at Rome the Pantheon or Temple was built for all Gods. At Ephesus, Nicea, Nicomedia, & Pergamus. Temples were dedicated to *Iulius* and *Augustus*, at Ephesus, the city of Rome is made a goddesse, 10 and sacrifices offered to her; a theater was erected at Jerusalem, and the holy city polluted with the vanities and profanenesse of the Gentiles, as sword-playing and stage-playing. *Herod* upon suspicion murders his vertuous wife *Mariamne*, and his mother in law *Alexandra*, with the Sanhedrin of the 72 Senators, and sets up the golden eagle over the porch of the Temple.

*Augustus* took order for furnishing the city yearly with corn, from Egypt he sent honest and able Proconsuls into all the Provinces, he reformed the Senat, and reduced the number of Senators to 600. Hee gave order to the Priests to transcribe the genuine Bookes of the Sibyls, and to burne the supposititious: he overthrew the house of *Vedius Pollio*, for feeding his lampreys with mens flesh: 20 hee maintained a strong guard over himselfe, to prevent the mischievous plots of male-contentes, who desired to build themselves upon the ruines of the State, for so many conspiracies were intended against him, that he sometimes resolved to be-take himself to a private life. Yet of his guard he maintained but three cohorts within the city. He gave liberty to the Jews every where in Asia and Cyrene, to use their own religion. He was so grieved for the losse of *Varus* with his three legions in Germany, that sometimes he would beat his head against the wall, crying out O *Varus*, restore the Legions. He would not be called *Dominus*, or Lord by any.

*Herod* rebuilt Samaria and called it Sebaste from *Augustus*, he beautified *Turris Sytaonia* and called it *Cesaria*, he erected many Towers, and placed Garrisons in 30 them to keep the Jews from rebelling, he furnished the country with corn from Egypt, in time of famine, he marries the daughter of *Simon Boethus*, and bestowes on him the Priesthood; he builds a Temple to *Cesar* near Panea, by the springs of Jordan, and to keep the Jews from stirring at this Idolatry, he remits to them the third part of their tribute, and to make some shew of piety in the midst of his impieties, in the 18 year of his reign, he enlargeth the Temple with a magnificent building called the Court of the Gentiles, because they might enter thither, it was 100 cubits long, and 120 high with large porches, and marble pillars, the outward work was 8 yeares in building, a year and 5 months more were spent in the inward ornaments; it was finished the 28 year of his reign, 9 yeares before Christ 40 assumed the Temple of his body in the Virgins womb: he had 9 wives and many children; he murdered his two sons *Aristobulus* and *Alexander* being falsely accused by *Salome* his sister, and *Antipater* their brother by the fathers side, which *Antipater* was afterward also put to death by *Herod*: thus was he the butcher of *Hyrcanus* his father in law, of *Alexandra* his mother in law, of *Mariamne* his wife, and of his own 3 sons, so that as *Augustus* said, it had beene better to be *Herods* swine, then his son.

3969.

3971.

Whilest *Herod* is thus raging against his own bowels, our blessed Redeemer Jesus Christ is born of a pure Virgine; the report of whose birth did so trouble *Herod*, that he caused all the Bethlemitish children under two yeares old to be murdered, and before the expiration of the same year he died, being tortured so long with his rotten body, crawling with wormes before his death, that he would have killed himselfe, had he not been prevented by his friends, he dyed the 70 yeares of his age, and the 34 of his reign; having 5 dayes before murdered his wicked son *Antipater*, he left the kingdome to *Archelaus* and the Tetrarchie to *Herod Antipas*, but *Augustus* divided the kingdome into two parts, to *Archelaus* he gave one part, 50 to

to *Antipas* and *Philip* the other, *Archelaus* in the 10 yeares of his reign was accused before *Augustus* for his cruelty and tyranny, the Jews in a tumult demanded justice of those that had incensed *Herod* against *Judas* and *Mathias* two famous Lawyers; *Archelaus* sent a Tribune to suppress the tumult, whom they hurt with stones; whereupon he sent his army against them, who at their Paschall solemnity killed 3000 of them: 8000 Jews repair to Rome with a complaint against *Archelaus*, whom they accused for conferring the Pontificat upon unworthy men, and such as he pleased; therefore he is banished to Vienna about the twelfth year of Christ, his goods confiscated, and Judea annexed to the Province of Syria, this was 10 done the eleventh year of his reign.

*Agrippa* *Augustus* his son in law by the help of *Tiberius Nero*, and *Drusus Germanicus* brought under the Germans, Pannonians, Dalmatians, and Rhetians. *Agrippa* being dead, *Tiberius* is made fellow Tribune with *Augustus*, but being offended at the shining virtues of *Cajus* and *Lucius*, having asked leave of *Cesar*, went to Rhodes, where he remained 8 yeares: these two *Cajus* and *Lucius* were *Augustus* his nephews. *Drusus* & *Tiberius* were his sons in law. *Drusus* dyed in the 30 year of his life: *Tiberius* undertook his charge in Germany, which he made a stipendiary province. *Cajus* *Cesar* *Augustus* his nephew by *Livia* being wounded in Armenia, where he spent most of his time, returned in his old age to Italy, where he dyed 20 at Lycia or Limyra, his brother *Lucius* in his journey to Spain dyed at Massylia. *Tiberius* therefore with his brother *Agrippa* are adopted by *Augustus*: but *Agrippa* was afterward rejected, so in *Tiberius* alone remained the hope of succession, he subdued utterly the Dalmatians, Marcomans, Pannonians, and other barbarous nations: but *Quintilius Varus* being too secure was defeated by the Germans, under *Arminius* their Captain, which overthrow so troubled *Augustus*, that he appointed watch and ward over all the city, and out of sorrow suffered his hairs and beard to overgrow, yet this *Arminius* was quelled by *Tiberius*, who beyond the Rhene destroyed all with fire and sword.

*Augustus* sends his nephew *Germanicus* the son of *Drusus* into Germany, and appoints 30 *Tiberius* for Illyricum; but at Nola falling sick he recalls *Tiberius* now in his journey, with whom he had secret conference a long time. He desired his friends to give him a Plaudite, if he had acted his part well on the stage of Mortality, so having bid farewell to *Livia* his wife, who (as it's thought) poisoned him with figs, he departed the 76 year of his life, the 57 year of his Empire, & 44 yeares after the A- 3985. Egyptian war. He was a moderate wise, and fortunate Prince, he added to the Empire Egypt, Pannonia, Aquitania, Rhetia, the Vindelici neighbours of Rhetia, with the Sea ports of Pontus: he subdued the Germans, the Daci: he recovered Armenia from the Parthians; he was honoured with gifts from Scythia and Judia: he made Galatia a Province; he made Rome marble, which before was brick; he 40 erected a stately porch and Bibliothec in his Palatine house; he appointed watchmen, who all night went about, to keep the city from firing: he went into all the Provinces himself except Africa and Sardinia: he despised the title of Lord, and slighted all Libels cast out against him. He was mercifull to his enemies, for hee made *Cornelius* Consul, though he plotted to murder him. He loved *Mecenas* dearly, even when he called him *caruifex* or Butcher, and upon that word from him rose up, and would not pronounce the sentence of condemnation against some traitors. He was modest in apparell, wearing no other, but what his wife, sister, daughters and neeces made. He was temperate in his dyer, sparing in wine, and 50 tractate, he left a breviary of the whole Empire, a list of all the souldiers in pay, of the money in the treasury, and of the sums that were due. He erected an Altar in the Capitoll (to God the first begotten) sending to the Pythian oracle to know of his successour; he was answered, that an Hebrew child stopped his mouth, and commanded him to return again to hell. Whereupon the Gentile oracles ceased, darkness giving place to light. In the 42 year, or as others say in the 41 year of his reign Christ was born, *Quirinus*, or as the Evangelist saith, *Cyrenius* being Prefident of Syria, who was afterward sent to confiscate *Archelaus* his goods that reigned

A. M.

reigned in Judea, Idumea, and Samaria, as his brother *Herod Antipas* in Galilee and Peræa; their mother was *Marthæ* a Samaritan. *Philip* was Tetrarch of Trachonitis and Batanæa.

3982.

A. C. II.

The insurrection of the Jews against *Archelaus*, gave occasion to *Judas*, *Simon* and other ambitious spirits, under pretence of liberty to set up a King of their own, but they were quickly suppressed by *Quintilius Varus* who afterward was killed in Germany, he with three legions, and Arabians Auxiliaries appeased them, and crucified about 2000 of the rebels. Much about this time Christ being 12. yeares of age disputed with the Doctors in the Temple. *Judas* a Galilean because of the Roman taxes perswaded the Jews to deny the payement thereof, teaching that they were a free people, and that no mortall should call himself Prince or Lord. Hence began the Sect of the Zelotes, which maintained this doctrine with their lives, forcing men by the sword to embrace it, in maintaining of which they were so stiffe, that no torments could force them nor their children to recant.

## CHAP. X.

*The life and death of Tiberius and Sejanus, with their cruelties. 2. The baptism, life, and death, resurrection and ascension of Christ. 3. How the Gospell began to spread.*

3985.

A. C. 14.

**T**iberius the son of *Livia*, and son in law to *Augustus* married with *Julia* the daughter of *Augustus* whom afterward he starved with hunger: his former wife which he divorced was *Agrippina* daughter to that *Atticus*, to whom *Cicero* wrote his book of Epistles, he had 2 yeares before *Augustus* his death, adopted *Germanicus* his brother *Drusus* son, he concealed the death of *Augustus*, till he had made away with young *Agrippa* his onely nephew left, who might have hindered his succession: he made shew of unwillingnesse to accept the Empire, shewing truly yet dissemblingly, what a dangerous beast it was, but this was onely to sound the Senators affections towards him, that so he might ruine them; and indeed he caught many simple meaning men, with his bait of dissimulation, therefore not without cause did his Tutor perceiving his sanguinary disposition, whilst he was young call him *clay tempered with bloud*; and because of his intemperate drinking he was nick named *Caldius Biberius Mero*, for *Clandius Tiberius Nero*; and *Augustus* did foresee his nature, when he said, *the Romans should live miserably under such thin laws*; he was learned, but cruell and covetous, of a dissembling nature, frowning on those whom he loved, and fawning on those whom he hated: he was better at extemporary, then premeditated counsels. Out of his pretended modesty, he would not at first be called Emperor, nor *Pater Patriæ*, and because he knew that the armies would have had *Germanicus* to be Emperor, which he modestly refused, he submitted himself to the Senates election; he passed by injurious language, saying that in a free State tongues should be free. In all things he submitted himselfe to the Senate, and speaking against heavy taxes, he said: *that good shepherds use to shae, not to slay their sheep*. He was severe against adultery and robbery, and insurrections, and either suppressed or restrained the abuse of Sanctuaries.

A. C. 17.

3988.

At a certain Funerall one cryed out aloud, desiring the dead corps to tell *Augustus* that his legacies which he left to the people were not paid, by *Tiberius*, who presently apprehends the party, and having paid him his share commands him to be slain, and then to report the truth to his father *Augustus*. He reduced the kingdom of Cappadocia after the death of old *Archelaus* into the form of a Province. The fourth year of *Tiberius*, *Germanicus* triumphed over divers German nations, between the Rhene and Albis now called Elbe or Elve; *Drusus* *Cæsars* son is sent to Germany to be trained up in the wars, and to appease the Germans, now at civill wars amongst themselves. At this time 12 cities of Asia were overthrowen with earthquakes; of these he repaired Philadelphia, Magnesia, and Apollonia. *Germanicus*

*manicus* in the East endeavoured to re-enthron *Vonon* the Parthian, thrust out by *An. Mundi Artabanns*, but could not prevail. He made *Zeno* King *Polemons* son of *Pontus* Governour of Armenia, shortly after he is poisoned at Antioch by *Piso*, being secretly encouraged to commit this wickednesse by *Livia Augusta*. *Germanicus* was much lamented being a Prince, milde to his enemies, and courteous to his friends; but *Piso* murdered himself at Rome.

About the 21 year of Christ the image of *Iunus* fell down at Rome, *Tiberius* destroyed the spurious books of the Sibyls, he drove out of the city the wanton solemnities of the Egyptian Isis, as also the Jewish religion, because the wife of *Saturninus* had intercepted great sums of mony, conveyed to Jerusalem; the Jewes were some banished, some killed; he would not yeeld that *Arminius* the Roman enemy should be poisoned, shewing that the Romans used not to suppress their enemies by treachery, but by valour. Yet this *Arminius* was shortly after slaine, by the treachery of his friends. *Cæsar* now being rid of *Germanicus*, began openly to shew his truculent nature, he maintained *Valerius Gratus* President of Palestina in his covetousnesse; who had changed four High Priests in a short time, to wit, *Annas*, *Ismael*, *Eleazar*, and *Simon*, and had now set up *Caphas*, no lesse cruell then *Tiberius*.

*Alius Sejanus* heretofore the catamite of *Apicius* the glutton, who wrote a book of gluttony, and having found upon the casting up of his accompts but 100000 Sesteria left for his kitchen, hanged himself; I say this Catamite but now stale and out of date, is by *Tiberius* advanced to great honours, and power, purposely to circumvent and ruine all good men. He used to suborne false witnesses, to entrap honest men, and especially if they were wealthy; so that no good man could live in Rome at that time with any security: the Senat was brought into such a servile condition, that they durst not contradict or deny any thing, though never so unjust, that *Cæsar* or *Sejanus* would have done. *Drusus Tiberius* his only son is poisoned by *Sejanus* his means; because upon a quarrell between them, *Drusus* strook him on the Face, who never left till he had made *Livia* with whom *Sejanus* committed adultery, poison her husband, upon promises that he would marry her, and that she should have a share in the government: this murder was concealed 8. yeares together. *Sejanus* seeing this murder succeeds so well, resolves to make away with *Germanicus* sons, who were to succeed next into the Empire: he could not worke any thing upon *Agrippinas* chastity, therefore he goes about to accuse her and her 3 sons of treason: he also falsely accused and condemned *Silius* their friend, as if he intended to poison the Emperour; but he prevented his tortures by his voluntary death, and self-murder. *Dolabella* desired and deserved the honour of a triumph, for suppressing *Tasfaronas*, who by the help of the King of the Garamantes, committed great outrages in Africa; but *Sejanus* denied him this honour, and conferred it on *Iunius Blefus*, his uncle, who had not defeated and killed the enemy as *Dolabella* did: he countenanceth and rewardeth informers, he animates the son to accuse the father. *Q. Vibius Cereus* was falsely accused by his own son, that he meant to raise war in Gallia, and to destroy the Prince. *Cecilius Cornutus*, once Pretor, being also falsely accused of sending many to raise a rebellion, killed himself. *Cremutius Cordus* was accused for praysing *M. Brutus* in his *Annales* which he published, and for saying that *Cassius* was the last of the Romans, who after he had cleared him self, went out of the Senate and ended his life by abstinence. Order was given by the Senate that the Aediles should burn his books, which notwithstanding were preserved.

About this time *Poppæus Sabinus* subdued the High-land Thracians for refusing to muster their best souldiers for the service of the Romans. *Sejanus* petitioneth *Cæsar* that he might marry with *Livia*, which being denyed him, he perswadeth him to remove himself from the City tumults, and to solace himselfe with a private and quiet life in some pleasant place far from Rome. By this means he knew that his own power should be the greater; that no access could be had to the Emperour, nor no letters sent but by the souldiers, which were at his devotion: hee made shew of friendship to *Agrippina*, and told her that she should beware of eating

*An. Mundi* or drinking with her father in law, who meant to poyson her, but she not knowing how to dissemble, could not be perswaded at table, either to eat or drink; or be cheerful. *Tiberius* commending the goodnesse of the Apples that were set down before him, gave one of them to his daughter in law, which she would not taste, but delivered it to one of the waiters.

*Cæsar* pretending to dedicate a Temple to *Jupiter* at Capua, and another to *Augustus* at Nola, removed to Campania, purposely to be far from the City, that so the suspicion of his cruelties and oppression might be concealed, in respect of place, though not of deeds: that he might make his majesty more terrible by that great distance; and to avoid his mothers company, whom he had made his colleague in his government: therefore he shut him self up in the Isle of Caprea, where hee stayed not long, being recalled by the people thence, upon the fall of an Amphitheater at Eidenæ, where 5000 men were slain. He having shewed himselfe to the people, returned again to the Island, where he remained 11. years; in all which time there were no Prefidents of the Provinces, nor Tribunes of the souldiers changed. Spain and Syria were some years without Consular Legats, or Leivtenant Deputies, he suffered *Artabanus* the Parthian to possesse Armenia, the Dacians and Sarmatians to waite Mesia and the Germans to spoil Gallia, to the great dishonour and danger of the Empire.

The beginning of the year was polluted by the shamelesse murder of *Titius Sabinus* an honorable Gentleman, for his affection to *Germanicus*, and his family, he was entrapped by *Latiarius* and others to speake some words in commendation of *Germanicus*, the afflictions of whose family he bewayled; as also the misgovernment of *Sejanus*. Vpon this he is presently accused, condemned, and haled to *Tiberis* with his garment turned over his head, where he was drowned, though his dog in the water strove to keep his masters body from sinking, but in vain, this was done on the Calends of January: not long after died *Julia Augusta*, or *Livia Tiberius* his mother, who neither did visit her in her sicknesse, nor with his presence honour her funerall, on which he would suffer no cost to be bestowed as the Senat had intended, the being gone who held in the exorbitances of *Tiberius* and *Sejanus*, 30 now a gate is opened for all wickednesse and oppression. Men durst not visit or confer with their neighbours and friends, for fear of suspicion. *Agrippina* is accused of plotting with the Army, wherefore she is banished, her eye beat out by a Centurion, and at last famished to death. *Nero* and *Drusus* her sons are also accused as enemies, and both starved with hunger, *Nero* in Pontia an Island in the Tyrrhen Sea, and *Drusus* in the Palace.

3999. Whilest the world groanes under the tyranny of *Tiberius*, *Iohn Baptist* the son  
A. C. 28. of *Zacharias* the High Priest preacheth repentance to the Jewes, and baptizeth them, shewing that the Lambe of God was coming to take away the sinnes of the world, & who should baptize them with water and with the Holy Ghost. Then he 40  
4000. baptizeth Christ in Jordan, who being declared by the voice of God from heaven,  
A. C. 29. and by the sitting of the Holy Ghost upon him in the form of a dove, was carried into the wilderness to be tempted by Satan, whom having foiled he goeth to Galilee, and chooseth his Disciples, with whom he goeth to Cana, and there at a marriage turneth water into wine: thence to Jerusalem, and at the Feast of Easter purgeth the Temple of buyers and sellers: from thence he goeth again into Galilee, when he understood that *Iohn* was cast into prison by *Herod Antipas*, for reproving his incest with his brother *Philips* wife, taxing the ingratitude of his country, he goeth to Capernaum, where he heals a Rulers son, *Peters* mother in law, with many others, thence going about into other cities, he preacheth the Go- 50  
spell, and worketh miracles.

4002. The next year he went up to the Feast of Easter: then he cured him that lay at  
A. C. 31. the pool of Bethesda 38 years. He vindicates his Disciples from breaking the Sabbath. He sends abroad his Apostles to preach and cure diseases. He heals the Centurions servant, and restores the widows son at Naim to life: so he did the daughter of *Tairus*, he casteth out devils, and rebuketh the windes. In the mean time *Herod* at the intreaty of *Herodias*, beheadeth *Iohn Baptist*, for which cruelty he was justly punished

*An. Mundi* punished with the terrour of an evill conscience, thinking Christ had been then risen again from the dead, and with the losse of his Army, defeated by *Aretas* king of Arabia. Easter drawing neer Christ retires to the Desert, where he fed 5000 men, besides women and children, with five barly loaves and two fishes, having left twelve baskets full of cruims; upon this they would have made him king; shortly after he fed 4000 men with seven loaves. He foretels his Disciples of their persecutions and deaths. Then he transfigured himself on mount Thabor, and after that he informs his Apostles of the nature of his kingdome, and that they should not lord it over others, as worldly kings doe over their subjects.

10 About the end of his third year, Christ went up to Jerusalem to the Feast of Tabernacles; then he sendeth abroad 70 other Disciples to preach and work miracles: he sharply reproveth the corrupt manners of the Jews. Then he raiseth *Lazarus* being 4 days dead: Whereupon multitudes follow him riding to Jerusalem, 4004. with olive branches and palms in their hands: Then he whipt the buyers and sellers out of the Temple. *Carphas* and his father in law *Annas*, hired *Judas* to betray his Master; which he did for 30 peeces of silver, in the night time whilest Christ was at his devotion: who with his word made the souldiers that came, to apprehend him, fall back to the ground. Then being carried to the High Priest, he was accused by him, and the Elders of sedition; *Pilatus* would have absolved him, but durst not; fearing the displeasure of *Tiberius*, therefore he condemned him to be crucified, for saying he was a king. But the miracles at his death, and his glorious Resurrection the 3. day, his 40 days conversation with his Disciples, and his ascension to heaven, shew, that he was a king indeed; but not of this world. Therefore the better to advance his spirituall kingdome, eleven days after his ascension, on the day of Pentecost, he sends downe on his Apostles assenbled in an upper roome, the Holy Ghost in form of cloven fire tongues, so that they all began to speak divers languages, preaching Christ; so that at *Peters* first Sermon 3000. afterward 5000 were converted, the Priests and Elders storming at this, imprisoned and whipt the Apostles, and stoned *Steven*, but to no purpose: for the Go- 30 spell still increased, and *Saul* the great persecutor is converted, and becomes a fervent preacher; so in 7 years space was confirmed the covenant made to *Abraham* & 4005. his posterity: which now *Peter*, *Paul*, *Iohn*, *Philip*, and *Barnabas*, began to communicate to the Gentiles: and so according to *Daniels* Prophecy the 70 weeks are finished the dayly sacrifice ended, sin is abolished, and everlasting righteousness established.

At Rome such cruelties were exercised by *Sejanus*, that many brave men killed themselves: his flatterers sacrificed to him, as well as to *Tiberius*, and swore by his Genius. So great was his power, that *Tiberius* grew jealous of him, therefore he sent letters privately to the Senat, to imprison *Sejanus*, which was done accordingly, by *Regulus* the Consul, and *Laco* captain of the watch. His Images are broken 40 down and melted. He was flung down from the top of the Gemonian ladders, and his body dragged up and down the streets by the people 3 days together: his children were condemned to die. His daughter which was promised to *Claudius* his son, is first deflowered by the hangman, then strangled; for it was not lawfull to put a virgin to death. All his friends were either slain, or banished, or disgraced; and his body flung at last into Tiberis. After his death *Tiberius* was more cruell then before, by which it appeared that *Sejanus* was but the instrument of his cruelty. The Statue of liberty notwithstanding is erected in the Forum; a preface that Rome should be ere long freed from *Tiberius* his tyranny; who being desired by *Gallus Asinius* whom he had condemned to dy, that he would hasten his death he answered: 50 I am not yet friends with you.

The reasons that moved *Tiberius* to destroy his favorite were many. viz. dangerous words from *Sejanus* against the Prince: his causing of him to retire to Caprea: his great power: his marriage with *Livia Drusus* widow: his ruining of the house of *Germanicus*: his great train of servants: his desire to be Tribune; and for that he held *Drusus* prisoner, and *C. Cæsar* at his mercy: and yet *Tiberius* suspected and hated *Cajus*: at last he dyed, the 78 year of his age, having reigned 23. Some thinke he was poysoned by *Cajus*; others, that he was stifled by *Macro* Colonell of the

*An. Mundi.* Guards and *Cajus* his creature. Which *Tiberius* perceived when he told *Macro*, that he did well to look towards the Sun rising. *Tiberius* was a wicked Prince, hated and feared of his people; and so fearfull himselfe by reason of his guilty conscience, that he trembled still when it thundred; so that then usually he wore a bay garland, he was wont to call King *Præmus* happy, for surviving all his children. His body was carryed by the Souldiers to Rome, and there solemnly burned: The people cursing him, and wishing the *Mines* or Gods of the dead, not to admit his soule in the company of the just.

## CHAP. XI.

1. The life and death of Caligula, and of the Roman and Jewish affaires under him.
2. The life and death of Claudius, and of all the memorable accidents in Rome, Parthia, Iudea, and elsewhere under him.
3. Of Agrippa and Antipas.

4008.

**C**æsar Caligula so called from the buskin or shoe he wore in the campe, where he was born, was begot of *Germanicus* the son of *Drusus*, his mother was *Agrippina Augustus* his Neece; the daughter of *Agrippa*. His succession was joyfull to Rome, wearied with the insolencies of *Tiberius*; & because of the great love the City bore to *Germanicus* poisoned by *Piso*, whose death was much lamented by the Romans. His parents and brothers were murdered by *Tiberius*. It was said of *Caligula*, that he was a good servant, but a bad master; for he was very obsequious to *Tiberius*. At first he shewed some tokens of goodnesse by calling home the banished and condemned Citizens, and freely pardoning them. By giving full power to the Senat to determine all matters without appeal to him. He slighted the information of a plot intended against him; saying, he feared no plots, having never wronged any man hitherto. He banished *Antipas* to Liqns with his concubin *Herodias*, being accused of oppression by *Agrippa*.

4010.

But he was an enemy to Christ, in persecuting him in his members, whom *Tiberius* would have honoured as a God, when he desired the Senat to admit him among their Gods. *Cajus* also commanded his own image, with those of the heathen Gods to be erected in the Temple of Jerusalem. He persecuted the Jews, & rejected their Petition, and *Philo* their agent: he bestowed on *Herod Agrippa* golden fetters in lieu of his iron ones, because he wished the sudden death of *Tiberius* who imprisoned him, and the succession of *Caligula*; then made him king over *Philip* and *Lysinius* tetrarchy: he erects a temple to himself, and in it his own image, which he clothed dayly in the same habit he went in himself: he would make shew of conference with *Jupiter*, as if he had been his equall. He appointed Priests and solemn sacrifices for himself. He commanded *Petronius* President of Judæa to dedicate the Temple of Jerusalem to his deity: which upon the Jews importunity *Petronius* refused to doe; wherefore he is condemned to dye by *Cajus*. But before he heard of this sentence *Cajus* was slain. He threatened destruction to the Jews of *Alexandria* being accused by *Appion* the Grammarian; but *Philo* pleaded for their innocency, and comforted them with the assurance of Gods assistance when mans help is furthest off, which fell out to be true upon the death of this monster, who spared not his own brother *Tiberius*, whom he murders treacherously by a Tribune. He caused *M. Silanus* his father in law to cut his own throat: he deflowed his three sisters: he banished *Agrippina* and *Li villa*, he murdered *Macro* and his wife *Ennia*; Having condemned at one time some Gauls, and some Greeks, he bragged that he had subdued Gallogracia.

4011.

A. C. 40.

This tyrants whole pleasure was in shedding of blood, and tormenting of men with lingring deaths, commanding them so to be slain that they might feele themselves dye. His wish was, that all the Romans had but one neck that he might strike it off at one blow. Whole common phrase was, Let them hate me so they fear me. He complained that in his time there were no publick calamities, as fire, pestilence, famine, earthquakes. All kind of carnall pollution he exercised publicly in his palace.

lace. He spent above a 100 and 20000 Sestertia in one year idly; that being spent he raiseth intolerable taxes, and persecutes all rich men for their wealth & fills the city with bawdy houses for gain. He threatens Germany & Britanny with war: he made a bridge of ships over the Bay of *Baie* almost four miles long. He threatned Gallia with a war, but employed his souldiers to gather and fill their helmets with shells and pible stones, returning in triumph to Rome for plundering Neptune. He bragged that he turned Sea into Land, and day into night, when he built his bridge and beset it on both sides with torches in the dark. He intended to have murdered all his chief Senators and Knights, and then to remove to *Alexandria* or *Antium*; for in his closet were found two scroles containing the names of the chief Senators and Knights, the one he called the sword, the other, the dagger; he had also a great chest full of all sort of poysons, which being cast into the Sea poisoned the fish. But he was suddenly cut off himself by *Chærea Cassius*, and *Corn. Sabinus* Tribunes, who gave him 30 wounds, stabbed his wife *Cæsonia*, and beat out the braines of his young daughter. He lived 29 yeares, and reigned or raged rather 3 years and 10 A. C. 41. months.

In the mean while the Gospell spreads. *Paul* confuteth the Jews in their Synagogues: he is commanded the 3 year of his Apostleship to preach to the Gentiles; and so is carryed by *Barnabas* to Cilicia, & *Peter* is sent to *Cornelius* whom he converts with his whole family. But Satan bestirs himselfe to hinder the worke of Christ, and causeth the Dragon with 7 heads and 10 horns to oppose the woman. About this time *Pilat* being thrust out of his office by *Vitellius* the Governour of Judæa, murders himself. And *Caiphas* was forced to resign the Priesthood to *Jonathan* the son of *Annas*. *Antipas* and *Herodias* dyed miserably, and in want; he was banished for keeping correspondency with the Parthian, his Tetrarchy is given to *Agrippa* his accuser; so that now he hath Judæa, Samaria and Cæsarea subject to him.

So hatefull was the misgovernment of *Tiberius*, that the Senat met in the Capitol, to abolish the Cæsarean family, and to assert their former liberty. But the souldiers made *Claudius* the son of *Drusus* and Uncle to *Caligula* Emperor, as he was hiding of himself. For which favour he promised to each souldier 40 Sestertia, which may be about 350 crowns. He was but a simple and foolish man, otherwayes he had not escaped the cruelty of his Vncle *Tiberius*, nor the fury of his brothers son *Caligula*; and this benefit his folly afforded to the State; that he being of a timorous and flexible nature, suffered himself to be ruled by wife men. Who caused him for example sake put *Chærea*, (who was also called *Cassius*), to death. *Sabinus* the other Tribune killed himself. He repealed all the Acts of *Cajus*: he restored the Senat to their authority: he mitigated the rigour of some laws: he caused those slaves to be made free, who in their sickness were neglected or exposed by their Masters; and he took away the power of life and death which they had over the slaves: he punished the ingratitude of manwifed servants with the losse of their liberty. He was a lover of learning, and learned him selfe both in Greek and Latin histories: He was not such a monster as *Caligula*, who would have abolished *Homer* and *Virgil*. He confined the Roman bounds, Eastward with Euphrates, Northward with the Rhene, and Danubius, and Southward, with the Mauritians: He went in person, and subdued the Britains, and added the Orcaides to the Roman Empire.

*Agrippa* used all means to make the Jews faithfull to him, at Jerusalem he was a strict observer of the Jewish Religion: he removed first *Theophilus*, then *Simon* from the Priesthood, and conferred it upon *Matthias* the brother of *Jonathan*: he hung up in the Temple of Jerusalem the golden fetters sent him by *Cajus*. And to please the Jews he beheaded *James* the brother of *John*, and imprisoned *Peter*, intending to murder him at Easter; but an angel delivered him. The 3 yeares of *Claudius* at Antioch Christs followers were called Christians. *Agrippa* in the midst of his glory at Cæsarea, whilest the people in flattery called him God, was so struck with a loathsome disease, that in 5 days he died, being consumed with lice and vermin, the 44. year of Christ, to whom succeeded *Cuspius Fadus* in Judæa. For *Agrip-*



*An. Mundi.* pa's son was not yet fit for government. The famine foretold by *Agabus*, about this time was great, every where, but *Helena* queen of Adiabene a country in Assyria helped the Christians with money to buy corn: Then it was that *Theudas* a false Messias, raised 400 Jews against the Romans, but the tumult was quickly appeased, the rout routed, and he killed: Then *Matthæw* wrote his Gospel. *Paul* and *Barnabas* converted *Sergius Paulus* the Roman Pro-consul in Cyprus to the Faith. And struck *Elymas* the Sorcerer with blindness. Then was *Paul* caught into the third Heaven, and shortly after he with *Barnabas* preach the Gospel through all Asia. So doe *Judas* and *Sylvanus*.

At Rome *Claudius* is in danger of his life by the tumultuous people, for want of corn, so that he encouraged the Merchants, and provided ships for importation of provision. He repaired Ostia the port town to Rome, built by *Ancus Martins*. Hee made the great *Aqueducts* called from him *Aque Claudia*, furnishing the City with water, whose springs were 40 miles off. But he was unhappy in his wife *Messalina*, an insatiable beast, committing uncleanness without shame or moderation with people of both sexes: which occasioned *Claudius* to give himself also to unlawfull pleasures and lusts: and whilst he was at Ostia with his Concubines, she at Rome publicly married with *C. Silius*: for which cause hee put her to death: and withall abolished all strange religions in Italy, and suppressed the Druides, and advanced the ancient Aruspices.

In Parthia were great civill wars. *Gotharzes* intending to kill his brother *Artabannus* invaded the kingdome. The Parthians fearing his cruelty set up his other brother *Bardanes*, who having raised an army meant to march as soon as he had taken Seleucia, which he was then besieging: But in the mean while *Gotharzes* strengthened himselfe, and *Meherdates* King of Assyria did seise upon Armenia. But shortly after common danger made the brothers friends. *Bardanes* is hindred by *Vibius Marsus* Legat of Syria, from Armenia: he was afterward killed by his own followers, as he was hunting. *Gotharzes* for his riotousnesse is hated of the Parthians, who weary of his tyranny, send private petitions to *Claudius*, beseeching him to establish *Meherdates* the son of *Phraates*, in his Fathers dignity.

4018. Whereas the secular solemnities were wont to be acted but once in 100 years, A. C. 47. which is the age of a man; yet *Claudius* caused them to be proclaimed sixty eight, others say sixty three years after they had been acted by *Augustus*. About this time *Claudius* placeth a King over the Cherusci, a people in Germany, who was descended of *Aminius*, but bred in Italy. He sends *Corbulo* to suppress the rebelling Frisians. The *Fledui* in Gallia (now the seat of the Burgundians) had the privilege of Senators in Rome. The army being purged and mustered, which was called in Rome *condere Instrum*, and was performed every fift year, there were found at this time 69 hundred, and 44 thousand Citizens. *Messalina* being dead, 40 *Claudius* his free men ruled there; chiefly *Posidio* his Eunuch, *Polybins*, whom he set between the Consuls; *Pallas*, whom he honoured with Pretorian robes, and *Narcissus* his Secretary. When he complained of the poverty of his Exchequer, it was answered, that he should be rich enough, if his *Liberti* or Free-men would admit him into their company. These tyrannised over the people, and caused the old man to fall in love with his brothers daughter *Julia Agrippina*. *Pallas* the maker of this incestuous match having had the use of her body, caused *Claudius* to adopt her son by *Domitius Aenobarbus*; he was called *Nero*, & became both son and son in law to *Claudius*, to the overthrow of *Germanicus*, whom he begot of *Messalina*. This *Agrippina* sent a Colonie to that City of the *Vbii*, which from her was called *Colonia Agrippina*. Upon a second tumult of the people for want of corn, *Claudius* hardly escaped with his life. In his reign, saith *Pliny*, was seen the *Phoenix* in Egypt; but *Tacitus* will have it in the reign of *Tiberius*, which was the 34 year of Christ, shortly after his resurrection, who is the true Phoenix. But I have elsewhere proved that the Phoenix is no fabulous bird.

*Fado* being Governour of Judæa of a Jew became a Gentile, under his successer *Ventidius*, an impudent souldier, shewing his naked genitals in derision to the Jews

Exercit. in Gene.

Jews, raised such a sedition at the feast of unleavened beard, that in it 20000 Jews were slain. *Meherdates* hoping by the help of *Cajus Cassius* to obtain Parthia, and failing of that aid which was promised by the *Adiabeni* and *Edeffens*, fell into the hands of *Gotharzes*, who cut off his ears, after *Gotharzes* succeeded *Vonones* who lived obscurely; his son *Vologeses* succeeded. The Jews and Samaritans inveterate enemies, were animated by their Governours, *Cumanus* president of Judæa, and *Felix* of Samaria, to molest each other by inroades, which they did, sometimes spoiling and killing each other in ambushes, sometimes in open battell. But *Quadratus* the Governour of Syria set the Province at quietnesse, and revenged the death of the Roman souldiers, then being authorised by *Claudius* to punish the Procurators if guilty. He condemned *Cumanus*, but advanced *Felix* into the Tribunall among the Judges, though both were equally guilty. *Cumanus* is sent to Rome with *Ananias* the High Priest, and *Ananus* the Captain. *Claudius* the 12 year of his reign bestowed Iurea and Trachonitis on *Agrippa* the younger. *Felix* presuming on his brother *Pallas*'s greatnesse intised *Drusilla* from her husbands bed, and married her. *Aziri* king of *Emesa* was her husband.

About this time *Claudius* banisheth the Jews out of the City, for raising tumults 4020. against the Christians. With them *Aquila* and *Priscilla* of Jewes now made 20 Christians, are forced to fly to Corinth; where *Paul* met them, having preached in Macedonia to the Philippians and Thessalonians. At Athens *Paul* converted or at least confirmed *Dionysius* the Arcopagite, in the Faith by his doctrine and miracles: From thence he wrote to the Thessalonians, at Corinth he found *Silas* and *Timothy* returned from Macedonia, and being much opposed he preached the Gospel to the Greeks. In the 13. year of *Claudius* a Sow brought forth a Pig; having the sharpe talons of an hawke. Which portended *Nero* that shortly succeeded, for he was a rapacious tyrant, and the sonne of a Strumpet. *Agrippina* being affrighted at a speech let fall from *Claudius* in his drink, which was, that it was fatal for him to bear with his wives lewdnesse, and 30 then punish them, shee infused poyson into a Mushrome, in which he delighted much, and because he had then a loosenesse, which might hinder the operation of the poyson; he procured *Xenophon* the Physitian to thrust a feather down his throat dipt in strong poyson; pretending it would make him vomit: so he dyed in the 64 year of his age, having reigned 13 years and 9 moneths. Shee 4025. concealed his death, till *Nero* his son in law had strengthened himself in the A. C. 55. Empire.

In his time *Helena* Queen of Adiabene was converted: so was *Ezates* the King, and *Abbas* king of Edessa. *Philip* the Apostle was crucified at Hierapolis in Asia for preaching Christ, and then was stoned to death. *Simon Magus* was honoured with a Statue, and the title of *Holy God*. And yet the Mathematicians were driven out of the City, for their juggling tricks, and who a greater juggler then *Simon Magus* *Paul* escaped stoning at Lystra. *Peter* restores dead *Tabitha* to life. In the Aegean Sea there started up an Island of 30 Stades. *Claudius* caused the lake Fucinus now called *Lago do Marsoto* to be drawn dry, by the dayly toile of 30000 workmen, but to no purpose. In his time also departed the Virgin *Mary*, being 59 years old. *Peters* wife was martyred; and the Synod of the Apostles held the 16. year after Christs resurrection, and the 8. year of *Claudius* his reigne.

30

## CHAP. XII.

1. The wicked life and death of Nero.
2. The affairs of Germany, Britain, Parthia, and Armenia at that time.
3. The miserable condition of Judæa, Galilee, &c.

*Nero* the last and worst of all the *Cæsars* (for he outrun *Caligula* his Vncle in 4025. all kinde of wickednesse) began his reign the 55 year of Christ, he being A. C. 55. then

*An. Mundi.* then 17 years of age he commits the government of all things to his mother. He solemnised the Funerals of *Claudius*. He made great shew of a vertuous Prince for 5 years, promising he would be another *Augustus*. He either remitted or mitigated heavy taxes. When being desired to subscribe to the condemnation of one, who was to suffer, his answer was: *I wish I could not write.* *Burrhus* was his tutor for military affaires, *Seneca* for Philolophy and Oratory: In his childhood he learned all the liberall Arts. But his Mother kept him back from the study of Philolophy, affirming (but foolishly, and like her selfe) that it was repugnant to princely Government: and that *Seneca* might make his own Oratory the more admired by *Nero*, he hindred him from reading the ancient Orators; therefore he applied himself to painting, graving, singing, and versifying.

Under *Nero* Pontus was made a Province, he began to shake off his mother for reproving his doating upon *Acte* the freed woman. He removed *Pallas* her favorite, and match maker with *Claudius*, from all Government; and being jealous of *Britannicus* the true son of *Claudius*, who was now 14 years old, and of a towardly disposition, and whom *Agrippina* threatned to establish in the Empire, *Nero* by the help of *Locusta* a naughty woman, poysoned him, who falling down dead at the drinking thereof, made all at the table amazed: but *Nero*, as if he knew nothing, gave out that he was subject to the Falling sicknesse. But the same night he caused his body to be burned, and to be buried in *Campus Martius*; at which time there were such storms and showres, that the people took this for an evill preface: he rewarded *Locusta*. Then he went about in servill apparell, among the bawdy houses, where he received many a knock, which he bore patiently, because he would not discover himself. He allowed to *Valerius Massala*, and other decayed gentlemen yearly stipends. Wars between the Romans and the Parthians increased dayly, under *Domitius Corbulo* about Armenia, which had been conquered by *Lucullus* and *Pompey*, but now fallen off. At last *Tiridates* King thereof was by the help of *Antiochus Comagenus*, and *Pharasmenus* forced to yeeld to *Corbulo* after he had taken *Artaxata* the chiefe City, and evened it with the ground.

4033. A. C. 63. After this *Nero* being taken with the love of *Poppaea* first made her his Concubine (her husband *Salvius Otho* consenting to it) then he married her, having first murdered his own wife *Octavia* the daughter of *Claudius*. About this time the Frisian Embassadors at Rome, perceiving that in *Pompeys* Amphitheater the Embassadors of those Nations who were faithfull to Rome, sat among the Senators; they also sat down, saying that no nation was more faithfull to Rome then the German, which was taken well by the spectators. About the same time also the Hermunduri quarrelling with the Catti, both being German people about Salt pits, the Catti were overthrown. *Poppaea* often solicited *Nero* to make away his mother, as if she intended his death. Therefore he put her in a ship that could easily fall a sunder in the Sea; but having escaped that danger, he caused *Anicetus* his freed man to murder her. At which horrid act the Sunne suddenly was darkened, and at Rome a woman was brought to bed of a Snake, and *Nero* himself tortured with an evill conscience, and with the ghastly sights of his mothers ghost, persuing him with whips and firebrands, he gave himselfe after this to all uncleannesse, and cruelty: For he caused himself to be married in the manner and apparrell of a Virgin. Upon the sight of a Comet, he caused many of the Nobility to be murdered, saying, that Comets usually portend Mortality. He used to fish with golden nets, and to wash himself in pretious ointments. He used to sing to the harp, and to be still exercised in the race of chariots. But in the midst of his jollity, whilst *Paulinus* was taking in of Mona or Anglesey, the Britains invade the Roman Colony at Camalodunum or Maldon in Essex, where 70000 Romans and their associates were killed, but *Paulinus* returning with an army of 10000 killed 80000 Britains. His successour *Turpilianus* lived idly without acting any thing.

At Rome 400 slaves are killed, because *Pedianus* the town Praefect was murdered by a slave. *Burrhus* is poysoned by *Nero*, by which *Seneca's* power was much

*An. Mundi.* much weakened. *Pallas* also is poysoned; *Octavia's* head is brought into the city by *Anicetus* who killed *Agrippina*, and great solemnity is used in the Temples; the base and degenerated Senat in the interim applauding and flattering *Nero* in all his actions. *Cassinius Pater* who basely yeilded Armenia to *Vol-geses* the Parthian, was pardoned by *Nero*. But *Corbulo* forced *Tiridates* to lay down his regal diadem at the feet of *Nero's* image, and to receive it from *Cassius* hand. *Nero* also was the first that persecuted the Christians openly in the 10 year of his reign. *Paul* is accused by the Jews before the Deputy of *Achaja*, and is by him absolved. From thence he went to Ephesus, then to Jerusalem, and then at Antioch he told *Peter*, that none should be compelled to Judaism who had submitted themselves to Christ: having confirmed the Disciples through Galatia and Phrygia, he returneth to Ephesus where he layeth his hands on the 12 men whom *Apollis* had baptized; and they spake with fiery tongues. Then he disputed in the school of *Tyrannus*; and by handkerchers and aprons he wrought miracles confirming the Gospell in Asia. So that the books of Exorcists were burned, and the worship of *Diana* at Ephesus overthowne; at which *Demetrius* the Silver-smith stormed, and raised a tumult, out of which *Paul* escaped, and went to Macedonia, leaving there *Timothy*, to whom he wrote an Epistle, and another to *Titus* Bishop of Crete. After this he wrote to the Corinthians from Philippi, 4024: he thought to have returned to Ephesus, but being in danger of the Jews, goeth again to Macedonia. Thence by *Titus* and *Luke* he writes again to the Corinthians, and from thence to the Romans. In his journey at Troas he restores *Eutychus* to life, then at Jerusalem he was set upon by the Jews, but was rescued by *Claudius Lysias*: and comforted by Christ himselfe. Hee pleads before *Claudius*, *Felix* and *Drusilla*. But *Felix* is afrighted at the last judgement; being guilty of the murder of *Jonathan* the High Priest; and of his own incontinent life.

*Felix* having set up *Ismael* a tyrant in *Jonathan's* Pontificall chair, and having delivered over *Paul* bound to his successour *Portius Festus*, to please the Jews whom he had offended; he is called home to Rome, where he had justly suffered for his misgovernment, but that his brother *Pallas* by his greatnesse protected him. *Festus* sends *Paul* to Rome, as himself desired, whither he arrived the next year after his shipwrack, and is committed to the charge of *Afranius Burrhus*. He lived two years in his own house with his keeper: in which time he converted some Jews. From thence he wrote to the Galatians and Ephesians. He sends abroad divers Disciples, calls *Timothy* and *Mark* out of Asia: He wrote to the Philippians by *Epaphroditus*, to the Colossians, and to *Philemon* by *Tychicus*, shewing that he hoped to be set free by *Nero*, who troubled not himself with any religion, but with that of the goddess *Syria*. By *Timothy* also *Paul* wrote to the Hebrews: being delivered out of the mouth of the Lion, and dismissed after two years confinement by *Nero*. He goeth to Asia with *Luke*, who then wrote the Acts of the Apostles: he taught also in Macedonia, Italy, Spain, and other places. *Peter* was at this time in Rome, who came thither the second year of *Claudius*. Here he wrote his two Epistles. *Paul* returns again to Rome, and is beheaded by *Nero*. He had familiarity with *Seneca*. *Peter* with his prayers overcame *Simon Magnus*, who offering to fly in the air by his Magick, fell down and broke his neck. *Peter* is crucified, and many Christians killed upon suspicion that they had set the City on fire, which was done by *Nero* himself. Who whilst the City was on flames sung the *Iliades* of Troy. Many Christians were covered with wild Beasts skins, and cast to dogs to be torn by them; some were burned; *Lucan* the Poet, 4036: and *Seneca* the Philosopher were slain with many other worthy and innocent men, as if they had been conscious of *Piso's* conspiracy. *Petronius Arbitr* was killed also. This tyrant banished *Rufus* *Musonius* the Philosopher with many other brave men; and killed his own wife *Poppaea* being great with child, with a kick of his foot. There did die also in one Autumn 30000 of the Plague.

After this he crowned *Tiridates*, and killed *Corbulo* that conquered him; he went to Greece where he acted the Stage-player, and then attempted to cut the *Isthmus*



*An. Mundi* Isthmus of Peloponnesus. So having wasted the treasure, he falls to exactions and rapine, permitting no rich man to enjoy his own. He spoiled all trading: hee destroyed all his kindred; but the world being weary of 14 years slavery under such a monster, began to cast off the yoke. Wherefore the Gauls under *Julius Vindex*, and Spain under *Galba* revolted: the news of which being brought to him at Naples, he swooned. He had heard of *Vindex* his revolt the same day he killed his mother. But when he heard that the other armies were fallen off, that *Galba* was marching against him, that he was proclaimed Traitor by the Senat, that he was condemned to have his head set in a fork, and whipt to death; about midnight he stole out of the city, with *Sporus* his Eunuch (to whom he married himself, after the death of *Poppaea*) and a few more, hee being also afrighted with an earthquake, and the gasty apparitions of those he murdered, cries out, *have 10*  
*4039.* *I neither friend nor foe left* and so falls on his sword, and *Epaphroditus* dispatcheth him the 33 year of his life and the 9 month; the 13 year of his reign and 8 month.  
*A. C. 69.*

In Judea *Ananias* the son of *Annas* the High Priest put to death with many others, *James* the son of *Alpheus* and brother of our Lord, after he had been Bishop of Jerusalem 30 years. *Ananias* being deposed for his lewdness, *Agrippa* sets up *Iesus* the son of *Damnus*, and shortly after another *Iesus* sonne of *Gamaliel*, which caused civill quarrels. *Albinus* governed Judea a while tyrannically, to whom succeeded *Gessius Florus*, as great an oppressour as the former; who laughed at the Jews Petition which they preferred to *Gallus* Deputy of Syria, against him. *Florus* exasperated the Jews by his sacrilege, and they him by railing and upbraiding speeches, denying to deliver up the chief authors as was demanded; wherefore the souldiers plundered the city and killed divers. The Jewes finding no redresse of their oppressions, about the 12 year of *Nero*, fell upon the castle *Massada*, and killed all the Romans in it. *Eleazer* Nephew of *Anna* the High Priest who mocked Christ, perswaded the Priests not to sacrifice any more for *Cesar*. *Agrippa's* garrison of horse is driven out of the city, and the Roman Garrison contrary to faith and promise murdered. *Ananias* the Priest, with divers others are killed for 30  
 4038. perswading them to moderation. Upon the sabbath day 20000 Jews are slain at *Cesarea*. At *Alexandria* 50000 Jews were destroyed; the Greeks and the Syrians that dwelt among the Jews went to wrack. Thus began the war that utterly ruined the Jewish nation, prefigured some yeers before by the Sword comet hanging over the city a whole year, by a sudden light that shined in the Temple for half an hower at Easter, by the brazen east gate of the Temple, which flew open of it self, and a voice was heard, saying: *Depart hence*. Armed men were seen in the air. One *Iesus* the son of *Ananus* for divers years cried out *woe to Jerusalem*, and with this woe in his mouth he dyed.  
 4033.

*Gallus* Governour of Syria, came afore Jerusalem with an Army, but was repulsed with the losse of 5000 foot, and 1000 horse. The Jews encouraged with this success, leavy new Forces, choose new Commanders, and commit the care of both Galilees to *Ananus* the Priest, and *Iosephus* the son of *Matthias*. But the Christians got out of Judea by times, fearing the sudden ruine of that countrey. *Vespasian* famous for his success in Britanny and Germany, is sent by *Nero* into Syria. His son *Titus* was his Legat or Deputy. *Sepphoris* the chiefe city of Galilee, opened their gates to *Vespasian*: there quickly he got an army of 60000 out of Egypt, Syria, and the neighbouring places. *Iosephus* Forces being too weak to make resistance, *Gadara* is taken, then *Japha* where 15000 Galileans are slain, the Samaritans on Mount *Garizim* are defeated by *Sextus Cerealis*, where they 50  
 lost 11000 and 600. *Jotapata* after a long siege under *Iosephus*, was taken by *Vespasian* with the losse of 40000 Jews the 13 year of *Nero*. *Iosephus* yeelds himself to *Vespasian*, and is by him kindly used. *Ioppe*, *Tiberias*, *Tarichea* are taken. So great was the slaughter of Galileans, that the whole Lake of *Gennasereth* was infected with the dead bodies. Above 30000 were sold, 6000 are sent to *Nero*, to dig the Isthmus. *Titus* his horse was slain under him, but having backt another, he killed his enemy.

Galilee being subdued *Vespasian* intends to fall upon Judea, but resolves to defer

for the siege of Jerusalem, because he understood by some fugitives, that they were like to destroy one another within the city, which now was the nest of all unclean birds, and the sink of theeves and rogues, which had no fear of God before them. The rich went to wrack, the High Priest *Ananus* was thrust out, and one *Phanneas* an ignorant clown put in his place. The people are incensed against the Zelotes, who seemed to be most eager for their law. Now the Temple is become a den of theeves, and receptacle of all the seditious rout. The Zelotes are besieged, who in the night let in 20000 Idumeans, they fall to skirmishing so fiercely that 8000 were found dead the next morning. *Ananus* the High Priest, and 10 most of the prime citizens are killed, besides 12000 of the meanner sort. *Vespasian* in the mean time subdues *Peræa* driving the Inhabitants before him to Jordan. Whom *Placidus* the Tribune destroyed. 15000 were slain by the sword, besides unknown multitudes which were drowned in Jordan, and in the dead Sea. But as *Vespasian* was preparing to set downe before Jerusalem, newes are brought of *Nero's* death, which somewhat retarded the war.

## CHAP. XIII.

- 20 1. The affairs of Rome under Galba, Otho, Vitellius, Vespasian, Titus and Domitian. 2. The utter destruction of Jerusalem, and slavery imposed on the obstinate Jews. 3. Some passages of Parthia, Armenia, and other parts.

*Sergius Galba* in Spain was chosen Emperor by the souldiers, and confirmed by the Senat. He had been Commander over the German and Spanish Forces, but 4038. so severe, that when he came into the campe, they used to say: *Souldiers learn to fight, this is Galba, not Getulicus*. He was infamous for sodomy, gluttony and covetousnesse. When the souldiers demanded of him a donative, he answered that, *Hee used to choose, not to buy souldiers*. Which speech was very distastfull, for the 30 souldiers used to receive from their Generalls donatives or military rewards, which was either *Adorea* a measure of corn, or a chain, or a bracelet, or horse-trappings, or *hastia pura*, a spear without an iron point; or else garlands. Therefore as *Galba* was never too well loved by the souldiers, so now hee is extreemly hated; and so much the more, because he was now altogether ruled by *Cornelius Laco*, *Ti. Vinus*, and *Icelus*, all three infamous; the first for pride, the second for covetousnesse, and the third for sluggishnesse. These three in scorn were called *Galba's* pedagogues or tutors. He was slain by the souldiers in the Forum, as hee came to appease the tumult of *Otho's* Legions, who would have him to be Emperor. His head was cut off by a private souldier, and carried about on a pole, 40 that *Otho* might see it; but he desired rather to see the head of *Licinius Piso* whom *Galba* had adopted, and thought to have made him his successor in the Empire. This head also was brought to *Otho*; and *Galba's* three tutors were killed. Thus ended *Galba* being 73 years old, and having reigned 7 months: the Senat would have erected a statue for him, but *Vespasian* hindered it, because he had heard that *Galba* had employed some souldiers to murder him in Judea. *Otho* succeeded, but reigned not above three months, he perceiving that *Galba* preferred *Piso* to him; partly by bribes, partly by fair words, induced the souldiers being angry with *Galba*, to murder him, and then to confer the Empire on himself. But shortly after hearing that *Vitellius* was made Emperor in Germany by 50 his souldiers: he resolved to end the controversie in a battell. Three battels were fought, in which *Otho* had the better: But in the fourth he was defeated, and then out of impatience, he slew himself, the 38 year of his age, to the great grief of the people, who had great hopes of his good government. He was so well beloved of his souldiers, that divers of them, looking on his dead body killed themselves in his younger years (its thought) he was *Nero's* Caramit, & rival for *Poppaea*. *Aulus Vitellius* returning victor to Rome, was saluted Emperor by the Senat. In his younger dayes *Tiberius* made use of him for his body, *Cajus* for his skill in charioting

*An. Mundi* charrioting, *Claudius* and *Nero* for his cunning in dicing. He was so poor, when he was sent to *Galba* to Germany, that he was fain to let out his house and to shut up his wife and children in a hired chamber: he was so kinde to the souldiers, that they chose him Emperour, but when he was viewing the dead bodies in the camp where *Otho's* army was defeated, he let fall an unfavoury word more unpleasing to the ear, then the dead carcasses were to the eye: *A slain enemy smells well, but a citiZEN better*. He made himself perpetuall Consul: he was a notorious glutton. His brother *Vitellius* bestowed a supper on him, at which besides other cheer there were 7000 birds and 2000 fishes. He barborously murdered *Sabinus Vespasian's* brother, with all the Flavians in the Temple of the Capitoll, by setting it on fire to whilest they were in it; wherefore the Syrian, and Pannonian, and Mælian souldiers fel off from him to *Vespasian*. As the Spanish had done before to *Galba*, the Prætorian to *Otho*, and the German to *Vitellius*, who had used all meanes possible to keep the souldiers fast to him, but in vain; wherefore seeing himself circumvented by his enemies, and forsaken by his friends, he hid himself, in the palace, but being drawn out thence, was carried about naked, with his hands bound behinde him, and with the point of a sword his chin held up, that all might see his impudent face, which the people defaced with dung and dirt, and so is dragged to the Gemonian ladders, and there is beat to death with innumerable blowes. Having lived 57 years, and reigned 8 moneths, he with his son and brother are drowned in Tiber.

4040.

In this civill war Cremona was burnt and sackt after it had stood 286 years, no thing was left untouched, but the Temple of Mephitis or goddesse of stink, which stood without the wall. In the city were killed 30000. In Iudæa fire and sword raged every where, chiefly at Ierusalem. One *Johannes* sonne of *Livius*, and one *Simon*, two seditious ring-leaders filled the Temple with bloud and dead bodies. *Vespasian* understanding the good successe his Army had in Italy against the Vitellians, made hast homeward, and leaves his son *Titus*, with some choice Regiments to subdue Ierusalem; almost subdued by intestine wars.

30.

The short but furious storm of civill war being overblown, there succeeds a sudden serenity under *Flavius Vespasianus*, who had been Deputy in Germany under *Claudius*: and had fought 30 battels with the Britains. One time being in *Nero's* company he was like to have been killed by him, because he gave no better ear to his musick whilest he was singing: as he was concealing of himself from *Nero's* fury, the government of Iudæa, with an army is conferred on him. Whilest *Otho* and *Vitellius* were tearing the Roman State in peeces, he was encouraged by his friends to undertake the Empire, which he refused, till *Tiberius Alexander* president of Egypt, had revolted to him with his Legions, whose example others followed: and so at last being perswaded by *Mucianus* promising him the aid of his Army, he resolved to venture: the armies of Egypt, Iudæa, Syria, swear allegiance to him. *Sohemus*, *Antiochus*, *Agrippa*, all powerfull Princes and Commanders; *Queen Berenice* also with all the Provinces of Asia and Achaia proffer their assistance; besides he is animated by the priests, Aruspices, and divers prodigies, chiefly of a cypresse tree which fell down, and the next day rose up again of it self in his ground, more green and fragrant then before. *Antonius primus* also a stout Commander under *Galba*, having the command of the 7. Legion, submits to *Vespasian*, with many other Legions. *Julius Sabinus* who had named himself *Cæsar*, lay hid 9 years together under ground in a cave with his wife, by whom he had two sons, this vain man with an army of male-contents, set upon the Sequanians, and is beat by them; in his flight he set the village on fire, where he hid him self a while, so that it was thought he had burnt himself, till now that he was found, and put to death for his folly.

4401.

Ierusalem in the mean time is torn with three factions, to wit, of *Simons* and *Johns* who had the wals and city, and of *Eleazars* in the Temple. Which *John* got possession of, by cutting off *Eleazars* Forces. *Titus* sat down before the wals; the besiegers made divers sallies, but were still beat back with losse: the famine within

within was great; for being the time of unleavened bread, multitudes of people had flocked thither. So great was the famine, that from the midst of Aprill to the first of July, there dyed within the wals above 700000: some were glad to eat their own excrements, some their own children. Many fled out of the city, of which number 2000 in one night had their bellies ript by the souldiers, thinking they had hid their gold there. At last the city being intrrenched round about was taken the 8. of August. And two dayes after the Temple (which *Titus* would have saved but could not) was burned with multitudes of people in it. In one porch there were burned 6000. there dyed in all 11 hundred 1000. Of Captives there were taken 97000 as *Josephus* who was present, witnesseth. *Titus* levelled all with the ground, except a few towers, which hee let stand to witnesse to posterity, the strength of that place. He burned and destroyed by wild beaasts 2500 captives.

*Titus* returning to Rome had the honour of a Triumph bestowed on his father and him in this triumph was carryed the golden table, & golden candlestick and the Law, which was laid up afterward in the palace. The two chief actors in the rebellion, *Simon* and *John*, were both beheaded in the Forum. *Cæcilius Bassus* took the two castles Herodion and Machærus, partly by storm, partly by surrender. He slew 3000 that fled into the woods: all the land of Iudæa was sold by *Cæsar*, except 20 Emaus, which was bestowed upon 800 souldiers for their habitation. The didrachma or 15  $\frac{1}{2}$ . of our money, which by the law was payable to the Temple by every Jew above 20 years old, is commanded to be brought every year into the Capitoll: the castle Massada which held out last, under Eleazer nephew of *Judas Galileus*, who had 1000 souldiers in it, was set on fire by *Flavius Sylva*; the garrison within being desperate killed one another, except some children, and two women that hid themselves. So likewise divers Jews having fled to Egypt, suffered all kind of tortures rather then they would acknowledge *Cæsar* for their Lord, who were notwithstanding slaves to their own wills and wickednesse. This obstinacy made *Vespasian* destroy the Jewish Temple at Heliopolis, which had stood 333 years, since it was built by *Onias*. The Jews of Cyrene being seduced by one *Jonathas* an impostor incurred the displeasure of *Cæcilius* the Governour, who slew 3000 of them; and accused as many more of rebellion both at Rome and Alexandria amongst whom was *Josephus* the historian, but this tyrant miserably died shortly after.

The Alani, a people originally Scythian, about this time breaking through the Caspian straights, which are narrow passages eight miles in length through rocks, but scarce the breadth of a cart. Fall upon Media and Armenia with fire and sword, so that *Tiridates* king of Armenia hardly escaped. *Vespasian* denied to aid the Parthians in this case, being they were not under the protection of Rome. King 40 *Vologeses* in his letter to *Vespasian* calls himselfe king of kings. Which vain title *Vespasian* reproves not, but returns it modestly to him in his answer. Now was *Achaja*, *Licia*, *Rhodus*, *Byzantium*, *Samos*, *Thracia*, *Cilicia*, *Comagene* made Provinces. In his time divers Cities were overthrown with earthquakes, which he re-tended not his death, but rather the Parthian Kings, who wore long hair.

*Vespasian* was a wise and moderate Prince. He set all things aright which were amisse. In his time the Temple of *Janus* is shut, which is now the sixt time, since the beginning of Rome. In 120 triumphs, never was it known that the Father and son triumphed in the same chariot till now. Neither since the beginning of the Empire, had any Emperour a son which succeeded him, till *Vespasian*. He passed by many wrongs, he never delighted in any mans death, but sometimes wept, when the sentence of death was pronounced. He loved learned men, and appointed yearly stipends out of the Exchequer for Rhetoricians of both languages. He placed many Garrisons in Cappadocia to keep out the incursions of barbarous nations: by day he suffered the gates of his Palace to stand open without any guard. He was not moved with the icoffs of *Demetrius Cynicus*, but slighted them, saying; I use not to kill barking dogs. Only he was taxed for using so many ways to raise money

F

money

*An. Mundi* money, which he excused, by shewing how the Treasures had been exhausted by the loosenesse of his predecessors: which made him sell pardons sometimes, and use his officers like sponges. When *Titus* reproved him for laying a tax upon urine, holding the money to his nose, he told him that the money did not smell, though the urine did. In his time *Linus* Bishop of Rome was martyred. He dyed of a flux, but would dye standing, as it became an Emperor, he was 69 years old.

4050.  
A. C. 80.  
V.C. 830.  
*Titus* called also *Vespasian*, the delight of mankind, from his goodness so named, was excellent both in literature and armes; in all vertues he exceeded his father. In his younger years he was riotously and wantonly given, spending much time idly with *Queen Berenice*, that many were afraid he would have proved another *Nero*; but on a sudden he so reformed himself and his Court, that he put away *Berenice*, and all about him that were lewdly affected. He never took any thing by oppression, and yet no Prince more munificent. He never suffered any Petitioner to depart without hope, saying: *No man ought to depart out of the Princes presence with a sad countenance*. He confirmed all favours granted by his superiors to any, by one Edict. Whereas the former Emperors gave new Patents for every particular favour, as if they had been the first doners. One night at supper calling to mind that he had not granted any favour that day, to any man, he cries out: *Alas friends we have lost a day*. He was so mild that not only did he pardon two prime men, that conspired against him, but at a publick shew he made them sit down by him, and calling for a sword, to try the edge of it, delivers it first to the one, then to the other, saying: *Powers are given by fate, and in vaine doe men attempt any great action, out of fear to lose, or hope to obtain*. When he understood that his brother *Domitian* intended treason against him, he told him weeping, that he needed not seek to obtain that by treachery, which he was to have of him willingly, and the rather because he had already made him his colleague in the Empire. He banished all informers; and relieved those that were oppressed, chiefly those of *Herculanum* and *Pompeii*, which two townes were overthrown with an Earthquake and the eruption of the hill *Vesuvius*, which in *Titus* his time flamed out 3 dayes and nights together. Where the older *Pliny* lost his life in venturing too nere to search the cause. The ashes of this burning darkened the Sun, and were carryed as far as *Rome*, *Africa*, *Syria*, and *Egypt*. *Titus* to the great grief of all good men dyed shortly after, the Provinces grieving as if they had lost a Father. It was thought that *Domitian* poysoned him, he lived 39 years, 5 months and 25 dayes.

4052.  
A.C. 82.

*Flavius Domitianus* making more hast then good speed to be Emperor, caused his brother to be stretched out for dead, before the breath was out of his body. In the beginning of his Government, he gave himself to catching and killing of gnats and flies, as if he had wanted employment: so that one asking if *Cesar* had any company with him, it was answered by *Vibius Crispus*, not so much as a flye. He repudiated his wife, and then received her again. There was in him a strange medly of vice and vertue, till at last his vices prevailed. He forbad the gelding of boys; he suppressed private stage-playes and Libels, punishing the Libellers. He thrust *Cacilius Rufinus* out of the Senat because he delighted in dancing. He suffered not whores to inherit: he punished informers, saying; that not to punish such, were to encourage them. He was at first liberall and abhorred baseness: he was so skillfull in arching, that he could shoot his arrowes between ones fingers stretched out, and not hurt them. He was carefull in repairing of decayed Libraries, and supplying of them with coppies from *Alexandria* and elsewhere. But he was of a cruell and fierce nature, given to lust also and wantonnesse, which he shewed in his younger years, whilest his father and brother were absent in *Judaea*, for then he used to commit adultery with noble mens wives.

Astrologers had foretold *Domitian*, that he should be murdered; which made him fierce, and suspicious of almost every man. He never loved any man but in shew, and his pride was such, that with *Caligula* he assumed the title of *Lord* and *God*. His hatred to the Jews, made him rage also against Christians, for under him was the second persecution, in which *John* the Evangelist was banished to the Isle

Pathmos.

*Pathmos* where he wrote his Revelation: understanding that one of the seed of *David* should be universall King, he caused all of that seed to be sought out and killed. He either banished, or disgraced, or murdered the prime men of the Senat. He slew his neerest kinsmen, upon pretence that they favoured Christianity. Under him *Clement*, lost his life; immediately followed thundering for 8 months, so often, that he cried out, *Let it now strike, whom it will*. The Capitoll with the tops of some other buildings, and his own chamber were thunder-struck. His treasury being exhausted, he gave himself to rapine and extortion. He intended once to have disbanded divers regiments and garrisons, to lessen his charges, but 10 fearing the incursion of barbarous nations, he changed his minde, resolving to maintain them with the spoil of his people. He so affrighted the Senators, that he got from them a great sum of money; for he invited them to a funerall supper, at which all the waiters and servants were so disguised with visard, that in their gawly looks they represented Hobgoblins and Ghosts; which so affrighted the Senators that they looked for present death. He committed incest with his brother *Titus* his daughter *Julia*. *L. Antonius* who had the charge of High Germany, being provoked by his wicked life, and some distastfull language, revolted; but *Domitian* having overthrown him by *Norbanus Appian*, and *L. Maximus*, grew more insolent and cruell then ever. It's thought that he poysoned that excellent man 20 *Julius Agricola*, father in law to *Tacitus* the historian; though he seemed to be sorry for his death. This *Agricola* subdued the Britains, and by his fleet was the first that discovered it to be an Island. He also subdued the Orcades: for which good services he was highly extolled by the people, and *Domitian* his false conquests, and reall triumph were cryed down; for though his armies were beat in *Mæsia*, *Dacia*, *Germany*, and *Pannonia*, yet he bragged that he had subdued his enemies, and hired divers multitudes, which gave out they were his captives, to the end he might obtain a triumph: this love of the people hastned *Agricola*'s death.

*Domitian* being hated of all men, was murdered by *Parthenius* his chamberlain, *Stephen* his Steward, and *Domitia* his wife, who loved *Paris* the Stage-player 4067 better then her husband: these hired some freed men, who with many wounds killed him. *Domitia* found in his closet a list of divers whom *Domitian* meant to murder, among which she found her own name; but before he was killed, *Nerva*'s friends had got his consent to accept of the Empire, lest the souldiers should mutiny: he reigned 15 years, and lived 45. The Senat ordered that his body should not be carryed in a bed or hearse, but in a common beer, and that his name should be every where razed. His death was foretold by *Proculus* in Germany: and the same houre that *Domitian* was killed at *Rome*, *Apollonius* (at *Ephesus*) got up on a high stone, and cried out, saying; *Well done Stephen, kill the murderer*. Not long before his death, a Crow upon the Capitoll spoke in Greek; all 40 shall be well. In *Domitian*'s time, the Picts out of *Scythia* settled themselves in Scotland. *Dionysius* the Arcopagite preached the Gospell to the Parisians. Then did the Ebionites or Pythagorian Christians, (commanding abstinence from all flesh, and confounding Law with Gospell,) begin to broach their heresies, as also the Nicolaitans urging community of wives. These *Tertullian* calls the Patriarchs of hereticks.



## The Second Book OF THE SECOND PART,

INTREATING  
Of the times from *NERVA* the ROMAN  
EMPEROR, till the Reign of *CONSTANTINE*  
alone, containing 233 Yeares.

### CHAP. I.

1. Of the Roman affaires under *Nerva*, *Trajan* and *Adrian*. 2. Of the affaires of  
Jews, and Christians during that time.

4067.  
A.C. 100.



*Coecus Nerva* a good but a short-lived Prince, whose justice was such in publick, that he was not afraid to spend his life in private: he repealed the unjust acts of *Domitian* calling home the exiled, and restoring every man to his own again. Some think he was born in *Narnia* a City of *Umbria*, some in *Crete*. 30 The first Emperor of a stranger. He was saluted Emperor both by the Senat and Army, yet was doubtfull to accept it, till he was assured by *Parthenius* that *Domitian* was dead. He melted all the golden and silver Images of *Domitian*, and converted them to money. He suffered no man to be accused or troubled for religion. In *Domitians* time it was lawfull for any man to accuse another, which made *Fronto* say, that it was ill living under that Prince where nothing was lawfull, but worse under him where all things were lawfull. By vertue of *Nerva's* edict. *John* the Evangelist returns to his Episcopall charge at *Ephesus*. Where he publisheth his Revelation and Gospell against *Cerintus* who denied Christs Divinity: and his three Epistles also, though 40 some have questioned the two last, but injuriously. In his Epistles, by the Antichrists that were come, he means *Simon Magus* and *Menander*, (being Samaritans and affectors of Divine honor) with the Nicolaitans, Cerinthians, and Ebionites. *Nerva* also took off many publick fines, he provided carefully for the poor, that there might be no beggers in Italy, he was so loath to burthen his people with taxes, that he would rather make use of his own revenews. Though *Calphurnius Crassus* for his treason in labouring to draw the armies from *Cesar* deserved death, yet he only banished him to *Tarentum*.

The souldiers (but against *Nerva's* will) killed *Petronius*, *Steven* and *Parthenius* the murderers of *Domitian*, they first cut off *Petronius* his genitals, and flung them 50 in his face, *Casperius Alianus* bought his own pardon for a great sum, and out of his insolency caused *Nerva* to thank the souldiers publicly, for killing the three traitors, perceiving how needfull a stout, and strong bodyed man was to rule; he neglecting his own kindred publicly adopted *Trajan* a Spaniard to be his heir and successour, preferring vertue to kindred or country: therefore *Trajan* is first made *Cesar*, then Emperor, with him he lived 3 months. He dyed of a Fever the 65 year of his life, having reigned one year and 4 moneths. His death was accom-

accompanied with an Eclipse of the Sun. *Cor. Tacitus* commended him in a Funeral oration.

*M. Vlpus Trajanus* being at *Colen* received the Ensignes of the Empire sent 4069 him from *Rome*. He was a man endowed with piety, wisdom, valour, and all other princely vertues; and a great lover of learned men. He delivered his sword to the Captain of the Guard, willing him to use it for him, if he did well, but against him if otherwise. He told the Senat one day that he had a command sent him from *Jupiter* to maintain the ancient religions of *Rome*, which were now weakened by the increasing of Christianity, for many of their Temples lay desolate, and few sacrifices were offered. Therefore now began a new persecution against Christians. *Simeon* the son of *Cleophas* our Saviours kinsman, and Bishop of *Jerusalem*, was there crucified being 120 years old. *Ignatius* Bishop of *Antioch*, at *Rome* 4079 was flung to the wild Beasts. *Clemens* Bishop of *Rome*, whom *Paul* mentions in his Epistle to the Philippians, was beheaded; though some think he suffered before this time. *Trajan* did not directly persecute the Christians for their Religion, but because they were accused for Magicians in that they wrought so many miracles. 2. Because they had their meetings and conventicles, against which severe laws were made. 3. Because they had so many jars and contentions amongst themselves, by which they might occasion commotions in the City; and indeed these jars 20 were caused by the heretiques. Yet *Pliny* the younger Proconsul then of *Bithynia* in his Epistle to *Trajan*, writes that he found no fault in Christians, but only that they met to sing hymnes to Christ before day, whom they worshipped for their God. And that they bound themselves by Sacraments not to steal, or commit adultery, or any such wickedness. Therefore *Trajan* wrote back, that such as were accused should be spared if they would worship the Roman Gods. By which the heat of persecution was abated. About this time dyed *John* the Apostle being nigh 100 years of age.

*Trajan* had 5 years war with *Decibalus* King of *Dacia*, which now is *Transylvania* and *Nalachia*. This war began in *Domitians* time, at last *Trajan* subdued 30 the *Daci*, but with great losse, for there wanted linnen to bind up the wounds of those that were hurt; so that *Trajan* was faine to tear his own robes. *Decibalus* being killed, the countrey beyond the *Rhene* was made a Province. In his time *Arabia Petraea* was taken. At *Rome* *Trajan* exhibited sports or spectacles, wherein 10000 wild beasts were slain, and as many gladiators did fight. He made war upon *Armenia* and *Parthia*, because the *Armenian* held his crown of the *Parthians*, and not of him. He recovered *Armenia*, and killed *Pharnaces* their King. Divers kings did homage to him. He subdued a great part of *Persia*, with *Babylon*, *Seleucia*, *Edessa* and *Ctesiphon*. He made *Affyria*, *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia* Provinces. He built a Fleet in the red Sea, to goe for *Judæa*; therefore 40 the Senat gave him the title of *Optimus*: and appointed him as many triumphs as he pleased: but *Trajan* was punished at *Antioch* with an Earthquake, for murdering of *Ignatius* bishop thereof, multitudes of people were destroyed there. The city being then full, because of the Emperors abode there. *Trajan* having escaped out of a window, was so affrighted, that for a great while, he durst not lye with- in doores.

The next spring *Trajan* renews the *Parthian* war, and that he might encourage his souldiers, he went on foot before them. But as he was preparing for his voyage many places fell off from him; divers of his Garrisons destroyed. Against these rebels *Lucius Quietus*, and *Maximus*, are sent. *Maximus* is killed. *Lu-* 50 *cius* recovers *Nisibis* and *Edessa*. *Seleucia* is taken by his Deputies, and burned. He set a King over the *Parthians*. But as he was fighting against the *Agarens* his Army was forced to give off, being beaten with thunder, lightning, and whirlewindes. He was infested with swarms of flies, that he could not keep them off from his meat and drink. Shortly after this he fell sick, being poysoned, and dy- 4082 ed in *Cilicia* the 64 year of his age, having reigned 19 years 6 months and 15 days. After whose death, the *Parthians* returned to their own Government. He erected many stately buildings at *Rome*, setting his name every where, for which cause he was in scoffe called *Wall-flower*.

*An. Mundi* About the 18 year of *Trajan*, the Jews began again to rebell: in Cyrene they murther Greeks and Romans promiscuously: the like they did in Egypt and Alexandria. In Cyprus they slew about 240000. they cut many by the middle, and many they flung to wilde beasts, and such was their madnesse, that they eat mans flesh. But they were shortly after subdued by *Lucius* and *Turban*: and it was made death for a Jew to enter Cyprus. So barbarous were these Jews, that they girded themselves with the guts yet bleeding of those they slew, and clothed themselves with their skins. The ashes of *Trajan*'s body were translated from that town of Cilicia where he dyed, called *Silinus*, and from him *Trajanopolis*, and brought to Rome with great solemnity, where he was buried alone, being against the laws of the 12 Tables for any to be buried in the City. His ashes were buried under that magnificent pillar which he caused to be erected the 15 year of his reign, with his statue on the top thereof. This pillar is yet extant, and in stead of *Trajan* now stands *S. Peter* in brasse richly gilt, by *Sixtus Quintus* then bishop of Rome. *Trajan* after his death was deified, and called *Dacicus* from his victories over the Daci, which were engraven on his pillar. The Senat used to salute every Emperor newly made with these words: *Happier then Augustus, better then Trajan.*

4088. *P. Aelius Adrianus*, the son of *Adrian* the Senator, who was cousin german to *A.C. 118.* *Trajan*, was by him adopted, or at least given out so by *Plotina Trajan's* wife, and was now Governour of Syria, who for his own worth and neernesse to *Trajan*, was saluted Emperor: that he might not be kept back from Rome, he quitted all beyond Euphrates, contenting himself with the ancient bounds of the Empire. He sent for *Julius Severus* out of Britain into Syria to chastise the turbulent Jews, whose Captain *Bencoshad*, that is, the son of the Star (alluding to that Prophecie, A Star shall arise out of Jacob) called himself the *Messias*, to make his power the greater. He held in Judæa for some years 50 castles, 980 Villages, and fortified the town Bethoron, whence he sallied out divers times upon the Romans. But *Adrian* returning into Syria besiged Bethoron 3 years and a half: at last took it by storm, and in it Captain *Bencoshad*, but indeed *Bencoba* the son of a *Lye*, as the deluded Jews now called him. The number of them that dyed by the plague, famine and sword, was 50000 men. This fellow was a pestilent enemy of the Christians, murdering them, where ever he found them. But *Hadrian* rebuilt Hierusalem, and called it *Elia* by his name, in which he permitted Christians to dwell, but not the Jews; yea he made it death for any Jew, either to goe neer it, or to look on it: only such as paid a great sum of money, were permitted to goe thither and bewaile it. The Temple of *Jupiter Capitolinus* was now built, where *Salomons* Temple stood. Therefore the town was now called *Ælia Capitolina*. The Jews also were forbid to circumcise themselves: all their strong Forts were oerthrown.

*Adrian* being confirmed in the Empire, he made away those whose greatnesse he suspected, chiefly *Celsus*, *Nigrinus*, *Palme*, and *Lucius*, being four eminent Consular men. Having quieted all in the East, returns to Rome, and remits many debts due to the Exchequer, and withall the sum of money which was used to be presented to the Victor called *aurum coronarium*, in lieu of the golden coronets, which of old they wont to give him. *Pamassoferis* whom *Trajan* had made king of Parthia was slighted by them, and so by *Hadrian* was made king of the next bordering countries. He was very courteous, affable, and familiar with his friends, chiefly when they were sick. He still kept the souldiers in exercise, ever in time of peace, and used to feed with them on cheese, lard, and *pusca*, which was a drink made of vinegar and water. In this he imitated *Scipio Æmilianus*, *Mesellus*, and *Trajan*. Being more desirous of peace then war, and finding the Britains still molested by the Scots and Picts, he built a wall 80 miles long, to keep them out. He killed his crabbed wife, for saying *shee had taken a course, that hee should never have any children to the destruction of mankind*. He killed also *Apolodorus* an Architect for finding fault with his errors in building. He was of a various yet cunning and dissembling nature. He seldome kept his promise. He

was

*An. Mundi* was still inquisitive of mens secrets, he was also lasciviously given, but quick witted, and ready at answers. He had skill almost in all Arts; and had a rare memory, and a strong body; for he used to goe about the Provinces on foot, and to outwalk his followers. He reduced all Manufactures into Companies or Corporations. He could not indure that any should professe an Art, wherein he was not exquisite, and therefore would hire some for money to give off their profession. He would goe bare headed in the coldest weather. He loved his horse *Boryphenes* so well, that he erected a monument for him, with an Epitaph. He was affable to the meanest. He was carefull of the poor, and would not suffer Masters either to kill, or sell their slaves to Fencers nor Panders. He advanced what he could the Romish superstition, but persecuted the Christian religion. Which *Aristides* the Philosopher, and *Quadratus* the Bishop, both Athenians, defended by their apologies: whereby his rigour was somewhat tempered. He had adopted *Aelius* whom he called *Cæsar* before he was Emperor, but he died; therefore he made *Aurelius Antoninus* his successor; called afterward *Pius* for rescuing divers Senators from the fury of *Adrian*, who killed *Servianus* his sisters husband, and his nephew *Fuscus* for finding fault with his adopting of *Antoninus*. When *Servianus* was to dye, he prayed that *Adrian* might wish for death, and not obtaine it, which fell out to be so, for he was tortured with a lingering disease, that he wished his friends to kill him, and offered divers times to kill himself, had he not been hindred; at last, he destroyed himself with abstinence; disputing and doubting whether his soul should goe; he tryed out against Physitians, saying, *Many Physitians had killed the King*: His bones were laid up in that great building erected by him, and called *Moles Adriani*; now the castle of *S. Angelo*. He lived 72 years, and reigned 21 and 11 months. *Similis* the captain of his guard, having got leave to spend the remainder of his life privately in the country, lived there 7 yeares, after he had resigned his place; and caused this Epitaph to be engraven on his tombe: *Here lyeth Similis who spent many yeares but lived on-ly seven.*

30 In *Adrians* time lived the heretick *Carpocrates*, author of the Adamites and Gnosticks, so called from their supposed knowledge above others. Under him also was *Enstachium* called *Placidus* before his baptism, martyred; he had done good service under *Vespasian* against the Jews, and under *Trajan* against the Daci. He was first cast to the Lions, but they spared him, at last he was burned in a hot brassen Bull. In his time was *Nicomedia* overthrown with an Earthquake, so were *Nicopolis*, *Nicaea*, and *Cæsarea*. He called the city *Uscuduma* in Mysia, from his owne name *Adrianopolis*. To vex the Jews he set over one of the gates of *Ælia* the picture of a Hog; a creature hated by them, and by which he would represent their hoggish qualities; then it was as some think that the candidates of the Empire, began to be called *Cæsars*; though some were called so before. And about this time *Aquila* of Pontus was converted to Christianity; but being reproved for spending too much time in Astrology: he circumcised himselfe, and became a Jew, and translated the Bible in Greeke, but corruptly.

## CHAP. II.

1. The Roman affairs under Antoninus Pius, Antoninus Philosophus, and Commodus. 2. The affairs of the Christians, and of forraign Nations at that time.

*Antoninus* was surnamed *Pius* by the Senat, for his acts of piety in building of Temples, advancing of Priests, honoring of learning, assigning large Salaries throughout the Provinces to Philosophers and Rhetoricians; in sparing and pardoning all criminals in the beginning of his reign, saying; that he ought not to begin his reign with blood; in preserving *Adrian* from killing of himselfe, and in maintaining the Empire in peace and plenty all his life. He was a just, mild and learned



*An. Mundi* learned Prince, who as he advanced men of parts, so he hated idle drones, and discountenanced needlesse Artifts by abridging them of their maintenance. He was indeed another *Numa Pompilius*: Only out of the common error of these times, he did not much favour the Christians: Yet he was content to tolerate them, being pacified by the apologies of *Justin Martyr* and others. He honoured the Senate, and they him. He would not give way that all the Acts of *Adrian* should be repealed: there was but one Senator in all his time banished, namely *Atilius Trajanus* who for affecting to be king was proscribed by the Senat. He forbad burying of the dead within cities. His abroad was most in the city, for the greater ease of Embassadors: he seldom made progresses, shewing how chargeable and troublesome the Prince's removal was to the country though his attendants were but few.

*Antoninus* his father *Aurelius* was a Transalpin Gaul. *Arrius Antoninus* his Grandfather by the mother had been twice Consul. He was comely in his personage, but more in his conditions. So great was his authority that the Indians, Bactrians, and Hircanians made him Judge of their differences. He appeared all sedition, not with cruelty but gravity: he quitted the Jewes, Britains, Moors, Daci and Germans. He placed a King over the Lazi a people in Scythia. He kept off by his bare letters the Parthian King from Armenia. In no Princes time was there lesse blood shed then in his, whose saying was the same with that of *Scipio's*: *I had rather save one subject, then kill 10000 enemies.* In times of dearth he relieved the poor out of his own store. When he came to see *Omulus* his house, he inquired whence he had his marble pillars. *Omulus* answered, that in another mans house he should be both deaf and dumb; with which answer he was well pleased. He rebuilt divers towns overthrown with Earthquakes.

In his time Pope *Sixtus* suffered Martyrdom, not by any edict from the Prince, but by the malice of the Senat against Christianity. Then sprung up *Valentinus* the heretick, with his spawn of Canites, Sethites, and Ophites, or Snake-worshippers. As also *Cerdon* and his scholar *Marcion* whom *Polycarpus* called the divels first begotten sonne: and *Apelles* who gave Christ a fideriall or aeriall body. Pope *Telephorus* with some others were martyred. So was his successor Pope *Higinus*. *Antoninus* dyed the 70 year of his life, and 23 of his Empire. In his time was seen in Arabia a mained Serpent, which eat up his own tail; 4 Lions so tame that they suffered themselves to bee taken; and barley grew upon some trees.

*Marcus Antoninus Philosophus* being adopted by *Pius* & approved by the Senat, succeeded Emperor, to whom he joins his brother *Lucius Verus* as his Colleague; so now two Emperors reign together. *Marcus* was every way an excellent Prince, both for armes, and learning; who used to frequent the Philosophy Schooles, after he was Emperor: but *Lucius* was given to delights and luxury; which *Marcus* by his goodnesse covered as much as he could; and lest his vices should be too much observed, living in Rome in the eye of the world; he got him to undertake the Parthian war against *Vologesus*, who had defeated the Roman Army, and molested Syria; but *Lucius* at Antioch and Daphne, gave him self over wholly to his pleasures, and committed the care of the war to his Deputies, among which *Avidius Cassius* defeated *Vologesus*, took *Selenia* upon Hydaspes with 400000 men, and burned the town: he took also *Ctesiphon*, and demolished *Vologesus* his houles.

The Parthian war being ended, and Armenia settled, *Lucius* after 5 years returns to Rome, where with his brother he was carryed in triumph. He brought from Parthia not only Mimicks, Stage-players, Fidlers, and Jugglers great store, but the Plague too; which at Babylon brake out of a golden chest: which a souldier took out of *Apollo's* Temple, when the chest was opened such a pestiferous vapour burst forth, as multitudes were infected by it. At Rome they died so fast, that the dead were carryed out by cart-loads. After this *Marcus* and *Lucius* goe against the Germans; who had all conspired against the Roman Empire; but when they came to Aquileja, Embassadors met them from all parts petitioning, that

that they might be pardoned for their defection. *Lucius* would have gone back, but *Marcus* would not, fearing that this repentance of the Barbarians was counterfeit, only to keep off the Roman Armies from their countreys: so having passed the Alpes, and fortified Italy, they quieted *Pannichia*. *Lucius* longing to be at Rome again returns, but in the way being taken with an Apoplexy speechlesse, dyed the third day, having reigned with *Marcus* 11 years, some think he was poisoned by *Faustina*, the wife of *Marcus*.

*Marcus* undertakes alone the war against the Marcomanni; or Moravians with their confederates, and because the plague had destroyed many, therefore as in the Punic war, so now use is made of slaves, gladiators, and robbers; and that he might not oppress the Provinces with taxes, he sold or pawned all the Jewels, plate, and rich urinfels of the Court, to make money, which he redeemed againe (when the war was ended) of those that were willing to part with their bargain. In two years he quite overthrew the Marcoman faction with the Jaziges or Transilvanians. He also miraculously overcame the Quadi; that is, the Suevians and Polonians. For the Roman army being like to perish for want of water in a dry and barren ground, by reason they were beset round about by the enimy, the captain of the Guard told the Prince that there was in the army a legion of Christians, who used to obtain any thing they asked of their God; immediately they were desired to pray, and no sooner had they prayed, but a great shower of rain refreshed the Roman army, and the Barbarians were overthrown with thundering and lightning, so that they who remained alive, did either yeeld or flye, after which victory the Christians were favoured by the Emperor, divers of them advanced, and their accusers punished. So that the fourth great persecution is now ended, partly by the constancy of *Polycarpus*, *Pius*, and *Anicetus*, and divers other martyrs, partly by the second apology of *Justin*, partly by plagues, famine, earthquakes, rebellion, and conspirations, and partly by this strange defeat of the Barbarians; at the prayers of the Christian Legion, which ever after was called The thundering Legion.

Whilst *Marcus* was making Provinces of Marcomannia and Sarmatia, *Avidius Cassius* giving out that *Marcus Antoninus* was dead, rebelled in the East, drawing all within Mount Taurus to his faction: Wherefore the Emperor makes an expedition into the East, the souldiers finding he was alive, fell upon *Cassius* and his son, and killed them both, his head was brought to *Antoninus*, but he no ways rejoycing at the sight, commanded it to be buried. He pardoned *Antioch*, and the other cities that adhered to him: he was highly beloved of all the East parts. Egypt did honour him for his Philosophy. His wife *Faustina* infamous for adultery, dyed suddenly neer the hill Taurus, whom the Emperor commended and concealed her faults, for by her means he got the Empire; therefore being wished by some to put her away for her adulteries, answered: *If I divorce my wife, I should restore her dowry.* At Athens he gave annuall stipends to professors of all sciences, at Rome he gave gowns to the souldiers, saying those cities flourished most where Philosophers were rulers, or rulers Philosophers. He was much addicted to Stoicall Philosophy, he was very moderate both in rewards and punishments. He was never without good Lawyers about him; he desired to hear what the people said of him, that he might amend what was amisse. He hated cruelty, therefore would not suffer the gladiators to fight with sharp swords. He thought it more reasonable that he should follow the advice of his friends being many, then that they should follow his being but one. He suffered not men and women to bath together; nor did he permit riding or coaching within cities, he was still present at their Parliaments, and never departed till the fathers gave him leave.

The Sarmatians, Marcomans and their neighbours rebelled again; so that *Marcus* was faine to be there in person. After three years war he subdued them, shortly after he fell sick, and dyed the 19 year of his Empire, of his life the 58: to the A.C. 181, great grief of all good men, a happy Emperor, had he been childlesse, for his son *Commodus* was a wicked Prince. When *Marcus* was asked to whom he would recommend his son, answered: if he be good to God and you. He was offended when



*An. Mundi* when his friends weeped for him in his sickness, wishing them rather to weep for the public calamities. In his time *Lucius* king of the Britains was converted to Christianity, by those whom Pope *Eleutherus* sent thither to preach. *Lucian* the great enemy of Christianity, was then torn by dogs. Then *Montanus* the heretic with his *Maximilla* and *Priscilla*, began to divulge their false prophecies, these were the authors of the Cataphrygian heretiques, which lived about Phrygia. *Montanus* called himself the Paraclet that was promised. *Tatianus* then liv'd; he was father of the Encratites, that is continent, for they abhorred marriage and wine, hence they are called *Aquarii* and *Hydro-parastatae*, with divers other heretiques. Then was Pope *Anicetus* martyred and *Soter* his successor, with many other Christians.

4151.  
A.C.181. *Commodus* succeeded, who by reason of his wicked conditions and his mothers looseness, was thought to be the sonne of a Sword-player, rather then of *Venus*, such an excellent Father, and this suspicion grew the rather, because he delighted much in sword-playing, even openly upon the Theater, and in the Amphitheatres he used to fight with wild Beasts. He murdered many of the Senators, and such as excelled in vertue and nobility; he shewed his cruelty at 12 years of age in causing the man that was washing him in the warm bath to be slung into the fiery furnace, because the water in which he washed was hotter then ordinarily. He gave himselfe to all kind of luxury and uncleanness. He set none but the worst men over the Provinces. He became so hatefull, that his own sister *Lucilla* conspired his death, with *Quadratus*, and *Tarentinus* captain of the guard, *Claudius Pompejanus* who was employed to kill him, comming into his chamber drew his sword, saying, this sword the Senat sends you. But before he could doe any thing, hee with the rest of the conspirators were laid hold on and killed. *Lucilla* was first banished, then executed. So was *Crispina Augusta*, and the whole family of the *Quintilians* with many more.

After this *Commodus* was wary into what company he came, he would suffer none to speak to him, but by *Perennius* captain of the Guard, who knowing the length of his Masters foot, counselled him to take his pleasures, and hee would look to the managing of affaires. In his time *Vulpius Marcellus* overthrew those Britains that came over *Adrians* wall. The plague was so hot at Rome that there dyed oftentimes 2000 a day. *Commodus* in the interim with 300 Concubines, and 300 Sodomites in the Palace gave himself to feasting and riotousnesse. But *Perennius* having got the power into his hands, made his sonnes Generals over the Illyrian armies, and got them with bribes to alienate the souldiers from the Emperor, whom he meant himself to murder. This plot was detected by one in the habit of a Philosopher, who with a staffe in his hand, and a powch hanging from his shoulder, being half naked, runs to *Commodus* as he was sitting in the Theater, and tels him it was not a fit time for him to solace himself with publick shewes, when *Perennius* his naked sword was hanging over him. *Perennius* presently caused the man to be apprehended, and burned for a mad dangerous fellow. But afterward mony was brought to *Commodus* having the image of *Perennius*. Hereupon command was privately given to cut off *Perennius* and his son, which was done accordingly. But *Cleander* a worse favourite succeeded. He of a servant became the Captain of the Guard and High Chamberlain to *Commodus*, who did what he could to alienate both the souldiers and people from the Emperor, he exposed all places of honor and trust to sale. He both called home the banished, and preferred them to great places. He killed *Byrrus* who had married *Commodus* his sister, because he complained to his brother that *Cleander* affected the Empire. He murdered also many others, that disliked his ways. *Commodus* in the mean while gave himselfe to his pleasures taking no notice of his favourite's oppressions.

One time whilst *Commodus* in the Suburbs was sporting and delighting himself, the people in a tumultuous way came with a petition against *Cleander*, for buying up all the corne, which occasioned both the plague and famine at Rome, *Cleander* commanded the guard to fall upon them, who killed and wounded many of the unarmed multitude driving them within the

*An. Mundi* the city gates, the people within fall on the souldiers, and what with stones from the tops of the houses, what by other means, multitudes of them were killed, the city being all in an uproar, *Fadilla* the Emperors eldest sister came weeping, and tearing her hair and garments to the Emperor, telling him that he and his Empire would be suddenly ruined if *Cleander* and his complices were not punished; the Emperor having understood the truth of things, which had been concealed from him till now, sent presently for *Cleander*, whose head being cut off, he caused to be set on a high pole, and shewed to the people, at sight of which they were appeased, and the souldiers that fought for him, affrighted. Such was the peoples hatred against *Cleander*, that they murdered all his friends and children with their mothers, and having dragged their bodies through the streets, slung them into privies. It's said that *Cleander* begot those children of *Commodus* his concubins. Then the Emperor though fearfull of plots returns to the city.

In his time many monsters were born, the Temple of Peace into which many rich men had sent their wealth for security, was burned to the ground; this was held a sad presage of wars and miseries, which fell out true; for many stately edifices in the city were consumed with fire; so was the Temple of *Vesta*, the Palladium that was brought from Troy and kept hid all this while, was now seene whilst the Vestall Nuns did rescue it from the flames, and carryed it publicly to the Emperors Court. He no wayes troubled with these disasters runs on in his vain courses, and would in stead of *Commodus* be called *Hercules Amazonius Exsuperans*, and presented himself to the people in the Lions skin, and carrying *Hercules* his club. He changed the names of the months, & called them by his own names and titles. He caused his statues to be set up, which after his death the people overthrew, and set up the statue of liberty. He fought openly in the Amphitheatres with wild Beasts, which he caused to be brought thither from all parts: he killed 100 lions, so skilfull he was in arching that he never missed. He shewed himself one time naked among the gladiators, sometimes he would shew himselfe in womens apparell; he caused all the cripples about the City to be assembled in one place, and cloathing them like Gyants representing serpents feet, he played the part of *Jupiter*, shooting at them his arrows. He had set downe in a booke the names of those he meant to murder, among which was *Marcia* his concubine, for giving of him good counsell; *Latus* Captain of the Guard, with many other rich men, whose wealth he meant to bestow upon his souldiers and gladiators, but the booke being found *Marcia* poysons him, and lest it might fail, *Narcissus* strangled him; the Senat upon the report of his death, proclaims him an enemy to God and men, razeth his name, and throws down his Statues.

The Capitoll in his time was set on fire by thunder, in which the Bibliothec with the records, and other writings were burned. Then it was that *Pantenny* preached Christ to the Indians, and there found *S. Matthews* Gospell brought thither by *Bartholomew* the Apostle. *Victor* Bishop of Rome excommunicates the Eastern Churches for observing Easter with *Polycarpus* on the 14 day of the Moon; which rashnesse is reproved by *Irenaeus* Bishop of Lyons. *Theodotion* sets out a new Greek translation of the Bible, which is the third. The Christians lived quietly all his time, for *Martia* whom he so loved did much favour them. He reigned 12 years and 9 months, he lived 31 years and 4 months. In his time, they found out a trick at Rome, to kill men, by shooting at them poysoned needles out of secret places.

The affaires of Rome under Pertinax, Didius, and Severus. 2. Severus his actions in the East, and in Britain. 3. The Christian affaires during that time.

4164.

A.C. 194.

**C**ommodus being dead, it was divulged abroad by *Martia*, *Latus*, and *Electus* who was High Chamberlain, that the Prince dyed of an Apoplexy, to which he was subject in his drunkenness. And they resolve to fix the Empire on *Publius Helvius Pertinax* who had been Consul and Governour of *Mæsia*, *Dacia*, and *Syria*. He was an Italian born, a brave Commander, and one of those to whom *Marcus* committed the care of his son *Commodus*. In the night time *Latus*, *Electus*, and some others brought news to *Pertinax*, being in his bed, of the death of *Commodus*, and that he was fittest in respect of his age, valor and good services to the State; he at first feared they came to mock, and then to murder him; but finding their sincerity, accepts their counsell and advice, *Latus* and *Electus* prepare the Army to receive *Pertinax*, who no sooner came, but he was with joyfull acclamations saluted Emperor and *Augustus* by the people first, then by the souldiers: and so having taken the Oath of allegiance, they follow the Emperor to his Palace with bayes on their heads. The next morning *Pertinax* went to the Senat, but would not have the fire or other ensignes of Principality carried before him, till he obtained the Senats approbation, which he doubted, being of mean parentage in comparison of the former Emperors: but the whole Senat unaminously salutes him Emperor, which honour he desired to avoid, beseeching the Fathers that they would confer it on *Glabrio* the noblest of all the Patricii. But *Glabrio* refused it, so that *Pertinax* was forced to sit down in the chair of state, who having made a speech, and offered sacrifice went home.

At the bruit of *Pertinax* his being Emperor, all good men rejoiced, the barbarous Nations sent Embassadors to congratulate. The people found that he would prove a Father more then an Emperor. For he bound up the hands of the souldiers from plundering and robbing; he bestowed all the wast ground in Italy on those that would take paines to improve them. He sold the goods of *Commodus* with his boys and Concubines, and the money he raised by the sale (which was great) he bestowed on the souldiers for a donative. He lessened the Emperors charges, cutting off superfluous expenses. He shewed himself mild and affable to all; he would not have the Senat call his son *Cæsar* till he deserved it. But he was not so bountifull as affable. The souldiers repine at his strictness, being accustomed to rapine, oppression, and lust. Wherefore they resolve to make him away; and choose another: Therefore they suddenly rush into the Pallace; the good old Emperor was wished by his friends to fly and hide himself, till the people were in condition to rescue him, which he thought did not consist with his honour, but confiding in his owne worth and innocency, presented himself to the souldiers, whom by his grave speech and presence he so moved, that they were turning back, till one more bloody then the rest thrust his spear into his breast, who praying to *Jupiter* the revenger, and covering his face with his robe fell downe dead, having received many wounds. Some thinke that *Latus* who made him Emperor gave him his death wound. He lived 67 years, and reigned almost 3 months: the Senat deified him; and buried him honourably.

*Didius Julianus* nobly born, and very rich, but ambitious, bought the Empire which the souldiers proffered to sell to him that gave most. *Flavius Sulpicianus* Father in law to *Pertinax* offered a large sum for it, which they refused, because of his affinity with *Pertinax*. Therefore *Julian* by them is chosen, who promisseth to set up again all the statues of *Commodus* which were cast down, and to give them the same priviledges they had under him: wherefore they gave him the name of *Commodus*, they conveyed him to his Court, through the streets, but covered their heads with their targets, because of the stones slung on them from the tops of the houses, the

the people, in stead of acclamations, saluted him and them with imprecations, for buying and selling the Empire. *Didius* gave himself wholly to his pleasures and riotousness; hee failed also in his promises to the souldiers, for he could not pay the promised sum, out of the treasure which was exhausted by *Commodus*, nor out of his own Estate, which came short of what he bragged; therefore the souldiers began to dislike him: the people did continually rail at him; and sends to *Niger* then Consul and Governour of *Syria*, that he would accept the Empire. He being in good hope to obtain what was proffered (seeing that *Didius* was hated both by the people and souldiers) assembles the Syrian Army, which loved him well, because his government was gentle and pleasant, in that he gave way to shews and plays, wherein the Syrians delighted: he asks their advice, they all with one voice salute him *Augustus*, puts on his Emperiall robes, and carrying the fire before, they convey him to the Temple at Antioch. Embassadors from all the East in parts repair thither to congratulate, proffering their assistance; but *Niger* thinking himself secure, gave himself to his delights, and neglected the opportunity of repairing to Rome, wherefore *Severus* an African, a stout and crafty man, being Governour of *Pannonia*, and perceiving in what condition the Empire was in, and being encouraged by his dream, wherein he thought that the horse which carryed *Pertinax* through the *via sacra*, flung him down, and submitted his back to *Severus*; he I say by faire promises and bribes, obtains the good will of the Northern Armies, assuring them, that he intended to revenge the death of *Pertinax*, by whose name he would be called, and exhorts them to make hast with him to Rome, the Imperiall Seat, that they may first seise on it.

The armies having saluted *Severus* Emperor; he loseth no time, but with all speed, enters Italy, before any there knew his intention. All the Cities living in long peace, and being affrighted at the greatness of his armies, opened their gates, and proclaimed him Emperor, *Julian* hearing of *Severus* his approach; raiseth money for the souldiers, which they took from him as a debt, not as a gift: and seeing that he was hated by the people, slighted by the souldiers, and despised by the Senat, he wrote letters to *Severus*, proffering to make him his Colleague in the Empire. But when he saw that all forsooke him, desired the Senat to take the Government from him, and bestow it on *Severus*, which they did, and withall gave charge to a Tribune to put him to death, which he had bought with so much money. *Didus* being slain, *Severus* sends for the Pretorian Guard which murdered *Pertinax*, wishing them to leave their Arms behind, and to come only with bayes in a triumphing manner to rejoyce with him; they did accordingly, suspecting nothing; but upon the Emperors command, they were incamped round by the Army, stript naked, and chekt for their murdering of *Pertinax*, and banished 100 miles from the City. He might have killed them all, but would not begin his reign with blood.

*Severus* coming to Rome was received by the Senat and people, with joyfull acclamations. He distributes large gifts among the people and souldiers, makes large promises of his good Government, but some of the old Senators suspected the Fox. Who having stayed a while in the City, prepares to march into the East against *Niger*, who was sporting himselfe at Antioch. Great preparations are made both by Sea and Land. But fearing lest *Albinus* then Governour of the Britains, who was a Patrician and Commander of warlike Nations not far from Italy, might in his absence invade the Empire, thought it his best way to invite him by his letters, to share with him in the Government, and to commit the care of the City to him; which *Albinus* willingly accepts. Thus *Severus* having made all sure behinde him, marcheth against *Niger*, with whom he had divers battels, in the Hellespont, at Cizycus an Island in Propontis, at Nicomedia in Bythynia upon Pontus over against Thracia, and in Cilicia, at last he quite defeated him, and caused his head to be carryed about the Camp on a pole. He banished his wife and children, and at last murdered them. So he did kill those Senators and men of note that adhered to *Niger*. He beat down the wals of Byzantium, and turned it to a village, he punished Antioch, Palestina, Arabia, the Parthians, and all the other places

*An. Mundi* places which sided with *Niger*. After this, returning to Rome, he made warre upon *Albinus*, who in the first conflict got the better of *Severus*: who having recruited, his Forces being now 50000 strong, at Lions encounters again with *Albinus*; whom after a long and doubtfull skirmish, he at last defeated: but he was fain to tear his robes, and run furiously upon his souldiers with his naked sword, as they were flying away, or else he had lost the day. *Albinus* is brought to him sorely wounded, whose head he caused to be cut off, and sent to Rome with letters, expostulating with the Senat for their affection to his enemy: many of his favourers both in Spain and France he put to death, and enriched his coffers with their confiscated estates. He murdered without any inditement 43 of the Nobility: he cast *Narcissus* to the Lyons for strangling of *Commodus*, whom in hatred of the Senat, he stiled God: he calls himself the son of *Marcus*, and brother of *Commodus*, and called his son *Bassianus* by the name of *Antoninus*. He extinguished *Albinus* his whole race.

Whilest *Severus* was busie in these civill wars, the Parthians seized upon Mesopotamia, against them he sends a great Army, takes Seleucia and Babylon; and Ctesiphon also, where the Parthian Kings used to winter, and in it 100000 men, but for want of provision he was fain to quit this place again. He laid siege also to Atra a strong and well walled City in Mesopotamia standing on a high hill; but by reason the place was so strong, the Inhabitants so resolute, the air so intemperate, and the sickness in the Army so great, he was forced to raise the siege. In this expedition he kills *Latus* for being too well beloved of the souldiers, as also *Fulius Crispus* for reciting some verses in *Virgil*, which he thought reflected on him: Many other brave men he put to death on frivolous pretences. *Plantianus* was his great favorite, without whom he acted not any thing; this man being raised from nothing to that greatness, that he ruled all, even the Emperor himself; made it death for any man to look on him whilest he passed through the streets. People were commanded to swear by his fortune. *Severus* honoured his daughter *Plantilla* with the marriage of his own son *Antoninus*; more wealth was bestowed on the Bride, then might suffice 50 queens: his ambition was such, that he aimed to be Emperor, therefore employes one *Saturninus* a Tribune, to murder him and his son *Antoninus* in their chambers; but *Saturninus* discovered the Plot to *Severus*. *Plantianus* is sent for, hoping the Princes had been dispatched, but found them both alive, who having accused and reproved him, caused him instantly to be slain. *Plantilla* is banished with her child; and afterward both killed by *Antoninus*, who with his brother *Geta*, began already to tyrannise over the people.

*Severus* his Government was so rigid and cruell, that he was truly called *Severus*, and *Pertinax*. He was a great punisher of thieves and robbers; he slung to the wild Beasts one *Bulus* a Caprain of the High-way-men. His last expedition he makes into Britain, where he lost, partly by the unwholesomenesse of the waters, and partly by the Caledonii about 50000 men. But he at last forced them to lay down arms: his son riding behind him, had almost killed him, if he had not lookt back, and with his stern looks affrighted him, whom he only at that time reproved. The Britans rebelled, & the souldiers mutined, who would have made his son Emperor, against whom *Severus* is carried in his Litter, being then ill of the Gout, whose presence made all submit, he caused all the Authors of that sedition to be put to death, except his son; and sitting in his chair of State bid the souldiers take notice, that the head commanded, not the feet. He repaired or enlarged *Hadrians* wall, which before was 80. now is 130 miles long. He dyed at York being 66 years old, in the 18 year of his reign; his two sonnes being reconciled, carried his ashes in an alabastrer urn to Rome. Thus dyed he, whose cruelty made Rome wish he had not been born, and whose unworthy successours made them wish he had not dyed.

In his time lived *Theodotus* a Tanner at Constantinople, who denied Christs Divinity, he rejected the Gospell and Revelation of St. *John*, wherefore he with his Disciples were called *Alogi*, that is, without the Word or reason: there was another *Theodotus* about that time, affirming Christ to be inferiour to *Melchisedec*, then sprung up the *Melchisedecian* hereticks, affirming *Melchisedec* to be an angell. Then lived the *Praxeani* or *Patropassiani*, so called from *Praxeas* the Author

Author, who affirmed the Father to have suffered on the Crosse. The Christians were falsly accused for worshipping an Asses head; and for being enemies to Monarchy. Hence *Vittor* was martyred with divers others: the Patrician hereticks affirmed that Satan was the Author of mans Body. *Lenides* Father of *Origen* then suffered, young *Origen* could scarce be kept back from suffering with his Father, whom by his letters he exhorts to constancy. This is that *Origen* who gelled himself and wrote the *Hexaplon* or Six-fold Exposition of the Bible distinguished into six columnes. The 1. Hebrew in Hebrew letters. The 2. Hebrew in Greek letters, the 3. the Septuagints Interpretation, 4. that of *Aquila*, 5. of *Symmachus*, 6. of *Theodotion*. Then also suffered for Christ, *Philip* Governour of Egypt, *Irenaeus* Bishop of Lions, and many more which made up the fift, or as some say, the 6 persecution. Then was *Narcissus* B. of Jerusalem falsly accused of adultery, and his 3 accusers strangely by God punished, the one by fire, the other by a loathsome disease, the third with blindness.

## CHAP. IV.

The Roman affaires under Caracalla, Macrinus, Heliogabalus, and Alexander, 2. The affaires of Christians, Persians, and others during that time.

The ashes of *Severus* being brought into the City by his two sons in great pompe, and interred in great solemnity, he was deified by the Senat, to whom succeeded his two sons Co-Emperors; but *Caracalla* his eldest son by *Martia*, began his reign with the blood of his brother *Geta*, the son of *Julia*, whom he murdered in his Mothers arms; after the murder he runs into the camp, perswading the souldiers to protect him, for he had escaped a great danger, his brother having an intent to kill him, which was false. He likewise slew his fathers Physicians, for preserving him so long alive: he was called *Caracalla* from the barbarian garment he wore. He married his mother in law *Julia*, she animating him thereto, and shewing him that he might lawfully doe it, being Emperor, who was to give laws, not to receive any. He caused to be put to death all that favoured his brother *Geta*, 20000 at least, besides *Papinianus* captain of the Guard, for saying, that it was easier to commit parricide, then to excuse it. Because the Alexandrians called him *Oedipus*, and his wife *Focaste*, he gave the city to the plundering of the souldiers, who murdered there multitudes of all sorts. He burned *Aristotles* books, because he thought that he had a hand in poysoning his scholar *Alexander*. He regarded none but the souldiers, feeding them still with money. When *Julia* told him, that he was too prodigall, he laid his hand on his sword, saying: I shall never lack money, so long as this is with me. He delighted much in Necromancy and conjuring; one time calling up the Ghost of *Commodus*, he heard a voice, saying: Goe to thy punishment. Under pretence of making a league with *Abgarus* King of the *Ostroeni* a people between Syria and Mesopotamia, he cast him into prison, and seized on his country. The Armenians fell from him. He would doe any servill work with the souldiers, he slighted the Senat: he coyned false mony, and offered the sword that killed his brother to *Serapis* the Egyptian God, which sword afterward was melted with lightning. He took great pleasure in fencing, and killing of wild beasts. In France he caused many officers to be put to death. In Germany he killed many thousands, and then called himself *Germanicus*. In Asia he fell upon the Parthians, pretending that *Artabanus* had denyed to marry his daughter to him according to promise, and took the city *Arbela* in Persia; and overthrew the Parthian Kings Sepulchers, casting away their bones. At last amongst his own souldiers, whom he so much trusted, as hee was easing of him selfe, betweene *Carre* and *Edeffa*, he is slaine by *Macrinus* whom he had made captain of the Guard. The Emperor having received letters from Rome, as he was at his sports, gave them to *Macrinus* to read, among these he found one, written by some soothsayers to the Prince, wishing him to beware of *Macrinus*, for he aimed at the

*An. Mundi* 4188. A.C. 218. Empire. *Macrinus* knowing in what danger he was, if *Bassianus* should know of this letter; hires one *Martialis* to kill him; which he did; the souldiers pursued this *Martialis* on horse back as he was flying; and with their arrows shot him dead. *Macrinus* hearing that the Emperor was slain, came weeping over the dead corps, as if he had known nothing. *Serapion* of Alexandria foretold that *Macrinus* should succeed to *Bassianus*; this *Serapion Antoninus* killed after the lions had spared him. He lived 29 years, and reigned 6 years two moneths.

In *Caracalla's* time the Tertullianists sprung up who taught the traduction of soules, and that after death they were converted into divels: *Origen* (called *Adamantinus* for his indefatigable pains,) writes divers books, and visits the See of Rome. The Christians enjoy rest from persecution, for *Antoninus* had sucked the breasts of a Christian, who in his youth promised much goodnesse, and was so tender hearted, that he wept, when he heard of any that were to be flung to wild beasts; but when he was Emperor, God made him a scourge to the Romans who had shed the innocent blood of many Christians.

4188. A.C. 218. *Opilius Macrinus* an African, as untoward in conditions, as he was in countenance, was made Emperor by the Syrian Armies, and confirmed by the Senat, not out of any affection to him, but out of hatred to *Bassianus*, being guilty, both of parricide, incest, and all kind of wickednesse. He made war with the Parthians, but being worsted was faine to buy his peace; that he might give himself over to his pleasures at Antioch, whence he banished *Julia Augusta* for some harsh words she had let fall against him, and afterward procured her death: as he did of all others who repined at his birth and Government. For his cruelty he was called *Macellinus* from *macellum* a shambles, for his house was little better. Therefore for his cruelty, voluptuousnesse, and parcimony toward the souldiers, he was hated by them. He used to burn adulterers alive, binding fast their bodies together. He inclosed two souldiers into two oxen, their heads sticking out, that they might speak and breathe, & so there they remained till they dyed: for a rape committed on their hostesse. He called *Diadumenus* his son, *Antoninus*, knowing how grateful that name was to the souldiers, & made him *Cesar*, and his colleague in the Empire. But *Mesia Julia's* sister, which was the wife of *Severus*, had two daughters *Soamis* Concubine of *Bassianus*, who of her begot *Heliogabalus* and *Mammaea*, the mother of *Alexander*. *Severus* begot of her by *Varius Marcellus*. This *Mesia* by bribing the souldiers, got them to fall off from *Macrinus* to her son *Heliogabalus*. *Macrinus* sent *Julian* to destroy both the mother and son, but the souldiers killed *Julian*, & adhered to *Heliogabalus*, whereupon a battell was fought, in which both *Macrinus* and his son were slain. He used to punish informers with death, if they failed in their proofs, if not, he rewarded them; but still with disgrace: he lived 54 years, and reigned 14 months.

4189. A.C. 219. *Varius Antoninus Heliogabalus* was elected Emperor, with no lesse applause then rejected with indignation. He was called *Varius* because some think *Varius Marcellus* was his father; *Antoninus* from *Bassianus*, who by *Soamis* was said to be his father, and *Heliogabalus*, or as it is in ancient coines *Elagabalus*, from the name of the Idol, whose Priest he was, either from the Hebrew *El-Gebal*, the God *Gebal*, or from *ἑλιος* the sun, and the Syriac *Gabal*, which signifieth Bounds or Confiners, because the Sun bounds or confines the year, by his motion in the Ecliptick. This Idol was a statue of a triangular figure, representing the Sun whose Priest he was. He loved his mother so well, that he was altogether ruled by her. He set up the service of his Syrian God upon Mount Palatine, intending to have him worshipped every where. He exposed all honours to sale. He put *Pomponius Bassus* and many other worthy men to death, for prying into his manners. He married *Bassus* his wife, then repudiated her for having one spot in her fair body. Then he married with *Aquila Severa* a vestall Virgin, and afterward married himself to men, as if he had been a woman. He sacrificed men to his Idol: he fed his dogs with goose livers: his Palace was a meer bawdy house, he never spent lesse on a supper, then 30 l. weight of silver. He caused 10 thousand pound weight of Cobwebs from all parts of Rome to be brought to him, by that shewing the greatnesse of the city. He caused himself to be drawn into his Court, by 4 great dogs, & never would wag any

any where without 600 Chariots, shewing that the Persian King never travelled with lesse then 10000 Camels: he spent whole dayes together among roses and sweet ointments: he sent yearly presents to his flatterers, to wit, vessels full of snakes and scorpions, and boxes full of flies, calling them tame Bees: he wore no shoes but what were beset with rich jewels: he used to have tame Lions and Leopards at his table: he married his Idol of the Sun to the *Palladium* or Image of *Pallas*, which he caused to be brought into his chamber; then divorced them because she was armed, and made a match between his Idol and *Francia*, which represented the Moon; which Idol was consecrated by *Dido*, and held in much veneration by the Africans; this *Francia* had a great dowry conferred on her; and Festivall dayes appointed through all Italy for joy of this marriage betweene the Sun and Moon. This Image of the Sun he translated from the City, into the Temple, which he built in the Suburbs, with great solemnity he himselfe going backward before the Chariots, causing all the way to be strowed with the dust of gold; then assembling multitudes of people together from a high tower, he flung down amongst them gold and silver plate, and other rich things, which occasioned a great destruction, people treading down one another.

When *Heliogabalus* saw that the Senats affection was more set upon *Alexander* his cousin German, whom they had made *Cesar*, then on himself; he adopts him, but shortly after repenting, indeavoured to murder him, because he would not follow and approve of his wicked courses; wherefore the souldiers intended to cut off this young *Sardanapalus*, for so they called him; yet for this time they spared him, upon hopes he would reform (being yet but young) and put away from him his evill Counsellors, but he grew rather worie; and sought to murder *Alexander*: wherefore the souldiers fell furiously upon his followers, and parasites, cut them in peeces, and slew the Tyrant in the privy, where he went to hide himselfe; whose body was dragged up and down, and flung at last into the river being fastened to a great stone. His mother, with whom he used to commit incest was slain with him; and an Act made, that never henceforth any woman should be suffered to come into the Senat: for her son was wont to bring her thither. He lived 18 years, and tyrannized almost 4. From the manner of his death, and place of buriall, he was called *Tracitus* and *Tiberinus*, he gave way to the rebuilding of Nicopolis or Emaus in Palestina, upon the intreaty of *Julius Africanus* a learned Christian. He thought to have abolished all religions except that of his Idol, or else to transfer all religions, even the Christian to Mount Palatine.

*Aurelius Alexander*, by birth a Syrian, was son to *Varius*, and *Mammaea*, he would neither be adored nor flattered, nor take upon him the name of *Antoninus* or *Magnus*, yet for his strict life & Government, he was called by the souldiers *Severus*. He countenanced Christians. His mother was a Christian, and a great lover of *Origen*. He was much addicted to learning and learned men. He kept the souldiers in awe by paying them duly, and disbanding the refractory, sometimes by whole Legions together, knowing that poverty made souldiers desperate, and due pay kept them in awe. He suffered none of *Heliogabalus* his preferring to stay in their places: and never bestowed preferment but on those that seemed to be unwilling. He cared not for rich apparell, saying that *Principality consisted in vertue, not in ornaments*. He was milde, courteous, and affable. He would have had all offices, trades, and callings, masters and servants, to wear distinct apparell. He repaired all Cities demolished with Earth-quakes; but would bestow no gold on Temples, shewing that it was needlesse there. He forbade the use or abuse rather of Evnuchs. He admitted no magistrate, but such as the people approved off, knowing that mens estates and lives depended on them. He assigned salaries for all publick officers. He suffered no place to be bought, saying: *he that buys must sell*. He caused one to be stifled with smoak, for selling promises of preferment: the Executioner in the meane time crying, *He is punished with smoak that sold smoak*. He had in his private chappell the Images of *Christ*, *Abraham*, *Apolonius*, and *Orpheus*. He would have built a Temple for *Christ*, but that he feared the Gentile Temples then would be forsaken. He made much of that Christian

*An. Mundi* sentence, *Due to all men, as you would have all men due to you.* Understanding that one *Camillus* fought to be Emperor, and to make a rebellion, he thanked him for affecting that charge, which good men did avoid, then did he make him his Colleague, clothed him richly, and made him undertake the managing of the wars with him, till he was weary, and so upon his desire was dismissed, and sent safely home. The Christians had got a public place to exercise in, which the Cookes challenged did belong to them. *Severus* told them, that it was a place fitter for the worship of God, then the dressing of meat.

*Ariaxerxes* the Persian King came into the field with a mighty Army in which were 700 Elephants, 1800 hooked Chariots. He having subdued the Parthian King *Artabanus*, and united both Kingdoms: he demanded restitution of all the Asiatick countries, which of old belonged to the Persian Monarchy. *Severus* returned him this answer, that he were best make much of what he had in possession, and not meddle with the Roman confines, lest he buy his demanded purchase at too dear a rate. This answer not being satisfactory, but injuries increasing daily, a battell was fought, in which the Romans took 300 Elephants, 200 Chariots, and defeated 100 and 80 thousand horse, and Mesopotamia was recovered, the Persians redeemed their Captives, and never durst in 40 years space take the field again: the Romans also lost many of their men in this battell. They had also good successe in Armenia, Mauritania, and Illyricum. The enemies lands were bestowed on the souldiers that were left to guard the borders, and on their sonnes, if they proved souldiers. After this, when *Severus* had quelled the rebelling Germans, and had commanded the disbanding of some seditious Legions, he was murdered with his mother *Mamma* by the German souldiers who could not indure to be curbed, having enjoyed so much liberty under *Heliogabalus*: this murder was committed by the instigation of *Maximinus* that barbarous Thracian, pretending that his exactions upon the Provinces, caused by his covetous mother, were insupportable. One of the *Druids* foretold him this fatal stroke, by wishing him to beware of the souldiers. He dyed neer Mentz in Germany, in the year of his life 29. of his Empire 13. His chief Counsellors were *Vlpianus* the great Lawyer, and *Fulius Paulus*.

*Vlpian* was a great enemy to Christians, causing many of them to be put to death; but he himselfe was killed in the night by the Pratorian Guard. Pope *Callistus* was flung into a deep well and drowned. *Calepodius* the Presbyter then suffered; so did *Hyppolitus* a learned Christian. Under *Vlpian* Governour of the City, the Sect of *Valefians* then flourished; who after the example of *Origen* gelded themselves; therefore were called Eunuchs: then was *Origen* excommunicate for his errors. *Cecilia* the Virgin was then martyred. *Hierom* about this time translated the Hebrew Bible into Latine; because there was great altercation about the LXX. Translation, being then three editions, to wit, *Origens*, *Lucians* the Martyr, and that of *Hesychius*. Then *Gregorius Thaumaturgus* so called, and *Magnus* too, for his great learning and wonders, was martyred. Hee was Bishop of Neocæsaria, the scholar of *Origen*; his name before was *Theodorus*; then *Ammonius* a Christian Philosopher professed publicly at Alexandria; then were there common buriall places made without the City for Christians, called *Cameteria*, *Area*, *Tumba*, *Cata-tumba*, *Crypta*, &c.

The Roman affaires under Maximinus, Philip, Decius, Gallus, Valerian, Gallienus and others. 2. The Christian and forraign affairs of those times.

**M**aximinus a Thracian, whose father was a Goth, and his mother an Alan, 402 6. or Scythian; was the first that without the Senats decree, by the souldiers was made Emperor; to whom he joined his son for his Colleague: he being conscious of his mean parentage, hated the Senat and Nobility, whom he murdered at his pleasure, and all those that knew his originall: he murdered at one time 4000, at another time in Germany beyond the Rhene, hee plundered and burned the countrey for 400 miles together, killing multitudes of people: thence he intended to make war against the Sarmatians, and to reduce all those Northern countries to the Roman obedience; but neither the Romans nor Armies could indure his cruelty; therefore in Africa the souldiers in a sudden tumult made old *Gordianus* being now 80 years of age Emperor, against his will, he was Deputy Consul of Africa; the army having killed *Maximinus* his Procurator, put upon *Gordian* the Imperiall robe, and saluted him with his son by the name of *Augustus*: he was brought to Carthage in great pompe, whence he wrote to the Senat, how he was forcibly elected Emperor. The Senat out of hatred to *Maximinus*, approved his election, gave order to destroy all *Maximinus* his friends; they declare him and his son enemies to the State, and Letters are directed to all the Provinces, to shake off their allegiance: which enraged *Maximinus*: he bribed the souldiers, and makes hast for Rome.

*Capellianus* a Commander under *Maximinus* in Africa, raised an army against *Gordianus*. The old Emperor sends his son with sufficient forces to encounter him: the skirmish was hot, in which young *Gordian* was killed; as soone as the Father hears of his sons death, knowing the cruelty and strength of *Maximinus*, and the perfidioufnesse with the weaknesse of the Africans, he strangles himself. Then did *Capellianus* either banish or murder all that were of *Gordianus* his side. He robs the Temples, plunders the cities, and gives the spoile to the souldiers: when the Senat heard of this, they erected two Emperors, to wit, *Maximus Papienus* the city Captain, and *Clodius Balbinus*, of an ancient and noble Family, to whom they join the young nephew of *Gordian* by his sister. *Maximus* marched forth with an army, *Balbinus* stayed in the city to appease the tumults; for the Senators fell upon the Pretorian guard for prying into their secrets, and the Guard fall upon the people; fire and sword rageth through the city, neither could the tumult be appeased till young *Gordian* was presented to the people.

When *Maximinus* had entred Italy, his army was pinched with famine, all the provision of the countrey being carried into strong Towns and Garrisons. *Aquileja* shuts the gates against him: he besiegeth it round, but the Inhabitants made stout resistance, continually annoying the souldiers with darts, stones, fire-brands, burning pitch and brimstone, and when their Engines grew uselesse for want of strings or cords, the women made strings of their hairs. *Maximinus* being mad that he could doe no good upon the town, thinking it had been the lasinesse or cowardise of the souldiers, put many of the Commanders to death, which so exasperated the souldiers, that whilest *Maximinus* and his son in the heat of the day were resting in the tent, they rush in and killed them both, saying: *Of a naughty brood, one whelp is not to be left alive.* Their heads on long poles were carried about *Aquileja* to be seen, and thence to Rome, to the great joy of the people and Senat, which had sacrificed to their Gods, that *Maximinus* should never return alive. Thus dyed he who of a shepheard, and then of a foot-boy to *Severus* became Emperor. His nimblenesse in running, keeping pace with *Severus* his horse, made him a Tribune, his son was a comely youth, but haughty and wicked, permitting men to kisse his knees and feet: their bodyes were flung into the river, and their heads



*An. Mundi* heads disgracefully used, then burnt in *Campus Martius*, the people stiling him *Cyclops*, *Buffisris*, *Anteus*.

He raised the sixth persecution against Christians, out of malice to *Alexanders* family, because many of them professed Christianity, and to palliate this cruelty, it was given out that the Gods had sent divers earthquakes lately for tolerating Christianity, and neglecting their service. Then was *Pontianus* Bishop of Rome martyred, and within a month his successor *Anterus* with many others, chiefly Clergy men.

4209.

A.C. 239.

*Maximus* and *Balbinus* striving for superiority, the former standing upon his valour, the latter on his nobility, gave occasion to the soldiers who loved neither of them, (because chosen by the Senat,) to murder them both. Whereupon *Gordianus* is proclaimed *Augustus* being 13 years old, or as others say 16. His short reign was prefiged by a great earthquake, and such an eclipse of the Sun, that they were fain to burn candles by day: he suppressed the faction of Africa raised against him by *Sabinianus*; then married with the daughter of *Mistheus* a wife and learned man, whose advice he alwayes used. After this he openeth the Temple of *Janus*, and denounceth war against *Sapores* the Parthian King, who had invaded Mesopotamia. He goeth into Mesia, subdues his enemies in Thracia, drives the Persians out of Antiochia, and takes many other townes from the enemy: he fills all the Garrisons and frontier Towns with provision; but after the death of *Mistheus* his father in law, he was slighted by the army for his youth, and one *Philip* is appointed to be his tutor, and Governor: who insulting over the young Prince, first thrust him quite out of Government, then gave way to murder him, which was done by nine assassins, who all of them afterward slew themselves, with the same swords that murdered the Lord. This was the end of *Gordian* the third, in the 20 or 22 year of his age, having reigned 6 years. This priviledge the Senat bestowed upon his family that none of them should be called to publick offices or employments against their wills. This Epitaph was set up for him on the confines of Persia in Latin, Greek, Persian, Hebrew, and Egyptian letters *Divus Gordianus* conqueror of the Persians, Goths, Sarmatians, subduer of the Roman seditions, conquerour of the Germans, but not of the Philips. About this time *Helcyonides* suffered Martyrdom, whose breasts were first cut off, and slung to wilde beasts, then she was tortured with fire, and at last beheaded.

4220.

A.C. 250.

*Philip* the Arabian of obscure parentage succeeded with his son *Saturninus*, whom now he calls *Philip*: he made peace with the Persian, built Philippopolis in Arabia, made a great Pan for water beyond Tiberis where water was scarce, and celebrated the thousand year of the city with secular sports, in which were shewed to the people all sorts of wild beasts, as Lions, Leopards, Tigers, Elephants, &c. which *Gordian* had provided for his Persian triumph. But such multitudes of torches there were in the night time that a great part of the city took fire; *Philip* was the first Emperor that was baptized, but was not admitted to the Communion, till he had publickly made confession of his former sins, his son was so grave, that he was never observed to laugh. *Philip* having sent *Decius* against the rebelling Pannonians, was by him stript both of his life and Empire. For *Philip* hearing that *Decius* was made Emperor by the Pannonian souldiers, left his son in the city, and marcheth against him with an army, the battell was fought at *Verona*, in which *Philip* is slain and his army defeated; upon the news of this, his son is slain at Rome being 12 years old, they reigned 6 years.

About this time the Arabian heresie, concerning the dying or sleeping of the souls with their bodies, and their rising again the last day, was refuted by a Synod held in Arabia, and by *Origen* who disputed against them. Then did *Cyprian* succeed *Donatus* in the Bishoprick of Carthage: who scoffingly was nicknamed *Caprian* by his adversaries. The Christians in Alexandria, are persecuted, among the rest, *Apollonia* the Virgin, who suffered all her teeth to be beat out, her jaws broken, and at last to be burned, rather then she would blaspheme. The Helceaites denying *Pauls* writings, and holding mentall faith sufficient, without orall confession, are refuted by *Origen*.

Decius

*Decius* a Pannonian born, is with his son *Decius* confirmed in the Empire by the Senat. In their reign was a great persecution. *Babylas* was martyred at Antioch, *Alexander* at Jerusalem, *Fabianus* at Rome, all Bishops. *Babylas* did first see his 3 sonnes martyred, exhorting them to constancie, then suffered himself, his wife looking on, who buried their dead bodies. He had wars with the Goths or Getes of whom he killed 30000. but shortly after his sonne was killed, and he himselfe driven by the Goths into a lake where he was drowned, nor could his body be found afterward: they reigned two years. In the great and seventh persecution, which was about their time, *Paul*, (and after his example) others retired for security into the wilderness, whence begun the order of Anachorites to increase; then also did *Gregorius Thaumaturgus* retire into the desert.

*Gallus* after the death of *Decius* and his son was chosen Emperor by the souldiers and confirmed by the Senat. It's thought that they both lost their lives by his treachery: he concluded a dishonourable peace with the Goths, making himselfe their Pensioner: then he went to Rome with his son *Volusianus* whom hee made *Cesar*, and his Colleague in the Empire: hee adopted *Decius* his other sonne, and then murdered him: his cruelty against Christians; and his careless government drew in the Scythians, Goths, Burgundians, and Persians, who wasted the borders of the Empire lying neer them: besides the plague from Ethiopia raged 15 years through the Empire. *Emilianus* Generall to *Gallus*, in one battell defeated the Goths. Whereupon he was made Emperor by the souldiers, which *Gallus* understanding, marched with his son against him, but they were both slain in the second year of their reign, and *Emilianus* 3 months after was killed by his souldiers in the 40 year of his age.

About this time *Novatus* and his sectaries lived, who called themselves *Cathari*, that is, Puritans, they denied hope of pardon to those that fell in time of persecution: he was condemned by a Synod of 60 Bishops called by Pope *Cornelius*; and so he was by *Cyprian* and by the Bishops of Africa. *Sabellius* then taught that there was but one person of the Father, Son and Holy Ghost. *Origen* about this time died being 68 years old, who at Alexandria had indured divers tortures for Christ, at last offered incense to the Idol, to avoid the abusing of his body by a Black more, for which fact he spent the rest of his time in weeping, and silence, refusing to Preach or write any more: not long before this, in the time of *Decius* seven young men at Ephesus, to avoid the persecution fled into a cave, where being shut up by their persecutors, slept in the Lord; hence they were called The seven sleepers; then *Pronius* Bishop of Smyrna, *Agatha* the Virgin, and many others were martyred. Pope *Cornelius* also suffered martyrdom about that time.

*Lucius Valerianus* being now aged is made Emperor in Rhetia: his son *Gallie* is made *Cesar*. *Valerian* had gone with much credit through all degrees of honor, at first he was a great friend of the Christians, till he was perverted by a certain Magician of Egypt: who brought him to exercise diabolical arts, to sacrifice men and children, and persecute the Christians. For which impieties the whole Empire is punished with famine, plagues and war; the Scythians and Marcomans break in upon Macedonia and Greece: the Goths and Burgundians upon Italy, the Scythians and Persians rage in Asia. *Valerian* having left the Government of the West to *Gallienus*, makes an expedition into the East against the Persians who had taken Antiochia and Caesarea: he did what he could to keep out the Scythians, but in vain, for they brake in with such multitudes, that they burnt and sackt Trapezus, Chalcedon, Nicomedia, Nicæa, and many other townes, carrying away infinite booties and numbers of people. At last finding his army wasted with sickness, and that he was not able to encounter with *Sapores* the Persian, he offered to buy his peace, but *Macrinus* his Egyptian witch, who had increased him against the Christians, betrayes him to *Sapores*, who so long as hee lived used him as his foot-stool when he took horse, at last fled him alive; his sonne *Gallienus* deified him after his death, whom he neglected in his life. For he rejoiced when he heard his Father was dead; that being freed from a censor, he might give himselfe to his pleasures, leaving the East at randome, which

was



*An. Mundi* was invaded by *Macrinus*, or *Macrianus*, with his two sonnes *Macrinus* and *Quietus*.

So weary were the souldiers of *Gallienus*, and so giddy headed, that in his time they chose no lesse then 30 Emperors, every army setting up their own Generall. The Gauls & Germans were driven out of Italy, with their Emperor by *Gallienus*. *Ingenius* is overthrown by him at Mursia, and whole Cities left desolate. *Regilla* is defeated also by *Gallienus*, and *Piso* in Thessaly by *Valens*, is killed and he by the souldiers shortly after. *Aurelius* in Illyricum overthrowes *Macrianus*, who came thither out of Asia with 44000 men: he with his son *Macrinus* were both killed, and 30000 of his souldiers became prisoners to *Aurelius*. His other son 10 killed, and 30000 of his souldiers became prisoners to *Aurelius*. Thus was *Macrianus* *Quietus* and *Balsila*, were defeated and slain by *Odenatus*. Thus was *Macrianus* punished with his two sons, for his treachery against *Valerian*, and the Christians: and *Gallienus* for his favour to them began again to flourish: he proclaimed peace through all the Provinces, and permitted Christians to have their meetings in their *Cameteria*. *Emilianus* Governour of Egypt and *Thebais* for his cruelty against Christians, was in a conflict taken prisoner by *Theodorus*, *Gallienus* his Generall, sent to Rome, and there strangled in prison: he had been made Emperor by the souldiers, who so tyrannised that *Dionysius* Bishop of Alexandria, was glad to fly with many more to the Desarts of Arabia: where in stead of preaching, he spent his time in writing. *Causoleus* brother to *Theodorus* defeated *Trebellianus*, whom the 20 Isaurians a people in the lesser Asia had made Emperor. Yet henceforth they shook off the Roman yolk, trusting to the naturall strength of their country, more then to their men.

In *Gallienus* his time *Posthumus* rebelled in Gallia, and armed the Franci a people neer the Rhene, not known or named before this time in any Historian. He governed with great moderation for 10 years, at last was slain by his souldiers. In his time also besides the misery of war, there were divers earthquakes, and such darknesse for many dayes together, that people dyed with fear. So great was the plague at Rome and Achaja, that 5000 dyed in one day. Macedonia is over-30 verrun by the Gothes, Asia by the Scythians, who spoiled and burned the Temple of *Diana*, Sicilia by the slaves, Gallia and Spain by the Franks. *Saloninus* *Gallienus* his son is killed by *Posthumus*, and *Gallienus* himself wounded; his father a prisoner and slave in Persia. Yet for all this *Gallienus* must triumph at Rome over the Persians by whom his father was beaten; so that scoffingly among the Persian captives at Rome, inquiry was made for *Valerian* the Emperour.

The valour and fidelity of *Odenatus*, Generall of *Gallienus* in the East, is remarkable; for when all seemed to be lost, he raiseth an army, takes in Nisibis and Mesopotamia, defeats *Sapores*, and makes him fly, seisseth on all his treasures and Concubines, sends the captive Persian Nobility to Rome, to be insulted 40 ver; in requittall of which good service, he makes *Odenatus* his Colleague, in his Empire, calls him *Augustus*, and on his money stamp his victories. In the mean while the Scythians returning home with their booties and captives, were most of them drowned by shipwrack. And such is the uncertainty of military felicity, that *Odenatus* by the treachery of *Meonius* his cousin german is slain with his sonne *Herodes*; and *Meonius* shortly after by the souldiers. *Zenobia* the masculine wife of *Odenatus* undertook the Government in her childrens minority, so dexterously, that she kept all about her in subjection: So was *Posthumus* after 40 so dexterously, that she kept all about her in subjection: So was *Posthumus* after his good services slain in Gallia by *Lollianus*, and he by *Victorinus*, the son of *Victorina*, who like another *Zenobia* by the help of *Tetricus* and *Marius*, stopp 50 the incursions of the Barbarians. *Victorinus* a brave Emperour, but given to women, is murdered by the means of a woman the wife of *Atitians*, whom he loved. *Marius* a Blacksmith is made Emperour, and the third day after was murdered by his servant. Then was *Tetricus* made Emperour by *Victorina*. He was of a noble extraction, and Governour of Galconie: his son *Tetricus* is made *Cesar*.

*Gallienus* wholly addicted to his pleasures neglected the Government: among

among divers of his ridiculous Acts, this is one, he caused a certain fellow for selling glasse jewels in stead of true, to be brought to the place, where he was to be cast to the Lions; but instead of a Lion, he lets a Capon out of the coop upon him; whilst the people stood wondering at this toy, he caused this to be proclaimed: the cheater is cheated. His carelesnesse drew *Aureolus* with an Army of Rhemians and Pannonians towards Rome, whom *Gallienus* met and drove him into Millain; having defeated his Army. But *Gallienus* was not long after by *Martianus* and *Heracianus* murdered in the dark, as he suddenly ran out of his tent, upon a noise that the enemy was breaking in upon him. *Aureolus* was guilty of this 10 murder; for he devised letters in which were written the names of the Tribunes and chief Captaines of *Gallienus* his Army whom he meant to slay; these Letters were secretly flung over the wall, and taken up, as if they had been lost by chance. By this device *Gallienus* was suspected, and so murdered, having reigned 9 years alone, and 6 with his Father. He was deified by his successor *Claudius*; but vilified by the Senat, who decreed that his friends and courtiers should be flung down the Gemonian ladders, and prayed the infernall Gods, that his place might be among the wicked.

*Gallienus* was a wicked Prince yet mild towards the Christians, who put an end to the persecution by his Father *Valerian*, under whom Pope *Xistus* was martyred; *Cyprian* beheaded; and *S. Laurence* the Deacon, broyled. About this time 20 was the great dispute concerning rebaptization. *Cyprian* made heretical baptism void. The Bishops of Rome held it to be good; and so did *Dionysius* of Alexandria; only he made void the Baptism of those hereticks which denyed the Trinity. He also refuted the Millenaries opinion of Christs 1000 years reign. About this time sprung up the Angel-worshippers, called *Angelici*, who were quickly extinguished; and the *Apostolici*, who held it sin to possesse either goods or wives: then was *Samosatenus* who denyed Christs Divinity, condemned by the Synod at Antiochia: and deposed afterward by *Aurelian*.

30

## CHAP. VI.

1. The Roman affaires under *Claudius*, *Aurelianus*, *Tacitus*, *Probus*, *Proculus*, *Bonofus*, *Carus*, *Numerianus* and *Carinus*. 2. Of *Zenobia*, and of the Christian and forraign affaires.

**F** *Lavinus Claudius* a Dalmatian, was by the Senat and souldiers named Em- 4239 peror. He was stiled by the Senat, Father, Brother, Friend. He overthrew *Aureolus* in a battell and slew him. He defeated the Alemans, neer the lake 40 Benacus. The Goths, and Scythians, to the number of 300 and 20000. fall upon divers parts of the Empire, at such a time when the Romans had neither offensive nor defensive Armes, when *Tetricus* had all Gallia and Spain, the chiefe strength of the Commonwealth, when *Zenobia* had all the Archers with her, yet the Barbarians were still put to the worst both at Mæsia, Martianopolis, Byzantium and Thessalonica. Multitudes of them fled to the hill Hemus, where without pursuing of *Claudius*, they dyed of the plague and famine. The Romans carelessly busied about their plunder, lost 2000 of their men by the Scythians in their flight, returning upon the Romans; but this loss was repayed with the slaughter of 50000 Scythians.

50 About this time *Zenobia* Queen of Palmyrena a Town and Countrey of Syria, raised an Army of 80000 against Egypt, and caused the Egyptians to receive a Garrison; but *Probus* Admirall of those Seas under *Claudius* drove out the Garrison againe, and with an Army of Egyptians and Africans, defeated the Palmyrenians; but shortly after being betrayed by *Timogenes* the Egyptian, he killed himself. The Scythians invaded Crete and Cyprus, but could doe no good by reason of the sicknesse that followed them; of which *Claudius* dyed at Sirmium in Pannonia neer Danubius. He was not only deified, but had a golden statue erected

100
40
50
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100
100

*An. Mundi* them their secrets. He being overcome by *Probus* strangled himself. But his wife (being a noble Goth and a good woman) hee respected and bestowed on her whilest she lived a yearly Pension. But the wicked souldiers could not long brook so good a Prince; for they hated him because he would not live idly like drones, and to feed upon the sweat of other mens labours, therefore he employed them in making vineyards throughout Gallia, Pannonia and Mæsia: and as he was employing them to drain the fens of Syrmium, where he was born, there he was murdered, having fled into a tower, but to no purpose. He reigned about 6. years, and lived 75.

4252. Thus ended that good Emperor, whose Epitaph was this: *Here lieth Probus* 10  
A. C. 282. *the Emperor, truly Probus, or good. Conqueror of the Barbarians, Conqueror of the Tyrants.* After his death the souldiers grew exorbitant, taking on them the full power to choose the Emperor, which the Senat out of covetousnesse, or cowardise, or factions, neglected. In his time *Trophimus* and others were martyred at Antioch. Pope *Eutychianus* who had buried with his own hands 42 Martyrs, suffered martyrdom himself.

*Carus* Captain of the Guard succeeded. Him *Probus* had recommended to the Senat for a brave man. He suppressed the Sarmatians, making irruptions upon Pannonia and Thracia, and made them quiet after he had killed 16000 of them, and taken prisoners 20000. Hee had two sonnes, *Carinus* and *Numerianus*, these he named 20 *Cæsars*: he commits to *Carinus* (a wild young man) the charge of Gallia; and takes *Numerianus* a solid and eloquent Prince along with him into the Persian War. He enters Mesopotamia with a great Army, and takes it. Then marcheth along to Ctesiphon without resistance, and obtaines the title of *Imperator Persicus*. But having passed beyond the bounds of the Empire, he was struck with thunder, and dyed suddenly in his Pavilion. His best sonne *Numerianus* was subject to soare Eyes, which now ware so weake with weeping, that hee was carried in a Litter. *Arius Aper* his Father in law, aiming to be Emperor himselfe; murders *Numerianus*, and conceals the fact, giving out that he could not come abroad because of his soare eyes; but the smell of the dead car- 30 kasse revealed the murder, whereupon *Diocletian* is chosen Emperor by the Army; and *Aper* slaine by the said *Diocletian*; so the Druide told him, that he should be Emperor when he killed the Boar; which now was fulfilled: for *Aper* is a Boar.

*Carinus* the other sonne, and another *Heliogabalus* for wickednesse, hearing his Father and Brother to bee dead, grew worse then before. Hee overthrew and killed *Julian* and his Army, who aimed at the Empire. In divers battels he with stood *Diocletian*. At last hee was killed by his own souldiers. He did so degenerate from his Fathers vertues, that he denied him to be his son. *Numerian* was a good Poet, and like to prove an excellent Prince. Thus 40 *Carus* and his two sonnes reigned about two yeares. *Carus* lived 43 yeares. *Numerianus* 20, and *Carinus* 18. to *Numerianus* was erected an Image of brasse.

## CHAP. VII.

The Roman affaires under *Diocletian*, *Maximianus*, *Galerius*, *Constantius*, and *Maxentius*. 2. The horrible persecution of Christians under them. 3. Of the Persian and forraign affaires of those times. 50

4254. *A. C. 284.* *Valerius Diocletianus* born in Dalmatia, his Father was Secretary to *Amilius* the Senator: his mothers name was *Dioclea*. He finding the Empire subject to so many distractions, did chooe a Co-Emperor, *Maximianus* of country parents, but a good souldier. He called him *Herculeus*, and himselfe *Fovius*, after hee had subdued the Persians and Egyptians. They also chose two *Cæsars* to assist and succeed them. *Diocletian* chose *Galerius Maximinus*

*minus* a Thracian, *Maximinus* elected *Flavius Constantius Chlorus*, whom *Carus* *An. Mundi* meant to have made his successor, and to have killed his flagitious sonne *Carinus*. *Maximianus* marcheth into France, and suppresses the insurrections there of the country people, and robbers, called by them *Bagaudæ*. These four thus divided the Empire between them. *Maximianus Herculeus* obtained Italy and Afric. *Constantius* all beyond the Alpes Northward. *Galerius* all the coast of Illyricum to Pontus. *Diocletian* undertook the rest. By marriages these great Commanders united themselves, for *Diocletian* bestowed his daughter *Valeria* upon *Maximinus*. *Max. Herculeus* gave his daughter in law *Theodora* to *Constantius*. 4261. *Diocletian* subdued Egypt, and in it *Achillens* who called himselfe Emperor, A. C. 291. whom hee condemnes to the wilde Beasts. Unwalls Alexandria, overthrowes *Coptus* and *Ptolemais*, and punisheth multitudes with persecution or death.

*Maximinus Cæsar* is sent against the Persians, by whom hee first was beaten. Wherefore was harshly used by *Diocletian*, when he came to meet him, for he suffered him in his purple robe to run before his chariot a mile or two. At last having recruited his army with old souldiers, marcheth through Armenia against the Parthians; falls suddenly upon *Narsus* the Persian King, wounds him, and drives him to the mountaines, and takes his wives, children, Nobility, prisoners; 20 and plunders his Palace and treasure: and if *Diocletian* had not hindered him, he had made Persia a province. Yet the Romans got five countreys beyond Tigris, so that the passing beyond the old bounds of Euphrates was not alwayes unfortunate to the Romans: as the ancient Oracles foretold: because though *M. Cæsar*, *Valerian*, and some others miscarried; yet *Trajan*, *Odenatus*, *Carus*, *Probus*, and this *Maximinus Galerius*, had good successe. *Carausius* invaded Britain, which he held 6 years, till he was traiterously killed by his Colleague *Alectus*, whom in 4 years space *Constantius* by *Asclepedatus* captain of his Guard, overthrew, and added Britain again to the Empire.

About this time the Marcomans and Carpi were conquered again; in the mean 30 while the city was well governed, for all oppressions and wickednesse were severely punished: the poore was provided for with corn, and stipends were duly paid. But *Diocletian* gave himself to excesse in wearing cloth of gold, in treading upon silk and purple carpets, beset with pretious stones. In causing himselfe to be called God, and to be adored after the manner of *Caligula*, and *Domitian*. So *Herculeus* gave himself over to all licentiousnesse, being a man of as stern a countenance as conditions. These Emperors triumphed at Rome, where the wives, sisters, 4272. and children of king *Narsus* were led before the chariot, *Constantius* in *Gallia Belgica* did then wage war against the Alemans, who after he had by them been driven into the town, where he was taken up by ropes over the wall, (the gates of Lingon 40 or Cangiess being shut) killed 5 houres after, when his army was come, about 40000 Alemans.

The Empire flourished all this while, Rome, Carthage, Milan, and Nicome- *A. C. 306.* dia were fenced with new wals; and the barbarous Nations feared the Romans. But *Diocletian* about the 19 year of his reign with *Maximianus*, began to rage against the Christians, beginning first with the souldiers whom they casheered, and some they slew. Then publick edicts are made for pulling downe the Christian churches, for burning their Bibles; for degrading of such as were in honour, and inflaving such as were free. All Bishops and Pastors of Churches, who would not deny Christ, or offer incense to Idols, were commanded to be slain. Then promiscuously the sword raged against all sorts of Christians. More cruell were these men, then the wilde beasts, who oftentimes spared those, whom they murdered with all kind of tortures, which malice could device. *Cosmas* and *Damianus* after all sorts of torments, at last were beheaded with three more of their brethren. *Sebastianus* a Commander in the army, was first wounded with many arrowes, afterward recovering was whipt to death. None were suffered to draw water, nor grinde their corn, till they had offered incense to the Idol. Pope *Cajus* suffered Martyrdom, so did that Noble Roman *Gabinus*, with his daughter *Susanna*. A

*An. Mundi* whole Legion of Christians after two decimations, were all at last cut off by the command of *Maximianus*. So were the two Captaines, *Cerion* and *Victor* with their Troopes. *Marcellus* the Centurion with his 12 sonnes were martyred; and so were *Zenoe* Tribune with all his souldiers: with many other brave men and women. In a church of Bithynia, on the day of Christs Nativity were burned multitudes of people. In one month there dyed 17000 Martyrs. In Egypt there dyed by Martyrdome 144000 in ten years space, besides 70000 banished. No lesse cruelty was used in Africa, against those who would not be *Traditores*, that is would not deliver up their Bibles to be burned. In France among many other Martyrs, *Victorinus* Bishop of Poytiers suffered. In Spain *Vincentius* the Deacon, *Osus* Bishop of Corduba, and many more; *Agnes*, *Eucratia*, the two *Eulale*, with divers other Virgins shewed more then humane courage in suffering unspeakable tortures; whereas Pope *Marcellinus* fainted as *Peter* did before him.

*Diocletian* and *Maximianus* being fatiated with innocent blood, tortured with diseases, and an evill conscience, fell madde, and so both in one day resigned up their Empire, being content to live privately; *Diocletian* was then at *Nicomedia*, *Herculeus* at *Millain*. This betook himself into *Lucania*, the other to his native soil at *Salona*. Both raging, that they could not with all their cruelty suppress the religion and name of Christianity. *Diocletian* poysoned or stabbed himself, being 68 years old. *Maximianus* dyed of a loathsome and torturing disease in his bowels in the 68 year also of his age.

*Constantius Chlorus*, and *Galerius Maximinus*, are declared Emperors. *Constantius* was favourable to the Christians, a Prince of an excellent temper, who cared not for wealth, holding himselfe sufficiently rich, if his subjects were rich. When *Diocletian* upbraided him for his poverty, he presently gathered great store of wealth, which having shewed, he restored again to the right owners. He was the son of *Entropius*, a noble Roman, and of *Claudia* daughter of *Claudius Augustus*. Though Italy, Africk, Gallia, Germany & Britain were allotted to him for his share of the Empire, yet he contented himself with Gallia alone; which hee ruled with good laws and moderation:

*Galerius* was a good souldier, and a handsome man, born in *Dacia*, of mean parentage, for his father was a husbandman, and he himselfe a Cow-herd, whence he was called *Armentarius*. Hee gave out that his mother had begot him of a Dragon, as *Olympia* did *Alexander*. He was indeed a Dragon to the Christians, for his persecution was the bloudest of all, to prevent which, multitudes of people fled to desert places and rocks. *Urbanus* president of *Palestina* put *Appianus* and *Edesius* his brother with many others to cruell deaths. But he himself was by *Maximianus*, (whose cruell commands he so readily obeyed) sentenced to death. But *Firmilianus* worse then he, ragd over dead carcasses, denying them buriall; which inhumanity the very Gentiles abhorred, when they saw wilde beasts and birds carrying away mens limbes. When the friends of *Pamphilus* saw, that his body and 12 others lay four dayes in the streets untouched by any beast, took the boldnesse to bury them. And *Firmilianus* shortly after sheathed the same sword in his own bowels, which he unsheathed against Christians; so fierce was this Dragon against all that professed Christ, within his Dominions of *Palestina*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Mesopotamia*, *Pontus*, *Cappadocia*, and *Bithynia*, that he burned a whole towne of Christians at one time. The Governour of Provinces proffering rewards to those that should find out new tortures.

About the 8. year of this bloody Tragedy, both Judges and Torturers began to grow weary of a King, for they perceived that Christians ran as cheerfully to Martyrdome, as the Romans did to a May-game. Therefore the tyrants fearing that their cities would be left desolate, were contented to put out onely one eye, and to break one of the confessors thighs, and to condemne them to work in mines. Many Bishops and Presbyters suffered martyrdom in these times. But *Constantius* was a friend to the Christians, who did not suffer under him, but in the two years of *Diocletian* and *Maximianus*. One day *Constantius* would try the sincerity

rity of his Courtiers, commanding all that did worship Christ, either to renounce him, or forsake his Court; many went, many stayed: those he recalled, these he expelled, shewing that they who were not faithfull to their God, could not be faithfull to him that was but a man.

*Maximianus* having also obtained the Government of Italy, appoints two *Cæsars*. *Severus* for Italy, and *Maximianus* his sisters son for the East, both being Illyrians. He kept *Constantine* by him as an hostage, under pretence of religion. For hee saw in him though a childe, more then a manly spirit. Therefore hee endeavourd to expose him to danger, sometimes wishing him to fight with some barbarian, or with a Lion. But he perceiving his life aimed at, fled, and to retard the pursuers, killed all the Post-horses that hee found in the way: and so came safe to Britain, where hee found his aged Father sickly, who dyed not long after at Yorke the 13 year of his reign, the 63 of his life. Hee was deified by the Romans.

The Prætorian souldiers at Rome being bribed, declare *Maxentius* the son of *Herculeus* Emperor. Upon this *Herculeus* makes haste for Rome, hoping to be re-invested in the Empire, which he unwillingly lost; to that purpose writes letters to *Diocletian*, that he would reassume again his command and dignity, who returns this answer, that he found more pleasure in planting his pot-herbs, then ever he did in ruling over the Romans. But *Severus Cæsar* is sent by *Galerius* to Rome, to appeale the Prætorians; and *Maxentius*. He sits downe with his army before the city: but his souldiers forsake him, and join with *Maxentius*. *Severus* betakes himself to *Ravenna*: but *Maximianus* cunningly inticed him to come forth, whom he carries to Rome, where he is put to death. After this *Maximianus* in a full assembly went about to discover his sonnes nakednesse, and to shew how weak he was, and unfit for Government; but for his labour he was railed at by the souldiers. Thence he went to Gallia to *Constantine*, to whom hee had given his daughter *Fausta* in marriage; pretending that hee was banished by his sonne; and that hee was desirous to live with *Constantine*; but indeed his intent was to kill him; which his daughter *Fausta* perceived, and acquainted her husband with it. Whereupon hee flies to *Maffilia*, intending to saile to his sonne, but by the command of his sonne in law, hee was there strangled, yet others thinke, hee dyed of a loathsome disease, as I shewed before.

About this time *Licinius* the Dacian was made Emperor by *Galerius*, who dyed shortly after, having reigned Emperor 13 years. For having left *Licinius* to rule the Illyrians and Thracians, hee went to Rome to suppress *Maxentius*; but finding him strongly maintained by the souldiers, whom he bribed, and fearing his own souldiers would be bribed to betray him, departed out of Italy, and shortly after died of an incurable wound, his genitals being putrefied, and his whole body eat up with Vermine. Hee was told by his Physicians (many of whom he killed out of impatience of his paines) that his disease was incurable: he finding himselfe checkt in conscience for murthering so many Christians, repealed his edicts against them, set them all at liberty, and recommended himself to their prayers, and so dyed. About these times Pope *Marcellinus*, *Serena* *Diocletians* wife, *S. Catharine*, *Lucianus* who was the seventh that turned the Bible into Greek, and many more suffered martyrdom. In the Councell of Rome consisting of 300 Bishops. *Marcellinus* condemned himselfe for offering incense to Idols. *Donatus* the Numidian storming that *Cacilianus* was preferred to him in the Bishoprick of Carthage, broached his schism, which in a short time became an heretic: he objected against *Cacilianus*, that he was one of them who delivered up the Bible to be burned, but he was absolved by *Constantine*. *Theophilus* was made the first bishop of the Goths.

Of the Roman affaires under Constantine, Maxentius, Maximinus, and Licinius. 2. Of the Christian persecutions, and forraign affaires, during that time.

**C**onstantine was the sonne of *Constantius Chlorus*, and *Helena*, not a Bithynian as some think, but a Britain, he with *Maxentius*, *Licinius*, and *Maximinus* ruled the Empire. *Alexander* who had then a command in Afric, would have been a fift Emperor, he was a Pannonian, and of mean parentage, but *Rufus Volusianus* being sent by *Maxentius* did quickly suppress him. So Africa was now exposed to the fury of *Maxentius* who raged in Carthage, and all about with fire and sword. At first he shewed some favour to Christians, but being confirmed in his Empire, he persecuted them with as great fury, as ever did his predecessors. Neither Virgins nor Matrons could escape the fury of his lust, but such as fled, or dyed. He abused many noble women, and then sent them back to their husbands. He studied magick, and to that purpose he cut up the bowels of divers children, and ript up the bellies of many mothers.

After the East had rested a while from persecution, upon the recantation of *Galerius* his successor, *Maximinus* fell with fresh fury on the Christians, imputing to them all the miseries that had fallen on the Empire; and recriminating them with pollutions and abominations whereof they were no way guilty; he commanded all the Idol Temples to be repaired, their sacrifices renewed, and the Christian religion to be quite banished. But by Divine Justice it came to passe, that plagues, famine, and usuall diseases never raged in the world so much as now, that Christians are persecuted, who notwithstanding the miseries they endured did shew the fruites of their Religion, by burying the dead bodies of their enemies, which lay scattered up and down the streets. But the Armenians by force of armes compelled *Maxentius* to permit them the free exercise of Christian religion. After this *Maxentius* exercised his cruell and barbarous nature against the Nobility of Rome and Italy, which *Constantine* understanding, resolves to ease the Empire of such a tyrant. Wherefore having quieted Gallia, to make himself the stronger, he marryeth his sister to *Licinius*; *Diocletian* was invited by these two Emperors to the wedding; but he excused himself by reason of his age and weakness. Upon this denyall he receiveth menacing letters, shewing that he favoured *Maximinus* and *Maxentius*, whereupon he fearing some disgracefull death, poisoned himself, as was said. He was an ambitious and proud man, as may be seen by assuming to himself Divine honors, and by changing the ancient computation of years, causing the accompt begin from the first year of his reign, this was called *Ara Diocletiani*, and continued 248 yeares. Yet hee was a fearfull man, chiefly of thunder and lightning, with which notwithstanding his Palace was set on fire.

*Constantine* hastneth to Rome, the noise of whose approach affrighted *Maxentius*. Yet an Army is sent to retard *Constantines* march, at Verona the two Armies meet: *Maxentius* lost the day; who was little troubled, either at the loss of his Army, or the disaster of his father; at last with much adoe, he ventures with a fresh Army against *Constantine*, 9 miles from the City, who obtains a second victory; *Maxentius* flying back to Rome, and entring upon a bridge of boates, over the river, his horse stumbled, and he fell into the water, where he was drowned with the weight of his armour, and scarce could his body be found in the mud. The same fate befell his guard and Courtiers. Thus dyed he in the 6. year of his reign. His Armie consisted of 170000 Foot, and 18000 Horse, whereas *Constantines* were not half so many. The report of this overthrow was not at first beleevied in the City, till *Maxentius* his head was brought in upon a pole; then there was great joy; for both Senators and people were delivered from the massacre intended by the Prætorian Guard upon them; which murder was plotted by

by *Maxentius*, and should have been executed by his souldiers, whom *Constantine* for this put to the sword, and destroyed their fortifications.

Whilest *Constantine* was in doubt whether he should go against *Maxentius* or not, there appeared to him about noon, the sign of the Crosse in the air, and on it these words ingraven, *In this thou shalt overcome*: which sign the next night Christ himself confirmed by his own presence to *Constantine*, bidding him make use of this sign against his enemy. Upon this victory edicts are sent abroad for the free exercise of Christian religion. *Maximinus* in the east hearing of his fellow tyrants death, out of fear desisted from persecuting of the Christians, yet he did not permit their assemblies. But *Licinius* in a short time delivered the Church from this oppressor; for understanding that his souldiers had forsaken him; he pursues him from Illyricum to Thracia, and from thence to Cilicia, where he shuts him up within Tharsus; there he dyed the third year of his reign, of a loathsome disease; in which hee lost his sight, and his body stunk like a dead carcase, before hee was dead. Thus the Church is freed of seven tyrants, to wit, *Diocletian*, *Maximianus*, *Galerius Maximinus*, *Maxentius*, *Valerius Maximinus*, *Severus*, *Galerius* his Colleague, and *Alexander* tyrant of Africa, there remains only *Licinius* with his Colleagues; but not long.

*Licinius* giving too much heed to Magicians and Soothsayers, began first to inhibit the meeting of Bishops; then prohibited women to come to Church, commanding them to be instructed at home by those of their own sex, shortly after he shuts up all the Churches, cashieres all Christians in his Armies, and banisheth them from his Court. At last he embrewed his sword with the blood of Bishops. He overthrew the Church at Amasena in Pontus, and cut some Confessors in peeces, then flung them into the Sea. He hated learning, and scholars, chiefly Lawyers and Philosophers, calling letters the poison and plague of the State. He was friendly to none, except to husbandmen, from whom he descended, and soothsayers, who soothed him up with promises of great happiness. Yet this was commendable in him, that he kept the souldiers in good order; that he hated catamites and flatterers, calling them the rats and moths of the Palace. Many Christians fled to *Constantine*, who both maintained Christianity and learning, being a scholar himselfe. He abolished the punishment of crucifixion, and breaking of legs. He suppressed all oppression and tyranny; he wrote kinde letters to *Licinius*, desiring him to be favourable to Christians, according to the league made between them: he was proudly answered, that he had no reason to meddle with his part of the Empire. Whereupon *Constantine* with his son *Crispus*, marched against *Licinius* in Thracia, where neer Odrissa, since called Adrianopolis, he defeated him, from thence *Licinius* flies to Bythia in Asia, and raiseth a new army, which *Constantine* overthrew by the power of Christ, the representation of whose Crosse he carried still in his Banners, and on his Coin.

*Licinius* sends his wife *Constantines* sister to procure his pardon, which was granted, conditionally; that he should live privately with his wife at Thessalonica. But *Valens* whom *Licinius* had chosen for his Colleague, was put to death by *Constantine*. *Zosimus* writes; that *Constantine* not only pardoned, but also received him again as Co-Emperor, and named his sonne *Licinius* fellow *Cesar*, and successour with his owne sonnes *Crispus* and *Constantine*. But six yeares after, this peace was broken, and *Licinius* driven out of Thracia into Chalcedon, where he chose *Martinianus* for his *Cesar*. And as *Eusebius* writes, they were both overthrown by *Constantine*, who having received his imperi-  
all robe sent by his wife, pardoned him again, and sent him to Thessalonica; whereupon new commotions raised by him and his Colleague *Martinianus*, they were both put to death. *Licinius* reigned about 15 yeares, and lived almost 60. About these times the Christian Religion was much propagated through Scotland, by means of the Brittaines who fled thither to avoid the fury of *Diocletian*. But Christianity was embraced in Scotland above 100 yeares afore this, by *Donaldus* their first Christian King, in the year of Christ 199. about the time that *Severus* came over to Britaine, to suppress the Scots and Picts, which had made



*An. Mundi* made divers incursions upon the Roman Territories there, and had committed great slaughter upon them. For which cause he was forced to build a wall and fortifications to keep out these Northern Brittaines, a people free, and no ways disposed to receive the Roman yolk.

## The third Book OF THE SECOND PART,

INTREATING  
Of the times from **CONSTANTINE** the Great,  
till **CHARLES** the Great, containing 476 Yeares.

### CHAP. I.

The life, actions and death of Constantine the Great. 2. The history of his four  
sonnes. 3. The affaires of the Church under these Emperors.

4294.  
A.C. 324.



HE Church hitherto Militant, begins now to be Triumphant, which being delivered from a longer captivity, then that of Babel, is setled by a greater Captain then *Zorobabel*; *Constantine* the great Eagle carries this woman upon his two wings into the wilderness, or state of rest and security. Now Religion listeth up her head, the Temples are opened for the true God, at whose presence Idolatry like *Dagon* falls to the ground; Bishops and Doctors, chiefly those that suffered are highly rewarded; controversies are silenced; therefore *Constantine* gives order for calling of Councils, and will himselfe hear the difference between *Cacilian* and *Donatus*, by his Deputies who absolve *Cacilian* and condemne the turbulent spirit of *Donatus*, and his sect. *Constantine* compelled no man to embrace Christianity; yet suffered none to commit Idolatry: he would have Christ to be professed freely, not by constraint. He will not use that bloudy course against Pagans which they used against Christians. Furious reformers of Religion, are the successors of *Discolletian*, not of *Constantine*. But this fair day of the Churches peace was quickly overcast by the black cloud of Arianisme, which like a sparkle being kindled at Alexandria by *Arius* Presbyter, there did spread it selfe soon after into a flame through Egypt, Lybia, and the rest of the world. The Emperour willing to quench this fire betimes, sends *Osus* Bishop of Corduba, with letters, desiring them to study more piety, and lesse controversie, lest they become a mocking stock to the Infidels. But seeing he could not thus prevail, he calls a Councell at Nicea in Bithynia of 318 Bishops, besides innumerable Presbyters and Deacons. *Sylvester* the Pope by reason of his age could not be there, but sent his Deputies. *Constantine* sitting down in his gilded Throne, exhorted them, to decide the controversy by Scripture, and to lay aside all emulation and strife. In the end *Arius* is condemned and banished; and the eternall consubstantiality of the Son of God with his Father is confirmed. The controversie also about Easter is abolished, and it is commanded to be kept, the first Sunday still, after the Equinoctiall full Moon, and not with the Jewes, the 14 day of the Moon. All other controversies between

the Bishops he ended by flinging the papers in the fire. He commanded the Lords day to be observed, he put downe the *Gladiators*, and would not suffer any Christian to be slave to a Jew. He did not permit the Governours of Provinces to infringe the Bishops Decrees and Canons. He caused the Church goods to be restored, which were held by the city, and many other excellent laws he made in favour of Testators, Orphans, and Virgins. He alwayes heard Sermons standing, acknowledging thereby what reverence was due to Gods Word.

After the overthrow of *Arius*, *Constantine* celebrates the 20 yeare of his reigne, and entertaines the Bishops with a great Feast, on whom he bestowed gifts. He kissed the scars of *Paphnutius* Bishop of Thebais, and of *Spiridion* bishop of Cyprus, calling them blessed that were wounded for Christ. It was this *Paphnutius* that stood up in the Councell in defence of the married Clergy. *Constantine* reproved *Acepius* bishop of the Novatians, for denying the Communion to those that had fallen, and wished him to set up a ladder, and climbe up himselfe alone to heaven. But the Arians did not cease to spew out their malice against the Orthodox, by false accusations, whereas other wayes they could not hurt them. In the mean time *Constantine* gives order to pull down the chappell of *Venus*, built over the Holy Sepulchre, and in lieu thereof to erect a Temple to our Saviour; and a town, which he called new Jerusalem. His mother *Helena* built churches in the places of Christs Nativity and Ascension. Shee searched and found the Holy Crosse, by which miracles were wrought. At last having done much good, she dyed being 80 yeares old.

*Crispus* was *Constantines* eldest son, who being falsely accused by his stepmother *Fausta*, that he would have ravished her, is by his Fathers command put to death, and she afterward being found guilty of this murder, is killed in a scalding bath. Hee caused also *Licinius* his sisters son to be slain. Then he repaires and beautifies Byzantium, and calls it from his own name *Constantinople*, and having translated thither many Noble Families, and wealth from Rome, and erected magnificent buildings and Temples there, it was called new Rome: he builds again the wals which by *Severus* 130 yeares before were thrown down; and gives the same privileges to new Rome, which old Rome had. This he did in hatred to Romes greatnesse and Idolatry; and because this city lay fit for the suppressing the Goths; and Sarmatians: but it was impolitically done to weaken the old seat of the Empire, and Italy which lay so fit for Dominion. He adorned also *Nicomedia*, *Hebron*, and *Antiochia* and other places. He caused Idolatry to be suppressed, and Idols to be thrown downe, and hereticall conventicles to be abolished: hee subdued the Scythians and made them tributaries, and likewise the *Sarmatae* or *Sarmatians*, *Indians*, *Ethiopians*, and *Persians* honour him with presents. *Hormisdas* the Persian king fled to him for aid. He upon spleen of his Nobility was put by his right, being the eldest son, and cast in chains; the younger brother was made king: but *Hormisdas* wife delivered him, by sending him a fish, and in it a file; wherewith he filed off his fetters, and in the clothes of an Eunuch passed unknown through the drunken guard, and so got to Armenia, and from thence had a convoy to *Constantine*: who had sent to *Sapores* the old Persian King to surcease persecuting the christians, as he did, upon the instigation of Jews and Magitians, he killed above 16000 Christians.

*Constantine* in his latter dayes began to waver, for the Arian faction wrought upon his sister *Constantia*, the wife of *Licinius*, and she upon him, to recall *Arius* from banishment. *Eusebius* also bishop of *Nicomedia*, with other Arians falsely accused *Athanasius* successor to *Alexander* in *Alexandria*, and in a councell held at *Tyrus* condemned him, with *Eustachius* bishop of *Antioch*, whom they falsely accused of adultery. *Athanasius* is banished to *Treviri*, but by a Synod of 80 bishops in Egypt, he is absolved from the Arians unjust sentence, who condemned him for a magitian: but *Arius* having fraudulently subscribed and sworne to the Nicene creed, having another under his arm, was received by the Emperor, and order given to *Alexander* bishop of *Constantinople* to receive him publicly in the church there, seeing the Alexandrians refused to communicate with him: A.C. 336.

but



*An. Mundi* but the next day as *Arius* was going in pomp towards the church, he stept aside to ease himself, and in the privy, his guts and soul went together. He dyed belike of a rupture; this was it that *Alexander* in his prayers did so earnestly desire the night before.

4307.  
A.C. 337.

*Constantine* had three sonnes besides *Crispus* whom the stepmother *Fausta* the daughter of *Maxentius* murdered, that her own sonnes might succeed; the eldest *Constantinus* was made *Cesar* the 10 year of his Fathers reign; *Constans* the second son in the 20 year, and *Constantius* the youngest in the 30. In lieu of *Crispus* unjustly slain, and much lamented by *Helena* his Grandmother, and the whole city. The good old Emperor having celebrated the marriage of his sonne *Constantinus*, and answered the Embassadors of India and Iberia, as he was going against the Persians, and was baptized in the Suburbs of Nicomedia, departed this life the 63 of his age, and the 32 years of his Empire. His death was foretold by a comet, his body was interred with great solemnity in the Apostles Church which he built at Constantinople. He was much lamented by the Romans, such was his piety that he taught his armies to pray, and gave them a set forme of his own making. He caused his Image to be stampd on his coin, in the gesture of one kneeling and praying to Christ: In his time *Meletius* bishop, for his misdemeanours was degraded, and then out of spleen became Arian. *Clodomerus* King of the Franks invaded Gallia, the two Feasts of exaltation and invention of the Crosse were instituted. The Irish are converted by the preaching of St. Patrick. Christianity increaseth in India, Iberia and Armenia.

4310.  
A.C. 340.

*Constantine* a little before his death, upon the importunity of the souldiers made *Dalmatius* his brothers sonne *Cesar* also; but by the same souldiers he was oppressed, and so the Empire was divided betwene the three brothers. *Constantine* the eldest had for his share Spain, Gallia the Alpes and Britain, *Constans* (whom others call *Constantius* confounding the names) had Italy, Afric, Græcia, and Illyria. *Constantius* or *Constans* obtained the East. *Constantine* having restored *Athanasius*, as his father had ordered, quarrelled with his brother about Italy and Afric, and was overthrown by *Constans* his army; having received many wounds 30 as he fell from his horse neer Aquileja, and is slung into the river Alfa, the 3 year of his reign, the 25 of his age. *Constans* was at first a valiant and just Emperor, but after growing gowty, he began lascivious and cruell. He subdued the Franks oppressing Gallia: he maintained *Athanasius* and the Nicene creed: but one day as he was hunting, *Chrestianus*, *Marcellinus* and *Magnentius*, conspire against him, and murder him. Ungratefull *Magnentius* forgot that one time *Constans* saved his life, by casting his robe over him, when the souldiers would have killed him. *Constans* dyed the 13 year of his reign, he had been *Cesar* 3 years before his fathers death, he was 27 years old, some say 30. *Magnentius* made himselfe Emperor of the East. *Vetranus* Generall of the Illyrian and Pannonian Forces, invaded the 40 Empire on that side, but *Constantius* by an eloquent speech hee made to both the armies ready to fight, made *Vetranus* lay down his command, the 10 month after he had taken it up, and content himselfe with a private life. At Rome *Nepotianus* sitters sonne of *Constantine* the Great, having slaine the Governour of the city is made Emperor in such a tumult, that the streets ranne with blood, and all places were filled with dead bodies. The Persians also invaded the Empire.

4320.  
A.C. 350.

*Constantius* finding how unable he was alone to manage the Empire, makes *Gallus* his cousen German *Cesar*, and marryeth to him *Constantina* his sister, who had been marryed to *Annibalianus* Governour of Armenia. *Magnentius* also makes 50 his kinsman *Decentius Cesar*, beyond the Alpes. These having many times skirmished, at last encountred with all their strength neer Mursia, where *Magnentius* the Gaul is defeated, having lost 36000 men, and *Constantius* 30000. This victory was deer bought, for by the losse of so many men, the Empire was much weakened, so that the barbarous Nations could not be kept out. *Magnentius* fled to Lions, where he killed himselfe with his own sword, the 4 year of his Empire; and about the 50 of his age. *Decentius* hearing of his overthrow and death, strangled

4323.  
A.C. 353.

led himself. *Gallus Cesar* quieted the Jewes who would have made them a new King; he killed many thousand of them, and burned Cefarea, and Tiberias. This *Gallus* was of a fierce and bloody disposition; so was his wife. They caused many innocent men to be murdered, upon false accusations of informers, he thought she might doe any thing, being the Emperors sister. But they both were invited by flattering letters to come to *Constantius*. She feared her brothers cruelty, yet adventured to see him; but having come to Bithynia, she fell sick of a Feaver and dyed, *Gallus* was apprehended at Pola a town of Istria, where he was accused of all his cruelties; he laid the blame of al upon his wife; but there he was beheaded, the 4 year of his tyranny.

4324.  
A.C. 354.

*Silvanus* was chosen in his room by *Constantius*; he was a Gaul by birth, but of an aspiring nature, who aiming too high was killed by the souldiers, within a month of his advancement. *Constantius* having now no Competitor, begins to exercise his cruelty, accusing many, as if guilty of plotting with *Magnentius*, *Gallus*, and *Sylvanus* against him. He banisheth also many Orthodox Bishops. And because the Franks, Alemans, Saxons, and Quadi made irruptions upon Gallia, he chose *Claudius Fulianus* the brother of *Gallus*, and having sent for him from Athens, makes him *Cesar*: and gave him command over the Transalpin countries, he subdued the barbarous Nations thereabout; and took king *Chonodomarius* prisoner: and regained the ancient bounds of the Empire. He took also prisoner *Badomarius* chief King of the Alemans. He defeated the Saxons and Quadi; upon this he is proclaimed *Augustus* by the Army. *Constantius* by Embassadors counsells him to content himselfe with the title of *Cesar*; who replies that he will be no lesse officious and obedient, under the high title of *Augustus* then before.

*Constantius* overcame the Sarmatians, who had over run Illyricum, but having no successe against the Persians, and understanding that *Fulian* was marching against him with an Army, out of impatience and long watchings, fell into a violent feaver and dyed, at Mesocrene neer the foot of mount Taurus, having reigned 24 years, 8 alone, 16 with his brother & *Magnentius*. He had fought 9 battels with the Persians, but with little successe: the last was lost by the wilfulnesse of his souldiers. He was a good archer, temperate in dyet and sleep, a good scholar; and one that could indure hard labour. Not much given to venery, contenting himself with his wives, chiefly *Eusebia*. Hee favoured the Arians, being induced thereto by the same Presbyter that wrought upon Great *Constantines* sister. He was 41 years old when he dyed; his genius that was wont to be cheerfull with him, a little before his sickness looked sad upon him.

In his time *Athanasius* was much vexed by the Arian Bishops, for returning to his charge without Episcopall approbation; for bringing into the Church the word *Consubstantiall* not found in Scripture. He to avoid *Constantius* his fury, flies to Pope *Fulius* at Rome; in his absence one *George* sits down in his chair at Alexandria: and *Eusebius* at Antioch in a conventicle of 80 bishops, expels the word *consubstantiall*, and possesseth the chair of Constantinople, which belonged to *Paulus* the true bishop. But after his death *Paul* is received again by the Catholics; but *Macedonius* is ordained by the Arians, and ratified by the Emperor, who sent *Hermogenes* with some Forces to thrust out *Paul*. But the people killed the captain, and burned downe his house. For this sedition the city is fined, *Paul* banished, and *Macedonius* with the losse of 3000 citizens gets up into the chair. By the favour of *Constans* and Pope *Fulius*, *Athanasius* returns to Alexandria, and is banished the third time, being accused for converting the Poors corn to his own use. He flies to *Constance*, and desires a free Synod. His fellow-sufferer *Paul*, by the Arians malice perished in his exile: and *Macedonius* himselfe, who held the Holy Ghost to be the servant only of the Father, and the Sonne, was shortly expelled by the Arians, because he would not call the Son of God a creature.

*Constans* calls a Synod of 300 Westerns, and 800 Eastern Bishops at Sardica in Thracia, in which *Athanasius* is absolved by the Western bishops, and is again

*An. Mundi* gain restored to his charge, to the grief of the Eastern Cleargy: but *Constantine* being dead, *Constantius* was much abused by the Arian bishops, chiefly by *Valens*, who prayed with *Constantius*, whilest his Army was fighting with *Magnentius*, and got him the first news of the victory; he with divers others, still waited on the Emperor, soliciting him against the Catholicks; whom *George* waited at Alexandria did eagerly persecute. *Photinus* bishop of Syrmium is condemned by a Councell held there, for giving Christ no other beginning but from *Mary*. *Atius* and his scholar *Eunomius*, dissent in this from the Arians in denying Christ to be like his Father. A Synod is called by *Constantius* at Millan in which Pope *Liberius*, *Hilarius* bishop of Poytures with divers others are banished for not subscribing to the unjust sentence against *Athanasius*. But the Arians dissenting among themselves, & with the Orthodox gave occasion of calling another Synod at Ariminum in Italy of 400 bishops. But there could be no reconciliation on. Whereupon a Synod is called at Seleucia, in which much di-gladiation there was about the word *ὁμοιός* or like; whether was meant the similitude of essence or of will. But nothing could be agreed upon, wherefore the Arians fly to Constantinople, and forced many Orthodox bishops to receive that fallacious Symbol, which was compiled in the Synod of Seleucia, in which the word *usia*, or substance was put out, and concluded that the Son was like the Father, and that he was not a creature like other creatures: but some who refused to subscribe were banished. *Hilarius* is sent back to France, as being found too hard a disputant for the eastern bishops.

About this time *Apollinaris* starts up, affirming that the Word assumed the flesh, but not the soul, or minde, and that God was the mind or soul of the flesh assumed. *Constantius* was a great enemy to superstition; he punished all that consulted with cunning men or witches. He removed out of the Forum, the image of *Cybele*. Many Jews were converted to Christ upon the sight of a fiery crosse in the air, reaching from Golgotha to Mount Olivet.

## CHAP. II.

of Julian, Jovinian, Valentinian, and Valens. 2. Of the Church, and forraign affaires.

433 I. A.C. 361. **F**lavins Claudius, Julianus the sonne of *Constantius Constantine* the Greats brother, whose mother was *Basilina* a Noble Lady. In his youth he was bred a Christian under the bishop of Nicomedia, and for his pregnant wit and eloquence was made reader in the church. He was studious and expert in the Greek tongue. But being too familiar with *Libanius* the Sophister, with *Fam-blicus*, *Maximus*, and other Philosophers, hee became a heathen, a magician, a persecutor of Christians, and a right Apostate. He used to diffame great *Constantine*, calling him an innovator and disturber of the ancient lawes. He put none to death for religion, but pretended other causes: hee shut up all schools of learning among Christians, knowing that learning was an enemy to Gentilism. He opened the Idolatrous Temples, and commanded sacrifices there to be offered. He stamp upon his coin *Jupiter*, setting the crown on his head, *Pallas* putting on his cloak, and *Mercury* giving him the scepter. He robbed the church of her revenues, telling the Clergy that they should be the fitter for heaven, because it is written, *Blessed be the poore*. He suffered no military honours to be conferred on Christians. He writ invectives against Christian Religion, which *Nazianzen* and *Cyrill* refused. He would not permit Christian children to learn Rhetorick, fearing lest they might wound the Gentiles with their own quills. He incouraged the Jewes in hatred of Christianity, to set up again their owne State and religion, promising them great immunities and priviledges. Upon this the Jewes began to rebuild the Temple, but they were faine to give off by reason of thunder, hail, fire, and earthquakes which destroyed many thousands of them. Where ever

ever they cast their eyes they saw crosses on their garments and tables; the Delphic Temple also, was much about this time overthrown with thunder and earthquakes, as *Julian* was sending thitherto know by the Oracle what successe he should have against the Persians. It had been overthrown before and spoiled 4 times, namely by the Phlegians. 2. by *Xerxes* his souldiers. 3. by the *Phocenses* 4. by *Brennus*, but still it was rebuilt again; by the overthrow of these two Temples, Judaism, and Gentilism were deadly wounded.

It's recorded of *Julian* (whom *Athanasius* called a cloud soon vanishing) that in private he put divers Christians to death for their religion: among the rest 10 *Artemius* Governour of Egypt, which made the Alexandrians fall furiously upon *George* their Arian Bishop, and murder him. This *George* had used to inveigh bitterly against them, to make sport with the skulls of the murdered Catholicks; tricks fitter for a Turkish turban, then a Bishops miter. *Julian* threatened to revenge this murder of *George*, but was taken off with fair words, and the Persian war: which he was preparing for. Understanding that *Apollo* could utter no Oracle, because the christians had buryed some of their Martyrs nere to him, he caused their bodies and reliques to be removed, the people in the interim singing that of the Psalmist: *Confoundd bee all they that worship graven Images*. At which *Julian* was vexed inwardly, but could not helpe 20 it, but vowed to sacrifice the blood of christians to his Gods, if he prevailed against the Persians. About this time also *Apollo's* Temple at Rome was burned down.

*Sapores* who was made King before he was born, 24 years of age, made irruptions upon the Empire. *Julian* with 65000 souldiers tooke divers Forts and Towns from the Persian, and wasted all Assyria. Having crossed the river Tigris, he burnt his boats, as if he had conquered all: but being brought into an ambush by a fugitive, where he was beset with famine and Persian armies, was shot in the liver, by an unknown hand; he in a rage flinging the blood of his wound in the air, cries out, *Thou hast overcome mee O Galilean*, and so dyed 30 the 31 year of age, having reigned alone 1 year, 8 months, and 10 yeares with *Constantius*. His wife was *Helena* great *Constantins* daughter, of whom hee had no children, her Matrix being poysoned by *Eusebia* the Empreffe, so hee dyed childlesse. *Marius* bishop of Chalcedon was blind, whom *Julian* mockingly told him, that he could not have so much as eyes from his Christ. *I thank Christ for it* (saith he) *for so I shall not see thee, who art the great plague of the world*. *Athanasius* after the death of *George* was restored againe to Alexandria; but presently was forced to hide himself a while from *Julian's* fury, in which time he compiled his excellent Symbol. *Nazianzen* writes of *Julian*, that he was unstable in his head, eyes, and feet; at first he exhorted them to agree among themselves, and not to trouble themselves with points of Religion, but to let every one enjoy his owne opinion. He restored to the Donatists their churches again.

*Jovinian* or *Jovian* succeeded, he was chosen for his fathers sake *Varonianus* a Noble Pannonian, and who had done good service. *Jovinian* was a good christian, a bountifull Prince, and a handsome man. He was forced upon the ill successe of *Julian* to make a dishonourable peace with the Persian, upon these articles. 1. That five regions beyond Tigris with some castles should be surrendered to the Persian. 2. That Nisibis and Singara, which the Romans held ever since *Mithridates* till now, should be delivered to the Persian, but not the inhabitants. 3. That the Romans should not aid *Arfaces* King of Armenia the greater against the Persians; this Article was hard, being this King was alwayes faithful to the Romans; but they were forced to yeeld, because the Army was much weakened with famine and war in that hostile and barren countrey. Hee would not take upon him the Empire, till the whole Army had declared themselves Christians, for many of them in *Julians* time had apostatized. He shut up all the Idol Temples again, and restored the true worship of God, with the churches revenues, and *Valentinian* (who had been banished) to his former charge of the Army

*An. Mundi* Army. He recalled the banished Bishops, chiefly *Athanasius*, to whom he wrote for a copy of that truth in Religion which he was to follow. Upon this *Athanasius* calls a Synod at Alexandria, where the sum of the Catholick Faith was compiled, and sent to the Emperour.

As the Emperour was returning from Persia, the *Semi-Arian* Macedonian hereticks met him, crying out against the Arians, and striving to insinuate themselves into his favour, but he rejected them, professing that hee would give no ear to contentions. *Acacius* the great Arian, Bishop of Cæsarea, who had been a great stickler for Arianism, is now (but hypocritically) content to subscribe to the Nicæan Creed in the Councell of Antioch held by *Meletius* Bishop there, who was lately returned from exile: his example was followed by divers other Arian bishops, more out of fear to the Emperour, then love to the truth. *Jovianian* could abide no disputes in Religion, but advanced those who were moderate and peaceable men. He dyed in Illyricum suddenly of a surfeit the 8 month of his Empire, and of his age the 33 year. In his time *Viphras* the Arian Bishop of the Goths found out the Gothic letters, and was the first who turned the Bible into the Gothic tongue. He was interred neer to the Capitol, and his obsequies kept in Pannonia; before his death a comet appeared, and the Library at Antioch was burned.

4334.  
A. C. 364.

*Valentinian* the first succeeded, he had been Tribune of the souldiers under *Julian*, who casheered him for striking a heathen Priest, that besprinkled him with Holy water in the Church porch, as *Julian* was sacrificing to his Idol. But *Jovianian* restored him. He was a Pannonian born, his fathers name was *Gratian*, who was so strong that five souldiers could not with all their strength wring a rope out of his hand, which he had then to sell. The Army urged *Valentinian* to choose a consort, one told him, that if he loved his kindred, he had a brother, if the State, he should seek out some other. This speech angered him, but hee said nothing till he came to Constantinople, and then pronounced *Valens* Co-Emperour: no man daring to oppose him, they two deposed most of *Julians* officers. About this time the barbarous Nations on all sides invaded the Empire, the Picts Saxones, Scots, and Attacots, (a Nation in the South of Scotland, or North of England) fell upon the Brittaines, the Persians on Armenia, the Alemans on Gallia, the Sarmatians on Pannonia, the Goths on Thracia, and the Maurisci on Africa. Upon this *Valentinian* sets up his seat at Millan, *Valens* at Constantinople, where he was infected by *Eudoxus* the Arian bishop, from thence he removed to Antioch, where he cast the Catholicks out of their churches. *Petronius* his Father in law did so pole the people with extortions that they set up one *Procopius* to be Emperour of Constantinople, Armies are raised, and Bithynia is taken. The Thracians and Goths are invited to side with them. The posthume daughter of *Constantine*, the Emperour is carried about the Army, as if this new Emperour intended her good: *Cilgus* is taken, but when *Procopius* should have fought with *Valens*, his souldiers forsook him, and he was brought to *Valens*, who gave order hee should lose his head, and be quartered, many also of his side suffered with him: thus ended that civill broil.

At this time a great schism was in Rome, about the election of the Pope *Damasus* and *Vysicianus* striving for it; the facton was so great, that many were killed; at last *Damasus* carried it. He was the first that authorised the Latin Version before the Greek: but the Clergy retained their old Psalms; he caused the Creed of Constantinople to be sung in stead of the Nicen. *Lucifer* bishop of Sardinia brought a schism into the church, for refusing to admit those Arians into the Priesthood, who had renounced their errors. *Ambrose* then translated from the Greek into the Latin church the singing of hymnes and Anti-hymnes, he was made bishop, being Governour of Millan, for he being commanded by *Valentinian* to suppress the sedition that was risen about the election, he himselfe was elected by the approbation of all.

4337.  
A. C. 367. After *Valentinian* had suppressed the Alemans, and was recovered from a desperate sicknesse, he named his young sonne *Gratianus* Emperour: so now are three

three Emperours. Hee began to be a rigorous punnisher of every small offence in the Army. He suppressed the Scots and Picts incursions upon the Britains: whom still they vexed in the Romans absence. He subdued the *Randon* the Aleman, and fortified the Rhene. *Valens* also suppressed the Persians, and killed their King *Arshaces*. At Rome *Maximinus* rageth upon all sorts of people. One *Theodorus* at Antioch foretold that the foure first letters of his name did belong to *Gratians* successour, meaning *Theodosius*, but this *Theodorus* with some other Mathematicians were burned, and divers Philosophers beheaded, *Jamblicus* poysoned himselfe. For *Valens* rashly condemned all such learning, not discriminating between good and bad, nocent and innocent. In the West *Valentinian* did so oppress the people with taxes and tributes, that the Mauritanians rebelled and made one *Firmus* their Emperour, whom in divers battels *Theodosius* defeated. This *Firmus* flying to the neighbor king *Igmazanes* for help, but finding none, killed himselfe. The Quadi also rebelled because Garrisons were placed beyond Isther, and *Gabinus* the king was slain by *Cadestius Perca* at a feast treacherously; therefore they fell upon Pannonia, and had almost taken the daughter of *Constantius*, who was going to be marryed to *Gratian*, if *Mesala* Governour of Pannonia had not by post brought her back to Syrmium. The Sarmatians also breake out, but they were to be beaten by *Theodosius* then a young man; that they were forced to beg for pardon and peace from *Valentinian*, excusing themselves, that this insurrection was not caused by the Nobility, but by the countrey people, who were angry at the new erected Garrisons. *Valentinian* in a violent passion reproved them for this frivolous excuse, and their ingratitude, and upon the vehement stirring of his spirit fell into a Feaver, and within few dayes dyed, having reigned about 15 years, and lived 55.

*Valentinian* had two wives, *Severa* the mother of *Gratian*, and *Fusina* mother of *Valentinian* the second. This being as yet but 4 yeares old is made Emperour; of that part, by the Army which might be indangered without a head, seeing *Valens* and *Gratian* were far off, and could not help them. So he is Emperour of Italy, and Afric, and Illyricum. In the mean while the Hunns an unknown people beyond Maotis towards the frozen Sea, having no settled aboad, nor houses, nor lands, but lived in waines, made a sudden incursion upon the confines of Isther: so that the Goths and Scythians implore *Valens* for aid. He unwisely receives these barbarians within the Roman territories, who being pinched with famine, in great multitudes passe over the Danow, and enters Thracia with their Armes, which they were commanded to deliver up, when they petitioned for help: but *Maximus* and the other Roman Governours were carelesse. *Valens* was forced to leave the Persian war, and to aid Thracia, which was oppressed by the Goths, to whose assistance there did flock all sorts of discontented persons: besides as *Gratian* was coming with an Army to aid his Uncle *Valens*, he was set upon by the Aleman forces, but *Gratian* defeated and killed 40000 of them. *Valens* unwilling that *Gratian* should have any share of his victory, would not stay for his assistance, but ventured with his Army upon the Goths, Alans, and Hunns, who defeated him, and at last burned him in a cottage, whither he had retired, to dresse his wound he received by an arrow. He lived almost 50 yeares, and reigned about 14. This, next to that of Cannæ, was the greatest blow that ever the Romans had; the Goths also lost abundance of men, both in this battell, and in their siege of Adrianapolis; hee was a cruell and an illiterate prince, who could indure any religion except the Orthodox. Which against his brothers will he persecuted. As he was subscribing an edict for banishing of *Basil* out of Cæsarea, his arm was taken with such a shaking, that he was forced to desist. He cruelly caused to be burned in a ship 80 Orthodox men, that were sent to petition for the free exercise of their faith. About this time dyed *Athanasius*, having bene bishop of Alexandria 46 years. In the time of *Constantius* he hid himselfe 6 years in a dark cave, where he saw not the Sun all the time of *Julian*, he hid himself in Alexandria, under *Valens* he lay hid 4 months in his fathers tomb. To him succeeded *Peter*, but because he was Orthodox, *Valens* thrust him out, and set up *Lucius* the Arian.

of Gratianus, Theodosius, Arcadius, Honorius, and Theodosius the younger.  
2. Of the Goths, Vandales, and other barbarous Nations. 3. The Church affairs of those times.

4349.

A. C. 379.

**G**ratianus was born at Syrmium, this was a learned and good Prince, who after the death of Valens called home the banished Catholicks. He would neither take the title nor habit of the High Priest, as others used to doe. He was moderate in his sleep, diet, and delights. He permitted liberty of conscience, except to the Manichees, Eunomians and Photinians: he sent for Theodosius out of Spain, and made him Co-Emperor, by whom he subdued the Alans, Huns, and Goths, Nations not touched by Alexander; and he overthrew them at such a time, when the Roman army was almost lost, and when the enemy had furnished themselves with the Roman horse and arms. Gratian reigned with his Father Valentinian 8 years, with his Uncle and brother three, with the same brother and Theodosius 4 years, with these and Arcadius 6 moneths. Theodosius was baptized at Thessalonica, and after his great victory in Thracia which he set free, entered Constantinople, and was made Emperor.

4350.

A. C. 380.

Valens had placed in divers towns of Asia, the sons of the chief Barbarians to be civilized and educated. These understanding of the great overthrow of their countrymen, resolved to sacrifice to their Ghosts, these towns they dwelt in, but were prevented by Julius who had the charge of them: for one day he assembled them all together, as if hee meant to reward them, and suddenly by the souldiers laid in ambush, slew them. Theodosius made much of the Fugitives, and mixed them with his own souldiers. He was a Prince endowed with as many virtues as ever any, and nothing inferior to Trajan his countryman, from whom he derived his pedigree, but hee exceeded Trajan in being more temperate, and lesse ambitious. His diet was simple, his apparell was plaine like others; his modesty was such, that hee forbid the marriage of cousin Germans. He was an enemy to all lasciviousnesse, not suffering women to play or sing at Feasts. He was learned, wise, diligent, sober, a hater of Cinnas, Marins, Sylla, and such like tyrants. He overthrew Idolatry, and established the true religion.

4353.

A. C. 383.

Gratian began to grow carelesse, and to prefer the Alans before the Roman souldiers, so that hee became hatefull to them. Maximus Theodosius his fellow souldier, angry that no honour was conferred on him, in Britain made himself Emperour, then passing over into France, Gratians souldiers being angry with him, entertained Maximus for their Generall, who driving him to Lyons, killed him, having lived 28 years. He was a good Oratour, whose Epistle to S. Ambrose, wherein hee professeth the Nicen Faith is yet extant. In his time Audeus in Syria, taught that God had a humane shape; his scholars were called Audeani and Anthropomorphites. To these were coetaneall the Messalians, called Euchites and Enthusiasts, who bragged much of prayer, and of the Spirit, in the interim living an idle life. Priscillianus then lived in Spain, who renewed the heresie of the Gnostics, he with his followers were banished out of Spain, and in Gallia being brought before Maximus Emperour, there were punished with death. The Messalians or Euchites were called Valentinians, because in his time they first appeared. Vigilantius and Jovinianus hereticks affirmed, that all sins were equall. The Saracens and Gothes turn Christians, but withall, Arians. Theodosius calls a Synod at Constantinople, where Macedonius is condemned, and the Divinity of the Holy Ghost asserted, then was the title of Patriarch first mentioned, and given to the four chief Bishops.

Gratian being dead, Theodosius chose his brother Valentinian the second, yet a child for his colleague. Justina his mother supplied his room, in his minority, she had a fair face, but a foul soul, infected with Arianism. Shee would have expelled Ambrose out of Millan, but he resisted the souldiers that were sent into the Church

Church to apprehend him, saying the Church was Gods House, not the Emperors. Maximus who had the charge of Britain, Gallia, and Germany, not content with this share aimed at Valentinians also, wherefore having past the Alpes, he drove Valentinian out of Italy, who fled to Theodosius for help, the rather because he had new married with Galla, the daughter of old Valentinian and Justina; for he had buried his former wife Placilla mother to Arcadius already created Augustus, and his brother Honorius. He resolves therefore by reason of this affinity with Valentinian, and the justnesse of this cause, to assist him. Andragathius Generall of Maximus his Forces, had fortified the passages of the Alpes, but hearing of Theodosius his preparation, forsakes the Alpes, and by a naval expedition, intends to prevent the enemy; Theodosius unexpectedly passeth the Alpes now open, falleth upon Aquileja, where Maximus thought himselfe secure, takes him, and kills him. Andragathius hearing that Maximus was slain, flings himself overboard into the Sea. So Valentinian recovered Italy and his Empire, and by the perswasion of Theodosius embraceth the Catholick Faith. Theodosius in his victory shewed great clemency in sparing Symmachus and others of Maximus his faction. Victor Maximus his sonne Generall of the French Forces was now dead, whereupon Valentinian repaires thither, and governed Gallia about 5 yeares. Theodosius goeth to Rome, and there shuts up the Idol Temples, and reformes many abuses. Valentinian at last by Eugenius his Secretary, and Arbogastus the Goth, Generall of his French Armies, was strangled at Vienna; because hee had casheered Arbogastus upon suspicion of treason. He told Valentinian to his face, that hee received no preferment from him, nor had hee power to casheer him, and so put himself out, and killed his Lord.

Arbogastus presuming on the souldiers favour raised a great Army, and declares Eugenius Emperour, who unwillingly accepted it, knowing hee should bee Emperour but in Title. These two intended to re-establish Idolatry: but Theodosius hearing of these great preparations, betakes himselfe to his prayers, then marcheth with his small army against the enemy, carrying the Croffe for his standard. Arbetion with a part of the enemies Forces went over to him. In the heat of the battell, a sudden whirlewinde fell upon the enemy, and beat the darts against themselves. Upon this the whole Army submitted to Theodosius, for whom the Heavens did fight. Eugenius fell flat at the Emperors feet, but was killed by the souldiers. Arbogastus killed himselfe. Theodosius returning victorious to Rome, declares his son Honorius Emperour, and appoints Stilico for his Tutor. He perceiving how unwilling the Romans were to leave their old Idolatry, under which they had flourished 1200 yeares, seifeth upon all the revenues that belonged to the Priests and to the Idols, and so Idolatry began to decay: and the poor in stead of Idols were relieved: yet Gentilism could not be as yet quite extirpated.

Whilest Theodosius was at Millan in a popular tumult, at Thessalonica, Valerius the Governour there was killed. Upon this the Emperor in anger sent thither some Troopes to revenge his death, these killed about 7000 men. Ambrose Bishop of Millan, hearing of this, debarred Theodosius from the Communion, who publicly acknowledging his errour, shewed serious repentance, and made a law that 30 dayes should intercede between the sentence and execution. For Theodosius though an excellent Prince, yet was oftentimes rash and rigid in punishing, as may be scene in the Antiochians whom he caused to be plundered and inflaved, for breaking downe the statue of Placilla the Empreffe. Yet was afterward pacified by Flavjanus the Bishop, and so hee was reconciled to the Byzantines for pulling downe the Jewes Synagogues, and by S. Ambrose perswaded to thrust them out of all Cities into the Suburbs. After this good Prince had reigned 16 years, he dyed at Millan, the 50, others say the 65 year of his age, and left the Empire to his two sons, his body was buried at Constantinople.

The Goths not long before Theodosius chose them a King, Alaricus by 4365. name, who persecuted the Christians. Afterward he embraced Arianism, in which A. C. 395 the

*An. Mundi* the Goths continued 213 years. *Theodosius* subdued them; to whom they submitted, but afterward chose *Alaricus* for their king. The *Helvidians* or *Antidicomarianites* lived about these times; then also ceased the *Olympiads*, and the *Indictions* were instituted. *Isdigerdes* persecutes the Christians in Persia. *Gregory Nazianzen* surrendered for peace sake his Bishoprick of Constantinople, to whom succeeded *Nectarius* who abolished private confession, upon an abuse offered by a Deacon to a Noble woman: a Synod was held at Constantinople, and another by *Damasius* at Rome.

After *Theodosius*, *Arcadius* succeeded in the East, *Honorius* in the West. These two were bred under *Arsenius* a Roman Deacon, whom *Theodosius* one day coming into the schoole reproved, for suffering his sonnes to sit, whilst hee stood teaching them; therefore he made them stand up, and him set down, charging him to whip them when they deserved. This *Arsenius* might have had any preferment from his scholars, but hee refused all, and lived an *Eremit*. They had two Governours in their minority; *Arcadius* had *Rufinus* a Gaul and a wicked man; *Honorius* had *Stilico*: to *Gildo* was committed Africa. *Rufinus* drew *Alaricus* the Goth into Greece, where he committed many outrages. *Stilico* married with *Serena*, the daughter of *Theodosius* his brother, of her he had a daughter *Mary* by name, whom he married with *Honorius*. Then sends Captain *Gaia* with an army to *Arcadius*, in whose presence they kill *Rufinus*. So *Stilico* was rid of a corrivall. *Gildo* by defrauding the souldiers of their pay, caused them to rebell, hoping thereby to be Emperour. But him also *Stilico* destroyed by the help of his brother *Mascezel*, who hated *Gildo* his brother, for some wrongs received from him, therefore he overthrows him in a battell, and drives him to self-murther. Afterward *Mascezel* by *Stilico's* treachery was drowned in the river.

4368.  
A.C. 398.

The two Emperors having now got some breath after these tumults, in imitation of their Father, command all Idolatrous temples to be overthrown, and the gladiators to be abolished. *Chrysostom* was then sent for to be Bishop of Constantinople; who reproved *Gaia* to his face for aiming at the Empire, and endeavouring to overthrow *Eutropius* who succeeded to *Rufinus* in the Emperours favour: *Gaia* conspired with his countryman *Tribigildus*, began to make shew of a civill war. *Tribigildus* wastes many places in the provinces, against him *Gaius* is sent, who of purpose increaseth the feare, and labours with *Arcadius* to banish or put to death *Eutropius* for his own security. So *Gaius* a Goth and Arian is received with in the City, desires to exercise publicly the Arian heresie, telling the Emperour that it did not stand with his honour, that he who was the Roman Generall should exercise his Religion without the wals. But *Chrysostome* resisted him, telling him of his ingratifullnesse, and turbulent nature. But the Traitor intends to invade the city and Empire, wherefore under pretence of recreating himself, removes into the countrey, carrying some Forces with him, and leaving some in the city to act for him. But whilst they thought to surpris the city in the night, there appeared a guard about the Tower, as if they had been angels. For *Arcadius* not doubting of treachery, placed no guards in the city. But some armour which he was conveying away being found, *Gaius* is proclaimed traitor, and all the Goths in the city, were by the enraged multitude murdered; even those 7000 that had taken sanctuary in the Temple. Then *Travittas* being made Generall, overthrew *Gaius* in a Sea fight, and drove him home into his owne country, whom at last the king of the Hunns overthrew in a battell, and then put him to death.

The Alani about this time made inroades upon the Empire. *Stilico* the Vandal got the good will both of the Roman and Barbarian souldiers. He kept secret correspondency with the enemies of the Empire, and endeavoured to set the two brothers Emperors at variance. He employed *Alaricus* to seise upon Illyricum, and all this was to make his own son *Eucherius* Emperour. Hee employed also his countrey men the Vandals, with the Alans, Sueves, Goths, and Huns against Gallia and Germany. The Vandals under *Crosus* their Generall did much havoc in Gallia. *Alaricus* king of the Visi-goths, or Western Goths, drove the Alans and

and Sueves with the Vandals thence into Spaine. *Stilico's* ambition was raised by the great victory he got over the Scythians, of which 200000 under their king *Rhadagaisus* break in upon Italy, having laid wast many townes by the way. Hee vowed the blood of Christians for a sacrifice to his gods. But *Stilico* so shut him up within the barren hills of Fesula, that they consumed away with the plague and famine, their king was laid in irons, and strangled, and they were sold by flocks like sheep, a crown then could buy a whole flock; but they dyed shortly after. In the mean while *Arcadius* dyeth, being 31 years old, having reigned 14 years alone, and 13 with his Father. His Empresse *Endoxa* dyed a little before, having a dead child in her womb. A.C. 480.

In his time the Monkes who in *Diocletian's* persecution began, were increased to great numbers: they persecuted *Theophilus* Bishop of Alexandria, for denying to God a humane shape, this *Theophilus* was an enemy to *Chrysostome*, because hee befriended the Monkes which he had excommunicated, for commending *Origen's* bookes. *Chrysostome* stood for *Origen*, whom *Epiphanius* Bishop of Salamis in Cyprus resisted condemning these bookes, which *Methodius* Bishop of Lycia, then of Tyrus, compared to the Syrenes for their many allegories. *Epiphanius* was reproved by the Monkes for condemning these bookes before a Councell was called, and so as he was returning home dyed by the way. *Chrysostome* for being too free in his speech, chiefly against *Endoxa* the Emperesse, whom he calls *Herodias*, inveighing bitterly against her and her statue which was erected neere the Church upon a marble pillar, at which the Stage players used to act. Hee thrust out also 13 Bishops, and reproved the Monkes for coming into cities; refusing to converse or eat with any of them. Hereupon hee is banished, but by the importunity of the people recalled again; yet could hee not refrain from inveighing against *Endoxa*, which made *Arcadius* being uxorious banish him the second time, then he dyed on the borders of Armenia, a year before the death of *Arcadius*, two years before Rome was taken by *Alaricus*. But Pope *Innocentius* excommunicated the Emperour and the Eastern Churches for condemning of *Chrysostome*.

*Arcadius* left one sonne *Theodosius* behinde him, a child of 8 years, to the tuition of *Isdigerdes* king of Persia, hoping by this meanes that the Persians would forbear to molest the kings pupill by incursions on his territories. He was a milde and religious Prince, well educated by his sister *Pulcheria*, who in his minority ruled the Empire with great commendation. About this time a certain paralytick Jew by baptism was recovered, and *Marutha* Bishop in Mesopotamia by his prayers freed *Isdigerdes* from his continuall head-ach, and his sonne from the evill spirit with which he was possessed, so that the king was like to turn Christian had not his *Magi* hindred him.

The same year that young *Theodosius* began his reign, *Honorius* understanding of *Stilico's* treasons caused him to be put to death at Ravenna with his confederats. *Stilico's* daughter that was married to *Honorius*, is restored to her mother *Serena*. His sonne *Eucherius* is executed at Rome, and the wives and children of the Goths are by the enraged souldiers through all the townes of Italy murdered. The Goths to be revenged, assembled themselves in a body of 30000 under *Alaricus*, who finding no justice from *Honorius*, by a secret command as hee said, marcheth toward Rome, without meddling with any townes by the way, to hinder him: hee seised upon the harbour and stoppt all provision. He laughed when hee heard the citizens would fight, saying: *that thick hay is easier cut then thin*. *Innocentius* caused all the Images to be stript of their ornaments and jewels, to make up the summe of 5000 l. weight of gold, and 30000 of silver, to pay *Alaricus*, who upon receipt thereof, removed the siege. But *Honorius* refused to give hostages, and to ratifie the peace which the city had made with *Alaricus*, wherefore hee intercepted the souldiers which *Honorius* sent to guard the City.

*Honorius* continuing in his obstinacy sent for the Huns to assist him, and remitted to *Constantine* the Tyrant, all the Territories beyond the Alpes, then did



*An. Mundi* did the Britaines, Celtae, and Aemorici recover their liberty, by expelling all the Roman Officers. *Alaricus* besiegeth Rome againe, and forceth the citizens to make *Attalus* their Governour *Cesar*, and to join their Forces with him against *Honorius*. But the Army of *Attalus* which hee sent to subdue Africa, was cut off by *Heracianus* Governour there under *Honorius*. *Alaricus* would willingly have made peace with *Honorius*, and to that purpose sent divers Embassies, but *Honorius* had vowed the contrary. *Attalus* with a great Army drew neer Ravenna where *Honorius* was, which so affrighted him, that hee proffered to make *Attalus* his colleague, which he refused, in a proud and scornfull way; whereupon *Alaricus* devoted *Attalus* of all his honour, and princely ornaments, which hee sent to *Honorius*, hoping thereby that hee would hearken to peace. But *Sarus* and *Fovinus* the two great Commanders of *Honorius* his Armies, would not give way to any peace. Wherefore *Alaricus* by treason takes Rome, and sackes it; when the newes thereof came to *Honorius*, that Rome was taken, he thought the messenger had spoke of his great Cock, which hee named Rome. *Alaricus* gave order that none should be slain who took Sanctuary: but he could not keep the souldiers from pillaging and burning. So great was the famine in Rome before it was betrayed, that the people desired a price might be set upon mens flesh. *Alaricus* stayed not in the city above three days, for he feared lest *Theodosius* *Honorius* his brothers sonne, might be coming with his Eastern army, wherefore having wasted Italy, as he was passing over into Sicily, dyed suddenly, to whom succeeded his kinsman *Ataulphus*.

This *Ataulphus* married with *Placidia* *Honorius* his sister, who by her allurements was perswaded to make peace, and goe into Spaine, that *Honorius* might suppress the new upstart tyrants, which invaded the Empire, to wit, *Constantine*, *Constantus*, *Gerontius*, *Iovinus*, *Sebastian*, *Sarus*, and others. Which was effected by the meanes of *Constantius* and *Vulphilas* his Generall. *Constantine* at *Arelatum* is besieged, taken, and slain by *Constantius*: his sonne *Constantus* is killed by *Gerontius*, and hee by his own souldiers: *Fovinus* also is slain. *Attalus* is carried away with the Goths into Spaine, and being taken at Sea, had his head cut off. *Heracianus* with a great fleet entred upon Italy, but being beaten back as hee was landing, returnes to Carthage, where hee is slain by the souldier. About this time *Constantius* recovered Gallia from the Goths. *Ataulphus* for desiring to make peace with *Honorius* is killed in Spaine by his souldiers: and so was his successor *Sugerius*, for the same cause. After whom *Mallia* was elected by the Goths, to break the peace, which the two former kept; but he remembering the miseries, which the Goths formerly suffered for violating the peace, made a firm league with *Honorius*, gave him choise hostages, and sent him back his sister *Placidia*, who afterward married with *Constantius* that brave commander, and of him had *Valentinian*, afterward Emperor. In the interim the Vandals and Suevi did continually war with the Goths, to the great advantage of the Romans. But the Burgundians being grievously oppressed by *Uptarus* king of the Huns, resolve to serve Christ, and so having received baptism, they fall suddenly upon the Huns, and in one battell kill 30000 of them. Since which time they constantly maintained the Christian religion.

In the East *Baranes* the Persian, upon the instigation of his *Magi* persecuted the Christians, which *Isdigerdas* tolerated, and because *Theodosius* would not restore those that fled to him, hee is threatened with war: but *Ardaburius* the Emperors Generall defeated the Persian Armies, and slew 10000 of their prime souldiers, which they called *immortall*, 100000 Saracens being suddenly taken with a panic fear, as they were flying from the Romans over Euphrates were drowned. The newes of this defeat was by *Palladius* in three dayes space brought from Mesopotamia to Constantinople. About this time *Honorius* dyed of an Hydropsie at Rome the 30 year of his Empire, and the 40 of his age. He had made *Constantius* his sisters husband Co-Emperor, but he dyed 5 moneths after his inauguration. About these times lived *Pelagius* the great patron of free-will, *Helvidius* also, *Audans* and *Benofus* hereticks. From *Atulphus* the Spaniards reckon their kings,

for before him Spain was possessed by Vandals, Alans, and Sueves. The French begin their Chronicles from *Faramund* their first king, and General of the Franks: *Falconia* is so called from the Visigoths which drove out thence the Vandals, Alans and Sueves into Spain, and 19 years after they drove the Vandals, thence into Africa: they also overthrew the Alans and Sueves, and reigned there about 386 yeares, untill they were destroyed by the Moors. *Innocentius* the first drove the Novatians out of Rome. The Britains being forsaken by the Romans, became a prey to the Scots and Picts, from whose oppressions that they might be delivered, they invited to their own destruction the Saxons or Angles out of Germany. The Gauls also shook off the Roman yoke, and called in the Franks, whilst *Alaricus* was raging in Italy. *Palladius* by Pope *Celestine* is sent into Scotland, to convert them from the Pelagian heresie. He was the first Bishop there, before him that Church was governed by Monks. About these times dyed S. *Hierome* in Bethlem 91 yeares old, and about 11 or 12 years after, S. *Augustine* in Hippo in the 76 year of his age, the 40 of his Bishoprick. The University of *Bononia* is instituted by *Theodosius*.

## CHAP. IV.

Divers alterations in the Empire under *Theodosius*, *Martianus*, *Leo* and *Zeno*. 2. The Westerne Empire ruined by the Goths, Vandals, Huns, and Heruli. 3. Divers forraigne passages of those times, and of the Church affaires.

Vpon the death of *Honorius*, *Cassius* General of the Army, advanceth *John* the Secretary to the Empire: who sent Embassadours to *Theodosius* for his favour and approbation. But hee imprisons the Embassadours, and sends *Ardaburius* the Prætor against him, whom *John* neer Ravenna beset round. Which being known, *Theodosius* sends *Valentinian* the sonne of *Placidia* his Aunt, whom hee had made *Cesar* to recover the Western Empire. After the sonne of *Ardaburius* was sent before, whom a shepherd in an unknown habit, conducted through a Lake into Ravenna. *Ardaburius* is set free, *John* is subdued, and *Cassius* banished. So *Valentinian* by the consent of all Italy is made Emperor. *Bonifacius* and *Aetius* by *Theodosius* are allowed for his Generalls. But these two by their emulations, and *Valentinian* his negligence, ruined all. Spain, Gallia, Britaine, and west Lybia are lost. *Aetius* instigated the Emperour against *Bonifacius* Governour of Africa, who understanding of the danger he was in, and what was intended against him by *Valentinian* and *Placidia*, called in *Gumbarius* and *Genserius* kings of the Vandals then in Spain. These with fire and sword wast Africa, and poyson it with Arianism. But at last *Bonifacius* understanding that *Aetius* his letters, which he sent him were false concerning the Emperors intentions against him, would faine have thrust the Vandals out of Africa again, but could not, wherefore he comes to Rome, and in a set battell defeats *Aetius*, but shortly after hee dyed, and left Africa to the Vandals, who besieged Hippo, in the 3 month of this siege S. *Ambrose* dyed.

After this *Aetius* is reconciled to the Emperours. Numidia is given to the Vandals and a peace concluded with them. *Aetius* forceth the Burgundians, and *Litorius*, the Goths then besieging Narbon, to hearken to peace. *Theodosius* his wife *Athenais* daughter of *Leontius* the Athenian Philosopher, was baptised, and new named *Eudoxia*. Shee expressed some places of Scripture in *Homer's* verses, as *Proba* *Falconia* did before her in *Virgil's*. This *Eudoxia* had a daughter by *Theodosius* of her own name, who was married to *Valentinian* in Constantinople. *Eudoxia* the mother went the next yeare to Jerusalem, whence shee brought *Peters* chaities, in memory of which shee caused the first of August to be kept holy, which before was observed in honour of *Augustus* his victory over *Antonius* and *Cleopatra*. In the 30 yeare of *Theodosius* there were earthquakes



An. Mundi

which lasted many moneths together, overthrowing houses and townes; which pre-  
saged great commotions and changes in the State. In these earthquakes a certaine  
young man was suddenly taken up in the air, and let down again, who told the peo-  
ple, that they must all sing: *Holy God, Holy and strong, Holy and Immortall, have  
mercy upon us.* Hereupon they all sung *Kyrie eleison*, and the earthquake ceased. But  
the Empire began more and more to decline. For *Theodosius* let loose the reins to his  
covetous Eunuchs.

The Goths first defeated *Valentinian's* Army, took *Lithrinus* his Generall pri-  
soner, and forced the Emperour to sue for peace, and to surrender a part of Gallia.  
In the interim *Genfericus* possesseth himselfe of Carthage, the next year he cross-  
eth over to Sicily, which he wasteth: *Theodosius* sent Forces thither, but to little  
purpose. Shortly after, that scourge of God *Attila* king of the Huns, wastes Thra-  
cia and Illyricum: takes in all Castles, and Cities, except Adrianopolis, and He-  
raclea. So that *Theodosius* was faine to hire him to be gone, for 6000 *lib.* weight  
of gold, and a yearly tribute. But pretending not long after, that his tribute was  
not duly paid, he renews the war, and being confederate with *Genfericus*, he arms  
the Scythians, Ostrogoths, Sarmatians, Marcomans, Saxons, and divers other na-  
tions, making shew that he would drive the Goths out of Gallia, and makes the  
Goths believe, that he was the greatest enemy the Romans had. But *Valentinian*  
having discovered his cunning plot, unites himself to all the kings of Gallia, to *Theo-*  
*doricus* of the Goths, *Gundericus* of the Burgundions, *Merovenus* of the Franks, and  
*Saugibanus* king of the Alans; all these under *Actius* his Generall, he employeth a-  
gainst *Attila*. In the large fields of Catalaunum or Chaulons the battell was fought,  
on both sides were slaine 162000, besides 90000 of the Gepidae and Franks,  
which before the great battell had killed each other in the night time. The Franks  
held with the Romans, the Gepidae with the Huns. *Theodoricus* king of the Goths,  
or of Spaine was killed by a fall from his horse, as hee was riding about his  
souldiers, animating them to fight. *Attila* after the battell durst not ven-  
ture out of his Camp. It's thought hee had in his Army 500 thousand  
men.

4420.

A. C. 450.

*Theodosius* the second being 50 yeares old, dyed of a bruise which hee had by a  
fall from his horse, he reigned 42 yeares after his father. In his time lived Pope  
*Leo* a great Champion against *Eutyches* Archimandrita or Abbot of Constantinople,  
who held but one nature in Christ. Him *Flavianus* the Bishop excommu-  
nicated, *Eutyches* appeares to *Leo*, who condemned his Colleague of temerity:  
and the heretick by the means of *Chrysaphius* the Eunuch got a Councell to be  
held at Ephesus, in which *Dioscorus* of Alexandria guarded by souldiers was presi-  
dent. Here *Flavianus* was condemned, and *Eutyches* absolved. The Bishops then  
present out of fear were faine to subscribe to *Dioscorus*. *Flavianus* was kickt out of the  
Councell by *Dioscorus*, and dyed three days after. It's said that *Dioscorus* trod on  
him after he was dead. This second Councell of Ephesus was called *anecum*, or the  
theevish Synod. After this *Domnus* of Antioch repenting that hee had voted with  
that impious Synod, incensed the Emperour against *Dioscorus*, to appease whose an-  
ger *Chrysaphius* made *Anatolius* Bishop of Constantinople, and removed *Pulcheria*  
from the Court, upon false surmises. But *Theodosius* upon better information ba-  
nished the Eunuch, recalls his sister to the Court againe, and reproves his wife,  
who pretending a vow went to Jerusalem. But the death of *Theodosius*, and wars  
of *Attila* hindred the full decision of this heresie till the third yeare of  
*Martian*.

Before this, in the 24 yeare of *Theodosius* the second, the first Councell of Ephe-  
sus was held against *Nestorius* the Syrian Bishop of Constantinople; who held  
there were two persons in Christ. Against him *Cyrill* of Alexandria wrote, whose  
doctrine was received by the Church of Constantinople. *Nestorius* is banished be-  
yond Thebes in Egypt, where he dyed; his tongue being eat out with worms: this  
Ecclesiasticall broil raised by *Nestorius* was prefiged by the murder done in the  
Church of Constantinople. Not long before, some slaves being threatned by their  
Masters, took sanctuary in the Church, from whence they were commanded to  
depart

An. Mundi

depart, but they having killed a Priest, and one more that resisted them, at last mur-  
dered one another. And not only was the Church infested with Nestorians and  
Eutychians, but with Pelagians also and Novatians, against whom divers Councils  
were assembled; and the Novatians by force of armes were forbid the exercise  
of Religion. The Jewes about this time were driven out of Alexandria, and those  
of Crete being deluded by a false *Moses*, who perswaded many of them to leape  
into the Sea, promising he would divide it for them, as the true *Moses* once did,  
were drowned, and the rest being wiser were converted.

The Goths being gone, *Attila* layeth siege to Aquileja; which hee took and o-  
verthrew, with Millan, Ticinum, and Vincentia: the Veneti or Heneti, a people  
of Paphlagonia, seated neer the Hadriatic, for fear of *Attila* fled into those lit-  
tle Islands of the Sea, and laid the foundation of Venice. Pope *Leo* so pacified  
*Attila*, that he went not further, but returned with his army into Gallia, where  
hee was defeated by *Thursimundus*, and so retreated into Scythia, where he dyed in  
his marriage bed: for though he had many wives, yet he would marry with *Hil-  
dico* a young maid and daughter of the King of Bactria, that night being infla-  
med with wine and *Venus*, he surrendred his bloody soul, being choaked with  
blood in his sleep which gushed out of his mouth in great abundance. Not long  
after *Valentinian* was murdered by *Maximus* who was then a great man at Rome,  
and whose wife *Valentinian* had abused by sending her husbands ring to her  
which he in sport pulled off from his finger, she thinking it had been her husbands  
pleasure to repair to the Court, went, where she was ravished by the Prince. To be  
revenged of this wrong, *Maximus* alienates *Valentinian's* affection from *Actius*,  
as if hee aimed at the Empire. Whereupon *Actius* who had done him so much  
good service, is by his command put to death; *Valentinian* (as one told him) had  
done better to have cut off his own right hand. *Maximus* causeth two of *Actius* his  
souldiers to kill him, which they did, and thus was his magick, lusts, and murder  
punished in Campus Martius the 30 year of his Empire. About this time the Sax-  
ons being called by the Britaines against the Scots, drove those they should have  
aided into Wales. The Acephali were the Eutychian spaune, who held that Christ  
was to be worshipped but in one nature, which was made up of the divinity and hu-  
manity.

*Martianus* succeeded to *Theodosius*, he was a Thracian by birth, and the Gene-  
rall of *Theodosius* his Army in Africa against *Genfericus*, and in Syria against  
the Persians. *Pulcheria* being now a Virgin of 50 yeares, advanced him to the Em-  
pire, and married with him conditionally, that he should make no use of her bed,  
for she meant to dye a Virgin. He had been taken heretofore a prisoner in Africa  
by *Genfericus*, to whom hee swore that if ever he were Emperour, he would hold  
perpetuall peace with the Vandals. For when he was sleeping among the rest of  
the captives in the field, *Genfericus* observed how an Eagle spread her wings o-  
ver his face to keep him from the Sun, which hee tooke as a presage of his fu-  
ture Empire. Therefore dismissed him, on the condition above said; which he  
observed, holding it unlawfull for a publick person to breake the Oath he made  
when he was a private man. That he might put an end to the quarrels of the Ma-  
cedonians, Arians, Nestorians, and Eutychians, which had now troubled the world  
150 yeares, hee calls a generall Councell at Chalcedon, in which he was present with  
600 and 30 Bishops. Here *Dioscorus* of Alexandria was condemned, and it was de-  
termined, that in Christ remained the two natures without confusion, mutation,  
division or separation, united in one person.

The quarrell was no sooner ended, but upstarts another between the two Patri-  
archs of Rome and Constantinople about the primacy, *Leo* challenging the head-  
ship over all Churches. The Councell gave to Constantinople an equall share  
with Rome. In the mean while *Attila* was wasting all the Western Empire.  
Earthquakes every where, and flashes of lightning in the air. *Leo* disliked the  
definition of the Councell, and impugned it with publick and private Epistles  
written to the Churches. *Valentinian* and *Actius* being killed, the Barbarians  
without feare broke in on all sides upon the Empire. The Franks were now sub-  
ject

*An. Mund.* ject to *Merovius*, after *Feramundus* and *Clagio*; they took possession of Paris, and the Isle of France. The Visigoths under *Theodoricus* were seated in Spain, whence they expelled the Suevi. At Rome *Maximus* married with *Eudoxia* the daughter of *Theodosius*, and wife of *Valentinian*. Possessing both wife and Empire together by force of armes. But when foolishly hee had discovered to the Emperesse, that hee was the cause of *Valentinian's* death; shee desiring to be revenged, invited *Genfericus* out of Africa by private letters. *Genfericus* glad of this occasion, hastens to Rome with a great Fleet. *Maximus* being unprovided, thought to escape by flight, but his own souldiers stoned him to death. The Princes flye away, the City is delivered to *Genfericus*, which the souldiers for 14 dayes 10 together spoil and plunder, carrying away the rich statues and ornaments thereof, with the plate which *Titus* brought from Jerusalem; this plate *Bellisarius* afterward, having recovered Africa, sent to Constantinople, and by *Justinian* it was remitted to Jerusalem: the City also in many places was fired; but consecrated places upon the intreaty of *Leo* were spared, much of the spoil was cast away by shipwrack, as they returned home.

The tyrant carried with him to Africa *Eudoxia* with her two daughters, which shee bare to *Valentinian*, *Placidia*, and *Galla*, *Eudocia*, with many more Captives. Hee married *Eudocia* to his sonne *Hunericus*; *Placidia* to *Olybrius* a Roman Senator. Others write that *Genfericus* to appease *Martianus* who was 20 moved for the losse Rome had suffered sent, to him *Placidia* with her mother; but before they came *Martian* was dead, and so *Leo* had them. *Galla* now is divided among the Burgundians, Goths, and Franks. But on a sudden *Avitus* whom *Maximus* had made his Generall invaded the Empire of France, which he was forced to lay down again, and to accept of the Bishoprick of Placentia. But thinking himself not safe there, returned into Gallia where he dyed of griefe. Him 4426. shortly after followed *Martianus* who dyed the 7 year of his Empire. He was a 4436. peaceable and religious Prince.

*Leo* succeeded to *Martianus*, hee was a Thracian, and had beene a Tribune of the souldiers, he was the first Emperor that was crowned by a Patriarch. *Anato-* 30 *lius* was the Bishops name that crowned him. Hee maintained the Chalcedon Faith; and punished the Alexandrians for murthring *Proterius* their Bishop. He made *Majorinus* Generall of his Forces, and sent him to govern the West, which hee did for 4 years, at last was killed by *Ricimerus*, whom hee had invited with his Army to expell the Alans out of Gallia. *Leo* made a league with the Ostrogoths, who drove *Hernacus* the sonne of *Attila* into Scythia, and the Sueves out of Spaine. *Ardaricus* King of the Gepidæ, a people among the Getæ, the first who freed himselfe from the slavery of *Attila* his sonnes, received Dacia from *Leo*. The Goths had Pannonia, a part of the Alans had the lower Mæsia.

4431. After *Majoranus*, *Severus* reigned 3 yeares, under him *Ricimer* defeated the A- 40 lans, breaking in upon Italy, and killed *Beurgus* their King. By a Candle left burning in the Forum carelessly, Constantinople took fire, which could not be quenched in 4 dayes. Antioch, Gallia, and others parts were shaken with Earthquakes, which occasioned *Mamertus* Bishop of Vienna to institute larger Litanies, which afterward were wont to be sung still the sixt week after Easter. *Severus* being killed by *Ricimer* the Goth *Anthemius* is sent to Italy by *Leo*, upon the

4445. intreaty of the Romans, his daughter *Ricimer* married, and so was quiet a while. 4445. A.C. 465. In the mean time *Genfericus* is defeated in a Sea fight. *Leo's* Fleet was 1000 and 100 ships; but shortly after, *Basiliscus* the brother of *Verina Augusta*, (whom *Leo* upon the recommendation of his two great Generalls *Aspar* and *Aradabutus* 50 both Arians, had made Admirall) treacherously lost this Fleet to the Vandals, *Basiliscus* being an Eutylian, and willing to please his two Patrons, that the Arian heresie might flourish. *Ricimer* also the Arian besiegeth his Father in law *Anthemius* in Rome, which hee took, and then murdered him, having reigned 5 yeares; but hee shortly after dyed, to whom succeeded *Anicius Olybrius*, who 4452. dyed 4 months after. Then did *Leo* upon the importunity of *Aspar*, create his 4452. sonne *Cæsar*, at which the peope repined, that an Arian should reign over them. But

but not long after *Leo* finding *Aspars* treachery, commanded both him and his two sons to be slain and bequeathed by will, the Empire to his Grandchilde by *Ariadna* 10 his daughter.

To *Olybrius* succeeded *Glycerius* at Ravenna, he bribed the Goths to keep out of Italy, and so did *Leo* to keep them off from Greece. Who shortly after dyed of a loofnesse, having reigned 17 yeares. Hee named *Julius Nepos* for the western Empire, who coming to Italy by Sea, removed *Glycerius* after he had reigned 5 yeares, and made him a Bishop in Dalmatia. In *Leo's* time *Childe-ricus* King of the Franks, was banished by the people (for his infolency) into Thuringia, 10 and by them *Agidius* a Roman Commander is chosen: but 8 yeares after *Childe-ricus* returnes, and is received again, whose reign afterward was more moderate. The name of France was given to all that part which *Merovius* held. About this time dyed Pope *Leo*, to whom succeeded *Hilaricus*. And at Constantinople to *Genadius* succeeded *Acacius*. *Stodius* a Consular man set up an order of watching Monkes who were to sing divine Service, and to watch by turnes night and day: in Constantinople. There a certain painter represented Christ in the form of *Jupiter*, whereupon his hand withered. *Vesuvius* brake out into great flames, with the ashes whereof many countreys were covered: in memory of which, an annuall solemnity was ordained to be kept at Constantinople. *Euty-* 20 *ches* and *Dioscorus* refusing to stand to the decrees of the Councell of Chalcedon, divided themselves into divers sects; the two chiefe were the *Jacobites*, so called from *Jacob* the Syrian, and the *Hesitantes* or *Diacrinomeni*, which doubted whether or not they should receive the said Synod. The Rogation solemnity was then instituted by *Mamercus* Bishop of Vienna: In which the time was spent in fasting, praying, singing, and weeping, it was occasioned by the Earthquakes of Vienna, and the irruption of Wolves and other wild Beasts into the City, which destroyed many people: then did *Rabbi Jonathan* perfect the Thalmud of Jerusalem.

*Leo's* Nephew being dead in his infancy, deformed *Zeno Leo's* son in law, a 30 Cilician of obscure parentage, and father to the foresaid Infant, succeeds in the Eastern Empire, and *Nepos* in the Western, whom *Orestes* drove into Dalmatia, as *Nepos* had done *Glycerius* before. *Nepos* his sonne called *Momyllus*, is made *Augustus*, and for his small stature is named *Augustulus*. But hee shortly after is banished by *Odoacer* King of the Heruli, who being called in by the friends of *Nepos*, overrun all Italy, slew *Orestes* at Placentia, and took Rome; which is now the 4 time it is taken. 1. By the Gaules. 2. By the Goths in the time of *Honorius*. 3. By the Vandals in *Martians* time. 4. Now by the Heruli. And 5. it was afterward taken by *Attila*. In the reigne of *Justinian*, as wee shall see, *Odoacer* named himselfe King of Italy, abolished the Consular dignity, 40 transferred the seat of his Kingdome to Ravenna, and so that glorious Empire which began in *Augustus* ended in *Augustulus*, 522 yeares since *Augustus Cæsar*.

In the East *Basiliscus* brother to *Verina* the Emperesse, made war against *Zeno*, 4476. shee animating her brother against her son in law, *Zeno* being a coward, fled with his wife *Ariadne* to Isauri neer mount Taurus in Cilicia, where hee was born; there he lived one year and 8 moneths. In the meane time *Basiliscus* as bad as *Zeno*, advanced the Eutylian heresie, and forced *Acacius* to side with him against the Councell of Chalcedon. But within two yeares his Army under *Hermatus* fell off to *Zeno*, against whom they were sent, and brought him back to 50 Constantinople, who sent away *Basiliscus* with his wife and children to a Castle in Cappadocia, where they perished with famine. In *Basiliscus* his time, the Library of *Byzantium* took fire, in which 120000 bookes were burned. *Zeno* being nothing bettered by these troubles, names for Cæsar *Basiliscus* sonne to *Hermatus* the traitor; hee first kills *Hermatus* the father, not daring to trust him who betrayed his Master, then after hee had named his sonne *Cæsar*, according to his promise, hee makes him a Clergy man. *Zeno's* sonne dyed, before hee attained the Empire. And he himselfe being one day dead drunk fell down speechlesse, his wife

*An. Mundi* wife *Ariadne* buryeth him before he was quite dead, no man offering to help him, though he groined lamentably, and so dyed having reigned 17 years. 532 yeares after *Iul. Cæsars* death.

Two years before *Zeno* dyed, *Theodoricus* the sonne of *Amalus*, King of the Ostrogoths, having overrun Thracia and Mæsia, threatens Constantinople. *Zeno* a better flatterer then a souldier, invites his enemy into the City, made him Consul, and bestowed divers honours on him; and at last perswaded him to goe against *Odoacer* in Italy. *Theodoricus* an active Prince was easily perswaded to this, being troubled that Italy the mistresse of the World should bee subject to the obscure Nation of the Heruli, and finding that *Odoacer* having subdued *Phabas* Prince of the Rugi upon the Baltick sea (whose seats were now possessed by the Longobards) was secure at this time; hastens into Italy, and defeats him at the bridge *Sotius*, then gives him a second overthrow neer Verona, whence he was called *Veronensis*. In the third encounter hee drives him within Ravenna, who having made a sally upon *Theodoricus* in the night, was beat back again; a part of the Army was left to besiege the towne, with the rest *Theodoricus* marcheth about Italy, makes peace with *Humericus* King of the Vandals in Africa, and frees Sicily from their oppression. This *Humericus* worse then *Genfericus* his father, upon the instigation of the Arians, banished and slew 400000 Catholics. Hee cut out some of the Preachers 20 tongues: and at last hee fell so madde that hee tore and bit his owne flesh, so that hee dyed miserably, his body being putresied, and eat up with vermine the 8 yeare of his reigne. *Odoacer* after hee had bene besieged three yeares in Ravenna, was slaine by *Theodoricus*, who having recovered Italy, recommended the care of Rome to the Senat, and made Ravenna the seat of his Kingdome. But being an Arian hee imprisoned Pope *Fohn*, till hee dyed there, for not permitting the Arians to have Churches. Hee imprisoned at Ticinum two Senators, *Symmachus* and his sonne in law *Boetius*; then seised upon their estates, and slew them. Not long after, at supper, as hee was looking on the head of a fish, hee thought hee saw *Symmachus* with 30 fiery eyes gaping on him, which put him into such a shaking, that he was carryed away to his bed and dyed. This *Symmachus* was not hee that in the time of *Theodosius* wrote against the Christians.

About *Zeno's* time the South-Saxons erected their Kingdome in England 32 yeares after their arrivall. The Jewes at Tiberias by the help of *Rabbi Ben Aser*, and *R. Ben. Nephtali* found out those Hebrew pricks which we use at this day in stead of vowels and accents, which are read in some words otherwayes by the Eastern Jewes about Babylon, then by the Western. *Enricus* King of Spain was the first there, that gave lawes to the Goths in writing. Pope *Gelasius* compiled the Canon of the Masse, and the Collects or short Church-prayers. *Clodovens* the 40 first Christian King of France is baptized by *Remigius* Archbishop of Rhemes, who gave him the name of *Ludovicus*. The holy Oil was then (if we may believe it) brought by a Dove from Heaven, with which he was, and his successours are at this day anointed.

## CHAP. V.

The Roman affaires under Anastasius, Justinus and Justinian. 2. Of the Persians, Goths, and other barbarous Nations of those times. 3. The affaires 50 of the Church.

4461. *Zeno* being starved in his tombe, for want of food eat up his own flesh, *Ariadne* his wife not suffering any to help him; advanceth to the Empire *Anastefius*, with whom 'tis thought shee was too familiar in her former husbands time; therefore now makes hast to marry him. Hee was before but a Court Scribe or Secretary, called *Silentarius*, for Secretaries should be silent, he was

was nick named *Digorus* because the apple of his eyes were of two colours. *Euphemius* Patriarch of Constantinople, refused to crown him, till he had subscribed to the councill of Chalcedon: which in policy he did, shewing great justice in the beginning of his reign; in abrogating those acts by which taxes were raised by unlawfull wayes, as of publick stewes, and such like; he banished all informers from the city; and would suffer no offices to bee bought and sold. He banished *Longinus*, *Zeno's* brother, for aspiring to the Empire, at last slew him for arming the Isauri against him. Hee forced the Arabians who had overrun Mesopotamia and Palestina, to make peace with him. He took Amida from *Cabades* the 10 Persian King. Whom his subjects imprisoned for making it lawfull that wives should be common. But his wife got him to be dismissed by prostituting her body to the Goal Keeper. He shortly after recovered his power, and became a good friend to the Christians. But killed his brother who had reigned 2 yeares.

*Anastasius* being settled in the Empire, began to shew himselfe in his true colours being disguised before. He demands back his hand-writing, by which hee had promised never to molest the Orthodox professors. He banisheth *Euphemius*, and sets up *Macedonius* in his place, from whom violently hee extorted his hand-writing, and then banished him, advancing *Timotheus* his flatterer, and Pander. Hee banished also the chief of the Orthodox Clergy. He built a wall 280 furlongs distant from Constantinople, to keep off the barbarous incursions of the Inhabitants about Pontus, Colchis and Maotis. But he could not keep out *Vitalianus* the Thracian with his Mysians and Scythians from plundering the countrey all about Byzantium, who also beset the City with a Fleet of Ships. But *Anastasius* sent *Martinus* captain of his guard with an army against him, and by burning glasses, which *Proclus* the Mathematician had made, set all the enemies ships on fire: yet he was faine to begge for peace, which was granted conditionally, that the Orthodox Bishops which *Anastasius* banished, be recalled home; and that a Synod bee called. Which was assented to, and *Vitalianus* is made muster master of Thracia, and rewarded with a great summe of gold. Pope *Hormisdas* sent to *Anastasius* 30 about this Synod; but upon some discontents, or miscarriage of the Legats, they were sent privately away, with command not to return any more into Greece. So little hope there was of a Synod. *Flavianus* Bishop of Antioch was assaulted by the Eutychian Monks, because he would not abjure the Councill of Chalcedon, but the townsmen fell upon the Monks, killed many of them, and drove many into the river Orontes, where they were drowned. Hereupon *Flavianus* is banished againe, and the Eutychian *Severus* set in his chair, who being incensed against the Monks of Syria for aiding *Flavianus*, he slew 300 of them, and would not suffer them to be buried. *Anastasius* adding to the hymne of the Trinity these words, who was crucified for us, as if he meant, that the deity was crucified, occasioned such a tumult in 40 the people, that he could scarce appease them, though he layed down his crown before them.

In the second year of *Anastasius*, *Odoacer* was killed by *Theodoricus*, who was 4463 King of Italy 33 yeares; he repaired the decayes of Rome, and was bountifull to the people. *Clodovens* then King of France, partly by the instigation of his wife, a Burgundian, and partly because of his vow which he made, became a Christian, for he vowed so to be, if he obtained the victory over the Alemans, which hee had. He overcame also *Gundebaldus* of Burgundy, and *Theodoricus* the Goth King of Aquitania, so having enlarged the bounds of France, he set up his Court at Paris, he was angry with *Anastasius* for diverting the Bulgarians, (a people 50 unheard of till now) from Illyricum, and Thracia, where they were seating themselves, and sent them into the Western Provinces. These *Theodoricus* overthrew, and added Syrmium with Pannonia to his Dominion. *Anastasius* made *Clodovens* a Patrician, and named him *Augustus*, whence great jealousies arose between *Clodovens* and *Theodoricus*, and then wars in which 30000 Francks were killed by the Goths. Pope *Anastasius* being dead, a bloudy quarrell arose at Rome, about the election of a new Pope; some stood for *Symmachus*; some for *Laurentius*. The quarrell lasted 3 yeares, till *Theodoricus* ended it, who assigned the honour

*An. Mund* honour to *Symmachus* that was first nominated. About this time the Catholicks in Africa were set at liberty by *Gundamundus* the Vandall, but they were banished afterward by *Thrasamundus*. One *Olympius* as he was blaspheming the Trinity, was visibly burned by a fire dart from heaven. *Theodoricus* the Arian killed one *Diaconus* whom hee loved well, because he became an Arian for the Kings sake, saying: *He that will not be faithfull to God, will never be faithfull to the King*: for he hated those that changed their religion. *Severus* the Eutyechian Bishop of Antioch would have converted *Alamundarus* the Saracen king to Eutyechianism. The King fained himself to be sad for the death of *Michael* the Archangel: the Bishops told him an Angel could not dye, to whom he replied: *How then could Christ dye, if*<sup>10</sup>

4488. *he was only God*: and so stopped the Eutyechians mouths.

A. C. 518. *Anastasius* having lived 88 yeares, and reigned 27. was struck dead with thunder. In his time the Acephali or headlesse hereticks, having no Bishops to patronise them, divided themselves into many sects: to wit, Trithaits, Agonets, Theopaschites, Jacobites, Armenians, &c. A people of Persia called *Immeres*, who had been Jews, after *Salomon* had visited their Queen, but turned again to Gentilism, sent to *Anastasius* for a Bishop, and so embraced Christianity. *Alamundarus* also the Saracen Prince was baptized. The Babylonian Thalmud was now finished by the Rabbies, about 100 yeares after the Thalmud of Jerusalem, and 29. yeares after the invention of the Hebrew pricks. The feast of *Michael* the Archangel is<sup>20</sup> instituted. *Anastasius* dreamed before he dyed that 14 yeares of his life should be cut off, for his heresie; he was forewarned also that he should dye by thunder. His statues and his wives are dragged through the streets of Byzantium by the enraged people.

*Fustinus* a Thracian born, of a Sow-herd became Emperor, by bribing the souldiers. For *Amantius* the Eunuch and great Chamberlain to *Anastasius*, had given to *Fustinus* a large donative to be distributed among these souldiers, who did vote for his friend *Theocritus* whom he meant to make Emperour, *Fustinus* preferred himselfe, and so got the souldiers to vote for him. *Amantius* being thus deluded conspired with *Andrew* the Chamberlain, and *Theocritus* against *Fustinus*, but the plot being discovered, they were all three slain. *Amantius* had dreamed a<sup>30</sup> little before this, that he was devoured by a great hogge. *Fustin* to shew his zeale A. C. 519. to the Councell of Chalcedon, called his wife *Duplicina* by the name of *Euphemia* the martyr, in whose church that Councell was held. He recall'd the Catholicks from banishment, exiled the Arians and Eutyechians, thrust *Severus* from his Bishoprick of Antioch, and condemned him to lose his blasphemous tongue. *Vitalianus* muster-master under *Anastasius*, and very intimate with *Fustin* was (as its thought) by his command murdered in the palace. In whose place *Iustinian* his sisters son was chosen.

*Cabades* the Persian king having wars with *Fustin*, he hired for gold *Zeliobes* King of the Huns, to assist him. Who being invited by the Persian for a greater<sup>40</sup> summe to seek *Iustin*, and assisted the Persian. *Iustin* by his letters acquainted *Cabades* how this dishonest King had served him, who could not deny, but hee had received the money, whereat *Cabades* being incensed slew him, and many more of the Huns with him, which had not escaped by flight, (there were 20000 of them) and peace was made with *Iustin* for his sincerity, which lasted not long: for *Tisathius* King of the Lazors or Colchi revolting from the Persian, came to *Iustin*, receives the Christian religion and is baptized, therefore hee is called King by *Iustin*, and is sent back to Colchis, which then was subject to the Persian. This caused a quarrell, the Colchi and Huns join with *Iustin* against the Persians. But *Cabades* being aged and sickly, desired his sonne *Cosroes* might be adopted by *Iustin*, which had beene done, but that he was by *Proclus* his Treasurer dissuaded, as being dangerous both to himselfe, and to *Iustinian*. Upon this the quarrell grew greater, and now not only is *Cabades* *Iustins* enemy, for advancing *Tisathius*, but *Theodoricus Veronensis* also, for persecuting the Arians. Pope *Iohn* the first successour to *Hormisdas* with *Boetius* and *Symmachus*, came to intreat *Iustin*, that hee would not be too rigid against the Arians, lest *Theodoricus* should use the same rigour in his Dominions against the Catholicks. These Embassadors were honourably entertained, and great joy there was to see a Pope in Constantinople, who

who because he was above the Patriarch, *Iustin* would be crowned by him; *An. Mund* hee was the first Emperour that was crowned by the Pope; *Theodoricus* hearing of this was enraged, thinking these Embassadors had plotted with *Iustin*, against him, and his Western Dominion, therefore he starved *Iohn* in prison, and slew the other two (as was said) with their followers, he dyed shortly after<sup>4496.</sup>

A. C. 520.

His daughter *Amalasunta* succeeded with her young sonne *Athalaricus*, they reigned together 8 yeares, and restored to the Franks those parts of Gallia, which the Grand father had taken. After the death of *Alaricus*, *Amalasunta* made *Theo-*<sup>10</sup> *datus* her cousin german Colleague with her in the kingdome, whom shee used to reprove freely for his loose manners. Shee also put to death three prime men of the Goths, for telling young *Alaricus*, that it stood not with the greatnesse of a Prince to be under the mothers ferula. But shee for her good will towards her sonne and cousin, lost her life; for by command of *Theodatus* shee was strangled in a bath. But *Eudoxia* daughter to *Valentinian* the third so instructed her sonne *Childericus*, that hee having obtained the kingdom of the Vandals in Africa, by the death of *Tharismund*, broke the Oath which his Father made him sweare, to persecute the catholicks, and hearkening to his mother, called home all the banished Bishops. *Iustin* in the mean time having reigned 9 yeares, and lived 77 dyed<sup>20</sup> of grief, for the overthrow of Antiochia by Earthquake, in which *Euphrasius* the Bishop, with millions of people perished, foure moneths before his death hee nominated his sisters sonne, *Iustinian* Emperour. In his time the Manichees were utterly destroyed by King *Cabades* in Persia, because they poysoned his son *Phar-* *narasus* with their heresies, and were tampering with him, to bring innovations into the kingdom. *Clodoveus* four sonnes divided the kingdom amongst them, and to entertain peace with *Alamaricus* the son of *Alaricus* they marry their sister *Clotilda* to him. *Alaricus* 2 King of Spain, and *Aquitain* married with *Amalasynthia* daughter to *Theodoricus* King of Italy. Shee was learned in the Greeke and Latin tongues, besides divers vulgar languages; whereas *Iustin* the Emperour<sup>30</sup> could neither write nor read. *Alamaricus* married with *Tottilla* the daughter of king *Clodoveus*, whom hee used roughly for holding firm to the Catholick Religion, which caused a warre between *Childebertus* (who succeeded *Clodoveus*) and *Almaricus*, who here lost his life. *S. Benedict* instituted the order of the *Benedictin* monkes. Slavia a people of Scythia invaded Istria and the borders of Venetia; these in the time of *Mauritius* transplanted themselves into Bohemia and Polonia; The Histrians upon the coming of these Slavonians removed to the Isle Capraria or Aegilon in the Tuscan Sea, abounding in Goates, here they built Justinopolis. The Longobards invade Pannonia, whence they drive out the Huns and Ostrogoths. *Theodoricus* restores Spain and Aquitania to his Nephew *Amalari-*<sup>40</sup> *cus*. About this time lived *S. Brigid* that famous Scots Lady, who was very intimate with *S. Patric*.

*Iustinian* succeeded, a Catholick Prince, learned and fortunate, by reason of his<sup>4497.</sup> good Commanders, but covetous and wretched, extorting great summes from *A. C. 527.* the people, which he spent on his buildings and souldiers. He so broke the Persian with that war which *Iustin* began that he forced *Cosroes* the son of *Cabades* to sue for peace. He slew also the rebellious Jews, hee caused *Tribonianus* and other Lawyers to abbreviate and reduce into method, the old lawes confused and dispersed in many volumes. Whence we have the *Codex*, the *Digests* and *Institutions*. The rest of Antioch is overthrown with a new earthquake, and in a dangerous sedition<sup>50</sup> at Constantinople above 30000 were slaine. For *Hypatius Pompejus* and *Probus* cousin germans, and the Nephews of *Anastasius*, being armed by the people who were weary of *Iustinian's* taxes, invaded the Empire, first pillaging for five dayes together, all that were loyall to *Iustinian*. But *Hypatius* and *Pompejus* were both slain, as they were offering to seise upon the Palace, by *Belisarius* who being before in some disgrace, did now by this fact reingratiate himselfe with the Emperour.

In Afric *Gilimer* having killed *Hildericus* the sonne of *Hunericus*, and *Eudoxa*

An. Mundi *Valentinian's* daughter, took the kingdom of the Vandals by force. *Iustinian* who interceded for the life of *Hildericus*, finding his request slighted, and *Hildericus* murdered in the prison, sent *Belisarius* with an Army, who drove *Gilimer* into Numidia, took Carthage, which had been 95 yeares out of the Romans possession, since *Genfericus* tooke it. *Gilimer* being besieged and forced with famine, was taken and carried in silver letters by *Belisarius* to *Iustinian*, who as he was led in triumph cried out *Vanity of vanities, and all is vanity*. Thus was the kingdom of the Vandals extinguished in Africa, which had continued since their first coming thither 108 yeares. *Iustinian* divided Afric into seven Provinces, three Consular, and four Prætorian: that is, three were appointed by the Consuls and people, and four by the Emperour, then *Belisarius* being made Consul is sent into Sicily to revenge the murder of the Queen *Amalasuenta*, who in prison implored the Emperours help. *Belisarius* having seized upon Sicily, *Theodatus* sends Pope *Agapetus* to Constantinople to make his peace with the Emperour. *Agapetus* condemned *Anthimus* the Patriarch of heretic, and having got *Menna* to succeed him, dyed shortly after at Byzantium, to whom by the appointment of *Theodatus Silverius* succeeds. *Belisarius* takes Naples, upon which *Theodatus* is slain at Ravenna by his souldiers for his carelesnesse, and so hee was punished for the murder of *Amalasuenta* his cousin german. *Vitiges* is made King by the Goths. *Belisarius* was invited to Rome by the citizens, who takes it and repairs the walls, the Italians fall off every day to *Belisarius*; *Vitiges* joining with the Franks, raiseth an Army of 150000 men, layeth siege to Rome, *Belisarius* stoutly defends it, so that 30000 Goths were at this siege destroyed in one day. The siege lasted above a year, in which time there were 69 skirmishes, and the Goths at last driven from the siege. Pope *Silverius* being accused of treachery is by *Iustinian's* command banished into Pontia an Island in the Tyrrhen Sea, called Porce. In whose place *Belisarius* sets up *Vigilius*, and then raiseth the siege before Ariminum. But the Goths assisted by the Burgundians, take Millan upon surrender, and put all to the sword; it's thought at least 300000. of all sorts, the women were bestowed on the Burgundians. 50000 dyed of the plague at Picenum, and so great was the famine, that mothers eat their children. This famine drove the Franks back again into Gallia, wherefore *Vitiges* being in great straits, solicited *Cosroes* the Persian to make warre upon the Emperour, who otherwayes was like to bring all his Forces into Italy. But in the meane while *Belisarius* tooke Ravenna, *Vitiges* submits to him; the Goths proffered to *Belisarius* the Empire of Italy, which he refused, and returning home upon *Iustinian's* command, carried with him *Vitiges*. In whose stead the Goths beyond Padua set up *Theudibaldus*, who having scarce reigned a year, was killed. *Araricus* succeeded, who was slain shortly after, then *Totilas* was made King. He thrusts the Romans out of Ravenna, and overthrowes them in a pitch battell.

4511. *Belisarius* upon his returne is employed in Syria and Persia against *Cosroes*, at A. C. 541. which time the plague so rageth at Constantinople, that there dyed 10000 a day. *Cosroes* burnes Seleucia and divers other cities. In Italy Neapolis is recovered by the diligence of the Goths. The Garrison is friendly dismissed, and the Inhabitants almost starved, are kindly used. So strict was the Discipline of the Army, that *Totilas* executed a kinsman of his for lying with a maid, whose whole estate he bestowed on her. Italy being in danger to be lost again. *Belisarius* is called back from Persia, and sent to Italy, where hee could doe but little good, because the old souldiers were either all gone, or else they were grown stubborn. Therefore *Totilas* takes Rome again, being betrayed, and almost all starved, and overthrowes some parts of the walls, but abstained from slaughter. In England *Occa* King of Cantium having invited the Saxons against *Arthur* King of the Britaines, was disappointed; for they were not permitted to land, wherefore they take pay under the French King. *Serditius* King of the South-Saxons, seizes on the Isle of Wight, which he bestowed upon *Stuffa* and *Whitgar*, who destroyed the old Britains. *Whitgar* called the Castle there *Whitgarsburg*, now briefly *Garesburg*. *Belisarius* returnes again into Italy, takes Tarentum, Spoletum, and Rome, which

which hee fortyfifth; but the Persian warre being renewed by *Cosroes*, hee was againe commanded thither. Whose departure gave occasion to *Totilas* to overrunne againe all Italy: hee obtaines also Rome by the treason of the Isauri, which now hee fence for himselfe. Not long before this, the Danes being driven out of France, fell upon Frisia. The Lombards came out of their countreys before this, *Sijon* being then king of the Danes, they under their Captain *Alboinus*, on the borders of Pannonia overcame *Cunimundus* King of the Gepidæ, to whom Syrmium and much of Dalmatia was subject. Shortly after *Narses* whom *Iustinian* sent to Italy in stead of *Belisarius* sends for these who did him good service in subduing the Goths: in a short while after *Totilas* in Tuscia was overthrown and killed. So Rome and Italy became subject again to *Iustinian*, from whence the remainder of the Goths were quite expelled, who chose *Tejas* for their King. He having reigned one year, was in a battell overthrown at Cumæ, and slaine. The 22 year of the Gothic war. *Aligernus* Captain of the Cumæan Garrison, yeelded himselfe to *Narses*. Shortly after the Franks and Alemans, as they entered into Italy, and fell to plundering, were set upon, stript of all their booty, and of 30000 Scars 5000 returned home, the rest being consumed by the sword and the plague. So Italy being quieted, and *Cosroes* forced by many losses to sue for peace, both Rome and Constantinople were shaken with earthquakes, upon which follows the plague, which swept away multitudes of people: *Iustinian* laying aside his Crown, bestowed the money on the poore, which was wont to be employed on sports and playes. He made a law against Sodomites, punishing them with the losse of their genitals, and sacriligious persons with the losse of their hands.

*Belisarius* though now aged, yet was employed against the Huns, who had broke in upon Chersonesus and Greece, these also hee overthrew, and cleared the Empire of them. But after all his good services, upon suspicion of treason hee was imprisoned, some say hee was forced to begge for almes; but hee being found innocent, was restored to his wealth and honours, and two yeares after dyed in peace. *Iustinian* also dyed the same yeare, having reigned 38 yeares and 7 months. In his time the fifth generall Councell was called at Constantinople, in which *Theodorus* Bishop of Maphesta in Cilicia, *Theodorus* Bishop of Cyprus, and *Ibas* Bishop of Edessa were condemned, which had moved many dangerous disputations favoring of Nestorianism, *Origen* was also condemned, though *Vigilius* the Pope would not be present or give his assent, for which cause hee was banished, but recalled by *Narses* the Eunuch, and in his return dyed of the stone in Sicily. In this Councell also were condemned the two Originists, *Didymus* and *Enagrios*, for teaching that the soules were extant before the bodies, that the Devils should bee saved, and that the paines of hell were not eternall. *Iustinian* occasioned much barbarousnesse and ignorance in his time, by converting the salaries allowed for maintenance of schooles and learning, to his owne use; he spent vast summes in building: the chiefest whereof was the Temple of *S. Sophia*, dedicated to the eternall wisdom of the Father. Hee held before hee dyed, that Christs body was immortall and incapable of suffering from the time of his birth: which opinion he forced upon all men, and because *Eutychius* the Patriarch of Constantinople would not give his assent to it, hee was banished, and *Iohannes Scholasticus* substituted in his place. In his time *David* an Indian king, upon a victory hee had over the Homerits a people of Ethiopia, became a Christian, and had a Bishop with some Monkes sent into his country, two of these Monkes brought home with them Silk-wormes, which were before unknown to the Romans, and so they learned to make silk stufes, which they were wont to buy ready made, hitherto. As *Iustinus* had commanded Christs Nativity to bee kept, so did *Iustinian* festum occursus *Simeonis* *ummaridis*, the purification of *Mary*, and afterward *Mauritius* her sleep or death. Then did the Avares a people of the Huns obtain from *Iustinian* a place in Pannonia to inhabit, upon the removing of the Longobards from thence into Italy. *Gethes* King of the Heruli, *Gorda* King of the Huns, *Abasgi* and divers other people upon Tanais become Christians. The Sarmatians and their new King *Indian* were



*An. Mundi* were destroyed. Toletum is taken by the Franks, who plunder the Churches thereof. The hereticks called Agnoetæ, held that Christ knew not the day of judgement. Pope Agapetus for calling *Justinian Diocletian*, in that hee became an Eurychian, was smitten on the face by a courtier; some thinke *Justinian* dyed madde. *Narses* of the booties which hee tooke from the Goths, built a Temple at Venice to *Theodoricus* the Martyr, where now is the Church of St. Mark. *Rupertus* Bishop of the Franks converted the *Boii* or *Bavarians* to Christ. The last of the Confuls was *Basilius*, in whom ended that honorable Office. *Childebertus* & his brother *Clotharius*, takes divers towns in Spain, and bring away with them the coat of *Vincentius*, the martyr, to whom they build a church in the Suburbs, now called St. Germans.

## CHAP. VI.

1. Of Justin, Tiberius, and Mauritius. 2. Of the Persians, Goths, Longobards, Suevi, Avars, and others of these times. 3. The affaires of the Church then.

*Justinus* the second a Thracian born, and Nephew to *Justinian* by his daughter, succeeded; in the beginning of his reign he took off many taxes, built fair houses, and adorned the Churches. But shortly after, being of an infirm body, hee gave himselfe to women and idlenesse. Hee sold the Church livings, and by connivence, permitted many injuries, till one demanding of him the Government of the City, and wishing him to give way for execution of justice, caused a Senator that was found guilty to be whipt, and so the others by this punishment were affrighted. *Justin* deposed *Narses* being accused by the Romans for his oppression, and *Longinus* is sent in his place. In whom began the Exarchat of Ravenna; the Emperors Deputies being called *Exarchi*. *Sophia* the Emperesse, scoffingly sent word to the Eunuch, that hee should returne to spin among the women. Hee returned her this answer, that *He would spin her such a thread, as neither shee nor her husband should be able to untwist*. Whereupon hee calls the Longobards into Italy, who under their King *Alboinus*, made no scruple to exchange poore Pannonia for rich Italy, thither they came accompanied with the Saxons and other Nations, leaving Pannonia to the Huns, but conditionally, that if things fell not out to their mindes in Italy, they might enjoy againe their old habitations. This migration of the Lombards into Italy was prefiged by the rushing of armed men in the air. *Narses* having raised the storm, forsooke Rome, and sheltered himself in Naples, Pope *John* the third (who succeeded *Pelagius*) followed after, desiring his return to Rome, but not long after they both dyed, and left Italy as a prey to the Barbarians. In the interim the Huns and Avars did utterly extirpate the Gepidæ; and the Saxons country being forsaken, is re-peopled by the French King with plantations of Suevians.

*Alboinus* having possessed himself of Gallia Cisalpina, called it Longobardia, now Lombardie. He spent 3 yeares and 6 months in the siege of Ticinum, which hee took, and made the feat of his kingdome, and called it by the name of Papia. Three dukedomes were erected: one called Forojulium now called Friuli, the second at Spoleto, and the third at Beneventum. But *Alboinus* in the 4. yeare of his reign ended his life by drunkenesse. He had killed some yeares before *Cunimundus* king of the Gepidæ, whose wife being dead (shee was the daughter of *Clotharius* the French King) He married with *Rosmunda* the daughter of *Cunimund*. One day at Verona in a feast, hee drunk to her in a cup made of her Fathers skull, desiring her to be merry with her Father. Shee in a rage prostitutes her body to *Helmiches* the kings page, and to one *Perido* a resolute souldier, desiring no other reward but the murder of her husband. Upon this *Alboinus* is murdered in his chamber, as he was sleeping after dinner. *Helmiches* flies with adulterous *Rosmunda* to *Longinus* the Exarch. Shee falling in love with another poysoned *Helmiches*, as hee

he was coming out of the bath; he perceiving that hee was poysoned, drew his sword, and forced her to drink up the rest of the potion: thus three murderers are justly punished.

To *Alboinus* succeeded *Clephus*, who having reigned tyrannically 11 yeare and 6 months, was murdered by one of his servants. After him the Longobards chose them Dukes, as they were wont. These subdued a great part of Italy, and made warres upon Gallia; these lasted 10 yeares, till one of them fell off to *Longinus* the Exarch. About this time the peace was broken by *Justin* with the Persian for he with held the payment of 500 l. weight of gold which hee used to pay to *Cosroes*. He armed *Arathas* the Ethiopian King against the Parthians, and undertook also the protection of Armenia the greater. *Martianus Justinus* Generall, defeated the Persian, and besieged Nisibis, but *Justin* most foolishly took away *Martianus* commission, and substituted *Acacius* as great a coward as himselfe. This made the Army in a rage give off the siege, which the Persian perceiving; presently *Hormisdas* the sonne of *Cosroes*, sends *Ardamanes* with new Forces, which far and neer wasted the Eastern Empire; so that *Sophia* the wife of *Justin* (who was now become phreneticke upon his bad successe) was forced to sue for peace. *Justin* being recovered, by the advice of his wife made *Tiberius* a Thracian, but a good souldier, his successeur, to whom hee gave many wholesome admonitions, in which hee shewed himselfe a better Counsellor, then an Emperor. And so grieving at his own follies and miscarriages dyed the 13 yeare of his reign. In his time Cantabria was subdued by the Visigoths, who having overthrowen the Suevi, made Toletum their Regall Seat. In France there were civill warres between the four sonnes of *Clotharius*. Two French Bishops *Sagitaris* and *Salonius* were degraded in the councill of Lyons, for arming themselves like souldiers, and going to the wars; but upon their appeal to Pope *John* they were restored, yet afterward continuing in their lewd courses they were degraded again in the Council of Cabilon. *Herbertus* or *Charibertus*, the son of *Clotharius* or *Clotharius* King of Paris, for putting his wife away unjustly, & committing incest with his two sisters; was excommunicated by *Germanus* Bishop of Paris, and suddenly after dyed.

*Tiberius Constantinus* was made Co-emperor with *Justin* before his death, and was crowned with his wife *Anastasia* by *Eurychius* the Patriarch. He was a just, milde and bountifull Emperor, chiefly to the poore, whom *Sophia* the Emperesse reproved, as being too prodigall; he answers, that hee should never want wealth on earth, as long as hee laid up treasures in heaven by relieving the poore. For as hee caused a marble stone to be taken up, on which was ingraven the crosse, counting it unchristian like to tread upon it, hee found many talents of gold buried there. Hee was also informed of the great treasure which *Narses* had hid; with this wealth he relieved the poore, and made war against the Persians which had broke in upon Armenia, and recovered all that had been lost under *Justinian* and *Justin*. *Cosroes* being aged and grieving for his losses dyed; and made a Law that no Persian King hereafter should make war against the Romans. *Tiberius* having found such good service from *Mauritius* in this last Persian warre, bestowed his daughter *Constantina* on him, and having crowned them both, made him his successeur in the Empire. He shewed himselfe so gracious to the captives, that hee sent them home without any ranfome. He relieved the Romans with corn from Egypt, when they were almost famished, and ready to surrender to the Longobards, or long bearded Barbarians, who were grown very insolent, because *Tiberius* was wholly employed about the Persian war.

*Tiberius* before he was made Emperour by *Justin*, was sent against the Avars, who being vexed by the Turkes their neighbours, removed from the higher Scythia, and passing over Caucasus, sat down upon the banks of Ister, and threatened to take Syrmium. In this expedition *Tiberius* escaped narrowly from being taken. But at last he made peace with them. *Coganus* their King desired *Tiberius* to send him some Carpenters to make baths for him after the Roman fashion; but when the Carpenters came, hee forced them to build him a bridge over Danubius, that he might on all occasions plunder the Roman Provinces: *Tiberius* having reigned

*An. Mundi* reigned with *Justinus* 3 yeares and 11 moneths, and by himselfe 4 yeares, dyed of a surfeit, eating too many mulberries. In his time *Pelagius* the second being consecrated Pope without the Emperors knowledge, sent *Gregory* then a Deacon, to excuse him to *Tiberius*, whom he could not acquaint with his consecration, because the city was besieged: then did *Gregory* begin his Commentaries on *Job*, and caused *Eutychius* the Patriarch to renounce his Origenicall opinions. Such violent Arians were in the Goths in Spain, that King *Lemugildus* slew his own sonne *Elmingildus*, because hee forooke the Arian heresie. Many Jewes in his time became Christians. It's thought that *Cosroes* dyed a christian, and that he sent two golden crosses, with other rich presents to the Church of *S. Sergius* in Antioch. The remainders of the Suevi are driven out of Spain, having reigned there 177 yeares. The Gothish Kings who hitherto wore the same clothes and used the same seats, that the Nobility used, begin now to sit in a throne and to wear the regall purple. One *Donatus* then, was the first that brought into Spain the monasticall profession.

4553.  
A. C. 583. *Mauritius* a Cappadocian born, succeeds: an excellent Prince had he not been covetous. Having taken *Alamundarus* the Saracen in the Persian war, and sent him prisoner to Sicily, he had wars next with *Caganus* King of the Avars, who had taken *Syrmiu* the chief city of Pannonia, and exacted a yearly stipend from the Romans. And not content with this, he sends the Sclavi to plunder and waste the Roman territories, whom *Mauritius* by his General *Commentiolus* suppressed, and recovered all the Roman prisoners, and the booty. *Hormisdas* the Persian King slighting his fathers command, makes wars upon the Romans. Against him *Mauritius* sends *Philippicus*, on whom he bestowed his sister in marriage. The Roman Army had rejected their Generall *Priscus* for his infolency, and chosen *Germannus*, but by the intreaty and eloquence of *Gregory*, they received *Philippicus* for their Generall, who had good successe against the Medes and Persians, but *Martyropolis* was betrayed to the Persian by *Sitta* the Decurion, whereupon *Commentiolus* is sent in *Philippicus* his place. He overthrowes the Persian neer *Martyropolis*. *Hormisdas* being angry with *Baras* his Generall, (who had subdued the Turks, and made them tributaries to Persia) banisheth him to Colchis, where *Baras* was again overthrowen by *Romanus* *Mauritius* his Prætor. Upon this *Hormisdas* takes away the Generals place from him, and in a scoffe sends him a womans garment. *Baras* to be revenged of this disgrace, faines letters as from the King written to the armies, in which he upbraided them for their cowardise & effeminate nesse, and withdrawes also a good part of their pay. The souldiers thinking these letters to be reall, swear fealty to *Baras*. *Bynodoes* a great man whom *Hormisdas* had put in irons was set at liberty by his brother *Bastis*, who seise on the King, and imprison him. These having called a Parliament, condemne the King as unworthy of Government, because of his cruelty, and needlesse wars, besides his other crimes. Hereupon he is deposed, imprisoned, and exoculated, his wife, and son whom he appointed his successour, both put to death, and his son *Cosroes* whom he hated is made King. This new King used his Father at first very kindly, but being exasperated by his railing language continually against him, at last commanded him to be cudgelled to death. This fact made him odious to his people, who fel from him to *Baras*. Hereupon *Cosroes* flies away on post Horses to the Roman camp: He was received by *Probus* the Patrician, and recommended to *Mauritius*, whom he animates against *Baras*. *Narjes* is sent with the Army, who overthrowes *Baras*: besides many thousand Persians that were slaine, 6000 were taken prisoners. *Cosroes* is restored to his kingdome, who puts all the captives to the sword, except the Turkes who are sent to the Emperour at Byzantium, and so in the 8 year of *Mauritius* a generall peace is concluded in the East. But the wars with *Caganus* King of the Avars is not yet at an end. Many doubtfull battels are fought betwixt them. And many inrodes are made by the Sclavi. But *Mauritius* in the 10 year of his reign removed *Caganus* out of Thracia by this trick. He fained some letters and sent them to *Priscus* the Prætor, who was then besieged in a castle by *Caganus*; he wisheth him to hold out the siege, for the Barbarian should

*An. Mundi* should be forced to remove suddenly; because the Fleet which hee had sent to waste his coast, had already made great havock in his country; *Caganus* having intercepted these letters, and supposing them to be true, raised the siege and marched homeward. But for 6 yeares after there were continuall wars; so that *Caganus* sackt 40 cities of Dalmatia. *Mauritius* out of covetousnesse, and the bad counsell of *Commentiolus*, gave way that *Caganus* should take many of his souldiers prisoners, because they refused to contribute towards the charges of their armes and clothes, yet tooke 12000 captives, whom hee offered to release for a small sum, which *Mauritius* out of hatred and avarice refused to pay. Wherefore *Caganus* in a rage put them all to the sword, and would not depart thence, till he had received a great sum of gold.

*Mauritius* was so little sensible of what he had done, that he absolved *Commentiolus*, when hee was accused as the chief actor in this treachery, and his accusers were punished; which so incensed the people, that they stung stones at the Emperour as he was going to the Church. He had after this some victories over the Avars. But shortly after a Monke running with a naked sword through the streets cryeth out, *Mauritius shall shortly be killed with the sword*. A comet burned for whole 6 moneths. At last his heart smote him, for the murder of the souldiers, and desired that he might be prayed for; In his sleep hee thought that hee stood before Christs Tribunal, where he was asked, whether he would be punished here or hereafter: he answered here Lord, and so he was by *Phocas*, of whom he understood by *Philippicus*, that he was a rash young fellow, but unconsiderable, and a coward; then said *Mauritius*: if a coward, then a murderer. This *Phocas* was a Centurion, he had been Ycoman of the stirrop to *Priscus* the Patrician; but now a great stickler against *Mauritius* his government. Who used his army undirectly and rigidly, abridging them of their pay; and refusing to let them have any provision but what they should take from the enemy, and therefore willed them to take up their Winter quarters among the Slavonians. Upon this the Army did mutiny, and lifting up *Phocas* on a Target, as the custome was, they salute him Emperour; *Peter* *Mauritius* his brother who had charge of the Army is forced to flye. In Constantinople they would have made *Theodosius* the son of *Mauritius*, or else *Theodosius* his father in law *Germanicus* Emperour; but *Mauritius* had already imprisoned *Philippicus* who married his own sister, upon suspicion. He cudgelled his sonne. *Germanicus* took sanctuary in a Church, whence *Mauritius* would have pulled him out, but the uprore so increased, that hee is driven our of the City; *Phocas* is received, who having sworne to maintaine the Orthodox Religion, is crowned by *Ciriacus* the patriarch. 5 dayes after *Mauritius* is pursued by *Phocas* and taken at Chalcedon, where hee fell sick. In the presence of *Phocas*, *Mauritius* his two younger sonnes are slaine, then his 3 daughters, at last *Constantina* their mother and daughter of *Tiberius*, though some write that the mother and 3 daughters having taken sanctuary, were not beheaded till 5 yeares after. But *Mauritius* having seen the execution of his sons, and his owne at hand, cries out: *Just art thou O Lord, and righteous are thy judgements*: and so submitted his neck to the sword. After their heads were cut off, their bodies were left on the shore for the gazing objects of the people; but at last they were buried in the Church by a certain Eunuch. The eldest sonne *Theodosius* was fled to the Persians by his Fathers advice: but he was so eagerly pursued, that he was overtaken, and by a command from *Phocas*, slaine also. Shortly after *Germanus* is killed, and his daughter the wife of *Theodosius*; and at last all that had any relation to *Mauritius* even his youngest child of all, which was but an Infant, and whom the Nurse would have saved, by offering her owne to death, which *Mauritius* refused. He reigned 20 yeares, three moneths, and some odd days.

In his time the Saxons being weary of the Longobards Government, returned to their own country, which was now possessed by the Suevi, between whom there arose such a quarrell about the removing of the Sueves, that 20000 were killed. The Lombards after they had bin ruled 10 years by Dukes, they chose them a King whom

*An. Mundi* reigned with *Justinus* 3 yeares and 11 moneths, and by himselfe 4 yeares, dyed of a surfeit, eating too many mulberries. In his time *Pelagius* the second being consecrated Pope without the Emperors knowledge, sent *Gregory* then a Deacon, to excuse him to *Tiberius*, whom he could not acquaint with his consecration, because the city was besieged: then did *Gregory* begin his Commentaries on *Job*; and caused *Eutychius* the Patriarch to renounce his Origenicall opinions. Such violent Arians were in the Goths in Spain, that King *Lemugildus* slew his own sonne *Elmingildus*, because hee forooke the Arian heresie. Many Jewes in his time became Christians. It's thought that *Cosroes* dyed a christian, and that he sent two golden crosses, with other rich presents to the Church of *S. Sergius* in Antioch. The remainders of the Suevi are driven out of Spain, having reigned there 177 yeares. The Gothish Kings who hitherto wore the same clothes and used the same seats, that the Nobility used, begin now to sit in a throne and to wear the regall purple. One *Donatus* then, was the first that brought into Spain the monasticall profession.

4553.  
A. C. 583. *Mauritius* a Cappadocian born, succeeds: an excellent Prince had he not been covetous. Having taken *Alamundarus* the Saracen in the Persian war, and sent him prisoner to Sicily, he had wars next with *Caganus* King of the Avars, who had taken Syrmium the chief city of Pannonia, and exacted a yearly stipend from the Romans. And not content with this, he sends the Sclavi to plunder and waste the Roman territories, whom *Mauritius* by his General *Commentiolus* suppressed, and recovered all the Roman prisoners, and the booty. *Hormisdas* the Persian King slighting his fathers command, makes wars upon the Romans. Against him *Mauritius* sends *Philippicus*, on whom he bestowed his sister in marriage. The Roman Army had rejected their Generall *Priscus* for his insolency, and chosen *Germanus*, but by the intreaty and eloquence of *Gregory*; they received *Philippicus* for their Generall, who had good successe against the Medes and Persians, but *Martyropolis* was betrayed to the Persian by *Sitta* the Decurion, whereupon *Commentiolus* is sent in *Philippicus* his place. He overthrowes the Persian neer *Martyropolis*. *Hormisdas* being angry with *Baras* his Generall, (who had subdued the 30 Turks, and made them tributaries to Persia) banisheth him to Colchis, where *Baras* was again overthrowen by *Romanus* *Mauritius* his Prætor. Upon this *Hormisdas* takes away the Generals place from him, and in a scoffe sends him a womans garment. *Baras* to be revenged of this disgrace, faines letters as from the King written to the armies, in which he upbraided them for their cowardise & effeminatenesse, and withdrawes also a good part of their pay. The souldiers thinking these letters to be reall, swear fealty to *Baras*. *Bynodoes* a great man whom *Hormisdas* had put in irons was set at liberty by his brother *Basta*, who seise on the King, and imprison him. These having called a Parliament, condemne the King as unworthy of Government, because of his cruelty, and needlesse wars, besides his other crimes. Hereupon he is deposed, imprisoned, and exoculated, his wife, and son whom he appointed his successeur, both put to death, and his son *Cosroes* whom he hated is made King. This new King used his Father at first very kindly, but being exasperated by his railing language continually against him, at last commanded him to be cudgelled to death. This fact made him odious to his people, who fel from him to *Baras*. Hereupon *Cosroes* flies away on post Horses to the Roman camp: He was received by *Probus* the Patrician, and recommended to *Mauritius*, whom he animates against *Baras*. *Narfes* is sent with the Army, who overthrowes *Baras*: besides many thousand Persians that were slaine, 6000 were taken prisoners. *Cosroes* is restored to his kingdome, who puts all the captives to the sword, except the Turkes who are sent to the Emperour at Byzantium, and so in the 8 year of *Mauritius* a generall peace is concluded in the East. But the wars with *Caganus* King of the Avars is not yet at an end. Many doubtfull batels are fought betwixt them. And many inrodes are made by the Sclavi. But *Mauritius* in the 10 year of his reign removed *Caganus* out of Thracia by this trick. He fained some letters and sent them to *Priscus* the Prætor, who was then besieged in a castle by *Caganus*; he wisheth him to hold out the siege, for the Barbarian should

*An. Mundi* should be forced to remove suddenly; because the Fleet which hee had sent to waste his coast, had already made great havock in his countrey; *Chaganus* having intercepted these letters, and supposing them to be true, raised the siege and marched homeward. But for 6 yeares after there were continuall wars; so that *Chaganus* sackt 40 cities of Dalmatia. *Mauritius* out of covetousnesse, and the bad counsell of *Commentiolus*, gave way that *Caganus* should take many of his souldiers prisoners, because they refused to contribute towards the charges of their armes and clothes, yet tooke 12000 captives, whom hee offered to release for a small sum, which *Mauritius* out of hatred and avarice refused to pay. Wherefore *Chaganus* in a rage put them all to the sword, and would not depart thence, till he had received a great sum of gold.

*Mauritius* was so little sensible of what he had done, that he absolved *Commentiolus*, when hee was accused as the chief actor in this treachery, and his accusers were punished; which so incensed the people, that they slung stones at the Emperour as he was going to the Church. He had after this some victories over the Avars. But shortly after a Monke running with a naked sword through the streets cryeth out, *Mauritius shall shortly be killed with the sword*. A comet burned for whole 6 moneths. At last his heart smote him, for the murder of the souldiers, and desired that he might be prayed for; In his sleep hee thought that hee stood before Christs Tribunal, where he was asked, whether he would be punished here or hereafter: he answered here Lord, and so he was by *Phocas*, of whom he understood by *Philippicus*, that he was a rash young fellow, but unconsiderable, and a coward; then said *Mauritius*: if a coward, then a murderer. This *Phocas* was a Centurion, he had been Yeoman of the stirrop to *Priscus* the Patrician; but now a great stickler against *Mauritius* his government. Who used his army undiscreetly and rigidly, abridging them of their pay; and refusing to let them have any provision but what they should take from the enemy, and therefore willed them to take up their Winter quarters among the Slavonians. Upon this the Army did mutiny, and lifting up *Phocas* on a Target, as the custome was, they salute him Emperour; *Peter* *Mauritius* his brother who had charge of the Army is forced to flye. In Constantinople they would have made *Theodosius* the son of *Mauritius*, or else *Theodosius* his father in law *Germanicus* Emperour; but *Mauritius* had already imprisoned *Philippicus* who married his own sister, upon suspicion. He cudgelled his sonne. *Germanicus* took sanctuary in a Church, whence *Mauritius* would have pulled him out, but the uprore so increased, that hee is driven out of the City; *Phocas* is received, who having sworn to maintaine the Orthodox Religion, is crowned by *Ciriacus* the patriarch. 5 dayes after *Mauritius* is pursued by *Phocas* and taken at Chalcedon, where hee fell sick. In the presence of *Phocas*, *Mauritius* his two younger sonnes are slain, then his 3 daughters, at last *Constantina* their mother and daughter of *Tiberius*, though some write that the mother and 3 daughters having taken sanctuary, were not beheaded till 5 yeares after. But *Mauritius* having seen the execution of his sons, and his owne at hand, cries out: *Just art thou O Lord, and righteous are thy judgements*: and so submitted his neck to the sword. After their heads were cut off, their bodies were left on the shore for the gazing objects of the people; but at last they were buried in the Church by a certain Eunuch. The eldest sonne *Theodosius* was fled to the Persians by his Fathers advice: but he was so eagerly pursued, that he was overtaken, and by a command from *Phocas*, slain also. Shortly after *Germanus* is killed, and his daughter the wife of *Theodosius*; and at last all that had any relation to *Mauritius* even his youngest child of all, which was but an Infant, 4572.  
A. C. 602. and whom the Nurse would have saved, by offering her owne to death, which *Mauritius* refused. He reigned 20 yeares, three moneths, and some odder dayes.

In his time the Saxons being weary of the Longobards Government, returned to their own countrey, which was now possessed by the Suevi, between whom there arose such a quarrell about the removing of the Sueves, that 20000 were killed. The Lombards after they had bin ruled 10 yeares by Dukes, they chose them a King whom

*An. Mundi* whom they named *Flavius*, because this was an honourable name among the Romans; on him they conferred the halfe of their goods, that hee might maintaine the greater state. *Mauritius* hired *Childebertus* the French King, to oppose him, which caused great troubles in Lombardy. Such inundations of waters there were in Italy, that *Tibris* overflowed the wals, a great Dragon swimm'd through the city downe towards the Sea, upon which followed the plague, whereof Pope *Pelagius* dyed: this sicknesse lasted many yeares. *Gregorius* is made Pope, who by letters desired *Mauritius* not to confirm this election, but this honour was forced on him; and not without cause was he called great, if we consider either his doctrine, or life. Hee appointed Litanies against that plague, which swept away in an houres space 80 people. *Gregory* sent *Austin* to instruct the Saxons in the Christian Faith, who had with some other Monks in England. Antioch 61 yeares after the former earthquake was shaken again, in which there dyed 60000 people. *Gregory* Bishop of that City was strangely preserved, for no sooner was he gone out of the house, but it immediately fell down: *John* Patriarch of Byzantium assumed the title of *Oecumenicall* Bishop; which Antichristian pride in him *Gregory* sharply reprov'd. In Spain *Ricaredus* the sonne of King *Lebnigildus* who killed his son for being a Catholick, drove the Arian heresie out of Spain, and obtained the title of Catholick King. He overthrew 60000 French, who had broke in upon Spain. Hee 20 was both a good and fortunate Prince, who having reigned 15 yeares dyed at *Toletum*. Such was the ignorance of that age, that neither the Latin tongue at *Constantinople*, nor the Greek at Rome was understood. *Chilpericus* King of France was slaine by his subjects, at the perswasion of his wife *Fredegunda*, for his cruelties, and heresies; a Synod of 62 Bishops in Toledo is held against Arianism. With Religion, learning flourished in these South parts of England, till *Charles* the great, who sent for *Beda's* scholars hence to teach in France and Italy. The Slavi set themselves in Istria and Dalmatia, which from them is called Slavonia: *Gregory* calls himselfe the servant of servants. He introduceth many ceremonies, sets up divers Monasteries, one in his own house, and six in Sicily, and sends abroad 30 many Apostles to preach the Gospell. *Columbanus* out of Ireland preacheth to the Picts.

## CHAP. VII.

The affairs of the Empire under Phocas and Heraclius. 2. Of Mahomet and the Saracens. 3. Of the Church and divers Forraign passages of these times.

4581. *P*hocas who murdered his Master, and by sedition, got the Empire, by ty-  
ranny maintaines it. But not long; for hee tyrannised not much above 7  
A. C. 611. yeares. That Army of his which murdered *Mauritius* is overthrowne by  
*Cosroes*. And hee who cut off the head of his Master, had his own head at last cut  
off with his armes and genitals. Not onely he, but the whole Empire suffers, for  
his cruell paricide. The Persians subdue Phenicia, Syria, and Palestina, they  
waite Galatia, Paphlagonia, and Cappadocia. In Europe the Avars overrunne  
Thracia, and kill every where the Roman Legions. In Antioch the Jews murder  
the Christians, and among the rest *Anastasius* their Patriarch, whose body they  
burned. The Jewes for these outrages are condemned to lose first their gen-  
itals, then their heads. *Phocas* was a notorious drunkard, who being taxed by some  
for that vice, rageth on the people murdering multitudes of them: but tyranny  
is short-lived: therefore *Heraclius* Governour of Afric, enters into a league with  
*Priscus* and *Gregoras* Patricians, that hee who first did dispatch *Phocas*, should be  
Emperour. *Heraclius* the sonne of this *Heraclius*, by a Fleet of Ships obtaines  
*Constantinople*. *Photius* a Noble man, whose wife *Phocas* had abused, breaks into  
the Palace, flings down *Phocas* from his throne, lays him in Irons, and brings him  
to *Heraclius*, who kicking him with his heels, caused his genitals with which he  
abused

abused so many women to be cut off, and at last his head; some say he was burned  
in a brasie furnace. It's remarkable that of all *Phocas* his Army, which consented to  
the death of *Mauritius*, there are but two left alive, in lesse then 8 yeares  
space.

*Caganus* King of the Avars enters Lombardy, kills *Gisulphus*, king *Agilulphus*  
his Generall, and besiegeth *Forojulium*, and takes it by the treachery of *Romilda*  
the wife of *Gisulphus*, to whom hee promised marriage. *Caganus* hating the trea-  
chery and leachery of *Romilda*, performed his promise for one night, and lay  
with her, then he delivered her to the lust of his souldiers, who having abused  
her, thrust a long pole through her. But her daughters more modest then the  
mother, preserved their chastity, by keeping in their breasts the flesh of chickens,  
which putrefying with heat, so stunk that no souldier could come neer them, who  
thought that all the women of Lombardy had smelled thus ranck. About this  
time the Slavi shake off the tyrannicall yoke which the Huns and Avars (now  
called by one name Hungarians) had laid on them; and made one *Samon* a French  
Merchant their King, under whom they defeated the Huns in a battell. *Agilulphus*  
Duke of Taurinum in Lombardy is chosen King by *Theudolinda* (the widow of  
the former King *Autharus*) whom she married, and made a good Christian; her  
*Gregory* had by his letters seasoned with the Catholick Religion. This King made  
peace with France, and with the Exarch, & caused all Church Lands to be restored,  
which had been taken away. In Spain *Pitricus* obtained the kingdom by mur-  
dering the sonne of *Recaredus* the former king, and he himselfe in the 7 year of his  
reign was murdered by his own subjects at a feast. *Gindemarus* that followed  
reigned 2 yeares, and *Sesibutus* his successour 8 yeares. Pope *Gregory* dyed the 2  
yeare of *Phocas*, to whom succeeded *Sabinianus*, and after him, *Boniface* the third,  
who obtained of *Phocas*, that Rome should be the head of all other Churches. He  
was willing to comply with the Pope, knowing how conducible this was to his af-  
faires; *Boniface* the third, 8 months after this dyed, to whom succeeded *Boniface*  
the fourth, who turned the Pantheon dedicated of old to all the Gods, to a Church  
dedicated to *Mary* and all the Saints. *Cosroes* took Jerusalem from the Romans, and  
carried away the Crosse to Persis with many thousand Christians. About these  
times the use of clocks and bells was found out. The Roman government was quite  
extinguished in Spain by *Sesibutus* King there.

*Heraclius* a Patrician, and sonne of *Heraclian* or *Heraclius* Governour of Africa, 4589  
is made Emperour by the Senat and Army. He with his wife *Fabia Eudoxia* were  
crowned by *Sergius* the Patriarch. He indeavoured first to make peace with the  
Persian, but could not, except he would reject Christ and worship the Sun. In  
the interim the Jewes insult over the Christians, having bought from *Cosroes* their  
conqueror 90000 of them, which they barbarously murdered. Jerusalem be-  
coming taken; the Persians seise next upon Alexandria, Egypt, and Libya, subduing  
all to Ethiopia, about the 6 yeare of *Heraclius*, and in the 7 they tooke Carthage;  
and at the same time *Caganus* was pillaging Thracia. At the same time also *Jo-  
hannes Limigius* successour to *Smaragdus* in the Exarchat, and after him *Elenthe-  
rius* for their tyranny in Italy are slaine by the souldiers. *Heraclius* who could not  
make peace with *Cosroes*, makes it with *Caganus*; and so removes his European  
Armies to the east: Exhorting them to remember the wrongs done to Christi-  
anity by *Cosroes*. They first enter Armenia, and defeat *Sabarnus* the enemies Ge-  
nerall there. In the 13 year of his reign he marcheth through the heart of Persia,  
killing many thousand of Persians, and overthrowing their groves, and fire which  
they worshipped. He had so many captives, that in Albania where he wintered, he  
suffered 50000 to escape.

About this time appeared *Mahomet* the Saracen, being left a poor orphan, he  
married his rich mistresse *Chadiga*, whom hee made beleve that his falling sick-  
nesse was but a conformation of his mind, proceeding from the sight of the An-  
gel *Gabriel*, who used to appear to him: which lye was confirmed by *Sergius* the  
Monk, who was banished out of Byzantium for his Nestorianism, by whose help  
and of an impostor Jew, hee compiled a gallimaufry of errors out of Christian,  
Jewish

*An. Mundi* Jewish and Heathenish writers, which he called Alcoran, wherein hee denyes Christs Divinity, and the Trinity; approving Circumcision and Polygamic. Of this absurd and impious book I have spoke, in my caveat against the Alcoran. He was forced to flye from Mecha; being in danger to lose his life for his errors. This slight the Arabians call Hegira, that is, the persecution, from whence they compute their yeares. *Cosroes* mad at the successe of *Heraclius*, plunders all the Christian churches of his Dominions, and forces them to embrace Nestorianism, already professed by the Armenians and Georgians. Hee invites the Bulgarians, Avars, Gepides, and Slavi to invade Constantinople. *Heraclius* hearing of this, calls in the Chazari or Turkes to the number of 40000. Byzantium is besieged by the Barbarians, who ten dayes after were forced to flye. *Heraclius* marcheth as farre as Ninive, where he defeats the enimie, kills *Razates* their Generall, and many of their prime men. *Cosroes* shuts himself up in Seleucia, and sends *Spartarius* to kill *Chardarigas*, who with *Sarbanus* besiegeth Chalcedon, because hee suspected that hee entertained correspondence with *Heraclius*. This businesse of killing *Chardarigas* was discovered, at which the Persians were discontented, and the rather because *Cosroes* refused to hearken to any peace with *Cesar*. *Gundabundas* a Colonell to *Sabarios* revolts to the Romans; many of the Commanders fals off to *Siroes* the Kings eldest sonne, whom he meant to disinherit, and to crown *Merdaces* his son, by another venter. Upon this *Heraclius* and *Siroes* conclude a peace; wherein it was agreed that all places and captives should be restored. *Siroes* the new chosen king pursues his father, overtakes him in his flight, and layes him in irons, then shewing him his gold and jewels, which he had bought at so deare a rate from the Romans, by the losse of so much blood; he left them with him to feed upon, for he was kept 5 dayes without food; then having seen *Merdaces* whom he designed for his successor, with his other sonnes murthered before his face, by *Syroes* command he was shot to death with arrowes, and so he lost both his crown and life by the Romans, of whom he had received both. Thus the captives & plunderings being restored on both sides, the Crosse and *Zacharias* Bishop of Jerusalem, then a captive, were restored. *Heraclius* in the 7 year of this war, returned in a triumphant chariot to Jerusalem bearing the Crosse in his hand; upon this was instituted the feast of the exaltation of the Crosse.

*Heraclius* understanding by the Astronomers that his Empire should bee laid wast, by those of the circumcision; he thought the Jews had been meant, and not the Saracens: wherefore hee forces them to embrace the Christian profession; and those that refused he banished out of his Dominions, commanding them not to come within 3 miles of Jerusalem. The same was done by *Sisebutus* in Spaine, and by *Dagobertus* the French King in France, against the Jews, of whom divers joined themselves with *Mahomet*, supposing him to be their Messias, till they saw him feed upon Camels flesh, and then they fell from him again. *Mahomet* having in 9 yeares space enlarged his Dominion by force and craft, his wives made him away: hee dyed being 40 yeares old, the 22 year of *Heraclius*. His stinking carcasse which had lain 3 dayes on the ground unburied, was put in an iron chest, and sent to Mecha. Hee promised his Disciples he would rise again the third day, but forgot it. The Saracens souldiers who had served under *Heraclius*, were slighted by one of *Heraclius* his Eunuchs, who had charge to pay them their arreares, but hee paid them with ill language, calling them dogs, so being incensed for want of their pay, and with ill words, they stirre up the whole Nation of the Saracens, being accustomed to robbing, against *Heraclius*. These under *Abubecher* their leader, *Mahomet*'s kinsman, take Gaza, and the passages of Mount Sinai, being a while resisted by the Governour of Casarea Palestina, two yeares after *Abubecher* dyed; *Homar* succeeds. Who fell upon Arabia, and tooke the city Bozra, then drove *Theodorus* *Heraclius* his brother to Edessa.

*Heraclius* sends an Army of 40000 under *Theodorus Sacellarius* and *Babanes*, against the Saracens, *Sacellarius* was first defeated; then *Babanes* having the disadvantage

advantage of ground, and the winde which drove the dust in his face. *Homar* setteth upon Damascus, then upon Phenicia. Thence he falls upon Egypt and makes it tributary. In the 26 year of *Heraclius* hee sits down before Jerusalem, and in two years space takes it. To *Sophronius* the Bishop, and to all the Christians of Palestina he promised security. In the 28 year of *Heraclius* Antioch is taken, *Muhawias* is made Amaras or Prætor of Egypt, as far as Euphrates. Then *Huyaidus* another of their Generalls takes Edessa, Dara, and Mesopotamia. The next yeare they enter Persia where king *Syroes* was dead, having reigned one year. *Hormisdas* succeeded, whom they defeated and put to flight, and took the three daughters of *Cosroes* prisoners, with all the kings wealth and furniture, and so in a short time subdued the East, and conquered the Persians, calling them Saracens now from *Sara Abraham*'s wife. *Heraclius* being grieved at this great successe of the Saracens or Hagarens rather, dyed of an hydroptic, having reigned 31 yeares. His incestuous marriage with *Martino* his brothers daughter, and his hereticall preffession, in holding there was but one will and operation in Christ, as *Sergius* Bishop of Constantinople, and *Cyrus* of Alexandria had taught him, were the causes of these miseries which fell on the Empire. *Martina* his incestuous widow having poisoned her son in law *Constantine* the third, after he had reigned 4 months, not without the knowledge of Bishop *Sergius* undertakes the Government. But having ruled halfe a yeare, hee was condemned by the Senat to have her tongue cut out, and her son *Heraclionas* to loose his nose, and both to be banished. *Constantine* the son of *Constantine* and nephew of *Heraclius* obtained the Empire. *Pyrrhus* the Patriarch who succeeded *Sergius*, upon a sedition raised against him, fled to Africa, to whom succeeded *Paul*.

About these times *Edwin* king of Northumberland was christned by *Paulinus*, whose successour *Oswaldus* propagated the Gospell farther in those parts. *Isaacius* Exarchat of Ravenna robs Pope *Honorius* of his treasures. One *Mauritius* keeper of Records, aiming to be king of Italy, is by this *Isaacius* apprehended and slain. In Lombardy *Rotharis* succeeded *Ariobaldus*, who set down in writing the Laws of the Lombards 77 yeares after their comming into Italy. *Muhawias* the Saracen after 7 yeares siege took Casarea Palestina. In France *Brunchilde* the Queen mother of *Childericus* who had caused much effusion of blood, by setting the French kings at variance among themselves, and had been the death of ten kings, was by king *Lotharius* of France condemned to lose one foot and one arm, then to be tyed to the tail of an unruly horse, and torn in sunder. To *Lotharius* succeeded *Dagobertus* in Austrasia, Neustria and Burgundy. His other sonne *Aribertus* succeeded in Aquatania. *Rupertus* or *Robertus* Bishop of Woorms first, then of Ratisbone converted *Theodon* Duke of Bavaria to the Christian faith; *Lupus* being banished by *Lotharius* baptizeth Duke *Boson* in Austria. The Nestorian heretick, being by means of *Cosroes* spreads far in the East, and continues to this day; whose Patriarch resides in Mozall or Seleucia of the Parthians.

Pope *Boniface* the fifth made Sanctuaries of Churches and Altars; so did *Honorius* and *Theodosius* long before. The Jacobites so called from *Jacob* the Syrian increase much. Pope *Honorius* the first in the 4 Councell of Toledo is excommunicate and degraded by the Bishops. The West Saxons are converted by the preaching of *Berinus*; sent thither by Pope *Honorius*. *Severus* a Bishop in Spain is martyred. *Chilennus* a Scotch man converted to the Faith the Atrebares or people of Arois, about Arras. The University of Cambridge was erected by King *Sigebert*, or as some will have it repaired or enlarged by him, but founded by *Cantiaber* King of Spain many yeares before, when he lived here in exile. *Cyrus* the last Bishop of Alexandria save one, a Monotholit, paid to the Saracens for 3 yeares an annuall pension, and so long Egypt enjoyed freedome of religion; but when *Heraclius* refused to allow it the Saracens subdued it. *Heraclius* was the last elective Emperour; after him it became hereditary. The Saracens seise on Persia, which had continued in the race of *Artaxerxes* 413 yeares; that is from *Artabanus* the last Parthian king till *Hormisdas* 2 the last Persian king. *Dagobertus* king of France erects many Monasteries and Churches; hee covered *S. Dennis* with silver, and made the



*An. Mundi* Duke of Britany doe him homage. *Rothar* king of Lombardy placed in every Church two Bishops, an Orthodox and an Arian, which occasioned much mischief and factions. In Italy *Sosphronius* was the last Bishop of Jerusalem. From hence till the year 1100 that it was recovered by the Christians, it there were any between they were only titular. Pope *Severinus* sat in the chaire a year two months: his successour *John* the fourth 1 year 9 months, to him succeeded *Theodorus* or *Theodosius* 6 years 5 months. Pope *John* by his letters reproves the Scots for their Pelagianism, & undue observation of Easter. *Peter* was the last real Bishop of Alexandria; for now after the Saracens had got it, the Bishops were but titular: the Saracens make Babylon the seat of their kingdom, which before was in Damascus: 10 they call their chief Prince, *Amiras* or *Caliphas*, that is a successour, because *Ebnabzar* was the first *Caliphas* or successour of *Mahomet*, the Governours of their Provinces, they name Sultans.

## CHAP. VIII.

The affaire of the Empire under *Constans the second*, *Constantine the fourth*, *Justinian the second*, *Philippicus Bardanes*, *Anastalius the second*, and *Theodosius the third*. 1. The affaires of the Saracens, Longobards, Spaniards, French, 20 and others. 3. The affaires of the Church in that time.

4612.  
A.C. 642.

**C**onstans the second son of *Constantine* the second succeeded. He was a Monothelite, and a persecutor of Orthodox men. By *Theodorus Calliopas* the Exarch, Pope *Martin* was seized upon, and sent to this *Constans* who banished him into Chersona where hee was starved to death, because he condemned the Monothelites in a Synod held by him; in whose chair he set up *Eugenius*. He murdered his brother *Theodosius*, though a Clergy man, with the horror of which murder he was so affrighted in his sleep (for he dreamed that his brother presented him with a cup full of blood) that he resolved to transfer his seat from thence to 30 Rome, saying, *the Mother deserves more honour then the daughter*, but he was dissuaded by his wife, children, & friends. Yet he went over into Italy, and made war upon *Romoaldus* king of the Longobards: from whom hee tooke some towns in Apulia, and was set down before Beneventum; but hearing that *Grimoaldus* Prince thereof was coming to raise the siege, *Cesar* removed to Naples, and there being beaten by *Romoaldus* he marcheth to Rome. Pope *Vitalianus* with all the Clergy and people met him. A cloak interwoven with gold was by *Constans* presented to *S. Peter* which hee had better been without. For *Cesar* robbed the Churches and City too of all their brasse ornaments, for 12 dayes together, and stript the Pantheon that was covered with brasse, then he laid heavy taxes upon Sicily, Calabria, 40 Sardinia, and Afric, and who did not pay, had either their wives or children taken from them. So that he was laden with the curses of the Sicilian women; and under this burthen hee dyed, being stifled in a scalding bath the 27 year of his reign.

4639.

*A. C. 669.* In the 11 year of *Constans* his Empire there rained ashes, upon which followed a cruel plague, a Ghost was seen to knock at mens doors, and as often as he knocked so often there dyed some out of that house; a year before his death, *Sapor* Governour of Armenia who revolted to *Muhavias* had his brains dashed out against a wall by his horse. In his time *Homar* having built a Moscu at Jerusalem was stabbed by a Persian, to whom succeeded *Hormanus*, who defeated *Gregory* the Patrician in Africa, having rebelled against *Constans*, and so imposed a tribute on that part of Africa. The next year which was the seventh of *Constans Muhavias* in a Fleet of 1700 ships invaded Cyprus and took Constantia the Metropolis of that Island. He conquered also the Island Aradus after much opposition. Constantinople was delivered from a siege by two sonnes of a certain Trumpeter, who broke their prison doores, slew *Amiras* and set the Fleet on fire, but *Muhavias* prepared a new Fleet with which hee beat *Constantines* neer Phenice a harbour of Lycia, the Sea was dyed

died with the Roman blood, the Emperor was fain to disguise himself in a poor habit, and so escaped. Then also did the Saracens subdue the Isle of Rhodes, and in it break down the Colossus of the Sun, which a certain Jew bought. The brasse of that statue loaded 900 Camels.

Shortly after this the Saracens fell out among themselves. Some of them followed *Muhavias*, some *Ali Mahumets* son in law, who called himselfe the true Prophet, saying, that the Angell *Gabriel* was sent to him, and not to *Mahomet*; but by a mistake. *Muhavias* during this division was humbled, and content to pay a yearly pension to the Emperour, which afterward when things were settled he refused to pay. He subdued *Haly* and his faction, by intercepting the waters, so that being tormented with thirst they submitted in the 15 year of *Constance*. Pope *Vitalianus* brought the use of Organs into the Church, *Eligius* Bishop of *Novio magum* converted Flanders to Christ, *Zechius* a Croatian, by birth a Slavonian, having committed murder at home, fled into Bohemia, and there planted. His brother *Lechus* planted in Polonia, so called from *pole* which in Slavonic signifies a plain or champion country. The posterity of *Zechius* planted Moravia and Lusatia. But Russia and Pomerania were peopled by the children of *Lechus*. *Sigebertus* in France, fearing hee should be childlesse made *Hildebert* son of *Grimoaldus* his successour. But beyond hope having got a sonne, whom he called *Dagobert*, 20 hee commits the care of him to *Grimoaldus*, and then dyed. *Grimoaldus* having shaved *Dagobert* sent him into Scotland, and made his own sonne *Hildebert* king. The French hating this treachery, sues him before *Clodoveins*, who imprisoned him, thrusts out *Hildebert*, and sets up his own sonne *Hildericus* King of the Austrasii. *Clodoveins* spoiled all the Sepulchers of the Martyrs, of their wealth, which his Father *Dagobert* had bestowed on them; and distributes all to the poore. But to make amends hee exempts the Monastery of *St. Dennis* neer Paris, which his Father had built, from the Iurisdiction of the Bishops. To him succeeded *Ebrunus*; about this time the French Kings growing dissolute and careless, left the managing of the kingdome to the Governours of the Palace. *Homar* ordained that 30 every month the Alcoran should be read. *Azomon* the fourth from *Mahomet* much weakened the Empire. *Theodisus* a Greek Bishop of Hispalis or Sivill, was unbishopped for corrupting *Isidores* workes, wherefore he becomes an Arabian heretick, in detestation of this wickednesse, the primacy of the Church of Spaine is translated from Hispalis to Toledo. *Eugenius* the first, ordained that Bishops should have peculiar prisons for Delinquent Clergy men. *Cindasvundus* king of Spain, repaires the Churches which were demolished by the hereticks, *Peter* succeedeth to *Paul* in the seat of Constantinople. To Pope *Eugenius* who sat almost 3 years succeeded *Vitalius* who was Pope 14 years: from the first year of *Clotarius*, which was the 662 yeare of Christ, till the 750 which is about 90 yeares, to 40 wit, till *Pipin* the Father of *Charles* the Great, the Major *Domus* or Steward of the Kings house managed the kingdome, the kings themselves taking their pleasures, and presenting themselves to the people but once a year. The Saracens under *Muhavias Gixad* expelled the Romans and Vandals out of Africa; Pope *Adeodatus* succeeded to *Vitalius*, and sat 4 yeares.

*Constantinus* the 4<sup>th</sup> called *Pogonatus* from his great beard which he wore when he 4639. returned from Sicily, whither he went to revenge his Fathers death, was made Em- *A.C. 669.* peror in his Fathers time. He overcame & slew *Mezentius* the Armenian whom the Sicilian Legions had saluted Emperor. *Constantine* the Patrician, and al that assisted *Mezentius* were taken by the help of *Theodorus Calliopa* the Exarch, and punished: 50 the Eastern Princes, would have had *Tiberius* and *Heraclius Constantines* two brothers to be crowned, desiring a Trinity of Governours on earth, as there was in heaven. *Constantine* making shew as if he assented, sent for these Princes, and slew them as seditious persons, and made his brothers incapable of the Empire, by cutting off their Noes. The Saracens in the mean time waste Africa, and took 80000 prisoners. They take also Syracuse, they besieged Byzantium 7 yeares, in which time they lost many ships and men, and were at last forced to return home, in which return they lost by a sudden storm all their ships, but this losse they repaired, and

*An. Mundi* shortly after they lost their ships again, by the invention of *Callinicus* the Mathematician, who by a new invented fire called *Marinus* or *Græcus*, which burned in the water, consumed them all, with the losse of 30000 men. This fire from *Callinicus* the Græcian is called *Græcus*; but indeed before this the Romans made bals of fire which would burn in the water. The Saracens had also another losse by the Mardaites in Mount Libanus: they made them sue for peace, which was granted for 30 yeares, paying yearly during this time 3000*l.* weight of gold, 50 men, and so many of their best horses to *Cesar*. Upon the report of this peace, *Cæsars* European enemies, fearing lest their countreys might be made the seat of warre, by presents and intreaties, obtained also peace of the Emperour: the yeare fol-  
 A. C. 679. lowing there was a great Earthquake, a forerunner of the Bulgarian eruption out of Scythia upon the lower Mysia not farre from Byzantium, called from them Bulgaria, and this from the river Bolga, whose springs are from the lakes of Moscovia: against these *Constantine* marcheth with an Army, which made the Bulgarians keep themselves within their trenches. This war was like to hold; *Cesar* being troubled with the Gout, went to the baths of Mesembria, a city in Thracia. His souldiers thinking that hee had fled for fear, began all to fly, which the enemy perceiving, pursued and killed multitudes of them: and subdued the Sclavonians; *Constantine* was forced to pay them a tribute, that they might not annoy the Roman territories. About this time dyed *Muchavias* Prince of the Saracens, to whom suc-  
 ceded his son *Gizildus*.

*Constantine* care now was, having peace abroad, to quiet all controversies in the Church also: therefore calls a Synod at Constantinople of 280 Bishops. This was the sixt *Oecumenicall* Councell, in which the five former were confirmed, and the Monothelites condemned for hereticks: among which were *Sergius*, *Pyrhus*, *Cyrus*, *Paulus*, *Petrus* and Pope *Honorius*, who lived in the time of *Heraclius*. But some excuse him in that he held there were not in Christ two contrary wills. *Theophanes* the Abbot was made Bishop of Antioch. Alexandria and Jerusalem, sent no Bishops, being now in the possession of the Saracens. Pope *Agatho* his Legats had the chief place in the Councell next the Emperour. Who eased Rome of 30 the money which was wont to be paid to the Emperour, for the Popes ordination, but conditionally, that the Pope should not be consecrate without the Emperors decree. The Bishop of Ravenna is commanded to receive his ordination from Rome, which hitherto he neglected, presuming on the greatnesse of the *Exarchs*.

In *Constantine* time *Partharis* king of the Longobards, after the death of *Grimoldus* is called home from his banishment, and is made King. *Bamba* King of Spain, having reigned 10 yeares with great commendation, and after hee had subdued the Saracen Pyrats on the Coast, became a Monk. *Hildericus* or *Childericus* the French King, for causing *Bodilo* a noble man to be whipped, was with his wife great (with child) killed by this *Bodilo*, as hee was hunting; and so *Theo-40 doricus*, who had been thrust into a Monastery, was called to the Scepter. To *Adeodatus* succeeded *Donnus* who was Pope five yeares, his successour was *Agatho* who fate two yeares. Under him began the sixt generall Councell held in Constantinople, but it ended under Pope *Leo* the second, who fate not above 10 moneths. At this Synod the Popes Legat celebrated the Masse in the Latin tongue before the Emperour and people in the great Church of *S. Sophia* in Constantinople. In this Synod the Monothelits were confuted out of the writings of the Greek and Latin Fathers.

*Casarea* Queen of Persia with her husband and 40000 Persians are baptized at Constantinople. This Pope *Leo* brought into the masse the holy kisse or os-  
 culum pacis. In Spain to *Bamba* succeeded *Eringius*, in that time *Maildolphus* a Scotchman, was a famous professour of Greek and Latin tongues in England. To *Leo* succeeded *Benedict* the second, who was Pope 10 moneths, who sent *Chilanus* to preach the Gospell in Germany, chiefly in Franconia. His successour *Johan* the fifth, was Pope 1 year. He ordained that the Pope should be consecrated in the Church of Lateran by the Bishops of Ostia, Portunus, and Velirer-  
 num, which custome yet continues, whereas before, he was only carried to St.

*Peters*

*Peters* chaire where hee fate while *Abdimelech* King of the Saracens, recovers *An. Mundi* Persia, Mesopotamia, Armenia, and Hircania, having overcome his two enemies, *Mu-  
 star* in Persis; and *Said* in Mesopotamia. *Conon* in the Popedome succeeded to *Iohn*,  
 and fate 11 months. *Constantine* reigned 17 yeares.

*Fustinian* the second succeeded *Constantine*, son of *Anastasia* the Emperesse. He 4666  
 by *Leontius* his Generall subdued divers Nations in the East, whilest the Saracens A. C. 696.  
 were at difference among themselves: for *Abd melech* had great warres with the  
 Kings of Persia and Arabia, whom he subdued, and so he put an end to the Ma-  
 humetan civill warre. In the 5 year of *Fustinian*, with whom the Saracens made  
 10 peace, by restoring to him Africa, and paying dayly 1000 peces of silver, with one  
 servant and one horse, conditionally that *Fustinian* would cleer *Libanus* and the  
 adjacent Mountaines of all the Mardaites, which much infested the Arabian ci-  
 ties. But in so doing *Cesar* weakened the Empire, for so long as these Mardaites  
 held the Mahumetans play, they troubled not the Empire, but when they were  
 removed, the Saracens power increased. Hee also weakened himselfe by breaking  
 the second yeare of his reign the league, which his Father made with the Bulgari-  
 ans. At first he had the better, but afterward, he lost his Army, and was forced  
 to flye almost alone to Byzantium. In the 7 year of his reign, having entertained  
 30000 Sclavi, and trusting to his power, brokethe peace with the Saracens, pre-  
 20 tending that the money which was paid him for a tribute, was not stampd with his  
 Image. The Saracens calling upon God the revenger of perjuries, and carrying  
 on the top of a speare in stead of a Banner the Articles of peace, fell upon the Ro-  
 man Army and routed them. The Sclavonian Generall having first revolted  
 with 20000 to the enemy, who corrupted him with money. *Fustinian* hard-  
 ly escaped, who coming to Leucate, commanded the remainders of the  
 Sclavi to be killed and flung into the Sea. After this the Agarens made havock of  
 the Roman Provinces, and *Sabbatius* the Armenian Prætor, delivered up Armenia  
 to them.

The Arabians overrun Africa, to whom *Sergius* the Patrician betrayed the city  
 30 Lazica. But *John* brother to the Emperour *Leontius* recovered Africa again, and  
 drove out the Saracens. This *Leontius* had been imprisoned 2 yeares by *Theo-  
 dosius* and *Stephanus* the Emperours favorites, but having escaped out of prison,  
 was by the Patriarchs help made Emperour. He cut off *Justinian's* nose, and  
 banished him to Chersonesus, having reigned 10 yeares. The two sycophants  
*Theodosius* and *Stephanus*, were by his command dragged through the streets, by  
 ropes fastned to their feet, and afterward were burnt. *Leontius* after three yeares  
 reign was by *Tiberius Apsimarus* (whom his Army had made Emperour, upon his  
 return from Africa) served, as he served *Fustinian*, for he cut off his Nose, and  
 then thrust him into a monastery: then he sent his brother *Heraclius* into Syria  
 40 against the Saracens, who tooke and slew of the enemies about 200000. The Ar-  
 menian Princes killed their Agaren Governours, and returned to the Roman o-  
 bedience. But *Mahumet* Prince of the Arabians, subdued the Armenians again,  
 and burned their princes alive. Yet in Cilicia he was defeated by *Heraclius* who took  
 multitudes of the Saracens prisoners, and sent them to his brother *Abisimarus* for  
 slaves, who about this time sent *Theophylact* into Italy as successour to *John* in the  
 Exarchat. After this *Fustinian* escaped out of prison, and married with *Theo-  
 dora* the sister of *Chaganus*, with whom hee lived a whole yeare in Phanogoria a  
 town of Sarmatia. But the Barbarian king being corrupted with gold from *Abis-  
 marus*, promised to betray him, which hee understanding by his wife, fled to Tre-  
 50 bellis the Bulgarian king, by whose Armes hee was restored, the 10 yeare of his  
 banishment. The third day after he laid siege to Byzantium, by some sluces of  
 water which he opened, he got within the town. *Abisimarus* fled, but was overtaken  
 and brought back, multitudes of the people who had abused *Cesar* with ill lan-  
 guage as hee lay before the City, were slaine. *Leontius* and *Abisimarus* being in  
 irons tell flat at the Emperours feet, who trod on their necks, the people crying  
 out: *Thou shalt walk upon the Aspe, and the Basilisk*, and then they were both be-  
 headed. *Callinicus* the Bishop had both his eyes thrust out, and was banished to  
 Rome

*An. Mund.* Rome, and *Cyrus* set up in his place, who had encouraged the Emperour in his banishment to recover his right. *Abismarus* had reigned 7 years. It's said of *Leontius* that still when he wept or blew his cut nose, he caused one of *Leontius* his faction to be slain. For he had vowed before when he was like to be drowned in a storm, that if God would preserve him then, he would shew no mercy to his enemies.

Things thus settled, King *Trebellis* being honourably rewarded was dismissed; but afterward *Justinian* quarrelled with him about the extent of their borders: the Bulgarians being suddenly set upon by the Imperialists, fled to the mountains, whence afterward perceiving the Greeks to be secure, came down and made such slaughter among them, that *Justinian* in hast got on shipboard, and returned with dishonour to Constantinople. Afterward hee sent an Army against the Chersonians, among whom he had been exiled. They in the beginning of his designs would have destroyed him; therefore he causeth them to be cruelly murdered, and their Grandees to be burned: and delighted himselfe to see 73000 of their youths drowned in a storm. The Chersonæi being thus barbarously used, and their childrens heads by *Justinian's* command dashed against the wals, implore aid from the Chazari, and perswade *Philip Bardanes*, lately returned from banishment, and made Admirall of the Seas, to invade the Empire, with him joines *Elias* the Prator, whose children *Justinian* murdered in their mothers breasts, and married her to an Indian cook. *Bardanes* with *Elias* rise against the tyrant, who was now in *Amastris* a town of Paphlagonia, which *Elias* took; and in it *Justinian*, whose head he cut off with his own hands; and slew his sonne and in it *Justinian*, whose head he cut off with his own hands, and had made his colleague in the Empire. *Tiberius* whom he begot of *Theodora*, and had made his colleague in the Empire. This was the last of *Heraclius* his race, who of all the Emperours had the happiness alone, to have a first successour of his own blood. *Justinian* reigned 7 years after his banishment. He was nicknamed *Rhinometus* from his cut nose; his tongue also was cut out by *Leontius* after he had been animated by the *Astroligians*, and *Calinicus* the Bishop (whom *Justinian* had first designed for the slaughter) to invade the Empire. In his time a Synod was held in the palace called *Trullus* of Constantinople, wherein Clergy men are ordained to retaine their wives. Pope *Sergius* who succeeded *Conon* opposed this Synod, wherefore *Justinian* commands him to be brought to Constantinople; but in vain, for the Army at *Ravenna* resisted, and did not suffer the Pope to be touched. Besides *Kilianus* that was sent to convert the Franconians in Germany, who was murdered there. *Wigbertus* with divers other preachers from England, were sent to convert the *Frisians*, *Danes*, *Saxons* and others.

At this time *Cunibertus* the sonne of *Bertarius* was King of Lombardy. Him *Alchisus* Duke of Trent, whom *Cunibertus* saved when his Father *Bertarius* would have killed him, drove him out of his kingdome. But *Alchisus* tyrannising over the Clergy, was hated, and *Cunibert* is restored, who defeated *Alchisus* in a battell, and then cut off his head and feet. To *Cunibert* succeeded his young son *Ludbert*; whom he recommended to the care of Duke *Asprandus*. But *Regnbert* Duke of *Taurinum* made war and overthrew the young King with his Governor *Asprandus*; and so made himselfe King. He dyeth within one year of his reign, to whom succeeded his sonne *Aripertus* the second, who reigned 12 yeares. He killed the lawfull heirs. *Ludbert*, whose Governour *Asprandus* fled into *Bavaria*, where he lived in exile 9 yeares: then being assisted by *Dithbertus* Duke of *Bavaria*, hee returns to Lombardy, where he overthrowes in a great battell *Aripertus* the usurper, and in his flight at *Ticinum* kills him. This *Aripertus* bestowed on the Popedome that part of *Piemont*, which of old was called *Alpes*, *Cottiae*, or *Cottiae*, or *Gothiae*. *Cerdulla* king of the West-Saxons was baptized at Rome, and there dyed, to whom succeeded *Ina*. *Conredus* King of the *Mercii*, that is, of *Nottinghamshire* and *Darbyshire*, taking *Offa* the son of *Sigerus* King of the East-Saxons with him, at Rome puts on the habit of a Monk. In Spaine all the Jews are made slaves, their goods confiscated, and their children delivered to Christian made slaves, to be bred by them. *Felix* Archbishop of *Ravenna*, for refusing to

bee subject to the Pope, looseth his Bishoprick and both his Eyes.

In Spaine *Julianus* a Grandee whose wife King *Rodericus* abused, called the Saracens out of Africa, who oppressed the Goths, and in a great battell overthrowed *Rodericus* and killed him. The Saracen, Generall was *Tarichus*, from whom the Mountaine Gibraltar, upon which he pitched his camp, was called of old *Gebel-Tarich*. So now the Saracens possesse Spaine, and drive the remaining Goths to *Biscay* and the Pyrenean hills, and the *Astures*, whose Captain *Pelagius* was the first King there. In France *Pipinus* Duke of *Ostfrasia* was Master of the Palace under *Theodoricus*, *Clodoveus* and *Childbertus* the French Kings; whose power he exercised; he made *Lamberius* Bishop of *Trajectum*, or *Utrecht*, who envied against *Alpaida* *Pipins* concubine, of whom he had *Carolus Martellus*. She caused her brother *Dodon* to murder the bishop, to expiate which wickednesse shee erected a Colledge of Canons, but the murderer was eat up with vermine, the stink of whose body was so odious, that he was flung and drowned in the river *Mosa*. *Egicus* King of Spain was like to be murdered by the Jews, which was the cause of their hard usage there, as is said. *Sergius* was Pope 13 yeares, he added divers Litanies to the Masse. His successour was *John* the sixth, who fate 3 yeares.

*Paulus* *Anazar* of *Heraclea* in *Magna Græcia* is chosen the first Duke of *Venice* under *Abismarus* 252 yeares since the building of that City. The Egyptians fall off quite from the Empire, and choose themselves a King, whom they call *Caliph*. *Afric* which was recovered by *Belisarius* from the Vandals, and had continued since subject to the Romans 170 yeares, is now possessed by the Saracens. The West Goths had now reigned in Spain 256 yeares, but (as is said) already, are driven into corners, which is 146 yeares since by the Huns they were thrust out of *Scythia*. So the Saracens have now all Spain (except *Gallicia* the feat of the *Astures* and *Cantabrians*) which they enjoyed 800 yeares together. The Visigoths yet possesse *Aquitania*, but ten yeares hence they are driven out by *Carolus Martellus*, *Puisa* the sonne of *Egicus* King of Spain, orders the Clergy to keep what Concubines they will, and forbids them to obey the Pope. *Ulad* king of *Arabia* destroyes the Christian church at *Damascus*, commanding the Arabick tongue to be used in stead of Greek. To Pope *John* succeeded *Zosimus* for 20 dayes, and after him *Constantinus* 7 yeares, whom *Justinian* in *Nicomedia* honorably useth, to whom hee confessed his sinnes, and received absolution, lying prostrate at the Popes feet. He was the first Emperour that ever kissed the Popes Feet.

*Philippicus Bardanes* having murdered *Justinian*, obtaineth the Empire for 2 yeares and 9 months. The Pope rejects him as an hereticall Emperour, for he abrogated the sixth Synod, and reestablished the Monothelites, upon the request of that Monkish Astrologer who foretold him, he should be Emperour. *Cyrus* the Patriarch is deposed by him, and one *John* an heretic is advanced. He prodigally exhausted the treasures which were left by his predecessors, suffering in the interim *Thracia* to be exhausted by the Bulgarians, and *Asia* by the Saracens: wherefore he was hated by his Peeres, two of which, to wit, *Theodorus* and *Buramphus* deprived him of his eyes, as hee was reposing himselfe after dinner, this was done by the advice of *Artemius* the chief Secretary, who the next day is proclaimed Emperour. Pope *Constantine*, absolves the Emperours subjects from their allegiance to him. *Artemius* or *Anastasius* the second reigned one year and 3 months. Hee prepares a great Fleet against the Saracens, and takes order that *Byzantium* be furnished with 3 yeares provision. But the Army upon a sudden sedition forceth one *Theodosius* of *Adramyttum*, a Collector of Subsidies, and a quiet man, to accept the Empire against his will. *Anastasius* upon this layeth down his Emperiall Ensignes, is made a Monk, and is sent to *Thessalonica*; he was both a good scholar, and a good Catholic. He put down *John* the heretic, and for *Germannus* in the chair of Constantinople. About this time dyed *Pipinus*. *Carolus Martellus* is imprisoned by his stepmother *Pleardis* *Pipins* widow; but *Dagobertus* being dead, he escaped out of prison, and recovered his fathers

An. Mund.

4687.

A. C. 717.

thers dignity, which he so managed, that he established his posterity in the kingdom of France. *Theodosius* was Emperor not much above a year, for understanding that *Leo Isauricus* was made Emperour by the Army, and that his son *Theodosius* was taken prisoner, he resigned up his interest to the new Emperor, and having received the publick Faith for his indemnity, he with his son enter into holy Orders, in which they spent the remainder of their days at Ephesus, in his his time *Muhamed* the Saracen took *Pergamus*.

## C H A P. IX.

10

The Roman affaires under *Leo the third*, and *Constantine the fifth*. 2. Of *Pipinus*, and *Forraigne affaires*. 3. The Church affaires of thesetimes.

A. C. 718.

4695.

A. C. 725.

**L**EO the third called before *Isaurus* *Conon* from his country *Isauria*, had been Governour of *Albania* in *Iustinian's* time, and subdued the *Abasgi* a people of *Scythia*. Now in the beginning of his Empire he is exercised by the *Saracens*, who with a Fleet of 3000 ships besiege *Constantinople* almost 3 years, but of this great number scarce 5 escaped, but were all consumed with famine, plague warre, thunder, stormes, and artificiall fires in the water. The *Bulgarians* alone killed 22000 of them, as they were plundering of the countrey. In the meane while *Sergius* Prætor of *Sicilia*, with one *Gregory*, aime at the Empire, but they were quickly suppressed by *Leo*; *Gregory* was killed, *Sergius* upon submission is pardoned. *Leo* in his third year overthrew *Nicetas Xylinites* and seise upon his whole estate for assisting *Artemius* (who was now banished in *Thessalonica*) to recover the Empire. *Artemius* with his *Bulgarian* Forces arrive at *Byzantium*, hoping the City had been for him, but finding it otherwayes, the *Bulgarians* for money betray him to *Leo*, who put him, with all that were of his plot, to the sword. The plague at this time was so hot at *Rome* and *Byzantium*, that it consumed 300000 Inhabitants. *Tybris* overflowed the wals of *Rome*: the *Jews* were again deluded by a false *Messias*, a *Syrian* born. Which caused *Leo* to force baptism upon them, for which some of them were so desperate, that they burned themselves with their families. One *Radbodus* a *German* Prince and *Heathen*, as he was ready to be baptized, asked whether there were most of his Ancestors in heaven or in hell, it was answered in hell; with that he pulled his foot out of the water, saying: *I will rather follow many then a few*; but within three dayes after he dyed. So *Gizid* a *Saracen* Prince was perswaded by a *Jewish* impostour; that hee should raigne a long time, if hee would abolish the Images of *Christ*, and of the *Saints*, which he went about to doe, but dyed the next year after.

*Leo* in the 10 year of his reign commanded all Images to be abolished. *Philippicus Bardanes* had commanded the same before, but was resisted by Pope *Constantine*, as *Leo* is now by Pope *Gregory* the second, who would not suffer any tribute to be payed to the Emperour out of *Rome* and *Italy*, because he took upon him to alter religion. This gave occasion of great troubles in *Italy*, between the Pope and the Exarch, till it came to that passe, that the Emperor lost all his power in *Italy*, and had almost lost it in *Byzantium*; for not onely were his officers murdered by the tumultuous multitude, but the City also was assaulted with new Fleets of *Saracens* and others, which were forced with losse to be gone. *Leo* deposeth *Germanus* the Patriarch and other Bishops, for resisting his command about the Images, and sets up *Anastasius* Patriarch, whom *Gregory* in the Synod which he assembled condemneth, and then dyeth the 16 year of his Popedom, to whom succeeded *Gregory* the third, no lesse zealous for Images then his predecessor, against whom *Leo* sent a Fleet of ships, which miscarried in a storme. Upon this the Pope calls a Councell, and excommunicates all enemies to Image-worship. This so enraged *Leo* that he did cruelly put to death divers learned men and others, who disliked his proceedings against Images. *Oecumenicus* professour

essour in the Colledge of *Constantinople* is burned with his bookes. Hereupon *Leo* *Rome* and *Italy* by *Gregories* means fall off quite from the *Greek* Empire. A league is made between the Pope and the French against *Leutprandus* the *Lombard*, who was now besieging *Rome*. *Carolus Martellus* causeth *Leutprandus* to raise his siege and be gone. *Leo* seeing all his revenues in *Italy* to be stopped, gave order to confiscate all the Popes revenues in *Sicily* and *Calabria*. He purposed to be revenged upon *Italy*, but was hindred by the incursions of the *Saracens* upon the Eastern Empire. *Gregory* having excommunicated the Emperor, dyed the 10 year of his Popedom, whom *Leo* followed shortly after. He reigned 24 yeares and 2 moneths: before his death the wals of *Constantinople*, *Nicea*, *Nicomedia*, and other townes were shaken down with earthquakes. In his time dyed venerable *Beda*, and *Iohn Damascen* for patronising Images, was banished among the *Saracens*. *Leo* dyed of a bloody flux.

In this *Leo's* time *Endon* Duke of *Aquitania*, calls into France the barbarous *Saracens* to suppress the greatness of *Martellus*, they under *Abdiran* their General take *Garunda* and *Burdeaux*. *Charles* being aided by the *Lombards* and *Germanians*, subdues the *Saracens*, and kills their Generall *Endon*, repenting for calling in the *Saracens*, turnes head against them. It's thought there were killed in that war 375000 *Saracens*, of the French onely 1500. Pope *Gregory* sent to congratulate with *Martellus* this great victory, and withall to implore his help for the City and Church of *Rome*. The *Venetians* and *Pantapolitans*, by the Popes authority shook off *Leo's* Government, they kill the Duke of *Campanie* with his son, and soon after *Paul* the *Patrician* and *Exarch*, whose successor *Eutychius* is excommunicated by the Pope. The *Romans* swear to defend *Gregory* against the Emperour. The *Exarch* with *Leutprandus* King of *Lombardy*, enter into a league to suppress *Rome*, *Beneventum* and *Spoletum*; and to reduce them again unto the Empire. But *Gregory* made all quiet, and a peace is concluded. *Tiberius* who thought to be King is killed. *Inas* King of the *West-Saxons* commanded that each house should pay a penny to *St. Peter* yearly. *Leutprandus* confirms the donation of the *Alpes*, the Patent wherof written in golden letters was carefully kept at *Rome*. Pope *Gregory* the second, ordained that on every Friday in Lent there should be fasting and solemne masse. He sent *Basilius* or *Presford* to convert the *Frisians* and their neighbours, who is made the first Bishop of *Ments*. Under *Martellus* *S. Willibore* converted the *Westphalians*. Whilest *Pergamus* was besieged by the *Saracens*, they were perswaded by a Magitian to rip open the belly of a woman with child, and to wash their right hands in the childs blood, which they did in hope of victory. But they lost it, with the town, in Gods just fury.

*Pelagius* descended of the *Gothish* Kings, is made the first King of *Asturia* and *Leglth* of *Leon*, by the remaining Christians of *Spaine*, four yeares after *Roderic* had lost *Spaine* to the *Saracens*. Hee tooke for his armes a red Lion in a white field, which yet the Kings of *Leon* wear to this day. From him is descended without interruption *Philip*, the now King of *Spain*. The Kings of *Navar* and *Aragon* are descended from *Garsias Ximenes* the *Goth*, and first king that reigned among the *Pyreneans*. The Christians that were permitted to live in *Spaine* were called *Mozarabes*, because mixed with *Arabians*. This liberty continued till *Alphonfus* the seventh. About the year 1100 that the *Almoad* *Arabians* came into *Spain*; they suffered no Christians to live among them. *Martellus* subdued *Burgundy* and *Aquitania*, slew *Eudon*, and drove the *Saracens* quite out of France. *Alphonfus* the first King of *Galicia*, son in law, and heire to *Pelagius* drove *Arianism* quite out of his kingdom, for which he obtained the name of *Catholic* for him and his posterity. *Abrahaminus Calypha* nephew of *Abdimetab* having subdued *Egypt*, built *Cayro* where *Memphis* of old stood. From him *Calyph* became a title of honour, both in *Egypt* and *Babylon*, or *Baldac*. About this time dyed *Carolus Martellus*, who would not be called *Major Domus* as his predecessors, but Prince of France. He left two sons *Carolomanus* and *Pipinus* to rule France. These suppressed the *Saxons*: then *Carolomanus* became a Monk.

Con-

An. Mundi

*Constantine* the fifth, sonneto *Leo Isauricus* called *Iconomachus*, for being an enemy to Images, was crowned at two yeares old, therefore the first that was called *Porphyrogenitus*. He was called *Copronymus* from fouling in the Font when hee was baptized, which some held as a presage that he would pollute Religion. He was suspected to be a Nestorian. Whilest he was employed in the Saracen war, *Artabasdus* his sisters husband, by the aid of *Anastasius* the Patriarch, set up the Images in Byzantium again, and for this cause was saluted Emperour by the people, which caused three yeares wars. In the end *Constantine* took *Artabasdus* and his son, these he blinded. *Anastasius* the Patriarch he caused to be carried about the city upon an Asse, with his face to the Asses tail, but afterward restored him to his spirituall charge. In the fifth year of his reign, whilest the Saracens were involved in civill broiles, he overran Syria and Assyria, he tooke the city Germanitia between Cappadocia and Cilicia, and there advanced the Christian religion; He made a league with the Bulgarians, and married with the daughter of *Caganus*, who after shee was baptized was called *Irene*. But his hatred to Images, reliques, and intercession of Saints: his persecuting of Priests and Monks who sided not with him, forcing them to marry, causing them to be beaten and banished to Cyprus, which was then invaded by the Saracens: his buying, burning, drowning and breaking of pictures and Church ornaments, made him odious to the people and Clergy, many calling him the young Leopard, and brat of the old Lion; some cald him *Caballinus*, because hee loved to wallow in horse dung. The sixt and seventh yeare of his reigne were terrible by reason of a violent plague through Calabria, Sicilia, Greece and Thracia; at Byzantium, there wanted people to bury the dead: such darknesse there was for 10 days together in August, that mens hearts failed them for feare: such Earthquakes were in Syria, that hills were turned into valleys, and townes removed 6 miles out of their places.

*Constantine* calls a Synod at Constantinople, in which were present 338 Bishops, who condemned Image-worship. This Councell he named the seventh Oecumenicall, notwithstanding the Popes opposition. He was not content to demolish statues and Images, but violares the Temple of *Euphemia* the Martyr, in flinging her odoriferous bones into the Sea, which being driven by the wind to the Isle Lemnos, were taken up and brought back to Chalcedon. He drew *Stephen* the Monk out of his cloyster, because hee taught men to despise worldly greatnesse. He killed and banished many of his Grandees; he made all men swear against worshipping of Images. *Constantine* the Patriarch who succeeded to *Anastasius*, was accused of secret plotting and correspondence with the banished Princes, for which cause he was banished, and then basely murdered. It was treason to say, *Mother of God help us*: or to watch at the tombes of the dead. He took some townes of Armenia from the Saracens, and filled Byzantium againe with Armenians and Syrians, which had bene almost exhausted of people by the plague. In the 22 of his reign he tooke occasion to quarrell with the Bulgarians, whilest they were intangled with civill discords; he defeated *Zeletines* their new King, who was therefore murdered by his people, and shortly after his successour *Sabunus* was banished for desiring peace: but the Emperour comming upon them with new Forces, made them sue for peace, which they obtained: but *Telerichus* their King resolved to breake it, by assaulting suddenly the Roman Forces. For that purpose an ambush is laid, which was discovered to *Cesar* by some of the Bulgarian Nobles. He without shedding of blood seised on the ambush, and took all that lay in it. *Telerichus* perceiving his plot was discovered, thought to finde out the discoverers by these meanes. He makes shew as if he would submit himselfe to *Cesar*, for this cause he desires the names of such men as might be fittest to be employed in this Negotiation, and such as *Cesar* might put most trust in; divers of *Telerichus* his friends were nominated unawares; these the Tyrant murders supposing they had discovered the plot. *Constantine* to be revenged on the Barbarian for his treachery, resolves to fall againe upon Bulgaria, but in the interim he is taken with a burning Feaver, which was so

hot, that he cryed out, he was in burning flames, and so dyed, having reigned almost 35 yeares. He had been three times married, his first wife was *Irene* the Bulgarian mother to *Leo*, whom he married with *Irene Attick*, who made him a Grandfather, by the birth of his nephew to *Constantine*, in the 30 yeare of his Empire. *An. Mundi* 4745. A.C. 775.

In this Emperours time, the Turkes breaking out of the Caspian straits over-run Armenia and Iberia, and being richly laden with booties, return home: This was about the year of Christ 763 and 764. At which time there fell out such a cold winter, that the Euxin sea was frozen 30 foot deep, and 100 miles over. Upon this followed such a hot summer, that the springs were dried up. Mountaines of ice broke down the wals of some towns. To *Lithbrandus* in Lombardy succeeded *Ratchefius*, who forgetting the 20 yeares peace he made with Pope *Zachary*, and which he confirmed by an oath, besieged Perugia. To his camp the Pope repaires, and so wrought upon him, with presents, and his eloquence, that to expiate the violation of his oath, he resolves to enter into a Monastery, and did accordingly, with his wife and sonnes: but his brother and successour *Aistulphus* tooke another course. For hee seised upon Ravenna, and the whole Exarchat, and drove *Entychius* the Exarch to Byzantium. This Government had lasted in Italy 182 yeares under 10 Princes.

*Aistulphus* withheld from the Pope those towns which hee said belonged to St. Peter. Wherefore Pope *Stephen* who was the first that sealed his bulls with lead, and the first that was carried on mens shoulders to the Lateran, implores the help of France, which he obtains for the courtesie *Pipin* had received of Pope *Zachary*, which was this: *Pipin* had two brothers; the one *Carolomannus* was entred into a Monastery; the other *Gryphon* was killed; wherefore he affecting the kingdom of France, by his letters desires to know of *Zachary*, whether a Stupid Prince or an active Subject were fittest to rule. The Pope understanding his meaning, gives present order to *Boniface* being lately made Archbishop of Mints, to anoint *Pipin* King of France, so *Chilpericus* being held unfit for government, was forced to lay downe the Scepter and Crown, and to content himselfe with a Monks hood. He was the last of the Merovean race. Thus *Pipin* being established in his throne by the Popes meanes, could doe no lesse then assist him to recover his own; wherefore having passed over the Alpes with an Army, he wrests from *Aistulphus* the Exarchat, and Pentapolis: and for the good of his soul he bestowed as a patrimony on the Church Ravenna, Bononia, Imola, Faventia, Ferrara, and in Pentapolis, Ariminum, Pisaurum, Ancona, Auximum and Urbinum, of old these provinces were called *Ærmilia*, *Flaminia*, and *Picenum*. At this day they are named *Romandiola*, and *Marca Anconitana*. *A.C.* 750.

No sooner was *Pipinus* returned to France, but *Aistulphus* repenting of his bargain, besiegeth Rome with an Army, wasting all the countrey about with fire and sword. Wherefore *Pipins* help being implored again, *Aistulphus* is forced to pay the third part of his treasures, and a tribute to the French. Shortly after he broke his neck with a fall from his horse, as he was hunting. *Pipin* having with a long war wearied *Gundofarius* Duke of Aquitania, for denying of the Churches rights, and the Duke at last being killed by his people, enlargeth his Dominion by the addition of Aquitania. *Constantine* the Emperour in hope to recover the Exarchat of Ravenna, sends presents to *Pipin*, and among the rest a rich Organ, the first that was ever seen in the West. But to no purpose, for it was answered him, that those countreys were purchased for, and given to St. Peter: so *Pipin* dyed at Paris. To *Charles* he left Austrasia, to *Carolomannus* his other son, Burgundy and Alemannia. Gascony is divided between them. He founded the Bishopricks of Saltzburg, Ratisbone, Aichstart and Frisinge. *Burchard* founded the Church of Herbipolis or Wirtsburg, and *Boniface* the Abby of Fulden in Germany. *A.C.* 768.

*Aistulphus* being dead, *Ratchefius* had a minde to recover the Kingdome of Lombardy, slighting *Desiderius* who from the Duke of Tuscany came to sway the



*An. Mundi* the Scepter of Lombardy, but Pope Stephen changed his minde; he having confirmed *Desiderius*, received from him Raventia and Ferrara. In Spain to *Alphon-*  
*sus* succeeded his sonne *Froilolus*, who overthrew *FuZaphus* a Prince of the Sa-  
 racens on the borders of Gallicia, after which time Spain was no more tribu-  
 tary to *Mirimalinus* the Babylonian. For *Abderamen* thrust out *FuZaphus*  
 and made himself king of Corduba. The Saracens were now distracted into facti-  
 ons, so that their Dominion was divided among divers. *Abubales* had Persia,  
*Salimus* Egypt, *Habdallas* Syria, who having killed the other two obtained  
 the whole Empire of the Saracens 21 years. He laid heavy taxes on the Christians  
 and favoured the Jewes, yet permitted the Antiochians to choose them a new  
 Patriarch, having been 40 years without one. He punished 16 of the Persian  
*Magi*, for offering by the vertue of certaine enchantments to flye in the aire,  
 whence they fell down and hurt themselves. *Habdallus* Prince of Arabia dyed  
 the same month that *Constantine* did. The same year *Adelgisus* sonne of *Desi-*  
*derius* King of Lombardy fled to the Emperour *Charles* the Great, having in-  
 vaded his Fathers kingdome, which had continued 206 years. *Charles* was  
 set on by Pope *Hadrian*, because *Desiderius* laid claim to all the lands granted  
 by *Pipin* to the Roman Church. And *Charles* had divorced his wife *Ber-*  
*tha* the daughter of *Desiderius*, which made him a greater stranger then before,  
 to the Lombards; wherefore passing over the Alpes with his Army, he gave  
 battell to *Desiderius*, whom he defeated, and drove into Ticinum; at last tooke  
 him upon surrender of the town, whom he sent with his wife into France; for  
 his sonne *Adelgisus* was gone to Constantinople. So *Charles* obtaines all Ita-  
 ly except Neapolis, and the Provinces belonging to Sicily. He restores to  
 Pope *Hadrian* the Exarchat and Pentapolis. Who having called a Synod makes  
 A. C. 775. *Charles* a Patrician, and power is given him to invest Bishops. Two years be-  
 fore this Italian war, the French made war upon the Saxons, as yet heathen  
 Idolaters, who exercised *Charles* his armes 33 years. The Church was much  
 beholding to these two Princes, *Pipin* and *Charles*, for their munificence to-  
 wards her, for propagating Christianity, and suppressing Heathenism, Judaism,  
 and heresies, for a settled Parliament in Paris, the work of *Pipin*, who was the  
 first that brought the use of Organs into the Western Church, after he had been  
 presented with one from the Eastern Emperour; he also brought into the Gallican  
 Church, the regulated musick of Rome, for before him, the French musick was  
 confused, and inharmonious.

## CHAP. X.

The affaires of the Empire under Leo, Irene, and Constantine. 2. Of for-  
 raigne affaires under Charles the Great. 3. Of the Church affaires in  
 those times.

A. C. 775. **L**EO the fourth succeeded to his Father *Copronymus*. Hee was also called  
*Porphyrogenitus*, because in his childhood hee was made Co-emperour  
 with his Father, and was clothed with a purple robe. He banished his  
 brother *Nicephorus* with divers more, upon suspicion, that he aimed at the Em-  
 pire. By his perswasion *Telerichus* King of Bulgaria being banished by his own  
 subjects, was baptized, and married with *Irenes* cousin german, then hee was  
 made a Patrician. *Leo* was perswaded to make his young sonne *Constantine*  
 Co-emperour with him. Hee had warres with the Saracens in Syria, where  
 hee killed 5 of their Amiras, and 6000 Arabians. Hee removed the Jaco-  
 bite Syrians into Thracia. By this war he exasperated the Mahumetans, so that  
 they overrun Asia, but all provision being conveyed into strong towns, they  
 were faine to return home without effecting any great matter. *Mahdy* con-  
 trary to his oath persecuted the Christian within his Dominion, so that di-  
 vers suffered Martyrdome. *Leo* persecuted and punished the Image-wor-  
 shippers

shippers as his Father did. The fift yeare of his reigne, hee would needs  
 set upon his head the Sacred Crowne beset with rich jewells (which *Man-*  
*ricus* had dedicated in the Church of *S. Sophia* upon the wearing of this  
 Crowne, his head swelled with carbuncles, then he fell into a violent fever, and  
 so dyed. A. C. 780.

*Charles* the son of *Pipin* succeeded prosperously in his wars against the Saxons,  
 Westphalians, Huns, Angarians, Hessians, *Rodgandus* the Longobard with divers o-  
 thers. In all his conquests he settles Christianity. He gave many honors, and crea-  
 ted many Nobles, of such as had done him good service. He had also good  
 success in Spaine against the Infidels, but in his return he lost the greatest part of  
 his Army among the Pyrenæan hills, the Vascones being better acquainted with  
 those places deceived them, and cut them off. Herein were slaine *Eginhardus*,  
*Anselmus*, *Roland*, and many more of his chief commanders. The Saxons un-  
 der *Witskundes* their Generall oftentimes rebelled, and were still subdued, they were  
 supplied still with Auxiliaries of Danes, and Vandals, but at last *Witkundes* was  
 baptized in the year of Christ 785. *Charles* erected the Bishopricks of Paderborn,  
 Minden, and Osnaburg in Germany. About this time *Ximenius* the first King of  
 Navar dyed, to whom succeeded *Garzicas Eunucus*, who relieved Pampilona, and  
 took many castles and garrisons from the Moores. One *Lesus* was the first that  
 taught the Polonians about this time to shoe horses.

*Irene* *Leo's* widow, with her young sonne *Constantine* rule the Empire. She was  
 a great defender of Images. Having understood that her husbands brother had  
 plotted treason against her, shee caused them to be shaven, and then made Priests  
 of them, and banished all those that favoured them. To make her sonnes Em-  
 pire the more firme, shee contracts him to *Charles* the Greats daughter, for that  
 purpose sends *Eliseus* the Eunuch to instruct her in the Greek tongue and customs.  
 Shee overthrew in divers battels *Elpidius* Prætor of Sicilia, and forced him to  
 flye over to the Saracens in Africa, because he would have set up *Nicephorus*  
*Constantines* Uncle. Shee let the Saracens enjoy Afric quietly, being afraid of  
 their power, and made the Empire tributary to *Aaron* the Saracen Prince. *Paul*  
 the Patriarch repenting that he had withstood Image-Worship, enters into a  
 Monastery; *Tarsius* his successor adviseth *Irene* to call a generall Synod, which  
 was done by Pope *Adrians* assistance, whose Legats were there. The place was  
 first at Byzantium, then Nicea of Bithynia. In this 7 generall Councell was  
 undone whatsoever had been done by *Leo Isaurus*, and his sonne and grandchild  
 concerning abolishing of Images. The 6 yeare of her reign a great commoti-  
 on was raised, which disturbed the proceedings of the Synod, so that the Bi-  
 shops being 350 in all were forced to rise: the Empreffe making shew of an ex-  
 pedition against the Saracens, demands all the armes of those who were of the  
 contrary side and enemies to Images, which when shee had gotten shee banish-  
 eth them all from the city, and arms her own party, and calls the Councell again;  
 the 8 year of her reign at Nicea, Image Worship is their concluded, and by her au-  
 thority confirmed.

After this shee dissolves the contract made between her sonne and *Rhotilde*,  
 and made him against his will to marry with one *Mary* an Armenian. She sends  
 also *Adalgisus* the sonne of *Desiderius*, with some Commanders to make new  
 stirres in Lombardy against *Charles*, because hee had seized upon the Duke-  
 dome of Beneventum. But *Adalgisus* is overthrown by the French and Lom-  
 bards in a battell, wherein he was taken and put to death. *Constantine* per-  
 ceiving that his mother did what she listed, and was altogether ruled by *Stan-*  
*ratius* a Patrician; and that hee being the lawfull heire, and now of yeares  
 sufficient to rule the State, was slighted, and kept like a child under the *fe-*  
*rule*, resolves to take the government upon himselfe. But shee on the other  
 side will not part with any share of her power; keeps her sonne at home  
 under correction being 20 yeares of age; banisheth all who adhere to him, and  
 makes the souldiers swear fidelity to her alone, and not to acknowledge any  
 power in him whilst she was alive. But the Armenian Armies were constant

*An. Mundi* in their loyalty to *Constantine*, and would not acknowledge the mothers sovereignty, whose example moved other soldiers, against their oath, to fall off from the *Empresse*. Therefore *Constantine* by their helpe takes the reines in his owne hand, commands *Stauratius* to forbear meddling with State affaires, and confines his mother to her palace at *Eleutherium*, which shee had lately built, in which shee was entertained with all princely respect, and the next year he intending an expedition into *Bulgaria*, and another into *Arabia*, restores her again to her former power, which when shee had obtained, shee fell to vex and 10 punish all his friends and acquaintance; hee makes an expedition into *Bulgaria*, but with ill successe, for his army was defeated, and his chiefeest Nobility either killed or taken prisoners. Upon suspicion of treason, hee caused his three Uncles *Nicephorus*, *Christophorus*, and *Nicetus* to be apprehended, and their eyes to be put out, which cruelty made him to be hated, chiefly of the Armenians, and to make himselfe the more odious hee puts away his wife *Mary*, pretending shee would have poysoned him, whereas it was known she was a vertuous and religious Lady: then he being puffed up for some good successe he had lately against the Saracens, takes one *Theodate* a Virgin out of the Nunnery, and makes her his *Empresse*, which incensed the Monks against him, who accused him of bigamy, for which he banished them.

*Constantine* makes a second expedition into *Bulgaria*, to take off (if he could) 20 the tribute, which they so insolently demanded, but understanding that his wife was brought to bed of a sonne, hee repaires to the City, and commends the charge of the Army to his mother: shee takes this absence of her sonne, as a fit opportunity to reinvest her selfe in the sovereignty; to this end both shee and *Stauratius* with bribes and flatteries worke upon the Army, whose good will shee obtained. Upon this the Emperour is called home from the Saracen war, the intent was to apprehend and secure him, which was done accordingly: he thought to have escaped, but could not, wherefore hee is brought back to the City, and his eyes are put out, 5 years after hee had so served his Uncles, and on that very day. Not long after he dyed, his death was accompanied with 17 30 dayes darknesse, the eye of the world disdaining to looke on those who had thrust out the eyes of their Sovereign. Hee reigned 8 yeares alone. His mother after this reigned 3 yeares, in which time shee put to death her husbands Uncles, that they might not aspire to the Empire. Embassadors are sent by her to *Charles* for confirming a solid peace, for parting the Empire between them, and for the making up of a match between *Charles* and her; hee likewise sends Embassadors to Constantinople to the same effect, but whilst they were there a great change fell out, for *Irene* being sick, it was given out by some of the Grandees, that she had nominated *Nicephorus* the Patrician to succeed her in the Empire; upon this, he is saluted Emperour by the Armies, to whom hee gives the oath of allegiance, 40 then besiegeth *Irene* in the Palace, makes her deliver up all her treasures; then banisheth her to the Isle *Lesbos*, where shee was secured with a strong guard, there shee pined away with griefe, and dyed, having reigned 23 yeares. *Nicephorus* dispatcheth the Embassadors with letters to *Charles*, desiring a ratification of the peace, propounded by *Irene*. *Charles* having again subdued the Saxons, hee translates a great number of them into *Flanders* and *Brabant*. Hee beat the *Sclavi* and *Vinidi*, as they were plundering of *Magdeburg*. Hee takes *Thassilo* sonne in law to *Desiderius*, who by his wives persuasion had renewed the rebellion. Him hee condemnes of treason, and then sends him to a Monastery. *Charles* also suppressed the Hungarians, who were 50 *Thassilo*s associates, and had invaded *Germany*. So having after 8 years warre subdued the Huns, and quieted *Pannonia*, *Charles* assembleth a Synod at *Francford* of 300 Bishops, wherein *Nestorianism* is condemned, which *Elipandus* and *Felix* two Bishops had renewed, and it was defined, that *Christ* according to his flesh was the true sonne of God, and not adopted, and that in his humanity he should be worshipped, no lesse then in his Divinity. Image worship is condemned, and the second Synod of *Nice* rejected. *Alphonfus* also King of

*Asturia*

*Asturia* and *Gallicia* in Spaine wearied with payment of Virgins which was ex-*An. Mundi* acted by the Saracens, in way of tribute, resolves to fight them, and did accordingly, in which battell hee defeated them, took *Lysbone*, killed many 1000 of them, and freed a great part of Spain from the Saracens yoke. The Emperour of this victory he sends to *Charles*. After *Stephen* the fourth, or third as some say, who fate 4 years succeeded *Adrian* the first, who fate 23 yeares. He ordained that every day 100 poore people should be fed in the Lateran Court. In *Leo*s time a coffin or chest of stone, was digged out of the ground. *Christ* shall be born 10 in it, is thought by some to bee *Plato*s, this was found a little before the warres of *Charles* with the *Avars* and *Böii*, whose last King *Tassilo* hee tooke with his sonne, and put them in a Monastery. About this time England was invaded by the Danes. In the year 791. the University of Paris is erected by *Charles*, whose first professors were foure Monks, all *Beda*s scholars, to wit, *Rabanus*, *Albinus*, *Claudius* and *Scotus*; not *Scotus subtilis* the Franciscan, who lived long after: he erected also the Universities of *Pavia*, of *Ticinum*, of *Osnaaburg*, and renews that of *Bononia* founded by *Theodosius*. To *Hadrian* succeeded *Leo* the third, who fate 4 yeares: he lost both eyes and tongue by the malice of the Romans. He escaped out of prison, and was restored by *Charles*. In his time the Empire was 20 translated from Greece to France. But which was a greater wonder, *Leo* was restored again to his eyes and tongue.

M 3

The

## The fourth Booke OF THE SECOND PART

INTREATING  
Of the times from **CHARLES** the Great, till  
**PHILIP** the Emperour in the West, and the French  
Empire in the East, containing 400 Yeares.

### CHAP. I.

*The affaires of both the Empires under Charles in the West, under Nicephorus, Michael, and Leo in the East. 2. Of the Nations subdued by Charles.*

4770.  
A.C.800.



**C**HARLES having obtained the name of Great for his conquests over the Saracens, Saxons, Danes and many other barbarous Nations, is brought to Rome by Pope **Leo**, who having beene condemned to prison, and to lose his eyes for some crimes objected against him, escaped out of prison, and either by miracle received his sight again, or else hee did not totally lose it, the executioner taking pity on him. Charles was at Paderborn in Saxony with his Army, when the Pope came, to follow his ghostly Fathers conduct to the Imperiall City with his Army, where having called a Synod to examine the crimes objected against the Pope, he was told, that the Bishop of Rome was not to be judged by any man. And therefore no crime being there alladged against him, hee cleared himselfe by his owne oath, and so was absolved, and placed again, to the great grieve of his enemies, in his pontifical chair. To requite this favour of Charles, in **S. Peters Church** upon Christmas day, the Pope solemnly pronounces him Emperour, setting the crown on his head, and the people with loud acclamations, saying: *Long life and victory to Charles Augustus, crowned by God, the Great, the Peace-maker, Emperour of the Romans.* Hence came the custome, that the Western Emperours received their Crowns from the Popes. For the Eastern Emperours had been now for a long time slighted at Rome, ever since they opposed Images. Charles now intends to subdue Sicily, but is retarded by **Irenes** Emhassadors, who promised marriage with her, this Embassie was acceptable to Charles, who hoped by this marriage to unite the two Empires again. But **Actius** the Eunuch, who endeavoured to have his brother **Leo** then Governor of Thracia and Macedonia to be Emperour, marred this match, and he was also deceived, for **Nicephorus** (as we have said) obtained the Empire.

**Nicephorus** a perfidious and covetous man, spared not those by whose helpe hee obtained the Empire. Hee got by his faire promises **Bardanas** the Patrician whom the Eastern people had proclaimed Augustus, to relinquish his title, swearing hee should receive no prejudice by it; no sooner had **Bardanas** deveded himselfe, and entred of his owne accord into a Monastery, but **Nicephorus** under hand caused his eyes

eyes to bee thrust out, and then wept, as if this had been done without his knowledge. Then hee makes **Stauratius** the sonne (for the father was dead) his Co-Emperour, and shortly after fighting against the Saracens, hee lost the battell, narrowly escaping himselfe. He fortifieth **Ancyra** of **Galatia**, and other townes to keep off the Saracens incursions: but basely hee made himselfe, his sonne, and his Empire tributaries to the Mahometans, who under **Aaron** being 30000 strong, overrun **Romania**. Hee promised to pay yearly 300000 peeces of silver for the Empire, and 3000 for himselfe and his sonne: binding himselfe also not to repair the Forts demolished by the Arabians. But shortly after **Nicephorus** as his manner was broke the league, which brought the Saracens upon **Cyprus**, who overthrew the Churches of that Island, and drove out the inhabitants: they also invaded **Rhodes**, but could not take the town, having lost their Fleet in a storm. Shortly after **Aaron** dyeth, to whom succeeds his sonne **Mahomet**, hee had civill warres with his brother which was pernicious to the Christians and Arabians of those places, many Churches and Monasteries were destroyed. In the interim **Nicephorus** gives himselfe to wantonnesse, hee abuseth two Ladies of great beauty, and bestowes one **Theophania** another mans wife, an Athenian, and of kin to **Irene**, upon his son.

**Nicephorus** fearing **Charles** his increasing greatnesse sends Embassadors to profess for him Italy, except so much as lay upon the Sea between **Naples** and **Sipontum** or **Sipontio** in the **Apulia**. He desired they two might live as brothers, that one might enjoy the East, the other the West. It was also covenanted that **Venice** which had now stood 350 yeares, should be free from both the Empires. Yet this same year they drew upon themselves, both the Grecian and French Forces, for they had expelled **Fohn** their Duke: whom **Nicephorus** would have forced again upon them. But the French under **Pipinus** were sent by **Charles** to assist the **Venitians**. Who finding **Obelerius** the Tribune thrust out of the City, for favouring the French, fell fowle upon the **Venitians**, but having lost many of his men, and done no good, was forced to make a dishonourable retreat to **Ravenna**: yet **Charles** suffered the Greeks to enjoy **Venice**. **Nicephorus** the 9 year of his reign invades **Bulgaria**, to be revenged on **Crunnus** king thereof, who had seized upon the souldiers pay by the way, as it was conveying from the Emperour to the camp. Hee had also taken **Sardica**, and killed many 1000 Romans. But was willing to make his peace with **Nicephorus**, and to give satisfaction, which proffer was rejected, and an army is sent to wast **Bulgaria**. But suddenly in the night **Crunnus** falls upon his camp, made great slaughter among the Romans, and killed **Nicephorus** himselfe in his pavilion, whose head **Crunnus** fastned on a long pole, and carryed it about. Most of the Nobility were slain, all the arms and the imperial wealth in the Camp were carryed away, **Stauratius** Caesar received a wound in his neck, and fled to **Byzantium**, where many who hated the sonne of **Nicephorus**, intended to make **Cyropalates** husband of **Procopia** **Stauratius** his sister Emperour. **Michael** **Cyropalates** perceiving the peoples inclination towards him, and fearing lest hee should bee prevented, procured also the souldiers good will, so the next day the Senat being called, he was saluted Emperour the third month after the death of **Nicephorus**. **Stauratius** hearing the acclamations of the people, put on a Monks habit, in which 3 months after he dyed of his wound, which did stink and fester.

**Michael** being letted desired the friendship of **Charles** and Pope **Leo**, propounding a match between his son and one of **Charles** his daughter. After this he led an Army against the **Bulgarians**, but with ill successe, for the Barbarians prevailed, who wasted **Thracia** and **Macedonia**, and drove the Christians out of **Beroea** and **Anchialum**, many imputing these miseries to Image-worship, and wishing that the sonnes of **Copronymus** were sent for out of **Pangormus**, to free the Empire from the Barbarians: these **Michael** punished with banishment, and the losse of their eyes. **Crunnus** propounded peace to **Michael** on this condition, that he might enjoy the ancient bounds of **Bulgaria**, and have liberty to receive fugitives, which being denied him, hee falls upon **Mesembria**, and by the help of a certain Arabick Christian, whom **Michael** had defrauded of his pay, took it, and in it much treasure.

**An. Munda:** 128. Shortly after he gave such an overthrow to *Michael* Army, that he having lost all, and in despair ever to recruit again, fled and changed his robes with a Monks habit, and left the Empire to *Leo* the Armenian. *Theophylact* *Michaels* sonne, being already called Emperour, had his genitalls cut off; and hee with his mother *Procopia* and brothers were banished. *Nicephorus* reigned 9 years. *Stauratius* the younger one year, and *Michael* almost 2 yeares. The Danes afore this had invaded England, and carryed away great booties, they were called Normans, a generall name to all the Northern people, their King *Godefrid* had warres with *Charles*, with whom hee quarrelled for invading the Nordalbing Saxons, now called Holsatians. Two years after *Godefrid* with 200 ships arrived in Frisia, where having subdued the Friscons in a battell, imposed a tribute upon them: but before hee could encounter with *Charles*, hee was killed by a souldier. To him succeeded *Hemingus* his brothers sonne, the same yeare that *Pipinus* king of Italy, *Charles* his eldest sonne who beat the Beneventins, and Venetian Capitaines, departed this life; when upon the restoring of Venice to *Nicephorus*, peace was concluded between the Greeks and Franks. The next year peace was concluded between the Franks and Danes, *Hemingus* sent him divers presents and then dyed, to whom succeeded *Sigefridus* and *Anilo*, who both were slain in battell, and 11000 with them of the Danes; *Hazald* and *Reginfrid* obtained Denmark the same time that *Michael* got the Empire of Byzantium. But these brothers were driven out of their kingdom by another faction, who had lived in exile among the Suiones now called Swedes. This fell out the same yeare that *Charles* dyed of a Fever and Pleurisie the 72 yeare of his age; having been King of France 47. of Italy 42. and Emperour 14. yeares. Hee was honourably buried at Aquisgranum, now called Aix, (where he dyed) in our Lady Church built by himselfe. He was a wise, valourous, learned and fortunate Prince. Hee built divers religious houses, Churches and Colleges, hee instituted the Peeres of France. Hee built a most sumptuous bridge over the Rhene neer Mintz. This bridge was counted halfe a mile in length, ten yeares were spent in building it: which a yeare before his death was burned downe, some say by casualty, others by *Ricolphus* the Archbishop, because in the night time many robberies were committed there. He gave Teutonicke names, (that being his own tongue) to the windes and moneths. Hee appointed proper Lessons for each Festival day, to be read in Churches. He was canonized by Pope *Alexander* at the desire of *Frederic* the first Emperour; and a hymne appointed to be sung to him at Aix. He subdued the greatest part of France, of Spain, of Italy, besides Pannonia, Saxony, Histria, Dacia, Liburnia, Dalmatia, and many barbarous Nations. The Greeks with presents sought his friendship, so did Aaron Prince of the Saracens, who sent him an Elephant, a rich clock, and other Princely gifts. He bequeathed by his last will all his treasures on charitable and pious uses. Hee never miscarried but that time he returned from his victory over the Moores in Spain, for as he was coming downe the Pyrenæan mountaines hee lost his Army, by the treachery of the Vascons, as we have shewed. His Metropolitan Churches inherited his treasures; to wit, Rome, Ravenna, Millan, Frituli, Gradus, Colen, Mintz, Saltsburg, Rowen, Trevers, Sens of old Senones, Vintonium or Bisontium, Lions, Rhemes, Arles, Vienna, Tarentasia, Ebrodunum, Yuerdon, Burdeaux, Turones or Tuors, Bituriges. *Charles* had four wives,  
1. *Hermingardis* daughter to *Desiderius* King of Lombardy, whom hee put away.  
2. *Hildegardis* daughter to *Godefrid* Duke of Alemans, who bore to him 3 sons, *Charles*, *Pipin*, and *Lodovic*, and four daughters.  
3. *Fastrada* a French Lady.  
4. *Luitgarda* an Aleman. By his Concubines he had other children, one of them called *Pipin*, who was crooked, with some others plotted treason against him, which he prevented, and cast his son into a Monastery. Among his three sons lawfully begotten he divided his Empire, to *Pipin* he gave Italy, to *Charles* Germany, to *Ludovic* France and hither Spain, but *Pipin* and *Charles* dyed before their Father. *Pipin* left one son *Bernhardus* and 5 daughters. *Charles* dyed the yeare after his brother, having subdued the Sorabi a people in Lusatia, and killed their King *Mioducus*. After

After the death of *Charles the Great* the two *sonnes*, the *Saracens* and *Moorees* invaded Italy, *Charles* sends his *Grandchilde Bernardus*, who tooke from them *Nicea* in *Gallia* of *Narbon*, and *Centum cella* in *Hetruria*, which some thinke to be *Civita vecchia*. Pope *Leo* the third, after he was restored by *Charles*, sate 16 years, so in all he was Pope 20 years. *Egbert* subdued all the South part of Great Britain, and ordained it should be ever after called *England*. In *Charles* his time 10000 Saxons with their wives and children are planted in *Brabant* and *Flanders*, and many *Flemings* are sent into *Saxony*. The 12 Peeres of France which *Charles* instituted were 3 *Archbishops*, 1 of *Rhemes*, 2 of *Laudon*, or *Laon*, 10 3 of *Lingon* or *Langres*. These were also *Dukes*: three *Bishops*, and *Counts* or *Earles*: 1. of *Bellovacum* or *Beauvais* in *Piccardy*. 2. Of *Novion* or *Noyon* in *Piccardy* likewise. 3. Of *Catalaunum* or *Chalon* in the *Duchy* of *Burgundy*. The six of the *Laity* were 1 three *Dukes*, 1. of *Burgundy*, 2. of *Normandy*, 3. of *Aquitan* or *Gaskony*. Then 3 *Earles*: 1. of *Flanders*, 2. of *Tholouse*, 3. of *Campania*, which at this day are changed according to the pleasure of the King. Among other Nations subject to *Charles*, *England* also submitted to him, who sent thither *Guido* to subdue it. The clock and candlesticks which the *Persian* king sent to *Charles* he bestowed upon our Lady Church at *Aquisgranum* or *Aix* in *Province*. The *Saracen* King of *Gallicia* being subdued by *Charles*, received 20 the *Christian Faith*. The *Northern* people that molested the *Christians* in *Ireland* are driven out by the *Scots*. *Crunnus* the *Bulgarian* King was not contented to carry about *Nicephorus* his head on a pole, but hee also at last made a cup of it to drink in. *Charles* erected 9 Cathedrall Churches, to wit, *Monster*, *Winden*, *Osnaburg*, *Brem*, *Paderburn*, *Verden*, *Hamburg*, *Hildemen* and *Halberstad* in *Saxony*. He used to have read to him in supper time *S. Austin* of the City of God. He caused *Paulus Diaconus* write the lives of the *Saints*.

In the East to *Michael* succeeded *Leo* the fifth. Hee subdued *Crunnus* that was now puffed up with so many victories, and gave him a deadly wound by an  
30 arrow, who after this victory over *Crunnus*, commanded the abolition of Images, banished *Nicephorus* the Patriarch, for withstanding his edict, and set up *Theodorus* in his room. *Michael Balbus* conspired against him: for which treason hee is condemned to be burned, but by the intreaty of his Emperresse hee put off the execution to his owne destruction, till the solemnity of Christs Nativity was passed. In the meane while hee kept the key of the prison: but in the night time not being able to sleep, hee riseth and goeth into the prison, where hee seeth *Balbus* sleeping soundly upon the bed, and *Papias* his Keeper lying on the ground. At which *Leo* was much moved, and with his hand gave threatning signes, for *Papias* affection to his prisoner:  
40 one of the watchmen upon *Leo*'s departure awaked *Papias*, and told him of the Emperours being there, and of his anger; hee awakes *Balbus* and tells him what had happened: upon this they tell the Assassins, that they must dispatch the Emperour quickly, or else *Balbus* who was condemned, would discover them. They being affrighted at this, without delay put on Priests habit, and joine themselves with the singing men in the Quire, having their swords under their garments, so while the Emperour was singing Divine Hymnes, with the rest they fall upon him, cuts off his head and hand; then run into the prison, breaks off the fetters from *Balbus*, and proclaimes him Emperour: then crowns him in the same Chappell where *Leo* was killed: they banish his wife, and 4 sons,  
50 after their privy members were cut off: *Leo* reigned 7 years and 5 months.

The affaires of the Empire under Ludovic and Lotharius, in the West, under Michael Balbus, Theodosius, Theodora, Michael the second, in the East. 2. For-raign affaires of those times and of the Church.

A. C. 814.

**L**udovic (called the godly from his bounty to the Clergy and the poor,) about a month after his fathers death, removes from Aquitain to Aix; where hee began his reign. He renews the league with Leo the Emperour of Byzantium. Pope Leo being dead succeeds Stephen the fifth, who crowned Ludovic at Rhemes the third year of his reign. To Stephen who fate but 4 months succeeded Paschalis who was Pope 7 yeares. Ludovic was like to be killed by the fall of a porch or gallery at Aix, by which fall hee was hurt in his body, and mortified in his minde. At the same time Sclaomirus King of the Eastern Slavonians revolted from him, and Bernhard in Italy raised an Army against him. But when Ludovic was marching with his Forces against Bernhard, his souldiers forsooke him, and so he surrendered himselfe to his Uncle. Ludovic having assembled a Councell at Aix, condemnes the chief authours of Bernhards sedition; the Clergy men he punisheth with degradation, and the Laity with losse of their eyes, and both with banishment. Among these were Anselmus Bishop of Millan, and Theodulphus bishop of Orleans or Aurelia. Bernhardus a few dayes after hee had lost his eyes dyed, which made Ludovic grieve for his rash sentence. Not long after this Irmengardis his wife dyed, by her he had 3 sons, Lotharius, Pipinus, and Ludovic: but the losse of his wife was recompensed, by the regaining of a lost kingdom: for Sclaomir was brought captive, who not being able to excuse his rebellion, is deusted of his kingdom.

A. C. 826.

Ludovic after this married with one Juditha, a Bavarian and his neer kinswoman, this marriage cost Frederic bishop of Utrecht his life, for he spoke against it, as unlawfull, whereupon Juditha sent some Assassins who murdered him at the Altar. About the 7 year of his reigne, he had a cruell warre with Luidevicus King of Hungary, which war ended with the death of Luidevicus. Bernhard King of Italy being dead in the monastery, where his Uncle put him, Lotharius is made King of Italy, and Cæsar by his father Ludovic, who married to him Irmengardis the daughter of one Hugo. Afterward he sent him into Italy, and desires Paschalis the Pope to proclaime him Emperour. This Paschalis was elected Pope by the Romans, without the Emperours knowledge; at which he was displeased, but quickly pacified again by the Popes excuse: who purged himselfe by oath, that hee had no hand in the murder of the Emperours servants at Rome. To Paschalis succeeded Eugenius the second who fate 4 yeares, and then gave place to Gregory the fourth, who fate 16 yeares.

In Ludovic's time the Danes by Ebbo Archbishop of Rhemes were converted to Christianity, who caused Heraldus (that was lately after his banishment, settled again in Denmark by Cæsar's means) to be baptized at Mintz, with a great multitude of Danes. About the time that Ranimir successor to Alphonfus in Spaine obtained a great victory of the Saracens, wherein were slaine 40000 Barbarians: but this joy lasted not long, for the Dane was expelled by Godefrids sonnes; the Saracens out of Spaine wasted Barcinone or Barcellone in Arragon now, but in Aquitain of old: the Bulgarians plundered Pannonia; for which cause many of their Commanders and Officers for their neglect were casheered. The spoile that was done by the Saracens in Spain is repayed by Boniface Earl of Corsica who plunders the coasts of Africa, and doth not suffer the Saracens to settle their wealth in Sicily, which they tooke lately from the Governour thereof under Balbus. Ludovic was severe against the rich apparell of the Clergy. But the Nobility perceiving that hee was altogether ruled by his wife Juditha, they stir up Pipin King of Aquitania against his Father, as unworthy to reigne any longer; with him in this conspiracy Lotharius is joined, lately come out of Italy,

Italy. Juditha is commanded from the Court, and the Emperour himselfe is threatened to be put into a Monastery, but the controversie was quickly taken up, the Emperour and his sonnes are reconciled; the Authours of the rebellion are shut up in Monasteries, Juditha is absolved, and restored to her dignity again, and Ludovic to his Empire by the Germans help. Bernhard Earle of Barcelona who was accused of adultery with her, (which was the maine cause of this rebellion of the sonnes against the father) proffered to vindicate his innocency by his sword; but no adversary being found, hee cleared himselfe by oath, and is also restored to his honor. Pipin would not give his consent to this, wherefore hee is confined to Aquæ in Aragon: but he escaped thence into Gascony. Which when his father understood, hee commanded that Pipin should be secured at Trevers; but he having made his party in Gascony strong, and his brothers being animated by bad Counsellours to joine with him, they resolve to take armes, and to force their father to give over the Empire, the rather because they thought his love was altogether set on Charles the balde, his sonne by Juditha. With these Pope Gregory the fourth combines, threatening to excommunicate the Emperour, out of a grudge, because Ludovic commanded that the Popes election should not be valid, unlesse it were examined and confirmed by his Legat. At length both Armies meet neer to Basil, ready to fight, but the Pope cunningly goeth over to Ludovic, pretending to reconcile him to his sonnes, but indeed to protract time, that the Emperours army might be wrought upon his followers, to fall off to his sonnes: which partly by promises, partly by threatnings was effected. Ludovic being thus forsaken, went over to his sonnes camp, hoping to be kindly used by them, but he was put in prison, and his power wrested from him. This unnatural fact was so odious to Varinus and Bernhardus, that they send Lotharius a challenge, either to set his father at liberty, or else to fight with either of them. He laid the fault upon the Bishops, and so leaving his Father in the Monastery of St. Dennis, retires to Burgundy, where he begins to fortifie himselfe, and to raise arms: in the meane while Ludovic by the help of his friends is restored againe to his right, and Lotharius being forsaken by his brothers, Ludovic and Pipin, came humbly to his father and submitted himselfe to his mercy, who having sharply reproved him, gives him the oath of allegiance, which he took, and then returned to Italy. Ludovic stopped all passages towards Italy, that none might come thence into Germany without his knowledge. Ebbo that converted the Danes with divers other Bishops are degraded, and banished for their seditious counsels, the rest of the evill counsellours are pursued by Divine justice, for in the space of 7 weekes the plague swept them all away, in whose destruction Ludovic rejoiced not, but prayed for them. Pipin the fifth yeare after he was repossessed in his power was struck with an untimely death, which was ushered by a comet, at the sight of this Ludovic prefiged some evill comming, wherefore hee by alms giving and prayers labours to divert Gods anger.

After this, by the perswasion of Juditha, hee divides his Dominions among his sonnes. To Lotharius he gives the Empire, with Italy, and the South part of France, even to the river Mæsa. The rest of France he bestowes on Charles the Balde Juditha's sonne, and to Ludovic he bequeathed Germany; who not contented with his portion, laid claim to all beyond the Rhene, and to began to make new commotions. Augustus hastning to appease them is forewarned by a terrible eclipse of the sun, that the light of the Empire should be removed, which fell out true the same month. For the Emperour dyed of grief, and of an Inopsthume neer Mintz the 64 year of his life, the 28 of his Empire. Drago his brother Bishop of Metz in Lorraine, sometime the Capitol City of Austrasia, performed his funeralles there with great solemnity.

Michael Balbus a Phrygian born, a defender of heresies, a hater of disputations, a countenancer of all Religions, a denier of the Resurrection, and of Divels, a maintainer of whoredomes, a rejecter of lawfull oaths, the sink of all wickedness: as he nefariously got the Eastern Empire, so he ruled it, or rather misruled it. He was called Balbus from his stammering tongue. He could neither read



An. Christi

823.

828.

829.

841.

read nor write, and therefore suffered no children to be taught to read, lest they should be learner then himselfe. One *Thomas* who called himselfe *Constantine*, a Tribune, and who had defeated the *Hagarins*, strove to be Emperour; therefore with a great army besiegeth *Byzantium*: but *Winter* coming on he was forced to raise the siege, and return the next spring. Many encounters he had with *Balbus*: but at last by the help of the *Bulgarians* *Thomas* is defeated, & flies to *Adrianopolis* where he was apprehended, upon the surrender of the City by famine, and tortured to death, his hands and feet being first cut off. Perinthus the Metropolis of *Thracia*, called also *Heraclea* from *Heracles*, held out a great while against *Balbus* in defence of *Thomas*. So did also *Panium*, but they were at last taken. In the meane while the *Agarens* of *Spain* seise upon *Crete*, and there settle, having made slaves of the Islanders. The *Saracens* of *Afric* invade *Sicily*, which they took by the treachery of one *Euphemus*, whom the Prætor of the Island should have executed for the abusing of a Nun, *Balbus* strove to recover these, but was still beat off with losse. *Dalmatia* likewise shook off the *Græcian* yoke, and became a kingdom. Thus the Eastern Empire being torn, *Balbus* dyed of a Phrensie and Strangury, or as some say of a Bloody flux, having reigned 8 yeares.

To him succeeded *Theophilus* his son, who justly punished the murderers of *Leo Armenius*, though they advanced his father *Balbus* from the prison to the Throne. He punished his wifes brother for building so close to a widows house, that he stopt up her windowes. Many other acts of justice he did, and was a great enemie to Images. He burned off the fingers of one *Lazarus* a Monk, for painting or colouring of Images. He confessed that he never had to doe with any woman but his own wife, except one Lady, for which hee was sorry. He was a great lover of Musick. With divers successe he made excursions upon the *Arabians*. He took *Sozopetra* in *Syria*, *Amira's* native place, in requitall of which *Amira* took *Amorya* in *Phrygia* (whence *Theophilus* derived his pedigree) killed many thousands in it, and imprisoned the Nobility, whom *Theophilus* would have ransomed, but could not, whereupon with griefe hee fell sick and dyed the 13 yeare of his reign, the next yeare after *Ludovic's* decease, but before his death hee had overcome and slain *Theophobus* whom the *Persian* Army of 30000 men had named Emperour.

In the reign of these Emperours *Garsias* King of *Navar* dyed, to whom after 4 yeares interregnum succeeded *Eunicius* who was anointed King. The *Bulgarians* had received the Christian Faith the former age, but were since returned to Gentilism, they are made Christians again under *Ludovic*. A.C. 817. afterward An. 860 they were totally converted under *Theodora*. Near *Tulle* in *Belgica* a maid lived 3 yeares without meat or drink. The *Paulicians* then flourished in *Phrygia* and *Lycaonia*, these were a new sect of *Manichees* patcht up of *Judaism*, *Gentilism*, and *Christianism*, these were favored by *Balbus*. By the skil of *George* a *Venetian* Priest, at the charges of *Ludovic* water Organs were made at *Aix*. *Ludovic* parted with his right of election of the Popes and confirmed the Emperors former grants to them. *S. Marks* body is translated from *Alexandria* by Sea to *Venice*, to which a magnificent Church is erected. The Feast of all Saints which had been 220 yeares before this time, observed in *Rome*, is now by *Ludovic* imposed upon *France* and *Germany*: the *Saracens* plunder in *Italy*, and rob the *Vatican* at *Rome*, but in their returne they made shipwrack. *Alphonssus* the third surnamed the Great, reigns in *Spain*, *Egbert* in *England*, *Kenneth* the second son of *Alpinus* in *Scotland*.

To *Ludovic* succeeded his sonne *Lotharius* in the Empire. He would have sub- jected his brothers to him, as Emperour, and attempted to deprive them of their inheritance; making *Ludovic* to content himself with *Bavaria*, and *Charles* with *Gascony*, which they must hold of him in Fee. These scorning to be subject to their brother, and to loose their Patrimony, understanding also that hee had raised an Army against them, resolve to join their Forces together, and to withstand *Lotharius*: a bloody battell is fought neer *Antissiodorum* or *Aexer* in *Province*, in this conflict above 100000 men were slain, on both sides. *Lotharius* lost

An. Christi

lost welnigh all his Army, and he was faine to fly to *Aix*, where he recruits his army, the next year his brothers meet him again in the field; but his souldiers being mind- full of their last great defeat, forsook him, so that he was forced to flye again. Yet doth not mean to give over, but recollects his Forces, and encampeth neer *Matiscen* a town in *Burgundy*, thither his brothers came with their Army; as they were ready to fight, the Peers of the Empire did so mediate between them, that *Ludovic* should have *Germany* for his share, *Charles* should enjoy *France*, and *Lotharius* Italy with the Empire, and so much of *Germany* as lay between the two rivers, the *Rhene* and *Mosell*, hence the countrey was called from *Lotharius* *Lotharingia*. *Pipin* the sonne of *Pipin* had *Aquitania*, which *Charles* not long after aimed at, not without great losse of his men, yet at last by force he got it, and shut up *Pipins* two sons, to wit, *Pipin* and *Charles*, into two Monasteries, whence they made an escape, but were brought back at last. *Ludovic Germanicus* bestowed on *Charles* the Archbishoprick of *Mints*. *Charles* killed also *Bernhard*, his mothers favourite of old. *Ludovic Germanicus* subdued the *Abotriti* a people bordering upon *Bulgaria*, and killed their King, who was the cause of their revolt, and set Dukes or Governours over them. He caused 15 *Bohemian* Dukes to be baptized, and brought all their countrey in subjection.

About this time, the *Normans* with a great Fleet plundered the coast of *France*, and by the river of *Loire* entred into the bowels of the countrey as farre as *Paris*. King *Charles* not being able to force them, perswaded them by mony to be gone out of his Kingdom. They had first infested the *Spanish* shore, but were beat off by King *Ranimirus*, they molested also *England*, *Frisland*, and *Saxony*, they overthrew *Hamburg*, which *Charles* the Great built as a bulwark to keep them out. At last they took the *Isle Valacra*, and called it *Seland*: so after they had done much mischief abroad, and had vexed *France* 20 yeares, they returned to *Denmark* laden with gold, where they destroyed one another with civill wars. *Lotharius* the Emperour understanding that the *Romans* had a minde to deliver up the City to the *Greek* Emperours, hee made a journey thither; punished the authors of this plot, changed the Magistrates and reassumed his ancient right in confirming the Popes election. Returning from *Italy*, he divides his Kingdomes among his 3 sonnes. He declares *Ludovic* Emperour and Lord of *Italy*. Hee placeth *Charles* in that part of *France* which of old was called *Gallia Narbonensis*, and *Braccata*, containing *Languedoc*, *Provence* and *Dalphine*. *Lotharius* the youngest is settled in *Lotharingia* or *Lorrain*: so being weary of the world, and sorry for the great mortality that was in all his Dominions by the plague, willing also to expiate his rebellion against his father, layeth aside his Empire, and entereth into a Monastery called *Brumia* neer *Trevers*, where the next yeare after hee dyed, having reigned 15 yeares. His sonne *Charles* did not live long after his father. *Lotharius* having put away his wife *Disberga*, marryed his Concubine *Baldrada* the Bishop of *Colens* sister, wherefore he was excommunicate by the Pope, which cost him a journey to *Rome*, where he obtained absolution. then having assisted his brother in suppressing the *Saracens*, in his return homeward he dyed of the plague at *Placentia* having lost a great part of his Army. This *Lotharius* had two sons by his Concubine, *Lotharius* the third, and *Hugo* Duke of *Lorrain*. *Ludovicus Germanicus* had long wars with the *Sorabi*, *Bohemians*, and *Marcomans*. He had three sons, *Carolomanus* the eldest who dyed of an Apoplexie, *Charles* surnamed the grosse and *Ludovic*. His daughter *Ludgata*, lived a monasticall life, to *Ludovic* the third son of *Germanicus* the Empire fell.

In the reign of *Lotharius* the Arabian Mores plundered the coast of *Campania*, seised upon *Beneventum*, sackt *Cassinum* and pillaged the Suburbs of *Rome*: then was *Sergius* the second Pope, before his Popedom he was called *Os porci* or Swines face, of which being ashamed hee changed his name to *Sergius*, whence it came to be a custome afterward for every Pope to change his name. He sat 3 yeares, to whom succeeded *Leo* the fourth, who fortified the City against the *Saracens*, and by the help of the *Neapolitans* and *Cajetans* overthrew their fleet. The Islanders of *Corfica* and *Sardina*, were forced to leave their habitation to the *Saracens*, and

*An. Christi* and to dwell at Rome, *Leo* was the first that forbid laymen to be in the Quire at Masse time. He caused Cloysters or Schooles to be built neer the Churches. *Leo* late 8 yeares, to him succeeded *Benedict* the third, who late 2 yeares. After whom late *Nicholaus* the first 9 yeares. He excommunicated *Lotharius*. In Spain *Haldaragman* the third, and after him his son *Mahomet* reigned, who 3 times persecuted the Christians. The Saracens take the Isle Lipara, and in it they found the reliques of *S. Bartholomew*, which they abuse and disperse.

At Constantinople *Theodora* the wife of *Theophilus* the Emperor, reigned in her son *Michael's* his minority. She was given to Images, therefore repeals the acts of *Theophilus* against them, deposeth *John* the Patriarch, and sets up *Methodius*, 10 who being accused of whoredome, cleared his innocency by shewing to the Judges his shrunk and dried genitals. The Bulgarians rebell against *Bogores* their king, for being a Christian, but hee overcame them in a battell, and by *Theodora* obtained the enlargement of his territories. The Paulician Manichees, fell off totally from the Arabians, and infested the Provinces of the Empire with many incursions. About this time *Godalsens* the Monk mis-understanding *St. Austins* Doctrine of Predestination; taught that God absolutely decreed the salvation and damnation of men; and that Christ did not dye for all. After *Hincmarus* Bishop of Rhemes, and *Rabanus* Bishop of Mints had refused him, *Lodovic* drove him out of Germany. Then lived *Etelwolph* King 20 of England, who made his Kingdome tributary to the Pope. *Kenneth* the great in Scotland was yet alive. He by a stratagem of fish skins, with which in the night he was clothed, and speaking through a bugles horn, encouraged his Nobles to give battell the next day to the Picts which they did accordingly, supposing they had been warned by an Angell, and obtained such a victory as quite extinguished the Picts Nation.

855. *Michael* having shut up his mother in a Monastery, undertakes the Easterne Empire. He was a drunken foole, a slave to his pleasures, his belly, and his flatterers, hee spent the whole treasure his mother *Theodora* left, upon his luxury and pleasures, and at last was faine to make money of his robes and household- 30 stuffe. He was twice defeated by the Saracens: but his Uncle *Petronas* gave them such an overthrow, that hee killed their King *Amirus*, and tooke his sonne prisoner: but after *Petronas* was dead, the Saracens tooke head again, and seized on the Cyclades Islands, and with their incursions infested the Greekes in Syria, *Michael* besiegeth the City Samosata in Syria, but was beat off with almost the losse of his life. Hee made *Bardas* his Uncle by the mother, Cæsar, and committed all to his managing. This *Bardas* advanced learning, by erecting Schooles, and professours of all Arts, to whom hee allowed good maintenance. Hee made great use of one *Leo* a learned man, who in the Isle Andros had been taught Rhetorick, Arithmetick and Philosophy by *Michael Psellus*. *Amirumnes* 40 the Saracen Prince offered to *Theophilus* this *Michael's* father, a great summe of money, if he would part with *Leo*, to teach the Sciences in his Dominions: but *Theophilus* considering the great happinesse and honour that learning brought to Greece, and unwilling the Agarens should out strip the Grecians in knowledge, would not part with *Leo* whom hee made Bishop of Thessalonica, which dignity hee lost under *Theodora*, for subscribing against Images. But *Bardas* for his Bishoprick, gave him the Mastership of all the Colleges which hee erected. This same *Bardas* was excommunicate by *Ignatius* the Patriarch for divorcing his wife. But hee thrust *Ignatius* out of his place, and set up *Photius* a learned man: whose Bbliothec and Nomocanon are yet extant, with *Balsomons* 50 Notes.

In this Emperours time the Rossi or Roxolani, whom at this day wee call Moscs and Moscovites, inhabiting the North side of Taurus, with a Fleet invade the Euxin Sea, and lay siege to Byzantium, but were forced to return by stormy weather, without effecting any thing. *Michael* grew every day worse and worse and still more sottish: one time being in his sports, news were brought him that the Beacons were on fire, which signified the Saracens had invaded the Empire

*An. Christi* He caused the watchmen and Beacons to be removed, that his sport might receive no interruption. He mocked all reverend ceremonies in the Church, causing them to be acted in an Apish way, by his trionick young fellows. He had raised one *Basilus* an Horse-courser, to be master of his horse; he was a poor exile; but said to be descended from the ancient family of the *Asfucide*. He was so 866 well beloved by *Michael*, that he heard his false accusations against *Bardas*, whom hee suffered to be murdered in his own sight, because he used to reprove him for his fooleries. Then he marries this *Basilus* to *Eudocia* his owne Concubine, and proclaims him Cæsar; in his mad humour he used to cut off the noses or hands 10 and heads too sometime of his most familiar friends, in sport. The new Cæsar fearing lest he might be thus used, endeavours to prevent it, by the death of the tyrant, which was hastned by this occasion. A certain waterman highly extolling and flattering the Emperour, was by him clothed with the purple robe, then turning to *Basilus* (who frowned to see this sight) Have not I power (saith he) to make this man an Emperour as well as thee? *Basilus* fearing that *Michael* might speake 867 in earnest, in the night when he was drunk and asleep, he brake into his chamber with his associates and murdered him, having reigned alone 11 yeares with his mother 14. *Basil* of a horse-courser becomes Emperour, and rules the East 17 yeares.

## CHAP. III.

The affaires of the Empire under Ludovic the second. Carolus Calvus. Ludovic the third, and Carolus Crausus in the West, and of Basilus in the East. 2. Of forraign affaires of these times.

*L*udovic the second *Lotharius* his eldest sonne was made Co-emperour with his Father, hee with the help of his brother *Lotharius* stoutly opposed the Saracens at Beneventum: but having lost a great part of the Army by sickness, he left the defence of the town to *Adalgisus* Prince of Salerno, who in the Emperours absence revolted to the Greeks, with all the towns of Samnium, Campania and Lucania. *Ludovic* to be revenged of this treachery, returns into Italy, and recovered the revolted townes, even Capua at last which had made long resistance, and drives the Saracens out of Campania. But hee shewed himselfe a weak Prince, in suffering himselfe to be deluded and perswaded by *Adalgisus*, to disband his Army; which when hee had done, *Adalgisus* with fire and sword set upon his Palace having no sufficient guard, and forced him to swear that hee would never come again within the confines of Beneventum, and that hee would 40 not revenge this wrong. But *Ludovic* was absolved shortly after by the Pope from this forced oath, and so coming upon *Adalgisus* with an Army, drove him out of Italy into Corsica, and punished his friends that remained. So having settled Italy, he dyed at Millan the 20 year of his reign, without issue male, which ministred 875 the occasion of quarrell for the Empire, betweene his Uncle *Charles* surnamed the *Balde* king of France, and *Ludovic* king of Germany. But this controversie was betimes composed in a Synod, called by the Pope, in which by generall consent *Charles* is named Emperor, and is crowned by Pope *John* the eight, at Rome whom some call *John* the ninth.

*Basilus* the Macedonian having by the murder of *Michael* obtained the Greek 876 Empire. He first of all redemands the money which *Michael* had profusely spent, causing every man to restore who had not right to it. Yet when it was restored, he was content with the halfe, returning the rest again: hee preserved none to places of judicature, but such as were uncorrupt, and free from covetousnesse. His ears were open to all complaints, and he was a carefull provider for the poore. *Photius* the Patriarch suspended him from the Communion for his murder, wherefore he deposeth him, and sends for *Ignatius* who had been banished: having discovered a plot of his Grandees against him. Hee invests his three sonnes *Constantine*, *Leo*, and

*An. Christi* and Alexander with the Imperiall Ensignes: Of his fourth son *Stephen* hee made a Clergy man. Against the Eastern Agarens hee fought with good successe, and over-run all Asia even to Euphrates, where hee tooke in many Castles, and so returned in triumph to new Rome. Hee restores *Photius* againe to his Patriarchat, *Ignatius* being dead; and yet *Photius* for opposing Images had beene condemned by a Synod at Constantinople. *Basilus* by *Nicephorus Phocas* drove out of Apulia (which with some other places adjacent belonged upon agreement to the Greek Empire) the Carthaginian Saracens which had invaded it, and took Ragusium (a city in Sclavonia, where Epidaurus of old stood) from them, by the help of *Ludovic* the second Emperour, and of the Venetians. Hee overthrew the Saracens power at Sea, and converted many Jewes to Christianity, to the profession of which he perswaded also the Rossians: so he did the Bulgarians, whose King having entered into a Monastery, delivered the government to his sonne; but shortly after perceiving that he was falling back to Gentilism, reassumes his own power, deposeth his sonne, and pulls out his eyes, and then makes his other sonne King. *Basilus* also overthrew the Mahumetans, and slew *Chrisochires* their Prince, who had invaded the Greek Territories. Hee tooke in Cæsarea of Cappadocia, and laid waste many of the countreys of the Agarens. The Saracens of Tarsis with their *Amiras* wrote defying letters to *Basilus* shewing that neither he, nor the sonne of *Mary* should be able to breake his power: against these Bragadoes *Andrew* a Scythian and Patrician is sent, who so quelled them, that few of all that bragging Army were left: but *Andrew* is deposed for not taking in of Tarsus, and *Styepjota*, whose tongue was nimbler than his hand, was sent. He carelessly sate down before the wals, and neglected to intrench himself, wherefore he was suddenly surpris'd by the Saracen horle.

*Ludovic* and *Basil* joining their Forces together suppressed the Western Agarens, and tooke the Sultan prisoner, who being brought in triumph to Capua, and suddenly laughing at the volubility of the chariot wheelles, was asked why he laughed, he answered, that he saw in the whirling about of the wheelles, the Symbol of humane inconstancy. For this saying *Ludovic* received him into favour, but hee was deluded by him, when he perswaded him to transplant to some other places the chiefe families of Beneventum and Capua, to prevent insurrections, then he informed those against whom hee gave this advice, that *Ludovic* meant to remove them, whereupon they fell off from him, and carry'd back the Sultan into Africa, yet at last they were forced to submit to *Ludovic*. *Basil* having reigned 20 years, one day in his hunting was wounded by a Stagge, of which wound he dyed: the Stagge got him by the girdle on his horns, a Courtier for drawing his sword to cut the girdle, was unjustly put to death, as if hee intended to kill the Emperour. Hee left behinde him three sonnes above named, the fourth *Constantine* was dead, his daughters hee shut up in Monasteries. About these times some write that Pope *Johan* the woman lived, whom some call *Johan* the seventh, some *Johan* the eight. *Nicolaus* the first sate 9 years, to him succeeded *Adrian* the second, who was Pope 5 years. *Photius* the Patriarch calls a Synod at Byzantium against Pope *Nicolaus*, upon this a schism is made between the Greeke and Latine Churches; and then openly the procession of the Holy Ghost is opposed by the Greekes. *Cyrellus* and *Methodius* preach to the Sclavonians, and Dalmatians. Pope *Adrian* the second was the first that crowned *Elfred* the sixt King of England. Then was the University of Oxford erected, where 3 Colleges were built by the King. Some think the foundation of this Academy was laid in the Britains time in Wiltshire, and from thence translated by *Elfred* to Oxford. In Scotland reigned *Donadus* the fifth, who overthrew the remainders of the fugitive Picts assisted by the English, and not long after was overthrown himselfe, in another battell by the English. His successor *Constantine* the second defeated the Danes in Fife, and in a second battell was defeated by them.

*Charles* the Bald Grandchilde to *Charles* the Great, succeeded in the Empire, to *Ludovic*. He by bribes got the Popes good will, and therefore was preferred to his elder brother *Ludovic*, who entered upon France in his brothers absence, but

but shortly after dyed abroad. About 37 years after the decease of his father *Ludovicus Pius*, his sonne *Carolomannus* held Bavaria, Bohemia, Moravia, Carinthia, Pannonia three yeares. His other sonne *Ludovic* held Belgium, France, Saxony, and Thuringia, with the Earoli. *Charles* the grosse obtained Suevia, Alsatia and Lorrain, till he got the Empire. *Carolus Calvus* his second wife was *Rothildis* the widow of *Lotharius*, the deceased Emperour, by whom hee had children, but they all dyed. Hee was a proud, but a cowardly prince, having made *Boson* his wives brother Duke of Italy, prepares an Army against his brother who had invaded France, but understanding hee was dead, resolves to imploy his Army of 50000 men against his brothers sonnes, therefore hasteth towards Germany. *Ludovic* the younger laboured what he could to make peace, but not prevailing, he with his people betake themselves to fasting and praying, after which hee marcheth with his small Army against his Uncle, whose great Army he so defeated, that he was faine to flye for his life. *Carolus Calvus* falls desperately sick upon this overthrow, but being recovered, hee is sent for to Italy against the Saracens, who were fallen upon the Popes territories, as soone as hee arrived thither, hee makes *Boson* King, and sends his Army against *Caroloman* his cousin German; and then out of feare flies to Rome, *Caroloman* forsakes Italy. *Calvus* about to return to France falls sick at Mantua. It's thought he was poysoned by *Zedechias* a Jew his Physitian. His brother *Ludovic* King of Germany dyed the year of Christ 882. *Caroloman* of Bavaria deceased two yeares before A. C. 880. *Charles* the Grosse succeeded in the Empire.

About that time *Pasquintan* and *Varfrand* Dukes of Britanny, having killed *Salomon* their King, fell at oddes between themselves; a cruell battell is fought, in which *Pasquintan* though backt by the Normans, is defeated by *Varfrands* small Army, and when *Pasquintan* renewed his Forces, hee was put to flight by *Varfrand* though sick in bed. Pope *Johan*, the eight who sate ten yeares, crowned 3 Emperours in 4 yeares space, to wit, *Charles* the Balde, *Ludovic* the Stammerer, and *Charles* the Grosse. Swarmes of Locusts in France for one dayes space darkened the air, till flying to the British Sea, with a sudden blast of wind are all drowned; upon this followes the plague and famine, which consumed the third part of the people.

*Ludovic* the third surnamed *Babus* or the the Stammerer, the son of *Calvus*, having with much pompe and magnificence intertained Pope *Johan* the eight at Lyons is by him invested Emperour, and crowned by *Hincmar* Archbishop of Rheims. He did not live long after, nor did he any memorable act: for he dyed the second year of his reign, not without suspicion of poyson. He sent his crown as he was dying with his regall robes to his son *Ludovic* as yet but young. To whose share France fell, to his other son *Caroloman*, Burgundy. *Ludovic* in the year 882 dyed, *Caroloman* in 884. The Normans under *Rollo* their Captain seat themselves in that part, which is from them called Normandy, it was called Neustria before. *Theodoricus* was created the first Earl in Holland.

*Carolus* the third surnamed *Crasso* or *Grosse*, the youngest sonne of *Ludovic* the second King of Germany, obtained the Empire from the posterity of *Ludovic* the third, he was brother to *Ludovic* the French King (who dyed a year after his eldest brother *Caroloman*) and great grand childe to *Charles* the Great. His two brothers being dead, all Germany, Italy, and France did now belong to him: He was forced to let the Normans quietly enjoy that part of France called Normandy from them: and upon *Godefrid* the Norman he bestowes Frisia with the daughter of *Lotharius*. His brother *Ludovic* tooke a part of Lorrain from the French. He defeated 5000 Normans neer Scaldis, and was defeated by them in Saxony having lost 12 Earles, and 2 Bishops, among which was Duke *Brunno* the builder of Brunfwick. His brother *Caroloman* dyed of the Palsie. This *Charles* the Grosse overthrew *Hugo* and *Boson*, who laid claim to the Kingdome of France. He thrust out *Hugo's* eyes, and clapt him up in a Monastery. He drove *Boson* out of Vienna, then posted to Rome where hee was crowned by *Johan* the eight. *Ludovic* being dead, the Normans rage with fire and sword in Germany, they plunder

*An. Christi* Utrecht, Collen, Trevers (whose Bishops they slew) with many other townes. *Ludovic* the only sonne at Ratisbone falling from a window broke his neck. *Charles* having made peace with *Godefrid* King of the Danes or the Normans, he caused him to be baptized. Pope *John* the eight having saie 10 yeares was poisoned, and then knockt in the head, his successor *Martin* the second sat not much above one yeare. *Vido* Earle of Tuscia, and Duke of Spoleto being guilty of treason, to avoid punishment, calls into Italy the Mauritanian Saracens against him. *Charles* sends his Kinsman *Berengarius*, who overthrowes *Vido*. Hee at last cleered himself by oath of the treason objected against him, and so is received again into *Charles* his favour. *Caroloman* the sonne of *Balbus* is wounded by a Boare as he was hunting, which cost him his life. *Charles* after much happinesse, and many victories, was faine to come under the tuition of his brothers sonne *Arnulphus*, whom the Franes, Saxons, Bavarians, and other Germans made their King at Francfurt. Because *Charles* had cast off his chaste and lawfull wife, and had given too much advantages to the Normans enemies of his Kingdome: therefore finding all his friends to forsake him, he sent presents to *Arnulphus* desiring some maintenance for his life, which he obtained, and the next year dyed, having reigned almost 9 yeares.

888.

In his time *Rollon* being settled in Neustria or Normandy bordering on the Britains, and Gallicocœan, the capitall City whereof is Rothomagum or Roan, received the Christian Faith, and with it *Charles* the Simple (or as others say) *Charles* the Groesse daughter in marriage, and a new name also, for he was named *Rupert*, from whom descended the Norman Dukes, among whom was *Richard* the second, who by his sword conquered Apulia, Calabria and Sicilia, having driven out thence the Greeks and Saracens. This *Carolus Crassus* had for wife *Richard* his daughter to the King of Scotland. About these times the African Agarens, overthrow *Syracufis*, *Abdalla* a new Caliph of Africa, abjured *Mahomet*, and followed *Haly*, and withall changed the Saracen rites and Prayers; his nephew *Elmedinalas* having obtained Egypt set up his regall seat at Cair, equall to that of Babylon. The Rossi or Russi were miraculously converted to Christianity, for the Bishop whom *Basil* sent for that end, cast his Bible in a flaming fire, which was found among the ashes untouched by the fire. It is reported of the Emperor *Basil*, that desiring to see his sonne *Constantine* who was dead, one *Theodorus* a Monk, represented him, as if he had been alive, for this *Basil*'s other sonne *Leo*, accuseth him for a witch, but *Basil* favoured and admired him. *Theodorus* to be revenged of *Leo*, counsels him to weare a dagger in his bootes privately, as a spell against all danger, and then informes his Father, that *Leo* meant to kill him, for he carried a dagger in his bootes for that end: the dagger being found, *Leo* is laid in Irons, at which the people were much afflicted, crying out, *Alasse Lord Leo*: these words a Parrat learned, and one day as *Basil* was at dinner speaks them; at which he being moved, and earnestly intreated by the people, *Leo* is set free. About that time also the Danes invade England again, and are expelled, except such as became Christians. *Theophylact* is sent by *Photius* the Patriarch to be Bishop of Bulgaria. *Charles* the Groesse was the first that dated his Letters and Patents with the year of Christ: whereas the Eastern Princes, even untill the Councell of *Basil* used no other computation in their subscriptions, but that of the World, according to *Eusebins* his account, which is erroneous. To *Martin* succeeded in the Popedom *Adrian* the third, who fate one year. He renews the Decree of Pope *Nicolas* the first, to wit, that the Pope should be chosen by the Clergy and people of Rome without the Emperour. To him succeeded *Stephen* the sixt, or as some say the fifth, he fate 6 yeares.

50

CHAP.

*An. Christi*

CHAP. IV.

of *Carolus Crassus* and *Ludovic* the fourth in the West. 1. Of *Leo* and his son *Constantine* in the East. 3. Of the affaires of Italy, Germany, Spain, Scotland, and other passages of those times.

THE posterity of *Charles* the Great, lawfully begotten failed in *Carolus Crassus*, for *Arnulphus* was of the fourth degree from him, or his Nephews Nephew, that is, the sonne of *Carolomannus Germanicus* by a Concubine. He succeeded his Uncle *Crassus*, who had a sonne called *Bernhard*, by a concubine: and *Ludovic Balbus* had a posthumè sonne named *Charles*, but these were passed by, and the French choose for their King *Odo* or *Otho* the Earl of Paris, who had stoutly defended the City against the Normans. Him *Arnulphus* permitted to be King, conditionally that hee did homage and fealty to him: the Italians chose for their King *Berengarius* the sonne of *Eberhard*, Duke of Friuli: others chose *Vido* Duke of Spoletum, who defeated *Berengarius* in a battell, and forced him to flye to *Arnulphus*. *Vido* having got the Empire of Italy, enjoyed it but 3 yeares. For *Berengarius* by the help of *Arnulphus* obtained it, who stript him of his Empire, and drove him to Spoletum. Hee dyed the 3 yeares of his Empire, vomiting blood. His sonne *Lamperius* Emperour in name dyed in hunting. *Rodulphus* the sonne of *Conradus* and Grandchilde of *Hugo Abbas* makes himselfe King of Burgundy, the Normans breake in upon France and Germany: the Hungarians upon Italy, Pannonia, Carinthia, and Moravia: the Christian Britains in a battell killed 15000 of the Inhabitants that were Gentiles. *Arnulphus* brought the Hungarians first into Germany, by whose help hee overthrew the rebelling Bohemians. The Normans at first defeat *Arnulphus* his Army, but in a second battell are so defeated by him that scarce were any left to carry home tidings. The Danes who were then the chief of the Normans lost two Kings *Godefrid* and *Sigfrid* with 16 Ensignes. *Berengarius* being assaulted by an Army under *Lambert Vido*'s sonne was forsaken for his tyranny by his own souldiers, and so lost his Kingdome. *Otho* King of France is driven out by *Charles* the simple sonne to *Balbus*.

*Arnulphus* is forced to make another journey into Italy against *Lambert*, who was crowned by Pope *Formosus*. He layeth siege before Rome, and enters it by the guide of a Hare: which the souldiers pursuing with hooting towards the walls, and the Watch thinking that they were coming to assault runne away: and so the imperiall City, which from Pope *Leo* was called Leonina is surprised by a Hare. *Arnulphus* is crowned there by *Formosus*, and his enemies are put to death, the Romans take the oath of allegiance to him: the government of the City is committed to one *Foroldus*. *Lambert* in hunting was killed by *Hugo* Earl of Millan, whose Father for rebellion hee had put to death, when he was King. From this time that *Arnulphus* is crowned, the Germans claim title to the Empire. The wife of *Vido* and mother of *Lambert* was then at Birmum, which shee held out against *Arnulphus*. Shee cunningly sends to him by his servant a poysonable drink, which put him in a Lethargy, and so the siege broke up. *Arnulphus* the third yeare after his imperiall inauguration dyed of the lousie disease. This Kingdome of Italy begun by *Berengarius*, continued 80 yeares, till the 32 yeare of *Otho* the great, who thrust out *Adelbertus*. The Italian Kings were these, 1. *Berengarius*. 2. *Vigo*. 3. *Lambertus*. 4. *Ludovic* the sonne of *Boson*. 5. *Hugo*. 6. *Lotharius* with his father. 7. *Berengarius* the second. 8. *Adelbertus*. To *Adrian* succeeded Pope *Formosus* who fate 5 yeares: some thinke that *Charles* the simple, the French King after the death of *Otho*, was the first that wore in his coat the three lillies. *Rodulphus* about this time erected the kingdom of Burgundy. To *Formosus* succeeded *Boniface* the sixt, or as some say *Romannus*, who was Pope 26 dayes. His successour *Stephen* the seventh fate one yeare. Hee hated *Formosus* so much, that hee condemned and abrogated all his Decrees: drew his body out

An. Christi

899.

out of his tomb, robbed it of all its pontificall ornaments, and having cut off three of its fingers, commanded it to be flung into Tiberis. *Romanus* succeeded who sat 3 months, and to him *John* the ninth, who was Pope 2 years. It was agreed that the Bishop of Rome should be called Pope, and the Bishop of Constantinople Patriarch, and both Oecumenicall or Univerfall.

To *Basil* in Constantinople succeeded *Leo* his sonne, called the Philosopher for the love he had to learning. Hee remembering the wrong done him by *Theodoros Santabarennus* the Monk in belying him to his Father, first degraded him (for now he was a Bishop) then caused him to be whipt, and then banished to Athens, where his eyes were thrust out by his command: and because *Photius* favoured him, hee is deposed from his Patriarchall chaire, sent into a Monastery, and his brother *Stephen* placed in his room. Hee was disliked by his people, for doing upon his Concubine *Zoe*, whom after his wives death hee married. He made warres upon *Angus* or *Berengarius* Duke of Lombardy. Hee raised such civill warres upon the Bulgarian goods, that they tooke up armes against him. *Leo* stomes upon the Bulgarian goods, that they tooke up armes against him. *Leo* not being strong enough to master *Simeon* the Bulgarian King, calls in the Turkes bordering upon Ither, these were called then Hungarians, they at first defeated the Bulgarians, but at last were defeated by them: the battell was so great, that of the Bulgarians were slaine 20000. and most of the Imperialists were killed.

One *Basilus* cousin german to *Zoe*, conspired with some others against *Leo*, but the plot was discovered by *Samonas* an Agaren, and *Basil* is banished. *Leo's* third wife was *Eudocia* who dyed in childebed. On the day of Pentecost as *Leo* was going into the Church, hee was knockt down with a cudgell, and narrowly escaped death. One *Alexander* was suspected to be the Authour of this plot: but nothing could be proved against him, yet hee was quartered and burned. *Leo* entertained friendship with *Arnulphus*, and sent him divers presents. He would one night try how vigilant his guard was, by disguising himselfe, and bribing them with money, the first and second guard tooke money and let him passe, but the third would upon no tearmes, but beat him and imprisoned him. So knowing who were false, who true, hee expels the one from his Court, and advanced the other: hee reigned 25 years, then dyed, having left the Empire to his son *Constantine* which he had by his last wife and to his brother *Alexander*.

911.  
900.

*Ludovic* the fourth son of *Arnulphus* succeeded his father in the West-Empire. His tutors were *Otho* Duke of Saxony, and *Hatto* Archbishop of Mints. In his minority there were many civill broiles. *Zuendebold* *Arnulphus* his bastard was killed by his own subjects whilest hee was striving to reduce them to his obedience. *Ludovic* the Emperour for a great summe of money made France tributary to the Hungarians, who upon this becoming insolent fall with fire and sword upon the Italian cities beyond Padua. *Ludovic* the sonne of *Boson* drove *Berengarius* out of Italy into Bavaria, and upon this disbands his army thinking all was safe, but *Verona* which favoured *Berengarius* calls him again into Italy, who coming suddenly with his Army in the night seifeth upon *Ludovic*, and deprives him both of his eyes and kingdom: so *Berengarius* is saluted Emperour. About this time *Nicolaus* the Patriarch excommunicates *Leo* the Greek Emperour for his fourth marriage; *Nicolaus* was entreated to absolve him, but would not, wherefore *Leo* deposeth him, and sends him into a Monastery, and then sets up *Enthymius Sincellus* in his room. After *Leo's* death, his brother *Alexander* governed the Empire, or rather neglected it, giving himself to voluptuousnesse & gormandising. He thought to have emasculated his pupil, but he was hindered by death, for having overcharged himself with too much meat and drink, as he was taking horse hee broke a vein, so that he dyed bleeding.

In Germany there were civill wars also in *Ludovic's* time; for *Adelbert* Earl of Bamberg, for 7 years stood out in rebellion against the Emperour, the Bishop of Mitzburg, and *Conradus* Earl of East Franconie, opposed *Adelbert* or *Albert*, who in this expedition lost his two brothers, wherefore to be revenged he treacherously

mur-

An. Christi

murdered *Conradus*. *Ludovic* summons him to appeare and to give account of this murder; but refused, whereupon an Army is levied against him. *Hatto* Bishop of Mintz perswades *Albert* to submit himselfe to the Emperour, which he did, and then immediately being condemned of high treason, he lost his head: his posterity afterward became Marquesses of Austria. There brake out also civill wars in Lorrain, and other places of the Empire, which brought the Hungarians out of Thrace into Bavaria, wasting Pannonia by the way. *Ludovic* with all the strength he could make fights them for three dayes together; in this battell hee lost the flower of all the German Nobility, and himselfe was forced to ffly: the Hungarians pursue their victory with fire and sword, so that *Ludovicus* was faine to buy peace of them for a great sum of money, which cost him his life; for upon this he grew sickly and melancholy, and in the 24 year of his age dyed, having reigned 12 years: in him ended the issue male of *Charles* the Great, from the beginning of whose Empire, to the death of this *Ludovic* were 111 years. He dying childlesse ministred occasion of much trouble in the Empire, till by consent *Henricus Aceps* was elected.

*Alexander* *Leo's* brother on his death bed recommended the care of his brothers sonne *Constantine* being yet but 7 yeares old, to his mother, and to some of the Nobility: having made *Phocas* Generall of all the Land Forces, and *Romanus* an Armenian Admirall of the Seas: but *Constantinus* *Ducas* the son of *Andronicus* aiming at the Empire, raised a faction against the young Emperour, which was quickly appeased by the Tutors and Prætorian Guard, who seised upon *Ducas*, and cut off his head. Then these Tutors began to tyrannise, which caused commotions in the City; and drew the Bulgarians against them, who sat down twice before the city, the siege could not be raised without much intreaty, and great sums of money: they pillaged Hadrianople twice, and in their last expedition they wasted Thracia, and made incursions upon Macedonia. *Constantine* longing to see his mother *Zoe*, who was banished from the Court by *Alexander*, she is sent for, who shortly after takes upon her the government, and removes most of *Constantines* Tutors.

*Romanus* the Admirall having removed *Constantines* mother from the government and mued her up in a Monastery, he marryeth his daughter to him, and then setting him aside, makes himselfe and his own sonnes Emperours, and so ruled the Empire 26 yeares, but at last hee was taken by his sons and banished. These sons *Constantine* seifeth upon whom he shaveth and makes Priests of them: and then ruled all alone. He recovered in Italy from the Lombards Beneventum. Hee had no luck against the Saracens. He quieted the Turkes with money which he could not doe with armes, and converted many of them to Christ, at last he was poysoned by his owne sonne *Romanus*, after he had reigned 54. years, 13 with his father, Uncle and Mother, 26 with *Romanus* his father in Law, and 15 years alone: but the poyson being not strong enough to kill him, he recovered and betook himselfe ever after to a private life; sequestering himselfe from the world, in hill *Olympus* with one *Theodoros Sylicus* a devout man: his life was equall to his reign, for he lived 54 yeares. *Phocas* Generall of the Land Forces was oppressed by the greatnesse of *Romanus*, and his eys put out. *Romanus* slighting his son in law *Constantine* so much, that he was faine to get his living by painting; Had made his owne sonne *Christopher* Emperour, but he dyed shortly after. At last *Constantine* being deluded and abused 26 yeares together by *Romanus*, and his two other sonnes, by the help of *Stephen* his kinsman he layes hold upon *Romanus* whom he shaved, and banished to Protia a small Isle in Bosphorus Thracius. His 2 sons as they were with him at dinner, were suddenly by his command layd hold on, put in Irons, and sent to keep their Father *Romanus* company in his exile, in which one of them *Constantine* by name, as he was striving to escape lost his life.

To Pope *John* the ninth, who called a Synod at Ravenna in which he rescindeth all the decrees of Pope *Stephen*, succeeded *Benedict* the fourth, who sat 3 yeares: after him came *Leo* the fifth or sixth, who after 40 dayes was cast into prison by *Christopher* the Priest, who invaded the Popedome; this having sat 7 moneths, was by Pope *Sergius* the third assisted by the French King imprisoned and



*An. Christi* and afterward made a Monk: so was also *Christopher* after he had sate 7 months. *Sergius* the third succeeded, who was Pope 7 years. He rebuilt the Lateran church from the ground which fell down in his time. About these times *Gregory* called the Great, King of Scotland, subdued the Danes & Northern Brittaines, went over to Ireland, besieged Dublin, and took it, where he was made Protector of Ireland, during the minority of young *Duncan* the Prince. After his returne into Scotland, he began to build the City of Aberdeen in a pleasant place betweene the two rivers of Dee and Done famous for Salmones, which beyond Seas are of more account, and dearer then any other Salmones. In King *Mitcolumbus* his time, about the year of Christ 943. Cumberland with Westmerland are annexed to the Crown of Scotland conditionally, that the Scots King should swear fealty to the King of England for those lands.

912.

The race of *Charles* the Great having now failed; *Conradus* Duke of East Franconi (his sonne that was killed by *Adelbertus*) is by the Peeres of the Empire made Emperour. Against him conspire *Arnulphus* Duke of Bavaria, *Giselbert* Duke of Lorrain, and *Burghard* Duke of Suevia, who send for *Carolus Posthumus* out of France, with whom *Henry* the son of *Otho* joyns his Forces. This dissension had broke out into a civill war, but that the eruption of the Hungarians into Germany hindred it; these came with their whole strength upon Bavaria, but were defeated by Duke *Arnulphus*, with whom having made their peace, they fell upon Italy: where they were overcome by money, not by armes, and so they return to Germany, making havock of all before them, so that *Conradus* was faine to buy his peace, by payment of an annuall pension. After this he proscribes his enemies, and drives *Arnulphus* out of Bavaria, who returns thither again, after the Emperours death. He beheaded the two brothers of the Duke of Lorrain: hee suspected the greatnesse of *Henry* the son of *Otho* Duke of Saxony, and the rather because he was one of those who had formerly conspired against him; therefore he employed *Hatto* the Bishop of Mintz to catch him; *Hatto* by a golden chain thought to have intrapped him, or else by *Conradus* his army to force him; but *Henry* very wisely avoided the treachery, and fortunately defeated the Army. *Hatto* being troubled in conscience for causing so much blood to be spilt, removed himself from the Court, and was eat up by rats. After this *Conradus* fals sick, who notwithstanding that *Henry* was his enemy, yet knowing his power and worth, names him Emperor, & so dyed: he reigned 7 years, & was the first of the German Emperours.

918.

To Pope *Sergius* the third, succeeded *Anastasiu* the third, who sate 2 yeares. About this time a new order of Benedictin Fryers, was instituted in Burgundy by one *Otho* or *Oddo*. *Ennius* the Goth King of Arragon drove out the Moores that were returned to Arragon and Celtiberia: there were at this time three eminent men in Spain, namely *Ferdinand*, who obtained the Kingdome of Castile and Legio. 2. *Garcias* King of Navar, and 3. *Sanctius* King of Arragon. *Garcias* his posterity lasted not long, therefore Navar hath been subject sometimes to the French, sometimes to the Spaniard.

## CHAP. V.

The affaires of Italy, Germany, France, and other neighbouring countreys under *Henricus* Auceps, and *Otho* the Great. 2. The Easterne affaires under *Constantine* and his son *Romanus*. 3. The affaires of the Church.

919.

**H**enricus Auceps or Henry the Fowler (so called because he loved fowling) the Nephew of *Arnulphus* the Emperour by his daughter *Ludgarda* was the first Saxon Emperour, *Arnoldus* Duke of Bavaria, thought by force of armes to obtain the Empire: but when both his Army and *Henry* were ready to fight, he so mitigated *Arnold* with his wisdom and eloquence, that he submitted to the Emperour, and from him received power to establish the bishops of his own jurisdiction. The Hungarians for non-payment of the tribute promised by

Ludovic

An. Christi

*Ludovic* the Emperour, over-run *Henry*'s countreys of Saxony, killing all the men that were above 14 years of age. *Henry* though sickly at that time, yet raised an Army, and fought the Hungarians neer Meiburg in the confines of Saxony: hee charged his souldiers to keep off with the Targets the first flight of arrows shot at them, and then suddenly to rush in upon them as they were making ready to shoot again, which they did accordingly, and by which meanes they got the victory, driving these Turkish Farmers-like sheep before them: few of them escaped, but either then were killed, or shortly after by the imprisoned malefactors who were set at liberty to pursue and destroy the rest of those Hungarians. 10 So having quieted Germany, hee erects divers Offices called Marquissats: for guarding and securing the Marches and borders of the Empire from forraigne force. Against the Danes he set up the Marquissat of *Schleswig*, whence came the word *Danimarchia* or *Denmarck*: against the Henets he erected the Marquissat of *Brandeburg*: against the Polonians and Bohemians the Marquissats of *Lansberg* and *Misne*: and against the Sorabi or Suevi, the Marquissat of *Lusatia*. He began also to build the Churches of *Misne* or *Meyssen* in the upper Saxony, of *Brandeburg*, and of *Havelburg*. He caused *Charles* the simple (so called for his stupidity) to submit the kingdome of France to the Empire, and to restore the kingdome of Lorrain, which he took from *Rudbert* the sonne of King *Odo*, which *Rudbert* he killed in a battell, when he claimed from *Charles* the kingdome of France. 20 This *Charles* was shortly after apprehended in Gascony, and there committed to prison where he dyed the year following: his son flew into England. *Rodulphus* King of Burgundy takes possession of France, his kinsman *Ludovic* having extorted from *Berengarius* the kingdome of Italy, which he shortly after lost, and his eyes to boot. But *Berengarius* recovered Lombardy, who would have forced *Lambert* to buy the Bishoprick of Millan, and put divers of his Princes in prison, wherefore the Italians call in *Rodulphus* of Burgundy. *Berengarius* to resist him, hires the Hungarians, and by their help takes or kills his factious subjects, except Earl *Giliberd* whom he dismisses, but within 30 dayes *Giliberd* forgetfull of this courtescie, brings *Rodulphus* back into Italy, who being received by all, *Berengarius* hath nothing left him but Verona. Three yeares after *Berengarius* got an Army together of persons disaffected to *Rodulphus*, a bloody battell is fought, in which *Berengarius* is defeated, and shortly after murdered by one *Flanbert* whom he had advanced, who for this murther was hanged by Melo *Berengarius* his friend.

The Hungarians after the death of *Berengarius* rage through Italy, take and burn *Ticinum*. *Rodulphus* doats upon *Ermengardis* the strumper, and neglects the publick affaires; wherefore he is forsaken by his friends, is forced to flye back into Burgundy and to leave the kingdome of Italy to *Hugo* Earle of Arles, who kept good correspondency with both the Emperours. In this meane time great commotions are at Rome. *Guido* Marqueffe of Tuscia husband to *Marozia*, who was thought to be *Sergius* the third's Concubine, enters the City with an Army, kills *Peter* Pope *Fohn*'s brother, in his presence stifles the Pope himselfe in prison with a pillow held to his mouth, sets up *Fohn* the eleventh, who was thought to be the bastard of Pope *Sergius* by this *Marozia*. After the death of *Guido* this King *Hugo* marries her; by whose meanes he got Rome, but was expelled again by *Albericus* the sonne of *Guido* the Marqueffe by this *Marozia*. The King raging at this affront, revengeth himselfe upon *Lambert* *Guido*'s brother, and puts out his eyes, then creates *Boson* Duke of Thuscia, and bestowes Provence upon *Rodulphus*, that he might not lay claim to Italy: after this *Hugo* overthrowes *Arnoldus* Duke of Bavaria at Verona, and drives him back into Germany. But he could not recover Rome from *Albericus*, though he had bestowed his daughter upon him, nor could he hinder the Saracens from wasting *Fraxientum*, or keepe off the Africans from plundering *Genua*. God blasting all his enterprises, for his sacriledge and whoredomes with his Concubines, among which was *Bertha* the widow of *Rodulphus* King of France.

*Henry* the Emperour overcame the Sclavi, besieged Prague, and made a league with

*An. Christi* 925. 936. *Wenceslaus* Duke of Bohemia, who the year after was treacherously murdered by his brother *Boleslaus* in the Church. He killed also 120000 Vandals in a great battell neer the Baltic sea, for wasting Saxony. He made *Vornius* King of Denmark pay him tribute, he suppressed also the *Rhedarii* a people of Sclavonia, and caused many of the Northern people to receive Christianity. Among the rest he made *Chiupa* King of the Danes to be baptized. At last having againe defeated the Hungarians, and distributed among the poore, that tribute for which they had raised this war, he dyed of a palse the 18 yeare of his 10 reign.

At Constantinople *Stephen* the Patriarch was now dead, *Tryphon* a Monk is named his successour, but conditionally, that after a certain time he should resign his Bishoprick to *Theophylact*, sonne to *Romanus* the Emperour, being yet very young, this *Tryphon* was unwilling to doe, till he was perswaded to write down his name on a blank, and then *Cæsars* friends filled it up with a resignation of the Patriarchat, to which *Tryphon* was forced to stand, being (though ignorant-ly) subscribed by him: and so a boy of 16 yeares old was made Patriarch.

939. *Inger* King of Russia with 15000 saile besieged Byzantium, but they were so defeated and dispersed that few of them returned home. *Ludovic* son to *Charles* the Simple, after his Fathers death is called home by *Hugo*. This *Ludovic* was called *transmarin* from his travelling beyond the Sea. Hee found France 20 full of troubles, therefore marcheth with his Army to Lorrain, hoping to recover that which his Father resigned to *Henry*: but hee was thrust out thence againe by *Otho* the sonne of *Henry*, and *Giselbert* *Henry's* sonne in law, and Governour of Lorrain, with the rest of those that rebelled are killed by *Otho*.

*Otho* the first surnamed the Great, for his happy government of the Empire 36 yeares, the sonne of *Henry* by *Mathilda* the Saxon was anointed at Aix by the Bishop of Mintz. Hee first suppressed the Bohemians, and then put an end to a long and seditious war raised against him by disaffected persons, to their own ruine. *Tancmarus* *Otho's* brother because he had not the Marquisat of Brande-30 berg conferred on him, joines himselfe to *Eberhard*, Count *Palatin*, and *Giselbert* Duke of Lorrain, and so fell upon the town *Barduc*, and sackt it, but shortly after hee was taken and slaine. *Eberhard* armes *Henry* *Otho's* other brother against him, who is assisted by *Frederic* of Mintz, the Emperour having subdued the sons of *Arnold* Duke of Bavaria, who were in armes one against the other about their Fathers inheritance, and having repaired *Magdeburg* or the confines of Saxony, which he bestowed on his wife for her dowry, marcheth over the Rhene against his enemies, whom he subdued by good counsell more then by force. Many of them being struck with Divine terrour slung down their armes, and the rather when they perceived how resolute he was in defending the Churches rights, and 40 that hee would not consent to part with that upon any tearmes, which was dedicate to God. As he was at prayer in a Church of *Alsaia*, newes came to him that his chief enemies were overthrown by *Conradus* Duke of *Suevia*, that *Eberhart* was slaine, and *Giselbert* drowned in the Rhene, that the Bishop of Mintz was forsaken by his people and gone they knew not whither. *Henry* *Otho's* brother finding all had failed him, comes in black apparell to the Emperour at *Frankckfurt*, falls down at his feet, calls for mercy, promising ever after to be faithfull and obedient, and so he was pardoned.

*Ludovic* the French King, let fall the war hee undertook for recovering of Lorrain, and married with *Otho's* sister the widow of *Gillebert*. *Bertholdus* Duke 50 of *Bajoaria* married her daughter. *Conradus* took to wife *Luidgard* *Otho's* daughter, with whom he had Lorrain. *Hermannus* Duke of *Suevia* married his only daughter to *Liuthulfus* *Otho's* sonne. In Italy *Berengarius* the younger put himself under *Otho's* protection, which occasioned King *Hugo* to enter into a league with the Saracens whom he might have destroyed, after hee tooke *Fraxinetum* their strong garrison, but *Berengarius* by *Otho's* help got in a short time the *Italians* love, who disliked *Hugo's* government, whereupon *Hugo* retires to Provence

Provence, where he dyed, and left his sonne *Lotharius* to the courtesie of *Berengarius*: who being settled in Italy, received in a tax 10 bushels of money towards the removing of the Hungarians thence: so much *Hugo* had payed heretofore. After this *Otho* with 32 Legions enters France, and sets *Ludovic* their King at liberty, who was confined for hanging up *Herebert* his fathers enemy, and for killing *William* of Normandy. Shortly after this *Otho* made wars with the Danes, whom he caused with their King *Harald* to embrace Christianity, which *Harald* afterward was deposed for his ill government by his own son *Sueno*: who destroyed Religion againe, for which he was highly beloved of his people, and 3 times by 10 them redeemed from the pyrats, who had taken him.

Shortly after this *Lotharius* *Hugo's* sonne dyed of a Phrensie in Italy. *Berengarius* his Governour besieged his widow *Adelheide* daughter to King *Rodolphus* and heir of Italy: the Queen with Pope *Agapetus* the second, implore *Otho's* help, who sends his son *Liuthulphus*, and comes after himselfe with a greater Army. *Berengarius* and *Albert* or *Albericus*, are thrust out of their kingdom. *Adelheide* is set at liberty, and married to the Emperour. The daughters of *Berengarius* are sent into Germany: then *Conradus* *Otho's* son in law is made Governour of Italy, who having taken *Berengarius* with his son conveys them into Germany: but *Liuthulphus* or *Ludolphus* *Otho's* son disliked his fathers marriage: and *Conradus* found the Emperour not well pleased with his service in bringing *Berengarius* into Germany, wherefore they two conspire against *Otho*; and *Berengarius* having sworn fealty to the Emperour is sent back to Italy. But *Aquileia* and *Verona* are assigned for *Henry* *Otho's* brother: this dissension cost much blood; but *Conradus* by surrendering Mintz to *Otho*, was made friends with his father in law: *Ludolphus* having seized upon *Bavaria*, seated himselfe in *Ratisbone*, where he was so strictly besieged, that being pinched with famine, was forced in a poore habit to submit himself and to beg for pardon, which was granted him by his father, but he was sharply reproved by *Henry* his Uncle.

After this the Hungarians who were brought into Germany by the rebels, com- 95 52 mitted many outrages, but neer *Augusta* 100000 of them were overthrown by eight Legions of *Othos*; *Conradus* who had heretofore called them in was slaine in this conflict. The *Sclavi* also at this time were destroyed in Germany. *Hermannus* *Bilingus* received from *Otho* the Dukedome of *Luneburg*. So after that *Otho* had overcome his brother *Tanguardus*, and subdued the Bohemians, Hungarians, and defeated the conspiracy of his brother *Henry* with his complices; and had forced *Hugo* Capetus Earle of Paris to restore France to *Ludovic*, in which expedition he lost his English Lady *Edithe*: and after hee had broken the strength of *Berengarius* in Italy, and delivered the captive Queene *Adelheide* whom he married: after he had broken the plot of his sonne *Ludolphus*, and his 40 sonne in law *Conradus*. After he had vanquished the Danes, and by the help of *Adaldagus* Bishop of *Hamberg*, had converted them to Christianity, and settled 3 Bishopricks amongst them: after he had overcome the *Heneti*, and brought them also to Christianity: after all these noble exploits and good successe, hee is visited with an affliction, as it were with some water to temper his wine, in the death of his sonne *Rudolphus*, who had done him good service in Italy against *Berengarius*, his body was honourably buried by *William* his brother Bishop of Mintz in the Church of *St. Alban*. *Ludolphus* and *William* were *Otho's* sons by *Edithe*.

The death of *Ludolphus* occasioned *Berengarius* to flee out againe, being urged 50 thereto by Pope *John* the twelfth: so that *Otho* is called again into Italy; but before he went, he called a Diet or Parliament at *Ratisbone*, where he declared his son *Otho* being 7 yeares old Emperour, and committed his education to *William* his brother; upon this he enters Italy, takes in *Ticinum* and the other Townes; pursued *Berengarius*, and in the way enters *Rome*, where he is by Pope *John* sa- 96 22 luted Emperour, and all both Senat and people take the oath of allegiance: after this hee pursueth *Berengarius*, whom he tooke prisoner, and brought him to Germany, where hee was condemned to perpetuall imprisonment in *Bamberg*, where hee dyed

*An. Christi* dyed, with his wife. In the mean while the Pope repenting of what he had done, calls *Albertus* the son of *Berengarius* into the City; whereupon *Otho* makes another journey to Rome; the report of whose march made the Pope and *Albertus* to flye: the Citizens take the Oath of allegiance the second time to *Otho*, and swear never to create any Pope without the Emperours consent. Withall he calls a Synod here, in which Pope *Fohn* the twelfth, for his perfidiousnesse and other crimes is depofed: and *Leo* the eight is set up in his roome, who confirmed the Emperours assent in the election of Popes, with Anathema to those that should oppose this decree. *Otho* also swore not to order any thing in the City without the Popes assent, which oath some think to be supposititious, but when *Otho* was gone, the Romans being corrupted by *Albertus* call home Pope *Fohn*, and depose *Leo*: after the death of *Fohn* one *Benedict* is chosen.

964.

*Otho* hearing of the Romans revolt, returns again with his Army, and besiegeth the City so close, that they were forced by famine to yeeld. Pope *Benedict* is banished and committed to the custody of *Adalagus* bishop of Hamburg, where he dyed: so Italy after 60 yeares trouble under divers Lords is settled by *Otho*. Pope *Leo* being dead, the Romans desire the Emperour to name his successour, he names *Fohn* the thirteenth, whom they presently imprisoned. Upon this *Otho* in a rage returns to Rome, sets up again the Pope, hangs thirteen of the prime Authours of his imprisonment, whips the City Governour, sets him on an Ass with his Face backward, and condemnes him to perpetuall imprisonment, then because he meant to stay sometime in the City, the better to settle the people, he sends for his sonne *Otho*, and there causeth him to be declared Emperour.

*Nicephorus* of Constantinople sent to *Otho* to renew the old league between his Ancestors, & the French Emperors; to that purpose *Otho* demands *Theophania* the daughter of *Romanus*, and daughter in law to *Nicephorus* for a wife to his son; which the Greeks refused, and affronted his Embassadours, wherefore he pillageth Calabria and Apulia, and at last in spite of them carryed away *Theophania*, and married her to his son, then returns into Germany; where he makes one *Hermannus* Duke of Saxony, a man of mean extraction, but had done *Otho* good service, and had faithfully governed Saxony in his absence. He bestowes on him the inheritance of the Marquise of *Steden* there. The last Duke of this race was taken by *Henry* the fourth, and imprisoned, where he dyed without issue male. Then *Otho* among the Heneti erects the Bishopricks of Aldeburg, Havelburg, and Brandenburg, and subjects them to the Metropolitan of Hamburg. Amongst the Sorabi he makes bishopricks of Magdeburg, Merzburg, Cicen, and Wisnen. At last he dyed suddenly of an Apoplexy the 37 yeare of his reign being begun. He was buried at Magdeburg: a little before his death, *Hatto* Bishop of Mintz, who succeeded *William* the Emperours son, was eat up by rats, for deluding the poore people whom he burned in a barn, calling them the rats of a commonwealth. *Otho* by *Adelheide* had 3 sonnes, *Henry*, *Bruno*, and *Otho* his successour, and one daughter *Adelheide*, whom he married to *Hugh Capet* Earl of Paris, and King of France. *Otho* founded a Church in Denmark called from his name *Otensia* or *Othonia*. In his time Pope *Fohn* the fourteenth called a great bell by his own name, whence came the custome of naming and baptizing bells. About these times the University of Lozan is founded by *Fohn* Duke of Brabant. Parnassus a City in Lombardy is overthrown by the Neighbours, and all the Inhabitants killed, for maintaining the heresie of the Anthropomorphites, they who recanted their heresie were spared, and permitted to build Crema, a town hard by. *Stephen* the first King of Hungary, for his piety was canonised. *William* the second Duke of Normandy was killed by *Rollo*: shortly after that Dukedome was turned into an Earldome, and seised upon by the French Kings, which ministered occasion of long warre betweene France and England. *Ethelstan* King of England got from *Otho* *Constantines* sword, in the hilts of which was one of the nailes that fastned Christ to the Crosse. He obtained also the Lance with which his side was pierced, a peece of the Crosse, and of the Crowne of Thorns.

Romanus

*Romanus* the younger having poysoned his father *Constantine*, reigned in Constantinople 13 yeares, 10 yeares whilest his father was alive, and 3 yeares alone. Hee was much addicted to luxury and wantonnesse, therefore was surnamed the *Childe*. *Nicephorus Phocas* his Generall took Candace the chieftown of Crete, whence the whole Island is called Candy, and expelled all the Saracens. Hee beat also the Saracens in Syria. At last *Romanus* having spoiled his body with lust and gluttony, dyed, being 24 yeares old, a childe both in yeares and manners. His first wife was *Berta Hugo's* daughter King of Italy: his second *Theophania* of whom he had *Basil* and *Constantine*, and one daughter *Theodora* who married to *Zimisca*, who afterward was made Emperour.

To Pope *Anastasius* the third, succeeded *Landus* who sate 6 moneths. After him came *Fohn* the tenth 13 yeares, then *Leo* the ninth followed 7 moneths. After *Leo*, *Stephen* sate 1 moneth. *Fohn* the eleventh, his successour 4 yeares. *Leo* the seventh followed 3 yeares. Then came *Stephen* the ninth or eight 3 yeares. *Martinus* the third succeeded 3 yeares whose successour was *Agapetus* the second 7 yeares. To him succeeded *Fohn* the twelfth 9 yeares, then *Leo* the eighth 1 yeare. *Fohn* the twelfth returning from his banishment sate 3 moneths. *Benedict* the fifth set up by the Romans against *Leo* the eighth, was Pope 2 months. *Leo* being restored sate 8 moneths: to him succeeded *Fohn* the thirteenth, who sate almost 8 yeares. In Scotland a great Army of Danes were defeated by means of one *Hay* a country man and his two sons; the Scots at first were forced to flye being overpowered by the Danes; but this *Hay* with his two sons being at plough, met them in a narrow lane, and upbraiding their cowardise, made them for shame return, who fell with that violence on the Danes, that they utterly destroyed them. *Hay* was rewarded with as much land as a Falcon could flye over at one flight, which was 6 miles in length. Whence came the noble family of the *Hays*, whose chief is Earl of Arroll.

30

## CHAP. VI.

The Eastern affaires under *Nicephorus Phocas*, *Zimisces*, *Basilius*, and *Constantine*. 2. Of the Western under *Otho* the second. 3. Of the Turks, and some other passages of those times.

*Romanus* being dead and his two sonnes *Constantine* and *Basil*, as yet too young to meddle with publick affaires, *Nicephorus Phocas* is by the Eastern Army declared Emperour. He married with *Theophania* the widow of *Romanus*. He defeated the Saracens in Cilicia, recovered much of Asia and Syria, and took in Antiochia the Metropolis: but by Sea his success was not so good, for *Manuel* his Admirall lost his Fleet and Army, and was taken himselfe by the Saracens. *Bringes* the Chamberlain thought to have bene Emperour, and to that purpose was encouraged by *Zimisces* Generall of the Land Forces, to look after it; but he was hated by the people, therefore *Nicephorus* carryed it. *Polyenetus* the Patriarch would have dissolved the Emperors marriage with *Theophania*, pretending a spirituall affinity, because hee had been Godfather to one of her children; but in the Synod which was called for that purpose, it was concluded, that the Emperours marriage could not be hindred by such affinity. This *Nicephorus* was a good souldier, but a bad Emperour, for he oppressed the people with heavy taxes, pinched them with hunger by ingrossing the corn, and raising the price thereof. He abused the coin, and yet raised the value of it. Wherefore knowing how hatefull he was to the people for his covetousnesse, and bad success his Fleet had in Sicily, being spoiled upon the Syrtes by the rashnesse of young *Manuel* the Patrician; hee caused an high wall to be built round about his Palace; but that could not save him; for soon after the wall was finished, although he kept the keys of the gates himselfe, yet he was found out by *Zimisca* and the other conspirators, who being pulled up in baskets, got over the wall, and in the night

*An. Christi* 969. night time break into his chamber, where he murdered him. Not long before his death, as he was in the Forum, the people railed and flung stones at him; some think his wife *Theophania* had a hand in his death, being jealous that hee would defeat her sonnes by her former husband, of the Empire, and confer it on his brother *Leo*. He was no friend to the Church, but envied her wealth complaining that it was mispent by the Clergy, therefore would not suffer any lands or money to be given by legacies, or other wayes on Churches or Clergy men. He dyed the 57 yeare of his age, and reigned 7 yeares. The Saracens being enraged at the great losses they had sustained by *Nicephorus* in Syria, they burned downe the goodly Temple of Christs Sepulchre, with the Patriarch in it.

969. *Nicephorus* being murdered, *Zimisces* invades the Empire, whom *Polygenetus* the Patriarch would not crown, till he had cleared himselfe of the murder, and banished *Theophania*, (whom others call *Theodora*) and all the rest of the conspirators, and till he had repealed *Nicephorus* his Act concerning the election of Bishops, to wit, that none be chosen Bishops without the Emperours consent: all this being performed by *Zimisces*, and having sworn that he did not touch *Nicephorus*, He was crowned by the Patriarch, who about a month after dyed, to whom he succeeded *Basilus* the Monk. *Zimisces* obtained a great victory over the Saracens as they were besieging Antiochia. He made peace with *Otho* by sending him his wife *Theophania*, who was crowned at Rome by Pope *John* the fourteenth. He made *Basil* and *Constantine* the sonnes of *Romanus*, consorts with him in the Empire. He subdued the Rossians and Bulgarians, by *Bardas Sclerus* his wifes brother, who tooke the Bulgarian King prisoner, and made them sue for peace. After which victory he rode into Constantinople in a triumphant manner, carrying in waggons the plunder of Bulgaria, and the Image of the Virgin *Mary* with great solemnity. He caused stamp upon his gold and silver coin, this inscription, *Jesus Christ King of Kings*: at last having reigned almost 7 yeares, he was poysoned by *Basil* his Chamberlain, for reproving his covetousnesse, and threatening to take his place from him. *Zimisces* favoured the Manichees, and called them out of Asia into Europe.

965. About these times *Mieslaus* Prince of Poland received the Christian Faith, and was baptized: from which year the Polonians began their Calender. *Harald* King of Denmark with his wife and sonne *Sueno* are baptized, who before worshipped Christ and Idols together, now they flung away their Idols being induced thereto by *Poppo* a Clergy man, who carryed before the King a burning Iron in his hand, without hurt. *Edgar* King of old Albion (as he was stiled then) perceiving how England was obnoxious to forraign invasions, as first by the Romans, and then so often by the Danes and others, for want of shipping, causeth a great Navy to be built, which like wals should secure his Kingdome. *Egbert* had built some ships before, and 30 yeares after him *Alfred*, but they were either disused or consumed by the enemy.

967. *Otho* the second being twice declared Emperour in his fathers time, once at Aix and the second time at Rome, is by all received, after his fathers death, except by *Henry* Duke of Bavaria his cousin german, who by the help of some Bishops, caused himselfe at Ratisbone to be proclaimed Emperour. *Otho* summons him to shew cause why he assumed that title, he perceiving his owne error, and how few came to aid him, layeth aside his claime, and submits himselfe to the Emperour, who gave him his life, but banished him, and bestowed the government of Bavaria upon *Otho* Duke of Suevia, his nephew by his brother *Ludolphus*. He caused also *Harold* the Dane, *Mesico* the Polonian, and *Boleslaus* the Bohemian, who had entred into league with *Henry*, to lay downe their Arms. But whilest *Otho* is thus employed, *Lotharius* the French King by force of armes laboureth to regain Lorrain. *Otho* marcheth against him with an Army, at the report of whose approach *Lotharius* flies; upon this *Otho* pursues him, wasting and burning all before him, even to the walls of Paris, then having burned the suburbs, retreats with his Army homewards, *Lotharius* pursueth him in the rear, many

many of *Otho*'s souldiers were drowned in the river Axona, and many hee lost at *Arduenna*: and if he had not made the more hast, he had fallen into the hands of the French. Yet shortly after peace is made, and Lorrain is restored to *Otho*, though the French Peers stormed at it. Some parts of the country the Emperour assigns to the Bishops of Collen and Leege, the rest he bestows on *Charles* the brother of *Lotharius*, conditionally that he should hold it in fee of the Emperour, as a Province of Germany.

Things at home being thus composed, *Otho* intends an expedition against the Greeks and Saracens. In his minority he had done his Father good service in *Apulia* and *Calabria*, against the Greeks: whom he drove out thence: but whilest hee is busie at home, the Greeks by the help of the Saracens of Sicily, under *Basil* and *Constantine* recover these countreys again, being lost by *Nicephorus*. *Otho* to regain them raiseth a great Army of Germans and Italians, which under *Otho* Duke of Suevia expelled the Greeks out of their Garrisons of *Istria* and *Dalmatia*. At Beneventum a great battell is fought, in which *Otho* was defeated, and he himself hardly escaped: for he flung away his arms and clothes, that he might runne the more nimbly towards the Bay of Tarentum, where his wife *Theophania* was, but before he could get to the town, he was intercepted by the Saracens, and so was faine to leap into the Sea, and there was taken by the enemies ships, who not knowing him, let him goe again for a peece of money, so he came safe home; where he raiseth a new Army, and returneth into Italy, to fight the Saracens, whose Forces he utterly destroyed, after the battell he punisheth the Roman and Beneventan souldiers, who treacherously forsooke him in the first conflict, the chief Romans he put to the sword at a Feast, and the Beneventins he punished by the totall destruction of their City which he levelled with the ground. Shortly after he dyed at Rome, having reigned 10 yeares, and was buried in St. Peters Church in a porphyrie tomb.

About this time *Adelbert* Bishop of Prague being weary of the Bohemians, went down to Pannonia, and baptized *Geisa* King of Hungaria; thence he went to preach in Borussia, where hee was torn in peeces by the Barbarians. To Pope *John* the fifteenth succeeded *Benedict* the fifth or sixth one year, he was starved to death in the castle of St. Angelo. His successour was *Donnus* the second one year. *Bouiface* the seventh followed who sate 7 moneths. *Benedict* the sixth or seventh his successour sate 8 yeares. *Stephen* King of Hungarie sends to Pope *Benedict* to have the title and Crowne of a King conferred on him, which he obtained, but this favour was denyed to *Mieslaus* Duke of Polonia, who sent to *Benedict* the Bishop of Cracovia. St. *Edward* the sonne of *Edgar* King of England, and a hopefull Prince was murdered by his step-mother to advance her owne sonne *Ethelred*, whose Kingdome layd in blood prospered not, but became tributary to the Danes; who laid heavy and yearly taxes upon the land, before which time impositions called then *Dane-gelt* were not known in England. *Otho* had by *Theophania* *Otho* the third, yet a childe; *Hugo* or *Ulricus* Marquisse of Saxony, and 5 daughters. *Otho*'s minority occasioned new troubles in the Empire.

*Zimisces* being poysoned by *Basil* the Eunuch, the Eastern Empire came to *Basil* and *Constantine* the sonnes of *Romanus* the younger. *Constantine* was more addicted to his pleasures, then to government. *Basil* being 20 yeares old; and *Constantine* the 17. began to manage publike affairs by the advice of *Basil* the Eunuch. He recalled his mother *Theophania* to the Court, being banished thence. Fearing the greatnesse of *Bardas Sclerus*, so called from his harsh or hard disposition, who had done in the East great service, he tooke much of his power and command from him, making him content with the government of Mesopotamia. But hee would not be content to be thus affronted, therefore raiseth all the power he had in the East against *Basil*, defeats his Army, and takes in Nicæa the Metropolis of Bithynia: upon this *Phocas Bardas* is sent for from his banishment, and is made Generall of all the Forces of the two Cæsars. He in a Duell having wounded *Sclerus*, put to flight all his disturbed Legions. *Sclerus* was faine to flye to *Cosroes*

*An. Christi* the Sultan of Babylon, but being accused of treachery, he was imprisoned: So *Basil* being freed from civil wars, resolves to recover Calabria, and Apulia, *Theophanias* dowry. *Otho* in the sixth year of his reign, marcheth into Italy with a great Army, to defend his wives dowry. In the first conflict he defeated the Greeks and Saracens, in the second he was defeated, as we have said. About this time *Olaus* King of Norway converted his country to Christianity, and sent shortly after some to convert Island.

*Basil* understanding that *George* Lord of the inward Iberia, had invaded the bounds of the Empire, sends an Army against him, and forceth him to buy his peace for a great summe, till payment of which he gave his son as hostage, but he afterward stood not to his promise; therefore *Basil's* Army fell upon him, and utterly defeated his Forces. Hee subdued also the Saracens in Syria and Phœnicia. Shortly after he and the Bulgarians fell at variance for some wrongs offered by them to the Greeks. About which time the regall family of Bulgaria ended in *Peter* who was now dead. Thereupon 4 brothers of an ancient family strove for the principality: Three of these failed by death, the fourth *Samuel* by name, taking advantage of the civil wars of Greece invades divers of their towns which he tooke. *Basil* upon this undertakes an expedition against Bulgaria, where his Army miscarried by the treachery of his Commanders. And withall *Phocas* who before had defeated *Sclerus*, now rebels against *Basil*. For he 20 finding himselfe slighted by *Basil*, whom hee had delivered from so great an enemy, invades the Empire; but hee was overthrowne in divers battels, and at last dyed suddenly. *Basil* also had good successe against the Bulgarians, by the industry of his Generall *Uranus*. He took some townes beyond Mount Hæmus, and the next year he invaded Bulgaria himself, and rebuilt the Greek Garisons in Thessalia that had bene demolished, about the time that *Veremundus* King of Spaine had overthrowne *Almansor* Lord of the Corduban Saracens.

*Samuel* King of Bulgaria could not be quiet from molesting the Greeks, wherefore *Basil* in the 38 year of his reign suddenly falling behinde the Garrisons that 30 kept the narrow passages between the hills, put them to flight, and withall tooke 15000 Bulgarians, whose eyes hee thrust out, leaving onely for every hundreth a Captain with one eye, to conduct the rest, these hee sent to *Samuel*, who being affrighted of so many calamitous people, became suddenly vertiginous, and within two dayes dyed. His cousin German *Bladislabus* to be revenged, raised an Army, but this also was defeated, and he himselfe slain, so at last Bulgaria was totally subdued, and the chief Nobility was transported to Constantinople. Hereupon shortly after the Crabits and Syrmium the chiefe City of Pannonia submitted to Cæsar.

At the same time the Turkes, a race of *Hunns* inhabiting the North side of 40 Caucasus, were sent for, and employed by *Mahomet*, Sultan of Persis and Media against the Persians, who were animated by *Inargus* (who was of the blood royall of Persia) to rebell, and vindicate their liberty, from the Saracen yoke. *Cosroes* then had *Bardas Sclerus* with many other Christian souldiers, he promised to set them at liberty, if they did defeat the Persians, which they happily did. So *Sclerus* having obtained the victory, returns to the Christians, and joines himselfe to *Bardas Phocas*, who was then contesting with *Basil* for the Empire. He cunningly sent his sonne *Romanus* as a fugitive to assist *Basil*, whilest he himselfe stayed with *Phocas*, to the end that if *Basil* prevailed, *Romanus* his sonne might procure his Fathers pardon; if *Phocas* prevailed, that then hee might obtaine his 50 sons pardon. *Basil* having got the victory, *Romanus* who was now become his favourite, perswades him to remove the Eunuch *Basil*, (by whose meanes *Zemiscus* was murdered) from all government being he was hated by the people, this was accordingly done, *Zemiscus* shortly after dyed of griefe. *Phocas* also dyed suddenly. *Sclerus* by his sonnes meanes is made the chiefe Steward of the Palace. But before came to Byzantium, hee lost his Eye-sight with age.

The Prince of Iberia being now dead, *Basil* seisseth upon it. He recovered also Media

Media and Chazaria the 4 year of his Empire, and made the Princes of Tripoli, *An. Christi* Damascus, and others who were plundering the Territories of Antioch, to become his tributaries, thus being puffed up with victories and wealth (for he had heaped together 200000 talents of gold, besides jewels, pearles, and an infinite masse of silver) hee began to slight both citizens and souldiers, and to account of learning as a thing uselesse, which made him more feared then loved of his people. So intending to recover Sicily from the Saracens, sends his Fleet before with a purpose 10251 to follow himself, but his journey was hindered by death. He had lived and reigned 72 years, 50 alone, and the rest of the time he was Co-emperour with his Father; 10 then with *Nicephorus*, and after him with *Zemiscus*.

After the death of *Basilius* his younger brother *Constantine* ruled the Empire 3 years, by others rather then by himself. For he could scarce spare so much time from whoring, drinking, dicing, hunting, and Stage playing. Under him divers towns of Syria and Phœnicia, re-assumed their liberty, and killed their garrisons. He sent twice to suppress the Saracens in Italy and Sicily, but did no good. Yet by his Generall *Constantinus Diogenes*, Governour of Syrmium and Bulgaria, hee drove away the Scythians beyond Ister. The Governour of Samos overthrew the Saracen Fleet which had wasted the Cyclades. Hee caused *Romanus Argyrus* to marry his daughter *Zoe*, having taken his former wife 1028; from him, whom hee shaved, and put into a Monastery; but the third day after the marriage, he died the 70 years of his life: in his hast and furie he used to kill or blind his chiefe Courtiers, and then to weep and repent when it was too late.

*Cosroes* the Saracen being dead, *Mahomet* his successour inferiour in strength to *Pisaftrius* Prince of the Babylonian Arabians, was faine to call in the Turkes (as we have said) for his assistance: by whose help he overcame the Babylonians and Indians: but having other enemies to buckle with, he was loath to let the Turkes goe home, till they had done the rest of his work; therefore hee detaines them in Persis, and besets the river *Araxes* (over which they were to pass) 30 with strong guards. The Turkes were highly incensed, that they should be forcibly kept from their native countrey by him who quietly enjoyed his own country by their meanes: wherefore in a rage they forsooke him, and being about 3000 tooke possession of the mountaines, and fell to plundering the Saracens. *Mahomet* to drive them out of their strong holds sends 20000 men, who were put to flight by *Tangrolipex Mucaletus* the Turish Prince. The Sultan enraged at this disgrace, blindes many of the Captaines who were sent against the Turkes, and so terrified his Army with threatnings, that most of them fell off from him to the Turkes. The Sultan to be revenged raiseth an Army of 500000 men, who were all defeated by the Turkes. So *Araxes* being now made passable, the Turkes came 40 swarming in upon the Territories of Babylon, and so they obtaine the Saracens Kingdome.

## CHAP. VII.

The affaires of the Western Empire under *Otho the third*, *Henry the second*, and *Conradus the second*. 2. Divers passages of England, Scotland, Italy, France and other parts of Europe. 3. Of some Popes.

50 *Otho* the third, as yet a childe succeeded to his Father, for whose sake hee 984 was beloved, though disaffected by some because his mother was a Greek. Therefore *Henry* his cousin german, and Duke of Bajoaria took upon him to be young *Otho's* Protector, and to rule the Empire: but the Saxons being mindfull of their oath and allegiance to *Otho*, by the help of the Princes got the young Emperour again out of *Henry's* hands, and restored him to *Theophania* his mother, and *Adelhida* his Grandmother, under whom he was bred in all kind of divine and humane learning. His mother some few years after dyed, so that his Grand-



An. Christi

Grandmother had the sole education of him, till he by the evill counsell of some green heads, puts her away. In his minority new troubles sprung up, *Crescentius* the Roman Consul will have the City choose an Emperour of their own, and cast off the Germans in France. *Lotharius* makes wars upon Germany for the Duke-dome of Lorraine, which *Otho* the second took from him. In Germany *Henry* the Bavarian returning from banishment, after the death of *Otho Suericus*, not onely recovered Bavaria, but aimed also at the Empire.

When *Otho* was come to yeares of discretion, he falls upon settling the Empire: in the interim *Lotharius* was forced by death, to give off his challenge of Lorraine. His sonne survived his Father but one year: *Charles* also dyed, the brother of *Lotharius*, as he was challenging the kingdom of France, which *Hugh Capet* Earle of Paris invaded and obtained now the whole race of *Charles* being extinct. This *Hugh* began the third race of the French Kings which hath lasted till this day: the first race began in *Merophem* or *Clodovens*, and ended in *Hildericus*. The second which began in *Pipin* and ended in this *Ludovic* the last. *Hugo* acknowledged *Otho* for Emperour, and permits *Otho* the son of *Charles* to enjoy Lorraine as in fee from the Emperour. But debarrs him from his right in France.

*Otho* having settled Germany, bends his whole strength to appease the distractions of Rome and Italy. Therefore understanding that *Crescentius* did dominate in Rome, and had thrust out the Pope, he marcheth thither with his Army, but in the way at Ravenna, newes came to him, that the Pope was dead, wherefore he appoints for his successour *Brunno* his kinsman, son to *Otho*, Duke of Suevia, and nephew to *Ludolphus*, whose name was changed to *Gregory* the fifth. He is sent before to Rome, the Emperour with his Army followes, who being let into the City, pardons *Crescentius* upon his submission, and then is crowned Emperour by the Pope. All things being there settled, he marcheth back toward Germany, but he was not gone far, when *Crescentius* thrusts out *Gregory*, and sets up *Johannes Placentinus* a wealthy man, and withall fortifieth the City with Bulwarkes against a siege. Hee shuts himselfe up within that strong and spacious building called then *Moles Hadriani*, being his buriall place, then the tower of *Crescentius*, now the castle of St. Angelo. *Otho* hearing of this, returnes to Rome, the Citizens open the gates, presuming on pardon, which was promised to *Crescentius*, if he did deliver up his strong hold, which he did; but the promise was not kept; for *Crescentius* being carried on a jade through the City, with his face backward, and torn by the people, was at last hanged with 12 more of his associates, *Johannes Placentinus* had his nose cut off, and his eyes put out, and then was flung down headlong from the Capitoll: the other Senators that were accessary to this plot *Otho* banished into Saxony. Upon this sedition it was agreed between the Emperour and Pope, that the Germans alone should have power to choose their Emperour, and the Pope to confirme the Election. When hee is chosen he was to be called Cæsar, when confirmed by the Pope, Augustus. By which meanes all factions both in Italy and France, for the imperiall place and dignity should be prevented. And Italy with Germany should be the stronger united against the incursions of Saracens, Turkes, and other barbarous Nations. This would be a meanes also to quiet the Italian Princes, who fell out among themselves, and ambitiously striving for the Empire destroyed one another, and chiefly by this the Popes power was bridled, who tooke upon him to nominate Emperours, which caused much blood shed. There were 7 electors appointed to avoid confusion and quarrels, to wit, 3 Bishops of Mintz, Colon, and Trevers, and 4 secular Princes, the Palgrave, Duke of Saxony, Marquess of Brandenburg, and King of Bohemia: but whether these were ordained then by *Otho* or afterward, when the Empire was in the Family of the Suevi, is uncertaine.

*Otho* having settled the Empire, undertakes a pilgrimage to the bones of *Adelbert* in Polonia, where being magnificently entertained by *Boleslaus* Duke of Poland, by way of recompence, hee named him King: and erected there an Arch-

An. Christi

Archbishoprick at Gnesnau, under which were Crocovia, Colberge, and Vioti-slaen, Suffragans. He was forced to make a new journey to Rome, to appease the commotions there raised by the Pope, for being excluded from the Emperors election. There he fell in love with the widow of *Crescentius* pretending to marry her, but when she perceived, that hee meant no such thing, upon his returning to Germany, she presents him with a paire of poysoned Gloves, which killed him the 30 yeare of his age, of his Empire the 19. He dyed childlesse, his former wife *Mary*, daughter to the king of Arragon, he caused to be burned, because she had falsely accused and caused to be put to death a young Noble man, with whom shee was in love, for that he would not pollute the Emperours bed at her instigation; to be revenged of him, she accuseth him as if he meant to ravish her, whereupon he was condemned and executed. But his wife shortly after to prove his innocency, carryed in her hand a burning iron without hurt: Which induced *Otho* to doe justice on his perfidious Empresse. *Otho's* bowels were interred at Augusta or Ausburg, by *Henry* of Bavaria his successour, who bestowed on them a marble tomb: his body was buried at Aix. He was a prince indowed with so much wisdom, learning and piety, that hee was called the wonder of the World.

In *Otho's* time are recorded strange prodigies, as uncouth earthquakes and Comets, showres of wheat and little fishes out of the clouds. In Sicily near *Ætna* were heard strange cries and yellings, which were then supposed to be the complaints of tormented soules in purgatory, whence the feast of All soules was ordained. Fire brake out of the river Rhene which burned down the neighbouring villages. Great Frosts in the midst of summer, which destroyed grasse and corn, whereupon followed plagues and famine, and the eruption of the Sclavonians upon Saxony. *Vladomirus* Duke of Russia is made a Christian.

To *Benedict* succeeded *Johan* the fourteenth, who was Pope 3 months, and then was imprisoned; whereupon *Boniface* the sixth was re-inthroned, and sate four months, his successour *John* the fifteenth sate 8 moneths: to him succeeded *John* the sixteenth, who was Pope 10 yeares. *Gregory* the fifth his successour 2 yeares. *Johan* the seventeenth a Greek and Magician, thrust out *Gregory* for 10 months; but was himselfe deprived both of his dignity, eyes, and life by *Otho*, and *Gregory* restored, to whom succeeded *Cerebertus* or *Sylvester* the second, a Mathematician and Philosopher, and therefore in that rude age, he was thought to bee a witch. He was first Archbishop of Rheims; then of Ravenna, lastly of Rome, where he sate 4 yeares.

Much about the same time the Empire of Germany, the kingdom of France, Poland, Hungary, and Bohemia were established; and the kingdom of the Arabians in Corduba which had continued 300 yeares, had its period: and then began the Hebrew tongue to flourish there, under *R. Joseph*, who turned the Thalmud into Arabick, then an Academy of Saracens was erected at Babylon.

In England the Danes were generally massacred for their intolerable tyranny and oppressions, whereupon *Swain* King of Denmark armed with rage and power, came with a great Fleet, and conquered this land, drove King *Eihelred* to Normandy, but upon the death of *Swaine* he was called home; whose Forces *Knute* or *Canutus Swaines* sonne defeated. *Eihelred* being dead, his sonne *Edmund Ironside* fought divers battels with the Danes, not without good successe, till at last he was betrayed and utterly defeated, and so *Canutus* obtained the Kingdom. But neither *Swaine* nor his sonne *Canutus* had such good successe in Scotland, for in two severall battels they were worsted: in the first *Swaine* was utterly defeated, and hardly escaped with his life: in the second *Canut* was so weakened, that hee was forced to sue for peace, in which it was agreed, that the Danes should depart Scotland, and that neither Scots nor Danes should molest one another, during the lives of *Micolumbus* the Scots King, and *Swaine* the Dane. Yet this *Millcolumbus* or *Malcolme*, whom the Danes could not hurt was afterward murthered by some of his own subjects in his bed, because of some oppressions

*An. Christi* fions committed, or at least permitted by him upon his Nobility; but vengeance pursued the murtherers immediately after, even the same night; for having mistaken their way in the snow, they fell into a lake, in which they were all drowned, men and horse, as they were flying away, the ice breaking under them.

*Otho* the third being dead without children, *Henry* the second succeeded: hee was Duke of Bavaria, a Saxon by blood, but a Bavarian by birth: He was the nephew of *Otho* the first by his brother. In the beginning of his reign he was opposed by *Ethard*, Marquisse of Saxony, whom *Lotharius* and *Benno* Dukes of Saxony killed. *Henry* also Marquisse of Austria, with his brother *Brunno* Bishop of Ausburg made insurrections against him, but they were quickly suppressed. So having settled things at home he went against the Heneti, who had fallen off from Christianity, which they had imbraced in *Otho* the firsts time, and were now become heathen Idolaters, having first destroyed their Churches, and murdered their Bishops. But *Henry* brought them again under the obedience of Christ, and made them rebuild their Churches, then he endowed the Bishopricks with new revenues, chiefly that of Marburg, to which he assigned a great part of the Earldome of Marburg. Having subdued the Heneti, he made wars upon the two *Boleslavi*, the one king of Poland, the other Duke of Bohemia: these having shewen out into open hostility against him, he caused to submit to his obedience, and to doe him homage. He converted also the Earldome of Bamberg (*Earle Rinold* being dead without children) into a Bishoprick, and so enriched and honoured it, that hee made the chief Princes of Germany the Bishop of Bamberg's Vassals, and to doe him fealty, so that the Electors as yet hold of him in fee, whatsoever they enjoy as Electors. He suppressed also the insurrection of *Henry*, and *Theodoricus* brothers to *Cunegunda* his wife, who stormed because they could not enjoy their sisters estate being now dead, and which the Emperour had distributed among the Clergy men. These two brothers raised an Army against him, invaded and took Ausburg, then thrust *Brunno* the Emperors brother thence; but the Emperour overthrew them both in a battell, and deposed *Henry* from his Dukedome, yet afterward upon submission, restored him.

*Hermannus* Duke of Suevia being dead, he made *Ernestus* husband to *Gisel* his cousin german Duke thereof, and so having settled the troubles of Germany, he addresses himselfe for Italy, to take possession thereof as Emperour, to suppress the Greeks and Saracens there, and to subdue *Arduinus* whom the Bishops and Nobility had proclaimed Emperour at Millan, who in two great battels was overthrown by the Emperour and slaine. *Henry* was taken prisoner himselfe, but having deceived his Keepers, leapt down from the wall, and so broke his thigh, which made him halt ever after, whence he was called *Henry the lame*. After this victory he was crowned Emperour by Pope *Benedict*. After this hee marcheth towards Apulia and Calabria, against the Greeks and Saracens, who were struggling for that part of Italy, a share whereof *William* Duke of Normandy had taken from them under *Otho* the third, and at last that whole country of *Magna Graecia* became subject to the Normans. But at this time *Henry* subdued both the Greeks and Saracens, and tooke from them their New Troy, which the Greeks had lately built in Apulia; in that same place where anciently *Hannibals* campe lay. This was the third journey that *Henry* made into Italy, and the last. In his return homeward, he had conference with *Robert* King of France, about settling the State and Church: and to that purpose they appointed to give the Pope a meeting at Ticinum, but death prevented this, for the next yeare after he dyed at Grosning the 52 yeare of his life, and was buried in his own Church of Bamberg. Hee reigned 22 yeares. Being childlesse, hee nominated *Conradus* for his successour. Hee was a pious and a munificent Prince who, (as they say) lived perpetually chaste with *Cunigunda*, though married. Hence hee was called *Saint*.

In his life time he had many wars with the Polonians, Bohemians, Italians, Russians, Greeks and Saracens, in all which he had good success. He had a dangerous war

war with *Baldwin* Earle of Flanders about the Dukedome of Lorrain, which he gave away after the death of Duke *Otho*, to *Godefrid* Prince of Arduenna: but *Henry* by the helpe of *Robert* King of France, and *Richard* Duke of Normandy took Gant and wasted Flanders, so that *Baldwin* was faine to submit, who received in fee from the Emperour, the Isle of Zeland, with the City Valentina. In the time of this *Henry*, the Turkes tooke Jerusalem from the Saracens, and overthrew the Temple which *Constantine* had built there. The King of Denmark with a great train went to Rome, to intreat the Pope that the Churches of his kingdom might be exempted from the jurisdiction of the Archbishop of Hamburg: the Pope promised to send a Cardinall thither, for that purpose, but nothing was done in that matter till *Gregory* the seventh, who subjected all the Churches of Denmark, Swethland and Noraway to the bishop of Brene. The Transilvanians by the means of *Stephen* King of Hungary received the Christian Faith: for he tooke *Giula* with his wife and children prisoners, who being released were all baptized. *Cannutus* King of Denmark and England, obtained also the kingdom of Norraway. *Rainimir* the sonne of *Sanctius* Major was first King of Arragon. To *Sylvester* succeeded Pope *John* the seventeenth or eighteenth, who sat 4 moneths: his successour *John* the nineteenth sat 4 yeares, to whom succeeded *Sergius* the fourth, who was Pope two yeares. *Benedict* the seventh or eight sat 11 yeares: and so many yeares sat his successour *John* the nineteenth or twentyeth. *Cannutus* King of England married *Emme* widow to king *Ethelred*. He went about to extirpate those of the royall blood of England, therefore sent away the two sonnes of the late king *Edmund*, and his brother, to be murdered abroad, but they were by divine providence preserved. Hee went to Rome, and freed the Saxon Schoole which the Kings of England had erected there, from all imposition.

From the Saxons the Empire of the West is translated to the Franks in the person of *Conradus* the second, who is called *Salicus* because the country of Franconia was called *Salia*, from the river *Sala*, whence came the Salique law, with the French, which by the *Sali* or Franks were driven out of Franconia. The Empire continued in the Saxon Family about 100 yeares; this *Conradus* was descended of the ancient *Gibelins* in Franconia. Hee married with *Gisel* *Henry* the Emperours kinswoman by whom hee had a sonne called also *Henry*. In the beginning of his reign he was threatened with wars by his cousin german, and competitor for the Empire, *Cuno* the younger. By *Ernestus* also the Emperors sonne in law, by *Frederic* of Lorrain, by *Boleslaus* King of Poland, and *Robert* King of France, but all these clouds he dispelled by his wisdom and dexterous carriage.

The third yeare of his Empire he prepares an Army for Italy, to quiet the commotions there: and withall holds a Parliament at Aix, where he declares his sonne his successour: whom 3 yeares after he made Duke of Bavaria, Duke *Henry* brother of *S. Cunigunda* being dead. Hee caused those of *Papia* who had demolished his Palace to rebuild it, hee quieted the people of *Ravenna*, who would have driven him out of the City, and rewarded a souldier who for him had lost a leg in that skirmish, with a boot full of silver. From thence he went to Rome, where he was crowned Emperour by Pope *John*, and was conducted to his chamber by two Kings, namely *Cannutus* King of England, and *Rodolphus* king of Burgundy. At Rome two souldiers falling out about an Oxe hide, the one being an Italian, the other a German, raised such a tumult that many were slain in it, the Romans being worsted, were faine to beg pardon bare footed with ropes about their necks, which they obtained. *Conradus* bestowed Apulia upon the Normans to be held by them in fee of the Emperour for the defence thereof against the Greeks.

Whilest *Conradus* was in Italy, *Frederic* of Lorrain, *Cuno* of Wormatia, and *Ernestus* of Alemannia Dukes conspired against him; but *Frederic* dyeth before the plot came to maturity. *Cuno* was glad to demolish all his fortifications to obtain the Emperours favour. *Ernestus* having pillaged Alsatia and Burgundy was

*An. Christi* at last forsaken by his souldiers, and so yielded himselfe a pritonier, but afterward flying out againe, was so horly pursued by the Emperours guard that they inclosed him within a wood, and slew him. About this time *Conradus* brought *Miseco* the Polonian in subjection, who had expelled his brother *Otho* out of the kingdome by the means of *Gisell* the Emprisse, he was reconciled to *Conradus*, and come by the means of *Gisell* the Emprisse, he was reconciled to *Conradus*, and was restored to the third part of Poland. He quieted also the Franes, French, and Bohemians and *Stephen* King of Hungary, who made war upon *Conradus* for the Dukedome of Bavaria, which he claimed as his sonnes right, being the childe of *Henry* the Saints sister: but the war ended by the death of *Emericus Stephens* sonne.

*1032.* *Rodolphus* King of Burgundy by his will bequeathed his kingdome to *Conradus*: but *Otho* nephew to *Rodolphus* by his sister laid claim to it, and thought by the sword to obtain it, but he lost both it and his life to boot, being killed in the battell, and so Burgundy was made a Province of the Empire, having continued a kingdome, from the death of *Carolus Calvus* 144 years. It was made a kingdome under *Arnulphus*, it was afterward parted into the Duchy, which the Emperour retained, and the county which fell to the King of France, this *Rodolphus* who gave it away was the tenth and last king.

*1035.* After *Conradus* by his sonne *Henry* had subdued the Bohemians, he married him to *Emmelinda* daughter of *Canutus* king of England and Denmark, the being brought to bed of a daughter to him, dyed in Italy, and was buried in Limburg, at that time the bishop of Millan with some other bishops of Lombardy, raised a faction against the Emperour, which he suppressed by taking in of Millan, Parma, and the other rebellious towns, and by banishing the seditious bishops. So having quieted Lombardy, he returned to Germany, and puts his sonne in possession of Burgundy. *Hermannus* Duke of Suevia being dead of the plague in Italy, the Emperour bestows that Dukedome on *Otho* nephew to *Otho* the third, Emperour by his sister, at last he dyed suddenly at Utrecht in Frisia the 15 year of his reign, the year before dyed *St. Cunigund*, and *St. Stephen*, king of Hungary. *Conradus* was a valiant and wise Prince, he shewed princely magnanimity in his warre against *Miseco* king of Poland, whom *Valericus* the Bohemian tooke prisoner, when hee fled to him for shelter. The Emperour hating the treachery of him that did betray his trust, would not countenance the Traitor, nor receive the King as a prisoner. Hee was buried at Spire in the Church which he built himself.

*1039.* About this time in *Ferdinand* the Great, were united the kingdomes of Castil, Navar, and Legido, by the marriage of *Sanctia* the onely sister and heir of *Vere-mund*, and at last *Aragon* also by the death of *Ramirus* his base brother. In England to *Canutus* succeeded his sonne *Harald*, who reigned but 4 yeares, in which time hee banished his stepmother *Emme*, and put out the eyes of *Alfred* her sonne by *Ethelred*, and cast him into a loathsome prison, where he dyed. In Scotland king *Donald* did homage to *Canutus* for Cumberland. Hee was murdered by *Macbeth* his cousin german, who got himselfe to be proclaimed king. The Danes had so many overthrowes in Scotland, that they vowed never to returne thither in a hostile manner, for not onely were they destroyed by the sword, but many of them were poisoned with the juice of seeds of *Solanum somniferum*, an herb we call Nightshade mingled with their bread and wine.

The affaires of the Eastern Empire under Argyropolis, Michael, Calaphates, Zoe, Theodora, and Monomachus. 2. Of the Turkes and Popes of those times. 3. Of the Polonian, Hungarian, English, Scottish, and other affairs.

*10* *Constantine* the Greek Emperour being dead, *Romanus* the third, called *Argyropolis*, from his too great bounty, or rather prodigality, succeeded. Hee to ingratiate himselfe with the people took off the tribute, which they called *allelengium*, imposed on all rich men by *Basil*. This was to bee paid by wealthy men to the children of those souldiers which had dyed in the warres to confirme his title. He put away his wife, and married with barren *Zoe* the daughter of *Constantine*, she being 50 yeares old, and he 60. He enriched the bishops who had been beggered before: and banished *Theodora Zoes* sister into an Island upon suspicion: and sent *Constantine Diogenes* for affecting the Empire into a strong tower, where he killed himselfe by leaping from a high window, lest he should be forced to discover others that were of the plot with him. He beat the Saracens at Sea, but was beat by them on the land: for as hee was striving to recover the townes of Syria, which his predecessour had carelessly lost, he was overcome and forced to flye to Antioch; whereas hee might have had these townes without losse of blood, had hee hearkened to reason rather then to ambition, whilest he stived to extort that by force, which was proffered in love; yet by the help of *Amiras* of Tripolis, who had fallen off from the Egyptians, he tooke in two castles in Syria: but could doe no good against the Saracens in Sicily nor against the Normans in Apulia being aided by *Conradus Caesar*. Under him *George Maniaces* took Edessa by storm, where finding the Epistle which as they say *Christ* wrote with his owne hand to King *Abgarus*, he sent it to *Constantinople*: but shortly after this *Romanus* by exactions oppressed the people: and because hee could not make his old barren wife fruitfull, hee began to slight her, at which the libidinous woman being impatient, began to dote upon *Michael* the Paphlagonian. This the Emperour suspected, but *Michael* by oaths denied there was any affection betweene *Zoe* and him, for which perjury he was taken with the Falling-sickness, which abated *Romanus* his suspicion; for hee thought that *Zoe* could not affect one troubled with that disease: but at last *Romanus* was poisoned by *Zoe*, and being one day in the bath, the adulterer held downe his head in the water, till hee was almost stifled, and then being laid in his bed, dyed immediately, having reigned 5 yeares, and 6 moneths, to whom by *Zoes* help succeeded *Michael*.

*40* *Michael* for his adultery and murder is rewarded with the Eastern Empire, at first he shewed himselfe a good Governour, but not so good a Scholar as his predecessour, who was skilled in the Greek tongue, in Philosophy, and in the laws. All the while that *Michael* was Emperour, his Dominions were vexed with comets, plagues, siccity, sterility, earthquakes and locusts, which so devoured the fruites of the earth, that the Inhabitants were faine to change their habitations: these locusts were by a strong winde carried into the Hellespont, and there drowned, but after they were left dry upon the shoare, they revived, and for 3 yeares together wasted Thracia, till at last they were destroyed at Pergamus. At first *Michael* made much of *Zoe*, till hee was thoroughly settled, afterward he kept her up so close, that all her servants were removed from her, and none suffered to see her, or speak with her, but by leave of the Captaine of the watch, who examined the cause of their coming. Some thinke *Michael* was visited with an evil spirit, which to palliate, he called the Falling sickness. Hee made three yeares peace with the *Amiras* of Egypts widow. Under him *George Maniaces* by the help of France recovered all Sicily from the Saracens, after they had posselt it 230 yeares, who were at civill warres among themselves. But *Stephen* foolishly let the Sultan escape, for which being sharply reproved by *Maniaces*, hee was accused by *Stephen* as if he had aimed at the Empire. Upon this *George* is imprisoned, and

*An. Christi* 1041. *Michael* made Governour of Sicily, who in a short time lost it all againe; in conscience for his murther and adultery, entred into a Monastery, where hee dyed, having first named for his successour *Michael Calaphates*, his nephew by his sister, he reigned 7 yeares. In his time a Thracian woman killed a certain stranger with his own sword, for offering to ravish her, which fact was so approved by the Thracians, that they crowned her with garlands, and flung out his body into the streets, who as a self-murderer lay there unburyed.

*Michael Calaphates* the sonne of *Stephen* who lost Sicily, was adopted successor by *Paphlago*, and confirmed by *Zoe*, who made him swear, he would be faithfull to, and loving to her, but he quickly forgot his oath and duty. For he banished *Zoe*, and depoted his Vncle *John* from his Government, by whose help he obtained the Empire, when he fell on his knees to *Zoe*, beseeching her to confirm *Michael's* adoption: He emasculated most of his kindred: but for this his insolency, the people of Constantinople rose in armes against him, calls home *Zoe* with her sister *Theodora*, makes them lay downe their monasticall habit, and assume the imperiall; in the tumult 3000 Citizens were slaine by the Pratorian Guard, yet the Citizens prevailed who thrust *Michael* with his uncle *Constantine* into a Monastery, and then put out their eyes, and drove them out of the City. Not long after old *Zoe* married againe to *Constantine Monomachus* whose former wife was the nephew of *Romanus Argyropolis*, him *Michael* had banished upon suspicion of his too much familiarity with *Zoe*. But now hee is called home, with his wife *Selevra*: so now the Empire is guided by one man and three women.

1042.

This *Constantine Monomachus* is confirmed in the Empire, which he much weakened by his prodigall wasting of the treasure, which made him lay heavy taxes on the borderers of the Empire, to keep off forraigners, but the borderers grew careless, and let all break in that would, when they saw the treasure exhausted, and the burthen lye on them, they knew their condition could not be worse under strangers. *Michael* Governour of Dyrrachium, (now Durazzo a City in Macedonia on the Adriatic,) under *Monomachus* was killed with 40000 souldiers by the Scythians, who had wasted the Triballians and Servians people in Media joining upon Pontus. *George Maniaces*, was animated by his Army to invade the Empire, which he did; but he was slaine in Bulgaria; though his Army had the better of the Imperialists, and so this war ended. *Leo Torencius* kinsman to *Monomachus* did also enter in competition for the Empire, which *Monomachus* perceiving, caused him to be shaved with intent to put him in a Monastery. But hee being well beloved by the Macedonians, was received at Adrianopolis, where hee quickly raised an Army, with which hee besieged Byzantium, and had taken it, but that he was dull and neglected his opportunity, permitting the Emperours Forces to increase, by which in divers battels he was overthrowne, and at last taken alive by his enemies, who thrust out his eyes. *Vladimir* Prince of Russia, for having had one of his men killed at Byzantium in a quarrell, raised an Army of 100000, which in boats made of one peece of timber, called Monoxyla hee brought afore Constantinople; conditions of peace were offered him, which hee refused, therefore his Army and Fleet in Gods just judgements were utterly overthrowne. The Bosphini a people of the East, were subdued by *Monomachus*.

At this time the Turkes were grown so strong, having taken Babylon, and subdued Media, that they send an Embassie to the Emperour *Monomachus* offering to make a league with him, conditionally that he will become tributary to the Sultan, but the Embassadour was slighted, and sent back without any answer; whereupon the Turkes overrun the Eastern Provinces, even to the Sea Coast of Byzantium, where they encampe over against the City. *Monomachus* had lately subdued the *Pazinacæ* a people of Scythia; and having converted them to Christianity, placed them in Bulgaria: he sends 15000 of these to Iberia to fight against the Turkes, who had taken *Liparit* the Iberian King prisoner, and made him swear never to raise armes against the Sultan any more. But these *Pazinacæ*

*Pazinacæ* would go no further then Chrysopolis, therefore they swim their horses over the Hellespont, and join themselves to their country men, wasting Thracia, Macedonia, and other parts neer Constantinople: at last, after divers skirmishes, they make a league for 30 yeares: in the meane time the Turkes make havock of all without control; for the borders lay open, being the Garrisons were discharged for want of pay. But the Turkish conquests were a little stopped by a victory obtained against them by the President of Media, and by the civil warre that fell out betwene the Sultan of Persia and his brother *Abraham*.

10 *Monomachus* being long troubled with the Gowt, fell at last into a Pleurisie and dyed, having reigned almost 13 yeares. He left the Empire to *Theodora Zoe's* sister, who dyed not long before, being 70 yeares old, Shee reigned alone almost 2 yeares: so finding her selfe aged and sickly, by the intreaty of the Peers, she names *Michael Strarotius* for her successour and then dyed. To Pope *John* the nineteenth or twentieth succeeded *Benedict* the eight or ninth, who sate 13 yeares. But his chair was invaded by *Sylvester* the third, who sate one moneth, and then was forced to surrender his pontificate to *Benedict* again, and in this schism *Gregory* the sixth is chosen, who sate 2 yeares: so that now Rome is like the three-headed *Cerberus*. After them came *Clemens* the second, who sate 9 moneths: and after him 20 *Damasus* the second, who was Pope 23 dayes; then came *Leo* the ninth, who sate 5 yeares. About these times *Casimir* of a Monk and Deacon became King of Poland, being the next heir, with whose orders and vowes the Pope dispensed. *Queen Raxa* the mother of this *Casimir*, for her mis-government was faine to flye from the fury of the people, with this her young sonne, for not onely had shee incensed her own subjects, but the Russians also who broke in upon the North, and the Bohemians who pillaged the South part of Poland. In memory of this dispensation given to *Casimir*, the Polonian Knights, at certain solemnities in the Church use to weare long white surplusses, after the manner of Priests and Deacons, the Plebeians were taxed by the Poll to pay yearly one penny towards 30 the maintenance of a perpetuall light in Saint *Peters* Church: they were also enjoined to bee shaved on the crowne like Monkes, and to weare short haire.

*Berengarius* the Archdeacon broached his doctrine against Transubstantiation, which afterward he recanted, whether willingly or by force, is doubtfull. The dignity of Cardinals began about this time to be in request. At Rome was found a Gyants body uncorrupted, which being set up right, was higher then the City walls: Its Epitaph was this, *Here lyeth Pallas the sonne of Evander, killed by Turnus his Lance*. The Hungarians fell off againe to Pelagianism, and killed the Clergy: but *Andrew* the fourth King of Hungary, made it death for any man in 40 his Kingdome to professe Paganism.

In England *Hardiknut* son of *Knut* by Queene *Emme* succeeded to *Harold*, whose body he caused to be untombed, the head struck off, and flung into the Thames. He punisheth such as were guilty of the death of *Alfred* his brother by the mother. Hee offended the whole State by grievous taxes; he called home *Edward* his other halfe brother out of Normandy; then dyed suddenly the second year of his reign: and in him ended the Danish Kingdome in England, having lasted but 26 yeares under these 3 last Kings. *Edward* the Confessor is crowned. He was son of *Ethelred*, and is commended for his gentleness, continency, and piety, who with his touch cured certain diseases. Yet the Earl *Godwin* made insurrections against him, because hee favoured the French too much that were about him, being led altogether by them: till at last hee made his peace with the King, whereupon the French forsook both Court and Kingdome: which occasioned the first difference with France. This Prince having reigned 24 yeares dyed, his corps was interred in the Church of Westminster, which hee had founded a little before. In Scotland *Macbethus* having treacherously murdered King *Duncan*, invaded the Kingdome, and for 17 yeares possessed it, untill *Malcolmus* the slain Kings sonne being assisted by King *Edward* of England with 10000 men, recovered it from *Macbethus*.

The troublesome affaires of the West, under Henry the third, and Henry the fourth. 2. The affaires of Italy, Spain, Portugal, Sicily. 3. The Popes of those times.

1039.

**H**enry the third, surnamed the Black, from the colour of his hair, succeeded to his Father *Conradus*, against him *Vratislaus* king of Bohemia made warre by the assistance of *Peter* King of Hungary; in this warre Henry lost the chief Commanders of his first Army. His expedition against the Bohemians was frustrated, because they had stopped all the passages and high-ways by cutting downe the woodes. But in his second expedition hee forced them to submit, and to pay the annuall tribute which they had refused. Hee had another war against the Hungarians, who had deposed King *Peter* grandchilde to *Stephen* for being too favourable to strangers, and for maintaining of Christian Religion: but pretending his mis-government, *Ovo* was the King they set up against him. Henry employes *Leopold* Marquisse of Austria, who having recovered a great part of Hungary, forced this new King to beg for peace and pardon, which was granted him: but afterward falsifying his oath and promise, hee renewed the war in which hee was utterly defeated, put to flight, and at last being apprehended, was brought to *Peter*, and was by the sentence of the Peeres of Hungary beheaded. But *Peter* would not be induced to forsake Christianity and to professe Paganisme, wherefore the Hungarians conspired against him, and sent for his kinsman *Andrew* whom they had banished; him they made King, and put out *Peter's* eyes, who shortly after dyed at *Alba Regia*.

1050.

After this Henry marryed with *Agnes* the daughter of *William* Prince of *Pictavia*: hee rejected the Musicians and Players that came to the wedding, thinking these fooleries farre below his imperiall gravity: but hee could not enjoy peace long; for *Godefrid* Duke of *Lorraine* entred into league with the French king, and with *Baldwin* of *Flanders*, to expell his brother *Gottello* out of his part of the Dukedome, that so hee might enjoy all alone: this so incensed Henry that hee caused him to be apprehended and imprisoned, yet upon his submission hee let him goe, and sent him with aid to Pope *Leo* the ninth against the Normans. In the meane while *Benedict* the ninth, *Sylvester* the third, and *Gregory* the sixth. Anti-Popes made such stirs in Rome and Italy, that the Emperour was forced to repaire thither, and to call a Synod at *Surrinum* not far from Rome. In this *Benedict*, who had set up his residence in the Palace of *Lateran*, *Sylvester* at *S. Peters*, and *Gregory* at *S. Marks*, were all three deposed, and *Sindeger* or *Suideger* Bishop of *Bamburg* was elected, who was named afterward *Clemens* the second. In this Synod also was confirmed the former Act, that no Pope should be chosen without the Emperours consent.

After this Henry being crowned Emperour by this *Clement*, marcheth with his Army into the farther part of Italy, to compose the differences betweene the Normans and Lombards, some whereof were yet remaining there: so all things there being settled, Hee returnes for Germany; but before hee could get out of Italy Pope *Clement* the second is poysoned, and immediately after him Pope *Damasus*, therefore hee was faine to choose Pope *Leo* the ninth, who was the third hee chose before his departure from Italy. This *Leo* being afterward to stay in Rome, accompanys the Emperour into Germany, where in the Councell at *Mints* assembled there by Henry, the Pope was forced to submit and give way to the Bishop of the place, who claimed it as his due.

After Henry returned from Italy, hee made an expedition into Hungary, against *Andrew* their King, to revenge the death of *Peter*, but hee had no successe in this interprise: onely *Andrew* the King was slaine by a fall from his horse, and trode under foot. Hee banished *Conradus* of *Bavaria*, for his mis-government

ment, and for entering into league with the Hungarians, who at last made their peace with the Emperour by promising to pay a yearly tribute, and to furnish him with Auxiliaries upon all occasions. *Conradus* dyed in his exile: whereupon Henry made his young sonne Henry the fourth Duke of *Bavaria*, being but 2 yeares old, and got him to be declared Emperour. Then hee sent back Pope *Leo* into Italy with an Army under the conduct of *Godefrid* Duke of *Lorraine* to suppress the Normans, who at first were put to flight, but recollecting their dispersed Forces overcame their overcommers. Shortly after *Godefrid* marryed with *Beatrix* the widow of *Boniface* Marquisse of *Tuscia* in Italy, Henry suspecting that *Godefrid* (whose Faith was wavering, and spirit ambitious) by this marriage aimed at the Empire, returnes with an Army into Italy to put a stop to *Godefrids* intentions; in the interim hee crownes his sonne at *Aix*, being 4 yeares old. Hee stayed a yeare in Italy, where having settled all things hee invades the *Slavi* of *Lusatia*, by whom his army was totally routed, and he shortly after dyed of grief, after he had lived 40 yeares, and reigned 17: he was buried at *Spira* near his Father *Conradus*, he was a good and mild Prince: his first wife was daughter to the King of *England*, who dyed childlesse. His second wife *Agnes* bore him Henry the fourth.

This Henry the fourth was 7 yeares old, when his Father dyed, who committed to his wife the care of this Prince: and his education to *Conradus* a Noble man of *Suevia*. Shee was also trusted with the Government of the Empire, which prudently shee managed for 5 yeares space: but afterward being deposed by the plot of some Princes in *Saxony*, shee lived privately in a Monastery. The young Emperour is conveyed fraudulently into *Saxony* by the Bishop of *Colen*. *Ebert* Marquisse of *Saxony*, and *Otto* the Saxon who lately had obtained *Bavaria* of the Emperesse, pretending that they would breed the youth in Military Discipline, and State affairs which he could not learne under his mother, but rather effeminateness, whereas indeed their aime was, either to procure to themselves the Empire, or at least the administration thereof during the childes minority. In the interim the souldiers grew licentious and outrageous for want of discipline, and having got to themselves a fit Captaine *Otto* the brother, begot of *William* Marquisse of *Thuringia* by a Concubine, they began to rob and plunder *Saxony*, this theevish Army of robbers was at last defeated by *Bruno* and *Ebert* brothers, Marquises of *Saxony*, being assisted by the Emperours Forces, the battell was fought above *Mesburg*, where the young Emperour was placed a little way off from the Army, as a terror to the enemy, and a spectatour of the victory. In this conflict *Bruno* was slaine, and so was *Otto* the ring-leader of the robbers, whose inheritance in *Thuringia* was seized on by *Ebert* Marquisse of *Saxony*, who erected a Colledge of Canons at *Naumburg*, and translated thither from *Cyzicum*, the Episcopall Seat.

Henry being 13 yeares of age, undertooke the managing of the State; and first hee assisted *Salomon* his kinsman King of *Hungary*, against *Bela* who thrust him out of his kingdom: this *Bela's* Army Henry overthrew, and re-established *Salomon* in his kingdom: then hee waged warre against the *Slavi* of *Lusatia* with good successe; but the Saxons storming that the Empire should be any where, except among themselves conspired against the young Emperour, the authour of this conspiracy was *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, whom a little before Henry had sent into Italy with the Bishops of *Colen* and *Trent*, to confirm the Italians in their allegiance to the Emperour, and to demand the ordinary tribute. *Otho* by insinuating himselfe with the Princes of Italy, brought a suspicion upon himselfe, that hee aimed at the Empire. The chiefe actors with him in this conspiracy were the Bishops of *Magdeburg* and *Halberstad*, with some Dukes and Marquises. But he quickly overthrew their Forces by the help of *Rodolphus* of *Suevia*, and others. This *Rodolphus* being desirous to take up the differences, and end the war, interposed himselfe as a Mediator between the Emperour and them, but they rejecting all meanes of reconciliation, were apprehended and imprisoned, after-



*An. Christi* ward escaping out of prison, they grow more eager and fierce against the Emperor then before. *Otho* the Bavarian was not indeed in the battell, yet he was convicted of treason against the Emperours life, wherefore hee lost Bavaria: which caused him to raise new Forces against *Henry* out of Saxony and other places.

1073. Pope *Gregory* the seventh, called *Hildebrand* before, was chosen without the Emperours consent against the ancient lawes of election, *Henry* to bee revenged of this wrong, raiseth an Army, but hee was pacified by *Gregory* for the present, who not long after makes a decree, that henceforth the Emperour should have no hand in the Popes election, and withall cites *Henry* to make his appearance in the Court of Rome, to answer to such things as should bee objected against him, concerning his wicked life and simoniackall practises in permitting all Bishopricks and Church-dignities to be bought and sold. At this the Bishops of Germany stormed, but the Saxons were glad, who assist the Pope against *Henry*. Hee therefore to cleere himselfe repaires to Rome in the midst of Winter, that the sentence of excommunication against him might bee taken off. Hee was forced to stay from morning to evening bare-foot, and without any food before the Popes Palace, ere hee could bee admitted into his presence, which was not till the fourth day after, then being admitted, and sharply reproved by the Pope, hee is enjoyned to dismis his Army, to forbear meddling any more with the government of the Empire, or else to hold it of the Pope, and withall to call a Parliament. The more fierce was *Gregory* against him, because hee had called a Synod at Wormes: wherein *Gregory* was condemned of Simonie. To cleare himself of which he took the Sacrament, imprecating against himself sudden death, if hee were guilty of the crime of Simonie, and wishing the Emperour to doe the like, which he refused, affirming that he would make it appear in the Parliament, how he had discharged his duty in managing the Empire.

1080. But the Pope fearing lest *Henry* should gather strength again, and revenge the affronts put upon him, sends his Decree to bee proclaimed in Germany, whereby *Henry* is excommunicate, and by the instigation of the Saxons a crown of gold is sent to *Rodolphus* Duke of Suevia, with this inscription; *The rock gave to Peter, and Peter to Rodolphus the Diadem.* *Rodolphus* upon the persuasions of the Bishops of Mints and Colen, that hee was bound to obey the Pope and, not to keepe Faith to him who was excommunicate, accepts the Title of Cæsar, and is crowned at Mints, and so takes possession of the Empire, forgetting what favours hee had received heretofore from the Emperour. Then he prepares an Army against him, relying on his owne and the Saxons power, with whom joined divers Bishops and Dukes. But the Franks and others abhorring this perfidiousnesse, under Duke *Godefridus* *Bilionens* in the Emperours absence at Rome, raise an Army to defend his right. *Henry* understanding by the Bishop of Strasburg what was done, steales away out of Rome, sends a new Duke into Suevia, drives *Rodolphus* his Garrisons out of Mints, encounters with the Saxons in nine severall battells, in the fourth whereof *Rodolphus* is defeated, deadly wounded, and his arme cut off; which when it was presented to him as hee was dying, confessed that with this hand he had confirmed his faith to *Henry* which he falsified, and so accusing the Bishops for their wicked counsels, dyed. When it was told the Emperour that *Rodolphus* was richly intombed. *I envy not that honour to him* (saith he) *but wish that all my enemies were thus entombed.*

1084. *Rodolphus* being slaine *Henry* converts all his force and fury against the Pope, so from whom hee meant to recover his rights, which hee had invaded, but first hee calls a Synod at Brixia, wherein hee causeth *Gregory* to be excommunicate and deposed, and imprisoned in the Castle of St. Angelo, having named for his successour *Clement* Bishop of Ravenna: whom hee brought to Rome after two years siege, and there placed him being consecrated in the Pontificall chair, and was by the same Pope declared Emperour, and crowned with his wife *Bertha*. In this expedi-

*An. Christi* expedition *Henry* corrected the Normans for assisting the Pope. But the Saxons after *Rodolphus* his death renew their Forces, and make *Hermannus* Prince of Lorrain Emperour by the Popes command. He fought with *Henry*, and overcame him neere the towne of Wurceburg: but hee was quickly driven thence into Saxony, where he thought to renew the warre, but was forsaken by his souldiers. Hee at last by the fall of a gate which hee was besieging was slaine with many others. After him *Ecbert* Marquisse of Saxony invaded the Empire: but hee shortly after was slaine by *Henry*'s guard in a Mill, whither he had fled. Thus the fury of the Saxons was by so many bad successes somewhat abated, but the Popes indignation increased: for *Urban* the second, stirred up against *Henry*, his sonne *Conradus* by his first wife, who by his father had beene made Governour of Italy, but he being taken away by untimely death, *Paschalis* the second sets up his other sonne *Henry* against him whom his Father had named his successour in the Empire. Hee by the help of the Saxons, wrung the Empire from his Father, whom the Bishop of Mints in the presence of his sonne disgracefully devided of all his imperiall ornaments. But whilst the old man went about to raise new Forces to revenge this wrong, he dyed at Leodium the 56 yeare of his age, and the 49 of his reign, whose Body was not buried in 5 yeares space after his death, at last it was removed from Leodium to Spira, where it was intombd neer his Father. This war against *Henry* lasted 38 yeares from the time he went out of Rome till he dyed. He had two wives, by the first he had *Conradus*, who having marryed *Rogers* daughter of Normandy, called himself King of Italy, but shortly after dyed, and was buried at Florence He had another son *Henry* the fifth, who succeeded him.

In *Henry* the fourths time divers Bishops & Princes of Germany made an expedition into the Holy land, but with ill success, for most of them were destroyed by the Turks & Saracens, for of 7000 scarce 2000 returned home. In Spain *Anful* king of Galicia after some years siege took from the Saracens there greatest City Toledo, and there established the Christian Religion. This age produced the Carthusians by *Bruno* of Colen: and the Cisterians by *Robert* Abbat of Molisum: the old *Benedictines* were much degenerated from the rules of their Ancestors. We shewed before that the Normans had taken Apulia from the Greeks, *William* the son of *Tancredus* was the first Prince there; then *Drugo*, to whom succeeded *Huafred*. After him came *Robert* *Wiscardus*, who were all brothers: this *Robert* helped the Pope against the Emperour, and subdued Calabria with Sicily, whereupon *Gregory* the seventh excommunicated him, but afterward he submitted to the Pope, and was contented to hold these Provinces in fee of the Church, paying a yearly revenew to the Pope. The next year *Robert* with 15000 overthrew *Alexius* the Greek Emperours great Army of 100 and 70000. Hereupon *Alexius* for a great summe of money procures *Henry* the fourth to invade *Roberts* Territories, but he employes the money against Pope *Gregory* the seventh, whom he shuts up in prison, takes possession of the Palace of Lateran where he placeth *Guibert* the Anti-Pope. *Robert* returning with his Army, drives home the Emperour to Germany, punisheth the rebellious City, sets *Gregory* free, and brings him to Salernum where he dyed: shortly after followed the death of *Robert*, who left the Dukedomes of Calabria and Apulia to his son *Rogerius*.

About these times *Henry* by extraction a French man having marryed *Theresia* the daughter of *Alphonfus* the sixth King of Castile, with her got the Earldome of Lusitania or Portugall. He by his valour drove out and subdued the Saracens, and so obtained the principality of Lusitania, which was the beginning of the kingdom of Portugal: The Temple of the holy Sepulchre, which was demolished by Sultan *Calipha*, is rebuilt by the permission of *Daber* Caliph of Egypt, at the cost of *Monochus* and *Argyropilus*. The Vandals and Sclavi having killed *Gorsichalus* their Governour with all religious persons they revolt again to Paganism, which is now the third time. The Church service or Liturgy in Spain was compiled by *S. Leander*

*An. Christi* 1086. *Leander* and *S. Isidor* called *Moazarum* is changed by *Gregory* the seventh. One *Peter* an *Eremit*, and afterward a Captain in the Holy War, was the first that taught to pray upon beads. The Dukedome of Bohemia is now erected into a Kingdome: for *Vratislaus* because he subdued *Leopoldus* Marquiffe of Austria, is Kingdome: for *Mintz* declared King, and crowned by *Gilbert* Arch-bishop of Trevers. The Italians by the perswasion of Pope *Viktor* invaded Africa, where they killed 100000 Saracens, and overthrew their chief Cities. Abstinence from flesh on Saturdayes is enjoined by *Gregory* the seventh. The States of Venice and Genua contend for the mastery of the Sea, both of them having done good service for the Holy War. But at last the Venetians obtaine the totall command of the Sea. *Roger* Duke of Normandy was the first King of Sicily, Apulia and Calabria: to whom succeeded his sonne *William* surnamed the Wicked.

To Pope *Leo* the ninth succeeded *Viktor* the second, 2 years after him came *Stephen* the seventh, by some the 9, by others the 10, he was brother to *Goisfrid* of Lorrain. He being sent to Byzantium calls a Synod, at which because the Emperor and Patriarch would not be present the Cardinal departed, & with Apostolicall indignation, beat the dust from his Sandals, he was chosen Pope after this without the Emperors suffrage: and subjected the Church of Millant to the See of Rome, having been independent 200 yeares. He fate but 7 months, to him succeeded *Benedict* the ninth or tenth, who having fate 9 months, was thrust out by *Gerard* Bishop of Florence, called *Nicolas* the second, though some make these two distinct men. He caused *Berengarius* openly confesse that the true body of Christ was eaten in the Sacrament, which opinion was confirmed by *Lanfrancus*, who wrote Bookes to this purpose. He was Pope 3 yeares, to whom succeeded *Alexander* the second, who had been Bishop of Luca: against him was set up *Cadulus* Bishop of Parma, who comming twice to Rome with a great Army, thought to obtain the Pontificate by force, but could not. *Alexander* fate 11 yeares, his successeur was *Gregory* the seventh, who was Pope 12 yeares. He could shake fire out of his sleeves when hee was angry: he inhibited the marriage of Clergy men, which *Henry* the fourth commanded; in those dayes married Clerks were called Henrician hereticks. Against this *Gregory* *Henry* advanced to the chair one *Guibert* or *Gilbert*, assuming the name of *Clemens* the third, who was Pope (but not without opposition) 17 yeares: after him came *Viktor* the third, who fate one year, and then was poysoned, to whom succeeded *Urban* the second, who fate 13 yeares. He animated the western Princes to undertake the Holy War.

## CHAP. X.

The Eastern affaires under *Stratoticus*, *Ducas*, *Diogenes*, *Michael*, *Botoniates*, and *Alexius*. 2. The Holy War and Kings of *Ferusalem*, and new orders of Knighthood. 3. The affaires of *Cyprus*, *Portugall*, *England*, *Scotland*, and the Popes of this time.

1056. IN the Greek Empire to *Theodora* succeeded *Michael Stratoticus*, so called, because a meer souldier, being unskillfull in Government, and all things else; for which cause he was chosen by the Eunuchs of the Palace; that he bearing the title, they might in effect rule the Empire. But he slighting the souldiers, and Nobility, he being very aged, besides his want of skill, the Army chose *Isaacus* 50 *Comnenus* to be Emperour, against whom *Stratoticus* sends *Theodorus*, with an Army, but he was defeated by *Comnenus*, whereupon *Stratoticus* willing to make his peace, sends to assure *Comnenus* that he will make in his last Will him heir of the Empire, with which *Comnenus* seemed to be contented, till he saw that *Stratoticus* under hand did bribe the people and Nobility, to the end they would not give their consent to his election. Therefore *Comnenus* sends the Patriarch to degrade

degrade him, who as he was perswading *Stratoticus* to part willingly with the Empire, asked the Patriarch what reward he should have for leaving an earthly kingdome: he answered, that he should receive an heavenly for it: Upon this, hee resigned the Empire, having reigned one year, and then takes himself to a Monastical life. *An. Christi* 1057.

*Comnenus* succeeded, who first deposed the Patriarch that advanced him, then falls upon the Church revenues, to fill up his exhausted treasure. He made warre upon the Hungarians, and *Bosini*, and forced them to beg for peace. One time as he was hunting, he was so affrighted with the sight of an horrible Boare (which some thinke was an apparition) and with sudden lightning and thunder that he fell from his horse, after hee had reigned 2 yeares, and 3 months, and having resigned the Empire to *Constantine Ducas*, he betooke himself to a private life. *Ducas* was so covetous that to spare charges he disbanded a great part of his Army, and garrisons, giving thereby boldnesse to the neighbouring Nations to invade that little of the Empire which was left, whereupon the *Uzzi* a people of *Scythia*, being 60000 in number past over the *Isther*, and invaded *Macedonia* and *Greece*. *Ducas* being destitute of souldiers for want of pay, betakes himselfe to prayers and tears, by which armes God was overcome, who sent a plague among the *Uzzi*, which swept away most of them: the remnant were destroyed by the Bulgarians: 1059. these calamities were forewarned by an earthquake, which overthrew divers houses and Temples: there shined also a Comet as big as the Moon at the full, but as the Moon increased, this decreased and vanished. *Ducas* advanced *Johannes Xiphilinus* of *Trapezuntium* to the Patriarchate, affirming that he had rather obtain honor by scholars then by souldiers. Having reigned 7 yeares and 6 months, he dyed of a lingering disease in the 61 year of his reign: he recommended the Empire to his wife *Eudocia*, whom he caused to sweare that shee would never marry again, nor leave the Empire to any, except to his three sons, *Michael*, *Andronicus*, and *Constantine*. Shee therefore undertook the Government, but finding that the Empire was much weakened, and the enemies thereof increasing dayly, and that there were need of a stronger defender then her self, resolves to break her oath, and so marryeth 7 months after her husbands death with *Romanus Diogenes*, a good souldier, who became Emperour shortly after.

*Diogenes* against his promise made to *Eudocia*, excludes her out of the Government, and undertakes the Empire alone, that he might without opposition recover the honour of the Eastern Empire, almost lost, by reason the *Turkes* had invaded *Asia*, which they were like to carry cleer away having no Garrisons to resist them. Therefore he marcheth into *Asia* against the Forces of *Aspasales* Caliph of *Babylon*, whose seat was now in *Persis*, he by his Sultans had sent two Armies, one into *Cappadocia* which he wasted, the other into *Syria*: with these *Diogenes* encounters, defeats them, takes *Hierapolis* and *Alepus*, and seisseth on their plunder, which they had laid up in *Neocæsarea*. His next expedition was into *Cappadocia*, where he had divers encounters with the Barbarians, who by the help of the Armenians overthrew the greatest part of them. After this presuming on his good successe, he would needs fight with *Azan* the Sultan, who offered him honourable conditions of peace, but he rejected them. He fought stoutly with the *Turkes*, then towards the Evening returned into his Camp. *Andronicus* the brother of *Constantine Ducas*, supposing *Diogenes* had fled; withdrawes his Forces suddenly, and leaves him for a prey to his enemy: but hee perceiving how he was betrayed, resolves to fight again notwithstanding, which he did courageously, and killed many of the *Turkes*, but at last by the fall of his horse which was wounded, he was taken by the enemy and brought to the Sultan, who first trod upon his neck, and then commiserating his case, used him with all respect, and having made a league with him, after he had honoured him with divers rich presents, he lets him goe home, where hee found harder usage; for being hated by *Eudocia* and her children, in his absence, the Empire was conferred on *Michael* the eldest son of *Ducas*, who besieged *Diogenes* in *Adena*, then caused

*An. Christi* 1071. caused him to deliver up the towne, upon assurance that hee should receive no hurt, but *Michael* against his oath, thrust out his eyes, his head for want of good looking to putrified, and so he dyed, having reigned almost 4 years. To him *Michael* succeeded, whose surname was *Parapinacius* from *pinatium* the fourth part of *medymnus*, which was a measure equall almost to two of our bushels, because in his time was a great famine, in which this measure of corn was sold at a deer rate. A little before this famine was born a monster with Goats feet, and one eye in his forehead, upon which followed a great plague. This *Michael* gave himselfe more to study then to government, under *Pfellus* the Philosopher whose Arithmetick is yet extant; hence it came to passe that the Eastern Empire was ruled for want of a good Emperour. For the Turkes subdued all the countreys about Pontus, and erected a Kingdome, called yet *Turcomania*. Towards the West the Croats or *Heneti* overrun all the countrey even to *Byzantium*, and at last seated themselves in that part of *Illyris* or *Pannonia*, which of old was called *Liburnia* now *Croatia*. The *Crabats* or *Servians* infested *Bulgaria*. The Emperour being thus without a guide, *Nicephorus Botoniates*, who was descended of *Nicephorus Phocas*, enters into a league with the Turkes of Asia, and *Nicephorus Briennius* Duke of *Dyrrachium* sets up a new Kingdome in *Thracia*, *Botoniates* at the same time possesseth *Nicaea*. *Briennius* is overthrowne by *Rufinus Latinus*, wherefore *Botoniates* growing potent by the Turkes power, made *Michael* give up his Empire which he did willingly, and entred into a Monastery; with his wife *Mary*, hav'ng reigned almost 7 years. In the Patriarchat to learned *Xiphilinus* succeeded *Cosmus* a dunce.

1078. *Botoniates* succeeds in the Empire, who first of all suppresseth *Briennius* and kills him, then he defeats *Constantine Ducas*, the sonne of *Michael* whom the Army had proclaimed Emperour at *Chrysopolis*: but the brothers *Alexii* conspired against *Botoniates*, and by the help of the French besiege *Constantinople*, which having taken, they raged promiscuously upon all ages and sexes. Then they thrust *Botoniates* into a Monastery, after he had reigned 3 years. So the Empire is divided among the brothers. *Alexius* he had the imperiall title and power, his brother *Isaacius* by a new name is called *Sebastocrator*: the third called *Adrian*, is named *Protosebastos*, and the youngest *Sebastos*. These four divided also the revenues of the Empire amongst them, so that there were no means left for the Emperour to resist an enemy.

1196. *Alexius* wanting money fell to exactions and rapine, in stead of gold and silver coin, hee made use of brasse, yet would have all his taxes and tributes to be paid in gold. Neer *Epidamnum* he received a great overthrow by the Normans under Duke *Robert*. He lost the Islands of *Chius*, *Lesbus*, *Samus* and *Rhodes* to the Turkes, under their Captain *Zacchabus*, who also tooke from the Greekes *Crete* and *Cyprus*. *Alexius* also had warres with the *Bosini* who overthrew him, and made him buy his peace, by assigning them some lands to dwell in. He was also defeated by *Godefrid* of *Bullion* in his expedition into the Holy land: he lived 70 yeares, and reigned 37. a little before his death all his friends forsook him, so finding himself slighted, dyed with grief, having first named his son *John* Emperour. His body was buried without any solemnity: he was Co-Emperour with *Henry* the fourth.

In these Emperours time the Holy war was undertaken by *Godefrid* Duke of *Lorraine* with his brothers *Eustachius* and *Baldwin*, by *Robert* of *Normandy*, *Hugh* brother to *Philip* the French King, with divers others. *Peter* the *Eremit* had undertaken an expedition before this, but with ill successe, his Army, which consisted of 40000, came to nothing, for they were utterly destroyed by *Solyman* the Turk, after they had suffered much by the *Bulgarians*, in their march towards *Asia*; there were also before *Godefrids* two other Armies sent, these were defeated by the *Hungarians*: but *Godefrid* had better successe, who having sold his patrimony, the Dukedome of *Lorraine* to the Bishop of *Leodium*, spent it all upon this expedition, which he undertooke about the middle of August, and

*An. Christi* and arrived with his whole Army before the end of that year at *Constantinople*. He mustered his Army at *Chalcedon* now called *Scutari*, and found that it consisted of 60000 Foot, and 10000 horse, their badge was a red Crosse on their shoulder. The Turkes had subdued all from *Pontus* to the *Hellepont* in the space of 40 yeares; the Greekes and Saracens being driven out thence; and both the Caliphs of *Babylon* and *Egypt* much weakened, they had also subdued *Palestina*, and taken in *Jerusalem*: but this they did not enjoy above 8 yeares, for it was retaken again by the Saracens.

The first conflict the Christians had was at *Nicaea*, with *Solyman* the Turkish Sultan, and first of that name, whose great Army they overthrew, and after 26 dayes siege took the town, and in it the Sultan *Solymans* wife. In 4 yeares space they subdued *Lycaonia*, *Cilicia*, *Syria*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Comagena*, all the Turkes being either destroyed or fled: these victories so affrighted the Saracens, that the Calypha of *Egypt*, by Embassadors was glad to sue for peace. They besieged *Antioch* and after 9 months took it. But the Sultan *Belchior* sent another Army of Persians, who besieged the Christians within the City, so that they were pinched with famine; the Greek Army sent by *Alexius* to raise the siege, durst not venture upon so numerous an Army of Saracens, wherefore the western Christians within perceiving they were in a desperate condition made a furious sally upon the enemy, whom they routed and put to the flight. The Saracens lost here above 100000; but the Christians shortly after this victory lost 50000 by the plague; at last they besiege *Jerusalem* now in the Saracens possession; and after 38 dayes siege took it, not without much difficulty, for they were so famished, that they went praying for 8 dayes together bare footed about the walls, and at length were animated to fall on again by a glittering Target which they saw in the air over Mount *Sion*. The City being taken, and so much blood shed, that it came up to the horses knees, *Godefrid* who first scaled the walls, was by generall consent made King, but he would neither take the Title nor Crowne in that place, where our Saviour had been crowned with Thornes, where hee had suffered death, and so much dishonour; yet there he established the foundation of a new Kingdome, which the Saracens possessed about 360 yeares.

*Baldwin* the Kings brother was now in possession of *Cilicia*, *Comagena*, and *Mesopotamia*, and was honoured with the Title of Earl of *Edessa* which is a City in *Comagena* called *Rages* in *Tobias's* History, at this day it is named *Orpha*. *Tancredus* nephew to *Guiscardus* by his sister, obtained the Government of *Tiberias*. *Boemundus* Prince of *Tarentum*, who was one of the undertakers of this expedition, got the government of *Antioch*: But this yeare proved fatal to many Princes, for *Godefrid* King of *Jerusalem* dyed, having reigned one year. *Boemundus* Duke of *Antioch* was taken by the Turkes, whom *Tancredus* Earl of *Tiberias* succeeded. *William Rufus* King of *England* was killed by chance. *Henry* of *Lovan* was slain in running a tilt. *Britislans* King of *Bohemia* was murdered by a high way robber as he was returning from hunting.

To King *Godefrid* succeeded his brother *Baldwin* Earle of *Edessa*. He by the help of the Fleet of *Genua* took *Casarea* of *Palestine*, *Ptolemais*, *Tripolis*, and *Berythus*, with other townes, the third part of which is assigned to the *Genuans*. *Apamea* also and *Laodicea* townes of *Syria*, were taken about that time, and so was *Carrae* of *Mesopotamia* by *Boemund* (who had beene ransomed) and *Tancredus*. But they lost it again, whilst they were striving for the superiority of it. Hereupon *Boemund* returns to *Italy*: but having married with *Constantia* the daughter of *Philip* King of *France*, he returns to *Antioch*. *Robert* Earl of *Flandres* with *Eustachius* the Kings brother, goe back again to their owne countries. *Baldwin* having taken the Isle *Pharos* in *Egypt*, after he had reigned 18 yeares dyed.

To him succeeded his cousin *German Baldwinus de Burgo*: in his time was instituted

*An. Christi* 1190. instituted the order of the Knights of St. *John* of Jerusalem, afterward of Rhodes: these were to wait upon the King in his expeditions against the common enemy, to defend and enlarge the bounds of Christianity; to cleare all the wayes of Pilgrims to Jerusalem from thieves and robbers. These did good service whilest they were assisted by Christian Princes, but being forsaken by them, they were forced to give up Rhodes to the Turke, and to containe themselves within the small confines of Malta. After them sprung up two other Orders of sacred Knight-hood: to wit, the Templars and Teutonicus, the Templars had one *Hugo De Paganiis*, and *Gaufred* for there Authours: these seated themselves in Jerusalem, and were to guard the pilgrims from the Sea side to Jerusalem, and back againe. But in proceesse of time they dispersed themselves into all parts of Christendome, aiming at nothing but wealth, greatnesse, and luxury, being quite degenerate from their first institution; so that the Christian Princes having aforehand plotted their destruction did suddenly at once extirpate them, after they had continued about 200 yeares, in the reigne of *Henry* the seventh Emperour. The chiefe Master of this Order had his seat at Jerusalem. The Teutonicus from their profession and Symbole were called Marians, their beginning was at Ptolemais in the time of *Henry* the sixth Emperour, where certaine rich Citizens of Lubec and Breme built a large Hospitall for strangers who should be of that Order; from thence plantations were derived into Germany; their first Master was one *Henry Walpodius*. These Colonies growing numerous and wealthy, in the time of *Frederic* the second, subdued Prussia and Livonia, and kept out the barbarous Nations from these parts: but when these Knights grew loose, effeminate, and carelesse, Prussia and Livonia were torne from the Empire. King *Baldwin* having defeated the Turkes at Damascus, and the Saracens of Egypt, and taken in Tyrus, dyed in the 13 yeare of his reign.

*Baldwin* being dead, the Princes fell at variance among themselves, which increased the strength and courage of their enemies. *Fulco* son in law to *Baldwin* is made king, in whose time there was nothing but civill jarres about the principality of Antioch: he having reigned 11 yeares dyed at Ptolemais, by a fall from his horse in hunting, leaving two young sons *Baldwin* and *Almericus*.

*Baldwin* was assisted by *Conradus* the Emperour by land, and *Lewis* the French King by Sea. But *Conradus* having lost his Army in the siege of Damascus and Afcalon returns home. *Baldwin* having at last taken Afcalon, dyed at Berythus the 24 yeare of his reigne: to whom succeeded his brother *Almericus*, he invaded Egypt, and fought with *Saracon* the Sultan, who had driven the Caliph out of Egypt. Hee had warres also with his successour *Saladin*, but with no successe. *Almericus* dyed the 12 yeare of his reigne, leaving a young son *Baldwin*, who being leprous, and despairing of ever having children, made *Baldwin* sonne of *William* Marquise of Montferrat, his sisters sonne, his successour, whom *Guido* his Father in law poysoned, that hee with his wife *Sibylla* might obtaine the Kingdome, whereupon *Raimundus* the young Kings tutor made warre against *Guido*, hee to strengthen his cause drawes *Saladine* out of Egypt, which was the overthrow of that kingdome of Jerusalem, for hee took upon surrender Ptolemais, 1187. *Afotus*, Berythus, and Afcalon: and after one moneths siege Jerusalem, 88 yeares after it was taken by *Godefrid*.

*Sibylla* with her foure children were killed in the tumult; her sister *Isabella* the wife of *Humfredus Toronius* was carryed away by *Conradus* Marquise of Montferrat, hoping in her right to obtaine the kingdome: but hee was murdered, and *Henry* Earle of Campania and Lord of Tyrus, married with *Isabella*, but refused the title of King of Jerusalem, because *Guido Lusignans* a French man laid claime to it in the right of *Sibyllas* children, whose Father in law hee was. He helped *Richard* King of England with money when he was about to recover the Christians losses in Asia, and for this mony Cyprus was pawned or sold to *Guido*, after *Richard* had seized on the Island and had taken *Alexius Comnenus* prisoner. His posterity held Cyprus till the death of *Jacobus Lusignans*, the

the last King, and then it came into the possession of the Venetians. For his Widow being a Venetian borne, and too weake to buckle with the power of the Turkes, resigned it to the Venetians: who held it almost 100 yeares paying a yearly tribute of 40000 Crownes to the Egyptian, and after to the Turkish Sultan. But they lost it to *Mustapha* Generall of the Turkes under *Selymus* the second: As for the Kingdome of Jerusalem, *John De Breen* was the last Christian King thereof in Syria or Palestine, whose daughter *Teolant* married to *Fredric* Emperour and King of Naples, who in her right called himself King of Jerusalem, which title the King of Spain retaines as being King of Naples.

In this Holy Warre the Venetians, Genuans, and Pisans did much good service by Sea, and enriched themselves with the spoils of Syria: the Genuans commanded the *Egean*, *Bosphorus*, *Hellepont*, *Thracian* and *Euxin* Sea; the Venetians were masters of *Crete*, *Peloponnesus*, the *Cyclades*, *Thessalonica*, and *Isles* of the *Ionian* Seas; these two States having oppressed the Pisans, contended long about the mastery of the Sea with various successe, till at last at *Methon* the Genuans were overthrowne, and so the Venetians became absolute Masters.

About this time began the Kingdome of Portugal in *Alphonfus* the sonne of *Henry* Earle of Lorrain. This *Henry* married with *Taresia* the daughter of *Alphonfus* the sixth king of Spain, who took *Toletum* from the Saracens. *Henry* obtained Portugall for his wifes portion, whose sonne *Alphonfus* was content at first with the Title of Duke: but having subdued the Saracens, hee was saluted King by the souldiers. The Monastery of *Clarevall* was erected and *S. Barnard* made the first Abbot thereof, *S. Agnes* instituted her Order of Nuns at Jerusalem. *Otho* Bishop of Bamberg converted Pomerania to the Faith.

In England King *Harald* was assailed by his younger brother *Toustain* and *Harfager* King of Norway, both by Sea and Land; but these both were slaine, and *Harald* obtained the victory. Shortly after *William* Duke of Normandy, pretending a right to the Crowne of England, by the last Will of King *Edward* his kinsman, landed in Suffex, where a bloody battell was fought, in which *Harold* was slaine, and with him almost 61 thousand English; and so ended the Saxon line, about 500 yeares after the first comming in of *Hengist*. *William* was received into London and crowned on Christmas day at Westminster by *Aldred* Archbishop of York, the next spring *William* returns to Normandy to settle his affaires there, and takes with him the chiefe of the English Nobility: fearing lest they might revolt in his absence. Upon his return there were divers discontents and rebellions at Exeter, Oxford, and chiefly in the North, the Nobility being discontented with *Williams* bounty towards the French: but hee subdued them all, and defeated also afterward another rebellion in the Isle of Ely. Prince *Edgar Williams* competitor, with many of the English Nobility were fled to Scotland, who were protected by King *Malcolin*: whereupon *William* with a puissant Army enters Scotland, where both Kings conclude a peace. *Edgar* submits, and is restored to grace, and a faire maintenance. *Roger Fitz-Auber* with many others conspire against *William*; but the fire was discovered before the flame broke out, and so the plot vanished; after this the king in the 13 yeare of his reign subdues Wales. In Normandy his son *Robert* rebels against him, which drew *William* over thither with an Army, *Robert* lying in ambush with 2000 men, fell upon the King, defeated his Forces, unhorsed the King himselfe, and wounded him in the arme, but hee was cured at Rouen; and reconciled to his sonne, who rebels the second time: and upon his fathers arrivall, submits againe to him at Burdeaux: but *William* brings him into England, and employes him against the Scots: for now the league was broken betwene the two kings. After this his sonne *Henry*, and *Louis* the French kings eldest sonne fell out at Chesse, and wounded each other; which occasioned a Warre betwene the two Fathers:

168  
An. Christi the French with *Robert* invade Normandy, *VWilliam* enters France, and at Rouen is reconciled the third time to his sonne *Robert*: a short peace was made, which was quickly broken: for *VWilliam* refuseth to doe homage for the kingdome of England, though hee was content for Normandy. The French king mocking him for his great belly, made *VWilliam* enter France againe, where at Mantz he was hurt, and thence conveyed sick to Rouen, and so ended his Warre. *VWilliam* changed the lawes, and puts them in French, altered the tenures: but the customes of Kent were preserved by the mediation of the Archbishop *Stigand*. Hee seized on all the Forrests and Chases of the kingdome. Hee dis-peopled for 30 miles space the countrey of Hamshire on to the Sea coast, and made it a Forrest. Hee seized upon the Plate, Jewels, and Treasures of the Monasteries, pretending that the rebells had hid their wealth there as in privileged places: he relied much upon the advice of *Lanfranc* an Italian born, and Archbishop of Canterbury, he dyed at Rohan the 74 yeare of his age, and 21 of his reigne: his Corps lay three dayes neglected, till his youngest sonne *Henry* had it conveyed to the Abbey of Cane, where it could not bee interred, untill the ground wherein hee lay was purchased. To *Robert* his eldest sonne hee lett the Dukedome of Normandy, to *VWilliam* his third sonne England; to *Henry* the youngest, his treasure with an yearely pension: his second sonne *Richard* was slaine by a stagge in the Forrest; where *VWilliam* the second also was slaine by an arrow, and *Richard* the sonne of *Robert* Duke of Normandy broke his neck. Hee erected seven Abbeyes of Monkes, and 6 of Nuns, besides his munificence to 9 Abbies & 1 Nunnery in Normandy. In England he founded one Abbey where he fought his first battell, and two Nunneries, one at Hinchin-brooke in Huntingdonshire, and the other at Armthewr in Cumber-land.

land.  
1087. William the second succeeded, who was faine to make an agreement with his elder brother Robert, who challenged the Crowne in right of Primogeniture, by paying to him 3000 Markes per annum. Odo Bishop of Bayeux, with divers of the Nobility, conspire against William, and invites Robert into England, but the King by ingratiating the people to him, and by granting them many freedoms, disappointed the plot, takes in divers Forts, which his enemies had possessed against him, and transports an Army into Normandy, where hee tooke many places from Robert, though assisted by the French: at last a peace is made betwene them, that the Survivor of either of them should succeed to the rule both of England and Normandy. After this William assists Robert, against his brother Henry, who had taken the Fort of Mount Michel, for not repayment of the money which Henry had lent Robert against William: the King was like to have been taken prisoner, as hee was alone on the Sea shoare near the Fort, had not rescue come the sooner, for his horse being lost, hee defends himselfe with the saddle 40 from the darts shot at him: at last Henry is reconciled with his brothers, and was allowed to hold in mortgage the Countrey of Constantine, till the money was payed: but when the day came, for want of payment Robert is imprisoned, and forced to renounce the Countrey of Constantine. This was after Roberts returne from Scotland, who was employed there against Malcolme. After this Robert raiseth Forces to recover the Castle of Dampfront in Normandy taken by Henry, and inveighes against William for underhand dealing, but he passeth over with an Army into Normandy, and sees the French King to forbear aid to Duke Robert. Hee thereupon made his peace with William: who upon his return made warre upon Scotland, and Wales; in Wales the Earle of Shrewsbury 50 used much cruelty, but was afterward shot in the eyes, and tumbled into the Sea. Robert of Mouberry raised a sedition against William which was by his diligence soon ended. Robert being dead in the Holy expedition, King William obtains Normandy, and so became more insolent, laying heavy taxes on his people, keeping Bishopricks vacant, that hee might receive their revenues, taking money of the Jewes, and selling all spirituall preferments, which hee profusely spent on

on buildings, and on the French to keep them quiet; he makes another expedition into Normandy against *Conte de la Fleche*, who had surpris'd the City of Mains; him he takes prisoner, and after releases him: at last he was shot by *Walter Terrell* a Norman in the new Forrest, being 43 years old, and having reigned 12 years.

In Scotland *Milcolin* or *Milcolumbus* surnamed *Canmore*, reigned. He brought in the titles of Dukes, Marquisses, Earles, Barons and Knights. The Nobility before were called Thanes. He entertained Prince *Edgar* with his mother and sisters, and divers of the English Nobility, which fled to him from the tyranny of *William* the Conquerour. He married *Margaret* eldest sister to *Edgar*: then many English planted themselves in Scotland. In the midst of Stanmore was erected a Crosse of stone called *Recrosse* or *King-crosse*, with the King of Englands statue and armes on the one side, and the King of Scotland on the other. This Crosse divided the two kingdomes. He erected the Churches of Durham and Dunfermling. He delivered *Edgar* to *William*, but upon honourable terms. He was threatned with a civill warre at home by the Moravians, Rossians, Cathanians and Islanders; but the quarrell was composed by the mediation of the Clergy. The insurrection in Galloway was suppressed by one *Valter*, whom for his good service the King made chief Steward of Scotland: whence the surname of *Stewarts* was its originall. He erected two Bishopricks, to wit, of Murry and Cathness. He abolished that barbarous law of *Eugenius*, which authorised the new married Brides to prostitute their Virginity to their Lords. As *Malcolme* was besieging Anwik Castle which *William Rufus* had surpris'd, hee was slain by one *Robert Mowbray*, who delivering the Castle keyes to the King on the point of his lance, runne him through the eye; hereupon *Mowbray* was called *Percie*, of whom are the Earles of Northumberland. Prince *Edward* in revenging his Fathers death was also slain; this double losse was the cause of queen *Margarets* death. He reiged 36 years, his body with his sons were translated from the Abbey of Tinnmouth, to the Church of Dunfermling.

30 At Ronie to *Umbro* the second, succeeds *Paschalis* the second, who sate 18 years: he called a Councel at Lateran: in which he anathematizeth *Henry* the fourth; another Councell he calleth at Florence against *Fluentinus* Bishop thereof, for holding that Antichrist was then borne. He caufed *Henry* the fifth, in his Fathers life time call a Synod at Northufen in Thuringia against Simony and the married Clergy. The Synod called at Treccassina in France, was called by *Paschalis* for the same end, he calls also another Synod at Lateran, in which he excommunicates *Henry* the fifth, for meddling with investitures of Bishops. In *Paschalis* his time were 3 schismaticall Popes.

## С H A P. X I.

2. *The Eastern under Calojohannes. 3. The affairs of France, Spain, England, Scotland, Denmark, &c. with the Popes of those times.*

50 **H**enry the fourth being dead, but not buried (for his body by the Popes command, lay five yeares without sepulture) *Henry* the fifth, his sonne succeeded. Hee first punisheth *Henry* Duke of Lorrain, *Robert* Earle of Flanders, with Colen, Norinburg, and some other cities, who were faithfull to *Henry* the fourth: then he assits *Almus* King of Hungary against *Coleman*. Shortly after hee made war upon the Polonians, for denying to pay the accustomed tribute to the Emperour; but the Bohemians his Auxiliaries falling off from him, he lost the battell, and was forced to give off the siege of Glo-

Q 2

gove





*An. Christi* the Popes Hierarchy, the other his Doctrine, which Schoole doctrine was compiled afterward in *Frederic* the firsts time by *Lombard*, called the Master of the Sentences, on whom *Thomas*, *Scotus*, and innumerable Schoolemen have commiened. *Lotharius* had by his wife *Rixa* one sonne, who dyed young, and two daughters, the one he married to *Henry* the proud Duke of *Bavaria*, to whom he gave *Saxony*, the other he bestowed on *Louis* the bearded Earl of *Turingia*.

1060.

In France to *Hugh Capet* succeeded his sonne *Robert*, who built many Churches and Monasteries: he reigned after his Fathers death 36 years: to him succeeded his sonne *Henry* the first, who placed *William* the bastard sonne to of *Robert* Duke of *Normandy* in his Fathers inheritance, having slain 30000 Normans, he dyed the 28 year of his reign, whose sonne *Philip* a child succeeded, *Baldwin* Earle of *Flanders* was his Governour. He was excommunicate by Pope *Urban*, for repudiating his wife, and marrying another, but two yeares after, he was absolved and reconciled, he reigned 49 yeares; to him succeeded *Louis* the sixth surnamed the *Grosse*: for some difference between him and the Archbishop of *Rhemes*, he would be anointed at *Orleans*, and crowned by the Bishop of *Senon*. He saw 5 Popes in France, to wit, *Urban*, *Paschalis*, *Gelasius*, *Calixtus*, and *Innocent*. He reigned 30 yeares, the Monastery of *Clarevall* was erected in his time, the first Abbat whereof was *S. Bernhard*.

1108.

1137.

*Alphonfus* the seventh was called Emperour of *Spaine*, by his death the kingdomes of *Legio* and *Castile* were divided in his two sonnes *Sauctius* and *Ferdinandus*, in his time the Arabians in *Spaine* called *Almohades*, would suffer no Christians to live amongst them under pain of death. The ninth generall Councell, and first among the Latines called the *Lateran* of 900 Bishops and Priests was held, about the recovering of the Holy Land from the Saracens and *Turkes*. The Synod of *Rhemes* was summoned by *Gelasius* and held by *Calixtus* against *Simony*, in this the Emperour was excommunicate. And councell also was held at *Neapoli* in *Samaria* for reforming of Manners. *Louis* is excommunicate by *Stephen* bishop of *Paris*, for invading the Churches rights. After which hee lived not long, besides he lost his sonne *Philip* as hee was riding through *Paris* in his regall ornaments, by a fall from his horse, by which he dyed suddenly. One *Tandemus* authour of the *Adamites*, seduced many people at *Antwerp*, against whom was set up *Norbertus* bishop of that place, who was authour of that order which was called *Premom stratenfis*, from the place where hee retired him selfe. In a Synod held in France, it was ordained that the Knights *Templars* should weare a white cloak, of which order there were not at first above nine; but in the space of 50 yeares they grew to be 300; abounding in wealth, besides innumerable inferiour brethren, which they called servants; their office was to defend the high-ways and pilgrims towards or from *Jerusalem*, as the Knights of *Saint John* were to provide lodgings and use hospitality.

1060.

In the East to *Alexius Comnenus* whilest he was yet alive succeeded his sonne *Calojoannes*, a better and greater man then his Father, for hee subdued the *Turkes* in *Asia*, the *Scythians* and *Tartars* in *Europe*, who had swarmed like *Locusts* into *Thracia* and *Macedonia* in time of *Alexius Comnenus*. These *Calojoannes* drove out, he suppressed also the *Huns* neer *Belgradum*: a place famous for the slaughter of the French by the *Hungarians*, as they were marching towards the Holy Land. He sent Embassadors to congratulate *Lotharius* his victory against *Rogerius*, whom he drove out of *Apulia*. He afterward entred into league with *Conradus Suevus*. He was a rich Prince in money; therefore bought *Antioch* for a great summe from *Raimund* Prince thereof, finding some resistance as he went to take possession, hee wasted *Syria*: he tooke *Sosopolis* the strong City of *Pamphilia* by a stratagem, causing his men to ride as necre as they could to the *Workes*, and let sic their arrowes at the *Garrison*, and then to runne away towards

towards the *Woodes*, purposely to toll the *Garrison* from their strong hold, which was done accordingly, and so the *Grecians* wheeling about entred the Towne. He tooke *Castamon* from the *Perfarmerians*, and returned with triumph to *Byzantium*, but this happineffe lasted not long, for shortly after *Tanismanus* the Turk, and then *Mahumet* recovered what they had lost, and *Gangra* to boot with the strong City *Pontus*: at last, as hee was hunting of the wilde Boare in *Cilicia*, he hurt his left hand with one of the poysoned arrowes which fell out of his quiver, whereby it gangrened, and his whole body was infected, so he dyed the 25 yeare of his reigne.

10 The Physitians would have had his hand cut off, but hee refused, saying, One handed *Cesar* was not fit to governe the World. He had four sonnes, two dyed before him, of the other two, he chose *Mannuel* the younger, to succede him, finding *Isancius* the elder of too harsh and fierce a nature to governe. About this time dyed *John a Stampis*, who had lived above 360 yeares, for he was a souldier under *Charles* the Great, and dyed under *Louis* the *Grosse*.

In England *Henry* the first surnamed *Beaucherke* for his learning, the youngest sonne of *William* the first, was crowned after his brothers death, *Robert* being then in *Apulia*: hee recalls *Anselme* Archbishop, furnisheth the vacant Bishopricks with fit men, relieves the Laity of their pressures, and punisheth the Ministers for their exactions. *Ralph* Bishop of *Durham* is imprisoned for his evill counsells to the late King: the Court is reformed, the lights in the night are restored, which were forbidden by *William* after the coverfen bell. He married *Maude* daughter to *Margaret* late Queen of *Scots*, and Neece to *Edward Atheling*: but *Robert* having returned into *Normandy*, arrives at *Portsmouth* with a strong Army to recover the Crowne: the Armies being ready to encounter, for avoiding blood a peace was concluded, that *Henry* should be King during his life, paying to *Robert* 3000. markes per annum. 2. That *Robert* surviving should succeed.

30 3. That all *Robert's* friends should bee pardoned. After *Robert's* departure *Henry* assumes the investitures of Bishops; which *Anselmus* opposed; *Henry* sends to the Pope *Paschalis* to let him know the collation of church dignities was derived to him from his predecessours. *Anselme* opposeth the Ambassadors at *Rome*, wherefore hee is banished: but by the Popes perswasions *Anselme* is restored, and the King forbears to meddle with the Church. In the interim *Robert de Belesme* Earle of *Salisbury* fortifies his Castles, and combines with the Welch against the King, but in 30 dayes his castles were retaken, and his complices scattered, and the Earle banished into *Normandy*, where combining with *William* Earle of *Mortaigne*, he commits many outrages, *Robert* conniving at the same, and afterward joining with these Earles, raised Forces against King *Henry*, who being invited over by the Normans weary of *Robert's* oppressions, and encouraged by Pope *Paschalis*, fights against his brother and defeats him; then brings *Robert* prisoner to England, commits him to the castle of *Cardiffe*, where hee lived 26 yeares, his eyes were put out for attempting an escape: so *Henry* after his brothers death became absolute Duke of *Normandy*: hee kept good correspondency with *Scotland*, and *France*, hee sent into *Wales* a colony of *Flemmings*, which much infested this countrey: he had some debate with the Earle of *Flanders*, about the payment of a pension, which the Earle claimed, but the debate was more verball then reall. But after this *Lewis* the *Grosse*, had some quarrels with him about the Dutchy of *Normandy*, which was intertained by the quarrell between the Pope, and *Henry* the fifth Emperour. The King of England having married *Maude* his daughter to him, animates him against the French, who supported the Pope against him; but by the mediation of the French King *Louis*, the Emperour submits to the Pope: all differences are taken up betweene them and *Louis*; so that the King of England was disappointed, yet

*An. Christi* yet hee continues his quarrell with *Louis*; for procuring *Fulke* Earle of *Angeou* to seize upon the countrey of *Mayne*, and animating *Baldwin* as is said against him for with holding his Pension which was paid by the conqueror onely to *Baldwin* the fifth Earle of *Flanders* during his life; and was upon courtesie continued by succeeding kings. But *Henry* beat the French, and at last they were reconciled. After this the Welsh rebelled, and were subdued by him: but hee was much afflicted for the losse of *William* the young Prince, who was drowned returning to England, with many persons of honour, and their attendants to the number of 140, besides 50 Mariners. After this the Emperour being dead, *Henry* marryes his daughter *Maudd* to *Geffery Plantagenet* the sonne of *Foulke*, Earle of *Aniou*, by whom shee had three sonnes, *Henry* who was King after *Stephen*, *Geffery* and *William*. The first Parliament *Henry* established in *Salisbury* consisting of the three Estates: about 5 yeares after the death of *Anselme*. *Ralph* Bishop of *Rochester*, is made Archbishop by the King, and gives him his investiture, but *Thurston* the Kings Chaplaine, who was designed for *Yorke*, refuseth to sweare obedience to *Canterbury*, appeales to the Pope, who absolves him, invests him, and gives him the Pall: the king is forced to submit in this also to the Pope: at last having reigned 35 yeares, he surfeted on a Lamprey, and dyed, he was buried in the Abby of *Reading*, which he had founded. He erected two Bishopricks of *Ely* and of *Carlisle*: and founded the Monasteries of *Cirester*, *Reading* and *Shyrborne*. Hee compounded with Priests for annuall Pensions to keep their wives. He levied but two taxes on his people, the one was to maintain his wars against France, the other to preferre his daughters marriage with the Emperour: in him ended the issue males of the Conqueror. He built the manor of *Woodstock*, and inclosed the Park with a stone wall.

In Scotland *Malcolme* being dead, the Crowne was usurped by *Donald*, who was assisted for that end by the king of *Norreway*; which so exasperated the people, that they sent for *Duncan Malcolmes* sonne out of England, upon whose approach *Donald* fled, being forsaken by his people, the sixth moneth after hee had invaded the kingdome. Neither did *Duncan* continue long, for his government was so harsh that hee was hated by his people; upon which *Donald* got *Makpender* Earle of *Mermes* to murder him, and then returning from banishment, invaded the Crowne againe, but in the third yeare of this second invasion hee was taken and imprisoned, where he first lost his eyes, then his life. To this *Donald Malcolmes* brother succeeds *Edgar Malcolmes* sonne, who lived peaceably 9 yeares, he built the Monastery of *Coldingam*, who dying without issue, his brother *Alexander* succeeded. This king in the very beginning of his reign, was assaulted by an Army of the discontented youth of the kingdom, whom he defeated near the river of *Spæa*. Afterward hee was assaulted in the night as he was asleep, by some assassins, who were let in by one of the groomes of his bed-chamber, but he suddenly awaked, flew to his sword, killed the groom, and six of the assassins, and so hotly persued the rest, that few of them escaped. After this delivery he built the Church of *St. Michael* at *Scone*. Having also escaped drowning in a storme, he erected a Church to *St. Columbus*, and enriched the Church of *St. Andrews*. He dyed without issue, to whom succeeded his brother *David*, who gave himself to building and repairing of Churches and Monasteries, he built Holy rood house, with 9 other Abbeyes, and two Nunneries, one at *Carlisle*, the other at *Berwick*, and two Abbeyes near *New-Castle*. To the 6 former Bishopricks, he added four more, to wit, *Ross*, *Breichin*, *Dunkeld*, and *Dunblane*, allowing them large revenues out of the Crowne Lands, by which hee impoverished his successors. Hee possessed *Huntington*, besides *Northumberland*, *Cumber* and *Westmerland*. Hee walled *Carlisle*: and had some quarrels with king *Stephen* of England, which were shortly after composed. *Maudd* the Emperesse sent her sonne *Henry* (who succeeded *Stephen* afterward) to receive the order of knighthood from king *David* his great Uncle, whose eldest sonne Prince *Henry* of Scotland

Scotland dyed, to the great griefe of the kingdome, his eldest sonne *Malcolme David* caused to bee declared Prince of Scotland, and made *William* his second sonne Earle of *Northumberland*: at last *David* dyed the 29 yeare of his reign.

In Rome to *Paschalis* who fate 18 yeares, succeeded *Gelasius* the second one yeare, *Berdinus* called *Gregory* the eight was Anti Pope. To *Gelasius* succeeded *Calixtus* the second five yeares: his successor was *Honorius* the second five yeares: his Anti-Pope was *Celestinus* the second. To *Honorius* succeeded *Innocent* the second 14 yeares. When hee came into France, the Parisian Jewes presented to him the Volume of the Law wrapped up in a rich cover of cloth; to whom hee said: Almighty God, remove the vail from your hearts: He annoints at Remes *Louis* the younger King of France.

## CHAP. XII.

1. A briefe History of Egypt from Augustus, till the Turkish conquest.
2. The western affaires under Frederick Barbarosse.
3. Divers passages of Italy, Germany, and Denmark, and the other Holy Warre.
4. Divers occurrences, and the Popes of these times, with some passages of Tartaria.

After Egypt had been subdued by *Augustus Cæsar*, it remained subject to the Romans till the Empire was translated to Greece, and then it was under the Greek Emperour till being weary of their oppressions, they called in the Saracens, whose Calipha they chose for their Governour, and so shaked off the Græcian yoke; this Caliph was descended from *Mahomet* the Impostour, and different both in Government and profession from that other Caliph of Babylon. The last Caliph of Egypt being much troubled by *Almericus*, who in the kingdome of *Ierusalem* succeeded *Baldwin*, craved aid from the Sultan of Syria, who sent thither *Sarraco* with an Army which overthrew *Almericus*, and drove the Christians quite out of Egypt, this being done he suddenly seized upon the Caliph, whom he imprisoned, and dashed out his brains, and then makes himself king of Egypt, to whom succeeded *Saladin* his nephew by his brother. He overthrew the Christians in Syria and Palestine, and brought their kingdom of *Ierusalem* to nothing. To him succeeded his brother, whose posterity reigned till *Melechala*; he finding his best and oldest souldiers almost quite extinct by reason of his continuall wars with the Christians, and not daring to confide in the treacherous and effeminate Egyptians, buyes of the Tartars, who had lately broke into Asia through the Caspian Straights, and had subdued the Cappadocians, where of old dwelt the Colchi, Iberi, and Albani along the Euxin Sea (at this day they are named Mengrellins, Georgians, and Siberians) he buyes I say of the Tartars their captive slaves, transports them into Egypt, & trains them up in Military discipline, by their help he overcame *Levois* the French king at *Damitia*, in Egypt, which was the old *Helopolis* or *Pelusium*, takes him prisoner, and destroyes his brother *Robert*, with his Forces, who was got farther into Egypt, for this good service *Melechala* chose out of them a guard for his own body, but not long after he was murdered, by this new guard, who seized on the kingdome after it had been possessed by the posterity of *Sarraco* about 100 yeares.

These slaves having now made themselves kings, chose Alcair of old called Memphis or Babylon, for the seat of their kingdome: the country out of which they came is now called Cercassia, the inhabitants are of the Greek Religion with the Muscovites and Raxolans, their children were wont to be sold, and by Merchants transported by Sea to Alexandria, and thence to Memphis, where abjuring

*An. Christi* juring Christian Religion, they were sent to schoole to be instructed in the Mahumets Religion, and then were trained up in Military affaires, and so were employed in the wars, which custome the Turkes learned, in making of their Janiaries: these were called Mamaluchs, which signifieth circumcised. None were admitted either to the regall or equestrall dignity in Egypt, but those that were thus born, and educated, so that neither the Mamaluchs children did inherit their fathers equestrall, nor the Sultans children the regall honor. The first slave that obtained the kingdom was *Turquemenius*, he was intituled the Sultan, and so were all the succeeding Kings, as before they were called Caliphs. This new Sultan released King *Lewis* from his imprisonment, and grew so insolent and imperious over his fellow slaves, that he was murdered by *Cothus*, who for this fact was saluted king by the Army of slaves, and was after he had overcome the Tartars, slain by *Bendocader*, who succeeded. He drove the Christians out of Syria, and recovered Antioch. After he had much wasted Armenia, he was poisoned at Damascus. *Melechsaït* succeeded, whom *Elpis* thrust out of his throne and murdered. He took from the Christians Tripolis, Sidon, Beritus, and Tyre and razed them, so made them unusefull for the Christians, he was murdered by one of his guard in the camp, his successor *Melechseraph*, or *Vstrepheus* tooke Ptolemais the last Christian towne, and razed it to the ground. He was murdered by his guard, as he was hunting, to him succeeded *Melechusar*, and after this *Melechadel*, with divers others, till *Caithbeius*, whose names are scarce known, much lesse their actions. This *Caithbeius* was a great scourge to the Turkes under *Bajuzet* the second, whom he overthrew in two great battels, his sonne *Mahomet* succeeded contrary to their custome, therefore he was deposed, and upon this arose divers factions in the Court: so that in three years were five Sultans, the two last were *Campson*, *Gaurus*, who reigned 16 yeares, at last siding with the Persian against the Turk, *Selimus* the first was overthrown and slain in the battell. The last was *Tonombeius*, whom *Selimus* overthrew, tooke prisoner, and hanged him up in the gate of Memphis, so ended the Mamaluchs kingdom, having continued 260 yeares. Egypt since that time remains a province to the Turks.

1155.

*Conradus* the Emperor before his death named *Frederic* the first, called *Barbarossa* and *Aenobarbus* from his red beard, for his successor, though he had a son of his own now at years, at this time *Henry* of Austria, and *Henry* of Saxony his sonne in law did contend for the Dukedome of Bavary. This controversy was so taken up by the Emperor, that *Henry* of Austria was honoured with the title of Duke, who before was but a Marquise, and had withall a part of Bavaria assigned to him. He held a Dyet at Mersburg, where he composed the difference between *Canutus* the son of *Magnus*, *Sueno* the son of *Ericus*, and *Woldemar* the son of *Canutus* whom *Magnus* slew, which three contended for the kingdom of Denmark: there it was agreed that *Sueno* should hold the kingdom of the Emperor, *Canutus* of *Sueno*, and *Woldemar* should be bound to appear such a day in the high Court: so *Frederic* having in some sort quieted Germany, he makes an expedition into Italy, being called upon by the banished Apulians, and some Cities of Lombardy, which were oppressed by the Millanois, who aimed at a Sovereign Dominion. He used great severity against Verona for excluding him the gates, because he was not as yet confirmed by the Pope. Millan for a time submitted to him; then having crossed the Appenin, he enters Rome, where he is crowned by *Adrian* the fourth, not without great tumults and opposition of the people, so that he was forced to fight within the City in his own defence; in this conflict many were taken and slain, and many drowned in Tiber. After this he returned into Germany, where he composed the difference between *Arnold* Bishop of Mints, and *Herman* the Palatin; the Bishop he spared because of his age, and order, being a Church-man, but he caused *Herman* for troubling Germany with a needlesse war, to carry a dog upon his shoulders, holding him by the hindmost legs before all the people; which then was accounted a great punishment. He caused also *Bolislans* King of Poland to pay

pay a fine or mulct, for neglecting to bring into the Emperiall Exchequer his yearly tribute.

But whilst the Emperour was employed at home, the Millanois made new work for him abroad, by oppressing their neighbour Cities, and drawing many into their rebellion; with whom Pope *Adrian* conspired, who also exasperated *Frederick* by sending him word, that the Empire was at his disposing, to give it, to whom he pleased, wherefore he thought it time now, to look to himself, therefore with an Army he passeth over the Alpes, falls upon Millan which he took by storm, and was about to destroy it, but upon the submission of the citizens, with naked sword about their necks, and crosses on their breasts, falling downe at his feet, he spared it, yet he imposed on them a mulct of 9000 markes, and enjoined them to build him a Palace in the city, and resign over to the Empire their coin, harbours, and customes, and withall to repair the towns of *Cumæ* and *Lauda*, which they had spoiled. But scarce was *Frederic* gone thence into Burgundy, when the Millanois enter into a new confederacy with other cities, with *William* of Sicily, and a great number of Cardinals, animating the Pope to excommunicate him, because he made the Bishops to doe him homage, for their temporalities, which he affirmed were given him by the bounty of his predecessors, hereupon the Millanois stone *Frederic*'s Embassadors, and intend by some assassines which they had hired either to poyson or stab him; wherefore he enters Italy again, overthrowes *Crema*, a confederate city with Millan, fights with the Millanois army, defeats them, and besiegeth their city. *Adrian* in the mean while as he was preparing the thunder of excommunication against him, is choaked with a flye in his drink, and so dyed: but before his death he bound 14 Cardinals by an oath, not to choose any man Pope but him who would oppose *Cæsar* and maintain the cause of Millan, and of *Vil-liam* the Sicilian. Hence two Popes are chosen, one *Roland* named *Alexander* the third: by the Millan faction, the other *Offavian* named *Victor* by the Emperours side, to whom were joined the kings of England, Denmark, Hungary and Bohemia: a Synod is called at *Papia*, where *Alexander* is cited to appear; he condemnes that Councell, and refuseth to come, affirming himselfe to be above Councells, he excommunicates also *Frederic* for holding with *Victor*, and procures the greater part of Italy and France to side with him: upon this *Frederic* falls again upon Millan furiously, takes it by storm, overthroweth it to the ground, and soweth salt on it; then the chief actours of this last rebellion were condemned and beheaded, the rest wandering up and down in Italy, and destitute of all help and comfort, set up a new order called *Humiliati*.

Pope *Alexander* in the mean time was not idle, but drew France, Spaine, and England to his party. Venetians also with Padua, Verona, and others places join with him against *Frederic*. The Romans call home *Alexander*; the townes of Lombardy cast out the Emperours garrisons, and all arm against him. In the interim *Victor* the Anti-Pope dyed at Luca, in whose place was substituted one *Guido* of *Crema*, who takes the name of *Pascalus*. *Frederic* is forced to return againe into Italy, where having crossed the Pope, he takes Ancona; encounters with the Roman army at Tusculum, where they lost 15000. He enters the city; *Alexander* flies, and *Pascalus* is placed in the Palace of Lateran; the Romans take the oath of allegiance to *Frederic*. But he lost divers principall men in this fight, besides there dyed of the plague the Bishops of Colen, Ratisbone, and Spire, with *Frederic* the sonne of *Conradus* *Cæsar*, and divers other prime Commanders; this loss with the news of the Greek Emperour, who had promised aid to *Alexander* conditionally, that he would restore to him the Western Diadem, and the jealousy he had of the Italian treacheries, made him to returne in hast to Germany.

About this time; after *Waldemar* had killed *Sueno*, the murderer of *Canutus* he obtained the Kingdom of Denmark; and made divers expeditions against the Sclavi, who with their Piracies infested the Danish Islands. He brought *Niclotus* Duke of the Sclavi into great straights, that he was forced to destroy many of his

OWN

*An. Christi* owne townes; *Henricus Leo*. And *Albertus Ursus* waisted most of his country and peopled it with Flemings, Hollanders, and Frislanders, who erected divers Churches there. Rostoch was built by *Primslaus* sonne of *Niclotus*. *Waldemar* overcame the Rugi. *Ericus* King of the Sueci subdued the Finlanders. The Merchants of Brene and Lubec, by their arms brought the Livonians to Christianity. Dantick is built by the Danes in the mouth of the river Vistula. In Italy the rebels by the assistance of *Alexander* and the Greek Emperour, rebuild Millan, they build also another City, which from the Popes name, they called Alexandria, and peopled it with 150000 men. *Frederic* to hinder the Popes proceedings, prepares a fift expedition into Italy, after he had demolished the wals and fortifications of Mints, which had lately murdered their Bishop *Arnoldus*, and had banished *Christians* his successour: for *Conradus* the Popes Bishop of Mints, was joined with *Alexander*, and mainly opposed the Emperour, who sent *Christians* the banished Bishop into Italy. He did good service there for *Frederic*, in recovering *Ancona* a Sea town, from the Greeks. The third year after he came thither, by the addition of *Cæsars* Forces he besieged Alexandria, which held the *Cæsarians* play a long time to their great losse. Wherefore hee was forced to make peace with them: and so disbands imprudently a great part of his Army, whereupon the Lombards revolt again: *Frederic* is fain to sead back for his disband-  
ed men; and because the power of *Henricus Leo* was great in Germany, as 20  
the being Duke of Saxony and Bavaria, having also conquered the country of the Sclavi, and being likewise in league with *Waldemar* King of Denmark; having besides done good service at Jerusalem: the Emperour earnestly implores his help, which hee favouring the Pontifician party, denied, pretending that hee was aged and infirme of body. *Frederic* was vexed at this denyall, yet ventu-  
red upon the Ligurians, and was by the treachery of the Brixians overthrown. His Eagle is taken, and he knockt downe from his horse, being mislead 5 dayes, it was thought generally, that he was dead, but the fift day he shewed himselfe at Ti-  
cinum, where the Bishops all protested to forsake him, if he did not submit to the  
Pope.

In the mean time *Alexander* mistrusting the Romans, fled to Venice in a Sea mans habit. *Otto Frederic*'s son with a Fleet of 50 ships pursues him. The Venetians in defence of the Pope, encounters with *Otto*, defeats him, takes 48 of his ships, the other two being sunk, and carries him prisoner to Venice. The Pope to reward this good service, bestowes on the City a ring of gold, with which they should espouse the Sea to them, which custome is yearly observed upon Ascension day by casting a ring into the Sea. *Frederic* having lost both his sons, the one by death, the other by captivity, finding also that his enemies increased both in number and power, and that he was not able to help the afflicted Christians in Asia; in this turbulent condition of the West, resolves by the advice of his  
friends to agree with the Pope, who would condescend to no agreement, till  
*Frederic* should come, and falling downe at the Popes feet, should petition for  
absolution: then that hee should quiet Italy, and lead his Army into Asia. *Frederic* having consented, repaires to Venice, and at the Gates of S. Marks falls  
down at the Popes Feet, who sets his foot on his neck, saying: thou shalt walk  
upon the Basilisk and Aspe, and upon the Lion, and the Dragon thou shalt tread.  
*Frederic* replied: not to thee but to Peter. Yes saith the Pope, both to me and to  
Peter.

The Pope having honoured Venice with many priviledges, returns after 18  
years wars into Rome, where he calls a Synod, in which he assumes the power of  
canonizing of Saints, to him and his successours alone. The Waldenses there are  
condemned and decreed, that they should be suppressed by force of Armes. *Peter*  
*Lombard* is unjustly condemned of heretic, concerning the Trinity. It was also  
decreed that none should be held for Pope, but he who was chosen by the major  
part of the Cardinals, and that the Roman Magistrates should sweare obedience to  
him and his successours, and then dyed.

Frederic

*Frederick* returns to Germany, to fit himself for his Asiatick expedition; to  
that end he calls a Diet at Bamberg, where he accuseth *Henricus Leo* of Treason,  
condemns, and proscribes him, commanding the neighbouring Princes to  
invade his Castles and Dominions; he gave away Saxony to *Bernard of Anhalt*,  
and Bavaria to *Otto of Wittelsbach*, for their good service to him: yet *Leo* by  
the means of *Henry* King of England, his father-in-law, obtained so much of  
his land again from *Frederick* as now the Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Luneburg* do  
possesse. The Duke of *Bohemia* for his good service to *Frederick* at Millan,  
obtained the title of King, or at least a confirmation of it. Some think the  
seven Electors had their original at this time. It is certain, that before this, the  
Marquess of *Brandenburg* and *Palatine of Rhene* were of small account, and  
*Bohemia* but a Dukedom. After this, *Frederick* declared his son *Henry, Cæsar*, by  
girding his sword to him. In the Diet at *Mentz* the next year, Pope *Lucius*  
the 3. and *Frederick* quarrelled about the *Roman* Consuls, whom the Pope  
would have abolished, and therefore was thrust out of Rome by the Citizens;  
they quarrelled also about the Principality of *Maulds* or *Mathilds*, which  
*Cæsar* challenged as given to the Empire, the Pope as due to the Church; be-  
sides *Cæsar* chose *Rodolphus* for Bishop of *Trevers*, but the Pope set up *Voloma-  
rus* being nominated by the greater part of the Canons; therefore *Lucius* re-  
solveth to confirm *Henry* in his Regalities, except his father would give over  
the Empire. At Millan the marriage was celebrated between *Henry Fredericks*  
son, and *Constantia* the daughter of *William* King of Sicily, by which means  
*Apulia* and *Sicily* returned again to the Empire: This *Henry* escaped a great  
danger at *Erford*: for as he was composing a difference between *Conradus* of  
*Mentz*, and the Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, the floor of the chamber yeilded,  
where they with many others were; four Earls, and divers Gentlemen fell  
down into a sinke or privy, where they had an uncleanly death. Pope *Lucius*  
died at *Verona*, to whom succeeded *Urbanus*, called *Turbanus*, from disturbing  
the peace of Italy, in raising his Country-men the Lombards against *Frederick*,  
whom he was about to excommunicate, but that death prevented it: Some  
think he died for grief at the losse of Jerusalem. To *Urban* succeeded *Gregory*  
the 8. who died at *Pisa* the 57. day of his Pontificat; his successor was *Clement*  
the 3. who by his Edict urgeth the Holy-war against the Sarazens, for *Saladin*  
the Sultan of Egypt had taken five and twenty Cities from the Principality  
of *Antioch*, which City also had been lost by the corruption of the Patriarch  
who was bribed, had not the unexpected arrival of the Sicilian fleet under  
*William* hindred it.

The Christians having lost all in Syria and Phenicia, except *Tripoli*, *Tyrus* and  
*Antioch*, having lost their Army, and the Crosse, the Templers and Hospitalers  
being slain by *Saladine*, and Jerusalem surrendered: *Frederick*, assisted by *Richard*  
of England and *Philip* of France, prepares an expedition into Syria; therefore  
advancing the Crosse, he gathered an Army of 30000. *Isaacius* the Eastern  
Emperor made some resistance, fearing lest *Fredericks* intent might be to sub-  
due the Grecians; but afterward understanding the truth, he furnisheth him  
with shipping and provision: he passed over the *Propontis* into Asia, but the  
French and English supply could not come soon enough, being hindred by  
storms. *Frederick* recovered *Cilicia*, and killed multitudes of Turks at *Iconium*  
which he took, & upon the Sultans submission restored it; then he drove *Saladines*  
forces out of Armenia; but unhappily as he went into the river *Serra*, or  
as some call it *Cydus*, to swim, he was carried away by the stream, and with  
much difficulty drawn out by the souldiers, he remained speechlesse for three  
dayes and so died, having reigned 38. years: he was a valiant Prince, but full of  
troubles; by the father he was of the *Gibeline* race, and of the *Guelphs* by the  
mother; he was buried by his son *Frederick* in *Tyrus*, who undertook the re-  
mainder of the war, conducted his Army to *Antioch*, and there left a strong  
Garrison; thence he went to *Laodicea*, ready to revolt to the Sarazen, which he  
pacified



*An. Christi* pacified, and fortified, he took also *Berythus* and other Towns, then went to relieve *Ptolemais*, where he died of a pestilent Fever, and most of his Army. By his second wife *Beatrice*, *Frederick* had five sons, *Henry* his successor, *Frederick* of whom I spake now, *Otto* Earle of *Burgundy*, *Conradus* Duke of *Suevia*, and *Philip* Duke of *Tuscia*, who reigned after his brother *Henry*. Its written of *Barbarossa*, he so much honoured Pope *Urban*, that he lighted from his horse when he rid to meet him, and held the Popes stirrop; but afterward he raised the cruel faction in *Italy* the *Pontificians* which they called *Guelphs*, and the *Casarians* called *Gibellins*, from the two families in *Germany*, between which of old was deadly feud: shortly after his death the third Holy-war ended, about which time two Orders of Knighthood were made in *Spain*, the one of *Calatrava*, the other of *S. Jago* or *James*; but I finde that these Orders were more ancient, for *Santius* King of *Toledo* instituted the Knighthood of *Calatrava*, *An. 1130.* so called from the Province where they were settled; their garment was black, and on it a red-crosse: The Order of *S. James* was much more ancient, being by King *Ramiro* instituted when he defeated the *Moors* at *Compestella*; at which time *St. James* of *Compestella* was honoured with many priviledges, and great riches, their Ensign was a Red-crosse in form of a sword.

About these times *Petrus Aboilardus* or *Alardus*, broched many dangerous errors in Divinity, against whom under *Lewis* the younger, a Council is held at *Senon*. From *Petrus de Bruis* sprang up the *Petrobrusians* called *Sacramentarians*. *Gilbertus Porretanus* Bishop of *Poitou* was deposed for denying the Divine-Essence to be God, but upon his recantation he was restored. The Archbishoprick of *Lisbon* in *Portugal* is erected, and the four Archbishopricks in *Ireland*, to wit, *Armagh*, *Dublin*, *Cassils*, and *Touman*. By Pope *Adrian*, *William* is crowned King of both *Sicilies*, which he holds in fee, then began *Sicily* to be called *Peters-Patrimony*. *Livonia* or *Lisland* is converted to the Faith by *S. Menardus*, who by Pope *Alexander* the 3. is made Bishop there, where now is *Riga* the Metropolis.

Much about this time also, the *Tartarians*, a mighty and warlike people, but without settled habitation, wandering up and down the vast Northern Countries of *Europe* and *Asia*, being subject at first to that great Lord called *Uncam* or *Presbyter John*, to whom they paid the tenth of their Beasts for tribute; but he fearing their multitudes which daily increased, resolves to disperse them into divers Countries, which so displeased them, that they forsook their former places, and went further North, refusing to pay any more tribute to *Uncam*; then they chose for their King one *Cingis Can*, who in a short time grew so great, that they subdued nine Provinces next them, and at last came upon *Uncam* with a great Army, and slew him, and so *Cingis* possessed his state, and daughter too, which *Uncam* refused to bestow upon him in marriage, when he desired it; the successors of this *Cingis* waxed so potent, that they over-run the great Country of *Cathaia*, wasting many times the Dominions of the *Turks*, *Muscovites*, *Polonians*, *Hungarians* and others, of whose antiquities and actions I dare not speak, because for the most part fabulous and uncertain: They are of different Religions, some Christians, some Mahumetans, and some Pagans. About this time, a certain mad *Sardinian* lived a long time in woods and desarts among the Deer, feeding on grasse, and walking upon all four like beasts; one day as the King of that Island was hunting, he was taken and brought to his parents, who would neither speak to them, nor taste either of bread or wine, but eat grasse; in the night he made an escape to the woods, and was never afterward seen. The Order of *Heremites*, called *Williamites* from *William* Duke of *Glascony* their author, sprung up at this time, they were to follow the rules of *S. Anstine*. The eleventh General Council, and second of the *Latines*, was held in the *Latheran* by Pope *Alexander*; there the *Waldenses* so called from *Waldo* of *Lions*, are condemned, and the Popes election by

by Cardinals alone established. *Petra* a town beyond *Jordan*, is made a Bishoprick. The *Jewes* are persecuted in *France* and *Germany*, for crucifying a Christian child. The *Carmelites* Order began in the Desarts of *Syria*, which afterward was brought into *Europe*, by *Albert* Patriarch of *Constantinople*. There was long debate between the Popes and the Romans, about the government of the City, and form of Magistrates: this difference lasted fifty years, from *Innocent* 2. till *Clement* 3. who at last prevailed.

In *Rome* to Pope *Innocent* 2. succeeded *Celestine* 2. five moneths: his successor was *Lucius* 2. eleven moneths: to whom succeeded *Engenius* 3. *Sithernards* disciple, who fate eight years; to him he wrote his Books of *Consideration*: his successor was *Anastasius* 4. one year: to him succeeded *Adrian* 4. an Englishman, who had before his Popedom converted the *Norwegians* to the faith; he fate almost five years: *Alexander* 3. succeeded, who fate one and twenty years, longer then any other Pope except *S. Peter*, who fate five and twenty years; *Silvester* 1. and *Adrian* 1. who reigned three and twenty years; his Antipopes were, *Victor* 4. *Calixtus* 3. and *Paschalis* 3. To *Alexander* succeeded *Lucius* 3. four years; he was the first that was created Pope by the Cardinals alone: his successor was *Urban* 3. one year, whom *Gregory* 8. succeeded for one moneth and 27 dayes: *Clement* 3. succeeded for three years.

## CHAP. XIII.

The Eastern affairs under Manuel Comnenus, Alexius, Andronicus, Isaicius and Alexius Angeli. 2. The affairs of France, Spain, Denmark, Constantinople, Rome, England and Scotland, in these times, with divers other passages. 3. Henry the 6. Emperor.

TO *Calojohannes* in the East, succeeded *Manuel Comnenus*, a perfidious, turbulent, and unhappy Prince. *Conradus* the Emperor of the West, and he, married two sisters: yet by his treacherie and conspiracie with the *Saracens*, the Armies of *Frederick* and *Lewis* the French king were overthrowen, for *Conradus* having crossed the *Thracian Bosphorus*, entred *Asia*, where he was promised to be furnished with all necessaries by the *Greeks*, who both deceived him, and betrayed all his counsels to the Sultan of *Iconium*, whereby the German army was spoiled with famine and the sword, and unknown dangerous wayes: wherefore the Emperour was forced to bring away the remainders of his army, and to send *Frederick*, his brothers son, to acquaint the French army who were going to *Iconium*, of the *Greeks* treacherie; for they had suborned some to tell the French, that *Iconium* was delivered up to the Germans, purposely to bring them to the same miserie: it was said that the *Greeks* mingled chalk and lime with their flower, by which they poysoned the *Latines*. *Conradus* stayed a while at *Ephesus*. The French at the river *Meander* were beaten by the *Turks*. *Roger* the Sicilian, to revenge the *Latines* wrongs, with a Fleet of ships takes *Corcyra*, and wastes all the Greek coast. At last *Conradus* and the French arrive at *Syria*; *Lewis* hasteneth to *Judea*. *Conradus* being brought to *Ptolemais*, and thence to *Jerusalem*, gave way to besiege *Damascus*, which cost the *Latines* much blood; for having taken the suburbs, the City was upon surrender, till the Princes began to quarrel who should be governor; the old souldiers perceiving that *Theodoricus* of *Flanders* was like to carry it, removed their camp to the other side of the City, and so permitted the inhabitants of the suburbs to get within *Damascus*, which so angered the Emperor, that he left the siege, and returned home by *Constantinople* ingloriously: the French followed the next Spring, and were like to be surpris'd by the *Greeks*, had not *Roger* encountred with *Michael Paleologus*, *Manuels* chief Commander.

An. Christi

At that time, Roger brought from *Chalcis* Silk-makers into *Sicily* and *Apulia*. Another Fleet of Christians at that time took *Lisbone*, and the Country about from the *Saracens*; that City was delivered to *Alphonfus*, made lately Duke of *Lusitania* by the King of *Castile*. The *Danes* and *Saxons* brought the *Slavi* to Christianity. *Lewis* returning from *Sicily* into *France*, put away his wife *Eliapor*, pretending the unlawfulness of that marriage, by reason of consanguinity: she presently married to *Henry* of *Anjou*, King of *England* and Duke of *Normandy* by right of his mother, Earle of *Angiers* and *Turon* by the father, but by the right of his wife Earle of *Poitou* and Duke of *Gascoigny*, which occasioned great war between *England* and *France*. Legats are sent from *Armenia* to Pope *Eugenius*, to be instructed in the mysteries of Christianity; who brought news, that *Presbyter-John* that great Eastern Prince had overrun *Media* and *Persia*, purposely to invade *Jerusalem*; The *Turks* also upon the departure of *Conradus* and *Lewis*, chiefly the Sultans of *Damascus* and *Iconium*, began again to make excursions upon the Christian territories. *Joscelinus* Earl of *Edessa*, as he was at stool, was surprized and imprisoned. *Noradinus* made excursions upon *Antioch*. *Mannuel* the Greek Emperor obtains *Edessa* from *Baldwin* the 3. and within a year lost it to *Noradine*. *Raimundus* Prince of *Antioch* is slain by *Noradine*, whose widow *Reinold* of *Castle* married, and with her obtained *Antioch*: He suppressed the high-way robbers of *Cilicia*; and for want of his pay from the Greek *Cæsar*, plunders *Cyprus*; and afterward to prevent a greater war, submits to *Mannuel*. The *Templers* and *Hospitallers*, though much enriched with booties, deny to pay their Tenth any more to the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, having for many procured immunity at the Court of *Rome*. In *Mannuel's* time lived *Eustathius*, *Homer's* Interpreter, and Bishop of *Thessalonica*, who manfully resisted *Mannuel*, endeavouring to corrupt the Christian doctrine with some points of Mahometanism. As this Emperor had many faults, yet some good things he had in him; for he was very bountiful, in forcing all his treasures upon the Sultan of *Iconium*, when he was in want of money, (but I should rather call this prodigality:). He was also tender-hearted; for not only sent he Greek Chyrurgions to cure his son-in-law, *Baldwin* 3. king of *Jerusalem*, who had broke his arm in hunting, but he himself also on his knee did use to foment and bind up the Kings broken arm: He shewed also his piety, before his death, in repenting that he had entertained Astrologers, or hearkned to their predictions, finding them by experience to be false and delusive, for they had promised that he should live fourteen years longer than he did, therefore by his hand-writing he condemned their impostures; he reigned 38 years, and died the 60. year of his age; a little before his death he resigned his Empire, and embraced the Monastical life; he had two wives, one was *Conradus Cæsar's* wives sister, the other was daughter to *Raimund* Prince of *Antioch*, of whom he had *Alexius* his successor.

1180.

This *Alexius* was betrothed to *Anna* daughter of *Lewis* the French king, which exasperated the Greeks, fearing the Latines would become too great in *Byzantium*: therefore they send for *Andronicus* the cousin-german of *Alexius*, living in exile among the *Turks* in *Chaldaea*; he raiseth an Army, which he brings in view of *Byzantium*, having first overthrown the forces of *Protophastus*, who undertook the protection of the young *Cæsar*; afterward *Andronicus* puts out his eyes, and imprisoned him: So being admitted to the government, he thrusts out all the Latines, and many of them he murders; then undertakes the protection of *Alexius*, whom he carried on his shoulders to the Church to be crowned; then having removed all that might oppose him out of the way, he accuseth *Xene*, *Alexius* his mother, of treason, as if she had plotted with *Bela* king of *Hungary* against the State, and so strangles her; shortly after he strangles the young Emperor, being but fifteen years old, and having reigned but three, whose body being wrapped up in lead was let down into the sea.

Andro-

*Andronicus* having murdered *Alexius*, reigns alone, and marries with *Anna* or *Agnes* who had been betrothed to *Alexius*, being as yet but eleven years old, and he an aged man. He took *Nicea* and *Prussa*, exercising all kind of cruelty on his enemies who had fled thither. *Alexius*, *Mannuel's* Nephew, and the Latine souldiers flee to *William* king of *Sicily*, who to revenge the wrongs received from *Andronicus*, took *Thessalonica* & *Dyrrachium*, using all kind of cruelties against the Citizens. In the mean time *Andronicus* rageth like a savage beast at *Byzantium*, upon the living and the dead also, causing them to be dragged out of their graves: Understanding that one whose name began with these letters, J.S. was to be his successor, and that it was *Isaacius Angelus*, he sent one to kill him, who was killed by him; whereupon *Angelus* fearing the cruelty of *Andronicus*, fled into the Temple; the people immediately in a great tumult salute him Emperor. *Andronicus* perceiving that he was hated by the people, forsaken by his souldiers, and pursued after by *William* of *Sicily*, he thought to escape by sea, but could not by reason of the storms; therefore he is laid hold on, brought back to the City, set with his face backwards on a lean scabbed Camel, his right hand being cut off, and one of his eyes thrust out, at last is brought upon a theater, where he is hang'd by the feet upon two posts, and there by the enraged multitude is torne in peeces by pincers and flesh-hooks, he crying out in the mean while, Lord be mercifull! and, Why do you bruise the broken reed! So he died after two years reign, and in him ended the Comment.

*Isaacius Angelus* by the popular faction is made Emperor: he at first complied with the people, and eased them of many burthens; he overthrew the Sicilian fleet sent against him, and took the two chief Commanders *Richard* and *Baldwin*; but undaunted that King *William* was preparing another Fleet for revenge, he made his peace with him: He was much troubled with two false *Alexii*, who called themselves the sons of *Mannuel*; but having suppressed them, he gave himself to luxury, wantonness, and oppression. He had ill success against the *Myssians* or *Wallachians*, who rebelled against him: He strove to hinder *Barbarossa's* march through *Thracia*, but so doing he procured his anger, to his great losse: He sent a Fleet to regain *Cyprus* from *Isaacius Comnenus* the Tyrant, but with no success: He committed sacrilege in robbing the Churches. At last he was seized upon by his own brother *Alexius Angelus*, (whom he had redeemed from the *Turks* with much gold, and made him his Consort in the Empire) and was by him deprived both of his eyes and government, the 10. year of his reign, being deluded by the Astrologers, who made him believe that he should reign two and thirty years: His son long after got him out of prison, who upon the change of aire and diet shortly after died.

*Alexius Angelus*, who changed his fir-name, and would be called *Comnenus*; having blinded his brother, invades the Empire; but as he was riding in triumph with the Crown on his head, the Imperial horse (having more wit than the people that chose this Tyrant) flung him down, with which fall the Crown broke, an ill presage. He gave himself to rioting and tyrannie: he threatened to kill *Alexius* the younger, son to *Isaacius*, who therefore fled to *Venice*, where he procured the Venetian and French assistance. At that time *Boniface* Marquis of *Montferrat*, *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, with divers other Commanders, were met at *Venice*, to have their assistance in their expedition to *Asia*, which was promised with a great sum of money, conditionally that they would assist the Republike to besiege the Town *Jadera*, that had revolted from them to the *Hungarians*, which accordingly was performed. In the mean time *Alexius* arrives, complaining of his Uncles tyrannie, his Fathers imprisonment, and his own banishment; promising them great matters, if they would aid him to put down the Tyrant.

R 3

Upon

1185.

1195.

An. Christi  
1183.



*An. Christi* 1188 and the next yeare after King Steven died, the nineteenth yeare of his Reigne: he was buried in the Abbey. of *Faversham* in *Kent*, which he had founded. And so in *Henry*, the Saxon blood is again restored to the Crown.

1154. As *Henry* was besieging one of his Castles in *Normandy*, which was surprised by the French, newes came to him of King *Stevens* death: He was advised to raise the siege, and hasten for *England*; but he resolves not to stirre till he had taken the Castle, which upon this was surrendered: then he sailes into *England*, and is crowned. He reformed the Common-lawes, and divided the Kingdome into sixe Circuits, appointing Judges twice every yeare to ride these Circuits. He banished the strangers, who had flocked hither in great multitudes, and such of the Nobility as had adhered too much to King *Steven*: He caused most of the Inland-castles to be demolished: He seised on all Crown-lands which had been alienated, and resumes into his own hands *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and *Huntington*: He married *Geoffery* one of his youngest sonnes, to *Constance* daughter of *Conaccus* Duke of *Britany*, by whom he had that Dutchy; his youngest sonne married with *Adela* King *Lewis* of *France* his daughter; and he bestowed his daughter *Mauld* on *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, about which time died the Empresse his mother. He never suffered his Souldiers to be idle, but did still exercise them at home or abroad. In the 19. year of his Reigne, he sailed into *Ireland*, and made himselfe by his Victories Lord of that Country. He caused his eldest Son *Henry*, and his wife *Margaret* the French Kings daughter, to be Crowned twice; himself, the second time, serving as a Sewer at his Sons table; who then bragged, That his Father was but the Son of an Emperesse, but himselfe the Son both of a King and Queen.

1174. His sonnes *Henry*, *Geoffery*, and *John*, with the Earles of *Leicester* and *Chester*, and *William* King of *Scots*, took part with the French against him; yet *Henry* prevailed, and pardoned his Sonnes and Lords for this rebellion. Prince *Henry* died before his Father, and *John* was poysoned by a Monk. The rebellions of his Sonnes put him into a Fever, which killed him in four dayes: He died in *Normandy*, the five and twentieth yeare of his Reigne, and was buried at *Founteverard* in *France*. He was a fortunate, wife, and valiant Prince: but unhappy in his Childrens rebellion; his vain dotage on *Rosamond*, whom he loved above his chaste wife *Elianos*; and in his quarrel with *Thomas Becket* Lord Chancellour, and Archbishop of *Canterbury*, who would not be invested by the King, but went to *Rome*, and received his Pall from *Innocent* the second, and was made a Legate: at his return, he surrenders his Chancellorship and Great-seale to the King, not shewing him any reason why he did so. Upon this discord between *Henry* and *Thomas*, the Clergie grew insolent without controll; whereupon the King calls a Parliament, in which King *Stevens* Law for exempting the Clergie from the Temporal power, is abolished, by the consent of the Bishops, even of *Becket* himself at last, but with much ado; who after he had sworne to allow this act, yet relapses, and obtains the Popes pardon for this sin of his: hereupon the King seisseth upon all *Becket's* Temporal lands, and demands an account of 30000 marks, which he had in his Chancellorship turned to his own use: This *Becket* refused to doe, and went privately to *Rome*; after whom the King sends letters to the Pope, complaining of *Becket*; but the Pope took his part, and threatened the King with excommunication, unless he were restored. In the interim he is recommended to the Abbot of *Pontinyack* in *France*, to whom the King sent to have *Becket* turned out, and withall forbids access from the Pope into *England*, *Becket's* friends also are banished: The Abbot fearing the Kings displeasure, perswades *Thomas* to leave his house; then did *Lewis* the French king procure him better entertainment,

ment, and animated the Pope against King *Henry*; who sailes over into *France*, and in the French Kings presence proffered to restore *Thomas* and his friends, if he would take the former oath and subscribe; which he utterly refused to doe, except he might adde this exception, *Salvo honore Dei*; which highly displeased the King, who returns into *England*: two Legats with an Interdict against him came from *Rome*, which made him passe over to *Normandy* to conferre again with *Becket*, who was still the same man; so the King was forced to restore him. The young King *Henry* was also offended with him, for refusing to absolve the four Bishops whom he had suspended for performing the solemnities to him without his leave, and so was confined to his house in *Canterbury*; but within foure dayes after, *Becket* was murdered by foure assassins in his own Church, for which the Pope accufeth the King, and enjoyns him to war three years in person in *Palestina*, but this he redeemed by erecting three Religious houses; he visited *Becket's* shrine, walking barefooted from *London* to *Canterbury* as he was enjoined, and there was whipped by all the Monks; the four murderers died miserably in exile, within four yeares.

*Richard* surnamed *Cour-de-Lion*, king *Henry* the 2. his eldest son now living, succeeded his father: he first of all enlargeth Queen *Eleanor* his mother, who had been restrained by *Henry*, for disliking his wantonnesse with *Rosamond*. She governed the kingdom, till her Son came home from *Normandy*: she set at liberty prisoners for small offences, and paid many of their small debts: in this her son *Richard* did imitate her, pardoning ordinary offences, and freeing all his debtors. He made his brother *John* Earl of *Lancaster*, and married him to the Earl of *Glocesters* heire; he gave him also *Nottingham*, *Devonshire*, and *Cornwal*; but he proved unthankfull, in affecting the Crown. This *Richard* in a short time by his bounty exhausted all his fathers treasures. He was perswaded by the Pope, to accompany in person *Frederick* the Emperor and *Philip Augustus* of *France*, into the Holy-land; *Sicily* is the place appointed for their meeting: And because he would not be burthensome to his people in taxing them, he sold his Forts of *Barwick* and *Roxburgh* to the *Scots* King for 10000l. he sold also the Earldom of *Durham* to the Bishop; he made sale also of divers Honours and Manors. Having fitted himself for this expedition, he commits the government of the Kingdome to *William Longchamp* Bishop of *Ely*, who shortly after was made the Popes Legate. Then he sailed to *Cyprus*, being driven thither by tempest; which he won, and sold to the Templars for 30000 marks: Thence he sail'd into *Sicily*, where he discontented *Philip* the French king, because he denied him a share in his conquest of *Cyprus*, being he was absent when it was taken, and because their covenant of equal-sharing extended only to the Holy-land; yet they agreed for the present, and proceeded together in their journey, having good successe against the *Turks*; they took many Towns and Forts, and among the rest *Acon*, where *Richard* pull'd down the Banner of Archduke *Leopold* set on the walls, saying, that his own Banner should be first set up, seeing he first entred the City; at this *Philip* was much displeased again with *Richard*, so that he returned in a rage home, carrying with him the Forces that belonged to the Emperor and to *Leopold*: King *Richard* notwithstanding, by the help of some Christian Princes with him, persued his victories against the *Turks*; and then returned to *Cyprus*, which he won from the Templars, and exchanged it for *Jerusalem*, with *Guido* or *Guy* of *Leffingham*, the last Christian king, whence *Richard* was stiled King of *Jerusalem*. In the mean while, the Bishop of *Ely* (son of a Cow-herd) did so tyrannise over the kingdome in his Protectorship, that he became odious: wherefore perceiving how he was hated, went disguised in a womans habit to *Dover*, purposing to leave the kingdome; but he was discovered, and by the people dragged up and down, and after sent to the Tower; but when the King returned, he was restored to his offices: shortly after, as he was travelling to *Rome*,

- An. Christi* Rome, he died. In the Kings absence, his brother John seised upon many Towns and Forts, angry that Ely was preferred to him in the Protectorship: K. Philip also made many incursions into Normandy; which caused king Richard to forsake his Conquests in Asia: but in his return he suffered shipwrack, between Aquileia and Venice, and by swimming saved his life; he was shortly after taken prisoner by Leopold in Austria, and sold to the Emperor Henry the 6. for 60000 marks, from whom he ransomed himself for 100000 pounds: then he rides post to Normandy, raiseth an army, and revengeth himself upon the French king. In this mean while his brother John repaires to him, with humble submission and acknowledgment of his disloyalty, laying the fault thereof upon Ely's misgovernment; hereupon John is received into the Kings favour. Richard, upon his return, ransacked the Monasteries, taxed the people, and resumed all the Mannors, Castles, and Offices he had sold, into his hands, to pay his ranfome, 80000*l.* whereof he paid, the rest was discharged by Leopold, whom the Pope excommunicates for making Richard a prisoner, after his good service in the Holy-war. He caused himself to be again crowned King; then transports an Army into France, where at the Castle of Chalons neer to Lymois he was shot with an arrow, of which he died within three dayes, the 9. year of his reign; but before he died, he won the Castle, causing all to be put to the sword except the malefactor, whom he pardoned. In the beginning of this Kings reign, 20  
1199. Robin-Hood and Little-John robbed and spoiled many rich misers and usurers; but Robin being betrayed bled himself to death, so his theevish rout was dispersed. King Richard was buried at Fonteverard in France, at his fathers feet: he left three parts of his treasure to his brother John, and the fourth to his servants.
1153. In Scotland, to David succeeded his grandchild Malcolm, against whom Sumnerled Thane or Earl of Argyle rebelled, whose Army was defeated, and he driven into Ireland by Gilchristius Earl of Angus. King Henry of England, forgetfall of his oath which he made to king David when he knighted him, that he would never trouble him nor his posteritie for those lands he held in England, took the jurisdiction of Carlisle from the Archbishop of Glasco; then he caused this young King to swear him fealtie at Chester, and carried him against his will over with him into France, thereby to keep the Scots from invading England, and to bring Malcolm in dislike with the French king. At his return into Scotland, he endeavoured to pacifie the offended Nobility, excusing himself; that what he did in assenting to king Henry's demands, was by force; and so they were pacified for the present. After this, Malcolm is invited by Henry to the Parliament at York, where he is accused for assisting the French; therefore his lands in England were forfeited to the Crown: upon his return homeward, the people were so incensed, that they had almost seised on him in his house at Berth: He complained to his Nobility, how he had been circumvented by Henry, wherefore a war is proclaimed; the two Armies met at Carlisle; but to avoid blood-shedding, Henry was contented to leave Cumberland and Huntington to Malcolm, and only take Northumberland from him; to which Malcolm against the mind of his Peers assented, and therefore was despised by them: Upon this the country of Galloway rebels, but in three battels they were defeated by Gilchrist Earl of Angus. The Moravian rebellion was worse, in which the Kings forces were beaten first; but a new Army being sent, the Moravians were quelled, and most of them killed or fled. Sumnerled took occasion by these tumults, to invade the sea-coast with an Army, having the assistance 50  
1163. of malecontents; but he was apprehended, and his forces defeated. The Parliament proposeth a marriage for the King, being now 22 years of age; but he refuseth to marry at all, preferring Celibate to the married life, and shewing that he had provided an heire for the Crown. So all being quiet at home and abroad, he gave himself to repairing and building of Religious houses, and died 1165. shortly after, the 25 year of his age, having reigned above 12 years.

To

- To Malcolm succeeded his brother William. He is called upon by king Henry to do homage for Cumberland and Huntington; for that cause he repaires to him, and withall remands Northumberland as his due. Henry promised to satisfie him the next Parliament, at which he was desired to be present: thither when he came, Henry going over to France with his Army, takes William with him against his will: having staid there some time, with much adoe he got leave to go for Scotland, whither when he arrived, he fals to settle the kingdom, and to build forts: then he sends Embassadors to Henry, to demand Northumberland: Henry being busie in the French war, was content to part with a share of Northumberland, but not with all; afterward this share caused a new war, for William demanded the rest, and Henry was sorry for giving so much; Armies are raised, and incursions made on both sides; at last they came to a parley, in which William unexpectedly was surpris'd by 400 horse in ambush, which he thought to have been Scots, and carried into France. Having staid there some time, he ransoms himself, by delivering unto the English four garrisons, viz. Edinburgh, Sterlin, Rosburgh, and Barwick, with fifteen hostages, till the sum agreed upon was paid; in the mean time he is dismissed, who being returned home, he with his Nobility swear fealty to the King of England, till these garrisons were redeemed; then he quiets the tumults at home. King Henry demands, that the Bishops of Scotland should acknowledge the Archbishop of York for their Metropolitan, which they refused to do, for this cause they complained to Pope Alexander 3. who freed the Scottish Bishops from subjection to the English yoke. Shortly after this, Gilchrist kills his wife the Kings sister, for being found in adultery: he is summoned to appeare to answer for this murder, who refuseth, therefore is proscribed, his houses pull'd down, and his whole estate forfeited: Some years after this, the King returning from Murry, where he overthrew Donald Euan that had rebelled there, meets with Gilchrist in the habit of a begger, whom demanding what he was, fell flat at the Kings feet, confessing his miserable condition; at which the King being moved with 30 pity, considering his former greatnesse and good services, restored him to his ancient honours and estate.
- King Richard having succeeded Henry, and preparing for his Eastern expedition, sends home the Scots hostages, and restores to William his three garrisons, (for Edinburgh-Castle was redeemed before, upon the payment of the fourth part of the ranfome) he frees him also and his successors from all bargains and covenants made with king Henry; in requital of which favour, William sends him towards his charges in the Holy-war 10000 marks, and sent his brother David Earl of Huntington to wait on king Richard, who in his return from Syria was shipwracked, sold by the Egyptians, bought by the Venetians, and sent home the 4. year after his departure from Scotland. King Richard also being returned, was visited by king William and his brother, with a present of 2000 marks: here William fell sick, and it was rumoured through Scotland that he was dead; which gave occasion to Harald Earl of Orkney and Cathnesse, to pick a quarrel with the Bishop of Cathnesse, and then to thrust out his eyes, and cut out his tongue; but William being returned, he caused Harald to be apprehended and hanged, having first put out his eyes, and emasculated all his male-children. This same year Alexander king Williams son was born.
- King John of England quarreled with William, for refusing to aid him against Philip the French king; therefore began to erect a garrison over against 50 Barwick, which the Scots threw down again: upon this Armies are raised on both sides; but without any blowes, a peace was concluded, and agreed, that Williams two daughters should marry Johns two sonnes, and that no garrison should be built neer Barwick. After this, William lost his youngest sonne, with his nurse and fourteen more, by the sudden inundation of Tay, which drowned a great part of Berth in the night-time, so that the king hardly escaped himself; therefore he caused the Town to be built in a more safe place upon the same

same



*An. Christi* 1192. same river, and called it *Perth*, now *S. Johns-town*. After this it was agreed between the two kings, *John* and *William*, that for the time to come, the children of the Scots kings should do homage for their lands in *England*, but not the kings themselves. Not long after this, *William* died, the 74 year of his age, and of his reign 49.

In *Rome*, to *Clement* 3. succeeded *Celestine* 3. who fate 4 years and 7 moneths: he excommunicated all *France* for king *Philip*'s divorce, who had repudiated his wife *Gelberge*; he confirmed the *Teutonick* Order, prescribing to them the rule of *S. Augustine*, with a white-garment and black-crosse, injoyning them to say in 24 heures, the *Lords Prayer*, *Creed*, and *Ave Maria*, 200 times. 10 To *Celestine* succeeded *Innocent* 3. who fate 18 years and 7 moneths: He sent some Religious men to convert the *Tartars*, who by the *Sarazens* perswasion preferred Mahumetanisme to Christianisme; some think this was done afterward by *Innocent* 4. He also procured *Livonia* to imbrace the Christian faith: under him was held the 12. Oecumenical Council at *Lateran*, at which were present two Patriarchs, of *Constantinople* and *Jerusalem*, seventy Archbishops, four hundred Bishops, twelve Abbots, and eight hundred Priors; in this Synod the word *Transubstantiation* was confirmed. About this time sprang up the Order of Predicants by *Dominicus* the Spaniard, of which are recorded to have been 4143 Monasteries: the *Minorites* Order by *Francis* the Italian, 20 of these were 90000. in *Platina*'s time: the *Carmelites*, by *Albert* Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, the *Eremites* Order also of *S. Austin*, & the Order of the *Holy-Trinity*.

1191. In *Germany*, *Henry* 6. succeeded to his father *Barbarossa*, whose wife *Constance* daughter to *Roger* king of *Sicily*, was married out of a Monastery; by her *Sicily* was annexed to the Empire: when she was fifty years old, she was brought to bed at *Panormus* of *Frederick* 2. in a publike Chappel which *Henry* had built to that purpose, that it might be seen the child was not supposititious. He was resisted in the beginning of his reign, by the Bishops of *Colen* and *Liege*, with whom the *Burgundians* sided, but they were quickly suppressed by *Henry*, after he had put the Bishop of *Liege* to death, who was more active against him then the other. After many conflicts, he quieted the *Sicilians* and *Apulians* who would have revolted from him, and put divers of their ring-leaders to exquisite torments, slaing some of them alive, blinding others, and thrusting sharp pikes through them; some that aimed to be Kings, he crowned with Iron-crowns red-hot: for this cause he was named *Henricus Asper*, *Henry* the rough or sharp. In *Italy* he placed new Governours, to keep them from rebellion: Being well used at *Cremona* and *Bononia*, he gave them power to coin their own mony. The death of *Saladine*, (who caused his shirt to be carried in his funeral, with this acclamation, *Here is all that is left of the great Conqueror of the East*.) gave hopes to *Henry* of some good to be done in *Syria*; 40 therefore he prepares an expedition, and to that purpose sends great forces before, under the Bishop of *Mentz* and divers other Cominanders, who took *Joppe* from the *Saracens*, and fortified divers Towns: but as *Henry* was coming after with his supplies, he fell sick of a fever at *Messana*, where he died; some think he was poysoned by his wife, for his adulteries; he was buried at *Panormus* in a Porphyrie tomb, having reigned somewhat above seven years: his son *Frederick* was now five years old, whom he committed to the care of his brother *Philip*; him he had made Governor of *Hetruria*; and married him to *Irene* the sister of *Alexius* the Greek Emperor. *Henry*'s death hindred the Christians progresse in *Syria*. 50

In *Spain*, the *Numidians*, *Moors*, and *Africans*, being arrived in great fleets, set upon *Alphonsus* king of *Castile*, whom they overthrew, and laid waste his country, so that the *French* were afraid they would passe over the *Pyrenean* hills thither: this expedition of the *Moors* into *Spain*, was occasioned by the *Danes*, *Frislanders*, and *Hollanders*, who in several fleets set upon and wasted the coast of *Barbary*: in revenge whereof, the *Moors* fell upon *Spain*.

THE



## THE FIFTH BOOK OF THE SECOND PART:

Intreating of the times from *Philip* Emperour in the West, and the French Empire in the East, till *Wenceslaus* the German Emperour, containing the History of 200. years.

### CHAP. I.

1. The Troubles of Europe under *Philip*, *Otto the Fourth*, and *Frederick the Second*, Emperours of the West. 2. The Affairs of the Holy Land. 3. Of the Danish and other European Affairs.



He report of *Henry*'s death being come, *Philip* hasteth from *Hetruria* into *Germany*, sending the Peers of the Empire before, desiring them to fulfill the will of the deceased Emperour, in confirming his sons Succession, and his own Protectorship; but Pope *Innocent* by his Legats sent to the Princes to rescind the will of *Henry*, and to reject *Philip* from the Government of the Empire, for he hated *Frederick* and his race, and so he did *Philip*, for curbing the Popes power in *Italy*: therefore he is excommunicated, and the Bishop of *Sutrie* that absolved him degraded upon the Popes instigation. Many voted for *Bertholdus* D. of *Loringia*: but the King of *Bohemia*, D. of *Saxon*, Marquess of *Mysnia* and *Bavare*, with others in Parliament declared *Philip* Emperour; which *Bertholdus* perceiving, and that his power was too weak to resist, yielded to *Philip*; upon this the Pope instigates the Princes to confer the Empire upon *Otto* the son of *Henricus Leo*, and withall excommunicates *Philip*, which made the *Bohemian* and other Princes to fall off; hereupon *Otto* is crowned at *Aix* by the Bishop of *Colen*; but *Philip* being nothing dejected, 40 raiseth an Army, takes in *Strasbourg*, and at *Spire* encounters with *Otto*, whom he defeats and puts to flight; upon this the Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, after his Countrey was wasted by *Philip*, submitted: then, because the *Bohemians* sided with *Otto*, *Philip* falls upon them with fire and sword; he forced also the Cities upon the *Rhine*, even *Colen* it self to yield, so that *Adolphus* the Bishop was fain to crown him at *Aix*, notwithstanding *K. Richard* and *K. John* of *England* stood entirely for *Otto*, being his Uncles: *Otto* thrusts *Adolphus* out of his Bishoprick, *Philip* maintains him; hereupon another Battel is fought by *Colen*, in which *Otto* lost the Field, and was forced to flee into *England*. 50

*Conradus* Bishop of *Mentz* was lately returned from *Palestina*; he for siding with *Philip*, is stript of his Bishoprick by the Pope, and so was his successor *Endolphus*, and *Sigifrid*, *Philip*'s enemy, is made Bishop: but an end was shortly after put to these Civil wars by the Marriages of *Philip*'s Daughters; for the two eldest he bestowed upon the King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Brabant*, the third he married to *Richard* the Popes Nephew by his brother, and the fourth to his Competitor *Otto*, who upon this left off prosecuting his right in the Empire: By this last Marriage *Philip* bought his peace, but lost his life; for

A a

one

*An. Christi.* one *Otto Wittelsbachius* who had been a suitor to this daughter, and was by *Philip* encouraged in the suit, but afterward rejected, in a rage gets into the room where *Philip* was at *Bamberg* with a private friend, and thrusts his Dagger (which he had under his cloak) into the Emperours throat, of which wound he dyed, having reigned ten years almost; the Paricide escaped by means of *Erbert* Bishop of *Bamberg*, but afterward he was apprehended and slain. *Philip's* body was buried at *Bamberg*, and from thence translated to *Spire* by *Frederick* the Second; his wife *Irene* dyed shortly after with grief.

1208.

*Otto* succeeded to *Philip*, for so they had covenanted, that *Otto* should not meddle with the Empire whilst *Philip* lived; but he did not enjoy it long quietly, for shortly after he had been crown'd by Pope *Innocent* the second at *Rome*, (where his Gold prevailed more then his Sword) there arose a quarrel about the Principality of *Mand*, sometime the wife of *Henry* the Fourth; this she had bequeathed on the Church of *Rome*, but the Emperours still claimed it as their due; therefore *Otto* resolves to recover by Arms both that Marquisat and the other Territories with-held from *Frederick* the Second's Tutors. At this resolution of *Otto's*, Pope *Innocent* was highly offended, and because he would not leave off his claim, he is excommunicated; therefore *Otto* sets Guards upon the Pope, suffering none to have access to him, which caused such a tumult in the City, that *Otto*, not without great slaughter, was fain to flee thence into *Lombardy*, where he collects his Forces and invades *Romandiola*, *Tuscia*, and the Marquisat of *Ancona*; thence he marched into *Apulia* to recover what the Pope had detained from the Empire: in the mean season the Popes curse is published in *Germany*, and the Princes are desired to thrust the Excommunicate Emperour out of his Government. Hence ariseth a new War, which drew *Otto* home out of *Italy*, some do side with him, but more with the Pope; hereupon the chief *German* Princes, with the *Bohemian*, send for *Frederick* the Second out of *Sicily*, remembering the promise they had made to *Henry* his father, about settling his son in the Empire. *Frederick* comes into *Alsacia*; *Otto* with his Army prepares to encounter him, but most of his Souldiers forsook him, so that he returns into *Spain*; *Frederick* in the interim takes in all upon the *Rhine*, then being crowned at *Aix*, he makes a League with *Philip* the French King; the King of *England* assists *Otto* with men and money; upon this the War is renewed; but it lasted not long, for *Otto* being defeated by the French, and forsaken by his men, resigned up his Empire the fourth year after he had undertaken it, and five years after this resignation died of the bloody Flux, and was buried at *Bruswige*.

1214.

In these Civil wars of *Germany*, the Marquess of *Brandenburg* drew the *Sclavi* to rebell against *Canutus* King of *Denmark*, *Peter* Bishop of *Roschild* arrived in the *Oder* with an Army, which he landed in the Marquisat; a bloody Battle is fought, and he taken prisoner, but escaped, and with another Army defeated the Marquess as he was plundring of *Sclavia*, and took divers places in *Holsatia* from *Adolphus* the Earl who aided the Marquess: At last *Lubec* being taken by *Valdemarus* D. of *Slesvic* who assisted *Peter*, *Hamburg* is surprised by him, and in it *Adolphus*. *Canutus* being dead, *Valdemor* the second is saluted at *Lubec*, King of *Denmark* and *Sclavia*, and Lord of *Nordalbingia*. *Adolphus* for his ranfome delivers up the strong Fort of *Lavenburg* to the King.

1218.

About the same time *Philip* of *France* recovered all *Normandy* again, the 270. year after it had been given to *Rollo* the *Dane*, from whom till this time were reckoned twelve Dukes, six whereof were Kings of *England*. *Odoacer* King of *Bohemia*, for siding with the Pope, is deposed by *Otto* the Emperour at the Dyet of *Norimberg*, and his son set up in his place.

The *Waldenses*, called commonly the poor men of *Lions*, *Albigenses* and *Beggini*, were busie about these times in opposing the corruptions of *Rome*, against whom the Dominicans and Franciscans were employed by Argument, and the Earl of *Montfort* with some other Princes by the Sword, many of

of them were slain, and many burned for Hereticks: the *Saxons*, *Westfalians*, *Frislanders*, and *Austrians* were making an Expedition against them, but changing their mind, they assisted *Spain* against the *Moors* or King of *Morocco*. *Peter* King of *Arragon* lost his life in assisting the *Albigenses*.

*An. Christi.*

*Frederick* having settled *Germany*, and annexed again *Belgium* and *Lorain* to the Empire, was fain to be crowned the second time at *Aix*, and to take a solemn Oath to the Pope, that he would raise all the strength he could to recover the Holy-Land; for which purpose also he assembled the Council of *Lateran*, and promised to declare *Frederick* Emperour; but before this could be performed, *Innocent* died at *Perussum*, as he was going to compose the War between the *Pisans* and *Genovis*: At last *Innocent's* promise was performed by his Successor *Honorius*. After this, *Frederick* returns to *Italy*, to take order with the *Tuscians* and *Apulians*, who by the assistance of the Bishops, had invaded and spoiled the Emperours Territories; these he subdued, and removed the Bishops out of their places, which fled to the Pope for remedy, who desired *Frederick* to restore them; which he refusing, and withall inveighing against the Popes pride, covetousness, and frauds, gave occasion of new troubles, by which all *Italy* banded against the Emperour, and at last the French were called in to the Kingdom of *Naples*, (these troubles were prefiged by Earth-quakes, and blood mingled with dust, out of the clouds, at *Rome*.) The Emperour is excommunicate; the *Sicilians* take up Arms against *Frederick*, having shaken off his Government, therefore *Frederick* is forced to leave *Italy*, and to pass over into *Sicily*, which he quieted, and performed Funeral obsequies to his wife *Constantia* lately dead: Thence he returned into *Germany*, where he held a Dyet at *Wurzburg*, and made his son *Henry* by *Constantia* his Colleague in the Empire, but afterward condemned him to perpetual imprisonment in *Calabria*, with his two sons, by consent of the *German* Princes (where he died the next year after) because he aimed to dethrone his Father, against whom by the Popes instigation he stirred up the Cities of *Lombardy*: This quarrel was somewhat mitigated between the Pope and Emperour by *John de Bregna* K. of *Jerusalem*, who acquainted the Pope with the danger of *Asia*, and that if *Damietta* had not been surrendered again to the Sultan, the Christian Army had been drowned by opening the sluices of *Nilus*. He also bestowed his daughter *Jole* upon *Frederick*, with the Kingdom of *Jerusalem* for her dowry, to engage his son-in-law against the Sarazens in *Asia*; *Frederick* having undertaken the Expedition, sends his son *Henry* into *Germany*, to have a Dyet called for raising of money horse and men towards this Expedition.

1222.

*Ludovic* Lantgrave of *Thuringia* is by the Princes made chief Commander of the German Forces. *Frederick* invites the German Princes into *Cremona*, to consult with them about the Empire, for he could not with safety leave *Italy*. This the Pope suspected, wherefore by raising of *Lombardy* he hinders the meeting; but Pope *Honorius* dieth in the interim, to whom succeeds *Gregory* the ninth, as fierce as the former against the Emperour, accusing him for lingering in *Italy*, and neglecting the Asian Expedition, whereas he knew that *Frederick* by his son *Henry* was promoting the business in *Germany*; *Brundisium* was the Rendezvous for the Souldiers, where the Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, with divers others fell sick & died; *Frederick* also himself was ill disposed, by reason of the unreasonable weather, and when he put to Sea, was beat back again by contrary winds, so that he was forced to stay at *Brundisium*; the Pope notwithstanding rageth against him, accusing him of perjury, adultery, and cruelty to his wife; of treachery also, in suffering *Damietta* to be lost; therefore he curseth him, and denounceth war against him, to that purpose calleth *Bregna* or *Brennus* his father-in-law into *Romandiola*, giving him the Title of *Exarch*; he armes also the *Tuscians* and *Lombards* against him. *Frederick* to purge himself from the Popes criminations, calls the Princes together at *Ravenna*, but the tumults of *Lombardy* hindred that meeting, therefore he clears

1225.

An. Christi.  
1228.

himself by writing. So having repaired his Fleet, he sets sail for *Asia*, having sent before, with the greatest part of the Army, *Reinold D. of Bavaria*, and Master of the Horse; the charge of *Italy* was committed to *Reinold D. of Spoleum*: but because *Frederick* took not his leave of the Pope, nor expiated his crimes, condemning as it were the Popes curse, he commanded the Syrian Armies not to follow, or to obey him, and withall layeth hold on the Kingdom of *Naples*, and fills all *Italy* with troubles: *Frederick* notwithstanding fortifieth *Joppe*, and forceth the Sultan to restore *Jerusalem*, *Bethleem*, & *Nazareth*.

This *Brennus* or *Bregna* had married *Mary* the daughter of *Almaricus* King of *Cyprus* and *Jerusalem*, and with her received the Title of King: he did good service in *Asia*, but being forsaken of *Andrew* King of *Hungary*, who having washed himself three times in *Jordan*, thought he had sufficiently paid his vow, returns home with his Army: being (I say) thus forsaken, and hopeless to recover *Palestina*, he intrencheth himself between *Casaria* and the hill *Caiapha*, and grew so strong with the continual aid of Pilgrims, that he much infested the Barbarians; then having got a Fleet of Ships, he sailes to *Damiata* (of old *Heliopolis*) in *Egypt*, breaks down the Chain which kept off Ships from entering *Nilus*, and at last, not without much labour and blood took the Barbarians strongest Hold: Here *Saphadin* was slain; his son wanting provision, retreats from the place with his Army. *Conradin* the Sultan of *Damascus* and *Jerusalem*, and the son of *Saphadin*, offers conditions of peace, and promisseth restitution of the Cross, and all that the Christians had lost in *Cyria*, or *Phenicia*; this was liked by all the Latines, except by *Pelagius* the Cardinal, who would yield to no terms till *Egypt* were first subdued: At this, *Conradin* in a rage demolisheth the walls and chief buildings of *Jerusalem*, *Casaria*, and other places, that they might not be serviceable to the Christians, who lost many men by the Plague and Famine; at last, *Damiata* after a years siege and a half, is taken; *Pelagius* claims it as the Popes due; King *Brennus* retires to *Ptolemais*, who with much intreaty of the Princes returns; *Pelagius* the Legat urgeth the subduing of *Egypt*, and first of the regal City *Cayre*, whom *Brennus* resisteth, alledging they came not for *Egypt*, but for recovering the Holy-Land; but the Legat would have his will; therefore commands *Lodowick* of *Bavaria* to go before, and the rest to follow, threatening to curse those that obeyed him not; about 70000. went for fear of his curse; no sooner had they pitched their Tents about ten miles from the City *Cayre*, when the Nile is let in upon them, many were drowned, and the rest forced to forsake *Damiata*, and to leave *Egypt*; the Sultan of *Damascus* made Truce with them for ten years; upon this *Brennus* repairs to the Pope for new supplies.

About these times, *Waldemar* the second, King of *Denmark*, was surprised and carried away with his Son by *Henry* Earle of *Suerinum*, whose Wife the King had abused whilst *Henry* was absent at the holy War, notwithstanding he had intrusted her with the King, hoping she could not have been any where so safe. This King having recovered by his Armies, and subdued the *Slavonian* coast of the *Baltick* Sea, and having regained *Hamburg* from *Otto* the fourth, was in his sleep seized upon by night, carried away in a Ship, and imprisoned in the Castle of *Daneberg*; so that two years after he was forced to ransom himself with 35. Talents of Silver; so he recovered his Kingdome, but in the interim lost the Town of *Vandalia*, which revolted from him.

1230. *Frederick* having returned from *Asia*, shewed that he was not dead, as was given out, purposely to encourage *Brennus* to invade *Apulia* and *Calabria*, being the Lands of one dead in Excommunication. *Frederick* lands in *Sicily*, and overthroweth in a Battle the forces of his Father in law, and reconciles himself to Pope *Gregory*, who had been driven out of *Rome* by the People for his exactions, and was indigent of money; therefore the Emperour by *Leopold* of *Austria* sends him a great summe, and upon that he is Absolved and entertained by the Pope: So they joyn their forces together against the Rebels and Hereticks,

Hereticks, raging on them with Fire and Sword; *Frederick* on the *Messianians* in *Sicily*, *Gregory* on the *Tentons*; who being again pursued by the *Romans*, aiming at their ancient liberty, stoutly defended himself: At *Reatum* a bloody battel is fought, in which 30000. were slain: After this, he sends his Preachers about for raising of men and money again for the Holy Land. A great Army is raised under *Theobald* King of *Navarre* and other Commanders; They march by land, suffering much hardship and losse by the way; but shortly after they were come to *Ptolemais*, the Turks Army overthroweth them, so that few escaped, who returned home with dishonour.

10 About this time *Ferdinand* King of *Castile* took *Hispalis* and *Corduba* from the *Sarazens*; and *James* King of *Arragon*, *Valentia* and *Majorca*, driving the Barbarians into *Africa*: And about the same time did *Henry* rebel against his Father *Frederick*, whom he also would have poisoned as some think, upon suspicion that he loved his Son *Conradus* begot of *Iole* the Queen of *Jerusalem*, better then him. The same year, *Frederick* married *Isabel* Sister to King *Henry* the Third of *England*; then did Pope *Gregory* set forth his Decretals: *Frederick* prepareth an Army to chastise the *Lombards*, chiefly the rebellious *Millanois*; but the insolencies committed against the *Hungarians* by *Frederick* of *Austria*, who despised the Emperours Summons, caused him to raise his Siege from before *Millain* and return home, where he stript the *Austrian* of all his power and bands; then renews his quarrel with the *Millanois*, whom he subdued, and took in *Sardinia* subject of old to *Sicily*: The Pope challengeth *Sardinia* as a part of the Churches Patrimony; *Frederick* refuseth, shewing it belonged to the Empire, the Priviledges of which he was bound by Oath to maintain; upon this *Frederick* is accursed for an Heretick, and an Enemy of the Church: He on the other side, by Letters to the Christian Kings excuseth himself, and accuseth *Gregory* of high crimes, whom the *Romans* upon hope of gain by his presence; received again into the City: Then did *Gregory* strengthen himself by the *Venetians* and *Genuois*, who had contended long for the Dominion of the Sea; between them he made a League for Nine years, that they might be the better able to assist him against *Frederick*: He also invites *Lewis* the French King to take upon him the Empire, which he refuseth; yet after ward both *Lewis* of *France* and *Henry* of *England* fell foule with *Frederick*, for employing the Earle of *Tolouse* his forces against *Raimund* Earle of *Province*, who was Father in Law to both Kings: however, *Frederick* was prevalent against the Pope by Land, and against the *Venetians* at Sea; onely *Ferraria* was recovered by *Gregory*. Such confusion was then in *Italy*, that the Emperour could scarce know who were for him, who were against him; therefore he brought in for distinctions sake the Barbarous names of *Guelphs* and *Gibellins*, which two Families had heretofore quarrelled in *Germany*; the *Cæsarians* are named *Gibellins*, the Pontificians *Guelphs*; these two factions fill all places of *Italy* with blood, most Towns fell off from the Pope, even *Rome* was ready to forsake him; but that he in a solemn Application caused the heads of the two Apostles *Peter* and *Paul* to be carried through the City, to move the people to commiseration.

*Frederick* in the mean space takes *Beneventum* by storm, and overthroweth it; he drives the *Benedictines* out of their Monastery at *Cassinum*, and gives *Nuceria* in *Apulia* to the *Sarazens* (whom he drove out of *Sicily*): He falls suddenly upon *Ravenna* and subdues it. Upon this *Gregory* calls a Synod at *Lateran* for deposing of *Frederick*, who by his Letters to the Princes shewed, that both the time, place, and persons, and other circumstances were for *Gregories* advantage, but all to his prejudice; therefore he shuts up all passages to *Rome* both by Sea and Land, and intercepts some Cardinals going thither, whom he imprisoned, with divers Bishops; which so grieved *Gregory*, that he fell sick and died, the 15. year of his Pontificat; and almost 100. of his life. Then did *Faventia* after a long siege yield to *Frederick*: his two sons, *Conradus* and

226 The Second Part of the History of the Emperour Frederick the Second.  
*An. Christi.* Henry drove the Tartars from Danubius; these had plundred Poland, Hungaria, & Silesia; the Church wants a Pope for twenty one moneths, in which vacancie Frederick removes the Univerſity of Bononia into Padua; at laſt the Emperour by the intreaty of Baldwin, who had left Asia, and of Raimund the Tolosan, being both now in Italy, diſmiſſeth the impriſoned Biſhops and Cardinals, wiſhing them to chooſe a new Pope, which they neglecting to doe, were forced by Frederick, Armes, and Lewis the French Kings threatnings; at length Innocent the Fourth is choſen at Anagnia, now called Campagna di Roma; he pretending that Frederick meant to kill him, fled to Genua from Rome, and then by Sea into Lions; in the interim, the Romans overthrew Frederick's Garrisons, and in a Skirmiſh one like unto the Emperour was killed, whereupon it was rumoured that Frederick was killed, which cauſed many to fall off from his Faction.

1245. The Pope in this mean while chooseth new Cardinals, whom he honoureth with Scarlet Garments and Hats; then he falls with his Curses upon *Frederick*, and invites the *Germans* to choose *Henry* Lantgrave of *Thuringia* for their Emperour, which was hindred by *Fredericks* Armies; this not succeeding, the Pope calls a general Council at *Lions*, there *Petrus de Vineis* with others stoutly pleaded for *Frederick*, yet notwithstanding he is anathematized: But to shew how much he slighted this Curse, he falls upon oppressing the *Millanois* again; but finding divers of the Princes to forsake him as an Excommunicate Person, he promiseth the Pope to maintaine the Holy War, if he would absolve him and settle his Son *Conradus* in the Empire, which by him was refused; of this *Frederick* complains to the Princes, but *Innocent* proceeds in solliciting *Henry* to accept the Empire, which he did at last, whom *Conradus* *Fredericks* Son opposeth with an Army; but his Commanders being bribed forsake him, so that he was faine to return with dishonour to his Father: after this, the Lantgrave by the help of the Bishops, plays the Emperour, and as he was going to receive his Inauguration at *Ulm*, was set upon by *Conradus*; the Landgrave had the better, but a Reserve of 15000 *Conradus* had laid in Ambush, breaking out suddenly on the Lantgrave, defeated his Army, in which he received a wound, and of that died shortly after.

1247. Ambush, breaking out suddenly, and of that died shortly after. in which he received a wound, and of that died shortly after. Innocent being much troubled at this, sends his Oratours abroad to sollicite the Princes to rise unanimously against *Frederick*, and withall sends a great Summe of money to *William Earle of Holland*, to raise an Army and to invade the Empire, but the money was intercepted by *Fredericks Friends*; yet by the diligence of *Conradus Bishop of Cullen*, and the other Prelates of *Germany*, as also by the continuall preaching of the *Franciscans* and *Dominicans*, infinite summes were raised for *William*, with which he raised an Army that drove *Conradus King of the Romans* quite out of *Germany*; wherefore *Frederick*<sup>40</sup> resolves to go into *Burgundy*, that from thence he might send forces against *Lions* where the Pope was; but in his journey he was slayed by *Parma*, which thrust the gates against him; he resolves not to stir till he had taken it, but the siege lasted a whole year, in which time he builds a new town close by it, which he called *Victoria*, and caused new Coyn to be stampd in honour of *Victor the Martyr*, to whom he vowed to build a Temple, if he subdued the City: He had there three Sons with him, *Henry* the younger whom he created Vice-Roy of *Italy*, *Frederick* the bastard Prince of *Antioch* and Governour of *Tuscia*, and *Hensius King of Sardinia*; he had also received Elephants and some other wilde beasts out of *Africa*, with these he made publick shews so at an unreasonable time, and spent his treasure vainly; so that he was faine to turn his new stampd Gold into Leather money, promising to repay it again in Gold: The Citizens of *Parma* proffered to surrender upon Articles, which were denyed them by *Frederick*; wishing them in scorn to eat sparingly, and make much of their provision, for that should be the last that ever they should eat; this so exasperated them, that desperately they fallay out upon the

the *Casarians* (Frederick being then retired for healths sake, with some part of his Army) whom they defeat and put to flight, seize upon 15000. Horse, and cut *Thaddens* the General in pieces, and the new City *Victoria* they overthrow and level with the ground.

*William of Holland* in the mean space, desirous to be consecrated, laid siege to *Six*, the Dukes of *Saxony* and *Bavaria* were against him; but he had the Bishop of *Colen*, with the rest of the Clergy, for him, whose Armes and purfes were at his command; by their help, and by an inundation of water, the City yielded, and received *William*. About this time *Petrus de Vineis*, who had pleaded so much for *Frederick*, was ill rewarded by him, upon suspicion that Pope *Innocent* had hired him to poyson the Emperour by his Physician, who having brought the potion, and willed by *Frederick* first to take it, poured it on the ground; upon this, *Peters* eyes were thrust out, who to avoid further punishment, or else mad for being falsely accused, beat out his own brains against a pillar. In the mean while *Frederick* begins to prevail again; he drove *William* back into *Holland*; he subjected *Parma*, being secure, with other Cities in *Italy*. People began to murmur, that the Popes persecuting of *Frederick* kept him from *Asia*, where all was now in danger to be lost, many revolted from *Christ* to *Mahumet*: Hereupon *Innocent* is desired to receive *Frederick* into favour again, that he might heal these sores of Christendome, or else that he should be gone from *Lions*, but he remained inexorable; and therefore sends to the King of *England* to have *Burdeaux* for his residence, being he was banished from his own Church. In this mean season *Frederick* died in *Apulia*, of poyson, as some think, of a Feaver, say others; and to hasten his death the sooner, his Bastard-son *Manfred* stifled him with his pillow; he died the 38. year of his Empire, and the 54. of his age; by his Will he left a great treasure towards the holy Warr; he was buried at *Panormus* in a Tomb of Porphyrie, on *Manfreds* charges, to avoid the suspicion of murder.

He was a Prince eminent both in vertue and vice : he was a good Scholler  
30 and Linguist; he caused *Aristotle*, *Galen*, *Ptolomy*, and *Anicenna* to be translated into Latine out of the Greek and Arabick; he erected an University at *Naples*, collected many of the Laws, and was a lover of learned men : he had three wives, the first was *Constantia* Queen of *Arragon*, of whom he had *Henry* the elder Duke of *Suevia* and King of the *Romanes*; the other was *Jole*, *Bregna's* daughter King of *Jerusalem*, whence the Title of King of *Jerusalem* was annexed to the Kings of *Sicily* and *Naples*, of her he had *Conradus*, on whom *Frederick* conferred the titles of his brother *Henry*, and bequeathed him *Sicily* and *Naples* : The third was King *Johns* daughter of *England*, of whom he had *Henry* the younger : he had also, besides divers daughters, bastard-sons; *Man-*  
40 *fred* prince of *Tarentum*, who stifled him for giving away *Naples* from him; *Hensius* King of *Sardinia*, whom the *Bononians* killed, being shut up in an iron Cage; and *Frederick* Prince of *Antioch*.

## CHAP. II.

1. *The true state of the Eastern Empire.* 2. *The affaires of France, Tartary, Denmark, Poland, England, Scotland, Spain, and other places.* 3. *The Popes of these times.*

50 **T**He *Greeks* having lost the Eastern Empire, *Baldwinus* Earl of *Flanders*, being but 32. years old, is made Emperor of *Constantinople*; who to enlarge his Empire, passeth into *Asia*, having sent his brother *Henry* before, against whom *Prusja* of *Bithinia* shut her gates. *Baldwin* was quickly called back out of *Asia*, upon the revolt of some Cities in *Macedonia* and *Thracia*, among the rest *Hadrianopolis*, which held out so long, till *John* Duke of *Mysia* came

*An. Christi.* came with his Army to raise the siege; the Latine Army is overthrown, and Baldwin with divers Commanders taken prisoners; he had reigned but one year, when he was laid in irons, at last they cut off his hands and feet, and so left him alive for a prey to the Birds, but he died the second day after. The Latines to be revenged, rob and murder both by sea and land, so that they and the *Scythians* destroy one another. Henry, Baldwin's brother, succeeds in the Empire; and Boniface the Marquis having lost most of his Townes, shuts himself up in *Thessalonica*. Miserable was the condition of Greece at this time, men devouring one another, as Wolves do sheep.

1205. In the East, *Prusa*, *Nicba*, *Smyrna*, *Ephesus*, and divers other places, with the *Lydians*, submitted themselves to *Theodorus Lascaris*, who having got together a Fleet of Ships, subdued divers Islands. David and Alexus, brothers, the Nephews of *Andronicus* sometimes Tyrant, *Aldobrandinus* the Italian, and the *Gennois* who took *Crete*, tore away divers limbs from the Greek Empire. Henry made peace with the Bulgarians, and married with the prince of Bulgaria's daughter; so returning with his Army to *Byzantium*, he fortified the City, where having left a Garrison, went to *Thessalonica*, where the Marquis of *Montsferrat* was, whom he made King there; and then returned to *Constantinople*, where he died the 11. year of his Reign, having betrothed his daughter *Jolanta* to *Petrus Antisiodorensis*, who in her right claimed the Empire, and then he went to *Rome* to be crowned by the Pope. In the mean time *Theodorus Lascaris*, who had overthrown the Turks in a great battel, and killed the Sultan with his own hand, made himself Emperour at *Nicba*, and seized upon *Epirus* and *Dyrrachium*, that he might shut up the Emperours passage in his return to the City; he besieged the Tower, but to no purpose; so he promised to raise the siege, if *Theodorus* would give him the publike Faith for his safe departure, which he did accordingly; but as the Emperour was passing through the Woods of *Thessaly*, he was treacherously apprehended by some Forces in ambush, which brought him to *Theodorus*, by whom he was condemned, imprisoned in a loathsome Dungeon, and two years after beheaded; his widow ruled the Empire in the mean space, till her son *Robert* was returned from *France*, because he could not come by Sea to the City, the Enemy having shut up all passages, he makes a long journey through *Pannonia* and *Myfia*. When he had got the Empire, he admits *Martinus Michael*, the Venetian Pretor, out of his love to the people, to be his Colleague in the Empire; but he lived not long, for he died in *Achaia*, as he was returning after his inauguration, from *Rome*; his son Baldwin was as yet too young for Government, and the *Lascaris* with the *Comnins* were busie in using all means possible to recover the City; which danger the *Venetians* perceiving, entred into a League with the one to destroy the other; therefore they advised the young Emperour to marry with the daughter of *Alexius Comnenus*; but the French Peers fearing a change of Government in a Grecian affinity, rejected this wholesome advice, and by the suggestion of Pope Gregory, they made a match between the young Emperour to *Martha* the daughter of *Brennus* King of *Jerusalem*, whose sister, or (as others say) daughter *Jole*, *Frederick* married. So long as *Brennus* lived, Baldwin was strong enough for his enemies; but after his death the enemies increasing, and his treasures being spent, which should have maintained the Venetian Fleet, he was forced to repair into *Italy*, hoping for aide from *Frederick* (then before *Parma*) and the Pope, but both failed him; yet when he heard of the death of *Theodorus Lascaris*, he took courage, and returned to *Constantinople*, hoping to quell his enemies; but *Michael Palaeologus* forced him into the City, which he besieged, and at last by treachery took; Baldwin escaped narrowly in the night, and got into *Italy* by *Euripus* & *Eubola*, then in the Venetian possession. Thus was *Constantinople* lost by Baldwin the second, the 60. year after it had been possessed by Baldwin the first.

1216. *Theodorus Lascaris* Emperour of *Nicba*, having defeated the Turkish Sultan, whose

(whose head he carried upon a long pole about his Army, to the terror of the Turks, who fainted at the sight thereof, and submitted to him) reigned 18. years, and then died, leaving for his successor *Johannes Ducas* his son-in-law, who in 33. years of his Reign recovered almost all the Empire from the Latines, and then dyed; whose son *Theodorus Lascaris* succeeded, who died the fourth year of his Empire, being 36. years old, and left a son, *John* by name, of 6. years old, to succeed him; but *Michael Palaeologus* usurping the Empire, thrust out the eyes of this young Emperour, whose tuition he had undertaken; and so being now ten years of age, lost both his eyes and Empire at once.

10 In *France*, *Philip* raised an Army against the *Albigenses*, who were defended by the King of *Arragon*, and *Raimond* Earl of *Tholouse*. In this war, *Simon Montfortius*, General of the Catholike Forces, gave divers defeats to the *Albigenses*, and at last was killed at the siege of *Tholouse*, which was given him by the Lateral Council as a reward. This war was renewed by *K. Lewis* the 8. and determined by his son *St. Lewis*, who caused Earl *Raimond* at *Paris* to abjure their opinions; and then he bestowed his daughter, with the Earldome of *Tholouse* upon *Alphonso* the brother of *St. Lewis*. The English were beat out of *Rochel*, and a great part of *Gascony*, by *Lewis* the 8. who returning from his *Albigensian* Expedition, died the fourth year of his reign, whose son *Lewis* the 9. was crowned at *Rhemes* the same year, the 12. year of his age; he for his good life was canonized by *Boniface* the 8. and called *Lewis* the Saint: he subdued in the beginning of his reign *Theobald* Earl of *Campaigna*, and *Hugh* Earl of *Marchia*; then having made peace, and being recovered of a dangerous sickness, he raiseth an Army, and under the sign of the Crofs saileth into *Egypt*, obtains a Victory, and withall *Damiata*; thence he marcheth to *Cayre*, and was in a fair possibility to have taken it, the *Calyph* Forces being much weakened: but by reason of the unwholsome vapours of those Marish places, the Pestilence grew so violent in the French Army, that multitudes died; so that the King being defeated, and taken prisoner, was forced to yield to such conditions as pleased the enemy, to wit, that *Damiata* should be restored, with the captives on both sides, a great sum of money to be paid, to wit, 8000. Marks of gold; and truce made for 10. years, so the King and Army were dismissed: The Kings intention was to have recovered *Jerusalem* from the *Parthians*, who being beat out of their own Countrey by the *Tartars*, entred *Syria*, took *Jerusalem*, and destroyed it, abusing and polluting the Temple of the Holy Sepulchre. This King was very devout and religious, causing publike fasting and prayers through all his Dominions, when *France* was visited with the Plague: he redeemed the Holy Reliques of Christs Passion, among which was the Crown of Thorns, from the *Venetians*, to whom Baldwin had pawned them for a great sum of money, to be employed against the *Greeks*, which incensed them exceedingly against the Latines, storming that those Reliques should be possessed, bought and sold by them, whereas they had been so carefully kept by the *Græcian* Princes so many years. *Lewis* had also a religious Mother *Blanca*, who in his minority and absence governed the Kingdome with great prudence; by her meanes peace was made between *France* and *England*. This same *Lewis* took many Towns in *Brittany*, and caused the D. do him homage; he advanced the University of *Paris*, after many Schollers had left it upon some jars between them and the Citizens: he would not be persuaded to forsake the Army, when the Plague was hot among them in *Egypt*, but stayed all the while, and was at last infected himself; the fame of his sanctity caused a great Prince of the *Tartars*, and many of the *Scythians* to become Christians; he stayed 5. years in the East, converting the Barbarians by his good life; he sent home his two brothers *Charles* and *Alphonso*, to comfort their disconsolate Mother, after they were set free, being taken prisoners with him: as he was returning homeward, his Ship was cast upon a rock by a storm,

B b

during



*An. Christi.* during which time he prayed kneeling, and so the Ships got off without hurt.

About these times the *Tartars*, under the conduct of their King *Hoccottas*, did in great swarms enter *Asia* and *Europe*; they subdued *Persis*, and all the Countries between that and *Tanais*; at length they over-ran *Poland* and *Hungary*, even to *Austria*: upon this, Pope *Innocent* sends some choise *Franciscans* and *Dominicans*, to try if they could bring these Barbarians to the knowledge of *Christ*, which they did accordingly, so that their new King *Mago*, or *Meto*, was baptized: *Halon*, King *Meto's* brother, having defeated the *Turks*, recovers *Syria*, and was in possibility to have settled the Christians again in *Jerusalem*, had not their own discords hindred, and his departure thence; for at that time his brother *Meto* died, and he was called away to inherit the Kingdom.

In *Denmark* to *Waldemar* the 3. succeeded *Ericus*, whose brother *Abel* was made Duke of *Jutia*; this *Ericus*, as he was preparing to chastise *Lubeck* and *Hamburg*, who had entred into confederacie against him; was treacherously murdered by his brother *Abel*, who having reigned two years, was in Gods just judgement slain by the *Frisbnes* in a tumult, as he was raising an Army against them, for refusing to submit to his unjust exactions. To him succeeded *Christopher*, the third brother; against him his subjects rebelled, and threw down his Castles and Houses; he imprisoned his Archbishop, for which his Kingdom was under the Popes curse nine years.

*Poland* at this time was afflicted with Civil Warrs: for *Conradus* and *Henry* the two Tutors of young *Boleslaus* the King, strove for the Principality; divers battels were fought, till at length *Conradus* the Kings Uncle prevailed; but the Queen and her son were more inclined to *Henry*; wherefore *Conradus* seisseth on the King, and shuts him up in a Monastery, where he made an escape, having intoxicated his Keepers with wine, and so betakes himself to *Henry*, who with much trouble settled him again in his Kingdom, both the Tutors submitting. In the interim, the *Tartars* break in upon *Poland*, destroy-  
1240. ing all with fire and sword; so that the King with his wife fled into *Hungary* to his Father-in-law; but he also by the same storm was driven out of his Country; which fell likewise upon *Silesia* and *Moravia*. *Boleslaus* was glad to hide himself in a Castle; in the mean while, the son of *Henry* the Kings Tutor, upon the death of his Father, who was slain in the war, takes possession of *Poland*, whom *Conradus*, *Boleslaus* his Uncle, drove out; but he did not enjoy the kingdom long, for he grew odious to the people, for laying heavy taxes on them, that a way was made for *Boleslaus* to return, who upon the death of *Conradus*, which fell out shortly after, possessed the Kingdom quietly.

1247. In *England*, *John Plantagenet*, youngest son of King *Henry* the 2. succeeded to *Richard*, albeit *Arthur Plantagenet* his Nephew, and son to *Geoffrey* his elder brother was then living, whom *Philip* the second King of *France* animated and assisted with men and money against King *John*, so that in a short time *Arthur* levied a puissant Army, and invaded *Normandy*, where he took divers strong places; at length King *John* came over with a strong Army, and fought divers battels with his Nephew; after which they came to an agreement, and a place was concluded, but shortly after interrupted by the French King, who with a more numerous Army enters *Normandy*, and depopulates it: King *John* for want of money and courage gave way to the French Victories, till the people cryed out on him, and furnished him with a large tax, every lusty man proffering his service; upon this an Army is raised and transported into *Normandy*, where cruel battels were fought, and the French defeated; *Arthur* the kings Nephew, and rightful heir, was taken prisoner, and sent to the Castle of *Roan*; where upon hope to escape, he leaped from the Walls, and was drowned

drowned in the Ditch. The next year following the French king pretending title to that Dutchy, invaded it with such a power and fury, that the whole Country, to avoid desolation, subjected it self to him. Shortly after this, Pope *Innocent* the third quarrelled with king *John*, about the election of the Archbishop of *Canterbury*; for upon the death of *Hubert*, St. *Austins* Monks there without the kings consent elected *Raynold* a brother of their own, of whom they took an Oath to repair to *Rome* for his investiture and pall: the King being displeased at this, they elect *John Gray* Bishop of *Norwich*, in whose behalf the King sent to the Pope, intreating him to ratifie this last choyce; but the Pope slighted the Kings Letters, and confirmed the first election; yet understanding that divers of the Monks disliked the first election, because it was done in the night, advised the Monks to elect *Steven Langton* the Cardinal of *Chryfogone*, which was done accordingly, albeit the K. prohibited the choice, who storming that he was thus slighted, writes to the Pope, that he would not from thenceforth suffer him or his Kingdom to be thus enslaved to *Rome*: The Pope answers, that the election should stand, requiring the King to give him quiet possession, and to recall the banished Monks, and authorised 4. Bishops to interdict the King and Kingdom, if he did not obey; the King upon this seised on these Bishops lands and goods, promising to do the like to all that should have any recourse to *Rome*; wherefore the Pope sends his two Legats, *Pandulphus* and *Durant*, wishing the King to submit himself to the Pope, and to be reconciled to the four Bishops, and the Monks of St. *Austin*, which he was willing to do, conditionally that he might not allow the Cardinals election; upon this the Legats pronounce the Popes Curse against the king, absolving his Subjects from their allegiance, and withall gave his Crown to *Philip* the French king: this fulmination the King slighted; and to confront the Pope, he enters *Scotland* with a great Army, because king *Alexander* the second had sided with the Pope, and entertained divers of his rebellious Clergy; the Scottish king to avoid further trouble, reconciled himself to king *John*. King *Philip* of  
30 *France* having now some pretence to war upon *England*, provides a great Army, but 300. of his Ships laden with Victuals were surprisid by King *John*, so his hopes failed him: but the Pope pursued the king so eagerly with his Thunder-bolts, that he was fain at last on his knees, before *Pandulphus*, to confess his disobedience to the pope; and craving pardon, by a publike Instrument under his hand and seale resigned his Crown to the pope, which *Pandulphus* kept four dayes for the popes use, and then gave the Crown to King *John* and his heirs, reserving a tenure thereof to the Church of *Rome*, with an annual Tribute of 1000. Marks, 7000. for *England*; and 3000. for *Ireland*. Many of the Nobility upon this revolt from the king, and fle over to *France*,  
40 to assist *Philip* against him, who was making preparations for his son *Lewis* to invade *England*; which he did, and was like to have carried it, had not the pope required *Philip* and his son *Lewis* to desist from all hostility against that Crown which was holden of the See of *Rome*: this injunction the French king refused to obey; wherefore the pope sends *Guallo* the Cardinal of Saint *Martins* hither, who accursed *Philip*, *Lewis*, and the English that sided with them: Hereupon the common Souldiers forsook their Leaders, and went home, and divers of the Countrey people fell to robbing and plundering the houses of the Nobility and Gentry that were accursed; which caused them, being destitute of means, and forsaken of their friends, to submit to king *John*,  
50 who pardoned them, and restored them to their Honours and Lands; and so after this followed peace. The pope shortly after, in the Council of *Lateran*, published, that the tenure of *England* was to be of the Church of *Rome*. At the same time *Orto* the Emperour, *Peter* King of *Arragon*, and *Raymund* Earl of *Tholonse*, with some other princes, were excommunicated for heresie, as was pretended, but indeed to subject their temporalities to the pope; and therefore it was decreed, that no man should be made Emperour, untill he had sworn

*An. Christi.*

1213.

*An. Christi.* sworn his homage to the pope. But the Clergy was never heartily reconciled to King John, against whom they still bore a private grudge; therefore in the Abbey of Swinsted near Lincoln he was poisoned by a Monk of Saint Bernard's Order, who to make sure work, drank first to the King, and poisoned himself for company; so methinks he died of a surfeit of peaches and new Ale. King John reigned 17. years, and was buried at Winchester. In the 7. year of his reign he went into Ireland, and reduced that revolted people to his obedience. In the 9. year he renews the Londoners Charter for the annual electing of a Mayor and two Sheriffs. The next year London-Bridge was built. 1209. He had two sons, Henry, who succeeded him, and Richard Earl of Cornwall and King of the Romans. His three daughters were, Joan the eldest, married to Alexander the second, King of Scots; Elianor, wife to Simon Earl of Leicester; and Isabel the youngest, who was married to the Emperor.

1216. Henry, King John's son, was crowned at the age of 9. years, whose Protector was the Earl of Gloucester. In this Kings minority, the French invade this Kingdom, with whom the Welch take part; but the Protector stoutly opposed them: The Pope in the mean time thunders out his curses and Excommunications against the French, and their adherents: At this, Prince Lewis desisted from Armes, but his father Philip shipped new Forces to aide his Son. Hugh de Burgh Master of the Cinque-Ports rigs out a Fleet, and beats 20 the French; wherefore Prince Lewis makes peace with the English, and for a sum of money received, he surrenders all the Forts and Towns he had taken, and returns to France. Upon his departure, a Parliament is called, in which King Edwards Laws were established, and the grand Charter, or Magna Charta, the Wardships and Marriages of Wards granted of old to King Edgar and Edward the Confessor, were revived, and a voluntary Tax given to the King for raising of Forces to be conducted by Richard Earl of Cornwall, the Kings brother, for recovering of Poyteers and Gascoign again from the French; which Provinces were shortly after recovered by the same Richard, but invaded again, and taken by the French, and re-taken afterward by the said Richard 30 the second time; at last a peace is made between the two Kings. After this the Barons of England were discontent with King Henry, for applying himself meely to strangers, and neglecting them; which error the king perceiving, he reconciled himself to his Nobles, and resumed the Earldom of Chester into his own hands, John Scot the Earl thereof being dead without issue male; the four daughters of this Earl were, by way of exchange, enriched with other Territories and Honours. Prince Edward, the Kings son, is married to Elianor the King of Spains sister, on whom he bestowed Guian, Ireland, Chester and Wales; these two last dignities he annexed to the eldest sons of the English Kings. Not long after a Scholler in Oxford intended to murder the king, 40 but missed him, for that night he lodged not in his usual bed-chamber; so the Traitor was apprehended and put to death. In the 24. year of Henry's reign, Lewis the 9. invadeth Guian, against whom King Henry carried over an Army; divers skirmishes there were, with diverse success: After King Henries return into England, the French king married his brother to the daughter of the Earl of Tholouse, to whom he gave Poytiers and the English Territories in Alberne; he invades also the Earldome of March; king Henry upon this transporteth an Army unto Burdeaux, and near to that place fought the French, but lost the Field; whereupon the Earl of March submitted himself to the French king. Henry upon his return, married his sister to Alexander king of 50 Scots. The popes exactions were so great upon this Land, and his demands so unreasonable, in sending his Mandate to have 300. Romans preferred to the Benefices which should be first vacant in England, that the Clergy generally murmured; the Archbishop of Canterbury, Edmund, in discontent gives over all, and retires to the Abbey of Pontinnac in France; and the king was fain to complain in the Lateran Council against the pope, who had no other satis-

satisfaction from him but this; *Let us first kill the great Dragon,* (that is, Frederick the Emperour) *and then we shall quickly tread down these petty jnakes,* that is, the inferiour Kings and Princes. *An. Christi.*

In Scotland, to King William succeeded his son Alexander 16. years old; he being invited into England by the oppressed Clergy under King John, falls upon the Royalists and their Lands with fire and sword. King John in requital enters Scotland, wasting all before him in Lothian. Alexander was deterred by the Popes curse, from assisting Prince Lewis of France against King John, who had now resigned his Kingdom to the See of Rome; therefore he returns to Scotland, but with great difficulty, King John having caused the Bridges over Trent to be broken down; but his death (by poison,) did facilitate Alexanders return, who being absolved by the Popes Legat from his curse, makes peace with King Henry of England, whom the Pope had now established in his Kingdom. The Scots restore Carlisle which they had taken in the former war, and the English surrender Berwick. The Legat by his excommunication raiseth a great sum of money from the Scottish Clergy, who joyning with the Clergy of England, send Messengers to Rome with complaints against the Legates fordid and unjust carriage; on whom the Pope set a great fine. Egidius the Cardinal after him was sent to raise more money in both Kingdoms; which when he had lavishly spent; returns empty to Rome, pretending 20 he was robbed by the way: After him, another Legat comes; but he was commanded to depart, without giving him any thing. After this, a great Rebellion was in Rome under one Gillespie, who had taken Innerness, and done great hurt thereabout: Chimin the Earl of Buchan is sent against him, whom he defeated and took, with his two sons, their heads he cut off; and sent them to the king. The people of Cathness burned the Bishop; with some others; in his house, having before complained of his exactions; the chief actors were cruelly put to death; and the Earl of Cathness being suspected to have had a hand in this murder, though absent, was brought to the king, who upon his submission was pardoned. After this, another Rebellion of 10000. discontented 30 persons, under Thomas the Bastard-son of Alan Earl of Galloway, was suppressed, with the loss of 5000. Rebels, and their Captain. After this, he lost his Queen, who returning with the English Queen from visiting the Reliques of Canterbury, fell sick and died, being childless; he married again, and had by this wife, Alexander the third, who succeeded him. Two years after this, whilst the king was at Haddington, the Earl of Athol was burned, with some others, in his house. Patrick, the chief of the Bishops, was suspected; he to clear himself offered a Duel with any of his accusers, which being denied him, he fled with divers of his Family, into Ireland. Another tumult was suppressed in Argyle; 40 and not long after this the king died, the 51. year of his life, and of his reign the 35.

In Rome to Clement the third succeeded Celestine the third, who sate four years: his successor was Innocent the third, who was Pope 18. years; In his time the Greek Church, by means of Baldwin Emperour of the East, was reconciled to the Latine; and Thomas the first of the Latine Church, was made Patriarch of Constantinople, against whom the Greeks chose Michael the fourth who sate without the City. The Venetians take Crete or Candy from the Greeks, but permit them to retain their Greek Ceremonies. This Island was the cause of 70. years war between the Venetians and Genuas, which by Gregory the 10. was at last composed, so that the Island remained in the power of the Venetians. Peter the second, king of Arragon, was crowned by this Innocent at Rome, who authorised the Arch-bishop of Tarracon to crown his Successors at Casarangusta. His Successour James took from the Moors the kingdom of Valentia, and Murta, with the Baleares. Alexius Comnenus, father-in-law to Theodorus Lascaris, erected a new Empire at Traperuntinum, containing Cappadocia and Colchis. St. Clara, a Disciple of St. Francis, sets up a new Order of Nuns.

*An.Christi.* Nuns. To *Celestine* succeeded *Gregory* the 9. who fate 14. years: He Canonized *St. Dominick* and *St. Francis*, and forbad the Civil Law to be read at *Paris*: He digested the 5. Books of Decretals into that method they now have; he forbad Lay-men to preach. Power is given to the Archbishop of *Mentz* to consecrate the kings of *Bohemia*, which continued long, till one of them sold that privilege to the Church of *Prague*. To *Gregory* succeeded *Celestine* the 4. who fate but 18. days; then followed the vacancy of one year nine moneths, in which time *S. Ferdinand* drives the *Moor*s almost quite out of *Spain*; having obtained both the kingdome of *Castile* and *Legion*, with *Corduba* and *Hispalis*, he erects the University of *Salmatica*. *Innocent* the 4. is chosen Pope; he fate 11. years. About this time the Bible was distinguished into Chapters, as now we have them, the distinction before was uncertain. *Robert Sorbona*, a Divine, founded and enriched the Colledge of *Sorbon* at *Paris*. To *Innocent* succeeded *Alexander* the 4. who fate 6. years; he reconciled again the *Greeks* and *Latines* in the Council of *Lions*.

## CHAP. III.

1. *Fredericks* posterity. 2. *The Affairs of the Western Empire under Rodolphus, and others.* 3. *Of France, England, Scotland, and other places.* 4. *Of the Popes of these times, and other memorable things.*

1251. *Frederick* the second, before his death, had made his Son *Conradus* king of the *Romans* and of *Sicily*; to his Son *Henry*, whom he had by his *English* Lady, he bequeathed the kingdome of *Jerusalem*, and to *Manfred* the government of *Italy*. *Conradus* fell furiously upon those Towns, which after his Fathers death revolted to Pope *Innocent*: He overthrew *Naples* after eight moneths siege, driving from thence all the Nobility; he plundered *Capua* and unwall'd it, and burned *Aquinum*. But *Manfred* aiming at the Empire of *Italy* and *Sicily*, poisoned *Conradus*; four years after his Fathers death; a just reward for him, who had caus'd his younger brother *Henry*, and his son *Frederick* to be murdered: *Manfred* also commanded *Conradinus*, the son of *Conradus*, to be poisoned, having undertaken his tuition; and then fals upon the Towns of *Apulia*, and of the kingdome of *Naples*, which he took from the Pope, and so made himself King, giving out that *Conradinus* was dead, but was not: After this he seisseth upon *Sicily*, and to make himselfe the stronger against the Popes power, he makes a match between *Peter* the son of *James K.* of *Arragon*, and his daughter *Constantia*. Upon this, *Urban* the 4. *Alexanders* successor, curseth *Manfred*, and armeth *Charles* of *Anjou*, brother to *Lewis* the French king, who encountering with *Manfred*, defeats and kills him, and so obtains both kingdomes, paying to the Pope fourty thousand Crownes yearly.

1268. *Conradinus* being now of years, and having raised an Army of *Germans*, with whom divers *Italian* Townes joyned: *Conradus* also, his brother, Prince of *Antioch*, helped him to recover *Sicily*; the *Sarazens* likewise assisted him; all *Sicily* yielded, except *Panormus*, *Messina*, and *Syracusa*. *Conradinus* after this, fighting with *Charles*, is defeated and taken, and so was *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, both whom upon the Popes perswasion he caus'd to be beheaded; as for *Conradus* Prince of *Antioch*, he first pulls out his eyes, and then caus'd him to be hanged. Thus the French obtained *Sicily*; whose tyranny, pride, and luxury was such, that *John* Duke of *Proclita*, whose wife the French had abused, and himself by them was plundered, having advis'd with Pope *Nicolas*, (*Charles* his enemy) as also with *John Paleologus* Emperour of *Constantinople*, (who had lately taken *Byzantium* from the French) and with *Peter* king of *Arragon*, *Manfreds* son-in-law, they all agree to cut off the French, and to

*An.Christi.* confer *Sicily* on the *Arragonians*; a Fleet for this purpose is prepared by both kings, and the business kept close for two years together, till the very hour that all the French throughout the whole Island were destroyed, as it were, in a moment, except a few who were in the strong Castle of *Spirlingas*; it is thought, that in the space of two hours, above 8000. were slain by the *Sicilians*, who spared not women great with child, but ript up their bellies, and dash'd the infants against the stones, that none of the French blood might there remain; (this was done on Easter day at evening Service, *March* 30. Hence the proverb, *Vespere Sicilie*.) The slaughter being finished, *Peter* of *Arragon*, who stay'd at *Hippo* in *Africk* with his Fleet, waiting for the event of the *Sicilian* conspiracy, was sent for, and by the Nobility hath the Island surrendred to him. Thus *Charles* lost *Sicily* quite, who though he rais'd a war against the *Arragonians*, yet they kept the Island till his Race was wholly extinguish'd, and then they obtained also the kingdome of *Naples*, being invited thither by *Joan* the widow: And thence also the French were quite excluded. Afterward *Ferdinand* king of *Arragon* dying without issue Male, left these kingdomes to *Charles* the 5. his Grandchild by his Daughter.

*William* the Emperour being slain, as he was preparing an Army against the *Frislanders*, *Germany* was divided into Factions about a new Emperour; some were for *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, k. *John* of *Englands* son, others for *Alphonfus* king of *Castile*, both had made parties by giving large bribes, and both are nominated; *Richard*, by the Bishops of *Mentz*, *Colen*, and the *Palatine*; but he being too eager and violent against those that were for *Alphonfus*, and having run himself out of all his monies by his too much bounty, is forsaken of his own party, and so forced to return to *England*. *Alphonfus* being sent for into *Germany* by his own party, to wit, by the Bishop of *Trevers*, the Duke of *Saxony*, Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and king of *Bohemia*; but delighting more in Mathematicks then in Dominions, and being fearful to meddle with the distracted estate of *Germany*, staid so long in *France*, that he lost both the Empire and his own kingdome, which his son *Sancius* seised on; therefore he returns discontented to *Sivil*, where with grief he died, having advanced the knowledge of *Phylick* and *Astronomy*, to his great charges, and the benefit of posterity; for he spent above 40000. Crowns in compiling of his Tables, and interpreting of *Arabick*, and other books into *Latine*.

*Germany* being exposed to every great mans violence, for want of a Head, and both *Fredericks* faction and the Popes were so strong there, that no man durst venture to meddle with the Imperial Government: Pope *Gregory* is at last moved with the afflictions and complaints of that Country, so that he gives order to the Electors to choose them a king of the *Romans*, otherwise he would provide one for them: When they met at *Franckfort*, they unanimously pitched upon *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg*, who was then besieging of *Basil*; upon the news of his Election, which at first he did hardly believe, he makes peace with the *Basilians*, repairs to *Aix*, where he is crowned with his wife *Anna*. As soon as he was settled, he applies himself to compose the differences of *Germany*; complaint was made against *Ottocar* king of *Bohemia*, for invading and seising upon *Austria*. The *Hungarians* had invaded the lower, and the *Bavarians* upper *Austria*; their oppressions were such, that the people resolv'd to invite thither, either *Henry* Marquess of *Mysnia*, the husband of *Constance*, who was sister to *Frederick* the last, or else one of his two sons. *Wenceslaus* king of *Bohemia* perceiving this, married his son *Ottocar* to *Margaret* the Widow, who had born two sons to *Henry*, *Frederick* the Emperours son: Upon this Match, *Ottocar* pretending a Title, invades *Austria*, which he did not long enjoy, for *Rodolphus* the Emperour overthrew him, brought him on his knees, and took *Austria* from him, which he bestowed on his son *Albertus*, whose posterity hath possessed it till this time. But not long after, *Ottocar* scorning that he should be thus used by *Rodolphus*, who had heretofore been

*An. Christi.* been his servant, being also instigated by his wife *Cuniganda*, (for he had unjustly repudiated *Margaret*) secretly raiseth 10000 men, and with monies tries to corrupt the Peers to forsake *Cesar*; but the business could not be so closely carried as he supposed; for *Rodolphus* with an Army of *Germans* and *Hungarians* beat *Ottocar*, whom a common Souldier killed after he was taken, because he had killed a brother of this Souldiers. In this Battel the Emperor was beaten down from his horse, yet recovered, and 14000. were slain; presently after this *Moravia* is subdued. A new League is made between *Cesar* and the Queen of *Bohemia*, that *Cesar's* daughter should marry with *Wenceslaus* the son of *Ottocar*, and so he should hold *Bohemia* in fee of the Emperour.

After this, *Ralph* forceth the *Berners*, *Helvetians*, and *Burgundians* to submit to him, and having in fourteen several Battels got the better still, he is honoured with the Title of *VICTORIOUS*; In *Thuringia* and the neighbouring places he pulled down 66. Castles of the Rebels; He reigned 18. years, in all that time he never saw *Italy*, affirming that the former Emperours went thither rejoicing, but returned sorrowing: He bestowed *Romandiola* upon the Pope; He sold to the *Bouonians*, *Florentines*, *Genuois*, and *Lucans*, their liberty for gold; He destroyed all the High-way Robbers in *Germany*, 29. he put to death at one time. There was one who resembled somewhat *Frederick*, Duke of *Suevia*, who was beheaded with *Conradinus*; this fellow began to draw people into Rebellion, so that the Emperour being afraid, left off the siege of *Columbaria*, and made shew as if he would submit to this new *Cesar*, whose knavery when he found out, he caused him to be burnt alive. But the Pope fearing his greatness, renewes the Decree for recovering the Holy-Land, which was almost gone, for in three years after it was all swallowed up by the *Egyptians*. He also set out an Edict for the defence of *Italy*, the Sea-coast of which, for want of Garrisons, was exposed to Piracies. Another order he publisheth for expelling the French and Spaniards out of *Sicily* and *Naples*; and if the Emperour made not haste to reform these disorders, he threatens to invade *Hetruria* and the *Exarchal* or *Romandiola* in *Picenum*, *Flaminia*, and *Emilia*; he allowed also for the holy Knights, the fourth part of the yearly Revenues; but *Ralph* not being willing to quarrel with the Pope, parted with the *Exarchal*, as we said.

*Ralph* the Emperour being aged and sickly, calls a Diet of the Princes, wherein he moved that his son *Albert* might be his Successor; but not prevailing, and finding himself ill-disposed, removes from *Frankfort* towards *Spire*, saying, *Let us go to the other Emperours*, and so died by the way, the 19. year of his Reign, and was buried at *Spire*, neer *Philip* of *Suevia*. He had by his wife *Anna*, *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, *Ralph* Duke of *Suevia*, with divers other sons and daughters: In his time *Ptolemais* was onely left to the Christians, about which, whilst the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, the kings of *Cyprus* and *Sicily*, the Hospitallers, Templars, and Teutonic Knights strived for superiority, Sultan *Melech Sapherates* (that is to say, the illustrious King) besieged it two moneths, the Christians within not being able to hold out longer, got away privately by Sea, and so the Town was utterly destroyed, 196. years after the Conquest by *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*; so that in *Asia*, onely *Cilicia*, now called *Armenia minor*, retained the Christian Profession. A main cause of our losses in *Phenicia*, and the *Levant*, was the quarrel between the *Venetians* and *Genuois*, upon suspicion that *Philip* of *Montferrat* Governour of *Acre* or *Ptolemais* was more favourable to the *Venetians* than the *Genuois*: There was also in the Town a Church of Saint *Saba*, for which they strove; the Pope understanding this difference, decreed that the Church should be common to them both; whereupon the *Genuois* got into it first, filled it with Souldiers, and turned it into a Garrison: The *Venetians* hearing of this, in a rage parted from *Tyre* with three Gallies, enter forcibly the Port of *Acre*, break down the Chain, and burns 23. Ships with two Gallies of the *Genuois*; afterward they over-

throw the Church, affirming that the *Genuois* had profaned it: Of these small beginnings, sprung that war, which held so long, in which many cruel Battels were fought; the *Venetians* at first being superiors, by the assistance of the *Pisans*, and of their own Forces.

In *France* *S. Lewis* reforms the Laws and the Judges; ordaines that all blasphemers and profane swearers by Gods Name, should be burnt in the forehead with a hot iron, wishing he might be so burnt himself; conditionally he might purge his kingdome of that hainous sin: He built and finished divers Religious Houses, as that of the *Jacobins* at *Paris*, of the *Cordeliers*, of the *Carthusians*, and others: he married his son *Philip* to the Infanta *Elizabeth*, daughter to *James* king of *Arragon*; he reconciled the difference that was between the children of *Margaret* Countess of *Flanders*. Having settled his kingdome and house, he goeth on Ship-board at *Marsiler*, with his three sons, *Philip*, *John* and *Peter*, and sets saile for *Carthage*, where he takes divers Ships in the Port, and sinks the rest, and then laid siege to the City; a furious battel was fought between the French and *Moors*, which continued doubtful a great while, at last a party of the French Army getting between the City and the *Moors*, seized on the Castle, and took it; the *Moors* having lost their Fort, and being assailed on both sides, submitted, and were received to mercy by *Lewis*, and so the Town was surrendered. After this, the French Army marcheth towards *Tunis*, the Royal City at that time, with an intent to take it: The king of *Tunis* encounters them with his Army in the way; a Battel is fought, in which 10000. *Moors* are killed, and the whole Army defeated, and so he marcheth to the City, which he besieged 6. moneths so close, that no provision could come thither; the Citizens begin to think of a surrender, and were beginning to Article, when the Plague seisseth upon the French Camp, so that many died every day, among the rest, Prince *John*, who from this sad unfortunate accident was named *Tristan*, he was born whilst his Father was a prisoner in *Egypt*; and Saint *Lewis* himself, to the great grief of his Army, and of all good men, died in the Camp of a Flux, the 25. of *August*; after whose death the king of *Sicily* arrived before *Tunis* with a great Army, to the comfort of the French, much dejected for the loss of their good king. *Henry* also Earl of *Cornwall* shortly after arrived with a great Fleet, hoping to finde Saint *Lewis* alive, that they two might joyn their Forces with Prince *Edward* of *England*, for recovering of *Syria*, *Tunis* being now besieged by *Italians*, *French*, and *English* both by Sea and Land, the *Moors* within, who used to make daily sallies before, do now begin to faint and yield; the Christians being weary and sickly, yielded to a peace, that the Barbarous king should permit the Gospel to be freely taught through all his Dominions, and that he should pay yearly to the king of *Sicily* 40000. Ducats, which was the sum due from *Sicily* to the Pope: After this, the Christians resolve to go for *Sicily*, there to refresh themselves with the change of aire, but they were surprized by the way with such a storm, that all their Ships were scattered sundry wayes, and many of them sunk and torn; besides, the Plague was so hot amongst them, that they resolved every man to his own home, and to give off their voyage intended for the Holy-Land.

To Saint *Lewis* succeeded his son *Philip* the third, surnamed the Bold: the next year after his return from *Africk* he was crowned at *Rhemes*; he made *Guy* Earl of *Flanders* in place of his brother, who died in *Sicily*. The Queen-Mother following the steps of her Husband Saint *Lewis*, gave her self wholly to devotion, and founded in the Suburbs of *Paris* a Covent of the Order of *St. Francis*. The King made himself Lord of *Tholouse*, the Heirs thereof being dead. His eldest son *Lewis* was poisoned by his Chamberlain *Peter de la Broche*, who accused the Queen, *Philips* second wife, of the murther, as if she had done it, that her children might succeed to the Crown: The King sends to an old Wizard in *Brabant*, famous for divination, who excused the Queen, and

*An. Christi.* laid the blame on *La Broche*, whom upon this he caused to be hanged. He reduced the *Gascoigns*: He raised a great Army against *Arragon*, whose King *Peter* had seized upon *Sicily*, and was excommunicate by the Pope, and his  
1284. which *Philip* took, *Peter* was killed; but *Roger* Admiral of the *Arragonians* Fleet falls unexpectedly on the French, as they were removing thence, because of the Plague, and sets both the Town and Fleet on fire, and so they make their way through the *Pyrenean* Straits with their swords. *Philip* at this news fell sick and died at *Perpinianum*, or *Parpignan*, and was buried at *S. Denis*. This  
1285. year was famous for the death of three Kings, namely, of *Charles* King of *Sicily*, *Peter* King of *Arragon*, and *Philip* King of *France*. He reigned above 15 years; he left two sons behind him by his first wife *Isabel* the daughter of *Arragon*, to wit, *Philip* the Fair, his Successour, and *Charles* *Valois*, of his second wife *Mary* the *Brabantine*, he left *Lewis* alive.

*Philip* the Fair had almost continual wars with *England* and *Flanders*, that were Confederates: by his brother *Charles* *Valois*, he defeated the Forces of *Edward* the Second, and recovered *Gascoign*. *Guy* Earl of *Flanders*, who took  
1293. part with *Edward*, was overthrown with him at *Turne* by the same *Valois*, and carried prisoner to *Paris* with his two sons. After this the *Flemings* rebel against the K. and defeat his Army at *Courtray*, but two years after, they fought again  
1295. at *Andomarpolis*, and were beaten by the King: Then there was a peace concluded between them. This *Philip* for refusing to undertake the Holy War, was accused by *Boniface* the 8. but his Successour Pope *Benedict* absolved him.  
1304. *Clemens* the 5. who translated his seat to *Avinion*, where it continued 70 years, conspired with this *Philip* against the *Templars*, whom they destroyed, and bestowed their wealth on the *Hospitallers*, except what they put up in their Exchequers. He fixed the Parliament, which before was ambulatory, at *Paris*,  
1307. and built the great Hall of his Palace, with other convenient rooms for that purpose; and at the request of the *Normans*, he granted them a Parliament at  
1314. *Rouen* their capital City, which sits twice yearly, in the Spring and Autumn, 30 for six weeks at a time. About this time Queen *Jane* founded the Colledge of *Navarre*. King *Philip*, after he had been royally entertained in *Flanders*, with all the cost and magnificence that could be devised; left such Governours behind him, who did so tax and oppress the people, that they resolve to shake off the French yoke; to that purpose a cruel massacre was committed on them at *Bruges* in their beds at night; and all the Gentry of *Flanders*, with the people, arm themselves against the king, who was raising an Army of 24000. to  
ruine *Flanders*, and was on his march as far as *Doway*, but being dissuaded by his sister, King *Edwards* wife, upon his instigation, who was loath that *Flanders* should be swallowed up by the French, *Philip* returns back with a part of his  
Army, leaving the rest to Garrison the frontier Towns: but he could not be at quiet with himself, till he had revenged this murder of his Subjects upon the *Flemings*; therefore under the command of the E. of *Artois* he sends a great Army against them, who furiously and foolishly set upon their Trenches, where the  
*Flemings* held them play so long, till a great part of their Army wheeled about a private way, and fell upon the Rear of the French, whom they so disordered, that 12000. Horse and Foot were slain, besides many prisoners; Count *Artois* with many of the Nobility, were killed, over whose dead bodies, chiefly of the Earls, the enemy barbarously insulted. Upon this defeat, the king sends  
old *Guy* their Count, to see if he could persuade them to submit upon hope  
and promise of pardon; but they would not yield; and withall, being puffed up with their Victory, they invade the Countrey of *Hennault*; but they were  
beat back from thence. The French king sends for 6. Gallies from *Genoa*, resolving to beat the *Flemings* both by Sea and Land; but they being nothing  
daunted, make excursions as far as *Arras*, setting fire on the Suburbs thereof; but the French recovered some part of their honour lost at *Courtray*, by defeat-  
ing

ting the *Flemings* neer *Saint Omer*, where they killed 15000 of them, and shortly after 800. of *Bruges*, and 500. before *Tournay*; but these losses did not discourage them; therefore they resolve with fresh Forces to assault the French again; which they did with such fury, that *Valois* took his heels, but the king with his Army fought stoutly, and got the Victory, with the loss of 6000. *Flemings* on the place; among which was found the body of *William*, son to *Guy* Count of *Flanders*. This defeat made the *Flemings* submit to peace, which was concluded upon this condition, that 200000. Crowns should be paid to the French king, and *Flanders* restored to *Robert*, *Guy*'s eldest son, for the Father  
10 was dead in *France*.

About this time, *Cassan* the Tartarian Prince, who was become Christian, having defeated the *Persians*, and chased the Sultan out of *Syria*, writes to the Pope and French king for their aide, and alliance with the Latine Princes, for recovering of *Jerusalem*: Upon this, Pope *Boniface* the 8. sends menacing Letters to *Philip*, to promote with all speed this Expedition: which Letters the king slighted, and withall imprisoned the Bishop of *Palmiers* (which place he had lately erected into a Bishoprick for the Province of *Narbon*) for holding correspondence with the Pope against him; and forbids any of his Clergy to repair to the Council which the Pope had call'd: Hereupon he is  
20 excommunicated, and his Subjects absolved from their Allegiance; so that the king was forced to set the Bishop at liberty. But *Boniface* not yet contented stirs up *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, elected Emperour, to invade *France*; but he stirred not: He soliciteth also the king of *England*, but he could not, being employed in his Scottish wars. *Philip* sends an Ambassador to the Pope to be reconciled; the French Clergy send also three Deputies in their names to excuse their not waiting on his Holiness at the Council; In the mean while the Pope was seized on at *Anagnin*, a City of *Abruzzo*, by *Sciarra Colonesi*, a Bandito of *Rome*, by the French Kings aide, and carried to *Rome*, where he died  
1303. shortly after. This *Philip* afterward being present with the Kings of *England* and *Arragon* at the Popes Coronation in *Lions*, was like to be smothered by the fall of a wall, which killed and hurt many, among the rest *John* Duke of *Brittain* was slain. The *Templars* were accused by this King and the Pope, of heinous crimes, and of keeping correspondence with the Turks and Sarazens; therefore were condemned to be burnt alive: The great Master, with his brethren, protested before God at their death, that they were free from the crimes objected against them. The *Templars* of *Germany* were more favourably dealt with, for though their estates were taken away, yet none were condemned, but such as were found guilty. The *Hospitallers* being enriched with the *Templars* Estates, raised a great Army, with which they took the Isle of  
40 *Rhodes* from the Turks. The war of *Flanders* was beginning again, because the money agreed upon, was not as yet payed; therefore the French Army enters the borders; but upon promise of submission and payment, the peace is renewed. A little before *Philips* death, a great tumult arose at *Lions* between the Episcopal party and the Royal, about their Rights; which with much ado was appeased by *Lewis* King of *Navarre*, and the Count of *Savoyn*. The King died at *Fontain-bleau* where he was born, and buried at *S. Dennis*, having reigned 24. years.

In *England*, King *Henry* the third hearing of *St. Lewis* his captivity, and that he was willing to resign *Normandy*, if *Henry* would come to his rescue; Upon  
50 this, he presently undertakes the Cross, and demands the Tenth of his Clergy and Laity, for defraying of the charges, exhorting the people to attend him; but he found the *Londoners* backward; a Parliament is called, in which the demanded Tenth is denied by the Bishops and Lords; but such were the kings wants, and *Gascoign* was upon revolt, that another Parliament is called, and a Tenth is granted by the Clergy for three years, and Scutage three Marks of every knights fee by the Laity for that year. The king resumes  
C c 2 *Gascoign*



240  
An. Christi. Gascoign from his brother Richard, who had possessed it now 27. years, and gave it to his eldest son Edward. Richard was unwilling to part with his possession, and so were the Gascoigns to part with him: Whereupon Simon Monfort Earl of Chester, a stern man, is sent with a Charter for 6. years, to curb them. Three years after the Gascoigns accuse him of Tyranny; the king sends for him, but he being supported by the Nobility, contests with the king, who is fain to send him back again to his charge, with promise to the Gascoigns, that Prince Edward should come shortly after; but Monfort tyrannizeth more then ever; wherefore Henry goes over into Gascoign with 300. Ships, and deposeth Monfort; and because the Gascoigns had put themselves under the protection of the king of Spain, who claimed Title to Aquitaine, Henry propo-  
10  
seth a Match between his son Edward, and Elinor the Spaniards sister; The Marriage is agreed upon and solemnised at Burgos, where the king of Spain knights the Prince, and quits his claim to Aquitaine. Henry invests the Prince and his wife therein, and gives besides to him Ireland, Wales, Bristol, Stamford, and Grantham. After this, king Henry returns homeward by Paris, with one thousand Horse, and is feasted by Saint Lewis lately returned from captivity. Upon king Henry's arrival into England, he fines the Londoners, though they had presented him with a hundred pound in money, and two hundred pound in plate. After this, Elinor the Princes wife arrives with a great Train. There  
15  
comes also from the Pope Alexander the Fourth, the Bishop of Bononia, with a proffer of Sicily to Edmond the kings second son. Then comes Rustandus with power to collect the tenth of England, Scotland, and Ireland; which is denied him; he comes also with power to absolve the king from his Oath for the Holy War, if he would destroy Manfred son to Frederick the Emperor, now king of Sicily and Apulia; but the Apulians angry that the Pope should give away their Land to a stranger; help Manfred to defeat the Popes forces. In the mean while, Richard Earl of Cornwall is elected King of the Romans, and crowned at Aix. King Henry demands a Tax for attaining the kingdom of  
20  
Sicily for his son Edmund; two and fifty thousand Marks are granted; but this contents him not, he demands a greater summe, which is denied him. Hereupon Prince Edward is fain to mortgage Stamford, and other Towns, to William de Valence, to supply the Kings wants. After this a Parliament is called at Oxford, called the Mad Parliament, where many wrongs are complained of, and many things established tending to the weakening of the Kings Prerogative: Twelve Peers are chosen, whereof the Earls of Leicester and Gloucester were chief, to whom power was given to maintain the Laws made lately, which were ratified by the King unwillingly; but he being displeased that the twelve Peers should remove from him most of his chief Servants, calls another Parliament, where he complains of this wrong; but they for little re-  
25  
garded the kings displeasure, that they ratified the Laws formerly concluded on: This made the King comply with France and Scotland for aide. He re- signs Normandy, with the Lordships of Anjou, Poitiers, and Mayn, to Lewis; in lieu of this, Henry is made Duke of Guyan, for which he was to do his homage: He also procures two Bulls from Rome, by which he and all others that had sworn to maintain the late Laws, were absolved; notwithstanding the twelve Peers went on in reforming abuses, and removing from their charge such Of-  
30  
ficers as the King had placed. The king publisheth the Popes Bulls, countermandeth the Authority of the twelve Peers, and makes the Londoners swear to assist him. The Barons, upon this raise an Army, and write to the king, beseeching him not to suppress the Oxford Laws, and withall they march toward London, spoiling by the way the houses of all those who held for the Popes Bulls; they write to the Londoners, who sent the Letter to the king, and their resolutions to hold with the Twelve Peers in maintaining the late Lawes, and so they receive the Barons into the City with joy: from thence they march with the Army to Windsor Castle, where they plunder and displace all the  
35  
Aliens

Aliens, who had Offices there. The Lords of the Kings Council gave order  
 for restitution of the Aliens goods; but the Barons refused to obey: At last  
 these differences were referred to the judgement of Saint *Lewis*, whose sen-  
 tence was, that the twelve Peers should lose their authority, and none should  
 rule but the King. This sentence, as partiall, is rejected by the Barons, who  
 repair again to the Marches of *Wales*, and levy a new Army; in their march  
 toward *London*, they plunder and burn the houses of Sir *Roger Mortimer*, who  
 counselled the King to withstand them. The Prince levieth another Army,  
 which is beat by the Barons, who remain Masters of the Field. After this Vi-  
 10 ctory, they are joyfully received at *London*; and two Constables elected by  
 some Citizens gathered a multitude together, who spoiled the houses of *Rich-  
 ard* King of the *Romans*, lately returned from *Germany*, whom the Barons  
 forced to swear to maintain their cause: But now he becomes their enemy,  
 who before was mediating a peace. The King in the interim surpriseth *North-  
 ampton*, and in it Sir *Peter Montfort*, and *Simon*, *Leicesters* eldest son, who  
 had raised an Army thereabout for the Barons. Another Battel after this  
 was fought neer *Lewis* in *Suffex*, where the King with his brother *Richard*,  
 Prince *Edward*, with many Knights and Gentlemen are taken prisoners, and  
 20 more then 20000 slain. After this, a peace is made, and agreed that the King  
 should confirm the twelve Peers authority; which being granted, the two  
 Kings are set at liberty, and their two sons left for Hostages with the Barons,  
 who send them to *Dover* Castle. Then did the King call a Parliament, in which  
 he swore to maintain the Barons rights, untill they should be reformed, if any  
 thing were amiss. Hereupon the Princes were enlarged. Shortly after the  
 two heads of the Faction, *Leicester* and *Gloucester*, did jarre about these Ordi-  
 nances. Prince *Edward*, upon this, with *Gloucester*, *Warreim*, and Sir *Roger Mor-  
 timer* raised a new Army; *Leicester* did the like; a cruel Battel is fought at  
*Eversham* in *Worcestershire*, in which the Barons are discomfited: Here *Simon*  
 Earl of *Leicester*, with his eldest son, and Sir *Hugh Spencer*, with many other  
 30 prime men were slain; the Earls carcases were inhumanely mangled by the  
 Souldiers, who cut off his head, hands, feet, and privy members. Upon this  
 Victory, the King calls a Parliament, in which he recovers his former power,  
 and the Barons utterly lost theirs: The King also instigated by his brother  
*Richard*, resolved to consume *London* with fire; but the Citizens came humbly  
 submitting their lands, goods, and lives to his mercy; but he was so im-  
 placable, that he would not hearken to them, nor to any for them, till at last  
 the Prince mediated in their behalf, and so the King was content with a fine  
 of one thousand Marks; he pardoned also the Cinque-ports, for their rob-  
 bing at Sea, during the troubles. But the Earl of *Gloucester*, who by his revolt  
 40 from the Barons, had furthered the kings good success, being slighted for all  
 his good service, grew desperate, goeth to *London*, and there the rascality flock  
 to him, and having committed divers outrages, falls upon the Kings house at  
*Westminster*, which they ransack and plunder; but the Prince again inter-  
 ceded both for the Earl, and the other offenders: The Earle desirous to  
 be employed, requests that he might be sent with an Army to the Holy-Land,  
 which was granted, because the K. was willing to be rid of him; but he using  
 too long delays, lost this opportunity, which was laid hold upon by Prince  
*Edward*, who conducted the Army into the Holy-Land, where he did brave  
 service, and raised the siege of *Acon*; he was traiterously wounded with a  
 50 poisoned knife by a Sarazen, but recovered. His Cousin *Henry*, son to the king  
 of the *Romans*, was slain in the Church of *Viterbo* in time of divine Service, by  
 his own cousin-german *Guy de Montfort* son to *Simon* Earl of *Leicester*, in re-  
 venge of his fathers death: king *Richard* died shortly after; and the next year  
 following k. *Henry* the 3. departed this life, the 65. year of his age, and the 57.  
 of his reign; he had by his wife *Elinor* 6. sons, whereof two survived him, *Ed-  
 ward* and *Edmund*; and two daughters, *Margaret*, wife to the king of *Scots*, and  
*Beatrice*, who married *John* the first D. of *Brittain*. To

I 265.

12745

An. Christi.

To Henry succeeds his Son Edward, being now in Syria, who three years after his departure from England, begins his voyage homewards; he lands in Sicily, where he is royally feasted by Charles King thereof; he is also in Italy honourably used by the Pope and Princes; and in France entertained by Philip the third, to whom he did homage for his lands held of that Crown; at last arrives in England after six years from his setting out: Alexander King of Scots, and John Duke of Brittain were present at his Coronation: He began betimes to clip the Clergies wings, by causing the Statute of Mortmain to be enacted, against which afterward the Clergy petitioned the King, when they had raised him a great sum of money, but they were not heard: he abridged also divers Monasteries of their Liberties, and took from the Abbot of Westminster the Return of Writs granted him by King Henry the 3. He resolves to subdue Wales which had alwayes been a receptacle for the English Rebels: he summons Leolin their Prince to be present at the Parliament who refused, therefore he enters Wales with fire and sword, and forceth Leolin to sue for peace, which he had, paying a Fine of 50000 lib. and 1000 lib. per ann. but withall delivers him Elinor, Simon Monforts daughter Earle of Leicester, with whom he was in love, she coming from France was taken at Sea; yet for all this, within three years he rebels again with his brother David, on whom the King had bestowed divers graces; an Army is raised against him, Leolin is slain in the battell, and his head is sent to King Edward, who caused it to be crowned with Ivie, and set upon the Tower of London: thus ends the last of the Welch Princes; his brother David is apprehended, drawn at a horses tail about the City of Shrewsbury, then beheaded, his heart and bowels burnt, his head sent to the Tower, and his four quarters to Bristol, Northampton, York, and Winchester. In this interim Alphonfus the Kings eldest Son twelve years old dyeth, so Edward born at Carnarvan is heir of the Crown, and first of the English who was stiled Prince of Wales. After this, King Edward at the death of Philip the Bold, passes over into France, there to do homage to the new King Philip the fourth for Aquitain; then he reconciles the King of Arragon King Philip the fourth for Aquitain; then he reconciles the King of Arragon (Son to King Charles of Sicily) prisoner in Arragon for 30000 lib. After three years and six months being abroad, he returns into England, calls a Parliament, reforms divers abuses, and enricheth himself with Fines laid upon corrupt Officers and Judges, he banisheth the Jews, seisseth upon their estates, for which the Kingdome gave him a fifteenth, and the Clergy a tenth; many other supplies of money he had in his time, he new coyned all the old money which had been defaced by the Jews, for which two hundred ninety seven suffered at one time in London. He was chosen Arbitrator by the Scots, who were divided about the true successor of King Alexander; and as he was going Northward, his vertuous Queen Elinor dyed, who had suckt (as some write) the poyson out of his wound given him by the Saracen. Whereupon he returns with the Corps to Westminster, he caused Crosses to be erected at Stamford, Waltham, West-cheap, Charing, and elsewhere in memory of her, with her statue thereon. After this, he returns to the North, and by his means Baliol is made King of Scots, who afterward upon an affront offered him in the Court of England, defies King Edward, so a long War begins; King Edward enters into a League with Guy Earle of Flanders, with Adolph the Emperour, to whom he sends 15000 lib. to recover his lands in France, and with other Princes; so he sends an Army into France, where all his Territories are forfeited and seized upon for refusing to come and do his homage. He then enters Scotland with 4000 Horse, and 30000 Foot, beside 1000 Foot, and 500 Horse of the Bishop of Dunelm; many places in Scotland are subdued, and Baliol sues for peace, and doth homage: after this he raiseth heavy Taxes on the Clergy and Laity; the Clergy refuse to pay, whereupon they are put out of the Kings protection: But when they saw how they were exposed to all wrongs for want of Justice, they

An. Christi.

they submitted, and redeemed themselves and Monasteries, which the king had seized on. His brother Edmond in the mean while dyed at Byon, having besieged Burdeaux a long time to no purpose: upon this news the king calls a Parliament, in which he desires his Lords to go to Gascoign, which they refused, except he went in person, which he could not do, because he was tyed to assist Guy Earle of Flanders, whose Daughter the French king kept as a prisoner in Paris, for that Guy was to marry her to king Edwards Son: Besides the French king falls upon Flanders with an Army of 60000 and wins many Towns: King Edward upon this passeth over into Flanders with 500 Sail, and 18000 men, but was disappointed of the Emperours assistance, and so could do little good for Guy: He staid that Winter in Gaunt, where he lost many of his men whom the Gantois killed in a mutiny, and Edward himself hardly escaped; therefore he is forced to make peace with the French king for two years, and to leave Guy to himself, who shortly after was carried prisoner to Paris, where he dyed (as some think) and his Daughter of grief. King Edward upon his return, understanding that the Scots by the courage of William Wallas, had almost regained that Kingdome, makes a new invasion, and defeats the Scots in a great battel at Tonkirke; during this time, the Exchequer and Courts of Justice were kept at York about six years. At the Parliament held in S. Andrews, the Scots (except Wallas and his party) swear fealty to the King of England.

In Scotland, Robert Abbot of Dumferling was removed by King Alexander the third from his Chancellorskip, for legitimating the bastard daughter of King Alexander the second, intending she should succeed if the King died without issue; the Seal was delivered to Gamelinus Archbishop of St. Andrews. Some of the Lords being summoned to answer for their oppressions, refused to appear; wherupon they are by the young King declared Rebels; they watching an opportunity when the King was thinly accompanied, seized on him, and carried him to Sterling, pretending they removed him from his English Counsel by which he was much ruled, being lately returned from England, with his Lady King Henries sister, and a great English train: but the arrival of Acho King of Norway, with 100 ships caused the king to be set at liberty, and the Lords to be pardoned; for then was no time to quarrel, when the common Enemy was so near. This Acho pretending right to some of the Scottish Western Islands, came with 20000 Danes, and suddenly seized upon two of the greatest Isles; then he landed his men on the shore of Cunigame, against whom Alexander Stewart grandfather to him who was first of that name King of Scotland, was sent with an Army; he after a long skirmish defeats the Danes, kills sixteen thousand on the place, and drives the rest on ship-board, all the ships were cast away on the Isles of Orkney by storms, except four which came safe home to Norway; shortly after this King Acho died of grief; his Son Magnus was glad to make peace with the Scots, and resign all his right in the Western Islands, for which he was to receive 4000 marks presently and a hundred marks yearly, besides a match is made between Margaret King Alexanders daughter, and Hangonan King Magnus his Son: about this time King Alexander took the Isle of Man; it was there agreed that it should be under the protection of Scotland, and that the king of Man should furnish the Scots with ten ships when he should be required: After this, Alexander sends five thousand Scots to aid King Henry against his Barons in England, where most were killed, the rest taken prisoners. At that time there was great emulation in Scotland between the Nobility and Clergy, whose wealth and power was much envied; complaints of wrongs done by some young Lords to the Clergy were brought to Alexander, which he slighted; but the Clergy threatening to complain to the Pope, King Alexander was forced to comply with them, for avoiding further trouble, and caused satisfaction to be made them; in the interim a Legate from the Pope comes to collect money for the Holy War, but

*An. Christi.* but he was not suffered to enter the Kingdome, and answer was made him, that the King would himself raise money, and send Souldiers to Syria; there-fore an Army is sent under the Earles of *Carrie* and *Athol* to the French King *Lewis*, &c. to the Pope a thousand marks. Not long after, the King lost his wife, and both his sons; first *David*, and then *Alexander*, who had married the Earl of *Flanders* daughter: *Margaret* also his daughter the Queen of *Norway* died, who left one daughter, called the Maid of *Normay*. By his second wife the Earl of *Druix* his daughter in *France*, he had no issue; for the same year of his second marriage, he fell from his Horse near *Kingorne*, and dyed the five and fortieth yeer of his Age, and the seven and thirtieth of his Reigne; his death was much lamented both for his good Laws, and his just government.

After *Alexanders* death, Six Governours are set over the Kingdome, three for the South-side, and three for the North-side of *Forth*. In the mean time, King *Edward* finding an opportunity to unite the two kingdomes, sends Ambassadors into *Scotland*, with Propositions of a match between his Son and the Maid of *Norway*, Inherrix of *Scotland*; the match is agreed on, and Ambassadors sent to *Norway* to bring away the young Queen; but she was dead before they came, to the great trouble of *England*, and almost the ruine of *Scotland*, which was torn into many factions by divers Competitors; the two chief of which were *John Balliol* and *Robert Bruce*; *John* had the better right, but *Robert* the most affections, and both strong parties to side with them; *Bruce* had lands in *England*, *Balliol* in *France*, and both had great possessions in *Scotland*: To avoid civil wars, the controversy by generall consent is referred to King *Edward* of *England*, both, because of his fathers affection and alliance to *Scotland*, and of his own desire to have renewed this affinity with a new match: King *Edward* upon this comes to *Barnwick*, calls the Nobility thither, not as Subjects, but as Friends; they sent their Deputies; He first swears the Competitors to stand to their award, then he swears the Peers to obey him that should be named king; this oath he caused to be ratified by their Hands and Seals; then he chooseth out twelve prime men of *Scotland*, as many of *England*, whom he swears to give their Verdict justly and sincerely; the chief Lawyers of *France* are sent to, for their opinion in this difficulty, but their answer was not satisfactory: the twenty four were enclosed in a Church alone, to determine the controversy; in the mean while *Edward* deals with *Bruce* apart, whose title was weakest, and proffers him the Kingdome, if he would become his Vassal, which he refused; then he deals with *Balliol*, who accepts the proffer; so *Balliol* six years and nine moneths after *Alexanders* death is declared king of *Scotland*, and crowned at *Scope*; but *Bruce* and divers others refused to swear Allegiance to him; who repairs to King *Edward* at *New-Castle*, to whom as he promised, swears Fealty, to the great grief of the Lords, who could not now tell how to help it: But not long after, the Earle of *Fife* brother having his lands wrongfully given away by *Balliol*, and his brother murdered by the *Abernethies* without justice, appears to King *Edward* sitting then in Parliament: *Balliol* was called upon to answer to his accusation, and to come down to the Bar, (for he sate next the king) at which indignity he so formed, that he went home, calls a Parliament, at which were present Ambassadors from *France*, desiring a renovation of the old League; and also from *England*, demanding assistance against the French according to their allegiance. The French League was preferred and renewed, being at that time of five hundred years continuance; and the English allegiance rejected, as being extorted from a king without consent of his Parliament. Upon this, a defiance is sent to King *Edward*, who having a Fleet ready, intended for *France*, sends it to *Scotland*, which the Scots overthrew in the mouth of the river toward *Barnwick*: this so exasperated King *Edward*, that he invites *Bruce* to accept of the kingdome, and withall besiegeth *Barnwick*, which after a long siege by a slight was taken; for King *Edward* making shew of a retreat, the Town-gates were opened,

*An. Christi.* opened, the souldiers went out to refresh themselves; in the interim, the English Horse return suddenly, enter the town and put all to the sword: then he besiegeth *Dunbar* and takes it, and defeats the Scots army that came to relieve it. Upon this *Edinburgh* and *Sterlin* are surrendered; at last, *Balliol* submits himself and kingdome to *Edward*: who sends him by sea into *England*, and causeth the Scots Lords to swear Fealty again to him: *Balliol* is imprisoned, the fourth year after he was crowned, but upon the Popes intreaty is sent into *France*, whither King *Edward* also went with a great army. In this mean space *John Cumin* Earle of *Buchan* is sent by the Scots with forces into *England*, who with Fire and Sword fall upon *Cumberland* and *Northumberland*; *Wallas* also, a private man, but well descended, of a high spirit, and strong body, pitying his countries sad condition, gathers an army together, and assaults the English Garrisons beyond *Forth*, which he took in; then fights *Craffingham* (whom King *Edward* had left to be Treasurer of *Scotland*) defeats his forces by *Sterlin*, and with his army enters *England*, where he stayed without opposition three moneths, and returns home with much bootie. Upon the report of these proceedings, King *Edward* hasteneth out of *France*, raiseth a great army, and marcheth to *Stammor* or *Stainsmoore*; the English seeing the carriage of *Wallas* and his Captains, with the order of his army, which consisted of 30000. retreated without fighting; *Wallas* fearing some treachery did not pursue; Hereupon, the Scots Lords who held for King *Edward*, envying *Wallas* his valour and successe, gave out that he aimed to be King himself, and that it were better for the Scots to be subject to King *Edward*, then to a new upstart; besides, the Scots army began to mutiny among themselves, which was the cause of their overthrow six miles from *Sterlin*; in which conflict ten thousand Scots were slaine: *Wallas* upon this dismisseth his forces, and King *Edward* returns into *England*. The Scots that stood upon their liberty, send to King *Philip* of *France* to mediate for a peace with King *Edward*, which was granted for seven moneths; during which time, the Ambassadors that were sent to Pope *Boniface* the eighth were intercepted by the English and imprisoned; this with some other wrongs incensed the Scots again, who drove all the English, and Scots that were for King *Edward*, out of their Garrisons: another army is sent into *Scotland*, which being divided into three bodies, were all three defeated in one day by an army of eight thousand Scots; which so enraged King *Edward*, that he raised the greatest army that ever was raised by him; he rigs out also a great Fleet, and so invades *Scotland* by Sea and Land: so great was his army, that it went through the most part of *Scotland* without opposition; onely *Wallas* would fall out of his Ambushes now and then upon the Rear: King *Edward* with fair promises would have drawn him to his side, but could not prevaile; all the Castles and Forts which had held out against the English hitherto, now yeilded; *Sterlin* which held out three months, was faine to surrender for want of provision. The Scots again (except *Wallas* and his party) swear Fealty to King *Edward*, who returning into *England* carried with him the ancient Records, Monuments, Libraries, Learned men, and the Fatall Chaire of *Scotland*. *Wallas* keeps himself in safe places, till he was betrayed by his friend *Montiech* to King *Edward*, who caused him to be put to death in *London*, and his quarters to be disperfed to divers parts of both Kingdomes. King *Edward* now thought all sure; but he found afterward that he had to doe with a slippery Kingdome, which he could not long hold: For *Robert Bruce* the son of *Balliol*s competitor, and *John Cumin Balliol*s Cousin-german, taking the oath of secrecie from each other, combine to revolt; they agree that *Bruce* should be King, and *Cumin* next in dignity; and should also enjoy all *Bruce*s possessions, which were very great; yet *Cumin* repenting of his bargain reveals the Plot to King *Edward*, who resolves when opportunity served, to have him questioned for high treason: Earle *Gomer* or *Glocester*, *Bruce*s old friend, advertiseth him of his danger, not by word or writing, for he durst not,

D d

but

*An. Christi.* but by sending him a pair of gilt Spurs with some money by his servant, pretending he had borrowed these of him: *Bruce* understanding the meaning, causeth three Horses presently to be shod backward, that in the Snow the tracks might not be known, and with his two servants rides post into Scotland, where by the way he intercepts *Cumins* Letters going to King *Edward*, in which he found, that *Cumin* did instigate the King to dispatch *Bruce*, with what speed he could, for he was a dangerous and active man, popular and potent in Scotland: Upon this *Bruce* goeth to finde out *Cumin*, who was then in the *Gray-Friers* Church at *Dumfriesshire*, and sheweth him his own Letters, which he disclaimed; with that *Bruce* in a rage runs him through with his sword, 10 and leaves him dead in the place.

1305.

In *Rome*, *Alexander* the Fourth was Pope six years; in whose time *Daniel* Duke of *Russia* made the Popes Legate in *Polonia* believe, that he and his Country would be of the *Romish* communion, and would maintain the Christian Religion against the *Tartars*, whose power was grown formidable to the Christian Princes; but as soon as he obtained what he sought for, to wit, the Crown and Title of King, he continued in the Greek communion. To *Alexander* succeeded *Urban* the fourth, a Coblers son; he sat three years; he ordained *Corpus Christi* day: In his time *Byzantium* was taken with eight hundred men, by *Palaologus*, from the Latines, in whose Family it continued almost two hundred years, till it was taken by *Mahomet* the Turk. To *Urban* succeeded *Clemens* the fourth; he was Pope three years, and had two daughters by his wife, who was now dead. After two years and nine moneths vacancy *Gregory* the tenth was elected, who sat four years; he ordained the use of the Conclave in the Election of the Pope, to prevent future vacancies; for the Cardinals must not go out of the Conclave, till they have chosen a Pope: He ordained in the Council of *Lions*, that none should undertake the charge of a Parochial Church, till he was five and twenty years old. About this time died *Thomas Aquinas*, being fifty years of age; and the Whipping Hereticks arose, who preferred their Whipping to Martyrdom. Pope *Inno-* 30 cent the fifth succeeded, he sat six moneths; he was the first Pope of the *Pre-dicants* Order. *Adrian* the fifth succeeded, who sat but one moneth and nine dayes; he died before his Consecration, and revoked the Decree of the Conclave, which revocation was confirmed by his Successor *John* the one and twentieth; and so without the Conclave were elected *Nicholaus* the third, *Martin* the fourth, *Honorius* the fourth, *Nicholaus* the fourth, *Celestine* the fifth, who renewed the Conclave, and *Boniface* the eighth confirms it. *John* the twenty one, or as some say, twenty two, sat eight moneths: To him succeeded *Nicholaus* the third, who sat three years, eight moneths: In his time the Turks, after they had been suppressed by the *Tartars*, gather new strength, and invade 40 the remainders of the Greek Empire. Pope *Martin* the fourth succeeded four years. *Honorius* the fourth followed two years; he confirmed the *Carmelites* Order, and turned their party-coloured coats into white; and confirmed also the Order of *S. Austins* Eremites. *Honorius* the fourth succeeded, and sat two years: In his time *Rodolphus* the Emperour subdued the *Helvetians*, who before were subjects to the Earl of *Savoy*. *Nicholaus* the fourth succeeded four years; he was the first Pope of the *Franciscans*. To him *Celestine* the fifth succeeded five moneths, who was deluded by a voice through a Cane, as if it had been from Heaven, willing him to resign his Pontificat to *Boniface*: he decreed, that the Popes and Cardinals should ride on Asses, as Christ did, and not on Mules and Horses; he openly in the Consistory laid down his Mitre, Rings and Sandals, and so resigned his Pontificat to *Boniface* the eighth, who came in as a Fox, reigned like a Lion, and died like a Dog in prison; he Canonized *S. Lewis*, and ordained the Jubilee to be every hundredth year: In his time the streets of *Paris* were overflowed with the Sein, so that there was no passage through them without boats: He put on both the Pontifical and Princely habit, 50

1280.

habit, causing two swords to be carried before him. The *Tartars* imbrace *Mahometanism*, and so lost both Christianity, and *Asia* together. Hence the *Ottomans* began to flourish. *Selymus* the Turk married with the daughter of the Prince of the *Precopit* *Tartars*, who seated themselves in *Tanrica Chersonesus*. This Match produced *Solyman*. And much about the rising of the *Ottoman* Family, arose the House of *Austria*. *An. Christi.*

10

## CHAP. IV.

1. The Eastern Affairs under Michael Palæologus, Andronicus the elder, and younger. 2. The Turkish and Tartarian Affairs. 3. The Affairs of Hungary, Poland, Denmark, the Low-Countries, chiefly Holland, and the Switzers.

IN the East, *Michael Palæologus* having blinded *Johannes Lascarus*, invaded 20 the Empire, and drove the French out of *Byzantium*; he gave *Pera* or *Gallata*, over-against *Byzantium*, to the *Genuois* for their good service. *Alartines* Sultan of *Iconium* being driven out of his Kingdome by the *Tartars*, fled to this *Michael*. Twenty thousand *Bulgarians* invade *Thracia*, and plunder it. The Sultan of *Iconium*, whom *Michael* had kept in strait custody, escaped by help of the *Scythians*. The Sultan of *Egypt* and *Arabia* having the *Hellepont* open, carries away many of the *Scythian* slaves, about *Tanais* and *Meotis*, into *Egypt*, by whose help he drove the remaining Latines out of the East. *Michael* to strengthen himself by the Pope and Italian Princes, against his enemies, repairs to the Council of *Lions* (leaving his son *Andronicus* to rule the Empire) 30 and there acknowledgeth the Popes Supremacy, and reconciles the Greek and Latine Churches: but upon his return home, he was hated for yielding to the Pope; and being dead, was denied the honour of burial by his own son. He lived eight and fifty years, and reigned five and thirty. He had two sons, *Andronicus* his successor, and *Constantine*, a good Souldier, who had fought successfully against the Turks; but *Andronicus*, upon suspicion that he affected the Empire, put him in prison.

*Andronicus* hired the *Alani* that dwelt along the coast of the *Euxine* Sea, against the Turks: These *Alani* being impatient of the slavery they were in under the *Scythian* *Tartars*, repair in great multitudes to *Andronicus*, for some 40 new habitations within his Dominions; These he armed against the Turks in *Asia*, by whom they were defeated; and so many as escaped the Turks fury, saved themselves over-against *Lesbos* on the coast of *Greece*. *Rogerius* *Laurea*, Admiral of the *Arragonian* or *Spanish* Fleet, against the French in *Sicily*, was invited by *Andronicus* with his Fleet against the Turks. He gets leave of the *Arragonian*, having made peace with the French, to go with his Colleague *Piringerius* *Terza*. *Andronicus*, to make them both the more cordial to him, creates *Rogerius*, *Cesar*; and *Piringerius*, the great Duke: These did beat the Turks in divers battels, but for want of pay they became enemies, and fell to plunder the Greek Territories. *Rogerius* is killed in the tumult, and his Colleague was taken afterward by the *Genuois*, who stript him both of his Admiralty and life. The *Catalani*, descended of the ancient *Catti* and *Alani*, much 50 infested *Andronicus*, against whom he raiseth an Army of *Thracians* and *Macedonians*; but he was put to the worse, and forced to flee. These *Catalans*, by the help of the Turks, wasted *Macedon*, and without them over-run *Thessaly*; thence passing into *Boeotia* and *Attica*, surprised *Athens* and *Thebes*, where they seat themselves, having killed the Prince of *Athens*.

*An. Christi.* At this time John Prince of Thessaly dyed without issue, having lived three years with his wife Irene, the bastard of Andronicus the Emperour; and so the dominion of the Angeli ceased in Thessaly, Epirus, and Etolia, a part of which returned to the Emperour, and the rest the Princes and the Catalans tore away. Some of the Turks who turned Christians, went to the Prince of Servia: the rest made a league with Andronicus, for a safe convoy to the Hellespont, and from thence to Chersonesus with their booties; but the Emperor kept not promise with them, and so they were cut off by the Genuan and Bulgarian forces; for which perfidiousness the Turks were enraged against the Christians in Asia. In the mean while Maria Domicilla, who by right of blood claimed title to Jerusalem, resigns her right to Charles King of Sicily, though Hugh King of Cyprus claimed it. The Armenian Christians being deserted by the Tartars, were miserably butchered and destroyed by the Turks: The falling off of the Tartars from the Christians and Christianity, and their civil wars among themselves, gave opportunity to the Egyptians under Melech-Messor to besiege and take Tripoli, which they burned, and in it killed seven thousand Christians. His sonne Seriphas, about three years after, took Ptolemais with 60000. horse, and 140000. foot: there were slain of the Christians 30000. the rest that escaped were drowned with storms, except a few which recovered Cyprus. Tyrus, Sidon, Beirut, and whatsoever the Christians had in Syria was destroyed. This Seriphas afterward, as he was preparing a Fleet to invade Cyprus, was murdered by his own Captains, who fell at variance among themselves. Cazanus the son of Argon Prince of Tartary, was invited by the Sarazens to embrace Mahometanism, which he did for a while to obtain his ends, therefore permitted the Christian churches to be destroyed: but when he had increased his wealth and power, he fell upon the Mahometans and killed them: upon this Melech Nasor the Tyrant of Egypt fights him; but he, though almost defeated, so carried himself, that he left 20000 Sarazens dead on the place, and drove the Sultan into Baldac or Babylon of Egypt. This victory gave a short breathing to the Christian affairs.

The Greek Church was now divided into three Factions; some holding with Beus the Patriarch of the Latine profession, some with Joseph the other Patriarch who was put out, and some with Arsenius who was dead. Whereupon to quiet all, Andronicus makes Gregory of Cyprus Patriarch; Beus and the Pontifician party are banished; Gregory also shortly after is deposed, and Athanasius the Eremitic is substituted, who because he sent every Bishop home to look to his own flock, foure years after he also is deposed, and driven into the deserts. Andronicus by evil counsel destroyed the Grecian fleet as uselesse, being now affianced by marriage to Spain, which had the kingdom of Sicily; but the want of a fleet gave occasion for all pirats to plunder the Greek coasts. The Venetians of Byzantium pretending some losses they received by Andronicus, plundered both by land and sea; which gave occasion to Othoman a petty Prince in Carmania, (but of an active spirit, and strong body) to raise an army against the Christians; so that he with other Turkish Commanders divided a great part of the Greek Empire amongst them. In the battel that was fought in Chersonesus between the Greeks and Turks, for the booties which the Turks carried from Greece under the safe conduct of Andronicus, his son Michael lost the day, and withall the Imperial ornaments, which the Turks disgracefully used. They brake into Thracia with such multitudes, that they plundered it all, so that in two years the Byzantines durst not go out of their gates: The most of the Cities of Bythinia are taken by Ottoman, who makes Prusa the capital city of his new-erected Monarchy; so the Christian Empire in the East is but a meer Scellitor. The calamities that fell on this Empire by the Turks, were presaged by frequent earthquakes, comets and eclipses in the sun and moon. Andronicus lived till he was seventy years of age, and saw notably these public-like calamities, but also the private miseries of his own family; for his sonnes and

and grand-children proved both flagitious, and factious against each other, and most ungracious to himself; for Andronicus the younger, sonne to Michael, and grandchild to this Andronicus the elder, thrust his grandfather, being almost blind with age and sorrow, into a Monastery, where he dyed; Michael the father of this younger Andronicus, was dead before; Manuel the other sonne of this Michael, was killed by the City-guard, whilst in the night he went to find out this dissolute brother Andronicus the younger.

Cazanus the Tartar (as we said) having beaten the Egyptian Sultan, was master of Asia. He was by profession a Christian, and therefore married the King of Armenia's daughter. Finding that his Kinsman Caydon was raising a Faction in Persia, sends Ambassadors to the Pope and French king, for a union with the Latine Princes, towards the regaining of the Holy-Land. But he committed a great error, when he intrusted Caycaphus a Saracen fugitive with the government of Damascus, having been governour before in that place under the Egyptian: for this Saracen revolted from him, and brought all Syria into the obedience of the Egyptian Sultan. And so now the thousand yeares are ended, in which the Church did reign with Christ; for Mahumets religion prevailed so fast, that it drove Christianity out of the East. The Armenians and Cyprians endeavoured to recover Syria, but could do nothing, because Cazanus fell sick. The Egyptian Sultan carried away all provisions from the Christian quarters, and poisoned the grasse and fodder. After the death of Cazanus, his brother Campanda turned Mahometan; and so the Turks over-ran all, even to the gates of Byzantium.

Michael Paleologus father to Andronicus the younger, being in Thessaly, and understanding how his younger son Manuel was killed, died for griefe. Old Andronicus, receiving continual complaints against the oppressions of his grandchild the younger Andronicus, was resolved to imprison him: which he understanding by the Patriarch, fled to Adrianopolis; and by the help of John Cantacuzenus, and Syrgiannes the bastard son of Constantine, and grandchild of old Andronicus, who was now hated for the continual taxes which he was forced to lay on the people against the Turks, raised an Army against his Grandfather: therefore young Andronicus, promising exemption from all taxes, drew almost all Thracia and Macedon to side with him; so that the old man was glad to content himselfe with Byzantium, and a part of Macedon, leaving the rest to his grandchild. Upon this rent, the Turks build ships, with which they infest the coasts of Thrace and Macedon. Wherefore old Andronicus, to furnish himself with moly against them, was forced to sell the ornaments of the ancient Emperors. But Syrgiannes, angry that he was not Colleague with young Andronicus in the Empire, flies to the old man, and puts him in hope to recover all again. Young Andronicus at this raiseth an Army, and brings it to the gates of Byzantium, pretending his grandfather was dead; and to deliver his mother Xene, whom Constantine the Despot or Lord had carried away by ship from Thessalonica to Byzantium, and there imprisoned her: But her delivery caused a new peace; and the rather, because Philadelphia was now besieged by the Turks. Young Andronicus is now crowned and made Consort of the Empire with the old man; but Syrgiannes is imprisoned and plundered. In the interim, Ottoman subdues almost all Bythinia; who having reigned 28 years, died, and was buried in a Silver-tomb by his son Orcaues, after he had taken Prusa by famine. After this, young Andronicus desirous to reign alone, makes a league with Michael Despot or Lord of Bulgaria, with whom he marrieth his sister, purposely to defeat the old man, which they did by the help of their Captains, who worshipped the rising Sun: Constantinople is betrayed, the old Emperor seized upon, and by the advice of Niphon the Patriarch is deposed, who with grief lost his eye-sight. Young Andronicus makes an expedition into Asia against Orcaues, where he was wounded in the foot, and shamefully lost his army to the Turks: After this he fell desperately sick, upon a cold

*An. Christi.*

1321.

1326.



*An. Christi.* he took after bathing. The report of his death thrust the old Emperor into a Monastery in *Byzantium*; where *Theodorus Synadenus* made him abjure his Empire, and change his name from *Andronicus* to *Antonius*. But young *Andronicus* recovers, and was invited by the *Bulgarian* against the *Triballi*, but refused to go, being content to sleep in a whole skin. This *Bulgarian* Lord had married *Andronicus* his sister (as was said) and therefore put away his other wife, sister to the King of *Servia*; whereupon this King made war upon the *Bulgarian*, thrust him out of his principality, and put *Alexander* his kinsman in his place.

1332. About this time, *Orcanes* the Turk took *Nicea* of *Bythinia*, after a long siege. In the midst of these miseries, old *Andronicus* dyed in his Covent, the 50. year 10 of his reign. Young *Andronicus* makes war upon *Alexander* the *Bulgarian*, who defeats him, and having cooped him up with the remainder of his forces, takes pity on so many Christians, and proffers peace upon promise of future moderation. After this, *Syrgiannes* is accused of treason, but escapes, and with the *Triballi* invades *Macedonia*. *Andronicus* not able to suppress him by force, murders him by an assassin: the *Triballian* Prince being bribed by the Emperor makes peace with him, and so *Macedon* returns again to the obedience of *Cesar*. The *Genuis* in *Pern* were grown so strong, that they slighted *Andronicus*. *Cantanes* a *Genuan* seizes upon *Mytilene*, but not long after *Andronicus* recovers it, having brought the *Phocians* into subjection. The *Scythians* beyond *Isther* 20 overrun *Thracia*, and carried away for slaves 30000. *Greeks* and *Turks*. *Orcanes* did lie in wait to surprise *Byzantium*; but *Cantacuzenus* with 70 Greek horsemen overthrew a great number of the Turkish infantry. *Andronicus* calls in the *Turks* upon the *Illyrians*, who had offended him: And whilst he is subduing *Aetolia* and *Epirus* (which shortly after he lost) *Orcanes* takes *Nicomedia* of *Bythinia*, and so the next year, the *Turks* without resistance overrun *Thracia*; a while after they pass over the *Hellepont*, and by the help of *Soliman*, *Orcanes* 1341. his eldest son, took it. Shortly after, *Andronicus* died of the Spleen, being 45 years old, and having reigned 20. He left two sons by his wife *Anne* the *Almain*, *John St. Manuel*, over whom he appointed governor *John Cantacuzenus*, whom 30 he made swear to be faithful in preserving the Empire to his young pupil *John*; but he shortly after forgot his oath, slighted the young *Cesar*, and to make himself great, humoured the Greek Princes, and married his daughter to *Orcan* the Turkish Sultan. *Orcanes* having reigned 30 years, died.

In *Hungary*, *K. Ladislaus* with *Boleslaus* had scarce driven out the *Tartars*, who had overrun *Hungary* and *Poland*; when the people, who hated the tyrannical deportment of *Ladislaus*, choose for their King *Andrew*, called *Venetus*, from his mother and education, being *Venetian*: he was grandchild of *K. Andrew* by his son *Steven*. After the death of this *Andrew Venetus*, *Charles* Nephew to *Claudius* of *Sicily*, *Robert* Uncle to *Charles*, and *Wenceslaus* the *Bohemian*, became Competitors for the kingdom: but the Peeres chose *Otto* the *Bavarian*, who being taken by the *Transylvanian*, escaped by the help of his wife, and returned home: *Albert* establisheth *Charles* in the kingdom, who banished many of the Nobility, and so he prevailed over his Competitors.

In *Poland* was the like contestation: For to *K. Boleslaus* succeeded *Lescus Niger*, who had subdued the *Jazyges* and *Russians*, and his Competitor *Conradus Masovius*, whom divers of the Nobility had chosen for their King. This *Lescus* died without issue; wherefore *Boleslaus Masovius*, *Henry Vretislave*, and *Ladislaus Locticus* brother to *Lescus*, strove for the succession. In the mean while, *Wenceslaus* the *Bohemian* invaded the Territories of *Cracovia* and *Sens* 40 *domiria*, in right of the Queen, who had bequeathed them to him; the *Tartars* fall upon some other places of that distracted kingdom: in these tumults, *Henry Vretislave* dieth, and *Primislaus* is chosen King by the *Polanders*, who lived not above seven months after. Then was *Ladislaus* chosen: but he who with so much toile and trouble got the kingdom, with too much ease and luxury lost it; for the Peers deposed him, and conferred the kingdom upon *Wenceslaus* In the *Bohemian*.

In *Denmark*, *Ericus* the sixth, Grandchild to *Waldemar* by his son *Christo-* *An. Christi.* pher, was treacherously murdered, to whom succeeded his son *Ericus* the seventh, being a child; in his minority, the Kingdom was well governed by *Agnes* of *Brandenburg* and the Nobility. The Kings murderers were all banished; Pyrats severely punished; the *Holsatians* and *Vandals* reconciled; the Territories of *Rostoch*, and other places over-gainst *Denmark*, reduced into the Kings obedience. This *Ericus* afterward became tyrannical and sacrilegious, who for his wicked life, and the whoredomes he committed upon divers Noble Matrons, was murdered in a Barn, where he was found sleeping, by 10 seven assassins, who gave him seventy wounds. He married his Daughter *Sophia* to *Waldemar* King of *Swethland*, who for incest with his sister was driven out of his kingdom; to whom succeeded his brother *Ladislaus*. To *Ericus* the seventh in *Denmark* succeeded *Ericus* the eighth, who obtained some Victories against the *Tentones*; He died without issue, having reigned three and thirty years. To him succeeded his brother *Christopher*, an unfortunate and careless Prince, a hater of his Nobility, and an oppressor of the people; for which he was driven twice out of his kingdom. He pawned to the *Holsatians* all *Scania*, who upon this aimed at the whole kingdom, which the *Danes* perceiving, called home again king *Christopher*, whom they had banished, and let loose his son *Ericus*, whom for his bad government with his father they had imprisoned; but shortly after both the father and son died. 20 *Magnus* the king of *Swethland* redeemed *Scania* from the *Holsatians* for seventy thousand Marks of silver. *Waldemar*, king *Christopher's* other son, was declared king; but he was not as yet returned from the Emperours Court; during which time, the *Holsatians* seized upon *Jutia*, but their chief Commanders were in one night surprised in their Garrison, and murdered by the *Danes*: Upon this the new king *Waldemar* returned home.

In the Low-Countries, *John* Duke of *Brabant* buyeth the Earldome of *Ne-* *mours* and *Dutchy of Limburg*. The Earl of *Geldre* next heir opposeth. A war 30 followeth, in which near *Colen*, the Earl is defeated, and taken prisoner, with the Bishop of *Colen*, *Adolph* of *Nassovia*, and *Henry* of *Lucelburg*. The Earl of *Geldre*, upon renouncing of the Dukedome, is released. *Henry's* son married the Duke of *Brabant's* daughter, and with her had the Earldome. Not long after, *John* was slain in Tournament.

*Holland*, called by the *Romans*, *Batavia*, in the time of *Charles* the Great, was 40 over-run by the *Danes*; but about this time *Florentius* the fifth was Earl of that Province, who was treacherously murdered by some male-contents, as he was Hawking, because he had made a league with *France*, to the prejudice of *Guy* Earl of *Flanders*, and the King of *England*; the murderers cut off his hands, and gave him two and twenty wounds. Before him were sixteen Earls, the first was *Didericus* a good man, who stoutly repressed the *Norman* invasions to him succeeded *Didericus* the second, of whom no memorable act is extant. *Arnolphus* followed, who had long wars with the *Frislanders*, in which he, with the most of his Nobility were slain. His son *Didericus* or *Theodoricus* the third, succeeded, who had wars with the *Frislanders*, whom the Bishop of *Utrecht* assisted against the Earl, whom at last he defeated. His son *Theodoricus* the fourth succeeded; he unwittingly killed the Bishop of *Colens* brother; in 50 revenge of which, the Earl being fled, two of the chief Nobility of *Holland* were murdered by those of *Colen*: To requite this murder, the Earl burned all the Ships of *Colen* and *Leege* which were then in *Dort*, and imprisoned the Merchants: Upon this, the Enemy seise upon *Dort*; the Earl gets into the Town in the dark; a doubtful skirmish was fought, in which the Earl at last had the better; but in the morning he was wounded by one of the enemies in the thigh, and died within two dayes after. His brother *Florentius* the first succeeded, against whom the Bishop of *Colen* and *Leege*, with some neighbouring Princes, raised a great Army, seven and twenty thousand of which were drowned

An. Christi.

drowned in the Ditches near *Dort*, and the rest slain by the Earls Forces: After four years peace, his former enemies renew their Forces, and invade *Holland* again, and were overthrown again: But whilst the Earl with some Troops were securely refreshing themselves near the *Mose*, *Alrad* brother to the Duke of *Lorain* with fresh Forces falls upon the Earl, whom they killed with two thousand and six hundred of his men. This murder was afterward repaid by the Citizens of *Dort*, who killed all the murderers. The Earls widow, *Gertrudis*, during his sons minority, for two years ruled the State. She married *Robert* the *Frislander*, so called, because he with his wife ruled *Holland*, which was then called *Frisia*; this *Robert* was son to *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, 10 against whom *William* Bishop of *Utrecht* raised a war, which ruined *Holland*. *Henry* the fourth Emperour bestowed this Province upon *William*, who to obtain it the easier, procured *Godfrey* (from his low stature and crookedness, called *Gibber*) Duke of *Lorain*, to assist him, who with a great Army overthrew the *Hollanders*, and drove *Robert* with his wife and children into *Flanders*; so by the Bishop of *Utrecht*, *Godfrey* was made Protector of *Holland*. After this, he falls upon the *West-Frislanders* with fire and sword, and in a Battel kills eight thousand of them; but afterward, as he was on the clove-stool at *Antwerp*, he was murdered; his death was shortly after accompanied with the Bishops, who was a great Favourite of *Henry* the 4. and an enemy to *Heildebrand*. *Didericus* 20 the fifth, son to *Florentius*, being now of age, is assisted by *Robert Frislander*, and the *Flandrians*, to recover his Fathers Province: Him the Bishop of *Utrecht* opposed with an Army, assisted by *Conradus* the *Sueve*, whom the Emperour had made Earl of *Holland*; but they were both defeated by *Didericus*, and forced to resign their claim to him the right owner. His son *Florentius* the second succeeded, a peaceable and just Prince, who died in the prime of his years; to whom succeeded *Didericus* the sixth, who was forced by *Henry* the fifth to hold *Holland* in Fee of the Empire: He aimed to be Earl of *Flanders*, but missed of it. He twice subdued the *West-Frislanders*; then his brother *Florentius* taking part with *Frisia*, was the occasion of much blood-shed. At last *Lotharius* 30 the Emperour reconciled the two brothers. *Florentius* afterward was murdered. *Didericus* had some controversie with the *Flandrians*, about the Islands of *Zeland*, but he died before the controversie was ended. To him succeeded *Florentius* the third, who married the daughter of *Henry* Prince of *Scotland*; he had some contestation with the Bishop of *Utrecht*, but the Emperour *Barbarossa* reconciled them: He had wars also with the *Frisians*, and did good service under *Barbarossa*, who by the *Holland* ships brake in upon *Damiata* or *Pelusium*. Having ruled *Holland* three and thirty years, he died in the Holy-War, and was buried near *Barbarossa* in *Antioch*, whose son *Theodoricus* the 40 seventh succeeded; He had wars with his brother *William* about *Frisland*; the quarrel at last was composed, by assigning *East-Frisland* to *William*: He had wars also with *Flanders*, and a controversie with the Duke of *Geldre* about the election of the Bishop of *Utrecht*; the matter was referred to the Pope, who made the Earl Protector of the Bishoprick, till a new Bishop was chosen. He had also wars with the Duke of *Lorain*, whose woods he cut down and burned, and carried the Dukes brothers away prisoners: but *Lorain*, by the help of *Colen*, *Limburg*, and *Flanders*, set upon the Earl of *Holland*, and took him prisoner. In the mean while, the Bishop of *Utrecht* fell upon *Geldre* and *Holland* with fire and sword; but shortly after, the Duke, the Earl, and the Bishop were made friends. Then the Earl died, having ruled *Holland* thirteen years; 50 to whom succeeded his brother *William*, who was opposed by the Earl of *Lossen*, whom he defeated. Then understanding that *Malcolm* King of *Scotland* his Uncle was dead, and that he thought himself next Heir, repairs into *Scotland* with a great Fleet, where he found a party to joyn with him; but perceiving what great opposition he was like to have, and that the Earl of *Lossen* had invaded *Holland* in his absence, returns home, and drives out his enemy, having

An. Christi.  
1223.

1235.

1256.

1287.

1298.

1307.

having ruled nineteen years, he died, to whom succeeded his son *Florentius* the fourth; he was father to *William* King of the *Romans*, and to *Margaret*, who had at one birth 365. children; he was employed with the Dukes of *Brabant* and *Cleve*, by the Pope and Emperour, to suppress the Heathen Idolatrie that was begun to spread in those parts; He was killed in a Tourneament by *Claremontanus*. To whom succeeded *William* the second his son, being six years old. His Protector was *Otho* his Uncle Bishop of *Utrecht*. The Earl on his wedding-day was like to be burned with his wife, for the house took fire suddenly, so that it was burnt down, with divers in it, and 10 much Plate and Jewels. About twenty years of age, *Frederick* the second being excommunicate, he accepts the Imperial Crown; he removed his Court from *Harlem* to *the Hague*, and built the Palace there: He had Wars with the *Flandrians* about the Isle *Walacria* of *Zeland*, which they claimed as their Island; A battel is fought, in which the *Flemings* were overthrown, drowned and slain. After this, *Charles* of *Anjou*, brother to King *Lewis* of *France*, renews the quarrel in behalf of the *Flemings*, having received *Hannonia* as a reward for his assistance; but *William* drove him out thence; and then a peace is made with *Flanders*. After this, being at *Utrecht*, he is wounded in the head with a stone which was flung at him, for the *Frisians*, and those of *Utrecht* hated him; and as he was making an Expedition against the *Frislanders*, who 20 had rebelled, he and his horse were both drowned, the ice breaking under them; and being found, was cut in pieces by the *Frislanders*: He had been King of the *Romans* seven years. To him succeeded *Florentius* the fifth; in his minority were great troubles between *Holland* and *Utrecht*; as soon as he was of age, he made an Expedition against the *Frislanders* in revenge of his fathers death; those he subdued; about which time many Towns of *Frisland* were drowned by an inundation: Then also was *Zeland* united to *Holland* by marriage of *Gny* the Earl of *Flanders* daughter with *Florentius*: He was one of those Competitors with *Balliol* for the Crown of *Scotland*, being descended 30 from *Ada* wife to *Florentius* the third, and daughter of *Henry* Prince of *Scotland*; but by the advice of King *Edward*, he sold his Title for a summe of money: he had wars with the *Flemings*, and for making peace with *France* he was murdered (as was said.) To him succeeded *John* the first his son, whose protection the Earl of *Cleve* undertook; but he was put out of this Office; by *John* Earl of *Hannonia*. About this time great troubles fell out between *Holland* and *Utrecht*. *Middleburg* also in *Zeland* was besieged by the *Flandrians*. The young Earl of *Holland* having married King *Edwards* daughter of *England*, was much carried away by his Favourite *Wolfardus*, who caused him to infringe the Liberties of *Dort*, upon which arose a Civil War: *Dort* will not 40 lose her privileges; therefore the Earl besiegeth it, but is beat off with loss. *Wolfardus* is so hated by the people, that they hanged him by a long rope out of a high window, where he was imprisoned, disgracefully abusing and wounding his body. The *West-frislanders* being wearied with a continual war, submitted to *Holland*, which overthrew their Castles, and seized upon half their goods. After this, the Earl died, not without suspicion of poyson, to whom (because he wanted issue) succeeded *John* of *Hannonia*, son of King *Williams* sister.

About this time the *Switzers* or *Helvetians* began to Cantonize themselves; they for their good service in *Italy* against the *Sarazens*, were permitted by the Pope and the Emperour *Ludovic*, son to *Charles* the Great, to live after 50 their own Lawes; which liberty they enjoyed till *Italy* and the neighbouring Countries were distracted by the *Guelphs* and *Gibellines*; then *Barbarossa* took them into the protection of the Empire; but when the House of *Austria* began to oppress them, and infringe their Laws, they revolted, and vindicated their ancient Liberties, which they maintain to this day. The three Cantons that first revolted, were *Switz* (whence all the rest are called *Switzers*) *Dry*, and

E c

and

*An. Christi.* and *Underval*, which with *Lucerne*, *Zug*, and *Soleuvre* retain the Catholike Religion; but *Friburg*, *Basil*, *Bernu*, *Zurich*, and *Schaffnau* are Calvinists; the other two, *Glaris* and *Appenzel* profess both Religions.

## CHAP. V.

1. The affairs of Germany under Adolphus, Albertus, Henry the seventh, 10 and Ludovic of Bavaria. 2. The affairs of Sicily, Naples, Florence, Rome, and Millain, and other parts of Italy, with the adjacent Countries, from the year 1298. till 1347.

ADolphus of Nassovia, Kinsman to Gerhard Bishop of Mentz, is by his means declared Emperour: Count Palatine stood for Albertus of Austria, but could not prevail, and was hated for this ever after by the Bishops Faction, whose creature Adolphus was; he to strengthen himself in the Empire, desires to marry his son to Albertus the Austrian, which motion is rejected; 20 whereupon a war is raised between Adolphus and Albertus, both for this impulse, and because the Emperour had bought the Principality of Thuringia with the money which he received of King Edward of England, upon hope that he would assist him and Guy of Flanders against the French; but he failed both; wherefore both (having made peace with the French) became his enemies. The German Princes scorned that their Emperor should become a mercenary Souldier to the English Kingdome; and the Thuringians stormed that they should be bought and sold. Albertus of Austria shewed that he had reason to serve the French, if the Emperour would abate himself to serve the English: Hereupon forces are raised against Adolphus, whom the same Bishop 30 of Mentz that made him Emperour, deposeth, and setteth up against him of Bavaria, with whom the Princes joyn; onely the Duke of Bavaria, and Rodolphus Count Palatine, who was son-in-law to Adolphus, adhered to him. Neer Spira the battel is fought; Adolphus too hastily with his Horse, before the Foot came up, fell upon the Austrians, who had the advantage of the ground and Sun; The Adolphians are defeated, and Adolphus himself wounded in the eye, and beat down from his horse; whom as he was rising again from the ground, Albertus runs into the neck, and kills him, the eighth year of his Empire; he was buried at Spire.

Pope Boniface the eighth, who speaking through a long Cane in the wall, 40 had made Celestine lay down his Pontificat, endeavoured to make peace between the French and Arragonians, perswading James to restore Sicily to Charles the lame; but Frederick, brother to James, came in the interim with a Fleet from Spain into Sicily, and is saluted King by the people. When James was dead, Robert, son to Charles the lame, came over into Sicily, and took Catania; but the Sicilians, who favoured the Spaniards more then the French, in a Sea-fight defeat Philip, the brother of Robert, whom they took and imprisoned. Frederick recovers in a short time both Sicily and Calabria in Hetruria. The 50 Genuois were so incensed against the Pisans, that they sunk great ships in the mouth of the River, to hinder their Navigation: About which time, there were such fearful Earth-quakes, that the Pope being at Mass, was forced to give off, and run out of the Church into a small Cottage, fearing the earth would open; then also appeared a Comet. The Gibellines and Guelphs now raged in Italy, but under new names, of White and Black; the Gibellines were named White, whom the Florentines drove out of their City, with Dantes the Poet. The Pope, to be out of danger, removed his Seat to Avinion 10

in France, which Clement the sixth bought; the Italian affairs he committed to the care of three Cardinals; the Popes abode in France was seventy years, in which time divers Schismes were in the Church, the Italians choosing a Pope of their Nation, and the French of theirs. This time the Italians called the seventy years Captivity of Babel.

Albertus having slain Adolphus, is made Emperour; such was the concurrence of people to see him, that the Duke of Saxony was squeezed to death with the press. He reconciled himself with Otto Duke of Bavaria, whose Uncle he had killed: But this friendship lasted not long, for Otto being called to be 10 King of Hungary fell upon Syria; but shortly after, Otto is by the Hungarians banished. Albertus desires to be confirmed by the Pope in his Empire, which Boniface refused to do, shewing by the Crown on his head; and the sword by his side, that he was both Pope and Emperour himself; yet shortly after in hatred of Philip the Fair, he declared him Emperour, and withall conferred on him the title of France: but Philip to elude the Popes fury, bestowed in marriage his daughter Blanca upon Ralph Alberts Son; this Albert made his Son Ralph King of Bohemia, Wenceslaus the seventh being in a tumult slain in Moravia; but Ralph in the very beginning of his Reign, was murdered in his chamber; Henry Duke of Carinthia, and Son in law to Wenceslaus the sixth, having seized on the Kingdome, notwithstanding that Frederick Alberts other Son was elected King by 20 the Peers. Albert had wars with Otto of Bavaria, whom Conradus Bishop of Saltzburg assisted, and withall so endangered the Emperors life with a poysoned cup, that had he not vomited presently, he had dyed; yet he never thoroughly recovered. Afterward the same Emperour was slain, and cut in peeces by means of the Duke of Carinthia, whilst Albert was making war against Frederick of Mysia, which Country he aimed at, as being a convenient inlet to Bohemia. This Frederick was Son to Albert Earle of Thuringia, a wicked man, who would have murdered his wife, daughter to Frederick the second, Emperour, being animated thereto by a harlot whom he doted on: Alberts Lady 30 fled to save her life, and as she kissed her Son Frederick in her flight, whom she bore to this Albert, in her passion she bit his cheek, the mark whereof he still retained. Dietricus Marquis of Mysia, Alberts brother, commiserating this disconsolate Lady, gave her entertainment, and made her Son Frederick his heir to Mysia, at which Albert the Father stormed, and caused this his Son to be imprisoned a whole year, till by the favour of his Keepers who pitied his case, he was let go. After this his Father Albert dyed miserably. Frederick subdued all his enemies at last, and among the rest Albert the Emperour, and so obtained both the Earldome of Thuringia, and the Marquisat of Mysia. The Emperour was set upon first by John his brothers Son, whom he had removed for his 40 loose life from the government of Suevoia. This John gave the first blow, thrusting his Dagger in the Emperors throats, after him came others who clave his head in the middle, and others gave him divers wounds in the breast; he dyed the tenth year of his Empire.

Albertus being dead, Philip the Fair of France was now in hope to be Emperour, having the Pope within his Dominions; wherefore by his brother Charles Valoise, he raiseth an Army: but the Pope considering how dangerous the translation of the Empire might prove to the Italian Princes, sends secretly to the seven Electors to hasten the election of a German Emperour, which was done accordingly, and Henry Earl of Lucelburg was chosen upon the com- 50 mendations of his brother Baldwin Archbishop of Trevers; the Pope by his Legats declares him Emperour, conditionally that within two years he would repair to Italy, and there compose the long differences with which it was almost ruined: he to that purpose sets himself, but first resolves to settle Germany; therefore he confirms Frederick the Sonne of Albert in his possession of Austria, conditionally that he would resign his right in Bohemia, which when he had assented to, the Emperour by consent of the

*An. Christi.* Electors, deposed Henry the Carinthian, and made his own son John King, by marrying him to Elizabeth the daughter of Wenceslaus the eldest, and neece to Ralph the Emperor. Henry after this, composed the wars of Mysia or Mysina, so that Frederick should content himself with Thuringia and Mysia, and should leave the lower Lusatia to the Bohemians: so Germany being quieted, he raiseth an Army for Italy; but first he performs the Funeral ceremonies to Albert and Adolph, whose bodies he translated to Spire, and declared all those to be Traitors who had a hand in the murder of Albert, all which dyed miserably.

In Italy most of the *Cisalpin* Cities had changed their Governours; the *Sca-* 10  
ligers had seized on Verrona, the *Passerins* on Mantua, the *Carrarians* on Padua, the *Venetians* on Ferrara, and the *Florentines* on Pistorium; in Millain the *Turri-*  
ans chief of the *Guelphs* under Guido had suppressed the *Gibellins*, and driven out thence Matthew the Viscount, who complains to the Emperor, being on his march towards Millain, he restores them both to their ancient patrimony and sets the City at liberty; but because Henry placed Matthew on his right hand, and Guido on his left, as he was going to receive his iron Crown, Guido raiseth a tumult in the City which had endangered the Emperor, but that Matthew suddenly raised all his friends, and by the help of the German forces fell upon the *Turrians*, and drove them out of the City; the charge of which 20  
was solely committed to Matthew. *Cremona*, *Phacenza*, *Parma*, *Papia*, and *Brixium*, who favoured the *Guelphs*, were reduced by Caesar, to whom the *Crem-*  
*onians* with ropes about their necks acknowledged their fault, and paid their Fine. *Brixium* also was punished with a mulct, and demolition of their walls; and one *Theobald* who had caused them to rebel, was torn in peeces by horses.

*Lombardy* and other places being settled, Henry goeth for *Genua*, and from thence by Sea to *Pise*, the Army he sent by land towards *Rome*, where the two families of the *Ursini* and *Columni* for three months together skirmished daily, that the streets ran with blood; Robert King of *Apulia* son to Charles the lame, 30  
aided the *Ursini* against the *Gibellins* who stood for Caesar, and strove to keep him out of the City, but the *Columni* prevailed and brought him in, where he was crowned the third time with much difficulty and reluctance of the Cardinal Legats. Caesar after his Coronation made haste out of that turbulent City, and fatal to the German Emperors: he made a League with Frederick of *Sicily*, who then had war with Robert of *Apulia*: the *Florentines* with the *Bo-*  
*nonians*, *Ferrarians*, and other Cities held out against the Emperor, who burned their fields and provision, that they might for want be forced to yeeld the sooner: He summoneth Robert to appear and answer to his accusations, but he refused to come, and so is condemned of Treason and Rebellion, his Arms are 40  
torn, and his right and name of King taken away. This sentence Pope Clement shortly after repealed, as may be seen in his Constitutions called *Clementines*, set forth by his successor John the 23. Henry having laid siege to *Florence*, and preparing to go against Robert upon the invitation of the *Neapolitans*, is poysoned by one Bernard a predicant Friar, being hired thereto by the *Floren-*  
*tines*; the murderer, who poysoned the cup, or as some say the Sacramental bread, was flid alive. Henries body two years after his death was translated to 1313  
*Pise*: the *Florentines* in three battels were defeated by the *Pisans*, who stood for Caesar and the *Gibellins*, wherefore the Legats and King Robert, offended at this success, give their assistance to the *Guelphs*, whose Army Matthew Viscount 50  
of Millain defeated: Hereupon he is excommunicated by Vasco the Cardinal, and Legate to the Pope; yet his sons had good success against the *Guelphs*, notwithstanding the aid they had of the *Neapolitans* under Robert, of the French under Philip Valoise, and of the Germans under Henry Duke of *Austria*.

John after his fathers death raised an Army, and confirmed the *Cesarian* forces

forces in Italy: He enlarged also *Bohemia* by the addition of *Lusatia*, and a great part of *Silesia*, which Country lying between Poland and *Bohemia*, fell off from both, and made themselves free; but having abused their freedom with intestine broils, the *Bohemians* subdued them: This John was afterward killed in the battel of *Cressy*, in which were slain also Charles Valoise, and thirty thousand French.

After the death of Henry the seventh, the Empire wanted an head fourteen months, because of the rent among the Electors; for the Bishop of Mentz and of Trevers, with the Marquess of Brandenburg stood for Ludovic of Bavaria; but 10  
the Bishop of Colen, the Palsgrave, and Duke of Saxony, were for Frederick of Austria: both were crowned Ludovic at Aix the ordinary place, by the Bishop of Mentz and Trevers, whose office was not to consecrate, Frederick at Bonnoa which was not the ordinary place of Coronation, by the Bishop of Colen, whose charge it was to consecrate the elected Emperor: the King of *Bohemia* with his casting voice, conferred the right title on Ludovic; yet to avoid jars, the Electors, by the Popes advice, were content that both should be called Emperors, and both equally rule together, as of old, *M. Antonius* and *L. Venu-*  
*Valentinian* and *Valens*, *Gratian* and *Theodosius*, with many others, reigned to- 20  
gether as Colleagues. Ludovic thrust his brother Ralph the Palsgrave out of his inheritance, because he preferred Frederick to him; This Ralph afterwards dyed in England. But these two Emperors could not agree; Germany is divided into two factions, which last eight years; these troubles were presaged by a Comet, and accompanied with famine and mortality: five several battels were fought; the two greatest were, that at *Essing* in *Suevia*, which was besieged by Frederick for adhering to Ludovic; in this conflict many of the Nobility were slain and taken on both sides, for the victory inclined to neither, however the siege was raised. The other great battel was fought near *Muldorffe* in *Bavaria*, 30  
which Frederick had invaded with ten thousand Hungarians; and twenty thousand Austrians: Ludovic meets him with the strength of *Bohemia*, and the neighbouring parts; great slaughter is committed on both sides; at last the Hungarians are forced to give ground, and though the Austrian horse held out a while longer, yet they yeeld at length; Frederick with his brother Henry are taken prisoners; three years was this Emperor detained a prisoner, then was set at liberty, conditionally that he would be content with the bare title of Emperor whilst he lived, but should not meddle with the Government, nor enter into Italy: Seven years after he dyed, his brother was released by restoring of some Towns and Forts in *Moravia*, which in this War the Au-  
strians had taken from the *Bohemians*.

After this victory of Ludovic, Pope John the 22. or 23. accuseth him for 40  
aiding Galeacius of Millain against the *Guelphs*, and for exercising his Imperial right without the Popes confirmation; his answer was, that as soon as he was elected, he was to administer justice, and to defend Galeacius, who had a just cause; upon this Ludovic is condemned by the Pope as an heretick, and the sentence declared against him at *Avenion*, for maintaining that the Pope was not to meddle with secular affairs. Leopoldus brother to Frederick, who came not in time to aid him, doth much hurt in *Alsatia* and *Helvetia*, afterward he became mad and dyed. John King of *Bohemia*, and Charles King of *Hungary*, with Otto Frederick's other brother over-run *Austria*; shortly after Otto dyed, and so did Frederick, being consumed by a Love-potion. Four years after the 50  
victory, Ludovic marcheth into Italy to establish the *Gibellin* faction, the chief of which were Galeacius and his four brothers, John, Mark, Luchin, and Steven, Viscounts of Millain, the sons of Matthew. Galeacius had taken *Placenza* from Albertus Sotus: upon this King Robert, the Pope, and the *Florentines*, who had been molested by Castibonius, a great friend of the Galeacis, entred into a League, with whom the French King joyned, in hatred to the Emperor, to re-establish the *Guelphs* in Italy, the *Gibellins* understanding that Philip Valois  
and

*An. Christi.* and his Confederates were, raising Forces against them, they beseech the Emperor to hasten into *Italy*, who did so; he was met at *Verona* by *Mark*, who complained of his brother *Galeacius*, that he did assume the sole command over *Milain*, infringing their liberties. This accusation *Ludovic* put off, till a more convenient time: in the interim he goeth to *Milain*, where he is pompously received by *Galeacius*, and in the Church of *S. Ambrose* receives his Iron-crown from the Bishop of *Aretin* a great *Gibelline*. Here was present at that time *Cains Scaliger*, with a thousand Horse and some Foot-companies, to wait on the Emperor; who having heard his accusation and *Marks* against *Galeacius*, understanding also that the *Millanois* would pay his Army, if their Republicke might be free, and having intercepted some Letters of *Galeacius* entering correspondency with the Pope; he puts him with *Luchin* and *John* his brothers, his son *Actius*, and some others in close prison; Then were chosen four and twenty men out of every Tribe or Ward to rule the Commonwealth. And so having left *Montfortius* with some German forces to guard the City, *Ludovic* passeth into *Hetruria*, and so to *Rome*, where he complains to the Cardinals and Senate of the wrongs done him by Pope *John* 22. withall he makes one *Peter Corbarius* a Franciscan, Antipope, by whom he and his wife *Margaret* Lady of *Holland* and *Frisland*, are crowned in the *Vatican*. But no sooner had *Ludovic* left the City, when this poor Antipope (called now *Nicolaus* 5.) is by *Boniface* Earl of *Pisa* apprehended, laid in irons, and sent to the Pope at *Avenion*, where he ended his dayes in misery.

About this time the Emperor takes *Castrutius* Duke of *Luca*, out of prison, and bestows honours on him; at whose request the Vicounts are restored. But all this could not secure the Emperor in *Italy*; for he found them, upon the Popes displeasure, to fall from him; besides, *Rome* had received King *Robert* of *Naples*, his forces in *Germany* were defeated, the *Catti* and *Saxons* had revolted; And fearing an Italian fig or pill, makes haste away into *Germany*, where having assembled the Peers, he makes confession of his faith, as he had done at *Rome* before the Cardinals, and complains of the Popes injustice and tyrannie, desiring the continuance of their allegiance to him: withall he useth the best means he could to be reconciled to Pope *Benedict* the ninth, being *John*'s successor; who sent him word, that he could not absolve him, being hindered by the Kings of *France* and *Naples*. *Ludovic*, to be revenged on the French king; who solicited the Pope to make him Lieutenant of *Italy*, joins himself in league to King *Edward* of *England*, to the great prejudice of *France*, which was wasted by their forces. Wherefore the French King cunningly got the Emperors wife to take him off from the *English*, assuring him by oath and promise that he would reconcile him to the Pope, which he did not: He procured also *John* King of *Bohemia* to forsake him, who with a great Army enters *Italy*, pretending that he went to settle the troubles of *Lombardy*, where the Lieutenants or Vicounts of those cities which *Ludovic* had left to their government, strove for the dominion of them. King *John* suddenly seizes upon *Brixia*, *Cremona*, *Papia*, and divers other cities; whereupon the *Guelfs* and *Gibellines* (being affrighted at this successe, and fearing lest *Philip Valois* and the Pope had conspired with King *John* to subdue all the Italian cities, and to divide the dominion amongst them) of long enemies became now friends, and enter into league against *John*, whom they defeated at *Ferrara* and drove him out of *Italy*; yet he retained *Parma*, *Regium*, and *Mutina*, which he committed to his Son *Charles*.

*Ludovic* having conferred the Dukedome of *Corinthia* upon the *Austrian*, which King *John* hoped should have been given to his son in right of his wife, the daughter of *Henry* of *Carinthia*; he declares himself an open enemy to *Ludovic*, and joyns with *France*, where he lost his life. Pope *Clement* the sixth who succeeded *Benedict*, renews the sentence of Excommunication, delivered by Pope *John* against *Ludovic*, and urges the Electors to choose another Em-

perour;

*An. Christi.*

perour; and because the Bishop of *Mentz* would not call the Princes together for a new Election, he is first excommunicated, and then deposed, and another Bishop put in his place; but the Elector of *Trevers*, who had been *Ludovic*'s chief Counsellor and supporter, fell off from him, and encouraged *Charles* Prince of *Bohemia* to undertake the Empire: The like did the Duke of *Saxon*. The new Bishop of *Mentz* assembleth the Princes. *Charles* Marquess of *Moravia* (whose Font-name was *Wenceslaus*, but afterward called *Charles* by *Charles* the French King, who had married this Bohemians Aunt) King *John*'s son is elected, and is conveyed to *Aix* to be crowned; but the City denied him entrance; wherefore he is, by the Bishop of *Colen*, crowned at *Bonna*, a Town upon the *Rhine* neer *Colen*: Notwithstanding that *Ludovic*, by confession of his faith, had refuted the Heresies objected against him, and had straightly charged, upon pain of proscription, that none should obey the Popes Orders, nor leave off performing of Divine Service, because of his Excommunications. The French King did labour to reconcile the Pope and Emperour, but in vain; for the Pope would not absolve him, except he would openly confess his Heresies, resign his Imperial Crown, and hold it of him; which *Ludovic* refused, affirming, that though he had his Consecration from the Pope, yet the right of the Empire was not in him, but in the Electors; but *Ludovic* died the next year after this new Election, by a fall from his horse as he was hunting, or rather by poison, which he could not vomit up, therefore he thought by riding and agitation of his body to dispel it; but the poison was so strong, that it put him into a Convulsion fit, in which he fell from his horse. He reigned 30. some say 33. years; his wife *Margaret*, daughter to *William* the third of *Holland*, went to take possession of that Province fallen to her by the death of her brother *William* the fourth, killed by the *Frislanders*.

About this time the *Florentines* being oppressed by *Castrutius* and their own civil discords, yielded themselves to *Charles* Duke of *Calabria*, son to *Robert* King of *Naples*. *Ludovic Gonzaga* invaded the Dominion of *Mantua*, having killed *Passerinus* Lord thereof. *Cains Scaliger*, Lord of *Verona*, having taken in *Padua*, and *Tarvisum*, from the *Carrarii*, died, whose son *Mastinus* succeeded. *Galeacius* also died with grief, having lost his fathers Principality by *Castrutius* Duke of *Luca*, and Lord of *Pisa* and *Pistorium*; whom the Pope excommunicated, as he was riding in triumph into *Luca* for his Victory over *Pistorium*, upon which he died with grief, and his children stript of their inheritance by the Emperour, who had for *Castrutius* sake incurred the Popes displeasure. *Mastinus Scaliger* to his fathers inheritance added *Vicetia*, *Brixia*, *Bergomus*, *Parma*, and *Luca*, and aimed also at *Venice*, which was his undoing; for the *Venetians* took from him *Padua* and *Tarvisum*. *Luchinus* the Vicount stript him of *Brixia* and *Bergomus*. *Benedict* the eleventh sends his Legat to pacifie the tumults in *Rome*, where by his command *Francis Petrarch* the Poet is carried in pomp to the Capitol, and there crowned with Bayes. He confirms *Scaliger* with the other Princes in their late purchased Dominions: but a dangerous war arose between the *Florentines* and *Pisans*, in which *Florence* was like to be surpris'd by *Valter* Duke of *Athens*, who was sent by *Robert* King of *Naples* to assist them; for he undertaking to settle things, was made Protector by the Republicke, but he made himself absolute Lord; whereupon the Bishop of *Florence* raiseth the people against him, who both drove him out of the City, and the Nobility with him.

The Kingdome of *Naples* at this time was in great trouble; for King *Robert* the son of *Charles* the Lame, dying without issue male, marrieth his Neece *Joan* by his son *Charles*, who was dead, to *Andrew* King *Charles* of *Hungaries* youngest son, and makes him his Successor; but he not being able to satisfie her unsatiable lust, was by her means strangled, and then marrieth with *Ludovic* the Prince of *Tarentum*'s son, and her Cousin-german, who had more right

to





*An. Christi.* but three years after *Emanuel* escaped out of prison, and by the help of *Bajazet* thrust him from his government, and sent him bound with his son *John* to the *Turks* Court.

*Emanuel* having proffered a yearly tribute of three millions of Crowns to *Bajazet*, obtains the Kingdome; he is enjoined to deliver up *Philadelphias* which had been divers times besieged in vain, to give hostages, and to bind himself by oath to aid the *Turks* with Auxiliaries upon all occasions. But not long after, *John* the son of *Andronicus* accuseth his Uncle to *Bajazet*, and alienates him from *Emanuel*, that he besieged *Byzantium*, and seeing he could not take it by force, resolves to gain it by famine; but the sudden breaking in of *Tamerlan* the *Scythian*, diverted him from his enterprise. *Emanuel* intending for *Italy* to procure men and money of the *Latine* Princes against the *Turks*, leaves *John* the son of *Andronicus* governour of the Kingdome in his absence; for he was now out of the *Turks* favour, for complying secretly with his brother: *Theodorus*, the other brother, fearing lest *Bajazet* would have taken *Byzantium*, when he lay before it, sold *Argos* and *Nauplium* to the *Venetians*, and *Sparta* to the *Rhodians*; But the *Turks* afterward destroyed *Argos*, and *Sparta* returned to the *Paleologi*. This *Emanuel* had seven sons, by his *Turkish* wife, widow to the King of *Trapezuntum*; *John* his successor, *Andronicus* governour of *Thessalonica*, which he after sold to the *Venetians*, and so in 20 *Peloponnesus* obtained *Mantineia* of his brothers; His third son was *Michael*, the fourth *Theodorus* Prince of *Peloponnesus*, he strove with his brother *John* for the Empire, choosing *Amurathes* for Arbitrator; the fifth *Demetrius*, He took from the *Albans* *Peloponnesus* by the *Turks* help, for which he paid a yearly tribute of fifteen thousand Crowns, at last he yielded himself and *Sparta* to *Mahumet*; The sixth *Thomas*, who after *Byzantium* was taken, and *Peloponnesus* lost, lived obscurely in *Rome*; The seventh *Constantine*, succeeded *John* in the Empire.

About these times *Greece* was torn in peeces by the *Venetians*, *Gennois*, *Neapolitans*, *Spaniards*, *Bulgarians*, and *Servians*, or *Triballians*, every one of 30 these snatching away a share of that wretched Country; not long after the *Venetians* lost *Athens* to *Antonius* the son of *Reinerius* the *Florantine*: The widow of this *Anthony* after her husbands death, bought the Principality from *Mahumet*, and falling in love with a *Venetian* Merchant (who for her sake poysoned his former wife) made him Prince, who being accused by the Gentry of *Athens* for Tyranny, is by *Mahumet* commanded to be slain, and his wife also, and then commands the President of *Thessaly* to take possession of *Athens*; which afterward, because of the often seditions of the Citizens, he destroyed with its Tower, and so endeth this famous City for Arts and Arms, having flourished from *Solon* to this *Mahumet* two thousand years: now it is 40 a poor Fisher-town. *Theodorus* *Emanuel*s fourth son kept out the *Turks* by land from *Peloponnesus* by building a wall in *Isthmus* reaching between the *Ionian* and *Aegean* Seas, where stood the two Cities *Corinth* and *Megara*.

To *Emanuel* succeeded his eldest son *John*, who being stript of all power could act nothing memorable; he went to the Councel of *Florence*, and shortly after his return dyed, to whom succeeded *Constantine* the seventh his youngest brother. He had done good service against the *Turks* before he was Emperor; but when *Amurathes* had taken *Heraclea*, he was forced to submit to the Conqueror, and to beat down the wall again of *Peloponnesus*, which afterward the 50 *Venetians* set up, but *Mahumet* totally overthrew it. In him ended the *Greek* Empire, *Byzantium* being taken by *Mahumet*.

The *Turks*, originally *Scythians*, or *Sarmatians*, who had broke into *Asia* through the *Caspian* straits, and had served *Heraclius* against the *Persians*, who afterward served the *Persians*, and subdued them, and withall received from their conquered subjects *Mahumetanism*: whom afterwards the *Tartars* much

much weakened; but after their departure, the *Turks* recovered all that they had lost in *Asia*, and much more, dividing themselves into divers Tetrarchies according to their Families, of which the four chief were, the *Assimbei*, *Candolieri*, *Caramanus*, and *Ottomanus*. The first possessed *Cappadocia* with *Armenia* the lesse; The second had the Country *Sinope* about *Pontus*; The *Carmans* had *Cilicia*, and the *Ottomans* *Bithinia*, and the Country about *Olympus*: but in time *Mahumet* the *Ottoman* swallowed up the *Candolierians* and *Caramans* Countries, who fled to the *Assimbeans* for help; of these came *Ussumcassanes* who subdued the Kingdome of *Persia*, and had long wars with the *Ottomans*, 10 as we shall see hereafter. The occasion of the quarrel were *Hali* and *Homar*, the two Interpreters of *Mahumet's* *Alcoran*; The *Ottomans* followed *Hali*, the rest *Homar*. The first *Ottoman* began to flourish about the year 1300. and reigned twenty nine years; He was the son of *Orthogulies*, chief of the *Ogucian* family, and was called *Ottoman* from a small Town of *Galatia*, named *Ottomanzicum*. He took *Natolia* and *Ancyra* in *Phrygia*, *Sinope* in *Galatia*, where King *Mithridates* was born and buried, and *Sebastia* in *Cappadocia*, it is at this day called *Siva*; He subdued also *Prussa* the Metropolis of *Bythina*, and there made his residence, though some ascribe this to his son *Orchanes*. A little before his death, eight thousand *Turks* brake into *Europe*, having passed the *Hellepont*, 20 and joyned themselves with the *Catallani*. *Ottoman* left three sons; the youngest *Orchanes*, (the other two brothers being slain,) succeeded.

*Orchanes* subdued *Myssa*, *Lydia*, *Lycæonia*, *Phrygia*, and *Caria*, extending his conquest to the *Hellepont* and *Euxin* sea, whilst *Cantacuzenus*, and the *Paleologi* are striving for mastery; some think he was slain by an arrow at the siege of *Prussa*, others that he was killed in a battell against the *Tartars*. Some write he reigned two and thirty years, others but two and twenty. To him succeeded *Amurathes* the first, whose elder brother *Solyman*, that first of the *Turks* entred *Europe* with an Army, was dead of a fall from his horse, as he was coursing an Hare. This *Amurathes* overcame the *Triballians*, enemies to the 30 *Greeks*, and took in divers Towns of *Thracia*; multitudes of Christians fled into *Adrianopolis*, whom he besieged and took. Then desirous to transport them into *Asia*, he was advised by his Priests to pick out every fifth man that was most handsome and sound; these were distributed among the *Turks*, to learn their discipline and exercises, and after three years to be brought to the Port and made *Janissars*, in which consisteth the *Turkish* strength against Christendome. He makes *Adrianopolis* the seat of his Kingdome. He plunders *Macedonia*, and gives the booty to his Souldiers; but understanding that the *Myssians* and *Triballians* had raised a great Army against him, was resolved to restore to the *Greeks* their Cities again, and to return into *Asia*, had not 40 the Earthquake which overthrew the walls of many Townes, invited the *Turks* to possess them. He falls upon the *Triballi* as they were in drink, and subdues them. *Susman* King of *Myssa*, to pacifie *Amurathes*, bestows his daughter on him, the other he marrieth to *Andronicus* the son of *John*, who became stipendary and tributary to the Sultan. After this, *Amurathes* subdues the Governours of *Asia* who had revolted from him. Whilst he with *John* the Emperour were absent in *Asia*, his son *Sanzes*, with *Andronicus* *John*s son, combine against their Fathers, who were rewarded both with the losse of their eyes. *Amurathes* at last subdued *Lazarus* the Despot of *Servia* or *Triballia*, and put him in prison: to revenge this 50 wrong, a servant of *Lazarus* faining himself a fugitive, got access to the Sultan, whom presently he run through with his sword; and so dyed *Amurathes*, after he had fought seven and thirty Battels, and reigned two and thirty years, some say but three and twenty. His sonne *Bajazet* succeeded.

*Bajazet* the first, with strangling his brother *Jagupe*, begins his Reign: he enters with a great Army the *Bulgarian* and *Servian* Countries, called 1389. F f 2 anciently

*An. Christi.* 1396. *anciently Mysia and Trballia, along Isther to the Pontic sea, and defeats Marcus the Despot with all the Nobility, and so rangeth through Illiricum, Macedonia and Albania, even to Hungary without opposition, driving thence multitudes of Christians, and infinite store of plunder. Shortly after, he overruns Thessaly and Thrace, even to Bosphorus, then destroys the Suburbs of Byzantium, and so affrighteth John Paleologus, that he is forced to seek out aid of the French; Charles the sixth then reigning, sends John Earl of Nivern his Cousin-german, who afterward got the Dutchy of Burgundy with an Army to assist Sigismund King of Hungary against the common enemy; divers Princes of France and Germany accompanied John. After they had joyned their forces with Sigismund, they march through Servia, and obtained some small victories by the way. Then they laid siege to Nicopolis, which gave time to Bajazet to arm himself, who having gathered together two hundred thousand men, sent before eight thousand light horsemen, which the French set upon, and after them the Hungarians and Germans; but on a sudden they were encompassed with the whole Turkish Army. The French first go to wrack; the Hungarians seeing the French horse returning without their Riders, betake themselves to their heels; Sigismund escapes to Byzantium in a Galley; John and divers others are taken, some whereof were cut in peeces by Bajazets commands; John with five others were ransomed for two hundred thousand Crowns, which was paid by James Prince of Mytilene. John upon his return obtained the Order of the Golden-Fleece, in memory of his banishment in that Country where the Golden-Fleece was found by Jason, and where Peter and Andrew the Apostles preached: Their garment is of crimson Velvet, with a Mantle of the same lined with white, and richly embroidered round about with a border of Flames and Fleeces; the Hood also is of crimson Velvet, the Collar of gold, the Toison or Fleece hanging thereat, either in memory of Jafons, or of Gideons Fleece. Some think this order was instituted afterward by Philip Duke of Burgundy and Earl of Flanders in the year 1429. having a resolution to conquer the Holy-Land.*

*Bajazet* after this victory returns to the siege of Constantinople, which he was forced to give over, upon the entering of Tamerlan into Asia, having four hundred thousand horse, and six hundred thousand foot. This Tamerlan, called by the Greeks *Timyres*, was a Citizen of Samarcanda Metropolis of the called by the Greeks *Timyres*, was a Citizen of Samarcanda Metropolis of the Zagatians in Tartary. He entering Asia takes in some Towns of Armenia, and sets on fire Sultania called of old *Tygranocerta* sometime the seat of the Persian Kings. So having crossed *Euphrates*, he enters *Cappadocia* where he took *Sebastia* now called *Suias*, and in it put to death *Orthobules Bajazets* son. He caused his horse to tread to death all the Captives, being innumerable. Bajazet with a great Army met him at mount *Stella*, where *Pompy* overthrew *Mithridates*, at the foot of *Antitaurus*, a cruel battel is fought, in which a hundred and forty thousand were slain; Bajazet is taken, his horse being shot under him with many arrows, who being brought to Tamerlan was shut up in a iron Cage, which was in derision carried through Asia, and made Tamerlans footstool when he took horse: thus was the murderer of his brother used, and that cruel Butcher of Christians two years ago, when he defeated the French and Hungarians. At last perceiving how he was made the scorn of the world, and forced to eat the scraps that were flung from Tamerlans table like a dog, and seeing his Concubines abused in his presence, chiefly his beloved Wife, the daughter of *Lazarus the Despot*, out of impatience dasheth out his brains against the iron grates of his Cage, and so dyed, being unwilling to be carried alive in triumph to Samarcanda.

After this victory Tamerlan having passed over *Taurus*, enters *Mesopotamia*, subduing all before him even to the Syrian sea. He defeated the Egyptian Sultan, not far from *Pelusium*. All the Cities of Syria, even *Damascus* at last yielded to him. His custome was to present a white Flag the first day that he

he fate down before any place, the next day a red one, and the third a black; the first did signifie mercy, the second punishment, and the third death to those that held out three dayes against him. So having glutted himself with spoils and victories, and the plague raging in his Army upon the desarts of Egypt, he returns in triumph to Samarcanda, where he died; he reigned forty years, and Bajazet 24. others say 26. What Tamerlan suddenly got, was as suddenly lost by his sons, in their mutual quarrels. Bajazet left five sons; the first *Joshua*, who seized on the Dominion by the help of the Souldiers, and four years after was killed by his brother *Mulsuman*, whom some call *Solyman*. 10 This fought with his other brother *Moyse*, whom Tamerlan had taken prisoner, and set at liberty. This *Moyse* was overcome by *Mulsuman*; but afterward for his insolent government he is deposed, and delivered by the army to *Moyse*, who put him to death. *Moyse* afterward for his tyrannic is delivered to his other brother *Mahumet*, who strangles him, and imprisons the other brother *Mustapha* for aiming at the Empire. But the Greeks give to Bajazet two sons only, to wit *Celebinus* and *Mustapha*.

*Scandia* or *Scandinavia*, from whence of old issued out upon the Roman Empire, *Swedes*, *Normans*, *Vandals*, and *Goths*, contains now three Kingdomes, *Swethland*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*: *Swethland* is the ancient, giving original to the Kings of *Denmark* and *Norway*; for *Dan* the first king of *Denmark*, which from him was called *Dania*, was the son of *Humel* the sixteenth King of *Sweden*; but there had been five and twenty Kings in *Sweden*, before there was any King in *Norway*. *Haland* and others who succeeded him were but petty Kings, *Harald* the first was the first Monarch there. *Sweden* was governed by its own Kings, till *Erichson* (otherwise *Smeck*) King of *Sweden* and *Norway* was deposed by his subjects, and *Albert Duke of Megapolis* his sisters sonne made King, who oppressing the Nobility, and filling the kingdom with Germans, the Peers fell off from him to *Margaret Queen of Denmark* and *Norway*, who was then in arms against *Albert*, and so the three kingdoms were united; till the Kings began to despise the *Swedes*, and commit all power to the *Danes*; whereupon the *Swedes* and *Norwegians* chose *Charls* the son of *Canutus*, a Noble man of *Swethland*, for their King: but the *Norwegians* being enticed by *Christiern* the first King of *Denmark*, submitted to the *Danes*.

In *Swethland*, *Gustavus* the first descended from the ancient Swedish kings, freed his country from the Danish yoke; in thankful remembrance of which benefit, his posterity are allowed by the *Swedes* to inherit the kingdom. The first Christian King of *Swethland* was *Biornus*; before whom though they reckon an hundred Kings, yet are their stories so defective, that most of their names and actions are buried in oblivion. This *Biornus* lived about the year 816. in the time of *Lewis* son to *Charls* the Great. The next we find after him is *Ericus Sanctus*, whom they reckon their 124. King. After him the posterity of *Suercherus* and *Ericus* reigned by turns: for *Suercherus* king of the *Goths* and *Swedes*, being murdered by his own servant, *Ericus* obtained the kingdom by his worth and prowess; He made good lawes, converted the *Finnlanders* to Christ, and governed his kingdom in peace and justice; yet he was murdered by his Nobility. To whom succeeded *Charls* the son of *Suercherus*; after he had reigned two years over the *Ostrogoths*, who fell off from the *Swedes* for choosing *Ericus* to be their King; after whose death he governed both kingdoms eight years: but being hated for his affection to the *Danes*, he was murdered by *Canutus* the sonne of *Ericus Sanctus*, who believed that *Charls* had conspired with the *Danes* to murder his father: He died in the year 1168. *Canutus* succeeded, the son of *Ericus Sanctus*, who died with grief for murdering *Charls*, in the year 1192. *Suercherus* the son of *Charls* succeeded; He intended to revenge his fathers death upon the posterity of *Canutus*, but his Danish forces were overthrown, and he in another battel was killed by his subjects, an. 1210. *Ericus* the sonne of *Canutus*, having escaped the fury of *Suercherus*,

*An. Christi.* *Suercherus*, reigned 6 years and died, *an.* 1216. His son *John*, a youth of great hopes, died the third year of his reign. *Ericus Balbus*, great grandchild to *Ericus Sanctus*, succeeded; His kinsman *Canutus* conspired against him, and drove him out of his kingdom; but he raised an army, defeated and killed *Canutus*, and returned in peace to his kingdom; He subdued and converted the *Tavestii*, by the help of *Birgerus* Prince of the *ostrogoths*, and then died, *an.* 1250.

*Valdemarus* the son of *Birgerus* was chosen King in his fathers absence, who returning from the *Tavestii* challenged the kingdom, as being rather due to him then to his son; but was resisted by the Army, and contented to be Tutor or Protector during his sons minority. *Valdemar* after his fathers death, by the instigation of his Danish wife, tyrannizeth over his brothers, for which he is deposed by the Swedes, and stript also of the kingdom of the *Goths*. His brother *Magnus Ladolus* succeeded, *an.* 1276. who took his brother *Valdemar* prisoner, and so the quarrel about the dominion ended; He murdered at a feast the chief men amongst the *Folchungi*: then giving himself to devotion and works of piety, died. *Birgerus* his son succeeded, *an.* 1282. the murderer of his brothers, whom he accused of treason; they to defend themselves, raised an army against this Tyrant, and took him prisoner; afterward reconciling himself to them, invites them to a feast, and treacherously layeth hold on them, and puts them in a dungeon, where they perished with stench and famine, (for he flung the keys of the prison into the deep river hard by, that none might have access to help them) upon this his subjects take arms and drive him out of his kingdom into *Denmark*, where he died miserably with his wife. *Magnus Smeech* son of *Ericus*, killed by his brother *Birgerus*, succeeded *an.* 1319. He was a wicked and libidinous Prince: In his wars against *Norway* he was taken prisoner by *Haquin* the Norwegian king, from whom being delivered he fled into *Denmark*; there he proscribes all the Swedish Peers, which they slighting, call in *Albert* the Megapolitan, whom by publike consent they confirmed in the kingdom at *Stockholm*; He proffers reconciliation to *Magnus*, which he rejected, preferring war to peace; wherefore he is taken prisoner, and kept in custody seven yeares, till he was freed by his son *Haquin*. *Albert* afterward began to slight the *Swedes*, therefore is slighted by them, and in his wars with *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* is taken and detained seven yeares a prisoner, at last is forced to absolve the *Swedes* from their allegiance, *an.* 1394. *Margaret* the Dane, wife to *Haquin* king of *Norway* succeeds, and is now Lady of three kingdoms; A magnanimous Princess, but covetous, and one that made no bones to break oaths and promises; she committed the chief places of trust to the enemies of *Swethland*, and out of hatred to the *Swedes* left them and made her residence in *Denmark*, having first procured the kingdom to *Ericus* her Nephew by her sister, she died, and was buried at *Flensburgh* *an.* 1412.

In *Denmark*, *Waldemar* the third, whom they reckon their 94. King, succeeds his father *Christopher*; he was surnamed the *Reprobate*, for his wicked life. In the beginning of his reign, *an.* 1340. he cunningly got the possession of *Scania* from King *Magnus*, and his Castles which were kept by the *Germans*. The next year he invaded *Onland* and *Gotland*, having slain in that 500. in this 2000. and lost them both again the same yeare. He found his kingdom much impoverished and wasted by foreign incursions, but he left it rich and flourishing: He was a cruel Tyrant against his Nobility, which he endeavoured to extinguish, therefore they often rebelled against him; but his daughter *Margaret* Queen of the three kingdoms afterward severely punished those rebellious Lords. This *Waldemar* being threatened with an Interdict by the Pope for his tyrannie and perfidionnesse, returns this Answer:

*Waldemar*

*Waldemar* King of *Denmark* to the Pope of *Rome*, sends greeting. We have our nature from God, our Kingdoms from our Subjects, wealth from our Parents, and our faith from thy Predecessors, which if thou wilt not let us enjoy quietly, we send it back again by these presents. Farewel.

He died, *An.* 1375. To him succeeded his daughter *Margaret*, who by her father had *Denmark*; by her husband *Haquin*, the son of *Magnus Smeech*, or *Smeg*, *Swethland* and *Norway*: She reigned 32. yeares after her husbands death; she finished the war begun by *Haquin* against *Albert* King of *Sweden*, whom she took prisoner with his son *Ericus*, and his father Duke of *Megopolis*, with the Earl of *Holfatia*, and many Barons. *Albert* after six yeares captivity, is let free on condition to pay 60000. Marks for his ransom, or to deliver up the City *Holme*, or else to return a prisoner; *Holme* upon his Letters is delivered up, and so the three kingdoms are united; and it is agreed, that in the election of the King, the *Swedes* and *Danes* should have the first suffrage by turns; but the *Danes* not content with the first suffrage in the election of *Ericus*, they challenged it also in the election of *Christopher*, which so offended the *Swedes*, that they chose them a King of their own, *Charles* the son of *Canutus*. *Margaret* being childless, (for her son *Olaus* was dead) she sends for *Ericus* her Nephew out of *Pomerania*, and makes him King at fifteen yeares of age; so they reigned together till he died. He married *Philippa* the King of *Englands* daughter. At last *Margaret* died, and was richly entombed at *Roschilda*, *An.* 1412.

## CHAP. VII.

1. The affairs of Italy, Germany, Bohemia, the Netherlands, under Charles the Fourth, and Wenceslaus, Emperours. 2. The Wars between Venice and Genua for the Isle of Tenedos, from the year 1349. till 1400.

Although *Charles* the Fourth, son to King *John* of *Bohemia*, had been crowned at *Bonna* before the death of *Ludovic* the Emperour; yet he now being dead, divers of the Electors make void *Charles* his Election as fraudulent; wherefore in the Dyet of *Frankfort*, *Mentz*, *Palsgrave*, *Saxon*, and *Brandeburg* proffer the Empire to King *Edward* the third of *England*, who had lately beat the French and Scots; but he prudently considering the difficulties of that great place, and the danger his own Kingdom might incur by the French and Scots in his absence, waved that proffer: Then they invited *Frederick* Marquess of *Mysnia*, a rich and potent Prince; but he refused the motion, knowing that he could not enjoy the Empire (being *Charles* was already chosen) without much trouble; therefore *Charles* presents *Frederick* with a gift of 10000. Marks. The Electors at last set up *Gunter* Earl of *Swarceburg* in *Thuringia*, who came with an Army to *Frankfort*, whither *Charles* also came with his Forces, but refused to hazard all his fortunes upon one battle, therefore labours to undermine his enemy without shedding of blood; whereupon he makes his peace with the sons of *Ludovic* his Predecessor, whose lands he had spoiled with fire and sword; then he marrieth the *Palsgraves* daughter, and so got the House of *Bavaria* to stand for him: He also by a Physician poisons *Gunter*, who died the sixth moneth after his Election; but *Charles* is content to pay to his Heirs in recompense of their fathers losses and charges, 22000 Marks of silver, and withall to resign over to them two Townes in *Thuringia*; he also brought back the publike Mart to *Frankfort*, which he had thence translated to *Montz*: and so at last *Charles* obtaines the Empire alone, not without much bribing.

*Charles*





*An. Christi.* thousand Jews to be murdered in a tumult at Prague; for which cruelties that City was so visited with the plague, that in one Parish in the space of four months, there dyed three thousand five hundred: about which time was found out by *Bertholdus Niger* a Monk, the diabolical art of shooting with Guns, worse then the plague: The *Venetians* were the first that made use of them against the *Genuois*. The people being impatient of such a Tyrant, notwithstanding his strong guards, which he was stil changing out of jealousy and fear, seized upon him, and imprisoned him four months at Prague: at last, by much intreaty he was permitted by the Senate to bathe himself, and to wash away the filth of his body; in the mean while having retired a little towards the bank of the River to cool himself, he spies a fisherboat, into which he leaps, being naked, and his naked washer, *Susan* by name, with him, and so escapes to the new Tower on the River, where he is defended by his brother *John* Marquis of *Lusatia*, and *Procopius* the Moravian: but he was never a whit bettered by his imprisonment, for he made as much use of his Gossip the Hang-ter by his imprisonment, as he was not ashamed to use *Susan* for his concubine, so that the people being enraged against him, sent for his brother *Sigismund* who was now King of *Hungary*, his father in law being dead, and his Competitor *Charles* of *Naples* slain; but he was run so much in debt, that he was forced to mortgage the Marquisat of *Brandeburg* to his Cousin-germans, *Jodocus* and *Procopius* 20 Marquises of *Moravia*: this is that *Sigismund* whom *Bajazet* overthrew with the *French*; he upon the invitation of the *Bohemians*, enters the Country with an Army, seizeth on his brother, and carrieth him to *Vienna* to *Albert* of *Austria*, notwithstanding the opposition made by *John* his brother, and *Procopius* his Cousin-german: this *Albert* was son in law to *Sigismund*. *Ludovic* of *Austria* was slain by the *Switzers*.

*Wenceslaus* willing to escape, promised great matters to a Fisher-man, who used to bring the prisoners sometimes small Fishes, out of pity: this Fisher-man by the help of a long string got him into his Boat, and brought him to *Vicegrad*, whence he got away in a Beggers habit to Prague, where having got within the Castle, cries out, He was the King, and wished all Royalists to assist him; upon this, above twenty repaire to him, and seise upon the Governour, whom they put in irons: Then did *Wenceslaus* force him to write Letters, and to seal them with his own Seal, inviting divers Magistrates into the Castle, who not dreaming of the Kings being there, were by his command apprehended and put to death: the Fisherman was Knighted. Then to strengthen himself, he marrieth with *Sophia* the daughter of *John* Duke of *Bavaria*: but the Electors perceiving that he grew rather worse then better, did unanimously depose him from the Empire, having reigned two and twenty years after the death of his father *Charles*; he was fifty seven years old when he dyed, being taken with an Apoplexie at dinner, when news were brought him that the people were in Arms, had slain the Senate, and were now coming towards the Castle.

Among other wrongs done by him to the Empire, the selling away of the Principality of *Millan*, was not the least; for whereas till now the Governours of *Millan* were the Emperours Lieutenants and Deputies, *John Galeacius* the Viscount, for a sum of money, is made Duke and absolute Lord for him and his posterity, and the Cap with the Scepter are sent him from *Wenceslaus*. Under his father *Charles* the Empire was weakened by great quarrels and wars between the Earles of *Wirtenberg*, and the Cities of *Suevia*: 30 In the first combat three Earles, seventy two Knights, with divers Barons were slain by the Cities: but in the second conflict the Cities upon the *Rhine*, and those of *Suevia* who had joyned their forces, were defeated by the *Wirtenbergians* and *Bavarians*, but not without great losse on this side, for there were slain four Earls, sixty Knights, and a multitude of common souldiers: the *Helvetians* had better success against *Leopold* the third of *Austria*, whom in a great

great battel they defeated and slew, so that the Princes were forced to yield to the *Switzers*. *An. Christi.*

The great quarrel between the *Venetians* and *Genuois* fell out upon this occasion. The two brothers *Andronicus* and *Manuel* strove for the Greek Empire; *Andronicus* the elder claimed it by right of primogeniture, *Manuel* the younger by his fathers last will, who bequeathed it to him: With *Andronicus* the *Genuois* sided, with *Manuel* the *Venetians*. The one bestows the Isle *Tenedos* on the *Genuois*, the other on the *Venetians*, who presently seised on it, lying in the mouth of the *Hellepont*, convenient for Trade. 10 Upon this, Legats are sent from *Genna* to *Venice*, demanding restitution of the Island; the *Venetians* refused, affirming they had it of him who had most right to it: wherefore the *Genuois* sent a Fleet of ten Gallies under *Arinus Strupa* to *Tenedos*, which took some of the *Venetian* Ships and burned them, but could do no good upon the Fort, being strongly manned; therefore they went to infect the *Venetian* Islands in the *Aegean* Sea; hereupon the *Venetians* rig out a Fleet, and the *Genuois* add ten Gallies more to their Fleet under *Lewis Fliscus*, who meeting the *Venetians*, fell unadvisedly with five of his Gallies upon them before the rest could come up; a cruel conflict ensues, in which many were killed on both sides; at last the five 20 *Genuoy* Gallies were taken, the rest escaped save one which fell upon a rocke, and was sunke: The *Genuois* hearing of the overthrow, were solicitous for *Famangusta* in *Cyprus*, which they had taken from the King of that Island, fearing lest the *Venetians* would seise on it, or assist the King to recover it, therefore they send one of the Gallies that escaped thither with Arms and Men; the other three were committed to the charge of *Peter Picconus*, with command to repair to their other Fleet; with this *Peter* sails into the *Adriatic* sea, where he did much annoy the *Venetians*, who enter into a league with *Bernabos* Prince of *Millan*, knowing that he being a near neighbour to *Genna*, could much annoy them, and hinder provisions 30 from them by land out of *Gallia*, and all commerce thence; they wisely also make a league with *Jennus* King of *Cyprus*, angry with the *Genuois* for the losse of *Famangusta*: the *Genuois* being much troubled at this league of the *Venetians* with the *Millanois*, which would hinder all Trade with *Gallia*, *Cisalpine*, and besides force them to employ their men in Land-service, which they should send abroad to Sea; they resolve to make a league with *Henry* the Emperour, being offended with *Venice* for *Illiricum*, which they took from him: They also send Legats to the Patriarch of *Aquilea*, from whom the *Venetians* had taken *Trioli*; and to *Francis* *Carraria* Prince of *Padua*, on whom *Venice* did still in- 40 croach.

The Legats of *Genna* complain to the Emperour of the wrongs done by the *Venetians* to the Empire; of their insolencies in maintaining the younger brother against the elder, and in seising upon *Tenedos*, and that their aim was to invade the Empire: *Henry* answers them, That the Turkish wars kept him off from punishing the *Venetians*, yet as soon as the season of the year permitted, he would either come or send an Army against hm. With this answer the *Genuois* were pleased; therefore they cause two and twenty great Ships to be built; and because the *Anrie*, chiefly *Lambas* and *Pagnanus* had done good service heretofore against *Venice*; they pitch upon *Lucianus Anrie*, whom they make Admiral of their Fleet, and call home all that had been pro- 50 scribed or banished for robbing in the high-ways. In the meane while, *Dominicus Fregosus* Governour of *Genna*, is removed by a contrary faction from his place, and *Nicolaus Goarcus* made Governour: shortly after, all the *Fregosus* family are banished the City; *Dominic Fregosus* and *Peter* imprisoned, but *Peter* escaped. The King of *Cyprus* who had lately married his daughter by the the *Venetians* means to *Bernabos* of *Millan*, attempted by the

*An. Christi* help of five Venetian Gallies to take *Famangusta*, but the Garrison within had notice of the plot, and prevented it by their vigilance. *Aruns Strupa* having returned with his ten Gallies from the *Agæan Sea*, *Lucianus Auria* is sent into the *Adriatic* with two and twenty Saile, which much annoyed the Venetians. In the interim, the Emperours Army enters into the Territory of *Frioli*, *Francis Carraria* besets *Tarvisum* with Horse and Foot, the Towne held out a while, but seeing no succour come from Venice, the yeelded themselves to the Emperour, by the permission of *Francis*. The Venetians upon this, began to despaire of their Townes in *Illiricum* and *Frioli*, but they were more solicitous after their Sea affaires; there-fore having rigg'd out twenty Gallies freighted with five hundred Souldiers, besides Mariners, under *Victor Pisanus*: *Lucianus* encounters with them near *Polla*; the fight continued long and doubtfull, the greatest slaughter was on the Venetian side, which so heartened *Lucian*, that he pull'd off his Helmet, hoping the victory had been got, and in the interim was shot through the head, and so dyed instantly: They that were next to him, for feare lest the Souldiers should be disheartned, or the Enemy encouraged, convey him aside, and place another in his Arms where he stood. *Victor* held out as long as he could, at length having lost fifteen Gallies, flyeth backe to Venice with the remainder of his 20 Fleet.

The news of this victory wrought great joy in *Genna*, which was quickly quailed by the report of the Emperours death, to whom they appointed yearly supplications at the Altar of *John* the Evangelist in *St. Georges* Church, with yearly salaries out of the publike Treasure to his son and posterity. Then they make *Peter Auria* their Admiral, who repaires with one Galley onely to the Fleet in the *Adriatic*. The Venetians were much troubled for their losses, therefore they send to *Bernabos* to invade the *Genuois* by land, they might be forced to call home their Fleet out of the *Adriatic*. *Barnabos* raiseth an Army, invades the Territories of *Genna* 30 with such celerity, that they plundered about the City before they had news of his coming; he seised also on divers Citizens, who were that time of the year in their Country houses. The City was in a great fear and uproar, *Nicolaus* the governour fearing lest his adversaries would take occasion to thrust him out of his Principality, commands that none should take up Arms but those whom he trusted; and then having paid a great summe of money, easeth the State of the Enemy, and prevents sedition against himself: In the mean while the Venetians send nine Gallies to molest the coasts of *Genna*, which plundered some small Islands, and Sea-towns of the Enemy. The *Genuois* upon this rig out nine Gallies, because they would not call 40 home their Fleet out of the *Adriatic*. The Venetians perceiving this, set sail presently to their Islands in the *Agæan Sea*; and the *Genuois* missing the Enemy, sail immediately to *Petrus Auria* in the *Adriatic*, so that now they make up thirty Gallies besides other vessels for carriage, by which Venice is shut up.

About a mile from Venice on the *Adriatic* shore, stands the Church of *St. Nicolas*, which fenced them with a strong wall, and a deep ditch; along the shore were divers forts: hither *Peter* came with his Fleet to straiten the Enemy; having landed his men, he falls on the wall before the Church, and with much losse gains it, and with it the Church. Then he comes to the Town 50 called *Clodia Fessa*, at this day *Chiogia*, with his Fleet; *Francis* marched along the shore with his Land-forces. The Venetians had filled the Towne with hired Souldiers. *Peter* and *Francis* with all their Forces fall to storming the Towne, which was strongly defended by the Souldiers, with much expence of blood on both sides; at last the Townes-men being wearied out, and over-powered with multitudes, delivered up the Town and Garrison. The

*An. Christi* The Venetians hearing of this loss, and calling to mind the loss of *Tarvisum*, and of their Fleets, the exhausting of their Treasure, the want of commerce and decay of trade; with the small hopes they had in *Bernabos*; they send Letters to *Peter* in *Clodia*, to intreat for peace, alledging to him the inconstancy of Fortune, the good that *Genna* should get by this peace, and the glory that *Peter* had purchased to the *Genuois*, it making Venice sue for peace, which had hitherto been so often victorious, and had never been forced in seven hundred yeares till now, to sue for peace. *Peter* replies, that he was not ignorant either of the inconstancy of 10 Fortune, or of their ancient greatness, but that now they must consider not what they have been, but what they are, and that the conquered must accept of such a peace as pleaseth the Conquerour to give; but the conditions were such, that the Venetian Senate rejected them with scorn; preferring all extremities of warre to such unjust conditions of peace; therefore they resolve to send Legates to *Bernabos*, complaining of the miseries they were driven to, and that they had no other hope left but in him, who by his Land-forces wasting the confines of *Genna*, might occasion the calling home of their Fleet: So the *Romans* by invading the *Carthaginians* drew *Halcjar* out of *Sicily*, and *Annibal* out 20 of *Italy*: Upon this *Bernabos* assures them, that he will not fall them in this their extremity, and therefore presently hireth three thousand horsemen, who had been high-way robbers, these suddenly make inroads upon the *Gennan* Territories, which so affrighted the Countrey-people, that some fled into the hills, some into the Cities; the *Genuois* presently put themselves in Armes, with a resolution to assault these Robbers, which when they perceived, they resolve to be gone, but ambushes are laid for them; and all by-ways and Groves are intercepted, so that few of these Robbers escaped alive: In memory of this defeat an annual supplication is appointed at *S. Georges* Church.

In the mean while *Peter* shut up the *Adriatic*, so that Venice was in danger 30 to be starved for want of provision. *Manuel* the son of *Calciannes*, the Venetians friend, besiegeth *Pera* the *Gennan* Colony by *Bizantium*; whereupon the *Genuois* send *Nicholaus Marcus* with three Gallies thither, but the siege was raised before they came; in the way *Nicholaus* meets with some Greek Gallies, and beats them. The Venetians understanding that the *Genuois* were careless and secure in *Clodia*, and that most of their Fleet were sent abroad, they in the dead of the night go to *Clodia* in small boats, and were scaling the walls, but were discovered by the clashing of their armour, and so forced to return with some loss. Upon the coming back of the *Gennan* Fleet to *Clodia*, one of their 40 Gallies approaching too neer *Saint Georges* Church, within halfe a mile of Venice, stuck fast as the Sea ebbed, and was seised on by the Venetian Boats; they lost also to the Venetians a great Ship richly laden, as she was riding at Anchor neer *Rhodes*. The Venetians resolve to try once more with *Genna*, for their lives and liberties; therefore privately they prepare a Fleet of three and thirty Gallies, within their Arsenal, with other Vessels of burthen, intending if they could not master the enemy, to transport themselves into *Candy* with their wealth and Families; for effecting of this work, because the Treasure was exhausted; many private rich men cheerefully brought in their Gold and Silver to the Senate, for which piety they were made Senators. *Andrew Contareus* then 50 Duke of Venice, an expert Sea-man, with the greatest part of the Senate, and four of the Nobility, arrive at *Clodia* in the night unexpectedly; the *Genuois* then had in the Harbor nine and twenty Gallies, the rest were dispersed in the *Adriatic*; the fight begins with exhortations, *Peter* wishing the *Genuois*

*An. Christi.* Genuois to remember their former successes. Andrew desiring the Venetians to fight for their liberty, for their parents, wives, children and country: the skirmish was doubtful a great while; but the Venetians at last were worsted and forced to flee back to Venice: the Genuois supposing the enemy had been totally defeated and disheartened, grew secure, and neglected to guard the Clodian Harbour; Upon this the Venetians finding that some Keels of their great Ships which the Genuois had burned, were sunk in the mouth of the Harbour, resolve to sink some more filled with stones, in the same place, so that the Genuan Fleet could not get out: the Venetians having done this, they gave a great shout, at which the Genuans were amazed, not dreaming 10 the Venetian Fleet had been so near; therefore they get presently on the Ship-board, intending to fight the enemy; but as they were sailing out of the Harbour, their Ships stuck on the sunk vessels, and could go no further; so they perceived their error, of which they repented, but too late: those in Genua not knowing of this stratagem in the Adriatick, had sent thirteen more Gallies under *Math. Marrusius* to joyn with Peter, who finding his Fleet useless, that he could not get out, exposeth his Forces on the shore, and made excursions upon the enemies Territories; but as he was besieging the Castle *Bron-* *dulum*, he was shot in the head, and so died; yet the Castle was taken by the Genuois, who understanding of their disasters in the Adriatick, were much 20 grieved, knowing that their treasury was exhausted, and that the vigilant enemy would not rest here; therefore they choose *Gasper Spinola*, a brave man, for their Governour, who prepares to encounter the Venetians by land.

Venice having lost almost three years the possession of the upper Sea, which now they had recovered, resolve to besiege *Clodia*, being furthered by the Plebeians, and women, who brought in their Plate and Jewels; their Army sits down between *Brondulum* and *Clodia*, to hinder all provision from the Clodians. *Spinola* who was now come to *Clodia*, fearing the loss of *Bron-* *dulum*, made a bridge to relieve it, and perceiving the enemy advancing to 30 wards him, exhorts his Souldiers to be courageous, a bloody battel ensueth, in which the Genuans being defeated, flee disorderly back to *Clodia*; in this flight many were drowned, the Bridge which they had lately made breaking under them with their weight. The Venetians having thus defeated the enemy, fall to the siege of *Brondulum*, which presently yielded; then they besiege *Clodia* by Sea and Land: The Genuois were much disheartened, having no Land-Army, nor any by Sea, but their thirteen Gallies under *Marrusius*, who durst not come near to *Clodia*, for fear of the Venetian Fleet; and suspecting that *Bernabos* with an Army would invade their Country, they build a Tower five miles off from the City 40 in a narrow passage, to keep off *Bernabos*. *Marrusius* meets at *Sipontum* six Venetian Gallies, and twelve Ships of burthen, these he sets upon and burns, and takes the Admirall *Thadæus*, whom he sends prisoner to Genua, and makes his way through fourty Venetian Gallies. *Janisus* with five Gallies is sent from Genua to joyn with *Matthew*, but they could not get to *Clodia*, by reason of the enemies Fleet; in the interim *Bernabos* had sent some Troops of horse to plunder the Genuois Countrey, but they were beat back with loss.

1380. The Clodians having now sustained six moneths siege, and being forced for want of food to eat dogs and cats, and finding all passages for their relief shut up by Sea and land, deliver up the Town to the Venetians, who sent the chiefe prisoners to Venice; the Genuois were known from others by pronouncing *crapa* instead of *capra*, and were detained; the rest were set free. After this the Venetians take in *Lawentium*, *Justinopolis*, *Pola*,

*Pola*, with other Towns and Castles they had lost. The Genuois perceiving that they were all bent upon their Land-service, and neglected the Sea, rig out thirteen new Gallies, appointing no Admiral, but that each Captain should be Admiral by turns for some dayes. These are commanded into the Adriatick to joyn with *Matthew*; they much annoyed the Venetians. But *Nicolaus Goarcus* Prince of Genua, understanding that *Peter Fregosus* his enemy, who had escaped out of prison, had raised Forces and joyned himself with *Bernabos* against him and the State, sends for *Spinola* and *Marulus* to come home with some part of their Fleet: These having set their Forces on shore, 10 *Peter* with his Companies run away. After this, the Venetians by land, the Genuois by sea, do much annoy each other. Upon this, *Amatus* the 7. Prince of Savoy endeavours to reconcile these two States; to this purpose Ambassadors are sent to him from both, to whom the Prince makes a speech in commendation of peace and concord, of the mischief of war, and of the vanity in striving for a barren Island with the expence of so much blood and treasure. At last it was agreed that both States should renounce their claim to the Isle *Tenedos*, seeing there could be no peace so long as either of them possessed it; The Bishop of *Aquileia* was to enjoy his right in *Friuli*: so the peace is concluded, the fourth year of this war. The Genuan Fleet is called home from the Adriatick: The Venetians send to the governour of *Tenedos*, to come away with 20 his garrison, and to flight the castle; which he refusing to doe, the Genuois were permitted to storm the castle, and to demolish it.

## CHAP. VIII.

30 1. The lives of the Popes, from the year 1305. till 1389. 2. The history of Holland and the next Provinces, from the year 1298. till 1404. The history of Savoy, from the beginning till the year 1397.

WE will now speak a little of the Popes of these times. To *Boniface* the 8. succeeded *Benedict* 10. some say 11. he sat eight moneths and seventeen dayes; He excommunicated all those who had a hand in the death of his Predecessor; he reconciled *James* and *Peter de Colona* (whom his Predecessor had degraded from their Cardinalship) to the Church again; 40 he absolved also the French king, whom *Boniface* had excommunicated, and his kingdom from the interdict. About this time *Ottoman* laid the foundation of the Turkish Empire; which Nation had been now five hundred years in Asia, but without a Monarchy till now. About the same time also, *Flavius Melfensis* in the Kingdom of Naples, found out the use of the Load-stone, and Mariners Compass. To *Benedict* succeeded *Clemens* the fifth, of *Burdeaux*; he sat eight years and ten moneths; he had been Archbishop of *Burdeaux*: This was he that translated his seat to *Avenion*, where his successors continued seventy years, till *Gregory* the 11. It was at his Coronation, that the wall fell down, which killed the Duke of *Britain* with many others; 50 the Popes Crown fell from his head, by which he lost a Carbuncle worth 6000 Florens. He made 26 Cardinals, among which were *James* and *Peter de Colona*, whom *Boniface* had degraded. He confirmed the King of *Arragon* in the kingdom of *Sardinia*. In the Council of *Lions* (which was the 15 gen. Council) he condemned the *Begards* & *Beguins*, who denied the Popes power, and held that man might be more perfect in this life then Christ was, and that one may be without sin. He abolished the *Templars*, who had stood 184 years: in his time

Philip

*An. Christi.* Philip the Fair banished the Jewes out of France; 7. years after Lewis Otinus received them again. Rhodes is taken after 4. years siege from the Turk. The pain-  
 ted Horse of Constantinople, to the great terrour of the people, neighed twice in  
 one night. John King of Armenia left his Kingdom to his brother, and became a  
 Minorite. Clement confirms the University of Orleans, which Philip erected. He  
 Clement succeed John the 22. who fate nineteen years and four moneths; he  
 erected the Arch-bishoprick of Toledo, under whom he appointed six Suffra-  
 gans: He set up in Portugal a new Order of Knights, and also in Algarbia, cal-  
 led the Knights of Jesus Christ, on whom the Templars estates there were be-  
 stowed, to resist the Sarazens: He set out the Constitutions called Extrava-  
 gantes: He appointed the Ave-Mary Bel to be rung three times a day, towards  
 the evening: He maintained that the departed souls rested in certain recep-  
 tacles, in which they had not the vision of God, till the Resurrection; this  
 opinion he retracted upon a Decree of the Facultie of Paris: He canonized  
 Thomas Aquinas: He confirmed Burgundian Colledge in Paris, erected by  
 Joan wife to Philip, the fifth daughter to the Earl of Burgundy: In his time  
 Alphonsus the eleventh king of Spain, by the assistance of Alphonsus the fourth  
 king of Portugal, his father-in-law, overthrew the king of Morocco, and five  
 other barbarous Princes, besides 450000 Sarazens, with the loss of 20 Christi-  
 ans onely. The Plessien Colledge at Paris is erected by Godfrey Plessy. The  
 Earl of Bourbon is made a Duke. Vladislans receiveth the Crown at Cracovia  
 from the Pope, whose predecessors, for the murder of Stanislaus, had lost it.  
 Against this Pope was set up Nicholas the fifth, by Ludovic the Emperour,  
 who having fate three yeares and three moneths, died in prison at A-  
 venion.

To John succeeded in the Popedome Benedict the eleventh or twelfth; he  
 fate seven years three moneths: He founded the Colledge and Temple of the  
 Bernardines at Paris; he set out a Decretal, thwarting his Predecessors opi-  
 nion concerning the departed souls; In his time two other Colledges were  
 built at Paris, to wit, the Colledge of Eduen by Bertrandus Bishop of Edna, and  
 the Colledge of Turon by Burgolus Archbishop of Turon. The Sultan of Egypt  
 committed the custody of Christs Sepulchre in Jerusalem to eight Franciscan  
 Friars. To Benedict succeeded Clement the sixth, who fate ten years six months:  
 He sent into Germany to have war proclaimed against the Turks, promising  
 indulgences to all that should contribute towards that war, and besides, li-  
 berty to eat eggs and milk upon all fasting dayes, except Lent; this privilege  
 was procured by the Bishops of Trevers and Colen, to their Diocess; but because  
 the Bishop of Mentz refused to give aide, his Diocess was denied this privi-  
 ledge, so that to this time they eat no eggs on fasting dayes. Clement reduced  
 the Jubilee to each fiftieth year, and abolished the Whippers: In his time the  
 Delphinat of Venna is sold to Phil. Valois for 40000 Crowns by Prince Humbert  
 who became a Dominican, upon this condition, that the French kings eldest  
 son should be called the Delphin, and that Humbert for his life should be al-  
 lowed yearly 10000. Florens. About this time in France was instituted the  
 knightship of the Star, and in England the knightship of the Garter. This  
 Clement was a great enemy to Ludovic the Emperor. To him succeeded Inno-  
 cent the sixth, who fate nine years eight moneths; he reconciled the Kings  
 of France and England; he ratifies the University and Archbishopsrick of Prague  
 in Bohemia, erected by Charles the fourth. About this time John Wickliff began  
 to broach his opinions in England.

To Innocent succeeded Urban the fifth, who fate eight years four moneths;  
 this Pope consecrated Marus the Nestorian Patriarch, who came purposely  
 from Mosul or Selencia, where the Patriarchs seat is, to be consecrated at Rome.  
 He confirmed the Order of Saint Briget. At this time John the French king  
 invaded Burgundy, and annexed it to France, which Charles of Navarre claimed  
 as his inheritance; this Charles the fifth afterward bestowed it on his brother  
 Philip

*An. Christi.* Philip the Bold. This Pope confirmed the Order of Mount-Olivet. To him  
 succeeded Gregory the eleventh, who fate seven years two moneths; he brought  
 back his Chair from Avenion to Rome, upon the revolting of his Towns in  
 Italy. Charles the wife about this time ordained, that the sons and heirs of the  
 French Kings, should be crowned and consecrated at fourteen years of age.  
 John Galleacius having bought the Dukedome of Milan from Wenceslaus, took  
 away Verona and Vincentia from the Scaligers; Padua, Tarvisium, and other  
 Towns from the Cararians, and subdued Trent, Pennsum, and other places; he  
 defeated also the Florentines, with their Auxiliaries the French. The Polan-  
 ders for 900. years, even till the death of Casimir the Great, had enjoyed their  
 own Kings and Princes, that is till the year 1370. except Wenceslaus the Bobe-  
 mian; but now Casimir dying without issue male, Ludovic the Hungarian, and  
 his son-in-law Vladislans Jagello the Lituanian obtained that Crown, which his  
 posterity enjoy till this day. After this Gregory had returned into Italy, there  
 arose a great Schisme in the Church, for the Italians chose an Italian Pope, to  
 wit, Urban; the French chose a Frenchman, Clement the seventh, who betook  
 himself to Avenion; this schisme lasted 36. years, even till the Council of  
 Constance. To Clement succeeded Benedict the 13. of Arragon, who fate in A-  
 venion. About thirty years after Urban the Italian Cardinal chose Boniface the  
 ninth, Innocent the seventh, Gregory the twelfth; France, Spain, England  
 and Scotland followed the French Pope, Italy and other places the Ita-  
 lian.

To Gregory succeeded Urban the sixth a Neapolitane, who fate eleven years,  
 he appointed the Feast of the Visitation of our Lady; In his time Jagello Prince  
 of Lithuania, after the death of Ludovic King of Hungary and Polonia, whose  
 daughter he married; he imbraceth Christianity, and is crowned King of Po-  
 land in Cracovia, and is named Vladislans; his Countrey Lithuania was the last  
 in Europe that received Christianity. Great contestation arose between John  
 the first King of Castile and Legian who had married the daughter of Ferdinand  
 King of Portugal, and John the bastard of this Ferdinand, about the Crown of  
 Portugal; but John the Bastard in the end carried it, and of a Monk became a  
 King. This Pope allowed and confirmed the Monkish Order of Jesuites, so  
 called for often using the Name of Jesus, John Columbanus and Francis  
 Vincentius of Seva were the first Authors of this Order, they wore a white  
 coat, girt with a leather girdle, and a cloak of fine wooll over their coat; they  
 went bare-footed, only they used wooden soles. Charles the sixth of France re-  
 duced the many Lillies in his Armes to three: In his minority the Clergy  
 lost their Tithes, which were employed upon the wars. The University of  
 Cracovia is instituted by King Jagello, and confirmed by the Pope. Professors  
 were brought from Prague, they were maintained out of the Customes and  
 Tole of Salt. Two Colledges were erected, one for Divines and Philosophers,  
 the other for Lawyers and Physicians. To Urban succeeded Boniface the 9.  
 fourteen years eleven moneths; this Pope enjoined the Annates, or one years  
 fruits of Benefices, to be paid into the Apostolical Treasure towards the wars  
 against the Infidels. About this time Emanuel Chrysoloras, by the Popes allow-  
 ance, brought back into Italy the Greek Tongue, which had been banished  
 thence 700. years. The University of Erfurd is erected, and four Colledges  
 more at Paris. At Avenion to Clement the 7. succeeded Benedict the 13. Anti-  
 pope, who was deposed by the Synod of Paris.

We said before, that to John the fourth of Holland succeeded John the  
 Hanonian, who descended from King William by his sister; this Hanonian  
 was opposed by John Renessius heretofore condemned for Treason; he drew  
 to his side most of the Nobility, and seized upon Walachria; the controversie  
 is referred to Charles the French King, by the Earle of Renessius; but he per-  
 ceiving Charles inclined to the Earl, appeals to Albert the Emperour, pre-  
 tending that Holland did now fall to the Empire, the Earles Family having  
 failed;

*An. Christi* failed; Upon this *Albert* raiseth an Army, whom the Earle meets with his Forces; when they were ready to fight, the Bishop of *Colen* interceded, and a peace concluded, conditionally that the Earle should hold *Holland* in fee of the Empire; so *Renessius* his hopes were frustrated, and commanded to forbear meddling with *Zeland*; yet he raised some troubles afterward in *Holland*, but he was defeated and driven into *Brabant*. After this the Earle had wars with the Bishop of *Utrecht*, in which the Bishop was killed, and another substituted in his place. At last the Earle desirous to live quiet, bestowed *Holland* upon his eldest son, and *Zeland* upon *William*, and so went back to *Hanonia* or *Nervia*, but his tranquility was interrupted by the wars of *Flanders* with *Philip* of *France*; for the Earle of *Artois*, son-in-law to this *Hanonian*, had involved himself in this war, in which he lost his life. The *Flandrians* having defeated the French, invaded *Hanonia*, because it sided with the French; whereupon *Holland*, to help the *Hanonian*, and to call back the *Flandrian* Forces thence, falls upon *Flanders*: under the conduct of *William*, the *Flandrians* in the interim invaded *Walachria*, *William* is forced to encounter them; but his success failed, for he was defeated, and hardly escaped to *Middleburgh*, which he was also forced to quit to the *Fleming*, who had now got all *Walachria*, onely *Zirizea* remained, which was a shelter for *William*; this Town held out a siege, and at last with a few resolute Souldiers slew and drowned 1500. of the enemies. *Guy* of *Flanders* upon this resolved to invade *Holland*, and first he defeats the *Battavian* Army; then takes in all the Towns of *North-Holland*, except *Harlem*. The Duke of *Brabant* claims title to *South-Holland*, which submits to his Forces, except *Dort*; this Town not onely held out against him, but at length, with incredible success, drove him quite out of *Holland*. *Guy* returns into *Zeland*, besiegeth again *Zirizea*, which stoutly resisted, though much oppressed by the enemy without, and famine within. A French Fleet is sent to joyn with the *Zelanders* against the *Flemings*; Four of the French Ships stuck upon the shelves, which the enemy intended to burn with some fire-ships; but the wind turning about, drove the fire upon the enemy; a great fight ensued, in which the *Flandrians* were defeated, and *Guy* carried prisoner into *France*: so *Zirizea* and all *Zeland* are now at liberty. *Renessius* the prime incendiary, who had fled to *Utrecht*, not daring to trust the Town, was making an escape by boat, which in the River by the weight of the passengers was sunk, and so they were all drowned. *Hannonius* hearing of the great success of his son, fell sick with sudden joy, and died.

After this *Robert* Earle of *Flanders* intended to renew the warre with *Holland*, but is reconciled by the mediation of friends. About this time it rained for ten moneths together, upon which followed a general Plague and Famine.

*William* after this had some controversie with *Utrecht* upon the death of *Guy* the Bishop, who held some Lands belonging to *Holland*; he joyned himself afterward to *Ludovic* the Emperour, against *Frederick* the Austrian, and then forces the rebellious *Frislanders* to pay tribute to *Holland*. At last this Earle died, and was buried in *Valenciens*. He was so just, that he put to death the Governour of *South-Holland*, for taking a Cow from a Countrey-man; this was *William* the third.

To him succeeded *William* the 4. he married the D. of *Brabant*'s daughter, by whom he had no children; he assisted *Edw.* of *England* against the French, the *Borussians* against *Casimir* of *Poland*, and the *Spaniard* against the *Sarazens*; he visited the Holy-Land; to him was offered the Empire, when *Ludovic* was cast out by the Pope, which he refused to accept; in his wars against *Utrecht* he received a wound in the foot; and as he was fighting against the *Frislanders*, he was slain, and his head cut off in disgrace, and his whole Army defeated; he being dead without issue, his sister *Margaret*, wife to *Ludovic* the

the Emperour succeeded, who having ruled that Province one year returns to her husband *Ludovic*, and commits the care of the State to her son *William* of *Bavaria*, conditionally that he should pay yearly to her 10000 Scutari; about which time *Utrecht* and *Holland* fell out, and the *Hollanders* were beat; but by means of the Duke of *Brabant* and Earle of *Cleve*, the Bishop was forced to make peace with *Holland*. About this time *Margaret* pretending that her son did not keep his Articles, demands her Earldome again, which he upon this forsook, to the great discontent of *Holland*, for they loved him better than the Mother: hereupon a Civil war ariseth between those who favoured the son, and them who adhered to the mother: *Leiden*, *Amsterdam*, and most of the Cities held with *William*, King *Edward* of *England* assisted *Margaret*; there ensued a cruel Sea-fight between the *Brill* and *Gravesend* in the mouth of the *Mosa*. At last it was agreed upon, that *Margaret* should have *Hanonia*, and *William* the rest, who married with the Duke of *Launcasters* daughter, of whom he had no children: The Bishop of *Utrecht* and he had wars, after which he fell mad, and killed one *Gerard* a Nobleman in his fury; wherefore he is imprisoned, and strife arose about the Government of the State; some standing for *Williams* wife, others for *Albert* his brother, who upon this is sent for; the old civil quarrel bursts out again, which not without much blood and trouble, was appeased by *Albert*, who was Protector of *Holland* 19 years; at last *William* being dead, *Albert* succeeded.

Earle *Albert* having buried his former wife, marieth with *Margaret* the daughter of *Adolphus* of *Clive*; of whom he had no children; he doctored upon *Alitha* a Strumpet, who was killed by the consent of the Nobility; where the Earle threatned with death; the Earls sonne interceding for them, was forced to flee into *France* from his fathers wrath; but *John* of *Bavaria* obtained pardon for them all. At length *Albert* died, and was buried at the *Hague*.

*Savoy* or *Sabaudia*, of old *Allobroges*, from a King of that name, was in the *Romanes* time a Kingdome, whose king *Bitultus* was taken by *Fab. Max.* After the *Romanes*, the *Burgundians* obtained this kingdome, and was a part of *Gallia Narbonensis*, and of the Kings of *Arles*; it was a member of the Empire till the year 999. when *Berard* of *Saxony*, brother to *Otho* the third, for killing *Mary* his Uncles wanton wife, fled from *Germany*, and seated himself here in the City *Morienna*, to whom succeeded his sonne *Humbert* first Earle of this City; which title he obtained from *Conradus*, some say *Henry* the second Emperour, because his father *Berard* had recovered it with the kingdome of *Arles* to the Dukedome of *Burgundy* from his enemies, and had made the way through the *Alpes*, clear from Theeves and Robbers; he married the daughter of the Marquess of *Segusia*, by which he with his wife became his Heirs. He died at fifty years of age, to whom succeeded his son *Amadeus*: *Humbert* was buried in *S. Johns* Church of *Morienna*, which he had beautified and enriched.

To *Humbert* succeeded his sonne *Amadeus* Earle of *Maurienna*, and Marquess of *Susa*; he was called *Candatus* by *Henry* the Third, Emperour, because of his long Train or Taile of young Gentlemen that alwayes followed him. He assisted *William* Earle of *Burgundy* against the Prince of *Lorraine*. After he had given good proofe of his valour in that war, he died, and is buried with his Father. To him succeeded *Humbert* the second, who having subdued the petty King of *Brianconium*, that tyrannized over his Subjects and Neighbours: he went against the *Sarazens*, and in the Holy-Land did good service in assisting *Godfrey* of *Bullogny*; he contracted in his long journey, a disease, which at length killed him. In his time *Brno* having drawn many schollers with him out of *Paris*, retired into a desert near *Graniapolls* in *Narbon*, and there instituted the *Carthusian* Order.



An. Christi.

To *Humbert* succeeded his son *Amadeus* the second: for his valour and good service to the Empire, he is made by *Henry* the fifth Emperour, Earle of *Savoy*, which was held in fee of the Empire, of old it depended upon *Burgundy*; but when this was a part of the Empire, *Savoy* was governed by the Emperours officers, who abusing their power in oppressing the people, were put out, and this *Amadeus* made Earle. He subdued the Earle of *Geneva*, who out of spleen, because *Amadeus* would not marry his daughter, invaded his Territories with a great Army, which was defeated, and the *Genevan* himself killed. He had quarrels with *Lewis* the Grosse of *France*, which were taken up by *St. Bernard*. Afterward he went against the *Sarazens* in *Asia*, with the same *Lewis*, and *Conradus* the third, Emperour; but in his return home he died in *Cyprus*. He erected two Abbies.

1148.

To him succeeded his son *Humbert* the third, who so grieved for the death of his wife the Earle of *Flanders* daughter, that he could receive no comfort, till by the advice of the Bishop of *Geneva*, he went to two holy men who had retired themselves from the world, and professed a strict kind of life, near the lake *Lemannes*; from these he received so much comfort, that in memory thereof, he erected a Monastery in the same place, called *Altacomba*, which he richly endowed, and furnished it with twenty Monks taken out of the *Cistercian* Abbey; there did the Earle himself live a monastical life with these 20 Monks for one years space, and then returned to his government. By the earnest intreaty of his people, he was induced to marry again; his second wife dyed, and his daughter he had of her, which so renewed his grief, that he retired privately to his former course of life in a solitary place near the same lake, where he founded an Abbey to the *Virgin-Mary*, and having placed certain Monks there, resolves to live and die with them; but that he was again overcome with the importunate requests of his people, beseeching him to return to his government, and to marry again for procreations sake: of this third wife he had a son called *Thomas*, whereat he was so glad, that to testify his gratitude to the blessed *Virgin*, he founds a Priory at the entry of the same lake to her, 30 and to *St. Mauritius* the Martyr, and filled it with Monks out of the Society of *St. Peter of Clunie*. At last this devout Earle, after his return from *Rome* with *Philip Augustus*, fell into a lingering disease, and then died: He was interred in the Monastery of *Altacomba*, which he built to the *Virgin*. To him his son *Thomas* succeeded, being yet a child.

1193.

1201.

The Earle of *Burgundy*, Uncle to this *Thomas*, undertook his tuition, which he performed faithfully, keeping off all the storms which use to fall upon States in the Princes minority. *Thomas* being now of years, suppresseth the forces of *Guy* Earle of *Geneva*, him he takes prisoner with his daughter, whom he was conveying to *Philip Augustus* the French King to be married; but the Maid was so in love with *Thomas*, that she married him against her fathers consent; therefore *Thomas* would not set *Guy* at liberty, because he refused to give his consent, till he had made the Earldome of *Geneva* a Fee-farm to *Savoy*. After *Thomas* had returned from his expedition against the *Albigenses*, whose doctrine was much spread through *Narbon*, he joyned the Principality of *Piemont* (which was fallen into divers factions for want of a successor, the Princes issue being extinct) to his Earldome of *Savoy*. In *Piemont* he built many Castles to keep the Country in obedience, and eased them of their heavy Taxes, and so prevented all occasions of rebellion. He subdued also the Marquess of *Montferrat*, and the *Astenses*, who were confederate with *Piemont*. 40 At last grieving for being forced to side with *Frederic* 2. Emperour against the Pope, fell sick, and died.

1233.

To *Thomas* succeeded his son *Amadeus* the third: he took divers places in *Lombardy* upon the civil quarrels of that people, and killed the governour for imprisoning his Ambassadors as they were going from *Amadeus* to *Rome*. He restored the Country of *Valesia* to the Church of *Sedun*: At last, returning from

An. Christi.

1246.

from *Lions*, after he had saluted the Pope, and had conveyed his sisters daughter to be married to *Charles* Saint *Lewis* his brother, he died, and was buried with his Ancestors in the Monastery of *Altacomba*: whose son *Boniface* succeeded; his fortune was not answerable to that of his Predecessors, for as he was fighting against the Marquess of *Montferrat*, the *Taurini* and *Astenses*, he is taken prisoner and carried to *Taurinum*, with his chief companion, and counsellor the Marquess of *Salussa*, where he was unworthily used, notwithstanding Pope *Alexander* 4. had laboured for his liberty, which would not be granted, and therefore the *Taurinians* are excommunicated; in the interim 10 *Earl Boniface* with grief, some think with poison died, never having married; his body being ransomed with a great sum of mony, was buried in *S. Johns* of *Maurianna*. At this time fell out the captivity of Saint *Lewis* and his brothers.

1256.

Though *Boniface* had a sister, yet she was not permitted to succeed, because of her sex; therefore his uncle *Peter* is made Earle of *Savoy*, *Henry* the third of *England*, who had married *Elleanor* his sisters daughter, made him Earle of *Richmond*. For his fortitude and success, this *Peter* was called *Junior Charles* the Great. He purposed to be revenged of *Taurinum* for the death of *Boniface*, therefore layes a strait siege to it; which was relieved with victuals 20 strangely; two hundred Boat-men, for a great summe of money, chained certain barrels full of provision, which they sank into the river *Bo*, so artificially, that neither did they sink to the bottom, nor appeare above the water; behind them certain Divers swimm'd under water, which thrust the Casks forward; and before there dived others, who pulled the Casks into the town: but at last this trick being either found out or suspected, a bridge of boats is made over the river, and great peeces of timber driven into the ground, that nothing could passe that way; so the Town having spent her provision, was forced to surrender. The first thing *Peter* did, was the punishing of those who had a hand in the death of *Boniface*; afterward this City of *Turin* was bestowed 30 by the Emperour upon *Peter*.

After this, *Peter* subdued many of the neighbouring places, took in divers Forts and towns upon the Lake of *Geneva*, and dismissed all his prisoners without ransom, having sworn fealty to him. So *Peter* quieted all about him, and takes a journey for *England* to see *Queen Elleanor* his sisters daughter. The Earle of *Geneva* takes occasion by *Peters* absence to stir a rebellion against him, and therefore seisseth upon some of his castles, giving out he was dead. Upon the report of these doings, *Peter* procures 4000 English foot, which he transported by sea to *Savoy*; his coming was so sudden, that none knew of it till he was there: He first takes in the Castles that were revolted, and puts the 40 Governors to death; then falls upon the Territories of *Geneva*; but by the mediation of the Earle of *Burgundy* a peace is concluded between the *Savoyan* and *Genevan*, so that the *Genevan* should pay a great summe of mony to the *Savoyan* for the charges he had been at in this war, and withall *Amadeus* should keep the Castles which he had regained. Then he builds a Town called *Margesus*, upon the bank of the Lake, and four Castles in the Territories of *Kionna*; afterward he makes a journey into *Germany* to visit *Richard* Earle of *Cornwall*, who had married *Elleanor* sister *Queen* of *England*, and was in competition with *Alphonso* for the Empire. *Peter* having sworn fealty to *Richard*, obtains of him full power and right over the *Taurini*, *Veragri*, *Salassii*, and *Danicii*, 50 for him and his posterity; but at length *Peter* being returned from *Germany* into *Savoy*, fell into a lingering malady, of which he dyed, having made his brother *Philip* (being then at *Rome*) his heir and successor, in confirmation of which he caused his Ring to be delivered to him; as *Alexander* did to *Pandion*; this custome continued ever after in *Savoy*.

1268.

*Philip* having received the ring of *S. Maurice*, (which had been given to *Peter* by a certain Abbot) succeeds in the Earldome; he was a Church-man, and

*An. Christi.* and held the Bishopricks of *Lions* and *Valentium* in *Commendam*; but this Church-life he forsook, and married. Those of *Berne* and *Friburgh*, having made their peace with the Emperor *Ralph* of *Habsburgh*, who had made war upon the *Switzers*, he takes some towns and forts from this *Philip*, who complained thereof to the Pope, hoping he would have dealt with the Emperor for satisfaction; but finding none, he fell sick with discontent, and so for ten years together pined away, and died. He divided his estate before he died, among his Brothers sons: to *Thomas* the eldest he bequeathed *Piedmont*; to *Lewis* the youngest, the Barony of *Vaulxium*; but to *Amadeus* the middlemost, whom he had bred and loved best, he gave *Savoy*; for confirmation of which, lest his brothers afterward should quarrel with him, he bestowed on him *S. Maurice* his Ring, and caused money to be stamped with his name on it; he also by his last will ordered, that if either of the other two brothers should repine at this division as being unjust, he should forfeit his legacie. Before his death, he caused proclamation to be made through *Savoy* and *Burgundy*, that if he had done wrong to any man, or was indebted to him, he would make satisfaction to the full. He bestowed the richest furniture of his house upon the Abbey of *Altacoma*, where he would be buried with his Ancestors; and increased the revenues thereof.

To *Philip* succeeded *Amadeus* A. his brothers second son. He had long war with the Earl of *Geneva*, and *Humbert* the Delphin of *Vienna*: the *Genevan* laboured to incense *Thomas*, under pretext of wrong done him by *Amadeus* his younger brother, for accepting *Savoy*; but *Thomas* was so faithful, that he would not stir against his brother; wherefore the Delphin got him with some of his forces which he had raised in defence of his brother, into an ambush, and slew him: but fearing lest *Amadeus* would be revenged upon his Country for this slaughter, he invites the *Genevan* to fall with fire and sword upon the lands of *Lewis* the youngest brother, hoping by this to keep off the *Savoyan* forces from his own land. *Amadeus* seeing that one of his brothers was killed, and the lands of the other wasted, falls suddenly with an army upon the *Genevan* territories; seizes on the bridge which joyned *Savoy* with his brothers country, and guards it; the *Genevan* being amazed at this sudden coming of *Amadeus*, presently flies; the *Savoyan* takes in some forts and castles; which he furnisheth with men and provision to keep off any more incursions into his brothers country: the territories on both sides are miserably wasted with fire and sword, and the inhabitants with plague and famine, till peace was concluded by the Popes Legats, and the English and Burgundian Ambassadors: but this peace lasted not long; for when the Delphin understood that the *Friburgers* whom the *Savoyan* assisted, were overthrown by the *Berbers*, he took occasion upon this to invade the *Savoyan* territories; against his oath and promise. *Amadeus* was now forced to take arms; therefore invades the enemies country, takes the town *Bellodomb*, and puts all that made resistance to the sword; then he marcheth to *Goncellium* whither the Delphin had fled, to him *Amadeus* sends an Herald, accusing him of his perfury, and challenging him either singly into the field, or to meet him with his army; the Delphin returned him this answer, That he would not contend with him in strength of body, in which mans glory consisted not, for Bulls were stronger than men; but he would encounter his Army with another, when time served. *Amadeus* perceiving the siege would be long, and his provisions failed, marched back, and in the way took in a Castle, and seized upon great store of cattle; but the Rear of his Army, was cut off by the Delphin's souldiers who lay in ambush, and much of the cattle were regained. The *Savoyan* upon this resolves to raise more forces; but by the means of *Charles* King of *Scots* a peace is made between the *Savoyan*, the *Genevan*, and the Delphin. The city *Jurea* upon the confines of *Piedmont*, being long oppressed by the factions of *Guelphs* and *Gibelines*, at last chose *Amadeus* for their Protector, who reconciled the factions, and

and abolished their names. But in the absence of *Amadeus*, the Earle of *Geneva* builds a Castle near the Town, much offensive to the *Savoyen*. He again on the other side builds a Castle to offend the *Genevan*, and so the peace is broken again. The Delphin also, who still sided with the *Genevan* against *Savoy*, draws away some of the *Savoyen* Tenants from their allegiance, chiefly *Mombelius* Lord of *Entremontium*. Hereupon *Amadeus* besiegeth *Entremontium*, and takes it and in it the Lord, who falling on his knees begged pardon, and had it.

Whilst *Amadeus* was employed in besieging *Entremontium*, the Earle of *Geneva* by the help of a faction in the City, got possession of it, which did properly belong to the Bishop of *Geneva*, not to the Earle; but in a short time the City declaring for the *Savoyen*, drove out the faction, and the Earle was fain to flee: Many were laid in irons, and their houses pulled down, whom *Amadeus* put to death as soon as he came, and took the Castle which held out against him, putting all within it to the sword, except the women: shortly after the Bishop was banished for plotting to bring in the Earle of *Geneva* again, and his Castle pulled down: Not long after the Earle of *Geneva* dieth, and so doth the Delphin, whose sons conspired to continue their fathers quarrel against the *Savoyen*, who hereupon sends his son *Edward* with a puissant Army against them; *Edward* obtains a glorious victory, and returns to his father with great joy: At length the Countries being wasted with long war, a peace is concluded, and the *Savoyens* daughter is married to *William* Earle of *Geneva*; but this peace lasted not above two years; for the Delphin perceiving that he could not persuade the *Genevan* to break with his father in law, labours by treachery to get the Town and Abbey of *Ambrunaya*, for that purpose deals secretly with three wicked Monks of that Abbey, born in *Delphiny*, to betray the place, which they did, by letting in through a backgate the Delphins forces; this being done, the three Monks seize on the Abbot in the Church-porch betimes in the morning as he was going to Masse, and hanged him from a high window, because he was always averse from their wicked courses; the *Savoyen* hearing of this wicked act, sends a considerable Army thither, who suddenly seized on *Ambrunaya*, puts all to the sword that were for the Delphin, and sends the three Monks to the Ecclesiastick Magistrato to be punished. The Delphin upon this, takes by treachery from the *Savoyen* the Castle *Mirebellum*, which he strongly garrisons, and returns to *Delphiny*, when he heard that the *Savoyen* was upon his march with a great Army, who sits down before the strong Town of *St. German* in the *Delphinat*; but perceiving the place was well provided of all things to endure a long siege, he useth this stratagem: He riseth with his Army pretending to besiege *Languiennum*; when those of *St. German* seeing the danger *Languiennum* was in, sent out their chief provisions and forces to relieve it: Upon this, the *Savoyen* returns with his Army to *S. German*, which he takes with ease, being destitute of their aid, which could not get in to them, yet the Town-men fought till they were almost all slain; the Castle also at last yielded: then *Amadeus* besiegeth and taketh the Town *Amberieuum*. The loss of these two places so grieved the Delphin, that shortly after he fell sick and died. About which time was the war between *Philip* of France and the *Flemings*; *Philip* to make himself so much the stronger, got the *Savoyen* and Delphin to resign both their Armies to him, which they did; and after a long war peace is concluded. *Amadeus* made his son *Edward* General of the *Savoy* forces.

This *Amadeus* for his good service at *Rhodes* was honoured with the title of Great, and a silver Crossie (the Arms of the Knights of *S. John* of *Jerusalem*) was added to his Arms. He instituted a Colledge for six little children in the Monastery of *Cluny*, who were to pray for the Earles of *Savoy*; because the Earle and his wife both dreamed at one time, that they saw six little children pray to God to send the Earl and his Countess issue which hitherto they wanted: This Colledge was called the *Holy Covent*. At last, *Amadeus*, as he

was

*An. Christi.* 1323. was going to *Avenion* to procure aid for his son in law, the Emperour of *Bizantium*, against the Turks, died, and was buried in *Altacomba*.  
*Edward* the ninth, Earle of *Savoy*, received the Ring, and succeeded to his father; he was a good Prince and Souldier, but so wasteful in his expences, that he was forced to raise heavy Taxes from his people; he picked a quarrel with *Foucignius* who married his sister *Mary*, and without any cause at all, made war upon him, in which his Army was defeated, and had almost been taken prisoner himself, but that he was rescued by the Lord of *Entremontium*, whose life he had saved heretofore, when he was taken by his father *Amadeus*. This same *Edward* interceded for his life the second time, where being Am- 10  
 1329. the *basiladour* for the *Delphin* at *Paris*, he killed in the Kings own presence the governour of his Palace, for which he had suffered, if *Edward*, being then present, had not begged his pardon. This *Edward* died with grief at *Paris*, for the ill success he had in his former war, and is buried in *Altacomba*.

1329.

*Amadeus* the fifth, brother to *Edward* being at *Avenion* with Pope *John* 22. is called home against his will, and invested in the Earldome by the Rings *Edwards* daughter, by the *Salique* law, is put by; but her husband the Duke of *Britan* would not suffer her to give up her right till she received a great summe of money for it. The *Delphin* growing insolent for the victory he got a while ago over *Edward*, began now with fire and sword to waste the borders of 20  
*Savoy*. Hereupon *Amadeus*, though otherwise a peaceable Prince, is forced to take Arms in his subjects right, having first made a league with the Earle of *Geneva*; he therefore first sets upon the Castle *Maonbansum*, which he took with great resolution and courage, for he was the first that scaled the walls, and leapt down thence upon a Plain, keeping off the Enemy till his forces came to his assistance: after this he built and took in other Castles. The *Delphin* to requite *Amadeus*, besiegeth the Castle *Perrieria* in *Savoy*; but as he was coming too near to view the works, is killed with an arrow; whereupon the Castle was the more fiercely assaulted, and at last surrendered, upon condition that they should have their lives; but the Articles were presently broken 30  
 by the besiegers, who put all the besieged to death, for the losse of their Commander, having no regard of sexe or age: the Castle also is totally demolished. But when *Humbert* the *Delphin*'s brother succeeded, *Philip* *Kaloise* makes a firm peace between *Savoy* and the *Delphinat*: So *Amadeus* gives himself totally to building, repairing, and enriching of Religious houses; he gathered together all his Ancesters bones which had been buried abroad, and laid them up in the Chappel of *Altacomba*. At last he died, having left a young son *Amadeus* nine years old.

1342.

*Amadeus* 6. succeeded, furnished the *Green*, because he and his Court did wear usually green cloaths. Upon the death of *Robert* King of *Sicily*, the Principality of *Piedmont* fell to this *Amadeus*, and to *James* Prince of *Morea*. *Robert*'s Neece being rejected by the *Salique* law. The first act *Amadeus* did, was the restoring of the Bishop of *Sedunum* to his place, being wrongfully thrust out by the giddy multitude. After this, new quarrels arise between him and the *Delphin*, because *Hugh* of *Geneva* had got the Baronry of *Geisum*, which was given by *Hugard* Lord thereof to *Amadeus* the fifth of *Savoy*. *Amadeus* the sixth sends to *Hugh* that he should come and do his homage for that Baronry; this he refused, saying, that he was bound to do his homage to the *Delphin*, not to him. Whereupon the *Savoyen* takes the Castle of *Florimontum* by storm, and shortly after the strong Town *Geisum*. *Hugh* of *Geneva* to requite this, takes some 50  
 Forts in *Savoy*, and puts all to the sword. Great slaughter and spoil is done on both sides, till the *Delphin* resigned his interest in the *Delphinat* to *Philip* *Kaloise* the French King. Upon this, the limites of *Savoy*, and the *Delphinat* are so settled, that all occasion of future quarels are taken away. The river of *Cuyerus* is made the bounder of their Territories: But no sooner had *Amadeus* disbanded his forces, when the Archbishop of *Millan* took occasion to lay claim

*An. Christi.* claim to *Piemont*, therefore entertains the disbanded Souldiers, with a multitude of high-way men, whom he employed to invade *Piemont*; yet in this action he would not be seen himself. But the *Savoyen* quickly suppressed these Robbers, and hanged up *David* and *Robert* their Captains, with many others whom they took alive. After this he bought the Baronry of *Vaulxium*, and made war upon the Prince of *Morea*, for killing the Earls messenger sent to summon the Prince: He took divers Forts and Castles from this Prince, which afterward he restored, being reconciled to him, having lost *Baumeus* and *Chalantius*, his two chief friends in this war.

10 This Earle instituted the order of the *Annunciada*, in memory of the Annunciation of our Lady: He ordained fourteen of the prime Nobility to be of this Colledge, on each of whom he bestowed a golden Collar, with the Virgins effigies hanging at it; within the links of the Collar, are engraven these four letters, F. E. R. T. which was the Motto of *Amadeus* the Great, who took *Rhodes*; for the meaning is, *Fortitudo ejus Rhodum tenuit*. The annual solemnity is held on our Lady-day in the Castle of *S. Peter* in *Turin*: this example was followed by *Lewis* the eleventh of France, who instituted the order of *S. Michael*; *Philip* the governour of *Burgundy*, author of the order of the Golden-Fleece; and *Edward* the third of England, who ordained the order of the Garter. This Earle erected a Monastery of *Carthusians* to pray for the safety of this order of the Annunciation. After this, the Earle goeth against the Marquess of *Saluzzes*, who had conspired with the Archbishop of *Millan* against him, whom having besieged, he forced him to come into his Pavilion in an humble way, with a napkin bound about his neck, and publicly to beg pardon, and to take again the oath of Allegiance. Afterward peace being concluded in France, the English souldiers going to help the Marquess of *Montferrat* against the Vicount of *Millan*, were forced to march through *Piemont*; at which the Earle being offended takes up Arms against them: the English upon this take many of his Forts, and besiege the Earle in *Lansa*; but upon the payment of two thousand and four hundred pounds, the English are content to leave off the siege, to restore the Forts and prisoners, and to march peaceably through the Country. After this he raiseth a great Army, and so did 30  
*Lewis* Duke of *Burbon* against *Peter* K. of *Castile*, who to please his whore *Mary*, had stifled his own wife *Blanca* sister to the Duke of *Burbon*, and to the wife of *Amadeus*: but hearing that *Peter* was killed by *Henry* his bastard brother, they alter their resolution from invading *Castile*, and intend to set upon the Despot of *Bulgaria*, who under pretence of friendship had imprisoned *John* *Paleologus* Emperour of *Constantinople*; he transports his men to *Callipolis*, which *Amurathes* had invaded: the Barbarians resisted his landing a while, but at last 40  
 were forced to give way. As soon as the Christian Army was landed, they had divers skirmishes with the *Turks* and *Bulgarians*, whom *Amadeus* defeated, and took in divers of their Forts; afterwards he besiegeth *Varna*, which caused the *Bulgarian* to set the Emperour at liberty, who with *Amadeus* were received into *Bizantium* with great joy: But the *Savoyen* disliking divers of the Greek Ceremonies in their Divine-service, urgeth the Emperour to unite the Greek Church with the *Latine*, to which he condescended; and to let the Earle see he was reall, he sends to *Pera*, where *Amadeus* was, the sons of his chief Nobility as hostages, and withall the Imperial Diadem, and shortly after he goeth himself to *Rome* for that purpose; but being denied by 50  
 the Pope a few Gallies against *Amurathes* the Turk, he returns home without any thing done in the union, which might then have been easily effected.

Whilst *Amadeus* was absent in *Constantinople*, *Barnabas* Viscount of *Millan*, with his brother *Galeacius* invade *Piemont*, to whom joyned the Marquess of *Salussia*, and *Philip* son of *James*, Prince of *Morea*; Earle *Amadeus* hearing of this, was forced to leave off prosecuting the union of the Greeks and

I i

Latine

An. Christi.

Latine Churches, and repair with all speed to Savoy, at whose coming the Enemy retreats back to Lombardy; but the Salustian, and Philip of Morea staying too long behind, were cut off by the Savoyen. After this, the Marquess of Montsferrat with the Savoyen help, overthrew the Viscounts Army, which had taken some Towns from the Marquess, and besieged Asta; upon this defeat, the siege is raised. After this, Amadeus is employed by Charles the fourth, Emperour, Pope Gregory the eleventh, and Joan Queen of Naples, all whose lands were invaded by Barnabo of Millan, and his brother Galeacius: against these the Earle marcheth, and restores it to the Queen; then takes divers Towns from the Enemy, and forceth Galeacius to make his peace, which was granted conditionally he should not help his brother, and so all the forces joyn together against Barnabo, who upon this hasteneth to Millan, fearing the Enemy would besiege it, which indeed the Savoyen intended, had the Popes forces come in time, which were now upon their march, but could not joyn with Amadeus, because Barnabo had opened the sluices, and drowned all the passages; yet afterward Amadeus made a shift, and got with great difficulty to the Popes Army at Bononia. These together plundered the Countries of Placentia and Parma, and were preparing to sit down before Placentia; but Amadeus fell suddenly sick, so that he was forced to be carried in a Litter to Murina; and upon this the Army dissolved. Afterward Amadeus being recovered, and now in the Kingdome of Naples with an Army against Pope Urban the sixth, in defence of Lewis of Andes, fell suddenly sick again, with the Duke of Andes, and a multitude of souldiers and horses that had drunk of a water which the Enemy had poysoned, all these died: Amadeus his body is carried to Altacomba. It is reported that Barnabo had poysoned, before this expedition, all the bread and wine in the Town of Vicomercat, whither he knew Amadeus was to come with his forces; but the treachery being found out by some that fell sick upon the eating and drinking of that poysoned stuffe, they were all cured by St. Maurice his ring dipt in vinegar; though this is not likely, yet not impossible.

1383

Amadeus the seventh, son to the former, having received the ring, succeeds: he was now three and twenty years of age, and had already given good testimony of his valour in his fathers time, by taking in some Towns and Forts upon the River Araris; his dominions were enlarged by the Isle of Tenedos, which was given to his father by the Venetians and Gennois, between whom he made peace, after they had quarrelled long for this Island, as we have said; the City Coma also was bestowed upon the same Amadeus the father, by legacy from the Queen of Naples. This young Earle made war, with good success, upon the Marquess of Montsferrat, for causing some of the Savoyen subjects to rebel. He took Sedun with their Forts, and made them receive again their Bishop, Edward the Prince of Morea's son, whom they had thrust out: he defeated the Marquess of Saluzes forces which had invaded his Country; the Seigniority of Nicea chose him for their Prince, and so did some other Princes thereabout. But after Amadeus was returned home, one day as he was hunting the Bore, he fell from his horse, and sorely wounded his thigh, which a Montebank out of Africa, who then waited on the Duke of Bourbon, undertook to cure, but it's thought he poysoned him, for so the Earl as he was dying confessed: the Physitian is apprehended and imprisoned, who having cleared himself, is banished out of Savoy, France, Burgundy and Germany, into England. The Earl is buried in Altacomba.

1397

CHAP.

An. Christi.

## CHAP. IX.

The French Story from the year 1313. till 1380. interwoven with divers passages of England, Flanders, Spain, Germany, Italy, &c.

IN France, to Philip the Fair succeeded his son Lewis Hutin, who had before this time succeeded to the Crown of Navarre, by the death of his mother; he caused Enguerrand great General of the Finances, for imposing divers Tributes on the people, to be hanged, and his image to be flung down from the Palace stairs where it stood. This King resolves to make an expedition into the Holy-Land, being enjoined thereto by his father Philip; who had for that purpose sequestred the Clergies tythes; but before he could accomplish his design, he died in the second year of his reign, having left his Queen great with child, his name was John, and lived not above eight daies: so Lewis had now onely one daughter Joan, by Margaret daughter to Robert Duke of Burgundy, but she could not succeed, because of the Salique Law, which saith, Let not women succeed in the Salique Land, which was meant of France, because Ammian Marcellin writes, that in his time there were a people in France called Salies; therefore though the Duke of Burgundy uncle to this Prince stood for her right a while, yet at last yielded to the other Peers of France, and acknowledged Philip le Long; the deceased Kings brother, lawful heir, who was crowned without contradiction; he bestowed his eldest daughter on this Odon Duke of Burgundy, and with her the Country of Burgundy: his second he gave to Lewis Count Roberts son of Flanders, who in right of his mother was Count of Nivern: the third was espoused to the Delphin of Vienna: Jane the defunct Kings daughter, was married to Lewis Count of Evreux, who by her obtained the Kingdome of Navarre.

1313.

In the mean while, the Pope confirms the peace between France and Flanders, by which it is agreed that the Earle of Flanders should pay to the French a million of Crowns in twenty years by equal portions. The design for the Holy-war is hindred, by the debate that was between Lewis of Bavaria, and Frederic of Austria; the Gibellins that were banished out of Genna procure Mark son to Matthew chief of the Gibellin faction, and Vicar of the Empire to besiege Genna, which sent to the Pope for his protection: the Pope commands Mark to cease from molesting those who sought his protection; Mark refused to obey, whereupon he is declared an heretick, and an enemy to the Church, and so denounceth war against him; for effecting of which he reconciles King Robert with the King of Arragon, whom he makes to resign Rhege to Robert, who thereupon presents himself before Genna with fifteen Gallies of his own, and ten of the Popes, but these could not make Mark raise the siege, till an Army was sent against Millan, which caused the Millanois return home to save their City: Philip also, son to Charles of Valois, and to King Roberts sister, marcheth with an Army into Italy, upon whose approach Galeas Viscount, and son to Matthew, proffers to submit himself to the French Kings Arbitrator, which this young Prince believing, returned with his forces into France, where he found the King dangerously sick, and a great mortality every where caused by the Jews, who poysoned the waters, partly hired by the Turks and Saracens, and partly to be revenged for their banishment under Philip the Fair; the Jews are apprehended and imprisoned, who that they might not fall into the Christians hands did hang one another in the prison; the last man being left alone thought to escape by a rope, but the rope brake, and he was found maimed, but the next day was hanged. The King about this time died without issue male.

1321.

Ii 2

Charles

An. Christi.

Charles the Fair, *Philips* brother succeeded: He falls presently to execution of justice, being omitted by reason of the great mortality, and the short lives of the late Kings. He caused one *Jordain*, a kinsman of Pope *John*, to be hanged for murder. *Lewis* Count of *Nevers* is imprisoned for his presumptuous behaviour toward the King. One *Hugh* occasioneth great troubles in *France*, for our toward the King. One *Hugh* occasioneth great troubles in *France*, for building a Fort in *Guien* without the Kings leave; pretending it was English ground; At last, it was after much debate demolished by *Charles Valoise*, who with an Army defeated *Hugh*, and his English forces. This *Charles* was he who caused *Enguerrannus* his special friend to be hanged; for which fact afterward he grew so discontented, that he fell sick, and died; but before his death, he procured of the King leave to take down the corps from the Gibbet; and to bury it magnificently. In the mean while, *Charles* the Fair having reigned seven years, died, and left his wife great with child: King *Edward* of *England*, son to *Philip* the Fairs daughter, sister to the last King, claimed title to the Regency, as being next of kin; but the French told him that he was too young to govern such a Kingdome, and that he had need to have a governor himself. *Philip* son to *Charles* of *Valoise* told him plainly, that *France* was not to be governed by women, and that it was unreasonable for a daughter of *France* married in *England* to claim that right, which was denied to her that was married to the *Purgundian*, which was always accounted French; much was debated to and fro about this business: In the interim, the Queen Dowager brought to bed of a daughter; upon which, *Philip* of *Valoise* is declared King, and consecrated at *Rhemes*, and crowned at *S. Dennis*, thence he rides in great state to *Paris*, where he is received by the Nobility, City, Clergy and University, in great pomp; and a match is made between this new Kings youngest son *Philip*; Duke of *Orleans*, with *Blanch* the former Kings daughter lately born.

1328.

*Philip* being settled, resolves to make wars upon *Flanders*, for not paying the million of Crowns agreed upon; Earle *Lewis* sent his collectors to raise the money, but they were slighted, and he forced to flye, because of a fire that happened at *Turney* whilst he was there, the people supposing that he had set the Town on fire. The French King raiseth an Army and besiegeth *Cassel*, upon the borders where he *Flemings* had put a Garrison; but he could not either take the Town, or draw the besieged to fight, wherefore he falls with fire and sword upon the Country all about, hoping to draw the besieged out of their strong hold, but could not: At length the Souldiers returning with great booties to their Tents, began to make merry, and be careless; the *Flemings* seeing this, issue so suddenly out of the Town upon the Camp, that they had almost surprised the King; but the alarm being made, and the King on horse-back, the French fall furiously on the *Flemings*, routs them, and kills eighteen thousand; so *Cassel* is taken, sacked and burned, and Count *Lewis* is rescued in his Country, where the authors of the rebellion are put to death; *William Canute* one of the chiefest, was fled to the Duke of *Brabant*, but he was forced to deliver him up to the King, who caused his head to be cut off at *Paris*. In the Kings absence the Clergy incroached much upon the secular Courts, of which complaint was made to the King; but he favouring the Clergy was content to let them go on in their judicatures. Shortly after there met at *Amiens* four Kings, to wit, of *France*, of *England*, of *Bohemia*, and of *Majorca*: King *Edward* came to do homage for the Dutchie of *Guien*. The French King prepares for his expedition into the Holy-Land, therefore goeth to *Avenion* to consult with the Pope about it, and withall makes his son *John*, now fourteen years old, Duke of *Normandy* and Regent of *France*. Then he sends to the King of *England* to joyn with him in this holy expedition, but he found that he was otherwise bent, and intended to invade *France*, wherefore the expedition into *Palestine* is laid aside.

*Robert* Earl of *Artois*, who had been so hot for the *Salique* law, in the right of King

An. Christi.

King *Philip* against the English Ambassadors, is now quite changed, and altogether for the English Title; whereupon to secure himself from *Philips* indignation, conveys his chief wealth to *Burdeaux*, then in the English possession, and repairs himself to King *Edward* in *England*, who had already made war upon *David* King of *Scotland*, whereby the French King is engaged in honour to assist his friend and ally; and now open acts of hostility are committed by the French and English on each other both by Sea and Land; in the interim King *Philip* to strengthen himself the more, bestowes his daughter upon the young Duke of *Brabant*, who was aimed at by *William* of *Henault*, for one of his daughters, and draws in all his ancient Confederates to joyn with him in this war; for this purpose he reconciles the *Savoyans* and *Delphinats*; there is also alliance made by marriage between *France* and *Bohemia*; and for fear lest the *Flemings* should side with the English, the Pope confirms a solemn league between the French and *Flemings*, these swearing fidelity to *France*, which they promise to keep, or to forfeit a million of Crowns; peace also is made between *Arragon* and *Navar*, both kings engaging themselves to stand for *France*; but *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperour takes part with King *Edward* against the French, because he thought the French king kept off the Pope from absolving him; *William* of *Henault* also was against the French, because he intercepted the Duke of *Brabant*, with whom he meant to marry his daughter; the Duke of *Guelthers*, the Marquis of *Juliers*, and Bishop of *Colen* were also enemies to *France*; but the Earl of *Flanders* stood firm to the French, he beheaded *Le Courtisfen* a French Lord at *Gaunt*, for keeping correspondency with the English, upon which the Commons fell to mutiny, and killed some of the Earls Officers, and the Earl himself, pretending he was going to hunt, fled to *France*; the English in the mean time take some Townes from the French; these invade *England*, and plunder and burn *Southampton*: *Cambray* is summoned to surrender to King *Edward*, as Vicar or Lieutenant of the Empire, alledging that the City belonged to the Empire, not to *France*, but the French Garrison within refused to obey.

The French Army consisted of four Kings, to wit, of *France*, *Scotland*, *Bohemia*, and *Navar*; of six Dukes, among which were the Duke of *Britany* and *Lorain*, six and twenty Earls, four thousand Knights or Cavaliers, in all 100000 Souldiers; the English and German Camp consisted of 60000, which by the advice of *Robert* of *Artois* was raised from the siege of *Cambray*, because he thought such a gallant Army would do better service in the Field, then to lie idle a whole Summer before so strong a place. The Count of *Henault*, upon the borders of *France*, took his leave of King *Edward*, shewing that he waited on him so long as he was within the limits of the Empire, being the Emperours Lieutenant, but he would not enter into *France* to make war against his Uncle: The two Armies being within two leagues of each other, prepare to fight; the Challenge is sent by an Herald from the English, and entertained by the French; but King *Philip* is advised by *Robert* king of *Sicily*, and his wife Council, not to fight with the English, and hazard *France* upon the fortune of a Battel; the Dutch being weary of the French delays, began to think of returning home; King *Edward* gave them leave, and retires to *Flanders* with his Army, purposely to draw the *Flemings* from the French to his side, which they were unwilling to do, because of their engagement and promise; Upon this King *Edward* takes the title of *France* upon him, and weares the Lillies in his Colours, by this telling the *Flemings*, that they did not violate their oath in submitting to him, being both King of *France* and *England*, and so got the *Flemings* to side with him, for which they are excommunicated by the Pope. After this, King *Edward* went over to *England* to raise money, having left his Queen at *Gaunt* ready to lye in; in his absence, King *Philip* by his Niece the Empress, got the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria* to renounce the English, and to take away from *Edward* the Lieutenantship of the Empire, because he had not paid



*An. Christi* paid the summe he promised to the Emperour; in the mean while the French and Flemings made daily excursions upon each others borders; the Earle of Salisbury before Lisle is taken prisoner, and carried to Paris, two hundred of his men being cut off by the French, who took the Towns of Escandure and Thin.

1340.

The French sent a Fleet of 380 saile to lie before the Sluce in Flanders, which now sided with the English: King Edward encounters this Fleet with another of fewer Ships, but taller and better manned; a terrible skirmish ensues of six hours, in which were killed 30000 on both sides; at last the English got the victory, King Edward received a hurt in the ankle, which was shortly after cured; then having recruits from England and Germany, with the help of upper Flanders, he besiegeth Tournay, and Robert of Artois with 30000 men sits down before Saint Omer, in which the Duke of Burgundy was with a strong Garrison, who sallied out upon the besiegers; Count Artois drew the Duke as far as he could from the Town, hoping to have surprized him, but the Duke fell with such fury on the Flemings, that he made them retreat disorderly, having killed 3000 on the place; the Count retreats to the Camp before Tournay; many sallies were made out of the Town, but at last they were put to that straight, that the French Army under King Philip was forced to encamp within three leagues of the English; in the night time Philip relieves the Town with 2000 horse, which made King Edward out of hope to gain that place; therefore upon the intreaty of the Countess of Henault, his wives mother, and sister to King Philip, he makes a Truce with the French for three years; the Flemings are absolved by the Pope; the prisoners set free on both sides; the Scotch King is carried home in French ships; the King of Bohemia staves in France; the Duke of Brittain dieth by the way homeward: the King of Navar raiseth an Army against the Sarazens.

It fell out well for Spain, that this peace was made; otherwise the three African Kings who had joyned their Forces with the Sarazen King of Grenada, and had defeated the Spaniards divers times both by Sea and Land, were like totally to have subdued the Countrey, but that the two Alphonsus Kings of Castile and Portugal, with the French and Navar Forces in a great battel totally defeated the Barbarians, seized upon all their rich plunder, and carried the African Banners in triumph to the Pope at Avenion, where they were hung up in the chief Church. About this time Count Evreux king of Navar died; and immediately began the war of Britany, upon the death of Duke John, who died, as is said, going home from Tournay; he had married his only daughter before to Charles son of the Count de Blois, and of Margaret sister to Philip the French king; but Duke Johns third brother Count de Montfort laid Title to the Duchy of Brittain, and for that cause seized upon Nantes, Brete, Rhemes, Vannes, and the treasure of Limoges. Charles de Blois in right of his crooked wife, claimed the Duchy, both appeal to the Peers of France and Parliament of Paris, who declare the Right to be in Charles: At which, John de Montfort in a discontent goeth into England, and entertaines a league with King Edward; but when he was returned into Brittain, he is accused for doing homage to King Edward for that Duchy, this he denied; yet when the king had commanded him to stay in Paris, he stole away thence by night, which so exasperated the king, that presently he sent his sonne, Prince John Duke of Normandy with an Army to settle Charles de Blois in his possession of Brittain, who laid siege to Nantes, and took it upon composition, and in it John de Montfort, who is sent to Paris, and imprisoned in the Louvre.

Clauda, the masculine wife of Montfort, took up Armes in her husbands quarrel, sends to England for aide, seizeth upon Hembont whilst Charles is besieging Rhemes, which being surrendred he brings his Army to Hembont, where as he was assaunting the wall, Claudia slips out with a party at a gate, and

and enters the enemies camp, which she plunders and sets on fire; but upon the coming of the English supplies, Charles raiseth the siege. Pope Clement the sixth being newly elected, procures a truce of two years between Charles and Montfort. Claudia upon this goeth over to England, where a Match is proposed between her young son and the kings daughter: then she procures a fleet from England, under the conduct of Robert of Artois: the English being landed, seise upon Vannes; the French with an army besiege it; but as Robert was striving to raise the siege, he received a hurt, of which he shortly afterward died, at which King Edward was much grieved, and with an army passeth himself into Britany, where having taken some townes, upon the Popes desire a truce for three yeares is concluded between France and England; wherefore Montfort is set free, and shortly after died.

King Philip in the interim caused a strict search to be made for such as favoured the English in the former war; divers of the Nobility of Normandy and Britany are sent to Paris and beheaded, Jeoffry de Harcourt escapes into England. About this time, one James de Arnel a Fleming, at Gaunt, made a speech against the French in favour of the English, and adviseth the people to drive out their Earl for favouring the French, and to chooe a new one, or to admit of him whom King Edward should send. Upon this the Flemings were so enraged, that they tore him in peeces and flung his carcasse to the dogs. King Edward in the mean time with a thousand sail arrives in Normandy, takes divers townes, burieth honorably the heads of Perse and Bacchon, which were set up at Carentan, for their fidelity to him. Then he went to Caen, where he fought with Raoul the Constable of France, and the Citizens, whom he beat into the town, and the English entred pel-mel with them, about five hundred English were killed out of windowes and from the house-tops; the Constable having saved himself a while in the tower, yieldeth to King Edward, who commands Jeoffry to set the town on fire, because of their obstinacie; but he desired the town might be spared, because he had divers friends and kindred in it, which was assented to by the king. In the mean while a Herald is sent from King Philip to King Edward, to appoint a day and place for a battel; King Edward sent word, that he would fight neer Paris, in the view of that great city, which the French believing fitted themselves there for the battel; but the English having deluded the French, encamp themselves neer Crescy in Ponten, by a great wood; in this battel the English were victorious, in which were killed thirty thousand men; Count de Blois, and de Sancerre, with the Earl of Flanders, and King of Bohemia with all his forces were slain, besides twelve hundred Chevaliers, all of ancient families; the King himself had his horse shot under him, and being mounted again by Count de Beaumont, fled to Broy, and from thence to Amiens. Jeoffry de Harcourt hearing that his brother was killed, fell off from the English, came to King Philip with a rope about his neck, and cast himself at his feet craving mercy for his rebellion, for which the king pardoned him.

King Edward finding Calice a fit port for his passage into England, fate down before it with his Army, and having besieged it eleven moneths, at last took it upon composition; sixe of the chief Burghers were demanded by the king to be put to death, who willingly offered themselves, whose courage when the king perceived, he pardoned them all. The French king during the siege came with an Army hoping to raise it, and therefore presented battel, but the English would not leave their trenches, whereupon the French retreated. Charles de Blois and his two sonnes were prisoners in England; but he was set free upon the earnest request of his cousin-german the Queen of England. The same year died King Philip of France, who left two sons, John his successor, and Philip Duke of Orleans. Then a Truce was made with England for two years; in which time Raoul Constable of France, who was taken at Caen, initiated this young Kings reign with his blood, for he lost his head, being accused of

*An. Christi.*

1346.

1350.

*An. Christi.* of Treason, the Delphin having lost his son in this war, and being about to sell his Signiory to the Pope, the French so prevailed, that it should be annexed to France; conditionally the kings eldest son might be stiled the Delphin. Charles d'Espagne is made Constable, whom Charles king of Navar so hated, that he caused him to be murdered in the night time; and withal, gave out that he was forced to do it in his own defence, and that the Constable intended to murder him: Upon this King Charles is summoned to answer in person to his accusers, which he refused to do, but at last upon better advice he came to Paris, his fact was pleaded before the French King, and being found guilty he is seized upon by James brother to the Duke of Bourbon, who was made Constable of France after the death of d'Espagne, and delivered to the Officers, to who were to carry him to prison; but by the intercession of three Queens, the wit, of Jane widow to Charles the Fair, this King of Navars Aunt, Blanch the Kings mother-in-law, and Jane the King of Navars wife, and the French kings daughter, he was pardoned; but yet he took this accusation for an affront, and therefore carried a grudge ever after to his father-in-law, who when he was raising some Taxes on his Subjects, to suppress the English, who out of Bourdeaux and Calice did plunder the Countries, this King Charles did what he could to hinder the Taxes, which notwithstanding were raised, though with some difficulty and opposition, chiefly of Arras, which was quickly quieted.

King Edward understanding that an Army of 30000 French was raising, returns to England; in the interim King John makes his eldest son the Delphin Duke of Normandy, whom he sends thither to take possession, where he is met at Rouen by the chief Nobility of that Countrey, and by the king of Navar, as being Count D'Evreux; King John hearing of Navars being there, makes haste to Rouen, seizes upon him and John de Harcourt, who was of Charles his counsellor, for which his head was there presently cut off, and King Charles sent prisoner to Paris: Upon this the Townes of Evreux and Harcourt stood out against king John, and all Normandy ready to mutiny. King Edward being advertised of this opportunity, sends the Earl of Gloucester thither with a great Army, with whom joyned Philip, brother to Navarre, and Geoffrey Harcourt Uncle to John who was beheaded, these fall to taking and plundering of Townes, but the coming of the French king made them retreat; in the mean while Edward Prince of Wales went out of Bourdeaux with 2000 horse, and 8000 English Archers, besides the chief men and Garrisons of Gascoigny, these overrun the Countries of Poitou and Berry, killing all the French that made opposition; which K. John understanding, left a flying Army in Normandy, and marcheth towards Prince Edward, who having done his work, which was to draw K. John out of Normandy, retreats to Gascoigny; where having met with the Popes Legat, who came to make peace, and finding the conditions unreasonable, intrenched himself within two leagues of Poitiers, a place by reason of large Ditches and Vineyards very disadvantageous for the French Horse, in which their strength consisted; these might have starved the English, had they been patient, but they would needs fall upon them in their trenches, 300 of their prime men were chosen to begin the battel, which were defeated by the English Archers; the French Army was divided into three battalions, the first under the Constable, the second was conducted by the Delphin, and the third by the king himself, all these three were defeated one after another, the king and his son Philip taken prisoners, and with them 1500 Gentlemen, 5000 were slain on the place; great debate arose among the Souldiers for their prisoners, so that divers Gentlemen were killed, for the Souldiers would rather kill their prisoners then part with them to others; Poitiers received some of the French that fled, but fearing that the English would enter pell-mell with them, shut their Gates; the king is honourably received into the Princes Tent, and feasted; thence he was carried to Bourdeaux, but the

coigni

*An. Christi.* coigni would not suffer the King to be carried into England, till they were appeased by rich gifts and promises.

K. John is received in England with great magnificence; in the mean while the D. of Normandy assembles the chief men of France at Paris, out of which fifty Deputies are chosen to advise how the King should be set free: there it was proposed, that the King of Navar should be set at liberty; that six of the Clergy, six of the Nobility, and six of the third estate should govern the young Delphin; but he disliking this way, dissolved the Assembly. The Parisians murmur for raising the value of money. The king of Navar being let out of prison by some of his own faction, strives to raise new troubles in France, shewing that he had more right to the Crown then the k. of England, which made k. Edward backward in aiding the Navarrois. David k. of Scotland, who had been taken prisoner, was ransomed for 10000 Crowns. The French king was content to pay his ransom, but not to part with the right of his Crown. The Delphin went about from Town to Town, raising all the money he could for his fathers ransom. Languidoc and the Champenois were very forward, even the women to part with their rings and jewels; but the Parisians were hindered by the k. of Navar, who in all things opposed himself to the Delphin, who was in danger of his life whilst he was there, having some of his servants killed in his presence. The k. of Navar raised great Forces in Normandy, and sent for 10000 Navarrois, which took divers small Towns; the Pefants also began to mutiny and to take up Armes against the Gentry, which made the Delphin leave Paris, and having raised an Army of Gentlemen, defeated the Pefants; then he brings 30000 men neer to Paris to curb their Factions; the Provost-Marshal who stood for Navar, being demanded the keys of the City-Gates by some of the Delphins friends, is presently slain for refusing, and the Gates are opened for the Delphin, who caused two chief men of the Faction to be hanged, and then prepares to suppress the k. of Navar.

The Truce between France and England being ended, king Edward passeth over to Calice, and from thence to Rhemes, a hundred thousand Crowns are sent him to forbear spoiling and plundering the Countrey; thence he marcheth to Paris, and offers battel to the Delphin, who will not hazard his strength, therefore king Edward burns and spoils all about Paris, intending to ruine all, or to bring France in subjection; but when he understood the difficulty of this work by the Duke of Gloucester, and being also affrighted with Thunder and Lightning, which killed some of his men, he desisted from his enterprise, desiring pardon from God for what he had already done; so now a final peace is thought upon, which was concluded on these Articles, That k. Edward and his son should quit the right they claimed over Anjou, Tourain, Mayne, and Normandy, and that the French should render Guien to them, and that they should pay three millions of Crowns to the English, and so the Armies to be disbanded on both sides; which being performed, king John returns to France after four years captivity, where having saluted the Pope, he binds himself by a vow to make an Expedition against the Infidels, but first he means to settle his kingdom, and having occasion to go into England about some weighty Affairs, he died at London, and was buried at S. Dennis.

Charles the fifth son to king John succeeded: he made his chief abode at Paris, committing the managing of the war to his brothers, and other Lieutenants; he defeated the king of Navar, by Bertrand du Guescon a valiant Commander. King Peter of Lusignan came from the East into France, soliciting the King to further the Holy-war intended by king John; but he could not prevail, for the Souldiers were employed in the Civil wars of Brittany: at last peace being made between Jane the widow of Charles de Blois, who was slain, and Mountfort, he is declared Duke of Brittany. Peter of Castile having allied himself with France, by marrying the French Queens sister, daughter to the Duke of Bourbon, fell off from the French, and sided with the English;

K k

his

*An. Christi.* his wife he slighted and abused, accusing her that she had procured of a Jew that was a forcerer, an enchanted Girdle, to bewitch him, whereby he might be made incapable to govern, and so she might rule; shortly after she died; he in the mean time having stript Henry his Bastard-brother of all his Lands left him by his father, drove him out of his kingdom, and then makes war upon the king of Arragon, a friend to France. The Bastard is brought back by Bertrand du Guesquin, and crowned, having chased away king Peter. The Prince of Wales restores Peter to his kingdom. In the interim the king of Navar is surprised, as he was shewing the way to the English Army through the Spanish countrey, and brought prisoner to the king of Arragon. The English defeated Guesquin, and took him prisoner, then drove out Henry, and replaced Peter in his kingdom. Navar having given his son for Hostage, is set free, and so is Guesquin for a ransom. Henry being furnished with another Army from France, returns into Castile, where finding Peter forsaken by the English for want of their pay, he defeats and kills him, and then made himself king by consent of the whole kingdom.

The Prince of Wales being necessitated, imposeth heavier Taxes on Guien then the French used to do, whereupon they complain to the French king and Parliament at Paris, who would not seem to countenance their complaint till their Hostages were returned from England; then did king Charles upon reiterated complaints send a summons to the Prince at Burdeaux, and open war is denounced against king Edward; hereupon divers Townes revolt from the English; king Edward to defend Guien, sends over an Army to Burdeaux, who took the Dutchess of Burbon, the French Queens Mother, with divers other Dames, prisoners, and let them not go without great ransomes; another English Army lands at Calice, burning and wasting all before them; they took and burnt Limoges for revolting to the French; but at this time the English Army had no great success at Land, and less at Sea, for their Fleet of five and thirty saile was overthrown by the French and Castilian Navy near Rochel. St. Severe is taken by Guesquin. Poitou and Saintonge are given to the Duke de Berry. Rochel is surrendered to the French, and a part of the English Army under Capral de Bus is defeated. The D. of Britany, k. Edwards son-in-law, strives to draw the Britains to the English side, but is resisted by some great Lords, which made the D. retire to England, having left Robert Canol an Englishman Governour of Britany, whom the French besiege in the Castle of Brest, and his cousin Hugh in Derval; these both accorded to surrender their Forts, if they had not succors from England within two moneths, and so Hostages are given; in this mean time supplies come from England, which would not land, though invited by the French, but stayed on ship-board till the two months were expired, & then Canol received the English Army into Brest; the French threaten to kill their hostages; Canol replies, that then he would kill all the French prisoners in Britany.

The English Embassadors complain to the Pope, of the wrongs done them by the French, in breaking the peace, and falsifying their Oaths; the French defend themselves, clearing both King Charles and his father from perjury; the Pope would not take notice of their differences, but was content to hearken to the French touching the affairs of Flanders; for king Edward desirous to marry one of his sons to the Earle of Flanders onely daughter, sent to the Pope for a dispensation, which was denyed, because it would cause perpetuall warre between France and England; for Flanders had thitherto been a dependant of France, so this Match being broken, Philip le Hardy Duke of Burgundy married the Lady, whom if the French King had married, the addition of Flanders would have been a great strength to France. After this the King of Navar made his peace with France, who shortly after by some assassines (who were put to death for this villany) intended to have poisoned the French King. Navars wife dieth about this time, and he is declared enemy to France, from whom they take the City Evreux. Shortly after died

*An. Christi.* died Prince Edward of Wales, and the year following King Edward his father. k. Charles remembre the infolencies that were acted in Paris during his minority and his fathers imprisonment, ordained that after the kings death his eldest son should immediately succeed, and that he should be crowned at the age of 14. and then should be out of his non-age, that the Princes Governors should not have too much time to make themselves great. Guesquin takes many townes from the English on one side, and D. Philip le Hardy on the other took all from them round about Calice, so that he hem'd them in from making excursions. For maintenance of the war, subsidies are laid upon salt and wines all Britany except Brest is now under the French: hereupon Ambassadors are sent from England to the German Princes, complaining of the wrongs done by France; the French Ambassadors on the other side defend themselves, and complain of the wrongs they sustained from the English, chiefly that they exacted more for the ransom of k. John then the Egyptians did for S. Lewis, and withall they desire the German Princes to renew their alliance with France, which was urged also by Charles the Emperour, Uncle to the French king, and by Wenceslaus his son; who to make an agreement between the two kingdomes went themselves into France, where they were magnificently received in all places where they came, chiefly at Paris, where great joy and pomp was shewed, and all prison doors let open; but these joyes and the Treaty of peace were crossed by the Queens death and one of her daughters.

After this, the Emperours, French and English Embassadors, with the Archbishop of Ravenna the Popes Legat met at Gaunt, to advise about the same peace; but this meeting was also dissolved by the schisme of the Church, which lasted 30 years; for Pope Gregory who removed his seat from Avenion to Rome, being dead, great debate arose between the Italian and French Cardinals about the election of his successor, as we have already shewed, Urban the 6. being chosen by the one, and Clement by the other, who held his residence at Avenion. About this time D. Thomas, uncle to k. Richard of England, went over to Calice with 8000 English, who from thence passed into Britany to assist the Duke in Flanders. The Gantois complain against their Earl for raising new Taxes upon their Merchandises, for infringing their liberties, and too much favouring of Bruges who cut a channel for the river Lys to flow through their Lands: this occasioned a war; for the Gantois taking Armes and white Caps, were met with by the Earl and his Army, who upon their Petition promised to take off their Taxes, and to maintain their ancient privileges; and so they laid down their Armes and white Caps; but John Leon their Captain dissuaded them from laying down their Caps, the badges of their liberty, whereupon they took up their Armes and Caps again, and killed the Earls Governour of Gaunt; this was done by the meaner sort, but the richer and wiser chose 12 men whom they sent to the Earl at Bruges, who falling at his feet beseech him to take pity on their Town, like to be ruined by factious people. John Leon hearing of this, and that his case was desperate, if he should be seized on by the Earl, assembleth his white Caps together, and falls upon the Earls Palace full of wealth in the Suburbs of Gaunt, which they pillage and set on fire; the Earl highly displeased at this, resolves to raise an Army, and for that cause goeth to Terremond: Leon in his absence marcheth with his white-caps to Bruges, to whom the faint-hearted Townsmen surrender themselves, and opened their Gates; thence he marcheth to Dam, where he is received, and shortly after, as its thought, was poisoned: notwithstanding the death of their Captain, the White-caps labouring to draw all the Flemings to their side, went and besieged Hypre, where the Earle had some Companies of Foot, and Troops of Horse, which defended the Town a while, at last were forced by the Townsmen to yield, but Audenard held out against them. D. Philip of Burgundy fearing his own loss in these troubles of Flanders, if his father-in-law should be worsted by his people, goeth to his brother the French K. of whom he obtains leave to mediate a

*An. Christi.* peace between the Earle and his people, for this cause he goeth to *Tournay*, whence he sends to the White-Caps to lay down Arms, and then he would procure them a general pardon and act of oblivion, conditionally they would rebuild the Earles Palace at *Gaunt*; so Arms were laid down on both sides, and the Earle received with great joy into *Gaunt*.

In the mean while, *Oliver*, Cousin-german to *Roger* governour of *Gaunt*, who was killed, in revenge of his brothers death, took forty vessels of provisions going for *Gaunt*, which caused a war between the Gentry and commons of *Flanders*; the like commotion was beginning in *France*, for those of *Montpellier* killed the Kings receivers and collectors of Subsidies, and were taking up Arms, but the Duke of *Anjou* quickly suppressed them, and hanged up the chief mutiners, and laid a great fine upon the Town: then was Duke *de Berry*, the Kings brother removed from the government of *Languedoc*, and Count *de Foix* (to please the people) put in his place. This year died King *Charles*, having left three children, *Charles*, *Lewis*, and *Catherine*; Duke *d'Anjou* is made Protector, the young King being as yet but thirteen years old; the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Burbon* are made Tutors to the children.

## CHAP. XI.

A prosecution of the French History from the year 1380. till 1407. In which are interlaced divers passages of Italy, Flanders, Navarre, Afric, Britany, England, Scotland, Spain and Hungary.

*Charles* the sixth is confirmed in his Kindome by the Peers assembled at *Paris*; so are the Dukes of *Burgundy*, the Kings uncle by the father, and of *Burbon* by the mother, established governours to the children. That day the King was crowned at *Rhemes*, being to dine (as the custome was) at the Archbishopps house, a contestation arose between Duke *Anjou* and *Burgundy* about precedency, *Anjou* claiming it as governour of the Kindome, but *Burgundy* in respect of his Dutchy, and being Dean of the Peers of *France*. The King, to avoid further disturbance of that solemnity, ordered that *Burgundy* for that time should sit next the King; wherefore *Anjou* being set down first, *Burgundy* thrusts himself between him and the King. At this time the *English* had laid siege to *Nantes* in *Britany*, but having lost before it some prime Commanders upon the falling out of the Garrison, they raised the siege: the *Britons* being wearied with war, desire their Duke to make his peace with the French King, or else they would forsake him; whereupon he was forced to send Ambassadors to beg for peace, which he obtained, and swore fealty to the King, but would not acknowledge Pope *Clement*; so the *English* return home. *Anjou* the Regent of *France* did much favour Pope *Clement*, because he promised to give him the Kindome of *Sicily*, which depended on the Church; for his adversary Pope *Urban* had sent for the *Hungarian* to seise on that Kindome, and to revenge the death of his brother *Andrew*, murdered by his wife Queen *Jane*: but Pope *Clement* who had received *Avenion* from her, was willing to support her cause, therefore adviseth her to make Duke *d'Anjou* her son and heir, which she did: he to raise an Army, got the King to grant him Subsidies, which did much vex the people: so that at *Paris* they to mutiny, yet are appeased by good words, but finding no deeds, they fall upon the *Jews*, whom they plunder, and then upon the Kings collectors and receivers of his rents, whom they rob of all their monies, and burn their books of accounts: by this example, other Towns deny to pay more Taxes. *Languedoc* refuseth to receive the Duke of *Kerry* for their governour, and caused Count *de Foix* to raise an Army against him, which defeated some of the Dukes

Dukes companies, after which he adviseth them to submit to him for avoid-*An. Christi.* ing further troubles, which they did the more willingly, because he was the Kings uncle.

Pope *Clement* to strengthen *Anjou*'s cause in *Sicily*, imposeth a tenth upon the French Clergy, at which they storm, protesting both against him and his Cardinals, chiefly the *Sorbon*: *John Gerson* declaimed in the University of *Paris* against this Popes proceedings, which so angered *Anjou*, that he sent to apprehend *Gerson*, but the Schollers rescued him, upon this he retires to *Rome*, where he is entertained by Pope *Urban*; a trap was also laid to apprehend the Rector of the University, but he escaped; the Schollers grew so discontent, that multitudes of them forsook that University. Divers Ambassadors came to *Paris* complaining against *Clement* for upholding a schisme to the great hurt of Christianity, seeing *Urban*'s election was generally approved a more lawful then that of *Clement*: *Anjou* stood up, and maintained that *Urban*'s election was forced by the *Romans*, whereas that of *Clement* was peaceable. In the mean time, *Charles* whom the King of *Hungary* had sent with an Army into *Italy* against the *Venetians*, having made peace with them, goeth to *Rome*, where he is by *Urban* crowned King of *Sicily*; this *Charles* was descended from *Charles* the lame, and *Mary* his wife Queen of *Hungary*: he without great opposition, obtained *Sicily* and *Naples*, took Queen *Jane* and Duke of *Brunswick* her husband prisoners. *Anjou* in the interim tries all means possible to raise money, and imposeth in the Kings name a gabel upon the twentieth part of Merchants goods, which is generally refused: At last, as he was endeavouring by other means to raise money, a dangerous mutiny arose in *Paris*; some of the collectors are killed, the City Magazine broke open, and the people having armed themselves, they chain all the streets, open the prison doors, and let loose all the prisoners: The Bishop being fled, they broke open his prisons, and let out one *Aubriat* whom they make their Commander; he had been Provost of *Paris*, and done much good in repairing and building some publike places, but being accused of heresie, he was imprisoned by the Bishop: being now delivered unexpectedly, he promised the people that if they would return to their houses, he would the next day be ready to serve them; but knowing what danger there was in being Captain to a mutinous people, he stole away that night out of *Paris*: the like mutiny there was at *Rouen*, where the people made one *Gras* their King, commanding him to abolish all taxes and impositions whatsoever.

The *Parisians* seeing that *Aubriat* was gone, were advised by *John des Marais*, to send him with some others that were not criminals to the King to beg for pardon, which was assented to, and pardon granted conditionally that they paid sixty thousand Crowns, and that the authours of this sedition be put to death; *Marais* returns with this answer to *Paris*, onely he concealed the putting to death the incendiaries, some of which he caused in the night to be hung into the River, which made a new mutiny: hereupon the corporal punishment is put off, and the King is content with the sixty thousand Crowns. In this mean while Duke *d'Anjou* is crowned at *Avenion* by Pope *Clement*, king of *Sicily* and *Jerusalem*, then he goeth about the Towns of *Province*, desiring them to acknowledge him for their Lord, shewing that he was the adopted heir of Queen *Jane*, their lawful Countess; but when he saw them unwilling, he forced them, then marcheth into *Italy* with thirty thousand horse, not against Pope *Urban*, lest the Country should rise, but against King *Charles* at *Naples*, who forbore fighting with *Anjou*, purposely to weary his Army by delays: in the mean while *Anjou* dieth, some say by poison, so his Army without fighting, returns with his corps to *France*. King *Charles* reigned four years at *Naples*, in the interim King *Lewis* of *Hungary* dieth: the Peers of that kingdom call home King *Charles*, notwithstanding *Sigismund* the Emperours son had married King *Lewis* his eldest daughter: King *Charles* having

*An. Christi.* having left at Naples his wife and two sons, hastes to Hungary, where he is crowned, and shortly after murdered in the house of the Queen, widow of Hungary, who stormed that her daughter should be deprived of her inheritance : upon this *Sigismund* is crowned in Hungary, and *Ladislaus* the son of King *Charles* at Naples.

About this time a new war began in *Flanders*, upon the taking of the forty ships of *Gaunt* by *Oliver* Cousin to *Roger* who was killed : One *John Prumeau* gave out, that *Oliver* durst not seize on these ships without the Earle's command, therefore assembleth the *White-Caps*, and marcheth to *Audenarde*, and suddenly surpriseth it; the Earle hearing of this at *Lisle*, complains to the *Gantois*, that they had broken the peace made by the Duke of Burgundy; they answer, that he broke it first, by suffering *Oliver* to take their ships without reproof or punishment : the Earle willing to recover *Audenarde*, and to live quietly, agrees with the *Gantois*, that he would banish *Oliver*, conditionally that they banished *Prumeau*, which was done, and *Audenarde* restored again to the Earle, who presently sent to rebuild the demolished walls, and placed a strong Garrison in it : after this *Prumeau* is apprehended by the Earle's Cousin the Duke of *Brabant*, whom he sends to *Lisle* in chains, where he is beheaded, and his body broken on the wheel; the like end had divers others of *Bruges*, and elsewhere, who had animated the *White-Caps* : the *Gantois* fearing their turn would be next in these punishments, conspire unanimously against their Earle in defence of their lives and liberties; and to make sure work, they demolish the houses of the Gentry who favoured the Earle, they alter the form of government, and make new offices both for Civil and Military affairs; a war began, which lasted seven years, in which died above two hundred thousand men.

The *Gantois* understanding that the Earle was about to besiege *Hypre* which held with them, sent three thousand men thither, and withal nine thousand were armed to fall upon the rear of the Earle's Army, who was on his march with twenty thousand against *Hypre*, whilst they within should fall out upon the Vanguard : but the Earle having laid many Ambuscadoes, defeated the *Hypreans*, of whom two thousand and four hundred were slain, the rest fled, and so both *Hypre* and *Courtray*, are surrendered to him, who put to death seven hundred of the chief criminals in *Hypre*; and took two hundred hostages of *Courtray* : then he went to besiege *Gaunt*, which he could not so inclose, but two gates were free to receive supplies from *Liege* and *Bruxels* : the *Gantois* being no whit dismayed at the Earle's strength, send out a party by one of their gates which was not besieged, and went immediately to *Torremunde* which they took, this made the Earle raise his siege : but the *Gantois* shortly after received some losse, for two Captains with their forces marched out upon some design, one of them was assailed and defeated by the Earle, so that six thousand *Gantois* were partly slain, and partly burned in a Church, whither they fled; the other Captain not being able to help these by reason of the marshy ground between them. Hereupon the *Gantois* chose one General who should have absolute power, his name was *Philip Artenel*, because many Generals did oftentimes crosse one another; this *Philip* by the mediation of the Bishop of *Liege*, the Duke of *Brabant*, and *Albera* Count of *Henault*, endeavoured to make peace between the Earle and his subjects : *Philip* proffered to the Earle at *Tournay*, where the Assembly was kept, full power over the bodies and estates of his subjects to banish and fine whom he pleased, so that he would spare their lives; the Earle would not have his power confined, but would have all both men and women above fifteen years of age to come out of *Gaunt* onely with one garment apiece, and ropes about their necks, to be disposed as he pleased : *Artenel* acquaints the Citizens, that either they must suffer their throats to be cut, or else take up Arms to defend their liberties; for his part he was resolved to die in maintenance of their cause :

*An. Christi.* cause; whereupon they all agreed to take Arms : with this he chuseth out of the *White Caps* five thousand of the stoutest and strongest, with these he marcheth toward *Bruges*; they that remained were resolved, that if these five thousand were cut off, they would burn themselves and City, rather then yeeld to slavery : the Earle at *Bruges* understanding of *Artenel's* marching thither, flighting his small number, met him in a place disadvantageous to him, with his Army, which was defeated and driven back into the Town, whither the *Gantois* entered pell mell with their enemies : *Artenel* makes diligent search for the Earle, whom he meant to have used with all respect, and to have brought him to *Gaunt* with all possible honour, to induce him to shew mercy to his subjects; but the Earle hid himself in a poor house, and thence escaped to *Lisle* : *Artenel* gave charge that no hurt should be done to any strangers within *Bruges*, because he would not provoke forreigne Princes against him. After this he pillaged *Hypre*, and seized on the Earle's treasure, and divers Towns yeelded to him; its thought that now he had above a hundred thousand men in Arms, so that the Earle was forced to implore help from the French King, and acknowledgeth himself to be his vassal; the French were not unwilling to assist him (though he had hitherto befriended the English) because the *Flemings* made excursions upon the French borders; order therefore is given for taking out the sacred Standard, called the *Auriflamme* : this was of red silke interwoven with flames, it was of old sent from Heaven to King *Clouis*, to be carried in the wars against Infidels : this Standard was not to be used but in great necessity, and to be carried by some holy Knight, but afterward it was brought out upon all occasions, and therefore at last in a battel against the *Flemings*, it was lost, none knowing what became of it. This Standard being received by the King with great devotion from the Abbot, he gave it to one *Peter Villiers* to be carried; then having placed the reliques of the Martyrs on the Altar, he begins his march with a gallant Army through *Artois*.

The *Flemings* hearing of the French march, brake down presently all their bridges upon the River *Lis*, except one which they strongly fortified : the King sends the Constable *Clisson* with the Vanguard to gain the bridge, the *Flemings* being hardly pressed, were forced to break down this also; in the interim whilst they were skirmishing, a party of French in boats get over the River who charged the enemy in the Rear, whom they utterly defeated, and killed three thousand on the place; so the bridge was gained and repaired, and the whole Army got over. *Artenel* upon this, leaving a party to continue the siege of *Audenarde*, marcheth with sixty thousand against the French, and fights them; the fog was so thick that morning that scarce could any perfectly discern their next neighbours, till the *Auriflamme* was displayed, and then (if you will believe) the mist vanished : The French Army is divided into three battalions; that of the Kings is charged by the *Flemings*, hoping to take him prisoner, as the English did King *John*; but the other two battalions falling on the Flanks of the *Flemings*, did so presse them that their ranks were disordered, who both hindered and hurt one another, and so at last they are totally routed by the French; thirty thousand were killed on the place, and ten thousand in the pursuit; the body of *Artenel* was found yet breathing, who refused to have his wounds dressed, not desiring to live after the losse of his Fellow-citizens, so presently died, and his body was hanged on a gibbet.

The report of this defeat caused the siege before *Audenarde* to rise in haste; then *Dam*, *Bruges*, and other Towns yeelded to their Earle; but the French burned *Courtray*, because they found in their great Church the golden Spurs of the French Gentry that were killed in that place eighty years before : There were also found some Letters written from the mutiners of *Paris* to the *White-Caps*, which hastened the Kings return thither; by the way he stopped



*An. Christi.* at St. Dennis, to give thanks to God and the Martyrs for his victory, and then restored the *Auriflamme* to the Abbot; thence he marched through *Paris* with his Army, without taking notice of the Provost and Sheriffs that met him; having at last sung *Te Deum*, in *Nostre Dame*, he caused the Townsmen to assemble in one place, whom he environeth with his Army; then did the Chancellor upbraid them with their rebellions, and the King threatened to cut them all off, but his Uncles being there begged their pardons; the Townsmen on their knees cried for mercy, which they obtained, onely a fine was put upon them, and three hundred of the chief incendiaries were beheaded; the chains of the streets were carried into the Loure, and the King ordered that henceforth they should have no more Provost nor Sheriffs: but five years after, their privileges were restored, with a Provost and Sheriffs.

Shortly after this, the *Gantois* and *English*, who held for Pope *Urban*, enter into a league against *France*, and Pope *Clement*: *Urban* had granted to the King of *England* the tithes of the benefices within his kingdome, towards this war; eight hundred English horse, and ten thousand foot are transported into *Flanders*, who made war with divers parts of *Flanders*, and yet pretended they came to assist the *Gantois*; complaint is made against them, but no redresses: having taken *Bourbourg* and *Gravelin*, they sit down before *Hypre*, but hearing the French Army was coming, set the Suburbs on fire, and went their way towards *Cassel*, but could not stay to besiege it, because the Constable of *France* was drawing towards them with his Army, who pursues them to *Gravelin*, and thence to *Bourbourg*, where they are besieged, and forced to surrender, having leave to depart with their baggage. At which time *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders* died at *St. Omer*, and is buried in *Lisles*, his daughter *Margaret*, wife to *Philip le Hardy* Duke of *Burgundy*, is his sole heir, by which means *Philip* is now Lord of all *Flanders*, except *Gaunt*, which would not yet submit. Shortly after *Dam* is surpris'd by one *Arteman* a Captain of the *Gantois*, whilst the governour was gone to the Court. About *Limosin* also and *Poitou* there was a great insurrection of malecontents under one *Peter Bruiers* their Captain; these did much mischief till the Duke de *Berry* suppressed them in a battel, and hanged the chief incendiaries.

The French King having an intention a long time to invade *England*, prepared a great Fleet at the *Sluce*, which *Arteman* the *Gantois* Captain resolved to burn, but the plot was discovered, divers of the plotters were imprisoned and escaped, some were hanged. Then the French besieged *Dam* a whole month; at last *Arteman* within not able to hold out longer, got away with his forces in the night, the next morning the French enter, and having plundered the Town, utterly destroy it; then they fall upon *Zealand* with a Fleet, which they pillage for aiding *Gaunt*, so that they were forced to beg pardon and peace from the Duke of *Burgundy*, which was granted them. From the *Sluce*, where the French had built a Castle to guard the harbor, the King sends *John de Vienne* his Admiral with sixty great ships, to help the king of Scots against the English; this Fleet, with the Scots forces, burnt and spoiled many places in *England*; but upon a falling out between the French and Scots, the Admiral returned home, and told the King that he durst not stay long in *Scotland*, because the people banded against him, and that *England* was in a good condition to be conquered, because the D. of *Lancaster*, son in law to *Peter* k. of *Castile* (who was killed by his bastard brother *Henry*) was gone into *Spain* with the best souldiers, to settle his wife in *Castile*; for, saith he, The English can easily be conquered at home, but hardly abroad: upon this the French king, with the Duke of *Burgundy*, prepare twelve hundred sail to invade *England*; but Duke de *Berry* the kings other uncle was against this expedition, and dissuaded the king from venturing his person, wealth, and Nobility, upon uncertain success, besides that the English were all in Arms to resist his landing; upon this the voyage is put off, and the great Fleet dispersed without action. The

*An. Christi.* The next year *Lewis* Duke *Touren* the Kings brother, married with *Valentine* daughter to *John Galeacius* Duke of *Millan*; and shortly after the King went to Pope *Clement* at *Avenion*, where *Lewis* of *Anjou* (son to that *Lewis* who died in *Italy*) is crowned K. of *Sicily* and *Jerusalem*, purposely to cross Pope *Urban*, and King *Ladislaus* son to king *Charles* of *Naples*. *Languedoc* complains to the King against Duke de *Berry*'s exactions, therefore Count de *Foix* is made their governor, who married the King of *Navars* sister, whom he slighted, because her brother owed him a great sum of money, which either he would not, or could not pay, therefore sent her with her son to him back again, because she took it ill that her husband should prefer his bastard son to his legitimate son by her; when she came to *Navar*, and had acquainted her brother of her husbands bad conditions, he gives her son a bag of powder, which he wished him to bestow on his father, and that he would mix it with wine, for it would procure his love to his wife again: the young man simply carried the powder to his father, who finding it to be poyson, caused him to be put to death in a prison. This King of *Navar* was also extremely hated of his people whom he impoverished with continual exactions; hereupon he is one night burned in his bed, some say by accident, some say purposely; for being feeble with age and lechery, his body was anointed with certain unguents, and wrapt in a linnen cloth & put in *Aqua vite*, which presently took fire by a candle that was in the hand of one of his servants then by his bed, and so he was burnt, and within two dayes died: Count *Armignac* also died about this time as he was on his journey from *Italy*, with an Army of French sent to help the *Florentines*, who were like to be suppressed by the *Millanois*.

After the two Kings of *France* and *England* had made peace, and disbanded their Armies; many French souldiers who could not live but by the sword, assembled together, and made to themselves Commanders, then in companies dispersed themselves into divers Countries, forcing the Inhabitants by paying contributions to buy their peace of them. Count *Armignac* having raised a great sum of money, procures fifteen thousand horse and ten thousand foot of the *Bandito's* to accompany him into *Piemont* against the *Millanois*: *James Verme* the Duke of *Millans* General, shut himself up in *Alexandria*, not finding it time yet to fight this fresh enemy; who perceiving he would not fight, falls to plundering, and so being laden with store of wealth were marching away securely: *Verme* being advertised of this, chargeth them in the Rear unexpectedly, kills six thousand, and puts the rest to flight; *Armignac* is taken prisoner, and died presently after of his wounds; so *France* was quieted by the defeat of these unruly souldiers, yet some of them returning made new troubles, till they were all surpris'd and hanged, and the Castle of *Vantadour* in *Limosin* (which they had taken) surrendered. About this time the *Genoists* being much molested by the *African* Pirats, which they could not of themselves suppress, except they would neglect their trading with foreign Nations, wherein the greatness of their City consisted sends Ambassadors to the French king for aid against these Barbarians, alledging many reasons for their assistance, as the vicinity of *Liguria* to *France*, the greatness and wealth, and ancient glory of the French in subduing the enemies of Christ, and the danger that Christendome is in by the greatness of the Barbarians, and that the Ports, ships and wealth of *Genoa* was at the French service; besides, that the passage from *France* to *Africa* was short.

The motion was hearkned to by the French Gentry, the Duke of *Burbon* is chosen General; *England* is invited to joyn with the French in this honourable enterprize, which is willingly assented to by the English Gentry; great companies passe over to *France*, who being joyned together march over the Alps; at *Genoa* they finde a gallant Fleet of Ships and Gallies ready and well appointed, among which were divers Venetian vessels which they had sent thither for this expedition, joyning their forces against the common enemy, though

*An. Christi.* though otherwayes these two Cities were mortal enemies. All things being ready, they set sail for *Afric*: when they came within sight of *Tunis*, the royal City of *Barbary*, they see the Barbarians in battel array, who strove to keep the Christians from landings; but the *English* Archers made the Barbarians give way, so that our Army landed: the Barbarous king sent some of his forces into the City, the rest entrenched themselves, who refused to fight, though often invited, some light skirmishes there were between us and the *Numidian* horses; but when we could not draw the King to fight, though we burned and ruined all the houses thereabout, at last we resolve to lay a strait siege to the Town, which stoutly held out, notwithstanding the King durst not adventure to relieve it, but kept himself close in his Camp. The Commander of the Town perceiving his own danger desired a parly, which would not be granted, except he came out himself; this he would not yeeld to, fearing he might be kept as a prisoner; yet some *Genuos* who spoke the *African* tongue, are sent to parly with the Town-governour, who wondered that the *French* and *English* should come to vex *Afric*, which had never done them hurt; it was answered, that the hurt *Afric* had done to *Genua*, and the Isles of *Italy*, was done to them, being all Christians and of the same faith. At last they come to an accommodation, the King sends to the Christian Army his Ambassadors, where it is agreed that the *Africans* shall not henceforth offer to molest any of the Christian Territories, that they should set at liberty all Christian prisoners, and pay ten thousand Ducats; and so the Christian Fleet returneth to *Genua*, and each man thence to his own home.

*France* is now quiet, but in *Britany* begin new troubles: for the two sons of *John Montfort* being ransomed by the Constable of *France* a *Britain*, and the eldest of the two married to his daughter, gave occasion to the Duke to suspect that the Constable aimed at the Dutchy for his son in law; therefore one day invited the Constable to a feast, and after dinner pretending to shew him a new house that he had built, detained him there as a prisoner, at which the king was highly displeased; the Duke excused himself, that he did this to be revenged of some affronts done him by the Constable, being a *Britain* born: this answer did not content the king; but the Duke of *Burgundy* mediated for this Duke of *Britany*, who let the Constable go, after he had parted with a great summe for his ransom, and divers of his lands. After this, *Peter Craon* the kings favourite, is banished the Court, upon some discontent taken against him by the kings brother the Duke of *Orleans*. *Craon* suspecting the Constable, that this affront he received by his procuring, watched him one night as he came late from the kings lodgings, fell upon him, and so wounded him that he left him for dead, yet afterward recovered. The king was so enraged at this *Craon*, that he caused his goodly house at *Paris* to be pulled down, and turned to a Church-yard; and suspecting that the Duke of *Britany* had animated *Craon*, he raiseth an Army against him; the Duke sent to excuse and clear himself, but could not be heard: therefore the 25. of *July*, in the extreame heat of the year, he takes horse and marcheth before his Army with a thin cap on his head; his Physicians and Peers dissuade him from going in such dangerous weather, but in vaine: he was scarce gone a mile from the City *Mans*, the Metropolis of *Maine*, when he was taken with such a phrensie, that he killed two of those that were next him, and hurt divers others, laying about him, till he fainted and fell from his horse; and is carried back to *Mans*, where he at last was cured, but not totally: the Duke of *Britany* with his wife and children, and chiefeest goods, had taken shipping at *St. Mallo* for *England*, but understanding of this accident, returns home again.

About this time the people began to murmur against the Constable, that he could not have gathered together so much wealth as he had, without robbing them: wherefore he to stop their mouths, reconciles himself to the D. and so all former

*An. Christi.* former wrongs are forgot and forgiven. The King being returned to *Paris*, the government of *France* by general assent of the Peers is conferred upon the kings uncles, though the D. of *Orleans* the Kings brother laboured much for it; but he was too young for that employment. Many Playes and Masks were performed at Court to drive away the kings melancholy, in one of the Masks, the king with five others disguised themselves in the shape of *Lions*, their linnen covers were pitched, that the threds which resembled the hairs of wilde beasts might stick the faster; as these were dancing the round, and singing nuptial songs in honour of a great favourite lately married, the Duke of *Orleans* stood so near to with his torch, that a spark fell on the king which set all on fire; every one running to save the king, left the others to shift for themselves, two of which were burned presently, and died with horrible skritchies, two others died. the next day: the fifth was saved by water and wine flung upon him; the Dutches of *Berry* instantly stayed the fire on the king by the long train of her gown which she flapt upon it; the Duke of *Orleans* excused himself, that what he did, was against his will: but this accident increased the kings disease, for whose recovery many vows and prayers are made to God.

*Clement* the Antipope being dead, Ambassadors are sent from the kings uncles to the Cardinals of *Avenion*, to desire that no Pope should be chosen till the schisme were first remedied; they all swore, that if he at *Rome* would lay down his Pontificat, he should do the like at *Avenion*, that was to be chosen: *Pierre de la Lune* a *Castilian* is chosen, to whom the kings uncles repair, beseeching him to make a peace in the Church, and that he would submit himself to a general Council; he answered, that he would not leave the helm of Christs ship, so long as he lived, and so the Princes returned without effecting any thing, which much discontented the king; but the Pope, to please him, authorizeth him to raise a tenth from the Clergy, this made him more odious; whereupon command is given that no Bulls shall be received from him, and that no Clergy man should acknowledge him, and with an Army is sent to besiege him; whereupon he removes from *Avenion*, and returns home to *Spain*, having the Eucharist carried all the way before him, that none might hurt him.

Great debate arose about the kingdome of *Arragon*, between divers Princes descended from king *Peter* by different branches: Duke of *Anjou* laid claim to it in right of his wife *Johant*, the daughter of *John* eldest son to king *Peter*; all parties were contented to submit themselves to the arbitration of some holy and learned men, these adjudged the kingdome to *Ferdinand* youngest son to the king of *Castile*, and *Leonar* daughter to *Peter* king of *Arragon*, whose eldest son was dead, having left one son named *John* of *Castile*. The kings of *England* and *France* meet near *Calis*; where a match is concluded between the daughter of *France*, and the king of *Englands* son.

After the Christians were defeated at *Nicopolis* by the Turk, young *Sigismund* king of *Hungary*, who had escaped, returned into his Country: he it was for whose cause king *Charles* of *Naples* was murdered by one *Nicon* at the command of the old Queen, both which were shortly after put to death by *Charles* his friends. This *Sigismund* returning, found that in his absence the people had been much wronged by the Nobility, wherefore he cut off the heads of two and thirty of his chief Lords; some think this execution was done before the battel of *Nicopolis*; but he was so hated for this, and slighted for his overthrow at *Nicopolis*, that two of the chief Lords of *Hungary* conspired against him, and took him prisoner, committing him to the custody of *Nicon* two sons, hoping they would keep him sure: then they sent to *Ladislaus* king of *Naples* to accept of the Crown, but he remembering the disaster of his father *Charles* made no haste thither; in the interim the widow of *Nicon* intreats her two sons to set free the king, lest *Ladislaus* obtaining the Crown might revenge his fathers death on them; so *Sigismund* is set free; who instantly cuts off the heads of those

*An. Christi.* two Lords who apprehended him. About this time *Wenceslaus* the Emperor being deposed, *Robert* his successor made war with the Duke of *Millan*; by whom he was defeated and driven back to *Germany*: two years after the Duke of *Millan* died.

1405. During the French kings indisposition, there arose a great debate between the Dukes of *Orleans* and *Burgundy* about the government of *France*: shortly after, *Philip le Hardy* Duke of *Burgundy* died; but the feud between these two houses grew hotter, so that *Paris* was much disturbed with the two factions, which came to that height, that one night the Duke of *Orleans* as he went late from the Queens lodgings, was murdered in the streets, by some that fled immediately into the Duke of *Burgundies* house; the Duke himself fled to *Arras*, and from thence into his own Country, where he found an Army ready, which he conducted against the *Ligeois*, who would not receive their Bishop.

## CHAP. XI.

The History of England, interwoven with some passages of France and Scotland, from the year 1301. till 1350.

1301. A Peace being made between *France* and *England*, King *Edward* the first makes a third expedition into *Scotland*, where he did nothing but besiege *Sterling* three moneths, which in the end was surrendered upon composition; but the King kept not his promise: The Scots complain to the Pope of King *Edwards* usurpation over them, being hitherto a free Kingdom; the Pope writes to the King to forbear meddling any way with *Scotland*, as belonging to the Church: The King desires his Holiness not to trouble himself in this matter, alleading that *Scotland* appertained to the Crown of *England*. Then being furnished with men and money, he makes a fourth journey to *Scotland*, where he had fealty again sworn to him; then returns home, and removes the Exchequer from *York*. *Sr. Nicholas Segrave* being accused by *Sr. John Crownwel* for treason, offers to justify himself in a duel, which the King denied him; whereupon he leaves the Kings camp, and goeth beyond sea to fight his enemy, for this he is adjudged guilty of death, but by the intercession of the Peers is pardoned: then the King makes inquisition for intruders on other mens lands (this writ was called *Trailbaston*) for batteries, ravishers, murthers, &c. He terrifies divers of the Nobility for their former insolencies, and got great summes of them: He got the Pope to untie the Covenants made between him and his subjects, after he had sent him some golden vessels for his Chamber. But when he heard that *Bruce* was king of *Scotland*, he was startled, and begins to comply again with his people: *Pembroke*, *Clifford* and *Percy* are sent with an Army to relieve his Wardens of *Scotland*; he follows after with another Army: three hundred sons of Earls, Barons and Knights, assemble to wait upon the Prince in this expedition, all whom he girds with a Military belt, as the King did likewise the Prince, whom then he Knighted: then the King made a solemn vow to be revenged on *Bruce* for the death of *Cumin*.

1307. The thirtieth penny of the Clergy and Laity, and the twentieth of all Merchants being granted, the King makes his last expedition into *Scotland*, before whose arrival, *Bruce* was defeated by the frauds and family of *Cumin*, assisted by the English forces that were sent before: *Bruce* escapes, his brother and some Lords are found out and executed; the wife of *Robert Bruce* is sent prisoner to *London*: the Countess of *Buchan* is put into a woddan Cage, and hung out upon the walls of *Barnwick*. The King calls a Parliament at *Carlisle*, in which he yeelds to the Pope the first fruits of all Churches within his

Dominions,

*An. Christi.* Dominions, and the Pope granted the King all the Tenths of those Churches for two years. In the mean while King *Bruce* recovers new Forces, assailes the Earl of *Pembroke*, and defeats him; then three dayes after chases the Earl of *Gloucester* into the Castle of *Ayer*, where he besiegeth him; but the siege is raised by King *Edwards* forces, who at last, having shed so much blood, dieth of a Bloody-flux, upon the sands of *Scotland* by *Burrough*, by which we may see, that the Kingdoms of this world are built upon sandy foundations; he reigned four and thirty years seven moneths, his age was sixty eight: his successor was *Edward* the second, on whom was conferred the Earldome of *Cornwall*, *Edmund* King *Richards* son of the *Roman* being dead without issue; but this Earldome young King *Edward* bestowed on *Pierce Gavestone*, whom he recalled from his banishment, notwithstanding his father had forbid him, being he had corrupted his youth, and caused this young Prince to commit divers riots, for which Prince *Edward* had been a while imprisoned by his Father.

King *Edward* the second presently upon his entring into his Government, displeased his people by recalling *Gavestone*, and bestowing on him not only *Cornwal*, but also the Bishop of *Chesters* goods, who had been his Fathers Treasurer; him he arrests, imprisons, and bestowes all his estate upon this *Gavestone*, because the Bishop had complained against the Princes riots to his Father; then makes a new Treasurer, and removes all his Fathers Officers without consent of his Council; he calls a Parliament at *Northampton*, in which a fifteenth of the Clergy, and a twentieth of the Laity are granted him. After his fathers Funerals, he is married to *Isabel*, *Philip* the Fair's Daughter; the Nuptials are performed at *Bulloign* with great solemnity; in the second year of his reign he is crowned, which was like to have been hindred by the Lords, because he suffered himself to be totally ruled by *Gavestone*, who corrupted both him and his Court with all manner of excess and debauchery; but he promised the Lords, that he would perform their desires the next Parliament. Shortly after his Coronation, all the Knights-Templars in *England* are arrested and imprisoned. *Gavestone* is prosecuted by the Lords, whom he slights and nicknames. A Parliament is called, *Magna Charta* confirmed, ill Counsellors and strangers are removed, the Kings power restrained, and *Gavestone* banished into *Ireland*. These Articles are ratified, and Excommunication denounced against such as should contradict them, by the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, lately recalled from his banishment; but the King shortly after calls home his minion *Gavestone*, whom he marrieth to his Niece, sister to *Gilbert de Clare* Earle of *Gloucester*, and daughter to *John de Acre*, and bestowes on him the Jewels of the Crown, which he sold to strangers, and conveyed away much treasure.

The Barons threaten the King with a war, unless he put away his minion, who therefore is banished again, and threatned with death, if ever hereafter he be found within the Kingdom; he shelters himself a while in *Flanders*; but finding no security there, nor elsewhere, returns to the King, who joyfully receives him; the Lords upon this combine against him, an Army is raised, the King is besought to deliver up *Gavestone*; but he conveys him to *New-Castle*, where understanding of the Barons Army, they both remove by Sea to *Scarborough Castle*, where the King leaves him guarded, and goeth himself to *Warwickshire*; *Scarborough* is besieged, *Gavestone* is taken, whom the Lords (notwithstanding the King solicited for his life) condemned him to the block, and beheaded. After this the Lords threaten the King, that unless he would ratifie the last Articles, they would force him: The Prelates, with the Earl of *Gloucester*, and two Cardinals sent from the Pope, labour to reconcile the King and Lords; the Cardinals are checked for intermeddling with business concerned them not; yet the Lords yield to deliver up to the king the Treasures and Jewels which they took from *Gavestone*, so that he would grant

*An. Christi.* grant their Petitions. About this time Queen Isabel at Windsor is delivered of a son named Edward; a Parliament shortly after is called, in which the King complains against the Lords, and they against him; at last they are persuaded to crave pardon of the king, which they obtained, and their Articles are confirmed.

In this mean while king Bruce grows strong in Scotland, which he had almost totally regained, and with an Army invades England; king Edward raiseth an Army of one hundred thousand against him: Near Sterling upon the River Bannock, Bruce with thirty thousand horse and foot encountered king Edward; the Scots had digged trenches which they pitched full of sharp stakes, and covered them over with hurdles and turf, by which the English horse were confounded, and their whole Army utterly defeated; here were killed divers Lords and Earls of England, seven hundred knights, Esquires and Gentlemen, of common Souldiers ten thousand, many prime men taken prisoners, but the king escaped back to York, who desired to be revenged on the Scots, but could not; the English borderers run all away, leaving their country to the mercy of the enemy. This war was accompanied with Famine, Dearth, and Pestilence, so that a Parliament is called at London to abate the price of Victuals; the Dearth notwithstanding lasted three years, by reason of excessive rains, and a murrain among the Cattel, both the King and Lords were pinched in their diet. About this time the Earle of Lancaster's wife is taken out of his house at Canford in Dorsetshire, by a deformed Dwarf, claiming her for his wife, and by her the Earldomes of Lincoln and Salisbury; it's thought the King was an actor herein, for which the King was taxed, even by a woman disguised on horse-back, who rode into Westminster-Hall, when the king was at dinner there on Whitsunday, and delivered him a Letter, wherein his evil courses were reproved; she confessed she was hired so to do by a knight, who likewise justified his fact.

Not only did Robert Bruce overthrow the king twice, and obtain the Crown of Scotland, but he sends over his brother also with an Army into Ireland, a great part whereof he conquered, and made himself king, which he held three years. K. Edward it seems intended to have had the Earl of Lancaster murdered by the Scots, as appeared by a Letter sent from him to the Scots k. which was intercepted, and the messenger executed. The Scots plunder as far as York: Hereupon a Parliament is called at London, money and men are raised, but the English Army mutined and came to nothing; Barwick is surrendered to the Scots; K. Edward beleaguers it; but the Scots to raise the siege, enter with new Forces upon England, and had almost surprized the Queen near York; the Earl of Lancaster withdraws himself from the siege of Barwick, because the king of Lancaster withdraws himself from the siege of Barwick, because the king promised the Towne to Hugh Spencer his minion; this Spencer with his faction so exasperated the Lords, that they took up Arms against the king, and forced him to banish them both. Ten thousand English are defeated again by the Scots, who killed 3000 of them; wherefore K. Edward concludes a Truce with them for two years, and returns with dishonour home. The Queen is denied lodging in the Castle of Leeds, belonging to the Lord Badlesmore, as she was going towards Canterbury, whereupon the King besiegeth and takes it, hangs up the Keeper, Badlesmore's wife and children are sent to the Tower, and all his estate seized on; then the king raiseth an Army against the Barons, whereof divers submitted themselves to him, chiefly the two Roger Mortimers; The Lords that held out are discomfited by the kings Forces; the Earl of Lancaster with many other Lords are taken and executed. Presently upon this the king marcheth with a mighty Army into Scotland, whence he was forced for want to return without blowes; the Scots pursue him, and had almost taken him, as they did his treasure with the Earl of Richmond; so having wasted all as far as the walls of York, return richly laden into Scotland. Sir Andrew Harkley, who for taking Lancaster prisoner at Borough-Brigs, was made

made Earle of Carlisle; upon suspicion for combining with the Scots, is drawn, hanged, and quartered for treason, at London. *An. Christi.*

And now the king and his Clergy fall asunder about the Bishop of Hereford, whom he arrested and accused of high-treason for aiding the rebellious Lords; he refused to answer without leave of the Arch-bishop of Canterbury; his fellow-Bishops then took him from the Bar, and delivered him to Canterbury; afterward being taken and convented, the Bishops with their Crosses erected took him away again from the place of judgement, and excommunication denounced against those that should lay hands on him; but the king finding him guilty, seizes on his estate. In this mean while the French king seizes on all the king of England's Territories there, for omitting to come over when he was summoned, to do his homage: The Spencers held it unsafe for him to go over in person, his kingdom being so discomposed; therefore the Queen, sister to the French k. is sent, who negotiates so with her brother, that all quarrels should end, if king Edward would give to his son Edward the Duchy of Aquitaine and Earldome of Ponthieu, and send him over to do homage, which was assented to; so the Prince is sent over with the Bishop of Exeter, who perceiving shortly after his arrival some plots between the Queen, the Prince, and Roger Mortimer lately escaped out of the Tower of London, acquaints the king therewith; he upon this sends presently for them; but they neglecting to come, are proclaimed enemies to the king, and order taken at all the Ports, that they shall not be suffered to land; The Queen, upon suspicion that her brother would betray her to the Spencers, who had bribed his Counsellors thereto, withdraws to the Earl of Henault and Holland, whose daughter Philip she contracts with her son the Prince; by the Earls means she is transported over into England, lands at Harwich, with the Prince, the Earle of Kent the kings brother, Pembroke, Mortimer, John the the Earl of Henault's brother, and 2500 Flemings; she is received by divers of the discontented Lords, and by the Bishops of Hereford and Lincoln.

The king upon this craved aide of London, but found none; Death is proclaimed to those that assisted the Queen; all her adherents are commanded to be destroyed, except the Queen, Prince, and Earle of Kent; a thousand pounds proffered for Mortimer's head. So leaving the City, he departs towards the west, where he is slighted, without hope of any aide; the Queen marcheth with her increasing Army to Oxford; the Bishop of Hereford preached, and concluded from his Text, 2 King. 24. My head aketh, that the aking and sick head of a kingdom was to be taken off. The Queen proffers 2000 pound for young Spencers head, and proclaims, that the Souldiers should not take from the subject any thing without ready money, otherwise to be punished with the loss of a finger, hand, or head, if the value of the thing taken came to three pence, six pence, or twelve pence. The king finding no aide, and being persecuted by the Queen, upon suspicion that he would have murdered her, secures old Hugh Spencer in the Castle of Bristol, and commits himself to the Sea, lands in Wales, and is hid in the Abbey of Neth: the Queen is met at Gloucester with aide from the North, then wins the Castle of Bristol; Hugh Spencer Earle of Winchester, is taken, drawn, hanged in his Coat-Armour, headed and quartered; at Hereford she proclaims, that if the king would return and rule the State as he should, he should be restored to all again; but he came not; wherefore the Prince is made Guardian of the kingdom, hath fealty sworn to him; a new Chancellor and Treasurer are chosen.

The king is at last found, and by Henry Earl of Lancaster, brother to the late Thomas, is conveyed to the Castle of Kenilworth; the younger Spencer now Earle of Gloucester, is drawn and hanged on a Gallows fifty foot high, and had the like execution which his father had; the Earl of Arundel, with two Barons, and others that adhered to the king, were executed at Hereford; Baldock the Chancellor, being a Priest, was pined to death in Newgate. The Londoners force

*An. Christi.* force the Maior, who held for the king, to take their part; all prisoners are let out; the Tower is taken, and *John Weston* the Constable put to death; the Bishop of *Exeter*, the kings Treasurer, is murdered: the Queen returning with the Prince to *London*, call a Parliament, in which the King is deposed, as unfit to govern, Prince *Edward* is elected; *Canterbury* preacheth on this Text, *Vox populi vox Dei*; the Queen seems discontented at this election; the Prince to comfort her, swore he would not accept of the Crown without his fathers consent; wherefore three Bishops, two Earls, two Abbots, and four Barons, three Knights of each Shire, and Burgeses of every City and Borough are sent to the imprisoned King to require the renunciation of his Crown, which he assented to, having excused his misgovernment, and thanked them for electing his son. After this he is removed to the Castle of *Corff*, where he was murdered by his Keepers, who through a horn, which they put in his fundament, pierced his guts with a burning spit, having reigned nineteen years and about eight moneths: After his deposing he was the Founder of *Oriel* Colledge and *S. Mary Hall* in *Oxford*; he had two sons, *P. Edward*, and *John of Elham* Earl of *Cornwal*, who died young in *Scotland*; his daughter *Joan* married to *David* Prince of *Scotland*, and *Elianor* to the Duke of *Gelders*: Some write that he was carried up and down from one Castle to another, that his friends might not find him, and all plots disappointed, and that he was murdered in *Barkley* Castle; but I will not strive about circumstances.

King *Edward* the third being but fourteen years old when he began his reign was thought unfit as yet to manage the kingdom; but the Queen and *Robert* and seven Lords are chosen to govern the kingdom; but the Queen and *Robert* Lord *Mortimer* ruled all. The strangers that came over with the Queen under the Earl of *Henaults* brother, are sent to joyn with the English Army at *York* against *Scotland*, but a quarrel arose between the English and the strangers, so that nothing was effected, and the Scots Army returned. The next year the Marriage with *Philippa* of *Henault* is solemnized, and a Parliament held at *Northampton*, in which a dishonourable peace is concluded with *Scotland*, and their homage released; *Jane* the Kings sister is married to *David* son to *Robert Bruce*; *St. Roger Mortimer* is made Earl of *March*, the Instrument or Charter of the Scots fealty is restored: In the Parliament held shortly after at *Winchester*, *Edmund* Earl of *Kent* this young Kings Uncle, for intending to restore the King his brother, is condemned; he stood four hours on the Scaffold for want of an Executioner, at last one was found.

The next year a Parliament is held at *Nottingham*, in which the Queen loseth her great Joynture, being three parts of the kings Revenues, and is put to a pension of a thousand pounds *per annum*. *Mortimer* is accused for procuring the late kings death, for receiving a bribe of 20000 pounds from the Scots by which the Army escaped at *Stanhope-Park*; for making a dishonourable peace with *Scotland*, for being too familiar with the Queen, and for the death of the kings Uncle; for these he is condemned, drawn, and hanged at *Tyburne*, where his body hung two dayes as a spectacle. After this, king *Edward* being summoned by *Philip Valois* now k. of *France*, goeth over to do his homage for the Dutchy of *Guien*; by this he acknowledged the right of his Competitor for that kingdom, because king *Charles* being dead without issue male, and the Crown by the Salique Law fell to *Philip Valois* the Cousin-german, and not to king *Edward*, though neerer, and the Nephew of the said king *Charles*, as we have already shewed in the History of *France*. King *Edward* then did his homage, by presenting himself in person in the great Church of *Amiens*, in a crimson Velvet Gown embroidered with Leopards, having his Crown on his head, a sword by his side, and golden spurs on his heels; king *Philip* sat in his Chair of estate in a violet-coloured Velvet Gown embroidered with golden Lillies, his Crown on his head, and Scepter in his hand, in the midst of his Peers; king *Edward* by command of the Chamberlain of *France* puts off his Crown,

crown, sword and spurs; then kneeling on a crimson velvet cushion before king *Philip*, promiseth to be loyal as Duke of *Guyen* and Peer of *France*, to King *Philip*; the Chamberlain pronouncing the words of homage before, and putting his hands together between the French kings hands; then king *Edward* riseth, and kisseth the French king (as the Lord of the Fee) in the mouth.

After this, k. *Edward* returns to *England*, and aids *Edward Baliol* son to *John*, who 32 years before had usurped the crown, and was deposed. This *Edward Baliol*, whilst the young k. *David Bruce* was in *France*, got himself to be crowned king at *Scone*, having first defeated the Bruceans, by the help of those Scots that were for *Baliol*; yet this new King is driven out of *Scotland* by the Bruceans. King *Edward* comes with a great Army, and after three moneths siege takes *Berwick*, and defeats the Scots army at *Halidown-bill*, who came to raise the siege; here were slain 7 Earls, 900 Knights and Baronets, 400 Esquires, and 32000 common souldiers, (the Scottish writers mention but 14000.) The Lord *Seaton*, who was governour of *Berwick*, conditions with king *Edward*, that if rescue came not by such a day, he would render him up the Town, in assurance of which he delivers him two of his sons; but when king *Edward* saw the Scots forces come before the day, he summons *Seaton* to render the Town presently, or else he should see his two sons executed: The Lord being doubtful what to doe, is encouraged by his wife rather to lose their two sons, then his faith to his Prince, charity to his Country, and dignity of his Family. And so the two young Gentlemen were hanged.

K. *Baliol* being settled in *Scotland*, at *Newcastle* doth homage to the king of *England*, for which the Nobility of *Scotland* are discontented, and threaten to drive him out: So that k. *Edward* was forced to raise vast sums of money upon the English to maintain the Scottish war, and three years together goeth thither in person with new Armies, being desirous to subdue *Scotland* before he attempted *France*. A Parliament is held at *London*, wherein the *Flemings* are invited hither to make their Cloth, because no Wooll was to be transported beyond seas; this was to draw the *Flemings* to side with him against the French: It was also enacted, that none should wear other then English cloth, except the King, Queen, and their children: Tenth, Fifteenth, the Churches treasure for the Holy war, Subsidies of wools, and the goods of *Lombards*, *Clunaeques*, and *Cistercians*, are given to the king towards this expedition into *France*; the Emperour and divers German Princes side with him. Then the King with his Queen and Children go over to *Flanders*, thence enter *France*; the two Armies look upon each other, nothing was acted, only a Hare started before the head of the French army, which occasioned a new knighthood, call'd knights of the Hare: other particulars we have mentioned in the French story.

K. *Edward* after a years absence returns into *England*, leaving the Queen in *Brabant*: He lands about midnight at the Tower, which he found unguarded. He calls a Parliament, and receives great subsidies of Clergy & Laity, and hath loans of many wealthy men: For his mighty subsidies, divers pardons are granted, and the great Charter confirmed. The English are worsted at *Lisse*, but the French fleet is beat at sea. *Tournay* is besieged by the English; A challenge is sent by k. *Edward* to k. *Philip*, but rejected. After *Tournay* is besieged 3 months, by the mediation of *Philippa*'s mother (a Nun) truce is concluded for one year. So Q. *Philippa* after 3 years absence returns to *England* with the king: he had two sons in *Flanders*; *Lionel D. of Clarence*, and *John* (born at *Gant*) *D. of Lancaster*.

The king complains that he was forced to raise the siege from *Tournay*, for want of money, for which he accuseth *John Stratford* Archbishop of *Canterbury*; he by his letters (for he durst not come to the king in person) clears himself, and accuseth the king of tyrannie and oppression, chiefly of the Clergy, divers of whom he had imprisoned: the king is forc'd to colloque with his Parliament for more supplies of monies, & confirms divers grants, which when his turn was served, he revoked. Shortly after this, *John of Montfort* being in competition



*An. Christi.* with Charles de Blois about the Dutchy of Britany, craves aid of king Edward, as we have shewed before. Many bickerings there were between the French and English in Britany, till a Truce of three years was concluded.

K. Edward after this drives k. David out of Scotland into the Islands. William Montacute Earl of Salisbury conquers the Isle of Man, whom k. Edward stiled king thereof. A Society of the knights of the Round-table, in imitation of k. Arthur is designed, and a chamber of 200 foot round erected at Windsor for the same: then began the Order of the Garter at Windsor, occasioned by the garter of the Countess of Salisbury, taken up by the king in dancing with her, the number of the knights are 26 besides the king; these held a yearly feast at Windsor, 10 where the same king Edward founded a Church, and gave to certain Priests and Prebends large stipends to serve there; he ordain'd also 12 aged decayed Gentlemen to be there maintained, to pray for the prosperity of the Knights.

In a Parliament at Westminster complaint is made against the collation of Benefices on strangers, therefore a Letter is sent to Pope Clement the 6. from the Lords and Commons, seconded by the Kings Letters, by Sir John Shordich a civil Lawyer, desiring the Pope to recall all such collations and reservations; all Patrons also are prohibited to grant such collations under pain of imprisonment or death; in this Parliament Archbishop Stratford upon submission is reconciled to the King, and P. Edward about the age of 13. is created P. of Wales, a tenth is granted by the Clergy, and a fifteenth by the Laity, then general musters are taken through the whole kingdom; then k. Edward goeth over to Flanders, James Arteville is employed by him to induce the Flemings to revolt from their Earl, but he had his brains beaten out at Gaunt for his labour, and so the kings design failed him. And now the wars break out again between France and England; K. Edward left the Lords Percy and Nevil Wardens of England, and takes with him the young Prince being aged 18 years, and an Army of 4000 men at Armes, 10000 Archers, besides Welsh and Irish; he lands in Normandy, and divides his men into three battails, one to march on his left hand along the sea-coast, the other on the right conducted by the two Marshals, and himself in the midst with the main Army; the Earl of Huntington is Admiral of the Fleet, he first sacks Caranton and burns it, having found the heads of Bacon, Percy, and others there massacred by K. Philip, then he takes Lo. Cain, and other Towns, then he goeth over the river Some and defeats the French which were sent to hinder his passage, being 1000 French horse and 6000 foot; the English Army consists of 30000. the Prince hath the Vanguard, wherein were 800 men at Armes, 2000 Archers and 1000 other; the second battel was committed to the Earls of Arundel and Northampton, the Lords Rosse, Willoughby, S. Alban, Multon, and others, wherein were 800 men at Armes, and 2000 Archers, the third battail was led by the K. having 700 men at Armes and 2000 Archers; the French Army consisted of 60000. whereof there were above 3000 Barons, Knights and Gentlemen, besides 1000 more of the Earle of Savoy, the Vanguard he commits to his brother Count de Alanfon, the Rear to the Earle of Savoy, the main battel he leads himself; Alanfon contrary to the k. of Bohemia's advice would not suffer the Genoves Infantry (which consisted of 1500 Cross-Bows) should make the first front, therefore by changing the feat of the Army he caused disorder and discontent, besides a sudden rain fell which dissolved their strings, and made their Bowes useles.

King Edward from a Windmill-hill perceiving the enemy disordered, sends to charge the Genoves, who presently recoil; Alanfon with Savoy, Lorain, and the Delphin de Viennois, through the Genoves rush furiously upon the English battel where the Prince was; the French king seeing his brother like to be worsted by the English, makes up to disengage him; the fight grew hot and doubtful; King Edward is sent for to come up with his aide, but refused, when he knew the Prince was alive, for he desired that the honour of the day should be his; the French Kings horse being slain, and he convey'd out of the field, the

the rest were disheartned, and so the English got the day, 30000 were slain, of which were 15000 Earles, Barons, and Gentlemen; other particulars we have touched in the French story: the next morning King Edward sent out three hundred Lances, and two thousand Archers, to discover what was become of the enemy, who found some Troops coming to the Army, being ignorant of what had hapned; these are also defeated. The English Forces sent to aide Montfort against Charles de Blois, prevailed, and took Charles prisoner with some Lords and Knights. That year also King David of Scotland is overthrown by the Queen of England and her forces; fifteen thousand Scots were slain, the Earles of Fife, Menteth, Murrey, Sutherland, with the Lord Douglass, the Arch-bishop of Saint Andrews, and others are taken prisoners. Henry of Lancaster with an Army of six thousand pillageth the countrey of Poitou. King Edward besiegeth Calice. The French King having punished his Treasurers and Collectors, raiseth a great sum of money, and with it an Army, but could not raise the siege from Calice, and so breaks up his Army and returns to Paris; two Cardinals are sent to make peace, but could not: Calice is surrendered, which continued with the English two hundred and ten years after; so a Truce being made for some moneths, King Edward returns triumphing home.

These wars were accompanied with great plagues and famine, so that in a short time half of the people died. King Edward goeth over again to Calice, understanding it was like to be betrayed by the Governour for 20000 crowns, Monsieur de Charney sent the money before, and he comes after with some Forces, the money is received, and the King goeth out with his Forces to meet him; a sharp encounter there was, the King was disguised, and twice beaten down by one Riboumont, whom afterward he took prisoner, and for his valour rewarded, and set him free without ranfome. After this the King got the Castle of Guisnes neer Calice for a sum of money, and shortly after the French King died.

## CHAP. XII.

A prosecution of the English story from the year 1350. till 1399.

The Spaniards had taken some English Ships laden with wines in the River Garonne, wherefore King Edward seized on some Spanish Ships laden with cloath, as they were passing from Flanders. The Monies here are abated in weight, and yet pass according to the former value; which caused much murmuring among the people. The Staple of Woolls is withdrawn from Flanders, and set up in England, because the young Earl Lewis on whom King Edward would have bestowed his daughter, was got away and married to the Duke of Brabant's daughter. A Parliament is held at Westminster, in which Weares, Mills, and other stoppages of Rivers hindring boats, are commanded to be removed, all common Whores are enjoyned to wear hoods striped with divers colours, and the wrong sides of their garments outward. Henry Lord Derby is made Duke of Lancaster. Charles de Blois is set free to procure his ranfome of 40000 Florens. The Pope labours to make peace between the two Kings, but could not, because the French king would not part with the Homage due for the Dutchy of Aquitain. The Prince of Wales sets forth with 300 sail for Gascoign, with 1000 men at Armes, 2000 Archers, besides the Welch foot. Three moneths after K. Edward passes over to Calice with another Army, where he was met with 1000 German & Flemish Mercenaries, his Army consisted of 3000 men at Armes, 2000 horse-Archers besides the foot; London sent 300 men at Armes and 500 Archers; but this Army returned without effecting any thing, for the French king would not fight.

Mm 2

After

An. Christi.

After this, King Edward is invited over into France by the King of Navar, whom the French king had imprisoned, as we have shewed; for this expedition fifty shillings is granted to the king upon every sack of Wool for six years: but before he goeth to France, he marcheth with an Army to recover Berwick which had been taken by the Scots whilst he was last at Calis; he regains the Town, and Baliol resigns his share of Scotland to him: In the interim Prince Edward wasteth much of the French Territories, so that the French king is forced to raise another Army, which encounters with the English near Poytiers, and is overthrown by them; the particulars we have set down in the French story: the French king is brought over to England, and lodged in the Savoy: King David of Scotland is ransomed: Paris rebels against the Dolphin, causeth him to release the king of Navar; the Provost assaults the Dolphins house with three thousand Artificers; he rusheth into his chamber, and slew two Marshals of France, and withall takes and puts on the Dolphins hat edged with gold on his own head, and sets his own party-coloured hat on the Dolphins head, and so he goeth out, causing the two dead bodies to be trailed along the streets for the people to gaze on: then he writes to the other Cities of France to joyn with him, and to take his livery as the Dolphin had done; but they refused: the Dolphin in the mean while escapes from Paris, raiseth an Army, and quells the Parisians. These troubles hindred the Kings 20 ransome.

1361.

King Edward having kept the French king four years prisoner, and finding that there was no haste to ransom him, and that he would not yeeld to do homage for the kingdom of France, resolves to take possession by the sword; therefore he passeth over to Calis with a Fleet of eleven hundred sail; he divides his Army into three battalies, one he commits to the Prince, another to the Duke of Lancaster, the third he leads himself; he marcheth to Paris, and took divers Towns by the way; the Dutchie of Burgoyne redeems it self from spoil for two hundred thousand florins of gold: the Dolphin was now at Paris which he had mastered, king Edward could not get him to fight, wherefore he returns to Britany, where having refreshed and increased his Army returns to Paris, which he found so well fortified by the Dolphin that he could do no good on it: at last being terrified with thunder, vows to make his peace with France, which was done, and king John ransomed: king Edward calls a Parliament, in which the accord is ratified by the Estates. The Priors aliens have their land restored, which were held from them during these wars. Another great plague followed, in which with many other Noble-men, died the D. of Lancaster a good Patriot, whose daughter and heir was married to John of Gaunt, who thereby is made D. of Lancaster: the Prince marries the Countess of Kent, daughter to Edmund brother to Ed. 2. Aquitaine is bestowed on the Prince, who with his wife and Court goeth over to live there; his son Lionel Earl of Ulster is sent into Ireland with fifteen hundred men, and is made Duke of Clarence; king Edward keeps the day of his birth, and fiftieth year of his age, as a Jubilee, and pardons divers offences; he causeth the Common-pleas which before were in French to be turned into English; he makes many good Laws against gluttony, drunkenness, excess of apparel; he makes Clergy-men his chief officers, because he relied upon their sanctity.

He was visited shortly after by John the French king, who died here, as likewise by the king of Scots and the king of Cyprus. Prince Edward after his going over to Burdeaux, assisted Peter of Castile against his brother Henry, whom the French aided; he beat the French, established Peter in his Throne, and returned victorious to Burdeaux; but not long after Peter is overthrown and killed by his brother, so the Prince is deceived of the great rewards promised by Peter; hence the souldiers murmur for want of their pay, to pacifie whom the Prince is forced to raise taxes on the Country of Aquitaine; complaint is made to Charles the fifth the French king, who summons the Prince to appear before

An. Christi.

before him at Paris, contrary to the Articles of agreement between the two Kings, the Prince refuseth to come, hereupon most of his Country revolt to the French, so that what king Edward with much blood and treasure had been getting in two years, is lost in one. After this, the French king sends a Navy to trouble the coast of England: king Edward sends John of Gaunt with an Army unto Calis, which marched without any great opposition to Burdeaux to the Prince his brother, wasting the Country as he went: another English Army is sent unto St. Omers under Sir Robert Knowles, depopulating all in his way till he came to Paris; he took some Towns in the Earldome of Anjou, which again revolted to the French upon a defeat given to the English by king Charles.

King Edward upon this disorder, calls a Parliament, in which the Temporality grants him a Subsidie of fifteen thousand pounds, but refused by the Clergy, wherefore the king in anger removes them from their places of trust and profit: the Prince being sickly returns home to England, with his wife and son Richard, born at Burdeaux, and resigns the Duchy of Aquitaine to his father; the Duke of Lancaster being left behinde, and having buried his wife two years before in the great sickness, in which also Queen Philippa died, he marrieth Constance, eldest daughter to Peter king of Castile, by whom hee had the empty Title of King of Castile and Leon, but their daughter Katherine afterward became Queen of Castile and Leon, being married to Henry 3. who was in possession: her posterity were kings of Spain. Edmund Earl of Cambridge married Isabel king Peters youngest daughter; Lionel Duke of Clarence marrieth the Duke of Millans daughter, and shortly after died: the other two returned to England with their wives. Rochel is besieged by sea and land; the Earl of Pembroke is sent with forty ships well manned and monied, but he is defeated there by the Spanish Armado, and taken prisoner; King Edward sent forth an Army to recover these losses, but was beat back by contrary winds; nine hundred thousand marks spent in this expedition. Shortly after this the Duke of Lancaster lost his Army among the mountains of France, before he came to Burdeaux: the next year he returns, having effected nothing, but lost all the Towns of Gascoigne, except Burdeaux and Bayon.

King Edward being supplied with a new Subsidie, desires to end the quarrel with France by Treaty; two years are spent about this at Truges, but nothing done; for the French demand Calis, and great sums of money, which could not be granted: In the mean time the Staple is removed from Calis, because of the danger of Merchants goods. Another Parliament is called at Westminster; the King calls for money, the people for redress of abuses in his officers, and that the Duke of Lancaster, Lord Latimer the Chamberlain, Alice Pierce the Kings Concubine, and some others might be removed from Court, to which the King assented. Another Jubilee is kept in this Parliament, being the fiftieth year of the Kings reign; another general pardon is granted, onely William Wickham Bishop of Winchester is excepted by procurement of the Duke of Lancaster; but this Jubilee is turned to sorrow by the death of the Prince, upon which the excluded parties return to Court, the Speaker of the House of Commons la Mare is committed to perpetual imprisonment at Nottingham at the suit of Alice Pierce, who now took upon her to sit and intermeddle in the Courts of Justice; the Duke of Lancaster now manageth all: but to prevent mischief, Richard of Burdeaux in Parliament is created Earle of Chester and Cornwall, and then Prince of Wales; lest John of Lancaster should supplant him; the Earl of March is commanded by Lancaster over to guard Calis, which he refuseth, therefore his Office of Marshal is given to Sir Henry Percy. Prince Richard is set in the Kings seat in Parliament by Lancaster, who demands of the people more Subsidies, which is denied till la Mare the Speaker be enlarged: then the Duke demands aid from the Bishops,

*An. Christi.* Bishops, that is also refused till the Bishop of Winchester be restored.

At this time John Wickliffe, being deprived justly of his Benefice in Oxford by the Archbishop of Canterbury, did begin to inveigh against the pride and wealth of the Clergy and Monks, which hath at most times been a pleasant doctrine to covetous mindes; he got presently store of disciples, afterward called *Lollards*, professing poverty, going bare-footed, and meanly apparelled; he taught, that in times of necessity Lay-men might seise on the Churches and Monks revenues. These opinions he preached boldly, being supported by Lancaster and Piercy, wherefore he is cited to answer in *Pauls* before the Bishops: at the day appointed he is accompanied by Lancaster and the Lord Marshal, who animated him against the Bishops, some harsh language fell out between the Bishop of London & Piercy, because he commanded Wickliffe to sit down before his Ordinary, Lancaster took the Marshals part, who threatened to pull down the pride of the Bishops, and to pull London out of the Church by the hair of his head; this so exasperated the Londoners, that they vowed rather to lose their lives, then suffer their Bishop to be thus used; the more incensed they were against the Duke, because he threatened to take away the Maior of London's power. The next morning the Citizens assemble, and being animated by the Lord Fitzwater (whom at first they suspected to be their enemy) take Arms, assail the Marshals Inne, broke open the gates, and set a prisoner at liberty, but found not the Marshal, who with the Duke dined that day at the *Savoy*, which by the multitude is assailed; the Duke and Piercy escape by a boat, and complain to the Princess, who then was at *Hennington* near *Lambeth*, with the young Prince: a Priest for speaking against *Peter la Mare* was wounded to death; the people thinking he had been the Marshal disguised; the Bishop of London was fain to go himself and appease the people, who upon his exhortation, and being the time of Lent, forbore to assault the Dukes house, whose arms with the Marshals they hung up reversed in sign of treason: they also were perswaded by the Princess to make their peace with the Duke, which they assented to, if he would have permitted the Bishop of Winchester, and *la Mare* to come to their answer. They sent also to the sick King, excusing this tumult, and that it was raised upon information that the Londoners should lose their liberties, which the King assures them was never in his thoughts, but rather to enlarge them.

The Parliament considering the Kings wants, grants him a Subsidie, which was to be committed to certain Earls and Barons to see it issued; every one above the age of 14. years was to pay four pence, only Almesmen excepted; every beneficed Parson was to pay 12. pence, and other religious persons four pence the head. The Maior and Aldermen are brought to the King at *Shene*, and commanded to crave pardon of the Duke for their offences; they again excuse their innocency, and promise to bring in the malefactors who should make satisfaction, but for all this they were put out of their places, and others put in their room: in the interim, the Kings Concubine and other his attendants, perceiving him dying, snatcht what they could, even the rings from his fingers, and pack away, leaving him alone with a poor Priest, who willed him to ask mercy for his offences, and to remember his Saviour, which he did, and so died at *Shene* near *Richmond* the sixty fourth year of his age, having reigned fifty years and four months. He founded *East-minster* an Abbey near the Tower, a Nunnery at *Detford*, Kings-hall in *Cambridge*, an Hospital at *Calice*, *St. Stevens* Chappel at *Westminster*, with the endowment of three hundred pound *per annum* to that Church, besides his augmenting of *Windsor* Chappel, with provision for the Church-men and poor Knights; He enlarged also *Windsor* Castle, and that of *Quecnborough*, with the Fortifications of *Calice*: his wife built *Queens Colledge* in *Oxford*, who bare him seven sons, five of them had issue; *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, *John* Duke of *Lancaster*, *Edmund* Earl of *Cambridge*, Duke of *York* afterward,

afterward, and *Thomas* of *Woodstock*; she had five daughters, four lived to be married; *Isabel* the eldest to *Ingelram* Earl of *Soissons* and *Bedford*, *Joan* to *Alphonso* 11. King of *Castile*, *Mary* to *Montfort* Duke of *Britany*, and *Margaret* to *Hastings* Earl of *Pembrook*. *An. Christi.*

*Richard* 2. son to the black Prince succeeded, being eleven years old. In the first year of his reign, King *Charles* of *France* assisted by the *Spaniard*, ranfack and burned *Plymouth*, *Dartmouth*, *Portsmouth*, *Rye*, and other Maritime Towns; but they were driven to their ships by the Earls of *Cambridge*, *Buckingham* and *Salisbury*. *Alexander Ramsey* in the night with forty other Scots, scaled the walls of *Berwick* Castle, and took it, intending also to surprize the Town; but were prevented by the Townesmen, who hewed away the staves of *Draw-bridge*, which fell into the ditch, and so the Scots were imprisoned; the *English* besiege the Castle with ten thousand men, at last it was with much difficulty yeilded, *Ramsay* onely was pardoned for his valour. Shortly after the *French* land again, who spoil *Dover*, *Winchelsea*, *Hastings*, and *Gravesend*, and return home with great booty: To be revenged of these wrongs, a Parliament is called, a Subsidie granted of four pence by every man and woman above fourteen years of age, (but the levying of this caused much trouble) eight thousand men are sent over into *France* who spoil all in their way till they come to *Britany*, where they were kindly received by the Duke *John Montfort*. Upon the payment of the foresaid Subsidie, a dangerous rebellion began, which was promoted by *John Wall* a factious Priest, who told the meaner sort of people that they were the sons of *Adam*, and had as great right to the wealth of the land as the chief Lords thereof; whereupon multitudes of the baser sort both in the City and Country flock together, who make *Wat Tyler* a Taylor their Captain; *Wall* the Priest, *Jack Straw*, *Jack Shepherd*, and others are made their directors; they march towards *London*, rifling and pulling down the Lawyers houses, and force the Gentry either to flye or joyn with them; they beheaded *St. John Cavendish* chief Justice of the Kings-bench, and *John* of *Cambridge* the Prior; causing the Covent to surrender up their Charters granted to them by *Canutus* their Founder. They require of the king being then in the Tower, to come and speak with them, who went as far as *Gravesend* with his chief Lords; but fearing the unruliness of that mad rout, ventured no further, but returned to the Tower: the next day they came to *London*, and if the gates had not been opened to them, they threatned to burn *Southwark*, so they are let in, feasted, and rich gifts presented to them to pacifie their fury; they rifled and burned the *Savoy*, *John* of *Gaunts* house, killed all his officers, robbed the Innes of Court, burned their Law-books, and sacrilegiously rifled the Churches; they robbed all strangers about *London*; and open all the prisons. *Wat Tyler* caused the head of his old Master, a grave Citizen, to be struck off, for some correction he received of him for his offences when he served him, his head was born before *Wat* upon a Lance: they grew to be sixty thousand in number, and affrighted the king, as they lay at *St. Katherines* near the Tower.

The next morning the king goeth to *Mile-end Green* to speak with the Rebels; in the interim *Wat Tyler* enters the Tower with forty more, robs the kings mother and broke her head, and beheaded *Simon* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, because upon the beginning of this commotion he had imprisoned *John Wall*. At *Mile-end Green* they desire the King, that they and their posterity might be made Free-men, which the king granted, and gave them his Banners for their safe conduct, and withall pardons them; this promise the king performs by instruments in writings; but *Wat Tyler*, with twenty thousand, resolves first to ranfack and burn *London*, and so they come to *Smithfield*, the king repairs thither promising them pardon and liberty; *Tyler* demands the kings sword from the Esquire that bare it; the Esquire told him, that the kings sword should not be given to a knave; whereupon *Tyler* swore to have his head off before he did

eat

*An. Christi.* eat and drink : *John Hadley* Maior of *London* then with the King, drew his sword and cut *Tyler* in the head, and felled him to the ground ; upon this, the rest resolve to be revenged for their Captains death : the Londoners to save themselves and the King, sent him an Army of eight thousand men ; before they gave the charge, the King desires the Rebels to submit, or else to redeliver his Banners, pardons and manumissions, which being in scorn redelivered, the king in their view caused them to be cancelled and torn, which so discouraged the rout, that they ran all away, the chief of which were by their companions delivered to justice afterward, who with fifteen hundred more were put to cruel deaths.

1385. After this, the king married *Anne* sister to *Wenceslaus* the Emperour ; then calls a Parliament, in which his two uncles, *Edmund* of *Langley* is made Duke of *Tork*, and *Thomas* of *Woodstock* Duke of *Glocester* ; *Henry* of *Bullingbrook* son to *John* of *Gaunt*, is made Earl of *Derby*, *Edward* Plantagenet son to *Edmund* of *Langley*, is created Earl of *Rutland*. At this time the king was misled by his favourites, *De la Pool* the Chancellor, whom he made Duke of *Suffolk*, and *De Vere* Earl of *Oxford*, and Marquess of *Dublin*, whom he would have made Duke of *Ireland*, if his Lords had consented thereunto : he caused his cousin Sir *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, son to the daughter of *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, to be proclaimed heir apparent to the Crown, but he was afterward slain in *Ireland* by the Rebels. The king now slights his Nobility and their counsel, and intended to surprise the Duke of *Glocester*, with the Earls of *Warwick* and *Arundel* at a banquet, but was prevented by the Maior of *London*, and afterward in Parliament, they were so strongly guarded, that he could not seize on them : *De la Pool* demands four fifteens for the king, which is denied by the Parliament, who declare, that as the king once a year may call a Parliament, so the Members thereof may break up and depart, if the king absent himself for forty dayes together ; they demand also *la Pool* to prison for his wicked counsels, and require an account of the kings revenues how they were wasted ; the king requires fifty of their choicest men to be sent him to consult with, which is refused, shewing that publike affairs must be handled publicly in Parliament : the king at this was so incensed, that he swore he would rather subject himself to *France* then to his own subjects ; the two Lords which were sent to him, namely, the Duke of *Glocester*, and *Thomas Arundel* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, so qualified the king, that he returns to his Parliament, and then was *De la Pool* condemned, fined and imprisoned for cousening the King, to whom all his lands are given, and twenty thousand marks besides, his Chancellorship taken from him, and bestowed upon *Canterbury* ; thirteen Commissioners are appointed to examine the Kings officers concerning their behaviour, this the King swears to allow ; all that should persuade the King to the contrary, should be executed as Traitors : so a Subsidie of one half fifteen is granted.

The Parliament being ended, *La Pool*, and *De Vere* Duke of *Ireland*, with divers others are released by the Kings and at *Nottingham* the Kings uncle *Thomas* of *Woodstock*, and *Thomas Arundel* Archbishop, are pronounced by the kings Judges guilty of High-treason : the Nobility petition the king that he would ratifie his former oath, and thrust his evil Counsellours from him, which he refused to do : hereupon the Lords raise a strong Army, which these evil Counsellours perceiving, perswade the king to surrender *Calice* to the French, whereby he shall reconcile himself to *France*, and shall master his Lords, who otherwise will master him ; but the king would not hearken unto this counsel, yet endeavours to curb his Lords, by commanding the Maior of *London* to raise him a speedy Army of fifty thousand men ; but the wiser Londoners would not yeeld that they should take Arms against the kings faithful Lords, who advised him to nothing but what tended to his and his kingdoms happiness : hereupon the king relents, and sends to his Lords, acquainting them

them that he would call a Parliament, in which his favourites should be brought to answer to their accusers, and to be punished, if guilty : upon this the Lords disband their Army, which the King perceiving, caused *Robert de Vere* to raise five thousand men for his own defence ; this made the Barons jealous, therefore they renew their strength, and so encompassed the Duke, that he was forced to swim his horse over the *Thames*, and so escaped into *France*, where five years after he was slain by a wilde Boar in hunting, whose dead body was by the kings command embalmed and brought over, his Funerals were solemnyzed with all magnificence fit for a Prince. The Lords executed some of his chief servants, and dispersed the rest of his guard, when he was gone over the *Thames* ; then they conducted their Army to *London*, where they were bountifully entertained. Shortly after the Lords are admitted to confer with the King, a Parliament is summoned ; the kings wicked Counsellours and Judges are condemned of High-treason, *John* Earl of *Salisbury* and Sir *Nicholas Brembre* lost their heads, *Tressilian* the chief Justice was hanged at *Tiburn* ; the other Judges were spared upon the Queens importunity, but banished.

The truce between *England* and *France* being near an end, the French Admiral is sent into *Scotland* with a thousand of the French Gentry and Nobility, and two thousand Arms ; these were slighted by the Country people who loved not wars, but were entertained by the Scots Army, which consisted of thirty thousand, these march into *England* wasting all before them ; but hearing that the King was marching towards them with sixty thousand Archers, and eight thousand men at Arms, they went over the mountains into *Wales* using there all kinde of hostility, as king *Richard* used the like in *Scotland*, having sacked and burned some of their chief Towns. When the Scots Army returned home, the Country people were mad at the French for coming thither, knowing that *France* had engaged *Scotland* in these wars to serve their own turns, and not for the good of *Scotland* ; whereupon they strip the French of their horses, arms and money, and so sent them home ; the Admiral and some other honourable Personages they kept as pawns, till satisfaction was made for their losses in this war. The French king sent the money that was demanded, and so the Admiral, Barons, and Gentry are dismissed.

The French king pretending to conquer *England*, rigs out twelve hundred ships with a formidable Army ; king *Richard* prepares to welcome him with a hundred thousand fighting men. The French Army is accursed by their own Country-men for their plunderings as they marched ; and when they came to the Low-countries, for want of food they sold their arms, horses and cloaths, for their numbers were so great, and the Duke of *Berry* the kings uncle, who liked not this expedition, was so slow in coming, and the French were grown so odious for their outrages in those Countries, that this great Army dissolved and came to nothing.

After this the Scots invade *England*, king *Richard* prepares to go against them ; but by the mediation of foreign Princes, a truce for three years is concluded between *England*, *Scotland* and *France*, and afterward enlarged to four years more : and now king *Richard* having made peace with his neighbours, sends *John* of *Gaunt* his uncle with an Army into *Spain*, to demand the kingdom of *Castile* in right of his wife *Constance* eldest daughter to king *Peter* ; in this expedition the Duke of *Lancaster* carried himself so bravely, that the king of *Spain* married the Dukes eldest daughter by his said wife, and gave him eight waggons laden with gold, and a yearly pension of ten thousand marks ; and then the Duke married his youngest daughter to the king of *Portugal*, who had aided him in these wars, and then returned home with wealth and honour. In this interim the king and Pope quarrelled, and then it was in Parliament enacted, that the Popes authority should here cease, and no more





## CHAP. XIII.

The history of Scotland from the year 1306. till the year 1377.

1306.

**R**obert Bruce having made his peace with the Pope for killing *Cummin* in the Church, got himself to be crowned at *Stone*, but he had hard beginnings; for he was twice defeated by the *Cummins*, assisted by the English, so that he was forced to hide himself divers months together in the mountains and Islands, having only one friend to accompany him; in the mean while his brothers and friends were searched after and betrayed, most of them were put to death, his wife was apprehended by the Earl of *Rosse*, and sent into *England*: but when all his enemies thought he had been dead, he suddenly appears with a considerable strength, and takes in *Carick* his own Castle, now possessed by the *English*, whom he puts all to death; from thence he goeth to *Ennerneffe*, and takes that Castle also: The report of this made great commotions in *Scotland*, so that multitudes being discontented with the English government, flocked to him, and now he hath a considerable Army, with which he marcheth Northward, and demolisheth all the Castles there, that they might not be any more shelters for his enemies, and that he might not weaken his Army by putting garrisons there. *John Cummin* Earl of *Bachan* hearing of Bruce his success, raiseth an Army of Scots and English, and marcheth towards Bruce; but finding how resolute the Bruceans were, and that he could not confide in his own Army, because many favoured Bruce, he makes a truce with him, in the interim sends for more forces out of *England*.

Shortly after King *Edward* dieth, and king Bruce falls desperately sick, whereupon *Cummin* raiseth an Army, hoping that either Bruce was dead, or unable to fight, and therefore a fit time to set upon his forces; but he knowing how needful the presence of a Commander was in an Army, causeth himself to be set on horseback, though unable to sit but as he was upheld by two of his servants; this sight so encouraged his souldiers, that they fought desperately, and defeated *Cummin's* Army near *Ennerbury*. Shortly after Bruce recovered his health, and led his Army into *Argile*, which he plundered, and drove *Alexander* Lord thereof into *England*, where he died in great want. *Galloway* also is subdued by King *Robert's* brother *Edward* Bruce. The report of Bruce his victories drew King *Edward* 2. of *England* with his Army into *Scotland*, which was increased by the Scots that adhered to *England*, but this great preparation came to nothing, for the English for want of provision were forced to retreat, King *Robert* having removed all the corn and cattle thereabouts to places of safety. The next year Bruce having regained the Forts which the English held in *Scotland*, he invades *England* with an Army, and returned without opposition laden with spoil; after this *Perth* is taken, and the walls demolished by King *Robert's* *Rosburgh*, *Edinburgh* Castle, and other strong holds, with the Isle of *Man* are surrendered. The English that were in *Sterling* Castle, being besieged by *Edward* Bruce, capitulated to surrender within a year, if no supply came from *England* in that time, which was assented to by *Edward*, for which King *Robert* was angry, yet yielded to the conditions that he might not dishearten his brother. In the mean time King *Edward* of *England* provides an Army of one hundred thousand men, consisting of English, Scots, French, Flemings, and Hollanders: The Scots Army under Bruce was thirty thousand, these pitch their camp near the English by *Bannockburn*, two miles from *Sterling*, before the battel the English send eight hundred horse towards *Sterling*, which were encountred and defeated by five hundred Scots horse under *James Douglas*: the next morning is appointed for the main encounter, the Scots are divided into three battels, the right wing was led by the Kings brother, the left

by

by *Randolph*, and the main battel by the King himself, the particulars of this fight we have shewed in the English story, only here is one passage not touched there, to wit, that the English perceiving afar off upon the mountaines the Scotch Carriages with great store of cattle, and servants that attended on the Army, supposed fresh forces had been comming to assist the Scots; this conceit, after the overthrow they had in the ditches, so disheartened them, that they betook themselves to a disorderly flight, in which multitudes were killed and taken; so great was the loss, that for three years after the English were quiet, though provoked divers times by the Scots incursions upon *England*, 200 of the English Nobility and Gentry were slain, about as many more taken prisoners; the King escaped by means of the Earl of *March* into *Dunbar*, and from thence to *Barrick*, whom *Douglas* pursued with four hundred horse, but could not overtake him; in this battel four thousand Scots were slain, of the English fifty thousand; *Sterling* Castle, according to promise, is surrendered.

About this time *John Monteth*, who for betraying *Wallis* was made Governor of *Dunbritton* Castle by the English, intended by surrendring that Castle to King *Robert*, to have surprized him, for he had had a great many English in a low wine-cellar, who should have suddenly seized on the King at dinner, and transported him to *England* in a ship which they had ready for that purpose; the plot was discovered to the King by a Lock-smith; at the day appointed the Castle is surrendered, and by *Monteth* the King is invited to dinner, who desired first to see what store of wine was in the Cellar, after some tergiversations used by *Monteth*, the cellar-door is broken open, and the English Souldiers brought out, who having confessed the plot, were put to death, and *Monteth* imprisoned, but his life spared, because he was allied to some great men, whom the King at that time would not offend. The next Spring *Barrick* is taken by the Scots, having been twenty years in the English possession; then a Parliament is called at *Ayer*, in which the Kingdom is confirmed upon *Robert's*, and because he had but one daughter, to avoid more controversies about the title to the Kingdom, it was decreed that *Edward* the Kings brother, after his decease, should succeed, and his children; but if he should die childless, that then *Mary* the Kings daughter and her posterity should inherit, therefore they think of providing a fit husband for her.

After this, *Edward* Bruce is sent over to *Ireland* with an Army, where he is made King, and presently subdueth *Ulster*, then marcheth with his Army through the West of *Ireland*; an Army is sent thither from *England*; King Bruce goeth himself into *Ireland* with another Army to aide his brother, who was already defeated and killed by the English before he could come to help him. King *Edward* of *England* understanding that king Bruce and much of the Scottish strength was in *Ireland*, sends an Army into *Scotland*, which was defeated by *Douglas*, Governor of the *Marches*; this Land-Army miscarrying, the English Fleet land their Sea forces, and infest the coast; the Earl of *Fife* with five hundred horse went to encounter them, but seeing the English stronger then he thought, was retreating, but being met by the Bishop of *Dunkel* with sixty horse, was encouraged by him to return against the English; and with that the Martial Bishop takes his Lance, puts spurs to his horse, and with his company falls furiously on the English, whom he routed, many of whom by pressing into the boats, were drowned about five hundred; this Bishop *Sinclair* ever after was called the Kings Bishop. That Summer the English besiege *Barrick*, and the Scots march as far as *Tork* wasting all before them; the Archbishop of that place raiseth an Army of Priests, Artificers, and Husbandmen, all which were overthrown by the Scots; the Archbishop with a few more escaped; this was called the white battel, because in it so many Priests were slain. King *Edward* hearing of this defeat, raised his siege from *Barrick*, and returned with his Army into *England*, and then a short truce was made between the two Kings.

King

An. Christi.

King Robert after this calls a Parliament, in which he wills the Nobility and Gentry to shew by what evidences they held their Lands; at this they were much troubled, most of them having lost their evidences in the late wars; therefore suddenly they all stood up in Parliament, and drew their swords, crying out that they had their evidences in their hands; the King at this was very angry, yet smothered it, till he found a time to revenge himself, which shortly after fell out, for many of the Lords being guilty, and fearing the Kings wrath, conspire to betray the kingdom to the English; the King hears of the plots, divers Letters are found to that purpose, whereupon the plotters are apprehended, a Parliament called, and the Letters produced, so all of them are condemned of High-treason, among whom was *David Brechen* the Kings sisters son; many were grieved at his punishment, because of his blood, youth, courage, and strength of body, who had done good service in the Holy-war, and because he was no actor in this plot, but onely concealed it.

About this time came the Popes Legats; upon King Edwards procurement, to mediate a peace between the two Kingdoms, which when the Scots would not yield to, they are excommunicated, who to shew how little they regarded this excommunication, follow the Legats as they were returning into England with an Army, spoiling all in their way with fire and sword; King Edward in requital of this wrong, marcheth into Scotland with an Army, but provisions failing them, they were forced to return, for King Robert had conveyed all provision into Garrisons and the mountaines; the English in their return spoil and burn some Monasteries; the Scots follow and destroy all as far as York, so that K. Edward hardly escapes, his Army being defeated, so the Scots return with rich spoils, and King Edwards Treasure. After this, the Scots send away two Embassadors, one to the Pope to appease his anger, which was quickly effected, when he understood that without ground King Edward the 1. had begun this war in claiming superiority over Scotland, which was a free kingdom: the other Embassador was sent to France, to renew the old League, which was also done, and withall it was agreed, that if any controversy should arise about the Title of the Crown, the Parliament should decide it, and whom they elected the French king would main-  
taine.

About this time, one *Hanton* an English Gentleman, for commending King Robert Bruce, was hurt by one *Spencer*, whom the next day he killed; and with that fled into Scotland, where he was rewarded by King Robert with large Territories, and made a Peer of the land, from him came the family of the *Hamiltons*. King Edward of England being murdered, and King Robert growing old, a Parliament is called, in which King Roberts young son is confirmed his successor, to whom *Robert Stuart* the Kings Nephew by his sister was to succeed, if his own son should die without issue; and to avoid all future quarrels about the Crown, *James Douglas* is sent to *John Baliol* in France with some presents, to the end he might resign his title to the Crown, which he did willingly, acknowledging the wrong he had done in accepting that Crown; and withall highly commends King Robert Bruce.

King Edward the third of England sends Embassadors into Scotland to conclude a peace; but the Scots perceiving some fraudulent dealing, instead of making peace, proclaimed war with England: *Thomas Randolph* and *James Douglas* are sent into England with twenty thousand horse without foot, that they might run through the Countrey without impediment; King Edward provides an Army of sixty thousand Dutch and English; *Carlisle* and *Newcastle* are guarded to keep in the Scots from passing the river, but in vain, for they passed the river where it was fordable; the two Armies were within three miles of each other eight dayes together, before either knew of it, by reason of stormes, rain, and overflowing of the Rivers, onely the English were alarm'd divers times in the night by the Stags running in herds to and fro, which

An. Christi.

which they thought had been the enemy; at last the English found that the Scotch Army was pitched on the side of a hill, from which they could not persuade them to come down into even ground; but one night the Scots perceiving the English Army careless, *Douglas* is sent with two hundred choise horse, which got through the Army even to the Kings Tent, and had cut two cords thereof; but the Alarm being suddenly given, the Scots returned safe to their own Camp, having killed three hundred of the enemy; the English expecting hourly when the Scots would give onset, at last they understood that *Douglas* with all his forces were marched back into Scotland, the English resolve to return home likewise; and not long after Embassadors are sent from England to treat with the Scots for a perpetual peace; in the interim a truce is concluded for three years.

The next year, in a Parliament at *Northampton* peace is made with the Scots, the Articles we have mentioned in the English story. King Robert having celebrated the marriage of his son with the king of Englands sister, and being now aged and sickly, he commits the Government of the kingdom to *Tho. Randolph* his sisters son, and *James Douglas*, and betakes himself to a private life, then he makes his will, in which he names *David* his son his successor, being now eight years old, and next to him *Robert Stuart*; he exhorted his Lords to mutual love, and wished them rather to send yearly Governours unto the Islands called *Hebrides*, then to appoint one Lord over them, because there would be less corruption, and more quietness; likewise that they should not in their wars with England hazard all upon one battel, but rather tire them with alarms and skirmishes; and lastly he forbids them to make long peace with England, lest for want of Military exercise they grow either careless and effeminate, or else fall out into intestine quarrels; he recommends also to *James Douglas* his Vow which he had made for an Expedition into the Holy-Land, which by reason of his age and troubles he could not perform, therefore wisheth him to carry his Heart to *Jerusalem*, there to be interred, which *James* undertook the next year with a company of resolute young Gallants, who joyn themselves with the king of Arragon being then ready for the same Expedition; in this war against the Sarazens he did good service, but at last rushing too desperately upon the enemy near an Ambush, he lost his life; King Robert was dead a year before this Expedition, Anno 1329. the four and twentieth year of his Reign.

*Randolph* Earl of *Murray* is made Protector, as the king had ordained; he so cleared the kingdom of thieves, High-way-robbers, and idle wanderers, that the country-people could securely keep open their doors, and leave their rural utensils all night in the open fields; if any goods were lost, the Country Justices were to make reparation; and the king to satisfy them out of the goods of those that were found guilty; one cunning-fellow had stole his own goods, went to the Justice for reparation, which he had, but after being found to be stealer of his own goods, he was hanged for his labour, and all his estate confiscated; it was lawful for any publike Officer to kill him that made resistance. King Edward of England perceiving he could do no good upon Scotland so long as this wise and vigilant Viceroy was alive, sent a Monk who professed Physick thither, who understanding that *Randolph* was troubled with the Stone, got access to speak with him, and undertook the cure; Physick is given mixt with poison, which wrought gently; the Monk pretending he wanted some drugs, got money to buy them, and to defray his charges, he returns to King Edward, assures him that by such a day *Randolph* would be dead; upon this an Army is levied, and sent into Scotland; King Edward sends spies to view the Scots posture, who finding they had an Army, and that the Viceroy was there yet alive, return and acquaint King Edward therewith; who causeth the lying Monk to be punished, and the Army to retreat, leaving some Garrisons on the borders to keep off excursions; *Randolph* not being able, because of his sickness

*An. Christi.* sickness to pursue the enemy, disbands his Forces, and presently after died at *Musselburg*, having been Viceroy two years.

The King now being but ten years old, *Duncan* Earl of *Marre* is elected Protector: that very day newes is brought, that *Edward Baliol* was entred the *Forth* with a great Fleet of Ships; he had been encouraged by one *Laurence Twine* an English-man, who lived in *Scotland*, but for his misdemeanors was forced to flie over to *France*; he acquaints *Baliol* of the distractions in *Scotland*, of the weakness of the King, and the sickness of his Protector *Randulph*, of the aide which he should have from King *Edward*, and of many friends he should find in *Scotland*; upon these perswasions, *Baliol* obtains a Fleet of ships 10 and six thousand men from King *Edward*: As *Baliol* was landing his men at *Kinghorn*, *Alexander Seaton* a Nobleman of those parts, with some Forces opposeth him, but *Seaton* was killed with a great part of his Forces; *Baliol* having refreshed his Souldiers, which now were increased to ten thousand, marcheth towards *Perth*, and sits down neer the river, the *Scots* Army was divided into two bodies on each side of the river; *Baliol* fearing to be inclosed, resolves to fight with one of those bodies a part, and first on the Viceroy which was farthest off, and seemed most secure; one *Andrew Murrey* in the night guided *Baliol* over the river where it was fordable, who falling unexpectedly on the Viceroy's Army, routed them, though at first some resistance was made, yet the disorder in the *Scots* Camp was so great, that instead of opposing the Enemy, they fell foul among themselves, three thousand *Scots* were slain, the rest fled to *Perth*, but shortly after yield the Town to the English, which *Dumbar* with the other Army resolved to besiege, but upon better advice they retreat; *Baliol* upon this good success, and finding multitudes of *Scots* to flock to him, resolves to declare himself King, to whom divers Lords whom he had taken prisoners, were forced to swear fealty.

1332.

*Baliol* finding himself sufficiently strong, goeth to *Scone*, where he is crowned. Young King *David* with his wife, to be out of danger, are conveyed over to the French King; his party make *Andrew Murrey*, King *Robert Bruce* his sisters 30 son, Viceroy, who presently raiseth an Army, and besiegeth *Perth*, which after three moneths siege they took; the Earl of *Fife*, who held the town for *Baliol*, is sent to prison with his wife and children; *Murrey* of *Tilibardin*, for guiding *Baliol* over the river, is executed; the walls of *Perth* are demolished; a thousand horse are sent into *Anandel* (where *Baliol* was secure) by the Viceroy, these fell suddenly on his forces in the night, so that he was forced to flie away half clothed upon a horse without bridle or saddle, divers of whose friends were killed; *Alexander Bruce*, King *David's* kinsman, who had taken part with *Baliol*, was taken, but pardoned: the *Brucians* knowing that *Baliol* acted all for and by the King of *England*, fortifie *Barwick*, where they put *Alexander* 40 *Seaton* Governour; an Embassadour is sent into *France*, to see the young king, and to require aide; but the the *Brucians* are twice defeated by the *Baliolans*; King *Edward* sends Forces to aide *Baliol*, who otherwise could not subsist against the other faction, not regarding his affinity with *Bruce*, nor the peace that was made, nor the oath which he took; and to make shew of a just war, he demands *Barwick*, which *Bruce* had by right of Arms gained from the English; King *Edward* besiegeth the Town by Sea and Land, *Douglas* brings an Army to raise the siege, he was advised to go with his Army into *England*; but he to be revenged on King *Edward* for hanging up *Seaton's* two sons, would needs fight 50 upon unequal ground and terms, and so lost the day; in that conflict ten thousand *Scots* were slain, the English also lost many, besides their Fleet, which was fired by the *Scots*.

After this, *Baliol* had divers bickerings with the *Brucians*, sometimes prevailing, sometimes yielding; in the interim a new Army from *England* enters *Scotland*, both by Sea and Land; in the *Forth*, the English Admiral, with most of the other ships, were battered against the Rocks with stormes; the Land-army

army marcheth as far as *Glasco*, where an English Parliament is called, there *David Cumin* Earl of *Atbol* is made Governour of *Scotland*, and King *Edward* carried with him *Baliol* into *England*, for he durst not confide in him. *Cumin* seifeth upon all the Lands of the *Stuarts*, and having the Southern parts at his devotion, he marcheth Northward, where the Counties of *Buchan* and *Murrey* submit to him. All Patents went under the stile of *Edward* and *Baliol*; but whilst *Cumin* was so far North, *Robert Stuart* who had hid himself in *Dumblition* began to appear, and having raised four hundred of the *Cambels* in *Arguile* went to take in some of the next Forts, which they did with good success; 10 upon this some of the neighbour Counties began to side with him, so that his Army increased like a snow-ball, besides *John Randulph* Earl of *Murrey* was returned from *France* with assurance of aide from thence; so now having taken courage, they make two Viceroy's, to wit, this *Robert Stuart*, and *John Randulph*; he with a considerable Army marched Northward, at whose approach *David Cumin* being forsaken by divers of his Souldiers fled to *Lochaber*, where he was besieged, and forced to yield, and withall to swear fealty to King *Bruce*, and trusting to his promises left him there as his Lieutenant, then being returned to *Lothien*, he with the other Viceroy calls a Parliament, in which was great emulation between *Cumin* and *Douglas* lately returned from Eng- 20 land.

Shortly after King *Edward* with *Baliol* invades *Scotland* by Sea and Land; a Fleet of a hundred and sixty saile enters the *Forth*; King *Edward* by land marcheth towards *Perth*; in the mean time *Robert*, one of the Viceroyes falls sick, so the whole burthen lay upon *Randulph*, who with a part of his Forces encounters the *Gelderlanders* neer *Edenburgh*, and defeated them, for they came to assist the English, but he used them kindly for *Philip Valois* his sake; but as he was conveying of them, he was intercepted by the English Faction, and brought to King *Edward* then besieging *Perth*, which being surrendered, King *Edward* returns to *England*, having had some loss by stormes in his Fleet. *David Cumin* is by him left Viceroy, for he carried *Baliol* with him. *Cumin* who had found favour before, shews none now, but persecutes the *Brucians* with all cruelty; yet a party took head against him, under the Earl of *March*, *Murrey* and *Douglas*, who never would yield to *Baliol*; these with considerable Forces defeat the *Cuminians*; upon this Victory *Andrew Murrey* is made Viceroy, for *Stuart* was sick, and *Randulph* a prisoner. New supplies are sent of English, to relieve *Cumin's* wife, who was besieged by the *Brucians*; they march as far as *Elgin* in *Murrey*, burn *Aberden*, take divers Forts, and relieve *Cumin's* Lady; they enjoyn the six next Monasteries to rebuild the walls of *Perth*. No sooner were the English gone home, but *Andrew Murrey* with new 40 supplies regains all the Forts and Castles beyond *Forth*, except *Perth* and the Castle of *Cupre*, then enters *England*, and returns with great booties: the Garrison of *Cupre*, for want of provision, was forced to be gone, who returning homeward through *Lothian* over the sands, were all drowned upon the coming in of the tide.

The next year, *Dumbar*-Castle is besieged by the Earles of *Arundel* and *Salisbury* six moneths together, and at last were faine to leave it, having lost many men before it by sallies; after it was relieved by *Alexander Ramsey* in the dark of the night.

*Murrey* having beaten out the English from most parts of *Scotland* in 50 two yeares and a half, died, whom *Stuart* succeeded as Viceroy, who by the help of *Douglas* got divers Victories over the English and their parties in *Scotland*.

*Perth* is besieged above four months by the *Scots*, at last the Earl of *Rosse* takes it; the English are dismissed with bag and baggage; *Sterling* also is rendered

1337.

*An. Christi.* rendred by the English, and *Edenburgh-Castle* is taken by *Douglas*. *Frazer* and twelve more, being disguised in sea-mens apparel, as if they had come lately from an English Ship then in the *Forth* with wine and other provision were let in, who presently killed the Porter, took away the keyes, opened the Gates, and let in some companies who lay in ambush; after a great skirmish, the English were forced to yield: In the mean while *Alexander Ramsay* enters *Northumberland* with an Army, which plunders the Country, and returns with great booty; he is pursued by English Forces, which he defeats by drawing them into an ambush, where he had hid great store of foot, and so brings home his plunder; then he takes in *Roxburg*; after this, he with *Randulph* and *Douglas* drive the English out of all their Holds in *Scotland*, leaving them nothing but *Barnwick*. This year returns King *David Bruce* with his Queen, after nine years absence. King *Edward* having made peace with France for three years, prepares all the strength he can to invade *Scotland*; he had then in his Army 6000 horse, and 40000 foot, besides a great Fleet, which was so shattered with storms, that it did him little service.

1342.

Upon King *David*'s return, *Scotland* is divided into factions, caused by the murder of *Alexander Ramsay*, whom *Douglas* treacherously killed, because he had got from him the government of *Teviot*: This much troubled King *David*, who made search for *Douglas*, and found him, but by the mediation of *Robert Stuart*, and others, he was pardoned and made Governour of *Roxburg* and *Teviot*, for such then was the power of *Douglas*, that the King durst do no otherwise. Differences being thus composed, *David* contrary to the advice of his Lords raiseth an Army against *England*, into which he made three several excursions, and returned with great spoiles; At last a peace for two years is concluded with *England*, conditionally that King *Philip* of France would ratifie it, without whom King *David* could make no peace, nor King *Philip* with *England*, without the *Scots*; but the French being defeated by the English, stir up King *David* against *England*, who invades and spoiles all as far as *Durham*, in an unreasonable time, his own Country being distracted by civil broils between the Earl of *Rosse* and the Lord of the Islands; the English Army come unexpectedly upon King *David*, a battel is fought, in which many of the *Scots* Lords were taken or killed; King *David* was taken prisoner by *Copland*, two of whose teeth he strook out with his fist after he had lost his weapons; upon this Victory divers of the South Countries of *Scotland* yielded to the English, the rest being employed in civil broils against each other; but the English shortly after lost these Countries again. King *John* of France sends money into *Scotland* to raise Souldiers, desiring also that the *Scots* would make no peace with *England*, they receive the money, a few Souldiers are raised which make excursions upon *England*; they take also *Barnwick* and burn it; the English enter *Louthien* with fire and sword; *Baliol* again swears fealty to King *Edward*.

The English being again driven out of *Scotland*, King *David* is ransomed, who upon his return dis-inherits *Robert Stuart*, his elder sisters son, and makes *Alexander* the Earl of *Sutherland*'s son, and his Nephew by the younger sister, his heir; but he dying shortly after, King *David* is reconciled to *Stuart*; after this *Scotland* is much afflicted with great inundations of water, and the Plague; King *David* wanting issue, in a Parliament proposed, that for the good of both kingdoms, the King of *England* or his son should succeed to the Crown of *Scotland*; this motion was so disliked, that it was presently hushed: In the mean while the High-landers continue in arms amongst themselves, whom when the King could not reconcile, he increaseth their quarrels, to the end they might destroy each other, and so the kingdom should be quiet; At last the King dieth in *Edenburgh-Castle*, the nine and forty year of his life, and the seven and forty of his reign.

1377.

CHAP.

*An. Christi.*

## CHAP. XIV.

A prosecution of the Scottish History, from the year 1377. till the year 1400.

King *Robert Stuart* succeedeth to his uncle *David Bruce*: his Coronation was opposed by *William Earl Douglas*, who claimed the Crown in right of *Baliol*, and the *Cumins*, of whom he was descended; but his claim was so distastful to the Lords, that he was glad to give off and submit to King *Robert*, and to confirm his allegiance; the King marrieth his daughter to Earl *Williams* son. This year, the fourteen years peace between the two kingdoms is broken by the English, who at a Fair killed a friend of *George Dunbar*; he being denied satisfaction, the next day with some forces he plunders the Fair, burns the Town and kills many in it: the English to be revenged, fall with fire and sword upon the lands of Sir *John Gordon*, who in requital invades *England*, fights with *John Liburn*, whom he takes prisoner with many others, and carrieth them with great booties to *Scotland*. *Henry Pierce* Earl of *Northumberland* raiseth seven thousand men, and with them marcheth to *Dunee* in *Scotland*, where *Johannes Scotus Subtilis* was born, this Village is six miles from *England*; the Country people thereabout in the night-time upon the hills made such a noise with their rattles, which they use in driving away the Deer from their Corn, that the English horse being affrighted, broke their halters, and ran away; the English also fearing more danger than there was, took their flight; and left their baggage behinde them; the same day *Gordon* by ambush took *Thomas Misgrave* governour of *Berwick*, with some of his Troops which were going to joyn with *Piercy*.

Shortly after this Ambassadors arrive from France, to renew the old League with King *Robert*, and to perswade him to invade *England*: In the mean while *Alexander Ramsay* takes *Berwick Castle*, and afterward surrendered it. *James Earl Douglas* invades *England* with twenty thousand horse and foot, and returns with great booties: the English in requital enter *Scotland* with fifteen thousand under *Talbot*, who as they were returning through a narrow valley with their spoil, in the night time were set upon by five hundred Scots; the English thinking the number of Scots had been far greater, fled disorderly, many in the flight were slain, many more drowned in the River, two hundred and forty taken. *John Duke of Lancaster* is sent into *Scotland* to mediate a peace, which was concluded for three years; *Lancaster* hearing of the civil broils in *England*, upon the publike Faith stayed in *Scotland* till the English storm was over.

The three years Truce being ended, *Douglas* Lord of *Galloway*, with the Earl of *March*, besiege some English Forts and takes them: *Lancaster* is sent against *Scotland* with great forces both by sea and land, who for the kinde usage he had received a few years before at *Edinburgh*, would not suffer the Souldiers to use any violence; the Sea-forces in the Isle *Armona* burned down a Monastery; the like cruelty they used in some other places, till the Scots forces fell upon them, and having killed some, and taken others, drove the rest on ship-board; forty of which were drowned as they held by a cable which was cut. Scarce was *Lancaster* returned home, when *Douglas* falls upon the English forts, and regains them: A peace in the mean while is made between France and *England*, in which *Scotland* was also included; but before the Scots knew of it, the English with ten thousand horse, and six thousand Archers invade *Scotland*, and spoil the lands of the *Douglases* and *Lindseys*, which being done, they shew the Scots, that a peace was concluded, and with all the French Ambassadors come to assure them thereof, the Scots enraged at this perfidiousness and mockery, resolve to be revenged; King *Robert* labours

1384.

O o 2

to

*An. Christi.* to pacifie them; in the interim *Douglasse*, *Lindsey* and *Dumbar* stole away privately from the Court, and unknown to the king, raise an Army of fifteen thousand, with which they enter *England*, waisting all with fire and sword to *Newcastles*, then having returned with great booties, and many prisoners, they cause a peace to be proclaimed.

About the end of the peace, the French Admiral with two thousand souldiers, and pay for six months, comes into *Scotland*; he brought also four hundred compleat Arms for so many Gentlemen; these with the Scots aid invade *Northumberland*, overthrow three Castles, but by reason of the great rains and floods, were faine to return with their booty: King *Richard* of *England*, in revenge of this wrong, enters *Scotland* with sixty thousand foot, and eight thousand horse, besides with a great Fleet by sea, these with fire and sword waste the Country of *Lothian*. The Scots unwilling to encounter so great an Army, resolve to draw King *Richard* out of *Scotland* by invading *England*, therefore they enter *Cumberland*, spoiling all the Country thereabout: King *Richard* would have pursued the Scots Army, but could not by reason of the rocky and mountainous waies between them, and the difficulty to finde the Scots Army, therefore he returns home the same way he came; and the Scots also retire out of *England*, who with the French resolve to take the Town and Castle of *Forburgh*; but because the French would have had the Town to themselves if it had been taken, which the Scots would not yeeld too, they gave off their intended siege; the French souldiers being sent home, and the Admiral retained as a prisoner till satisfaction were made for the wrongs they had done to the Country people of *Scotland*. *William Douglasse* son to *Archibald* Lord of *Galloway*, sails over to *Ireland* with an Army to requite the wrongs he had suffered by the Irish, who had made excursions into *Galloway*.

*Douglasse* having landed his forces near *Kerlinsford*, so affrighted the Town, that they sent to article with him: *Douglasse* accepts of a Treaty; in the interim the Town sends to *Dundalk* for aid, five hundred horse are procured, with these and their own forces they march out against *Douglasse*, hoping to subdue his Army, and to seise on his ships; but they were subdued themselves, their Town sacked and burned, fifteen ships then in the harbour are taken and laden with booty, so *Douglasse* returns victorious to *Galloway*, having plundered the Isle of *Man* by the way. At his return, when he understood that his father was marched upon an expedition into *England*, he follows him: the Scots being willing to be revenged on the English for the spoil done on *Lothian* the former year by King *Richard*, desire King *Robert* that an Army might be sent: he being now aged and willing to be quiet, would not yeeld to any invasion of *England*, therefore the Lords repair to the Earl of *Fife* he Kings second son, (for the eldest *John* was lamed by a horse, and unfit for action) these resolve to raise an Army without the knowledge of either King; but they could not carry the matter so close from King *Richard*, who by Spies was advertised of the Scots proceedings, and therefore wills the Northern Countries to be in readines: the Scots Army consisted of thirty thousand; the English sent a Spie disguised in a Scots habit, to discover the Armies intention; he having found out all, and returning to his horse which he had tied to a tree, misseid him being stoln, so that he was faine to feet it, which caused suspicion, therefore he is pursued and brought back and forced to reveal the whole English plot, which made the Scots alter their resolutions.

Two Armies being raised, the bigger marcheth by the way of *Carlisle* under the Earls of *Fife*, *Jernia*, *Mar* and *Sutherland*, and *Douglasse* Lord of *Galloway*; the other enters *Northumberland* under the Earls of *Murrey* and *March*, this lesser Army waistes the Bishoprick of *Durham*; *Henry* and *Ralph Piercies*, the old Earl of *Northumberland*s two sons, are sent with some forces to secure *Newcastle*; thither the Scots march, some light skirmishes for two

dayes

*An. Christi.* daies together they had with the English: At last *James Douglasse* and *Henry Piercy* fought a duel in sight of both the Armies; *Piercy* is beat off from his horse, and his spear taken by *Douglasse*, which he carried away with him: the Scots were marching away with their booties, with an intent to joyn with the bigger Army; but because *Piercy* bragged, that *Douglasse* should not carry his Lance to *Scotland*, therefore he resolves to stay two or three dayes to see what *Piercy* would do, who was very eager to pursue the Scots to recover his Lance; but was advised not to do so for fear of Ambushes, for they could not think that so small an Army would have ventured upon *Newcastle*, but that they had greater forces at hand; yet finding there was no ambush, *Piercy* with ten thousand horse and foot pursues the Scots, which were scarce half so many; a cruel fight ensueth, which continued till it was dark, the dayes being then at longest; so having rested a while, and the morning appearing, the conflict is renewed, in which *Douglasse* is slain, but his death concealed; at last both the *Piercies* being wounded and taken prisoners, the English are disheartned and flie, of whom one thousand and eight hundred are slaine, and a thousand wounded, and one thousand and forty taken prisoners; of the Scots one hundred are slaine, and two hundred taken. And now the Bishop of *Durham*, with his forces were come, they should have joyned with *Piercy*, but he would not stay for them, so earnest he was to regaine his Lance: The Bishop understanding that *Piercies* Army was defeated, was in a doubt what to do: At last being encouraged by the Country, which made up his Army ten thousand, he pursues the Scots, hoping to finde them careless upon their former successe, or else wearied with fighting.

The Earl *Murrey*, who now had the charge of the Army, *Douglasse* being dead, understanding that the Bishops Army was coming upon his forces, calls a Councel of war concerning the prisoners; some would have had them put to death, being dangerous to keep so many, but this was held cruelty, therefore an oath is taken of them that they should not stir during the time of the fight; then they put themselves in battel-array, each one is commanded to sound a horn, which by the eccho of the neighbouring hills made a hideous noise, so that the English supposed the Scots to be more numerous then they were; this noise, and the sight of so many dead bodies before them killed in the former conflict, the unskilfulness of the Commanders, and rawness of the souldiers, so disheartned the English, that they retreated: Upon this the Scots return homeward, *Ralph Piercy* not being able to travel by reason of his wounds, got leave with six hundred of the other prisoners to return home upon their parol, the poorer prisoners were let go without ransome; *Henry Piercy* with four hundred more are carried into *Scotland*, and shortly after ransomed. The other Army which was in *Cumberland*, was not so glad for this victory, as sad for the death of *Douglasse*, a man highly honoured and beloved for his valour, and so much the more because he was killed in the prime of years. And so much of this battel fought at *Otterburn*, not far from *Newcastle*.

Upon the return of the Scots, King *Robert* by reason of his age finding himself slighted by his Lords, and unfit for action, calls a Parliament, in which *Robert* his younger sonne is declared Lieutenant and Governour of *Scotland*. Not long after this King *Robert* died, the seventie fourth year of his life, and nineteenth of his reign; upon whose death *Alexander* Earl of *Buchan*, to revenge himself of the Bishop of *Murrey*, who had angered him, sets the Cathedral Church of *Elgin* on fire. To King *Robert* succeeded his son *John*, who by an Act of Parliament had his name changed to *Robert*, either because the two *Johns* of *England* and *France* were unfortunate Princes, or else because the two first *Roberts* of *Scotland* were brave men; there were two Families

of



*An. Christi.* of the *Highlanders*, whose feud was so great, that they could never be reconciled, till it was agreed that thirty of either family should fight hand to hand in the Kings presence, which was done accordingly in open field by *Pert*, whither multitudes came to see that horrid butchering spectacle; they were all killed except one of the one party, and eleven of the other, who were all grievously wounded; and so the fiercest of these families being slain, the rest remained quiet for many years after. Two years after this, the title of Duke came into *Scotland*, the first that was so called was *David* king *Robert's* son, being eighteen years old, whom the king in Parliament stiled Duke of *Rothesai*, and his brother *Robert* Duke of *Albaine*: This title of Duke was proffered to *Earl Douglas*, but he refused it. Not long after, *George Dunbar* Earl of *March* had betrothed his daughter to *David* king *Robert's* son; and had already paid a great part of the portion. At this *Archibald* Earl *Douglas* being offended, complained to the Parliament that the king had bestowed his son without their consent, and withall proffers his daughter with a greater portion, which is accepted: Upon this *Dunbar* with his family removes in great discontent into *England*, joynes himself with *Piercy*, raises forces, and invades *Douglas* his lands: hereupon *Dunbar* is proclaimed Traitor, and his estate confiscated; a Herald is sent to king *Henry* of *England* to demand *Dunbar*, and to complain that the peace was broken; king *Henry* having given no satisfaction to the Herald, besides, because *Piercy* and *Dunbar* with two thousand horse and foot had, entered *Scotland*, (but were driven out again with the loss of their booty by *Douglas*) open wars are proclaimed against *England*.

1400.

THE



## THE SIXTH BOOK OF THE SECOND PART:

Intreating of the Histories of the World, from  
the Year, 1400.

### CHAP. I.

1. The Affairs of Italy, Germany, Hungary and Bohemia under Wenceslaus, Rupert, Sigismund, Emperours. 2. The Councils of Constance and Basil, with some other passages from the year, 1400. till the year, 1439.



30

IN the time of *Wenceslaus* fell out the year of Jubilee, which should have been a year of rest and gladness, but proved the beginning of that miserable rent in Christendome, which is not yet made up; *John Husse*, or *Goose* (for so the word signifies) having read *Wickliff's* books sent him from *England*, began to preach openly in the University of *Prague* against Jubilees and Indulgences, against Purgatory, Image-worship, Transubstantiation, and other points held by the Church; this new Doctrine of his made such a distraction in the University, that most of the Schollers went away thence to *Erford* and *Lipsia*, where out of the ruines of *Prague* sprung up these two Universities. About a hundred years after out of this *Goose's* egg was hatched that Gosling, which did more hurt to new *Rome*, then the *Goose* of the Capitol did good to old

1400.

40 Rome.

*Husse* being driven by the Bishop from *Prague*, retires to the Village where he was born, and preacheth there openly the same doctrine; complaint is made against him to *Wenceslaus*, but he neither could nor did any thing against him, for he was shortly after deposed by the Electors of *Mentz*, *Colen*, *Trevers*, and the *Palsgrave*. *Jodocus Barbatus* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, is named Emperour by *Colen* and *Mentz*, which election was approved by *Wenceslaus* his Cousin-german; but he was never crowned, for within six moneths of his election he died; then was *Frederick* of *Brunswick* named by the Electors, but as he was coming to be crowned, the Bishop of *Mentz* set upon him in the way and murdered him; at length *Rupert* of *Bavaria* Elector Palatine is made *Cesar*, and crowned at *Colen* by the Bishop, for *Aix* which favoured *Wenceslaus*, would not open their Gates; but them and other Towns which held with *Wenceslaus*, shortly after *Rupert* brought under; this *Rupert* was descended from *Ludovic* the Fourth.

The Pope upon the *Florentines* request, who were molested by *John Galeas* of *Millan*, gave way to *Rupert* to require from the Priests of *Germany* their Tenth

50

An. Christi.

Tenents for raising of an Army against *Galeacius*, whose wealth and power was become formidable both to the Pope and the other Italian Princes; but *Rupert* was resisted by the Bishop of *Millan*, who also made *Leopold* of *Austria* and the Bishop of *Colen* his enemies: *Trevers* likewise made resistance, yet he raised an Army, being promised by the *Florentines* two hundred thousand *Florens*; as soon as his forces had touched the Territories of *Galeacius*, he marcheth thence into the Country of *Brixia*, but was beaten back into *Trent* by the Dukes Army; thence he came to *Padua* upon the desire of the *Venetians*, where he was met by the *Florentine* Ambassadors with some forces and money to renew the war; but not finding the forces and money answerable to his expectation, and that neither the Pope nor *Venetians* would openly assist him, he returns into *Germany*: Whereupon *Galeacius* sends his forces against *Bononia*, assisted by the *Florentines*, he obtains the victory and the City with- all, which had been the occasion of fifty years war; *Bentivolus* the tyrant of that City was slain. He besiegeth *Francis Gonzaga* at *Mantua*, and forceth him to yeeld the Town, being almost drowned by letting in the Rivers *Po* and *Arthes*; he took from *Scaliger*, *Verona* and *Vincenza*, and shortly after *Padua* from *Carrarius* whom at first he assisted against *Scaliger*. After he had taken in *Bononia*, he crossed the *Apennines* with his victorious Army, and struck a great terrour at *Florence*, but a violent fever stoppt the career of his victories, whereof he died in this expedition, having left behinde him *Johannes Maria*, and *Philip*, who were the last Dukes of *Millan* of that race of *Vicounts*, and one daughter *Valentina* married to *Lewis* Prince of *Orleans*, son to *Charles* 5. of *France*.

After the death of *Galeacius*, the *Guelphs* and *Gibellins* at *Millan* fell again to destroy each other with fire and sword; the Cities lately taken by *Galeacius*, fell off from his sons, and the jurisdiction of *Millan*, to their several governments; *Brixia* to *Pandulphus*, *Papia* to *Facinus* *Canis*, *Cremona* to *Benzones*, &c. Among the rest *Bononia* fell off to the Pope, so did *Assisium* and *Perusia* Cities of *Umbria*. The *Florentines* with their money purchased *Pise* from *Gabriel* the Bastard-son of *John Galeacius*. *Sena* having killed *Corregius* their Governour, reassumed their liberty, which was accompanied with many bloody seditions. The *Venetians* upon these changes, promoted their Territories as far as *Forum*, *July* and *Istria*, so they grew great by the ruins of the *Scaligers* and *Carrarii*; for *Novellus Carrarius* the son of *Francis*, having recovered *Padua* by the *Venetian* assistance, forgetting his benefactors, stirs up *William Scaliger* to recover *Verona*, which when *William* had obtained, *Carrarius* poysoneth him, and then murdereth his two sons, that without opposition he might enjoy the Empire of *Verona*; and not content with this, he assaied to take in *Vincenza*, which hating his tyranny, cast her self upon the *Venetians* patrons; they being glad of this occasion, make open war against *Carrarius*, whose forces they subdue, and drive him within the walls of *Padua*, where being straitly besieged, he with his two sons were forced to yeeld to the *Venetians*, who caused them all there to be strangled, his other two sons escaped, but died shortly after in *Hetruria*: Upon this the *Venetians* obtain *Verona*, *Vincenza*, *Colonia*, *Feltrinum*, *Bellunum* and *Padua*. And thus was the greatness of *Millan* which had swallowed up almost all *Italy* on this side of *Latium*, torn in peeces. *Johannes Maria* became a most bloody Tyrant, taking delight to sling to hungry Mastriffs condemned persons, or such as he hated; these dogs he used to feed with mens flesh, and then to keep them hungry that they might prove the more fierce and cruel; but he was at last by some Assassins murdered in the Church, who cleft his skull close to his eyes, and cut off his right leg, a grateful spectacle to the people, who extremely hated him: his brother and successour *Philip* revenged his death, and recovered *Brixia*, *Placentia*, *Comus*, *Cremona*, and some other places, but lost quite *Hetruria*, *Umbria*, *Amylia* and *Picenum*; he beheaded *Fundulus* the governour of *Cremona*, who being upon

the

An. Christi.

the Scaffold; was exhorted to repent, answered, That he was so far from repenting, that he was sorry he had not broke the necks both of *Sigismund* the Emperour, and Pope *John* 23. when he entertained them with a banquet upon the battlements of his high Tower.

*Rupert* the Emperour seeing but little good to be done in *Italy*, returns, as we said, to *Germany*, permitting the Italians to decide their own quarrels, who were then distracted into Italian and French factions by means of the Antipopes. *Ladislaus* King of *Naples*, seeming to favour the faction of *Gregory* 12; came suddenly upon *Rome*, being then in great distractions, and took it, with some other Towns belonging to the Church; he threatned also the *Florentines*, but *Lewis* of *Anjou* being invited by the Popes letters, comes and joyns his Forces with those of *Florence* and *Sena*, upon hope to obtain the Kingdome of *Naples*; so he recovers the City for *Alexander* 5. and drives out *Ladislaus*, who not long after, with greater forces returns and takes *Rome*; having suppressed the Pontificans and French Auxiliaries; he killed many of the Citizens, overthrew the walls, took the Castle of *S. Angelo*, with divers Towns belonging to the Church, and kept them till his dying day, notwithstanding that he was anathematized by Pope *Alexander*; he left by will the Kingdome to his sister *Joan*, who as is said, repudiated her husband *James* *Burbon* Earle of *Marchia*, and adopted *Alphonse* King of *Arragon*, thinking thereby to make her party strong against the Pope, and those of *Anjou*; *Alphonse* having slighted her, was rejected by her, who sent for *Lewis* of *Anjou*'s eldest son, after whose death she surrogated his brother *Renatus*; whence arose bloody wars between the houses of *Arragon* and *Anjou*; the Popes siding sometimes with the one; sometimes with the other. In the interim *Rupert* having reigned ten years died, and was buried at *Heidelberg*; he was married twice, and left divers children behinde him. In his time shined a terrible Comet which presaged the wars of *Bohemia* raised by *Husse*, the troubles of *Italy* by means of the Antipopes, and the defeat of the Christian Armies by the Turks. He built a Church and Colledge at *Heidelberg*.

To *Rupert* succeeded *Sigismund* the son of *Charles* 4. whom *Ludovic* King of *Hungary* had adopted for his son, intending to make him heir to the Crown, and husband to his daughter; but *Ludovic* being dead, and *Sigismund* as yet a childe, the Queen-mother governed the Kingdome; the Nobility disliking her government, send for *Charles* King of *Naples*, son to *Andrew* King *Ludovicks* brother, who being received with general applause, was by the Queen-widow poysoned, and the Italians driven out of *Hungary*; but his death was revenged by *John* governour of *Croatia*, who put to death the murderers, and having dragged the young Queen with her mother by the hair upon the ground, caused the old Queen to be drowned, and her daughter he imprisoned; whom shortly after, fearing an insurrection, he set at liberty: *Sigismund* upon this comes out of *Bohemia* with a great Army, invades *Hungary* without opposition, and being now 20. years of age, is crowned and married to the young Queen. After this he repairs to *Croatia*, besiegeth the governour whom he took and beheaded, with 32. more that sided with him in his rebellion against the young Queen: the *Hungarians* repining at this severity imprisoned him, committing the charge of him to one of the widows of those whom he had beheaded; but upon great promises made to her; she dismissed him, who having again obtained the Kingdome; which he secured with gar-risons in all places, he put to death *Steven* *Veivodas* the chief author of his imprisonment, by which he quieted the rest.

Concerning *Sigismund*, bad success against *Bajazet* the Turk; we have already spoken, whose fortune was no better in a second Battel against *Celebin* *Bajazets* sonne, who had got over the *Hellespont*; and had slain upon *Bulgaria* and *Macedonia*. *Sigismund* encountered with the Turks near *Samandria*, not farre from the Banks of *Danubius*;

P p

but

*An. Christi.* but lost the battel by coming too late. Notwithstanding this bad success, he is called to the Empire by the Electors; his chief care was to settle peace in Christendome now distracted by three Antipopes, to wit, *Benedict* 13. *Gregory* 12. and *John* 23. whose residence was at *Bononia*, *Gregories* at *Ariminum*, and *Benedicts* at *Avenion*. *Sigismund* finding that a Synod was fitter then Armes to compose these distractions, procured by the consent of the Christian Princes, a Synod to be called at *Constance*, where were present all the Princes or their Legats, even from *Byzantium* and *Trapezund*. Here *Adolphus* 2. Earle of *Cleve*, and *Amadeus* Earle of *Savoy*, were created Dukes of the Empire; the Marquisat of *Brandenburg*, 10 with the Electoral dignity is sold to *Friderick Burgrave* of *Noriberg*, who had done good service for *Sigismund* against the Hungarians and Bohemians. *Albert* the Septemvir of *Saxony* died about this time, whose Dominion and Electorship *Sigismund* transferred upon *Frederic*, furnished the *Stout* Marquess of *Mysnia* for his charges and good service in the Bohemian warres: he erected out of the ruines of the University of *Prague*, that of *Lipsa*.

The Synod being dissolved, *Sigismund* intended to make warre against the Turk, and to repaire his honour lost in the two former battells, but he was taken off from this designe by the commotions of *Bohemia*, therefore 20 having made *Moravia* sure to him, and *Silesta*, he put to death the seditious Citizens of *Uratistavia* the Metropolis of that Country for invading the Government, and flinging downe the Senators from an high Tower. The Bohemian warre was hastened on by the violence of the *Hussits*, who were enraged for *Husse's* death; therefore they persecuted with all hostility the Priests and Monks, some of which they banished, others they murdered, having pulled downe and burned the Religious houses, and broken to peeces the Images and Statues in their Churches. Divers battells were fought, but the *Hussits* under the command of *Zisca* obtained the victory, 1420. the Emperour enters *Bohemia* with his forces to suppress these tumults; 30 and having taken *Prague*, was crowned and anointed King of *Bohemia*; then he falls upon the Bohemian forces, but was repulsed and beaten by them, and compelled to retreat into *Moravia* for a new leavy; In the mean time Pope *Martin* 5. by the Cardinal of *Winchester*, had stirred up all *Germany* against *Bohemia*; three Armies were raised, one of *Saxons* by their Duke, the other of *Francons* by the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and the third of *Bavarians*, *Suevians*, and others, by the Archbishop of *Trevers*: All these Forces by a sudden panick fear were dissipated; the like success had that Army which was raised by *Julianus Casarius* the Cardinal; divers other attempts were made upon the *Bohemian Hussits*, but with ill success.

Upon this the Council of *Basil* is called; the Emperour with great promises is invited into *Italy* by *Philip Maria* Viscount of *Millan*, against whom the *Venetians* and *Florentines* made war both by Sea and Land; being 1431. received at *Millan*, he is crowned with the iron Crown; thence he went to *Parma* where he wintered. In the Spring he comes to *Rome*, and upon the day of Pentecost is crowned by *Eugenius* the 4. Thence returning through *Ferraria* and *Mantua*, creates *John Francis Gonzaga* Lord of *Mantua*, Marquess. Thence he returns through *Basil* into *Hungary*, and from thence into *Bohemia* which now was quieted by the Council of *Basil*. Here 1437. having obtained of the Peers that *Albertus Austriacus* his sonne in law should succeed him to the Crowne, he retires to his daughter in *Moravia*, where he sickned and died the twentieth year of his Empire, the seven-teenth of his Reign over *Bohemia*, and one and fifty over *Hungary*, the seventy seventh year of his age; He was buried at *Varadinum* or *Varasna*: He was a good Prince, a lover of Learning; He caused the History of *Arrianus* to be translated

*An. Christi.* translated for him out of the Greek into the Latine. He hated flatterers; therefore one day he beat one of his Courtiers for flattering him to his face; at which the man repining cried out, Why dost thou beat me, said the flatterer? Why dost thou bite me, said the Emperour? He was very munificent; but one day riding through a water, his horse stopt and pissed in it; to which one of his Courtiers said, This horse is like his master; the Emperour doted to know his meaning, the Courtier tells him, That as his horse pissed there where there was too much already, so he bestowed his bounty on those that needed it not, and neglected those that were in want: 10 The Emperour shortly after fills two boxes of the same bignesse, the one with silver, the other with lead, which he presents to this Courtier, willing him to take his choice of either; he chose the leaden box, which when the Emperour saw, he told him that it was not for want of good will in the Emperour, but of good luck in the Courtier that he was not richer. *Sigismund* is commended for divers Apothegmes, and for his clemencie, saying, That others killed their enemies with swords, but he used to kill his enemies with favours. His first wife *Mary King Ludovic's* daughter of *Hungary*, died a year after their marriage: His other wife *Barbara* a lascivious woman, bare him one daughter *Elizabeth* heir of the King- 20 dome whom hee betroathed to *Albert of Austria*, he imprisoned his wife *Barbara* for treason against him, for she plotted with the Peers of *Bohemia* to seise on the Kingdome; but after his death shee was let free; her life after this she led infamously, and died miserably of the Veneral plague.

There was nothing more commendable in this Emperour, then the paines he took with the Christian Princes in calling the Synod of *Constance*, to settle the distracted estate of the Christians caused by the three Antipopes: The Cardinals at *Pisa* had conferred their Papacie on *John* 23. *Gregory* and *Benedict* being excluded, who slighted this act of the Cardinals; there- 30 fore to take all quarrels off, the Pontificat is conferred on *Otto Columnius*, and is named *Martin* 5. the other three being forced to yeeld; in this Synod *Petrus de Aliaco* Cardinal, and *Gerson* Chancellour of *Paris* laboured for a reformation of the Clergy and Court of *Rome*, but to no purpose: here *Wickliffe's* doctrine is condemned, so are *John Husse* and *Hierome* of *Prague*; *Husse* was first degraded, and then delivered up to the Secular power; upon his head was put a paper-Miter, with the picture of three Devils, and this Inscription, [This is the Arch-heretick:] Some write, that he should say before his death, That out of his ashes should arise a Swan which they should not burne as they did the Goose, and that a hundred years after they should an- 40 swer to God and him. Which words the Bohemians stamped upon some of their coin: he was burned in *July*, and *Hierome* of *Prague* the next September after. In this Synod was renewed the decree of Communicating under one kinde: It was also ordered, that the fifth year after the end of this Synod should be the beginning of another, and afterward every tenth year a Council should be held; by virtue of this constitution a Synod was held at *Papia*, which from thence, because of the plague, was translated to *Sena*. This was dissolved by Pope *Martin* 5. because *Alphonfus* King of *Arragon*, who hated *Martin*, endeavoured to restore *Petrus Lunensius* to the Pontificat, which at *Constance* hee had lost: 50 therefore *Basil* is designed for the next Synod. *Julianus* the Cardinal is sent into *Germany* to promote the Bohemian war, and to call the Synod.

In this Council of *Basil*, at which divers learned Bohemians were present, it is decreed that the Synods authority was above the Popes: but *Eugenius* 4. successour to *Martin*, fearing lest the Synods power should crush the Papacie, commanded it to be translated to *Bononia*: 1431.

*An. Christi.* This was so distasteful to *Sigismund* the Emperour, and the rest there, that they cite *Eugenius* to appear at *Basil*, or else to lose his Pontificat; hereupon *Eugenius* was forced to ratifie the acts of the Synod, but taking advantage of the arrival of *John Palaeologus* Emperour of *Constantinople*, who came for aid against the Turks, he enjoyed the Synod to be translated to *Ferraria*, and from thence to *Florence*; this displeased the Fathers of *Basil*, who desired the Greeks to repair thither, if they meant to do any good towards their union with the Latine Church; but *Eugenius* hindred their coming, and now *Sigismund* being dead, he stirs up the Dolphin of *France*, who afterward was called *Lewis* the 11. to raise the Synod with a great Army; these committed great insolencies in *Alsatia*, but in their journey to *Basil* were worsted by the *Switzers*, who also lost their lives there. This tumult drove away from *Basil* the Princes Legats; the Greeks were perswaded in this assembly at *Florence* to assent to the Proceffion of the Holy Ghost, to celebrate the Eucharist in unleavened bread, to acknowledge Purgatory, and the Popes power, which was so displeasing to the Greek Churches; upon the return of the Emperour and Patriarch, that they denied Christian burial to all such as should assent to these Articles: In the mean while the Synod of *Basil* depofeth Pope *Eugenius*, and substitutes in his place *Amadeus* Duke of *Savoy* who stiled himself *Felix* 5. whence sprung up a new schisme, which was ended by the death of *Eugenius*, and the voluntary act of *Felix*, who surrendered again the Pontificat.

## CHAP. II.

The History of Swethland and Denmark, from the year 1412. till the year 1587. Of Denmark and of Swethland, till 1590.

1412. **I**N *Swethland* (as we have said) to *Margaret* succeeded her nephew *Ericus* Duke of *Pomerania*, he was a great hater of the Nobility, whom he much weakened in foreign wars both by sea and land; his government was opposed by *Engilbert* Prince of *Danarlia* whom the *Danes* slew, and by *Charles* son of *Canutus* governour of the Kingdome, who drove *Ericus* into *Denmark*, where finding no help or security, strives to make his peace with his own subjects, and to return home, they upon his submission were contented to receive him again; but as he was returning home, he seisseth upon *Gothland*, intending to exercise Pyracie there upon all the Northern ships; but being beset round by *Charles Canutus*, and fearing the Danish forces, surrenders himself to his people, amongst whom afterward he reigned peaceably fourteen years from his Coronation: To him succeeded *Christopher Palatin*, Duke of *Bavarian* nephew to *Ericus* by his sister; he had wars with *England*, but returning victoriously home fell upon *Sabec* without any successe; he lost his Fleet by shipwrack upon the coast of *Suecia*, as he was striving to surprise the *Vandalic* Cities: In his time the Kingdome was ruined with plague and famine. At last having lost in the sea all his wealth dieth in *Denmark* childless.

1458. *Swethland* being governed some years without a King, at length by 50 the consent of the Peers who were weary to be ruled any longer by Forreigners elected *Charles Canutus* for their King: He subdueth *Norway*, and layeth heavy Fines upon the *Danes* for making war against him; the people being irritated by the tyranny of their Governours, and animated by the Archbishop of *Upsalen*, a rebellion is raised, which to suppress, *Charles* removest to *Gedanum*, where he expected aide from *Poland*; in the interim the people

people obtrudes the Kingdome upon *Christiern* King of *Denmark* and crownes him. *Cutillus* Bishop of *Lincopen*, and the Archbishops Nephew having raised an Army, drives out of the kingdome all that sided with *Christiern*, and in a memorable battel defeats *Christiern*; upon this *Charles* is called home out of *Prussia*, and by the popular breath re-established; he placed milder Governours over them; at last, being full of years and peace, died, to whom succeeded *Steno Sture*, Nephew to *Charles* by the sister; he defeated the Fleet which *Christiern* had sent against *Stockholm*, and overthrew his Army which had set down before the walls, so that after this he never made any attempt against *Sweden*; 10 but his son *John*, by the assistance of the *Russians*, and taking occasion by the factions between *Steno* and *Suanto*, a great man, invaded *Swethland*, where by a Faction he was crowned; but shortly after suppressed by *Steno*, who brought back to *Smalanda* the Queen of *Denmark*, whom *John* had carried away and married; but shortly after at a feast he sickned and died the 30 year of his government; he was well beloved for his excellent parts, but chiefly for refusing the Crown when it was proffered him.

*Suanto* Prince of the *Ostrogoths*, and Chancellor of the Kingdome, is elected Prince of *Swethland*. *Gaddus* Bishop of *Lincopen* conveyed privately the body of *Steno* to *Stockholm*. *Suanto* having entred into a confederacy with the *Lubikers*, made war upon *Christiern* the 2. against whom whilst he was making preparations, he died the 8. year of his government, *Steno Sture* the younger *Suanto*'s son succeeded, who whilst he was fighting stoutly against *Christiern* which had invaded *Swethland* with a new Army, was killed by a cannon bullet; he being dead, and the *Swedish* Army defeated, *Christiern* was invited by the Danish faction, & is crowned, but the Peers whom he suspected on that very day of his Coronation are treacherously by him murdered at a feast, having caused first the Town gates of *Stockholm* to be shut, that none might escape, about 94 were massacred, whose bodies were left unburied three dayes on the ground, to the horror of the spectators; the body of *Steno* but lately buried, by 30 the command of this new Tyrant is digged up, and burned with the rest; at length he plundered the widows and sons of the murdered Nobility; but hearing that thirty thousand of the people were up in arms against him, he stole out of *Stockholm*, and through woods and by-ways escaped to *Denmark*, the same moneth that he was crowned; neither was he quiet at home, for having embrewed his hands in the blood of his own people, was extremely hated, so that *Frederick* his Uncle, Prince of *Holstania*, with the *Lubikers*, raised an Army against him; whereupon being terrified in conscience he flies into *Zeland* with *Isabel* his wife, *Cesars* sister, and his children, the third year after the massacre of *Stockholm*.

40 In the mean time *Gustavus* the son of *Ericus* who had escaped out of the hands of the *Dane*, under pretence of negotiating for *Christina* the widow of *Steno*, marieth with *Steno*'s daughter, and by the consent of the Peers, and wealth of the *Lubikers*, enters upon the possession of the vacant kingdome; after this he abolisheth the old religion, and embraceth the doctrine of the *Augustine* confession; at last having governed the kingdome prudently eight and thirty years, he departs this life, leaving for his successor *Ericus* whom he begot of his wife *Katharine* the Duke of *Saxons* daughter; after he was crowned at *Stockholm*, he made wars upon the *Danes* and *Lubikers*, by which he incurred the hatred of his friends and neighbours; his brother *John* Duke 50 of *Finland*, was much displeased with his conditions; he having married *Katharine* a widow, and sister to *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, lent him a great sum of money, for which he received in mortgage from the King divers Castles and Garrison towns in *Livonia*; *Ericus* being suspicious, thought his brother had entred into league with the *Polonian* and *Dane* against him, therefore makes war upon him, and having apprehended him with his wife and whole family at *Abo* a Town in *Finland*, causeth him to be brought to *Holmia*, where being pub-

*An. Christi.* publicly condemned, was imprisoned, and most of his chief friends put to death; after four years imprisonment he was set free; about a year after he seised on his brother *Ericus*, devests him of his kingdom, and commits him to perpetual imprisonment: hereupon *John* is made king of *Swethland* by general consent; he had war with the *Dane* and *Muscovite* which lasted many years; he died and left one son, *Sigismund*, who was elected king of *Poland*; *John* was of his fathers religion, consonant to the *Augustine* confession, but he suffered his son *Sigismund* to be instructed privately by his mother *Katherine* in the *Catholic* faith, yet would not suffer any other profession but *Lutheranism* publicly in his own kingdom; therefore he left his brother *Charles* Duke of *Finland*, a rigid *Lutheran*, as an hostage with his people, that no innovation should be in their Religion, and withall in his sons absence appointed him executor of his will, and titular King of *Swethland*.

1590. In *Denmark*, *Margaret*, as is already said, being dead, *Ericus* reigned alone, he was the Duke of *Pomerania*'s son, and great grandchild of *Waldemar*; he learned his cruelty and perfidiousness of *Margaret*, by whom he was educated. In his time the *Alemans* made irruptions into *Denmark*, but to their loss, for they were defeated and repulsed by the Queen and Nobility, whose overthrow in these wars, *Ericus* that hated the Peers, did chiefly aime at; he being slighted for his perfidiousness and injustice, is expelled out of both his Kingdoms into *Gothland*, an Island fit for his safety, and for exercising of pyracie; during his abode here, he much infested the *Swedish* ships, but was favourable to the *Danes*, to whom he left all *Gothland* to be possessed and kept for him in his absence; for not finding himself secure enough in that Island, he returns to *Pomerania*. This *Ericus* is infamous in the Histories of *Swethland* and *Denmark*, for his adulteries, perjuries, plundrings, treacheries, injustice, and seven and twenty several treasons; when he fled to *Gothland*, he carried with him the whole treasures of his kingdom, and *Cecil* his Concubine, who was the chief cause both of his wickedness and miseries. To him succeeded *Christopher* Duke of *Bavaria*, the great Grandchild also of *Waldemar*, he was chosen by the consent of King *Ericus*; he was much offended with the insolencies of the Hans-towns, which were grown so wealthy and strong, that they slighted their neighbour Princes, chiefly *Lubec* which the *Danes* had built, and was hitherto subject to the Danish Kings, but now by treachery and cunning had shaken off their yoke, and aimed at the government of their Governours; therefore to reduce them to their former obedience, he raiseth out of all parts of his kingdom great sums of money, which so displeased the Northern Juitlanders that they rebelled, but were quickly suppressed by the King, and grievously fined: his wife was *Dorothy* daughter to *John* Marquess of *Brandeburg*; he died childless, the seventh year of his reign in the Castle of *Helsingor*; he was a Prince well beloved of the *Danes*, but hated of the *Swedes*, over whom notwithstanding he reigned till his dying day.

1447. To him succeeded *Christianus* the first, son of *Theodoricus* Earl of *Adenburg*, he was elected by the advise of *Adolphus* Duke of *Holsatia* his kinsman; he married *Dorothy* the widow of *Christopher* his predecessor, of whom he begot a daughter, *Margaret* by name, (who was afterward married to the King of *Scotland*) and two sons, *John* and *Frederick*; in his time the *Swedes* fell off totally from the Covenant of the three Kingdoms, having chosen and crowned a King of their own, to wit, *Charles* son of *Canutus*, and Lord Marshal of that Kingdom, but he at last was expelled for his tyranny and perfidiousness, and *Christianus* was by them accepted as their king, to whom they were not long subject, for divers of the *Swedes* rebelled against him, and called home again *Charles* from *Gaunt*, where he had lived in exile seven years; this *Christianus* was a clement and bountiful Prince, whose government had been without blood, if his simplicity had not been abused by some sycophants, to the great prejudice of *Swethland*, for *John* Archbishop of *Upsalia*, by the malice of some false

*An. Christi.* false informers (by whom often-times Princes are abused) was apprehended by *Christianus*, and highly wronged, being sent into *Donmark*, where he lived in great misery, and yet it was by his means that the King obtained this Kingdom, for this Archbishop was the main man that opposed the tyranny, perfidiousness and cruelty of King *Charles*, that stood most for the peoples liberty, but King *Christianus* having found out the knavery of these misinformers, sends the Archbishop home again to *Sweden* with much honour, and restores him to his former power and dignity; in requital of which favours, he remained faithful ever after to *Christianus*, forgetting the injury of his captivity: this King having redeemed *Holsatia* with a great sum of money, raised by way of taxes from his subjects; *Swethland* also being subdued by his Arms, and *Gothland* regained, having married his son *John*, and visited *Rome* for Religions sake; at last after three and thirty years reign he died, and was buried at *Roschild* in a Chappel which he had built and richly endowed, on the South side of the Cathedral Church of Saint *Lucius* the Martyr; this place he had enriched with divers ornaments and Reliques from *Rome*.

To him succeeded his son *John* the first; he married *Christina* daughter of *Ernestus* Duke of *Mysnia*, who bare him two sons *Christiernus* and *Fredarick*, and one daughter, *Elizabeth*, who was married to *Joachim* Marquess of *Brandeburg*; this *John* almost reigned two and thirty years over *Denmark*; in the beginning of his reign, some of the prophane Peers stirred him up against the Clergy, but when he perceived that it was out of malice and covetousness these profane men desired the overthrow of the Church, which is still exposed to the hatred of the Laity, he took all Ecclesiastick persons into his protection ever after; but what these covetous wretches could not effect by his King against the Church, they afterward did perform by *Christiern* and *Frederick* the first. *John* intended war against *Steno* *Stura* Governour of *Swede*, which his mother *Dorothy* kept off whilst she lived, but after her death he fought and subdued the *Swedes*, yet scarce enjoyed he that kingdom three years, for *Steno* and *Suanto* rebelled, to the hurt of both kingdoms. Queen *Christina* was besieged and taken in the Castle of *Holmt*; he was unfortunate in the battel of *Ditmarse* which he lost, but had better success by Sea against the *Lubekers*, who were alwayes enemies to the kingdom of *Denmark*; he died of the Plague in the town of *Olburg*, and was buried at *Ottomias*; he was a Prince both prudent and religious, much lamented after his death even by those that hated him in his life, foreseeing the tyrannical government of his son *Christiern* the second, whom the Histories call worse then any *Phalaris*, *Nero*, or *Scylla*, for having found a peaceable and plentiful kingdom, he left it most calamitous, by his sacriledge, impieties, cruelties, and perfidiousness, sparing neither ecclesiastick nor secular persons, but raging on the dead as well as on the living, for which his Nobility were so offended, that by the help of his Uncle and *Lubekers*, they drove him out of his kingdom, the 9. years of his reign; ten years he lived an exiled man in *Germany*; afterward returning with an Army into his countrey, hoping to recover his kingdom, was taken prisoner, and detained in captivity till his death, which befell him at *Callenburg* having lived 77 years and some moneths, he was buried at *Ottomia* near his father; his Concubine was the cause of all the miseries that fell on him and his kingdom; he married with *Isabel* daughter to *Philip* King of *Spain* and Arch-Duke of *Austria*, who lived ten years, and was buried at *Gaunt*, a most chaste and religious Lady, who bare him three sons, two of which died in their infancy, the third departed in the *Hungarian* warre under his Uncle *Charles* the fifth, Emperour, the same day that his father was taken prisoner; she bare him also two Daughters, *Dorothy* married to *Frederick* Count *Palatine*, and *Christina* the wife of *Francis* *Sfortia* Duke of *Millan*, and after him of *France* Duke of *Lorraine*.

Frederick



An. Christi.

Frederick the first succeeds King of Denmark and Norway; by his fathers last will he was made Duke of Sleswic, Holsatia, Stormaria, Wagria, and Ditmarschia; but being a child of nine years, his brother the king divides these Countries with him; when he came to mans estate, he demanded of his brother the Legacies his father left him, and complained for detaining his Dominions from him, but receiving an unpleasing answer, he was contented to sit quiet so long as his brother lived, whom he aided also in his wars against the *Ditmarshians*; at last entring into a confederacie with the Danish Nobility, drives him out of his kingdome for his tyranny, and undertakes the Government of Denmark and Norway; *Hafnia* surrendered to him, whither calling the Nobility together, he held a Parliament, in which *Christiern* for his tyranny and treachery is deposed, and *Frederick* elected, who presently confirmed the privileges of the Nobility as soon as he was crowned; he commanded that the Lutheran doctrine should be publicly taught in the Churches; he died at *Gottorp*, and was buried at *Sleswig* in the Quier of the Cathedral Church, where he was honoured with a Monument of Alabaster; he lived six and fifty years and reigned ten; he had two wives, the first was *Anna* daughter to *John* Elector and Marquess of *Brandeburg*, who lived fourteen years with him, he had by her *Christian* the third, king of *Denmark*, and *Dorothy* 1. the wife of *Albert* Duke of *Borussia*, his other daughter was *Sophia* wife to *Bugislans* the Tenth, Duke of *Stetin* in *Pomerania*; she had three sons, *John*, *Adolphus*, and *Frederick*, and three daughters, *Elizabeth* mother to *Sophia*, who was wife to *Frederick* the second, King of *Denmark*, *Anna* that died of the Plague, and *Dorothy* the second.

*Christians* the third succeeded; he first of all took care to settle the Churches of his kingdom, committing the charge of a general visitation of Ecclesiastick persons to *Widenfcius* Doctor in Divinity, whom he sent for out of *Magdeburg*, and to *Hermannus Tasti* Pastor of *Flenzburg*, with whom were joynted some of the Nobility; he was crowned by *John Bugenbagius* of *Pomerania*, and reigned four and twenty years in great moderation and prudence; at last the six and fiftieth year of his age he died; his Son honoured him with a magnificent Monument of Alabaster and Marble at *Roschild*, whither his body was transported with great solemnity; his wife *Dorothy* the Duke of Lower Saxony's Daughter lieth buried by him, she died twelve years after her husband, she bare to him *Frederick* the second King of *Denmark*, *Anna* wife to *Augustus* Elector of *Saxony* and Marquess of *Mysnia*, *Magnus* Duke of *Holsatia*, *Dorothy* wife to *William* Duke of *Brunswick*, and *John* the younger Duke of *Holsatia*.

*Frederick* the second succeeded; he had wars 7 years together with *Ericus* the 14. King of *Swethland*, till the year 1570. at length by the mediation of some Princes, peace is concluded between him and *John* brother to *Ericus* 14. all the rest of his reign he lived peaceably; at last he fell sick of a lingering disease, *Octob.* 3. and died the 4. of *April* following, having first received the Sacrament, and prepared himself with confession of his faith and prayer; he reigned 29 years, and lived 54. he died in *Sitland* in his Princely house of *Anderschow*; he was much bewailed by the whole kingdome, chiefly by the Church and Schools, for he was a great freind to Schollers; by his wife *Sophia* he had *Elizabeth*, *Anna*, *Christians*, *Ulricus*, *Augusta*, *Hedewiges*, and *John*; his Successor was *Christians* the Fourth, of whom we will speak hereafter.

CHAP.

An. Christi.

## CHAP. III.

The History of Holland, and the neighbouring places, from the year 1404. till 1514. with some passages of Utricht till 1580.

IN Holland, *Earl Albert* being dead, his son *William* succeeded, commended for a good souldier, a just Prince, and a munificent benefactor to the poore; his first wife was *Mary* daughter to *Charles* the seventh of *France*, by whom he had no children; but of his second wife *Margaret*, the Prince of *Burgundies* daughter, he begot *Jacoba* his onely daughter and heir: He had some difference with *Arkelius* a Lord of that Country, who had seized upon the City *Worchom*, or *Gorcum*. The Bishop of *Utricht* assisted the Earl against this *Arkelius*, from whom he took some towns; *Gaspera* was burned to ashes, and the same fortune was like to fall upon *Gorcum*, if the Duke of *Gelder*, and *John* of *Bavaria* elected Prince of *Liege* had not mediated a Peace between them: There were also great troubles between this *John* the Bavarian and the Citizens of *Liege*, who despising the government of this Prince, elected another; but *Earl William* by the aide of *John* of *Burgundy* his kinsman, *Antony* of *Brabant*, and *Theodoricus* of *Namurs*, overthrew these rebellious Citizens in a bloody battel, and withall abolished all the privileges of that City, imposing a heavy Tribute on it: This *William* also had some quarrels with *Renald* Duke of *Gelder*, but they were at last composed by the addition of *Arkelius* his dominions to *Williams*. After he had settled all at home, he made a journey to *Hannonia*, and shortly after dyed.

To him succeeded his onely daughter *Jacoba*, whose whole life was nothing else but a wrestling with bad fortune: for her first husband the Dolphin of *France*, *John* by name, son to *Charles* the sixth, shortly after her hasty marriage with him, died of poyson; she was then about sixteen years old, in the prime of her youth, when she gave her consent to marry with *John* of *Brabant*, though she was retarded from that by Religion and propinquity of blood; yet Pope *Martin* the fifth gave her a dispensation, which was revoked again by the authority of *Sigismund* the Emperour. This being unknown to *Jacoba*, she consummates the matrimony at the *Hague*: In the interim, *John* of *Bavaria* aiming at higher matters, resignes his Episcopal seat to the Pope, and marieth with the widow of *Anthony* Duke of *Brabant*; besides, *Sigismund* the Emperour confers upon *John* of *Bavaria* the Arms of *Holland*, to whom that Earldome seemed to appertain, he being the next heir male, to whom the female sex was to give place: Upon this, he enters *Holland* with an Army, notwithstanding the *Grandees* resisted his claim, affirming that the woman was capable by their antient laws of the government of that Earldome: But *John* of *Burgundy* made peace between them upon these terms; that what the *Bavarian* did possess, he should enjoy by the right of Fee: yet the next year, the war was renewed by the City of *Leyden*, which sided with *Jacoba*; but the inhabitants being pinched with a strait siege, were forced to yeeld, and submit their necks to a new Lord. *John* of *Brabant* was forced, though without his wives knowledge, to deliver up the whole government of the Country to the *Bavarian*; hereupon arose divers jealousies and quarrels between the married couple, so that she grew careless, out of indignation, both of her husband and of the government; besides, the sinistrous waies used in making up of this match stuck in her stomach, and so using this for a pretence, she marieth the Duke of *Glocester*, without the Popes dispensation; this exasperated her former husband, so that he having undertaken the government of *Holland* upon the death

Qq

of

*An. Christi.* of John of Bavaria, goeth into *Hannonia*, and being assisted by the Forces of Philip Duke of Burgundy, overthrew in several skirmishes the Army of Jacoba, whom he took prisoner and delivered her to the Burgundian, till the Popes opinion or judgement was known concerning this match; but she escaped to Holland in a mans habit, where she was joyfully received by those Cities of the *Hoecks* that sided with her, but many other Townes adhered to Philip the Burgundian: Hence followed a cruel war, the Duke of Gloucester assisted Jacoba, but Philip at last got the better; After this the Popes sentence followed, making her divorce from her former husband unlawful, with a command that she should commit her self to the custody of Amadeus the Duke of Savoy, till things were peaceably composed. *Hunfred* of Gloucester having repudiated his wife, marieth with another: After this Jacoba laid siege to *Harlem*, which she was forced to raise again, and fight with Philip of Burgundy, whom at last in a long battel she overcame, and drove him into *Leyden*. In the mean while as she was making greater preparations, John of Brabant, from whom she had divorced her self, died, which now put her in great hopes of obtaining Holland again; but these hopes were quickly blasted by her overthrow she received neer *Wirringa* in a battel against Philip, with whom she Articles, that he should be Protector of Holland, but the dominion should remain in her, besides, she should never marry without the consent of Philip; and withall, if she died childless, he should be her sole Heir: so the Countrey enjoyed peace a while, which afterward broke out into new discords; for Jacoba being of a libidinous nature, fell in love with *Francon Borfalius*, which when Philip understood, suddenly he seisseth on him, and sends him prisoner to *Rupelmond*, with command that he should have his head cut off; but the Governour of the Castle being loath to meddle with the blood of so great a man, gave out that *Borfalius* was beheaded; Philip repenting of his rash sentence, when he heard of this, was much grieved, and wept, for he delighted not in blood; but when he heard that *Borfalius* was alive, he rejoiced exceedingly, and withall, ratified the marriage between him and Jacoba, on these conditions, that she should totally resign her right, that *Borfalius* should lay claim to the Earldome of *Osserbands*; if they had children, they should enjoy their ancient Dominions, if they had none, that then all these Countries should devolve to the Heirs of Philip the Burgundian; and so the dying childless, the House of Burgundy became Lords of *Hannonia*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *West-Friesland*; and thus Philip became a most potent Prince, his first Marriage with *Michaelia* the daughter of Charles the sixth of France was sterile, and so was his second Matrimony; but by the third match with *Elizabeth* of Portugal he had three sons, one of whom, *Martin* by name (the rest being dead) succeeded him. Philip after this had long wars with the French, at last a peace is concluded upon this condition, that Philip should endeavour to recover amongst other territories the Earldome of *Gisen*, but from this he was hindered by the English out of *Calice*, which was then under them. At this time, the tumults of *Gant* and *Bruges* filled the whole Country with disorders: One day as Philip was passing through *Bruges*, the Citizens fell upon his Company, killed the chiefest of his Nobility, and if he had not broken open the gates, he had been murdered there himself, so that he narrowly escaped. This high indignity he could not digest, till he had besieged the town so closely, that it was pinched both with poverty and hunger, for want of trading and provision: whereupon the town is surrendered, eighteen of the chief plotters were put to death, and the rest forced to redeem their lives, and the Princes favour with a great sum of money: after this he suppresseth the *Gantois*, and other factions thereabout; he made his natural sonne *David* Bishop of *Utricht*, though the Citizens withstood him; he also assisted by his power *Lewis* to the Crown of France, at which time the solemnity and ceremonies of the golden Fleece were performed

at

at the Hague; this Order was first instituted at the Nuptials of Philip and *An. Christi.* *Jabel*.

In the mean time those of *Liege* offered divers wrongs to the Earls hereditary countries, and drove *Lewis Burbon* out of his Bishoprick. The Earls son Charles surnamed *Bellicon*, or *Hardy*, was sent with an Army to suppress them, which he did, but they presently rebelled again, whereupon the City *Dinantum*, a famous place then, is made the object of the Souldiers fury, who killed many of them, with the sword, and drowned multitudes in the *Mose*; they overthrow the Towers and Walls of the City, and burned down the houses with fire; so at last the Citizens of *Liege* were forced by this exemplary punishment to submit, and beg the Princes favour. After these wars, this good Earl died with age and sickness at *Brugis* the 73 year of his age, to whom succeeded *Charles Martin*, called the *Bellicon*; he was three times married, first with *Katherine* daughter to Charles the seventh, King of France; secondly, with *Elizabeth* of *Burbon*, by whom he had *Mary* the Heir of his Dominions; thirdly, with *Margaret* daughter to the Duke of *Tork*, and sister to *Edward* the 4. King of England; he fought divers battels with good success; he suppressed *Liege*; as we said; he began a war with *Lewis* the eleventh, King of France, which was upon agreement suppressed; he had some Sea-fights with the Duke of *Warwick*, against whom he aided King *Edward*, when he was driven out of his Kingdom into Holland; he had wars also with *Arnold* Duke of *Geldre*, who had sold *Geldre* and *Zutphania* to Charles; all this Countrey he added to his Dominion, and received it in fee from the Emperour; but *Cæsar* afterward gave aide to the Earls enemies at *Colen* and *Novesium*, a Town belonging to *Colen*, and there was like to be great trouble, if the Popes Legat had not taken up the quarrel: he had long wars also with the French, and was twice defeated by *Reinold* of *Lorain* the French General. After *Nancy* was taken by the French, Charles layes siege to it; a long and bloody battel was fought; at last the Earl being betrayed by *Campobassus* an Italian, was drowned with his horse in a Lake the 43 year of his age; he was a wise man, a just Prince, and a good Souldier; he set up a high Court of Justice at *Mechlin*, and in the great Hall at the Hague he used to administer Justice himself, sometimes every week; he beheaded the President of *Zeland* who had put to death an innocent man, that he might abuse his wife; this President having had his desire of the woman, sent her the dead body of her husband, which the Earl understanding, sent to the woman the dead body of this President or Governour, and made her heir to all his goods: This Earl was too greedy of glory and dominion.

To him succeeded his onely daughter *Mary*, the last of the house of *Burgundy*, from which the right of those Countries were translated to the House of *Austria*, and so to *Spain*; her tuition *John* of *Clive* undertook, till she was married to *Maximilian* son to *Frederick* the third, Emperour, which was the originall of the House of *Austria*s greatness. *Lewis* the French King sought her for his son, but was rejected, for which he was highly incensed. The troubles arose again between the *Hoecks* who took *Leyden*, &c. the *Cabillans* who seised upon *Dort*. The Princess in hunting was flung from her horse, with which fall she broke a rib, and died of an Imposthume, she was buried at *Bruges*, to the great grief of her husband, to whom she bare Philip of *Austria*, *Francis* who died an infant, and *Margaret*. Philip the second, Heir of these Dominions, being scarce as yet four years old, had *Maximilian* his father for his Governour, by whose prudence the factions of the *Hoecks* and *Cabillans* were quieted, the rebellion of the *Geldrians* suppressed, the Townes of *Ruremund* and *Venlo* having submitted; he extinguished also the differences with France, by betrothing his daughter *Margaret* to the Dolphin, who was deluded by him, affecting rather the D. of *Britanie*s onely daughter, whom he married. *Maximilian* had also wars with *Gant* and *Brugis*, whose stout stomach he at last

*An. Christi.*  
1506. suppressed, but after he was called to the Empire, he left the care of Belgium to his son Philip, now almost sixteen years of age; he by Johanna daughter to Ferdinand King of Spain begot Charles the fifth, Ferdinand King of Hungary and Bohemia, and some daughters afterward married to the chief Princes of Europe, and by the death of John of Castile he became Heir of divers Kingdoms; he was a vertuous and peaceable Prince; at length being full of wealth and happiness, died at Burgis a City of Granada, not without suspicion of poison; his heart, as he desired, was buried at Jerusalem: To him succeeded Charles the 5. scarce six years old, whose Aunt Margaret in the mean while governed the Netherlands; but after Charles attained the years of puberty, the whole countrey of Belgium solemnly acknowledged him for their Lord. After this, at Valedolid the chief City of old Castile, sometime the residence of the kings of Spain, with great magnificence, Charles takes possession of his fathers kingdoms.

Charles, by the death of Maximilian Emperour, his Grandfather, is chosen by the general suffrage of the Electors, Emperour of the Romanes; who was no sooner gone into Germany, but the Spaniards rebelled, by means of the insolent Government of William Croijus Chierius, whom Charles had left as Viceroy of Spain; the Nobility envied the government of a stranger. Peter Gironius, being aided by the Peers, under colour of vindicating the liberty of Spaine, goeth to Valedolid, where he seifeth upon Joan Mother of Charles, and carried her away as his prisoner; but suddenly an Army of Imperialists being levied, they regained the Queen, set her at liberty, and put to death the chief rebels; Charles finding how requisite his presence was, to extinguish the fire of intestine seditions, makes a journey to Spain, where he stayed eight years; but whilst his presence quieted Spaine, his absence occasioned troubles in the Netherlands, raised by the Geldrians, and Zutphanians, who being at last subdued, were forced to submit to the pleasure of the Conquerour, which was, that Gelderland and Zutphania being escheated to the Emperour, they should be held in fee from him; this Zutphan is a town in Gelderland, and hath been an ancient Earldome, and is seated on the River Tyle. Groynning also a Towne of West-Friesland, which had been wrested from the Duke of Saxony by the Earle of East-Friesland, and sold to Charles Duke of Gelders, was to be surrendered to Charles the Emperour; to whom also Henry of Bavaria, the last Bishop of Utrecht, being expelled by the Citizens thereof and Duke of Gelders, resigned his jurisdiction; the first temporal Lord of it was Charles, who built a fair strong Castle here; yet I finde in Bell-Forest upon Guicciardin, that William Enckewort Cardinal, and Bishop of Tortona in Spain, took possession of this Bishoprick by a Deputy, he himself remaining then at Rome, whose Successour was George of Egmont son to John the first Count of Egmont; he ruled this Bishoprick five and twenty years, whose Successor Frederick of Tautenburg was Bishop of the place twenty yeares, after whom succeeded none but Titular Bishops; Episcopacy with the Roman Religion being both driven out at the same time, not without great tumults, and almost the overthrow of that City.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. IV.

The History of Savoy, and the neighbouring parts, from the year 1397. till the year 1452.

IN Savoy, Amadeus the 8. succeeded to his father Amadeus the 7. There was great strife who should have the tuition of the child; for Bona Biturica his mother, Bona Borbonia his grandmother, Lewis of Savoy Prince of Morrea (who had married his sister) the Earl of Geneva, and Philip Duke of Burgundy, did all claim an interest in this child's tuition, and government of his Earldome: this gave occasion of great differences, which were not ended till Amadeus himself being now of age, and having married Mary of Burgundy (according to the desire of both parents whilst they lived) undertook the government: He was a Prince of great hopes, and on whose prudence and power his neighbours did much rely. Italy at this time was grievously afflicted with plagues, sudden deaths, Civil wars, and schismes in the Church, all which were portended by a direful Comet, and other fearful meteors. For mitigating of Gods wrath, and removing of these judgements, supplication and processions were made through all Towns and Villages, multitudes of people going about in white garments, and such as did not wear this colour and go about with them, were counted prophane; this garment was of white linnen, which covered them all over head and foot: All ages, sexes and conditions of people, from the meanest sort to the Princes, undertook this Penance freely, chiefly the Clergy of all degrees, so that for three whole months there was no other publike exercise performed; neither during that time, were there any quarrels or Law-suits.

This Amadeus bestowed upon the Celestine Order all that building called the Savoy at Lions, which heretofore had belonged to the Knights Templers, but after their abolition to the Knights of S. John of Jerusalem, which buildings these Knights had bestowed upon Amadeus 4. for his good service in recovering the Isle of Rhodes to the Christians: The same Amadeus 8. gave order to his son Lewis to build a Chappel in that place, and to increase the renew of those few Monks which he had invited thither, having as yet no more but seventy five crowns per annum allowed them, which was performed by Lewis accordingly, who also enlarged the bounds of the Monastery; this was in honour of Peter Celestin not long before canonized. About this time John Bishop of Liege was expelled his Bishoprick by the Inhabitants, and pursued also in a hostile manner: this wrong William Earle of Henault did highly resent (for this John was his brother) and presently implores aid from the Duke of Burgundy who had married their sister, against the Liegers; the Burgundian assents, and withall invites to the confederacie Amadeus, who had married his sister: these raised a great Army, a cruel battel is fought, in which Pierweissus the chief author of the Bishops expulsion, and his son, who assumed the title of Bishop of Liege, with eight and twenty thousand Liegers were slain, and John the Bavarian restored again to his Bishoprick: Virius General of the Savoyan forces, with the Gentry of Savoy that were with him, behaved themselves so gallantly in this conflict, that the Burgundian invited three hundred of them allowing large stipends to be of his Life-guard, setting Virius over them as Captain; but not long after, some differences falling out between Amadeus and Lewis Duke of Burbon about the Principality of Dumbar, which the Savoyan claimed as a part of his dominion, Virius boldly by a Herauld denounces war against Lewis of Burbon, at which the Duke wondred that a private man durst be so bold, therefore he suspected that Amadeus had authorized him to do so, and the rather, because Virius had seized upon some Castles in the Country of Dumbar: Some think that he was encouraged by John Duke

*An. Christi.* Duke of *Burbon*; however it was, the *Burbonian* with an Army before *Virius* was aware, regained all the Castles which he had taken, and withall threatens to proclaim war against the *Savoyan*, if *Virius* be not delivered up to him: the *Savoyan* who disclaimed altogether this rashness and boldness of *Virius*, delivers him up to the *Burbonian*, conditionally that he should be used as a prisoner of war, and dismissed again after he had received satisfaction from him for the losses sustained; this was agreed upon, and the difference about the right of homage which the *Savoyan* demanded of the *Burbonian*, was composed by the Duke of *Berry*; but this accord was not long-lived, for *Charles 6.* King of *France* being offended with the Dukes of *Orleans* and *Burbon* upon 10 suspicions and jealousies, invites *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, and *Amadeus* to fall upon the lands of *Orleans* and *Burbon* with fire and sword, which was done accordingly: *Amadeus* employs *Virius*, giving him the charge of five hundred *Curisers*, *Fierbourguins* is sent by the *Burgundian*, these make havock of all whither they went: *Berry*, *Burbon* and *Orleans* being highly incensed at these wrongs, enter into a league both against the *Burgundian*, whose greatness they hated, and the rather because his power was greater with the French King than all the other Princes; and likewise against the *Savoyan*, who had married the *Burgundians* sister. What miseries and desolation fell upon *France* by this confederacie, may be seen at large in the French Histories.

This *Amadeus* waited upon *Sigismund* the Emperour, as the second Earle 20 of the Empire, when he went to *France* about a Synod for removing of the Papal schisme; the Emperours Ambassadors could do no good, therefore he was fain to go himself, being attended upon (according to the ancient custome when the Emperour travels out of the Imperial bounds) by the Princes Electors, four Dukes, four Lantgraves, four Marquesses, and four Earles of the Empire: *Amadeus* in his journey fell sick; some think truly, some think 1415. faintly, as being unwilling to meet or converse with *Orleans*, the *Burgundians* great enemy, and so returns home, where understanding that *Genua* was much distracted with intestine broils, he sends one thither under colour of some other business to try some of the Citizens under-hand, if the Emperour by their help might obtain the City, which would be to him of great consequence for entering into *Italy* upon all occasions: this messenger not carrying 30 his business close enough was discovered, and by *Barnabas* *Guanon* the new elected governour of *Genua* (*George* *Adurinus* the ancient governour having freely laid down his office in these tumults) is apprehended and condemned of treason; but before the expiration of one year, this *Barnabas* was by 1417. *Thomas* *Fregosius* thrust out of his office, and banished from *Genua*. Though this plot of *Amadeus* succeeded not, yet his good will was seen to the Emperour *Sigismund*, which he rewarded by making him of an Earle 40 Duke, and because he doubted lest *Geneva* and *Lausanna* would unite themselves with the confederated *Switzers*, as the Cities of the *Valtellin* had done, two years after he obtains of the Emperour full and sole dominion over these Cities, which grant was approved by Pope *Martin*. After this *Amadeus* made peace between *Charles* the 7. of *France*, and *Philip* the Good Duke of *Burgundy*, whose father *John* was killed by the faction of *Orleans*, and procured that all who had a hand in that murder should be expelled *France*. After this *Philip* D. of *Millan* made war upon *Savoy*, and seized upon *Novaria* and *Vercelli*, because *Amadeus* had made a league with the *Venetians* the D. of 50 *Millans* enemies, so that the Army which the *Millanois* had raised against the *Venetians* and *Florentines*, was employed against the *Savoyans*; but *Amadeus* to be revenged, raiseth a great Army, and by the assistance of the *Burgundian*, enters *Lombardy* with fire and sword, spoiling all the Territories of *Millan*: but *Sigismund* the Emperour, who was now preparing to go for *Italy* to receive the Imperial Crown, obtains free passage through the Duke of *Millans* Country, and withall procures a peace between *Philip* and *Amadeus*, in which *Novaria*

*Novaria* and *Vercelli* are restored by the Duke of *Millan*, who took to wife *An. Christi.* Mary daughter of *Amadeus*. In the mean while the French King had lost a great part of his Country, in his wars with *England* and *Burgundy*. The Prince of *Orange* intending to invade the Delphinat, sends to *Savoy* for help, which was promised on this condition, that the *Savoyan* if he obtained the victory should have that part of the Delphinat in which *Gratianopolis* was seated, and *Vionna*: but the event of this war proved otherwaies then they expected; for scarce had *Orange* entered the Delphinat, when *Gauconrtius* the Governour of that Country under the French King set upon him, and overthrew his Army, 10 so that he was forced to save himself by flight, a great many Gentlemen were taken prisoners, and above three hundred slain. After this a great battel was fought between *Renatus* of *Anjou*, and *Anthony* the Loranger Earle of *Vaudementium*; this was of the French faction, the other of the *Burgundians*; the *Savoyan* assisted *Anthony*, who got the victory, and took *Renatus* prisoner.

Now *Amadeus* being sixty five years old, and growing weary of the world, 20 reputing with himself the hazard, vanity, and uncertainty of humane affairs, resolves to change his course of life, and to perswade some of those Knights on whom he had alwayes most relied, to do the like; but first he picks out two of them, whom he took aside into a private place, and acquainted them [That he alwayes truly loved them, so that he still rejoiced in their company and presence when he was in all his glory; and now desirous to live a private and retired life from the tumults of the world, he was in good hope they would not forsake him, promising that he would never forget their kindness in this, and that for diet and cloathing they should do no worse then he.] These two Gentlemen wondring much at this resolution of the Duke, [gave him humble thanks for his good opinion of them, and his affection to them; but withall they wished him to consider, that God had enlarged his Dominions and Titles also, that now he was at peace with all his neighbours, that 30 he had dutiful and obedient subjects, and a fair issue of children, and that nothing was wanting to make him truly happy; therefore humbly desired that he would not prefer a private life to the welfare of his people committed to his charge, whom he ought to rule and keep in peace, to advance the good, and punish the bad, to chuse out such men as might administer justice without partiality, that this was the high way to eternal happiness; This they thought good, out of their duty, to put him in minde of, yet no wayes willing to crosse his designs.] To this the Duke replied, [That they were mistaken in placing true happiness in outward splendor and dominion; for (saith he) There is no felicity but where is liberty, which is onely to be found in the 40 private life, being secluded from the tumults and disquiets, cares and fears, the unseparable companions of greatness; for a private man enjoys more happiness in a day, then a Prince doth in a year; for the one can travel up and down the world securely, and satisfy his eyes and minde with those delights, which the other cannot without much fear and danger both to his own person and subjects; for how many Princes have been taken travelling out of their own dominions, imprisoned, and shamefully murdered, even to the hazarding of their people, who by this means have been exposed as a prey to their enemies; besides, Princes ears are still abused by flattering Parasites, so that they seldom hear the truth, and are made believe they are adorned with most vertues, and blessed with greater happiness then all other men, which is most false, and meer mockery: Again, private men are for the most 50 part longer-lived and healthier then Princes, as being contented with more simple fare, having better stomachs by reason of exercise, and the fresh air which they still enjoy; whereas we are cloyed with variety of dishes, sauces, and drinks, so that many times we loath our meat, and are oppressed with surfeitting and drunkenness, and those bad effects which ensue from thence. Now if

*An. Christi.* if you will look upon the actions of Princes, whatsoever good success they have in wars and government, is ascribed to fortune, or to their Counsellours, or the courage of their souldiers; but if any thing falls out amisse, if a battell or City be lost, the fault is presently imputed to the Prince, as being either careless, or treacherous, or timorous: I will say nothing of the continual jealousies and suspicions of Princes; in time of war they are still fearful lest their counsels may be betrayed, or their persons delivered up to the enemy, in time of peace they are afraid of insurrections; they are also still molested with the unbridled desire of domination, preferring that to all rights of affinity and consanguinity: it is also madness to count them happy because they possess much, for the greater their possessions are, the greater are their molestations, and the more they have, the more they covet; whereas private men are content with little, and their desires are comprehended within a narrow circumference. I will not deny, but there is some happiness in those Princes that can by their milde and just government procure the good will of their subjects, but this holds not long, for they are forced oftentimes to punish Delinquents, and to impose heavy taxes and payments on their subjects, by which they forfeit the love and good opinion they should have of their people, and so they live still in fears and jealousies, though they have about them strong guards; therefore if you duly consider the condition of Princes, you will finde much more felicity in rejecting then accepting of a Crown, which is stuf with so many cares and fears, that if you should finde it on the ground, you would scarce stoop to take it up. These are the reasons (my friends) why I desire to withdraw my self out of the tempestuous sea of publike employments, into the safe and quiet harbour of a private life, hoping to enjoy more happiness then heretofore, and the rather if I can have the fruition of your society: I will therefore commit the burthen of government to my son *Lewis*, yet reserving to my self the chiefest power and command.]

The two Knights hoping that the Duke would not continue long in this resolution, but that it was a sudden conceit, which upon more serious thoughts he would change, assented to his desires, professing they would never forsake, but follow him whithersoever he went, humbly thanking him for counting them worthy of so great honour as to impart to them his resolutions, and to chuse them as his companions. Upon this, the Duke about midnight accompanied onely with these two, and a few more of his domesticks, removes to *Ripallium*, where about a mile from the Town stood a large and pleasant building upon the bank of the lake *Lausanna*, which *Amadeus* in his younger years had built there for pleasure; there stood also a Monastery dedicated to *S. Maurice*, whom *Amadeus* his ancestours highly honoured as their titular Saint: Hither the Duke having entred, puts on the same Monastical habit which the Monks of that place wore; the garment was long, of an ash-colour, which was girt with a rich girdle, over this a cloak with a golden cross on it; the garment had a long hood, which when the Monks let fall on their shouldiers, they wore on their heads red hats like Cardinals; they used also to bear in their hand a writhed and knobbed staffe: *Aeneas Sylvius*, afterward Pope *Pius* the 2. saw this Duke in this habit, attended upon by ten Knights in the same habit, and of the same order. But this sudden departure and resolution of the Duke did much amaze his Nobility, being no wayes acquainted with his counsels in this; all his subjects also were much troubled that he should forsake his glory and dominions to embrace such a life, who sent to acquaint him how unpleasing this act of his was to his people of all sorts, and how unbecoming his own greatness and wisdom; but he returns answer, That by this departure he had neither diminished his greatness nor judgement, nor his care of them, but would provide that the State of *Savoy* should receive no damage thereby, therefore wished them to persevere in their

*An. Christi.* their wonted allegiance; In the interim he sends for all the chief men of his dominions, desiring his two sons might be brought to him; then he declares *Lewis* his eldest son Prince of *Piemont*, and his younger Earl of *Geneva*, and so delivers over to *Lewis* the government of all his Provinces on both sides of the Alpes, but reserving to himself the supreme power, neither did he lay aside the title of Duke, nor would he have any thing of concernment acted without his knowledge and approbation. At last he dismisses the Assembly or Parliament, wishing them to retire to their homes, and to be obedient to his Sons; twenty of his domestick servants he retained with him, the rest departed with great sorrow.

The Duke took great pleasure in conferring with the Prior of that Covent, telling him, That now his life did much resemble the condition of those who having escaped shipwrack, sate securely on the shore, beholding those ships that were struggling with the winds and waves, fearing every hour to be swallowed up by the impetuous billows of that angry element. To whom the Prior replied gravely; [There is nothing (saith he) Excellent Prince, that more resembles the wretched life of man then Navigation; for we see that they who are not accustomed to the sea-life, nauseate and grow sick with the agitation of the ship, who thinking to alleviate and ease themselves, get into the Cock-boat, as if the cause of their nauseating proceeded from the greatness of the ship, not the agitation thereof: just so are we, who being troubled and disquieted in minde as it were with the assiduous waves and storms of the tumultuous sea of this world, think that the laying aside our greatness, dignities, wealth and publike employments will ease us, and that we shall live happily and securely in solitudes, cloysters, and retirements; but we delude our selves with shews and appearances, for storms may as well attend on him who lives in a cottage, as in a Palace. Pardon me, most Illustrious Prince, if I speak freely, for I am bound by my Allegiance and Order, to speak truth without flattery, which is the bane of Princes, and doth more mischief to them, then open enemies: It is no great matter to forsake your Palace, State and Honours, if you forsake not your selfe, for he that follows Christ must deny himselfe; he that retires into a desert, and carries with him his unsettled thoughts, and unruly affections, what benefit hath he more then they who remove out of one place or air into another? We must therefore above all things clear and purifie our mindes from all grosse and terrene thoughts, before we can be fit for heavenly meditations: Christs souldiers must not be intangled with the affairs of the world, saith the Apostle; for as the eye cannot at the same time look upward and downward, neither can the soul elevate it self to Heaven, whilst it is depressed with the weight of earthly thoughts, as they are whom the delights, honours, and riches of this world have wholly possessed, whom the world forsakes before they forsake it: Married men are still perplexed with cares for their family and children; single men have a continual conflict with their unbridled lusts: some are incessantly troubled with desire of wealth, others of revenge, some of honours, others are never satisfied with pleasures; how many do we see expose their lives to the dangers of the sea in their long Navigations to remote Countries, for a little gain? few dayes passe in which the serenity of our souls is not obnubilated with the clouds and fogs of terrene affections, so that sometimes we are deprived of our nights rest; our best course therefore is to bid adieu to the world, to despise her flatterings, to divorce the body from the soul, and not to suffer any commerce in spiritual things between them, and withal to account the storms (which sometimes seise on us, and which we cannot avoid in our Navigation through this tempestuous Ocean) sent by God to drive us home the sooner to the wished for haven of happiness: Let us so use the world as if we used it not; let us not so set our affections on friends, country, wealth, honours, and other mundane emoluments,



*An. Christi.* as to grieve or to be troubled, when we are separated from them; let us part without repining with our wealth, lands and possessions, by which oftentimes the minde is clogged, Gods anger provoked, and much mischief procured; so shall we finde a new light shine in our souls; and we shall become new creatures, having put off the skin of our old natures, so shall our souls be fitted like wax to receive new impressions of grace, when the old characters of our froward and perverse dispositions are obliterated, which is effected by the benefit of a retired life, by which our exorbitant and boyling affections are cooled, and the unruly motions of our mindes, like so many wilde beasts are tamed; by this means the venomous weeds of pride, lust, hatred, covetousness, and such like will be eradicated, that the tender plants of grace and piety may prosper and flourish in us; our tongues shall be accustomed to praise God, our ears to hear his will, our eyes to behold his glory, wisdom and power in the Creation and Government of the Universe; our whole senses, faculties and employments will be totally taken up in spiritual delights and comfortable fruition of our God; whose sweetness will make us account all things else bitter and unpleasant; to attain which happiness, the readiest way is to devote our selves to prayer, reading, and meditation on the writings and holy lives of those blessed souls, who by fighting the good fight, have now attained the Crown of righteousness: For as Painters who take the copy of a choise picture, look stedfastly on it, and take notice of the least lincaiment; so must we diligently observe and follow exactly the lives and behaviour of those holy men, conforming our selves as near as may be to their strictness of life; this course if we take, we shall doubtless obtain our desires, but if we give off and faint, our labours will be lost, and our end miserable. This was the summe of the Priors speech, with which the Duke was much delighted.

The Councel of *Basil* (a Town in *Helvetia* upon the *Rhine*) being called first by Pope *Martin*, then by Pope *Eugenius*, for settling the controversies of *Husse*, as we have already said; after the controverted points were determined by *Julian* the Cardinal, Pope *Eugenius* his Apostolical Legat, a reformation of the Hierarchie was urged: *Philip* Duke of *Millan* a great enemy to *Eugenius*, stirred up the Princes and Cardinals against him, accusing him of divers crimes; being cited, he refuseth to come, but sends his Legats, whereupon the Cardinals, with the rest of the Synod, depose *Eugenius*, and substitute in his place this *Amadeus*, who for his sanctity and piety was now grown famous; *Eugenius* in vain goeth about to dissolve the Synod, and calls another at *Ferraria*, which because of the plague was translated to *Florence*. *Amadeus*, now called *Felix* the 5. is sent unto by his son in law the Duke of *Millan*, and the Fathers of the Synod to acquaint him with his election; he modestly desired to be excused, in regard he was unfit for so great a burthen and honour, having now renounced the world, and being bred a souldier, he was altogether ignorant of Ecclesiastick affairs; that office is fittest for one (saith he) who hath spent his whole time in Church matters, otherwise it may prove as unfortunate as it did to *Peter Moravins*, an. 1294, who though a professed Anachorite of the Celestine Order, yet accepted of the Pontificat, being altogether ignorant what belonged to that high employment, and so having sat six months, was deposed, and ended his life in prison; prosperity is more dangerous then adversity; this is oftentimes mastered, that is harder to be overcome: Thus he excused himself; but at last by the importunity of the Legats sent by Duke *Philip* of *Millan*, and the earnest intreaty of his other friends, and chiefly his sons, who thought this dignity conferred on the father for his worth, redounded to the childrens honour, he submitted himself to the pleasure of the Synod: so the election being ratified, he is honoured by the Pontifical habits which the Legats clothed him with. Shortly after hee takes his journey for *Basil*, being

being accompanied with all his Nobility; when he came, all the Cardinals, Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, with the rest of the Clergy, Lawyers, and all that were there in the City flock in great multitudes to meet him; so that many were killed in the presse; he receiveth his sacred Orders by degrees and intervals of time; then being by the accustomed ceremonies made Bishop, he is brought between two Cardinal Deacons to a Theatre erected over against the Town-hall; after he was set down, the Cardinal on his left hand takes off his Episcopal Mitre, and the other Cardinal on his right hand sets upon his head the Pontifical; the rest of the Cardinals and Clergy in their Ecclesiastick habits stood round about him, the multitude in the interim with joyful shouts and acclamations wishing all happiness to the new Pope; then the two Cardinals that crowned him published the Popes indulgences, the one in Latine, the other in the vulgar tongue; thence he is conveyed to the Black-friars Monastery, after this manner: First, the Cardinals domestick servants and officers went on horseback, after them went the Popes servants, among which his Chamberlains carried each one a red bag like a shepherds pouch: after these went the Cardinals kindred, whom twelve grooms of the horse followed, every one holding his red banner, bearing in them the Popes Arms: after these the City Magistrates followed, with one of the *Teutonic* Knights carrying a banner with a black crosse in a silver field upon it, which are the Arms of that Order: after him went a Nobleman of *Savoy* carrying a banner, in which were the Pontifical and Savoyan Arms conjoynd: after him rode one who carried a banner, and in it the Arms of the Knights of *Jerusalem*: the horses of these Standard-bearers were in rich trapings, and themselves in compleat Armour (except their heads) covered with copes or rich robes of silk, on which were imbroidered their Arms: after these twelve milk-white horses richly traped with silk and gold were led, then four Gentlemen with Targets, every one carrying a red hat on a spear, these were followed by the Popes Chamberlains, after whom went the Princes Ambassadors, and Roman Nobility, whom the Apostolical Sub-deacon carrying the crosse followed, he was ushered by two Apparitors with their Maces; then went twelve of the Popes intimate friends in scarlet, each one bearing a white Taper, two others bore before the Host two silver candlesticks or lamps, with the lights burning, the Host it self was carried on a white horse under a Canopy, encompassed with rich Tapestry of silk and gold, with the Popes Arms on them: after the Host came the Sacrist, and after him the Scribes or Secretaries of the Synod, among whom was *Aeneas Sylvius*, afterward Pope; after these followed the Advocates of the Consistory, the singing men, &c. and after them two Sub-deacons, a Greek and a Latine; then rode the Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, &c. next to them the Cardinals, and last of all, the Pope on a white horse richly adorned with gold and scarlet, eight Noblemen carrying a Canopy over him, with a numerous guard of Gentlemen in Arms: after these the Marshal flings money among the people to keep them off from pressing on the Popes guard. As soon as the Pope had entred the Black-friars Church, he blessed the people, and presented his foot to be kissed by the Cardinals and Nobility: after this he entertains them all with a most sumptuous feast in the Episcopal palace of *Basil*; then having named, who should be the Officers and Ministers of his Court, he createth some eminent and learned men Cardinals, among the rest was *Panormitan* the great Doctor of the Decrees, who was employed by Pope *Eugenius* to plead for his right in the Councel of *Basil*, but when he came thither he pleaded against him; he afterward was fain to lay down his Cardinalship, and live obscurely at home.

*Amadeus* by accepting of the Pontificate, gave occasion to a new schisme; which is reckoned the 27. The French, Switzers, *Millanois*, *Neapolitans*, and those of *Piemont* sided with *Felix* and the *Savoyans*; but the *Venetians* favored *Eugenius*, being born there, so did the *Florentines* and *Thuscians*. Hence ensued

*An. Christi.* a long war between *Eugenius*, the King of Spain, and the Duke of *Millan*. *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy* adhered to *Eugenius*, though he was the son of *Felix* his wife. *Frederick* the Emperor first held with *Felix*, but afterward he sided with *Eugenius*, who was now become a new man, and by his clemency and bounty had got most mens affections from *Felix*. Upon this the Italian Princes enter into a confederacie, with whom joyned also the Duke of *Millan*, that he might not seem to be singular. About this time, *Balthasar* *Offida* Governor of *Bononia*, for his cruelties and injustice is apprehended by *Francis* *Sfortia*, (author of the confederacie between the *Venetians* and *Florentines*) and sewed within a Bears skin raw as yet and bloody, so that he had no use of hands or feet, whereby he was poysoned by the stench and vermine which that raw skin begot, and so dyed miserably. *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy* not only got most of the Princes to fall off from *Felix*, but likewise perswaded *Charles* the French king to do the same: hereupon *Charles* sends Ambassadors to *Rome*, *Basil* and *Savoy*, to mediate for an accord between the two Popes; in the mean time *Eugenius* falls sick and dieth, the 15. year of his Pontificate, and the 60. of his age, to whom succeeded *Nicolaus* the fifth. *Lewis* the sonne of *Felix* the Pope, labours much with the French king to stand for Pope *Nicholas*, that so peace may be established in Christendome; for he was sorry that the blame of this schisme should be laid on his father, who deserved it not, being as all his 20 progenitors ever were, a stout champion of the Roman faith. *Charles* upon this sends his Ambassadors to *Lions*, wishing *Lewis* of *Savoy* to do the like, and to procure some Legats from *Basil*, that meeting together they may consult how peace might be settled in Christendome.

1446.

The next July after, there arrived at *Lions*, besides the Kings Ambassadors, the Archbishop of *Trevers*, and Legats from *Colen* and *Saxony*; Pope *Felix* sent *Lewis* *Alcman* the Cardinal: these consulted till November; at last it was agreed, they should give *Felix* a meeting at *Geneva*; thither when they came, they met with other Legats sent from *France*, *England*, *Sicily*, and other parts. *Felix*, who against his will accepted of the pontificate by the perswasion of 30 *Panormitan* the Abbot, and some Cardinals who were unwilling to be deposed, doth resolve willingly to devest himself of it; therefore openly in the Synod of *Lausanna* (for that of *Basil* was dissolved by the Dolphin) *Felix* aiming more at the general good, then his own honour and emolument, renounceth the papacie, transferring all his right he had to it upon Pope *Nicholas*; which fact was highly commended and admired by the Synod; as may be seen by the testimony they gave him, and which they left upon record to all posterity, the summe of which was this: Having blessed him, and wished him all happiness, they commend him for his piety, modesty, love of peace, and liberality towards the Church, who in such a time of distraction would rather suffer him- 40 self then she should suffer, who by his humility hath advanced her peace and dignity; therefore they thought good to nominate and create him Bishop of *Sabinia*, Cardinal of the Church of *Rome*, perpetual Vicar and Apostolical Legat over *Savoy*, *Piemont*, *Montferrat*, *Saluzzes*, *Asten*, the province of *Lions*, *Auspurg*, *Lausanna*, *Basil*, *Strasburgh*, *Constance*, and some other neighbouring cities and diocesses, and withall to appoint him in the Church of God the second place after the Pope, who was to rise whensoever *Felix* came into his presence; and to present his mouth (not his foot) to be kissed: And because he preferred peace to the greatest honour on earth, they decree therefore that he shall wear the Pontifical habits and arms, except the Fishers ring, the Crosse 50 on his Sandals, the Canopy, and the gestation of *Corpus Christi* must be left for the Pope; besides, whensoever he passeth beyond the borders of his own Legatship, he may use the Arms and power of a Legate; they exempt him also from his personal appearance in the Court of *Rome*, or at a General Council. These honours and priviledges the Synod thought him worthy of, for his excellent parts, and chiefly for removing the schisme and causing peace by

1449.

by his voluntary resignation of the highest place on earth. After this he returns to his Cloyster, where he spent the rest of his life in devotion; and then resigned his soul to God, anno 1452. some write 1459. *An. Christi.*

## CHAP. V.

10 A prosecution of the Savoyan History, from the year 1452. till the year 1503.

TO *Amadeus* succeeded his son *Lewis*, a great follower of his fathers virtues. He performed exemplary justice upon *Bolomerius* the Chancellor of *Savoy*, a wicked and covetous man, who had made himself extream rich by oppression, who for his own ends and gain kept *Felix* longer in the Pontificate then he was willing, for had it not been for this wretch he had resigned it long before. *Lewis* commands him to be apprehended, who being convicted of high crimes, is condemned to be drowned in the lake with a 20 great stone at his neck, to the great content of the Nobility, to whom he had been a main enemy. About this time, *Philip* *Maria* Duke of *Millan* died: He had beheaded his former wife, to marry with *Mary* the sister of this *Lewis*. But the people being weary of tyrannie, which they had suffered under him and his predecessors, resolve now to assert their liberty; therefore they choose a Government of twelve men in their city, overthrow the castle, and tear *Philips* last will in peeces; and withal they send to *Frederick* 3. Emperor a Cup of gold of great price, with promise to send him every year such another, that he would not suffer any to bear rule over them hereafter. The *Venetians* upon this took occasion with a great Army to seise upon *Placentia*, *Cremona*, and other cities 30 belonging to the Dutchy of *Millan*. *Francis* *Sfortia*, *Philips* son in law, after their example falls upon some other places in the same Dutchy; which *Lewis* of *Savoy* perceiving, he seiseth upon *Valentia* a city neer to him, and some other places. About this time also a war was raised by *Charles* 7. of *France*, against this *Lewis* of *Savoy* and *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, because *Lewis* had betrothed his daughter *Carola* without his knowledge to the Dolphin his sonne, and because *Philip* had received and entertained the Dolphin when he fled out of *France*; and withall the King sends him this message, That in entertaining his sonne, he cherished a Foxe in his bosome, which would hereafter devour his Chickens, which proved a true prophesie. The Dolphin being impatient of 40 delays, deals with the Burgundian to send to *Savoy*, that he might at last enjoy his wife, being now kept off from her full five yeares. When the Ambassador came to *Savoy*, Duke *Lewis* thought his message very just and reasonable, therefore sends his Daughter with a great train to the Dolphin at *Namurs*, where she was presently married to him.

The French king was much troubled at this match; therefore the Army which he had provided for taking in some Towns of *Picardy*, and some places from the Burgundian, he turns against the Savoyan; the rather, because he could do no good against the Burgundian, who had foreseen and prevented the French plots: besides, the King pretended that the Dutchy of *Millan* belonged to the French crown, therefore by a Herald demands from the Savoyan *Valentia* and other towns which he had taken there; he also accused the Savoyan for making incursions upon *France*, and some write that the Savoyan Nobility under hand stirred up the French against *Lewis*, because he used them roughly for advising his father to retain his right to the Papacie; but at last the controversie was taken up by the Popes Legate at *Lions*, who was sent to make peace between *France* and *England*.

Lewis

An. Christi.

1464.

1466.

1471.

*Lewis* the second son of this Duke *Lewis*, married with *Carola* the onely daughter of *Iohn* King of *Cyprus*, by whom he obtained that Kingdome: but *Iames* the bastard brother of *Carola*, being assisted by the *Sultan* of *Egypt*, thrust *Lewis* out of his kingdome, and overthrew his army, which Duke *Lewis* and the Knights of *Rhodes* had sent thither; and so this wicked bastard obtained the kingdome. Queen *Carola* fled to *Rome*, where she was entertained by Pope *Pius* the second, who said, that justly her husband had lost that kingdome, whose father Duke *Lewis* had been so averse, and slow in sending aide against the *Turks* and *Sarazens*. *Amadeus* the eldest son of this Duke *Lewis*, resembling much his father and grandfathers qualities, delighting more in peace then wars, in a retired and monastick life then in publique employments, was slighted by the people, whose eyes and hopes were fixed upon the youngest sonne *Philip*, a youth of a comely presence and stature, and of an active heroick spirit: Duke *Lewis* the father understanding how his peoples affections were set upon *Philip*, began to be jealous of him, the rather because he himself was grown infirm and unweildy, his son young active and lusty; therefore he undertakes a journey to *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* his son in law, with his eldest son *Amadeus*, and being highly incensed complains grievously of his youngest son: King *Lewis* wished his father in law not to trouble himself, he would take a course to secure his son *Philip*, to whom presently the King sends a young Noble-man, and one of his servants, upon pretence of imparting to him some matter of weight from the King, who was desirous to speak himself with him. *Philip* suspecting no hurt, goeth presently to the King, by whom (against his promise) he is detained, and sent to the Castle of *Lothessa*, where he was kept as a prisoner two years together, to the great grief of the *Savoyan* Nobility, who loved him and hated the father: About the end of these two years Duke *Lewis* died at *Lions*, whether he came to speak with the French King, the twenty sixth year of his government; for he took not the stile of Duke till his father was created Pope: His heart was buried in the Church of the *Celestines*, which there he built by the command of his father; his body was transported to *Geneva*, where he lieth entombed with his wife *Anna*.

His son *Amadeus* the ninth, and third Duke of *Savoy* succeeded, a prince in goodnesse and integrity nothing inferiour to his Father and Grandfather, but of an infirm body, and oftentimes subject to the falling-sickness: He delighted no way in war, but having settled all at home, he went to the French king with his Sister *Bona*, who was fled to him, being driven out of *Millan* by the tyranny of the *Sfortii*. The king entertained him courteously, and with so much respect, that his subjects of *Savoy* observing so great a king did thus honour him, were content to live quietly and obediently under him; he was so open-handed to the poore, and fed so many every day, that his Nobility complained of his prodigality, to whom he answered, that the prayers of the poore were the chief wals and bulwarks of his dominions: those poore men he used to call his fellow-souldiers, & to feed and cloath them sometimes with his own hand, to confer with them, and to sit among them. One day a certain Ambassadour asking him where his Hounds were, he caused all his poore men to be brought into a great Hall filled with tables and good meat, to which when they were set down, he brings in the Ambassadour, and told him, that these were his hounds with which he hunted after heaven, and that to feed these poore people was food to him more excellent then any Manna. He had a long and tedious sickness which he bore patiently, comforting and confirming those Noble-men that came every day to comfort him, shewing them that God was never so neer to us as in afflictions, which were the safest remedies against our spirituall diseases; at length, after a long conflict with death, he delivered up his charitable soule to God.

To him succeeded *Philbert* his Son, the first of that name, and fourth Duke of *Savoy*; he was but four years old when his father dyed: His mother *Jolanda* a wife

An. Christi.

a wife *Matron*, and Sister to *Lewis* the eleventh the French King, undertook his tuition, at which *Lewis* of *France* and *Charles* of *Burgundy* aimed, being potent Princes both, and both having an interest in *Savoy* by divers affinities; but they were of different mindes and dispositions: *Jolanda* prudently kept them both off, by making fair weather with both, till *Charles* was overthrown in the battell at *Gransin*, where he lost above thirty hundred thousand crowns; then he changed her minde, which had been till now more inclined to *Charles*, and sided altogether with her brother of *France*: This being observed by *Charles*, who lost another battell about three weeks after the former, and considering with himself how much he was now weakened, and what prejudice it would be to him, if *Jolanda* should make the French King Protector of *Savoy*, by the advice of the Bishop of *Geneva*, and of his brother the Earl of *Rhomontium*, he seizeth upon *Jolanda*, and commands her to be brought with all her family into *Burgundy*, where she was kept as a prisoner. But when *Charles* thought he had been sure of *Philbert* and his mother, he found that their keepers had deluded him by conveying the Child to *Camerinum*, a place out of all danger, whither the Bishop of *Geneva* came, a wavering and covetous man, and who upon the incitements of a Knight of *Rhodes*, employed by the French King to work upon the Bishop, forsakes the *Burgundian*, and withall delivers up to the King both the Child *Philbert*, and his little brother *Charles*, with the Castles of *Camerinum* and *Montmellian*, then seizeth on the place where *Jolanda's* Treasure and Wardrobe were, which he reserves for himself: This highly discontented the *Burgundian*, considering what losse he had sustained in the war which he undertook for the Earl of *Rhomontium* brother to this Bishop, which war at last cost him his life at *Nancy*, by the treachery of one *Campobachius*; and so he found that the French King had truly prophesied of his son, that he would prove a Fox.

In the mean while, *Jolanda* desirous of liberty, and to see her children, employs a Nobleman of *Piemont* in a message to her brother of *France*, for that purpose; who though he had no good correspondency with his Sister, yet sends her word, that ere long he would send for her into *France*, who accordingly sends *Charles* *Amboise* governour of *Campagne* with some forces, who passing without resistance through the *Burgundians* country, enters the Castle of *Roverotia* which was carelessly kept, and brings away *Jolanda* with her family into *Savoy*, neer to the French Territories. King *Lewis* goeth from *Lions* to *Turon*, there to receive his Sister, where having provided fair lodgings for her, sends divers of his Nobility to meet her, and he himself with all his train at the town gates receives and salutes her merrily by the title of Lady of *Burgundy*. After some complements, he brings her to her lodging, giving order that she should be used with all respect and accommodations: yet for all this, they were jealous of each other, and she longed to be out of his claws; but a league at last was made between them, and confirmed by Oath; so after eight dayes entertainment, he dismisseth her with her children. After this he desires his Sister to permit her son *Philbert* to be instructed in the Delphinat by *Luisius* a Noble-man there, in the French tongue and manners, that so he might have the greater affection to *France*: To this the mother assented; but when the King perceived that the *Savoyan* Nobility intended to exclud *Luisius*, and to undertake the care of the Child themselves, he causeth him to be removed from *Turin* (called of old *Taurinum*, a City in *Piemont*, and which anciently was the seat of the *Longobards*) to *Grenoble* or *Gratianopolis*, so called from the Emperour *Gratian* that enlarged and beautified it; now it is the chief City of the Delphinat, and honoured by *Lewis* II with a Parliament. There *Philbert* was married to *Blanca* *Maria* daughter to *Galeacius* Duke of *Millan*, being both young and of the same age: therefore *Galeacius* undertook the tuition of his young son in law, which he performed carefully, and with great commendations, in sight of *Iohannes* *Ludovicus* Bishop of *Geneva* the Childs Uncle,

*An. Christi.* Uncle, who by sinistrous ends endeavoured to get him into his custody; but *Galeacius* by a plot seized upon this turbulent Bishop at *Vercellis*; and sent him prisoner to *Turin*; so the Child escaped this danger, which the year after he could not avoid: for having made a journey to see *Charles* the eighth of France, his Uncle son at *Lions*, he fell suddenly sick, not without suspicion of Poyson given him by some of the Bishops friends, and so died the fourteenth year of his age, and the tenth of his Principality, to the great grief of his people; for he was a young Prince of great hopes, and of a sweet disposition. A blasing Star about that time presaged this fatality.

1491.

To *Philbert* succeeded his brother *Charles* the fifth, the fifth Duke of *Savoy*, a young Prince no lesse eminent in vertues and naturall endowments then any of his predecessors; but in the flower of his age and fortunes, having scarce been Duke seven years, he was taken away by untimely death: It was suspected that *Lewis* Marquesse of *Salusses* had secretly caused him to be poysoned, because he had got a great victory over him; for the Marquesse refused to doe the homage due from him according to the custome of his predecessors to the Dukes of *Savoy*, therefore Duke *Charles* made war upon him, overthrew his Army, and confiscated his whole estate as a Rebel; but three years after (*Charles* being now dead) he recovers by the Duke of *Millans* means his estate again. This young Prince also subdued the *Gabiers*, a people inhabiting the Alpes of *Liguria*: he left behinde him one son called *Charles* the second, or *Johannes Carolus*, being yet scarce one year old; his mother *Blanca*, because of the Dukes infancy, retained the government of *Savoy*, to the great content of the people; for she was a vigilant, milde, and just Princessse, whose chief care was to breed her sonne in vertue and piety, therefore suffered none to converse with him in his minority, but such as were eminently pious and prudent, knowing how dangerous it is for young Princes, being yet but tender plants, apt to receive any impression, to be ill seasoned; and how prone they are by nature to drink in the poyson of evill counsell. About this time *Charles* the eighth of France undertook his Expedition into *Apulia*, against the kingdom of *Naples*; as he was passing through *Savoy*, *Blanca* in her best equipage met him, and presented him with a goodly Horse, which did him great service in that war, and carried him out of many dangers; she bestowed also upon him towards his charges great summes of gold and silver. The year after Duke *Charles* died, the seventh year of his Dukedome.

1494.

To him succeeded *Philip* Earl of *Bressa*, and governour of the *Delphinat* under King *Charles*; this was a wise man, whose counsell *Blanca* alwayes followed. He was the son of *Lewis*, and grandchilde to *Amadeus* the eighth Duke of *Savoy*; being now aged, he accepts the government of the Dutchy; he had been alwayes a great warrior and a wise counsellour, and very inward with the French King, who made him knight of the order of Saint *Michael*, and great Steward of France: having governed this Dutchy one year and six months, he died at *Camerinum*, and left for his successor his son *Philbert* the second, surnamed the Faire; he was bred in the Court of King *Lewis* of France, with his son *Charles* the eighth, for *Lewis* had married his Aunt *Carola*: he waited on King *Charles* in the Neapolitan war; he ruled his people with great moderation and wisdom; he assisted King *Lewis* the twelfth in the wars of *Millan* with two hundred Courisiers, whilest as yet he was but young. When *Philip* Arch-Duke of *Austria* returned out of *Spain*, and was come to *Lions*, where peace is concluded between the French and *Spainards*; between *Caesar* and the Arch-Duke, and their confederates, He went to visit *Margaret* his Sister, wife to this *Philbert*, by them both he was entertained sumptuously as he was returning to the Netherlands. At last this *Philbert* died, the twenty fifth year of his age, about the sixth year of his government: this year wherein he died was fatal to multitudes of people, by reason of the great infection

1503.

of the aire: this was a rich prince, for besides the dominions and revenues of his Predecessors, he added a yearly revenue of twelve thousand Ducats, paid him by the *Millanois*: His vertuous wife *Margaret* erected a Chappel after his death, in which she entomb'd him. His successor was *Charles* the third, brother to *Philbert* by the father, but not by the mother, which was the occasion of great wars afterward.

## CHAP. VI.

The Helvetian History, from the beginning till the year 1481.

10

THE *Switzers* in the Romans time were a warlike people, which they shewed by the overthrow they gave to *L. Cassius* the Consul; they intended to have forsaken their country, and to seat themselves elsewhere; but *Caesar* then being Proconsul of France, puts a stop to their proceedings, by hewing down the Bridge of *Geneva*, and raising a Fort between the Lake and Mount *Jura*; first, by intreaties, then by their strength, they strove to move *Caesar* for a passage; but when they saw they were still defeated by the Romans, they cast themselves at *Caesars* feet, who upon delivery of Pledges, commanded them to return home, and rebuild their demolished Cities, which they did, and lived afterward in obedience, and within their own borders, till the coming of the *Sarazens* into Italy; then their aid was desired by the Pope (as we have already said) which was assented to, conditionally they might freely enjoy their laws and antient customes: To this the Pope willingly condescended, and withall sent them a red Banner with the Crucifix on it, in token of their valour and good service against the *Sarazens*. After this they lived quietly at home, employing themselves in Husbandry, untill such time as their Nobility began to tyrannize over them; then being conscious of their antient valour and continued liberty, made resistance. About the year 1300, the Counts of *Auspurge* (afterward Dukes) had placed a debauched Gentleman in one of their Castles of *Urania* in *Vallstreet*, who having done divers insolencies, and ravished a young Lady, was by her two brothers slain. The Count offering to doe justice on the murderers, was resisted by the people, who overthrew three of his Castles in one day, and slew divers of his Officers. The *Valdernaldians* by this example were animated to the like outrage, complaining also of their Nobility: Hereupon the *Suavi* with those of *Uro*, *Zurich* and *Underwald*, entred into confederacy: the Nobility, to suppress in time this increasing power, raise all the forces they can, but with ill successe; *Leopold* Duke of *Austria* was defeated by them, and so not long after was *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*: Thus for their valour they were courted by divers Princes, chiefly by the French, for whom they did good service against the *Spaniard*, both in Italy and France; since *Lewis* 11. they have been pensioners to that Crown, receiving yearly thence forty thousand Florens, twenty thousand to the Cities, and twenty thousand to particular persons. These Cantons are now so divided, that eight of them are of the Catholick Faith, and in pension with the King of Spain, the other five are of the Protestant Religion, and serve the French King; who when he demandeth any forces, they call a Diet at the kings charges, who also defraie the souldiers wages. *Albertus* of *Austria* had many bickerings with the *Switzers*, after they had Cantonized themselves, and was preparing a great army against them, but being murdered by some assassines, and his children busie in revenging his death, there was nothing acted against the *Switzers*. *Henry* the seventh of *Lutrelburg* who succeeded, confirmed the priviledges of the three Cantons, who were so vigilant to prevent the plots of *Albertus* his sons, that they could do them no hurt. These three had first made a league for ten years, but upon a great victory over their enemies, they made a perpetual league, with which they acquainted *Lewis* the Emperour by their Agents, and with their late victory: Upon this, in a Diet at *Norinberg*, the Princes of *Austria* are condemned of treason, & their whole estate had they in these Helvetian Cantons are confiscated

1300.

1315.

*An. Christi.* to the Emperour, and the *Cantons* liberties confirmed, and then they swear homage to him; who sent *John Albergius* to be their governour: he promised to defend them from the power & claim of *Austria*, and that they should have their own Courts of Judicature in their own Country, both in civil and criminal causes. The *Austrians* having received so great an overthrow by the *Switzers*, and finding the Emperour raising war against them, they were forced to make a Truce with these *Cantons*, whom shortly after the Pope and Bishop of *Constance* excommunicated; and *Frederick of Austria*, who named himself Emperour, proscribed them: but by command from *Ludovick* the Emperour, they were absolved by the Arch-bishop of *Mentz*. The Pope having excommunicated *Ludovick*, the *Switzers* make a league with those Cities of the Empire which stood for *Ludovick* against *Frederick of Austria*; and upon this, *Lucerna* an ancient City upon the river *Rusa*, entered into league with the three *Cantons*, which highly displeased the *Austrians*, under whose jurisdiction hitherto this City had been: In it were divers Citizens that favoured the *Austrians*, these had plotted to let in the *Austrian* horse by night, but the vigilancy of the other party discovered and prevented the plot: divers skirmishes the *Lucernans* had after this with the *Austrians*, in which these were still worsted; who seeing they could do no good with open hostility, fall to persuade the Townsmen to break off their league with the three *Cantons*, shewing there was more help to be had from a Prince so potent and neer, then could be expected from these towns. But when this way they could do no good, they resolve to murder the chief abettors of the *Canton* League; a solemn Oath is taken by the plotters, and they wore a badge of red upon their sleeves to be known by; the massacre was to be acted the 29 of *June*, but was discovered by a Boy that very night it should have been put in execution; for being assembled in the dark, the Boy passing by, over-heard their discourse, and that they were to kill the Watch, and open the Gates to an Army of Horse, that came to assist them: the Boy acquaints some Butchers with this, who were making merry together; they inform the Magistrates, who suddenly with a strong guard seize upon the plotters: 30 a messenger is sent to the three *Cantons* for aid, who dispatch 300 souldiers for *Lucerna*, to guard the City; the plotters are brought to their tryal, but because divers men of quality were among them, the three towns interceded for them, who solemnly swear, never to stir against the *Helvetian* League: It was also ordered, no clandestin conventicles or private oaths should be hereafter in that City. About this time, the *Austrians* were reconciled to *Frederick* the Emperour, to whom they complain against the confederate *Cantons*; these excuse their revolt, as being thereto necessitated: at last, *Cesar* orders that the Cities of *Tigurum*, *Berne*, and *Basil*, should make peace between them; who by their Legats made a Truce of thirty moneths, which after this was renewed: some 40 hostilities were acted during this time, but no open war, till *Tigurum* confederated with these *Cantons*, and shortly after *Berne*, with some other towns.

*Tigurum* at first adhered to *Frederick of Austria*, against *Ludovick of Bavaria*, but after fell off to *Ludovick*, when the other had resigned the Empire for a great sum of money, for payment of which *Tigurum* with three other towns were pawned by *Ludovick*. The *Tigurans* to free themselves, promise to be no less faithful to the *Bavarian*, then they were to the *Austrians*: this so offended the *Austrians* and the Pope, that the town was excommunicated, and continued so 18 years together, the Priests having forsaken it, with the Monks, onely the *Franciscans* went out at one gate, and entered at the other: In the mean while, 50 they take and demolish some Castles that annoyed them; and the year after they alter their form of government, choosing 12 chief men, and 12 inferiour Magistrates under them, to rule their City, which occasioned much trouble; for the Commons disliked their government, and accused them of oppression and briberies; wherefore some of them being guilty, fled out of the City; others laid down their offices; these were fined and banished for some time, and Magistrates chosen out of each Tribe. And because the town

*Rapersvile*

*An. Christi.* *Rapersvile* who had a harbour for all *Tigurin* fugitives; who there being but twenty miles distant, did much annoy the Magistrates of *Tigurum*, therefore they raise an Army and lay siege to *Rapersvile*, which they were forced to raise again, because their provision failed, and hearing that the Earl of *Habespurg* a great Patron of the fugitives was gone to *Grinovinum* a Castle at the head of the *Tigurin* lake, they hastened thither under the conduct of Earle *Toggius*; in the first encounter the *Tigurins* were worsted, and *Toggius* taken prisoner; but after they had better manned and fitted their ships, they fell again upon the enemy, and gave them a great defeat, in which Earle *Habespurg* was slain, with divers Gentlemen; in revenge of whose death, *Toggius* at 10 *Rapersvile* is cut in peeces: the next year a peace was concluded between the *Tigurins* and the enemy, that the banished Citizens should pay six hundred marks of silver, and should continue in exile five years; but this peace held not long, for the banished performed not the Articles, therefore by the Emperours leave, their houses and estates are confiscated; the year after, by the mediation of *Agnes* Queen of *Hungary*, daughter of *Albert* 1. of *Austria*, the peace is renewed, but soon after broken, because divers of the Nobility of *Germany* disliking the *Tigurin* popular government, assisted and encouraged the banished Citizens, therefore the *Tigurins* to make themselves the stronger 20 made a league with the Citizens of *Constantia* and *S. Gall*, as likewise with the Bishop and City of *Basil*, they made also divers Knights of the *Rhodes* free of their City, to indeer the Nobility more to them, because most of that Order were Gentlemen; this much disheartned the exiles who despairing now to recover the City by strength, plot with Earle *Habespurg* (his son whom the *Tigurins* slew not long before) and some other of the Nobility, and with those of their own faction within the Town, and such as were discontented, and delighted in innovation, to surprise suddenly the Consul and his adherents in the night, and so to seize on the City, but the plot was discovered the same night it should have been acted, by a servant which acquainted 30 the Consul; whereupon presently the great Bell of the City is rung out, a sign alwayes of danger, the people ran presently to Arms, great execution is made, partly with weapons, partly with stones and bricks upon the houses, the Butchers with their axes did good service, in memory of which a brazen Lion as a badge of their valour is bestowed on them; this they used afterward in their annual solemnity to carry about the streets.

The Inhabitants of the lesser Town upon the left side of the River, fought stoutly against the enemy upon the bridge, which they had preposseiled by means of a Fisher-man who discovered the plot to them; this Fisher-man carried some of the plotters in his boat, and having overheard a whispering 40 that they meant to kill him lest he should betray them, overturned the boat and so left them in the River, he got on shore and alarms the people; the enemies after a hot dispute were worsted, fifteen of them were slain, 37. taken, among whom was Earle *Habespurg*, the rest by means of the darkness escaped, the dead bodies were kicked and trod upon three dayes together; the day after, seventeen of the prime plotters were broken on the wheel, some beheaded, the Earl was imprisoned, and his Army without the Town in fear and confusion ran home. Shortly after the Consul *Brunius* with an Army besiegeth *Rapersvile*, the nest and harbour of the plotters, the Town on the third day yielded, some of the plotters in it were killed, some escaped; the Towns- 50 men swear the same fealty to *Tigurum*, which they used to give to their Earl: after this they fall upon *Marchia* the Earls Country with fire and sword, so that the Inhabitants were forced to swear fealty to the *Tigurins*, but when they heard that *Albert of Austria* was raising forces to aid the *Habespurgians*, and to keep their Rendezvous at *Rapersvile*, they burn the Town to the ground, Some Towns of *Alsatia* made league with *Frederick of Austria* against the *Tigurins*, who had taken an hundred and seventy Townsmen of that Country

S f 2

prisoners.



*An. Christi.* prisoners, the *Alsations* to recover their prisoners raised an Army by the help of their neighbours, the *Tigurins* wisely declined this war, being already exhausted, and therefore restored the prisoners: After this the *Tigurins* send a petition to *Charles* the 4. Emperour, complaining of the wrongs done them by *Earl Habespurg* and his confederates, excusing their own actions, shewing their innocence, and desiring his assistance for the maintenance of their liberty, being willing to submit to his Imperial commands, if so be the *Austrian* would be quiet; the Emperour answers that he would endeavour to pacifie the *Austrian*, and their other enemies, but could not force them, being their power was greater then his, therefore wishes them to use some moderate transaction with their enemies; upon this the *Tigurins* send Legats with presents to *Albert* of *Austria*, who at first gave them good words, but at the second meeting was rough with them, being incensed by the Nobility, accusing them for destroying both the old and new *Raperswil*, for wasting *Marchia* which belonged to him as supreme Lord, therefore wishes them to restore what they had taken, to rebuild what they had demolished, and to make pecuniary satisfaction for what they had wasted, and so he would pardon them; the Legats replied, that their City had suffered much wrong by these places in harbouring and aiding the fugitives and rebels, therefore they humbly beseech him, that he would not urge them to such inconveniences; the Prince in anger told them, that if the *Tigurins* did not make reparation for these wrongs willingly, they should be forced to do it.

The *Tigurins* understanding by their Legats the Princes resolution; of his forces now raising, of their great danger and weakness, and that there was no hope of help from *Cesar*; they resolve to enter into a confederacy with the *Helvetian* Towns, seeing they all had the same common enemy the *Austrian*, and *Tugium*, by reason of the Lake lay so fit for commerce with those Towns; upon this Legats are sent who are kindly entertained, and the league ratified, in which the first place in all publique actions is given to *Tugium*, (though it was the fifth that entered into the *Helvetian* league) because of the dignity of that City: The report of this new league, hasteneth on the *Austrian* to besiege the Town, fearing lest by their example more Towns would combine against him, therefore with an Army of 2000. horse, and 20000. foot, he sits down before the City, which the four confederate Towns had sufficiently manned and filled with provisions; after some light velitations, they came to a parly by the mediation of some friends, in which it was agreed they both should refer their cause to the Queen of *Hungary*, this was not liked by the four confederate Towns, because the Queen was the *Austrians* sister; yet the *Tigurins* confiding in her integrity, perswaded the four Towns to assent, which was done, and pledges given by the City; with the Queen are joyned two Assessors or Judges, these gave sentence in behalf of the *Austrian*, wishing the *Tigurins* to give him satisfaction for his losses, they also laid fines upon the other confederate Towns for revolting from *Austria*: this sentence was ratified by Queen *Agnes*, the *Switzers* promise to stand to the verdict, though it was unjust; but the Duke not content with this, demands *John* of *Habespurg* of the *Tigurins* without ransom, which was denied by them, wherefore against his promise he imprisons the *Tigurin* hostages, and renews the war.

The *Switzers* finding no hope of peace, resolve with joynt forces to seize upon *Glarona* a Town and valley of twelve miles in length, encompassed with the Alps except in one place, which after this expedition was fortified with a wall and trench: the people here being weary of the *Austrian* government, submit themselves without resistance to the confederate Towns, and swear to be firm in their league with them; mean while the *Tigurins* send an Army against *Bada* a garrison of the *Austrians*, which had done them much hurt, they fire the Suburbs, and plunder the Country thereabout; but as they were returning with the booty, they were encountred by 4000. *Austrians*, whom they

they overthrew, being themselves not above 1300. strong, they slew 700. of the enemy. The next year the *Austrian* in hope to recover *Glarona*, is defeated by the Inhabitants, the like success he had in *Suitia*; divers places on both sides are spoiled: about this time also the City of *Tugium* made league with the *Switzers*: this Town stands between the *Tigurins* and *Suitians*, and used to do them much hurt; at last being weary of the *Austrian* government, after fifteen dayes siege surrendered, conditionally swearing that if the *Austrian* within so many dayes should send relief, they might return again to his obedience, therefore they send to the Duke for help, but the Legats found him more careful in providing food for his hawks, then aid for his people; therefore having obtained his good will to surrender the Town to the *Switzers*, they made league with them: presently upon this *Tigium* is besieged again by the *Austrian*; but a month after by the Marquess of *Brandeburg* means a peace is made on these Articles, That *John* of *Habespurg* now three years a prisoner should be released without ransom, and that the *Austrian* should freely dismiss the imprisoned hostages, that *Glarona* and *Tugium* should be released from their oath, and return to the obedience of *Austria*, in other things the *Switzers* league should stand: *Habespurgius* is released without ransom, but so were not the hostages, who were forced to pay 1600. crowns; *Raperswil* is fortified with a garrison, which invaded the *Tigurin* Territories, and killed fifty of their men; this bred a new war, *Tugium* is again taken by the *Switzers*, and *Bern* sides with them.

*Bern* built by *Berchtold* Duke of *Zermgia*, who meeting with a Bear in that place, called it *Bern* in *Dutch*; this City he bestowed upon the Empire, which *Frederick* the 2. Emperour endowed with divers privileges; afterward it being oppressed by *Earl Kyburgius*, it took the *Earl* of *Savoy* for its protector; he restored to this City her former liberty for the good service the *Bernats* had done the *Savoyan* against the *Burgundian*: After this they had divers wars with *Godofrid* and *Rodolph* of *Habespurg*, with the *Turks*, *Austrians*, and others of their neighbours, they beat the *Underwalds* in a battel: afterward they both made a league with the confederate Towns of *Switzerland*, upon which *Tigurnum* is the third time besieged by *Charles* the 4. Emperour, and *Albert* of *Austria*: the *Tigurins* petition *Charles* that he would not persecute them being an Imperial City, desiring nothing but the conservation of their liberties, and willing to yeeld to any reasonable demands; *Charles* upon this deals with the *Austrian* for an accord, which being by him refused, the siege was raised without doing any thing, and five years after peace was concluded between the *Austrian* and *Tigurins*, on these Articles: 1. That restitution be made on both sides. 2. That none of the *Austrian* subjects be made free of *Tigurnum*. 3. That none meddle with the Fee-lands of others. 4. That the *Tigurins* hereafter make no leagues with the *Austrian* subjects. 5. That the *Switzers* injoy their own confederacies. Some controversies after this arose about *Tugium* whether that was the *Austrians*, or included within the *Switzers* confederacie: *Charles* his opinion was, that *Tugium* was not in the confederacie, the *Switzers* were of the contrary minde; the matter was long debated, at last a Truce of 11. years was made, during which time, *Tugium* and *Glarona* remained in the *Helvetian* league, yet they yeilded subjection and fealty to the *Austrian*, who placed governours over them yearly; this Truce was continued for more years after: *Albert* being dead, his son *Leopold* who hated the *Switzers*, and durst not himself make war, set the *English* of *Angles* upon them; these wasted both the *Austrian* and *Helvetian* Territories, but were at length beaten and driven home: After this *Earl Kyburgius* made war upon *Bern*, but being worsted, was glad to make his peace with him. Some years after the *Austrian* fell out with the *Lucernats*, and hanged their Legats which they sent for reparation of wrongs done by the Governours; upon this they desire the help of the confederate Towns, who joyning their forces, seize upon

*An. Christi.*

*An. Christi.* upon Rottenburg belonging to the *Austrian*, and demolish the walls and forts thereof:

1385. The *Austrian* Governours willing to fish in troubled waters, forced the confederate *Switzers* to rise again in Arms, for great massacres and outrages committed upon some neighbouring Towns and Castles of the Confederates; a great battel is fought, in which Duke *Leopold* son to *Albert* is slain, and with him 676. of his Gentry; the *Helvetians* elated with this victory, fall upon the enemies Forts and Castles, divers of which they demolish, and take some of their Towns; upon this a Truce is made for one year, which being ended, the *Austrian* with 8000. men falls upon the *Helvetian* Territories with fire and sword, but were by the Confederates again defeated, who slew 2000. of the enemy, besides 500. that were drowned in the River, the bridge over which they were flying being broke down with their weights; after this fight the Confederates took divers Towns and Forts from the *Austrian*: at last a Truce of seven years was concluded, which was afterwards continued for twenty years; and at last a peace of fifty years was agreed upon. The Abbot of *S. Gall* made wars upon *Abbatiscella*, a Town under his jurisdiction, now one of the confederate Towns of *Switzerland*: the controversies between the Abbot and the Town, were often debated, but at last tried by the sword; the Abbot was overthrown; upon this the *Austrian* takes his part, but still the Town prevailed, and made a league with the *Suitii*, who took in divers Towns and Forts; at length the Abbot was fain to sue for peace, and leave the Townsmen to enjoy their liberty. Seven years after this war, the *Austrians* and *Helvetians* renew their old quarrels, and withall the wars; for *Frederick* of *Austria* having conveyed *Pope John 22.* from the Council of *Constance*, he was proscribed by the Emperour, and excommunicated by the Council: hereupon the Confederates are by the Emperour and Council absolved from their oath, and willed to break off the fifty years peace. *Verbigenum, Bada*, and some other places of *Austria* were taken by the *Switzers*.

1425. In the year 1422. the *Switzers* sent an Army over the *Alpes* to recover the Town *Lepontium* taken from them by the Duke of *Millan*; so they did in the year 1425. and the year after, but could not recover the Town, yet they wasted the vallies belonging to the Duke. In the year 1436. a grievous Civil war by the *Austrians* procurement arose among the *Switzers*, first between *Tigurum* and *Suitium*; this was assisted by the Confederates: but in the year 1444. that memorable battel was fought near *Basil* between the French under the Dolphin, afterward *Lewis* the 11. and the *Switzers*, who beat the French that came to raise the Council of *Basil*, as we have said: after this a peace is made. Not long after, the *Austrian* war followed against Duke *Sigismund*, whom *Pope Pius* excommunicated, and stirred up the *Switzers* against him; but after many skirmishes, by the means of *Ludovic* of *Bavaria*, a peace is concluded, and six years after the Duke of *Millan* makes peace with the *Switzers*; two years after this, the *Austrian* war is renewed, and eight years after began the *Burgundian* war, which continued three years, and ended with the death of the Duke: this war was caused by the *Austrians*, for *Sigismund* Duke of *Austria*, being forced by bad success to make dishonourable peace with the *Helvetians*, morgageth the lands which he had near them, to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, a proud and potent Prince in those dayes, purposely that occasion of quarrels might be given between him and the *Switzers*, who sent for a renovation of friendship, and the old league between the *Burgundian* and *Switzers*; but *Hagenbachus* governour under the *Burgundian* of those morgaged Provinces, hindered the *Helvetian* Legats from having access to the Duke, besides many affronts were put by him and others of the Nobility upon the *Helvetians*; the people under his government, being wearied with oppression, petition *Sigismund* of *Austria* their ancient Lord, to redeem his lands again, which was obtained easily from the Duke, being of a gentle

gentle and easie nature: but the *Burgundian* would not part with the hold he had of these lands, besides that *Hagenbachus* did still more and more oppress his people, divers wrongs were done by the *Burgundians* to the *Switzers*.

In the mean time *Lewis* 11. of *France*, who hated the *Burgundian*, underhand stirs them up against him, and furnisheth them with mony; to this end he makes a league with them, and by his means also *Sigismund* is reconciled to the *Switzers*; *Renatus* Duke of *Lorain*, the Cities of *Strasburgh* and *Basil*, with their Bishops, enter into a league with them, and so doe many other Towns. Mean while *Hagenbachus* is taken prisoner, and beheaded; The *Austrian* having paid the mony he borrowed, recovers again his lands. In the interim *Charles* makes war upon the Bishop of *Colen*, claiming a title to that Bishoprick; against him *Frederick* the Emperour raiseth an army, and commands the *Switzers* to hold the *Burgundian* play at home; but no sooner had they entred *Burgundy* and defeated the *Burgundians*, but the *Austrian* makes peace with the *Burgundian*, out of which the *Helvetians* were excepted. Upon this, *Charles* turns all his forces against the Confederates; in the first battel the Duke was beaten, who a little before had against his promise hanged the souldiers in the garison of *Gramson*, who upon quarter had surrendered to him: In a second battel the Duke was again defeated, having lost 26000 men: In the third conflict at *Nancy* in *Lorain*, which was then besieged by the *Burgundian*, (against whom *Renatus* D. of *Lorain* was assisted by the *Helvetians*) *Charles* was killed in the flight, and so by his death the war ended. The next year after this *Burgundian* war, the Duke of *Millan* and the *Helvetians* fell at odds, about some wrongs done by his subjects to the inhabitants of the Valley of *Lepontium*; in this battel the *Millanois* were defeated, but the next year by means of the French king were reconciled to the *Switzers*, with whom the same year *Pope Sixtus* made a league, and granted them large indulgences and priviledges. About three years after this, *Tigurum*, *Bern*, *Lucerna*, *Friburgh*, and *Salodorum* made a private league among themselves, because in the last *Burgundian* war they thought they were partially dealt with by their fellows, who took an equal share in the booty, but were not at half the charges and trouble that these forenamed Towns were: At this league the other Towns were offended, shewing that the *Lucernates* and their fellows had not power to make a league without the general consent of all the confederates: The matter after much debate is referred to *Nicholas Underwald* an Eremite of great esteem among them, who disannulled the new league, and perswaded them in a free Assembly or Parliament to end the controversie, and withal that *Friburgh* and *Salodor* should be received among the Canton towns; and so by this means there are now ten confederate towns of *Switzerland*, and so this Commonwealth of ten Cantons continued for twenty years, till *Basil* & *Scaphusum*, and after these *Abbatiscella* were added; The former eight, called the old Cantons, had continued before this addition of *Friburgh* and *Salodor*, 125 years, so that all that time the *Switzers* commonwealth consisted of eight Canton-towns only.

1481.

An.Christi.

## CHAP. VII.

A prosecution of the Helvetian History, till the year 1521.

**F**riburg was built by Berchtold 4. Duke of Zeringium, some few years before Bern: after his death, Bern fell to the Empire, and Friburg to the Earls of Kyburg, by whom afterward this Town was sold to Ralph the Emperor, and since it hath continued under the house of Austria almost two hundred years: yet in the year 1403. being oppressed by the Austrian Nobility, they made a perpetual league with Bern, but yet continued under the Austrian dominion: for though the Helvetian Cantons made a league among themselves for one anothers aid and supportation against their enemies, yet they did not abridge or abrogate the just and old rights of their ancient Lords: this league of Friburg with Bern lasted 45 years; but afterward in the wars between Savoy and Friburg, the Bernats adhered to the Savoyans, with whom they had been a long time in league; but a year after the war began, the Friburgers being worsted, were reconciled to Savoy, by the mediation of the French, Burgundian, and Helvetians. The next year after this peace was made, the Austrian comes to Friburg, to see if he could persuade them to make war upon Bern, which when he could not do, but perceived that they began to incline to the Helvetian league, and fearing he should not long retain them in his obedience, he sends thither the High-Steward of his house, to acquaint them that he was to be there shortly himself; therefore all the gold and silver-Plate, with rich Hangings and other Ornaments, were borrowed of the Townsmen, to adorn the State-house where the Prince was to be entertained: All this wealth privately the Steward conveyed out of the town, and on the day named for the Princes coming, he with his attendants and chiefest of the town went out on horseback to meet him; the Prince came not, but sent some horse-men, who having met the Steward and his train, a stop was made, and a speech by him to the Townsmen, shewing, That since their affections were more inclined to the Bernan and Helvetian league then to their ancient Lord, he thought good to reap some benefit by them; And so he departed to the Prince with his plunder. Upon this the Friburgers made a league with Bern, and the Switzers; therefore these in the Burgundian war sent a garrison of a thousand men to guard Friburg. After which, Salodor entred into a confederacie with the Cantons.

Salodor, an ancient City, as appears by the Roman monuments in it, was upon the incursions of the Huns and Francons into France demolished; but when the French grew great, this Town was rebuilt, and placed under the Bishop of Geneva; Under the German Emperors, this hath alwayes been one of the Imperial cities. When Ludovick the Bavarian, and Frederick the Austrian were in competition for the Empire, Salodor adhered to the Barbarian, whereupon they were excommunicate by the Pope, and besieged by the Austrians; in that war the Bernats sent them a garrison of four hundred souldiers: they had war also with Earl Kyburgius, and were by him defeated: at last in the year 1351. they made a perpetual league with Bern; there the Austrian war being ended, in which Leopold was slain, they were reconciled to the Austrians. Lastly, after the Burgundian war, they were with the Friburgers admitted into the Helvetian league; after which the Helvetian Army was overthrown by the Milanais upon the Alpes: the next year after they aided Sigismund Duke of Austria against the Venetians; after this they served the French King in his wars against the Duke of Britany, and in Italy against the Neapolitans and the confederate Italian Princes.

About three years after this, a Civil war arose among the Switzers by means of the Abbot of S. Gall, who had begun to erect a new Covent; at which the subjects of the Abbot were offended, as fearing that the reliques of S. Gallus would

would be removed from the place where they had continued so long, besides they doubted the trade of Linnen-cloath which was made there, would be transferred to Rosacum where the new Covent was begun; therefore suddenly having conspired together, they fall upon the new building, and overthrow it; at this the Abbot being incensed, desires the aid of the four Towns which were in league with him, with whom some other Towns also joyned; but this war ended without blood, for the Abbatiscellans made peace with the Switzers; after this the City of S. Gall being besieged; they also made their peace with the Helvetians, a fine was laid upon the Abbots subjects, and so they were received into favour. The last Austrian or Suevic war followed, begun by Frederick the Emperour, but pursued by his son Maximilian after his fathers death: Frederick had caused a great league to be made among the Princes, Cities, and many of the chief Nobility, purposely to overthrow the Helvetian liberty, he was the head of this league himself: Lewis 12. of France, claiming title to the Duchy of Millan, did earnestly desire to be in league with the Switzers, which they willingly imbraced. All means of accord being tried, but to no purpose, a battel is fought near Constantia, in which the Switzers were worsted, but the fight being renewed the same day they beat their enemies, and so they did afterward in eight several battels; the Austrians being broken with so many defeats, at length by the mediation of Lewis Sfortia Duke of Millan, a peace is made, in which the Helvetian liberty, and possession of their places taken from the Austrian is confirmed. This was the last great war which they made against foreign Princes in defence of their liberty, except that they made against James Medives Lord of Mulsium.

As soon as the peace was made, Galscius Viscount of Millan raised five thousand Switzers against the Magistrates will, who told them they were bound by league to aid the French, but by the help of these Switzers Duke Lewis recovered Millan; yet afterward the Switzers not being able to resist the great forces of the French before Novaria a Town of no strength, they made their peace and went home; Duke Lewis thought to escape in the habit of an Helvetian common souldier, but he was discovered, taken, and carri'd away prisoner into France: the same year Ulrichus, Duke of Wirtemberg, makes a league of twelve years with the Switzers: Maximilian also the Emperour makes an hereditary peace, or renews rather that which was made before by his father Duke Sigismund, with the four Cantons of Tigurum, Bern, Urania, and Underwald. The next year after, Basil and Scaphusa were taken into the Helvetian confederacie, both these Cities are upon the Rhene; Basil is the biggest of all the confederate Towns, and very ancient, for we read of it in Ammianus Marcellinus; it was honoured with divers priviledges by the German Emperours, also with a Bishoprick and University; it first was in league with Tigur, Bern, and the three first Cantons, in the German troubles when Ludovic the Bavarian was excommunicated by the Pope 1327. then afterward with the Tigurins particularly, 1347. When the English plundered Alsatia under Leopold of Austria, and were preparing to besiege Basil, the Cantons sent a strong garrison to defend it, so that the English were fain to leave off their enterprize, and the rather because Charles 4. was marching with his Army against them. In the Austrian war, which Katherine of Burgundy the wife of Leopold made against them, they received aid from Bern and Salodor, an. 1409. (in the Council of Basil) with sixteen hundred men they defeated the whole French Army; they assisted also the Switzers against Charles of Burgundy; but in the war between Maximilian and the Switzers, Basil stood neuter, in which City at last peace was concluded between the Emperour and Switzers by the mediation of Lewis Maria Duke of Mantua; in fine, being hated and wronged by the Austrian, and the Nobility, they made a perpetual league with the Switzers, anno 1501. Scaphusa so called from Scapha a boat,

T t

because

*An. Christi.* because the boats that come from the lake of *Constance* along the *Rhene*, do unload here, by reason of the great precipice of the River from high rocks, the Town receiveth by this means great customes : at first the Abbot of that place was the chief governour, afterward obtaining divers priviledges from the Emperours, they shook off the Abbots power, but it was sold afterward by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* to the *Austrian*, under whom it remained eighty five years, till the Council of *Constance*, where *Frederick* of *Austria* for conveying away pope *John* 22. was proscribed by *Sigismund* the Emperour, and his estate confiscated, and so this Town was added to the Empire : afterward *Frederick* 3. of the *Austrian* family, being Emperour, bestowed it upon Duke *Sigismund* of *Austria*, who sent his Legats to take the oath of Allegiance to the *Austrian*, which they refused, except they might retain their priviledges; this would not be granted; whereupon they made a league with the *Switzers*, an. 1454. which they constantly observed after, wherefore they were divers times assaulted and molested by the *Austrian*, and at last proscribed for assisting the *Helvetians* against *Sigismund* of *Austria*, by the command of Pope *Pius*, but they were afterward released from this proscription at the *Austrians* charges : About the year 1479. the league between the *Switzers* and *Scaphusia* was renewed for 25. years, in which the *Urii* and *Underwaldins* were comprehended : At last having assisted the *Helvetians* both in the *Burgundian* and *Suevian* war, a league between them and the 11. *Cantons* is concluded for ever, an. 1501.

After the *Switzers* had made a league with *France*, they assisted *Charles* 8. and *Lewis* in the *Neapolitan* wars, which proved unfortunate to *Helvetias*, for in the first war they lost their health, being infected with the *Neapolitan* disease or *French* pox, and in the second they lost their lives by the sword of the enemy, who in two great battels overthrew them. An. 1507. they assisted the *French* against the *Ligurians*, and refused to aid the Emperour *Maximilian* against the *French*. An. 1509. they aided the *French* in the confederacy they made with *Spain*, Pope *Julius* and the Emperour, against the *Venetians*. The next year after, Pope *Julius* 2. made a league with the *Switzers*, who sent him 6000. men into *Italy* against the Duke of *Ferraria*, who had seized on some Churchlands, but indeed his aim was to drive the *French* out of *Millan*, which the *Switzers* perceiving forsook the Pope, and returned home without their pay : next year 1511. a perpetual league is made between the *Switzers*, and the houses of *Austria* and *Burgundy*, the *French* upon the expiration of their league desired to renew it again with the *Switzers*, who were unwilling because they feared the Popes anger, for the *French* then were his enemies; besides, the *French* had refused to continue the *Switzers* pay, after the league was expired; they drowned also the *Suitens* Post with his letters, and sold in open Market the *Cantons* Badge, which the Posts use to wear.

The *French* having beaten Pope *Julius* at *Ravenna*, the *Switzers* send into *Italy* for his aid twenty thousand men, who joyning with the *Venetians* (then reconciled to the Pope) took *Cremona* and *Ticinum*, and drove the *French* quite out of *Millan*, so that they had nothing left them but the Castle; upon this, Pope *Julius* honours the *Switzers* with the title of [Defenders of the Church:] Then sent to them Banners adorned with certain Images, with a sword and Cap of maintenance, the Ensigns of liberty : *Maximilian* Sfortia by them being restored to his fathers dominion, makes a league with them, and withall bestows on them *Lugano*, *Locarno*, *Mendrisse*, and the valley of *Madie*; he gave also to the Confederate *Rheti* or *Grisons* the *Val-Telin*, or *Volturone*. *Charles* also Duke of *Savoy*, whose Ancestors had made a private league with some of the *Cantons*, makes now a new league for five and twenty years, with the twelve *Cantons* : The *French* also desired their amity, which was refused, because they kept still the Castle of *Millan*, and were found to corrupt some of them with bribes; wherefore the *French* Legats are commanded to depart out of their Territories : Hence the war is renewed, the *French* besiege *Sfortia* in

*Novaria*

*An. Christi.* *Novaria* with a great Army, in which Town were four thousand *Switzers*, and eight thousand more were sent to them; these obtained a great victory over the *French*, whom they drove out of *Italy*; in this battel fourteen hundred *Switzers* were lost : after this victory *Maximilian* Emperour falling off from the *French* Covenant, raised an Army of sixteen thousand *Switzers*, with whom as many more voluntaries joyned, these were conducted into *Burgundy* against the *French*, to them *Cesar* added some Regiments of horse under the Prince of *Wirtenberge*; these besieged *Divio* or *Diion*, the capital City of *Burgundy*; *Trimonil* the Governour not being able to hold out, made his peace with the *Switzers* on these conditions, that the King should quit his claim to the Dutchy of *Millan*, and should at certain times pay them six hundred thousand crowns; for performance of this four Noblemen are given for Hostages, yet the King would not ratifie this agreement, because he would not part with his claim to *Millan*; whereupon the *Switzers* resolve to put the Hostages to death, if the King did not the sooner confirm the agreement, and withall intended the next winter to invade *France*; the King upon this sends Legats to conclude a perpetual peace with the *Switzers*, but the Kings conditions were so unreasonable that nothing was done, save onely that he gained time, and hindred the invasion of *France* : in these meetings *Abbatiscella* or *Appenzel* was added as the thirteenth *Canton*.

*Abbatiscella* is the name of the Country, and chief Town thereof; the Country is seated above the Town of *S. Gall*, among high mountains upon the frontiers of the *Grisons*, it hath eight principal Towns or Parishes, the chief is *Abbatiscella*, that is the Abbots Cel or Chamber; for the Abbots of *S. Gall*, Lords of this Country, made their chief residence in this Town : these of *Appenzel* made themselves free first by the sword, then by their money to the Abbot; they had seven years war with *Cuno* Abbot of *S. Gall*, who was aided by the Inhabitants about the lake *Acronium* or of *Constance*, as also by *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, the Bishop of *Constance*, the Earl of *Wirtenberg*, with divers others of the Nobility : these were defeated by *Appenzel*, which at last the Inhabitants of *S. Gall* assisted against the Abbot; they took five Towns, and above sixty Castles, some of which they demolished; in this war the *Abbatiscellans* joyned league with the *Helvetians* : at last *Rupert* the Emperour made peace between the *Abbatiscellans* and their enemies, at *Constance*, an. 1408. after which they became a Commonwealth, the form whereof they retain till this day; before this every Town had their peculiar Ensign, and Assembly or Parliament, now they have but one Ensign, and one Assembly for all. Three years after this peace, the Abbot of *S. Gall* began to trouble the *Appenzellians* with new procefs, whereupon they make a league with six of the *Cantons*; therefore upon complaint made by the Abbot, they are proscribed by the Emperour, and excommunicated by the Pope, for which they cared not, being naturally fenced with mountains, and having little commerce with strangers; the Priests that refused to do their office, in obedience to the Popes command, were some banished, and some put to death by them. The Abbot complains again to the Imperial Electors, who wrote letters to the *German* Princes, and *Helvetian* *Cantons*, to force the *Appenzellians* to their duty: the *Switzers* utterly refused to make war upon their confederates, but they mediated for a peace, which was concluded the fourth year of their excommunication, after the Earl of *Toggenburg* had defeated them in two several battels : this peace held not long, for the Gentry that were their neighbours about the lake *Acronium*, or of *Constance*, intended to invade the *Abbatiscellians* with their Cavalry, but they could do no good this way, for the *Abbatiscellians* seized upon *Rineck*, and the valley of *Regissee*, an. 1445. the Lords of these places got them again to be proscribed, but gaining nothing by this, they sold them their rights for six thousand Crowns : after this an. 1452. they made a league with the seven *Helvetian* *Cantons* against the *Austrians*, *Burgundians*, and

T t 2

the

1443.

1452.

*An. Christi.* the *Suevians* or *Suanbeans*: At last *an. 1513.* they were received in the number of the Cantons. Now the five last Cantons, except *Basél*, were long before their admission into this rank, confederate with the old Cantons; and this privilege the Cantons have above their confederates, that they can give their advice and suffrages in all publique assemblies, they govern with equal authority those that are under them, and are equal sharers in all beoties got in the wars.

- Francis of Valois* son-in-law to *Lewis 12.* of *France*, having succeeded to that crown, resolves to prosecute the war against *Millan*, begun by *Lewis*. Against him *Maximilian* the Emperor, *Ferdinand* King of *Spain*, *Sfortia* Duke of *Millan*,<sup>10</sup> with the *Switzers*, enter into a league, to whom was joyned Pope *Leo 10.*
1515. The *Switzers* Army consisted of 30000 foot; the French unwilling to encounter with them, labour to draw them to a peace, which was easily obtained, because they doubted the confederate Princes were not sincere to them, seeing they received not their promised pay, besides the Emperor sent not the horse to guard the foot, as he was bound to doe, he suffered also divers of the German foot to serve the French king; the Popes and Spanish armies would not passe over *Pe*, nor joyn themselves with the *Switzers*: therefore being destitute of help and pay, they made peace with the French, upon which twelve thousand went home, the rest prepared to follow the next day: but<sup>20</sup> *Sfortia* disliked the conditions of peace, therefore with the *Switzers* that were of his guard and some others he falls upon the French about the evening, and withall the *Switzers* send to call back their fellows that were marching homeward, shewing them in what danger they were; upon this they return, a cruel encounter ensues, in which divers of the French Nobility lost their lives; at the first the *Switzers* had the better, but in the next encounter were defeated, and so retreated to *Millan*, where they left for the Duke a garrison of 1500 in the castle, and then return home. Upon this defeat of the *Switzers*, the French seise upon the Dutchy of *Millan*, which the Emperor sought by force to recover the year following, but could not. In the interim, the French make<sup>30</sup> peace with the *Switzers* for ever, which was confirmed, *an. 1521.* All the
1521. Cantons joyned in this league, except the *Tigurins*, who could never be induced to assent to it: for *Matthew* Cardinal of *Sedun* or *Sion* had diverted their minds from the French: *Zuinglius* also their Preacher told them, how base it was for them to be mercenary souldiers, and for pay to shed innocent blood; how far this was against the mind of *Christ*, and the practise of their ancestors, and that this mercenary way was an exposing of their liberty to sales, besides, that this new league abridged them of their power, for not they, but the King was to choose his officers, and these to raise the souldiers at their pleasure; again, this league was in divers things destructive of former leagues;<sup>40</sup> moreover they had no reason to assist the French with souldiers, having refused to assist *Maximilian* the Emperor; and for any benefit which by this league would accrue the State, they could find none, only some private persons might be enriched by the French pensions, the love of which, and the wickedness which attends upon a military life, might occasion much mischief in their country, as effeminateness, covetousness, dissoluteness, neglect of husbandry & good arts, idleness, luxury, drunkenness, whoredoms, blasphemies, which are the fruits of wars, and weeds that grow in military camps; it was urged also, that the French assistance could do them little good, that the relying upon pay and pensions was a distrusting of Gods providence, and that<sup>50</sup> most of the former leagues they had made with foreign Princes did turn to their prejudice, loss of their men, and intestine discords. For these and other reasons the *Tigurins* could not be drawn into this league: But the other confederates were of a contrary mind, affirming, that all war is not condemned in Scripture, for divers holy men have been souldiers, and have assisted their friends; that the Helvetian souldiery is not mercenary, seeing they are to serve

serve but one King, and that by covenant; if the King enjoin an unlawful war, it was in the Magistrates power to deny him aid; if the cause was doubtful, the common souldier was not to enquire into it; besides, the *Switzers* Country is populous and barren, and obnoxious to many enemies haters of their liberty, therefore they stand in need of foreign employments and assistants; neither was it a rejection of divine providence to make use of secondary means; their youth also by this employment should be trained up in military discipline, so needful for defence of the Country; and though some foreign leagues have not proved successful, yet their leagues with *Lewis 11.* *Charles 8.* and *Lewis 12.*<sup>10</sup> of *France*, have been advantageous to them. Upon these reasons the Cantons grounded their perpetual peace with *France*.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of the Helvetian Confederates, till the year 1602.

HAVING spoken of the Helvetian Cantons, we will now briefly relate the Confederates and Allies of Switzerland: And 1. of the Abbot of *S. Gall.* *Gallus* was a Gentleman of Scotland, disciple to *Columbanus* the<sup>20</sup> Abbot, with whom he travelled into *France*, and thence into *Germany*; he preached the Gospel, and converted many from Idolatry, at a place called *Tuggen* near the head of the Lake of *Zurich*, and then at *Bregents* at the head of the Lake of *Constance*, and in other places of *Switzerland* sixteen years; being invited to the Bishoprick of *Constance*, he refused it, recommending one of his disciples to it, and so he retired himself to an Hermitical life, *an. 630.* on the mountains above the Lake of *Constance*, where now is the Town and Convent of *S. Gall*; there with some of his disciples, he built a Cell, and in holy meditations spent his dayes; there did his disciples remain, whose piety was rewarded with rich gifts from the French Kings, and Dukes of *Aleman* or<sup>30</sup> *Suanbe*: at last the fraternity increaseth in number and wealth, *S. Gall's* Cell is turned into a Monastery, eighty years after his death. *Pipinus* the son of *Charles Martel* made *Othomar* a Priest, the first Abbot of *S. Gall*, who with his brethren began to profess the rule of *S. Benedict*. The wealth and power of this Monastery did so increase, that the Abbot thereof was reckoned among the Princes, and was of old under the protection of the Emperors, who out of the Gentry of *Suanbe* or *Aleman* used to send governours of that Abbey; but afterward being neglected in the troubles between the Popes and Emperors, and quarrels arising between the Abbot and *Appenzel*, to which the Town of *S. Gall* was joyned, and some of the Abbots own vassals, and therefore stood in<sup>40</sup> need of some powerful protector, *Caspar Landenberg* the 52. Abbot desired to be joyned in league with the four Helvetian Cantons of *Tigurum* or *Zurich*, *Lucern*, *Suits*, and *Glaris* or *Glarona*, whom they chose for their protectors and defenders their liberties, rights, customs, and possessions: This power also is given to these Cantons, that all places in that feignory belonging to the Abbot, shall give free access to the Cantons when they please, and that in all controversies the Abbot shall stand to their verdict: Abbot *Vbricus*, *Landenberg's* successor, ordered that each of the four Cantons in their order, should send one of their Council to stay with the Abbot two years, and to be Captain of all his Country, and to be present at all pleadings, and that the half of all mulcts and fines<sup>50</sup> should belong to the *Switzers*, likewise that all the Abbots subjects should assist the Cantons in their wars; this league was renewed by *Vbricus*, when the Townsmen of *S. Gall* and *Appenzel* had pulled down the begun Monastery of *Rosac*, who by the Cantons were suppressed, and reduced to the Abbots obedience, this league continues yet; and though the Abbot and Cantons be of different Religions, yet they send according to their league a Captain to govern his subjects in civil affairs, and to maintain the Abbies rights.

The



An. Christi.

The town of *S. Gall* oweth her original to the Abby, and her privileges to the Emperors her protectors, though the Abbots subjects, with whom sometimes the Townsmen use to quarrel about their privileges and liberties, which they were forced for sums of money to redeem of the Abbot. Afterward the town of *S. Gall*, in imitation of Abbot *Landenberg*, united themselves in league to six Cantons, namely *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Lucerne*, *Suitz*, *Tugium* or *Zug*, and *Glaris*. This league was made perpetual and confirmed by oath, *an. 1454*. They had made leagues before this time with some of these Cantons, which was only for some years.

The *Rheti* or *Grisons* are antient: for before Christ, the *Tuscan*s being driven 10 from their homes by the *Gauls* under the conduct of their Captain *Rhetus*, they possessed the Alps, and from his name they called themselves *Rhetians*; in the *Romans* time there were two Countries called *Rhetia*, the first and second; and not only the Alps, but a great part of *Suevia* or *Suaube* and *Bavaria* were called *Rhetia*; the first and old *Rhetia* containing the springs of *Rhene*, a great part of the Alps, with the neighbouring valleys on both sides, is called now *Grisons*, and of old *Cani*: there are three leagues of the *Grisons*, the first is called the High-league, and it contains thirteen Commonalties, ten of which are lost; the second is called the League or Covenant of Gods house, because of the Bishop of *Curia* or *Coire* who is comprehended within it, this 20 contains nineteen Commonalties, two of which speak *Dutch*, the rest broken *Italian*, the third is called the League of the ten Jurisdiccions, because of the ten Commonalties in it; these people have divers times made leagues with their neighbour *Switzers*; the two former have made a perpetual league with seven of the *Cantons*; the third entertains constant friendship, though not a solemn league with them: the upper League or *Grison*, entred into a confederacie with the seven old *Cantons* for ever; the next year after, the 1497. league of Gods house joyned themselves to the same *Cantons*; these had long controversies with those of the County of *Tyrol*, by whom they were much wronged, and finding no redress, though the Emperour *Maximilian* had appointed first the Bishop of *Constance*, then the Bishop of *Ausburg* to arbitrate the business, yet nothing was done, but were still put off with delays till the *Austrians* had put themselves in Arms with intent to invade the *Grisons* unexpectedly; whereupon they send Legats to *Tigurum* where the *Switzers* were then assembled, to have a perpetual league confirmed between them, which 1498. was gladly entertained by the *Cantons* and ratified: the next year after this followed the *Suevian* war, in which the *Grisons* stoutly defended their borders against the *Austrians*, whom they oftentimes defeated by the *Switzers* help; at last having got the better, both the *Switzers* and *Grisons* made their peace with *Maximilian*; ever after the *Grisons* helped the *Switzers* in their wars in 40 *Italy*, when *John James* of *Medices*, afterward Marquess of *Marignan*, had taken the Castle of *Musse* upon the lake *Larius* or *Come*, and *Clavenne* from the *Grisons*; the *Switzers* sent them aid, by which the enemy was driven out of their Territories: at this day the *Grisons* as well as the *Cantons* are in league with the *French*, and serve him in his wars, but they have their Commanders and Regiments apart from those of the *Switzers*.

The *Valefians* are three distinct people, inclosed with high mountains, and inhabiting the valley between the springs of *Rhene* and lake *Leman*; these were called anciently *Viberi* or *Juberi*, *Seduni*, and *Veragri*; the two former are now called the high *Valefians*, & are divided into seven Dioceses; the *Veragri* or lower 50 *Valefians* are subject to the other; but the Bishop of *Sedun* or *Syon* is their chief both in Church and State-affairs, he is called Count and Governor of *Valais*; they made their first league with the three *Cantons* of *Uri*, *Lucerne* and *Underwald*, *an. 1417*. when they had wars with *William Raronius* the Bishop, and his father *Guiscard* whom they had banished, *Bern* helped the Bishop; the other *Cantons* who were neutrals, fearing lest this siding of *Bern* with the *Valefians* might cause

An. Christi.

cause a quarrel between *Bern* and the three above-named *Cantons*, they with much ado made up a peace, in which the *Raronii* were restored: after this war the *Valefians* made a temporary league with *Bern*, which in the year 1475 was made perpetual; two years before this, they joyned themselves to the three above-named *Cantons*, *ann. 1533*. At *Friburg* a league is concluded between *Adrian* Bishop of *Sion*, and seven Diocesses of the *Valetians*, with seven *Cantons*, to wit *Lucerne*, *Uri*, *Suitz*, *Underwald*, *Zug*, *Friburg*, and *Salodor* or *Saluerre*, to defend the Roman Religion against all opposers.

*Rotvil* is seated beyond *Danube* in *Germany*, on the left side of the river 10 *Niere*: It is an Imperial Chamber or place of judicature, whither the neighbouring countries make their appeals; which if any contumaciously do resist, they are liable to the Imperial Ban or proscription. The first league these of *Rotvil* made with the *Switzers*, was for fifteen years, under *Frederick* the third Emperour, *ann. 1463*. which afterward they renewed upon occasions: at last, the league is made perpetual with all the *Cantons*, *ann. 1519*. Now because *Rotvil* is seated far from the borders of *Helvetia*, so that an Army cannot be conducted to them; they are tied not to make any war, but upon urgent necessity, and that not without the *Switzers* consent, without whom they are to make no league.

20 *Mulhouse* a City in the County of *Ferrat* or *Sequana*, is thought to be the same that *Ariabinnus* of old; it was anciently an Imperial City, yet governed by the Bishop of *Strasburg*; but in the wars between *Ralph* of *Habsburg* and the Bishop of *Strasburg*, *Mulhouse* was taken from the Bishop, and his Castle in the City demolished; since which time it hath been one of the Cities of the Empire: Their first league they made with the *Switzers*, was in the year 1464. for this City being infested by the Nobility, to be freed of their tyranny, they make a league of fifteen years with *Friburg*, *Bern*, and *Salodor*; and by the mediation of *Bern*, the other seven *Helvetian* *Cantons* receive them into protection. This so incensed the Gentry thereabouts, that they took up arms against 30 this City; but the *Cantons* so aided them with garrisons within, and forces abroad, and so traitly besieged *Waldshout* a town of *Austria*, that the Gentry were glad to make their peace. Then in year 1506. the *Mulhouseans* were united to *Basel*; nine years after they made a league with the whole thirteen *Cantons*.

*Bienna* stands pleasantly, upon a Lake full of Fish, and beset with Vines, and is under the Bishop of *Basil* jurisdiction, but enjoys her own privileges. In the year 1303. this City made league with *Bern*, *Strasburg*, *Basil*, *Friburg*, and *Saluerre*, to suppress the highway-robbers which infested all that country; three years after, they made a particular confederacy with *Bern*; their third 40 league was made *ann. 1532*. and fifteen years after they renewed it, when *John* of *Viana* Bishop of *Basil*, a man of an unquiet spirit, made war upon his neighbours, and being offended at this Union of *Bienna* with *Bern*, falls suddenly upon the Town, and imprisoneth the *Bernois* that were authors of this society; but the *Bernois* in revenge, fall upon the Bishops Castle in the Town, and freed their Citizens: then they made war upon the Bishop and his confederates the *Salodorians*, wasting many places of his bishoprick.

*Geneva* the last City of the *Allobroges*, of which *Caesar* speaks, lieth neer the *Switzers* upon Lake *Leman*, at the head of *Rhon*; it hath been subject often times to Fire; in the time of *Heliogabalus* it was burnt down: *Aurelian* repaired it, and endowed it with divers privileges, and called it by his name *Aurelian*; it was wasted by the barbarous Nations that made irruption into 50 *France*: About two hundred & seventy years ago, it was twice burned. The Bishoprick had great immunities, and so had the City; yet they kept good correspondence with the Bishop: The Earls of *Geneva* were great enemies to her liberty, who notwithstanding were the Bishops Vassals, and held their Earldome from him in Fee: She was also often troubled by the Earls of *Savoy*, so that

*An. Christi.* that ann. 1420. *Amadeus* Duke of *Savoy* strove to obtain of Pope *Martin* the right of superiority over *Geneva* by way of exchange; but *John* who was then Bishop, agreed with the Citizens for himself and successors, that the liberties of *Geneva* should never be exchanged or alienated; if any should endeavour an exchange, that he be accounted a traitour. Afterward, when the Emperour *Maximilian* had made *Philbert* Duke of *Savoy* and his son in law, Lieutenant of the Empire in those parts, he and his brother *Charles* endeavoured upon this title, to subject *Geneva* to them, pretending that the privileges of Lieutenantship were granted to the Princes of *Savoy* by *Charles* the fourth; who notwithstanding had taken away from *Amadeus* their Earl, all power over *Geneva*: These troubles made the City enter into league with *Bern*, and *Friburg*, which was renewed and made more firm ann. 1536. at which time, the Duke of *Savoy* and Bishop of *Geneva* raised war against the Town, for changing their Religion. There hath been oftentimes intentions to confederate *Geneva* with the Cantons, which hath not yet been effected.

*Neocomum* or *Neufchâtel* is in the Country of *Avanches*, on the Lake bearing the towns name. In the war between *Lewis* the twelfth of France and the *Switzers*, *Bern* in behalf of all the Cantons seized upon the town and the whole County, placing a government there, which the other Cantons did in order, except those of *Zurich*; at last *Joan Hoochbergia* Duke *Longovils* widow, upon certain conditions procured the County to be restored to her (for it belonged anciently to the Earls of *Hoochberg*) which was done in the year 1529. before this time it was annexed to the Cantons of *Bern*, *Lucerne*, *Friburg*, and *Solieuve*, on certain articles, which upon this rendition were confirmed. At this day the Lords of this County are by a peculiar league allied to *Bern*.

Besides these confederate Towns, there be others belonging to the *Helvetian* common-wealth, which may be called stipendiary, because they serve the *Switzers* in their wars upon their own charges; these have their own laws and Magistrates, but the sovereignty remains in the Cantons, whose publique Edicts they are bound to obey; these towns anciently belonged to the *Austrian*, but the *Switzers* in their wars with *Austria* obtained them, upon certain conditions, that they should enjoy under the Cantons the same privileges they had under the *Austrian*; these are five in number, namely *Bada*, *Bremgarten*, *Frauenfeld*, *Mellingen*, and *Rapersvil*.

*Bada* on the river *Limag* is so called from the hot baths there, it is therefore named *Thermopolis*; this town is mentioned in *Cor. Tacitus*, it had anciently two castles, the one upon a high rock, demolished by the *Switzers*, the other is garrisoned by them; it had also Earls of old, who are now extinct, to whom succeeded the Lords of *Habsburg*, who joyned this and other things to the House of *Austria*; at last, it fell from them to the *Switzers*, in the council of *Constance*, because *Frederick* of *Austria* maintained Pope *John* 22. against the Emperour and Council; therefore he is excommunicate, and proscribed. *Sigismund* the Emperour with the Prince of *Bavaria* made war against him: the *Switzers* are commanded to war against him also, notwithstanding the fifty years peace they had lately made with him, because he was excommunicate and an enemy to the Church and state; if they refuse to break the peace, they should be excommunicated also with the *Austrian*: the breach of this peace was also warranted by the Princes Legats at the council, and the Juriconsults, because the Emperours subjects, in all their actions, must except either expressly or tacitly the Emperours Majesty and Rights. The copy of this Decree was sent them, and withall is shewed them, that whatever they have pawned to the *Austrian* heretofore, doth now belong to the Empire, and that the Emperour will make no peace with the *Austrian*, except he confirm the *Helvetian* peace: to this war at last they assented; but withall they desired pay, because they were poor; the Emperour told them his money was short, but he would bestow on them whatever goods of the *Austrians* they possessed, or should obtain in this war

war till they had their pay; he exhorts also *Zurich* to take arms, promising them that *Austrian* Country beyond Mount *Albins* in perpetuall Fee: Upon this the *Tigurins* in the year 1415. besiege *Mellingen*, and the third day take it: thence they went to *Bremgarten*, where the Cantons of *Suits* and *Zug* joyned with them, to whom this Town also surrendered it self, under the protection of the Empire; divers other Towns the *Switzers* took from the *Austrian*. Then the *Tigurins* by the help of the other Cantons, except *Bern*, besiege *Bada* the strongest place belonging to the *Austrian*, and which had often done them much hurt by excursions: after three weeks siege, the Town surrenders; the Castle held out some time after, till all necessities began to fail them: at last, they capitulate to surrender if the *Austrian* do not relieve them at such a time; mean while, the *Austrian* makes his peace with the Emperour, and command is sent to the *Switzers* to disband their Army, but they would not give off the siege of this Castle till they took and burned it, because of the much mischief they had heretofore suffered by it; the Gentry stormed at this, but could not now tell how to help it. Now the Emperour intending for Spain, to bring from thence *Peter de Luna*, otherways *Benedict* the ninth, to be Pope; and his treasure being exhausted both on the Council and on his wars, he engaged *Beda* with some other Towns and Lands to them belonging, for a summe of money to *Zurich*; likewise to *Bern* he pawned the Country of *Ergow*, which they at this day doe solely possess. The next year after, *Zurich* made the Cantons of *Lucerne*, *Suits*, *Underwald*, *Zug*, and *Glaris*, sharers of this Pawn or Mortgage: but those of *Vri* at first refused to share, thinking it a breach of the peace; but being better informed of the lawfulness thereof, grounded on the Emperours and Councils authority, were content to pay their money and share with the rest, and so did *Bern* also.

*Bremgarten* one of the mortgaged towns, is seated on the river *Russe*, two German miles below *Lucerne*; it was first under the Empire, then it came to the *Habsburgs*, from them to the *Austrian* Princes, who derive their beginning from them. *Mellingen* another of these pawned Towns on the same river, one German mile below *Bremgarten*, it belonged to the Earls of *Habsburg*; these two Towns with *Bada* were taken by the *Switzers* for the Emperour: Now they are under the eight Cantons, who suffer them to retain their ancient privileges. *Rapersvil* stands on the Lake of *Zurich* or *Tigurum*; it first belonged to the Earls of *Rapersvil*, then to the *Habsburgs*; it fell to the *Switzers* ann. 1458. Here were two factions, the one *Austrian*, the other *Helvetian*; of these Duke *Sigismund* carried away some prisoners to *Oenipont* or *Inspruc*, which made the other joyn with the *Switzers*; but the prisoners were restored by the *Switzers* threatnings and intercession: After, the *Switzers* war against *Constance*; those of *Vri*, *Suits*, *Underwald*, and *Glaris*, obtained leave to march with their Army through *Rapersvil*; who when they came, seized on the Town; which by reason of the *Helvetian* prevailing faction there, swore Allegiance to those four Cantons, under whom they are yet, and enjoy their ancient privileges which they had under the *Austrian*. Two years after the taking of *Rapersvil*, the seven Cantons seized on *Frauenfeld*, the chief City of *Turgea* or *Turgow*, in their war against *Sigismund* of *Austria*; to this war the Cantons were incited by Pope *Pius* or *Enas Sixtus*, who excommunicated *Sigismund* for imprisoning Cardinal *Cusan*, Bishop of *Brixia* or *Bresse*. *Vitodurum* or *Winterdur*, is a town in *Kyburg* belonging to the Canton of *Zurich*, it was then under the *Austrian*; this town suspecting that the *Tigurins* would surprize them, shut their Gates on the Fare-day of *S. Gall* against the Country people, and would not open them upon any intreaties of the Governour of *Zurich*: Hereupon *Zurich* forbids all commerce with this Town, and the *Austrian* strengthens it with a garrison: The *Tigurins* with the other Cantons besiege *Vitodurum*; so at last the *Switzers* obtain, ann. 1460. the Country of *Turgow* with the Towns of

*An. Christi.* Dieffenhow on the Rhine, and Frawenfeld: this war also of the Cantons with the Austrian was hastned on by two brothers, Vigil and Bernard Gradlers, who being oppressed by Sigismund, appealed for justice to the Cantons.

There are also under the Switzers nine Bailiages or governments, to wit, the County of Bada, the free Provinces, Turgow, Sarunetes or Sargaris, Rbegusci or the Valley of Rhin, Lugano, Locarne, Mendrisse, and the Valley of Madie; the last four are beyond the Alpes in Italy, and speak Italian, the rest speak Dutch. Bada is subject to the Cantons of Zurich, Lucerne, Uri, Suits, Underwald, Zug, Glaris, and Bern; these are also Lords of Turgow, except Bern: the judicature of criminal causes was taken from Frederick of Austria in the Council of Constance, and pawned by Sigismund the Emperour to the City of Constance; but ann. 1490. Maximilian Emperour bestowed it on the Switzers; the free Provinces are these Castles and Villages upon the left side of the river Rufs, above and beneath Bregmarten; these are called free Provinces, because the three Villages of Megenberg, Richenser, and Ergow or Villa Vorbigena had their several jurisdictions and officers, as distinct provinces, but now are made one. This part anciently was called the County of Kore, it is now under the Cantons, namely Zurich, Lucerne, Uri, Suits, Underwald, Zug, and Glaris; it was taken by Lucern in the war between the Helvetian and Frederick of Austria; but the other Cantons claimed an equal share in the government with Lucerna, according to their ancient agreement, that all should be common, whatsoever was taken in that war; the matter was referred to Bern, whose verdict was for the equal sharing of the jurisdiction by the other Cantons: The Country is small, therefore the governour who comes hither some times in the year hath his residence in the Abbey of Muren. Sarunetes or Sargans, so called from the river Sara hard by them; this Town and Country belonged anciently to the Earls of Werdenberg, then to the Austrian; who sold it to the Earls of Tog, from whom the Earls of Sargans or Werdenberg redeemed it: At last, ann. 1483. George of Werdenberg sold it to the seven ancient Cantons, who send thither governours by turn, under whom the Town enjoys its old privileges. Rbegusci on the Rhene, are a part of the Grisons, they that dwell on the right side of the Rhene, are under the Austrian; but the inhabitants on the left side belong to the Switzers. Frederick Togg took all this Country from the Austrian by the Emperours command, at the Council of Constance. Afterward this country was divers times pawned and sold, till at last the Cantons of Zurich, Lucerne, Suits, Glaris, Uri, Underwald, Zug, having aided the Abbot of S. Gall against Appenzel, obtained for their pay this country: afterward they admit the Abbatiscellans the ancient Lords thereof to a share in the government, so that now it is under eight Cantons.

Beyond the Alpes, the Cantons have four Bailiages or Governments in Italy; the first is Lugano, upon the Lake; the second is Locarne, where was a strong Castle, not inferior to that of Millain; the third is Mendrisse; and the fourth is the Valley of Madia; Maximilian Sfortia Duke of Millain bestowed these upon the Cantons, for their service in beating the French out of Italy, by the command of Pope Julius: he bestowed also on the Grisons the Val-Telin: but three years after, when Francis the French King had defeated the Switzers at Marignan, and driven the Duke out of Millain, he confirmed this gift, and so have the succeeding Dukes of Millain done: All the Cantons send Governours thither, except Appenzel, because this was not then one of the Cantons, when the Switzers obtained this gift. Biltonium is under the three Cantons of Uri, Suits, and Underwald: this town belonged to the Earls of Misairk, till the Duke of Millain took it by force; but being retaken by the Earl, he sold it to Uri and Underwald; from whom the Duke recovered it by treachery: Since which time the Switzers have had many battels for regaining this place, the possession of which at last they obtained, almost eighty years after they had lost it: For whilest the French and Millainois were in continuall wars, the Towns-

Townsmen for quietness sake surrender themselves to the Cantons of Uri, from whom the French have often attempted to recover it, but in vain, it is now divided into three governments under the three Cantons.

The Switzers have made divers leagues with their neighbours: with Millain ann. 1466. between Galeacius and Blanca Maria his wife, and the eight Cantons; then between Galeacius Maria Sfortia, and those of Uri about the Valley of Lepontia or Liviner: the Duke grants to Uri the civil jurisdiction of that Valley, who were for this to pay the Duke a yearly tribute, four Hawks and a cross-Bow. Ferdinand Gonzaga ann. 1552. governour of Millain, in the name of Charles the fifth Emperour, renews the league with the Switzers, which was to continue four years: after the death of Charles the fifth, this league hath not been renewed by the Kings of Spain, now Lords of Millain, with the Helvetian, though amity is carefully entertained between them; yet Philip the second of Spain made a confederacy with the six Catholick Cantons, to wit, Lucerne, Uri, Suits, Silvania, Zug, and Friburg, for maintenance of the old Faith; this was confirmed at Millain, ann. 1588. the Catholicks of Appenzel were admitted into the same society, ann. 1597.

Sigismund of Austria made a perpetual league with the Switzers, which was confirmed by the Emperours Maximilian, Charles the fifth, and Ferdinand. This Sigismund was the son of Frederick, who carried away Pope John from the council of Constance: he had many battles with the Switzers, by whom being often beat, he labours to draw aid from King Lewis of France; but he who had felt the Switzers valour at the council of Basel, would not meddle in the business: then he implores the Burgundian, to whom he mortgageth some countries near Helvetia, that he might purposely quarrel with the Switzers; but the Burgundian governour was so tyrannical, that Sigismund was glad upon the earnest entreaty of his oppressed subjects to redeem again the mortgage, and to make a league, that was to be renewed every ten years with the Switzer against the Burgundian, whose power was too great for either of them apart. Ann. 1474. not onely Sigismund of Austria, but also Renatus of Lor-rain, with the Bishops of Strasburg, Basel, and divers cities, entered into confederacy with Helvetia against the Burgundian: but after he was slain, Sigismund being childlesse, resignes his principality to Maximilian the Emperour, reserving onely to himself an annual pension; this Emperour renews the Austrian league with Helvetia, ann. 1511. in which was comprehended the house of Burgundy, and his Nephew Charles now under his tuition, with the twelve Cantons, Appenzel, the Abbot and Town of S. Gall. Maximilian also promiseth for his Nephew Charles, that he will yearly pay to each Canton two hundred crowns as a present in Zurich; to the Abbot and Town of S. Gall, and to Appenzel, to each of them 100. crowns, till Charles be of years that he can manage his Dominions himself, who was also to confirm this League, which he did, ann. 1543. so far as concerned the house of Burgundy, for Austria was then under the government of his brother Ferdinand.

The Dukes of Savoy did anciently entertain amity with Bern, Friburg, and Soluerre; and Charles father to Philbert made a league of twenty five years with all the Cantons, ann. 1512. during which, the Duke was to pay yearly to each Canton at Bern two hundred crowns: about the end of this league, Duke Charles lost the greatest part of his Dutchie to King Francis of France; in this war Bern in defence of their confederats of Geneva, seised upon some part of the Dutchy: the renewing of this league was interrupted by the wars of Charles 5. now protector of Savoy, against the French in Piemont; but afterward Philbert son to Duke Charles being restored to his Dominions by the French, made a perpetual league with six Cantons of Lucerne, Suits, Uri, Underwald, Zug, and Soluerre, and after this, the other Cantons joyned in this confederacy.

Of the French kings, Lewis 11. was the first that made a league with, and paid to the Switzers an annual pension: this was after he had tried their va-

*An. Christi.* Louis at *Basil*, where he lost 6000 men by 1600 *Switzers*; In hatred also of the *Burgundian*, by whom he had been lately beaten, he makes this league for ten years, promising to each Canton a stipend of 7000 *Franks*. *Charles 8.* sonne to this *Lewis*, renewed the league *an. 1483.* and employed the *Switzers* in his war against the Duke of *Britany*, whom he overcame, and also in the *Neapolitan* war. *Lewis 12.* his successor made a league of twelve years with them, that by their help he might again recover *Millan*. This war being ended, *Lewis* refuseth to pay any more the *Switzers* pension, wherefore they in anger make a league with Pope *Julius 2.* *an. 1510.* by this means *Sfortia* is repolled of *Millan*, and the *French* beat out. *Francis Valois* son-in-law to *Lewis* succeeded, who beat the *Switzers*, and carried the Duke of *Millan* prisoner into *France*; but shortly after he made a stable league with the Cantons, considering how conducive their amity was to *France*, and promiseth to pay yearly to each Canton 2000 *franks*, and as much to the *Valefians*; to the *Grisons* as much as *Lewis 12.* paid them, and 2000 *franks* over and above; to the Abbot of *S. Gall* and to his subjects, and to those of *Toggenburg*, 600 *franks*; to the City of *S. Gall*, 400. to *Mulhouse*, 400. to those of the County of *Gruer*, 600. and it is agreed, that the places heretofore under the protection of *Millan* shall enjoy now under *France* their ancient privileges: many other articles were concluded between them, and ratified at *Friburg*, in the yeare 1516. 20 It was further agreed five years after, That the French king might at his pleasure, when he was threatned with war, raise six thousand *Switzers* at least, and not above sixteen thousand without the Magistrates permission; these levies the Cantons must not hinder or call back, except they be in danger themselves of invasion; but the French king is not to employ the *Switzers* in any sea-service, but on the land onely; if the *Switzers* be invaded, the French king is to furnish them on his own charges with two hundred men compleatly armed, or else two thousand crowns every three moneths, besides twelve peeces of ordnance, and a thousand *franks* yearly to each Canton during this league, which was to continue three yeares after 30 the death of King *Francis*: his son *Henry* who succeeded made a new league with the *Switzers*, on the same articles which were agreed upon by his father; this continued five yeares after his death; in this the *Switzers* were not to aid the *French* in recovering their lost dominions in *Italy*, but were to help him in regaining the town and province of *Bolon* in *Picardy*: this league was made at *Salodor*, *an. 1549.* in which all the Cantons were included except the *Tigurins* and *Bernois*. Lastly, *Charles 9.* sonne to King *Henry*, renewed the former league; so did *Henry 4.* who promised to pay the *Switzers* for their arrears due to them, a million of gold. The sixe Catholike Cantons are allowed to continue their league with *Millan* and *Savoy*. 40

1622.

CHAP.

*An. Christi.*

## CHAP. IX.

The Swedish History, from the year 1590. till the year 1631.

*Sigismund* son to *John* is declared King of *Swethland*, *an. 1590.* He returns from his kingdom of *Poland*, and is crowned at *Upsalia* king of *Swethland*. *Francis Malaspina* Bishop of *Orbin* and the Popes Legat, was earnest to inaugurate the King after the Pontifician manner, hoping thereby to reduce the Roman religion into that kingdom; but he was opposed by the Parliament, chiefly by *Adam Andracan* Archbishop of *Upsalia*, who told the Legat, that it was against the custome and lawes of that kingdom, for any except the Archbishop of *Upsalia* to set the Crown on the Kings head, besides (saith he) the King must swear to maintain the Augustine Confession exhibited to *Charls 5.* sixty four years ago, and no other Religion in that kingdom but that which was established by *Gustavus* and *John 3.* the Kings late predecessors, in the Parliament of *Upsalia*. The King perceiving that all the Assembly sided with *Adam*, he was content to receive his inauguration from him; his Coronation-oath was given him by the Chancellor of *Swethland*, by which he promiseth to maintain justice and truth, to suppress vice, to govern the kingdom with 20 *P. Charles* and the Swedish parliament, to admit no strangers into his counsels or chief offices of his kingdom; that he will lay no taxes on his people except he be thereto necessitated by wars, or the marriages of his children, or reparation of decayed castles; that he will maintain the privileges of the Nobility, Clergy and people, and their peace and welfare. Then in the Parliament some lawes were enacted for governing of the kingdom in the Kings absence, who the next June after returned to *Poland*. But within few yeares after, in the Parliament held at *Stockholm* he was deposed by the States of *Swethland*; and 1599 the next year 1600. in the Parliament at *Lincophen*, he with his children and posterity are totally excluded from the kingdom of *Sweden*, because contrary to the will and admonition of his Grandfather he fell off from the Protestant to the Roman religion, and invaded *Sweden* his native soile with an army of strangers, to the great danger of undoing his Uncle *Charles*, the Nobility, Clergy, and whole Kingdom, which is grieved for that his Majesty hath in this violated his promises and Coronation-oath, for which cause they were forced to renounce all fealty and allegiance to him: yet in regard of their love to him, they are content that his son shall sit upon his throne, if so be his Majesty will resolve within six moneths to send him hither to be instructed in the Protestant faith, under *D. Charles* his Majesties uncle, and the other Peers of *Swethland*; but if the King refuse to perform this within the prefixed time, they must disinherit him and his posterity; therefore they beseech his Majesty not to slight the humble petition of his Kingdom, nor welfare of his posterity. 40

The six moneths prefixed for the Kings resolution being past, and no answer from him, a Parliament is called, in which Duke *Charles* is desired to undertake the kingdom, which he refused, till the other six moneths were expired, in which the young Prince was to be sent to be instructed in the new religion and laws of the kingdom, that when he should attain the full age of 24 yeares, he might be crowned, and not before. In the mean time they desire Duke *Charls* to manage the State-affairs during the Princes minority, whether 50 he come or not; and withall they are resolved, if *D. Charls* die before this time, to choose three eminent men to govern the State, and to breed the young Princes in the Protestant faith; it is also enacted, that if *Sigismunds* son succeeds to the crown, he shall provide an honorable maintenance for his Uncle Duke *John*, in his Dutchy of *Ostrogoth*, and that he shall permit *D. Gustavus Adolphus* son to *D. Charles* to inherit without molestation his fathers Dukedome in as ample manner as his father possessed it; it is likewise ordered, that

if

*An. Christi.* if the King suffers himself to be dethroned, that Duke Charles shall succeed; and if he die before any of the young Princes be fit for government, he shall be governour whom Duke Charles shall name in his last will and testament; but if he neglect to name any, then the State will chuse two or three faithful governours, till the young Princes descended of Prince John, or of Duke Gustavus Adolphus shall be of years, it being in the power of the State to chuse which of them they shall think fittest for government. In the mean while, because King Sigismund had falsified his oath, departed twice out of the Kingdome without leave, sent Armies of aliens against his native Country, and hath refused to give any answer to their petition, therefore they disinheret him and his posterity; they also order that Prince John shall have for his maintenance the Dutchy in *Othrogoth*, which once was possessed by Duke Magnus, except such Territories as belong to Duke Charles by patent, instead of which Duke John shall have other lands of the same value, so that Duke John shall content himself with these, expecting nothing else in this Kingdome, except what he can claim by right of inheritance: It is also ordered that the Duke shall entertain none that goeth about to sow discord between the Regal and Ducal families, but such only as study the peace and welfare of both families so nearly linked in blood; withall they humbly beseech Duke Charles for the present to accept of the Crown, as being most worthy thereof by reason of his many good offices he hath done to this Kingdome, especially in promoting the Protestant faith against all opposition, to the hazard of his life and estate; and this they make known by their Legats to foreign Princes, that Duke Charles used not any finistrous means to attain this Crown, but was again and again urged and pressed by the joynt importunity of Peers and people to accept the same, and therefore they resolve to admit of none other for their King, but Duke Charles, to whom they swear allegiance, and resolve to give him all the rights and honours belonging to the Crown of Sweden, though he should refuse the ceremony of Coronation: They also enact, that after the death of Duke Charles, his sonne Gustavus Adolphus shall succeed to the Crown, and after him his lawful heirs male successively; but if Duke Charles his heirs male should fail, then Duke John and his heirs shall succeed so long as that line shall remain; which John and his successours shall swear never to make any league or union with King Sigismund, or his heirs, tending to their obtaining any foot again in the government of this Kingdome: John also must take heed that he never go about to promote Papacie, except he with his whole progeny will lose their interest for ever in this Kingdome: They also advise Duke Charles, that during his sonnes minority, he would nominate a faithful and prudent Governour and Tutor, who after his death might wisely administer the Kingdome, till 40 his sonne attain the age of four and twenty, and that this governour shall be a Swede, and no alien.

After the States had sworn fealty and allegiance to Duke Charles the son of Gustavus Duke of Suderman, Nericia, and Wermeland; he undertook the government of the Kingdome, but without the name or title of King, and so continued till the year 1607. when by the joynt consent of the States, he was crowned King of Sweden, to whom, and to his son Gustavus after him, and to his successours the inheritance of the Crown is confirmed by a solemn oath of Parliament. He had before this taken from the *Polonian* a great part of *Livonia*. Upon his second son Duke Charles Philip they confer his fathers Dutchy 50 of Suderman, Nericia and Wermeland, with other spiritual and secular jurisdictions possessed by Duke Charles his father, before he attained the Crown; Duke John shall inherit the Dutchy of Duke Magnus: If Duke Gustavus Adolphus dye without issue male, then his brother Duke Charles Philip, and the males of his body lawfully begotten, shall succeed to the Crown; if these fail, then Duke John and his heirs male shall inherit the Kingdome; in default of

*An. Christi.* of these, he shall succeed that is next to them in blood; but if the whole *Gustavian* masculine race fail, then the females shall possess the Crown in ample manner as the males, and it shall be lawful for them to chuse their own husbands, so that they are not Papists, nor enemies to the State, nor strangers, but of some Noble family of Sweden, or some German Prince descended from Gustavus, of the Augustan faith; if the Queen shall do otherwise, she must look to be dethroned: they promise also to provide honourable maintenance for the other Royal or Ducal daughters, who must not marry without consent of Parliament; neither must any of the Kings or Dukes sons take to themselves wives of another Religion, or marry of their own head, without acquainting the States, and if any shall perswade or counsel them to do otherwise, or to change his Religion, he shall be guilty of High-treason; and whosoever refuses to imbrace the Augustan confession, shall forfeit his estate to the next of blood, and shall be banished the Kingdome: It is also enacted, that none of the Blood-royal of Sweden shall inherit this Crown, if he accepts of any foreign Kingdome, except he make his perpetual residence in the Kingdome of Sweden; seeing Sigismunds accepting of the Kingdome of Poland, and residing out of this his native Kingdome, hath occasioned so much mischief, as hath almost ruined it.

The Kingdome being established in King Charles and his heirs, he reigned 1611. four years, in which time he had war with the Danes; in this he fell into a disease which killed him, the 61. year of his life; he left behinde him two sons, Gustavus Adolphus, and Carolus Philippus, with one daughter; he had wars with the *Polonian* in *Livonia*, where he was defeated: He had better success before he was King, when he killed two thousand of Sigismunds Army, seized on his camp and money, and caused him to deliver up the Chancellour, and other incendiaries to punishment: nor was he successful in his wars against the Danes, for Christianus 9. of Denmark, having sent a Herauld to Charles for restoring of the Danish ships he took, was slighted, and no answer at all returned; whereupon the Dane besiegeth *Calmaria* a strong Town in *Swethland*, and at last takes it by storm, in which men women and children were put to the sword by the enraged souldier; though the Town was taken, yet the Castle held out. In the interim the Swedes took *Christianopolis* from the Danes by a stratagem: for this Town had sent letters to the King for some Auxiliaries, these letters being intercepted by the Swede, a garrison is sent with Danish colours lately taken; so the Town is surpris'd, burnt, and most of the Inhabitants slain; the Dane takes divers ships from the Swede, and beats him again out of *Calmaria*, after he had retaken it: upon this the governour of the Castle surrenders that also to the Dane, where were a hundred and eight brasse Guns, and six war-ships, with all their furnitures; divers other Castles also 40 surrendred to the Dane, which so incensed Charles, that he sends a challenge to Christianus for a duel, which was rejected and laughed at by the Dane, wherefore King Charles with grief and age fell sick and died the next moneth; about the end of that year most of the Swedish ships were taken by the Danes at *Elsburg*, the other Key as it were of Sweden, and five months after the Castle is surrendred.

To Charles succeeded his son Gustavus Adolphus, he was crowned at four and twenty years of age; three years after he married with Mary Eleonor sister to George William Elector of Brandenburg, she bare him a daughter Christiana by 50 name, who died the same year she was born in; then she bare him another daughter called also Christiana, who now reigns, she was declared heir to the Crown in the Diet at *Stockholm*; for Duke Charles Philip hereditary Prince of *Swethland*, and Duke of *Suderman*, died childlesse in *Livonia*. The Danes having taken *Calmaria* and *Elsburg*, the two chief Forts of Sweden upon the Baltic, and *Hesperian* sea, divers cruel battels being also fought, and the plague raging among them, a peace is concluded, in which the Swede was to leave



*An-Christi.* leave off the title and claim he had to *Lapponia*; he was also by Articles to pay to the Dane towards the charges of this war 12 Tuns of gold, till which be paid *Elsburg* shall be left in pawn. *Gustavus* after divers hot disputes with his uncle of *Poland*, whom many times he foiled, at last made an honourable Truce for six years; he took in *Newburg* and *Strasburg*, being aided by Leather-guns, invented then by one *Elias Tripus*; the *Polander* recovered again *Newburg*, who laid siege also to *Strasburg*, but was beaten off by *Oxenstern* the Chancellor; from *Mewa* he was driven back by the King of *Swede*, notwithstanding the *Polander* was assisted by the Imperial forces, therefore he was forced to make peace with *Gustavus*, who restored to him *Strasburg*, *Dirfavia*, and *Fraeberg*, but retained what he took in *Livonia* and *Borussia*, some Towns were sequestered into the hands of *Brandenburg*; the two Kings promise mutual assistance to each other against any third party that shall make war upon either of them.

*Gustavus* being angry that the Emperour *Ferdinand 2.* had sent aid to the *Polander* against him in *Borussia*, and had rejected his Ambassadors at the Treaty of *Lubec*; he complains by his Legat to General *Walstein*, of the Army sent against him under *Aruheim*: *Walstein* answers the King scornfully, that because *Cesar* had so many Armies, he was forced for want of other employment to send this to his friend the King of *Poland* against the *Swedes*; besides *Gustavus* was earnestly invited by the banished Princes of *Germany*, and chiefly by the Protestants who daily complained of the wrongs they suffered, to come to their assistance; he was also jealous of some plots intended against his Kingdom, when Duke *Albert* of *Fridland*, in the Emperours right, arrogated to himself the title of High-admiral of the Ocean and Baltick seas, which title never any Emperour had before usurped; the pyracies also exercised upon the Swedish ships did much afflict and grieve him, therefore he complains to the Imperial Electors (who in right of the Empire were to take notice of the differences between Princes) but when he saw no redress, nor hopes of peace, he sends abroad his Declarations, that all might take notice how he was necessitated to take Arms; therefore having prepared a Navy, he enters the Isle of *Rugia* on Midsummer-day, where as soon as he came on shore, he fell on his knees, giving thanks to God for so happy a beginning of his expedition, praying for a happy success in his counsels and actions; and then presently he falls upon *Wolgast*, which he took, having driven thence the Imperialists; they who were in *Camminum* and *Julinum*, set fire on their Towns, and went their way; then he makes *Stetinum* the other Metropolis of *Pomerania* to side with him, shewing that he meant not to withdraw *Pomerania* from the Empire, or to bring it under the Scepter of *Sweden*, but rather to defend it against unjust violence and tyranny; upon this Duke *Bogislaus* enters into a league with him: this Country at that time was in a woful condition, being worse used by the souldiers that quartered amongst them, then by an open enemy. *Stargand* was seized upon by the *Swedes* in the night, who drove thence the *Cæsarians*. *Pasevalcum* being exhausted with contributions, and robbed of all her prime men, receives gladly two troops of Swedish horse or Dragoons; upon this *Gotzius* sends thither such a multitude of Imperial souldiers, that the unarmed and fearful Town was not able to resist, and so the *Swedes* saved themselves by flight, the Townsmen were massacred, the women abused, their wealth plundered, and the Town with the Churches, notwithstanding the intreaties of the Clergy, were consumed to ashes; this was in *September*: the 50 *July* before, *Pecunum* received the same measure from the Imperialists, though it was not tainted with rebellion.

About this time a Diet is called at *Ratisbone*; the Protestant Electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* refuse to be there in person, but send their Ambassadors; the Popes Legats were there, by whom the league is renewed; and it is ordered that a great Army shall be raised to force the Princes to make restitution

restitution of the Church-goods; the Emperour by his Edict complaining of the wrongs done him by the *Swede*, whom he never offended, in making an hostile invasion upon *Germany*, threatneth proscription of all those who shall any ways assist him; he commands also that all shall be ready with men, money and provision against the *Swedes*: The King on the other side protests, that he desires nothing more then the peace of the Church, and that the Emperour would admit a Treaty to that purpose; but in the mean while he prosecutes the war, for he takes in the Castle of *Wolgast*, and by that means got a great part of *Pomerania* to side with him; then he falls upon divers other places which made resistance, as *Tratfund*, *Barth*, and the Castle of *Damgart*, which he took by storm, and put the Garrison to the sword; upon this *Ribbenitz* a Town in the Dutchy of *Megapolis* on the confines of *Pomerania*, opened her gates to him: then the King by his Edict wiseth the *Megapolitans* to forsake the *Fridlanders*, and to receive again their lawful Dukes *Adolphus Frederick*, and *John Albert*, unjustly driven out; otherways he will proceed against them as Rebels with fire and sword, this his demand being grounded on Justice, Consanguinity and Religion: The same Edict he sends to *Rostock* three miles off, but there he was prevented by a thousand Imperial horse, who desiring leave to passe through the City staid there, and seized on it for the Duke of *Fridland*, and furnished it with all kinde of provision; but *Francis Charles* Duke of *Lauenberg*, having raised some forces about *Alb*, took in *Bousenburg*, *Winshem* and other places for the *Swedes*, but the sudden coming of *Remarck* Colonel of a thousand Imperialists, made him retreat to *Rakeburg*, where being denied entrance into the Castle, is taken prisoner by Count *Pappenheim*, who pursued him with some troops: *Colberg* mean while, a Sea-port in *Pomerania*, is besieged by the *Swedes*; *Torquatus* General of the *Cæsarian* forces in those parts did what he could to raise the siege, which continued all that bitter Winter till the end of *February*, during which time there was great execution on both sides, but at last the King took it by *Gustavus Horn*, and put to flight the Imperialists: in the interim the Diocese of *Magdeburg* which *Christian William* governour thereof had recovered, is again invaded by the Imperialists, who with their multitudes over-ran many places thereabouts, and at length laid siege to *Magdeburg* Metropolis of *Saxony*; thither the King sent *Theodoricus Falkenberg* to assist the governour; all the provision and Arms that were in *Alensleb* lately taken, were transported to *Magdeburg*; but being besieged by *Pappenheim*, he is forced to give up the Town, who with his souldiers swear never to bear Arms thenceforth against the Emperour.

The ruine of this City was prefaged by the fall of one of the Towers of *S. Katharines* Church, and shortly after, *Novem. 26.* by the overthrow of the other Tower caused by a violent wind; about the same time the Tower of *S. Johns* Church fell, and with its weight beat down the roof of the Church; the same ruine besel the Churches of *S. Ann*, *Gertrudis*, and *Sudenburg*; the arched Gallery or Cloyster from the Bishops Palace to the Cathedral Church fell down at the same time; five Wind-mills, and six Water-mills were overthrown by the winds, besides great hurt done to divers houses: Thus God doth use to shew his sword before he strikes, that he may excite us to repentance, prepare us with patience, or make us inexcusable if we slight his warnings. *Germany* at this time was in a sad condition, being torn in peeces by so many Armies. About the end of this year, the King of *Swede* had twelve thousand horse, and four and thirty thousand foot, his Army then consisted of *Germans*, *Swedes*, *Finlanders*, besides three Troops of *Laplanders* who in the midst of Winter came to him in skins, these were all Archers; the Emperours Armies were far more numerous, but lesser disciplined, and more rapacious. *George* Elector of *Brandenburg*, being pressed on the one side by the Emperour,

*An. Christi.* on the other by the King, who married his sister, within his Provinces molested by thieves and robbers, without affrighted with the Northern guests who sought to quarter with him; to save his Country from ruine, he commands his subjects to be in Arms, and to seize upon all high-way men, though in souldiers apparel. On Christmasse-day the same year, the King takes by storm *Griffenhagen* of *Pomerania*, so that this Country is now cleared from the Imperialists, who were all killed or fled, and forced to leave their plunderings behinde them: the King upon this giveth solemne thanks to God at *Stetin*, and causerh his Army in their camp to do the like, to whom he prescribed certain forms of prayer, all praising God for this former years 10 successe.

1631.

About the beginning of the next year, *Lewis 13.* of *France* sends *Hercules de Charnace* Ambassador, to take up the difference between the Kings of *Poland* and *Swede*, and to make a league of five years between *France* and *Swethland*, for defence of the Ocean and Baltick-seas, for restitution of the afflicted and banished Princes of *Germany*, and for demolishing the Forts which have been built among the *Grifons* since the beginning of this *German* war; for this end the *Swede* shall maintain thirty thousand foot, and six thousand horse, towards the charges of which the *French* will pay him yearly forty thousand Imperials; that levies of men shall be permitted in either Kingdome, and that the Religion in *Germany* shall be exercised as hitherto it was by the Imperial Edicts; King *Charles* also of *Britain* sends some Forces under the conduct of *Marquesse Hamilton* into *Pomerania*. About this time the charge of the Imperial Army is taken from *Albert Duke of Fridland*, because the Catholick Princes did suspect him, and is conferred upon Count *Tilly*, who is made Generalissimo of all, both *Cæsarian* and confederate Armies; he presently views the Armies, reforms the Military discipline now grown loose, buyes up all kinde of provision, and furnisheth such places as he found weak with Men and Arms: the King sends some Regiments to *Gustavus Horne* for taking in of *Landsberg*, 30 hee marcheth himself with sixteen thousand to *Demmin*, and in his way takes upon surrender *New-Brandenburg*, with some Castles: *Treptovia* is forsaken by the Imperialists: *Malchin* is surrendered to the *Swedes*. About the midst of *February*, *Demmin* is besieged, seated in the confines of *Merchlenberg*; so is *Colberg* in *Pomerania*, and *Landsberg* in *Merchia*, all three at the same time by the Kings Forces: *Demmin* not being able to hold out, is surrendered by the Governour with the Castle, where was good store of ordnance and victuals; the Governour with the Garrison is permitted to march whither they will. About the end of *February*, *Colberg* yeeldeth, the Governour with nine companies of foot, and six of horse, have leave to 40 march away, but without their colours, to *Landsberg*; in *Colberg* was great store of Ammunition, but no victuals, so that the Garrison was forced by famine to yeeld; five dayes after the surrender, some Forces were coming with provision to relieve the Towne, these narrowly escaped from being taken by the *Swedes*: *Landsberg* held out the siege till the end of *April*. A strange thing fell out at *Rosstock*, for one *Varmeier* a Townsman killed *Hatzfield* the Governour with a blow of an axe in the neck, affirming he was induced thereto by an Angel; neither would he acknowledge any fault he had done in this, though he was tortured with divers torments to death.

Count *Tilly*, to retaliate these losses, takes *New-Brandenburg* by storm, 50 and puts the Garrison to the sword; he takes *Kniphus* the Governour with his wife and daughters prisoners; in the very Church was the Consul with the Townsmen murdered, nine Colours were taken, the Town exposed to plunder, and then forsaken; he lost in this siege and storm about two thousand of his men: thence *Tilly* returns to *Magdeburg*, because hee could

*An. Christi.* could not set upon the King being intrenched; in his march he lost some of his men by the Swedish horse, which took *Liebenwald* and *New-Brandenburg* disarmed by the *Tillians*; the *Magdeburgers* in *Tillys* absence had made some excursions, and furnished their City with Arms and Victuals; but when he returned about the end of *March*, they were quickly driven out of their works which they had made without the Town, therefore finding they were not strong enough to oppose *Tillys* forces, they set fire on *Sudenburg*; and the new City, which were their Suburbs; mean while the Swedish King besiegeth *Francosfurt* upon the river *Viadrus* whose Suburbs also the Garrison 10 burned down, but the King unexpectedly taketh the City by force upon *Palm Sunday*, where he found much provision and wealth, two thousand Imperialists were here killed, and eight hundred taken prisoners, *Scannburg*, *Tieffenbach*, and *Monticaculus* the chief Commanders, with the common souldiers fled; the City was so miserably plundered, that the enemy was forry to see it, who with much ado made the souldiers give off; seventeen dayes after, *Landsberg* is surrendered to the King, five and twenty companies of foot, and twelve of horse, went out with their colours flying; *Silesta* is now laid open to the Swedish souldiery; *Old-Brandenburg* about the end of 20 *April* is forsaken by the *Tillians*, the Elector of *Brandenburg* is summoned by the King to deliver up the two chief holds of his Electorate *Gustrinum* and *Spandavia* to the *Swede*, who promiseth to restore them as soon as he shall raise the siege from *Magdeburg*; to this the Elector would not assent till he saw *Berlinum* besieged, and then he was content to give up *Spandavia*, where the Garrison took the oath of Allegiance to both Princes; the Elector of *Saxony* *John George* is desired by the King to let him have free passage through his Country, and to joyn his forces with him in raising the siege from *Magdeburg*; the Elector would yeeld to neith demand, fearing to make his Country the seat of warre, which hitherto had been quiet, nor did he think it either safe or warrantable to maintain the *Magdeburgers* against the Emperor; 30 though they complained of the wrongs offered them by *Cæsar*, notwithstanding they shewed all obedience to him; therefore now they were in hope to be assisted by their own Prince, and the Swedish victorious Army; but their security deceived them, for whilst the King was doubting whether he might safely relieve the *Magdeburgers* or not, Count *Pappenhem* comes with more forces to the siege; if the Town had foreseen this, they would have strengthened their Garrison with more men, for now they had not above two thousand foot that were sound, and two hundred and fifty horse; yet they made divers sallies out of the Town, even three in one day, to the losse of the besiegers: *Tilly* summons them to surrender, or else they should 40 look for no mercy; their answer was that they would submit if so be they could have liberty to send to the Electors and confederate Cities for their advice herein; mean while the Imperialists draw nearer with their works to the City, and prepare to storm; at the first the Townsmen and Garrison stoutly beat them off, but their power failing them, they could make no use of their great Guns: the *Cæsarians* on the tenth of *May*, the fatal day of that City, perceiving the works towards the new Town, low; and the watch asleep, who did not think the enemy would have stormed so great a Town, that day being already past seven of the clock, resolve to fall first on there; then was the Bishop with *Falkenberg* and the Senate in the Council-house, 50 conferring about sending of a Trumpeter to *Tilly*, who proffered to save the Town, and procure their pardon, if they would deliver up their Bishop and Ministers to him, and receive thirty Roman Catholick Doctors; pay a hundred thousand Dollers, and admit a garrison; but this was rejected, whereupon *Pappenhem* with his forces falls upon that part of the works which was weakest; his word was *Jesus Maria*, their mark or badge, a white-ribbon about the arm; in the very first encounter, *Falkenberg* who came to make good

*An. Christi.* good that place which *Pappenheim* had assaulted, was slain, and so that part of the City is lost; the Garrison and Townsmen fought stoutly so long as they were able, till the *Cæsarians* to quiet them set the City on fire, which proved as prejudicial to the besiegers, who thereby lost their plunder, as to the Townsmen who lost their habitations; for the fire was so violent by reason of the wind, that this great and stately City was in the space of four and twenty hours burnt down to the ground, in which six Parish Churches were consumed in the same fire, all the Churches, streets and high-ways were covered with dead bodies, in the Cathedral of *S. Catherine* were found three and fifty murdered, the Governour being wounded in his head and thigh is carried away 10 prisoner, with most of the chief men and Ministers; the barbarous souldier spares neither sex nor age, abusing even young girls to death; yet the High-church, and the Monastery of *S. Mary* were saved from the fire, and so were 139. houses, but all the inhabitants were either slain or taken, the number of the slain is not certain, but it is reported that two and twenty thousand were flung into the river *Albis* which flows by the City; six hundred Townsmen were chained, though they were able to ransom themselves; some made an escape by a sudden fire in the enemies camp, a great many being stript of all were forced to beg, most of the Ministers were preserved and provided for 20 by their Fellow-protestants; the destruction of this City (which had now stood, and been a Metropolitan about seven hundred years since *Otho* the first, who fenced, adorned, and honoured it with this dignity) was prefiged by a Throne set in *Cassiopea*, by sounds in the air like the discharging of Ordnance, by strange obscurity in the air, by the fall of divers Towers, and by a monstrous birth which was taken out of the dead mother, the child's head was covered with a peece of flesh like a helmet which could be easily taken off, he was cloathed with a skin like a souldiers jacquet, with round kernels like bullets in it, he had also boots on his legs: God by this would let us see, that as the birth of this Monster was the death of the mother, so that Town or Country which breeds armed souldiers within 30 them, are at last destroyed by them.

## CHAP. X.

The prosecution of the Swedish History under Gustavus, from 1631. till the midst of 1633.

THE same day that *Magdeburg* was buried in her own ashes, the *Cæsarians* burnt down the bridge of *Deßavia*, with the Fort joyning to it, to hinder the *Swedes* passage that way, who were much perplexed for the estate of that City which they neglected to relieve, the King being busied upon a Treaty with the two Electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, whose confederacie he desired; a great part of his Army took up their quarters about *Crosna* and *Glogove* in *Silesia*: *Gustavus Horn* was raising new forces in *Marchia*, therefore *Spandavia* is again demanded by the King, *Custrinum* is delivered up to him; upon *Marchia* is laid a monthly tax of thirty Dollers towards the charges of the war. In June news was brought to the King that *Ghryphismald* which he meant to take in, was already subdued by the Swedish horse who were riding up and down the Country, about the Town, for fodder: *Perusius* 50 the governour, Knight of the Golden-fleece, hearing some Musquets shot off, runs out to know what the matter was, and was suddenly killed with a Musquet bullet, not thinking he had been so near the enemy; upon this the Town is presently besieged by the *Swedes*, who send a summons to the Townsmen and Garrison to surrender; the Souldiers within, though they had lost their Captain, yet venture to fall out upon the enemy, but are beat back again into

into the Town, who despairing of any succour, resolve to preserve themselves; therefore June 16. they deliver up the Town to the *Swedes*, who found in it great store of military provision. So now the Imperialists are quite driven out of *Pomerania*. *An. Christi.*

This Country being now secured, the *Swedes* march into *Marchia*, where they seize upon *Werben*, a place fit for their encamping, and for all sorts of provision. The Imperialists under *Gotzius* invade the Town *Cobus* in the dark which they take and plunder. *Tilly's* Army quarters at *Mansfield*, and plunders the neighbour country of *Thuringia*. The Elector of *Saxony* calls a Diet at *Lippick*, of both the Saxons, *Marchia*, *Hassia*, *Franconia*, & *Suevia*, where-in was proposed, what was the best and next expedient for restoring peace into Germany: There were present the Legats of the two Dukes of *Megapolis*, *Adolphus Frederick*, and *John Albertus*, whom *Cæsar* had driven out of their ancient possessions; these raised an Army, and being assisted by the *Swedes*, resolve to retake their possessions again. *Albert* took in *Severin*, *Adolphus Frederick Butzovium* a Bishops seat being forsaken by the *VValensteinians* who as they were going to *Rostock* with their booty, were stript of all. The King himself did accompany the two Dukes his kinsmen, in great state to *Gustrovia*, where he gave them possession of their ancient inheritance: thence he marcheth to 20 *Magdenberg*, and by the way seileth on *Tangermund*; then he pitches his Camp neer *Werben*, and gives charge to some Commanders to take in *Haverberg*, and resolves to be revenged for the losse of *Magdenberg*, with all the strength he hath; in the mean time, Queen *Maria Elenor* arrives at *Wolgast* with some young souldiers out of *Swethland*; *Marquess Hambleton*, and *Alexander Lesly* bring eight hundred Scots and English into *Pomerania*. At *Lippick* it is ordered that the Imperial Army, which made but a prey of Germany, should not be admitted within any of their Towns, Castles, or Towers; and withall, they resolve not to part with any of the Church-lands now in possession of the Evangelical Princes, because the Pope claimed them not by way of justice and law, 30 but by violence and the sword; besides, it was a businesse to be decided in a full Diet of Princes, and not by the Emperour alone; therefore, *VWilliam Lantgrave* of *Hassia* raiseth an forces for the defence of his borders: to hinder this levy, *Tilly* hastneth to *Erford*, which he so affrighted, that the town presently openeth the gates to him; then he draws neerer to the borders of *Cattie* to hinder the raising of the *Hassians*; but *Pappenheim*, who did yet remain about *Magdeburg*, got him to divert his army elsewhere, for the King had marched over old *Marchia*, where he took divers Towns, and was come to *VVolmarstadt* to seize upon the strengths of *Magdenburg*, but that he was kept off by a greater power.

*Tilly* perceiving there was no other way but with his whole Army to fall upon the King, sends a part of his Horse before, he follows after with the body of his Army; *Gustavus* having intelligence of his march, and not being able to encounter with so vast an Army, intends to weaken some part of it; therefore he sends *Rheingravins*, with some other Cornets of Horse, who fell upon and discomfited three Imperial regiments, and return with rich booty; but *Charles Ludovick* the Palatine, who in this war served under the King, was shot, to the said Kings great grief. *Tilly*, to recover his losse, began to draw neer the Swedish Camp, but could not draw the King to fight; yet for three dayes together there was discharging of Ordnance, and divers sharp velitations: at last, 50 *Tilly* recedes with some losse. In *Mansfield*, *Eggo Furstenbergius* with his Italian forces joyns himself to *Tilly*: he compels *Suevia*, and *Franconia*, to renounce the League of *Lippick*, and to pay tribute to the Emperour. The Swedish Kings army is increased by the addition of these forces under *Horn* and *Tottus*: He gives two regiments to *William* the Lantgrave for *Hassia*, which was courted by the Imperialists to side with them. But to my purpose at *Franckfort* on the *Main* an assembly was held of both parties for an accommodation, which proved

*An. Christi.* proved fruitlesse. *Tilly* to encourage his drooping souldiers, falls upon the Duke of Saxony, whose assistance he demands, and requires also an abolition of the decrees of *Lipsick*; this being denied by the Duke, *Tilly* falls upon *Meresburg*, sets *Freiburg* on fire, and plunders *Mislinia* far and neer, to the undoing of the inhabitants. The Elector accuseth *Tilly* for these wrongs; shewing how he had violated the Imperial Laws: he commemorates also his good services to the Emperour, and manifest that he hath been faithfull to him hitherto in every thing that belonged to him as Emperour; who therefore ought not to do any thing contrary to justice and his oath, which if he doe, he shall not escape the hand of a revenging God; but when the Duke saw that this way he could not prevaile, he makes a firm league with the King of Sweden, and lets him enter his provinces; he openeth the gates *Witteberg* for him about the beginning of September: The Elector of *Brandeburg* having his Country exhausted with contributions and plunders, promiseth to aid him with all the provision and money he can raise; in this interim *Tilly* loses no time, but encompasseth *Lipsick* waisting all the Country about it, and summons the City to open the gates to him; which returned answer, they could not without the consent of their Prince; whereupon *Tilly* prepares to storm; the Townsmen burn down their Suburbs, and make all things ready for defence: but the fresh example of *Magdeburgs* destruction, which was threatned to *Lipsick*, so terrified them, that they yielded; the publique Faith is given to preserve Religion and the Common wealth; new garrisons are put in the City and Castle, the Electoral garrison is discharged: But Fortune which hitherto fawned upon *Tilly*, begins now to frown, for the Saxon perceiving that he had lost a great part of his jurisdiction, held it needfull for him to fight; for he thought with himself that if Saxony, *Thuringia*, and *Misnia* should maintain three Armies all the Winter, they should be undone; he knew his cause was just, and resolves to rely on Gods Providence.

But the King thought it not safe to hazard upon one battel two electorats, nor to venture the new and raw souldiers of Saxony against the old and beaten Imperial Troops; therefore held it better to procrastinate: yet at last, being overcome by the Dukes importunity, prepares to fight, and first having solemnly called upon God in his prayer, he exhorts his Souldiers to piety and fortitude; his word was (God with us) his bage or mark, a green bough fastened in their Helms; he undertakes the leading of the right wing himself, the charge of left, he commit to the Duke; neer *Podelwitz* a Village, foure miles from *Lipsick*, is the place designed for the Battle; the Imperialists took the advantage of the ground, sun and wind, which the Sweds by degrees gained of them by wheeling about; the King mingled his Horse and Musketers so, that they galled the *Cesarians* and beat them off. The Swedish left Wing, consisting most of the new levied forces of Saxony, began to give ground, and to put *Tilly* in hope of victory; but they were opportunely aided by *Horns* foot, which lay in ambush in a little wood, that upon the encouragement of *Anrubem* the fight is renewed, and the *Cesarian* horse put to flight, so that in a short time, the whole Army was rooted: the night coming on, and the ayre being obscured with dust, and the smoak of powder, made the king forbear pursuing of the enemy, fearing least there might be some treachery or ambush, therefore resolves the next day to fight again; but when the morning came, they found the enemy was totally defeated, by his Ordinance, bag, and baggage left behinde, there were found about fifteen thousand slain body's; *Tilly* himself was wounded, both Armies were almost equall in number, in all sixty thousand; the most of *Tilly's* force were old souldiers. This victory was presaged by a white-Dove that lighted upon one of the Saxon colours: some report that before the fight, water was turned into blood at *Hall* and *Mersburg*; above one hundred Imperial Colours were taken; *Tilly* shot with a Bullet, which onely bruised his skin, but could not peirce it, being made impenetrable

*An. Christi.* penetrable, as the Chyrurgion thought, by diabolical art; he escaped, not without great pain of his bruise, to *Hamelia*. The King seized presently after this upon divers towns, and the Duke upon *Lipsick*, who gave publique thanks to God for recovering so soon again his lost territories: then it was agreed, that the King should march into upper Germany, the Duke into *Silefia* and *Bohemia*.

The King in his march takes in divers Towns and Castles, as *Sueinsfurt*, *Herbipols*, forsaken by the Bishop, with the Tower well furnished with all things; the garrison were all killed for resisting so long, but the women by the Kings Proclamation were preserved both from death and abuse: the Bishop of *Bamberg* out off fear, shakes of his catholique confederacy, and bindes himself by oath to the King, and to keep off plundering pays a great summe of money; divers other places also were taken by the Swedes and Hassians, most towns of *Francony* sware allegiance to the King, who permitted to the subjects liberty of Conscience. In November also *Hanovia* is taken in for the King by *Christopher Hanbaldus*. The *Cesarian* forces of lower Saxony are much dejected upon the report of the *Lipsick* victory; *Rosbach* is delivered up to the Megapolitans; there were five hundred horse, and fourteen foot companies, which made their peace, and marched away: *Vvismaria* held out a while, and made some sallies upon the Swedes; but at last, on St. Thomas day, *Gramminas* the governour was forced to surrender, who marched out with three thousand souldiers towards *Gryphiswald*, divers of which swear allegiance to the Swede. The Imperialists every where take their flight, supposing *Tilly* had been dead of his wounds, of whom there was no news a long time; at length it is reported, that he was recovered, and had raised a new Army. At *Rottenberg* another battel is fought, in which the Imperialists are again worsted; hereupon divers other towns submit to the Swedes; even *Frankfort*, famous for its Mart, and the Emperours Inauguration, opened her gates for the Swedish Army to passe. Upon the uniting of the *Hassian* forces, divers other places surrender, the Bishops of *Mentz* and *Vorms*, with *Anshelm*, *Casimire*, retire to *Colen*. About the 7 of December the King sends his army over the *Rhene*; five hundred of the first that got over, set upon fourteen troops of Spanish horse and chased them, which made the King thank God for the danger his men had escaped: Having passed the *Rhene*, he takes in *Oppenheim*; *Stenie* is forsok by the Spaniards, and *Vorms* by the *Lorrnois*. *Mentz* after a fierce storm for divers dayes is surrendered to the King, with the Tower and Fortifications, December 23. where he kept his Christmasse with great solemnity, and heard a Sermon in the Castle-Church: many other towns also shortly after the surrender of *Mentz*, submitted to the King, whose victorious Army over-run almost all Germany from the Baltick Sea to *Mentz* in one year; in which also fell out a great Earthquake in the kingdome of *Naples*, the eruption of *Vesuvius*, flinging great stones twenty miles off, and the ruine of the towers on the Jesuits Church in *Vienna* by the wind, even in the Emperours presence.

The next year, Ambassadors are sent to the Swedish king, from France, England, and *Ragotzius* the new Prince of *Transilvania*; the French Embassie was for a truce between the Swede and Maximilian Duke of *Bavaria*, with the Catholick confederats, which was granted; for these made shew, as if they meant to stand neuters; but Pope *Urban* was against this neutrality; therefore he raiseith great sums of money upon the Clergy of *Italy*, which he sent to the Emperour, and makes a league between the Elector of *Bavaria* and the German Prelats. What the English Embassie was, we know not, but shortly after *Frederick* the fifth, Palgrave, was furnished with Gold out of England, and Souldiers out of Holland for the recovering of his Patrimony; for which end, he joyns himself with *Gustavus*; *Ragotzius* had discovered a plot intended against him by the *Cesarians*, which made him fall off and to seek occasion of excursion upon *Hungary* and *Silefia*, if he could have found any aide from the confederate

*An. Christi.* federate Protestants. In *Bohemia*, the *Saxon Army* under *Arnhem* takes *Prague* and divers other Towns thereabout; the Elector himself repaires thither and sets up again the Protestant religion; the heads of those which were set upon the bridge at *Prague*, he caused to be taken down, and decently buried; the banished *Bohemians* return to their homes again, and great joy every where there was, but of short continuance; for *Albert Wallenstein* Duke of *Fridland*, whom the Emperour had laid aside upon the Petition of the confederate Catholics, is now made Generalissimo, and suddenly furnished with a great Army; *Jacobus Gallas* and Count *Sulzen* joyn their forces with him, waste and plunder all the Country about *Prague*, which caused great dearth and scarcity of Victuals: so sudden a fear seized on *Bohemia* and *Silesia*, that both Countries became a prey to the Imperialists, who could not for the Snow doe any great hurt in *Misnia*: the cold winter could not refrigerate the souldiers courage; the Swedish forces brak in upon *Alsatia*, the *Cæsarians* plunder the country about *Strasburg*, whom a party of Horse from the City defeated and plundered; the fear of the conquerour over-ran the Dukedome of *Wirttemberg*, and the Marquisat of *Bada*: the Imperialists are killed and chased every where; *Frankindal* in the Lower Palatinate is besieged, and sundry other places are taken by the Swedes.

In lower Saxony, the people rise against the Romanists. *John Frederick* storming that he should have the title of Archbishop of *Breme*, and all the revenues of his Diocese to be taken from him by the *Cæsarians*, raiseth some forces, falls upon *Verda* and *Burg* which he took, and shortly after he lost, and again recovered them; so miserably were those places tossed to and fro, like tennis-balls. *Pappenhem* also raiseth new forces, and takes in divers places. The ruins of *Magdeburg* are left to the Swedes, who place a garrison there: many parts of *Germany* are laid waste by the rapacious souldiers on both sides, many towns taken and retaken; A peace in the mean while is in agitation at *Torgave*, but to no purpose: the Duke of *Saxony*'s daughter is betrothed to *Christianus* 5. Prince of *Denmark*; her eldest sister was married to the Lantgrave of *Hessen*; 30 *Mary* the second, to the Duke of *Holfatia*: *Ulricus* brother to this *Christianus* the second, conducted a regiment to the assistance of the Electoral provinces. *Tilly* is now again recruited, and marcheth towards *Bavaria*. *Noriberg* had received within their gates five troopes of Protestants, *Ulm* also joyns with the Swede: at *Ausburg* *Tilly* is furnished with Ammunition, Victuals and Money, by which he is made able to rage with fire and sword upon *Northgavia*, and the higher Palatinate. *Horn* takes *Bamburg*, the Bishop escapes to *Bavaria*, thither *Tilly* marcheth: whereupon *Horn* withdraws his forces in the night, but not without some losse to the *Tillians*, and marcheth to *Sueinsfurt*, whither also the King comes with his whole Army, and is royally entertained at *Noriberg*: His coming hither made *Tilly* remove back to the upper Palatinate, wasting all the Countreys and Towns through which he marched. The King goeth to the *Danow*, and taketh by storm *Donaverd*; *Tilly* follows him at the heels, and takes the strong Tower *Raina* on the river *Lycus*, over which the King makes a bridge: the *Tillians* took possession of a wood hard by, whence they discharged their great Ordnance on the Swedes, to hinder their making of the bridge; but they were so intrenched, that they did more hurt then received, for in letting play their Cannon against the wood, so tore the Trees, that the boughs and splinters of them spoiled many of the enemy; so that *Tilly* received a hurt in the thigh, and *Altrmger* in the head; there- 50 fore in the night, they fle to *Newburg* and *Ingoldstad*, having lost one thousand men.

The King having finished the bridge, and transported his Army, sent a party to take possession of *Newburg*, forsaken by *Maximilian* of *Bavaria* and *Tilly*. Then summons *Ausburg* to open their gates, where were eighteen Companies of foot, and two of horse, placed there by *Cæsar* and the *Bavarian*, to keep under

*An. Christi.* under the Protestants, whom they had disarmed, and forced to leave off their publike exercises; the Citizens desire the King to propose honourable terms to the Garrison, otherways it was not in their power to force them, nor to open their gates to him; four dayes after, Articles being concluded between the King and the Garrison, they march away with bag and baggage, with their Arms and Colours flying: As soon as the King had entred, he removes all the Pontifician Magistrates, and commits the government of the City to the Protestants; having taken of them the oath of allegiance: from thence he marcheth towards *Ingoldstad*, where *Tilly* lay sick, and by the way 10 takes in some Towns: mean while the *Danes* and *Swedes* were like to break out into an open war, by reason of some insolencies committed by some Swedish souldiers in *Holfatia*, as well upon the Kings as the Dukes subjects; but the Swedish Commanders making it appear, that these wrongs were offered by some private souldiers without the knowledge of their Captains, or of the King, the former league between these two Crowns was renewed by their Ambassadors. In lower Saxony, *Tottus* the Kings Lieutenant there took in *Buxtehude*, and intended to fall upon *Stada*, but that he was hindered by *Pappenhem*, who with his flying Army over-runs all *Saxony* and *Westphalia*, with the Diocese of *Breme*, wasting all with fire and sword, who having received some 20 opposition and losse by *Tottus*, returns into higher *Germany*: *Tottus* is sent for by the King. *Arnhem* General of the Electoral Armies in higher *Germany*, was almost intrapped by *Wallenstein*, under pretence of making peace; for he had recovered *Prague* about the beginning of *May*, whence he dismissed the garrison with their swords by their sides, being two and twenty companies of foot, and two troops of horse, they marched to *Leutmeritz*, where the strength of the *Saxon Army* lay; but if *Arnhem* had not departed the sooner thence, he had been encompassed by Duke *Fridlands* Army, therefore he escapes over the bridge of *Leutmeritz* in the night, and comes to *Pirna*.

30 Whilst these doings were at *Albis*, there was much action upon the *Danow* between the Swedish King, and the Elector of *Bavaria*, who having left *Tilly* at *Ingoldstad*, cunningly encompasseth *Ratisbone*: he makes shew of mustering one of the Garrison troops without the gate; but whilst the Citizens were going to Church, that Garrison seized on the gate, and suddenly nine troops of horse enter the Town, who plundered the Townsmen of their best goods and money: the *Bavarian* afterward made this his chief seat; in the interim Count *Tilly* dieth at *Ingoldstad* of the wound he received at *Lycus*: the King begins to lay siege to *Ingoldstad*, but as he was viewing of the works, his white horse was shot under him; *Christopher Durlacenus*, a Marquess, was killed 40 with a bullet, and one of the Kings chief Commanders was mortally wounded, wherefore the *Swedes* held it best to give off their enterprize, so they march from thence to *Monachium*, the *Bavarians* chief seat, which with some other Towns submitted to the Swede; in *Monachium* were found a hundred and forty brass Ordnance, and other great Guns, in one of which were hid thirty thousand Crowns; the Country people were so enraged against the *Swedes*, that they cut off the noses and ears of divers straglers, and killed many of them; the Boors rise in great numbers and kill divers garrisons, but they were quickly suppressed by the souldiers, and their chief incendiaries put to death: but when the King understood that the *Ratisbonians* made divers 50 excursions, and had taken *Weissenburg*, he leaves *Bavaria*, and returns to *Donaverd*, into which he puts a strong garrison, the like he did in *Ausburg* and *Raina*. And now the Imperialists being strong, all *Germany* is in a flame; *Ossa* the Emperors Lieutenant rageth with fire and sword through *Alsatia*, some Towns he burns down to the ground; *spire* is taken, and plundered: *Oxenstern* at *Newstad* falls upon a party of the *Cæsarians*, from whom he took three colours and some part of their plunder; Duke *Fridland* having taken in *Egra* and



*An. Christi.* and *Ellenbog*, prepares to unite his forces with the *Bavarians*; *Pappenhem* having wasted the borders of *Hassia*, threatens *Thuringia*; *Strasburg* which now sided with the *Swedes*, sends to King *Gustavus* three troops of horse, and six hundred Musquetiers: the *Bavarian* having left a garrison in *Ratisbone*, marcheth with an hundred thirty four Cornets of horse, and eight and fifty companies of foot, which he joyned to the *Walestine* forces; this made the King, being now near *Noriberg*, to intrench, and to fend for all his dispersed forces; in the mean time *Tupatelius* one of the Swedish Colonels was intercepted by the *Wallasten* forces, who took him prisoner, and cut in peeces his whole Regiment, at which the King grieved exceedingly; at length in *July*, upon the drawing near of both Armies, divers skirmishes and light encounters were made, neither of the Commanders being willing to hazard the whole Army; *Fridland* endeavoured to keep off provision from the *Swedes*, but the Swedish Auxiliaries who were comming to joyn with their main body intercepted the *Cæsarian* provisions.

About the end of *July*, the *Cæsarians* had laid up great store of corn and other provision in *Freistad*, which when the King knew by a Captain whom he took prisoner, he sends *Tupatelius* lately dismissed by *Walestine* with some Dragoons thither, he breaking open the gates with petards, enters the town in the night, burnt all the corn, and drove away the cattle; the King comming to aid *Tupatelius* with more forces, makes an ambush for the *Cæsarians* who were comming to revenge their losses, out of which he suddenly fallies, and put the enemy to flight, having killed divers. About the midst of *August*, the King of *Sweden* was fifty thousand strong, so that they dared the *Cæsarians* who were entrenched; after the Armies had thundered three dayes together with their ordnance against each other, the *Wallestenians* began to march away; the King therefore *August* 24. falls upon the Imperialists, all that day they fought till the night parted them; of the Imperialists were slain a thousand, of the *Swedes* seven hundred; *Fridlands* own horse was shot under him: at last about the eight of *September*, *Gustavus* for want of victuals was forced to rise first and march away to *Nemstads*; at *Noriberg* were left three hundred horse and eight Regiments of foot: *Fridland* being out of hope to recover *Noriberg*, sets fire on the neighbouring villages, and marcheth to *Forcheim*, whose rear was set upon by the garrison of *Noriberg*.

Out of the Diocesse of *Trevers* issueth a new Army, which *Ossa* and *Monticululus* joyn to their own forces, with these they waste and spoil all the Country about, but they were resisted by *Horne*, who pursues them into upper *Alsatia*, where he took *Benfeld* and other places; the Duke of *Saxonies* forces had been sent away, some to *Silesia*, others to the Swedish camp: hereupon *Holkjrus* one of the *Cæsarian* commanders, with 8000. resolute men, falls with fire and sword upon *Saxony*, *Misnia* and *Naristi*, burning and plundering as far as *Dresda* the Dukes seat; he exacteth great sums of money from the Town of *Anneberg*, and puts a garrison in *Zuiccavia*; *Walstein* divides his Army, and sends the *Bavarian* forces into *Bavaria*, *Gallas* with a party is sent into *Bohemia*, and *Franconia* *Walstein* retains to himself; *Gallas* subdues all the places he went through to the Emperor, and wastes *Noricum*; *Walstein* takes in *Columbac* and *Coburg*, but the Castle held out for the Duke of *Saxony*: the King also divides his Army, a part whereof he sends to attend the motions of *Fridland*: *Reina* was delivered up to the *Bavarians* by *Mutsefall* the Swedish governour, wherefore by the Kings command he loseth his head, and the Town is retaken by the *Swedes* in *October*; *Bernhard* of *Vinaria* falls suddenly on the *Cæsarian* Croats, defeats them, and takes ten colours from them, which made *Fridland* change his resolution, who thought to break in upon *Thuringia*; the King cuts off the *Bavarian* Auxiliaries that were going to relieve *Laufena*, which at length *Kniphufius* took for the *Swede*: in *Saxony*, *Gallas* and *Holk* waste all, who take in *Freiberg* for the Emperor, the Citizens were forced

to

to pay 100000. Dollers to keep off the souldiers from plundering; and the Elector redeemed his Chappel and Tombs of his Ancestors from spoiling for eighty thousand Dollers. *Arnhem* subdues the lower *Alsatia* for the *Swedes*; *Fridland* doth the like in *Saxony* for the Emperor: *Lipsc*, *October* 22. is surrendered to *Holk*, the Inhabitants are disarmed and pay to the Emperor 50000. Dollers. *Voppelius* delivers up *Pleissenburg* to the *Cæsarians*, for which afterward he lost his head. Many other Towns, to avoid present ruine, submitted to the Imperial yoke in *Saxony*; which *Pappenhem* also threatens with fire and sword, being now returned from his fruitlesse expedition to *Ulricht*; the King perceiving that his confederate Duke of *Saxony* was in danger to lose all his Country, makes haste to relieve it before the two Armies of *Walstein* and *Pappenhem* were conjoynd.

The fatal battel was fought at *Lutzen* the 6. of *November*, after some light skirmishes, the next day as soon as the Sunne had dispersed the clouds, the King having called upon God; and refusing to eat any thing, leads out his Army, which the enemy encounters with great fury; the heat of the battel was about ten of the clock; the left wing of the *Cæsarian* Army began to give ground, which the King observing, presseth on them the more eagerly, and pursueth them so far in their flight, that he received divers wounds, of which he died immediately the eight and thirtieth year of his life, to the great grief of his Army, but to the encouragement of the Croats, who wheeling about the Kings victorious wing, fell upon the Swedish carriage, but were beat back with losse: *Bernhard* who had the charge of the left wing, behaved himself so bravely, that he put the enemy to flight: and now the battel seemed to be at an end; but *Pappenhem*, to his owne ruine, makes haste from *Hall*, rallies again the disordered and running *Cæsarian* Troops, with whom he joyns his owne forces, and begins a more furious conflict in the darke, then that which was fought by day-light, in which he lost his life honourably; the fight continued till eight of the clock, and then the *Cæsarians* gave ground, retreating to *Lipsc*, they left behinde them some part of their Ordnance and baggage; about nine thousand of both sides were killed, and two of the best souldiers of their time, King *Gustavus* and *Pappenhem*; the King presaged his own death, and wished his friends not to trust in him, whose breath was in his nostrils, but rather in *Christ Jesus*, who promised he would be with his Church to the end of the world.

Duke *Fridland* the next day after the battel left *Lipsc*, and being highly displeased that some of his officers had forsaken their colours, and plundered their fellow-souldiers, he afterward at *Prague* condemned them to death by a Council of war. *Holk* delivers up the City-keyes to the Senate of *Lipsc*, of which the Saxons, *Novem.* 10. took possession, being surrendered to them. The Kings Army, though their head was gone, yet resolve to prosecute the work, they take *Chemnitz*, *Pleissenburg* and *Zuiccavia*, under the command of *Bernhard*, *Kniphus* and *Horne*; the same *Horne* took also the Imperial City *Colmaria*, which had been taken five years before by the Imperialists, the Protestant Religion is there set up again; and their liberties confirmed by Articles. *Haggenove* admits a Swedish garrison. *Frankendale* is restored *Novem.* 26. to the *Palsgrave*, the Spanish garrison is thence transported to *Lucemberg*. *Frederick* the *Palsgrave*, having by this life at *Mentz*; *November* 19. hee left tenne Children behinde him, begot of the Lady *Elizabeth* daughter to King *James*; his brother *Ludovic Philip*, who had also lost his estate undertakes the administration of the Electorate lands: *Oxenstern* Chancelour of *Swethland*, is made Protector of that Kingdome, and of *Christiana* the Kings only daughter and heir, being now seven years old. About this time the Diocesse of *Colen*

Y y 2

which

*An. Christi.* which had been the sanctuary of the exiled Prelates, is now much molested by *William of Nassau*, and *Henry Baudis*, who took divers Towns there; a certain souldier being a prisoner in *St. Urbans Church*, sets fire to some barrels of Gunpowder there, which was the death of 300. persons; the Duke of *Luneburg* having an Army of 16000. falls suddenly upon the Imperialists, of which he takes 400. prisoners, the rest being above a 1000. he puts to flight, whom the *Swede* and *Saxons* pursue, killing and plundering many of them; *Anderac* is besieged by Count *Ifenburg*, and his *Cæsarian* forces, who were stoutly repulsed by *Rantzovius* the *Holstatian* governor, who sallied out three times upon them; at last *Baudis* coming with new supplies forced the Imperialists to raise their siege after they had made breaches in the walls by their ordnance, and were ready to enter the Town: *Hamelia* is besieged by *Luneburg*, but the Town had within it six foot companies, and two troops of horse, with all sort of provisions which made the siege longer then was expected; *William Landgrave of Haffia* defeats the *Cæsarians* that were coming to the relief of the Town, of these 7000. were killed, the rest fled, and *Hamelia* at length is taken. *Horn* this year did great service for the Crown of *Swede* by taking in divers Towns in *Germany*, but in *Alsatia* the Boors made another insurrection, in which divers souldiers were killed and tortured by them, but *Rheingravius* suppressed 4000. of them, and hanged up 130. At *Bibrac* were seen two 'swords in the Aire, the one was bloody, and the other fiery; so the year before in *Germany*, the Lakes were seen all bloody; in their bread, and on their trees blood was seen; a two-headed calf, and a two-headed childe were ingendered in *March*. *Raina* is by the treachery of the Townsmen delivered up to the *Bavarians* again. *Horns* and the *Vinarian* forces being joyned make up 28. thousand foot, and 12000. horse, with these they fall upon *Bavaria*, they defeat *John de Werds* horses, and take in divers Towns; mean while the *Cæsarian* and *Bavarian* forces do joyn near *Ratisbone*: *Fridland* with a great Army enters *Silesia*, the *Polonian* forces are overthrown by the *Swedes*: *Ulricus* the Danish Prince defeats 2000. *Cæsarian* horse, and takes *Braura* from them; the King of *Denmark*, and the new elected King of *Poland* *Vladislaus* 4. son to *Sigismund* labour much for a general peace in *Christendome*; fearing lest the Turk having defeated the Persian, should fall upon them; but the French and Protestant party in *Germany* would not hearken to any till the liberty of *Germany* should be restored; *Oxenstern* is made President of the Council of war: the French renew their league with the Swedish party. *Heidelberg* with the Castle is retaken by the Protestants. In *Swethland* the act is renewed for dis-inheriting *Sigismunds* heirs from that Crown, and the *Augustan* confession is again confirmed; the care of the young Queen is committed to the chief officers of that Kingdome, and the war against the *Cæsarians* is continued till a firm peace be concluded, for this purpose the taxes on the mills and houses are established; the Kings corps is sent home to be interred in his Ancestors tombe.

## CHAP. XI.

The Savoyan History from the year 1504. till the year 1580.

1504. Charles the third, the ninth Duke of Savoy, succeeded to his brother *Philbert*, he was son to Duke *Philip* the second: the first year of his government was accompanied with such a plague through all *Savoy*, that there wanted men to bury the dead, and Till the ground: the first ten years of this Duke, *Savoy* enjoyed much peace; till he made use of the French army against the *Switzers*, which had made excursions upon *Savoy*, and plundered some parts of the *Delphinat*: this army *Francis* the French king and Nephew to this Charles

*An. Christi.* *Charles* by his sister, had raised for recovering of the Dukedome of *Millan*; the *Switzers* were angry with *Charles* for permitting the French Army to passe thorough his Territories, and assisting them with necessaries, which favour the *Switzers* had denied them by the Duke, though they were beaten, and *Millan* surrendered; yet they still hated the Duke, storming that their Cities in *Savoy* and *Piemont* were open to the French, and shut against them; and that the Duke had furnished the French with Victuals and great Ordnance. *Francis* returning from *Millan*, walks on foot with all his train to *Camerinum* in performance of his Vow, and is magnificently entertained by the Duke in his house divers daies together, after many complements and thanks given by the king to his Uncle, he returns to *Lions*; but these courtesies were afterward forgotten by king *Francis*, when he sent against *Savoy* a great army, under *Philip Chabot* Admiral of France, who stript the Duke of a great part of his Dutchie, notwithstanding he had the help of the Emperour *Charles* 5. the cause of this quarrel proceeded from the claime which *Francis* laid to the Dutchie of *Savoy* by his mother, the daughter of *Margaret of Bourbon*, first wife to *Philip*; father of this Duke *Charles*; to his said mother *Francis* alledged the Dutchy belonged, and not to *Charles*, because she was the eldest; and upon the Articles of marriage between *Philip* their father, and the friends of *Margaret*, it was agreed, that without difference of sex, the children of their bodies should succeed. Whereupon, for ten years together, Ambassadors were sent to demand that Dutchy, which *Francis* said belonged to him in right of his mother, notwithstanding the woman was excluded by the Salique law among the *Savoyens*: at last, he desired so much of it as lay in France, on this side of the river of *Roban*, being given to his grandmother *Margaret of Bourbon*, in right of her marriage: He demands also *Bressa*, and forty years arrears, amounting to 180000 crowns with all the interest; besides, some part of *Piemont* as belonging to Province: he complains likewise that *Taurinum* and other towns beyond the *Po*, were annexed to the Dutchy of *Savoy*, during the heat of this war, and after the death of *Robert* king of *Sicily*, Count of Province, and Prince of *Piemont*; besides, he saith, that the county of *Nice*, and Haven of *Ville Franc*, did alwaies appertain to the county of Province, but now by the treachery of the inhabitants, under the power of *Savoy*; that divers places also of the Marquisat of *Salusses* were violently taken away from the Dolphin by the *Savoyen*: moreover, that the Duke had scornfully rejected the badge of *St. Michael*, sent to him by the French king, with the Captainship of 100 Couriziers, and a pension of twelve thousand crowns; and lastly, that in hatred of the French D. *Charles* had assisted the *Spaniard* and *Burgundian*, and had alwaies been in league with the Emperour *Charles* 5. and at that time too when he was unfortunately taken prisoner by him, at the battel of *Papia*: For these reasons, *Savoy* is made a prey to the French, who seise upon the high countries thereof; to the *Bernois* who invade the low and fruitfullest parts; and to *Charles* the Emperour, who takes possession of the chief Cities.

Others doe give these reasons, why *Francis* was so offended with D. *Charles*. 1. Because he pawned his Plate to assist *Charles* of *Burbon*, then a Rebel and enemy to the crown of France. 2. Because he preferred the counsels of his wife, a Lusitanian, and sister to *Charles* the fifts wife, before *Francis* his uncle. 3. For sending gratulatory letters to *Cæsar*, after his victory at *Papia*. 4. For endeavouring to break off the league between France and *Helvetia*. 5. Because he received the city of *Asta*, the French patrimony above a hundred years, in Italy: this *Cæsar* gave to the Duke, to keep out the French from ever entering again into Italy. 6. Because he would not part with the city *Nicea*, a Colony of the *Massilians* in Province, which the French had pawned to him for a sum of money, though the money was tendred by the King, who was not willing to part with that town, both because of its strength, harbour, and situation, as parting Italy from France. 7. Because upon intreaty he would not give way that

*An. Christi.* that the Pope should give the French king a meeting there. 8. For denying passage through his country to the King, when he was hastening to *Millan* to be revenged on the Duke of that place, for causing his Ambassador to be put to death.

For these causes the Duke so incensed the French king, that he ruined his country. His policie had been better (say some) to have held in with *France*, both by reason of its vicinity, of its power, and also of the nearness of blood between the King and Duke, then to hearken so much to the Emperor, and to be led away by him, who was too far off to do him either hurt or good. The *Switzers* also, upon the request of *Geneva*, threaten war against *Savoy*, if the Duke offer to trouble that city, which was in league with them. *Charles* having sent a crabbed answer to the *Switzers*, and perceiving what danger he was in, sends privately to *Charles* the Emperor, being then at *Panormum* after his victory at *Tunis*, for aid: but the matter was not carried so closely, as to conceal it from the French king, who was the more enraged against *D. Charles*, because he demanded of the Emperor some places in *Italy*, promising him in lieu thereof all that he possessed in *France* behind the *Alps*, with the city of *Geneva*, so that he might have easie access to the confederate countries. If this had succeeded, *France* had been undone, the Emperor having an entrance made for him: but the King a while took no notice of this, till he had answer from the Savoyan to his demands, which were, That he might have a free passage to *Millan*. This being denied, he claimed the Dutchy of *Savoy* as his due; and the rather, because he could not trust the Duke with such places, as might let in his enemies upon him when he pleased. Mean while, because the King suspected he should receive no good answer from the Duke, he makes ready a strong army under *Philip Chabotius* his Admiral; he first seized on the trans-alpin towns, then having passed the *Alps* he takes in some of the sub-alpin places. But the French victories had a check given them by the *Millanois*, who staid his progresse, otherwise *Vercelliz* and a great part of the subalpin territories had been brought under the French yoke; besides, *Philip* was stopt by *John* Cardinal of *Lorain*, whom the Emperor had sent with propositions of peace, and therefore wished *Philip* to go no further then the river *Duria*, and that he should not offer any act of hostility to hinder the peace, lest he incur the Emperors displeasure. *Philip* did as he was counselled, thinking the Emperor thereby would be the more tractable, and that he would not act any thing dishonorable to him: but a little while after, the war broke out again, and in a short time, by the valour of Count *Famus Paulinus*, *Francis* obtained almost all *Savoy*.

The French writers strive to excuse king *Francis* his invasion of *Savoy*, and to blame the Duke; but indeed, the kings reasons were but specious pretences, and the true reason was his unbridled desire of domination; otherwayes he would have preferred that nearness of blood with the Duke to any title; but indeed it seems he had none; for it's unlikely that either Duke *Philip* would have acted any thing against the Salique law, or that his people would have assented thereto, being carefully from the beginning observed by them; so that with much adoce would they suffer at any time the mother, during the nonage of the Duke, to rule that Dutchie: neither can Duke *Charles* be blamed for entertaining a league with the Emperor, considering his power and greatness, as also the many and long leagues between the Houses of *Burgundy* and *Savoy*, and that faithfull correspondency between the Empire and *Savoy*; besides, Duke *Charles* thought there needed no other league with king *Francis* then that which nature had already made, to wit, consanguinity. The loss therefore of *Savoy* cannot be imputed to the Dukes want of policy, or any negligence, but rather to that all-ruling Providence which hath prescribed certain periods of time to all powers and principalities, which are no lesse subject to change and mortality then the men themselves of which they are composed.

*An. Christi.* posed. And although King *Francis* was a good Prince, yet in this he was no good man, to invade and challenge anothers right; and much lesse could he be a good Christian, who would make a league with that great Antichrist, and call in the Turk upon Christendome, because he could not otherwayes be revenged on the Emperor; this was an act ill-beseeming the most Christian King.

Duke *Charles* made no resistance to the French forces, for indeed he could not, having exhausted all his treasury on the Genevan war; for that City took occasion to rebel upon this discord between *France* and *Savoy*, therefore the Duke did what he could to reduce them to obedience, which he could not because of *Berne* which took the Genevans part; besides the Duke relied on the Emperors power and authority, thinking the French would have submitted to what agreement he should make: the Emperor indeed was much incensed against the French, of whom he complained to the Pope in the assembly of the Cardinals, that *Francis* had invaded the Territories of a Prince joyned so nearly to the Empire by affinity, and under the protection of the Empire, yea the Empires Lieutenant; the hainousness of which act he aggravates, in that it was against the Kings own Uncle: having complained, he marcheth towards *France* with his Army, whence ensued a long war between the two great Monarchs of Christendome, to the great destruction of *Piemont*; the success of this war was various; at last the French King having recruited his Army, and raised the siege from *Taurinum* and *Pignerol*, a truce for three moneths is concluded, and after them for three moneths longer, which being expired, and all hopes of peace blasted, the war is renewed.

*Charles* the Emperor had called a Diet at *Ratisbone* (anciently *Augusta Tiberia*) for composing the differences of Religion; in this the Duke of *Savoy* complained of the wrongs done him by the French King without any ground: the French Ambassador there, answers by a writing, which caused great debate and different opinions among the Princes, so that nothing was concluded, whereupon the war (as is said) was renewed; mean while the Turkish fleet of 150 Gallies which the French king sent for, arrives into the harbour of *Marsiles*, under the conduct of *Hariaden Aenobarb* a notorious Pyrat; these having spent most part of the Summer in that harbour, upon the French kings desire, for whom *Solyman* had sent them, besiege *Nicea* a haven Town in *Province* both by sea and land; hither the Bishop of *Geneva* being driven out, translated his seat: this Town, after the great ordnance had battered down the walls and forts, fought stoutly against the Turks, whose standard they took, the standard-bearer being killed; but at last the Town is taken, plundered and burned, yet the Castle standing on a high cliffe, held out by the valour of *Paul Simeon* the governour thereof, and one of the Knights of *Rhodes*. *Alphonfus Gustavus* hearing that the Town was besieged, but not taken, (he was the Emperors Lieutenant in *Italy*, and Vice-roy of *Millan*) makes haste to relieve it, with him were joyned *D. Charles* his forces, these seeing the Town destroyed, relieve the Castle with all necessaries for a long siege, commending the valour of *Simeon* and the souldiers that held out, and preserved the Townsmen; *Aenobarb* now out of all hope to gain the Castle, returns to *Marsiles*: *Guastinus* mean while layeth siege to *Montevic* one of the chief sub-alpin Cities, whose defection from the Empire had drawn many others after it; at last after a long siege the Town yeelds, and shortly after 85 Castles submitted to the Imperial yoke.

*Aenobarb* sends out of the Port of *Tholon* (of old *Tarenta*, which is towards *Marsiles*) two passage-Barks to *Solyman* at *Constantinople* laden with captives, among which were divers boyes and handsome maids; these had been perpetual slaves to the Turk and Devil, had not *Garcias Toletanus* the Vice-roy of *Naples* his son with some Gallies fallen upon the Turkish convoy, which he overcame; and so rescued the two Barks; these he sent home with a strong convoy, and so *Solyman* came short of this booty, as also of the rich presents which *Aenobarb* had appointed

*An. Christi.* appointed for him, all which were taken by *Garcias*: About this time *Luxemburg* which *Charles D. of Orleans*, and son to King *Francis* had taken two years before, was retaken by the *Casarians*, with divers other Towns. The French lay siege to *Carigna* which *Gnaſtus* endeavoured to raise; a hot skirmish lasted an hour, in which the *Marquels* was worsted, and hardly escaped with his life; in this fight 9000. were slain, and almost 2000. were taken; the Town being tired out with continual duty and famine, at last surrenders. The same year 1544. *Cesar* calls a Diet at *Spire*, thither King *Francis* sends his Ambassadors with some instructions in Print, but they were not permitted to enter; and withall *Francis* is declared an enemy to the Empire, for invading the Duke of *Savoy's* 10 Country, and for calling in the *Turks* upon Christendome, who had taken from the *Savoyan* the Town and haven of *Nicea* or *Nissa*, therefore they order that war be denounced against him; and that the Duke be restored to all his goods and estate: An act also passed for six months pay towards the maintenance of *Cesar's* Army, consisting of 24000. foot and 4000. horse: All French soldiers are banished out of *Germany*, and punishment threatened against those that shall harbour or relieve any: Thus a great Army being raised, the Emperor invades *France* on the one side, and the *English* on the others; many Towns are taken, much blood shed, and a great fear at *Paris*, but an unexpected peace is concluded; yet some years after the war was renewed, some Towns are taken 20 by the French in *Piemont*, but they are forced to forsake *Verbella* after they had taken it, upon the report of *Cesar's* Army that was marching thither: At last Duke *Charles* ended his troubles, which he bore with singular patience, by departing out of this turbulent life into a more peaceable and calm, and was buried at *Vercella*.

1554. To Duke *Charles* succeeded his son *Emanuel Philbert*: he was bred from his childhood in the Court of *Charles 5. Emperor*, who loved him exceedingly for his eminent parts, and made him Captain of his Life-guard, consisting of 4000. horse: afterward when the Emperor *Charles* transferred all his Kingdoms and power upon his son *Philip*, the same *Emanuel* was by *Philip* made 30 governour of the Low-countries, in which office he so behaved himself for the time he was in it, which was four years, till he returned to his own dominion, that he left behind him a good name; he bare his fathers losses so patiently, that God at last restored him to his inheritance: King *Philip* made him Generalissimo of his whole forces, by whose valour he obtained that memorable victory over the French at *S. Quintin*, and withall took the City it self. Two years after, peace being made between king *Philip* and king *Henry* of *France*, *Emanuel* was restored to his full estate, and withall married with *Margaret* *Henries* sister, but the French retained a while in their hands *Turin*, *Villanova*, *Aſten*, *Gmiefse* and *Chivali*, which at last he demands by his Legats from King 40 *Charles 9. of France*, who succeeded his brother *Francis*; but the French loth to part with them, put off the Duke with long delays and excuses, alleading that *Nicea* and *Villafranca*, with their dependances, were anciently annexed to the County of *Province*, and subject alwayes to the Counts of *Province*, and that Queen *Joan* Neece to *Robert* king of *Naples* and Earl of *Province*, and after her *Lewis* the first Duke of *Amdes* whom she had made her heir, did possess these now when the houses of *Amdes* and *Arragon* fell at variance for the kingdom of *Naples*; the *Savoyan* upon this took occasion to seize on *Nicea* and *Villafranca*, having no title to them, and would never since that time be induced to part with them; but the French kings have right to them by the last will of *Charles* 50 Duke of *Amdes*, Earl of *Province*, and king of *Naples*, the last of that family: This *Charles* bequeaths his whole estate to *Lewis 11. of France*, and to his son *Charles*, whom with all the succeeding kings of *France* he makes his heirs; therefore the *Savoyan* must part with these places to the French, before he can have possession of the Towns which the king holds from him; so likewise the Principality of *Piemont* did of old belong to *Province*, and was possessed by the

the above named *Q. Ioan*. The French also prove the County of *Aſten* belongs to them, because *John Galeacius* Viscount of *Atillan* gave it in Dowry with his daughter *Valentine*, when she married with *Lewis D. of Orleans*, great grandfather to *K. Charles*; this County *Charles 5. Emperor* injuriously seized upon, and the *Savoyen* against all right hath hitherto enjoyed it; they shew also that there have been many debates between the French and *Savoyen*, about the Marquisat of *Salusses*, that the Counties of *Geneva* and *Foucignium* depend upon the Delphinat, and are held in fee of the French, therefore the *Savoyen* ought to do homage to *K. Charles* for them, as his ancestors had done heretofore. Lastly, the 10 French Ambassadors shew, that whereas *Philip* of *Savoy* having married with *Margaret of Burbon*, and that *Ludovica* mother to *K. Francis* was the daughter of this *Margaret*, and that it was agreed upon articles of marriage, that the children of *Philip* and *Margaret* should have shares in their estate; that therefore the French king had reason to lay claim to some parts of *Savoy*.

These and other reasons were alledged why the French king might retain these controverted towns; yet for quietnesse sake, because *France* then had many enemies, both intestine and forraign, King *Francis* the second brother to King *Charles* sends to *Burdillon* Governour of *Piemont* to deliver these towns to the *Savoyen*, conditionally that he will part with *Savillianum*, and *Pignerol* with 20 the adjacent Abbey *Burdillonius*; upon this he calls together the chief Captains and Governours of those places, acquainting them with the kings pleasure, it was at last agreed, not to obey presently the kings command, but to stay for further order, seeing he was as yet under age, not fit to meddle with the affaires of the kingdom, and that this was a matter of great concernment, chiefly seeing it was agreed upon in the last meeting at *Lions* between the Kings and Dukes Ambassadors, that *Nicea* with the tower and subjacent places should be restored to the King, and that *Fossanum* with the adjacent places, as likewise the County of *Austen*, and whatsoever by right of inheritance belonged to *Francis* the first's mother, likewise the Marquisat of *Salusses*, and all 30 places appertaining thereto, which the *Savoyen* heretofore took away injuriously from the Earls of *Province*, whilst they were employed in the holy war; all these they held fit should be restored to the King. As for *Turin*, when the inhabitants saw themselves forsaken by *D. Charles*, they of their own accord submitted to the French king *Francis*, petitioning earnestly they might hereafter be under the protection of *France*, which was assented to by king *Francis*: Upon these considerations, *Burdillon* thought it fit to acquaint king *Charles* his mother, the king of *Navar* then Lieutenant over all *France*, the Princes of the Blood, the Constables, the Marshals, and Chancellor, and the kings Counsellors with these passages, And humbly beseecheth them that 40 the kings Patent might be mended, and all their names added to it, that the blame may not lie on him, if hereafter any thing should fall out amisse; withall he desires, that what shall be concluded by them concerning this business, may be confirmed also by all the Parliaments of *France*, chiefly that of *Paris*: This was the sum of his Petition, which to most of the kings Council seemed unreasonable, seeing the restitution of those controverted Places to the *Savoyen* was agreed upon at the last meeting of the Spanish and French Ambassadors at *Lions*: therefore the French king had sent an expresse Mandate for their restitution; and to this purpose, *Margaret* king *Charles* his Aunt was married to *Emanuel Philbert* Duke of *Savoy*, by which marriage they have children 50 to inherit these lands. Therefore the opinion of the Council was, that restitution should be presently made to the Duke without any further delays; for this cause a new Order is sent, which confirmed the former, shewing withall that what was concluded by the Council of State, alwayes attending on the king, was not to be ratified or questioned by any Parliament of *France*, seeing by the custom of that kingdom, the kings Council is of greater dignity and authority then any French parliament.

An. Christi.

The king to satisfie *Burdillon*, caused the king of *Navar* and the rest of the Senators to put their Hands and Seals to the kings order, though without president or custome; he is commanded therefore presently to restore the controverted places, conditionally that the king be put in possession by the Duke of the places, agreed on in the last conference at *Lions*, to wit, *Savillan*, *Petrousie*, *Pyne-rol*, and *Ginoll*; but the two former were restored by *Henry 3.* at *Turin*, where he was magnificently entertained by the *D. Emanuel* in his journey from *Poland*, when he was comming to receive the Crown of *France*, his brother *Charls* being dead; this he gave as a gift to his Aunt, the Dukes wife, and her son *Charls*. About six years after, *Emanuel Philbert* departed this life at *Turin*, whose body 10 was buried at *Vercelles*, in his fathers tomb.

1574.

To him succeeded his son *Charls 4.* surnamed *Emanuel*, he was born the 61. year of this Century, and in the 80. year succeeded. In the 8 year of his government, he invades and takes the towns of *Carmaniola* and *Salustium*, which were injuriously detained by the *French* from him; for in the conference at *Lions* the *French* King promised the *Spainard*, that the *Savoien* should have restitution of all places taken from him by the *French* in the last war between them, which lasted 23 years, except some towns, among which were these two now named; these the king would retain till *Margaret* should bring forth children to her husband, and then would restore them: But he did not, though often solicited 20 after the birth of *D. Charls 3.* Wherefore he takes them by force, being thereunto animated by *Philip 2.* of *Spain* his father in law; and finding a fit opportunity thereto by reason of the distraction of *France*, by their civil wars.

## CHAP. XII.

The History of Hungary from the beginning till the year 1532.

**T**He *Huns* a people of *Scythia*, transported themselves into this part of 30 *Pannonia*, which from them is called *Hungary*; it was inhabited by the *Goths*, who by the *Huns* were driven out thence: Many of the *Ostrogoths* joyned with the *Huns*, and so made up one Nation: the *Vestrogoths* went into *Myfia* and *Thracia*, by the consent of *Valence* the Emperour, conditionally that they should defend the borders of the Empire from the *Huns*; but the covetousness and negligence of the Roman Governours gave occasion both to *Goths* and *Huns* to invade the Empire, so that after divers battels, the Romans were forced to let the *Huns* enjoy all *Pannonia* quietly, where as soon as they were settled, they chose themselves a King, *Attila* by name, who much molested the Romans: in his absence he left his brother *Buda* to govern his king- 40 dome, whom after his return from the wars of *Myfia*, *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Illyricum*, he caused to be strangled, upon suspicion that he affected the kingdom. After this, he invaderth *Germany* and *France*, with a numerous Army, spoiling all before him with fire and sword, but was met and overthrown by *Aetius*, in this battel 180000 *Huns* were slain, *Attila* fled by night into his Camp, commanding those that were about him to burn him, if the enemy should obtain the Camp, because he would not fall into their hands alive: But when he saw the enemy was retreated, he falls furiously upon all the neighbouring coun- 50 tries, sparing neither sex nor age; then he goeth to *Sicambria*, now called *Buda*, where he gave himself to his delights; but he could not be long without action: therefore aiming at the Empire of the world, he invades *Italy* with a huge Army, which struck such a terrour there, that after he had taken *Aquileia* after three years siege, many out of all parts of *Italy* fled to the Islands of the *Adriatick* sea, where they built them a City, now the Queen of the Sea: many other Cities of *Italy* submitted to him; he abstained from *Rome* upon the in- treaty

An. Christi.

treaty of Pope *Leo*. Being returned to *Pannonia*, he died of an Apoplexie, and sudden eruption of blood. After his death, his children striving for his Dominions, lost all: so that the *Goths* seized upon *Pannonia*, whose power after this grew so great, that they had got almost the whole Empire of *Italy*. *Odoacer* the Gothish king made *Augustulus* resigne the Empire; so that he, and eight Gothish kings that succeeded to him, enjoyed the Western Empire with *Pannonia*, whom the *Lombards* drove out of *Pannonia* first, then out of *Italy*: These being wholly addicted to *Italy*, left *Pannonia* to the remainder of the *Huns*, conditionally, that if their affairs should not succeed in *Italy*, they might be received again into *Pannonia*; they under their King *Albonius* erected a kingdome 10 in *Italy*. The *Huns* make eruptions upon divers parts of *Germany*, with great losse to both Countries.

In this mean time, two hundred and sixteen thousand *Scythians* breake in upon *Pannonia* through *Muscovia* and *Sarmatia*. In *Dacia*, *Almus* descended of *Attila*, did reign: to him being slain succeeded *Arpadius*, who sends to *Suates* then Prince of *Sarmatia*, a horse richly trapped, and a request, that he would spare some of his waste lands to his people, who wanted ground; *Suates* at first 20 assented, but hearing of the rapacity and multitude of that people, refused; whereupon he raiseth an Army: but the strangers challenging that land as due to them, and bought by the horse that was sent, march out against *Suates*, whom they defeated and drove into the *Danow*, where he was drowned. *Arpadius* seizeth on the Country, and divides it among his Captains: these being settled, and the *Stythian* yoke cast off, they call themselves *Hungarians*, and had divers wars with the *Polonians*, *Bohemians*, and *Moravians*, *Charls* the great being molested by the *Hungarians* invades their Country, and by his son *Pipin* drives them out of all the higher *Hungary*. *Gaba* their King, at *Buda*, in the midst of his jollity and pleasures is taken and imprisoned, where he killed him- 30 self. *Charls* causeth the idols of *Mars* and *Hercules*, there to be destroyed, and *Christ* to be preached; he disarmed the people, dismantled the towns, and laid heavy taxes on them. When *Charls* was dead *Lindentus* a potent and factious man, endeavoured to shake off the yoke, and to restore *Hungary* to its ancient liberty; therefore *Lewis* the Pious, to whom *Hungary* and the adjacent Coun- tries were bequeathed by his fathers Will, raiseth an Army against him; *Lindentus* marcheth with his forces, having wasted *Carinthia*, *Dalmatia*, and *Bava- 40 ria*: but he was defeated and driven to the mountains by *Lewis*; to whom at last he submitted, and was pardoned. After this, the *Hungarians* were quiet for some years; but they break out again, invade *Italy*, and made *Berengarius* who came against them, to buy his peace. After them the *Sarazens* fall upon *Italy*, whom *Albert* Duke of *Etruria* defeated; but being slighted for his good 50 service, he calls the *Hungarians* again into *Italy*, which they miserably afflicted; and made *Berengarius* tributary the second time; thence they fell upon *Ger- many*, and having defeated the German forces, they plunder *Bavaria* and *Franconia*; the havock and waste they made in *Germany*, broke the heart of *Lewis* the Emperour: *Conradus* his successor became tributary to *Hungary*; *Henry* his successor denied to pay this tribute, wherefore they lay waste many parts of *Germany*; but at last they are overthrown, and their Cap- tain taken, whose life they would have redeemed, but could not. Then a peace of nine years is agreed on; but before these were expired, they demand their tribute of the Emperour, who instead thereof sent them a lame and 50 mangie Dog: they to be revenged, send three hundred thousand men, whose cruelty in *Germany* was unspeakable; at length *Henry* defeats them, more hundred & fifty thousand are slain, & fifty thousand of their taken prisoners: thus *Germany* rested a while; then they return into *Italy*, and are quieted by a silver sop from *Berengarius 3.* *Toxis* their K. not forgetful of their overthrow in *Ger- many*, & hearing that *Henry* was dead, resolves to fall upon *Saxony*, but *Otho* the Emperour kept them out thence: some years after, when *Otho* was distracted with



*An. Christi.* civil wars, *Toxis* invades *Germany* in divers places; but when the Princes were reconciled, *Otho* raiseth a great army, and overtakes the *Hungarians* laden with spoile near *Ausburg*, where a cruel battel is fought; and the Hungarian army quite routed, multitudes of them were drowned in the river, some that had escaped were burned in the houses where they hid themselves; king *Toxis* is taken with four other Princes, who all afterwards lost their heads.

969. The kings of *Hungary*, after they received the Christian faith, were these: *Gyisca*, who was baptized by *Adolbert* Bishop of *Prague*; *Steven* his son was baptized by the same Bishop; and afterward canonized; the Emperor *Henry* married his sister to this *Steven*, and so all *Hungary* became Christian. This king lived a holy life; he built a fair Church on the hill *Strigon*, and endowed it; he erected also the Monastery of *S. Martin*, and another goodly Church, the burying place of the *Polonian* kings, with divers other monuments of his piety; he was buried in his temple at *Strigon*. To him succeeded his sisters son *Peter*, who for his tyranny is deposed. His successor was *Abba*, who having reigned three years, was deposed for his tyranny, and *Peter* restored again; in his time *Hungary* began to fall off from Christianity; he reigned five years and six moneths. *Andrew* K. *Stevens* kinsman set up again the Christian faith; he had two sons, *Solomon* and *David*; he caused *Solomon* to be crowned at five years old, which occasioned a war between *Andrew* and his brother *Bela*, in 1047. which *Andrew* is killed, and buried in the monastery of *S. Amian*, which he built himself. *Bela* his brother succeeded, who had 3 sons, *Geicza*, *Ladislaws*, and *Lampertus*. He was the first there that used silver-coyn, weights and measures, and set prices upon wares; he built a Monastery in *Zewkzare*, in which he was buried; he defeated *Henry* the Emperors forces, which were sent to aid his brother; he died in the year 1065. *Solomon* K. *Andrews* son succeeded, but is driven out of the kingdom by *Geicza* and *Ladislaws* the sons of *Bela*, therefore he lived an Eremitical life in *Istria*, where he died. *Geicza* *Bela's* eldest son succeeded; in his time *Hungary* was visited with a great famine. His successor was his brother *Ladislaws*, called the Saint, for his innocencie; he added *Dalmatia* and *Croatia* to *Hungary*; he had many wars with the *Scythians*; he died childlesse. *Colomannus* *Geicza's* son succeeded; he was first a Bishop, and while he was king a cruel tyrant, he put out the eyes both of his brother and his brothers son, his brother *Almus* afterward was by him murdered in the church; he had two sons, *Ladislaws* and *Steven* who succeeded to his father, being as yet young; he was called the *Lightning* by his subjects, because his actions were sudden and rash; having no children, and weary of government, he betook himself to a Monastery, where he died.
- Bela* 2. called the blind, because *Colmannus* had blinded both him and his father *Almus*, succeeded; he was a good, though a blind King: he had four sons: He overthrew and put to flight *Colmannus* his bastard, who had raised forces against him: He died an. 1141. and was buried at *Alba regalis* or *Stulneissenburg*, the place where the Hungarian kings are usually crowned and buried. His son *Geicza* 2. succeeded: he suppressed the *Saxons*, *Austrians*, and *Bavarians*, who had invaded *Hungary*; he was a pious Prince, and built divers Churches, leaving four sons behind him; he died an. 1161. his eldest son *Steven* 3. succeeded; he had wars with the *Venetians* in *Dalmatia*, with *Emanuel* the Greek Emperor, and with *Ladislaws* and *Steven* his kinsmen, by whom at last he was expelled the kingdom; he died childlesse, and is buried at *Strigon*.
1173. His throne was usurped by *Ladislaws* 2. son to blind *Bela*; he reigned 6 months, and after him his brother *Ladislaws* 5 moneths; him K. *Steven* 3. overthrew, they died both the same year. *Bela* 3. brother to *Steven* 3. succeeded, who cleared *Hungary* of Highway-men; his successor was *Emericus* the eldest of his two sons, who died shortly after his father; he left one son, *Ladislaws* 3. who reigned but 6 moneths. *Andrew* 2<sup>d</sup> son to *Bela* 3. succeeded: he made an expedition into the Holy-land, where for his good service against the Sultan of

of *Babylon*, he was honored with the surname of *Jerusalem*: his wife *Gertruda*, of whom he had four sons, was wounded mortally by the *Palatine* or *Viceroy* of *Hungary*, for soliciting the *Palatines* wife to uncleanness with her brother. After K. *Andrews* return from *Jerusalem*, he married again; he bestowed on the Nobility of *Hungary* divers privileges. His son *Bela* 4. succeeded; in his time 500000 *Scythians* waste all *Russia* and *Podolia*; thence they fall upon *Hungary*, where a battel was fought, and the King with much ado escaped in a servile habit, many prime men of *Hungary* were then slain; Great cruelties on all sexes and ages were exercised for three years together by these Barbarians, who returning to *Meotis* the Lake, imbrace *Mahometanism*. King *Bela* by the assistance of the Knights of *Rhodes* was restored to his kingdom; he was buried in the Gray-Friars at *Strigon*. To him succeeded *Steven* 5. his son; he overcame *Othocar* king of *Bohemia*, and the king of *Bulgaria* also, and made all *Myssia* tributary to him; he left a son behind him *Ladislaws*, and *Mary* who married with *Charles* king of *Sicily*, by whom he had *Charles Martel* father of that *Charles* who afterward was king of *Hungary*. *Steven* was buried in the Isle *Buda*; his son *Ladislaws* 4. succeeded; in his time the *Scythians* again invade *Hungary*, wasting all with fire and sword, and two years after returned home with great booty. This king was murdered by the *Cumani*. *Andrew* 4. succeeded; he was the son of *Steven* *Venetius*, and grandchild of *Andrew* 2. father of this *Steven*; he subdued *Austria*, and died at *Buda*, where in the Church of *S. John* the Evangelist he was buried. He being dead, the Pope declares the son of *Charles Martel* king of *Hungary*; but the *Hungarians* chose *Wenceslaus* or *Ladislaws* the king of *Bohemia's* son for their King, whom afterward his father called home into *Bohemia*. *Hungary* at this time was divided into three factions; some were for *Charles*, some for *Wenceslaus*, and a third party for *Otho* D. of *Bavaria*, who was crowned at *Alba regalis*, and reigned almost three years; but *Ladislaws* *Vayroda* carried him away prisoner to *Jazygum* or *Transylvania*, and spoiled him of his kingdom. *Charles* Robert son of *Charles Martel* and *Mary* daughter of K. *Steven* 5. is crowned: He was a great souldier, and amplified the kingdom of *Hungary* by addition of *Bulgaria* and divers other places; he married the sister of *Casimir* king of *Poland*, of whom he had *Ludovic*: He was in danger to be murdered by a Gentleman of his Court, on *Easter-day*, who ran at him with his sword; but he was saved, and the Courtier executed.

*Casimir* king of *Poland* made a journey to visit this king *Charles* his kinsman, and because he was childlesse, he names *Ludovic* (son to K. *Charles* who married his sister) to the kingdom of *Poland*, so that this *Ludovic* became king of both kingdoms; He had two daughters only, to wit *Mary* who married with *Sigismund* king of *Bohemia*, who by her obtained the kingdom of *Hungary*, and *Hedwiga* Queen of *Poland*. This *Ludovic* was a great warrior, he drove all the *Javes* out of *Hungary*; he was buried at *Alba Regalis*, in the Chappel which he built. To *Ludovic* succeeded his daughter *Mary*, who married with *Sigismund* king of *Bohemia*, and afterward Emperor; she with her mother *Elizabeth* governed the kingdom, because *Sigismund* was as yet too young, and suffered herself to be totally ruled by some Peers of the Empire, which being ill resented by the Nobility of *Hungary*, they invite *Charles* king of *Naples* to the crown of *Hungary*: Not long after, this *Charles* was murdered by the two Queens, as he was at a conference with them; so the *Italians* were driven out of *Hungary*, and the Queen recovers her kingdom. *John* governour of *Croatia*, to revenge K. *Charles* his death, seileth on the Queen when she was in progress with her mother and Peers; he cuts off the head of the Regicide, drags the Queen with her mother by their hair upon the ground, then drowns the mother, and imprisons the Queen, and withal abuses all her maids of honour; but afterward out of fear he sets the Queen at liberty, who having returned home is met by her husband *Sigismund* with a great army out of *Bohemia*, he without opposition is crowned king of *Hungary*, the 20. year of his age; then he makes

- An. Christi.* an expedition into *Croatia*, where he besets the governour, takes him, and cuts off his head. *Charles 2.* surnamed the *Lesse*, King of *Naples*, son to *Andrew* brother of King *Ludovic*, is chosen King of *Hungary*, in opposition to *Sigismund* and *Mary*; but he was murdered at *Buda* in the Castle, at the instigation of Queen *Elisabeth* by one *Blasius*. Queen *Mary* dying childless, leaves the Kingdom wholly to *Sigismund*, which he enjoyeth, and marrieth with the Countess of *Cilia*, by whom he had one daughter *Elisabeth*. Not long after this, the
1385. Turks invade *Bulgaria*, a Province of *Hungary*, a part whereof *Sigismund* recovered, but not without much blood; in that cruel war there fell 20000. Christians, and 60000. Turks, the Christians were beaten, and the King escaped by flight: after this overthrow the Hungarians imprisoned king *Sigismund*, who afterwards was restored to his liberty and kingdom; this king in a second battel is beaten by the Turks, and the next year after is chosen Emperor; twice in his time the Boors of *Hungary* rose up in Arms against him, and twice he suppressed them. He reigned with his wife in *Hungary* 51. years, and died the
1396. 71. year of his age.
1409. *Albert* Arch-duke of *Austria*, by marrying King *Sigismund's* onely daughter, obtained both the Crown of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and besides is chosen Emperor; he had two daughters, *Elisabeth* wife to *Casimir* King of *Poland*, and *Anna* who married with *William* Duke of *Saxony*: The year after *Sigismund's* death, *Amurath* the Turk invaded *Hungary*; *Albert* intending to give him battel, pitched his camp beyond *Danubius*, where being taken with a loofness,
1437. hasteneth for *Vienna*, but he died by the way thither; he left his wife with childe, who intended to marry with *Vladislaus* the King of *Poland's* brother and Duke of *Lithuania*; mean while she is delivered of a boy called *Ladislaus* heir of *Hungary*, whereupon she alters her minde concerning her intended marriage, and resolves (now having an heir) not to marry the Duke, which bred great quarrels and troubles in *Hungary*; the childe is crowned the fourth month after his birth; notwithstanding *Vladislaus* enters *Hungary* with an Army, and by some is saluted King, he besiegeth and taketh *Strigon*; the Queen with her childe flies into *Austria* to his Protector *Frederick* the Emperor, and carried with her the Crown of *Hungary*, which 23. years after king *Matthias* was fain to redeem with a sum of money; mean while *Vladislaus* is crowned with some of the reliques taken from the head of *S. Stephen*. The Turk took occasion by these jars to seise upon *Rascia*: four years after, *Vladislaus* is defeated in a great battel by *Amurath*, in which besides the king, there were slain many Princes and Prelates, and 30000. Christians. At this time king *Ladislaus Albert's* son was five years old, then at *Vienna*. *John Hunniades* or *Corvinus* is made Vice-roy, and by *Ladislaus* for his valour deputed Vayvod of *Transilvania*, for he had beaten *Amurath*; when the young king, being twelve years old, came to
1455. *Hungary*, he made the same *John*, for his good service, Earl of *Bistria*. After this *John* put again *Mahumet* to flight, took from him a hundred great field-pieces, but he died the next year after, to the great losse of *Hungary*, which by the factions of the Nobility was much afflicted. *Vlricus* Earl of *Cilia* is killed by *Ladislaus* and *Matthias*, the two sons of *Hunniades*; whereupon *Ladislaus* is beheaded, and *Matthias* who was King afterward, is imprisoned at *Prague*; King *Ladislaus* after this beat the Sultan, and kills many thousand Turks: In the nineteenth year of his age, at the very nuptial solemnities with *Magdalen* the daughter of King *Charles* of *France*, he died.
- Matthias Corvinus* son to *John Hunniades* is ransomed out of prison by the Bishop of *Waraden* for 60000 *Scutati*, and withall is elected King of *Hungary*. *Frederick 2.* Emperor layeth claim to the Kingdom, as being next heir to the defunct King: *Matthias* now was 17. years old, and capitulated with *Frederick*, that the house of *Austria* should by his last will inherit the Crown of *Hungary* if he died childless; his first marriage was with the King of *Bohemia's* daughter. This *Matthias* was fortunate in his wars against the Turk, which lasted two

years

- after he had redeemed the Crown, it was put upon his head with great solemnity *an. 1464.* whilst he again is employed in his wars against the Turk, the Bohemians besiege *Tyrnavia* on the borders of *Moravia*, but were fain to raise the siege again. The next year after *Matthias* calls a Diet for aid against the Turk and Bohemians; then he marcheth to *Posonia*, and subdues almost all *Moravia* and *Silezia*. Not long after *Casimir* son of *Casimir K.* of *Poland*, is invited into *Hungary* by some of the Priests; but when he was come to *Nitria*, there *Matthias* besiegeth him; *Casimir* perceiving his danger escapes by night and returns to *Poland*, against him and the Bohemian *Matthias* makes war, which at last was composed in the year 1476. *Beatrice* the k. of *Sicilies* daughter is crowned at *Alba regalis*, the marriage is kept at *Buda*; in the interim the Turk subdues *Dalmatia*, makes inrodes upon *Hungary*, and carries away above 30000. captives, he wastes also with fire and sword *Dacia*, by which name *Malachia*, *Moldavia*, *Bulgaria*, or the lower *Mysia*, *Servia* or the higher *Misia*, and *Transilvania* were meant of old: when the nuptial solemnities were expired, *Matthias* invades *Austria*, because he was slighted by *Frederick* the Emperor when he was a Suiter to his daughter *Kunegund*; here he takes in some Towns and Forts: the Cæsarians are overthrown at *Haymburg* by *Matthias*, which presently after he besiegeth; the Emperor *Frederick* sends 3000. horse to raise the siege, a battel is fought, in which the Cæsarians had the better; *Stephen Bathor* one of *Matthias* his Captains being carried away prisoner by two souldiers, watching an opportunity, pulls out the sword which was hanging at one of his keepers side, with which he runs them both through, and so escapes to his fellows: *Haymburg* on the confines of *Hungary* and *Austria* is surrendered to *Matthias*, and so is the Castle for a sum of money: after this he takes *Pruck* a strong Town on the river of *Leythe*, having taken in many Towns and Forts about *Vienna*, he forceth it at last by famine to surrender; after 7. months siege he takes *Neuskad*. At last betaking himself to his rest a while, and to be merry, upon *Palm Sunday* at table after his mirth, he fell into such a passion of anger, because the figs which he called for were not so choise as he expected, that he fell suddenly into an Apoplexy, tumbling and roaring like a beast on the ground speechless, and so died: He was buried at *Alba regalis*; he was both a good scholler, and a lover of schollers, with which he furnished his kingdom; he erected a great Library, and took much delight in the company of *Regi-Montanus*.
- Ladislaus 2.* who was K. of *Bohemia*, marrieth with *Matthias* his widow, and so becomes K. of *Hungary*. About these times *Maximilian 1.* recovers *Vienna*, *Neuskad* and *Pruck*, with almost all *Austria*; then he takes *Alba*, with some other Towns and Castles, which afterward he restored to *Ladislaus*, whose former wife being dead, he marrieth a French Lady, of whom he had *Ludovic* and *Anna*; it was agreed between *Maximilian* and him, that if the K. should die childless, *Maximilian* and his posterity should successively enjoy the Crowns of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. After this a great sedition was raised in *Hungary*; for whilst the Cardinal of *Strigon* was preaching the Cross for raising of Forces against the Turk, the Ambassador of *Ladislaus* at that time was making peace with *Solyman*: many had taken Arms against the Turk, which they would not lay down again, but elected for their King, Captain *George Zeck*, who had heretofore given some defeats to the Turk; these like mad men run through *Hungary*, demolishing divers Forts and Monasteries, murdering the Gentry with their wives and children, plundering their goods, and desflouring of virgins; they hale the Bishop of *Chona*, with which death they threaten the Archbish. of *Strigon* and others; but shortly after, this new K. *George*, with his Captains, were apprehended by Count *John* the Vayvod, who used them with deserved rigor, he caused a burning iron Crown to be set on his head, then two of his veins to be opened, the blood whereof he presents to his brother *Luke* to drink; besides he caused 30. Boors who had been kept from food three daies, to fall upon their yet living king with their teeth, whose flesh they tore and eat; but the king seemed to be no waies dejected or afraid;

*An. Christi.* afraid, he only desired his brother might be excused, being by him compelled to this war: at length when all his limbs were torn, they bowelled him, and having cut his body in pieces, they rost some parts, and boil the rest, which they present to his souldiers to eat, who having filled themselves were tortured to death with *Luke Zack*. King *Ladislaus* died at *Buda*, and was buried in *Alba regalis*.

1516. To him succeeded his son *Ludovic 2.* in the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; in his time *Solyman* the Turk invadeth *Hungary* with a great Army, waiting all before him; the place that lay first open to his fury was the Archbishoprick of *Colonia*, therefore the King by the Popes aid makes *Paul Tomori* (now a Franciscan, but heretofore a publike and stout Champion against the Turk) Archbishop of that place, for those times required such a woman there. King *Ludovic* married with *Mary*, *Maximilian* the Emperors kinswoman, who afterwards was governess in *Belgium*: King *Ludovic's* sister
1526. *Anna* was bestowed on *Ferdinand*, who afterward was King of *Hungary*. King *Ludovic* understanding that the Turk was again comming upon *Hungary* with another Army, he meets him in person with strong forces, being urged thereto by the Nobility, whose priviledge was, as they said, not to go to war without the Kings own presence; in this unhappy encounter there fell on the Christian side nineteen thousand, besides divers Princes and Prelates, among which were the Archbishop of *Strigon*, *Paul Tomori* the Monk; the king having escaped, fell with his horse into a bog, where he died miserably; two months after his body in armour, with his horse were found; he was carried and buried in *Alba regalis*: the Turk pursues his victory, raging with fire & sword till he came to *Buda* the Metropolis, which was quickly surrendered to him, the Queen with the chief of the City being fled to *Vienna*: the Castle held out, in which was a garrison of *German*, who perceiving that the Turks went about to spring mines, articulated they might depart with their baggage; this was assented to, but promise kept, for all of them were cut in peeces by the Turks cimeters, onely the Captain escaped, because the souldiers against his will, had delivered up the Castle to the enemy; into the woods were fled above 25 thousand Christians, besides women and children, against whom the Turks discharged their great ordnance, and almost destroyed them all. After the Turk had wasted higher *Pannonia*, he returns unto *Constantinople*. After the death of *Ludovic*, *John* the Vayvod of *Transylvania* is by some elected king, against the will of the Palatine of *Hungary*, and the chief Prelates, who had called in *Ferdinand* brother to *Charles 5.* Emperor, so that now there were two kings elected: the Vayvod sent to the French king for aid against king *Ferdinand*, of whose injustice he complained by his letters to the Emperor *Charles* and the Electors, protesting that if he should be forced to seek for aid elsewhere, that he was not to be blamed; wherefore when he saw no help, he swore allegiance to *Solyman*, desiring his protection, which he had long since proposed, if *Ferdinand's* power should be too great for him.

- Ferdinand* Archduke of *Austria* and king of *Bohemia* is elected king of *Hungary*, he with a strong Army marcheth to *Buda*, which he taketh, with the greatest part of the kingdome; after this he is crowned at *Alba*. *Casimir* Marquess of *Brandenburg* his General, in this expedition dieth at *Buda*, where he is honourably interred. The Vayvod invites *Solyman* the Turk into *Hungary*, who takes by storm the Town and Castle of *Buda* after eleven attempts: *John* the Vayvod, whom the Turks call *Erdelban*, meets the Turk with rich presents, and kisseth his hand, by whom he is confirmed in the kingdome of *Hungary*, and receiveth from him *Buda* the royal seat, which he held till his death, *an. 1540.* After this *Solyman* takes in divers Towns upon the Danow: the 26. of *Septemb.* he sat down before *Vienna* in *Austria* with 200000. Turks, for twenty dayes together he playeth upon the City with his ordnance, and oftentimes assaulted it, but in vain; he lost in that siege above 80000. at last being forced with cold, he raiseth his siege, and returns by *Buda* to *Byzantium*.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XIII.

1. A prosecution of the Hungarian Historie, from the year, 1532. till 1629.

*Solyman* being enraged for his great loss at *Vienna*, and that he was forced to raise his siege, returns with a great power, to wit, 300000 men, and 120 great Canon. He first besiegeth the little Fort and Castle of *Gunita*; which he assaulted thirteen times, and thirteen times was beat off with great losse. At last perceiving the courage of *Nicholas Furth*, an *Hungarian*, and Governour, who would not yeild, though the Town was almost battered to the ground with great Guns; invites him to a surrender upon fair terms; That he should remain Governour as he was; and that all the Inhabitants shall stay and enjoy all that they ow without any hurt. The *Hungarian* accepts of the conditions: Then the Turk removes to the borders of *Stiria*: He permits his chief Bassha, with fifteen thousand, to wast and plunder the Countrey before him; but as he was returning to the Army with his spoiles, he was so circumvented between the Mountains by some *Casarian* Horse going for *Vienna*, that scarce two hundred of fifteen thousand Turks escaped. The Emperor in a short time raiseth an Army of thirty thousand Horse, and two hundred thousand foot, which when the Turk understood, he retreats with all speed to his own confines. About five years after, *Ferdinand* raiseth an other Army of eight thousand Horse, and sixteen thousand foot, under the conduct of *Catrian*, who perfidiously betrayed the Army to the Turk. Not long after, this Traytor labours to perswade Count *Nicholas* of *Serinum*, with whom he was intimate, to side with the Turks; But *Nicholas* caused his head to be cut off, which he sent to King *Ferdinand* as a present, for which, he was rewarded with all *Catrians* Estate.

*John*, the Vayvod of *Transylvania*, dyeth at *Buda*: he left behinde him a young son, in whose Non age, his Mother undertook the Government. *Ferdinand* lieth Siege to *Buda*, which the Turks understanding, they make hast thither with a great Army, under one of the Bassha's. *Ferdinand's* Forces beat day and night against the City with their Ordinance, but to no end; for they were forced to raise the Siege, with great losse. The Turk enters *Buda*, and *Pestha*; the Government of both places he commits to the Bellerbeg; and sends away the Widdow and her son to *Transylvania*. About two years after, a numerous Army is sent by *Ferdinand* into *Hungaria*, under *Fochim* Elector of *Brandenburg*; with whom the Pope joyns three thousand Horse; these besiege *Pestha*, playing continually with their Ordinance on it; but to no purpose, for the Plague so raged in the Army, that it swept away many thousands in a short time. That same year there died at *Vienna* eighteen thousand of the sickness. The next year *Soliman* takes in *Hungaria*, the City and Castle of *Strigon*, after many assaults. Then three months after, he takes *Alba Regalis* upon surrender: It was Articled, That the Inhabitants should be dismissed without hurt: but *Soliman* causeth them all to repair to the Castle, where he disarms them; then picks out the strongest bodied of them, the rest he commanded to be hewed in peeces. Then he makes *Mahomet Zaoglis* Governour of all *Hungaria*. Four years after, *Anna*, Queen of *Hungaria*, King *Ferdinand's* wite, died in Child-bed. The next year after King *Ferdinand* took *Agria*, and divers Forts: Shortly after, in upper *Pannonia*,

A a a

Pannonia,

*An. Christi* 1550 *Pannonia*, by the Earl of *Salm*, Anno, 1550. *Tenfel*, *Ferdinand's* General is defeated by the Turk, who takes divers places this year from the King, and besiegeth *Agria*, an Episcopal Seat, with all the strength he could make: But the Inhabitants united themselves by a solemn Covenant, subscribed with their own blood: so that the Turks Army was forced with shame to raise the siege, having discharged against it twelve thousand bullets out of their Ordnance: Not long after a peace is made at *Constantinople*, between *Ferdinand* and the Turk: About six years after, the *Transylvanians* revolt from *Ferdinand* their King, to *John Sigismund*, son of the abovenamed *Vayvod*: and two years after, *Ferdinand* is chosen Emperor of the Romans.

1560 After the Turk had taken *Felica*, a strong Town in the higher *Pannonia*: a peace is concluded between *Ferdinand* and *Soliman*: Four years after *Ferdinand* died at *Vienna*, and was buried at *Prague*. His son *Maximilian* the second, succeeded in *Bohemia*, and *Hungaria*, and likewise in the Empire. He was crowned King of *Hungaria*, with Mary his wife, before his Fathers death. The next year after, *Sigismund* the *Vayvod*, and Vassall of *Soliman*, violates the peace, and takes *Zatmar*, which shortly after was recovered by *Maximilian*, with divers other adjacent places. After this, the *Vayvod* solicits *Soliman* to make an expedition into *Hungaria*: upon this, a command is sent to the *Bashai* of *Buda*, to begin Arms, and to begin the War. Mean while the *Vayvod*, who called himself King of *Hungaria*, summons a Diet of his people: calling them thus his most Clement Patron, *Soliman*, had enjoined all the people of *Hungaria* to subject themselves to the Scepter of his Vassall, the *Vayvod*: and not long after, *Soliman* enters *Hungaria*, whom the *Vayvod* met with rich presents, in hope to obtain from him that Kingdom: but he was deceived. The *Bashai* of *Buda* besiegeth *Palota*, which is stoutly defended by *George Thurin*, and relieved by *George* of *Helfenstein*. The Turks seeing new Forces coming, run all away, leaving behind them their Ordnance, and all their Provision, after they had full eight days together battered the walls, which are now again repaired. The Christians shortly after take *Vesprin*, and put all the Turks, except five, to the sword: they take also some Castles. The same year the *Scythians* upon *Soliman's* invitation and the *Vayvod's*, fall with fire and sword on the higher *Pannonia*, carrying thence many Christians; but *Lazarus* of *Schwend* with some small Forces defeated ten thousand of them, and then takes divers places from *George Bebec*, an *Hungarian* Peer, who had revolted to the Turk. Mean while the Emperor makes an expedition into *Hungaria*, to relieve the lower *Pannonia* which the Turk was now wasting: he fortifieth some places which were in danger to be surpris'd at *Taurinum*, where the Emperor was: there happened such a fire, that the whole city was almost burnt down; the souldiers instead of quenching the fire, carried away the Merchants goods: but the Emperor raised a great summe to rebuild the town again.

1571 Anno 1567, At *Constantinople*, a peace for eight years is concluded between *Maximilian* the second, and *Solyman* Sultan. One of the Articles was, That each one should keep quietly what he had gotten: this pacification was afterwards prolonged. *John Sigismund* the *Vayvod* dyed without issue, but not without suspicion of poyson. To him succeeded *Stephen Bathori*, who was to continue the annual tribute to the Turk. This is he who afterward by the *Sultans* commendation, was elected K. of *Poland*.

1574 The Turk before the peace was expired, fell upon *Hungaria*, where he killed above one thousand Christians, and returned with great booty About.

*An. Christi* About the end of this year died *Selymus* at *Byzantium*: and two years after *Maximilian* at *Ratisbon*. To him succeeded *Ralph* the second, his sonne: he was King of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia* before, and afterward was elected Emperor.

1579 Anno 1579. The Turks fall upon a great many unarmed Christians, being at a fair in *Sixo*: Some they hacked and hewed with their Cimeters, others they led away captive, with their goods: they tyed two thousand of them together like Horses, whom as they were carrying away, the *Hungarian* Rusticks in great companies pursued, delivered the 10 Captives, and killed many of the Turks, carrying away the rest prisoners. The like cruelty in higher *Pannonia* was exercised by the Turk, and the like measure they received from the Christians near *Agria*. The Emperor had a conference with the *Hungarian* Peers at *Posonium*, about securing the Kingdom from the Turks.

1580 Anno 1582. During the peace, an Army of sixty thousand Turks, under *Sanzacus*, broke in upon the higher *Pannonia*, wasting with fire and sword all that lay in their way: but as they were returning home with their spoiles and plunder, the *Casarian* Forces set upon them near *Agria*, killed most of them, and recovered the Plunder. The news of 20 this overthrow did highly move and incense the great Turk at *Byzantium*: but when he understood how the Turks without any ground or provocation began the quarrel, he was satisfied and appeased, and of his own accord desired a continuation of the peace, which was effected between *Rodolph* the second, Emperor, and *Amurath* the third, for eight years, beginning the first of *January*, Anno 1584. Yet three years after the Turks 1587 robbed fifteen Villages, and carried away many Christians; but *George Serin* recovered the bootie, with the losse of two thousand Turks.

1594 Some few years after, *Mathias*, the Emperors brother, with a great Army out of *Germany*, fell upon the truce-breaking Turks of *Hungaria*: *Novigrad* 30 is surrendered to *Mathias Serin*, takes divers castles. *Tiefenbach*, having slaughtered divers Turks, took *Fasprin* by assault. *Mathias* fell upon *Strigon*, and took the old town; but whilst he was beleaguering the new town, and hearing that *Sinan* the Turk was coming, he riseth with his Army against the *German's* will.

This *Sinan*, with one hundred thousand Turks, and sixty thousand *Tartars*, besiegeth *Favernum*. A terrible battle is fought, in which *Sinan* lost one hundred thousand men. But *Hardeckins*, notwithstanding he was promised by *Mathias* to be relieved within two days, delivers up *Faurin* to the Turk: For which fact, afterward he lost his head. In this strong town 40 were one hundred fifty great guns, six thousand of the Garrison were killed, three thousand dismissed. The Island *Comora*, over against the town was stoutly defended by the *German's*. *Sinan* being dead with griefe for his many losses, *Mahumet* the Sultan prepares to invade *Pannonia* with a great army. Mean while the Christians take *Hatuana*, using there all manner of cruelty, which upon the coming of the Turk, they plunder and burn. But the Sultan revenged himselfe upon the *Agrians*, whom he put all to the sword. *Pappa* is delivered up to the Turk by the Christian Garrison, for want of pay: which town, whilst *Swarizemburg* afterward besieged, he is 50 killed with a musket bullet. *Rederus* pursueth the Traytors, some of which he tortured and put to death. *Philip Emanuel* of *Lorrain* employeth his army against the Turks, from whom he took by force *Alba Regalis*, but the souldiers defaced and ransacked the town, not sparing the ancient Regal bones and Monuments of *Hungary*. The Turks striving to regain the City, were beat back with great loss, but the next year the Conqueror being dead, they retake the place.

An. Christi

1602

George Basta, growing bold upon the Turks weakness, (for the Sultan was yet a childe, and the Persians had over-run his Dominions as far as Babylon) raiseth an intestine War between Hungary, and Dacia. He forceth the Protestants to hear Masse, Plundering those that refused: but the Turks took courage, and withall, Pesta, being forsaken by the Christians, out of fear: afterward they take Strigonium, after it had been ten years under Rodolphus. Bethleem Gabor, having married the Widow of Moses, the Ciculian, was in hope to become master of Transylvania, but his hopes were blasted by the victory which Tampirius had over him. Stephen Botscaus, a kinsman of Battors, stood up for liberty of Conscience, in defence of the Protestants: acknowledging Casars right no otherways, then upon this liberty. But the intestine Wars caused such sterility and devastation, that for want of other food, parents did eat their children; which was

1610

prefaged by a new star, as Kepler observes. Mathias being established in Hungary, makes peace with the Turk, and enters Bohemia vvith a great Army, vvhere he is Proclaimed King, and by the consent of his brother the Emperor, is Crovvned. Forgatzias the Palatin of Hungary, marcheth into Dacia; where he brings Claudiopolis, and other towns into the obedience of King Mathias: but shortly after he is beaten by Battorius, and hardly escaped with his life through the woods. Battorius in Transylvania, attempt-

1611

ing to take Cronstad by storm, sends Andrew Gietzius to the great Turk for aid; but Andrew promiseth to the Sultan some Castles, if he would confer the Principality on him: order presently upon this motion, is given to Mahumet Bassai, that he should turn out Battorius, and settle Gietzius in his place: Which Battorius perceiving desires assistance from the Palatine of

1612

Hungary, and Protection from King Mathias; at which the Turk was offended, and expostulated with Mathias, yet was not in capacity to make War against him, because of the Arabian Rebellion. Gabriel Battor, willing to retain Dacia, halted so long between the Emperor, and Turk, that Bethleem

1613

Gabor rebels against him, and at last by the Turks aid, utterly defeats him, who the year following was murdered by his own servants. Gabor also to keep what he had got, swears fealty both to Casar, and the Sultan. The Turks break the peace, and burn some towns in Hungary. Gabor in Hungary and Dacia, subjected Lippa, and some other places to the Turk; and would also have delivered up Waradin to the Sultan for a reward of his protection; about which, he and Humanoius fell at variance. Near Agria, the Turks making excursions, are defeated by the Heiduccis; but in Polonia they have better success being assisted by the Tartars, whom the Cossacks had provoked by their daily plunderings.

1617

Mathias, King of Hungary, and Bohemia, who was also Emperor, caused his Cousin Jerman, Ferdinand, to be declared King of Hungary. Bethleem Gabor, the Turks Vassal, having by letters imparted his resolutions to the Bohemians, and gaping after the Crown of Hungary, enters that Kingdom with a great Army, and takes Cassovia, Poson, and other places, some by storm, some by surrender: he assumes the title of Prince of Hungary, and seizeth on the Crown, which was usually kept at Poson, and useth the Papists with all extremity. Not long after, he calls a Diet of his Faction (the Clergie, and chief Peers of the Kingdom, being absent; and divers Cities whole Legates were there protesting against it) by which he is proclaimed King of Hungary: then he makes an incursion upon Austria, and sends

1619

aid to the Palcegrave. Dampier, attempting to take Poson, is killed. The Emperor sends out his Declarations against Gabor, for invading the Kingdom of Bohemia, for delivering to the Turk some Forts of that Kingdom, and for assuming the title of King. Notwithstanding Gabor had possession of the Crown, which he removed from Poson, to a more secure place, yet

1620

refuseth

An. Christi

1621

refuseth to be Crowned. And the rather because Bucquoi was entered Hungary with an Imperiall Army, with which many of the Princes and Cities joyned, and fell off from Gabor. Besides that, Bucquoi had taken Poson, with divers other towns. So that now Gabor was in danger of losing Hungary totally: but the untimely death of Bucquoi put him in fresh hopes again, therefore he recovers some lost places, besiegeth Poson, but is repulsed with great loss: at last, he is reconciled to Casar, and is enjoyned to restore the Regall Crown, and to govern those places now in his possession, in Casars name. The next year after this, the Crown is restored to Casar, and

1622

Gabor sends an extraordinary Ambassador to the Port, to acquaint the Turk with the reasons why he made peace with Casar, shewing he was necessitated thereto by the desolation, famine, and sickness of Hungary, his souldiers not being longer able to subsist there: besides, he feared a revolt of his own people in Dacia, by the instigation of Casar, and the Polander. Lastly, seeing the Sultan had concluded a sudden Peace with the Poles, he was afraid the burthen of the War would be left upon him alone, but withall he saith, that his Master meant not to keep the peace long, therefore desires full power from the Sultan that he, with the Bashai of Buda, might when they saw cause invade the Empire or Poland. This motion

was sleighted by the Sultan, who now was unfit for a War abroad, and perceived that Gabor aimed holy at his own ends. Yet the next year an Army was granted by the Turk to Gabor, for subduing of Hungary, to the wonder of those who knew the Turks weakness at this time. Gabor being then at Cassovia, receives the Turkish Forces, which he joyns with his own, but he wanted Artillery and other necessaries: his chief hope was in a generall revolt of Hungary, and assistance from the United Princes of Germany: but the States of Dacia, assembling at Alba Julia shewed how unwilling they wear to break with the Emperor; therefore they send to him, who at Vienna receiveth the Commissioners kindly, and sends the Bishop of Nitria to Dacia, where a new peace is concluded between Casar, and Transylvania.

1623

But not long after, Gabor with an Army of 60000. over-runs Hungary, at last he makes a truce of ten monthes with the Imperialists. The next year, Casar raiseth an Army of 50000. to invade Hungary, which made the Turk jealous, but Casars Ambassador assured him, that the Emperor intended no hurt to the Port, but onely to recover what Gabor had taken from him. Yet some supplies were sent to Gabor by the Turk: mean while, the Prince fearing Casars greatness, makes an absolute peace with him, disclaiming all title to Hungary, and consenting that Casars Sonne should be presently chosen King thereof; that the Prince of Transylvania, should serve him in all his occasions; that Gabor should remain quietly, Prince of Dacia, Earl of the Ciculi, and Lord of Cassovia, which after his life should return to the Crown of Hungary. This Article much troubled the Sultan, who desired not that Dacia should depend on the Empire. After this Gabor sends to the Port for a confirmation of his Lady in the succession to the Principality of Dacia, which the Turk put off, because of his troubles with the Persian. Yet fearing least the Prince should take a confirmation of the Emperor, the grant is dispatched.

1624

The Prince joyns his Forces with the Bashai of Buda. Walstein endeavor- ed to keep them from joyning vvith Count Mansfiel, but could not: so after divers skirmishes, the Imperialists are beaten. But shortly after, Gabor sends to Casar, to excuse his taking up Armes, because some Articles were not observed.

1626

Then he sends to the Port, to excuse his making of peace vvith Casar, because the Bashai of Buda was called avay from him by the Sultan. So

Janus



*An. Christi.* *Fannus* like, he looks both ways. Yet underhand he aids the confederate Princes, and stirs up the *Turk* against *Cesar*, fearing too much his greatness.

1627 For this cause, the *Basha* of *Buda* is continued in his place, and order given, that when occasion served he should aid *Gabor*. *Cesar* sends a private Agent to the Port, complaining against *Gabor*, and that he was the chief disturber of the peace: these Letters were intercepted by the *Visier*, and not suffered to come to the *Sultan*, but sent to the *Bashai* of *Buda*, to manage things as he thought good. The *Turk* at last, upon *Cesar's* second complaint, checks *Gabor* for his double dealing. At last, after all his juggling tricks, death, which cannot be deluded seizeth on him.

1629

## CHAP. XIV.

The affairs of Germany, Hungaria, Poland, Turkey, Bohemia, Austria, Millan, Naples, Cyprus, and Borussia, under Albert and Frederick, Emperors, from the year one thousand four hundred thirty eight, till the year one thousand four hundred eighty.

1438



*Albert*, son in Law to *Sigismund*, in the space of a few months, being but Duke of *Austria*, became Duke of *Lucemburge*, Marquess of *Moravia*, King of *Hungaria*, and *Bohemia*, and withall, Emperor of the *Romans*. He scarce sate two full years in this dignity: for the second year of his Empire, he was taken with a dysenterie, by a surfeit of Musk-millions, and dyed in *Hungaria*, near *Strigon*.

He was fain to fight for the Kingdom of *Bohemia*; For some of the Nobility had called in the *Polander*, against whom, the Emperor employed *Albion*, Marquiss of *Brandenburch*, who defeated the *Polander*, and made him sue for peace, and leave *Bohemia*: to which Kingdom, *Albert* had a twofold Title, one by his Wife *Elizabeth*, of the Royall blood; the other, by vertue of a Covenant between the *Austrians*, and *Bohemians*; That when in either House the issue Male did fail, the other should enjoy the Crown. The *Hungarians* were not content that their King should meddle with the Empire, because that whilest *Sigismund* was busie about the Imperial affairs, *Hungaria* was exposed to the fury of the *Turks*. The reason why *Piarco*, Chief of the *Hussites*, called into *Bohemia*, *Casimir*, Brother to *Ladislaus* of *Poland*, was, for that *Albert* was much addicted to the Roman faith, and a bitter enemy to *Husse*: therefore he fortified all the Cities of the *Hussites*, and joyned the *Taborites* with the *Polanders*, but they were (as we have said) defeated, and divers *Hussites* carried away prisoners by *Frederick*, Elector of *Saxony*.

*Cesar* having left a Vice-roy in *Bohemia*, falls upon *Poland* with Fire and Sword; but his sickness caused a peace. He left two daughters behinde him; *Anna*, who married *William*, Duke of *Saxony*; and *Elizabeth*, wife of *Casimir*, King of *Poland*: he had also a Post-humus son, *Ladislaus*, whom his Mother Crowned the 4. month of his age, which Crown she had secretly conveyed, and hid for that purpose.

But the Coronation of this young King, could not keep *Hungaria* from troubles; For *Amurath*, vvho lately had deprived *George* Despot of *Servia*, (vvwhose daughter he married) both of his Principality, and vvwo sonnes, vvhom he left at *Sanderovia*, vvwhich tovvn the *Turk* took, and the vvwo sons he caused to be both emasculated, and exoculated, pretending they vvvere about to raise nev vv Forces for their Father: I say, this *Amurath* invades *Hungaria*,

*Hungaria*, with Fire and sword: the *Hungarians* to encrease their strength, propose a Treaty between their Queen and *Ladislaus* of *Poland*. The Q. willing to preserve the Crown entire for her son, refuseth to marry, which occasioned a great War; For divers of the Hungarian Peers sided with *Ladislaus*, others with the Post-humus King.

The *Polander* by the help of the Hungarian Peers, take many places in *Hungaria*: the Queen on the other side was busie in retaking the same places. Mean while *Amurath* was not idle, but brings his Army through *Myfia*, and *Triballie*, and sits down before *Belgrade* of old *Taurinum*, the chief Fort of that Kingdom.

*Ladislaus* gave the charge of *Transylvania*, to *John Huniades*, to keep off the *Turks* on that side. *George*, he sends to the borders, to keep the *Turks* at *Belgrade* from excursions. The Christian Princes understanding their danger, strove to take up the difference between *Ladislaus* and the Queen Mother; and withall, to bestow her two daughters on the two brothers, *Casimer* and *Ladislaus*: in the interim, *Huniades* defeats the *Turks*, recovers all *Moldavia*, and a part of *Servia*, with *Bulgaria*, by the help of *Ladislaus*. *Huniades* in one day, defeated the *Turks* in five several Battels, and towards night, he utterly routed the *Bashai* of *Anatolia*; *Amurath* his kinsman, 30000 *Turks* were here lost.

*Amurath*, to repair this loss, sends *Carambeius* the *Basha* of *Phrygia*, with a great Army, which *Ladislaus* by the prudence of *Huniades* totally discomfited in the Valley of *Hemur*. This so affrighted *Amurath*, that he was about to have killed himself had not *Halibaut* *Basha*, who succeeded *Carambeius* encouraged him to raise a new army, and to elude *Fabius* like, with long delays, the courage of *Huniades*, by shutting up the Streights of Mount *Rodope*, which *Ladislaus* perceiving, returns in a triumphing way, but against the will of *Huniades*, to *Belgrade*, shewing his booties to the people, and with them, captive *Carambeius*.

Upon the reports of these Victories, *Caramanmus*, Prince of *Cilicia* is encouraged to invade *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*, the *Turks* Provinces in *Asia*; *Amurath* being unable to undertake two Wars at once, and fearing the greatness of the European enemy, sends Ambassadors to treat with *Ladislaus* for peace, upon what conditions he pleaseth. It was agreed, that *Amurath* should depart out of *Servia*, deliver up all the Towns and Garrisons he had taken there, and restore to *George*, the Despot, his sonnes, and whole Estate, and for the time to come, should offer him no wrong: and that he should not meddle with *Moldavia*, and that part of *Bulgaria* which was lost.

*Amurath* desired, that he might onely retain *Bulgaria*, to which *Ladislaus* assented, and so the peace was concluded for ten years, and ratified by a solemn Oath. But *Ladislaus*, a fiery spirited young Prince, more ambitious of War-like glory, then of peaceable security, soon after *Amurath* was gone into *Asia*, breaks the League by the instigation of Pope *Eugenius*, and *Julian* the Cardinal, who perswaded him he might lawfully violate the Oath he took to an enemy of *Christ*, and that he should have Absolution, and withall the assistance of the Pope, *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, and the *Venetian* Fleet, which should stop *Amurath* from conveying aid by the *Hellepont*, out of *Asia* into Europe. Upon these perswasions and hopes, that *Ladislaus* should recover again the Greek Empire, and presuming on his former fortunes, marcheth with his Army through *Walachia*, and *Bulgaria*, till he stayed at *Varna*, of old *Diemysopolis*, a town in *Bulgaria*, where he fell sick.

*Amurath* upon these news, leaves *Caramanmus*, and returns to the *Hellepont* with all speed, and at *Calliopolis*, transmits his Army into Europe, in the fight

*An. Christi* fight of the Italian Fleet, which perfidiously suffered them to pass. The ships that transported them, were these of *Genoa*. The *Turks* with an incredible celerity, march towards *Adrianopolis*, and before *Ladislaus* knew of any thing, lying yet at *Varna*; They pitch their Camp close by him: the Christian Army was so ordered by *Hunlades*, that one side of it was defended by a Lake, the other by Waggon and Chariots, chained together like a Wall: the hills behind them guarded the Rear: the fight continued three days and nights together with such violence, that the fields run with blood. The Victory was inclining to the Christians, for the *Turks* began to give ground, and to fly away disorderedly: the Prelates too rashly drew the rest of the Army to pursue farther then was safe; for the *Turk* perceiving that now the Christians lay open, who before were in a manner enclosed with Fences, he causeth all his Archers to let flie at them, by which means they were presently disordered, and inclosed by the *Turks* Legions.

The young King having got into the *Turks* Life-guard, had his Horse shot under him, and he himself was slain, with many wounds. The Prelates in their flight fell into Bogges, and were drowned. *Hunlades*, with much difficulty escaped, and that part of the Army that fled, dyed miserably: some with cold and hunger in the Woods: some with toyl and watching, and many drowned in Lakes and Pools. *Julian*, the Author of breaking the Oath, was found dead in the way, of many wounds: some think he was murdered of his own party. *Hunlades*, the scourge of *Turky*, the defender of *Hungaria*, and Bulwark of Christendom, was preserved by God for more work: He after this defeated *Mahomet*, *Amuraths* successor at the siege of *Belgrade*, where forty thousand *Turks* were slain; but having overwearied himself, vvith tvo days fight, he fell sick, who commended the care of his Countrey to *Christ*, and exhorting his sons to virtue, departed this life.

*Ladislaus*, *Albertus* his Post-hume, vv as educated by *Frederick* the Emperor, who would not suffer the *Hungarians* to enjoy him, though they had often Petitioned, till he was of years and understanding, fit for Government; in which he was altogether ruled by *Ulricus* his kinsman, Earl of *Cilia*, which encreased the peoples ill opinion of the King, and their old hatred against *Ulricus*, who alvvayes envied *Hunlades* for his valor and happiness, and used all opportunities he could, to disgrace and murder him: and being neither satisfied with his virtues, nor content with his death, he persecutes his Children, *Ladislaus* and *Matthias*, whom by false calumnies he thought to oppress.

Therefore one day *Ladislaus* coming to expostulate with the Earl, from words, they fell to blows: *Ulricus*, that began the quarrel, and drew first, was killed by *Ladislaus*, who cleared himself to the King, and upon that received the publique faith, and a pardon, with a purple garment: yet afterward upon new calumniation, the King causeth both the Brothers to be apprehended: He put *Ladislaus* to death, causing his head to be cut off in that purple Garment he gave him. He was three times struck by the Executioner, and three times he lifts himself up, though his hands were bound, calling upon God, and pleading his innocency, but the fourth stroke cut off his head.

The King perceiving how he was hated of the people for this murder, and finding no security for his abode in *Hungaria*, goeth to *Bohemia*, whither he carried with him *Matthias*, the other son of *Hunlades*, fearing least the people might have in the Kings absence tumultuously set him free; besides he could put him to death more safely in *Bohemia*, then in *Hungaria*, where he was so well known. But before the King had pronounced sentence

*An. Christi* sentence of death against *Matthias*, as he was celebrating his Nuptials with *Margaret*, King *Charles* the seventh daughter of *Thrace*, at *Prague*, he was poyoned, of which he died within few hours. *Boiebracius*, one of the greatest men in that Kingdome, seized on the Crown: who restored upon the desire of the *Hungarians*, *Matthias* to his Liberty, and bestowed his daughter on him, with many rich gifts, by which he was fitted to receive the Crown of *Hungaria*, which was set on his head by the general consent of the people, who had not forgot what his Father had done for them.

10 But though *Matthias* was thus Honourably dealt with, by the *Bohemian*, yet he suffered himself to be perswaded by the Pope, to take up Arms against him, to the great prejudice of Christianity.

To *Albert* in the Empire succeeded *Frederick* the third, of *Austria*, whose inauguration was accompanied with some *Austrian* troubles: for he had after the death of *Albert*, undertaken the tuition of *Ladislaus* King of *Hungaria*, and *Bohemia*, and Arch-Duke of *Austria*. But *Ulricus*, Earl of *Cilia*, great Uncle to the Childe, challengeth the right of Tuition: with him *Albert* sides: He was *Fredericks* Brother who demanded a share of his Fathers inheritance; but the two brothers were reconciled by the German Princes, and *Ulricus* is commanded to lay down his Arms. After this *Frederick* endeavors to compose the schism raised by Pope *Eugenius*, in calling a Synod at *Florence*, against that of *Basil*; but when the Dolphin brought his *Armeniac* Forces, (so called from the Earl of *Armenia* in *Gascon*, who was their Leader) against *Basil*, he did not stir, because he hated the *Switzers*, whom he suffers to be all cut off, being 1600. in number, by the French. Nor did stir in that War which was between *Albert* the Marquis, and the *Noribergers*. In 8. battels, *Albert* had the better, in the 9: he was beaten, and then he made peace with the confederat Cities.

*Frederick* having perswaded *Felix*, to resigne the Pontificat to *Nicholas*, and him to confirm the decrees of *Basil*, he repairs to Rome for his Coronation, with *Albert* his brother, and *Ladislaus* the young King. In his journey he bestowed many Dignities, and titles of Honour upon the Italians, by which he procured much love among them. He entertained his Spouse, *Lionora*, King *Edwards* daughter of Portugal, at *Cena*; thither she came by sea, and from thence he conveys her to Rome, where he was Crowned first King of the *Lombards*. (For *Millan* was fallen to *Francis Sfortia* upon the death of *Philip Maria Viscount*, which succession *Frederick* would not allow.) Two days after, with his new Bride, He was Crowned Emperor of the Romans. Upon his return homeward, the *Venetians*, and *Ferrarians* did Royally entertain him: for which he made the Marquis of *Ferraria* Duke; and with the *Venetians* he made a league. Mean while, there were no small troubles at home by the plottings of *Cilian*, and the *Austrians*, who demande the young King *Ladislaus* to govern them: so that he was forced, being suddainly beset with an Army, to dismisse *Ladislaus*.

*Frederick* also had much trouble with *Albert* his brother, and *Sigismund* Exerch of *Austria*, about the Principality of that Countrey: for these were Cousin Germans, or sons of two brothers, and claimed an equal right: but after a long War, the Emperor at last obtained all *Austria*. After this he had troubles with *Matthias* *Hunlades*, about the Kingdom of *Hungaria*: this was like to break out into open War, had not the differences been composed by the German Princes. For though some of the *Hungarian* Peers desired *Frederick* to be their King, *Ladislaus* being dead, yet the major part were for their Countreyman *Hunlades*, who yet could not obtain the Crown, which was delivered to *Frederick* with the tuition of the child, by

*An. Christi* Elizabeth the Mother, till he had redeemed it for 80000 Crowns. Mean while, *Pius* the second, the Pope, who had been Secretary to *Frederick* the Emperor, had depofed *Iſeborgius*, Biſhop of *Minis*, for reſiſting the Levies of Money in *Germany*, enjoyned by the Pope for the Turkiſh War: and be-  
 1461 cause he refuſed to take the Oath impoſed on him, which was, That he, nor his ſucceſſors ſhould not without the Popes leave aſſemble the Princes for election of a new Emperor, or for any thing that concerned the ſtate of the Empire: this occaſioned matter for a new War. *Frederick* Count Palatin of the *Rhene*, and *Ludovic* of *Bavaria*, both hated by the Emperor, ſide with the Biſhop againſt the Pope: but *Albert*, Marquis of *Brandenburg* 10 with divers other Princes, take part with *Adolphus*, the new elected Biſhop: who in a battel were defeated by the old Biſhops faction, which was leſſe numerous then the other.

This War was ſcarſe ended, when a more dangerous ariſieth between the Emperor, and *Matthias Corvinus*, King of *Hungaria*, about the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, which the Pope had beſtowed on *Matthias* againſt *Bolebracius*, the *Huffis* Patron.

But the Emperor would not aſſent to this grant; whereupon *Matthias* is highly diſpleaſed, and the rather becauſe the *Bohemians* and Empe-  
 1475 ror, had choſen *Ladiſlaus*, ſon to *Caiſer*, King of *Poland*, by *Elizabeth*, 20 daughter to *Albert* of *Austria*. In this War *Matthias* had got almoſt all *Austria* from *Frederick*. But *Albert*, Duke of *Saxony*, recovered it all again to the Empire, except *Vienna*, which *Albert* was loth to meddle with, becauſe of the ſtrength and power of that City.

In theſe troubles of *Germany*, *Frederick*, makes a journey to *Rome*, that he might perform his vow: but Pope *Pius* was dead, and had for his ſuc-  
 1475 ceſſor, *Paul* the ſecond, a man of an evil report. After this, *Frederick* had troubles with *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, that high ſpirited and turbulent Prince, who was much incenſed becauſe the Emperor would not confer on him, the Title, Crown, and dignity of a King: nor would he conſent 30 that *Charles* ſhould be Lieutenant, or Vicar of the Empire. Upon this, *Charles* raiſeth an Army, with wich he beſiegeth *Novesium*, or *Neuiſſ*, a confederate City four miles below *Colem*. *Frederick* on the other ſide Le-  
 1475 vieth 80000 men, among which were moſt of the Imperial Princes. The Duke of *Saxony* was Standerd bearer. But whilſt both armies were pre-  
 40 paring to fight, *Frederick* and *Charles* having had privat conference by the mediation of the Belgic Princes, peace is proclaimed in both Armys; and it is agreed, That *Charles* his onely daughter, ſhould marry with *Maxi-*  
 1475 *milian*, the Emperors ſon, who was to enjoy all the Provinces belonging to *Charles*, if he ſhould dye without iſſue male. But out of this peace were  
 40 excluded, *Lewis*, King of *France*, *Sigismund* Exarch of *Austria*, the Emperors Coſin German, *Renatus*, Duke of *Lorrain*, and the Switzers, who had broke in upon *Burgundy* by the inſtigation of King *Lewis*, and had taken two Towns.

*Charles* then removing his Camp from *Nuiſſ*, fell upon the *Lorrainer*, whom he drove out of moſt part of his countrey. Then he falls upon the  
 1477 *Switzers*, *Lorrains* Confederates, and takes from them the town and Caſtle of *Granson*; but at laſt his Army is totally routed by them, ſo that he hardly eſcaped himſelf.

The next year he was overthrown again by the *Switzers*: and the year 50 after that, being the 3. Warre he had with the *Helvetians*, he both loſt his Army and life by them. The perfidiouſneſs of *Campobafius*, the *Neapolitan*, who forſook him, was the cauſe of his overthrow, thus revenging himſelf for the cuff the Duke gave him on the ear heretofore. Theſe troubles were accompanied by two Commets, the one appeared five years before

before the death of *Charles*, and the other, in the ſame year hee *An. Christi*  
 died.

The death of *Charles* bred a new War between *Maximilian*, and the *French*. He claimed the marriage of *Mary*, *Charles* his Daughter, accord-  
 10 ing to the Articles of pacification: and withall, the Provinces belonging to her.

The *French* on the contrary, aſſiſted by ſome Belgic Princes, whoſe Chief was *Philip Raveſten*, waſted *Burgundy* and *Flanders*, and changed the  
 10 Dukes Provinces: but at laſt *Maximilian* prevailed, though often times in danger by his ſeditious Subjects, chiefly at *Brugis*, where they had be-  
 ſet him. In 8. years ſpace he recovered all his Father in law's Countries, chiefly by the help of *Albert*, Duke of *Saxony*. *Raveſten* is driven into  
 10 *France*, where he was made Admiral of a Fleet, which he loſt in a Sea-  
 fight with the Turks near the Iſle of *Leibes*.

*Frederick*, after the death of *Matthias*, returns to *Austria*, where he ſup-  
 20 preſſed the High-way-men. He was much troubled with a running Can-  
 ker in the Foot, called by Phyſitians, *Phagedena*, and having overthrown his ſtomack with Musk-Millions, he fell into a looſeneſs that killed him  
 20 the 78. year of his life, and of his Empire, the 54. He left onely two  
 Children behinde him, *Maximilian*, who ſucceeded, and *Cunigunda*, that  
 married with *Albert* of *Bavaria*.

In *Bohemia*, *Bolebracius*, againſt whom the Pope had incenſed *Matthias* of  
 30 *Hungaria*, being dead, *Ladiſlaus* is made King, who makes War with the  
*Hungarian* for *Moravia*, and *Sileſia*, which in hatred of the *Bohemian* Reli-  
 gion, ſubmitted themſelves to the *Hungarian*. But the controverſie was  
 taken up by the Princes, without effuſion of blood: and it was agreed  
 that a part of *Sileſia*, lying next to *Bohemia*, with both *Lufatia's*, ſhould be-  
 long to *Ladiſlaus*, but *Matthias* ſhould poſſeſſe the reſt of *Sileſia*, with *Mo-*  
 30 *ravia*, conditionally, That if he died without an Heir Male, it ſhould re-  
 turn to *Ladiſlaus*; if he had an Heir, That then it ſhould be free both to  
 him, and to *Ladiſlaus*, either to leave, or buy theſe Provinces for 200000  
 Crowns.

In *Italy*, the differences about the Principalities of *Millan*, made way  
 for *Francis Sfortia*, a Mercenary Souldier, to invade it. For *Philip* being  
 dead, in whom the ancient Race of Viſcounts, from *Matthew* the great,  
 failed; ſo that none of that race was remaining, except *Valentina*, *Philips*  
 ſiſter, whom *John Galeatius* the Father, had married to *Lewis* of *Orleans*,  
 ſon to *Charles* the ſiſt of *France*; with whom he gave the Citie *Aſta* for her  
 portion, with this condition, That if her Brothers ſhould die childeleſs,  
 40 her children ſhould be lawfull Heirs to the Principality of *Inſubria*. This  
 grant was not Confirmed by the Emperor, but by the Pope. Duke *Philip*  
 had another Daughter, *Blance*, named by his Concubin, whom he be-  
 ſtows upon *Francis Sfortia*, and withall, *Cremona* for her portion: many laid  
 claim to this Dukedom.

*Frederick* the Emperor by the Law of Feuds, which gives Title of Lands  
 to the Lords, when there is no Heir; *Charles* of *Orleans*, by the right of  
 his mother *Valentina*, to whoſe Heirs that *Dutchie* belonged by the will of  
*Galeatius*, Confirmed by the Pope; *Alphonſus* of *Arragon*, who ſeiſed on *Na-*  
 50 *ples*, laſt claim by the laſt will of Duke *Philip*, vvhon named him Heir  
 for aſſiſting him againſt the *Veneſians*, vvhhen they threatened *Millan*. *Fran-*  
*cis Sfortia* in the right of his Wife, the Baſtard of *Philip*, and by his laſt Will  
 challenges the *Dutchie*. Mean while, the *Millanois* aimed at liberty. *Frederick*,  
 being troubled vvith Domestiſtick broiles, ſleights his Title. *Charles* of *Or-*  
*leans* ſends an Army into *Italy*, under the command of *Reinaldus*, but he  
 vvvas taken, and his Army overthrowv by the *Millanois* and ſo he loſt that

*An. Christi* Principality. *Alphonfus*, finding it too far from him, and beset with so many Competitors, lets fall his claim. Mean while, the *Venetians* finding divers Cities of that *Dutchie*, unwilling to be under *Millan*, begin to fish in these troubled Waters.

*Placentia* and *Landen*, freely submit to *Venice*. *Papia* and *Derthona*, receive *F. Sfortia*. *Navarr*, lying next to *Vercelle*, come under the *Savoyen*; but *Sfortia* being hired by the *Millanois*, took *Placentia* and *Landen* from the *Venetians*, whom he overthrows in a great Battel: then they make peace with him, and assist him against the *Millanois*, and afterward they help the *Millanois* against him, aiming at that Principality themselves: but *Sfortia* deceived their hopes, for by his Arms and Fame, he made all the Cities of that Principality submit to him. Then he called in *Bajazet* the Turk, against the *Venetians*: but at last, the *French King* apprehended him at *Novaria*, as he was raising of Forces out of *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and the *Grisons* Countrey. He carried him into France, where he imprisoned him: he died miserably, and was justly punished for his parricid and ambition, the 5. year of his imprisonment.

*Frances*, also, Grand-childe of *John Galeacius*, was brought into France, and there shut up within a Monastery. So *Lewis* the 12. obtained the Principality of *Insurbria*; and to corroborat his Title, he bribed some about the Emperor *Maximilian* with gold, to get his approbation, That *Lewis* with his posterity, and Successors, should hold the *Dutchie* of *Millan* in Fee of the Emperor.

*Lewis* obtained to this purpose, the Emperors Patent, but with this clause, That he should hold this *Dutchie* in Fee, so it might not prejudice anothers Title: upon this, Pope *Julius* (that he might drive the *French* quite out of Italy, who had already overthrown the *Ligurian*, & *Venetian* power by land) joyns his Forces with the *Venetians* and *Switzers*, and restores *Maximilian* to his Fathers Principality, which he held til the coming of King *Francis*, who having taken *Prosperus Colummus*, at the foot of the Alps, and beaten the *Switzers* near *Millan*, he takes the City, and by a strict Siege, forces *Maximilian* to surrender, who by poyson lost the use of his understanding. He was carried to France, where he dyed of Melancholy and a Fever.

There now remains his Brother *Francis*, whom *Charles* the 5. Emperor, brought back; having in two several battels defeated the *French*, and taken King *Francis* prisoner. But after *Charles* had put *Francis* of *Millan* in possession of his principality, he dispossesseth him again upon suspicion of Treason: Pope *Clement*, the *Venetians*, and the *French* also, upon this are made friends; for they thought it not safe, that *Charles* the Emperor should have too much footing in Italy: therefore they resolve to maintain *Sfortias* cause, but finding that *Charles* was too potent to be forced by Arms to this, they work upon him by intreaties to restore *Sfortia* to his principality, to which *Charles* assented. *Sfortia* is invited to *Bonona*, upon the publick faith, where he receives his *Dutchie*, and withall the Emperor betroths to him his Neece by his Sister, to wit, the Daughter of *Christiern*, King of *Denmark*. By this double knot, *Sfortia* was tyed to the Emperor against the *French*: but the Duke dyed shortly after his marriage; then, when *Cesar* having taken *Tunis*, was returning to *Naples*, and from thence, in a triumphant manner to *Rome*: the *Sfortian* race being extinct in this *Francis* of *Millan*, King *Francis* demands from *Cesar*, the principality of *Millan* for him and his Heirs, being his right by inheritance, and *Maximilians* grant. This was denied by *Charles*, except *Francis* would restore the D. of *Savoy* to his Lands which were violently taken from him by the *French*, most of which Lands were restored; but *Cesar* in the mean time

parts not with his Hold of *Millan*, which he enjoyed whilest he lived, and then transfers it upon his son *Philip*. *An. Christi*

About these times *Apulia* is in great trouble, by reason of the Wars between *Arragon* and *Anjou*, which lasted twenty years, occasioned at first by the impudent lechery of Queen *Foan*, whom Pope *Martin*, and *Lewis* of *Anjou*, did pursue with all Hostility. Hereupon *Foan* implores the aid of *Alphonfus*, King of *Arragon*, now in *Corfica*: he upon her intreaties arrives at *Naples*, with a Fleet of twenty sail, and beats the Forces of France, and those of *Sfortia*; for which service, she adopts *Alphonfus*: he was the Son of *Ferdinand*, and Grand-childe of *John*, King of *Castile*, *Arragon*, and *Sicily*. This *Alphonfus* being the wisest, and learnedst Prince of his time could not endure the insolence and impudence of Queen *Foan*, therefore he forcibly drives her out of *Naples*, who presently repairs to the Pope, accusing *Alphonfus* of his ingratitude, and impiety; therefore she cuts off her former Adoption, and makes *Lewis* of *Anjou* her Heir, whence arose great Wars; in which sometimes the *Arragonian*, sometimes the *Andegeven*, was master of *Naples*.

Upon the death of *Lewis*, his brother *Renatus* undertook the War; but he was so employed in the Wars of *Britany*, that he left the *Neapolitan* War to his son *John*, who for divers years, but with ill success, had Wars with *Ferdinand*, the Bastard son of *Alphonfus*, whom he made Heir of *Naples* by his last will. At length near *Troy* *John* was quite defeated, having lost both the Kingdom, and the Island *Aenaria*, now *Iscla*. Not long after, being conveyed to France in a ship, he dyed of a Fever; his Father *Renatus* dyed shortly after, childless; his Heir was *Charles Main*, his brothers son, who being also childless, made *Lewis* the 11. of France, *Charles* the 8. Father, his Heir, who could never be persuaded to recover his right of *Naples* by Arms, affirming, that he would first quiet all at home, pull down the greatness of the Princes of the blood, and leave the Kingdom to his son, free from trouble and fear.

*Alphonfus* dyed at *Naples* the 65. year of his age: he left the Kingdom of *Sicily* and *Arragon* to his Brother *John*, then King of *Navar*, for his Wife *Blanca*, against his Bastard son *Ferdinand*, King of *Naples*. *Charles* the 8. made War, but before any action, *Ferdinand* dyed, having left two sons, *Alphonfus* his successor, and *Frederick*, and a Grand-childe, *Ferdinand* of *Alphonfus*.

*John* of *Arragon*, Brother to *Alphonfus*, the elder, left *Sicily* to his son *Ferdinand*, of a second venter, and married him to the sifter of *Henry*, King of *Castile*, by whom he had afterward, upon the death of *Henry*, and his son *Alphonfus*, the Kingdom of *Castile*, *Henrys* daughter being excluded, because she was born in Adultery. So *Ferdinand* is now King of *Sicily*, and of both *Spains*. Shortly after by his conquering Arms, he added the Kingdom of *Granado* and *Naples*, all which he transferred upon *Charles* the 5. his Grand-child by his daughter.

This is that *Ferdinand* who subdued and drove out the *Moors*, by the advice of *Consalvus* the great, after they had inhabited *Spain* almost 700. years, from the time that *Miramolinus*, King of the *Moors*, was called in against *Roderick*, King of the *Goths*. For this Service, and for causing the *Moors* that remained in *Spain*, to imbrace the Christian faith, he obtained the title of *Catholick*. The dissention of two Kings in *Granado*, on of which submitted himself as Vassal to *Ferdinand*, the other fled into *Mauritania*, made this Conquest easie to *Ferdinand*, who had both the assistance and counsel of *Consalvus* in obtaining this, and recovering the Kingdom of *Naples* from the *French*. These great changes and troubles of Europe were accompanied with 3. great Comets, which appeared in the space of 16. years.

About

An. Christi

About the year 1454. the *Borussians* fell off from the *Marian* Knights, to *Casimir*, King of *Poland*, who some years before had much weakned the power of these knights by divers victories he had over them: the cause of their defection, was the Tyrannical Government of the *Marians*, occasioned by their often Wars, [of which when people grow weary, they kick off their Governors.]

The *Borussians* joyn themselves to the *Polander*, on these conditions, That they shall be equally capable of all Honours, Offices, and places in the Kingdom: they shall have the suffrages in Parliaments, and in election of the King; That their Merchants shall traffick in *Poland* safely; That all Customes and imposts imposed by the *Marians*, shall be abolished; That no strangers be admitted to be Governors in their Towns or Castles: they shall enjoy their own goods, as heretofore, and shall be ruled by their own laws. But the *Borussians* cunningly to cut of all occasion, either in the *Polonian* to set up, or in the *Marian*, to renew their Tyranny, discharge all their Garrisons, and destroy all their Forts, Castles, and Cittadels, before they made this union with *Poland*. This defection of the *Borussians*, was the occasion of 12. years War, between the *Marians*, and *Polonians*; at last a peace is concluded between *Casimir* of *Poland* and *Lewis Erlings huf* Master of the *Marian* Family, on these Articles, That the Castles and Towns of *Marieburg*, *Siuma*, and *Christeburg*; with some other places and Towns lying upon *Pomerania*, should be delivered up to the *Polander*, and the *Marians* should retain the rest so long as they would be faithfull and subject to *Poland*.

This was the 250. year since first the *Marians* under *Hermannus Salcensis*, were called in by *Conradus Masovius*, against the rebellious *Borussians*, on this condition, That what they did subdue by force of Arms, should be their own. Since that time then that they began to destroy the inhabitants, and their Idolatry, and to replenish the Countrey with *Germans*, it became a part of the Empire under *Frederick*, till now the *Polander* hath obtained it.

About this time, *John*, King of *Cyprus*, married his daughter *Carolota*, to *Lewis* of *Savoy*, to whom he promised that Kingdom for her portion: after King *Johns* death, *James*, his Bastard son seizeth on the Kingdom: shortly after, upon the invitation of the *Cypri*ns, *Lewis* arrives, and *James* avoyds the Island. But shortly after he returns with an Army out of *Egypt*, and drives *Lewis*, with his wife, and *Rhodian* forces, out of the Island: to make his Title the surer, he marrieth with *Accatarina*, daughter to *Mark Cornelius* the *Venetian*, to which the Senate assented, and withall, adopted her for their daughter, that by her they might have the easier access to that Kingdom. Not long after the marriage, *James* dyeth, and leaves his wife great with childe to the Senat; this childe dyed also shortly after his birth, whereupon the mother returns home, and delivers the possession of *Cyprus* to the Senat.

In the year 1440. when *Frederick* began his Empire, the Art of Printing was found out at *Mintz* in *Germany*. In the year 1477. *Eberhard*, Earl of *Wirtberg*, whom afterwards *Maximilian* made Duke, erected the University of *Tubinga*.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XV.

The prosecution of the affaires of Germany, Italy, France, Spain, and the other neighboring places, under Maximilian the Emperor, with the Coronation of Charles the fifth, from the year one thousand four hundred eighty six, till one thousand five hundred twenty.



Maximilian was made Coleagu with his Father *Frederick* in the Empire by the Electoral suffrages. He was a wise Prince, a great Scholar, and a good man. In his time the University of *Witteberg* was erected by *Frederick* of *Saxony*: and that of *Frankfort* on *Vladms*, by *Joachim* of *Brandeburg*. He had 8. years War with the *Belgians*, who had rebelled. These at last he forced to submit to the Imperial yolk, by the Valor and counsel of that brave Commander, *Albert*, Duke of *Saxony*, who having subdued *Gelderland*, falls upon *Frisia*, which *Maximilian* by the consent of the Imperial Princes, bestowed on him, for a recompence of his valor and charges. Some part of this Countrey he subjugated, but being prevented by death, he leaves an imperfect Victory to his Sons, who though they mastered them a while, yet could not long retain *Friesland* in subjection: for not long after, the Cities and Nobility conspire together, and shake off the *Saxon* yolk.

In the beginning of these Belgick Wars, *Maximilian* found much difficulty for two years after his election: he was taken and kept a close prisoner in *Brugis*, where he was disgracefully used, and forced to look upon the tortures, and cruel deaths of his servants, till he was set at liberty by his Father, and the whole strength of the Empire: after the death of *Mas-thias*, *Maximilian* makes War upon *Hungaria*, but at last is contented to give way to the Election of *Ladislaus*, King of *Bohemia*, reserving the right of succession to himself, and successors, if *Ladislaus* should die without issue, male.

After this, he makes War in Italy, but with ill success, so that he lost all he possessed there. First, he Warred in *Hetruria* in defence of *Pisa*, against the *French* and *Florantins*; being invited thither by the Pope, *Lewis Sfortia*, and the *Venetians*. He was carried to that expedition in a Fleet of *Genoa*, but finding that he could not take the Town and Port of *Liburnum*, though he attempted it to the loss of many of his men, he sent away his Army to *Lombardy*, and he followed after, and so returned into *Germany*: But greater wars were kindled by *Charles* the 8. of *France*, a high spirited and hot young prince. He hoped to gain all Italy by his right he had to *Naples*. *Lewis Sfortia* had oportunely implored his aid against the *Arragonians*. *Charles*, to make all sure at home, makes a League with two of his enemies, to wit, with *Maximilian*, whom he had incensed by repudiating his daughter *Margaret*, and by carrying away *Ann* of *Britany* (his Spouse) by *Lewis Sfortia*, who betrothed *Blanche Mary* (sister of *John Galacius*) to him, after he was defaced of his *British* marriage: then he ingratiated *Ferdinand* of *Spain*, by restoring the rich City of *Perpennian*, in the very entry of *Spain*; and those lands which his Father *John* in the *Celiberian* War had mortgaged for money to *Lewis* the 11.

*Charles* then enters Italy with a formidable army, and sets at liberty *Pisa*, from the power of the *Florentins*; and these from the *Medices*, and *Sena* from *Bandalphus Petrusius*. He also brought his Army into *Rome*, and caused the Pope enter into League with him, and to deliver up *Gemes*, the brother of *Bataxes*: thence he marched with unexpected celerity to *Naples*, upon whose approach, *Alphonfus*, with his son *Ferdinand*, and his Uncle

Fre-

An. Christi  
1486



*An. Christi* Frederick, retreated; so that he without great difficulty obtained the kingdom, and entered Naples in Triumph the first of January.

The neighbouring Princes, astonished at this unexpected success, enter into a league against the French: chiefly the Pope, Maximilian Caesar, the Senate of Venice, Lewis Sfortia, with Ferdinand of Spain; which made Charles retreat; and perceiving that the way by which he was to return, was shut up by the Venetians and Sfortia, (whom Lewis of Orleans in the interim had invaded, and seized on Novaria) he makes his passage by the sword, and so having overthrown them in a bloody battle, near the River Tarrus, he returns safe into France.

But Charles continued not long master of Naples, for Ferdinand, son of Alphonso, renews the War, being assisted by Consalvus, whom Ferdinand of Spain had sent with a strong Fleet to defend Sicily: but in the middle of his victories, about two years after the Victory of Charles, he dyed of a Fever, the right to that Kingdom being transferred upon his Uncle Frederick. Against him a league is made between Lewis Sfortia, Pope Alexander, Lewis the 12. of France, son to Charles of Orleans, successor to Charles lately dead, Ferdinand of Spain, the Venetians, and Florentines, on this condition, That Milan should be restored to King Lewis, who claimed it by right of inheritance; and Cremona to the Venetians: That Caesar Borgia, Pope Alexander's son, should be assisted to destroy the Flaminian, Æmilian, and Umbrian Nobility, by which slaughter he aimed at the Principality of Cisalpin Gallia, and that Ferdinand and Lewis should divide the Kingdom of Naples between them. Ferdinand preferred a Kingdom to Consanguinity, in respect of which, he should have assisted Frederick. The hatred of the Venetians against Sfortia, caused this League: for the Pope a little before, with Sfortia, and Venice, were in league against France and Florence; in defence of Pisa: for which cause they drew in Maximilian the Emperor; but when success failed them, and the Venetians aimed at the superiority of Pisa, Sfortia fell off, and opposed himself to the Venetians; which incensed them, and made them enter into league with the Princes against him. Sfortia being now in a great strait, and finding no help from Maximilian, whom the Swissers and Grisons had made War upon, he most wickedly incited Bajazet against Venice, which was his ruin: For when he returned into Lombardy, having the assistance of the Swissers Foot, and Burgundian Horse, he was betrayed to Trampusius the French General, and by him conveyed into France to perpetual imprisonment. His brother also, Ascanius, the Cardinal, as he was flying to Placentia, was intercepted by the Venetians, and delivered up to the French; and so Milan within one year changed her Lords thrice.

Frederick of Arragon, who was now in the Kingdom of Naples, being ignorant of the league between the two Kings of Spain, and France, and that they had parted this Kingdom between them, sent to Consalvus for aid; but in vain, for he was suddenly surprised by the French, who were come down into Campania, so that he was forced with his wife and children to get over into the Castle of Aenaria for safety: Naples being surrendered, he obtains leave of Mamurcius and Obegnius, the French Generals, to repair by sea unto King Lewis of France, hoping to find some favor from him. This request was quickly granted, for they knew, that he should be there imprisoned. He left his young son Ferdinand at Tarentum, to keep it with a strong Garrison, who surrendered both the town and himself to Consalvus, who sent him into Spain to partake of his Father's fortune.

According to the agreement, the kingdom of Naples was divided between the two Kings: the two Provinces of Campania, or Terra laboria, Apru-

*An. Christi* Apulia, or Pracutina, fell to the French, with the City of Naples, the Regall seat of Campania. The other two, namely Bruis, and Apulia, to the Spaniard. But afterwards, because one kingdom could not satisfy two Kings, the French and Spaniard fell out about the division, and so the Spaniard having quite expelled the French, obtained the whole kingdom. Caesar Borgia, having nefariously murdered the Italian Nobility, and poisoned his Father Alexander by a Cup, which he had prepared for the Cardinals, but by the mistake of the Cup-bearer, was presented to the Pope, by command from Ferdinand of Spain was apprehended, and there imprisoned

3, years in the Castle of Medina, whence he escaped by ropes, out of a window, and fled to John, King of Cantabria, in whose Wars, with Alaricus, he was shot with a musket bullet, and so dyed. Upon the irruption of the French into Italy, Maximilian calls a Dyet of the Princes at Worms, for making War against the Turks; but he could not effect any thing: shortly after he makes War against the Helvetians, in which 20000 men were consumed. Eight battles were fought, in which Maximilian had the worst, whose aim was to suppress the growing greatness of the Swissers, to recover the Territories taken from Austria by the Swissers, and to reduce them to the obedience of the Empire. At last a pacification is made at Basil.

Then began the Bavarian War, occasioned by Rupert the Palatin, sonne to Philip the Elector, who married Rupert to George, Duke of Bavaria's Daughter, with whom he obtained from George, a part of the Duchy of Bavaria for her portion. Caesar would not ratify this grant of Bavaria, because it was against the Custom of the Empire, and Laws of Fees, and prejudicial to Albert, Duke of Bavaria; yet the Pope approved it. After the death of George, Maximilian would have a 3. part of the lands granted to be assigned over to Albert of Bavaria, another 3. to Rupert for his Wife's portion, and the rest to the Palatines Family for the losses they had received from Lewis of Bavaria. Philip refused these conditions, therefore he takes up Arms: Maximilian proscribes him, and raiseth an Army which much weakened the Palatine Family: Rupert was assisted by the Bohemians, 2000 of whom were slain. At last, the Palgrave being worsted, Frederick, Elector of Saxony, reconciles him to Caesar, causing him at the Dyet of Colen to make his submission to Maximilian, for which he incurred a while the Emperors displeasure, in that he would mediate for such an enemy of the Empire: yet Caesar pardoned the Palatin, and gave to Ruperts sons, a part of that controverted countrey.

The Venetian War was undertaken by almost all the Kings of Christendom, at the instigation of Pope Julius, who had lately driven out of Bomania, John Bentivolus, being now 70. years old. Their power began to be formidable to the other Princes: but after they had punished the Venetians sufficiently, the same Julius raiseth another War in defence of them. Two years before this, Phylip the son of Maximilian, Prince of Belgium, is invited to Spain by the Nobility, to undertake the Kingdom of Isabella his Mother in law: Ferdinand perceiving his peoples affections more inclined to Phylip than to himself, in anger he fails to Naples: but Phylip being unacquainted with that hot climat, fed too plentifully, and so fell into a fever and dyed the 28. year of his age. He left by his wife two sons, Charles and Ferdinand, and four daughters. Before his death, a Comet was seen.

When Ferdinand understood his son in law was dead, having settled Naples, he returns into Spain, and by the way meets with the French King, with whom he consults about the Venetian War, which the Princes were willing to undertake, that they might curb the growing estate of that City, which used to raise her selfe by the fall of others, and aimed at the Dominion

*An. Christi* minion of all Italy. Therefore Maximilian Caesar, Pope Julius, Lewis of France, Ferdinand of Spain, and Alphonsus of Ferrara, enter into a Confederacy against them. Caesar was willing to be revenged on Venice, for stopping his passage into Italy, when he was travelling to Rome for his Inauguration. He took from the Venetians by Ralph Prince of Anhalt, his General, Vicenza, Verona, and Padua, and defeated the Venetian Army, whereof 9000. were slain. But shortly after they poisoned him at Verona, and so the Cities revolted to the Venetians again. Lewis of France took from them, Cremona, with some other Cities: Alphonsus of Ferrara seized upon divers of their Territories: Pope Julius took Ariminum, Ravenna, and other Towns: and they were Fleeced also by Ferdinand. Thus being exhausted of their money by this War, and robbed of their Cities, and Territories, they humbly beg peace from Julius, which he granted them, but could not persuade the French and Germans, nor the Ferrarian to lay down Armes, which occasioned a new War, in which the French take Bononia, from the Pope; whereupon he excommunicates Lewis, the French King, and pretends to bring back Maximilian Sfortia unto his Fathers principality, whence he was unjustly expelled. The French King on the other side, sleighting the Popes curses, calls a Synod at Pise, in which, after the example of the Synods of Constance and Basill, he desires the Popes actions may be questioned: to this the Florentines at first assented, but shortly after they recanted; whereby the Cardinals and French Garrison by a popular tumult are expelled the City, so that they repair to Milan.

The Pope was assisted by the Venetians, Switzers, and Ferdinand of Spain, who expelled out of Cantabria, John, King of Navar, being of the French Faction. Behinde, France was invaded by King Henry of England. The French and German Army defeat the Venetians near Athesis, then they march to Ravenna, where they totally rout the Popes army, of whose men there were slain sixteen thousand the rest flung down their Armes and submitted.

After this, the Emperor calls home his forces, and makes a league with Spain and England, which furnished the French with work at home: wherefore the French Army is called out of Italy, but as they were marching, they are set upon by the Switzers and Venetians upon the Popes instigation, and driven quite out of Lombardy. So the Pope recovers again Bononia, and casts out the Beutivoli. Genna asserts her own liberty: Maximilian Sfortia is restored to the principality of Milan, and so are the Medici brought back into Florence, whom the French had driven out: and so endeth the Confederacie against the Venetians. After this, Leo 10. takes from Sfortia, Placentia, and Parma, extending the Churches Territories as far as Po.

Lewis of France, and Ferdinand of Spain, secretly make a league, confirming Cantabria upon the Spaniard, and Milan upon the French: but the French King dyeth not long after, and the year ensuing, the Spanish followed: in whom ended the race of the Arragonian Kings, which had reigned from the Berengary Earls of Barcelona, 370 years, and 230 in Sicily. His death was portended by a Comet. To Ferdinand succeeded Charles the fifth, his Grandchild by his daughter. To Lewis succeeded Francis, Duke of Angoulesme, his son in law: he began his reign with the Italian War, in which, breaking through the Alpes, he defeats the Switzers, fighting for Maximilian Sfortia at Milan: the battel lasted two days, of 25000 men, scarce one halfe escaped. He takes from the Pope Parma and Placentia, restoring them to the ancient jurisdiction of the Insubrians: the Castle of Milan is surrendered to him, and Maximilian conveyed into France.

*An. Christi* France. Upon this success, Francis intends to invade the kingdom of Naples, had not Maximilian Caesar called him out of Italy, by stirring up the Switzers and English against him. The Venetian War begun by Maximilian, was ended by Charles, in the league between him and Francis, on these Articles: That Charles should restore the kingdom of Navar to his son John, if the Arbitrators should think fit, and withall 10000 crowns yearly to the French King out of the Kingdom of Naples, for confirming of his right to that Crown: also that Verona should be restored to Venice upon the payment of 20000 crowns to Caesar at two times. Maximilian being now old, confirmed these Articles, and the rather, because he had no hope of aid from Switzerland. But when Charles was elected Emperor, which Francis aimed at, this league was broke, and great Wars fell out between Charles and Francis, in which the possession of Naples, and Milan was recovered by Charles. About this time, Charles Duke of Gelderland, upon the instigation and charges of the French, made Wars against the Brabantins, in hatred of the house of Burgundy.

About these times in the Diocess of Spire, the people began to mutiny for their liberties, after the example of the Switzers: but this sparkle hid 25 years under the Cinders, brake out into a flame through all Germany. At Vienna there was a meeting between Maximilian Caesar, Ladislaus, King of Hungaria and Bohemia, and Sigismund, King of Poland, who renew the old league, which they confirm by mutual marriages, That Mary, Niece to Maximilian, should marry with Lewis, the son of Ladislaus: Anna the daughter of Ladislaus should chuse either of his Nephews for her Husband, with hope of succession to the Kingdom of Hungaria, if Lewis should dye without issue male: That after the death of Ladislaus, Maximilian and Sigismund should have the protection of the children and kingdom, but the Hungarian Nobility, after the death of Ladislaus, which followed shortly, neglected both these Guardians, and fell into Factions about the Tutition of the young King, scarce yet ten years old; dividing his Revenues and power among them, which gave occasion to the Turk (Maximilian being dead, and the Polonian involved in a three-fold War, to wit, the Tartarian, the Russian, and Borusnacetu) to invade Hungaria, and take Belgrade, the chief strength of that kingdom. Maximilian held his last Dyet at Auspurg, in which a consultation is had about the Turkish Warre; for Selymus having overthrown the Sultans kingdom, did threaten Christendom. He recommended his Nephew Charles to the Princes to take care of him after his death, which followed shortly after, having fallen into a Fever, and looseness the 59. year of his age, and the 32. of his Empire. He had two wives, the first was Mary of Burgundy, by whom he had Philip, who by marriage added the kingdoms of Spain, Sicily, and Naples to the House of Austria: His other two sons dyed young; his Daughter Margaret was betrothed to Charles the 8. of France, but by him repudiated, having taken by force Ann of Britany, the onely Heir of that Dutchy, after she was promised to Maximilian. Then Margaret was betrothed to the Prince of Arragon, who dyed before the marriage; at last she married with that unfortunate Prince, Philbert of Savoy. Caesars other wife was Blanca Maria, Daughter to Gallacius of Milan, and sister of John Galeas, by whom he had no issue.

Some few years before Caesars death, Sigismund, King of Poland, and Constantine, Duke of Rofs, or Rossia, defeated the great Army of the Muscovits, having killed about 40000 of the enemies near Borysthenes. About this time arose the quarrel between the Franciscans, holding the Virgin Mary to be conceived without sin, and the Dominicans, who held the contrary: which troubled the world, till some Monks were burned for speaking

*An. Christi* ing through hollow Images of the Virgin, and deluding the people. *An.* 1517. *Martin Luther* began to oppose the Popes indulgences: 100 years after, the burning of *John Huss* at the Council of *Constance*, being encouraged thereto by *Frederick*, Duke of *Saxony*, and seconded by *Erasmus*, *Me-lancthon*, *Eugenbagius*, and others. His intention at first, was onely to oppose the abuse of Pardons, but being exasperated by *Tecelins* the Dominican, who burned his papers, and stirred up other Monks to write invectives against him: he writes to Pope *Leo*, and *Albert*, Arch-bishop of *Magdeburg*, Primat of Germany, that he would submit his Theses to the Judgement and Censure of the Roman Church; and at the last Dyet of *Maximilian*, held at *Ausburg*, he promiseth to Cardinal *Cajetan* that he would be silent, if his adversaries would be quiet: but they still incensed his fiery spirit, with more oyle, so that now he proceeds further in opposing Image worship, Purgatory, Transubstantiation, and other controverted points.

After the death of *Maximilian*, the Turk having settled Syria and Egypt, prepares to invade *Panonia*: the French King having beat the *Switzers*, and possessed himself of *Millan*, aims at *Naples*, and strives to translate the Empire from Germany to France: Therefore he raiseth an Army, makes way with Pope *Leo* the tenth: desires the Title of Emperor of *Constanti-* 20 *nople*, and promiseth to make War against the Turk. For this purpose, the *Venetians* are invited to joyn with him: Ambassadors are sent into Germany to treat with the Electors for the Empire. The Arch-Bishop of *Mints* sends to acquaint the Electors that the Emperor was dead, and that they should meet at *Franckfort* about his successor, who all met at the day appointed, and place, in the Church of *S. Bartholemew*, where the Patent called the *Golden bull*, was read, the Decrees of which, the Electors standing at the Altar, swear to observe. After this, they go from the Altar to the Chapel, where the Election useth to be; there the Arch-Bishop of *Mints* having prayed for direction from God, and a blessing on 30 their proceedings, he makes a speech to them, shewing the weight and necessity of that business they were now about; of that concord which ought to be amongst them: how dissenting suffrages have heretofore caused much civil War: how much blood had been shed about the succession of the Emperor, till *Otho* the 3. by the Popes approbation established this Electoral Colledge, by which these 500 years, the Imperial possession hath remained in this Nation: He alleadgeth many examples of misery and destruction in Germany, by disagreeing Elections; and how needful at this time concord is, when Germany hath so many enemies, and the Turk is threatening *Christendom*: when the eyes of all Nations 40 are now fixed upon this Election: When the Bishop had ended his speech, the Electors commended him for his wisdom and eloquence, and promise to follow his directions. Mean while the Ambassadors of *Charles*, King of *Spain*, Arch-Duke of *Austria* and *Burgundy*, with some German Princes, come to *Mints*, recommending to the Electors, the wisdom, courage, moderation, and other virtues of this Prince; likewise his power and ability above othe Christian Kings, which *Maximilian* perceiving, recommended him to the Electors: this so wise a Prince, so loving to Germany would not have done had he known the contrary. But the French Legates at Confluence, with great promises, strive to procure the Electors suffrages, 50 shewing that they should not prejudice the Laws if they Elected *Francis* for their Emperor, if they consider the great union heretofore of the German and French Nation, under the Family of *Pipin* and *Charles*, almost 100 years: how by their united strength they suppressed the *Lombards*, *Sarazens* in Italy and France: how needful their union is now to suppress the

the Turks greatness; how much *Francis* was affected to the well-fare of *Italy*, whereof he had now a good part, which being united with *France*, and *Germany*, would master the Turk both by Land and Sea. Besides that, no Prince in *Christendom* was so fit to be Emperor as *Francis*, both in respect of his power, as of his Militarie skil, valor, and happines, whereof he hath given good experience in recovering of *Insabria*; and that the Germans should lose nothing of their Liberties by this Election, but rather increase them by obtained offices and places of Command in *France*, promising that no French Garrisons should be kept in *Germany*, but the natives 10 of *Germany* onely.

The Electors thanked the King for his good will to *Germany*, promising to proceed in the Election according to their Laws, and Oath which they had taken. Not long before this, the French King had sent Legates to the *Switzers*, shewing them how needfull it would be to the peace of *Christendom*, and destruction of the Turk, if *Francis* were chosen Emperor, that therefore they would be no hinderance to this Election, which was so much desired by the Christian Princes, and the Pope himself for suppressing of the Turk who was aiming at the total subversion of Christian laws, and religion: He promiseth also that the *Switzers* shall be great gainers by 20 this Union. To this the *Switzers* answer, That they would not hinder or molest the liberty of the Electors in their choise. They send Letters also to the German Princes, shewing how the French were busie to procure suffrages, and withall dissuade them from Electing *Francis*, for that would cause much trouble in *Germany*, and that there was no need to chuse strangers, having so many able men of their own Nation fit for that high employment. They write also to Pope *Leo* the 10. That he would not per-wade the Electors to chuse *Francis*, for that would cause great Wars between *France* and *Germany*, to the great prejudice of *Italy*. The Pope by his answer seems to be inclined rather to *Charles*, then *Francis*, though 30 he nameth neither.

Mean while the Electors proceed to the Election, the Bishop of *Mints* speaks first, shewing that it was against their Oath, the liberty, Honour, and safety of *Germany* to chuse *Francis* being a stranger, & whose aim was to transerre the Empire into *France*, which could not be possessed in *Germany* heretofore by *Charles* the Grose, and the *Otho's*, without great Wars. If then *Francis* be chosen, the French will domineer in *Germany*, and will set it all on fire of Civil Wars: for he hath already denounced War against *Charles*, and hath broken the old league between *France* and *Burgundy*; and threatened War against *Naples*; besides, the *Austrians* and *Belgians* have al- 40 ready refused to be under the French yolk: and there is no more reason for *France* to demand the German Empire, because they derive the Originall of their Kings from the Germans, then they have to demand Troy from the Turk, because they derive themselves from *Hectors* son. If *Francis* (saith he) be chosen, then must the Electors make war against *Austria*, so well deserving of *Germany*, and violate the Will of *Maximilian*. They will arm *Francis*, who is too ambitious of domination, with power to raise War in the bowels of the Empire. As for his suppressing of the Turks, in that he can do nothing, except first he suppress the *Belgians* at home, and the *Neopolitans* in *Italy*. He concludes then Negatively, against the Election of *Francis*: as for *Charles* he is doubtfull, because *Spain* is so remote 50 from *Germany*, which by reason of the Turks, or of civill dissentions, requires the Emperors presence. Besides, it is to be feared that *Spain* having once got the Empire, will not part with it again, nor will they ever suffer *Germany* to enjoy *Millan*, which they have conquered by their blood. Therefore he thinks it might be safer to chuse one of their own German Princes

*An. Christi* Princes, if any one had power enough to buckle with Spain or France; but if these two Kingdoms fall out, *Germany* will be wronged for want of a potent Emperor: which was the cause that in *Frederick* the 3. time, the *Burgundians* marched without controule through a great part of *Germany*: *Philip Maria* domineered in *Italy*; and the Emperor himselfe was beset even in *Austria*, who was beholding to *Bohemia* for his liberty: and lastly he was driven out of *Austria* by the *Hungarians*; besides the late controversies in Religion are like to make great broiles in *Germany*, which cannot be suppressed without a generall Council, and a prince more potent then any of the German Peers, who must both assemble and defend the Council: and no small power is required against the Turk; therefore he concludes in the Affirmative, that in respect of power, *Charles* is the fittest for the Empire; and the rather because he is a German prince, as Arch-Duke of *Austria*, and not a stranger: and besides, a prince of excellent parts and temper for government, whereof he hath given ample testimony in settling Spain, and composing the differences thereof: descended also of brave princes, if you look upon the virtues either of *Philip* his Father, or of *Maximilian* his Grand-Father: He is also of an age fit for Action and Government; not a childe, nor an old decrepit man. As for his remoteness from *Germany*, he may be so dealt with, (in respect of many urgent occasions, and of his large principalities in *Germany*, and *Belgium*) to make his oftneft residence there, seeing he will finde employment enough in driving the French out of *Italy*, in keeping off the Turks from *Austria*, and in settling Religion.

Having finished, the other Electors desire the Bishop of Trevers to speak, being a man of learning, judgement, and experience, as one accustomed to publick employments both in *Rome* and *Germany*, and well acquainted with the estate of *France*. He therefore having commended the Bishop of Mints for his wise speech, sheweth, That if his opinion be followed, the old prophesie will be fulfilled, which was, That *Maximilian* should be the last German Emperor. But saith he, there should be no need of a foreign prince, if the princes of *Germany* were not idle and lasse, but would imitate the valor of their progenitors: Yet if there must be a foreign Emperor, he prefers *Francis* to *Charles*, because Spain is farther off, which having got once the Empire, will hardly part with it again, besides, if *Charles* should be elected, because of his principalities in *Germany*, then *Francis* may be chosen, who hath the *Duchy* of *Millan*, and Kingdom of *Arles*, anciently belonging to the German Emperors. Again, the benefit that will redound to all Europ, by the Union of *France* with *Germany* is very great; for so *Italy* will be quieted, the pope satisfied, and the Turks suppressed: the French also, and German natures do sympathise in love, manners and opinions; but Spain as it is more distant in place, so it is more different in qualities, and in respect of longinquity, less able to help *Germany* at a pinch, and to endure our cold climat: besides, That Spain will have the glorie of all our Victories, and make us their slaves; whereas the French will share with us: if *Francis* be Emperor, *Millan* will be as well ours as theirs, and the *Belgians* will be less able to stir against him, and he will have the less cause to War against them, or to trouble *Italy* seeing *Francis* enjoyeth *Millan* quietly; so that he will have no thing to hinder him from falling on the Turk. But if we chuse the Spaniard, the troubles will arise in *Italy*, and so the Turkish War will be hindered. The French will fall upon *Naples*, and if he prevail, will force the Pope to annihilate our Election, which will cause unspeakable troubles; besides, how hard it will be to get the Empire out of the Spaniards hands having once hold of it, may be conjectured by the Carthaginians, who having

once got footing in *Sicily*, could not in many years be driven out thence, nor the Spaniards out of *Naples*, nor can the Turks yet be expelled Europe.

If we compare these two Kings together, we will finde that *Francis* is the better Scholar, the wiser man, and more experienced, because more aged: in *Charles* there is but an inclination and disposition as yet, to princely and military arts; but in *Francis* there is a habit who hath with such felicity managed his Wars in *Italy*, as to overthrow the *Switzers*, and subdue *Millan*: Therefore he concludes in the affirmative, for *Francis*, shewing what inconveniences will arise to *Germany*, by the remoteness of *Charles*: but he prefers to both a Native Prince of *Germany*, who is such in Habitation, Language, Manners and Original: such a man may be potent enough, saith he, if there be but worth and courage in him, and unity among us: for when one told *Lewis* of *France*, That *Maximilian* was but a Consul of *Auspurg* signifying his weakness, true, saith the King, but when he beats his Drum all *France* trembles; intimating the Emperors power, which is formidable to the neighbouring Nations, for (saith he) inferior Princes, such as *Albert* Duke of *Saxony*, *Albert* Marquis of *Brandeburg*, the *Bavarian* and others, have upon occasion raised great Forces, why then should we mistrust the Emperors power, or prefer a stranger to a Native.

After he had spoken, the Electors sat silent a while, musing what was best to be done: at last *Frederick*, Duke of *Saxony*, delivered his opinion, That *Francis* by their law could not be chosen: that *Charles* was a German prince, and that they stood in need of a powerfull Emperor in those turbulent times, and that *Charles* was in this respect to be preferred before all others: but yet that certain conditions for the liberty and safety of *Germany*, must be proposed to him. To this the other Electors assented. The Bishop of Trevers told them, that he foresaw the Fate of *Germany*, and change of the Empire, therefore wished them seriously to consider, but withall for quietness sake, he would joyn his suffrage with them, so that day was spent in debates. The next day they meet to consult about the conditions to be proposed to *Charles* his Ambassadors then at Mints, which being accepted, a day for the election is set in *S. Bartholemews* chappel: Mints is first asked whom he thought fit should be Emperor, answers *Charles* Arch-Duke of *Austria*; then he asks the rest, they all answer the same. These suffrages were indorsed and sealed, and then publicly proclaimed: whereupon the Arch-Bishop of Mints made a speech to the Nobility and people, thanking God for chusing a Prince so eminent in Virtue, so excellent in power, so sweet in his own nature and disposition, who being now of the same age with *Alexander* when he began his Empire, was fit for great Actions, and Heroick exploits. He thanked God also for the unanimous assent of the Electors; whereas heretofore their disagreeing Elections have been the cause of much bloodshed and Civil Wars in *Germany*; therefore he wisheth the people to be thankful, joyful, dutiful, and obedient to such a Prince, who is no stranger to them, but of the Austrian Family, which for above 80. years had deserved so well of *Germany*, who hath given already testimonies of his princely Virtues, by settling and uniting the factions and warlike spirits of Spain, which now was to be united to the German Empire. When the speech was ended, all gave a shout, and with joyful acclamations allowed the Election, and prayed for the prosperity of the Emperor.

The Ambassadors of *Charles* are sent for, and their advice is required about settling of the Empire in quietness from the French Factions, till *Charles* should be ready to come himself: upon this *Casimir*, Marquis of

Brant-

*An. Christi* Brandeburg is appointed to place Garrisons where there was suspicion, and to have an Army ready if need should require: some Electors were joyned with him as his counsellors: the Ambassadors are accompanied by the Electors to Mintz, who returning to *Frankford*, send *Frederick*, Palatine of the *Rhen*, with some other Princes, as their Ambassadors to *Charles*, one of whom made such hast that he came to *Barcinum*, or *Barellona* from *Frankford* in nine days: He found the King in Bed, in the morning, whom he acquaints with the glad news of his Election, for which he is rewarded with good store of Gold: the Palatin is met with by the King almost three miles without the town, to whom he delivers his letters, in which the Princes expresse their good will to, and great hopes they have of him, whom they humbly desire to accept of the Empire, and to hasten his coming into Germany.

*Charles*, by his Orator *Mercurius*, answers the Ambassadors, That he was very joyfull for the good will of his Countrey towards him, and their good opinion in conceiving him onely worthy of that high employment, and honour, therefore promisseth to return mutual love to his countrey, and perpetual good will to the Princes his Cofins. In the mean while, *Charles* was perplexed within himself, when he considered the great weight that lay on him if he accepted the Empire, to wit, Wars both with *France* and the *Turks*, and the offence he should give *Spain* in forsaking them: on the other side, he thought it hard to refuse what God, and the free Election of his Countrey had cast upon him, tending so much to the honour of his Family, and well-fare of Christendom: Therefore he wisheth *Frederick* to acquaint the German Princes, that he would accept the Empire: then he calleth to God for wisdom, with *Solomon* to rule his people, Grace to imitate the virtues of *Trajan* and *Theodosius*, two Spanish Princes called to be Emperors: then having writ his Letters to the Princes, promises to act nothing without them, and to be with what speed he can in Germany. He dismisseth the Palatine, after he had bestowed rich gifts on him.

In the begining of the spring, *Cesar* set sail, and arrives in *England*, where he is Royally entertained by King *Henry* the 8. who promised to wait on him at his Coronation: so a league is confirmed between them. Then he comes into *Belgium*, where he is received with joyful acclamations, finding him now a man, who went from them a childe. He made some stay there to settle the Countrey, and to receive King *Henry* who came not, being hindred by the *French*, with whom he enters into a league. At last *Charles* comes to *Aix*, attended by the flower of the *Burgundian*, and *Belgian* Nobility. He was met by the Electors, and rest of the German Princes: by the Priests also, carrying the Monuments of *Charles* the great. The next day, being the 12 of *October*, he was crowned, though the plague was in the town. *Mints* and *Colen* put on his Robe, and led him to the Altar, the Palatine carrying before him the Globe of the world; *Saxony*, the Sword, and *Brandeburg*, the Scepter: *Trevers* Anointed him: *Colen* and *Mints* Crown him. After he had sworn at the Altar, then the Sword and Scepter were delivered to him: after this, the great Feast is prepared, in which *Mints* standeth with the great Seal in his hand; *Brandeburg* with the Scepter; the King of *Bohemia's* Ambassador is Cup-bearer; and the Palatine, Sewer. Mean while, the Duke of *Saxony* distributes Hay in the Market place to the Horses: a whole Ox, stuffed with all sorts of Birds, is roasted, of which the first dish is presented to the new Crowned King of the Romans: after the Coronation, *Cesar*, with the Princes go to *Colen*, to confer about the next Dyet, which was appoynted

appoynted to be held at *Wormes*, the first of *January*: this being done, *An. Christi* *Charles* returns too into *Belgium*; and the Princes to their ovvn homes.

## CHAP. XVI.

*The affairs of Italy, Germany, Netherlands, with the actions of the Popes of those times, and the Council of Trent, &c. under Charles the 5. Ferdinand and Maximilian, from the year one thousand five hundred twenty, till one thousand five hundred seventy six.*



*Charles* the fifth being Crowned (as is said) in his first Dyet held at *Wormes*, proscribes *Luther* to ingratiate himself with Pope *Leo*: but *Frederick* the Elector hid him at *Wartberg* till the troubles were past over, raised by *Carlostadius* for breaking down the Images; then *Luther* returns to *Viteberg*. Mean while the Pope makes a League vwith *Charles* to drive the French out of *Insabria*, and all *Italy*, vvhich vvas easie to be done, by reason the *Svitzers* had fallen off from the French for vwant of pay. *Millan* is restored by *Cesar* to *Francis Sfortia*, brother of *Maximilian*; *Parma* and *Placencia* to the Pope, vvhose shortly after dyed not vwithout suspicion of poyson given him by his Chamberlain, in vvhose place vvas set up *Hadrian*, Bishop of *Utricht*, sometimes *Cesar's* School-master, but then Governor of *Spain*: He gave way for a general Synod to suppress the differences in Religion, and to correct the corruptions of the Clergie. He made a League between *Charles Cesar*, *Henry* of *England*, *Lewis* of *Hungaria*, and some of the Italian Princes, having excluded the French, from whom the Venetians fell off: in the interim, *Adrian* dyeth the second year of his Pontificate. In his time the Inquisition begins to burn *Lutherans* as Hereticks: two Monks were burned at *Bruxels*. *Luther* rageth at *Henry* the 8. for writing against him, and assuming from the Pope the Title of Defendor of the Faith. *Zuinglius*, a Canon of *Tigurum*, caused the Senate of that City to cast off the Roman Religion. King *Francis* of *France* taking occasion upon the Commotions of *Spain*, seisseth almost all *Navar*, and sends a great Army against *Millan*: but *Cesar* drives the French again out of *Italy*, and sends *Charles* of *Burbon* into Province, who in vain attempted *Massyles*. *Francis* retakes *Millan*, being forsaken by *Sfortia*, but in the siege of *Papia* is taken himself prisoner, having seperated his Army by the advice of *Clement* 7. who succeeded *Adrian*. Hereupon *Clement* fearing that *Cesar* would be too great in *Italy*, makes a League with the French & Venetians, to restore *Sfortia*. *Cesar* sets *Francis* again at liberty on such conditions as he would not perform, and being angry with the Pope abolishes his power throughout all *Spain*. He takes the Castle of *Millan*, and the Columnii invade *Rome*, where they besiege the Pope in his Castle of *S. Angelo*, and plunder his Palace of the Vatican. The Churches are spoiled, the priests abused, the rich men plundered, the Pope forced to yeild upon *Cesar's* conditions, and the Cardinals Caps are openly sold. Thus was *Clement* punished for breaking his League with the Emperor.

Mean while the *Florentines* turn out the *Medices*, and set themselves free: *Genna* is forced to submit to the French power, which after this layeth siege to *Naples*, but the sickness so raged in his Army, that it consumed



An. Christi

20000. the rest were dispersed. Neither was their French Fortune better in *Infubria*, for they lose *Genua* again with the Castle, and are driven out of *Savona*, and *Burbon* taken prisoner, so that the Confederates are now forced to think of Peace with *Caesar*: but *Germany* is much troubled now with Controversies of Religion: the Protestants are divided among themselves; *Carlostadius*, with *Zuinglius*, and *Oecolampadius*, in poynts of the Eucharist oppose themselves to *Luther*: many *Lutherans* are burned for Hereticks: the Rusticks and servants, under shew of Evangelical liberty, rebel against their Lords and Masters: *Luther* with all his preaching and writing, could not reclaim them; but they in great flocks drive out the Gentry, pull down their Castles, kill and butcher all that make resist. 10  
ance: At last by the confederat *Swevians* are overthrown near *Ulm*, *France*, and other place. About 50000 of them are slain, and their Ring-leader is roasted alive at a gentle fire: yet shortly after they fly out again by the instigation of one *Thomas Munzerus*, a mad Preacher, but are utterly defeated by *Philip*, the Landgrave: *Munzerus* preaching is spoiled by the loss of his head. Another Rebellion against the Bishop of *Trevers*, is quieted by the punishment and death of their Captain *Siccinius*.

Mean while *Luther* goeth on boldly in his Reformation. He sets out the New Testament, and Psalms in *Dutch*, and causeth Divine service to be performed in the Vulgar tongue, whose labor in this is commended by *John Duke of Saxony*, who succeeded his brother *Frederick* by *George of Brandenburg*, by *Ernestus* and *Francis of Luneburg*, by *Philip the Landgrave*, *Philip of Pomerania*, and some others. These protested against the decrees of *Ratisbon*, and *Spire*, in prejudice to religion: hence came the name of Protestants. *Albert*, Master of the *Tenonick* order, and Duke of *Borussia*, married with *Dorothy*, Daughter to *Frederick*, the first King of *Denmark*; then did the *Rhodian* Knights obtain the Isle of *Malta*, and at the same time the sweating sickness brake out in *England*.

*Charles* preparing against the Turk, makes a League with the Pope at *30 Barcelona*, wherein it was agreed, That *Caesar's* Daughter *Margaret*, should marry with *Alexander of Medices*, and that he may be restored to his ancient Dominion of *Florence*. The Venetians also joyn in this League, and delivered up the towns they had among the *Samnites*, in *Picenum*, and *Apu-*  
*lia*.

It is also agreed, That *Francis* paying 200000 Crowns, should receive his Children again which were his Hostages. Then after *Caesar* had beaten *Solyman*, he is Crowned at *Bononia* with great state by the Pope, to whom he swore to destroy the *Lutherans*, who at *Marpurg* tryed to be reconciled to *Zuinglius*, but could not. Shortly after in the Dyet at *Auspurg*, they exhibited the confession of their faith from the place called *Augustana*, which was openly read, but then rejected by *Caesar*. The *Lutheran* Princes are enjoined to restore all to the Church again, under pain of proscription, and not to write or speak against the Roman Doctrine. But *Luther* publisheth a book, exhorting the Germans to reject that impious Edict of the Dyet, and to oppose the Roman Tenets, and to defend the Protestant Princes by the sword. *Caesar*, to retain the Empire in his Family, caused his Brother *Ferdinand*, at *Colen* to be proclaimed King of the Romans. The same year *Florence*, after a long siege is surrendered to *Caesar*, and according to the Agreement between *Caesar* and the Pope, *Alexander of Medices*, the Bastard son of *Lawrence*, is made Duke of *Florence*; but *Charles* finding the Turk preparing against him, makes peace with the *Lutherans*, by the mediation of *Albert*, Arch-Bishop of *Mims*, and *Ludovick*, the *Palsgrave*. In his Army arose a great mutiny for want of pay, which made him alter his resolu-

An. Christi

resolution, and return by *Italy* into *Spain*. The Turks wast and plunder all where they came; but in their return lose both their spoiles and lives in *Helvetia*.

The *Bernois* after the Example of *Zurich* and *Basil*, shake off the Roman religion: whereupon by the instigation of *Ferdinand* and *Clement*, great troubles are raised, which the French endeavoured to compose, but could not. At last they come to a Battel, in which *Zuinglius* is killed, and his body burned; *Oecolampadius* grieving for the loss of his friend, dyed. The *Tigurins* recruit again, and try another Battel, in which there was such 10  
lois on both sides, that they agreed to live peaceably one with another; notwithstanding their differences in religion. In *Westphalia* a War is raised by *John of Leyden*, the Taylor, who being infected with the madness of *Muntzer*, and back'd by *Bernard Rotman*, Minister of *Monaster*, cavilled against Baptisme of Infants, bragging much of Enthusiasmes and the Spirit: A great part of *Monaster* sided with him. No disputation nor council could work on these men; but to strengthen themselves they call in many strangers, they thrust out the old Senate, and choose new Senators; they call the City *Jerusalem*, and dream of new Apostles, Kings, and Judges: but the Bishop by the German forces so besieged their new *Jerusalem*, that 20  
it was vexed with as great a Famine as the old, and all kinde of calamities and outrages. At length after sixteen months siege the Town is taken; the Souldiers are put to the sword; King *Fohn*, *Knipperdolling*, *Berub*, and their Minister *Kresching*, are nipped with hot burning pincers, and hanged upon a high tower.

Pope *Clement* confirms a new Order of Capuchins, and procrastinates the promised Synod, leaving that burthen by his death to *Alexander Ernestus* his successor, whose pontifical name was *Paul* the third: he seemed very desirous to have a general council: He makes his Nephewes Cardinals: *Mantua* is the place first named for a Council, then *Vicentia*. Fifteen of the protestant Princes, and 30 Cities do remonstrate to his Embassador *Vergerius*: That a general Synod is the Tribunal of the whole Church, not of the Pope alone; and that the Pope was a party, therefore no competent Judge: that he ought not first of himself to condemn *Luther*, and then force the Synod to do the like. *Luther* at *Smalcald*, frames some Articles, subscribed by certain Divines, which he exhibits to the Synod at *Mantua*.

Mean while *Caesar* makes an expedition into *Africa*, to restore *Museaffes* to his Kingdom of *Tunis*, being turned out by *Barbaross*, the pyrate of *Mitylene*, whom *Solyman* had furnished with a fleet, himself being employed 40  
in the Persian War. *Barbaross* is overthrown, the Moor restored to his Kingdom, and the Castle *Guleta* built by *Charles*, which made the Christians Navigation the more secure. The Turk took *Seleucia*, but in his return lost the most part of his Army by Famine and Want. When *Caesar* was returned from *Africa*, he seized on *Millan*, (now void by the death of *Sforzia*) as being Lord of the Fee. The French King on the other side claims it as his inheritance, and because the Duke of *Savoy* adhered to the Emperor, he drives him out of a great part of his Territories, which so moved *Caesar*, that he made a great complaint to the Pope at *Rome* against the French, and withall sends an Army into France: but Pope *Paul*, understanding that the Turk had taken *Cliffa* in *Dalmatia*, *Carcyra* from the Venetians, and subdued *Moldavia*, makes a peace of ten years between *Caesar* and the French at *Nicaa*, a town of *Province*, where he procures for his Nephew *Octavius*, the Widow of *Alexander Medices*, who for his intemperate Lechery, was murdered by his Cousin *Jermin*, *Lawrence*. *Cosmus Medices*, is by *Caesar* made Duke of *Florence*, but against the Popes will. The  
Ddd 2 fleet

An. Christi  
1538

fleet which the Emperor, Pope and Venetian sent against the Turk, is overthrown by Barbarossa and stormy weather. Luther translates the Bible into Dutch, and prints it; whose example in this, was followed by divers other Nations: At Straisburg a Colledge is erected, the Iesuits societie is instituted by Loiola a Spaniard, the Protestant Princes make a league among themselves, to whom is joyned the Dane, who had lately changed his Religion: Caesar upon the intreatie of his brother Ferdinand, calls a Dyet at Francford, for reconciling the differences in Religion, where a truce is given the Protestants.

Caesar not long after this, having buried his Emperers Isabel, King John of Portugall's sister, makes a journey into France, where he is royally received by King Francis at Paris, and Eleanor his sister, King Francis his wife; he sends Ambassadors to Venice to incite them against the Turk, whose metropolis Constantinople was almost burned down; but the Castle of Gulcea was recovered by Barbarossa, then Caesar hastneth to Belgium to suppress the rebellion of Gaunt, whose old Priviledges he took away, and put to death the seditious Authors, he appoints a conference at Wormes, between the Catholicks and Protestants, which was interrupted by the Pope fearing a Schisme. After this Charls growing more milde towards the Protestants, indeavoured to have a conference of moderate Divines at Ratisbon, for reconciling some controverted points; but Catrenus the Cardinall fearing the Popes displeasure, averted the Emperors minde, who refers it to the general Synod, for he was then preparing of a fleet for Algier in Africk against the Turks, which came to nothing, for the winds and storms so spoiled the ships before Algier, that they were forced to return into Spain with great loss; so likewise Ferdinand's preparation in Germany against the Turks did miscarry, by the sickness in the Army, and for want of discipline: About this time also, Francis finding that Charls deluded him about the restitution of Millan, and that he had put to death his Legats going to the Turks, breaks off the league, and draws William of Cleveland, to whom Charls had denied the possession of Gelderland, to side with him; who therefore endeavoured to seise upon Antwerp, for Charls of Egmond heir of his fathers quarrell with the house of Burgundy, left Gelderland by his last will to William of Juliers, and to his only daughter Mary his wife, whose son William became heir of Juliers, Cleveland, Gelderland, and other places; this wealth, that he might the more easily enjoy and retain, against the great power of Caesar, he thought it his safest way to enter into a league with France, which caused afterwards great warrs. Charls to strengthen his cause against France, strives to make the Pope on his side, therefore he labours to suppress the Protestants; yet he would not part with Parma and Placentia, parcels of the Dutchie of Millan, to Octavius, Farnesius; Pauls Nephew. He prepares then to make warr upon France and Cleveland, for this purpose he restores to Cosmus Medices his Castles for two hundred thousand crowns: The French are assisted by Christian 3<sup>d</sup> of Denmark, and Gustavus the Swede, for some wrong they had received from Charls; But Francis unwisely divides his Army into 5. parts, and falls upon 5. several Imperiall Territories, by which he weakened his power, and lost quickly the places he took; Cleveland lost so many of his Townes, that he was forced to submit to Caesar, and to content himself with the loss of Gelderland: But the French take Laudress and Luceburg, and assist the Turk in the siege of Nicea, and defeat the Cesarians in Piemont; wherefore Caesar at Spire gives peace to the Protestants till the next Dyet: Shortly after he recovers Luceburg, and takes divers Townes from the French, wasting all his Countrey almost to Paris, so that Francis was glad to sue for peace, and to restore Savoy.

During the quietness which the Protestants had under Charls, they erect in divers places Colledges, and Schools for learning; but those Halcyonian days held not long; for Caesar and Francis combine together to restore the old Religion,

An. Christi  
1546

Religion, and to suppress all gainsayers: Therefore Proclamations are made through all their dominions against Protestantisme: One Peter Brulius for opposing the Roman Faith, is burned at Turnay, The Waldenses are massacred in Provence: Their extirpation was urged in the Dyet at Wormes. Paul assembleth the Synod at Trent; with him Caesar, the French, and Polonian joyn in league; Caesar is reproved and threatened in a sharp Letter, which Luther answered, for conniving so long at the Protestants. Henry of Brunswick, for raising new troubles, is taken prisoner with his son by the Land-grave; the next year after this Luther died, 29. years after he began this fatall quarrell. The conference at Ratisbon is dissolved, the Protestants complaining of their hard usage; and refusing to stand to the decrees of Trent. Minns and Trevers fall off from Herman of Colen, and Frederick Palatine, who were lately turned Lutherians: Caesar raiseth an Army, Colen is proscribed by the Pope, a truce is made with Solymann, lest he should hinder the warr intended against the Protestants: The Pope promiseth to assist Caesar with 12 thousand Foot, 500 Horse, and good store of gold. Charls declares that his raising of Forces was not against the Cities, but some Princes who obstructed justice and the peace: The Saxon and Landgrave, whom Caesar aimed at, remonstrate that they were free from all crimes except Heresie, which was the onely cause of the Popes war: most of the Princes side with the Emperor. Denmark was now in league with Charls, and the house of Burgundy, therefore to avoid offence, Christian the third, would not assist the Protestants. The Saxon and Landgrave are proscribed by Caesar, who hath now a great Army of Pontificians, Spaniards, and Germans, with which great Forces of the Belgians do joyn near Ingolsta notwithstanding the Protestants endeavoured to hinder this conjunction: Caesar to distract the Protestant Army, assists Maurice the Saxons Cousin German, with Forces against the Elector, with whom before he had a quarrell: Hereupon the Protestants are necessitated to transferr their Army into Saxony, and to leave a Garison in Sævia: The Landgrave returns home with his Forces, unwilling to fight against Maurice his son in Law; So it was easie for Caesar to subdue the Sæves and Noricks. Frederick Palatine, a friend but lately to the Protestants, now reconciles himself to the Emperor, so many others submit to him: In the mean while the Protestant doctriens of traditions, Apochripha books, originall sin, justification by faith alone, and their opinions of the Sacraments are condemned in the Councell of Trent.

The Saxon recovers what Maurice had taken from him, and withall surpriseth divers of his Towns, he drawes to his side the Bishopricks of Halberstad and Magdeburg, Caesar puts a mulct upon Ainsburg and Strasburg, and receives them into favour; But Herman Bishop of Colen, upon perswasion of his friends, resignes his Bishoprick: His successor Adolphus presently abolished the begun reformation: Caesar takes in divers Towns in Saxony, in the interim his great Enemy King Francis dies, a friend to the Protestants, not out of love to them, but of hatred to Charls, therefore he used sometimes underhand to furnish them with money: Saxon being now destitute of the friendship of France, is exposed to the Emperors fury, who with the Forces of his brother Ferdinand and Maurice, falls upon his Countrey, the Duke had sent most part of his Army into the Cities, therefore makes haste to shelter himself in Witteberg, but Caesar foording over Albis, overtakes him, and forceth him to fight: In this conflict the Duke is wounded and taken, and by a Councell of Warr condemned to die, but he redeems his life by resignation of his Electorship, and by surrendring Witteberg and Gotha to Caesar, his estate was confiscate, and bestowed upon Ferdinand and Maurice; a yearly pension was allowed him. At Dracenburg, though the Protestants had the better of the day from the Cesarians, yet they were much dejected for the affliction

*An. Christi* affliction of the Saxon. The Landgrave by perswasion of Maurice his son in Law, and Brandenburg humbly submits himself to Caesar, who detained him prisoner: Caesar carried away out of Germany into his Provinces, about 500. piece of Ordnance, and exacted of the Protestant 160000 thousand crowns; Ferdinand also punished the Bohemians, for not invading, but rather defending the Saxons Territories: The Protestants are forced to submit to the Counsell of Trent in many places; but some jars arise between the Pope and Caesar, for endeavouring to moderate the Counsell upon the Protestants request, and for slighting the Papall dignity. Pope Paul being told by his Physitians, that the aire of Trent was not wholesome, transfers the Synod to Bononia, against which, Caesar by his Ambassadors complains.

1548

Maurice, for his fidelity to Caesar, is made Elector of Saxony, he repairs the University of Witteburg; in all other places of his Jurisdiction he causeth the Protestant Ministers, to be either deposed, banished, or killed: The example of Francis Spier, who falling off from Protestantisme, fell into dispaire at Padua, was the occasion that divers were converted. Zuer, Fagius, and Martyr, passe over into England: Brenius, Musculus, and others, are strangely preserved. The Captive Saxon, Brandenburg and the Palatine, favour the Protestants. Magdeburg, Brem, and some other places of Saxony, stand upon their libertie: Flaccus Illyricus leaves Witteburg, where he condemned Melancthon's Faith, and goeth to Magdeburg; which City Caesar proscribed, and commanded the Elector Maurice to besiege it. The Electors are wrought upon to transfer the Title of King of the Romans upon Philip, Caesars son, by Mary of Portugall, but they would not recede from their first Act.

1550

The Magdeburgers overthrow some Forces of their enemies, among which were 200 Gentlemen: Mean while Paul 3<sup>d</sup> dieth with grief; his son Peter Loisius being slain before by Ferdinand Gonzaga. After three months alteration, to Paul succeeded Julius 3<sup>d</sup>, whose name before was Johannes Maria Montanus, he had been President or Moderator of the Counsell. Henry 2<sup>d</sup> of France, son to Francis, strives to stir up the German Princes against Charls, chiefly Maurice, who was offended for the imprisonment of his Father in Law the Landgrave, Maurice combines with Albert of Brandenburg, and the Megapolitans, with France; for the German liberty, he is leader of the Magdeburg Army, who having made his peace, leaves the Magdeburgers to Caesars mercy, who layeth a heavy fine on them; leaving them to their Religion and Liberty. The Protestant Divines exhibit their Positions to the Counsell of Trent, but they were rejected. The Elector Maurice having often Petitioned Caesar for the Landgraves libertie, but still in vain, makes war against Charls, seisseth upon Aupsurg; and having affrighted the Trent Fathers, with the report of his coming thither, they all fled. Crescentius the Cardinall, President of the Counsell, was affrighted in the night by a black dog. The French take some Townes of the Empire, and by Lorrain break in upon Alsatia, and extorts provision from Straisburg: Maurice propounds a league with Ferdinand and the Bavarian.

The French King understanding that the Caesarians out of Belgium, were got into Champany, wasting all with fire and sword, turns aside to Lucemburg. The Saxon having taken the Alpin Straits, kills and takes about 3000. of the Caesarians, which so affrighted Charls and Ferdinand, that by the light of their matches, they stole away from Oenipont to Villacum by night: Oenipont being taken, all goods belonging to Caesar or the Spaniards, were plundered, but the goods of Ferdinand and Germans, were not touched. A truce is made at last, and then peace. The Landgrave is dismissed from his Belgick prison. A free and perpetuall exercise of Protestantisme in Germany is granted, and all proscriptions are abolished. Before this transaction, Ulme, Norderberg, with the Bishops of Bamberg, Herbolis, and Mints, had suffered much

much loss and damage by Albert, who had also subdued Wormes and Spire, and taken Trivers by surprisall. Maurice sends his Army into Hungary against the Turks, who had taken there divers Towns in revenge of Caesars taking of Lephs in Affrick against the peace. Ferdinands losses were so great, that he was forced to buy his peace from Solyman for an yearly pension of 30000. crowns. Caesar goeth against the French, but loseth most part of his Army by sickness, and his fortune began still to decline, he made war against Parma and Mirandula, being assisted by the Pope, where he lost many men, but did no good. Sena fell off from Caesar to the French, because the Caesarians built a Castle in that Town. The Territories of Sena with long War was laid waste, and at last subdued by Cosmus Medices, who by Famin took Sena, and added it to his Principallities by Caesars permission. Henry, by the Turks assistance, took the Isle of Corsica from the Germaiois, and wafts with fire and sword, Caesars Territories, who on the other side destroyeth some French Towns.

About the beginning of the year 51 of this Century, the Pope dieth, to whom succeeded Marcellus 2<sup>d</sup> he also the two and twentieth day of his Pontificate, is suddenly taken away by an Apoplexie, in whose place came John Peter Garassa, now called Paul 4<sup>th</sup> a great Antilutherian and promoter of the Inquisition, the consumer of 150 thousand Protestants in 30. years space: he imposed heavy tributes on the Jewes, and caused them for distinction sake, to wear yellow caps, being angry with Caesar for opposing his Election, he raiseth an Army against Naples, his own Countrey, but Charls being weary of the world, after the Example of Dioclesian, layeth down his imperiall dignitie, leaveth his hereditary Kingdoms to Philip his son, and the Empire to Ferdinand his brother, then retires himself into the Monastery of S. Hieroms Order, dedicated to S. Lawrence by his son Philip, in memory of the great Victory he had over the French at S. Quintins; this Covent is in the Ecuriel near Madrid. Here Charls spent two years in devotion, and then died the 38 year, or as some say, the 40 of his Empire; and the 54 of his life, his death was presaged by a Comet: Mean while the Pope assisted by the French, makes war against Philip, who in revenge, strips the Pope of almost all Latium, wherefore he finding Philip too potent to buckle with, now the French being defeated, and the most of their Nobility taken at S. Quintins, and that Octavius Farnesius was in favour with Philip from whom he had received Placentia, admits of peace which was accompanied with the inundation of Tibris, that did more hurt then the war. In Charls his time, Ferdinand Magellan found out the Strait, so called from his name, and in two years space sailed about the world, and returned again to Sivill. In the space of 20 years Ferdinand Cortes, took multitudes of Towns, the chief whereof is Mexico, with many Provinces: The Country also of Peru is subjugated by Varga and Pizarus, in which is the great City Cusco: The Portugalls also take many places in the East Indies. Castrius obtains a great Victory against the King of Cambaia, and withall takes Dio, the rich and great City of that Country which became the chief Seat of the Portugalls under King Emanuel, and King John who looked more strictly to the Government of that place then Charls did to the Government of America, being intangled with the wars of Europ, which occasioned the Spaniards to Tyrannize over the poor Americans.

To Charls succeeded his brother Ferdinand, King of Hungary and Bohemia. He confirms the peace of Germany, advanceth the University of Sena, erected before, by John Frederick the Elector, appoints a conference at Wormes between the Papists and Protestants; which took no effect because Melancthon and other Lutherans would not condemn (as the Romanists desired) Calvin, Olander and the rest who had receded from the Auguslan confession.

1551

*An. Christi* session; Yet the peace of Germany was not by this interrupted: But *Livonia*, a Province of the German Empire, is much shaken by *John Basilides* D. of *Muscovia*, because upon their civil Wars they had neglected to pay the tribute they owed by promise to the *Muscovites*; therefore he takes *Narva* by surprise, layeth waste the Countrey of *Derbat*, and threatens the ruine of *Livonia*, which at last paid the gold, but yet could not pacifie the Tyrant. Therefore the *Rivaliens* desired *Christian 3<sup>d</sup>* of *Denmark* to be their protector against the *Russian* by reason *Estonia* had anciently been subject to *Denmark*; but he wisely refused, affirming he had more land then he could well govern; yet he helps them with money and arms, and the next year died: after he had caused the Bible to be translated into *Danish*, and had set up preaching Ministers in his Kingdome: This year also was fatal to *Queen Mary of England*, *King Henry of France*, the D. of *Venice*, and *Pope Paul 4<sup>th</sup>* whose Marble statue the *Romans* contumeliously used, by cutting off his hands and head; they deface all the Scutcheons, or Arms of the Family of *Caraffa*, they open the Inquisition prison, and let out the prisoners, and then set the house on fire. This year also *Adolphus* D. of *Holst* subdued *Dithmars* by the help of *Frederick 2<sup>d</sup>* King of *Denmark*, son to *Christian 3<sup>d</sup>*: This Duke having utterly defeated the *Dithmarsians*, they were forced to send their Priests with white staves to beg pardon for their rebellions, which was granted conditionally they would give up their arms, and submit to his Government; which was assented to: and withall, they were contented to pay yearly a *Florens* for every acre of land they enjoyed. The *Livonians* by reason of their continuall oppressions, were forced to desire the King of *Poland's* protection, who made *Gothard* Master of the Knights, Duke of *Curland*, when that *Livonian* order had continued 358 years.

After 4 months debate, *Pius 4<sup>th</sup>* called before *John Angel* of the house of *Medices*, is made Pope. At his Inauguration 18 men were killed, as they were scrambling for the money flung that day among the people, and about 40 hurt, an ominous initiation to his Pontificate: he pardoned those that abused his predecessors, but was very rigid against his friends and nephews. He put *Cardinal Caraffa* to death, and divers other prime men, upon suspicion of Treason. He confirmed *Ferdinand* in the Empire, absolves *Charles 5<sup>th</sup>* and his son *Philip* from *Pope Paul's* criminations. *Abdisu* Patriarch of the Eastern Christians came to him, with a resolution to imbrace the *Roman* Faith, which he did, and was sent back into *Affrica* with rich presents. He ordereth the general Counsell to sit again at *Trent*, and sent his Legats to invite the Protestants thither, but the *Palsgrave* and *Saxon* with some other *Tentonic* Princes, meet at *Naumburg*, and return this answer to *Ferdinand* *Cesar*; that they would willingly yeild to a nationall or generall Counsell if it were free, which they could not acknowledge this to be: And they tell the *Popes* Legats, that he had no power over Princes, nor authority to call a Synod. When they came to *Lubeck*, they were rejected by the King of *Denmark*, because the *Pope* had accounted him an Heretick; But *Philip* King of *Spain*, and *Francis 2<sup>d</sup>* of *France*, persecute the Protestants; under whose successor *Charles 9<sup>th</sup>* they had some rest, and withall a new name, for they are now called *Hugonits*, from one *Hugo*, in whose house they used to have their meetings. In the Counsell of *Trent* there is some debate between the *Pope* and *Spanish* Bishops, who would scarce yeild that their dependance should be from him. The Kings also of *Spain* and *France*, did strive there for precedencie, the one preferring the Title of *Catholic*, the other of most Christian: The matter being referred to the *Pope*, he gives the precedencie to *France*. There was also much altercation about the residence of Bishops, and the peculiar care of their Flocks, which they should have; but nothing in that point was determined: At last the Synod is concluded. 27 Years after it was called by *Paul 3<sup>d</sup>* at *Manina*;

*Manina*; and 18 years from the first session at *Trent*: It sat without interruptions 5 years; to wit, two under *Paul 3<sup>d</sup>*, one under *Julius 3<sup>d</sup>*, and two under *Pius 4<sup>th</sup>*; it was subscribed by 255 Fathers, most of the Canons were made by the *Italian* and *Spanish* Clergy, the *French* came not till about the end of the Counsell: Few of other Nations were there present. A strict Oath is imposed on the Clergy and Magistrates, to adhere to, and maintain the determinations of that Synod. For this purpose divers Bishopricks and Archbishopricks are erected in the *Belgian* Provinces, as at *Mechlin*, *Cameray*, *Utrecht*, *Harlem*, *Middelburg*, *Antwerp*, *Brug*, and elsewhere, which promoted not, but hindred the Pontifical cause, and raised a rebellion against *Philip*; which shook off the *Spanish* Yoke.

About these times, *King Philip* was beat at Sea by *Solyman the Turk*, who took the Isle *Meninges* on the coast of *Affrick*, in which the Viceroy of *Sicily*, the Duke of *Medina* had strongly fortified the Castle. For *Pialis* the *Bassai* that defeated the *Spanish* Fleet which had besieged *Tripolis*, takes in the Castle being weakly manned and victualled, killed and carried away 18000 Christians, therefore *Cosmus* Duke of *Florence* erects a new Order of Knights, called *Stephanits* against the *Turks*, & assigns for their habitation the Isle *Ebusa*: Upon the Petition of *William of Orange*, *Egmond* and *Horn*. *K. Philip* removes from the Government of *Belgium*, *Antony Peranot*, and *Atrclacius* the Cardinal; and gives a fuller power to his sister *Margaret of Parma*; *Ferdinand* having ruled the Empire 6 years in peace, died, leaving his son *Maximilian* to succeed. *David George* his heresie is detected at *Basil*, who taught he was the promised son of *David*, and his body is burned to ashes; about that time *Francis Xavierius* the Jesuit is sent to *Japan* and other Eastern parts, to convert the *Indians*.

*Maximilian 2<sup>d</sup>* succeeded to his Father *Ferdinand*, both in the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, as also in the Empire, when *John Sigismund* of *Transylvania*, relying on the protection of *Solyman*, gave himself out to be King of *Hungary*; he was by *Maximilian* suppressed; by reason *Solyman* was then before *Malta* with a fleet of 205 sail, so that the aid he sent to the *Transylvanian* came too late. The *Turk* upon that enterprize lost 22 thousand *Malta* holding out all the while stoutly against him, under the command of *John Valet* great master of the *Rhodian* Knights. The *Turks* after six months siege, being repulsed, convert their totterd & torn forces, upon the Isle *Chios*, which had been under the *Gennois* above 200 years, but now by *Pialis Bassai* is brought under the *Turkish* Yoke, at which time *Paul 4<sup>th</sup>* died, who having exhausted his treasures on the Counsell of *Trent*, and magnificent buildings, was necessitated to exact upon his subjects, and to wink at *Symone*. To him succeeded *Michael Chifferius*, who called himself *Pius 5<sup>th</sup>*. In *Belgium* the seeds of a long lasting war are cast by the *Spanish* harsh severity, a mitigation whereof was Petitioned for by *Henry Bredenrod*, and the rest of the Gentry, these Petitioners were called *Genfies*, that is, beggars from their mean apparel which nickname they retained afterward. When they had entred into a confederacie for Libertie of conscience; this wise course of the Gentry was marred by the inconsiderate zeal of the *Calvinian* multitude, who setting up Pulpits every where, of their own privat motion threw down the Images; But *William of Orange* caused a form of rites and doctrin to be compiled for the Protestants to follow; to whom he gave power to preach in publick: at which *Margaret of Parma* did connive presently. *Philip* abolishing all Liberty, and taking the Government from *Parma*. *Ferdinand Alvares* Duke of *Alba*, a fierce natured man, is by him made Governor. *William* being affrighted at his coming, departs thence to his Teutons: *Egmond* and *Horne* are cunningly apprehended and beheaded. A Garrison and Castle are forced upon the *Antwerpians*. *Orange* wanting help, obtained *Conde's* Army, who had lately extorted

*Alba* correct peace to his *Hugonots* from *Charls*. By the assistance of *John Casimer*. *Alba* proscribes *Orange* as a Traitor, and puts many of the Nobility to death; he also overthrow in a battell *Lewis* of *Nassau* *Orange* his brother. An Army is suddenly raised by this *William*, intending to win or loose all. *Alba* an old beaten Soldier, knowing to great an Army could not be sustained without pay, avoided fighting; so that *William* is forced to lead his Army into *France* for pay, which in the interim mouldred away. The *Belgians* having paid in *Taxes* twenty hundred thousand crowns, labour to ease themselves of this burthen, and to avoid the Tyrants cruelty; therefore divers undertook a voluntary exile; where consulting with *Orange*, who was also banished, they first seize upon *Briel* in *Holland*, then they make *Ushing*, *Enchusen*, and other Townes to take their part. *Lewis* of *Nassau* by a Stratagem, takes *Monts* in *Hennault*; *William* obtains *Ruremund*, *Lovan*, and *Mechlin*, whilst *Alba* was besieging of *Mohs*. But *William* not being able to raise the siege and relieve his brother, finding also that the *French*, wholly intent in persecuting of the *Protestants*, were about to desert and betray him, he removes presently to *Holland*; which with *Zeland* he makes his own: So *Monts* is restored to *Alba*. Meant while the *Ushingers* and *Encusers* beat the *Spaniards* by Sea. *Harlem* is besieged 7 months, at last being forced by Famine yields to the *Spaniards*. In the midst of these troubles, *Alba* is called into *Spain*, after his arrival in *Belgium* 3 years, *Lewis Requesensius* succeeded him, who shortly after lost *Middelburg*, the Metropolis of *Zeland*; but by *Avila* and *Mandragor* who defeats the *Belgian* Auxiliaries at *Neomagg*, and besiegeth *Leyden*, which being almost famished, *Orange* relieved by opening the banks, and letting in the water, by which also provision was brought; after this, he honors the Town with an University.

*Requesensius* being dead, and a Commonwealth to be guided by States, is selected, till the coming of *John* of *Austria*, the *Belgians* resolve unanimously, by force of Arms to drive out the *Spaniard*: *Alba's* Statues are abolished; the *States* perceiving how the *Spaniards* out of the Cittadel had plundered 30 *Amsterd*, cast out their Garrison, and make themselves free, whose example the other Towns follow. Not long after died Pope *Pius* 5th and *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, in whom ended the race of the *Agellons*, though he married two sisters. *Cyprius* is lost by the Christians, but the battell of *Le* 1572 *phosphis* won by them; the *Protestants* are massacred at *Paris*, *Poland* being forsaken by *Henry*, who preferred the Crown of *France*, is divided about a new election. Some are for *Maximilian Caesar*, some for *John Bator* Prince of *Transylvania* after *John Sigismund* was dead. *Cesar* by staying too long in suspense, and doubting whether he should swear or not to the *Polonian* Laws brought to him by the Legats, was prevented by *Bator*, who marrying with *Ann* the sister of King *Sigismund*, obtained the Kingdom. *Maximilian* shortly after died, the 12th year of his Empire, a moderate and just Prince, bestowed divers privileges on the University of *Helmstadt*, his saying was wont to be: [To compell the conscience is to force heaven] About this time *John* of *Austria*, *Charls* the 5th Bastard, restored *Amidas* to his Kingdom of *Tunis*, after he had been slung out by the *Turks*, and built a new *Rosa*, but perceiving that there was little trust to be given to *Amidas*, he makes his brother *Fiduciarie* King of *Africk*, but to no purpose, for the *Turk* by *Simon Bassi* surprised *Golat* and the new Fort, takes 500 pieces of Ordnance, with other rich spoiles, kills and beats the *Spaniards* out of *Africa*. 40 Years after *Charls* had added *Tunis* to his dominions. The same year *Cosmus* 50 to whom the Pope gave the Title of great Duke of *Etruria*, died, to him succeeded his son *Francis*: The *Venesians* fortifie *Coreya* against the *Turks*. *Charls* Prince of *Spain* for pitying the hard usage of the *Netherlanders*, is by his father *Philip*, pretending Treason, imprisoned, where he died. *John Frederick*

*rick* the younger, Duke of *Saxony*, for aiding some whom *Cesar* had proscribed, was proscribed himself, and imprisoned, where he ended his life. *Hamburg* is fined in 100 thousand *Jochims* to King *Frederick* for spoiling the Freedom of Trade. *Rostock* by their intestine discords, is subjected to the *Megapolitan* Dukes; But upon acknowledgement of their fault, is restored to their freedom: In *Maximilian's* time the *Protestant* Faith is prohibited through *France*, *England*, *Scotland*, *Hungary*, *Poland*, and *Belgium*, in the Bishopricks also of *Magdeburg*, *Halberstad*, *Verdava*, and Dukedom of *Brunswick*: But as they began to increase in wealth and ease, they fell into divers Factions caused by needless disputes and controversies, with which the world hath been too long troubled; at which the Elector of *Saxony* was so vexed, that he thrust out of his University of *Witteberg* divers professors, and imprisoned *Caspar Peucerus* his Physician, with *Cracovius* his Secretary. *Valentine Gentilis* for Blasphemy against the Son of God, is burned at *Bern*.

1576

## CHAP. XVII.

The Affairs of Portugall, Affrick, Germany, the Netherlands, Spain, Poland, Hungary, Transylvania, Bohemia, Russia, Venice, &c. under Rodolphus 2d Emperor, from the year 1576. till 1612.

**R**odolphus 2d succeeded to his Father *Maximilian*, both in his Kingdome and Vertues. About the beginning of his time, *Sebastian* King of *Portugall* made an unluckie expedition into *Africa*, to restore *Mahumed* King of *Mauritania*, whilst he warreth with *Abdelmelech* Uncle to the banished *Mahumed*, he lost both his life and Kingdome: In this battell three Kings fell, and the Christian Army defeated. *Abdelmelech* in the fight died suddenly of an Apoplexie; *Mahumed* was drowned in the bogs, and *Sebastian* slain. *Hameth* the other Uncle of *Mahumed* enjoyed the Fruit of the victory, with the Kingdome of *Fesse*: *Portugall* fell to *Henry* the Cardinall, an aged man, and *Sebastian's* great Uncle, who died about a year after, on whose Kingdom *Philip* King of *Spain*, *Henry's* sisters son seized by the Duke of *Alba*; *Anthony* being driven away, whom *Lewis*, *Henry's* brother begot in Fornication: *Lisbon* proclaimed him King; but he was forced to flee, and as he was pursued, slung money behind him, to hinder his pursuers: He by the help of *France* and *England*, hoped to recover his lost Kingdom, but could not; for he was beaten both 40 by land and sea, and with *Portugall* he lost also the Islands *Azores*: The Lowcountrey wars under *John* of *Austria*, and *William* of *Nassau*, was portended by a Comet: *John* had deluded the *Gantois* with hopes of peace; but they being impatient of Tyrannie and mock'ry, reject the *Spaniards*, send for *French* and *Germans*, and resolve to make a Commonwealth of their own; they invite into *Belgium*, *Mathias* brother to *Ralph* the 2d Emperor, and who afterward was Emperor himself, to be their Governor, hoping thereby to finde the Emperor *Ralph's* more favourable towards them; till he came *William* discharged his place, who took in *Amsterdam*, *Mechlin*, *Deventry*, and other Sconces, whilst the *Austrian* was busie in subduing *Brabant*, shortly after they send for *John Casimir* the Palatine with an Army, and then fall upon robbing and defacing of Churches, and invading the Clergies Revenues: but shortly after peace is proclaimed between the Catholics and Protestants throughout *Belgium*, with Liberty of Conscience; but the people of *Hennault* and *Artois*, upon this were offended, and therefore called themselves Malecontents, for they would admit no other Religion then the *Roman*.

Ecc 2

The

1579



An. Christi

1582

The *Austrian* being dead of a Fever, his Nephew *Alexander Farnesius*, Duke of *Parma* and *Placentia* succeeded in the Government, whose beginning was accompanied with an Epidemicall disease in his Army, which by a looliness swept away 12 thousand: He reduced *Ulrich* to the *Spaniard*; and laboured what he could to foment the intestine discords among the *Belgians* in the mean while *Cesar* sends into *Colen* 3 Bishops; and 2 Princes to treat with the States Ambassadors about a peace between the *Spaniard* and them, but to no purpose; for *Orange* would not hearken to any peace without the enjoyment of Liberty and Religion; Wherefore he is proscribed by the *Spaniard*. Mean while *Francis Alanfon* the French King's brother is invited into *Belgium*, who gaping long for that employment, hasteneth thither, but whilst *Orange* and he were together at *Antwerp*, a desperat young fellow set on by the *Spaniard*, shoots *Orange* with a bullet through the cheeks, so that he hardly escaped with his life. *Alanfon* having got supplies from *England*, promised much in defence of *Belgium*, but performed nothing, having more regard of his French, then of those whose defence he undertook, and swore to; which appeared in *Brabant* and *Flanders*, where at *Antwerp* he received a notable defeat; by means of the French, his jugling was much more detected at *Newport*, *Dunkirk*, and other places, which give occasion to *Parma* to recover *Newport*, and divers other Towns for the *Spaniard*. Hereupon the Government is taken from him by the States, and he returns into France with his French Forces; but not long after, *Orange* and the States were necessitated to send for him again, who died before he had done any thing for the Commonwealth; 'tis thought he was poisoned, because they found he was sorry for his former double dealing with the States. About a month after, the Prince of *Orange* is murdered by a *Burgundian*, *Balthasar Gerard*, who had been lately received into *Orange* his service, he shot him with a musket at *Delph*, not without the knowledg (as 'tis thought) of *Parma*, the murtherer was cruelly put to death: Shortly after this, *Brugis*, *Gant*, and all *Flanders* almost is reduced to the *Spaniard*.

In *Germany* the Protestant Princes and Cities, strive by Conferences and Synods, to take up the controversies among themselves: *Gebhard* Bishop of *Colen*, professing himself of the *Augustan* confession, permitted freedom of the Gospel to his people, and falls in love vvith *Agnes Mansfield*, vvhom he intends to marrie; but he is upon this deposed by the Pope, and forsaken by most of his Diocesse; *Ernest* of *Bavaria* being set up in his room: *Gebhard* in maintenance of his right, and *Ernest* on the other side, raised opposit Forces. They fight upon doubtfull terms divers battels, in one Skirmish *Ernest* lost 2000 old Soldiers, at length *Gebhard* is worsted, and upon the taking of *Bonna*, totally defeated of his Bishoprick by *Ernestus*. A nationall Synod of Protestants is desired in *Germany*, but hindred by factious spirits, *Steven Bator* the new *Polonian* King makes war against *Danish*, for refusing to swear Fealtie to him, till first he confirmed their Priviledges: after much slaughter on both sides, at last by a friendly transaction, their differences were composed: The *Polander* to requite the *Muscovits* waisting of *Livonia*, falls with fire and sword upon his Territories, and takes from him many Towns; so that the *Muscovit* is forced to renounce all he had taken in *Livonia*: The *Swedes* also take divers places in *Livonia* from the *Muscovit*, which *Batorius* desired might be restored to the *Polander*, but could not prevail; about this time an Epidemicall infection run through all *Europ*, accompanied with a colde, and a cough, called the weathers maladie, because sheep are most troubled with it: Few died of this disease. A little before this, the *Muscovits* having had some contestations with the *Swede* in *Livonia*, whose Officers he put to death, for causing some Towns swear Fealtie to *Magnus*, not to the *Russian*, died the same year that the Jesuits were obtunded upon *Livonia*. Then it was that

An. Christi

that *George Frederick*, Duke of *Borussia* having paid a sum of money to the *Dane*, possessed himself of the Diocess of *Curion* as a *Polonian* fee. The next year *John Basilides* the *Russian* Tyrant, having knockt his son on the head with his Cudgell, of which wound he died, and after 25 years war with *Livonia*, he died also, exhorting his son *Theodor* to live peaceably with his neighbours.

The same year the *Præcopit Tartars*, of the *Turks* confederates becom their slaves. Pope *Gregory* the 17<sup>th</sup> about this time reformed the Calendar, by thrusting 10 days out of the month of *October*: *Amurath* the *Turk*, began to suspect some plot upon compliance between the Pope and *Byzantin* Patriarch, therefore banisheth the Patriarch, and takes away from the Christians two of their Temples in *Constantinople*; for approving this reformation of the Calendar, which caused some troubles at *Auspurg* in *Germany*, and *Riga* in *Livonia*, divers Protestants, rather out of pride, then Judgement, rejected it: This *Gregory* erected divers Colledges of Jesuits, whose learning and holyness began to be held in admiration: In *Rome* is instituted a Colledg or Seminary of all Nations, to propagate the *Roman* Faith. 3. Ambassadors of *Japon* sent by the Jesuits, arrive at *Rome*, after 3 years travel, offering their service to the Pope who having royally entertained them, died within the space of two hours of a Squeeze, who all his time could not suppress the insolencies and robberies committed daily by his Soldiers, and those that had been proscribed; But *Batorius* King of *Poland*, by putting to death some of his Nobility, curbed the insolencies of the great men in his Kingdom. So *Frederick* 2<sup>d</sup> of *Denmark* brought the *Rostokers* to submit to *Ulricus* the Megapolitan. The *Farnesian* Family of the Dukes of *Parma*, grew famous by the happy success of *Alexander* Governor of *Belgium*, who after he had besieged *Antwerp* one whole year, at last upon composition, took it; 4 years were granted to the Protestants, to settle there, or to depart, whereof many went and settled in *Hamburg*. *Mechlin* and divers other Towns submit to the *Spaniard*: A great storm hung over *Riga*, for resisting King *Stevens* edicts of *Poland*, who threatened it with fire and sword for opposing the *Roman* Religion, and putting to death some of his Legats: About this time showres of Locusts fell in *Thracia*, of geese and ducks in *Croatia*, on which many people did feed. *Maximilian* of *Austria*, *Cesar's* brother, who by his Father was named King of *Poland*, marcheth to *Cracovia* with an Army; but he was defeated and driven back towards *Silesia*, where he was besieged and taken, and forced to redeem his freedom with the loss of his Kingdom; which *Sigismund* obtains in the right of his Mother, being descended from the Kings of *Poland*.

The year ensuing was fatal to many Princes. *Maximilian* was thrust out of *Poland* by *Sigismund*, *Frederick* the second of *Denmark* died, *Maurice* son to *William* (murdered at *Delph*) and grand-child by the mother to *Maurice* of *Saxony* is by the united States of *Holland*, made their Governor. The *Spanish* Armado consisting of 125 great ships, 20000 Soldiers, 10000 mariners 2000 Ordnance is defeated: *Henry* 3<sup>d</sup> King of *France* is murdered by *James Clements*, a *Dominican*; the *Polander* is molested by the *Muscovits*, who took some Forts from him; and by the *Tartarian*, who with fire and sword invaded his borders; so that he was fain to buy his peace of the *Tartarian* with a great summe of Money. *Gregory* the 13<sup>th</sup> being dead, *Felix* *Montani* is made Pope, and calls himself *Sixtus* the 5<sup>th</sup>. a mean man of Parentage; but a rich Pope; for he left 5 Millions behinde him, and yet in his Life-time very profuse upon Obelisks, High-ways, Churches, Pallaces, Aqueducts, upon Hospitals also, and the *Vatican* Bibliothec; He spent 38 thousand Crowns in removing one Obelisk alone. He incurred the King of *Spaines* displeasure by denying to aide the *Parisians* when they were besieged by King *Henry's* Army

*An. Christi* Army; whereupon he dyed with grief. *John Baptista Castaneus* succeeded, called *Urban 7<sup>th</sup>* his inauguration was accompanied with an Earthquake through *Austria*, *Moravia*, and *Bohemia*, and a great siccitic with heat, by which some rivers were dried up; he died within 14 days of a burning fever: To whom succeeded *Michelas*. *Sfondrat* called *Gregory 14<sup>th</sup>*: he was born the 7<sup>th</sup> month, and therefore had a weak sickly body, he died the 10<sup>th</sup> month of his Pontificat, in his time the plague and famine so raged in *Italy*, that in one year at *Rome* there died sixty thousand people: He spent upon the *French War* 500000 crowns out of the publick treasure, besides 40000 out of his privat Coffers. *Grave Maurice* mean while seifeth upon *Breda* his native towne in *Brabant*, by a turf boat, within which lay hid many armed men. And shortly after he takes divers other Towns. To *Gregory 14<sup>th</sup>* succeeded *John Antonius* or *Piemont*, who assumed the name of *Gregory 9<sup>th</sup>*, he was of the *Spanish Faction* against *France*, and lived but two months in the Pontificate. To him succeeded *Hippolytus Aldabrandinus* or *Clement 8<sup>th</sup>*: *Grave Maurice* attempteth to take the *Sluice* and *Ulricht*, but could not; yet he takes *Steinwick*, and *Covord*, and divers other places upon the death of *Parma*. To whom succeeded *Peter Ernest* of *Mansfield*, who sent his son *Charls* into *France*, to assist the *Spanish* faction there.

About this time *Sigismund Bator* the *Transylvanian* denies to pay the promised tribute to the *Turk*, and so by the *Jesuits* perswasion incurs the displeasure of a potent enemy, to the grief of his friends, some of which he kills for dissuading him. The *Despots* of *Walachia* and *Moldavia* revolt to him: The *Walachians* fight the *Turks* and beat them, *Strigon* and *Vicegrad* are taken by the *Christians*: *Lippa* also submits to the *Transylvanian*, and in a battell *Sinan* loofeth 10000 of his men. *Bator* being now allied to the *Emperor*, is aided by him to take *Tergovistia*, the seat of the *Princes* of *Walachia*. After many defeats given to *Sinan*, he chafeth him beyond the river *Agrius*, where he died with age and grief. *Albert Arch Duke* of *Austria*, *Casars* brother, of a *Cardinal* becomes husband to *Isabella Clara Eugenia*, *Philips* daughter, and enters *Belgium* in great state. Upon the death of *Ernestus* he besiegeth *Callis*, and takes it: A league is made between *England*, *France* and *Holland*, against *Spain*, and confirmed by a victory obtained by the *English* and *Holland* Fleet, against the *Spaniards* at *Cadix*. The *Hollanders* send a fleet to *Bentam*, a Town in *Fava* the less: And another to finde out the North-east passage, to no purpose, except to their own hurt, having lost the most of their men with cold. In the mean time *Albert* takes *Hulst* from the confederates, and they beat his Forces at *Torvahut*, having taken 38 Colours of foot, and two of horse with their baggage and money: About this time died *Philip* the 2<sup>d</sup> of *Spain*, as they write of the low sic disease: To whom succeeded *Philip 3<sup>d</sup>*, who married *Margaret* daughter to *Charls* the *Arch Duke*; and then also died *Theodor Prince* of *Russia* in whom ended the *Basildan* race. *Boris Federovitchius* the *Queen* of *Russia's* brother, dealt so with the people, that they preferred him to the Nobility in competition for that Scepter, which by their favour he obtained, and after this confirmed it by his succesfull expedition against the *Tartars*, but afterward his government proved Tyrannicall: *Palsias* and *Barnestein*, Imperiall Commanders defeat the *Tartars* in *Pannonia*, and besiege *Favarin*, but upon the coming of the *Turks*, the siege is raised. The *Popes* Forces which were levied against the *Turks* in *Pannonia*, were employed against *Cesar Ateflinus* bastard, son to *Alphonfus* of *Ferraria*, who by the sword fought to obtain the antient Titles of that Dutchie, though he was Anathematized by the *Pope*, yet he fights the *Romans* and beats them: but at last finding his friends fall off from him, he resignes *Ferraria* to the *Pope*, so the war is continued against the *Turk*, and *Favarin* taken by *Swartzenburg*, with the loss of 1600. *Turks*.

*Sigismund*

*Sigismund Batorius* for fear of the *Turks*, delivers up *Dacia* or *Transylvania* to *Cesar*; afterward his minde changed; upon the perswasion of *Andrew Bator* *Cardinal*, his kinsman, on whom he confers this Principality; and the rather, because the promised pension was not paid him: Hence arose wars between him, and *Maximilian*, *Cesar's* brother, which incouraged the *Turks*, who with 60000 men beleaguer *Varadin*, but are beat off again, and so is *Andrew Bator* driven out of *Transylvania* by the *Austrians*, who took *Albia Julia*, or *Wessingburg*, with divers other Towns. *Francis Mendosa* the *Spanish* Generall under *Albert*, takes divers Towns upon the *Rhen*; which exasperated the *Germans*, and caused *Cesar* to send expostulatory Letters to *Mendosa*: On the other side, *Grave Maurice* takes divers places from the *Spaniards*: About this time a Monster was seen at *Paris* like a *Satyre*, with a horn on his head. Some maids, both in *France* and *Germany*, fasted 3 years or more: A strange disease called *Plue*, or *Cirrhya*, invaded *Poland* and *Hungary*. *Ferdinand Arch Duke*, son of *Charls* that was *Rolph's* Uncle, at this time was Governor of *Styria*: He goeth to *Rome*, being the year of *Jubilee*, and swears to the *Pope*, to extirpate the *Protestantes* within his jurisdiction: which upon the *Jesuits* instigation, he did accordingly, by pillaging and banishing all of the *Augsburg* confession throughout *Styria*, *Carnithia* and *Carniola*, though they had paid for their freedom of conscience a great sum of money: *Carnithia* the chief Port of *Styria* is besieged by the *Catholics*, who were forced by reason of the cold frost, (which in one night killed one thousand horsemen) to raise their siege, to leave their Artillery and baggage behinde them.

In *Belgium* *Albert* the *Arch Duke* having brought his wife *Isabel* to *Bruxels*, is solicited by the *Confederates* to send away all the *Spaniards* out of the *Netherlands*: if he would have peace settled there: To this he would not assent, as being neither safe for him nor honorable, he purposeth to besiege *Ostend*. *Maurice* strives to prevent him: At *Newport* a battell is fought, in the beginning of which, *Albert* had the better; till the *Confederates* by their danger grew desperate, for being almost inclosed by the Sea, they fell so furiously on their enemies, that the vanquished put the vanquishers to flight, having killed above 4000, with the loss of 2000 of their own; one hundred Colours were taken from the enemy. In *Transylvania* *Michael Valachus* *Casars* Generall, in a long and doubtfull battell, defeats *Bators* Forces, and subdues also a great part of *Moldavia*: He was much envied by *George Basta*, who accused him to *Cesar* as one that was ambidexter, and who aimed at the principality of *Transylvania* himself: upon this, the chief command over the army is committed to *Basta*, whom *Valachus* scorns to be under, therefore he goeth to the *Emperor* to clear himself, in the interim *Sigismund* is again received by his people, and acknowledged for Duke of *Transylvania*: hereupon *Valachus* is sent back with more Forces, who falls on the *Batorians* as they were carelessly marching down a hill, and with his great Ordinance so galled them, that they were forced to run; ten thousand of them at least were killed, and so being incouraged by this Victory, thrusts *Basta* out of his command, by whom not long after he was murdered: and *Dacia* now swears allegiance to *Cesar*. *Batorius* is driven into the Town *Bistritza*, where he is taken; and contenting himself with a yearly allowance for his maintenance, lives obscurely among the *Bohemian* Barrohs. Shortly after one *Moyse* Generall of the *Ciculi*, who had been driven to the hills, takes up on him now to be the deliverer of *Transylvania*, therefore having gathered together a considerable army, seifeth upon *Wessingburg*, or *Albia Julia*. But at last in a Battell he is killed, and his army having lost 128 Colours, quite defeated: Mean while *Mars* rageth at *Ostend* for almost 40 months together, all which time the besieged behaved themselves gallantly, by often sallies, and bringing in Provision through the mid't of their enemies, by digging a new harbour

*An. Christi* harbour, when the old was obstructed, by building a new town, whilst the old is assaulted, by their many conflicts they had, not only with the enemy, but also with famine and sickness, during which siege, one hundred and 44 thousand men lost their lives; at last it was taken by the art and industry of *Ambrose Spinola*: For which one Town, *Maurice* took *Grave* the Sluice, and divers other places. After this the *Hollanders*, and the other confederate provinces impose an Excise upon their victuals, to have ready pay still for the Soldiers: The Indian Navigation is advanced, and the adventurers united in a Corporation: They beat the *Portugalls* out of *Bantam*, they sail about the world, and return rich with *Spanish* money.

1604

1605

About this time almost all *Livonia* is made subject to *Charles Suderman*, except a few Towns on the borders of *Muscovia*, which acknowledged still the *Polonian* Scepter. Such devastation was every where in the fields, that thirty thousand people died with cold and famine, which persuaded some of them to eat their own children. *Charles* at last returns to *Sweden*, and accepts of that Scepter he had before refused. King *Henry 4<sup>th</sup>* of *France* makes a Law against Duels. The *Savoyen* attempted in the night time to surprise *Geneva*, two hundred Soldiers had already scal'd the walls, and killed the watch; but a boy with a *Lanthorn* raised the Town, who armed themselves, and apprehended the Conspirators, whom they put to death. Pope *Clement* dispenceth with *Sigismund* of *Poland*, for marrying two sisters of the *Austrian* Family, and persuades King *Henry* of *France* to call home again the banished *Jesuits*. *Christian 4<sup>th</sup>* of *Denmark*, visits in his own person the remotest parts of *Norway*, giving Order for settling of Ministers in those ignorant and remote corners. *Hamburg*, the most flourishing City of the *Saxons*, doeth homage to him, as Duke of *Holsatia*, with great solemnity and magnificence: He erecteth a new Town from the foundation, which by his name he calls *Christianopolis*, upon the borders of *Swedenland*. To which he added upon the same borders afterward, two stronger Fortifications; to wit, *Tychopolis* and *Christiana*: In *Belgium* there is great joy for the birth of *Philip* the 4<sup>th</sup>, heir to the Kingdoms of *Spain*: *Friesland* is now made the seat of the war: Command is given to Count *Bucquoi*, to raise Forces about the *Rhene*, which being passed over by *Spinola*, divers Towns are taken for the *Spaniard*: *Maurice* attempts *Antwerp*, and *Spinola* Berg upon *Som*, but in vain: *Bucquoi* also takes some places. Peace again is proposed by the *Austrians*, but rejected by the *Hollanders*, as not daring to trust the *Spaniard*. The ancient City of *Aix*, as also *Marpurg* of *Hessia*, were much shaken and weakened upon the change of Religion, and admittance of *Calvinisme*. *Brunswick* was at first like to be betrayed, but the Plot was discovered and prevented: Then *Henricus Julius*, the neighbouring Prince, thought to have surprised it by hiding of armed men in Waggon within the works, but the Townsmen defeated and slew them: at last this broke out into an open war. The Duke besiegeth *Brunswick*, dams up the river that it had almost drowned the Town, till a strong winde broke down the banks, and gave way for the water to return into its old channel: At last by *Casars* command, a truce is made, and the differences referred to Arbitration: In *Rome* Pope *Clement 8<sup>th</sup>* being dead, great contestation arise about the election of a new Pope; The *French* faction stood for *Caspar Baronius* the great Annalist; but the *Spaniard* opposed him, because he had no good opinion of his claim, and Title to *Scicily*: Some were for *Bellarmin* the great Catholick Champion, but he was withstood by the *Montalcan* Faction: At length *Alexander Medices* being 70 years old, is chosen; who calls himself *Leo*, but he died the 25 day after; whose successor was *Camilus Borgia*, afterward called *Paul 5<sup>th</sup>*.

In *Russia* great commotions were raised by one *Demetrius*, who gave out he was the son of *Johannes Basilides*, who was thought to have been murdered

thered by *Boris Fedrovitzius* long agoe: He appearing on the Scene, gave out that he was hid in Monasteries, and educated by the *Jesuits*, that he might be the more enabled for Government: The King of *Poland* believed this had been the true heir, therefore assists him with an Army, and bestowes his daughter on him. Shortly after he marcheth with his Forces into *Russia*, gets the *Cossacks* to side with him. Many Towns and Castles fall off to him, in hatred of *Fedrovitzius* his Tyranny: In his first Incounter with *Boris* he was worsted, but in the second he got the Victory, and withall the life of *Boris*, who was slain and his children poisoned. *Demetrius* with the great acclamations of the people, enters *Mosqua*, where he is Crowned; then he makes a league with the *Polander*, whose daughter he brings in great state from *Poland* and married her: But the *Russian* Nobility storming at the *Polonian* infolencies and pride, conspire against them, and the rather, because they are persuaded that this *Demetrius* is a counterfeit: The people also siding with the Peers, fall to murdering of the *Polonians*, whereof 1200 were massacred, besides 400 *Russians* disguised in *Polonian* habits. *Demetrius* is wounded in many places of his body, and disgracefully used; his Bride stript of all her wealth and ornaments, and sent back to *Poland* in a poor habit. *Basilus Fohanides*, the chief man of the Conspirators, is by the consent of all the Peers, proclaimed Prince. And *Demetrius* his carcass drawn naked up and down by a rope tied to his privities.

At *Venice* some ancient Laws were renewed; among the rest, that none should erect Churches or Monasteries, nor bestow lands or houses on the Clergy, without the Senats approbation; they had also imprisoned some scandalous Priests. The *Jesuits* acquaint *Claudius Aquaviva* the Generall of their Order, with these proceedings. Pope *Clement 8<sup>th</sup>* being a moderate man, winks at the business; But *Paul 5<sup>th</sup>* of a more violent spirit, Commands the *Venetians* to abrogate those Laws, which they refusing to do, were excommunicated, and their whole Territories put under an interdict: Yet most of the Clergy took no notice of the Pope's anger, but officiated as before. The *Jesuits* offended at this, remove thence to other places, and write bitterly, (chiefly *Bellarmin* and *Baronius*) against the *Venetians*, whose cause is maintained by *Francis Paulis Servita*, and *Johannes Marflius*: At last they fell from words to blows, Armies are raised on both sides, the *Spaniards* assist the Pope, and the *Hollanders* the *Venetian*; at length the controversy is taken up by the *French* King: The *Venetians* are enjoined to set free the prisoners, and not to stretch the execution of their Lawes, further then their Ancestors intent and meaning; So the Pope's curse was revoked, and the *Jesuits* banished out of the *Venetian* Territories.

In *Poland*, *John Samoisius* had thrown the *Jesuits* out of his Colledge, after whose death they grew very great with the King, stopping his ears against the Protestants complaints, whose Church at *Posonium* they burned; upon this, the Nobility calls a Parliament, and shortly after these Parliamentiers, or *Rachosians* (for so they were called) take up arms against the King; one thousand of whose men they killed, and put the rest to flight, and had not most of the Parliaments Army fallen off to the King, they had been absolutely victorious. Then arms being laid down on both sides, the differences are referred to a free Parliament; meanwhile the people tumultuously thrust the *Jesuits* out of their Monastery of *S<sup>t</sup> Briget* at *Gedanum*; and at *Thorun* they take the great Church from them, and the Nobility urgeth their banishment: Words are also cast abroad about election of a new King; but whilst the Parliamentiers (called in their language *Rachosians*) were too secure and confident; the Kings party falls suddenly upon them, kills many, disheartens the rest, and dissolves the Parliament: These troubles of *Poland* were for the *Swedes* advantage, who in the interim strengthneth himself against *Sigismund*,

F f

whose

1609

*An. Christi* whose esteem was daily lessened in *Swedland*: These troubles of *Poland* moved *Mathias* the Arch Duke, to settle with all speed the commotions of *Hungaria*, by assigning over *Transylvania* to *Botschadus*, and giving Liberty of Conscience: The *Profulian* upon the defection of *Alepo*, *Damascus*, and *Tripolis*, was willing to make peace with the Christians, therefore it is resolved there should be peace for 20 years, during which time *Achmet Sultan* should call *Cesar* Father, and he *Achmet* his son: That likewise both *Cesars* should every third year entertain friendship, by saluting each other with presents: *Botschadus* the chief promoter of this transaction, shortly after died. *Ragoscius* is elected, whole help the *Rachokans* of *Poland* required, but he refused, holding it unlawful for them to rise against their Prince: And to shew how little he regarded dominion, he laid down again his Principality, and transmitted it to *Gabriel Batorius*, at which time the *Persian* Ambassador at *Prague*, highly commending the power of his Master, and shewing how resolved he was to overthrow the *Ottoman* Family, made *Rudolph* flow in entering into league with the *Turk*. Mean while *Mathias* grew gracious with the *Hungarians*, and makes way with the Nobility for his election.

This same year was seen a Comet over *Germany*, portending ensuing troubles there; for at *Donaverd*, a Town in *Suevia* upon the *Danow*, the Towns people contumeliously abused the Abbot, as he was carrying the Banner and Cross in procession: For which cause they are proscribed by *Cesar*, and subdued by *Maximilian* of *Bavaria*, though they had proffered satisfaction to the Abbot. This occasioned some differences among the Princes of the Empire, the Protestants desiring the Town to be restored again to its liberty, which the Catholics would not hearken to. Mean while, in *Belgium* the War continues, and divers Towns are taken and re-taken; A military sedition is raised in *Alberts Army*, which could not be appeased, till *Diestra* was pawned to them for their pay, which they received shortly after. Divers of the Mutineers were banished, and some that stay'd behinde executed. The *Hollanders* prepare a Fleet for the *West-Indies*, which made the *Spaniard* and Archduke propose a peace, to which the united States were inclined, if they could have been secured of their Liberty; but that they may not be surpris'd with expectation of peace, a fleet is sent to *Calz* under *Hemskirk*, which infested the *Spanish* Coast, and spoiled the Kings Navie, 2000 *Spaniards* were killed, and so was *Hemskirk* himself; a truce then is resolved upon, and the united Provinces declared to be free from all claim or title, either of the King or Archduke, but withall its required that the *West-Indies* shall not be meddled with by the *Hollander*, or *Zelander*: This disceptation held out some months, at last *John Naius* a *Franciscan*, is sent to King *Philip*, but he staid so long, that the *French* and *Danish* Agents went away; and so the peace came to nothing, yet at last a truce of 12 years was concluded, by the mediation of the *French*, *English*, and other Princes Ambassadors, in which liberty of commerce was left to the pleasure of the *Spaniard* in his dominions without *Europe*; Yet he was not to debar the *Hollanders* that were employed by Foreign Princes, in their commerce to the *Indies*. In *Germany*, *Mathias* *Cesar's* brother comes with an Army into *Bohemia*, to disappoint (as it was given out) the *Spanish* intent, who had resolved to settle *Ferdinand* the Archduke in *Hungary*, and the other Principalities of *Austria*, because he was more addicted to the Pope than the rest. The *Bohemians* promise to maintain *Cesar's* Title with their arms, if he would after the example of *Maximilian*, permit them to enjoy their conscience, this their Petition was deferred, therefore *Mathias* was to receive *Hungary* and *Austria*, vvhv presently forbids the exercise of the Protestant Religion: The *Bohemians* take arms vvith intent to defend themselves, but vvithall, they humbly petition that they might have the same liberty in Religion which *Hungary* and *Austria* enjoyed: To this the

the Prince assented, and the Emperor by his Letters Pateents confirmed, who also committed to them the ordering of the Universtie of *Prague*. The not observing of this Grant, was the occasion of future wars.

Shortly after followed the troubles of *Fuliers*, for *Johannes Gulielmus* dying childless, The Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Palatine of *Newburg*, and divers others laid claim to it in right of their marriages with the sisters of *John* defunct; but the Emperor pretending that it was in his power to decide the controversy, sends *Leopold* of *Austria*, to rule *Fuliers* in his right, and in the name of the Empire. *Leopold's* part is maintained by the Catholick Princes, but *Brandenburg*, and *Newburg*, by the Protestants: Hence were divers meetings of Catholics and Protestants, a part, at *Hala* in *Suevia* the Protestants meet, at *Herlipolis* the Catholics: hence confederacies with foreign Princes to the ruine of *Germany*. *Brandenburg* and the Palatine raise Forces, and take in most Towns of that Ditchie, except *Fuliers*, the City which *Leopold* held; but this also was taken by *Grave Maurice*, after two months siege, at length both sides lay down arms, who choose certain Judges at *Colen* to decide the controversy, but to no purpose.

About this time *Gambalot* the Satrapa of *Alepo* being defeated by the *Turks*, and deserted by his friends, obtains pardon from *Achmet*, upon promise that he would turn his Forces against the *Persian*; who notwithstanding continues his expeditions, and desires the Pope's aid, by promising him power over all the Christians within his Dominions: He solicites *Cesar's* assistance by shewing what advantage it will be for him to joyn with so potent a friend as the *Persian*, against the *Turk*: For this cause the Pope injoynes the Religious houses to maintain some professors of the *Hebrew* and *Arabick* tongues, that he may employ them among the Eastern Christians. The *Polander* having composed his differences with the *Rackosians*, prepares to be revenged, both on the *Russian* and *Swede*, for the wrongs received from them; and with prosperous success he defeats the *Sweds* in *Livonia*, and the *Russians* in *Lithuania*. He besiegeth also *Smolenscum*, the Metropolis of *Lithuania*, and after two years siege, takes it, where 200 thousand *Muscovits* lost their lives. *Novograd* submits to *Sigismund*, and so doth the Cham of *Tartar*. *Vilna* is burned by the *Muscovits*.

In *Holland* *Arminius* being called from his Ministeriall charge in *Amsterdam*, to be Divinity professor in *Leyden*, conferred with *Iunius* by Letters, about the point of Predestination, and some other Articles, he was opposed by *Comarus* the other Divinity professor, who with *Iunius* stood stilly to *Calvin's* doctrine: Divers disputes and conferences were held about these points, so that Schollars, Magistrates, and inferior people fell out into factions, *Arminius's* Disciples were called *Remonstrantes*, *Calvin's* *Contraremonstrantes*. This controversy was like to have ruined these Provinces, so violent was the contestation between them. *Arminius* mean while died, the 9<sup>th</sup> year of this last century. About whose successor *Vorstius*, there was no small trouble, some stilly maintaining him, others accusing him as a Schismatick and Heretick in his opinions of the divine attributes, but at length King *James* got him to be removed from *Leyden*; threatening to renounce all friendship and league with them, if he were not deposed; So he was sent to *Gauda*, and *Arminianisme* by degrees suppressed. This year 1612, died *Cesar Rodolphus*, in whose life-time *Mathias* his brother cunningly obtained *Austria*, and *Hungary*, to which he added *Bohemia* a few months before his death; for *Leopold's* Soldiers who were raised for defence of *Iuliers*, consisting of 9000 foot, and 4000 horse, invade *Bohemia*; *Buduse* is taken by Stratagem, and the lesser *Prague* by storm. *Mathias* comming to aid the *Bohemians*, obtains that Kingdome from *Cesar*, upon promise of payment of a yearly pension. *Leopold's* army fearing the power of *Mathias*, having received their pay, remove from thence.

*An. Christi* Rodolphus died as the Civill wars of Germany were beginning to break out, having reigned 35 years, he left behinde him a rich treasure, he was a good Prince, but too much addicted to women, yet without Legitimate children: His 3 brothers *Matthias*, *Maximilian*, and *Albert*, were also childless; There-fore his cousin *German* was his heir: So the estate of *Maximilian* is devolved upon the children of his brother *Charles*, who by *Mary of Bavaria* had 5 sons, and 10 daughters, the eldest son *Ferdinand*, after *Matthias*, obtained the Imperiall Crown. In *Transylvania* *Batorius* lost the greatest part of *Valachia*, but he overthrew *Thorgascius*, who strove to make King *Matthias* Master of *Transylvania*, but he was defeated by *Batorius*, and driven into the woods, there he lived in great misery, till he went to *Poland*, where he expected preferment, *Suscus* being sent thence with an army against *Muscovia*, which was overthrown by the *Russians*, and withall the *Polander* lost *Smolenscum*: *Batorius* in hatred to the *Turks*, applies himself to the *Austrians*, so that *Gabor* by the *Sultans* assistance, makes way to invade that Principality. A conference between the *Roman* Catholicks and Protestants was held at *Ratisbon*, but to no purpose, for the one would have the Church, the other the Scripture, to be judge; the one would have traditions with Scripture, the other Scripture alone, to be the rule of controversies. About this time, the brothers of the *Rosie* Cross, bragging much of their perfection and knowledge appeared awhile, and then vanished. In *Africa*, *Fesse* and *Maroco* being worne out with mutuall wars, are both subdued by *Mule Sidan* King of *Fesse*, who had been driven out of his Kingdome by his brothers. This mans Uncle *Schecquus*, in recompence of the money and aid he had from *Spain*, delivers over to the King of *Spain*, the strong Fort *Alarachia* on the *Affrican* shore, near *Hercules* his Pillars. *Philip* drives out of *Spain* the *Moors*, who had been ancient Inhabitants, upon pretence that they had invited the *Affricans*, and *Turks* into *Spain*. These being stript of all except a little *Viticum*, are shipped at sundry times (for there were 900 thousand of them) and exposed on the *Affrican* shore to hunger, cold, and the sword.

## CHAP. XVIII.

The affairs of Germany, Denmark, Swedland, Holland, Russia, Italy, Hungary, Bohemia, Transylvania, Poland, Grisons, France, Switzers, &c. under *Matthias* and *Ferdinand*, 2<sup>d</sup>, Emperors, from the yeare 1612. till 1626.



*Matthias* succeeded to his brother *Rodolphus* in the Empire: He calls a Diet at *Ratisbon*, at which were present all the Protestant Princes, except the Elector of *Saxony*, who had lost the possession of *Fuliers*: And *Lodowick* of *Hassia*, who by his cousin *German*, *Maurice* was stript of the Government of *Marpurg*, therefore were both discontented. Here the protestants complain, that in *Spire*, *Vienna*, and other places of Judicature, the Judges were all, or most of them Catholicks, and that therefore the protestants were subject to all inconveniences, having no other Judges but their enemies. They desire then, there might be the same number of protestants as of Catholic Judges and votes; but in this point nothing was concluded; the protestants depart in anger, and nothing done but only a decree to raise arms in defence of *Transylvania* against the *Turk*; for complaint was made to *Achmat Sultan*, against *Batorius*, for siding with *Cesar*, and endeavouring to deliver the possession of *Dacia* to him. Upon this the *Turk* strives to make *Bethleem Gabor* Fiduciary Prince of *Transylvania* under him. *Batorius* having weakened

himself by his cruelty upon the *Saxons* in *Dacia*, putting to death promiscuously every one that was but suspected of treachery, was for want of strength defeated by *Gabor*, assisted with the *Turks* Forces, and at last was killed at *Varadinum*, by the treachery of his servants. *Gabor* satisfieth the *Turk* by giving him *Lippa* with some other Forts, and pacified *Cesar* by swearing fealty to him. *Achmet* had a great mind to pick a quarrel with the *Pannonians*, but was hindred by the *Arabian* sedition; in which the *Sultan* lost *Adennum*: the Governour also of *Damascus* was overthrown in a great battel, by the son of *Emeris Saïda*, who derived his pedigree from *Godfred* of Bullion.

After *Christian* of *Denmark*, had taken *Calmaria* and *Elsburg*, the *Swedes* two chief Forts, upon the *Baltic* and the *Hesperian* sea, a great mortality by the plague ensued, which occasioned a peace; wherein was articulated that the *Swede* should relinquish his title of *Lapponia*, and should pay 12 Tuns of gold to the *Dane*, for his expences on the last war; till the payment of which sum, *Elsburg* should be left in pawn.

The *Hollanders* at *Constantinople*, make a League with the *Turk* for commerce. At *Aix* and *Colen*, a sedition is raised against the Catholicks; at *Francfort*, and *Wormes* against the *Jews*. At *Aix* the Protestants had been along time debarred the exercise of their religion, and punished for the same, which the Townsmen thought was a great oppression, therefore in a popular tumult they seize on the City, and turn out the *Jesuits*: but by the *French* Agents, and those of *Fuliers*, a patcht peace is made up, to which the Catholick Senators would not assent.

At *Colen* many who were forbid the exercise of their religion, remove to *Mulheim* two miles from the City; they of *Colen* fearing lest that new Town of *Mulheim* should out-run in wealth, inhabitants, and priviledges, their ancient City, they labour to hinder the building and increase thereof. *Brandeburg* and *Newburg*, are inhibited by *Cesar* from the building of that place, and the inhabitants are threatened with destruction. Mean while, *Wolfgangus Gulielmus* of *Newburg*, and *Georgius Gulielmus* Marques, the Electors son, Princes near of kin, fell out about the possession of their mothers lands; and withall differed in religion: for *Newburg* having married *Magdalen* of *Bavaria*, becomes Catholick, the other a Calvinist, who by the assistance of *Holland*, fortifies *Fuliers*, as *Newburg* had done the same at *Dusseldorp*. *Cesar* proscribes *Aix* for turning out their ancient Senators, and the execution of this Edict is committed to *Albert Cesars* brother. *Newburg* puts *Cesars* sentence in execution concerning *Mulheim*, which he destroyeth; the Elector of *Brandeburg* complains of these Edicts; as being against law; in the interim, *Spinola* seizeth upon *Aix*, and restores the Senators; the Protestants fly, they that remained, were punished; he overthrowes the remainders of *Mulheim*, and brings under the subjection of *Newburg*, *Vesalia*, upon the *Rhen*, and other Towns of the Principality of *Fuliers*. *Maurice* being called upon by *Brandeburg*, takes in *Emerec* and some other places. *Newburg* upon the death of his Father *Philip Ludowick*, sets up the *Roman* Religion in his Dominions, and *Brandeburg* advanceth Calvinism in his Lands; that he might remove as much in opinion, as he was in affection from *Newburg*. At *Berlin* the people mutiny for changing *Lutheranism* into *Calvanism*, which they hated. The *Jews* for their great extortion are driven out of *Francfort*, but brought back again in great pomp. At *Wormes* also some *Jews* are banished: at *Salina* in *Thuringia*, one *Rzekiel Meth*, gave himself out to be the great *Michael*, and Immortal Word of God; but by experience, he found himself to be mortal and miserable. *Smalcus* a *Socinian*, denyeth *Christs* Divinity, which blasphemy is entertained in *Sarmatia* and *Dacia*, at this day.

About this time *Russia* is much infested by the *Polander* and *Swedes*, many *Russians* did now serve the *Polander* in this war, in hope his son *Landslaus* should

*An. Christi*

1614

1612

1613.

30

50

40

50

be



*An. Christi* be Prince of *Muscovia*: but those mutinying for want of pay, gave occasion to the *Tartars* to invade *Podolia*. But these *Muscovites* being pacified by gold and large promises, overthrew three several Armies of their Country-men. *Neuda*, *Plescovia*, and other *Russian* Towns, are taken by the *Polander* and *Swede*. *Mosqua* is burned by the *Polonians*, the *Russians* resenting these losses, begin to lay aside all private grudges, and the Nobility chose a Prince of their own rank, *Michael Federovitiuss*, who sends Embassadors to *Cesar* and the *Polander* for peace, to which both assented. The death of *Francis Duke* of *Mantua*, caused a war in *Italy*, for *Cardinal Ferdinand Gonzaga*, the deceased brother, puts aside his hat, thinks of marriage, and layeth hold upon his Ancestors' 10 Principality; from him *Charles Emanuel*, of *Savoy*, demands his daughters Dowry, who had been married to *Francis*: and withall the Marchionat of *Montferrat* the *Mantuan*, being assisted by the vice Duke of *Millan*, who was a *Spaniard*, did claim *Montferrat* for himself; and having raised an Army of *Spaniards*, opposeth the *Savoyen*, who stoutly made resistance, till a peace was made, and the *Mantuan* promised to pay the Dowry or portion to *Margaret*; the other differences were referred to arbitration. But when the *Spaniard* proposed hard conditions to the *Savoyen*, the war broke out more violently then before, to the great effusion of blood; the *French* and *Switzers* held with the *Savoyen*, the *Italians* and *Spaniards*, with the *Mantuan*. The Vice Duke gains *Vercelle* for the *Spaniard*, when in the interim the *Savoyen* waists many places in the Dutchy of *Millan*. At last, the eighteenth year of this Century, restitution was made on both sides, and a peace concluded in *Germany*. *Henry of Juliers*, offended with *Brunswick*, obtains a proscription against that City, from *Ralph* the Emperor; the Dukes son *Frederick* had made peace with them, if they would have delivered him a key to open their city gate at his pleasure; this being denied, he besiegeth them. During which time, 12000 of the besiegers, and 3000 of the besieged, were slain. At length about the fourth month after the siege began, a peace is made, in which it was agreed, that the City, as their Ancestors had done, should swear 30 Allegiance to the Duke. The proscription should be cancelled, the old commerce between the Duke and City should be renewed, and that future controversies shall be decided by Law, not by the sword.

1616 The *Venetians* were infested both on sea and land, by the *Croats* plundering oftentimes with small Boats, the *Venetian* great Vessels. Complaint is made to *Ferdinand* the Arch-Duke, against these Pirates, but nothing done, wherefore a cruel war ensued. In which *Cesar* and the *Spaniard* stood for *Ferdinand*, the *Hollander* under *Fohn* of *Nassau*, for *Venice*; but they being unacquainted with the *Italian* way of fighting, returned dishonourably home, without doing any thing. Mean while *Ferdinand*, as it were adopted by *Matthias Cesar*, 40 is made King of *Bohemia*, by the consent of his two brothers *Albert* and *Maximilian*, on this condition, that whilst the Emperour lived, he should not meddle with the government. Hereupon he is crowned, nobly entertained by the *Saxon*, and fealty sworn to him by the *Moravians*, *Silesians*, and *Lusatians*. After a bloody war between him and *Venice*, a peace is concluded; and the mercenary *Croats*, thieves rather than soldiers, must avoid *Senga*, in which Town *Ferdinand* was to place a Garison of *Germans*. The confederate *Belgians* had now redeemed from the *English* *Flißing* and *Briel*, which were pawned to Queen *Elizabeth*. At *Amsterdam* and *Delph* great troubles about *Arminianism*. The Excise of Wine being diminished, and of Corn encreased, so 50 enraged the people, that they brake in upon the State, or Council-House flung the Excise money up and down, and forced the Senate to take off that Excise. In this scuffle, the women there plaid the Amazons, and no wonder when one of them had been married successively to twenty five husbands.

The *Arminians* finding their adversaries too strong, and that a Synod was called

*An. Christi* called against them, were advised by *Barnevilde*, *Grotius* and others, to raise forces at *Utrecht*, *Leyden* and *Harlem*, for their defence, alledging that each Congregation had power to choose their own Pastor: but *Grave Maurice* sooner then was expected, came upon *Utrecht*, seizeth on the watch, disarms the Citizens, imprisons the conspirators, and placeth there *Calvinian* ministers, which much disheartned the Remonstrants. In this mean while, the *Holland* ships finde out another passage to the *Moluccas* beyond the Strait of *Magellan*: in two years space they pass the Line five times. In *Russia* before the peace was made, the *Polonians* out of *Smolenscum*, made an irruption on the *Russians*, of 1517 whom they slew eight thousand, and took two thousand prisoners. By the mediation of King *James*, a peace is concluded between the *Russian* and *Swede*. It was agreed that *Novoggrad* and some other Towns taken from the *Russian*, should be restored to *Michael* the *Exarch*; and that *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Swede*, should retain five Towns: that neither of them should assist the *Polander* with arms. In *Livonia* some Towns are taken by the *Swede*, but by the treachery of *Furnesbec* they are surpris'd by the *Polander*.

The protestants in *Germany* celebrate a Jubilee this year 1617. being a full Century since *Luther* began to oppose indulgences. At this the Roman Catholics did much storm, and indeed this Evangelical Jubilee (as they call it) 20 hath occasioned much sorrow in *Germany* ever since: for then the Pope and Princes began to consult about suppressing of Lutheranism; the brand was set on fire in *Bohemia*, which caused that woful conflagration in *Germany*, presaged by the fatal comet seen that year, by the fall of a hill among the *Grisons*, on the Town of *Plura*, which was suddenly overwhelmed, so that neither the place, nor face of a Town, could there be any more seen, but a Lake where the Castle stood. This Earthquake fell out the 25 of *August*, that same year. The palace at *Paris* was set on fire by Lightning from Heaven, which consumed the ancient Monuments and Statues of the *French* Kings. About that time I being then at *Salisbury*, in the Deanry, was called out into the Court 30 to behold (with multitudes of people, being then nine of the clock at night) divers Moons or Meteors like Moons, within a bright cloud beset with divers crosses.

The Papists in *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, taking offence at some Churches lately erected by the Protestants, shuts them up, or defaceth them. The Protestants complain to the Bishop of *Prague* and Abbot of *Brunonia*, that this was against the Laws of *Rodolphus* and *Matthias*; it was answered that none had power to build Churches in their Territories, without their consent, and that therefore the protestants were justly punished. Then they appeal to *Cesar*, who gave them no satisfaction: he being now gone from *Vienna*, to be neerer 40 *Ferdinands* Coronation in *Hungary*, the protestant Princes call a Diet, to consult about preserving of their religion: upon this, *Cesar* is made believe that such conventicles as they called them, were of dangerous consequence, tending to the Emperors overthrow; and that therefore under pain of his highest displeasure, they should be dissolved. At this they were so exasperated, that they flung their Scribe, and two more out of the Castle window, accusing them as betrayers of their countries liberties, in appealing to *Cesar*, yet their lives were saved. They set a guard of soldiers upon *Sternberg*, the Governor of the Castle and Kingdom; they secure *Prague*, and throw the Jesuits out of *Bohemia*; and presently by their letters to *Cesar*, and their publick declarations, 50 they justify what they had done. But *Cesar* condemns their proceedings as seditious, exhorts the Princes not to countenance them, and forbids levying of soldiers, promising that if the *Bohemians* would be quiet, he would not stir, otherwise he would raise such an army as should chastise their contumacy. With this the people were contented, promising to be peaceable, and desiring no force might be raised. Nor was *Cesar* averse to peace, but some

*An. Christi* some turbulent spirits who could place no security in peace, being guilty of the breach thereof, and fearful of *Cesar's* displeasure, resolve to make war. Hereupon *Cesar* by *Tampir* and *Bucquoi*, raiseth an army, *Bohemia* draws the *Silesians* and *Lusatians* to joyn with them; they besiege *Budvise* a Town wholly *Cesarian*, and place a Garison in *Crumavia*. *Tampir* takes in *Bistrickum*, and being repulsed from *Newhouse*, plunders the Suburbs, then takes *Pilgron*: *Count Bucquoi* comes with a bigger army to *Saslavia*, where a doubtfull battell is fought, many slain on both sides; the *Palatin* and *Saxon* Electors would fain have hid the sparkles under the ashes. But it was now too late, for the fire was broke out into a flame. *Mansfield* takes *Pilsna* for the *Bohemians*, *Bucquoi* fights him; and comes to *Budvise*, takes *Crumavia*: *Tampir* returning with great plunder to *Vienna*, is met by the enemy, and plundered of his plunder. *Turren* makes excursions upon *Austria*; the protestants there being angry with *Cesar*, for undertaking so rash a war, without their knowledge. The *Saxon* Elector laboureth for a cessation, till peace be concluded: the *Bohemians* doubt of *Cesar's* fidelity in keeping the peace. Divers Commanders at *Vienna* undertake a new order of Militia against Hereticks. *Cesar* proscribes *Mansfield*, and in the mean while falls sick of a lingering disease, whereof he died the 62 year of his life, and the 7 of his Empire. The *Grisons* shortly after the Earthquake, fall into divisions, proscribing and killing all that were against their democracy, the exiles require forain aid, and make way for strangers, to invade that country. The *Venetians* found out the plot intended against them, and punished the plotters.

*Ferdinand* 2<sup>d</sup>, succeeded in the Empire, he was grandchild to *Ferdinand* first by his son *Charls*. In his first Letters Patents he establisheth the privileges of *Bohemia*, and the publick Officers of the kingdom, setting by *Matthias*, but now thrust out by the Peers. This was disliked by the *Bohemians*, therefore they resolve to stand upon their guard. The inhabitants whom *Bucquoi* affrighted with divers irruptions, are commanded to be in arms. *Turren* breaks in upon *Moravia*, and forceth them to side with *Bohemia*. *Wallenstein* goeth to *Hungary* for aid from thence. *Turren* having over-run *Austria*, faces *Vienna*, and takes the Suburbs, where he quartered some days as it were in the Kings presence. But whilst he is drawing the *Hungarian*, and *Austrian* protestants to confederate with him, *Bucquoi's* army increaseth by new supplies from *Italy*, *Hungary*, and *Belgium*: With these he fights *Mansfield*, and defeats him. Upon this divers Towns open their gates to him, who laden with spoil enters triumphantly *Budvise*; this caused *Turren* to hasten his return into *Bohemia*. *Bucquoi's* army now consisting of 17000, takes divers Towns upon surrender. *Tampir* is sent against *Moravia*. *Turren* being beaten back from *Vienna*, King *Ferdinand* comes to *Francfort*, where the Elector of *Mintz*, calls a Diet for installing of the Emperour. This troubled the *Bohemians*, that *Ferdinand* whom they went about to un-King, should sit among the Electors as King of *Bohemia*: therefore they send Agents and Letters, to keep him off from voting, whom they held to be no King. But their labour was in vain, for not only was he acknowledged one of the Electors, but also was chosen and consecrated Emperour. The *Bohemians* on the contrary, kill the *Tampirians* in *Moravia*, and throw the *Jesuits* out of *Silesia*, *Moravia*, and *Hungary*. Besides, the very next day that *Ferdinand* was made *Cesar*, they depose him at *Prague*, and in his place chose *Frederic* the *Palatin*. When as the Electors had cited them to *Ratisbon*, for deciding of the differences; the *Palatin* though he was dissuaded by the Electors, yet unadvisedly accepts of the *Bohemian* Crown. *Bucquoi* being enraged, beleaguers *Pisseca*, storms it, and puts all the Townsmen to the sword. *Mansfield* is proscribed by the new *Cesar*, who rageth up and down the Country, doing more hurt to innocent people, then good to his new king *Frederic* that employed him. *Gabriel Bethlem*, or *Bethlem*

*leem Gabor* Pr. of *Transylvania* did most hurt to *Ferdinand*, who conspiring with the *Bohemians*, and gaping after the Kingdome of *Hungary*, took *Lassovia*, *Posonium*, and other places; he used the Cath olicks barbarously, and transferring the Crown of *Hungary* to himself, took upon him the title of Prince of *Hungary*: Afterwards meetings were held among the Correspondents (for so they were called who sided with the *Palatin* and *Bohemia* at *Norimberg*; and of the Catholicks at *Herbipolis*, about the way of promoting, their severall interests and religions. *Bucquoi* been pinched with want, and forsaken of the *Hungarian* robbers, went aside into *Austria*, where the Protestants separating themselves from the Papists, had an eye on the fortune of *Bohemia*.

In *Holland* a Synod is called at *Dort*, at which were present Divines out of *Great Britain*, *Switzerland*, *Palatinat*, *Hassia*, *Geneva*, *Brem*; and *Embsden*; In which these 5 controverted Articles were debated. 1. Whether Election and reprobation were absolute, or had respect to faith and infidelitie. 2<sup>d</sup>. If *Christ* died for all. 3<sup>d</sup>. If in *God* there are two contrary wills, to wit, revealed and secret. 4<sup>th</sup>. If effectually *Grace* can be resisted. 5<sup>th</sup>. If the faithfull can finally, and totally fall from *Grace*. The Remonstrants refused to stand to their verdict, who were both Judges and Parties, exhibiting a confession of their Faith with a protestation, would not recant their opinion, therefore they were condemned of error, divers of them imprisoned, and most banished. *John Bernevild* above 70 years of age, and who had been a good patriot, loofeth his head, for favouring the *Arminian* doctrine and plots, for violating the *Belgick* Laws; for accusing *Maurice* as if he aspired at the sole dominion of *Belgium*. *Eedenborovius* one of the plotters killed himself: *Grotius* and *Hogerbetius* condemned to perpetuall imprisonment, and their goods confiscated; but *Grotius* by his wife was conveyed out of prison in a chest. *Cesar* by his declarations doth nullifie the *Palatins* Coronation; because it was not done by them, who had the power to do it, nor was it done [solio vacante.] much less did it become the *Palatin* to take his Crown, whom he had acknowledged to be lawfull King of *Bohemia*, and had with the other Electors chosen him *Cesar*: He shewed also that the *Austrians* had an hereditary right over *Bohemia*; which the *Bohemians* in their printed books refuted. But *Frederick* the new King by abolishing the *Roman* Faith in the Castle of *Prague*, and the *Lutheran* in other places, procured on himself much hatred; the beginning of his reign was ominous, for he sent one *Slavata* to take possession of the Town *Gutscinum* with the Castle, which was blown up with gun-powder by *Smirskia* the wife of *Baron Warientburgius*, there perished three, and *Slavata*, with certain Judges, in all about one hundred persons: Whilst *Frederick* is busie in making the *Moravians*, *Cilefians*, and *Lusatians* swear Fealty to him. *Maradas* conducts from *Cesar* new Forces into *Bohemia*; *Bucquoi* falls upon the *Mansfieldians* out of order, for want of pay in the night, and makes a great slaughter amongst them. The *Transylvanian* makes truce with *Cesar* for some months. *Bucquoi* is forced by the *Bohemians* to retreat to *Gremsa*: The *Cossacks* which were the *Polonian* Auxiliaries, spoyle all the *Lutheran* Countries with fire and sword, multitudes of people are driven into the woods, where they are killed with cold and hunger, or the merciless enemy. These also were sometimes beaten by the *Silesians* and *Moravians*. *Baron Felsus* as he was pursuing those *Cossacks*, fell unwarily into *Bucquoi's* quarters, where he lost his life, with many of his Soldiers. The Elector's pitying the misery of *Germany* labor (except *Brandenburg*) to perswade the *Palatine* to renounce his Title of *Bohemia*, otherwise they threaten to take arms against him. *Frederick* replies that the cognizance of the *Bohemian* cause was not in a few Electors, nor in *Ferdinand* Archduke of *Austria*, but in the Kingdome of *Bohemia*, or rather the whole Empire: Neither had he any quarrel with *Cesar*, but with the Archduke; therefore saith he, forraign

G g g

Princes

*An. Christi* Princes desire the matter may be heard in a full Diet: But the Bohemians were so little moved with the Electors threatnings, that they named *Henry Fredericks* eldest son now six years old, successor to his Father in the Kingdome of *Bohemia*.

*Cesar* to vindicate this wrong offered to his Family, solicites the Pope to furnish him with money, *Spain* and *Poland* with Forces. The Palatine finds not that supply from *England* which he expected; The *French* King thought it best to reconcile the differences, therefore sends Ambassadors to desire them to be reconciled: *Maximilian* of *Bavaria*, who had a great army of Papists, agrees with the Protestant army under *Jochim Ernest*, that the seat of the war should be contained within the borders of *Bohemia*, and the Provinces unite to it, presently the *Bavarian* marcheth against the *Austrians* that were in league with *Bohemia*, and forceth them to renounce their league. *John George* Elector of *Saxony*, who had exhorted before *Bohemia* and the Palatin to submit to *Cesar*, is by him employed against the upper and lower *Lusatia*, both of which he subjugates to the Emperor, which greatly advanced *Cesar's* cause. At the same time *Spinola* with an army out of *Belgium*, by the King of *Spain's* command invades the Palatinat. The Prince of *Orange* with a strong army marcheth into *Vesalia*, his brother *Henry Frederick* into the Palatinat. In *Hungary*, *Gabor* is proclaimed King by a Diet of his own Faction: Thence he falls upon *Austria*, and sends aid to *Bohemia*, he shoots *Tampire* dead, as he was attempting to take in *Posonium*. *Bavare* having quieted *Austria*, joynes his whole Forces with *Bucquois's*; many towns by them are taken, multitudes of the inhabitants slain, many of the country-people take arms against their land-lords, waisting their Mannors, and plundering their houses: the *Bohemian* army conducted by the King, did somewhat retard the enemies proceedings, some light vexations there were, but the Soldiers were unruly for want of pay, whereas the Imperial army by reason of their great plunders, and the wealth of *Maximilian* the *Bavarian*, was duly payed: The Palatine then marcheth with all his Forces towards *Prague*, and encampeth but in a tumultuary way on a hill not far off, with a purpose to fight the Enemy, and to drive him out of *Prague*, but most of his army put more confidence in their heels than hands, for whilst they were intrenching themselves, Count *Tilly*, with the *Bavarian* and *Casarian* army hastneth towards them: presently about 9000 *Hungarians* laden with plunder, run away; in the very first encounter of the two armies, the Regiments of *Turzin* and *Hollach* are cut off, which so disheartned the rest, that they began to grow disordered, and in a confused way being struck with a panick terror, run towards the City. *Anhalden* and Count *Hollach*, prevent the rest, and bring sad newes to the King that the day was lost, and that his chief safety consisted in his horse-heels. He procures with much difficulty truce for 8 hours, either to renounce his claim of *Bohemia*, or to fight again: He found it unsafe to put all on the hazard of another encounter, therefore having put his wife, children, and best things in coaches and waggons, he hastneth into *Silesia*: The Crown and Records of the Kingdom being left behinde. This victory fell out the 8<sup>th</sup> of *November* after the *Roman* account; the Gospell for which day is, *Give to Cesar the things that are Cessars*. The next day, the Imperialists enter *Prague* in a triumphant way, so in a short time *Bohemia* submits to *Cesar*: In this battell were killed of the *Bohemians* 8000. and 2000. *Casarians*. The Palatin Soldiers being destitute of their pay, and forsaken by their Commanders, curse *Bohemia* that ever they saw it, and so by flight every one shifts for himself.

Shortly after this, *Maximilian* of *Bavaria*, returns home, the charge of the army, is Committed to *Tilly*, and of the Kingdom to *Lichtenstein*. Of the Protestant side, *Mansfield* had some Soldiers in *Pilsna*, *Hermannus Francus* in

in *Thabor*, and old *Turzin* in *Moravia*, in *Valachia* and *Moldavia*, *Gratian*, at this time was *Vaiwod*, whom the *Polonians* protected, the *Turks* and *Tartars* opposed, because he had conspired with the *Polander* against the *Turk*; two battels were fought; in the first the *Polanders*, in the second the *Turks* had the better, in which *Gratian* with his Auxiliaries were cut off. Hereupon *Osman* having made peace with the *Parthian*, turns out of his Court the *Poland* Ambassador, and denounceth war against the King, who hardly escaped with his life, being assaulted by an *Assasin*, as he was going into the Church; by providence the blow was averted, the *Assasin* tortured, and open war against the *Turk* is proclaimed. In the *Valtelin*, *Ralph Plant* being proscribed by the *Grisons*, enters into a secret plot with the *Catholicks*, to kill all the Protestants there, as well strangers, as natives, which massacre was effected accordingly: Then being assisted by the Duke of *Feria*, Governor of *Millan* with 4000 Soldiers, seisseth on the whole valley from *Lake Comon* to *Tirol*, and beats off the *Grisons* united with the *Valtebinois*: The Duke of *Feria* mean while builds in fit places strong Forts. The *Venetians* could not endure that the gate of *Italy* should be shut up against the *French* and *Switzers*; The *French* King by his Ambassadors, desires the King of *Spain* to open the passage again. Upon this, divers consultations were held, but diversly interrupted: In the interim *Pompy Plant* with his friends are murdered in his own Castle.

In the beginning of the next year *Frederick* the Palsgrave is proscribed by *Cesar* for accepting the Crown of *Bohemia*, and so are all those that aided him. *Turzin* who could not persuade the *Moravians* to constancy, flieth to *Bethleem Gabor*, whose election to the Crown of *Hungary*, *Cesar* maketh null. The Palatin of *Segeberg* sueth for aid from the *Dane* and *Saxon*, but in vain; for *Cesar* having declared he would maintain the peace and liberty of *Germany*; neither the *Dane* nor *Saxon* would stir, onely *Christian* of *Brunswick*; Bishop of *Halberstad* raiseth an Army, which he conducted into the Countrey of *Mintz*, the Pallatin now was gon for *Holland*. *Bucquoi* had subdued *Moravia*, the *Saxon Silesia*, which was pardoned upon acknowledging of their errors, the *Moravians* were left to *Cesar's* mercy: *Spinola* broke the league that was between the Princes of *Onoltzbac*, *Wirtzburg*, *Durlacen*, and *Hasse* with some others that were united; these procured peace for their own Territories, and truce for the Palatinat, till means was used for a transaction. Mean while *Tilly* in *Bohemia* fights with *Mansfield*, who had yet the possession of some Towns there, and of the upper Palatinat. But for want of money, the Captains sold their Towns to *Tilly*: *Mansfield* being reduced to great streights, upon promise of pardon, money and honours, submits to *Cesar*; but having strengthened himself, he revolts and violates his faith, and so through the *Bavarian* Territories, he breaks in upon the lower Palatinat, and raiseth the siege of *Frankenthal*; then he plunders the Territories of *Spine* and *Straisburg*, and possesseth himself of *Hagenoa*: The Palsgrave publisheth a declaration, wherein he sheweth the causes why he accepted the Crown of *Bohemia*, and withall, how desirous he was of peace, if it could be obtained upon terms of honor and safety.

Count *Bucquoi* having subdued *Moravia*, marcheth towards *Hungary*, where *Gabor* cunningly refuseth to be Crowned. *Presburg*, *Posonium*, and other Towns, are taken in by *Bucquoi*, who persuades *Seasbin George* to fall off from *Gabor*, he under-hand reconciles himself to *Cesar*, and doth a great deal of mischief to *Gabor*, whilst he was expecting aid from the *Turk*, for he intercepted the Auxiliaries that were sent to him: *Gabor* at this time was in a low condition; when *Bucquoi* besieging *Nessolum* was killed with 16 wounds, the recovering of his body from the *Hungarians*, cost the *Casarians* much blood; his death gave occasion to *Gabor* to regain many of his lost Towns and Forts:

*An. Christi* But about the end of this year, at the Diet of *Niclasburg*, an accord is made between *Cesar* and him, and the Crown of *Hungary* is restored to *Ferdinand*. Divers Towns are left to *Gabor*, to be governed by him under *Cesar*. He obtains also some places in *Silesia*, and the title of a Prince of the Empire. Religion is left in the same condition it was, when *Ferdinand* undertook the Government of that kingdom. In the interim *Silesia* is much infested by *Fegerndorff*, who layeth heavy Taxes on them, and fights the *Saxon* with divers success. Twenty five Incendiaries are apprehended by the *Saxon*, and for Treason are condemned at *Prague*. Whilst the *Polonian* is at war with the Turk, the *Swedes* take *Riga* in *Livonia*, and *Mitovia*, which afterward was re-taken by 10 the *Polander*, and then a Truce was made.

The twelve years peace between *Spain* and *Holland*, is this year 21, expired in April. The Arch-Duke by his Agent, wisheth the *Hollanders* to return to the obedience of *Spain*, they answer, that it was too late to expect obedience of them, whom *Spain* had confessed to be free States. Hereupon *Spinola* in September sits down before *Fuliers*, and takes it the next February, notwithstanding *Orange* did what he could to help the besieged. Whilst the *Grisons* strive to defend, the *Valtelin* are beaten themselves by the *Spaniard*, by which means *Leopold* of *Austria* on the one side, and the Duke of *Feria* on the other, took occasion to plant the Roman faith there. The King of *Morocco* in 20 *Africa*, about to take the Fort, built by the *Spaniard* near *Alarachia*, is beaten off with the loss of his army, by the *Spanish Fleet*, which in the Straits of *Cadix*, took 32 *Holland Ships*. Out of the *Molucca Islands* the *Spaniards* and *English* beat the *Hollander*. This year died Pope *Paul* 5<sup>th</sup>, of an Apoplexy, the 59 year of his life, and of his Pontificat the 16. To him succeeded *Alexander Ludovisus* of *Bononia*, who made the peace between *Spain* and *Savoy*, whom after a few days *Cosmus* Exarch of *Hetruria*, followed; he left many children behind him, his eldest son *Ferdinand*, yet a child, succeeded; he was under the tuition of his Grand-mother of *Lorrain*, his Mother of *Austria*, and his Uncle the Cardinal. The last of March died King *Philip* 3<sup>d</sup> of *Spain*, 30 the 43 year of his life, and of his reign 23. *Philip* the 4<sup>th</sup>, being 16 years of age succeeded, who thrust out of his Court such as had abused his Fathers lenity; some he imprisoned, and some he put to death.

In July after died *Albert* the Arch-Duke, and in September following, *Bel-larmine* that famous Divine, being almost 80 years of age: he was sisters son to Pope *Marcellus* 2<sup>d</sup>. *Gregory* 15 made a Law that the Pope should be chosen by the Cardinals only, without any respect had to the Letters of Kings and Princes. *Brunswic* did much mischief this year in *Westphalia*, he took in many Towns, persecuted the Roman Catholics, abused the Clergy, defaced Churches, and made many of consecrated Ornaments; thence he goeth into 40 *Eisfeldia* and *Wattenavin*, and other places thereabout, spoiling all with fire and sword. Mean while the *Palatin* returns into his own country disguised. *Mansfield* and the *Marquis* of *Baden*, defeat *Tilly* near *Wissloch*: but afterward the same *Tilly* did totally rout the *Mansfieldians*, and took all their Artillery, Baggage and Money. Shortly after, *Mansfield* takes *Ladenburg*, and defeats the *Leopoldians*, as they were besieging *Hagenoa*. Then he hastneth to joyn with *Brunswic*, but *Tilly* did so hotly pursue him, that he retreats to *Manheim*. Then *Tilly* seeks out *Brunswic*, where he finds him with a great Army, but without Ordnance, near the River *Moos*, where he forceth them all to fly. The Duke escapes over the Bridge, and was so eagerly pursued by the *Tillians*, 50 that with the weight of the soldiers the Bridge broke, and many were drowned in the River. *Brunswics* other Troops were cut in pieces by the *Cesarians*: Besides those that were drowned, three thousand were killed; *Hochsta* was regained presently.

The *Palatin* wanting money to furnish *Mansfield* and *Brunswic*, and finding that

that his condition was deplorable, he supports his hopes with the agreement *An. Christi* at *Brussels*, then in agitation by *Digby* Ambassador for King *James*; he cashiered *Mansfield*, being desirous of the same, many Towns & forts submit to *Cesar*; *Wormes* and *Spire* admit Garisons; *Heidelberg* is besieged; the *Palatin* is conveyed to *Sedan* by the *Mansfieldians*, who joining with *Brunswicks* Forces, brake in through *France* upon *Henault*, where they had a sharp encounter with *Conslavus* of *Corduba*, in which *Brunswicks* arm was so torn and shattered, that the Chirurgions were fain to cut it off. Thence they make their way towards *Breda* in *Brabant*; sharp Skirmishes there were, and many slain on both sides. 10 *Brunswic* was like to cary the Victory, had not the *Mansfieldians* for want of pay, refused to fight. Not long after on the first of September *Heidelberg* after a stout defence, was taken by *Tilly*, the Garison all put to the sword, the Town miserably defaced and plundred, so that *Tilly* was fain to command the soldiers to give off. The King of *Denmark* sends an Ambassador to the Emperor, desiring him to pardon the *Palatins* temerity, for publick peace sake, and to restore him to his Electorat, upon his renunciation of the *Bohemian* Crown. But *Cesar* refers the Ambassador to the agreement of *Brussels*, which went on with so slow a pace, that in the mean while the *Palatin* lost all his Country; for Sir *Horace Vere* despairing of any aid, delivers up *Manheim* 10 to *Tilly*, upon honourable terms. In October following, *Leopold* subdues the Territory of *Spire*, and other parts. The Lands of the Marquisat of *Baden* suffered all kind of hostility by the *Bavarian* soldiers, chiefly the *Croats* and *Cossaks*. These *Cossaks* for their cruelty are cashiered by *Cesar*; for where-sover they went, like mad dogs, they raged on all sorts of people, sex and ages, their cruelties, rapacity, and leachery, which *Germany* suffered is unspeakable. But they were met sometimes by the *Silesians*, and rewarded according to their merits. The *Mansfieldians* were little better in *Westphalia*, and *East Friesland*: plundring and spoiling all places, as they came, and imposing Taxes at their pleasure; whereupon the lower *Saxony*, by *Cesars* consent, 30 take arms for their own defence. All the Protestant Ministers are banished out of *Bohemia*, and *Moravia*. In *France* the Pacification is broken by the King, who not without great slaughter takes *Montpelier*, and other Protestant Towns, with which afterwards he makes an agreement. The same year the Pope Canonizeth *Isidor*, *Ignatius Loyola*, *Francis Tre-* 1623  
*isa*, Founders of the bare-footed *Carmelites*, and one *Philip* Author of the Congregation of the Oratory. He decrees it a sin, to say, the Virgin *Mary* was conceived in sin. He erects a new Colledge for propagating the faith. He sends into *Denmark* some Reasonated Divines, to season the Schools and Pulpits with their Doctrine of *Rome*, but with small success; two *Danish* 40 ships richly laden, return that year home from *Ceylan* in the East-Indies. *Spinala* before *Bergen* in *Zorn*, loseth 8000 men, and at last is forced to break up his siege. *Maximilian* of *Bavaria* is honoured with the *Palatin* Electorat, against the will of *Mint*, *Saxon*, and *Bremburg*, but with this caution, that hereby the *Palatins* sons and kindred should not be prejudiced. This was done at *Ratisban* the 19 of February. The Popish Doctors are detected in *Denmark*, and banished. A silver Mine is found in *Normay*, and a new Academy erected in *Seland*. In *Holland* a Treasonous plot is discovered against *Mansfield*, and the Anti-*Arminians*; the Ring leaders, were *Barnfelds* two sons, one of which 50 escaped, the other with his accomplices was executed. The King of *Denmark* and the *Saxon* Princes drove *Brunswic* out of their Territories into *Friesland*, where *Tilly* falls upon his Rear, and by an ambush suddenly surrounds his Army, which was very numerous; the *Tillians* were but 5000, who put to flight the *Brunswickians*, killed seven hundred on the place, took most of the chief men prisoners, with all the Ordnance, Baggage and Provision. *Brunswic* himself escaped, with some Troups to *Breverd*. *Meppens* is surrendered to *Tilly*

*An. Christi* Tilly. Frisia is still molested by the *Mansfeldians*, till Count *Oldenburg* obtained their pardon from *Cesar*: For *Tilly* did not meddle with these cunning *Harpies*, yet some of them return to the Province of *Munster* in *Westphalia* where they loofe 15 Colours. *Limbaus* with most of his Commanders surrender themselves: From that time the *Mansfeldians* fell off daily, their Commander accompanied with a fevv, flies back to *Holland*, and *Brunswick* to *Saxony*. This year died *Gregory* 15<sup>th</sup> of the Palsie at *Rome*: His successor was *Cardinall Mayneus Barberinus*, vvho took the name of *Urban* 8<sup>h</sup>. Old *Turren* assisted by the *Turks*, did much mischief in *Moravia*, so did *Gabor*, till the *Turks* fell off from him, and his *German* aid not appearing, he vvvas forced to make peace vvith the Emperor, vvho aftervvard took from the title of Princes of the Empire. The *Turks* returning heavy vvith plunder, are killed every vvhere by the *Casarians*, and stript of their spoyles: The next year peace is renewed betveen *Cesar* and *Transylvania*, so at last *Jegerndorff* is turned out of *Silesia*, *Turren* out of *Moravia*, and *Gabor* out of *Hungary*.

1624

This year strange things were seen in *Germany*, portending yet more troubles. For in divers Poles water was congealed into blood, drops of blood fell from the beams and rafters of some houses, the bread, the tables, and books in some places sweat blood: Armies fighting were seen and heard in the aire, and corn grew upon trees. Shortly after this the sparkles of war begin to break out in *Denmark* and *Saxony*. Count *Tilly* places some Garrisons in *Saxony*, though *Brunswick* was fled into *Denmark*, and had disbanded the remainder of his Army: These Garrisons so oppressed the *Saxons* with exacti-  
ons, and want of provision, that they complain to the *Dane*, and he to the Emperor, that *Saxony* his neighbour Countrey was much oppressed, though they were no enemies either to *Cesar* or *Pavare*: It was answered, that those forces in *Saxony* belonged to the *Bavarian*, who could not with safety disband them, because he feared the *Saxon* strength, yet if there were any vvithin the King's Territories, they should be removed. This answer vvvas sent by the King to *Tilly*, vvho returns him this scoff, That his Soldiers had no vvings to flye in the aire, therefore must have some ground and earth for their feet to stand upon. This highly incensed the King, who was now invited by the Kings of great *Brittan*, *France*, *Swethland*, and the *Netherlands*, to stand up in defence of Kingly right. The *Hollanders* send a great fleet this year into *America*, which seising upon some *Spanish* Vessels, take the Bay or port of All Saints, with the Town, where they met with rich booties: *Spinola* about the end of *August*, sits down before *Baieda*. *Maurice* takes the antient Town of *Clive*, with some other places, he aimed also at the Cittadell of *Antwerp*, but his Stratagem failed. *Breda* having held out siege 9 months, in which time *Fustin* of *Nassau* made many eruptions, and *Henry Frederick* with a great army strove to raise the siege, but could not, therefore the Town was forced by sickness and famine, to yeild *May* 26. the Soldiers marched out with their arms, and the Townesmen had their liberties granted, but not their Religion, after such a day. A little before, *Frederick* of *Toledo*, recovered again their Bay of *Brissl* to the *Spaniards*. *Philip* 4<sup>th</sup> inhibited commerce betveen the *Spaniards*, and his subjects of *Belgium*.

1625

About the beginning of the 25<sup>th</sup> year, the storms and windes were so violent in *Denmark* and *Golfatia*, that not onely trees were rooted up, but also many houses, towers and Churches blown down, bulwarks, banks, and rampires overthrowen by the sea, and land-floods, fore-runners of the ensuing troubles. About the end of *March* at *Lavenberg*, a meeting was betveen the Princes of lower *Saxony*, the King of *Denmark*, as Duke of *Holfatia*, the administrator of *Magdeburg*, the Bishop of *Brom*, the Duke of *Brunswick*, the *Megapolitans*, where it is agreed, that the Regiments raised awhile ago for the defence of *Saxony* be increased, and a strong Army levied, over which the King

King should be General. The *Grisons* war in the *Valtellin* is renewed. For *France*, *Venice*, and *Savoy* vexed that a Province, so convenient for them, should be wholly subject to any other: Therefore they enter into a Confederacy for regaining it: To whom 4 Towns and 2 Counties come in and submit. Many that had betrayed their Countrey were put to death, but the Catholick *Switzers* put themselves under the protection of *Austria*. Presently *Cleve* being taken, the whole *Valtellin* falls off to the confederates. There is also war made against *Genua*, for furnishing the *Spaniard* with money and provisions: This War was eagerly perused in the beginning by the *French*, and *Savoyen*, in which the *Ligurians* were sometimes worsted: *Preton* and *Albinga* are surrendered, but the *French* were diverted by an intestine War at home, between the *Papists* and *Hugonots*, in vvvhich Duke *Sonli*: beat the King's ships at sea, and shortly after is beaten himself, and driven into *England*. *Rochel* is besieged both by Sea and Land: Pope *Urban* confirms the new Militia, which began the 19<sup>th</sup> year of his age at *Vienna*, and gives it the name of *Saint Martes Conception*. In *Austria*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and elsewhere, the Protestant books are burned, their Church-service disturbed, and the professors of Reformation banished. In *France*, books were cast abroad that the *Hugonots* intended to kill the King, and to recover their Liberty. *Marcus Antonius de Dominis*, who had wrote against the Church of *Rome*, whilst he was in *England*, is inticed over to *Brussels* by the *Spanish* Ambassador, upon great promises, but from thence he is sent to *Rome* where he died, some say he was strangled in prison, and in the beginning of *December* was burned. Shortly after the Pope began his Jubilee, at which was present *Uladislaus* the Prince of *Poland*.

*Ferdinand* the Emperor having made truce with the *Turk* for 12 years, sends *Tilly* and *Fridland* with their Armies to invade the lower *Saxony*, although the King of *Denmark* had conducted an Army of 24 thousand to *Visslar* without hurting any man, but declaring that his intent was onely to defend the *Saxon* Liberties. Till the 10<sup>th</sup> of *July* there passed no Act of hostility on either side: The *Tillians* made the first breach by seising upon a Fort of *Saxony*, built near *Huxaria*. 10 Days after the King riding carelessly upon the *Ramire*, fell with his horse into a cave 29 foot deep, where powder was kept, onely covered over with deal-boards, where after two houres he was found alive, but for three daies together he was accounted no better then a dead man; wherefore the Enemy drawing near, the *Danes* retreat towards the Diocess of *Verdana*: Mean while *Tilly* with all his Forces breaks in upon *Brunswick*, notwithstanding the *Saxons* by their Agents deprecated the contrary: He placeth Garrisons in divers Towns, and makes havock of the Inhabitants of *Brunswick*, who therefore take Arms in their own defence; The King also requires in *Cesar's* name, that he would remove his Army out of *Saxony*, but in vain; for *Tilly* besiegeth *Niemburg*, which the King being well now recovered defended so stoutly, that *Tilly* was fain to give off the siege with the loss of 4000 of his men: Yet *Stolz* *Zenavia* revolted to him, by means of a certain Captain who was bribed. In the interim *Mansfield* gets recruits from *England*, which no w was fallen out with *Spain* for not restoring the Palatinat. These Forces (but much diminished by the way) with some *French* and *Flemings*, he conducts into *Saxony*, where he takes up his quarters at *Lavenburg* upon *Albis*, when a little before, *Brunswick* with good supply of horse, joynes with the King. In this mean time *Fridland* enters the Diocess of *Magdeburg*, where he seisseth upon *Hall*, his Soldiers also make inroads upon the Territories of *Halberstad* without resistance, but that the flame of this war might spread no further, by the mediation of the Electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, a Treaty for peace was held in *October* at *Brunswick*, after 4 months disceptation, the Treaty broke off without effecting any thing; for *Tilly* would not part with

1626



*An. Christi* vwith *Minda* and *Huxaria*, neither vwould he nor *Fridland* confir m the rights vvhich the Nobility of *Saxony* had purchased over the Church-lands. So the War brake out more fiercely then before; in vvhich *Brunswick* overthrew a Regiment of High-vvay Robbers, vwith 800 of *Fridlands* men. But *Mansfield* plundering some Villages of the *Lubekers*, vvas set upon by the Towns-men vvho fallied out, killed divers of his Horse, and stript him of his plunder. *John Ernest* of *Vinaria*, the Kings Lieutenant, takes in divers Towns.

*Leopold* upon the death of his brother *Charles* in *Spain*, resignes his Bishopricks of *Strasbourg*, and *Padua*, and marries with *Clandia* of *Medices*, the Duke of *Urbins* Widow, the younger son of *Sigismund*, King of *Poland*, to obtains the Bishoprick of *Uratistavia*. About this time died King *James* in *March*, and *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, the next *April* after, both of a Fever, whose deaths was accompanied with a great plague and mortality through Great *Britain*, and many other places of *Europe*. The King of *Sweden* falls upon *Livonia* suddenly, and takes divers Towns from the *Polander*, who laboured to recover *Riga*, with the loss of 600 Citizens, by *Turren* they onger; he takes the *Swede* also alarms *Borussia* in *July* with a Fleet of eighty Sail. He takes in these divers Towns; he enjoins the *Daniscans* to put away the *Polonian* ships, and to pay him the Tribute due to the *Polander*, but this City resisted him stoutly, and retarded his proceedings. 20

## CHAP. XIX.

A Continuation of the History of Germany, Denmark, Swedland, Holland, Poland, Italy, &c. under Ferdinand 2<sup>d</sup>, from the year 1626. till the end of 1630.

1626



HE flame of the *Saxon* war did this year break out into a great conflagration. The *Cesarian* Army being too numerous to be encountered with, the *Saxons* strive to keep off provisions from 30 them. The *Mansfieldians* therefore the 15 of *April* assault a Fort of *Fridlands* upon the *Albis*, by which he had provisions brought him by water. The attempt was desperate and rash; for the *Mansfieldians* were but 8000, vvhich was above 30000 *Cesarians*. The *Mansfieldian* Horse fainting, left the Foot to the mercy of the Enemy, vvho cut off the *Holland* Auxiliaries, which were about 4000, the rest fled. Thirty colours vvere taken, yet they write that of the *Mansfieldians* not many above 1500 were slain. In *Hassia* the Country people rise in Arms against the soldiers, many whereof they killed and plundered. *Brunswick* falls upon the Province of *Grubenhag*, in the absence of *George Lunebarg* possessor thereof, who vvas raising Forces for *Cesar*, and fortifieth divers places with Garisons; besides, he beats in *Hassia* *George* his new Levies. The Emperor by a Herauld proclaims at *Magdeburg* proscription against all of the Roman Empire, that shall assist the *Dane*. *Tilly* takes *Munda* the key of *Brunonia*, and puts all to the sword, except a few that hid themselves in Vaults, or on the House tops, who after the fury of the soldiers was past, ransomed their lives for money. This vvas in the end of *May*; and about the sixt of *June* *Brunswick* died, some think he was poisoned: the 19 of *July* his mother followed him, the *Dane* Garisons, the Castle of *Vorda*. *Tilly* delivers *Hassia* to *William* the *Land-grave*, and marcheth to *Gotinga*, vvich was surrendered to 50 him, though the *Dane* vvas coming with all his Forces to raise the siege. The two Armies meet; the Kings first velitations were successful, *Tilly* having lost above six hundred of his men, vvith some Colours. The King pursues *Tilly*es Reare, and had now at *Lottera* found a fit place for defence, where he was advised to halt, and not to follow the Enemy, who had got the vvinde and

advantage of the ground. But he vwould go on, with a resolution to fight the Enemy. The *Avant* Guard advanceth so courageously towards *Tilly*es *Artille-ry*, puttin in some fear, till he was strengthened with *George Luneburgs* Auxiliaries; then falling with all his Forces upon the Kings Foot, so galls them, that the Horse pretending want of pay, wheeled about, and refused to fight, notwithstanding they had received their pay not long before. The King did what he could to make them fight, but in vain, for they shamefully rid away, and left the Foot naked, whereof 2000 were slain by the Enemy, and 1800 taken prisoners, with 28 Colours. 10 Many prime men were slain, *Lottera* forced to surrender, many also of the *Tillians* were slain: the King escaped narrowly from being taken; this Battel was fought *August* 1<sup>st</sup>. *Tilly*es Victory was greater then his Booty, for he durst not venture too far in the pursuit, because he feared Ambuscadoes. Two days after Duke *Brunswick* renounceth the Association of *Saxony*, and surrenders all *Brunonia* to *Cesar*. *Tilly* understanding that *Wolferbut*, whither the King retreated in his flight, was strongly fortified, would not besiege it, for fear of losing too much time, but falls to taking in of other places. In the interim the King recollects his dispersed Forces, and provides another Army for a fresh encounter with *Tilly*. 20 The *Vinarian* and *Mansfield* having joyned their Forces, vvich consisted of 16000, brake in upon *Silesia*, vvhen *Bechman* followed, but could doe no good, because the *Silesians* by reason of his violence, were alienated from him; therefore divers places submit to the *Vinarian*, and now *Mansfield* being encouraged by the addition of *Gabors* Forces, and the marriage of *Katharin* of *Brandenburg*, marcheth into *Moravia*, and trusting to the Turks aid, being animated by one of the *Bassais*, enters *Hungary*. Thither *Fridland* being sent with an Army, is repulled at *Nemra*, by the Turks, and hath divers doubtful encounters with *Mansfield*, who fearing some collusion between *Fridland* and the *Transylvanian*, resolves to go for *Venice*, with the choicest of his men; the rest of his Army he delivers to the *Vinarian*. But in his journey he fell sick of the bloody flux, at *Bosnia*, (its thought he was poisoned) and there died. The *Vinarian* also grieving that the *Transylvanian* had fallen off to *Cesar*, died suddenly the 32<sup>nd</sup> year of his age. In *Moravia* the Bores rise against Count *Habesdorff*, for abusing them; they first flung stones at him, then they fall upon his guard of 1500 men, and killed most of them; then they take in divers Towns, and the mean while Petition *Cesar* for a free enjoyment of the Gospel. At last they grew so strong by the confuence thither of the banished Gentry, and others that had suffered in these Wars, that 40 they became Masters of all *Austria*, above *Oenno*. But their Victories made a stop at *Linzium*, for they could not keep off either provision or men from the *Bavarian* Army. At length they were so pressed upon by *Herbersdorff*, *Brenner*, and *Lobel*, and encompassed by their Forces, that they submitted and flung down their Arms. But shortly after being incensed by the cruel punishments, which many of them suffered, and the burning of their Houses by the Duke of *Holsatia*s Regiments, they fall upon them betimes in the morning, disperst, and kill above 4000. They defeat the *Bavarians* divers times, some of whose Captains they killed. *Lobel* and *Brenner* are beat to pieces by the Bores iron cudgels, and above 50 2000 men were destroyed. *Cesar* being much troubled at these disasters, promiseth liberty of Religion to the *Austrians*, and by his Proclamations at *Prague*, calls home the *Bohemians* that were banished for their conscience. Afterward vvhit these Bores labour to bring others into their society, they fall to quarrelling and destroying each other, till *Poppe-heim* came upon them with a Brigade of 8000, disperst, kills, and destroys them. H h

*An. Christi* them; some escaped, and some were taken and reserved for publick punishment.

Mean while the Wars remove from the *Grisons* to the *French*, who fall out among themselves about matters of Religion. *Barbarinus* the Cardinal perswades the *French* King to make Peace with *Spain*, and that the *Vah. Lin* be left in *deposito* with the *Pope*, and that a *Passage* in the *Grisons* Straits, be opened for both Kings. But the *Venetians* and *Savoyen* were at enmity with the *Genoisi*. The *French* and *English* fall out about sending away *Queen* *Marie* Priests, which hindred the pay promised to the King of *Denmark*; so wit, 140000 *Joachims* monethly from the *English*, 10 and 100 thousand *Crowns* from the *French*; yet the King not willing to be a meer spectator of the *German* misery, gathered again 6000 *Foot*, and 4000 *Horse*, and suddenly assaults *Hoia*, which he took, though he was shot through the arm with a Bullet. *Christian* 5. Prince of *Denmark*, hasteneth provision into *Niemburg*; then the King goeth into *Holfatia*, where he calls a Diet at *Redensburg*, about continuing the War. *Ramxovius* the Vice-Duke, promiseth his best assistance. *Christianus* *Thomans*, is sent Embassador into *Belgium* and *France*, but is taken by the way, and set at liberty again by *Isabella*. He obtains from the confederate *Belgians* some Forces for the *Dane*. The King had exhausted a great Treasure, and borrowed large sums of his people, in maintenance of this war, 20 which tended both to the defence of *Denmark* and *Saxony*. Mean while the Vice-Duke died, whose Funeral the King in his own person honoured. Then he builds Forts upon *Visurgu* and *Albis*, to keep off provisions from *Tilly*, whose men offering to take the *Rampiers*, are beaten off with loss. *George* *Lunburg* takes *Brandeburg* by storm. *Slamersdorff* possesseth the *Black Friars Church* in *Havelberg*, and fortifieth it; from thence he killed with Musquet shot above 4000. The *Marquess* of *Durlac*, and old *Turven*, whom the *Venetians* honourably discharged, now the *Italian* War being almost ended, are entertained by the King; the Country of *Lunenburg* is pitifully wasted by the royal & *Cesarian* parties, burning each others 30 *Corn*; and almost through all *Germany*, there was nothing but wasting, plundering, and murdering; so that the three Ecclesiastick Electors desired peace, before *Germany* be totally ruined. The *Boors* of *Brunswick*, rob and destroy about the *Hyrcinian Woods*, whom the *Cesarians* defeated. *Norheim* is surrendered June 17. Mean while the *Tillians* are pinched for want of provisions, by reason the Rivers *Albis*, *Visurgu*, and *Havila* were guarded by the *Danes*: Therefore *Tilly* to open a way, marcheth towards *Albis*, takes in some places by the way. About the end of *July*, whilst the King is at the Diet of *Redensburg*, *Tilly* observing the neglect and paucity of the Watch upon *Albis*, before break of day, Ferries over 40 a Company of soldiers, with as great silence and privacy, as could be, when he perceived the Watch did not stir. He sends over another Company, the Watch awaked; which seeing one Company coming, and another already Landed, they out of fear run away, and withall affright *Beutenburg*, near to which Town were divers praetorian cohorts, who in stead of encountering with the Enemy, falls to plundering of their friends, so that without resistance, *Tilly* passeth over with his whole Army, and withall seizeth upon the Bridge, which the *Dane* had built; so all that Country on this side of *Albis*, becomes a prey to the *Cesarians*. In *Holfatia* also a controversie arose between the King and his 50 sisters, son Duke *Frederick*, who fearing the storm that was coming on his Country, and understanding that *Tillies* Army was got over, repairs speedily to him to make his peace. All that he could obtain, was this, that if he would forsake the *K. his* Country & friends should fare the better, which promise was scarce performed. In

1627

In *Silesia* *Cesar* having pacified *Bethleem Gabor*, the *Danes* could look for no aid thence, but what they should get by the sword. Therefore *Fridland* seizeth upon divers Towns and Forts. Him Count *Merodius*, and *Bechman* follow, with 7000. A hot skirmish ensueth, in which the *Danes* had the better, but when the *Polonian* Foot, and *Croats* were come to aid the *Cesarians*, *Baudissin* with his Regiments, betake them to their heels, upon which the prisoners are released. *Brandeburg* wisheth the *Danes* to be gone, who having got the *Isle Pella*, took shipping at *Grotenbrod*: and now about the end of *August*, *Fridland* joyns with *Tilly*, and *Luneberg*, who by the River *Alstria* brake in upon *Stormaria*, the *Holfatians* who had seated themselves near *Hamburg* upon the confines of *Albis*, return home. *Hamburg* victualleth the *Cesarian* Camp. From *Hamburg* they march to *Pippenberg*, a Castle in *Stormaria*, where *Tilly* was dangerously wounded with a Musquet bullet, yet took the Castle, by reason its powder was spent. There were not in *Stormaria* above 3 Towns that could hold out a while, and in *Holfatia* only *Redensburg*, so that the strength of *Holfatia* consisted in the *Marchian* and *Silesian* Troops, most of which were gone from their own homes to *Denmark*, *Holland*, *Frisland*, *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, and those of other places. Those of *Merchia* had neither powder, nor shot, nor hearts to fight; yet the *Holfatian* Horse, and the *Scots* Foot, fought stoutly, till they were cut off. The *K. of Denmark* finding Gods judgments so heavy against him, and his people, caused a fast for 3 days, besides daily prayers and supplications to be had through his two Kingdoms. In the interim at *Redensburg* the Enemy received some loss; the *K.* being forsaken by most, betook himself into *Fionia*, he permits the town to make an honorable surrender. The Castle of *Bredenberg* held out a great while, to the loss of 4000 of the Enemies; at last its taken by storm, and the whole Garrison put to the sword by *Fridland*. *Marsia* and *Futia* are exposed to pillage, not only of the Enemy, but even of their own Country men, which made most of the Gentry take shipping, and remove farther into *Denmark*, or else to *Normay*; thinking it safer and more honorable to forsake their houses and lands, then their Allegiance and conscience. They only grieved at this, that they were conquered before they fought, and banished before they took arms. The Country thereabouts with the Diocess of *Brem*, submit and deliver up their Colours to *Tilly*, whose victories are stopt upon the shoar of *Fionia*: *Stada* which was stoutly defended by Sir *Charles Morgan*, was for want of food delivered up to *Tilly* the 25 of *April*. *Niemburg* by the Kings permission is delivered up to the *D. of Lunenburg*. The *Cesarians* labour to perswade the *Hans* Towns to joyn with *Cesar* and the *Spaniard*, against *Denmark*, but they knowing how powerful the *K. of Denmark* was by Sea, did wisely decline such an union, yet shewed their readiness to serve *Cesar* against *Denmark* and *Holfatia*, by carying to them all kind of provision, and performing such offices as they were enjoined: yet some 40 *Hans* Towns, either inveigled by promises, or affrighted with threatnings, submit their necks to the Imperial yoke, such were *Rostok*, *Wismaria*, and all the Towns of *Pomerania*, except *Stralsound*, and *Stetin*, which with those mighty cities of *Saxony*, *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Brunswick*, *Magdeburg*, and *Brem*, retain their ancient privileges. *Pomerania*, *Marchia*, and East *Frisland*, with all the lower *Saxony*, are subject to heavy Taxes, and domineering soldiers. *Hamburg* was careful to give all content possible to the *Cesarian* Army.

The King in the Month of *April*, recovers by a strong Fleet *Femaria*, a rich Island in the *Baltick* Sea, having slain or taken the Garrison consisting of seven hundred. He takes also some Towns, and faces *Wagria*: but upon the coming of the *Cesarian* Army, he returns with his Fleet into *Denmark*, having put a Garrison in *Femaria*. The Imperialists impose a heavy Tax upon *Stralsound*; whereof though they offered a part, yet a Garrison is put upon them by *Arnheim* an Imperial Commander. He under pretence of Peace, labours under-hand to seize upon *Denholm*, but the Townsmen perceiving his treachery, presently

H h 2

presently

1628

*An. Christi* presently seize themselves of the place, and insist upon a new agreement. At last, not being able of themselves to resist his strength, they admit into their Town the *Danish* Auxiliaries; by these they stoutly resisted all his assaults, and slew many of his men. *Holk* the Commander of the *Danish* Auxiliaries, understanding, that *Arnheim* had been tampering with some to betray the town to him, he causeth Letters to be sent, intimating to *Arnheim* what hower, and into what place he should come. *Arnheim* not knowing his plot, was detected, came at the hower appointed, when the Townsmen broke out upon him, and drove him back to his great loss. They also sprung a Mine under his works, which they blew up with many of his men. *Holk* being one day absent at a Wedding, the Senate had almost yielded to surrender the Town, which he understanding, returns and breaks off the Treaty, as soon as it began, which the Town was the more willing to break off, because a Fleet of *Danes* was now in sight of them. In one night during this siege, there were several assaults upon the Town-works, by *Fridlands* whole Forces, and so many repulses, presently the King with his two sons, Prince *Christian* and the Duke *Frederick*, came to relieve *Holk*. Whereupon *Fridland* broke off the siege, leaving his Works for the *Danes* to possess; who in a short time took divers places, so that *Pomerania* now was in hope of liberty, till the 22 of August, when *Fridland* routed the Kings Army, and slew 400 of them. Upon this the King, with the remainder of his Army, takes shipping and returns to Denmark, and *Fridland* to the siege; this being the third year since it began. At last a Garison of the *Swedes* is admitted into the Town by the perswasion of *Oxinsfern* Chancelour of *Swedland*, who for that end was sent into Denmark. *Tychopolis* is stoutly defended by *Rantzovius*; but the Forts on the River *Store*, which the *French* carelessly lost to the *Cesarians*, so kept off all provisions, that the Town *Cremus* after 13 months siege, was surrendered by *Alefel-dius* the Governour, to *Fridland*, upon tearms of safety for himself, the townsmen and Garison. But *Tychopolis* notwithstanding the plague was in it, held out so long, that in a short time *Fridland* lost above three thousand of his men, and was fain at last to burn his Huts, and raise the siege.

The *Cesarians* August 18. are beaten at *Colmaria*, where they lost many men, besides a thousand wounded. In *Stormaria*, and *Dithmarfia*, all places far and near, are wasted by the Imperial Garisons there. A strange thing fell out at *Irzebo*; the Gate of the Monastery which the *Cesarians* took, flew open, with a terrible noise and clamour in the night. The plundered Oxen kept there, were suddenly strangled, their necks being turned round, their horns fastned in the ground.

1629 In the 29 year of this Century, the *Danish* King held a Diet at *Hafnia*, about reforming the Church Discipline, and making Peace with the Emperour. For this cause Embassadors are sent to *Lubec*. The *Cesarians* at first would treat with them no other ways, then with a conquered people, but the Embassadors stood upon the honor of the King and Kingdom. Five months were spent in Debates; in which time the *Danes* had raised an Army, and rigged out a strong Fleet, with which they took the Isle *Stranda*, with some other places. Hereupon *Fridland* and *Tilly* send to their Deputies, who were at the Treaties of *Lubec*, to hasten the Peace; for feare of greater mischief. A Peace then is concluded, in which *Cimbria*, *Slavigia*, *Holsatia*, and all Hereditary places, belonging to the *Holsatian*, taken from him in these last Wars, are restored to the *Dane*. The King renounceth all the other Provinces of the *Saxons*. The day before the Peace was made, *Wilstria* is taken by the *Danes*, who by a messenger sent from the King, are commanded to lay down Arms. The news of Peace was joyfully welcomed by the people, and solemn thanks given to God; especially by the *Dithmarfians*, vvhio the year before, strove to vindicate their liberty, but could

*An. Christi* could not; for finding no end of their exactions, and other pressures, in a rage took Arms, broke in upon some Garisons, and killed above an hundred of them. The Country people rising, slew many of the *Cesarians*, which brought greater misery and servitude upon them; for the enraged soldier hackt some, drowned others, and shot divers with poisoned bullets, by which they were tortured to death. They were glad then to be eased of such cruel Masters, but sorry that the *Saxons*, *Pomeranians*, and *Megalopolitans*, for whose defence they took Arms, did not enjoy the same happiness of Peace; for the *Megalopolitan* Lands were taken from *Adolphus*, *Frederick*, and *John Albert*, brothers, and deposited in the hands of *Fridland* at first; but now their inheritance is taken away, as if those brothers had been guilty of Treason, for joyning their Forces and Council with the *Dane* against *Cesar*: but they made it appear, they entered into League vvvith the *Dane*, for defence of *Saxony* only, and withall that they shewed their obedience to *Cesar*, by leaving the *Dane*, when by the Emperours Letters, they were called away. The Protestants were much troubled about *Cesars* Edict, whereby he restores to the Roman Catholicks all Lands vvvithheld and taken from them, since the transaction of *Passavia*, that is 75 years.

The *Hollanders* seized upon 22 *Spanish* ships belonging to the Plate Fleet, and loaden with *American* wealth, these they spoiled, and brought with them into *Holland* so much plate and other things, as was esteemed worth 200 talents of Gold. This loss disheartened the *Spanish* soldiers, as much as it encouraged the *Hollanders*. The Prince of *Orange* layeth siege to *Sylva Ducis*, or *Hertogenbosch*, by the *French* called *Bulduc*, vvhich had been often heretofore attempted in vain; but now after 4 months siege, it was fain to yeild to the Prince, but not till some of the Gates were blown up by Mines. It was surrendered upon honourable tearms about the beginning of September. A little before this, *Vesalia* a rich and potent Town upon the *Rhene*, was taken by the *Hollanders*, with one thousand two hundred Foot, and eight hundred Horse in the night. Some bold spirits swimm'd over the Moat, get into the Fort not yet finished, and kill the watch, then they broke open the Gates, and let in the soldiers. *Losanus* the Governour, being suddenly surpris'd, was fain to deliver up the keys. The Townsmen who had been disarmed before, and were angry vvvith the *Spaniards* for abridging their liberty of conscience, did not at all assist the Garison. There was taken much wealth; the soldiers were dismissed, but the chief Commanders detained prisoners. In June, *Hein* who seized on the Plate Fleet, had a Sea fight with the *Dunkarkers*, in which he lost his life by a Bullet, but got the Victory, which not he, but his Country enjoyed.

The *Magdeburgers* having studied to please the *Cesarians* in the *Saxon* War, and permitted the bones of *Norbert* an ancient Arch-Bishop, to be taken out of his Tomb, and caried to *Prague*; yet they were wronged by the *Cesarian* soldiers, who seized on their Farms and Villages near the Town, and are kept off from all provision, even from the benefit of the River *Albis*. Hereupon some of the Townsmen in a rage bring away into the Town some Vessels laden vvvith Corn, and put to flight the *Croat* Thieves, vvhich were driving away the Town-Cattle. Hence arose a War, though unknown to *Cesar*, as that was of *Stralsound*: *Magdeburg* is besieged; *Fridland* commands them to receive a Garison, adding high threatnings; but they behaved themselves so stoutly, and killed so many *Cesarian* by sallies, that by the intervening of some Princes and Cities, the Duke was quickly pacified, and the City restored to her liberty. *Stralsound* strives also to defend her freedom, though she was much weakened by sickness. *Harzfeld* makes an attempt upon the City, but is beat off again with loss. The King of *Swedes* having obtained divers Victories against the *Polander*, at last concludes a Peace for six years with his Uncle, he

*An. Christi* he had the year before subdued *Newburg*, and *Straisburg*, with *Leather Ordnance*, the invention of one *Elias Tripus*. The *Polander* recovered *Newburg*, but was beat from the siege of *Straisburg* by *Oxenstern* the Chancellor, and from *Meve* by the King himself: For peace-sake the *Swede* restores to *Poland*, *Straisburg*, *Dirfavia*, and *Frauberg*, but retains what he had got in *Livonia*, and *Borussia*; some Towns were left in the hands of *Brandeburg*, as it were in deposito; so an offensive and defensive peace is made about the end of this year 1629. The *Hollanders* take divers places from the enemy; and drive the *Spaniards* out of *Velavia*: They take also *Farnambuck* in *Brasil*, with much bootie, and defeat the *Spaniards* at *Mulheim*, whose Commander *Johannes Nassovius* was mortally wounded.

*Charles* Duke of *Nivern* about this time, by the death of *Vincentius* his cousin *German*, takes possession of *Mantua*, by right of consanguinitie, and by will also, but without *Cesar's* knowledge, who is Lord of the Fee. The *Spaniard* and *Savoyen* Storm at this, who have had old quarrels with the Dukes of *Mantua* about *Monserrat*; so the old Factions between *France* and *Spain* are renewed. The *Savoyen* takes the *Spaniards* part. *Genoa* in the interim is full of intestine plots and treacheries, which lighted heavy at last upon the contrivers: To *Mantua's* side are joyned the *Venetians*, the Viceroy of *Sicily* and *Naples*, with the Vice Duke of *Millan*; these troubles were attended on by terrible Earth-quakes in *Apulia*, which devoured above 17000 people, there were also prodigious inundations and blood gushing out of springs. *Gasall* the chief City of the Marquisat of *Monserrat* was by *Consalvus* Vice Duke of *Millan* streightly besieged, till he was forced to rise thence by the inundation of *Po*, having lost above 6000 of his men; the *Mantuan* is content to refer his cause to *Cesar*, conditionally arms be laid down on both sides: This was rejected by the *Spaniard*, who could not endure that the *French* should have any footing in *Italy*: And by the *Savoyen* also, who had obtained almost all *Monserrat*. Upon this *Nivern* supported by *France*, goeth on more coragiously: Mean while the *Grisons* submit to the *Austrians*, slighting the *Switzers* friendship, at which they were offended; but afterward pacified by the *Grisons* Agents, shewing that *Cesar* acted nothing that was prejudicial to the ancient league. *Merodius* was Generall of the Imperial forces, which went from the *Grisons* to *Monserrat*, but the Plague consumed a third part of them; yet recruits came daily out of *Germany*, by which they subdued a great part of *Mantua*, and besieged the City it self; but the Citizens being strengthened by the *Venetian* Auxiliaries, made a sally upon the *Cesarians*, of whom they killed about 3000, so for that time the sieg was raised. But returning afterward in *July*, they took *Mantua* for the Emperor, after that the *French* King had subdued *Savoy*: The Plague at this time raging throughout all *Italy*.

*Transylvania* upon the death of *Gabor*, seemes to be more inclined to the *Sultan*, then to *Cesar*. The *French*, *English*, and *Hollander*, urge earnestly for the restitution of the *Palatin*. The *Belgian* Forces increas still, and incroach more and more upon *Germany*. The *Swede* is angry with the *Cesarians*, for making war upon him; therefore by his Manifesto shews, he hath just cause to invade *Germany*: He inhibits all importation of victuals into the Sea-Towns of *Pomerania* and *Megapolis*, being possessed by the *Cesarian* Soldiers. At *Dantzick*, a Treaty for peace was begun, but before the Ambassadors could meet, it was broke off: The Famine in *Pomerania* and *Rugia*, was also great, that some like Caniballs fed on mens flesh. Whilst things were in this condition, the *Swedish* King enters upon *Rugia*, having defeated in some battels the *Cesarian* Forces, and Garrisons: Then having seized on some Ports, with his fleet comes to *Stetin*; the Governor delivers up the Town to him, complaining how *Pomerania* had suffered by the *Cesarian* Soldiers, taking

king no care of the safety of those that were under them. *Cesar* drove *Protestantisme* out of *Bohemia*, *Austria*, *Moravia*, *Glogovia*, many Principalities of *Silesia*, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Croatia*, *Fuliers*, *Cleve*, *Grisons*, *Bavaria* doth the like in both Palatinats. The *Spaniard* having deluded King *James*, retains *Frankenthal* to himself, which was deposited in the hands of *Isabel*, Archduchess; thence Calvinisme is banished, and *Manheim* destroyed. The Towns of *Fuliers*, *Westphalia*, and the *Grisons* under the *Spaniard*, receive Poperie; The *Lutheran* Cities are spoiled and plundered by *Cesar*. Episcopal rights possessed by the Protestant Princes many years, are demanded by the first owners: A way is making for creating *Ferdinand 3<sup>d</sup>*, King of the *Romans*, he being *Cesar's* eldest son by his Lady *Mary* of *Bavaria*; and two years before this was Crowned King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. *Cesar's* other son *Leopold* is made Bishop of *Magdeburg*, *Christianus Gulielmus* being thrust out. In this distempered condition was *Germany*, when the King of *Sweden* came into it.

The King of *Denmark* had 3 ships in the River *Albis*, or *Elve*, which with the great Ferrie-Boat, were seized upon by the *Hamburgers*, pretending that the King had begun to exact a new Custom at *Tychopolis* from the Sea-men, trading in that River, which they held to be theirs by ancient right; whereas indeed the Dukes of *Holsatia* are Masters of that River, as Princes of the Empire, and Lords of *Hamburg*: The King also declares that he imposed no Tribute or Custom upon Ships, but required satisfaction for the hurt done by the *Hamburgers* against all right, upon the *Holsatians*, by exacting a new Excise for vendible commodities and victuals. Shortly after this, the King fought 3 battels on *Albis* with the *Hamburgers*, in which he had the victory, and drove them out of that River, the benefit whereof they had kept 4 months from the *Tychopolitans*.

## CHAP. XX.

A continuation of the Affairs of Turkey, Persia, Egypt, Greece, Armenia, and other adjacent parts under Mahumet 1<sup>st</sup>, Amurath 2<sup>d</sup>, Mahumet 2<sup>d</sup>, Bajazet and Selymus, from the year 1412, till 1520.



E have clearly shewed that *Bajazet* the Turk, whom *Tamerlan* overthrew, had 5 sons, some say 6; and some but two: However, the Histories record they destroyed one another, the last survivor was *Mahumet 1<sup>st</sup>*, who in a battel defeated his brother *Moyes* or *Musa*, drove him into a bogg, where he hid himself awhile, at last found him out, and strangled him; this *Mahumet* made a perpetuall peace with the *Greeks*, by whose assistance he obtained the Empire. He imposed a Tribute on the *Transylvanian*, in his war with the *Venetians* for the Islands of the *Fonian* Sea, he was worsted, and forced to part with *Lampisacum*. The *Walachians* were defeated by him, he regained many places taken by *Tamerlan*. *Adriannoclis* the chief City of *Thracia* was his seat. To him succeeded *Amurath* the 2<sup>d</sup>, son to *Mahumet*: His chief care was to suppress the Christians; but the *Byzantins* to hinder his proceedings, take *Mustapha* his Uncle out of prison in *Lemnos*, where he had been kept by the *Greeks*, after his escape out of his brothers prison, and furnish him with an Army: But in his encounter with *Amurath*, he was deserted by the Turks, who revolted to *Amurath*, so he fell alive into his enemies hand, by whom he was strangled, the 3<sup>d</sup> year after he had raised this war: Upon this had success the *Greeks* Petition for peace, which being refused by *Amurath*, they send for *Mustapha*

1412

1418

*An. Christi* **Mustapha** his brother, now 13 years old, and an exile in *Cilicia* under the tuition of *Alban Bassai*, to whose care he was committed by his father *Mahumet*. The *Greeks* having furnished him with an Army, he takes *Nicea* of *Bithynia*, where he was betrayed to *Amurath* by his Guardian, and then strangled: These competitors being gone, *Amurath* resolves to be revenged on the *Greeks* their abettors, having therefore overtaken *Thracia*, and taken the remainder of those Towns which belonged to the *Greek* Emperor, he layeth siege to *Thessalonica* committed to the *Venetian* care and protection, which he takes by storm and utterly defaces; presently upon this, he subdues with incredible celerity, *Phocis*, *Attina*, *Boeotia*, *Aetolia*, *Acarnania*, and the whole Countrey from *Peloponnesus* to *Corinth*. *John Castriot* did then reign in that part of *Macedon* which lieth upon the *Adriatick*, at this day known by the name of *Albania*; he considering his own weakness, and the *Turks* greatness, makes his peace, by delivering up the Town *Croia*, and giving for hostages his 3 sons: *Constantin*, *Reposius*, and *George*, who for his comely personage, and other excellent parts, was in high account with *Amurath*, who gave him the best breeding *Turky* could afford, and called him *Scanderbeci*, or *Scanderbeg*, that is, *Alexander the great*, before he was scarce fit to bear Arms; he is employed against *Carmannus* the *Cilician*, which war he managed with great dexterity, and with all, killed two of the chief Combattants, who provoked him to a Duell: The one was a *Scythian* Foot-man, the other a *Persian* Horse-man, relying on the *Turks* favour, upon the newes of his Fathers death, he Petitions *Amurath* for his ancient Inheritance, which was granted him. But *George* doubting the *Turk* was not reall, makes an escape into *Epirus*, where by counterfeit Letters he gets *Croia*, with other places of *Epirus* and *Macedon*. For many years together he so defended his Dominions against *Amurath*, and *Mahumet*, that still he defeated the *Turkish* Armies. *Amurath* having subdued partly, and partly wasted *Illyrus*, *Albania*, and *Bosna*, marcheth against the *Bulgarians*, *Walachians*, and *Servians*, upon hopes to subdue *Hungary*. *George* Despot of *Servia* humbly Petitions *Amurath* for peace, proffering his daughter to him in marriage, which he accepts, and makes peace; which shortly after he breaks, and drives him out of his Kingdome, taking from him his chief towns, and his two sons, whose eye-sight he barbarously put out; by holding near them a hot burning bras bason: *George* flyeth into *Hungary* to *Albert of Austria*, who having raised an Army died of a dissenterie: *Hungary* being full of intestine broyls, calls in *Laudislaus* of *Poland*. The *Turk* sets upon *Belgrada*, but is beat off with great losse.

*Amurath* by his two Bassais waists the places about *Belgrada*, and makes incursions into *Transylvania*; both these were defeated and cut off by *John Hunniades*, who recovered a good part of *Servia* and all *Moldavia*. The *Turk* also is beat in *Pannonia*, so that he is forced to sue for peace, and to restore *George* Despot of *Servia*. Then he marcheth against *Carmannus* in *Cilicia*, but is called back into *Europ* upon the breach of the 10 years peace by *Ladislaus*, who by the perswasion of *Fulian* the Cardinall, in the *Turks* absence had invaded his *Europian* Dominions: The *Christian* Army was defeated, and *Ladislaus* slain, as we have already said. *Amurath* puffed up with this Victory, marcheth into *Peloponnesus*, to be revenged on the *Greeks* who animated *Ladislaus* against him, there he breaks down the strong wall *Hexamilium*, built by the *Greeks* and *Venetians*, with 5 Castles on it, to divide this *Isthmus* (6 miles of length between the two seas) from the main land of *Greece*. The Emperor brother of *Byzantium*, with his whole Army appointed to guard this wall, are overthrown by the *Turk*. After this *Constantin Paleologus* the *Greek* Emperor, repaired this wall, which shortly by command from *Amurath*, he pulls down again: Here divers Forts and Towns are taken by the *Turk*, who upon a Petition for peace, made the Countrey tributary, and withdrew his Army

Army thence to their winter-quarters. *George Castriot* so manfully maintained the *Epirotick* war and his fathers patrimony against *Amurath*, that during this space, he overthrew seaven severall armies sent thither under the command of so many Bassais, and at last forced *Amurath* himself, who had beleaguered *Croia* with a formidable army, to raise his siege, having lost multitudes of his *Turks*. After this disaster they write that *Amurath* vowed a solitary life; with a few Priests in a Cave of *Bithynia*, where he gave himself to Contemplation, committing the care of his Dominions to *Hali Bassai*. But he was quickly called off from his Contemplation by *Hunniades* and *Scanderbeg*; The one having raised a vast Army of *Hungarians*, *Bohemians*, and *Germans* to repay the loss of *Christians* at *Varna*; The other had subdued all *Macedonia*, and restored to *Bosna*, *Rascia*, and *Illyria*, their Despots, and thrown out the *Turks* Garrisons, which Plunder *Illyricum* and *Isria*, to the affrighting of *Venice*. *George* that perfidious Despot of *Servia*, forgetfull of the help *Hungary* afforded him, betrays all the Counsells of *Hunniades* to the Enemy, so that by this means he lost two battels, yet was strangely preserved himself; for being taken by two *Turks*, he killed one, and made the other fly; and when he was interrupted by the same *George*, he was restored by him to the *Hungarians*, which occasioned a new war between the *Turk* and him, but *Hunniades* to shew his gratitude, came and assisted him when he was almost defeated, and obtained a signal victory over the *Turks*. Afterward in *Epirus*, *Amurath* received so many losses, that he fell melancholy and sick, then being removed from the Camp to *Adrianopolis*, he became mad, and so died, having reigned thirty two years, and lived seventy five. He was the first of the *Ottomans* that instituted the *Prætorian* Guard after the example of the *Macedonian Phalanx*: This Militia as the *Mamelucks* of *Egypt*, was made up of *Christian* children taken violently from their parents, brought up in the *Turkish* discipline and superstition, and forced to renounce *Christianity*, by receiving circumcision; these the *Turks* call *Janizaries*, they guard the *Sultans* person: At first they were but 8000 armed with arrows and spears, now they are almost double that number, and their arms are musquets.

He left behind him three sons, *Mahumet*, *Tursin*, and *Calepin*, *Mahumet* being spectator himself, made *Moyse Bassai* choak *Tursin* (being but 18 months old) in the water, when the child's mother cried out upon the barbarous Tyrant, uttering many curses against him, he to please this his step-mother, delivers into her hand the author of this parricide bound; she in the presence of the Tyrant, thrust a knife into his heart, and ripping up his body, pulls out his liver, which she flung to the dogs: *Amurath* had committed *Calepin* his third son, to *Hali Bassai*, a man of great esteem with him: *Mahumet* caused the child delivered up to him by *Hali*, to be strangled. Afterward *Hali* himself was strangled, being first tortured by *Mahumet*, upon pretence that he held correspondence with the *Christians*, but indeed he was excessively rich, which is crime enough to a covetous Prince. Some think that this *Calepin* whom *Mahumet* killed, was supposititious, and not the son of *Amurath*, who was conveyed to *Byzantium*, and from thence where it was taken, to *Venice*, thence to *Rome* by the Order of Pope *Calixtus*, who caused him to be baptized, to take a *Christian* name, and to be instructed in *Christian* doctrine; afterward he went to *Frederick* the Emperor, who used him honorably: The rest of his life he spent in *Austria*.

*Mahumet* then the second, began his reign with parricid, after the example of his Ancestors, and continued in his barbarous cruelties; his mother who was the Despot of *Servia*'s daughter; had instructed him in the *Christian* faith, but he adhered more to *Mahumetanism*, at last turned plain Atheist, scoffing at providence, and acknowledging no other deity but good luck: He



*An. Christi* was most addicted to Militarie parts; and first of the *Ottomans* that made use of sea-fights, and ships of war, by which he strove with *Venice* for command of the sea; his first and most terrible warlike exploit was that against *Constantinople*, which after fifty four days siege he took the 29 of May: Within the walls besides the Townes-people, there were but six thousand *Greek Soldiers*, and three thousand *Venetian* and *Genuan* Auxiliaries; whereas *Mahumets* army consisted of four hundred thousand men. most of which were gathered out of the Christian Territories, he assaulted the City both by land and sea, he made three severall breaches in the walls, where the *Turks* gave furious assaults, but were stoutly resisted by the Christians, till they were overpowered with multitudes: The *Turk* had brought out of the *Aegean* and *Euxin* seas two hundred and fifty ships, to block up the harbour against these seaven ships of *Genua*, three of *Crete*, and some of *Chios*, were employed: The Harbour also was chained against the Turkish Fleet, which the Christians set on fire and so spoyled, that it was useles a great while, till by main strength the chain was burst, and so the *Turks* got within the Harbour, and battered the walls on all sides. The Tyrant stood upon a hill hard by, exhorting his men to be courageous, and sending some Troops of his own Guard to slay such as were faint-hearted, promising that he who did first venture upon the breaches, should have command of the greatest Province in *Europe*, and if the City be taken, the Soldiers should have the pillaging of it for three days: And withall he threatens death to any that did turn their backs: *Mahumet* had provided great battering pieces of brass, one whereof was so big, that it could not be drawn but by 70 yoke of Oxen, and 2000 men: With these Ordnance he played against the walls forty days together; then having injoyed a fast for three days, he bids them all be ready to live or die together: *Constantin* perceiving small hopes of defending the City against so great a power, desires a parly, which was granted, and peace proffered, if he would pay yearly to the *Turk* one hundred thousand crowns, or else presently surrender, and depart with their goods. These conditions were disliked; therefore they fall to battering again: *Justinian* of *Genua*, who with three hundred stout men sustained the first brunt, was sorely wounded, so that he gave back, and with him the rest also; notwithstanding *Constantin* earnestly laboured to have him hold out, his wound not being mortall: Upon his going away, (by which that Tower where he stood was left naked, *Constantin* and those about him began to fly; The *Turks* perceiving this) rush furiously into those places; the gates were so barricadoed with dead bodies, and the keyes purposely flung away, that fevv or none could escape: *Palologus* was slain, or trod upon in the presse, striving to get out at one gate, where were found eight hundred dead bodies. *Justinian* escaped to *Pera*, and thence to *Chios*, where he died of his wounds and grief together: The Victorious *Turks* rage like bloudy Wolves through the City, sparing neither age nor sex. The murderers, rapes, plunderings, and infolencies committed, both against the living and dead, against the Pictures and Images of our Saviour, and his Saints, and other Monuments of Christianitie, are inexpressible. Above sixty thousand Gentle-women, Matrons, and virgins, were carried away for slaves. *Isidor* the Cardinall who had been sent thither by the Pope, to reconcile the *Greeks* to the *Roman Church*, which he had effected but too late, was taken and solde; yet disguising himself shortly after made an escape.

*Pera* over against *Byzantium*, which the *Lattins* had in possession, is surrendered to the *Turks*. Three days after, *Mahumet* enters the City, and pacifieth all Tumults: Hee made search for some Prime men who had concealed themselves, these he commanded to be cut in pieces,

pieces. In their feasts, they abused divers matrons and virgins, and then barbarously murdered them: This end had that famous City wherein the Gospel flourished from the first, to the last *Constantin*, about eleven hundred and twenty years; that light went out, being overwhelmed with *Mahumetan* darkness, which was prefiged by that flame from heaven, shining one night over the City, and the next vanishing away, as the *Turks* in their siege observed. Yet *Mahumet* invited the Christians to dwell there, and to use their Religion, for that cause he confirmed their Patriarch which they had chosen, by delivering to him the Pastorall staff openly: This he did that so great a City might not lie desolate for want of Inhabitants.

Three years after, *Mahumet* (but not with the like success) attempted *Belgrade*, where after two days fight he received a wound under the left pap, and was carried for dead out of the camp, which the *Turks* lost with all their baggage and Ordnances, besides 40000 of their men slain there, when he came to himself, he was so enraged at this loss and disgrace, that he would have murdered himself: After this he provides to invade the *Aegean* Islands, but he was taken off by *Usumcassanes* of the *Assimbeian* Family of the *Turks*, Lord of *Cappadocia* and *Armenia*, who having lately killed *Demorus* the *Persian* King, and seized on his Kingdome; putt up with this success, he sends rich *Persian* presents, to shew the fruits of his Victory, to *Mahumet*, and by his Ambassadors, desires that the *Turk* would not meddle with *Trapezund* and *Cappadocia*, which he had in marriage by his wife, *Despina* daughter of *David Comnenus*. The Tyrant offended that an inferior Lord should give him the Law, and envying his new obtained happiness, provides an Army both by land and sea against him: A part of his fleet he sends before to *Pontus*, and *Synope* towards *Trapezund*, and follows himself by land; he overruns a great part of *Asia* with wonderfull celerity, and before he was dreamed of, pitcheth his camp near *Usumcassanes*: Two great battels are fought near *Euphrates*, *Amurath Bassai* the *Turks* Generall, a *Greek* born, was here killed, and the *Turks* Forces much weakned; but the third battel that *Mahumet* fought, was more successfull, for in it the *Persians*, with the unacquainted noyse of the Ordnance were dispersed, and *Usumcassanes* forced to flye, having lost his son *Zeinald* who was shot there: Shortly after this Victory *Mahumet* subdues *Synope*, and all *Paphlagonia*, then he besiegeth both by Sea and Land, *Trapezund* the Royall City, and takes it, with the Kings Treasure; King *David* himself, his two sons, and Cousin German *Calo Fohannes*, whom he sent before to *Byzantium*, and there in his triumph cruelly murdered, and with them the whole race of the *Comneni*: Then having of these Kingdomes made Provinces, he subdues *Caramannus*, and takes *Cilicia* from him, thence returned to *Byzantium*; by his fleet he takes the Islands of *Lemnus* and *Lesbes*, destroys the City *Mytilene*, and transplants the Islanders. *Catalusius* Prince of *Lesbos* a *German*, was by his command cruelly put to death: Then by his Land Forces, he invades *Dracula*, Prince of *Walachia*, by whom he was like to have been surprised and his Army, but that *Mahumet Bassai*, who succeeded to *Hali Bassai* in Office and dignity, got off the Army, but with great loss. Then having recruited his Army, he falls upon the upper *Mysia*, and *Illyricum*, and drives *Steeven* King of *Bosnia* out of his Kingdome, and kills him: But this Kingdome was shortly after recovered by *Mathias Corvinus*, with divers other places in *Dalmatia* and *Croatia*, possessed by the *Turks*. Before his *Asiatin* expedition, he entred *Peloponnesus*, where he took away the Principalltie of the *Paleologi* from the two brothers, *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, being then at variance: *Demetrius* complied with the Enemy, to whom he married his daughter: *Thomas* having lost all, fled to *Rome*; In the interim the *Venetians* repair the wall *Hexamilium*, to keep their possessions in *Peloponnesus* from the *Turks* incursions, which he perceiving, breaks in upon them with 80 thousand men, waits all

*An. Christi* the Countrey about defeats the *Venetians*, takes in the whole *Peloponnese*, and throwes down the wall; shortly after he casts the *Venetians* out of *Lesbos*, having slain 5000 men, for they had lately recovered it with *Lemnus*. He takes also the Isle *Euboea* from them, having made a bridge over *Euryptus*; then takes *Chalis* the 30 day after it was besieged; the *Venetian* Gallies not daring to give assistance, who having the winde favourable, might have seized on, or demolished the bridg; the Tyrant being enraged at the loss of 40000 of his army slain this siege in divers skirmishes, commanded that all in the Town above 20 years old, should be put to the Sword.

This Tyrant not yet glutted enough with blood, sends *Homaris* and *Mabre-10 cius*, 2 armies into *Dalmatia*, *Homaris* being a *Genuan* by his father, naturally hated the *Venetians*. In this invasion *Novellus* the *Venetian* General was slain: *Stiria* and *Corinthia* are not free from the *Turks* fury. The truce being ended between *Mahumet* and *Scanderbeg*; he sits down before *Croia* and *Scodra*, and after a long siege, takes them both. *Scodra* was surrendered by the *Venetians*, at which time *Solyman Bassa* takes *Capha* the head City of *Bosphorus*, and a Colony of the *Genuois* in *Tauraca Chemsonesus*, he makes also the *Præcopit Tartars* (who had thence driven out the *Goths*) tributarys to *Mahumet*: He cut off the heads of two *Gothish* Princes that were brothers; the rest of that Nation afterward *Bajazet* subdued. *Scanderbeg* being driven out of his Countrey, 20 went to *Italy*, where he took part with *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* against the *French*: After this he died of a Fever, as he was consulting with the *Venetians* about renewing the war against the *Turk*; he died the 63<sup>d</sup> year of his life: On his death-bed he commended the care of his young son *Fohn* to the Sen-1467 nat of *Venice*. It's recorded of this *Scanderbeg*, that out of the vehemency of his Spirit, still when he was going to fight, his lips would cleave and burst out with blood, he never turned his back, never was wounded, but once in the foot with an arrow: His army never consisted of above 3000 foot, and 6000 horse; he killed with his own hand above 2000 men, his strength was such, that with one blow, he could cleave a man to the Navil. *Machmet* be-30 ing freed from the fear of *Huniades* and *Scanderbeg*, having also subdued his neighbour Princes of *Peloponnesus*, *Mysia* and *Illyricum*, makes peace with the *Venetians* on these conditions; that they should deliver up to him *Scodra*, *Fernarus* a promontorie of *Laconia*, with *Lemnus*, and pay yearly 8 thousand crowns, for their trading in the black Sea. After this he undertakes three ex-1481 peditions at the same time, gaping at an universal Monarchy; to wit, against *Rhodes* by *Mesthes Bassai* of the race of the *Palaolegi*, by *Acomathes Bassai*, against *Italy* and *Rome*, he himself marched into *Asia*. *Mesthes* after many and bloody attempts (but in vain) upon *Rhodes*, returned with the loss of 30000 40 and disgrace: *Acomathes* onely affrighted *Italy*, and made the people flye out of *Rome*. *Mahumet* himself at *Nicomedia*, fell into tormenting fits of the Colick, which in three days put an end both to his life and victories, the 53<sup>d</sup> year of his age, and of his reigne 31: He subdued the two Royal Seats of *Byzantium* and *Trapezund*; 4 Kingdomes, *Syria*, *Peloponnesus*, *Armenia*, and *Sclavonia*. He took from the Christians 20 Provinces, and two hundred Towns, he was a most cruel and bloody Tyrant; For when he took *Hydruntum* in *Apulia*, he caused the Arch-Bishop of that place to be cut with a woo- den saw, and tortured many to death; he was a notorious whore-monger, and Sodomit, it's thought he caused above twenty thousand to be put to death at times, besides those that were killed in the wars; at last he was poisoned, 50 who himself was the greatest poyson of mankind, chiefly of Christians and Christianity. The *Turkish* Garison in *Hydruntum*, understanding *Mahumet* was dead, delivered up the Town to *Matthias Corvinus* and the *Italians* that besieged it, upon condition they might have their lives; though they knew *Acomathis* was returning with 25 thousands *Turks*: The *Greek* Muses which were

were banished by these barbarous *Scythians*, found an habitation for them in *Italy*, and other Western Countries, being transplanted thither by *Chrysoloras*, *Trapezuntius*, *Gaza*, *Argyropilus*, *Chalcondyles*, *Lasearas*, &c. *An. Christi*

To *Mahomet* succeeded his son *Bajazet*, who was when his Father died, at his charge in *Cappadocia*, being their Governour. His Brother *Gemes* also was then at *Iconium*, the chief City of *Laconia*, that Province being under his command. The elder brother *Mustapha*, who had been employed by his Father against *Vsumcassanes*, and had put to flight *Joseph* the *Persian* General, the great supporter of King *Carmannus*, was dead at *Iconium*, by intemperance 10 and lechery. Some difference arose among the *Bassais* and *Fanisares*, about the succession, so that the quarrel broke out into blows: at last the *Fanisares* or *Prætorians* proclaimed *Bajazet* Emperour, by means of the *Beglerbeg* of *Gracia*, and the *Aga* or Captain of the *Prætorians*, *Bajazets* sons in Law. Some of the prime Commanders of the Horse set up *Corchatus Bajazets* son, by placing him in the Throne, and delivering to him the Treasures and Castles of the Empire. *Achmet Bassa*, who lately took *Hydruntum*, joined with these. *Bajazet* rides post from *Cappadocia*, complaining with tears, of the wrong done him, by debarring him of his right. But he could not prevail till his young son of his own accord submitted the Government to his Father. The *Fanisares* 20 whom the *Bassais* out of malice had stirred up, were pacified by large bribes.

*Gemes* also makes haste out of *Lycaonia*, a neer Province, but being prevented by *Bajazet*, is kept out of *Byzantium*; wherefore he makes War, being assisted by *Carmannus*, and the *Egyptian* Sultan, against his brother; who overthrew him in three Battels: whereupon out of despaire, he fled to *Rhodes*, leaving at *Carra* his mother, and his son and daughter, that were Twins, whom *Bajazet* put to death. The Knights of *Rhodes* sent *Gemes* to *Rome*, upon the desire of Pope *Innocent* 4. *Lewis* 11. of *France*, and *Matthias* King of *Hun- gary*, in hope of some great Victory against *Bajazet*. He lodged in the *Vati- can*, and was given as an Hostage to *Charles* 8. of *France*, with *Valentin Borgi- as*, the Popes son, by *Alexander* 6. when *Charles* marched out of *Rome* to the 30 siege of *Naples*. But *Gemes* died by the way, being poisoned by Pope *Alex- ander*, fearing lest *Charles* in delivering him up to his brother, should thereby obtain *Bajazets* favour. *Achmet Bassa*, who had preserved the Empire for *Bajazet* against his brother, was for his good service strangled by the same *Bajazet*, pretending that he meant to advance *Gemes* to the Throne: but indeed *Achmet* had great Treasures, which caused his ruine, but to the good of *Christians*, whose mortal Enemy he was.

This *Bajazet* delighted more in Scholarship, than Arms; yet to maintain the power he had got, makes war first against the Christians, and in the third year of his reign subdued *Walachia*. Afterward transfers his War into *Asia*, 40 to punish the Sultan of *Egypt*, for aiding his brother *Gemes* with Victuals, Men, and Money, against him. For *Carmannus* of *Cilicia* was already subdued, and his Countrey made a Province. *Caitibhaius* at this time was Sultan of *Egypt*, by birth a *Circassian*, and by condition a servant. From his childhood he was instructed in the Arts, and Manners of the *Mamelucs*, and by the Law of *Mahomet* was made free. These *Mamelucs* were Christians of the *Muscovite*, or *Roxalan* profession. Out of them the Sultans were chosen out of the *Circassian* slaves, who dwelt upon the *Fuxin* Sea, and were chosen after the extirpation of *Saladius* posterity. Now, these *Mamelucs* are the children of Christians, and 50 must be baptized, and educated in Christian Religion, which they are to abandon and forswear, before they can be *Mamelucs*. This *Caitibhaius* was made Sultan for his Valour; the *Egyptians* standing in need of such a man, for suppressing the *Arabian* Thieves, and curbing the *Persians*, who made divers irruptions upon *Comagene* and *Syria*; and keeping the *Turks* from breaking out of *Cilicia* upon the *Egyptian* Territories. All these Wars he happily un- dertook

*An. Christi* dertook, for he subdued the *Arabians*, and made them Tributaries. Then in two battels drove back the *Persians* beyond *Euphrates*, and mastered the Turks twice in *Cilicia* by the help and counsel of two *Italian Mamelucs*, the two chief Turkish Commanders, *Mesithes Palaologus*, and *Cherseogles*, were taken. This was the son of *Chetsechius*, Prince of *Illyricum*, who took away his sons wife from him, which so exasperated his son, that he renounced Christianity, and betook himself to *BajaZet*, whose daughter he married. In this Battel of *Tharfis*, scarce the third part of an hundred thousand Turks escaped. *BajaZet* being weary of the *Asian* wars, returns back into *Europe*, where he takes *Dyrrachium*, and in the large fields of *Liburnis*, in *Croatia*, over-  
1493 where he takes the united Forces of *Illyrium*, *Pannonia*, and *Croatia*. Then he made War against the *Venetians*, for defending the cause of *John Castriot*, *Scanderbegs* son, who had defeated the Garison soldiers of *BajaZet* in *Croatia*, and driven the Turks out of his Territories. Besides, the *Venetians* had prohibited *BajaZets* ships in his *Syrian* Expedition, to harbour in *Cyprus*, though he earnestly intreated them. Also *Lewis Sforzia*, a great Enemy of the *Venetians*, egged him on. The beginnings of this war succeeded well to the Turk; for *Schenderus Bassa*, by Land made excursions as far as *Tarvisum*, and *Deu-*  
1498 ches the Turks Admiral, by Sea, entred even to *Fadra* in *Dalmatia*, and carried thence a great multitude of captives. He was once in danger to have been taken by the *Venetian* Fleet, about *Peloponnesus*, among the *Sporade* Isles, but *Grimannus*, the *Venetian* Admiral, either for want of courage, or skill, suffered him to escape to the Bay of *Corinth*, where he took the Town *Naupactum*, or *Lepanto*, within the Bay of *Aetolia*, having a little before taken from them *Dyrrachium* in *Epirus*.

Two years after *BajaZet* with an hundred and fifty thousand men, brake in upon *Peloponnesus*, he divided his Army into three parts about *Methon*. After divers Skirmishes on both sides, he gets within the Town, when unhappily the Townsmen spying three *Venetian* Gallies, coming towards them with Arms, Men, and Provision, forsook their station, and went down to the Shoar, to receive the Supplies sent them. They were all taken prisoners, being above a thousand of them, and in the presence of the Tyrant massacred, except some patricii, whose lives were begged by *Cherseogles*, *BajaZets* son in Law. Some other places being affrighted at this cruelty, yielded to the Tyrant, one of those was *Pilus*, where *Nesfor* of old lived. *BajaZet* after this, returns as a Conquerour to *Byzantium*, but *Spain* and *France* resolve to aid *Venice*. *Pisaurius* the *Venetian* Admiral, by the advice and courage of *Consulvus* the *Spaniard*, took *Cephalonia*, in the *Ionian* Sea, having a double Harbour, and a rich Soil. He took also by storm *Lencade*, and *Nericum*, and put the whole Turkish Garison to the Sword. But the *French* Fleet at *Lesbos*, attempting *Mitylene*, had not the like success, for the ships were so torn, scattered, and wrackt by a storm, that much adoe they had to escape to *Tarentum*. At last a Peace is concluded on these conditions, that *Cephalonia* should continue in the *Venetian* jurisdiction, as it was before the Turkish Empire. *Lencade* and *Nericum* should be restored to the Turk. This Peace was the more easily obtained, because in *Persia* *Ismael* the *Sophi*, descended from *Usumcassanes* by the mother, had made himself King upon the death of *Facuppus*, the son of *Usumcassanes*, whom his libidinous wife perfidiously murdered. This change of the State came in with the change of *Mahometan* superstition, which by the wavering and credulous multitude, was greedily embraced. These new Sectaries, with great success, over-run *Cappadocia*, and *Lycania*, kills *BajaZets* two Nephews, *Orchanes* and *Mahumet*, two *Bassais*, the Beglerbeg of *Asia*, and *Hali*, and overthrows two Armies, before *BajaZet* knew of the danger. *Ismael* was the son of *Harduellis*, a *Persian* Prince, and of *Martha* the daughter of *Usumcassanes*, who was the first of the *Assimbean* Turks, after

after the murder of *Malgonches*, the *Persian* King possessed himself of that Kingdom. *Harduellis* the Father, would have the *Mahometan* Law expounded after the mind of *Hali*, that was *Mahumets* Interpreter, and Companion, and not after the way of *Homer*, whom the other Turks followed. *Harduellis* by his affected holiness and strictness of life, above all other men, drew admiration, and innumerable Disciples after him, which eagerly maintained his Dictates, rejecting the ancient Rites. *Usumcassanes* being yet scarce warm in his Kingdom, began to suspect those great Meetings, and Assemblies of people, who many times under pretence of Religion, plot Innovation, when therefore he finds, that by force he could not suppress *Harduellis*, he makes him his son in Law, by marrying him to his daughter, of which marriage came this son *Ismael*: but *Facuppus Usumcassanus* his son, after his Fathers death, by some *Assasins* murdered *Harduellis*, and banished or killed his followers, thinking this way to free himself of fear and danger. *Ismael* being yet a child, got out of his Uncles reach, into *Hircania*, and one of the chief Disciples *Techelles*, (called from his red Cap, or Turban Cufelbas, which he wore for distinctions sake) escaped over *Euphrates* unto the lesser *Armenia*.

These two overthrew the posterity of *Usumcassanes*, and so busied the Turks, that they could have no leisure to prosecute their Victories in *Europe*. *Ismael* by maintaining his Fathers Doctrine, obtained no less love and admiration, then he; so that *Facuppus* being poisoned by his wife, he resolves to recover his Fathers patrimony, and his Mothers Dowry, to this purpose, he arms his Followers, and procured Auxiliaries from *Pyrchales*, a Prince of *Hircania*, to whom he had fled. So in a short time he recovered his Fathers Estate, and daily increasing in strength, took by storm *Symachia*, on the borders of *Media*. Then upon hopes of obtaining the Kingdom of *Persia*, marcheth with his Army to *Taurisum*, or *Taura*, a flourishing City of the *Persians* in the greater *Armenia*, where *Alvantes* the son of *Facuppus* (who drove his brother *Mirachamus* out of *Armenia* and *Persia*) dwelt. He was hated by the  
30 Citizens, because he murdered many of them for adhering to his brother. This City upon the flight of *Alvantes* thence, yielded without blowes to *Ismael*, with the Kings whole Treasure. Then hearing that *Alvantes* had raised an Army, he fights him. *Alvantes* lost both his life and his Army. Upon the fame of this Victory, the neighbouring places and people submit to his Law and Government. Thence he marcheth into *Mesopotamia* against *Morachamus*, the other brother, who had an Army at *Babylon*, but he fearing *Ismaels* power, and his own weakness, flies with his wife and children, and all the wealth he could convey, into *Arabia*. *Ismael* having with his conquering Army over-run a great part of the East, he marcheth out of *Assyria* into  
40 *Media*, where he takes in some Garisons of *Alvantes*, and returns into *Armenia*. The *Albanians*, *Iberians*, and *Scythians*, beyond the *Caspian* Sea, being Tributaries to the *Persian*, had not paid their Tributes in four years, nor had they sent all this while any Embassador to congratulate the *Sophies* Victories, therefore he reduced them to their duty by force of Arms.

In this mean while *Techelles* by Preaching and Prophecyng, drew *Cappadocia* to join both in Arms and Doctrine with him; and by the *Persian* help, he breaks in upon *Lycania*, a rich and populous Country, where he overthrew *Orchanes* and *Mahumet*, *BajaZets* Nephews, then he marcheth through lesser *Asia*, where *Corchutus*, *BajaZets* son, was with an Army, but refused to fight: then through *Galatia*, he breaks in upon *Bithynia*, where he met with *Caragius Bassa*, Commander of the Asiatick Horse, whom they call *Belerbeiz*, him *Techelles* put to flight, and pursues him to *Cauthia*, a town in the midst of *Asia minor*, and there beleaguered him. At last he takes the town, and *Caragius* alive in it, with his wife. From thence he intended to take in *Prusia*, the Metropolis of *Bithynia*, but was hindered by

*An. Christi* by *Bajazet's* new Forces under *Hali Bassa*, the *Macedonian Eunuch*, whom *Techelles* unexpectedly meets, and to keep him off from fighting, took *Caragius* the *Beglerbeg*, whom he carried about in chains, and paled him in the High-way, that they might be affrighted at this sad spectacle; but indeed *Hali Bassa* was so enraged at this sight, that because he could not overtake him with his whole Army, pursues him eagerly with eight thousand Horse, and fights him. In the first encounter, *Techelles* was worsted, but shortly after, he got the Victory, and killed *Hali Bassa*. To whom succeeded *Funus Bassa*, of *Epirus*, whom *Achmet*, *Bajazet's* son, furnished with Forces. He at last drove *Techelles* out of *Asia*: Thus doe the Enemies of Christ destroy each other. *Bajazet* being much troubled with the disasters of this War, with the Gout, and old Age, likewise with the great calamities of that time, caused by Earth-quakes, and the plague, began to consult with his *Bassas* about his successor, which occasioned Civil Wars; for *Bajazet* had three sons alive, *Achmet*, *Corchut*, and *Selymus*, besides divers grandchildren. *Achmet* was beloved of his Father, but the *Bassas* and *Fanizaries* inclined in their affections most to *Selymus*, by their incitation and assistance of the *Pracopis Tartar*, (whose daughter *Selymus* had already married against his Father *Bajazet's* will) *Selymus* takes Arms most unnaturally against his Father, but was defeated, and by the *Bassas* intercession, reconciled again to him: yet afterward in spight of his Father, he was proclaimed Emperour by the soldiers, who swore Allegiance to him: He began his Government from *Paricide*; for having thrust his Father out of his Empire, poisoned him by one *Haman a Jew*, the 66 year of his life, and of his reign 32. he was a better Philosopher than Soldier.

1512

*Selymus* began his Reign, not only from the murder of his Father, but of his two Brothers also, and their children. He strangled *Achmet* and *Corchut*, his two Brothers, having first overthrown *Achmet* in a battel, and treacherously seized upon *Corchut*, thinking no hurt, but following his privat study; onely when he heard that his life was sought after, he endeavoured to escape into *Rhodes*. *Mustaphus Bassa*, by whose help *Selymus* had got the Empire, was for this his good service, first strangled, and then hung to the dogs; his crime was, that his affections seemed to incline more to *Achmet*, then to himself. *Achmet's* two sons, *Amurath* and *Aladin*, both fled; *Amurath* to *Ismael* the *Sophi*, and *Aladin* to *Campso Gaurius* the *Egyptian Sultan*; whence arose new Wars, which kept *Selymus* off from invading Christendom. *Amurath* with a *Persian Army*, breaks in upon *Cappadocia*; *Ismael* coming softly after, and was like to have carried all this Country, the people came in so fast to him, had not *Chendemus Bassa*, Governour of *Asia*, suppressed them with a great power. Whereupon *Selymus* passeth over into *Asia*, where he fell upon the united Forces of *Amurath*, the Turk, and *Ustaogle* the *Persian* Commanders, with whom also *Ismael* joins his Army. When he heard that *Selymus* was come, a bloody battel is fought, in which *Ismael* was shot in the shoulders, and so was forced to withdraw himself out of the Army, whom the soldiers followed; by which the Turk obtained the Victory, but to the loss of thirty thousand of his men, whereof many of them were of great account with him; the *Persian Army* consisted but of thirty thousand Horse, whereas the Turks were an hundred and fifty thousand Horse and Foot. After this Victory, *Selymus* besiegeth *Taurisia*, the *Persians* Regal Seat, which being by the Citizens surrendered, he wasted and plundered. Shortly after, he brings back his Army into *Cappadocia*, fearing that *Ismael* was returning with a fresh Army of *Iberian*, and *Albanian* Horse men, who at this day are called *Georgians* and *Mangrellians*, in

1514

In *Cappadocia* the Turk takes up his Winter Quarters, at *Trapezund*, and *Amasia*. The next year understanding that *Ismael* is troubled with intestine Wars, and that he was gone against the *Hyrcanians*, and *Bactrians*, and some other places upon the *Caspian Sea*; though he was willing to weaken the *Persian*, yet he intends to act nothing in *Armenia*, till he have first driven King *Aladulus* out of that Country, for the wrongs he suffered by him in his former Expedition against *Ismael*. The Kingdom of *Aladulus* bordered upon the *Egyptian Sultan* at *Alepo*, on *Ismael* the *Sophi* by *Armenia* the left, on the Turks by *Orpha*, or *Edessa*, famous for its Springs against Leprosies, and for the Tombe of *Balwin*, God'sy of Bullions Brother. First, then *Selymus* takes the Town *Cyammassus*, the Key of *Armenia*, on the farther Bank of *Euphrates*. After that, he subdues the Garisons that kept the narrow passages between the Hills, then he fights *Aladulus*, who being affrighted with the multitude of Musqueteers, flies with his Forces into the next Woods. *Aladulus* was betrayed by his neighbours, and a kinsman of his to *Selymus*, who caused him to be drawn out of the Cave where he hid himself, and his head to be chopped off, which he carried about upon a long Pole, through *Asia*, in ostentation of his Victory; then transmits it to the Senate of *Venice*. *Aladulus* his eldest son escaped to *Egypt*. *Selymus* divided his Kingdom into three Lieutenantships. Then he returns into *Europe*, to defend the borders of his Dominions from the *Hungarians*, whom he quickly suppressed, in two incursions he made upon them. The fame of his Victories, and preparations he was making for subduing of Christendom, caused *Maximilian*, *Cesar*, *Landislaus* of *Hungary*, and *Sigismund* of *Polonia*, to call a Diet for raising an Army through all their Dominions for the defence of Christianity. But the Turk understanding, that the Christians meant only to stand upon their own defence, and not to invade, returns to his Army in *Lycaonia*, with a resolution to prosecute the *Persian Wars*, and utterly to overthrow *Ismael*.

The *Egyptian Sultan* being solicited by the daily prayers and tears of the exiled Princes, chiefly of *Aladin*, the son of *Achomat*, and *Aladulus* eldest son, had raised a great Army of *Egyptians* and *Jews*, and was now on his March near the River *Orontes*, ready to join with the *Persian*. The Turk sends Embassadors to desire either his amity, or at least neutrality. At this time *Campson Gaurius* was Sultan by the Votes of the *Mamaluks*, after divers tumults and slaughters raised by *Caitibei* and his Arabian wife *Dultiba*, who would have had the Kingdom confirmed on their son, against the *Mamaluks* Laws, which made the *Sultans* Elective, not Hereditary; this Law *Caitibei* abrogated, after whose death his son *Mahomet* invaded the Kingdom, whilst two prime men *Achbardin* and *Campso*, disputed for it. The *Mamaluks* being offended that their Law and Privilege was thus infringed, caused *Mahomet* at a Feast to be murdered. Upon this divers slaughters of the prime men ensued. At last the *Mamaluks* conferred the dignity on *Campson Gaurius*, a man of great worth: He remembering the Victory he had over the Turks at *Tarsus*, answers threateningly to the Turks request, that he would not lay down Arms, except *Selymus* would restore the son of *Aladulus*, to his Kingdom, and forbear to meddle with any of *Ismael's* Provinces; he also desires to be Arbitrator of the differences between him and the *Sophi*; this so exasperated *Selymus* that he diverts his War from *Persia*, and falls unexpectedly upon *Comagena*, an *Egyptian* Province, and incamps himself not farre from *Alepo*. *Campson* brings his Army from *Damascus*, and encounters with the Turks; but *Cajerbeius* Governour of *Alepo* and *Comagena*, not only perfidiously forsook, but also pursued *Campson*, so that the *Mamaluks* were defeated.

K k k

*An. Christi* 1516 defeated, and *Campson* himself being heavy with arms, and troubled with a rupture in his belly, fell with his horse, and was trod to death in the dust. Of the *Turks* 3000 were killed, of the *Mamelucks* 1000; among which were the Governors of *Damascus* and *Tripoli*, but a great slaughter was committed in the flight, whilst the Peeres and Gentry were posting towards *Hierapolis*, finding themselves betrayed by *Cajerbejus*, these *Selymus* pursues, who understanding they were got to *Damascus*, takes in *Hierapolis*, and sends *Finus* Bassai with a partie of horse to *Damascus*, but the enemy was gone thence; whereupon the *Turk* marcheth thither with all his army, to whom the gates are presently opened; *Tripoly*, *Berytus*, *Sydon*, *Ptolemais*, and other places did submit to *Selymus*.

*Selymus* having obtained *Syria* so suddenly, resolves to pursue the remainders of the *Mamelucks*, who having escaped to *Memphis*, had made *Tomumbejus* of the *Circassian* Sultan there in the place of *Campson*. The *Arcadian* high-way robbers are suppressed by *Sinan* Bassai, who opens a way to *Gaza*. *Tomumbejus* had sent *Gazellus* thither with an army, who were defeated by *Selymus*, all the *Egyptian* Colours were taken, the Governor of *Alexandria*, the Prætor of *Memphis*, one thousand horse, and many prime men. But the *Arabians* recruiting Bassai lost 2000 horse, and many prime men. But the *Arabians* recruiting fell upon the *Turks* at *Gaza*, and killed many of them, till *Selymus* brought his whole army into *Judea*, where he joyne with *Sinan* Bassai, and takes *Gaza* upon surrender: Then he marcheth within six miles of *Memphis*, where he is encountered by *Tomumbejus*, whose Counsels were betrayed to the *Turk* by some Fugitives; so that *Selymus* got the victorie, most of the *Egyptian* prime men being lost: The choicest of their horse affrighted with the *Turkish* Cannons, fled and got into the City, the streets whereof they Barracadoed with great pieces of timber; but this could not keep out *Selymus*, who breaks through all impediments, and in three days fight destroys in a manner the whole race of *Mamelucks*: Some that had escaped into a Church and submitted themselves to the *Turks* mercy, were all by his command cut off.

*Tomumbejus* beyond *Nilus* recruited his Forces, another battel is fought, and in it the *Egyptians* quite defeated, *Tomumbejus* was found lurking among reeds up to the middle in water, after the *Turk* had a long time tortured him, to make him confess where his treasures lay; he set him on a poor Jade which carried him about the City; then he causeth him to be strangled, and hanged up on an iron hook in one of the Gates, for a spectacle to all passengers, of the one's Victory, and the other's miserie: And thus ended the Kingdom of the *Mamelucks* in *Egypt*, which from the extirpation of *Saladins* Posteritie in *Melechlala*, had continued about two hundred forty three years.

*Egypt* and *Syria* being subdued, *Cajerbejus* for a reward of his Treachery at *Alepo*, is made Governour of *Egypt*; and *Gazelles*, who upon the overthrow of the *Mamelucks*, submitted to the *Turk*, is set over *Syria*: Out of *Memphis* or *Alcair*, above 500 of the chiefe Families, besides multitudes of Women and Children of the *Mamelucks* Progenie, and all that could be found of that race, are at *Alexandria* cut in peeces by *Selymus* his Command.

Then he returnes in Triumph to *Byzantium* and threatens Christendom; But in his preparation for Warre, he is arrested by a Cankering Ulcer in his Kidneys, which spreading, putrified his whole body, so that he died miserably in that same place of *Thracia*, where he endeavoured to intrap his Father *Bajazet*. He lived forty six years, and reigned eight. As he was breathing out his cruel soul, he commended his son *Solyman* to the care of

of *Pyrrhus* Bassa, of *Cilicia*, injoyning him to forbear the *Persians*, and to make war upon the *Christians*. He was a most barbarous Tyrant, who spared neither Father, Brothers, nor any of his kindred, nor his chief Commanders, that did him best service; nor his own son, whom he would have murdered with a poisoned Coat, which the mother suspecting, gave it not to *Solyman*, but to one of his Chamber, who by it was quickly killed.

## CHAP. XXI.

The Turkish History under *Solyman*, *Selymus*, *Amurath* 3<sup>d</sup>, *Mahumet* 3<sup>d</sup>, *Achmat*, *Multapha*, *Osmian* and *Amurath* 4<sup>th</sup>, from the year 1520, till the end of 1636.

*Solyman* the only son of *Selymus*, succeeded *Gazelles*, Governour of *Syria*, thinking himself now freed from his Oath by the death of *Selymus*, revolted, intending to make himself Master of *Syria*, for this cause he entertains all the remainders of the *Mamelucks*, and the inhabitants of that Country, which flock to him in great numbers. He insinuates himself also into the affections of the great Master of the *Rhodes*, from whom he desired some Artillery, Arms, and Gallies. He sends also privately to *Cajerbejus* in *Alcair*, Governour of *Egypt*, exhorting him to joyn, and to revenge the blood of the *Circassians*, and to re-establish in the destruction of the *Turks*, the old government by *Sultans*. But *Cajerbejus* considering the difficulty of this business, and that no credit was to be given to an old Enemy, kills the Agent, and makes the *Turk* acquainted with the plot. Whereupon *Solyman* sends *Farides* Bassai, with an Army into *Syria*, which so affrighted *Gazelles*, that though he had taken *Tripoli*, and other Garisons from the *Turk*, yet he betakes himself into *Damascus*; hither *Farides* repairs, with all speed. *Gazelles* resolves to hazard all in one battel, and either to get the victory, or else to die honourably: both Armies joyned, in this conflict, both he and his *Mamelucks* were cut off by this victory; *Syria* is recovered, and the fidelity of *Cajerbejus* is confirmed.

The next year after this victory, by the perswasion of the *Fanizaries*, *Solyman* resolves to fall upon *Belgrad* in *Hungary*, where were set up many Trophies taken from the *Turks*; *Solyman* sends an Army to *Sophia*, a City in *Servia*, and he hasteneth after, so that he was come before the *Hungarians* knew any thing. *Eudowick* the young King, was totally ruled by others, so that he was in effect but a titular King: Hence an Army could not be suddenly raised; whereupon *Solyman* took *Belgrad* without opposition, who after this victory rested a year, then he resolves to try his fortune upon *Rhodes*, though he was dissuaded by his friends who were not unmindful of the losse, disgrace, and repulse *Mahumet* received there, besides the danger that might ensue to the *Sultans* own person by the *Christian* Fleet. Notwithstanding *Solyman* would in this be ruled by none, but by his own Genius: therefore about the end of June, he repairs thither with 400 ships, and 200000 *Turks*, with great store of Brass Ordnance placed upon two Hills, which the *Turks* made themselves, shoveling up Earth for the space of two miles from the City into a wonderfull height. So great was the multitude of workmen, that in a short time they came to the Towne-Ditches, working under ground for springing of Mines. *Villadam* the great Master, a French man born, behaved himselfe stoutly, playing continually upon the *Turks* with his great Ordnance, that



An.Christi

the Ditches were filled with dead bodies; yet *Solyman* would not give over, though he had lost above thirty thousand of his men by the bloody Flux. At last the Towres and Walls being overthrown, the Turks seize upon the remote parts of the Town. Then with their Mortar pieces, they batter down the hou-  
 ses within the City, to the terror of the inhabitants. All this while the *Rho-*  
*dians* had no supply from Christendom, though the Turk had received *Re-*  
*duits* from *Egypt* and *Natolia*, for *Cajerbeius* sent forty ships with all manner  
 of Warlike provision. Mean while Pope *Hadrian* arrived out of *Spain* into  
 of Warlike provision. Mean while Pope *Hadrian* arrived out of *Spain* into  
*Italy*, with some ships and Gallies, and about three thousand Foot. These  
 he was advised to send to *Rhodes*, and joyn with the fifty *Venetian* Gallies re-  
 dy at *Crete*, but he refused to send them: wherefore the *Rhadians* having nei-  
 ther help, nor hope, surrendered themselves to the Turk, conditionally they  
 might enjoy their lives and goods, except the brass Ordnance, which was  
 granted, and carefully observed by *Solyman*, who would not suffer the soldiers  
 to touch any consecrated thing belonging to Saint *Johns* Church, when he en-  
 tered *Rhodes* with thirty thousand men; there was not a word heard spoken a-  
 mong them, but as silent as *Carthusian* Monks. When *Villadam* took his  
 leave of *Solyman*, he was dismissed with all courtesie, so that *Solyman* turning  
 about to one of his *Basais*, said, It grieves me (saith he) to see this unfortu-  
 nate old man driven from his habitation, and to depart hence with so sad a  
 countenance. So this Bulwark of Christendom, to the honour of *Solyman*,  
 and dishonour of Christendom, was surrendered after six months siege. In  
*Egypt* *Cajerbeius* did, to whom succeeded *Acomath Basa*, who thought to  
 have made himself *Sultan*, but his plot was detected, and he justly punished  
 with death. *Habram Basa*, *Solymans* Favorite, is sent to quiet *Egypt*, which  
 he did with great wisdom; wherefore he was shortly after called home to *Con-*  
*stantinople*, by *Solyman*, and honoured with the Title of *Beglerbeg*, or Lord  
 of Lords.

1526

After this, *Solyman* proclaims war against *Hungary*: King *Ludovic* raises  
 an Army of twenty four thousand Horse and Foot, of raw and unskilfull men;  
 neither had he any supply from the Christian Princes, except from the Pope,  
 who on his own charges raised for him some *German* and *Bohemian* Foot.  
 The Turkish Army consisted of two hundred thousand men, which made *Soly-*  
*man* admire the Kings folly, that would with an handful of men oppose him-  
 self to such a mighty Army; but the unfortunate King was advised to fight  
 by *Paul Tomor*, Arch-Bishop of *Collocen*, who had heretofore in some light  
 Skirmishes, beat the Turk, but never encountered him before in any set Bat-  
 tel. In the end, this unfortunate King, as we have said already, was drowned  
 in a Bog, not being able by reason of his heavy Arms, to get out from under  
 his Horse, the thousand Horse, his Life-guard in defending the Waggon and  
 Baggage, were cut off, the Arch-Bishop, with the other Bishops slain, and  
 the whole Army utterly defeated, so that few escaped with their lives, notwith-  
 standing that the Turkish Ordnance did no hurt, for the Gunners being *Chri-*  
*stians*, shot purposely over their heads. The Battel being fought, *Solyman*  
 marched to *Buda*, where the Castle was surrendered to him, the Garison dis-  
 missed with life and goods. Two brazen Statues set up by *Matthias*, were  
 carried thence to *Constantinople* as a Trophy of *Solymans* Victory, who stayed  
 not long after in *Hungary*, because of the Winter, but returned home; nor  
 did he after this make any more War upon the Christians, only he laid siege to  
*Vienna*, which with losse and dishonour he was fain to raise again. He also  
 beat the *Spanish* Fleet, and took from them the Isle *Meninges*, over against  
 the *African* Syrtes, the Castle whereof was defended by the Duke of *Medina*,  
*Viceroy* of *Sicily*. *Pialis Basa*, defeated the *Spanish* Fleet, that besieged *Tri-*  
*poli*, and forced the Castle to surrender, for want of water and victuals; about  
 18 thousand Christians were slain and carried away prisoners to *Constantino-*  
*ple*,

1560

An.Christi

ple, where at that time *Busbequius Ferdinands* Embassador was Resident, and  
 relieved many of them with necessaries. But as *Solyman* was happy in his Vi-  
 ctories abroad, so he was unfortunate in his affairs at home; for he commit-  
 ted Paricide upon the false accusation of *Rassa* or *Roxelana*, his beloved wife,  
 who hated *Mustapha Solymans* son by another venture; this *Mustapha* had  
 done excellent service for his Father against the *Persian*, and was generally  
 well beloved for his excellent parts, especially by the *Fanizaries*, wherefore  
 he was accused for affecting the Empire, with his Father was too apt to believe,  
 therefore marcheth towards him with an Army: sends for *Mustapha* into his  
 Pavilion, who trusting to his own innocency, came boldly. *Solyman* gave  
 order to some Mutes that were strong men, but dumb, to fall upon him, and  
 strangle him, which they did at last not without much struggling; for *Musta-*  
*pha* being young and strong, made resistance a long time; the cruel Father,  
 Authour and Spectator of the execution, caused his body to be laid before the  
 Pavilion, for the *Fanizaries* to behold, that they might see in what condition  
 he was now, whom they meant to make Emperor. At which sight they  
 were much struck with terror and sorrow, but knew no way to help it. *Solyman*  
 also was much afflicted by his other son, which he had of *Roxelana*, his name  
 was *Bajazet*, he partly hated, partly feared his elder brother *Selymus*, who  
 was to succeed in the Empire: These two brothers had the command of two  
 Provinces, which lay neer together; this neighbourhood gave occasion of  
 quarrels, which coming to *Solymans* ears, with complaints of some who hat-  
 ed *Bajazet*, that he intended to invade the Empire, to destroy his brother  
*Selymus*, that he might not be destroyed by him, when he should come to  
 reign, and that he meant also to depose his old Father. Presently command  
 is given by *Solyman*, that the two brothers should be removed from their Pro-  
 vinees, and two other assigned them, that might be of a greater distance. *Sely-*  
*mus* in obedience to his Father, accepted of his new Province, which *Baja-*  
*zet* refused to do, and withal set up a false *Mustapha* against his Father, where-  
 by he incurred his Fathers displeasure, and danger of strangling; but by the  
 intreaty of *Roxelana*, he was reconciled to his son, who sending for him,  
 checked him severely for his insolency, both against him and his brother, wish-  
 ing him not to use any sinister means to obtain the Empire; which if God  
 had appointed for him, it should be his in spite of all the world; but if God  
 had otherwise determined, all his labour in attaining to it, would be in vain:  
 with this Stoical Doctrine, did he work upon his son awhile; then after he  
 had acknowledged his fault, and begged pardon, a cup of liquor was pre-  
 sented to him which he was fearful to drink, thinking it had been poison; yet  
 perceiving his mother looked cheerfully on him, did drink thereof, and his  
 Father pledged him in the same cup. But afterward this *Bajazet* flew out a-  
 gain in rebellion, and was forced to flee into *Persia* for shelter, where he was  
 apprehended and imprisoned; and at last upon the Turks intreaty, the *Persian*  
 having received satisfaction for the hurt he had sustained by *Bajazet*, with a rich  
 present from *Solyman*, delivers him up to *Halsan*, the Turks Agent, who carried  
 him thence away by a Turkish Garison, and strangled him. The same fate of  
 the Father fell upon his four sons also, who were all slain. This *Solyman* also  
 having had good success against *Rhodes*, attempts *Malta* with a Fleet of 205  
 Sail; but *John Valet* the great Master, so stoutly with his forces defended it,  
 by the assistance of *Garcas* the *Spanish* Admiral, that the Turks after six months  
 siege, and the loss of twenty three thousand men, were forced with shame to  
 depart, who wrackt their anger upon the Isle *Chios*, which had been in the pos-  
 session of *Genua*, above 200 years; now it is brought under the Turkish yoke by  
*Pialis Basa*. And though *Solymans* body grew weak by age, being now almost  
 fourscore, yet his ambitious thoughts were not at all weakened, but even then  
 being solicited by the *Transylvanian*, besiegeth *Sigethum*, a city in *Hungary*,  
 with

*An. Christi* vvvith 200 thousand men, but in the midst of his vain hopes, death cuts him off, having reigned 47 years, he vvvas a Prince temperate in his diet, comely in personage, carefull of his vvord, and generous in his actions: his death vvvas concealed by *Mahumet Bassai* from the Soldiers, least they should be thereby disheartened. About this time the *Tartars* beaking in upon *Hungary*, kept *LaZarus Suendius* from relieving the besieged Towne vvvhich at last vvvas taken, but not without the loss of 30000 *Turks* in a fally made by *Nicholas Serinius*, vvvhoin that action was cut off with his Garrison.

To *Solyman* succeeded his son *Selymus* 2<sup>d</sup>, he also sends aid to the *Transylvanian* against *Hungary*; mean while *Suendius* takes divers Townes from the *Tartar*, whom he beats quite out of *Pannonia*, then takes some Townes from the *Turk*, and enlargeth the Territories of *Cesar Maximilian*, with whom *Selymus* makes a peace for 8 years; about which time *Cyprus* submits to the *Turkish* yoke: For *Selymus* pretended that this Isle was a member of the Kingdom of *Egypt*, whereof now he was supreme Lord; and that the *Venetians* in that regard paid a yearly tribute into his Exchequer; but now having falsified their faith to the *Turks*, they were bound to make restitution. The *Venetians* though much troubled at the burning of their *Arsenal* lately, yet resolve not to loose that noble Island which had now been one hundred years in their possession; therefore they enter into league with Pope *Pius* 5<sup>th</sup> and the King of *Spain*, who riggt out a strong Fleet into the sea; but the ambition and quarrels of the Commanders staying at *Crete*, lost all opportunity of doing good; for in this interim *Cyprus* is wasted by *Mustapha* and *Elialis* the *Turkish* Generals: Then the City *Nicosia*, after a months siege is taken. *Famagusta*, called *Salamis* of olde, having for eleven months stoutly sustained all the *Turkish* assaults, at last yeilded upon honorable conditions, had they been as honorably observed by the barbarous infidel *Mustapha*, who though he promised life, liberty and goods, yet most wickedly murdered those whom by his Oath he should have protected; he caused *Antoninus Bragadmus* his ears and nose to be cut off, his body to be flead alive, and his skin to be stuf with straw, and hanged at the main yard of his Galley: Of the *Venetians* that were bound for *Crete*, he made Gally-slaves, the chief prisoners and spoiles are sent to *Selimus*, but a *Cyprian* Lady appointed for the *Sultans* lust, set fire by some barrells of gunpowder on the two ships, that neither she, nor the other prisoners, nor spoiles, were ever seen or enjoyed by *Selimus*. This Island the *Turks* bought at a dear rate, for they lost about 60000 men in this War besides what they lost the year after, in the battel of *Lepanto*, at the Islands called *Echinade*, fought by the *Christian* Fleet, under the command of *Don John* of *Austria*, *Charles* the 5<sup>th</sup> bastard, *Sebastian Venerus*, afterward Duke of *Venice*, and *M. Antonius Columna*, 25 thousand *Turks* were then slain, and 4000 taken; 14 thousand *Christian* slaves were released, the whole *Turkish* Fleet of 250 Saile, was either torne or taken; onely *UluZal* with 30 Gallies escaped. And the year ensuing the *Turkish* Armado appeared whole and intire, so that a *Turk* compared wittily the loss of *Cyprus*, to the loss of an arm, which could never grow again; but the loss of *Lepanto* to the shaving of ones haire, which will increase the thicker. Not long after the *Turks* take *Goletum* in *Africa*, from the *Spaniard* by *Sinan Bassai*, besides the new Fort, 500 pieces of Ordnance, and rich booties, upon the report of which good newes at *Constantinople*, *Selymus* died, having reigned 8 years, a little before his death he took *Moldavia* by treason, killed the *Vayvud* and annexeth it to *Walachia*.

To *Selymus* succeeded his son *Amurath* 3<sup>d</sup> who began his reigne with the

*An. Christi* the parricide of his 5 brothers, whom he caused to be murdered in his own presence: He intends to make War upon the *Persians*; over whom reigned *Ismael* the son of *Techmases*, who also slew his brothers: He for his crueltie is poisoned by his own sister, and so *Mahumet Hodabandes* obtained his fathers Kingdome. Against him *Amurath* was incented; because he fomented and maintained the *Affyrians* against the *Turks*; Besides, *Amurath* had some Dreams animating him to raise arms against the *Persians* as Hereticks. The *Tartars* and *Georgians*, or *Iberian* Christians took part with the *Parthian* against the *Turk*. These *Iberians* aided by the *Colchs*, *Armenians* and *Medes* had divers and doubtfull encounters with *Mustapha* that cruel *Turkish* Generall: The first year of this War 70 thousand *Turks* lost their lives by the sword, famin, and water, besides the *European* *Tartars*, the *Turks* Auxiliaries were all cut off; wherefore *Mustapha* is removed from his Generallship, and *Sinan Bassai* is made chief Vicer or Counceller, whose success in this War was no better then *Mustapha's*, who fearing publick punishment, put violent hands on himself, his estate by this, fell to the *Sultan*. *Sinan* Bassai also for his bad success is put out of his place and banished; neither was the luck of his successor *Ferates* much better. About this time also the *Præcopit Tartars*, who inhabit *Taurica*, *Chersonesus*, of the *Turks* confederates are made their slaves, vvvhich is the effect commonly of the *Turks* friendship. For because *Mahumet* the *Tartar*, vvould not upon *Amurath's* perswasion assist Prince *Osman* in his Wars, but went home pretending to suppress the *Cossacks*, wasting and robbing by the *Euxin* sea, therefore by *Osman* Bassai, and *Islan* the *Tartars* brother, now let out of prison, he deprives *Mahumet* both of his life and Kingdome, and caused both his sons to be strangled with their father; So *Islan* is made Fiduciary King of these *Tartars*. But this *Mahumet* had one son vvho escaped, he raised an Army and recovered from *Islan* a good part of his fathers Kingdome: *Amurath* in the interim sends *Osman* against the *Parthians*, who in his journey had many disastures, at last he escaped into *Taurisum*, which he fenced, and 5 days after died of a Disenterie, whilst in the mean while *Amurath* being taken vvith a fit of the falling Sicknes, to vvvhich he vvvas subject, had almost brained himself by the beating his head against the stones. In *Carniola*, *Amurath* is beaten by the *Christians*, therefore is forced to renevv the peace with *Cesar*. The *Turks* also in a battel vvith the *Parthians* which lasted 3 days and 3 nights, lost about 80 thousand men, and *Taurisum*, one of the *Parthian* Regall Seats is recovered again by them: After this Victory, the *Parthian* King betakes himself to a privat life, and shortly after died. *Ibrahim* the *Egyptian* Bassai, subdues the *Maronits* of *Libanus*, and the *Trusi* of the *Christian* profession, vvho vvvere never till now brought under the *Turks* yoke; but the *Pannonian* *Turks*, whilst they break in upon *Croatia*, are all cut off by the *Christians*: Near *Sissica* 12 thousand *Turks* vvvere killed or drowned; but the *Grecian* Prætor to be revenged, came before *Sissica* with a great Army and took it: Divers other places are taken by them from the *Christians*, and divers from them by the *Christians*: Whilst *Matthias*, *Tiefenbachius* and other *Christian* Commanders in *Hungary* make War against the truce breaking *Turks* under *Serimus* and *Sinan*, *Amurath* weakened with leachery and fits of the stone, was conveyed by death to *Mahumets* Paradise, there to satiate himself with all kinde of carnall pleasures; he reigned 21 years, in his time the *Turks* break the league twice with the *Hungarians*, for which the Bassai of *Buda* is strangled, and *Sinan* his successor displaced. *Poland* also was by them invaded, with whom a peace is concluded. In a mutiny among the Janitaries at *Constantinople* 15 thousand houses are burned: *Rascia*, *Valachia* and *Moldavia* fall off from the *Turk*.

An. Christi

To *Amurath* 3<sup>d</sup> succeeded his son *Mahumet* 3<sup>d</sup>, who was circumcised by his father: He initiated his reign with the murder of 18 of his brothers whom he strangled. The *Valachians* who had revolted, fought successfully against the *Turks*, *Strigon* and *Vicegrade* are taken by the *Christians*: *Peratus* was strangled for his wealth, and bad success together. *Lippa* is taken by the *Transylvanian*: *Sinan* in a sharp conflict is beaten, and loseth 10 thousand of his men; at last after many disastures he is driven beyond the river *Agria*, where he died with age and grief: Upon whose death, *Mahumet* the Sultan marcheth toward *Hungary* with a great army, where he takes *Agria*, and defeats *Maximilian* at *Cassovia*, this great victory was obtained 200 years after that other at *Nicopolis*: After this he returns triumphing to *Constantinople*; this victory cost him 50 thousand *Turks*. *Maximilian* lost 20000 with 120 pieces of Ordnance and all the baggage. *Omat* Bassai with 60 thousand *Turks* besiegeth *Varadin*, from whence he is beat off by the *Christians* with loss; *Mahumet* being informed that his Sultaneffe did enquire of some Sooth-sayers: what should be her sons fate, first caused his son to be strangled in her presence, and then commanded her to be flung into the sea; with such as were conscious of her curiosities; but the next year he paid dearly for this cruelty; for the *Persian* took *Taurisum* from him. The *Knights of Malta* destroyed *Naupactum* and *Patra*: *Rufuormius* having cut off the *Turks* at *Pestum*, recovered *Hauana*: The Sultan with his over-grown bellie, and goutie leggs, amongst his concubins and Catamits was surpris'd by a pestilentiall fever, of which he died the 34 year of his age, having reigned 8 years: He had caused before he fell sick, all the wines in *Constantinople* to be staved, except those that belonged to the *French*, *English*, and *Venice* Ambassadors, upon a sedition of the Janizaries.

To *Mahumet* succeeded his son *Achmet* being yet under age. Upon intestine Wars between the *Hungarian* and *Transylvanian*, raised by *George Basta*; *Pestum* is regained by the *Turks*, and so is *Strigonium* which had been 10 years in the possession of *Rodolphus*. *Achmet* made 20 years peace with *Cesar*: *Matthias* having obtained *Hungary*, confirmed the peace. 20000 *Turks* are overthrown by the *Persians* at *Babylon*; they have divers encounters, and various success in the *Mediterranean* sea with the *Florentines* and *Malteffes*; *Batorius* being accused before the Sultan, that he held correspondence with *Cesar*, and purposed to deliver up *Dacia* to him; therefore the *Turk* resolves first to set up *Andrew Greizius*, then *Bezhleem Gabor* as *Fiduciarie* Prince of *Dacia*; then he makes a truce for a time with the *Parthian*. He also renews the 20 years peace with *Cesar*, that he might be without disturbance, revenged on the *Cossacks*, who having wasted the chief Cities of *Muscovia*, and many places in *Tarsary*, they burned 24 *Turkish* Gallies in the *Black sea*: And being threatned by the Sultan, grew more insolent; so that they over-run *Thracia*, plundering all, even almost to the Walls of *Byzantium*; they waste also *Bithynia* and *Paphlagonia*, and destroy *Trapezund*, with it's Harbour, Gallies and Arsenal; they burn *Sinope* of *Pontus*, and so laden with rich bootie, return to *Sarmatia* or *Poland*. *Achmet* sends to the King of *Poland* to have restitution for these losses, whose answer vvas that he vvas ignorant of those passages: But that the *Turk* could not revenge himself upon the *Polander*, vvas, by reason of the *Persian*, vvhoe prevailed mightily in *Asia*, for by the revolt of a *Turkish* Bassai, he did waste vwith fire and sword the Sultan's Territories far and near; and had almost driven the *Georgian* King out of his Dominion, for adhering to the Sultan.

In the sixteenth year of this last century, the *Turks* had many disasters both by sea and land; for in the *Mediterranean* they vvere beaten by the

An. Christi  
1616

the *Spaniards*, *Florentins*, and *Malteffes* in *Maotia* by the *Cossacks*, in *Asia* by the *Persians*, where they lost 40000 by the plague and the sword: But being assisted by the *Tartars*, they invade *Podolia*, and drove thence great booties. After this *Achmet* died in the 14 year of his government: In his time there died of the plague in one year at *Constantinople* 200000. The *Florentin* put to flight and took 42 *Turkish* Gallies; In one of which taken by them were 100 slaves. A *Dervisiar* is slain for throwing a stone at the Sultan: The Castle of *Lango* was taken by the *Florentin*: The *Fews* expelled *Pera*, Traffique granted to the *Hollanders* out of the *Turks* ill will to *Spain*: 7 *Turkish* Gallies taken by the Viceroy of *Sicily*. The Bassai of *Siden* for favouring the *Florentin*, is pursued by *Achmet*, whereupon he flyeth to *Florence* with 1400 weight of gold. *Nassuff* Bassai is executed for holding intelligence with the *Persian*. *Facaia*, the supposed son of *Mahumet* 3<sup>d</sup>, joyned with the *Asiatick* rebels, hoping thereby to recover his right: *Achmet* besides his *Circassian* Sultaneffe, maintained 400 Concubins, he died the 30 year of his age.

*Achmet* dying, resignes the Government to his brother *Mustapha*, who had been shut up in a Cell to follow his devotions; so being preferred to his brother *Achmet's* sons performs his Funerall Ceremonies, but he was envied for his austerity, and held unfit for so great a burthen as the Government of that Monarchy, therefore after three months is sent back to his old Prison: And *Osman* being now twelve years of age, is made Sultan; a youth of a fervent spirit.

The *Turks* to be revenged on the *Cossacks*, break in upon *Podolia*, where they defeat the Governor of that Countrey with three thousand men. In *Asia* they had a great battel with the *Persians*, which was so bloody to both parties, that though the *Persian* had the better, yet was contented to sue for peace, which was granted upon the payment of an yearly Tribute of silk stuffs to the *Turk*, who now being secure of the *Parthian*, falls upon *Valachia* and *Moldavia*, by the assistance of the *Tartars*, because the *Vayvod* *Gratian*, had conspired with the *Polander* against the *Turks*, therefore *Osman* endeavoured to destroy him; for this cause he sends *Campagius* as his Lieutenant. Two battels are fought, in the first the *Polonian* prevailed, and *Campagius* is killed; In the second the *Turks* have the better, and *Gratian* with his Auxiliaries cut off: Hereupon *Osman* turns the *Poland* Ambassador out of his Court, and denounceth open war against him, who at the same time was like to be murdered by a Villain. In *Moldavia* a battell is fought, wherein the *Turks* defeat the *Polander*: But the next March Prince *Ladislaus* with fifty thousand falls furiously upon the *Barbarians*, and utterly defeats them: *Osman* being highly enraged at this, brings an army of three hundred thousand into *Moldavia*, but against the will of his friends. *Ladislaus* with sixty thousand *Polanders* and *Germans*, defends the borders of his Kingdom, untill his Father *Sigismund* should bring the whole body of the *Polonian* horse: The two armies facing each other, *Osman* assaults the *Polander*, and strives to shut up the *Cossacks*: So great was the slaughter on both sides, that the *Turk* being out of hope to proceed any further, proposeth peace upon equal conditions, which the *Polander* gladly accepted of, all his provisions being spent, so that he had scarce enough left for one day. Of the *Polanders* and *Germans* were slain about 12 thousand, besides many that died of the sickness: Of the *Turks* were killed about one hundred thousand, and as many more that died by other accidents. About two years after *Osman* the Sultan being suspected that he would change the Militia and undertake a tedious pilgrimage to *Mahumet's* Sepulchre, is forsaken by his Janizaries, and his Uncle *Mustapha* restored to the Government, who fearing least he might be deposed again as before, caused *Osman* presently to be strangled; which done, he sends to *Cesar* an Embassador for confirming

*an. Christ* the peace; and assists *Turren* the elder to walle and plunder *Moravia*, but shortly after he is forced by the Janizaries to quit his government, and to give place to *Amurath 4.* *Osman's* brother being 16 years of age; so in the space of 16 months, *Turkie* saw three Sultans, whose large bribes exhausted the treasury: For the Spachi and Janizaries esteeme their Emperors according to their bribes and donatives.

1625

The tumults of *Turkie* fell heave upon the greatest and wealthiest men, whose bagges were emptied and estates plundered. *Arxironius* Bassai to punish the Janizaries insolencies, in offering to put their Lord to death, raised a formidable army in *Asia*, with which he threatned and affrighted the Royall City: The *Persians* laying hold on this opportunity, brake in upon the *Turkish* dominions, seileth on *Babylon*, layeth siege to *Edeffam* of *Mesopotamia*. *Arxiron* besiegeth *Prusia* and *Angeronia*: A great army is sent against the *Parthian*, which by him is much weakened and shaken. The *Tartars* to be revenged on the *Cossacks*, for the wrongs done by them to the *Hungarian Turks* break in upon *Podolia*: Their first expedition succeeded well, but in the second they were drawn into an Ambuscado by the *Polander*, who killed multitudes of them. The Sultan understanding that *Sias Abas* the *Parthian* King, and husband of 800 Concubins was dead, resolves to make a lasting & firm peace with the *Parthians*: therefore caused *Arxironius* to submit, whom he made Governor of *Bosnia* then he lets *Fambelus Girain* at liberty from his prison at *Rhodes*, and having defeated his competitor, makes him again King of *Tartary*. The *French* Ambassador who was imprisoned by *Mustapha* upon the escape of Prince *Coresky* the *Moldavian* out of the Black Tower, was released by *Osman*. About which time the *Turks* take *Manfredonia* in *Sicily*, and *Vas* in *Hungary*, notwithstanding the peace; Prince *Coresky* is apprehended and strangled in prison: After two years of durance, he was a Lord of *Poland*, taken prisoner in the last war. The *Turks* Gallies return from the Black Sea with 170 poor *Cossacks* in triumph: The great *Defterdar* or *Treasurer* of *Turky* is strangled and flung out in his shirt into the streets; for being too rich. The Sultan flatters the *Tarter* to enter *Poland*, but could not prevail: The *Georgians* defeat the *Persians*, and send many of their heads to the Port; wherefore presently a league is made with those *Georgians*: 8000 *Persians* defeated by the *Turks* neare *Mosul*, or *Ninivie*; at the siege of *Babylon* were killed between 5 and 6000 *Turks*: Newes also comes to the Port from *Babylon*, that the *Persians* had besieged the *Viziers* camp now in great distrefs for want of provision, which caused at *Constantinople* great distempers; the Janizaries also mutinie against *Bostangi* Bassai, for beating one of their order by the Sultans command, who could not be appeased by the Sultans intreatie, till the Bassai was displaced. *Tartarian* by the *Turks* instigation invades *Podolia*; but returning thence with much bootie, is defeated, with loss of his army. The *Cossacks* upon this prepare 703 Frigots to fall upon the Sultans armado, which caused great fear in *Constantinople*; but by the mediation of the King of Great Britains Ambassador, who had made a peace between the *Polanders* and *Turks*, the differences were taken off: Another mutiny this year is raised among the Janizaries against the old *Chimacham* *George Mehemed* Bassai, whom the Sultan (who would fain have protected him) was forced to deliver up to their fury; who first strangled him, and then cut off his eares and nose, carrying them about in Triumph; some other great Officers also they execute in spite of the grand Seignior, nor were they yet pacified, for those Janizaries who had no hand in the death of these men, in a tumultuous way flock to the *Seraglio* petitioning with threatnings that the Sultan would do Justice on *Segman* Bassai, Lieutenant to their *Ag*, and others who had bin authors of the last murthers and mutinies;

1626

*an. Christ* mutinies, the Sultan is brought out into his Court, and placed in his Throne, who at last with good words and wholesome advice pacifieth the tumult, *Segman* Bassai's head is cut off before the Court doore, by the Sultan's command, afterward divers Spachi and Janizaries, were strangled and flung into the Sea.

About this time the Prince of *Dacia* to make his credit the greater, procures the Sultan to write a Letter to the King and Princes united for the liberty of *Germany*, that they would persevere in the union, and hold correspondence with *Reichem Gabor*, and the Visier or Governor of *Buda*. The King of Great Britain also sends a Letter to the Great Turk, concerning the Treaty of *Algier* and *Tunis*, complaining also of divers wrongs done to his Subjects, and requiring Justice. To which the Turk by his Letter answers, that there shall be nothing wanting in him towards the maintaining of peace and union between themselves and their Merchants, that satisfaction shall be made for wrongs done, and prevention used for the future: Overtures of peace are made by the Viceroy of *Naples* in the King of *Spaines* name with the Great Turk, and promises to set free all *Turkish* slaves, to secure the Sultan's Subjects in the *Mediterranian* Sea, to serve *Turky* with *East-India* Commodities, by the Red Sea, and to procure the King of *Poland* to restrain the *Cossacks*, from making excursions into the Black Sea; but this negotiation came to nothing, being found fraudulent, and onely to affright *Gabor*, and to divert the *Turks* Forces from aiding the enemies of the house of *Austria*. At *Babylon* the *Turks* fled in the night, burned their Tents, and flung their Artillery in *Euphrates*, the *Persian* pursuing, killed multitudes of them. The next year *Gemon* in *Arabia* revolts from the Turk: A great fleet is sent into the *Euxin* Sea to shut in the *Cossacks*, in the interim six Gallies of the D. of *Tuscany* took a Gallion with some lesser Ships of the *Caire* fleet with rich bootie, which caused 12 Gallies to be recalled from the Black Sea, to pursue the *Tuscans*, which they did; overtook them, and recovered their Ships with the bootie: A *Persian* Ambassador arrives at the Port with overtures of peace, and complaints are made against the *English* for some wrongs done by them to some *Turkish* Ships in the Red and *Persian* Seas, whereupon the King's Ambassadors sent Letters to the *English* for restitution: Mean while the *Persians* besiege *Achisca*, take it, and kill 3000 Janizaries. The newes of the King of *Denmarks* defeat, the *Cesarians* hastned both the Turk and *Gabor*, to make their peace with the Emperor, it was articulated that *Gabor* should be true and faithfull to the Emperor, that he with his Army shall depart out of *Cesar's* Territories, that restitution be made to *Cesar* of places, goods, and persons taken lately by the Prince; and that the Princes Subjects shall do homage to the Emperor. In the peace between *Cesar* and the Sultan, it was agreed that the new Forts built on the confines of *Croatia* should be demolished, that all complaints be laid aside, no wrongs offered, satisfaction for losses made, and captives to be restored, and Merchants to have free trade. *Hakil* Bassai, Generall of the *Turks* Forces in *Asia* is raised from the siege of *Arxirum*, with the loss of his rear Canon and Baggage, and with a mutiny in his Army: This defeat was given by *Abassa* Bassai, the Sultan was much discontented at this report; yet resolves to prosecute the war; therefore sends a new Generall, and causeth new Ordnance to be cast in his own presence, hoping now to bring *Abassa* Bassai the revolted Turk to obedience. Not long after the *Tarta Han* is openly declared a rebell and enemy to the *Turkish* Empire: Sir *Thomas Roe* the *English* Ambassador at the Port is called home, after some contestations between him and the *French* Agent, about the *Jesuits*, which by his procurement, and the other *Romish* Orders in *Turky* were banished the *Turks* Dominions, except two which the *French* Ambassador retained for his own Familie: The *Jesuits* order had been 25 years at *Galata*, they first quarrelling

1628

*An. Christi* 1629 relling with *Cyrillus* Patriarch of *Constantinople*, for maintaining the Doctrine of the *Greek Church*, (which the Pope by his Emissaries out of the *Greek Colledge in Rome*, erected by *Gregory*, endeavoured to subvert) procured the deposition of *Cyril*, and the instalment of another. Then *Cyril* being restored to his place, they got him to be banished and imprisoned, who afterward clearing himself, was re-established; upon this the *French Ambassador*, got the stamp brought from *England*, for Printing of some Bookes of the *Greek Faith*, to be plundered: but this being restored again by the *Vizier*, upon complaint made by the *English*, the *Jesuits* are seized on, and sent away in ships, with all their books and goods.

1629 The new erected *Vizier Huseyn Bassa*, in the place of *Halil Bassa*, passeth over with his Army into *Asia*, where his success was so bad before *Bagdat*, that he lost the third part of his Army; whereupon a new *Vizier, Halis Achmat Bassa*, is made: some contestation fell out this year between the *English* and *Turks*, at Sea, which procured some intercourse of Letters, and Compliments between the *Turk* and King *Charles* of Great Britain; and so the differences were reconciled. The old *Vizier* is displaced, and a Cessation of the War with *Persia* for two years, is published. *Halis Achmat Bassa* is made *Vizier*, to the discontent of the *Fanizaries* who hated him, therefore one day they knockt him down from his Horse with stones; and though the *Sultan* came in person and interceded for him, yet nothing would satisfie but his life; which in the *Sultans* presence, they barbarously took away, by tearing him in pieces. And the next morning they enter the *Seraglio*, and demand the *Muffis*, with some other of their Officers of State, to be delivered up to them, whose lives by the *Sultans* intreaty, were spared, but their places taken away. These tumults were raised by the instigation of *Huseyn Bassa*, who was discontented for being deposed: He was well beloved of the soldiers for his bounty, therefore *Morsefa Bassa* hath secret instructions given him by the *Sultan* to strangle *Huseyn*, and to send his Head privately to the grand Seignour; which was done accordingly, yet not so secretly, but that the knowledge thereof came to the soldiers ears, who presently assemble, and rudely enter the house 30 of the *Vizier Regeb Bassa*, who shewing that he had no hand nor knowledge in the murder, is forced to go with them to the *Sultan*, and to know of him who were the murderers of *Huseyn*: they stay all the while in the outward Yard; he in the Evening returns and assures them, that the *Sultan* would satisfie them the next Morning. Then they gave out that the *Sultan* had murdered his third Brother, but when they were brought forth alive before them, they were for that night quieted. The next morning they assemble again, and demand the *Sultans* Favorite to be delivered to them, which was done; him presently they tore in pieces, because the *Sultans* affection was greatly towards him: then they fall into a new suspicion, that the *Sultan* had caused his three 40 brothers to be murdered, after he had presented them to the soldiers; and upon this they break into his Chamber, expostulating with him for the death of *Huseyn*, and desiring the sight again of his three brothers, whom when they saw, they rejoiced, recommending them to his favour, and the care of his Officers. The next Morning, the *Aga* of the *Fanizaries*, who had hid himself, being found, was delivered by the *Sultan* to them, who tore him in pieces, and hanged up divers of his limbs in several places of the Town. All strangers during this storm, lay close within their own Houses. The Dutch Ambassadors House was assaulted, and so was the French, about some *Turkish* 50 ships taken and made Prizes, but the matter after some debate, is referred to a Trial in Law.

1632 About this time *Elen Bassa* rebelled against the *Sultan*, and spoiled all the Country near *Smyrna*, so that the Consul and Merchants were forced to Transport themselves, and goods to *Scio*. This Rebellion was suppressed

*An. Christi* pressed by an army sent thither from the *Sultan*. *Regeb Bassai* the *Vizier*, who was thought the first actor in these troubles, is strangled in the *Seraglio*, without any mutiny of the Soldiers, because most of them were abroad upon service. The year following was memorable for the fight between two *English* ships in the Bay of *Cassandra*, and 30 *Turks* Gallies.

In this fight the *English* Ships took fire and were burned, divers were killed; the two Masters, *Harris* and *Wilde* with 60 more, endeavouring to get to shore, were taken and put to the Oare. Of the *Turks* were slain 1700. the Captain *Bassai* hurt, and many Gallies made unserviceable. King *Charles* upon the earnest desire of the *English* Ambassadors, wrote to the *Sultan* in behalf of the Captives, and for punishing of the Captain *Bassai*, but to little purpose; the King therefore to pacifie the *Turk*, ordered that no *English* should trade in corn within the *Levant*: Mean while the two Captains died. A great fire this year hapned in *Byzantium*, which consumed some thousands of houses; and the *Persian* war is renewed: The great *Vizier* is sent forth with a part of the Militia, who durst not encounter the *Persians*, but withdrew himself by the way of *Aleppo*, where he shewed his Justice upon a corrupted Judge or Cadee, whom for his wealth and bribery he sent in fetters to be a slave in *Cyprus*; having first cut his haire, then he confiscates his great estate 10 for the *Sultan's* use: A great fear fell upon all the strangers in *Byzantium* this year; for their houses were suddenly sealed up: A *Venetian* Merchant was carried up to the Turret on his house, and there hanged, a red Flag being put out to let the *Sultan* know that execution was done: The 4 Ambassadors of France, England, Venice and Holland, were carried to the Arsenall, and accused for building new houses with Chappels without the *Sultan's* leave; wherefore the *French* Chappel is commanded to be pulled down, which was done the next day: The Merchants are imprisoned, and are forced to pay 2000 dollars apiece for their ranfome: The *English* payment came to 20000 dollars, the 4 Ambassadors are again convented, and desired to deliver up what 30 arms they had in their houses upon pain of death; all other sorts of people were exacted upon, but at last the *Sultan* perceiving his error, and danger he was brought in if this Tyrannicall act should be known abroad, promised to make restitution of other arms, though not of the same that were taken (this not consisting with his honor) and satisfaction for the monys seized on, excusing his fact, as being done of want, urged to raise money for his necessitie. These troubles at last were known to proceed from the *French* Ambassadors debts, which they neglected to pay, though money was raised in *Marselles* to that purpose; this made the Creditors call to the *Sultan* for Justice.

The *Sultan* fearing a new insurrection of the *Janizaries*, caused the *Muffis* 40 who had all this while protected himself under the great *Turk*, from their fury, to be put to death; whereby they were quickly appeased. The *Sultan* prepares a great Army against *Poland*, for some outrages committed by the *Polacks* and *Cossacks*; this great army marched to *Adrianople*, where they staid 40 days, till the messenger returned from *Poland*, whom the *Sultan* sent with certain Articles of peace, which were hearkned to by the *Polander*, and so the Army is disbanded. The *French* Ambassador for some misdemeanors is sent home by the *Sultans* command, with his Declaration that he meant to keep all fair correspondence with the *French* King, and the other Princes, whose Ambassadors lay at *Constantinople*. The Captain *Bassai* is preferred 50 and sent *Bassai* to *Buda*: The *Sultan* resolves with all the strength he could make to weaken the *Persians* greatness, therefore goeth in person with a numerous army; intending also by this to weaken his unruly *Fanizaries*, and to keep them from mutinies by such employments: In this expedition he took *Reivan*, a place of consequence, then marching as far as *Taurik*, rageth with fire and sword without resistance; so having lost divers men with want and sickness,



*An. Christi* sickness, returns with more triumph then conquest. The *Sultan* was no sooner returned, but news came that the *Persian* with a great Army besieged *Reivan*. An Army is dispatched to raise the siege, but before they came, being hindered by their *Byram*, or lent, the Town is taken, and the *Turks* in it put to the sword, or ransom. The *Fanixaries* finding that the *Sultan* was not affected to them, by employing them against the *Persians*, from whom little was to be had, but blows; and that by these means he meant to weaken and wear them out, they resolve soon to depose him, others to put him to death. The *Sultan* perceiving this, flings a sop among them to keep them from biting or barking. He distributes large sums, and so mitigates their anger, and procures his own safety.

## CHAP. XXII.

The Affaires of France under Charls 6<sup>th</sup>, Charls 7<sup>th</sup>, and Lewis 11<sup>th</sup>, from the year 1407, till the year 1483, interwoven with the History of Burgundy, and other bordering places.



1407

WE have shewed how during the indisposition of *Charls* the sixt: The Duke of *Burgundy* caused the Duke of *Orleans* to be murdered, and how he fled into his own Countrey of *Flanders*, where he found an Army ready, which he conducted against the *Ligeois*, because they would not receive the Bishop, who being of a great house, and near in kin to the Duke of *Bavere*, and brother to the Earl of *Hennault* and *Holland*, would not receive any higher order, then of a Sub-deacon, abhorring the title of Priest, upon hopes of attaining some rich possessions, which so troubled the *Ligeois*, that rather then they would admit him, they gave battel to the Duke of *Burgundy*, who killed 17 thousand of their men upon the place, and utterly defeated them. Mean while the Duke of *Orleans* his widow makes her addressees to the King for Justice on the Duke of *Burgundy*, for the murder of her husband the Kings brother: *Burgundy* hearing of this, repaires to *Paris* with a great train of armed men, where he pleaded for the Justice of his act in killing him, who endeavoured to kill the King, and had by witchcraft or poyson brought him into this distemper, purposely that he might attain the Crown; The King though he disliked the murder, yet pardons the murderer because of his greatness, which was so much the more in that the Dolphin had married his daughter; wherefore in a manner he governed both King and Kingdom. The young Duke of *Orleans* fortifies *Burges*, which *Burgundy* attempts to take, but could not, a little while after, a peace is made between them and the *English* who came to aid *Orleans*, are dismissed without their pay: They in anger caried with them the young Count of *Angolesme*, *Orleans* his brother into *England*, where he was kept 32 years. Mean while *France* is full of troubles by reason of the King's weakness, the Duke of *Burgundy*'s greatness, the heavy taxes laid on the people, which the Duke promised to take off, and the *English* Forces in *Normandy*, who had already taken *Caen*, and *Cherbourg*, and were now before *Roban*: *Burgundy* having got one of the gates of *Paris* by the treachery of *John de Villiers*, to be opened to him, enters with a party of horse, and seisseth on the King, the Dolphin escaped, a great massacre is committed, for all those who had not the Saint Andrews Cross (which was the badg of *Burgundy*) were murdered, among which were Count *Armignac Constable*, and *Henry de Marle* Chancellor, who there lost their lives: This taking of *Paris* caused almost all the rest of the Kingdome to side with *Burgundy*. The Dolphin

1409

1412

*An. Christi* Dolphin, finding the troubles of *France* could not end without the death of the *Burgundian*, made means to have a Parley with him, which being granted, the Duke is presently murdered by the Dolphin; whereupon *Philip*, *Burgundie's* son, to be revenged for his Father's death, enters into league with the King of *England*, who at that time had taken *Roban* by Famine, after 7 months siege, and withall delivers up to him *Paris*, *Chartres*, *Troy* in *Champagne*, the King, Queen, and their yong daughter *Katherin*; then he cites the Dolphin to appear at *Paris*, there to be tried for this murder, but he not appearing, nor any for him, is declared unworthy to succeed to the Crown, having treacherously murdered so great a Prince against his Oath, and under pretence of friendship and union; besides he married Prince's *Katherin* by her Father the King's consent to King *Henry* of *England*, and was contented that if King *Charles* die, King *Henry* should succeed to the Crown of *France*, and his sons by *Katherin* after him.

1418

King *Henry* as Regent of *France* takes in some Towns, and leaves his brother the Duke of *Clarence*, to guide the kingdom, till he should return from *England*, whither he was going; the Duke upon this, marcheth out of *Roven*, with an Army, and sits down before *Angiers*, which he could neither induce to fight, nor to yeild. At last setting upon some Troops of *French* and Scots, who held with the Dolphin, is slain in the place by them, and many of his men taken prisoners, the rest fled, and saved themselves by carying the White Crosse, the Colours of *France*, till they came to *Normandy*. King *Henry* upon the news of his brothers death, returns into *France*, where he shortly after died, and King *Charles* followed about fifty three days after. *Katherin* King *Henries* Widow, married with *Owen Tudar*, a Welch Gentleman. In this *Charles* his time, the *French* reduced the *Millanois* that had rebelled, to obedience of the Dutche's his brothers wife: This King gave the Duchy of *Nemours* to the King of *Nevar*. The Dolphin and *John* his Brother died, and *Charles* the youngest succedeth. This mad King reigned thirty two years.

1420

To him succeeded *Charles* 7. at the age of 21. He contained himself sometime within *Berry*; wherefore in mockery, he was called by his adversaries, King of *Berry*: yet he used the Title and Seal of *France*, though not as yet consecrated at *Rhemes*. Whilest he was in his chief troubles with the *English*, a maid eighteen years of age, born in a Village of *Lorraine*, where she used to keep Sheep, came to him, shewing him that she was sent by God to raise the siege of *Orleans*: the King wondring at this, caused her to be examined by his Clergy, who perceiving her constant and resolute, perswade the King to give her Arms, and some Troops of Horse, which was done accordingly; with these she relieves the Town, raiseth the Siege, which had continued seven moneths, and defeats the *English*, after they had taken divers Towns, and in sundry Skirmishes beaten the *French*. About this time the *Burgundian* marieth with *Isabel*, daughter to King *John* of *Portugal*; and King *Charles* of *France* at *Rhemes*, is consecrated, whence he marcheth with his Army to *Paris*: the Duke of *Bedford* did good service for *England*, but lost his life before *Orleans* with a shot from the Town; the Maid also received a wound in relieving the Town. After this, she was taken by the *English* at the siege of *Compend*, which she had relieved; but as she fallied out, fell into the hands of her Enemies, who burned her for a Witch. After this, the *English* are defeated by the Bastard of *Orleans*; but the next year they take *Pontarson*, and the *French* Turnay, the Masculine Prophetess, that was burned by the *English* is honoured by the *Orleanois* with a brass Statue on their Bridge. The *English* to countenance their cause, sends for *Henry* the sixt, son to *Henry* 5. of *Katherin*, and Crowns him at *Paris*, being twelve years old. Mean while King *Charles* takes *Carmutes*, or *Chartres*, by a Stratagem. An Ambussadoc was made

1422

1423

1427

1432

*An.Christi* made in the dark, close by the gate : in the morning a Carter is sent with Fish, who offering to sell them to the Town, got the Porter to open the gate ; in break, they that lay in Ambush, and made way for the rest of the Army, who put all to the Sword that bore Arms, even the Bishop of that place, because a *Burgundian*.

1435

*Charles* being nothing dismayed at the *English* proceedings, goeth on in taking in of Towns, and the rather because he finds Duke *Philip* grow slack in maintaining the *English* cause. *France* in the interim is in a miserable condition. Multitudes fall off from the *English* to the *Burgundian*, whose anger was now pretty well satiated with blood and misery. A Peace therefore is now propounded at *Artebates*, or *Aras*, the *French* Gentry remonstrating that they had no hand in the death of the Dukes Father, and that *France* had now sufficiently smarted for that murder. The Duke was willing to hearken to Peace, but the *English* in regard of their Title to *France*, could not be satisfied ; so their Ambassadors went away without effecting any thing : it was then agreed between the King and Duke, that the King should build a Church in the place where the Dukes Father was killed, should place Cannons in it, to do service, and appoint sufficient maintenance for them. Besides the King bestows on him and his heirs, the Cities of *Mascou*, and *S. Gengon*, with all their privileges and dependances ; The County of *Auxerre* to him and his son *Philip* only, for which they were to swear fealty, and do Homage to the Crown of *France*. Upon the same conditions, he and his son should have the Towns above the River of *Somme*, so low was the *French* King brought, and so Potent a Prince was this Duke, that he was glad upon any terms to disjoin him from the *English*, divers also of these places were in the *English* possession. Upon the report of this agreement, the *Parisians* under-hand, send to the *French* Commanders abroad, that if they would procure their pardon, the City should be delivered up to them ; which being promised, and at the time appointed an Army ready at the Gates, the chief Citizens crying aloud in the streets, *France, France*, all the people presently takes Arms : the *English* being amazed at this, and seeing the *French* Army breaking in all the Gates, presently fly for shelter to the *Bastile*. The streets are chained, all the *English*, and their adherents, that could be found, men, women, and children, were massacred. These in the *Bastile* yielded upon promise of life, and safe conduct to the next Towns held by the *English*. *Burgundy* besiegeth *Calice*, but could doe no good, because of the unruliness of his own soldiers, and some differences that fell out between him and his subjects at *Bruges*, wherefore he brings his Army straight thither. He was let into the Town, and so many as they thought they could master, the rest were excluded : but the soldiers within, breaking open one of their Gates, got out again, and so kept the Town from all provision, that they were forced to beg pardon of the Duke bare headed, and bare footed, and withall to pay him a great sum of money. In the interim, the *French* are now in case to send Forces into *Italy*, for recovering of *Naples*, albeit the *English* as yet were not quite driven out of *France*.

About this time *Lewis* 3<sup>d</sup>, whom Queen *Fane* of *Naples* adopted, died, and *Fane* her self the year after. *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, is advised by his friends to go for *Naples*, but they who stood for *Anjou*, counsel the Duke of *Bar*, Brother to the said *Lewis*, is wished to hasten thither, upon hopes he might prevail before the rest, because Queen *Fane* had named his Brother heir to the Crown. But he was prisoner to the *Burgundian*, who had raised his ransom to a greater sum then was at first demanded, because now he was Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Province*, by the death of his Brother *Lewis*. Therefore that he might take the speedier order for his ransom, is set at liberty upon his Parol, which he was careful to perform. But his wife *Isabel*, a Princess

of

of great courage, goeth into *Provence* with her two sons, raiseth men, and provideth Vessels for her Transportation to *Naples*, from whence *Alphonfus* was repulsed by the contrary Faction to the Isle of *Ischia*. But recruiting himself with more supplies, he besiegeth *Cajet* both by Sea and Land. The *Genuois* who had great store of wealth in that Town, and who stood for *Anjou*, desire help from *Philip* Duke of *Millan*, under whose protection they were. *Philip* sends help by Land, the *Genuois* by Sea : *Alphonfus* raiseth all the strength he can in *Spain*, *Sicily*, and *Naples*, to wit, nineteen great ships, three Gallies, and one Gallion : the *Genuois* were scarce half so many, either in number, or greatness of Vessels : the fight was sharp, and doubtful at first, but at length, some of the *Genua* ships getting the wind of the Enemy, fell so furiously upon the *Arragon* Admiral, where the King and his Brother, the King of *Navarre* were, with six hundred soldiers, that both the Kings were forced to yeild. So the siege upon the report of this defeat, is raised from *Naples* : the two Kings and three hundred *Donns*, are led away prisoners to *Millan*, where they are most magnificently received, entertained, and dismissed with rich Presents by the Duke, to whom King *Alphonfus* sheweth reasons why *Millan* should rather hold with *Arragon* then *Anjou*, because at last *France* will become Masters of *Millan*, whose dispositions doe not sort so well with the *Millanois*, as those of *Arragon* do, as was observed by *Fohn Galeas* the last Duke of *Millan*.

Mean while *Isabel* Dutcheff of *Anjou*, arrives at *Cajet*, and from thence at *Naples*, where she assembles all the chief of her Faction, but *Burgundy* would not release Duke *Rene* her Husband, till he had delivered up *Cassel* for his Ransom. At which the *Genuois* stormed, who were in good hope the two Captive Kings should have paid the Dukes Ransom, therefore were mad, that they should obtain a victory to their great cost and pains, and Duke *Philip* should have the honour of it ; of whom they complain for dismissing the prisoners without Ransom, and for using the *Genuois* (hitherto a free people, and who had made the remote Princes, and Kings of the East afraid of them) as slaves. Hereupon they revolt, and assume their former liberty ; then with their Gallies they accompany Duke *Rene* to *Naples*, where they made him to be Crowned presently. Which Act was approved and ratified by Pope *Eugenius*, for which cause he was hated by the Duke of *Millan*, and *Alphonfus* King of *Arragon*, who besiegeth *Naples* again, and in it Duke *Rene* of *Anjou*, but the City was so stoutly defended, that *Arragon* was fain to raise the siege, having lost his brother by a Canon Bullet from the walls. But before the siege was quite raised, a Runegado out of the City shews *Alphonfus* a passage through a common shoar or kennel ; by this the *Arragonians* enter the City, *Anjou* flies to the Castle, where having little hopes, makes his Composition with *Alphonfus*, and so returns by *Florence*, where he saluted the Pope into *France*. There he finds his brother Prince *Charles* in so great favour with the King, that the whole Kingdom was ruled by his Council, which offended divers great men, who advised the young *Dolphin* to take Arms against his Father ; but this plot was quickly quashed, the Counsellors punished, and the *Dolphin* pardoned, who not long after caused the *English* to raise their siege from *Deep*. The Duke of *Burgundy* to take away all occasion of future broils in *France*, resolves to reconcile himself to the Duke of *Orleans*, now a prisoner in *England* twenty five years ; for this cause he employs his wife, the daughter of *Portugal*, who made means by her Ambassadors, to have a parley with the King of *England*, on the borders of *Flanders*. An overture was made of Peace, but could not take effect : At length she obtains so much favour as to see the Duke of *Orleans* who was presently sent for to *Calice*. There she wrought upon him to forget all by-past injuries, and to marry with *Mary* daughter to the Duke of *Cleve*, and one of *Burgundies* sisters : by which means

1440

M m m

means

*An. Christi* means Orleans recovered four hundred thousand Crowns to pay for his Ransom and a perpetual friendship is procured between these two families.

About this time *Rene*, or *Renatus* of *Anjou*, returns from *Italy*, whose daughter *Margaret* is married to the King of *England*, and a three years Peace concluded between the two Nations. The County of *Main* is restored again by the *English* to the *French*, and some other places: during which Truce, supplies are sent to the D. of *Millan* against the *Venetians*, and the County of *Ast* is first promised, then rendered by the Duke to his sisters son the Duke of *Orleans*: and the same day Duke *Philip* of *Millan* died, of sickness and grief; the Duke of *Orleans* claimed the next succession to *Millan*, by his defunct Uncle, Duke *Philip*. The *Millanois* aimed at their liberty; *Regnauld* the French Commander there, before supplies could be sent him from *France*, besiegeth *Boslo*, but being beaten by the *Millanois*, was forced to rise and retreat to *Ast*, with loss and disgrace: but *Francis Sforza*, who had married *Blanch*, Duke *Philip* of *Millans* daughter, and received with her the City and Principality of *Cremona*, who defeated the *Venetians*, enemies to *Millan*, doth now fall off from *Millan* to the *Venetians*, and taking opportunity by the divers Factions of the Citizens, besiegeth the City, which for want of victuals yeildeth, and receiveth *Sforza* for their Duke, before *France* could send any Forces thither, for their Truce with *England* was now broke by the *English*, who took *Tongres*. Upon this the French took divers places from the *English*, and *Rouen* among the rest, with the Duke of *Sommerfet* in it, who to have his liberty was forced to deliver up five French Towns, which were in his possession, and upon the surrender of *Salaise* to the French, *Talbot* is delivered out of prison. A Battel is fought between *Bayeux* and *Carenton*, in which the French beat the *English*, and by degrees got all *Normandy* again from them. Then the French King marcheth with his Forces into *Guien*, where he layeth siege to four Towns at one time. Mean while *Burdeaux* sends to capitulate with the King, and is surrendered on their own conditions, which occasioned the other Towns to surrender also. And so all *Guienne* returns again to the French, except *Bayonne*, which at last upon the sight of a white Cross in the Clouds, or a Meteor like a white Cross, which is the Arms of *France*, as the red is of *England*, they deliver up themselves to the French, preferring the white Crosse to the red.

Not long after, *Bordeaux* falls off again from the French, and sends to *Talbot*, who coming with five thousand Foot to the gates, was let in. Upon this report the King sends Prince *John*, the Duke of *Burbons* son, with an Army: A battel is fought, in which both *Talbot* and his son, lost their lives, and *Burdeaux* withall, which the King by building two Castles, did so bridle, that they could not afterward revolt to the *English*, who were all dismissed by the King, and suffered quietly to return home, having lost all their holds in *France*, except *Calice*, and some places thereabouts. Presently after this, the *Dolphin* upon some discontent, takes leave of his Father for four months, but intending to return no more again to the Court, whilst his Father was alive, because he more hearkned to his Favorites, then to him.

About this time the *Cantois* rebelled against their Duke, because he exacted of them a new Gabel of Salt, and incroached on their liberties; therefore they cruelly kill their Governour, but they were defeated by the Duke in a battel, having lost twenty thousand of their men, and were at last content to pay a great sum of money, and to accept what Laws the Duke would impose on them. In *France*, the King was forced notwithstanding the wars were ended, to maintain in Garisons five thousand Foot, and fifteen hundred Horse, to suppress the rambling soldiers, who went to and fro plundering the Country people. At this time King *Alphonfus* made war in *Tuscany*, upon the *Florentins*, for their aid; the King raiseth two thousand Horse, intending that if *Alphonfus* were worsted, to march to *Naples* for the claiming a title to that king-

Kingdome: the Duke of *Savoy* at first denied him passage through his country, because he was in League with *Alphonfus* and *Venice*, against *Millan*, and the *Florentins*; but the *Dolphin*, his son in law, wrought so upon him, that at last he yeildeth a passage. But this Expedition came at length to nothing; For upon the sad news of the loss of *Constantinople*, the *Italian* Princes made Peace among themselves. *John* Duke of *Alanson* is declared by the King guilty of High Treason, for soliciting the *English* to return into *France*, but afterward is pardoned: The *Dolphin* was now in stead of four months, absent four years from the Court, carying himself like a King in his own Country, by making Laws, and receiving Ambassadors; the King sends an Army with command to bring him to the Court; the young Prince fearing the worst, flies to the Duke of *Burgundy*, who excuses himself to the King that being his Vassall, he could not refuse to entertain his sonne. *Peter* *Fregose* Duke of *Genua*, being crossed by the contrary Faction, and fearing the greatnesse of *Alphonfus*, King of *Arragon*, conveys himself and his estate into *France*. Mean while *Alphonfus* dieth, and leaves his Father's Kingdome to his Brother *John*, but *Naples* to his Bastard son *Ferdinand*; but Pope *Calixtus* would not yeild that a Bastard should be King of *Naples*. *Ferdinand* alledgeth that Pope *Eugenius* on this condition crowned *Alphonfus*, that *Ferdinand* might succeed him, which was confirmed by Pope *Nicolaus*.

Pope *Pius* who succeeded *Calixtus*, to avoid further trouble, fearing lest *Sforza* and *Ferdinand*, who were very intimate, should joyn their Forces, and raise a new War in *Italy*, Crowns *Ferdinand* King of *Naples*, conditionally that this should not prejudice those that could shew Title to that Crown.

Upon the report of this Coronation, *John* son to *Rene* of *Anjou*, procures a great Fleet from *Genua* and *Province*, to make War against *Ferdinand* at *Naples*, complaining against the Pope for Crowning his Enemy. Not long after *John* obtains a great Victory upon *Ferdinand*, so that he was like to conquer *Naples*, had he not delayed too long till *Ferdinand* had recruited himself. In the Interim the *Genuois* revolt from Duke *John*, and the French, who had nothing now left them but the Castle with *Savonne*. Upon this King *Rene* marcheth with a French Army against *Genua*, but being defeated, and two thousand of his men cut in pieces, was faine to retire to *Savonne*.

Upon report that the Turk had taken *Trapezund*, that great and rich City in *Pontus*, the people sends to the Christian Princes for aid against the Turk, bewailing the miserable condition of Christendome. The *Dolphin* being in the *Burgundians* Countrey, resolves to goe against the Turks: His Father sends first to have him come and speak with him; which hee refused to doe, wherefore the King sends to the Pope, to know which way he might disinherit this disobedient son; the Pope commends the *Dolphins* real, and reproves the King; he also animates the French to stand by the *Dolphin* in this his noble intentions, shewing to them the valour and devotion of their Predecessors, in subduing these barbarous Infidels: the Duke of *Burgundy* also protests to make a Voyage himself, or to send an Army against the Turks. The *Dolphin* had then a son born to him, whom hee called Duke of *Normandy*: The King mistrusting he had been poisoned, refused to touch any Victuals; At last being importuned to eat by his friends, tried, but could not swallow, the passages were so narrow, and clung so together. And in this case hee died, thanking God that hee would take him away out of this wretched life, on that day which was kept in memory of *Mary Magdalen*, that great sinner, desiring a share in her Repentance, as hee had in her Sinnes. Hee Reigned thirty and eight M m m 2 years.

*An. Christi* years: This was he that confirmed the Pragmatical Sanction, by which the Popes power was much weakned in France. In his time the Parliament of *Tholose* was erected for *Languedoc*, and another was set up at *Grenoble* in *Dol-phiny*.

To *Charles* succeeded his son *Lewis II.* who had been a long time out of France; he changeth all the Governours and Officers of the kingdom, and is made Umpire of a difference between the King of *Castile*, and *Bland*, daughter and heir to the King of *Navarre*, and wife to the King of *Arragon*. To obtain the Popes favour, he renounceth the Pragmatical Sanction, and labours to make the Duke of *Millan* his Vassal; he demands of the Duke of *Britany*, that he forbear the title of [By the Grace of God Duke of Britany] and that his subjects acknowledge the French King for their Sovereign and Lord. War also is threatned, if the Duke should refuse: he being astonish'd at this, desires of the King some time to assemble and consult with the States of his Dutchy, about such weighty matters. Mean while he sends his Agents disguised in divers habits, to the King of *England*, and other Foreign Princes; he makes also a strait alliance with *Charles* Count of *Charolois*, Duke *Philips* son of *Burgundy*, to whom the King sends Ambassadors, accusing his son for allying himself with the Duke of *Britany*, a great friend to *England*; and withall they cast divers foul aspersions upon him: the Duke suffered not his son to speak, fearing his rashness, but spoke himself, excusing his sons actions, and accusing the Kings breach of promises. The next day the Count spoke for himself; that though he had entertained amity with the Duke of *Britany*, yet it was not to prejudice France, but to advance the publick good. But shortly after it appeared, that the Princes were much discontented, among the rest *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, the Kings brother, who had all conspired to restore the Gentry and Clergy of France, and generally the whole people, now groaning under heavy pressures, to their ancient privileges and freedom. For this cause the Count of *Charolois* enters *Piccardy*, with an Army, as Lieutenant General to the Duke of *Berry*; he marcheth towards *Paris*, and by Boats on the River *Seine*, seizeth upon the Bridge of *Saint Cleve*. The Duke of *Burbon* chaseth away all the Kings Officers out of that Country, and seizeth on the Mony, that was raising for the Kings who was nothing dejected at all this, but raiseth what Forces he can, and encounters with Count *Charles* at *Mont l' Hery*, where a sharp Skirmish is fought, to the loss of above two thousand; the Count was wounded in the stomach and throat: it was given out that the King was slain, upon which the Count *d' Main* fled, but that report was false; for when the King uncovered his Head, and shewed himself, his soldiers took courage again, and fought stoutly.

After the Battail was fought at *Mont l' Hery*, the King returns to *Corbeil*, and from thence to *Paris*, where he ingratiates himself by fair words and promises, with the Citizens; for so *Sforza* Duke of *Millan*, who had sent him some Auxiliaries of Horse and Foot advised him. By his affability he got the good will of the *Parisians*, and then he goeth into *Normandy* to raise strength there also. Mean time the Dukes, Counts, and Barons, had sat down in three several places before *Paris*, whether they sent some Heraults to desire them to send some of their wisest men, to know the reasons why this Army sat down there; and withall to deliberate about a way of Accommodation. The City having met, and advised upon this, sends the Bishop of *Paris*, with some other prime men; to whom the united Princes shew, that the Kings insolent Government, his changing of the Laws and Customs, his despising of the Nobility, and oppressing of the people, moved them to take Arms, that things might be righted, which would be done the sooner, if *Paris* the chief City, would by joyning with them, shew good example to others.

*An. Christi* others. Hereupon the *Parisians* thought it fit the City Gates should be opened to the Princes, conditionally that their soldiers would doe no wrong, but pay for what they take; and that the Kings consent may be required in this matter. The King being advertised of this, extremely was enraged, and repairs to *Paris* with some Foot Forces, where he reproves the City in general, and particularly the Bishop, for offering to entertain a Parley with his Enemies: For this cause the King hated him ever after, and caused his Epitaph over his Tomb to be taken down. The Princes failing of their intentions, and of the Cities assistance, resolve to give the King Battel, which he altogether declined, not willing to hazard all upon an uncertain Battel, as *Sforza* advised him; but he mans, and fortifies all the Gates, Walls, and Towns of the City; great hurt was done at *Charenton*, by the Ordnance; some Sallies and Skirmishes were permitted by the King, and Fortifications are raised on both sides. *Charolois* makes a Bridge of Boats, for Transporting his Army, which presently after seizeth on some of the Suburbs, and drives away the Kings men from thence. Then a Truce for two days is agreed on; the King sends his Chancellor to know the Duke of *Berries* minde, whom nothing will content but the Dutchy of *Normandy*; then the King desires a Parley with *Charolois*, whom he flatters, and makes believe, that he was sorry his Chancellor, whom he sent to his Father, had used any distastfull words, having no such Commission. By this he gained more of *Charolois*, then he could doe by force. The Truce is from day to day renewed; so that now there is intercourse between the City, and the Camp, and revolting on both sides, chiefly from the King, whose pretences were not so specious, as those of the Princes, which aimed at the publick good; therefore the King gives order to shoot all such as should either come from, or go to the City without leave. A false report was brought to the Princes, that the next morning the King meant to give them battel, which presently alarmed them, so that all night they stood in battell Aray, for fear of surprisal; but this was only a false fire. It was also given out in *Normandy*, that the King and Princes had made a Peace; and that *Berry* the Kings brother, should be Duke of *Normandy*, which gladed the *Normans* hearts, who longed to have a Duke. Mean while the Duke of *Burbon* enters *Rohan*, and takes it in the name of the Duke of *Berry*. Upon this, the King desires another Parley with Count *Charolois*, vvhherein he offers *Normandy* to the Duke of *Berry*, satisfaction to the other Princes; the payment of his sisters marriage portion to the Duke of *Burbon*, and assistance to the Duke of *Lorraine*, for recovering of *Naples*; so a peace is agreed upon, which the Princes vvvillingly accept, because of Winter drawing on. *Sforza's* Forces understanding that the Peace was concluded, returns home, having done much hurt in *Burbons* Country: thus the begun War ended, but not the private grudges.

The Duke of *Brittain* grew angry at this peace, by vvhich *Charolois* obtained all the chief Towns on the River of *Some*, and the Kings brother, *Normandy* for *Berry*; vvhwhereas he who had been at more charges in this War, then any other, except *Charolois*, had nothing advanced himself, either in his estate or honour; therefore he with divers Lords, begin to look on the new Duke of *Normandy*, as a rising Sun, and to expect advancement by his means. The King who was cunning to sow the seeds of discord among the Princes, caused a report to fly abroad, that whilst the Duke of *Normandy* was lodged upon *S. Katherins* Hill neer *Rohan*, till the City was fitted for his reception in State; the Britains meant to cary him away into their Countrey, whereupon the *Rohaners* before the day appointed for solemnity, brings in the Duke without any state at all,

An. Christ

all, save onely that the Clergy waited on him with the Crofs. *Britany* fearing that this people would be moved against him, returns home, taking some towns of *Normandy* by the way, which he fortified with Garisons: Mean while the King comes with an Army against his brother in *Rohan*; whonow being forsaken by *Brittany*, and *Charolois* employed in a war against the *Liegeois*, was forced to submit, and part with both his Dutchies of *Berry* and *Normandy*, and to retire again into *Brittany*, where he had his first assistance in this late war.

The Government of *Brittany* is restored to *Burbon* for his good service in recovering *Normandy* to the King: *Lorrain* having received men and money from the King towards the recovering of *Naples*, did wave that enterprise, in regard his father and other friends, had so bad success in it heretofore; he intends therefore to recover the right his ancestors pretended to the Kingdome of *Aragon*, having crossed the *Pyrenians*, he began to prosper well in *Spain*, till the Plague seized on his Camp, of which disease he died: The King presently upon this calls back his Army, and imployes it against the Duke of *Brittany*, whilst *Charolois* is hindered by the *Liegeois* war; for upon the death of his father Duke *Philip* of *Burgundy*, who held the *Liegeois* in great awe, imposed a tribute on them, and took divers places from them, for refusing to obey their young Bishop *Lewis* of *Burbon*, the Duke of *Burgundies* Nephew, whom the Pope had confirmed in that rich Bishoprick upon the intreaty of his Uncle, and promise he made to raise an army against the *Turk*; w<sup>ch</sup> young Bishop could not in a long time be induced to take on him the Order of Priesthood: I say, Duke *Philip* being dead, the *Liegeois* began to reassume their liberty; therefore they turn the *Burgundian* Garisons out of their Towns, which so exasperated *Charls*, that he enters their Countrey with fire and sword, defeats them in a battell, takes *Leige*, and dismantles it, and imposeth on them heavier burthens and taxes then ever his Father did.

In this mean time King *Lewis* forceth his brother *Charls* and the Duke of *Brittany* to make their peace with him, promising his brother an yearly pension of 35 thousand crowns, conditionally he quit his claim to the Dutchie of *Normandy*; at which time the Duke of *Burgundy*, having quieted *Liegeois*, and *Gantois*, prepares to assist his antient friends, *Berry* and *Britanny*. As he was on his march, newes came that they two were reconciled to the King, which he did not at first believe, supposing this newes had been given out by the King, to hinder his march; but at last by Legats from the King and these two Princes, he was assured of their reconciliation: The King desires *Burgundy* to meet him at *Peronne*, for finishing this last peace with all the Princes: They met accordingly, and as they were in treaty about the peace; newes came that the *Liegeois* had again taken arms: Most of the banished men being returned half starved, and like savages in their overgrown haire: They first take *Tongres* an antient City, where *Lewis* of *Burbon* their Bishop, was with the Pope's Legat, who so asswaged the furie of the Soldiers, that little blood was shed. When Duke *Charls* understood that this rebellion was raised by the French King's Ambassadors; in a rage he accuseth the King of his treachery and hypocrisie, and causeth the Gates of *Peronne* to be shut, and kept with a strict Guard, that none might goe out or in, pretending that a Budget with Letters of consequence was lost: So the King was kept prisoner two days in great doubt, what would become of him; for he had both in his minde and eie, the Tower close by him, where *Charls* the simple King of *France* was faine to renounce his right to the Crown. The Duke sat in Counsell two days to know what should

An. Christ

should be done to the King: Some thought it fitting that he should declare himself an enemy to the *Liegeois*, and assist the Duke with an Army, others would not have him to be released at all, fearing he would revenge this wrong; a third sort would have his brother sent for, to have a confirmation of the Conditions in the peace of *Conflans*: The Duke was content to let the King goe free, if he would send his Ambassadors to *Leige* for a peace; which the King swore to do, and promised also to give the Counties of *Erie* and *Champaigne* to his brother, which pleased the Duke well, because these Counties joyning to his, would make him the stronger, to resist future quarrels with the French King.

The King accompanies the Duke to the siege of *Leige*: The Citizens at first made some sallies on the besiegers; but perceiving their present dangers, and strength of the enemies, send their young Bishop to his Cousin, to mediate for them, with condition he should return if he could not prevail; but the Duke was so incensed, that neither would he hearken to any pardon, nor would permit the Bishop to return, though he was tied by his Oath: Then the Pope's Legat intercedeth, desiring the Duke to remember the Pope's goodness, who upon the earnest request of his father, conferred this Bishoprick on young *Burbon*; that therefore he would be pleased to bestow this City upon the Pope, and spare their lives: But this the Duke refused, accusing the Legat for pretending to the Bishoprick of *Leige*: So at length the City is taken, plundered, and burned, and all the inhabitants that could be found, cut in pieces: Immediately after this, the King returns into his Kingdome, and deals so cunningly with his brother, by such as had an interest in him, that he got him to refuse *Erie* and *Champaigne* bordering upon *Burgundy*, and in lieu thereof, to accept of *Guienne* farther off. Not long after this, a son is born to King *Lewis*, *Charls* by name: The King willing to pick a quarrell with *Burgundy*, got some discontented persons to Petition him against the Duke's injustice and oppressions, shewing also that he had incroached upon the King's Territories, and broken the peace: The King upon this, calls a Counsell, where it is declared that the Duke had violated the peace; wherefore he is summoned to appear, which he took so hainously that he imprisoned the Messenger, but afterward sent him home: In the interim *Amiens* and Saint *Quintins* return to the Kings obedience: Who shortly after began openly to force other places. Here upon the Duke sends to his friends and allies for aid: The Duke of *Guienne* sends him Letters privately, that he would send him supplies, the King perceiving how earnest *Burgundy* was to recover *Amiens*, and S. *Quintins*, sends to him, that he should have them again if so be he would renounce alliance with the Dukes of *Brittany* and *Guienne*, and not assist them so long as he had wars with them: To this the Duke condescended. The King in the interim sends under-hand to the Governours of these two places, to keep off the Duke with fair words, and not to surrender the Towns: *Burgundy* understanding that the King meant to cheat him, and that he had already begun to make war upon the Duke of *Guienne*, enters *France* with his Army, and first besiegeth *Beauvais*, but could not take it; therefore he marcheth towards *Normandy*, to joyn his Forces with *Brittany* against *Rohan*; but on the way newes came that the Duke of *Guienne* was dead: And the Duke of *Brittany* would not now joyn with *Burgundy*. Seeing now *Guienne* was fallen to the King by the death of his brother, the Duke of *Burgundy* was so mad with the King, that he gave out the King had poysoned his brother by some of his servants; and surely the hatred he had towards him, might cause suspicion.

The Constable was the Duke's great enemy, and he was suspected to blow



An. Christi  
1616

blow the coles for this flame, and to be the chief fomentor of this war; for he entering into *Burgundy*, caused all places to be set on fire, whether he came: At a meeting he gave the lye to the Duke's Ambassadors; which procured him much hatred. The King and Duke being both willing to be rid of him, conspire his death; but he was so potent and cunning, that he would trust neither of them, but stood on his own guard; therefore he turns the Kings Garison out of Saint *Quintins*, and puts in a Garison of his own. When the King sent to speak with him, he refused to come without his Guard, and assurance of safety; therefore a bridge was set up over a river, and a bar like a lattice in the middle, that they might have the sight and speech of each other; at last the bar was broken down, and they after privat conference departed good friends. About this time *Purpignan* one of the French Towns revolts to the *Arragonian*; but it was surrendred again upon certain conditions. *Peter* of *Burbon*, Governor of *Guienne*, is taken prisoner by Count *de Armignack*, who not long after is put to death for incest with his sister, and they were hanged who betrayed *Burbon*.

The Duke of *Nemours* is condemned for Treason, and beheaded. *Anne* the King's eldest daughter, is married to *Burbon*, and *Jeane* the younger, who was crooked and deformed, to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, afterward *Lewis* 12. About this time the Order of Saint *Michael* was instituted by King *Lewis* 11 which he sent to the Duke of *Brittany*, but he refused it, fearing to offend the King of *England*, and Duke of *Burgundy*, his true friends: This the King took ill, that a Duke should scorn to be his brother in that Order: This Duke of *Burgundy* helped to establish King *Edward* of *England* in his Throne, to make himself by this the stronger against King *Lewis*. The Duke of *Gelders*, at this time is imprisoned by his own son, but set at liberty again by *Charls* of *Burgundy*, wherefore *Gelders* disinherits his son, and makes *Burgundy* his heir: Who having obtained this rich Dutchie, sends a summe of money to *Sigismund* Duke of *Austria*, the Emperors brother, who mortgaged the Countie of *Ferrette* for this money: Then he endeavours to obtain all the land lying between the Dutchie and Countie; for this cause proposeth the marriage of his daughter to *Maximilian* the Emperors son, and labours what he could to be Lieutenant of the Empire; but the Emperor perceiving his ambition and covetousness forsook him, at the meeting in *Trevers* without bidding him farewell: Yet the Duke prosecutes his designe.

There was then great contestation about the Bishoprick of *Colen*; he strives to put in *Roberts* his kisman, who had been driven out by his adversaries: This was not well reſented by the Emperor, that a stranger should meddle with the affairs of *Germany*. Then having called a Diet, he sends aid to *Nuz*, at that time besieged by *Burgundy*: In the interim King *Lewis* by his Ambassadors reconciles *Austria* and the *Switzers*, to *Sigismund* by their help recovers his Countie of *Ferrette* without paying the summe borrowed. At the same time also *Rhenatus*, or *Rhene*, grandchild to *Rhence*, King of *Sicily* had obtained by right of succession the Dutchie of *Lorrain*: He by the French King's instigation, declares war against *Burgundy*, and pillaged a party of *Luxemburg* which belonged to him. The *Burgundian* is now full of troubles, for the French King takes divers of his Towns: Mean while the Constable of France lost his wife, the King's sister, by which he began to be more in danger of the King then before, who for his sisters sake winked at many things. Wherefore to procure the Duke of *Burgundies* favour, he desires the Duke to send him some Forces, to put within Saint *Quintins*, which he promi-

1622

seth to deliver up to him; but he could not be so good as his word, though Forces were sent.

The King invites the Constable to make war upon *Hennaults*, which he refused to do, because he knew King *Lewis* meant to take away his life; the King upon this desires to speak with him; he returns answer, that if the King would swear upon the Cross of Saint *Lau*, which is in the Church of *Angers*, to do him no harm by himself or any other, he would come. Now the Tradition was, that whosoever swore on that Cross, and perjured himself, should die within a year after; the King would upon no terms swear, which increased the Constables jealousy. Mean while the King of *England* comes with an Army to *Callis* upon *Burgundies* invitation, who had now laid siege to *Nuz* a whole year, but at last he riseth upon the persuasions of the King of *England*, and the Popes Legat, who procured that during the difference concerning the Bishoprick of *Colen*, *Nuz* should remain depositat in the Popes hands, then *Burgundy* sends his Army to quarter in *Lorrain*, purposely to vex Duke *Rene*. *Burgundy* is invited again by the Constable to seize on Saint *Quintin*; some English to this purpose are sent before, who being beaten off from the Town with great Ordnance, disheartned King *Edward* from any further attempt. In the interim whilst *Burgundy* was gone to *Lorrain* for his Army, to joyn with the English: a peace is propounded between *France* and *England*, which so much disquieted the Duke of *Burgundy*, that he sends Letters to the King of *England* full of gall, accusing his ingratitude towards him, who of a poor banished man had made him King: The French King mean while Courts the Constable with smooth Letters: One time the Constable sent a messenger to the King, who being called into the Kings Chamber, where some of *Burgundies* chief servants were hid behind the Hangings, told the King openly that the Constable had wrought so with King *Edward*, and Duke *Charls*, that they were quite parted, and that ill language had been given by the Duke to the King: At last the peace between the two Kingdoms is confirmed, in which *Burgundy* is also included. After King *Edward* was gone home, King *Lewis* and Duke *Charls* plot together to be revenged on the Constable for abusing them both. He remonstrates to the French King how carefull and faithfull he had always been to preserve the Kings Towns: The King seemingly acknowledgeth it, and commends the Constable, telling his messenger that in his Counsels he wanted the Constables head-piece; which the King meant otherwise then the Messenger understood it: For the King meant to have his head. Therefore it is agreed between the King and Duke, that the French should have his body, and the *Burgundians* his goods and Saint *Quintin*. So that the poor Constable is now forsaken by all his friends, and knows not whether to goe, nor what to doe.

At last after long deliberation, he resolves to cast himself upon the Duke of *Burgundy*, as being easier to be appeased then the King, therefore retires himself into *Hennaults* to those that commanded there under the Duke, who was then before *Nancy*, hoping to take it, and to be Master of all that Dutchie: Thither came some Messengers from the King, demanding according to agreements, the Constable; the Duke who also understood that the King had now an Army upon the borders of *Campaigne*, was in doubt what to do: To deliver the Constable was Treachery, to retain him, dangerous, and a means to loose his hopes of *Nancy*, therefore sends order, that on such a day the Constable should be delivered to the French, hoping before that time, *Nancy* would be taken, and then he would recall his Warrant; but the day being come,

N n n

the

An. Christi

1483

*An. Christi* the Constable is delivered up, and carried away; and within three houres after, Newes came that Nancy was taken: The Constable who had delivered up Saint. *Quimin*, and other places to the *Burgundian*, is beheaded at *Paris*; But after this, the Dukes affaires never prospered.

*Sigismund* Duke of *Austria*, had by the help of the *Switzers* taken *Kereth* from Duke *Charles*: Wherefore he denounceth Warre against them. They humbly desire peace, and promise all faithfull service to the Duke, if he will entertain them; They assisted *Sigismund*, onely to recover his Right; they shew also the poverty of their Country, not worthie to be Conquered; But he goeth on in his resolutions, and would not be dissuaded from this Warre; he raiseth a formidable Army, hoping not onely to subjugate the *Switzers*, but also to make himself great in *Italy*, because *Frederick*, Prince of *Tarentum*, son to *Ferdinand*, King of *Naples*, was come to marry his daughter; besides old *Rene* of *Anjou*, King of *Sicily*, had promised to quit his right in *Sicily* to Duke *Charles*, and would also put into his hands the Countie of *Provence*, having now no sonnes of his owne. The Duke of *Millan* fearing the *Burgundian* greatness, sends to confirm his League with *France*.

The King of *Portugal* nearly allied to Duke *Charles*, comes to *France* to procure a generall peace. The old King of *Sicily* also comes to see his Nephew King *Lewis*. Mean while the Duke of *Burgundy* takes *Lausanne* from the *Switzers*; and shortly after *Orançon*, where he hanged five hundred and twelve *Switzers*, which so enraged the rest of that Nation; that they raised a great Army, fought and defeated the Duke, took all his Baggage and ammunition, regained *Orançon*, unchanged and buried their Country men, and hanged as many *Burgundians* as they found in the Towne.

The Duke having recollected his dispersed Forces, and raised new, sends to *Flanders* for a supply of money, which was promised if the Dukes person or Dominions were in danger, but not on a Warre so remote and needles: Notwithstanding he returns with a new Army, and besiegeth *Moras*, *Rene* Duke of *Lorraine* then in *France*, is made Generall of the *Switzers*, against Duke *Charles* their Common Enemy, having obtained money and men from King *Lewis*; because he was to pass through the *Burgundian* Territories to the *Switzers*. A second battel is fought, and a second overthrow given to the Duke, 21 days after the first. The Dukes high spirit could not be broken with this misfortune, but swelled bigger, raging to be twice beaten by a young unskilfull Prince, and a base beggarly people as he called them; whereas he had beaten so great Potentates heretofore, resolves to have the third encounter with them. In the interim, by the *Switzers* help, *Lorraine* is restored again to his own Country with great joy: Duke *Charles* could not be dissuaded by the King of *Portugal*, nor his other Friends, from fighting again with the *Switzers*, nor beleieve that King *Lewis* had all this while contrary to the peace aided *Lorraine* with men and money, obstinately goeth again, with a fresh Army, and besiegeth *Nancy* in the dead of Winter, where he lost both his Army and life.

The newes of vvvhich vvvas so vvelcome to the French King, that he gave the Messenger one hundred and fifty Marks of Silver, after his death, the Prince of *Orange* beeing of great Power and wealthie, puts into the Kings hand, both the Dutchie and Countie of *Burgundy*, for the flower of the Nobility was killed in the last three Battels:

So

so little resistance could be feared: The King comes with an Army into *Piccardie*, and regains his Towns there, which the Duke had kept from him.

Mean while *Mary* the Duke's heir and onely daughter, sends Ambassadors to the King, desiring him to remove his Army from her borders, and shewing that by the *Salique Law* of *France*, she could not be excluded from the Counties of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and the adjacent places, that he ought to protect and not injure a young Lady and Orphan, who would make a fitter match for his son the Dolphin, then the daughter of *England* can. These Ambassadors having goods and lands in those places which the King had taken, in favour of themselves complied in some things with the King.

*Philip Crevecœur* Governor of *Artois* is absolved by King *Lewis* from his Oath of Allegiance to Duke *Charles*, so that he becomes now servant wholly to the French, by his means the King recovers *Arras*, and *Boulogne*. The King sends to Princess *Mary* his Barbar, one *Olivier*, to persuade her privately to put her self under the protection of *France*, from whence she is both by the Father and Mother: The Princess was then at *Gann*, of whom the Townesmen were so carefull, that they suffered none to speak with her in privat; wherefore the Barbar being suspected, was commanded to depart thence, who presently retired to *Turnay*, where he carried himself so cunningly, that he got thirty of the stoutest there to aid him upon all occasions; wherefore he writes secretly to the Captains of the next Garisons, that they fail not to be at *Turnay* by break of day the next morning; which was done; so one of the Gates was opened, they were let in, and the Town taken: Upon this the *Gantois* assemble the States of *Flanders*, who appoint a Counsell for governing the Princess: Then they send Ambassadors to *France*, to acquaint the King, that the Princess had condescended to be ruled altogether by their Counsell. The King willing to make dissention between the *Flemings* and the Princess *Mary's* Counsellors, assures the *Gantois* that their Chancellor *Hugonet*, brought him Letters from their Lady quite contrary to what they said; wherefore when the Ambassadors were returned to *Gann*, the Chancellor *Hugonet* is accused of Treason, and of the loss of *Arras*, and so is beheaded.

Shortly after this, the *Gantois* sets at liberty the Duke of *Gelders* son, who had been imprisoned there by Duke *Charles* of *Burgundy*, him they employ to regain *Tournay*: But the King's Garison there fallies out upon him, defeats his Forces, and kills him on the place. *Arras* hoping to be aided by the *Gantois*, rebelled against the King, but he shortly reduced them again, and sends away the Inhabitants to another part of the Kingdome, and planted French men there: About this time, *Maximilian* the Emperors son comes into *Flanders*, and matcheth with the Princess *Mary*: A little before the Prince of *Orange* who had hitherto complied with the French upon hope to recover by the King, his Grandfathers lands detained from him by Duke *Charles*, and now perceiving he was deluded, raiseth Forces, and fights the Governor, one thousand men are slain on both sides: hereupon a great part of the Country revolts from the King, but *Charles* of *Ambois* the new Governour sent by the King, recovers in a short time the Towns that had rebelled, and burned *Dole*; and now the King began to entertain the *Switzers*, 6000 whereof he kept in pay continually, and put down the Archers instituted by *Charles*: Great troubles arise in *Millan* upon the death of Duke *Gabeas*, who was murdered in a Church: He left one son very young, *Robert* of *Saint Severin*, the Duke's next kinsman, labours to persuade the French King to attempt *Italy*, but he was unwilling, because the French could never enjoy any thing

*An. Christi* thing they got there, nor could he ever send Forces to aid the *Florentins* his allies, but still they were set upon by Pope *Simus*, and *Ferdinand* King of *Naples*; yet to intimidat the Pope, he calls a Gallican Synod at *Orleans*, to advise about the reestablishing of the Pragmatick Sanction in *France*, and abolishing the power of sending money thence to *Rome* for bulls; but here was nothing concluded: The next year they meet again at *Lions*; mean while the Pope revokes his censures against the *Florentins*, absolves and makes peace with them. The Kings Ambassador returning from *Florence*, goeth for *Millan*, where he receiveth in the Kings name the homage due to him from *Bonne*, the Dutcheffs in behalf of her young son, for *Genua*, whereof he was then Lord, and which held of the Crown of *France*.

At that time *Province* fell to the French King by the death of *Rene* King of *Sicily*. in whom the male kinde of the house of *Anjou* failed, wherefore *Anjou* and *Main* return to the King and *Province* also, by the last will of *Rene*, of which young *Rene* Duke of *Lerrain* complained. In the interim *Maximilian* fights the French at *Terevenne*, defeats them, and becomes Master of the place: King *Lewis* not willing to hazard any more upon uncertain battels, desires peace, which was obtained by the death of *Mary* the Dutcheffs, *Maximilians* wife, who left two young children, *Philip* and *Margaret*, the *Gantou* who undertook the tuition of the young children, offer the French King, that if he would quit his allyance with *England*, young Princess *Margaret* now three years old, should be conveyed into *France* to be betrothed to the Dolphin, with whom in marriage should be given the Counties of *Artois* and *Burgundy*: To this the King assented. The peace is concluded, and the banished *Artoisens* returned again to *Aras*, which since the banishment was new-named *French Town*: Not long after this, King *Lewis* being sickly and 60 years old (an age which none of his predecessors since *Hugh Capet* the first King of that race have exceeded) departeth this life, having acted the Fox rather than the Lion all his reign; he was desirous before his death to see his son Crowned, therefore sends to *Reims* for the holy oyle, which arrived at *Plessis* in the Suburbs of *Toures*, as he was giving up the ghost.

1483

## CHAP. XXIII.

The Presecution of the History under Charls 8. Lewis 12. Francis 1. Henry 2. Francis 2. Charls 8. Henry 3. Henry 4. Lewis 13. from the year 1483. till 1633. wherein the lives of the Popes, the affairs of Italy, Spain, and other bordering Countries are touched.

**L**ewis 12. succeeded his son Charls 8. at 13 years of age, whom his Father would suffer none to see, but his domestick servants, nor learn any more Latin but this sentence, *qui nescit dissimulare, &c.* He that cannot dissemble, cannot reigne. In the beginning of his reigne he calls a Parliament at *Toures*, where each man had liberty to speak, which was denied by the former King; here complaints are made against him (though dead) for infringing their Liberties, and antient Customs, with the Taxes laid on them: Among other things that were desired, the Pragmatick Sanction is much urged, and received. It is ordered that *Anne* the Kings eldest sister should have the charge of his person, and a Counsell of twelve men to rule the Kingdome, some would have had

Lewis

*An. Christi* *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, first Prince of the blood, to be Governour; but that motion was rejected, because he was too young, being twenty four years old only, and under his mothers tuition: He thinking himself wronged by being rejected from the government, endeavoured to force it, therefore began to raise men at his own Town of *Orleans*, and to make that the seat of the War; which the Townsmen perceiving, shut their Gates against him: so he was forced to retire, and raise forces elsewhere, which when he had done, were presently scattered by the Kings Proclamation: therefore this was called the foolish War.

10 In *Britany* *Peter Landais* the Dukes great Favorite, was extremely hated, both for being suspected of the Chancelors death, and for his greatness with the Duke; therefore the Nobility of that Province conspire against *Landais*, whom they thought to apprehend in the Dukes Bed-chamber, but he had escaped by a back door; a great commotion is in the Town, thinking the Duke had been slain; but it was appeased, by his presence exhibited to the people. Things being quieted, these Noble men that occasioned this uproar, are banished; and *Landais* in greater favour then ever: So that an order is made for pulling down the Houses and Castles of all that had a hand in this conspiracy; For effecting of which, an Army is raised: The banished Lords understanding this, return to *Britany*, and raise an Army of their faction. But when the two Armies met, they bethought themselves to be all of the same Country and Language, sling down their Arms in pity, and lovingly embrace each other, turning all their hatred against *Landais*, whom they understood was in the Castle of *Nantes*; they resolve then to pull him out of the Dukes Arms; yet by general consent they choose a new Chancelour, whom they sent to acquaint the Duke, that the peoples fury could not be satisfied without the life of *Landais*, yet promising that he should have a fair Triall according to Law. So he was apprehended, imprisoned, and attached of many hainous crimes, for which he was condemned, and hanged, before the Duke knew his Trial was begun, who otherwise meant to have pardoned him; this exasperated the Duke more then before: so he chooseth a new Chancelour. About this time the Duke of *Orleans* comes into *Britany*, with a great Train, which so much dismayed the Lords, that they repaired to the French King; then went out a report, that *Orleans* meant to repudiate his crooked wife, the Kings sister, whom he was forced to marry, and resolved to have for his wife, *Anne* the Duke of *Britains* only daughter and heir.

The exiled Lords striving to live securely in their own countrey, provoke the King to raise Arms against the Duke of *Britany*, promising their best service and assistance, which they did so well, that suddenly entering *Britany*, they caused many Towns to yeild to the King, taking many prisoners, of whom they exacted great ransoms. The *Britains* that were for the Duke, having made a Body of six hundred Horse, and sixteen thousand Foot, were marching against the Enemy, to relieve *Plermel*, then besieged; but in their march, one of the Army stood up, and wished them to consider that their Duke was altogether ruled by the French, and yet they were marching against the French; and that therefore it were best every man should return to his own home, and live quietly. Upon this they all disbanded. *Plermel* is taken; so is *Vennes*, without blow. *Nantes* is besieged forty six days; from which they rise, having done nothing, and with fire and sword they rage over all the countrey, driving away all the cattle; at which the *Britain* Lords murmure, saying, they were better return to their Duke, who had proffered pardon to them, and enjoyment of their goods, then to be thus used by the French. So then they began daily to fall off from the Kings army. Divers Towns also revolt from the King, to the Duke; some of which are retaken again by the French. This miserable condition of *Britany* made the Duke

An. Christi  
1488

Duke send Embassadors to the King, being then eighteen years of age. They found him at Angers, to whom Count Dunois remonstrates the miserable condition of Britany, and that the Duke never intended any War against France, but was contented rather to suffer his country to be over-run by the Kings army, then to make resistance. They confess the Duke of Orleans, and Prince of Orange, had been in Britany, not to raise arms against the King, as was falsely given out, but to visit and comfort, the Duke being much afflicted for the untimely death of his eldest daughter, which they were bound to do in respect of their near consanguinity. They grant also, that the Britains took Arms to relieve Plermel, but when they understood it was the Kings Army 10 that besieged the Town, they presently disbanded: Besides they say, that the Duke had restored to the exiled Lords, all their Lands again, therefore the Duke humbly desired Peace, which the King granted; yet he put it off a while, till he saw what became of Tongeres, which was besieged by English Britains, the Town at last was surrendered upon Articles, that the Garrison should depart with their lives and goods. Then followed a Skirmish, between the French and Britains, in which one thousand two hundred on both sides were killed, the Duke of Orleans, and Prince of Orange are taken prisoners. At last the Peace is concluded, upon this condition, that the French shall retain what Towns they had taken in Britany. Shortly after, the Duke 20 died, whose only daughter King Charles of France afterward married, having first put away his former wife, Maximilians daughter, which was one wrong, and the other was, that he would marry with Maximilian's Spouse.

1491

1492

About this time, Christopher Columbus, a Sea-man of Genua, understood by a Shipwrack't Mariner, that in the Western Sea there were some Lands; wherefore he on the King of Spains charges, undertakes a Voiage thither, where he discovers some Islands. Mean while King Charles is now in hope to obtain Sicily, and Apulia, being heir by the last Will of Anjou, whose race was now extinct. The banished Neapolitans, Lewis Sfortia, and Pope Alexander, now angry with Alphonsus, encourage King Charles to make an Expedition 30 into Italy, which he undertakes, with an Army of twenty thousand Foot, and five thousand Horse, having no opposition; for Maximilians anger was pacified for the losse of the daughter of Britany, by marrying with Blanca Maria, sister to John Galeas, Duke of Millan. Ferdinand of Spain, was beholding to the French for restoring Perpenian; the cities of Italy were not against him; the Florentins help him with money; John Galeas Duke of Millan was now dead, and his Uncle Sfortia succeeded, who made no resistance; only Pope Alexander being reconciled to Alphonsus, entertains his son Ferdinand, with his whole Army at Rome: But understanding that all things succeeded 40 well with Charles, and that he had gotten Viterbium, he dismisseth the Neapolitans, and receiveth Charles into the city; having first for safety retired to the Castle of S. Anhele, being guilty of his own crimes, which he redeems by large Bribes given, and promises made to King Charles, to whom all the kingdom of Naples submits, except the Castle, which held out a while. Alphonsus being hated by his people, resignes the kingdome to his son Ferdinand, and betakes himself to a Monastic life: but the Italians could not brook long the French pride and rapacity; therefore Alphonsus and the Pope, solicit Ferdinand, the Venetians, and Cesar, to make a League; in which, Lewis Sfortia is included, for he was now angry with the French for the loss of Novaria, taken from him by Lewis Duke of Orleans. Charles hearing what preparations were against him, hastneth out of Italy, having exhausted the king- 50 dom of Naples; but before his departure, Ferdinand of Spain had fortified Rheim in Calabria; and shortly after the Arragonians, with some Sicilian Forces, recover all Calabria, and Apulia. Charles his Army now consisted but of nine thousand, a part whereof he sent to Sena, for a Garison, and some Troops

1494

Troops he dismisseth for Genua. The Florentins now were angry with him, because he would not restore the Towns they put in his hands; the Venetians and Sfortians fight him, but are worsted. Charles indeed got the Victory; but shortly after lost all his booty, being caried away by the Mercenary Greeks, under the Venetian: so the French return home, having brought nothing with them but the Neapolitan disease, which the Spaniards conveyed thither from America. Novaria is besieged by the confederates, where two thousand French lost their lives by famine. At last the Town is surrendered, upon condition the besieged should have their lives, and peace should be made with Sfortia, and the Venetians. A Peace indeed was made, but of no force; for Sfortia did not according to the Articles send aid into France, but rather assisted Ferdinand. Nor would the Venetians admit any other conditions then these, to wit, that Charles should make War against the Turk, and leave the Kingdom of Naples to Ferdinand, he paying an yearly Tribute. The French that were left in Italy, fell off to Ferdinand, to whom they delivered up their strong Holds; so that of twenty five thousand, few returned home, and those very infirm. Ferdinand at the siege of Cajeta, died of a Fever, having lost his father not long before, whose brother Frederick undertook the government of Naples, so that in two years Naples saw five Kings; to wit, Ferdinand, 20 Alphonsus, Ferdinand 2. Charles of France, and Frederick; many disasters befell the House of Spain in a short time. Ferdinand of Spain his only son died, his sons wife, Maximilians daughter, is brought to bed of a dead child, his son in Law Alphonsus, the King of Portugals son, is killed with a fall from his Horse; his daughter, who was married to Emanuel, cousin German of Alphonsus now named, died in child-bed: so the inheritance falls to Joan, who was married to Philip. Nor did King Charles prosper with his unlawfull marriage; for he left never a child to inherit his Crown: He died suddenly of an Apoplexy. At Amboise his death was foretold by Savonarola, whom the Florentins burned, for being too free in reproving the vices of the Clergy. At 30 this time Pope Alexander 6. sat in Rome, who tyrannized over the Cardinals, which had sold him the suffrages; he made War upon the Medici, and shortly after received them into favour.

To Charles 8. succeeded his cousin German Lewis 12. who laid claim not onely to Naples, but to Millan also, by his Grandmother, the daughter of John Galeas; therefore he makes a League with the Pope, Venetian, Florentin, and Ferdinand King of Spain, against Lewis Sfortia of Millan, and Frederick of Naples. It was then agreed, that if Lewis obtained Millan, Cremona should be delivered to the Venetians, and that Cesar Borgia, the Popes son, who by marrying Carlotta, the French Kings Cousin, had laid aside his Cardinals Hat, 40 should obtain Aemilia, Flaminia, Picenum, and Umbria, to the ruine of the right and ancient owners, and that the King of Spain and France, should divide the Kingdome of Naples between them. Thus Charles, with a puissant Army, drives Sfortia out of his Dukedom: so Borgia by turning but, or killing the Princes of Aemilia, and Herruria, obtains a large dominion in Italy, under whose tyranny many execrable oppressions and villanies were perpetrated. This Pope Alexander bestowes on Ferdinand of Spain, the West, and on John of Portugal, the East-Indies: to John in Portugall, succeeded Emanuel, son to his Uncle Ferdinand. Americus Vesputius, a Florentin, discovered then the continent of America, so called from him, for the use of Ferdinand 50 of Spain. Sfortia with the Pope, and Venetians, desires Cesars help against the insulting French; he upon promise of money, marcheth unto Italy, but for want of pay, speedily returns again, and makes peace with King Lewis, who entering Millan, in great splendor, was called Duke of Lombardy, but Ascanius the Cardinal, Sfortias brother; in short time recovers what was lost, by reason the Insubrians could not endure the French insolencies. King Lewis

1493

*An. Christi* Lewis upon this raiseth a new Army, among which were six thousand *Switzers* *Cesar* counselled *Sfortia* to use no *Helvetians*, but *Savoyens* in his Army, which wholefome advice was rejected, and he thereby ruined; for when the two Armies met, the *Sfortian Switzers* would not fight against the *French Switzers*, their Countrey men, but shook hands, and left *Sfortia* for a prey to the *French*, who took him prisoner, as the *Venetians* did his brother the Cardinal, both these pined away in a *French* prison.

1500 Pope *Alexander* this year keeps his Jubilee, and sets up again the Angel on his Castle at *Rome*, which the Thunder had beat down: the next year after, divers Crosses were seen, some of a bloodie colour, upon the garments and skins of people, fore-runners of the troubles of *Europe*, and of great sicknesses, which shortly after followed, to the destruction of many thousands. Divers Isles in the East-*Brasil*, and *Calecut* in the West are detected. The *Saracens* are expelled *Spain*, and *Ferdinand* is honoured by the Pope, with the title of Catholic. Lewis of *France*, and *Ferdinand* of *Spain*, send Forces against *Frederick* of *Naples*, whom they quickly defeated, but the two conquering Kings could not accord long, they fell out about dividing, and bounding their shares in *Naples*, till at last the *Spaniards* beat the *French* quite out of that Kingdom and City, having first overthrown them in a Battel, and starved the remainder in *Cajeta*. So the *Spaniard* obtains all, and for a Tribute sends every year thence a white Horse to the Pope, who was not long after poisoned by a mistake of the Cup-bearer, who presented him that Cup, which he had provided for *Adrian* the Cardinal, and some others. *Borgia* by causing himself to be sowed within the belly of a Mule, lately unbowedled, discussed the force of the poison, but could not perfectly recover his health. *Alexander* died the 11 year of his Pontificate. *Borgia* seizeth upon all his Treasure, and besets the *Vatican* with twelve thousand armed men, to force the Cardinals to vote for him. Presently the people take Arms; *Borgia* being yet infirm, is carried thence in a Litter, and *Piccolomini* is elected, and named *Pius 3.* who died the thirtieth day after his Election, as it is thought of poison. *Borgia* is detained in the Castle of *S. Angelo*. Cardinal *Fulius* is elected, vvho calls himself *Fulius 2.* a man fitter for *Pauls* sword, then *Peters* keys: He strips *Borgia* of all his Towns, Castles, and Wealth; and at last gives him his liberty, who going to *Naples*, was taken by *Consalvus*, and sent over to *Spain*. Thence having escaped prison, he goeth to the King of *Navarre*, and is killed in the *Cantabrian* War. *Fulius* desiring to enlarge the Churches patrimony, thrusts *Beutivolos* out of *Bononia*, and conspires against the *Venetians* with *Cesar*, *Spain*, *France*, *Ferrara*, and *Mantua*; but afterward upon their humble submission, vvithout *Cesars* knowledge, and against the *French* Kings will, he departs from the League, and makes peace vvith the *Venetians*, and vvithall falls upon *Alphonsus*, Duke of *Ferrara*, for siding with the *French*. *Cesar* and King *Lewis* raging at the Popes insolencie, by means of the Cardinals, call a Synod at *Pise*, whether he is cited to appear, and vvithall they take from him *Bononia*, and *Mirandula*. He again to cross these Cardinals, convokes a Synod at *Rome*, and excommunicates those that refuse to come; he stirs up also *Ferdinand* against *Cesar* and the *French*, and calls him off from his *African* Victories, who having imposed a Tribute upon the *Numidians*, transports his Army into *Italy*, where he took in some strong Forts, with him *Henry 8.* of *England*, is perswaded to join, being the *Spaniards* son in law; but *Henry* intends to recover his right in *Guien*: on the other side the *Spaniard* thrusts *Fohn* of *Navarre* out of his kingdom, because being in League with *France*, he denyed passage to the *Spaniard*, and his Army. Pope *Fulius* also calls the *Switzers* into *Italy*, and makes *Fohn Medices*, banished out of *Florence*, his Legate; he caused a rumour to be spread, that *Maximilian*, and the *Venetians*, were agreed purposely that the *Brixians*, who hated

*An. Christi* hated the *French*, might deliver the Town to the *Venetians*, which they did, not without a great massacring of the *French*: But shortly after, the *French* recover the Town again, kill the *Venetian* Garison, and make a sacrifice of the Townsmen. King *Lewis* finding his kingdom vexed on both sides by the *Spanish* and *English*, he resolves to make *Italy* the seat of the War; therefore he besiegeth *Ravenna*; the *Pontificians* and *Spaniards* come to raise the siege; a great battel is fought on *Easter* day, which proved victorious to the *Cesarians* and *French*, who slew nine thousand of the Enemy, and lost three thousand of their own party. The Viceroy of *Naples* fled, *Fohn Medices* is taken, *Foxius* the *French* General, was killed, in whose Funeral eighteen Counten taken from the *Spaniards*, were caried; divers Towns submit to the *French*.

Not long after this, Pope *Fulius* causeth the League between *Cesar* and the *French*, to be broken. *Maximilian* sides with *Fulius* and *Ferdinand*, he raiseth an Army of *Switzers*, who were incensed against the *French*, for killing of their Agent; by their means the *French* lose *Millan*, which they had possessed thirteen years, and bring back *Maximilian Sfortia*, the son of *Lewis*. The *French* King is proscribed by the Pope, who notwithstanding returns to *Millan* with a fresh Army, which was utterly defeated by the *Switzers*, and the *French* driven quite out of *Italy*. The Fathers of the Council of *Pisa*, for fear of the *Switzers*, remove to *Lions*: Mean while the Pope and his party seize upon divers Cities of *Italy*, by the *Helvetian* help. But when *Venice* refused to restore to *Cesar*, *Verona* and *Vicentia*, then the Pope makes a League with him against the *Venetians*, and they with *Lewis* against the Pope and *Spaniard*. But when *Fulius* saw that the *Spaniard* and *French* were like to agree, he died for grief; to whom succeeded *Fohn Medices*, the Popes Legat, who had been banished *Florence*, and taken prisoner in the late wars at *Ravenna*. He is now called *Leo* the tenth; it was this *Fulius* who flung *Peters* keys into *Tibris*, and drew *Pauls* sword. *Leo* gave way that the stones which were hewn by day, for repairing *Saint Peters* Church, begun by *Fulius*, should be caried away in the night for the great Palace of the *Medices* at *Florence*. He procured *Lewis 12.* to leave off all Reformation of the Church, and to subscribe to the Council of *Lateran*; he reconciled the Cardinals that fell off from *Fulius*; he was much indebted to his sister, but paid her out of the indulgence money. About this time *Lewis* makes Peace with *England*, repudiates his wife *Anne* of *Britany*, and marieth another, and shortly after died.

To *Lewis* succeeded by the *Salic* Law, *Francis Valois*, his next kinsman and son in Law: He enters into League with *England* and *Venice*, and obtains *Millan*, having first defeated the *Switzers*: the Pope having lost *Parma* and *Placentia*, makes peace with *Francis*, and condescends to confirm by his Bul, whomsoever the King should name in *France*, for Bishop or Abbot. King *Ferdinand* the Catholick, being dead, and his heir *Charles*, Prince of *Belgium*, *Maximilian* knowing how needful the friendship of *France* was, gives off the *Venetian* war, and makes peace with *Francis*. The Pope takes *Urbis* from *Francis Feltrius*, causeth *Petrucius* the Cardinal for plotting against him, to be strangled, and those that knew the plot, to be deposed: For completing the Senate, he makes at one time thirty one Cardinals, by which means he enriched himself. Upon the falling off of the *Switzers* from the *French*, *Millan* was re-taken, and restored to *Francis Sfortia*, *Maximilians* brother. The Pope recovers *Parma* and *Placentia*, with joy of which, or rather with poison, he suddenly died; to whom succeeded *Hadrian 6.* of *Utricht*, *Charles Cesars* Tutor; but the next year after his Election, he died. King *Francis* upon the commotions of *Spain*, regained almost all the kingdom of *Navarre*, and sends great Armies into *Italy*, for recovering of *Millan*, which he took, and is not long after taken himself. Having besieged *Papia*, and separated his Army

1511

1513

1525.



*Am. Christi* Army, by the advice of Pope Clement 7. who succeeded Hadrian, the Pope for his covetousness, is besieged in his Castle at Rome; his Palace in the Vatican is plundered; Rome by the Duke of Burbon, for the Popes perfidiousness to Cesar, is taken, and exposed with all her wealth, Priests and Temples, to the fury of the soldiers. The Pope being famished, yeildeth to vvhhat conditions Cesar pleased: Mean time the Florentins made themselves free, by casting out the Medices. Genua submits to the French, who besiege the Viceroy of Naples, being then in Naples; the Viceroy of Sicily is defeated by Austria, but whilst the French were in hope to take Naples, they were so vvasht with sickness, which swept away 20000 of them, that they were forced to be gone who were left; their General also Lautrecus died.

1527  
1528 To Pope Clemens succeeded Alexander Farnesius, who took the name of Paul 3. he excommunicated and proscribed Henry 8. of England; calls the Council of Trent, and urgeth Charles the Emperour to suppress the Lutherans in his Dominions. To Paul succeeded John Maria Montanus, who called himself Julius 3<sup>d</sup>. King Francis holds a Treaty at Cambrey, vvhich his ransom is paid, and his hostages restored; he instigateth the Turk against Charles the Emperour, and about the same time advanceth Learning in Paris, by allowing and maintaining new Professors in that University. He makes vvar vvith the Savoyen, and loseth his son the Dolphin, vvhom the Earl of Mon-  
20 tucucullo poisoned, for vvich he was drawn in pieces vvith vvilde Horses; then he makes Truce vvith the Pope and Emperour for ten years. The Rochellers rebell against him, because he placed a Garison there; then he invades  
1538 Piemont, Luxemburg, and Roussillon because his Ambassadors were killed as they were going that way, to make a League with the Turk. He takes many Towns in Piemont, having fought a great battel there vvith the Imperialists, of whom fifteen thousand were slain. He recovers Bollen, and invades England, with which at last he made Peace, and then died, about three months after the death of Henry the 8. of England, whose differences were reconciled a little before, he reigned 33 years.

1547 To King Francis succeeded his son Henry 2. by Katharin Medices: He falls 30 upon the Imperial Territories, and takes divers Towns; the Imperialists out of Belgium over-run and waste Campania; the Pope for grief that the Catholick cause in England died with Queen Mary, falls suddenly sick, of which disease he died; to whom succeeded Marcellus 2<sup>d</sup>, who the 22 day after his Election, died of an Apoplexy. Petrus Caraffa succeeded, and called himself  
1551 Paul 4. About these times Ferdinand Cortez in twenty years space, subdued all the parts of America about Mexico, Varga and Pizarus, all Peru, with the City of Cusco: so did the Portugals take divers places in the East-Indies. Charles the Emperour being dead, the French renew the war with his son Philip; therefore a great Army is sent under Francis Duke of Guise, into Campania and  
1557 Naples: at S. Quintin a cruel battel is fought, in which the French are utterly defeated, and most of their Nobility taken, upon which the Town presently surrendered. Burdeaux rebels for the taxes laid on them, but the Constable forces them to submit, and to burn their privileges. The same Constable appeareth a rebellion in Gascony, raised upon the custom of Salt. About this time died Henry of Navarre, vvwhose son in Law Vendosme, seizeth on a part of Navarre. Mean while Casal is taken by the French, but are beat at sea by the Belgians. The French besiege Doway, but in vain, and are defeated at Grave-  
50 ling: At last Piemont and Savoy being restored to the Duke, the Dolphin married to the Queen of Scotland, and peace made with Spain, by the marriage of Elizabeth, King Henries daughter to King Philip. In the Nuptial solemnities, King Henry at a Tilt, is wounded in the right eye by Montgomery, of which he died in great torture, God letting him feel some part of those tortures, with which he tormented the Protestants: he died the forty third year of his age, and

and of his reign the thirteenth: not long after died Pope Paul 4<sup>th</sup>, who set up the Inquisition at Rome, against the Lutherans, but after his death, the people in a tumult, brake open the prison door, and let out the prisoners, burnt the house, and for three days together, abused the Popes Marble Statue, and all Monuments of the Caraffa in the City were defaced.

To Henry 2<sup>d</sup>, succeeded his son Francis 2<sup>d</sup>, who though he was young, yet was beginning to be as cruel against the Hugonets, as his father was, by burning Annas Burgius his body, after it had been hanged: At which, the Protestants were so incensed, that they conspire to seize on the King, then at Amboise, and to carry him away; but the plot was discovered and prevented. Lewis Burbon Prince of Conde, is suspected to have had a hand in this plot, therefore is imprisoned: But whilst at Orleans, the King and his Peers there assembled, were about to bring him to his Trial, the King fell sick and died, not having reigned full two years; his mother is made Regent. To Pope Paul 4. succeeded John Angelus Medices, who took the name of Pius 4. King Philip of Spain, causeth 29 Gentlemen of great families, to be burnt for their Religion: He giveth 30000 Duckats towards the Printing of the Bible called Complutenis.

20 To Francis 2<sup>d</sup>, succeeded his brother Charles 9. under whom the Protestants enjoyed some quietness, till Beza, Martyr, and Marlorat, had exasperated the Pontificians by their writings; then Pens were turned into Swords. Francis of Guise stood up for the Papists, and Lewis of Conde for the Hugonets. A battel is fought, in which were slain on both sides about nine thousand. Conde was taken prisoner, and Guise shortly after killed by a Pistoll shot. Upon this, the Queen Regent gives way for the Protestant Nobility to exercise their Religion in their houses, and the people in the suburbs. Pius 4. died, to whom succeeded Michael Chifferius, called by the name of Pius 5. Conde  
30 against the promise made him when he was taken, is shot to death. Shortly after at Monconture, another battel is fought, in which the Hugonets were defeated, but not subdued; for they bore Arms so long in Gascony, and took so many Towns, that at last they forced a peace for themselves. Mean while the King of Spain marieth the fourth time, with his sisters daughter. The Duke of Alba tyrannizeth in Belgium, and turns out the English liberty. Pius 5. dieth, to whom succeeded Gregory 13. France having rested a while from Civil broils, falls to Clandestine butcheries. At Paris the Nuptials of Henry of Navarre, with Margaret the Kings sister, are solemnized and besprinkled with Protestant blood: The chief Protestants  
40 are invited to the Wedding; suddenly by command from King Charles the ninth, all the Protestants in Paris are massacred, without respect of age or sex. Caspar Castilius head is sent as a present to the Pope, and letters from the King, who writes, that in few days he put to death above seventy thousand: For this slaughter was not only in Paris, but also in other Towns of France. This Massacre was committed on Saint Bartholomews day, betimes in the morning. The next year after, Henry King Charles his brother, besiegeth Rochel, possessed by the protestants; but being elected King of Poland, he leaves the Siege, and goeth into Poland; where having reigned six months, he is called home to possess the Crown of France by  
50 the death of his brother Charles, who reigned fourteen years. Philip of Spain, understanding that his sonne Charles was grieved for the cruelties exercised on the Netherlanders, puts him in prison, where he lost his life, upon suspicion that he intended Treason against his father.

Pope Gregory reformed the Calender, which occasioned some troubles in divers places; but in France, by Proclamation, it is commanded  
O o o 2  
gene-

*An. Christi* generally to be received : Divers Colledges of Jesuits are erected under Pope Gregory, and in Rome for strangers ; he was suddenly taken with the squinzy, which suffocated him in two howres. Henry of Navarre strives to have a National Synod of Protestants, for settling of their differences ; for this cause he sends his Ambassador to the Princes, who gave him good words, but nothing could be done by reason of the troubles of those times. The Cardinals of  
1583 Bourbon and Guise, with other Pontifical Ring-leaders, conspire against Henry of Navarre, utterly to destroy him. A great Army therefore is raised ; Henry procures for his assistance, out of Germany, 20 thousand Foot, and five thousand Horse : but these were wholly overthrown by the Guisians, being first forsaken by the Helvetians. The same year King Henry 3<sup>d</sup>, was so curbed by the Guisan faction, that his subjects began to slight him ; wherefore to be rid of their power, he under shew of great friendship and serious business, invites the Guisan brothers to a Conference, whom he presently caused to be slain, and the rest of their confederacy to be imprisoned. Katharin Medices, the Kings mother, called by some the fourth fury of France, as being the fomenter of seditions, died with grief. The Parisians declare Charles Main brother to the Guises, Governour of Paris, and of the Isle of France, leaving out the Kings name : but the Sorbonists were against Main. He having raised an Army, declares he will maintain the Roman Religion. Lions, Orleans, Ro-  
1588 han, and other places, side with him. King Henry was assisted by the King of Navarres forces, and the Nobility ; by which the Pontifical Army is defeated, and Paris so strictly besieged, that they were like to starve within. When in the mean while Jacob Clement, a Dominican, under pretence of speaking with the King, run him in the belly with a poisoned knife, whom the King killed immediatly with the same knife. King Henry died of his wound within fourteen howres, having first named for his heir Henry of Navarre ; to whom the Nobility swore Allegiance, conditionally, that he would permit Liberty of Conscience ; then he falls presently to weakning the Guisan faction, and taking in of Towns. In the time of King Henry the third, the order of the Holy Ghost was instituted. The King of Navarre and Conde are by the Pope excommunicated : Conde at last is poisoned, and Navarre excluded from succession. The Battel of Courtrey is fought, in which Navarre was victor, and the Duke Joyeuse slain.

1589

In Henry 4. King of Navarre, after seven Civil Wars, the Crown of France is transferred to the House of Bourbon, which Henry as yet could not quietly enjoy ; for De Main troubles him, till he was defeated at Arque. The Parliament of Rohan pronounce all those Traitors, who side with the King. The Popes quarrel with him for his Religion ; to wit, Gregory 13. and his successor Felix Montaltus, or Sixtus 5. who from obscurity, was elevated to this high dignity : yet he would be at no charges in relieving Paris, when it was again besieged by the King, fearing to make Spain, (which now gaped for France) too great. Yet King Henry out of pity to his people, permits Alexander Farnesius, to cary in provisions. Pope Sixtus having procured the Spaniards displeasure, for not affording his assistance to them, fell into a deep melancholy, and so died, having before shewed great joy for the conversion of the Marquess of Baden to the Roman faith ; which Marquess, James by name, shortly after died of a dysentery, in the flower of his youth. Presently  
1590 John Baptista Castanaus, is elected, and called Urban 7. whose election was accompanied with an Earthquake that shook Austria, Moravia, and Bohemia, with an extraordinary dry Summer, that the Rivers were like scalding water. This Urban being taken with a fever, died within thirteen days, leaving the Chair to Nicholas Sfondratus, or Gregory 14. he was born the seventh month after his conception, and died the tenth month after his election. About which time the plague and famine so raged in Italy, that at Rome in one year there

there died sixty thousand people : yet this Gregory spent on the French wars, five hundred thousand Crowns of the publick Treasury, and forty thousand out of his own coffers. King Henry perceiving that Farnesius would not fight, caused his Army to take up their Winter Quarters all about Paris. Farnesius after four furious assaults, takes Corbillion upon Sene, which by the King is again retaken. The Spaniards are defeated by the Momorancies, and the Savoyen preparations in Province, hindered by Digvier. The Germanes plunder Lorrains Country, and are now on the borders of France. Parma returns to the Netherlands, having enough to do with Grave Maurice. The Popes Army under Sfondrat, the Popes Nephew, did no great matter ; for Parma not being able to come and join with them, they retreated, upon the report of Pope Gregories death, to whom succeeded Johannes Antonius of Piemont, called by the name of Innocent 9. he sat but two months, and was of the Spanish faction : to him succeeded Hippolitus Aldobrandinus, or Clement the 8. King Henry besiegeth Rohan, which at last is relieved by the Duke of Parma. Divers skirmishes and encounters there were, to the loss of much blood. Parma leaving the greatest part of his Army in France, returns to Belgium, and deludes the King by delays. At last as he was returning now the third time to drive the King from the siege of Paris, he was taken in Artois, with sudden and  
20 sharp tortures in his body, of which he died : Maurice strives to take the Sluce but could not ; yet he takes Steinvick, and some other Towns. King Henry sets out a Remonstrance, whereby he declares that he is no enemy to the Roman Religion, as the world thought, but that his intentions and indeavours were to maintain and preserve it in all places, where hitherto it hath continued, for this cause the Parliament of Turon condemns the Popes Bull, in excommunicating King Henry for heresie, and causeth it to be burnt by the Hangman, as a seditious and impious Libel : The Popes Legat is also commanded to appear before them, that he might be tried by Law, and receive due punishment for his temerity.

50 The French being weary of their Civil wars, an assembly of the Guisan faction, or the holy Leaguers, is called, for electing of a new King. Some were for Isabella, the Infanta of Spain ; but that election was against the Salic Law : others for Ernestus the Arch-Duke, Governour of Belgium, Farnesius the Duke of Parma being dead ; which Ernestus was also appointed Husband for the Infanta : but this motion was generally rejected. Others again, will have him to be King, whom the Spaniard shall nominate, and that he shall marry the Infanta. Henry son to Guise that was killed, is nominated King by some ; Main seeing they could not agree about the Election, procured three months Truce with Navarre, to gain so much time for settling the kingdom. This  
40 Truce was disliked by the Popes Legat. Upon this the Nobility perswade the King to profess the Roman Faith, shewing it was against the Salic Law, that an Heretick should be King of France, and against reason, that he should be called the most Christian King, who was the chief Patron of Heresie, and an enemy to that Christian profession which hath continued in France hitherto since the beginning of Christianity. The King fearing all would forsake him, if he continued a Calvinist, desires a Conference with the Bishops, and other Doctors of the Church. At length after five hours discourse, the King in white, with a shining Taper before him, goeth to S. Dennis Church, where being asked by the Bishop of Biturix, what his desire was ; answered, his desire was to be received into the bosom of the Catholick, Apostolick, Roman Church, and to live and die in that religion : So being led to the Altar, he is absolved, to the great indignation of the Popes Legat, and the Monks, esteeming this reconciliation of no validity : but to the great joy, and content of the people. The King sends Lewis Gonzaga, Ambassador to the Pope, who in all humility and submission, desires the Popes Benediction : who answers,

*An. Christi*

1592

An. Christi

1594

swers, that he shall never be perswaded the Kings reconciliation to the Church to be sincere, till an Angell from heaven come down, and tell it in his eare; but the *Gnisiens* to pacifie Pope *Clement*, cause the Counsell of *Trent*, purely, and without any condition to be proclaimed and observed, and strengthen their own side as well as they could; but some Monks suborne one *Barterius* to kill the King, who was prevented at *Melodunum*, and put to death: The Truce drawing to an end, the Pope, *Spaniard*, and *Mayne*, are devising new plots. Mean while *Meux*, *Orleans*, *Bourges*, and others fall off from the League to the King, who is inaugurate at *Chartres* by *Thuanus* Bishop there.

In the absence of *Mayne*, *Brissacus* Governor of *Paris* openeth the gates and delivers the Towne to the King with such order and care, that there was no killing nor plundering at all; The Garrison is dismissed without the least affront offered them. *Rowen* follows the example of *Paris*, so doth *Poitiers* and many more Townes; but other places that refused, are forced by Arms to submit. *Henry* of *Gulfe* reconciles himself to the King, who perceiving that the *Spaniard* did still foment Factions in his Kingdome, upon the perswasions of *Henry* of *Bullion*, he sends supply of men and arms to Grave *Maurice* against the *Spaniards*. Shortly after one *John Cassel* being perswaded the King was yet an Heretick, and not truly absolved, gets into the crowd at *Paris* where the King was, whom he struck at with his knife, and beat out two of his teeth, intending to have stabbed him in the throat: The fellow is presently apprehended and examined, he confessed his intention, and that he was bred in the Jesuits Colledge at *Paris*, but was sorry he had not killed that Heretick King; whereupon he is condemned and tortured to death. The Jesuits are banisht *France*, and it's made Treason for any to send their children out of the Kingdome to be instructed by them. The young mans father is banished for 9 years, and his goods confiscate, his house is levelled with the ground, and a Pyramide of Marble erected with a golden Crofs, and the 4 Cardinall vertues on it, as a perpetuall monument of this bold fact. The Protestants Patten is also renewed, whereby they are made capable of all honors and dignities equally with Catholicks. *Ernestus* being dead at *Brussels*, *Peter Gufman* undertakes the Government of *Belgium*, and regains *Hoi*, lately taken by *Henry*. He fights a great battel with *Bullion*, near *Durlan* which he takes with divers other Townes. After this the King is entertained at *Lions* with all solemnity, and at *Rome* by the intercession of Bishop *Perrone*, and many other Prelats whom he had sent thither, he obtains the Apostolicall Benediction, and is absolved from his Curse; so being received into the bosome of the Church, is honored with the Title of [most Christian] *Charles Mayne*, *Henry* of *Savoy*, *Foyeuse*, and other great men are reconciled to the King, who freely pardons them, and undertakes to pay their debts, but to the grief and oppression of the people. *Cassal* Consul of *Marsylles* is slaine, for intending to deliver up that Citie to the *Spaniard*: So all now is quieted except *Britany*.

1597

A peace between *France* and *Spain* is at last concluded. *Mercurian* with his Spanish Faction in *Britany* submits to King *Henry*, to whom King *Philip* restores *Callis*, *Capel*, and divers other places, and he to *Philip* the Principality of *Caroloions*; and so all old quarrels are composed. *Savoy* hereafter is to remain free of it self, but whereas the difference about the dominion of *Salusses* between *France* and *Savoy*, was not yet decided, but left to the Popes arbitration; two years after the War is renewed, in which the Duke loseth his *Cisalpin* Jurisdiction, his Fort of *Saint Catharin* which threatned *Geneva*, is demolished, and divers other Towns surrendered to the

1599

An. Christi

the French. A Divorce being made between the King and his Queen *Margaret*, sister of *Henry* the second, because of their consanguinity, to which Divorce she willingly assented, onely desiring that in stead of the Kings Wife, she might be called his Sister: I say, this Divorce being made long since, the King is desired to marie again for procreation. Therefore *Mary* the daughter of *Francis* Duke of *Florence*, is betrothed to him, by whom he had *Lewis*, with other children. The King was by *Peronne* accused of divers fals quotations in *Philip Mornays* Books, purposely to disgrace him and his profession: The edict of *Nants* concerning the Protestants Priviledges, procured much hatred against the King, by the Pontificats; therefore divers desperat plots against him were contrived, and discovered, for which conceived and intended regicide *Charles Ridicove* of *Gaunt*, *Peter Angere*, and *Nicholas English* justly suffered death. At this time was seen in *Paris*, a Cornuted Monster, some Virgins also in *France* and *Germany*, were known to endure hunger three years and more, a strict Law is made against Duels, and death threatned to the challenger. To *Clemens* the 8 at *Rome*, succeeded *Alexander Medices*, called by the name of *Leo*, who died 25 days after, his successor was *Leo Camillus*, or *Paul* 5. Duke *Foyeuse* entreth the Order of *Capuchins*, after a while takes arms, and then returns to his Monastery. Cardinal *Aldebrandin* comes into *France* to make the Duke of *Savoy* peace, whom the French had subdued for not restoring the Marquisat of *Salusses*, according to the Articles of peace at *Ver-vique*. Marshall *Byron* intendeth Treason against the King, is sent for, and denieth all that *Fineus* his accuser laid against him; but the proofs were so manifest, that he was condemned and privatly executed; on the Scaffold he opened his breast, and shewed the wounds he had received in the Kings Cause. By Father *Cottons* means the Jesuits are restored to certain places. Count *Auvergne* is imprisoned for new practises: After this the Duke of *Orleans* is born to the King, and the year after was born the Kings third son, the Duke of *Anjou*, and two years after, *Mary* was born, who married to King *Charles* of Great Britain. King *Henry* after he had settled his Dominions, and maintained them divers years in peace, having placed a great Army upon the confines of *Germany*, which caused divers suspitions among the Catholick party, is at last murdered by *Ravilliac* in his Coach, as he was viewing the preparation that was making for his Queens reception, who was Crowned the day before: He was stabbed twice in the heart; the murderer being apprehended would confess nothing; neither for faire words nor tortures, nor did he shew any signes of sorrow, affirming that he was set on by none but by inward motions, and the dictates of his conscience, having put on this resolution three yeare agoe: So he was put to death by exquisite tortures of burning pincers, and his body torne in sunder by horses: In this Kings time the making of silk Stuffs was brought into *France*. The Jesuits *Pyramid* was demolished, and a fountain erected in its place. The Order of *Carmelit* Nuns is set up by *Catherin* of *Longevill* in the Suburbs of *Saint Jacob*. A French Colonie is transported into *Canada* in *America*.

King *Henry* the fourth of *France* being dead, his Queen is made Regent during her sons Minority, who is publicly proclaimed heir to the Crown of *France*, and so the great Army is disbanded, which some thought had been intended for *Cleve*, others for *Assis*, others for the Empire. The Queen Regent brought much obloqui and envy on her self, by preferring Marquis *Ancre* her favourit; and of the *Florentin* Familie, before all the Princes of *France*: It was said he used enchantments, he held indeed the young King, the Queen, and the whole kingdome in subjection: He exhausted the Exchequer, made Laws, and unmade them as he pleased: Which

1600

1602

1607

1609

1610

*An. Christi* Which caused Henry of Bourbon, Prince of Conde, Henry of Bullion, Nivern, and others to forsake the Court in discontent, and to raise Tumults. The Decrees of the Counsell of Trent at last are divulged, by the importunity of the Italian and Pontificall Partie; but the Parliament of Paris ordered that the writings of Mariana, Snaver, Belarmin and others concerning the Popes power of deposing Kings, should be suppressed. Cardinal Perone with the Clergy, and most of the Nobility stand up in defence of the Counfells Authority; but King James by his writings declared he was of a contrary minde. Conde's and Ancres Forces had a sharp encounter, but Ancre prevailed, which Victory was at last his destruction, and Conde's captivity: For when Longueville, Bullion, Mayne, and other Princes understood that Conde was detained as a prisoner in Paris by Ancres means, they suddenly depart the Court, and are proscribed by the King: The Parisians being maddened at this, fall presently to plundering of Ancres treasures, and spoiling his house, so that with much adoe were they pacified at last by the Kings Guard. The Princes publish a Remonstancie, to let the people know what corruptions were now maintained, both in Court and Kingdome, and that therefore they were necessitated to take armes to suppress these abuses; they also by their friends, privately acquaint the King of the dangers that would fall on him and his Kingdome, if such abuses were tolerated, and Ancres treacherous actions countenanced; therefore they humbly beseech him that he would not hazard his own fortunes, and the welfare of a most flourishing Kingdome for one mans sake. Upon this, Order is given to Vitrius Captain of the Guard, to dispatch Ancre, who one day stops the proud and great Favorit, as he was entering the Palace. At this, Ancre presently began to draw upon the Captain, but before he could pull out his sword, he is shot dead on the place with a Pistoll: When his death was known in the City, the people exceedingly rejoiced; and to shew their hatred on him, (though now dead) they found out his corps which was privately buried, this they draw out of the grave, and having with all manner of disgraces abused it, at length they flung it in a great fire, and turned it into ashes: His wife being condemned for witchcraft and other diabolicall arts, is hanged, and her body burnd; thus by the just punishment of a few, the whole Kingdome is preserved, the Kings anger appeased, the peoples fury satisfied, and the Princes willingly reduced to obedience: But the Queen in displeasure, having laid down her Regency went to Blois; and Conde for his unruly tongue is detained in custody.

After these sad passages, some joy follows in France upon the marriage of Victor Amadeus, the Duke of Savoy's eldest son, Prince of Piemont, with Christina the Kings sister, the King was married already to the Infanta of Spain. The Queen-Mother being weary of her abode in Blois, got Duke de Espernon to convey her thence to Angouleme without the Kings knowledge, who took this ill, and as a slighting of his Authority, therefore he raiseth an Army purposely to be revenged on Espernon; but being at last pacified by divers messages from Espernon and the Queen-Mother to him, he is permitted to stay at Andes; and Conde is set free. A certain Italian being found teaching of Atheisme at Tholouse, is by the Kings command apprehended, his tongue cut out, and he burnt alive. Mean while the French King is courted by Ambassadors from the Emperor, and likewise from Frederick Count Palatin, now in contestation for Bohemia. King Lewis sends Ambassadors to Spain for opening the Valtelin, which being the mouth of Italy, was now stopped and shut up against the French and Switzers, divers contestations were held about this business, but still interrupted. At this time de Luine the Kings Favorit, was in great power;

*An. Christi* power on whom he had conferred all Ancres estate: This was ill resented by the Peers, chiefly by Longuevil, Nemours, Mayne, and Roban, who betake themselves to the Queen Mother; but the King preventing them by the faithfull service of Conde, possesseth Cain in Normandy, before the Princes could unite their Forces. More of their towns submit to the King: At length the Queens army being defeated, the Princes were brought to such a strait, that they were faine to Petition for pardon, and the Queen Mother to acknowledge her sons milde Government: then the Kings army is turned upon Gascony; those of Bearn were commanded to restore to the Roman Clergy, their old Rites and Revenues, which they refusing to do, were suddenly surpris'd by the King, who having changed their Garisons, restores to the Catholicks their Churches, Honors, and Revenues, and so annexeth that Province which hitherto had enjoyed much freedome, to the Crown of France. This put the Protestants to new shifts and consultations, divers meetings to this purpose were had; a Synod is called at Rochel, which contrary to the Kings strict and peremptory command is held, to the undoing afterward of that town, and the Protestant cause in France; for the King subdued the Town of Saint John after a hard siege of 20 days, and beats down the Walls; the like he did to Clerak in Gascony, and many other Protestant Towns to the number of 60. he brings under his subjection, not without great slaughter of such as made resistance, for many skirmishes were fought. Montalban also is besieged a long time, but in vain; for sickness and the winter floods forced the besiegers to rise and be gone: Among divers that lost their lives here, Henry of Mayne, Viceroy of Gascony was one. After this, whilst the King was beleaguering Mugurt, Duke d' Luin, Master of the Horse (which place Ancre had before) in the midst of his honors and wealth, which was exceeding great, died in December: A sudden fire having in October before burned down the two bridges of the goldsmiths, and the exchange, to the great loss of the Merchants.

Pope Paul 5 died of an Apoplexie the 69 year of his age, and the 16 of his Pontificat: K. Lewis, the pacification being broke, besiegeth and taketh Montpellier with some other Protestant towns, at last upon the sight of so much blood shed, and so many slaughtered men, he comes to a new agreement, at which divers of the Pontificall side were offended. At Rome Gregory 15. called before Alexander Lodoisius, who succeeded Pope Paul 5. died of a Palsie: To whom succeeded Cardinall Maphaus Berberin, he took the name of Urban 8. In France things being somewhat quieted, King Lewis enters into league with the Venetians and Savoyens against Spain, for regaining of the Valtelin, which after many skirmishes and towns taken, falls wholly into the power of these Confederates, whereupon the French & Savoyens enter Italy, and make war against Genua, for furnishing the Spaniard with money and provisions; but a new fire of civil war breaking out in France, calls home the French forces out of Italy. The Duke of Sonlize with the Rochellers had defeated the Kings fleet in a sea-fight; whereupon under Montmerancy the King renewes his sea-fight, and beats Sonlize, who presently fled into England. Rochel is besieged both by sea and land, divers Forts being erected against it, divers eruptions are made from the town, divers Petitions are exhibited for peace, but all in vain; the Protestants complain that the Articles of the last pacification were not kept by the King, that they had not as was promised the free use of their Religion, that the Forts set up against Rochel, were not as yet demolished, that the Synodical meetings of the Ministers were hindered; hereupon the two brothers, Roban and Sonlize, the chief of the Protestant Party in France, implore the assistance of England, which now stood not upon good terms

*An. Christi* terms with France, since the sending away of Queen *Marie French* Clergy, for being too bulie about her confessions and penances; the *English* also had taken some *French* Ships carrying provision for the *Spaniard*, and the *French* had made a stay of all *English* goods there, for satisfying their losses: Hereupon a fleet under the Duke of *Buckingham* is sent to the Isle of *Ree*, lying over against *Rotchel*; at first he drove the *French* into the Castle, but afterward out of carelesnes he suffered his forces to be cut off, and so returns home with loss and dishonor. Vendome the Kings bastard brother is imprisoned. *Diguier* lately converted to the Church of *Rome*, is made Master of the horse, Cardinal *Richelieu* being Admirall of France, is employed against *Rotchel*. Conde rageth with fire and sword against their Protestant towns of *Gascony*, putting all ages and sexes promiscuously to death; but at last hath a defeat given him by *Rohan*; the *Rotchelers* stoutly resisted the siege, so long as their hopes of *English* aid, and their provisions continued, but when both failed them, & famine began to prevail, their stout hearts were forced to yeild, for the harbour was so stopped and barricadoed, that ships could not get in to relieve them, nor return the provisions which *Buchingham* had borrowed from them, therefore they surrender the Town, promise to pay the fine laid on them, and to maintain the Kings Garrison there, till they build him a Castle within the walls, upon their own charges; upon this they obtain their lives, estates, and Religion: In this siege there died by famine and the sword, 15 thousand of the besieged, the plague also raged in the Kings camp: *Rohan* and *Sonlize* are both comprized within these articles of *Rotchel* conditionally they restore what they yet withhold from the King; *Montalban* also with some other places are included in the same peace, if within 3 months they lay down arms, and submit to the King; upon this peace between the King and his Protestant subjects: a peace also is concluded between *England* and *France*, by the death of *Buckingham*, who began and fomented this war.

1629 France being now at peace with *England*, is better able to assist the Duke of *Nivern*, *Charles* by name, to recover his right in *Mantua*, which he claimed (his cousin *German Vincentius* being now dead) as his due both by will and propinquitie of blood: this Principality he seised on without acquainting *Cesar* Lord of the Fees, the *Spaniard* and *Savoyen* stormed at this, who had an old quarrel with the Dukes of *Mantua* about *Monferrat*; so now *France* and *Spain* renew their old strife. The *Savoyen* sides with *Spain*, the *Venetians* with *Mantua*, *Naples*, *Sicily*, *Millan* prepare for war. The quarrel in *France* between *Gasto* Duke of *Orleans*, and Cardinal *Richelieu*, took rise from the desire the Monsieur had to coyn money with his own stamp, as being next heir to the Crown, and a privilege equally belonging to him, and to the King; this was denied and refused by the Cardinal, wherefore the Duke in anger leaves the Court.

1632 The King by the Cardinals advice, set a Guard upon his Brother, this the Duke considering to be both dangerous and disgracefull, withdraws himselfe privately thence, and raiseth an Army of Malecontents: A battle is fought, in which the Duke is defeated, and *Montmorancie* taken in the skirmish; the King to appease all civill differences, is content to pardon his brother, and his Courtiers; he commands all foraigne Souldiers to depart the Kingdome, *Montmorancie* is required by the King, to be left to his mercy; pardon also is promised to the Gentry and Judges of the Dukes partie, upon their humble Petition; the Bishops of his Faction are put over to the censure of the next Synod, so peace upon these terms being settled, the Duke enters *Lyons* in great State; but *Montmorancie*, with whom the King was

*An. Christi* was more implacable, is condemned of High Treason: Much intercession was made for him, but in vain. His head is cut off at *Tolouse* the thirty fifth year of his age. *Gasto* being struck with this rigour, departeth the kingdom, and wrote back to the King, that he was not now tied to any Articles or Covenants, yet promisseth that he will act nothing to the prejudice of his Native Country.

## CHAP. XXIV.

A Prosecution of the English History, under the reigns of Henry the 4<sup>th</sup>, Henry the 5<sup>th</sup>, and Henry the 6<sup>th</sup>; from the year 1399. till the year 1460. containing divers passages of the French and Scots affairs.



1399 Henry the fourth of Bullinbrook, Duke of *Hartford*, son and heir to *John* of Gaunt, the younger brother of *Lionel* D. of *Clarence*, is elected and Crowned King, his predecessor *King Richard* being deposed as is already said. Which deposition is condemned by *John* Bishop of *Carlisle*, in that first Parliament assembled by *King Henry* 4. wherein he shows the King was worse used then ordinary Malefactors, because they are not condemned (as the King was) before they have answered to the objected crimes. But the Bishop for this speech was attached by the Earl Marshal, and imprisoned in the Abby of *S. Albons*; then was the Crown intailed to *King Henry* and his heirs, and forthwith *Henry* the Kings eldest son is made Prince of *Wales*, D. of *Cornwall*, and Earl of *Chester*. After the Parliament was ended, the King is invited to *Oxford*, where solemn Jufts were to be holden, by *Edw. Plantagenet* Duke of *Aumarle*, *Thomas* Holland Duke of *Surry*, *John* Holland his brother Duke of *Exeter*, both half brothers to *King Richard*, *John* Montague Earl of *Salisbury*, *Hugh* Spencer Earl of *Glooucester*, with others, who pretending a Triumph, intended the Kings destruction privately, by Indentures under their hands and seals. All these plotters met at *Oxford*, attended with a strong guard of Archers, only *Aumarle* was absent, because his father the old Duke, having found out the plot, by the Indentures, which by chance he spied in his sons breast, made haste to acquaint the King therewith, which the young Duke perceiving, being well mounted, out-rode his father, and came to *Windsor* Castle, where the King then was, preparing for his *Oxford* journey, which he diverted by revealing the Treason, and so obtained his pardon. The King presently raiseth an Army to suppress those conspirators, who being informed that their plot was discovered, they disguised one *Magdalen* (who was one of the plotters, and much resembled the deposed King) in royal robes, giving out he was *King Richard*, and so with all their Troops they march towards *London*, against the King, who was now on his march with twenty thousand men towards them. The noise of the Kings approach so disheartned the companions of these traitorous Lords, that they ran away and left their Lords helpless, and comfortless, who shortly after in their flight are taken and executed.

The King being delivered from this danger, caused *Richard* to be murdered. (as is said) lest in his name the like Treason might be attempted: *Charles* the sixth of *France*, Father in Law to *King Richard*, hearing of his sufferings and wrongs, but not as yet of his death, raiseth an Army to relieve him, and to be revenged on *King Henry*. He was marched as far as *Piccardy*, where he understood that *King Richard* was dead, whereupon he changeth his resolution, knowing he could do the dead no good, and disbandeth his Army: Yet



*An. Christi* shortly after, purposing to be revenged on King Henry, by taking his towns in Aquitan, raiseth another Army; but before he was ready, King Henry was landed in France with an English Army, conquered by Piercy Earl of Worcester, which caused King Charles alter his minde, and disband his forces. Yet Henry distrusting the weakness of his Title, desires that Isabet King Charles daughter, and wife sometime to King Richard, should be married to his eldest son Prince of Wales, which Charles refused to do, wherefore she is conveyed into France, and married to her cousin Charles, her uncles eldest son, the Duke of Orleans. The noise of the late Treason, of the French preparation, of the murder of King Richard, animated the Scots and Welch against him, Owen Glendok spoils the Marches near him: The Lord Grey of Ruthen, and Edmund Mortimer, rightful heir to the Crown, are sent against him; but they lost the battel, and are taken prisoners: Edmund is kept in a dark Dungeon, on hope the King would ransom him, which was least of his thoughts, knowing it was more safe for him, to have Edmund a prisoner, then at liberty. The Scots invade the Northern parts, but are repulsed by King Henry, who pursues them with fire and sword into their own Country. But he was not sooner gone, when they return with twenty thousand spoiling Northumberland, Sir Henry Hotspur son, and heir to Henry Piercy, fell upon them, killed ten thousand, and took five hundred prisoners; among which were four Earls. The next year following, one thousand two hundred Gentlemen are sent to Glendok, from France, to be Leaders of his disordered Rout: But twelve of their best ships were drowned in a storm, the rest returned home with much difficulty. After this, twelve thousand French are sent into Wales, who safely landing, joyned with the Welch forces, consisting of ten thousand. King Henry in his own person marcheth with a strong army into Wales: Upon the report of which, the French doubting more of the Welch inconstancy, then of their own power or valour, return to their ships without striking stroak: Hereupon the Welch fled and vanished, so that the King finding no enemy to fight with, returns in peace.

King Henry to strengthen himself with friends abroad, against his troubles at home, married with Fane, Widow of Fohn, Duke of Britany, and gave his eldest daughter Blanch in marriage to William Duke of Bavarr, son and heir apparent of Lodowick Emperour; then he matched Philip his youngest daughter to the King of Denmark. After this, Piercy of Northumberland, Piercy of Worcester, and Henry Hotspur, are required by the King to deliver up to him their Scots prisoners. This they refuse to do, as being against the Law of Arms, which caused some distaste, so that discontent daily rising, the Piercies desire the King to ransom Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March, their imprisoned Cousin, hoping thereby to restore him to his Crown; this is denied by the King as dangerous to his own safety, giving out that he voluntarily become Owens prisoner, to countenance the Welch rebellion; and treacheries against his Crown. Upon this, the Piercies in anger paid his ransom, and set him free on their own cost, and withal made a League with Owen Glendok, to depose King Henry, with whom also joyned the Scots, the Earl of Stafford, and Scroop, Arch-Bishop of York, the beheaded Earl of Salisburies brother, with many others; then they published and sent him these ensuing Articles: 1. That against his Oath he took after his banishment, never to meddle with the King nor Crown, hath wickedly seized on the Crown, and made himself King. 2. That he had imprisoned King Richard, and caused him to be murdered. 3. That he hath ever since unjustly kept the Crown from Edmund Mortimer, the true heir, as being of Clarence the elder brother to Fohn of Gant, father to the usurping King. 4. That he had imposed on the people divers needles and heavy Taxes. 5. That against his Coronation Oath, he had procured Burgysships for the Parliament, of such as would serve his turn. 6. That

6. That he hath hitherto denyed to ransom his Cousin, giving out falsely he was become a voluntary prisoner, to colour the Welch Treason and Rebellion. And so upon these Articles, they desie the King, vow his destruction, and the Earl Mortimers restitution. Hereupon Armies are raised on both sides; and near Shrewsbury a battel is fought, in which a great part of the Scots who bravely assaulted the King, are cut off; Hotspur, with some other prime Leaders, and many thousands more are slain, Worcester is taken prisoner, the rest fled: On the Kings part were lost one thousand six hundred; of the enemies six thousand, of which, thirty six the King slew with his own hand. Earl Douglas for his valour in a duel with the King, is set free without ransom. The next day thanks are given to God: Worcester is beheaded, and many of the Ring-leaders are hanged, drawn, and quartered. The King to prosecute his Victory, sends his Army under the Prince of Wales, against the Rebels, but they were fled: Glendok forsaken, and at last famished in the Woods, many of whose consorts were taken, and executed. Piercy of Northumberland voluntarily submits to the Kings mercy, protesting his ignorance in that Treason; the King for that time gave him good words, with liberty to come and go, because he had the Castle of Barwick, and some other strong holds in his possession. After this, Lewis Duke of Orleans, sends a challenge to King Henry; to whom he returns this answer, that his former actions could acquit him from the name of a coward; that Kings ought not to expose themselves to danger, but when necessity required; that the Duke was not his equal, & that notwithstanding he would at all times be ready to repress the Dukes insolencies, or rash attempts on him or his people. The Duke hereupon in a rash passion, besiegeth the Town of Vergien in Guien, where having lost many of his men after three months siege, was forced to rise and depart with dishonour. The Duke of Burgoin also, by the French Kings leave, raiseth six thousand men at Armos, one thousand five hundred Crois-bows, and twelve thousand foot men, for regaining of Callice. But the French King hearing what preparations are making in England, and considering the difficulty of this attempt, requires the Duke to desist from his intended enterprise. This he conceived to proceed from the Duke of Orleans, who was jealous of Bourgoin valour. King Henry having escaped two dangers by rebellions, is now like to fall into the third, plotted by Piercy of Northumberland, Scroop Arch-Bishop of York, Mowbray Earl Marshal, and by the Lords Hastings, Faulconbridge, Bardolph, and others. But the plot in the infancy of it, was discovered; therefore the King comes unexpectedly into the North, with an Army, surprised the Lords, and struck off their heads, but Piercy and Bardolph fled. Piercy afterwards returns from France into Scotland, where he is promised aid against the King; to prevent which, the Prince of Wales is sent with an Army thither, where he rageth with fire and sword, recovers the Castles of Barwick, and Anwick, and makes the Scots embrace a peace. After this the King crossing the Thames from Kent, to Essex, under the conduct of the Lord of Camois, was like to be taken by French Pirates. The Lord was suspected and attached of Treason, but was cleared by his Peers; the Scots enter Northumberland with Piercy, and Bardolph, doing much mischief. King Henry upon this, levied a strong Army, but Sir Ralph Rokesby then Sheriff of that County, had defeated the Scots already, and had smote off the two Lords heads, which he sent to the King for presents. In the eleventh year of his Reign, a Parliament is called, some good Laws are enacted; the Kings three younger sons are made Thomas Duke of Clarence, Fohn Duke of Bedford, and Humphry Duke of Gloucester. The rest of this Kings life was peaceable; he intended warres against the Turk, and was for that purpose providing ships, men, money, and other requisits; but was hindered by an Apoplexy, which at last killed him, the forty six year of his life, and 14 of his reign. On his death-bed he caused the

*An. Christi* Crown to be placed by him on his pillow, fearing some other might take it that had better right. The Prince thinking he had been dead, takes away the Crown; whereat the King started up, asking who had taken away the Crown: The Prince answered, that it was he; then falling back into his bed, sighed and said, My Son, My Son, God knows what right I had to this Crown, and how I have enjoyed it: to whom the Prince replied, good Father comfort your self; the Crown you have, and if you die, I will take it, and keep it with my sword, as you have done; and then the King died: In this Kings time Guild-Hall in London was built.

1412

1413

King Henry 5. succeeded, who of a wild and loose young Prince, became a wife and solid King, after he had put away his lewd consorts. He begins his Reign with the honourable Translation of King Richards body from Langlie, which with pomp he interred at Westminster by Queen Anne his first wife. The next year he calls a Parliament at Leicester, where he is Petitioned to suppress the Religious houses of the king dom, because they were abused; the Revenues of which houses were proportioned to yield to the king the annual rent of twenty thousand pounds, and would also maintain fifteen Earls, fifteen hundred knights, and above six thousand men at arms, besides almshouses for the poor. But to divert this violent stream, Chichly Arch-Bishop of Canterbury being solicited by the Abbots, discovers to the king his right and title to the Crown of France, shewing the Clergies willingness in furthering his regaining of it, by offering to him a vast sum of money: This speech dashed the Petition; and now all mens desires are bent on France: For this cause the Duke of Exeter, the Kings Uncle, the Arch-Bishop of Dublin, the Lord Grey, High Admirall of England, and the Bishop of Norwich, attended with five hundred Horse, were sent to Charles sixt of France, to demand that Crown, with the Duchies of Aquitan, Normandy, and Anjou, with the Counties of Poyton and Main; which if they may be delivered up peaceably, then King Henry will marry Katherine the French Kings daughter, and endow her with all the said Dutcheffe and Provinces; otherwise he would gain them by the sword. The French King amazed at this message, desired some time to deliberate, promising to send Ambassadors of his own to King Henry, whose youth the Dolphin so slighted, that he sent him a Tun of Tennis Balls as a present, fitter for him to play with, then the Conquest of France. King Henry was so incensed at this scoff, that he swore he would ere long tosse so many Iron Balls in France, that the strongest Rackets there should not be able to return them. The Dolphin hearing of the great preparations in England, sends to King Henry, that if he would live peaceably with France, and take to wife his sister Katherine, then he should have with her a large sum of mony, with some small Territories in that kingdom; the French Ambassadors were honourably used and entertained at the Kings Table, who at last depart with no other answer, but that King Henry will have his Provinces and Seigniories which he demands. With this he prepares for his march, having first fortified the borders from Scottish invasions, and made his mother Queen Regent of England, in his absence. Then he sends Letters of defiance to the French King; but in the mean while Richard Earl of Cambridge, brother to the Duke of York, Henry Lord Scroop, and Sir Thomas Gray, upon great rewards promised them by the Dolphin, conspired either to kill King Henry in his Tent, or to deliver him unto the French King; but the Treason is discovered; the Traitors apprehended, arraigned, and executed the next day.

The King being landed in Normandy, neer Harflew upon the Sein, besieged it thirty seven days; which the Dolphin not being able to relieve, was surrendered to Henrie, who sacked it, and ranomed the inhabitants, which mony, and goods, he bestowed on his soldiers. Then having left his uncle Thomas Duke of Exeter, as Governour there, with thirty five Knights, and one thousand

*An. Christi* sand five hundred soldiers, resolves to go to Calice by Land, for the Winter coming sooner then usually, caused fluxes, feavers, and great mortality in his Army; for there died above one thousand five hundred men, besides the Earl of Stafford, Bishop of Norwich, and some other Lords; the Kings strength then consisted only in two thousand horse, and thirteen thousand Archers: yet the French durst not adventure upon them, though the Dolphin who managed this war, by reason of his fathers infirmity, had assembled above thirty thousand men: So that the English burned and spoiled all in their way, without resistance. The French (then at Robau) being unwilling the English should pass through France unfought with, adviseth with his Council what he should do; after some debate, he was advised to fight, who presently sends a defiance to King Henry, whose answer was, that his men were now sick, and in want, yet strong enough to repel all violence, if he were interrupted in his march. A great Army of French being assembled, they intend to fight the English, who therefore place themselves in good array near Agencourt; the Constable of France accompanied with ten thousand horse-men, besides footmen, pages, and other attendants, draw near to the English Army; that night was spent by the French in jollity, presuming an absolute victory the next day, because of their multitudes, and the English paucity: so that before hand, they cast lots for their prisoners. The French Army is divided into three battalies, the first consisting of about 16000, was led by the Constable, the second or middle being bigger then the other, is commanded by the Dukes of Barre, and of Alanson: the third was Marshallled by the Earl of Mark, Damp, and others. King Henris Vaunt-guard consisting of Archers only, is conducted by the Duke of York. The main Battel is commanded by the King himself, in which were his strongest Bill men; with him were the Duke of Gloucester, Earl Marshal, Oxford and Suffolk: the rear-ward is directed by Thomas Duke of Exeter, the Kings Uncle. And to keep off the French horse from the English foot, they are all invironed with stakes headed with sharp irons at both ends, for the easier pitching of them in the ground. An Ambush also of English Archers is placed within a new-cast hedge, which galled the French horse; so that their first battail is overthrown, not only of the horse, but of the foot also, who were wounded and troden to death by the disordered horse; many of them also were knockt down by the English Axes and Bills. Then the French main battail is assaulted by the English, who being courageously charged by the French horse, retreated orderly, and quickly slipped behind their stakes, to train the French horse upon them; who ignorantly rushing forward, goared their horses so, that the main battail was put out of order, and vanquished. In this encounter the King fought hand to hand with the Duke of Alanson, whom he felled to the ground, whose life he would have saved, but the Guard unadvisedly slew him. The third battail consisting of greatest numbers, but worst men, cowardly ran away, casting down their arms, and many on their knees craving mercy; the King gave order they should be received as prisoners; but whilst he was pursuing the chase, 600 French horse entered the Kings Camp, weakly guarded, rifling all that they could, and slew many of the Guarders, which caused a great out-cry: the King hearing it, supposed a fresh Army had been come to fight him again; whereupon Proclamation is made that all ordinary prisoners should be slain, lest they should endanger the Army in the new conflict. A pitifull slaughter is made among them; which cost the K. many sighs and tears, when he understood that no fresh Army was come.

Though the K. and his men were tired with that days service, yet fearing the worst, he puts his whole Army in Battalia; when presently the Earls of Marle and Fahlconbridge, assailed him with six hundred men; but they were quickly overthrown and slain. Towards the Evening of this day, the King with

*An. Christi* with his Army gave solemn thanks to God for his Victory, and then gave leave to his soldiers to rattle those they had slain. Which being done, he marcheth into *Calice*, where he is received with great joy. In this battail were slain the Constable and Admiral of *France*, the Duke of *Alanson*, the Duke of *Brabant*, the Duke of *Barre*, with divers Earls, twenty five Lords, eight thousand Knights, Esquires, and Gentlemen, besides multitudes of common soldiers; the Duke of *Orleans*, the Duke of *Burbon*, with divers Lords, many were taken prisoners. On the *English* side were slain the Duke of *York*, the Earl of *Suffolk*, with six hundred others: So after the King had refreshed himself and Army some time in *Calice*, he returns with much spoil and wealth into *England*, and is received into *London* with much triumph. Not long after this battail, the *Dolphin* died; the Earl of *Arminack* is made high Constable of *France*, and none put in offices but stout men. At the same time *Thomas* Duke of *Exeter*, Governour of *Harflew*, issued out of the Town with three thousand men, spoiling all the Country, till almost he came to *Rohan*. The new Constable with five hundred horse, made the Duke retire, but orderly; the *French* were so hot in the pursuit, and came so near *Harflew*, that the rest of the *English* within issued out, and being joined with the Dukes forces, put the *French* to the flight for two miles, taking divers prisoners, which they dismissed, not without ransom. The Emperour *Sigismund* came into *England* to mediate for peace, but could not: After great entertainment, King *Henry* accompanies him to *Calice*, whether *Henry* of *Burgoin* upon hostages repaired. A Peace is concluded between them concerning *Flanders* and *Artois* only; this peace made the *French* jealous of the Duke, as of a secret enemy to *France*. Not long after *Harflew* is besieged by the Constable, both on sea and land: but this Fleet of five hundred *French* ships, is defeated by the *English* Fleet of two hundred sail, under *John* Duke of *Bedford*, King *Henries* brother: Many *French* were killed, and many sent prisoners to *England*. Upon this the Constable raiseth his siege, and the Duke of *Bedford* new victualled, manned, and fortified the Town, and so returned to *England*.

King *Henry* understanding that the *French* Peers were fallen out into divers factions, upon private grudges, he calls a Parliament, shewing his right to *France*, his opportunity now to regain it, his good success hitherto, the many wrongs done by the *French* upon the *English*, and withall his want of money. These motives were so inducing, that money is presently granted, and with cheerfulness levied. Hereupon *John* Earl of *Huntington* son to that *D.* of *Exeter*, beheaded under King *Henry* the 4. being sent out to scowre the seas, fell upon nine *Carricks* of *Genua*, hired for the *French* Kings service; six of which he sunk, the other three he took with great store of money and mony worth. King *Henry* shortly after landeth with his Army in *Normandy*, before the Castle of *Touque*, which he took; the report of this made the *Normans* flye all to their strong Towns, so that the *English* without resistance, march, and pitch before *Cane*, which after long and stout resistance by the *Normans*, and many furious assaults by the *English* is taken, the Townsmen having slung down their arms, and submitted to mercy. The Army being heaped together in the Market place, and kept with a guard of *English*, the King enters the Town, and in the great Church gives solemn thanks for his victory. Then he assembles the inhabitants at their Senate, where he censured the chief of those who refused his mercy, some to death, some to ransoms, which he divideth amongst his soldiers. The *Dolphin* and Constable, finding a want of money, hindered their actions; they take from the Queen Mother a great mass of money, which she had scraped together, which so exasperated her, that she got *John* Duke of *Burgoin*, their mortal enemy, to be protectour of the King during his infirmity, and Regent of *France*. Hereupon grudges and quarrels arise, the two factions of the *Dolphin* and Regent labouring to undo

*An. Christi* undo each other; so the publick good is neglected, and the *English* animated in the Conquests, especially in *Normandy*, where the people for want of aid from *France*, are willing to submit to the *English*; therefore the King proclaims that all who would yeild and become his subjects, should enjoy their own, and receive his protection: Whence most of the greatest Towns there yeild themselves into the hands of King *Henry*, and his two brothers, *Clarence* and *Gloucester*. All which the King strongly fortieth; *English* officers are placed also in *Cane*.

Whilst the King is thus employed, he understands that *Rohan* is manned, and strongly fortified, and that the whole wealth of the Country is conveyed thither; therefore he layeth siege to that City, and chains the River, having made a Bridge also over it, to keep off all relief by water. The Earl of *Warwick* with an hundred good ships enters the mouth of the River, and causeth the Town of *Caudeback* give them a quiet passage towards *Rohan*, promising to yeild it to King *Henry*, if he took *Rohan*, otherwise to let him return peaceably: so he goeth for *Rohan*. At this siege one thousand six hundred *Irish* under the Lord of *Kilmay* repair to the King, and are entertained by him. The King at first assaulted the City, but to spare his men, resolves to starve it; for there were at that time in it, above two hundred and ten thousand souls: therefore he keeps in the Townsmen by his Archers, and a deep Ditch. This siege continued above 5 months; in which time, many were forced to eat Dogs, Cats, and such vermin; multitudes of the poorer sort were thrust out of the gates, and so perished with famine. At last some Commissioners are sent to desire a conference, which was granted; so the next morning four Knights, four learned men, and four Burgeses, all cloathed in black, repaired to the King, and told him, that it stood not with the honour of a brave Commander to subdue people by famine, but by valour; that therefore if he would permit the sick, with the women and children, to pass through his Army, and then assault their walls, he should find men to buckle with! The King being offended at this boldness, replied, that he was not to be taught, neither when to assault their City, nor with what weapon, fire, sword, and famine, being equal instruments of destruction, and indifferently made use of by the best Commanders of all ages; therefore he tells them, that neither will he suffer their weak people to pass through his Army, nor will he relieve them, as he hath done some already, being uncharitably thrust out, and exposed to all misery. Lastly, he tells them, that he who hath ventured through all their Countries, and taken their strongest holds, dares assault the Town, and take it, when he thinks good: Thus having spoken, he commanded they should dine with his Chief Officers of State. After dinner, they repair to the King again, humbly desiring a Truce for eight days, to resolve upon the best course, which was assented to by the King.

During the eight days Cessation from Arms, many consultations were had, but nothing done. One day more is desired, and granted; mean while the commons do mutiny in the Town, accusing and threatening their Magistrates, and Commanders; who fearing the worst, made them all meet in the Market place, and demanded what they would have; they answer, a rendition of the City to King *Henry*. So after four days Truce more, the City is surrendered. *Burgundy* fearing ensuing dangers, strives to reconcile the two Kings, hoping thereby to avenge himself upon the *Dolphin*, and the Constable. Many parties were had, but to no end. The King at last told the Duke, that either he would have *Katherin* the Kings daughter, with all the Seignories demanded, or else he would drive both his Master, and himself out of that kingdom. The Duke replied, that the thing was not so soon done as spoken: Hereupon the Duke reconciles himself to the *Dolphin*, at least in outward shew; which was a great hinderance to King *Henries* resolutions, who to shew he was not dismayed,

*An. Christi* maid, created some Earls, and suddenly takes *Ponthoys*, with one thousand five hundred men; thence he marched to *Paris*, and sat down before it two days, but left it again, by reason of his paucity: Mean time, all the Towns of *Normandy* yeild to King *Henry*, except Mount *S. Michael*, which was never besieged. But whilst *Burgundy* sought to reconcile himself more fully to the *Dolphin*, is treacheously murdered by the same *Dolphin*'s procurement. At which, *Philip* Earl of *Carolois* is so grieved for his fathers death, that he meant to put away his wife, the *Dolphin*'s sister, but that he was dissuaded by his friends. At length he strives to make peace between the two Crowns, which after much adoe, was concluded, and King *Henry* married to the Lady *Katherin*, in whose right he is proclaimed Regent and heir apparent of *France*. The Articles of Peace were these: 1. King *Charles* and Queen *Isabel* his wife, should be styled the Father and Mother of King *Henry*. 2. King *Charles*, and Queen *Isabel*, during their lives, should enjoy their Regall Dignities and Revenues. 3. That Queen *Katherin* should have in *England* a Dowry of twenty thousand Marks. 4. That King *Henry* should not be styled King of *France*, during the life of King *Charles*. 5. That after the death of King *Charles*, the Crown of *France* should come to King *Henry*, and to his heirs. 6. That King *Henry* should be Regent of *France*, because of the Kings infirmities. 7. That the Court of Parliament in *France*, should enjoy their accustomed Priviledges. 8. That King *Henry* should assist, defend, and protect the Peers, Clergy, and people of *France*. 9. That he shall suppress intestine broils, and administer justice. 10. That he shall place none in offices of Justice and Government, but such as are every way able. 11. That he shall strive to reduce the *Dolphin* and Constable to the obedience of King *Charles*. 12. That he shall cause all to swear obedience to king *Charles*, during his life, and after him to king *Henry* and to his heirs. 13. That all possessions won from rebellious subjects (excepting *Normandy*) should be converted solely to the benefit of the French King, except the offenders submit. 14. That *Normandy* after king *Charles* his death, shall submit to the Scepter of *France*. 15. That the people of *France*, be not burthened with Taxes, nor undue levying thereof. 16. That after king *Charles* his death, *France* and *England* should be governed by one man only, without subordination, each kingdom retaining their priviledges. 17. That the subjects of both kingdoms live quietly and lovingly together. 18. That neither the French, nor English king, shall make peace, with the pretended *Dolphin*, except they two concur in the same with the Duke of *Burgundy*. 19. That none but French attend the person of king *Charles*. 20. That both the kings, with their people, shall ratifie by their hands and seals, and swear to these Articles.

These Articles were proclaimed in *England* and *France*, and ratified by oaths; then both kings accompanied with young king *JAMES* of *Scotland*, the Duke of *Burgundy*, the Prince of *Orange*, twenty one Earls, forty five Barons, besides multitudes of knights and others, make war in *Burgoin*, taking in all places that had sided with the *Dolphin*. The murderers of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, are apprehended, sent into *Paris*, where shortly after they were sentenced, and executed. King *Henry* is proclaimed Regent and heir apparent to the Crown of *France*, first at *Paris*, then at *London*. At *Paris* the two kings kept their *Christmases*: Such was king *Henries* entertainment and bounty, that he wins the love of the French. The late murdered Duke of *Burgoin*'s widow, before both the kings at *Paris*, complains of the *Dolphin*, and seven others, as murderers of her Husband. All these are cited to appear, who failing, are proscribed, that is, banished, degraded, and divested of all their Estates. The *Dolphin* hearing this, goeth to *Languedoc*, where he is aided with men and mony, by *Arminac*, the Constable that was. After this king *Henry* and his wife, go to *Rohan*, where they receive homage of the Nobles

of *Normandy*, for that Dutchy then having left his brother *Thomas* Duke of *Clarence*, General of *France* and *Normandy*, and *Salisbury* the said Dukes Deputy; he with his wife go to *Calice*, and so to *London*, where they are received with much joy: and shortly after, the Queen is Crowned at *Westminster*. Mean while *Alanson* the *Dolphin*'s Lieutenant General, levied a great Army, against whom *Clarence* marcheth with his *Normandy* Garisons, and pitched near *Angiers* in *Anjou*. One *Forgusa* a *Lumbard*, to whom Duke *Clarence* trusted too much, betrayed him, by making him believe that the French Army was small, disordered, and inconsiderable; wherefore he marcheth with his horse only, leaving his Archers behind, and falling into the Ambushments of his enemies unawares, was forced to fight upon great disadvantages, having four for one against him; and at last after he had stoutly a long time defended himself, was totally overthrown.

In this battel were slain of the French, above 1000 two hundred, of the English, the Duke of *Clarence*, the Earls of *Tankerville*, and *Kent*, the Lord *Ross*, and about two thousand more. The Earls of *Somerset*, *Suffolk*, and *Perch*, the Lord *Fitzwater*, and many others are taken prisoners; Sir *Thomas Beauford*, Commander of the Archers, understanding that *Clarence* was betrayed, hastned to succour him; but came too late, the battel was fought: the French upon the news of *Beaufords* coming, were fled, with their prisoners and booty. So finding the dead bodies, he buries them, and sends the corps of Duke *Clarence* into *England*, where it was buried at *Canterbury*, near his Father King *Henry* 4. The news of this defeat being come into *England*, the King grieved much for the loss, chiefly of his brother. Then he sends into *Normandy*, as successor to *Clarence*, the Earl of *Mortaign*, brother to *Somerset*, lately taken; and whichall calls a Parliament, shewing how needful it was to send an Army against the *Dolphin*: For undertaking of which business, he wanted not men, but mony. Whereupon the Temporalty gave him one fifteen, and the Clergy two; and for avoiding expence of time, the Bishop of *Winchester*, the Kings Uncle, disbursed twenty thousand pounds, which were repaid him out of the fifteen. An Army of four thousand men at Arms, with twenty four thousand Archers, is raised and sent to *Calice*, under *John* Duke of *Bedford*, the Kings brother, whom the King in his own person followed. Who understanding that the *Dolphin* with seven thousand men had besieged *Chartiers*, he marcheth directly thither; in the way he was met by the Duke of *Burgundy*, who brought four thousand men to him. But the *Dolphin* distrusting his own strength, raiseth his siege. Hereupon the King sends *Burgundy* into *Piccardie*, to suppress *S. Jacques Harcourt*; King *JAMES* of *Scotland* in the mean time, besiegeth the Town of *Direx*, and by storm takes it. King *Henry* pursues the *Dolphin* from *Tours* to *Burgys* in *Berie*, but being unwilling to tire out his men in long pursuits, he returns over the river of *Loire*, taking in Towns and Castles by the way. Mean while news is brought that Queen *Katherin* was delivered of a young *Henry* at *Windsor*, of whom the King spake thus: [I *Henry*, born at *Monmouth*, shall remain but a short time, and gain much; but *Henrie* born at *Windsor*, shall reign long, and lose all.] After this, the King takes by force the Town of *Meux*, in *Brie*; hereupon the other Towns yeilded. In the interim, the *Dolphin* falls with fire and sword upon *Burgoin*'s Country, and besiegeth *Casney*, the Duke sends to the king for aid, who himself in person marcheth thither with great Forces; but by the way he fell sick, and so was fain to send his brother *John* Duke of *Bedford*: whereupon the *Dolphin* raised his siege, and retired into *Berie*, the King is carried unto *Bois* in *Vincennes*, where he died; before his death, he called to him *John* Duke of *Bedford*, and *Humphrie* Duke of *Gloucester*, his brothers: he makes *John* Regent of *France*, and Lieutenant General of *Normandie*; and *Humphrie* Protector of *England*, and of his sons person.

Then

An.Christi

1422

Then exhorting them with his Nobles that were present, to keep friendship with *Burgundy*, unity among themselves, loyalty to his young son; to take care of his afflicted Queen, to maintain what he had conquered, to prosecute the war against the Dolphin and *Alanson*; he thanked God for all his conquests, and so departed the 38 year of his age, and the 10 of his reign; his body is conveyed into *England*, and honorably interred at *Westminster*. The Queen afterward married to *Owen Tudor*, by whom she had three sons, *Edmund* Earl of *Richmond*, Father to *Henry* 7. King of *England*. 2<sup>d</sup>. *Jasper* Earl of *Pembroke*. And 3<sup>d</sup>. *Owen*. In this Kings time, *Sir John Oldcastle*, who in the right of his wife, was called Lord *Cobham*, 10 caused great troubles in the Kingdome, by maintaining *Wickliffs* opinions, which could not be suppressed till *Sir Robert Acton*, and divers others were condemned by the Clergy for Heresie, by the laitie for Treason, and so were hanged, and then burned gallows and all.

1423

King *Henry* the 6. at his Fathers death, was but 9 months old, the *French* King being dead, the people there began to shake off the *English* yoke, and to adhere onely to their new King *Charles*. The Lord *Grandvile* is sent to *Pont-Melance*, which he surpris'd; but not long after, *Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury* regained it to the *English*. The *Parisians* send to *England* for protection, which is promised. The league is renewed 20 between the Regent, and the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Britany*: The Regent marieth *Anne Burgundys* brother, but the wavering *Parisians*, diffiding in the *English* protection, desire King *Charles* to receive their City into his hands; which the Regent understanding, comes upon them suddenly with his Army, seisseth on the Citie, puts to death many of the chief plotters of this revolt, and Masters the Citizens with *English* Garisons. In the mean time the Lord *William Stewart* Constable of *Scotland*, with a strong Army besieges the Town of *Cravant* in *Burgundy*, which siege is raised by the Earl of *Salisbury*, with the loss of 21 hundred of his men, and 8000 of his enemies. After this the Earl is made Vicegerent of 30 *France*, *Bry*, and *Champagne*, and *Sir John Fastolf* Deputy of *Normandy*: The King of *Scots* is released and ransomed, who marieth with *Jane* the Kings Cousin German, and daughter to the deceased Earl of *Somerset*. The Protector sends 10000 men with money to the Regent in *France*: Divers Towns are taken and retaken; the Duke of *Britany* revolts to the *French*, and so did his brother *Arthur* Earl of *Richmond*, whom *Henry* 5 had made Earl of *Tury* in *Normandy*, and Governor there; whereupon the Regent besiegeth the Town, which promised to yeild, if help came not from the *French* King at a certain day: Messengers are permitted to goe and acquaint the enemy of all things. *Alanson* shortly after with 40 16000 *French* made shew to raise the siege, but did nothing, then he sits down before *Vernoyle*, giving out that he had defeated the Regents Army, which was false, yet by this falshood he got the Town; and by his retreat suffered the Regent to be Lord of *Turie*: Then the Regent gave battell to the *French* and *Scots* at *Vernoyle*: the fight lasts three hours; in the end the *English* got the day, who lost of their own men 21 hundred, of the *French* were slain 7000, of the *Scots* 2700, besides 5 Earls, 2 Vicounts, and 21 Barons: *Alanson* with divers prime men taken prisoners, *Vernoyle* is surrendred too, and fortified by the Regent, who thence goeth to *Rohan*, where he is joyfully received; then he sends 10000 men to *Mayne* under *Salisbury*, who won *Mainits*, and divers other Towns in that Province. *Richmond* now Constable of *France* with 40000 *Scots*, *French*, and *Britans*, besiegeth *Saint James* in *Bryson* defended onely by 600 *English*; but this handfull sallying out furiously on the enemy, and crying hideously *Saint George*, *Salisbury*, presently defeated this great Army

1425

An.Christi

my, supposing *Salisbury* with his Forces had been got into the Town; many of the enemie were drowned, more slain, some taken prisoners, but most ran away, leaving behinde them 14 piece of Ordnance, 40 barrels of powder, with match, wine, and other provisions; The new Constable to redeem his lost honor, burneth a few Villages in *Anjou*, having recollected his dispersed Forces.

But at home fell out a dangerous difference between the Protector and his Uncle *Henry* Bishop of *Winchester*; and Chancellor of *England*: For appeasing of which, the Regent makes a journey into *England*, 10 where by order of Parliament, the differences are composed and ended; in honor whereof the King kept a solemn feast. In the interim the Earl of *Warwick* the Regents Lieutenant in *France*, takes many places in *Mayne*, and is threatened by the *French* Bravadoes, to no purpose, for having made shew to fight, they run away: Things being quieted at home, the Regent with his Uncle, the Bishop of *Winchester* returns into *France*; and upon *Burgundies* intreaty he sets *Alanson* at liberty for the ranfome of 200 thousand crowns; which money he might have had again if he would have sworne allegiance to King *Henry* of *England*, which he would upon no terms consent to. About this time the Bishop of 20 *Winchester* was made a Cardinal at *Calice*, more for his wealth then for his learning; for he was a rich Prelat, but a poor Schollar. *Auranches* an *English* Garison in *Normandy* is besieged by *Rustian* Marshall of *Britany*; but the *English* sallied and defeated the Army, and took the Marshall prisoner. *Pontorson* is besieged by the *English* under *Warwick* and the Lord *Scales*, who foraged the enemies Countrie there about; and being encountered by some *French* Lords, and 6000 other Soldiers, he defeats them, and takes some of these Lords, with one thousand more prisoners: The Garison of *Saint Susan* surpriseth the Castle of *Ramfort*; which 30 twenty thousand *French* appointed to raise the siege of *Pontorson*, regains from the *English*, when in the mean while *Pontorson* is taken by *Warwick*, the City of *Mons* is betrayed by some of the Clergy and Magistrates within, who in the night murdered the *English* Guard that maintained the first watch, opened the Gates, and let in five hundred *French* men, who committed great slaughter there, the Earl of *Suffolk*, Governor of the Town, with most of the *English* Soldiers enter the Castle, and held out a siege, till the Lord *Talbot* in the night with seven hundred men, by the assistance of *Suffolk* and the others in the Castle, regained it; the *English* crying *S. George Talbot* so amazed the sleepe *French* in the dark, that many broke their necks over the walls, thirty Citizens, twenty 40 Priests, and fifteen Friars who had betrayed the Citie, were tortured to death as Traitors.

1427

About this time died the Duke of *Exeter*, the Kings Tutor, which charge was conferred on *Warwick*; and in his room was set up *Thomas Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*, who is sent into *France* with five thousand men, to which number as many more were added; with these he marcheth against *Orleans*, seated on the River of *Loyre*, it was strongly fortified by the Bastard and Bishop of that place, a Bulwark was erected on the Bridge, out of which issued the Bastard of *Orleans*, but was beaten back into the Town with the loss of his men, and of the Fort: About two 50 months after the Town was besieged, the Earl of *Salisbury* looking into the Town out at a window of the Tower within the Bulwark, was unhappily killed with a great shot, whose death was fatal to the *English*, who began now to decline in their victories. *Suffolk* is made General in that siege, whom the Regent furnisheth with new supplies by *Sir John Falstoph*; who in his return towards the siege, is set upon by 9000 *French*, under



*An. Christi* under Delabreth, and Steward, now Constable of France, who with five thousand five hundred of their men are slain, and eleven thousand taken prisoners.

This was called by the French the battel of herrings, because the English chief provision then was such Lenten Stuffe. Orleans being wearie of so long a siege, and finding the French aid failed them, sent to the Duke of Burgoin, to take them into his protection, to which he assented if the Regent would so agree thereunto; but he refused, thinking it a dishonour for King Henry to beat the Bush, and another to catch the Hare: Wherefore the Duke's affection to the English began to grow colde.

At last Alanfon in the night time (the English Watches being carelesse) conveyed many Regiments of men, and Provisions are conveyed into the Towne, so that shortly after they sallied out, slew six hundred of our men, and tooke two Bulwarks. They assaulted also Talboat, in the Bastile, who beat them back into the Towne with losse of their men. The next day Suffolke quitted the Siege; and was himselfe within few dayes after Besieged, and taken Prisoner, with his Brother, and many more, in the Towne of Iargxaux, by Alanfon, who kills all his Prisoners, except the former two. 1428

Alanfon's Army consisting of twenty three thousand men, was increased by the coming of Arthur of Brittan, Count Vendame, and many more, who fall upon Talbot, Scales, and Hungerford; as they were conducting five thousand men to Fortifie the Towne of Meun, these three are taken Prisoners after some bloudie blowes, and twelve hundred of their Company slaine. The Report of the French good Successes, made many Townes and Forts revolt to them: Hereupon the French King with a great Army enters Champaigne, takes Troyes, the Chiefe City of that Province; Challons and Rheims revolt to King Charles; upon this he is presently Crowned there; the report of whose Coronation, caused many places to rebell, and submit to the French King. 30

The Regent finding the French so fortunate in recovering their Townes, meanes to trie them in a Pitch'd Battell, therefore Summons King Charles to a Fight, who accepts of the Challenge; but when it came to the upshot, he raised his Camp in the night, and run away; the next morning the Regent pursues him, but could not induce him to fight; wherefore he returnes with his Army to Paris, where hearing of dayly revolts, marcheth out againe with his Army of ten thousand men, hoping to make the French (whose number was more then double) to ingage, but could not; about this time King Henry was Crowned. The Regent perceiving that the Townes of France generally revolted, resolves to make Normandy sure; therefore he repaires thither, calls a Parliament, and lets them know, the right King Henry had to that Dutchie, the miseries they endured under the French, and their happiness under the English Government, and withall promiseth them a further addition of immunities. Mean while King Charles labours to win the Duke of Burguoin by great promises, and shewes of grief, for the murthering of the Dukes father, with which passages the Duke acquaints the Regent; the King perceiving he could not win the Duke, sets down before Paris with his whole Army, scales the walls, and thinks to take it by storm, but is beat back by the English Garisons there. King Henry understanding of the daily revolts in France, from him, comes to Callice with a great Army, and by the way of Rohan marcheth to Paris, where he is appointed and crowned King of France, receiving homage and fealtie from the nobility and Citizens. At length a peace being urged by Pope Eugenius 4. both Kips condescend to a truce for 6 years, which

which lasted but awhile, for shortly after King Henrys return into England, Anne the Regents wife, and sister to the Burgundian died, whereby the Dukes affections to the Regent grew cold daily; the truce lately concluded, is broken by the French, who by secret underminings posselt themselves daily of towns and castles; they secretly convey 200 soldiers into the castle of Rohan, hoping to surprize it, but the treason is detected, and the conspirators driven into the dungeon, whence some are hanged, some tortured, some imprisoned, and a few ransomed. John Lord Talbot is now redeemed out of prison, who brings from England 800 men, and joynes with the Regent, he challengeth the French to fight, but they refused. About this time the Peasants of Normandy rebel, who marching towards Cane, used much cruelty, but they are quickly suppressed by the Earl of Arundel, and the L. Willoughby, who slew above 1000 of them, and put their ringleaders to death by tortures. The E. of Arundel as he was besieging Gerbery Castle, is shot with a Culvering, and being taken prisoner, shortly after dieth. The D. of Burbon after 18 years imprisonment is ransomed for 18000 pound; but died in London the same day he intended for France: The Regent and D. of Burgoin being exasperated against each other by some tale-tellers, were again reconciled by their friends, and so far as to meet at S. Omers for 20 a conference, but whilst they both stood upon punctilios of honor, the Regent claiming superiortie as the son, brother and Uncle to Kings, the Burgundian as Lord of that town, they departed discontented; and forthwith Burguoin makes a league with the French King, the murtherer of his father; about this time S. Dennis was betraied to the French by the bastard of Orleans, and shortly after recovered again by the English, who beat down the walles and towres thereof. Pontbois also rebels, and thrusts the English garison out of the town; mean while the Regent dieth, and is solemnly buried in S. Maries Church at Rohan in a rich monument, at which the Norman Nobility stormed, who not long after intreated K. Lewis 11. to 30 pluck it down, and cast the Regents carcass into the open fields, which he refused to do, holding it baseness in them to insult over his dead body, whom they durst not look on whilst he was alive. After him the Duke of York is made Regent, which place was aimed at by Somerses the Kings cousin. Paris revolts with divers other places, using the English cruelly and scornfully: The Normans also rebel and insult over the English, till they were subdued again by Talbot and Scales, who slew 5000 of these rebels. The new Regent with 2000 soldiers lands at Harflew, and from thence comes to Rohan, but his proceedings were much hindred by the D. of Somerses privat grudgings; the D. of Burgundy pretending a title to Callis, besiegeth it with 40000 men, by 3 assaults he attempted to win it, but is still beat off with losse, then he thought to subdue it by famin, but could not because the English Navy was master at sea; at last he tries to shut up the harbour, by sinking 4 great hulks filled with massie stones cemented with iron and lead, that they might not be beaten asunder by the sea; but being they were not sunk in the channel, at low water the ships lay dry, so that the Callisians tore them asunder for their own use; the Duke had built a strong Bastile, and placed 400 men in it, which annoyed the town much; but it was assaulted and won by some troops of horse out of the town, the Protector being landed with his forces, so affrighted the D. who lay now 50 between the town and English army, that he removes in the night, leaving his ordnance, tents, armor, and provision to the Protector, who having 25000 men in his army, falls upon Flanders and Artois with fire and sword, and then returns with rich booties to Callice, and from thence into England, being in much trouble about the Scots invasion with 30000 men under K. James 1. who besieged the Castle of Rosburg; which the Scots left

*An. Christi* and retreated into their own country, upon the coming of the Earl of Northumberland with his army. About this time *Q. Catherin* the Kings mother died. The D. of *Tork* is discharged of his Regency in *France*, and the 1436 E. of *Warwick* is put in his room, who after 7 times imbarking arrived in 1437 *Normandy*, and sends *Talbot*, *Faulconbridg*, and sir *Thomas Kyriel* with 5000 men to raise the siege from *Crotoy*, afore which *Burgundy* lay with 1000 men. The D. upon this flies into *Albeuyl*, and from thence into *Amiens*; the English finding that he would not fight, enter *Piccardy* and *Artois*, spoiling all before them, and carrying away much bootie; *Kyriel* surprized the Dukes carriages and ordnance. The E. of *Mortayn*, *Somerfess* for, took the 1438 castle of *S. Ayan* in *Mayn*, where he slew 300 *Scots*, and hanged all the *French* men there, for their revolting. The English begin to have some hopes in regaining of *Paris* upon the rebellion of the Dolphin against his father, therefore a great army is prepared, but the Dolphin was reconciled again to the *French* K. and so the English hopes were strangled in their birth. 1439 *John L. Clifford* in a frostie and snowie night clothes himself and followers all in white, and so having passed over the ditches of *Ponthois*, they scale the walls, and take the town, in which they killed the most part of the men found there, some ranfomed themselves; upon this the *French* King in person besiegeih *Ponthois*, giving it many furious assaults, but to no purpose: mean while *Richard Beauchamp* E. of *Warwick* and Regent of *France* died; so *Richard* D. of *Tork* is made Regent the 2<sup>d</sup> time, who with a great army repairs to the siege, daring the *French* K. into the field, which he refused; so leaving his Ordinance in the Bastyl of *S. Martin*, which he had erected, raised his siege in the night, and went to *Poyssy*, the English next morning seise themselves of the tents and provisions left behinde, so having fortified the town, the Regent with his army goeth towards *Poyssy* and dares the *French* King; who finding it good sleeping in a whole skin, refused to fight; whereupon the Regent forsakes him, and marcheth to *Roban*; when the *French* K. heard that the English were so far off, he besiegeih 30 *Ponthois* the 2<sup>d</sup> time, assaulling it almost every hour, he lost before it almost 3000 men, and in the end he won the town, where he slew 400 English. At last both Kings being weary of war, desire a parley, for which *Callis* was appointed, because *Charles* of *Orleans* who had bin a prisoner in *England* ever since the battel of *Agencourt*, was to be conveyed thither, the Ambassadors could not agree, because K. *Henrys* demands were thought unreasonable. 1. In demanding 300000 crowns for his ranfom, too great a sum. 2. For requiring the possession of *Aquitan* and *Normandy*, without acknowledgement of homage to the crown of *France*. 3. For desiring all Townes and Forts in *France* to be delivered up to K. *Henry*, which the English had enjoyed with; 40 in the last 30 years, so the parley is dissolved; yet shortly after *Phillip* of *Burgundy* paid the D. of *Orleans* his ranfom. In the interim the Regent divides his forces into 4 troops, which in several places invade *France* and *Normandy*; the *French* on the other side being 60000. fall upon *Aquitan* and *Gujan*, taking in many towns and forts, which shortly after were retaken by the English: about this time diffention arose between the protector & his uncle the Cardinal of *Vvinchester*, and the Archbishop of *York*, whom he accuseth for doing publick things for their privat gain, the matter is referred to the counsell, but no redress was had, because most of them were Clergy men; and to vex the Protector the more, they accused and convicted his 1442 wife of witchcraft, and that she had conspired against the Kings life, wherefore she is forced 3 times to do publick penance in *London*, and then committed to perpetual imprisonment; divers of her associates were executed. King *Henry* made the L. *Talbot* Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and sent him into *Normandy* with 3000 choice men. The E. of *Arminac* to strengthen his title of inheritance to the Countess of *Comings* lands, offers his daughter in marriage

to King *Henry*, with much money; and a surrender of all the lands in *Aquitan* belonging to him; this offer was willingly hearkned unto; but the *French* King prevented the match, by making himself owner of the said Earls dominions; So King *Henry* will think no more on that match. After much effusion of blood, a peace is made between the two Kings. domes for eighteen months; in which time the Earl of *Suffolk* without any Commission or acquainting his associates, solicits a match between King *Henry* and *Margaret*, Cousin to the *French* King, and daughter to *Reynier* Duke of *Anjou*, and titular King of *Sicily*, *Naples* and *Jerusalem*. He 10 demands no money, because the Duke was poor, he also consents that King *Henry* shall freely release to her Father, all his right to the Dutchie of *Anjou*, and Countrey of *Mayne*. This motion was well liked by the *French* Lords; and King *Henry*; but opposed by the Protector, because the Duke was poor, his honor but a star. That the King was engaged to *Mary*, *Arminais* daughter. 3. That his loss would be great to part with his interest in *Anjou* and *Mayne*; but these reasons were rejected, the King resolves to have her, and therefore bestowes new honors on them who were inclined to this match; among others this Earl of *Suffolk* is made Marquis, whom the King sends richly attended into *France*, to 10 receive the young Queen from the *French* King; and *Reynier* her Father; within few days after her arrivall she was married, and Crowned. The time of the truce is almost expired, great preparations in *France* for renewing the War, King *Henry* to encounter those preparations, calls a Parliament, in which the Marquis of *Suffolk* makes a speech highly tending to his own commendations; in commemorating his former services, which he desires may be recorded; this was consented to with great applause, and he is made Duke of *Suffolk*. Such was the condition of *France* at this time, that within few years the whole Kingdome with *Aquitan* and *Normandy* is lost to the English; 30 partly by the wife Counsels of the Duke of *Orleans*, who had been kept a prisoner still, it had been better for *England*, and partly by means of this unfortunate match between the King and Queen, whereby he lost *Arminac*, and other friends; nor did this Lady bring either money or new friends to strengthen his cause: Besides, the giving up of his right of *Anjou* and *Mayne*, lost him both *Normandy* and *Aquitan*. The murder also of *Glocester* his wife Counsellor, and the Kings own milde and peaceable disposition, were main causes of the loss of *France*; now the Queen being of a haughty and revengefull spirit, scorned that the King should be altogether ruled by *Glocester* the Protector, therefore she being incouraged by *Buckingham*, *Suffolk*, the Cardinal of *Winchester*, and the Arch- 40 Bishop of *York*, all enemies to the Protector, calls him in question, for the treasure spent in the *French* War; then in Parliament they condemn him to imprisonment, for high Treason; and the next day he was found dead; thus was that good Duke of *Glocester* rewarded for his faithfull service. Upon his death the Duke of *Tork* begins secretly to set on foot his Title to the Crown; the Duke of *Suffolk* fills his Coffers with the peoples money. The Souldiers are neglected, the Kings Counsellors disabled, and the people discontented. The Truce with *France* is violated on the English side, by taking the Town of *Tongyers* on the 50 Frontiers of *Normandy*, belonging to the Duke of *Britany*, without satisfaction given to the Duke, and on the *French* side, by taking *Pont-Larch* 12 miles from *Roban*, where the English were cruelly slain, and their goods rifled; so within a few years after, the most Towns in *Normandy* and *Gujan* are delivered up to the *French* among the rest, *Harflew*, and *Roban*, by *Sommerfess* and *Shrewsbury*: These disasters went not alone, but

*An. Christi* were accompanied with a rebellion in Ireland, which drew thither the Duke of York with an Army, who both suppressed the Rebellion, and by his wisdom, courtesie and valour, obtained the love of the Nation.

1449

The Irish expedition hindred the affairs of Normandy; yet Sir Thomas Kyriel is sent thither with 1400 men, who regained some lost places, and then joyned himself to Matthew Gough and others, so that now their army consists of 5000 who encountering with 7000 of the enemies marching to the siege of Cane were overthrown, 4000 of them being slain: Cane is closely besieged, and assaulted by the French, but so stoutly defended by the English, that many French men lost their lives there; at last the English being tired out, and Somerset importuned by his wife, and clamours of the meaner people, resolves to surrender it; though he was much opposed in this by Sir David Hall, Captain of Cane, who affirmed that this Town belonged not to the King, but to the Duke of York, and that therefore Somerset though the Kings Lieutenant there, could not surrender it; but at last it is yielded upon Articles: And so now all Normandy is lost. Sir David Hall in anger salls into Ireland, and incesteth York against Somerset, whom he persecuted so, that at last this Somerset lost his head. The Queen is blamed for the loss of Normandy; so was Suffolk, who is accused of high Treason. 1. In causing the Duke of Gloucester to lose his Protectorship and life. 2. For placing ill Counsellors about the King. 3. For misguiding the Queen, and misruling the Kingdome. 4. For losing Aquitain and Normandy. 5. For reporting that his daughter in Law, heir to John Duke of Somerset, was next heir to the Crown, if the Kings issue failed. 6. For persuading the French to transport an Army into England, that his son John by his wife might succeed to the Crown. 7. For causing the Duke of Orleans to be set at liberty. 8. For persuading the French King by the same Duke to make sharper war in Normandy. 9. For having secret correspondence with King Charles. 10. For discovering to the French King, the weakness of King Henrys provisions. 11. For bragging he had power to work the French King to any thing. 12. For stopping supplies from the Kings Army in Normandy and France. 13. For his ill gotten wealth, and monopolies of the chief Offices.

1450

The Queen to prevent the Dukes further perill, who could not clear himself of these Articles, caused him to be sent to the Tower, and then concluding the Parliament, restored him to high favour with the King; the people repine at this, and then openly rebell, under Blewbeard their Commander, but this rebellion was nipped in the bud, and the King leaders executed. Upon this a Parliament is called at Leicester, where in the lower House Justice is required to be done on Suffolk, whom the King to please the people exiled for 5 years, but as he was sailing to France, he is taken, landed on Dover sands, and his head chopt off on a boats side: Thus was the blood of Humphry Duke of Gloucester revenged. Mean while the Dyke of York in Ireland, sets on foot here in England his claim to the Crown, as being descended lineally from Philip heir of George Duke of Clarence, the elder brother of John of Gaunt, great Grand-father to King Henry 6. It was also whispered about that God blessed not King Henrys usurped succession, as might be seen by the loss of France: The weakness of the King, the ambition of the Queen, and wickedness of the Counsellors; hereupon a Kentish Rebel, Jack Cade, who falsely called himself Mortimer, made an insurrection there, and with his armed crew marched towards Greenwich, where the King then was, to whom he sent messengers, to inform him, that he meant not to hurt his

*An. Christi* his person, but to remove his evil Counsellors, who had oppressed the people. The King upon this is counselled to encounter these Rebels, not with words, but swords; therefore an Army is suddenly raised, the Rebels retreat, whom the Kings Forces under Sir Humphry Stafford, and his brother, pursued: the Rebels taking advantage of place and time, confronted and overcame many of the Kings Forces. After this victory, Jack with his graceless rout, came to black Heath, thence to London, where they did much mischief; but at length the Kings pardon is proclaimed to all, except to the Ring-leaders; so the fearful multitude left their Captains. Jack is proscribed, and a thousand Marks promised to him that shall bring him dead or alive. In the end he was found, and slain; as he fought desperately for his life, his head is presented to the King, who paid the reward.

The Duke of York being advertised by his friends, and such as disliked the present Government, that a Parliament was at hand, left his Deputation in Ireland, and returns home, where he adviseth with John Duke of Norfolk, and his other friends, how he might without usurpation, or treason, set forth his Title to the Crown. After long debate, it was concluded, that the Duke of York should raise an Army, under pretence of removing the Duke of Somerset from Court, for misruling the King and Queen, for oppressing the people, for occasioning the loss of France, and for other treasons. The King upon this raiseth also an Army, who understanding from the Duke of York, that he intended nothing against his person and state, but only the removal of Somerset; the King sent Somerset (for a shew) to the Tower. Hereupon York dissolves his Army, and privately repairs to the King, where unexpectedly he meets with Somerset, and is accused by him of treason, for raising an Army to destroy the King; wherefore he is detained prisoner: but because the Kings Council thought it unlikely that he aimed at the Crown, seeing he had dismissed his Army upon Somersets commitment, he is shortly after released. In the midst of these troubles, the Lords of Aquitain offers secretly to surrender that Dutchy again into the hands of King Henry. Hereupon Talbot Earl of Shrewsbury, is sent over with three thousand choice men, who received the Dutchy to the Kings use. But the French King with two and twenty thousand came suddenly and fought the English; here the Earl, and almost all his Army, was slain, and Aquitain regained. Shortly after Prince Edward is born, Edward Tuthar King Henrys brother by the mother side, and father to King Henry the seventh, is made Earl of Richmond. The Duke of York complains to divers of the Nobility, of the Treasons and Treacheries of Somerset, and strengthens himself by the assistance of the Earls of Salisbury, and Warwick; then he causeth Somerset to be arrested of High Treason in the Queens great Chamber, whence he was conveyed to the Tower, and shortly after accused in the Parliament of Treason.

The Parliament is adjourned by reason of the Kings either reall or feigned sickness: Shortly after, Somerset is enlarged, and made Governor of Calice, to the great discontent both of Lords and Commons; the Duke of York, and his associates, raise another Army within the Marches of Wales, both to be revenged on Somerset, and to set the Crown upon Yorks head; so they march towards London. The King to prevent his coming thither, meets him with another Army at Saint Albons; a bloody battail is fought, on the Kings part were slain Somerset, Stafford, Buckingham, Clifford, and more then eight thousand Lords, Knights, and others. The King is taken prisoner, and brought to the Duke of York, who having power to kill him, yet used him with all respect, and brought him with honour to London; where upon the Dukes request, a Parliament is called, and York made Protector of the Kings person, and kingdom. Salisbury is made Lord Chancelour, and his son Warwick, Captain of Calice; and so the kingdom was governed, to the content of all good

*An. Christi* good men; but *Humphrie Duke of Buckingham*, who lost his eldest son in the battail of *S. Albons*, and *Beauford*, the new Duke of *Somerſet*; who then lost his Father, inform the Queen; that for all this fair ſhew, theſe *Triumviri* would bring miſery on her, and on the King, whoſe Crown they meant to ſet on the head of *York*, if their plots be not prevented.

1455

Hereupon the Queen and they in a great Council held at *Greenwich*, remove *Tork* and *Salisbury* from their government: Hence divers broils are bred; the Merchant-ſtrangers in *London*, for growing richer then others, becauſe of their parcimony, and vigilancy, are robbed, but the chief offenders in this were put to death. The *French* burn and rob ſome *Frontier* Towns in this kingdom. The *Scots* alſo did much hurt in *Tork ſhire*, till the Duke came againſt them with a great Army, then they retreated into their own Country.

1456

The Queen made great ſhew of love to *Tork*, but meant his ruine; therefore ſhe got the King to make his Progreſs to the North, Hunting and Hawking by the way: Mean while by her letters ſhe requires the three Lords to come to a ſpeedy Conference with the King: whereupon they came, ſuſpecting no hurt, and were kindly uſed. But being advertiſed of their danger, the Duke of *Tork* fled to *Wales*, *Salisbury* to his own Country, and his ſon *Warwick* into *Calice*. The King fearing that theſe jars among his Nobles, would occaſion his enemies abroad to attempt miſchief againſt him and his kingdom, cauſed all his Lords to meet at *London*. The *Lancastrian* Faction lodged in the Suburbs, the *Torkiſh* within the walls, the Citizens fearing blows, remained Neuters, and to keep the Kings Peace, guarded the ſtreets night and day with armed men. But at length the Arch-Biſhop of *Canterbury*, with other Clergy men, prevailed ſo with their Rhetorick, that the King, Queen, and Lords, met, and friendly (at leaſt in ſhew) intertained each other. This union is honoured with a Religious proceſſion through the City; in which the King wore the Crown, the Queen was led by the Duke of *Tork*, the Lords of each Faction, went hand in hand, at which the people much rejoiced. But ſhortly after, upon a falling out between a ſervant of the Kings, and a Gentleman of *Warwicks*, in which the Kings ſervant was wounded, the Kings guard aſſaulted the Earl and his followers, as he was taking horſe; much blood was ſhed, but no man killed. The Queen who hated the Earl, commanded he ſhould be apprehended, and ſent to the Tower; which he hearing of, poſted away into *Tork ſhire*, where he complains to the Duke of *Tork*, and to his Father, of the wrongs done him by the Kings ſervant, and the Queen notwithstanding the late friendſhip; but fearing he might be outed of his government in *Calice*, he poſts thither; his father the Earl of *Salisbury*, marcheth to the Court with five thouſand men, complaining to the King of the wrongs done by his ſervants to his ſon, and of the Queens diſſimulation. The Queen upon this, cauſeth the Lord *Audley* to encounter him on his way with ten thouſand men, and to bring him dead or alive; ſhe alſo came after with another Army. The two Lords fight deſperately on both ſides: at laſt, the Lord *Audley* with two thouſand four hundred of his men are ſlain, and *Salisbury* remained Maſter of the Field.

1458

The Duke of *Tork* perceiving that his life was ſecretly aimed at, raiſeth an Army, and claims his Title to the Crown in the open Field. Therefore he with *Salisbury*, march into *Wales*, where *Warwick* repairs to them, with *Trallop* and *Blunt*, two expert Commanders in the *French* wars. Their Armies meet the Kings Forces near the Town of *Ludlow*: the two Captains, which pretended they were for the Lords, and had intended to invade the Kings Army, betimes the next morning, (being checkt in conſcience to fight againſt their Sovereign) ſecretly fled, came to the King, and acquainted him with the Enemies project; for which ſervice they are pardoned, and rewarded.

1459

The Lords underſtanding their two chief Captains were revolted, and diſſiding in their cauſe, fled from their Army in the dark; the Duke into *Wales*, and thence into *Ireland*, the other two into *Devonſhire*, and from thence to *Calice*. The King glad at their flight, purſues them, but too late; he pardoneth the ordinary ſoldiers of the *Torkiſh* Faction, but their Captains were executed. The Lords are proclaimed Traitors, their goods and lands confiscated, the government of the North is committed to the Earl of *Northumberland*, and to the Lord *Clifford*. Henry the young Duke of *Somerſet*, is made Commander of *Calice*, who going to take poſſeſſion, not thinking his Enemies were there, was beat off by the great Guns from the Caſtle. The Queen hearing of this, prepares to ſend a new Fleet, which lay ready at *Sandwich*; but the Mariners, who favoured the *Torkiſh* Faction, boarded theſe Ships, as they lay at anchor, and conveyed them with the Lord *Rivers*, appointed Admiral of them, to *Calice*; *Warwick* ſails in them to *Ireland*, to confer with the Duke of *Tork*. In his return, the Duke of *Exeter*, Admiral of the Seas, intended to take him, but his Mariners, Favorers of the *Torkiſh* Faction, were cold in the purſuit: ſo *Warwick* returned ſafe to *Calice*. The King upon advice of his Parliament, attaineth all the Lords of the *Torkiſh* Faction, of high treason, and fills all the Sea Ports with Garifons, for fear of Invaſion: But the Earls at *Calice* had ſecret notice of every thing done in the Kings Chamber; they manned divers of the Kings ſhips, which *Dynham* had brought thither, in which they arrived within the haven of *Sandwich*, and took Sir *Simon Mountfort* priſoner, Warden of the Cinque Ports, vanquiſhed the Town, and caried away ſuch of the Kings Ships, as they found there. They arrive at *Sandwich* the ſecond time, and are aſſiſted by the Lord *Cobham*, with twenty five thouſand men, who march towards *London*, whither the Lord *Scales* is ſent to ſecure it for the King: but the Lord Major would not ſuffer him to enter, ſhewing he had power ſufficient to keep the City for the King; ſo *Scales* in anger, poſſeſſeth the Tower, and annoies the *Londoners*.

The King marcheth with *Buckingham* and *Somerſet*, and with many other Lords, and a ſtrong Army, againſt the Enemy: the two Armies met near *Northampton*; the King is for Peace, the Queen for a Battail, who therefore encourageth the ſoldiers. The fight began, and laſted two houres very furioſly: At laſt the King is overthrowen, two thouſand of his men ſlain, among which were *Buckingham*, *Shrewsbury*, and many others. The Queen with *Somerſet* and the Prince, fled to *Durham*, hoping to raiſe a new Army, or elſe to ſhelter themſelves in *Scotland*. The King is taken priſoner; and caried honourably to *London*. The Tower is delivered to the Lords by the ſoldiers, againſt the will of the Lord *Scales*, who ſtriving to eſcape diſguised in a wherry, is taken and beheaded. The Duke of *Tork* hearing of this Victory, repairs to *London*, calls a Parliament in the Kings name, and ſate down in the Kings ſeat in the upper Houſe, where in an eloquent ſpeech, he diſcovered his title to the Crown, being heir to *Anne* daughter of *Roger Mortimer*, ſon and heir to *Philip*, the only daughter of *Lionel Duke of Clarence*, the third ſon of *Edward* the third, and elder brother to *John of Gant*, who was Father to the Uſurper, King *Henry* the fourth. He related alſo the ſeveral calamities that fell upon this kingdom, under that unlawful government. Laſtly, he requires no favour, but what juſtice will afford him, nor other poſſeſſion, then what his deſcent and title will allow him. The Lords and Commons after long deliberation, enacted, that King *Henry* ſhould continue King for his life; that the Duke of *Tork* ſhould be proclaimed heir apparent of the Crown; that he ſhould be Protector both of King, and kingdom; and that the preſent poſſeſſion of the Crown, ſhould be delivered to him, if at any time King *Henry*, or his friends, ſhould attempt to infringe theſe Acts, now confirmed by Oaths.

The

An. Christi

The Duke of York, being now Protector, sends to Scotland in the Kings name, to the Queen, Somerset, Exeter, Devonshire, Clifford, and Ross, and the rest of the Lords fled thither, to repair to the Kings presence; but they instead of obeying this command, come to the Court with an Army of eighteen thousand English and Scots. Hereupon the Duke of York, with his younger son, the Earl of Rutland, and the Earl of Salisbury, leaving the King with the Duke of Norfolk, and Earl of Warwick, march with five thousand men, and met the Queen at Wakefield. The Duke in expectation of his eldest son Edward, Earl of March, with a great Army, would needs fight, which unfortunately he did, for there he was slain, and almost three thousand of his men. Rutland being but twelve years old, kneeling, desired mercy, but was cruelly stabbed by the Lord Clifford. Salisburys head, with divers others, are struck off, and set upon the walls of York, in spite of the Yorkish Faction. The young Duke of York after this, with three thousand men, fights Pembroke, the Kings half brother, and some other Lords, with their companies. In the first encounter, Pembroke, and the Earl of Ormond fled, four thousand of their friends are slain, Owen Tudor Father in law to King Henry, is taken prisoner, with many others, and put to death. Mean while the Queen beats the Duke of Norfolk, and rescues King Henry from his power. But when she heard of young Yorks victory, she retreats Northward, and raiseth sixty thousand men, and near Towton, is met by York, Warwick, and almost forty nine thousand men; a cruel battail is fought, in which above thirty six thousand English are slain; among which, were divers Earls; and Lords, the two Dukes, Somerset and Exeter fled, Devonshire, with many others, taken prisoners; the King, Queen, Prince Edward, and others, are fled into Scotland, where they are friendly entertained by the young King; in recompence of which favour, Barwick is delivered to the king of Scots. The Duke of York being Victor, rode triumphantly into York, took down the heads of his Father and Friends, and in the same place causes the heads of Devonshire, and some others, to be set up. King Henry sends his Queen, with Prince Edward, to her Father Reyner, desiring him to procure aid from the French king: In the mean while he resolves to stay in Scotland, in expectation of better fortunes. These troubles were presaged by a blazing star, divers prodigious births, and a monstrous cock out of the sea. A Porcland crowed three times, turning his head to the South, North, and West. In king Henrys time Pauls steeple was fired with Lightning, and Leaden Hall in London built. Upon a League with Spain, our Sheep are transported thither. The white and red Roses began to be the badges of York and Lancaster. Whittington Colledge, and Newgate are built. The Bishop of Salisbury is pulled from the high Altar, as he was saying Mass, and on the top of a Hill near Edington, is barbarously murdered by the Wiltshire men. Each one of his tenants carrying away in triumph, a piece of his bloody shirt. In this kings time also, France, Normandy, and Aquitain, are lost, five main battails fought between the two great Factions: 1. At Saint Albons, in which the Yorkish prevailed. 2. On Bloor Heath, wherein the confederate Lords are Victors. 3. At Northampton, in which king Henry is overthrown. 4. At Wakefield, wherein the king was victorious. 5. At Towton, in which the new Duke of York prevailed.

CHAP.

An. Christi

## CHAP. XXV.

A Prosecution of the Scottish History under Robert Duke of Albany, and Mar- do Earl of Fife Governours; also under James the first, and James the second, Kings, from the year 1400, till the year 1460.



EB shewed before, that the peace being broken by Piercies invasion of Scotland, open war is denounced by the Scots against England. Archibald Douglas, with ten thousand men, rageth with fire and sword as far as New Castle. Henry Piercy, and George Dumbay, meets him with a strong Army; a battail is fought, the Scots are defeated, and Douglas having lost one eye, is taken prisoner, with some other Lords. This battail was fought at Hamildon in Northumberland; About this time died Annabella the Queen, and Trale Arch-Bishop of S. Andrews, who kept Prince David, a lascivious and untuly youth, in some awe; but when they were dead, he flew into all kind of disorders, complaints came daily of him to the king his father, who desires his brother the Duke of Albany to extinguish his brothers race, makes David a close prisoner, purposing to starve him; but he was relieved a while by a maid, the keepers daughter of the prison, who through the window conveyed unto him thin Oaten Cakes, which she hid in a Linnen Cloth cast over her head, to keep her from the heat of the Sun. A Country Nurse also sometimes gave him suck out of her breasts, which he received by a cane; so his life was prolonged a while: but the keeper upon suspicion, watched the prison so narrowly, that he caught both these women, who were punished; the cruel keeper execrating his own daughter, suffered the young Prince at last to eat his own flesh, for want of other food, and so he died miserably. No man durst acquaint his Father with this sad and barbarous usage, nor with his death a long time, for fear of the Protector. But at last by secret whisperings, the king hears of it, sends for his brother, and accuseth him, he layeth the fault upon others, and is ready to clear both himself and servants. Mean while he corrupts his accusers, produceth some malefactors out of prison, but free from this crime, whom he cruelly puts to death. Yet the king could not but intertain the suspicion still of his brothers treachery, but durst not punish him, because of his greatness: Mean while being much grieved for his son David, takes care for his younger son James, now under the tuition of the Arch-Bishop of Saint Andrews, who with others of the kings friends, advise him to send the Prince to Charles the sixth King of France, so he should be educated by him, and out of harms way. Upon this, he is sent with Sinclair Earl of Orkney, his Governour, towards France; but stops at Elamburg, by reason of the wind, or his own sickness, where he is detained by the English, and sent up to the King, who retains him as a prisoner, against the Law of Nations, and Articles of Peace, made lately for eight years.

The king of England having received Letters from the Scots King, shewing the causes of his sons going to France, and withall desiring he may not be detained in England, desires to be advised by his Council, what he should do in this case; some were of opinion, that seeing this Prince was sent away to secure him from danger, and that there was now a peace with Scotland, the Scots Prince should be set free, and hospitably used; and that there was no policy at that time to exasperate the Scots: but others affirmed, that his detention was just, because the Scots had aided Piercy against the king, and that old Piercy being a traitour, is maintained and sheltered by the Scots king. This opinion



*An. Christi* pinion prevailed; Prince *James* is retained, and care taken for his education. But when news came of his captivity to king *Robert* his father, being then at Supper, he fell suddenly so ill, that they could scarce keep life in him; so grieved he was, that within three days he died, the 16 year of his Reign. The Government of the kingdom is committed to his brother *Robert*. In the five following years, divers incursions of *English* and *Scots* upon each other were made, and divers places taken and re-taken. The battail of *Harlaw* among the *Scots* themselves, was memorable. *Donald* Lord of the Isles, laid claim to the Country of *Ross*, as being next heir, and which the Governor wrongfully detained from him; therefore having raised ten thousand men in the Isles, enters *Ross*, where none made resistance, all acknowledging him for their Lord. Having had such good success here, he attempts *Murray* land, which also submitted to him; then having plundered *Bogie*, he threatens *Aberdeen*, the Governour against this sudden and unlooked for enemy, prepares an Army, but before he could be ready, the Earl of *Marre*, with most of the Gentry of those parts, encounters him near the Village *Harlaw*; a bloody battail is fought, which continued till the night parted them: so great was the losse on both sides, that neither party brag of the Victory. More Gentry were lost in this intestine quarrel, then before at any time against a Forain Enemy. About this time the University of Saint *Andrews* was erected.

1406

1411

1420

For ten years after this, no memorable action is recorded between the two kingdoms; either because of the Truce, and the *English* employments in *France*, under *Henry* the fifth, or else because the Governour of *Scotland* durst not stir, fearing lest the king of *England* should send home the right heir to the kingdom. Some inroads the Borderers made now and then upon each other, but not by publick Authority: The *Dolphin* of *France* being disinherited by his crazy-headed father, sends to *Scotland* for aid, according to the old League. A Parliament is summoned, and seven thousand Voluntaries under *John* Earl of *Buchan* are sent, who got the *French* a memorable victory against the *English*, for which, he is made High Constable of *France*, the highest office next to the King. Mean while, *Robert* Protector of *Scotland* dieth, fifteen years after the death of king *Robert* the third. In his place is set up his son *Mordacus*, a man unfit for Government; which called the Earl of *Buchan* home from *France*, who shortly after was invited again by the *Dolphin* into *France*, whither he hasteneth, with five thousand *Scots*, and lands at *Rotchel*. King *Henry* of *England* carrieth over with him into *France*, young King *James* of *Scotland*, purposely by his means to alienate the *Scots* from the *French*, which he could not do; for when the *Scots* King did press them to forsake the *French*, and joyn with their King; they answered, that their King being now under another jurisdiction, had no power over them: wherefore King *Henry* having found in *Meldin* which he took, twenty *Scots*, he caused them to be hanged, pretending they fought against their King. Two years after, the *English* having got a victory at *Vernol*, Earl *Buchan*, with other Lords, and two thousand *Scots* besides, were there slain. And three years after this, the *Scots* had another overthrow, as they were conveying provisions to *Orleans*. *Scotland* in the interim, is untowardly governed by *Mordacus*, and his three unruly sons, who slighted their old father. *Walter* the eldest, being in love with one of his fathers Falcons, begged him, but having received a denial, in anger wrung off his neck, to whom the old man thus spake Son, (saith he) because thou wilt not obey me, I will send for one whom both thou and I shall obey. Wherefore he resolves to send for his Cousin German King *James*.

A Parliament is called at *Perth*, where it is unanimously concluded, that the King must be sent for, all men being weary of the present Government. Ambassadors are dispatched into *England*, the Duke of *Gloucester* being then Pro-

20

40

50

tector of the young King, calls a Parliament; in which it was resolved the *Scots* King should be sent home, and to indear him the more to *England*, the Duke of *Somersetts* daughter is given to him in marriage; her portion should be retained for half of the Kings Ransom, for payment of the other half, some Hostages should be left: So *James* returns home the eighteenth year of his Captivity, to the great joy of the people, who complained of their grievances suffered by *Mordacus* three sons, and others, who to satisfy the people, were sent to prison till the next Parliament.

*An. Christi*

1423

The King and Queen are Crowned about the twentieth of *April*, *Mordacus* set the King in his Throne, a ceremony belonging to the Earls of *Fife*. A Parliament is held, and some good laws enacted for suppressing of high-way men, who were become very bold and numerous, according to the looseness of the former times. Subsidies are also granted, for payment of the moiety of the Kings Ransom, which because it was displeasing to the people, some part thereof was remitted by the King. In this Parliament, *Mordacus* Duke of *Albany*, with his two sons, *Walter* and *Alexander*, and divers others, are apprehended, and sent to several prisons; the Dukes Castles are seized on for the King. *James* the Dukes youngest son, seeing the ruine of his Fathers Family, in revenge, raiseth some Forces, and burns *Dun-Britton*; then having murdered the Kings Uncle, with thirty more, flies into *Ireland*, where shortly after he died. Divers prime persons also fled with him. Shortly after, a Parliament is held at *Sterling*, where *Mordacus* with his two sons, and his wives father, are arraigned of High Treason, and beheaded. Not long after this, Ambassadors come from *France*, to renew the old League, and to make a match between *Charles* the seventh son, and King *James* his daughter, being as yet children.

The next year after, the King makes a Progresse into the Northern parts, for suppressing some turbulent spirits there. Divers of the factious Ring-leaders are apprehended, and put to death. *Alexander* Lord of the Isles, upon intreaty of friends, is pardoned, and conditionally that he will be quiet, and subject to the Laws, is sent home: But he was so far from acknowledging the Kings favour, that he thought himself highly wronged for being imprisoned so long. Therefore he raiseth some Forces, and suddenly falls upon *Inverness*, which he first plunders, then sets on fire. He besieged the Castle, but could not take it; therefore riseth, upon the report of an Army sent by the King against him. He was now ten thousand strong, but two of the Clans, to wit, *Chatan* and *Chameron*, upon the news of the Kings Forces coming, forsook him. Hereupon, mistrusting the fidelity of the rest, disbands his Forces and flies into the Islands, and thence intends for *Ireland*; but finding no security, except in the Kings wonted clemency, procures some potent friends to make his peace with him, to which the King would not hearken, till he come himself; therefore he comes privately to *Edinburgh*, and in a white sheet upon *Easter* day, casts himself at the Kings feet, and submits to his mercy; the Queen and Lords then present intercede for him: he is commanded to stay till Divine Service was ended. Mean while the King thinking it fit to yeild somewhat to the Queens request, and yet not safe to send home so potent and factious a man, without some punishment, he sends him to *Tentallon* Castle, and his pragmatical mother to the Isle *Aemona*: the *Clan-Catans*, and *Clan-Chamérons*, destroyed each other by their feuds. In the Isles, *Donald* Baloc, to revenge his Cousin *Alexanders* wrongs, makes new stirs. Against him the Earls of *Mar* and *Cathness*, raise some Forces, whom *Donald* suddenly overthrew. *Alan* Earl of *Cathness*, was killed: *Alexander* of *Mar*, fled with a few. *Donald* upon this good success, goeth with fire and sword, through all *Abria*, or *Lochabor*; but hearing the Kings Army was coming, hasteneth to the Isles, with rich booty; the chief of these Clans repair to the King, to

1426

R r r

clear

*An. Christi* clear their innocency, but he will admit of no purgation, till they bring to punishment, the Ring-leaders of these Rebels. Upon this, they go home, where they apprehend many of them, whom they put to death, and three hundred they sent in chains to the King, whom he commanded to be hanged; *Donald* himself could not be found. There were some other of these *Clans* left, who by their private quarrels, destroyed each other. *Mack Donald*, a notable Rebel, for shoeing a widow, whom he had robbed, with horse shoes, was fo shoeed himself, and caried about the streets in that manner, with twelve of his companions, and then hanged upon Gallows near the high-way. *Mack Donald* the Islander, hid himself in *Ireland*, where his head was cut off, and sent to the King for a present: and so the kingdom was pretty well quieted.

140

After this, the King sends divers wise and sincere men about the kingdome, to hear complaints, and to look to weights and measures. At this time he had two Twins born to him, which occasioned much joy, and the enlargement of *Duglas* and *Kennedy* out of prison, who had been sent thither for speaking too lavishly against the present Government. He advanceth learning, and sends for some skilful in all sorts of Manufacture out of *Flanders*. He had a mind also to reform the abuses of the Clergy, but durst not adventure, because of their power and exempt jurisdiction: Yet he was blamed for the luxury and excess of his Courtiers, in diet, and apparel, though he himself was very moderate, both in the one and the other. He was disliked also for penuriousness, having a greater Revenue then his brother, by the addition of the Earls of *Marr* and *Buchans* patrimonies, who were dead. Whereas his Uncle *Robert*, and this *Roberts* son, his Cousin German *Mordacus*, the last Governours of *Scotland*, had been very bountiful to the people, whose inheritance also fell to the King, against whom the Gentry grumbled; also for keeping all the Wardships in his own hand, which ought to be given as Rewards to well deserving men. The King excused his parcimony, by shewing how poor his Revenues were by the profuseness of the former Governours and Kings, and that he was forced to raise Taxes for defraying of publick charges. Mean while an Ambassador comes from *France* to bring away *Margaret*, who had been betrothed to *Lewis*, *Charles* the seventh son. This Ambassie is crossed by another out of *England*, desiring an union of the two kingdoms, which is more natural, then with *France*, that neither speaks the same language, nor is confned within the same Island. This union was then earnestly desired, because *Burgundy* was fallen off from *England*, and *France* was beginning to grow too strong. *Barwick*, *Rosburg*, and the other places, now controverted, are promised to the *Scots*, if they will assent to an offensive and defensive League with *England*. The matter is referred to a Parliament, wherein it was conceived, that *Englands* aim was to make the *Scots* forsake their old friends, to the end they should be wholly subject to the *English*. Therefore they resolve to be constant to their old League. This being denied, the Ambassador threatneth war against *Scotland*, shewing there was already a Fleet prepared to intercept the Lady and her company. Notwithstanding these threats, the King sends away his daughter, who escaped the *English* Fleet, because that was engaged in pursuit of some *Holland* Vessels, laden with wine from *Rotchel*, which they took for Prize, (*England* and *Burgundy* being now enemies) but this Prize was re-taken by the *Spaniard*. The *Scots* ships arrive safely at *Rotchel*, from whence the young Lady is conveyed by the French Nobility, to *Turon*, where she is married, to the content of both Nations.

The King of *England* had now twice provoked the *Scots* to make war, once by labouring to intercept the *Scottish* Lady; and then by sending *Piercy* with four thousand men to plunder the borders of *Scotland*, who was met by *Dug-*

*las* Earl of *Angus*, between whom was a hot Skirmish, and many killed on both sides, some say about 200, of the *English* were taken 1500. *K. James* raiseth a great Army, and besiegeth *Roxburg*, but when he was in hope of a surrender, the *Q.* comes post to him, & in a great fright assures him, that a plot was intended against him, suddenly to take away his life: Upon this, he riseth from the siege, and disbands the Army, for which he was much blamed, in that he would be so uxorious, as at his wives report to dismiss an Army raised with so much trouble and charge. The King in his return, retires himself into the *Dominicans* Covent at *Perth*, to try what he could learn there of this plot. Mean while the Traitors (the chief of which was *Walter of Athol*, the Kings uncle) hasten to bring the Treason to maturity. One of the Kings own servants makes way for the Traitors entrance into the Kings Chamber in the night, who presently assault him; the Queen by interposing her self to keep off the swords, received two wounds; but being forcibly carried away, and the King left to himself, he is murdered, having received twenty eight wounds. The sad news of the Kings death being spread abroad, inquiry is made every where for the Traitors, who were all found out, and in lesse then forty days justly executed. *Walter* Earl of *Athol*, had his limbs disjointed the first day, by the *Strapado*; then he was set upon a Pillar, and there Crowned with a burning Crown of Iron, to accomplish what the Witches had told him, to wit, that he should be crowned in a great Assembly of people: the next day he is dragged by a horse through the streets of *Edinburgh* upon an Hurdle. The third day his bowels are taken out, and burned, he being yet alive; his heart is pulled out, and his head cut off, and advanced upon a Pole. At last his body is quattered, and set up in four several places: Some others of the same wicked crew, are tortured to death, with hot pincers; and others with other punishments. This King reigned thirteen years, and lived forty four: he was buried in the Charter House of *Perth*, which he founded.

To *James* the 1. succeeded *James* the 2<sup>d</sup>, and youngest, of the Twins, for *Alexander* the other died. This King is Crowned at *Holy Roods* in *Edinburgh*. During his minority, *Alexander Levisston* is made Protector or Regent. *Archibald* Earl of *Duglas*, being angry that this honour was not conferred on him, suffers, or rather encourageth the *Ananders* under his jurisdiction, to spoil and plunder the Country. Complaints are made against him, which he slighted, commanding his people not to obey the Kings Edicts, alledging he had Regal power himself. Besides there were private quarrels between the Regent and Chancellor, crossing each others power, to the great disturbance of the people; which at last broke out into publick hatred, to pillaging, and burning of Houses and Villages. The *Q.* being much troubled at this distemper, and willing to get her young son out of the Chancellors custody, who kept him with himself in *Edinburgh* Castle, cunningly insinuates her self so much into his good opinion, as that she got leave to lie in the same Castle with her son, whom at length she conveyed away in her Trunk, where she kept her Linen, to *Lieith*, and from thence in a ship to *Sterlin*, where the Regent resides. Thither the chief of his party came to see the King, and to consult, how the Kingdom should be freed from the Chancellors tyranny, who had abused his trust, wronged the King, oppressed the people, and filled his own Coffers with the wealth of the kingdom. There the Queens wisdom and care is highly commended, and its agreed, that an Army be raised, and *Edinburgh* Castle besieged, before the Chancellor know any thing. Presently the Regents Faction arm themselves and beleaguer the Castle. The Chancellor knowing his own danger, sends to *Duglas* for aid, assuring him that the Regent aimed at the ruine of them both. *Duglas* who hated them both equally, answers him that both the Chancellor and Regent were perfidious, and aimed at nothing but their own private good,

An. Christi

and that therefore the Kingdom should be happy if they were both dead. Upon this answer, the Regent and Chancelour make Truce for two days, and came to a parly, in which they made known to each other, how dangerous it would be for them to jar, seeing *Duglas* desired the ruine of them both, aiming at the sole rule of the kingdom, which he would easily obtain, if either he could ruine one or both of them. Thus they two agreed: The Chancelour delivers the keys of the Castle to the King, where he supped that night, and the next day confirms the one in his Chancelorship, the other in his Regency. But not long after, *Duglas* their mortal enemy died, whose son being fourteen years of age, by reason of his great wealth and power, and pufft up also with flatterers, took more state on him, then became a subject. His Court outvied the Kings; his Guard consisted of two thousand horse, he made Knights, and Councellors, and Officers of his State; then he sends Ambassadors to the French King, mentioning the merits of his Progenitors to the Crown of France, and so he obtains the Title of Duke of *Turon*, or *Tours*. Which honour his Grand-father received from *Charls 7.* and his father till that time enjoyed it. So formidable was the power of *Duglas*, that the Regent and Chancelour committed the Queen and her husband *James Stuart* of *Lorn* to prison, upon suspicion that they complied with him. Nor were they set free, till they had cleared themselves, and promised not to meddle with publick business, without the Regents knowledge.

Whilst the kingdom was thus distracted, the Islanders land with great Forces upon the main land, and with fire and sword, spoil all before them, sparing neither sex nor age. To these miseries were added a great famine and pestilence; the cause of all these calamities is ascribed to the Regents tyrannical government, who slighting the Chancelor, ruled all by himself. But the Chancelour seeing how discontent the people were with the Viceroy, seizeth himself of *Edinburgh* Castle, and then watched an opportunity, to get the King out of the Regents custody. One day the King was hunting in the Woods near *Sterlin*, with a smal company, the Regent also then was out of the way; the Chancelor with some Troops of horse lighting on the King, desires him not to fear, they were come to take him away from his Imperious Tutor, and to set him at liberty; therefore (saith the Chancelour) play the King, and strive now to rule both your self, and your people, whose disease is such as cannot be cured but by your own immediat hand. With this, he leads the Kings Horse by the bridle, to a place not far off, where four thousand horse were ready to convey him to *Edinburgh*, where he is received with great acclamation. The Viceroy being much perplexed, that he was thus overreached by the Chancelor, and not knowing whom to trust, resolves to cast himself upon the Chancelour: therefore with some of his retinue rides to *Edinburgh*, and by the intercession of the Bishops of *Aberden* and *Murrey*, procured the Chancelour to give him a meeting in the church of Saint *Aegidius*; where having met, the Viceroy desires there might be no difference between them, seeing they both aimed at the same thing, which was the good of the King, and Kingdom, though in the manner there might be some diversities.

He wisheth him to consider how many enemies they had, how glad they would be (saith he) of our jars, how happy might both we and the Kingdom be, if we accord, which if we doe, we shall secure our selves, disappoint our enemies, advance the Kings, and Kingdoms good; therefore if by either of us, any thing hath been done amiss, let it be forgot and forgiven, for the publick goods sake, he having said and confessed his error in carrying away the young K. (whose tuition was by his father committed to the Chancelor alone, & w<sup>ch</sup> he had found to be no honor but a burthen to him) & the Chancelor being glad of this friendly overture, lays hold on it, & so they are reconciled, & resolve

An. Christi

to concur equally in government of the kingdom. Then a Parliament is called, in which many grievances and complaints are exhibited, by those who had suffered in the late distractions. The Regent told them that *Duglas* might quickly remedy these evils, if he would comply with the Parliament, which can do but little good in settling of affairs, so long as so potent a man stood out against them. Upon this, an Order is made to invite him to the Parliament, that he with the rest might act for the publick good; that he would not degenerate from his noble Progenitors, who had been alway faithful Patriots; that if he please to come, he shall have what share in the Government he will desire.

Upon this invitation, and perswasion of friends, and desire also of more power, he comes. The Chancelour met him divers miles from the City, and entertains him for two days together at his house, called *Crichton* Castle, where he desires him to acknowledge the Kings power and government, and to submit thereto; that he would put away from him all lewd persons; and not protect high-way men, nor oppress the Kings subjects. What hath been by him hitherto acted, shall be imputed to his ill Councellors, and his own inexperience and youth. By these fair words, he was allured to go, who also had brought with him his brother *David*: But some of his wisest friends suspected treachery, and therefore wished him to return, or at least to send back his brother, that the whole Family might not perish together. But these men were quickly silenced by the Chancelor; and the two young Gentlemen went in cheerfully, suspecting no hurt. As soon as *Duglas* was entred *Edinburgh* Castle, the Vice-Roy meets him, and makes much of him, causing him to sit down at the Kings own Table. About the midst of Dinner, some of the Kings Guard in Arms, brings into the room a Bulls head in a Dish, which they set down before him. In those times, this was a sign of death to those that were to lose their heads. The young Gallant being affrighted at this sight; began to withdraw from the Table; but he was presently laid hold on and carried out into the Castle Court, where he for his intemperate youthfulness, is beheaded, with his brother. When the King heard of this execution, he wept, but was checkt for it by the Regent, shewing, that in the death of *Duglas*, consisted the Kings security and happiness. *Duglas* dying without issue, the Earldom being intailed, fell to *James*, nick-named *Craslus*, or *Grosse*; and his other Patrimonies, which were very great, to his sister *Beatrix*.

*Grosse* died within two years after, and his eldest son *William* succeeded, who married with his Uncles daughter, heir of many Countries; which brought much envy on him, both because of the great power and wealth was fallen to him, and likewise the propinquity of blood between him and his wife; of these things he being conscious, resolved to procure the Kings favour upon any terms, who now was of years, and had undertaken the Government of the kingdom; therefore he bestowes large gifts on some Courtiers, to speak for him; and withall comes in person to the King, acknowledgeth his former errors, and promiseth for the future to be loyal to his Majesty. Upon this the King receives him into favour, and imparts his counsels to him; but the Vice-Roy and Chancelour fearing lest this insinuating of *Duglas* into the Kings favour, aimed at both their ruines; resigned up their places, and took leave of the Court. The one retired himself to his own Country Mansion; the other to *Edinburgh* Castle: and as they feared, so it fell out; for *Duglas* so insinuated himself into the Kings affection, that he intending to be revenged on them for the death of his two Cousin Germans, perswades the King to call the Regent and Chancelour to an account of their Government; hoping by these means to oppress them if they came, or to have their estates confiscate, if they came not. Upon this they are summoned, but came not, ex-

An. Christi

cusing their absence, not for any crime they were guilty of, but because they had too many enemies at Court, to whose censure they should be loth to submit; therefore they would reserve themselves for better times.

Upon this answer, *Douglas* got a Parliament to be called at *Sterling*, in which the Regent and Chancelour are proclaimed publick enemies to the State, and their estates confiscate. To this purpose, Forces are sent to demolish the Castles, or to new Garison them; which was done accordingly: the Chancelor in requital, raiseth some Troops, and commits great spoil in the enemies Country, being aided by *Kennedy*, Arch-Bishop of *S. Andrews*, *George* Earl of *Angale*, and *John* Earl of *Morton*. Upon these *Douglas* wracks his anger, one quarrel begets another; so divers Forces are raised by these parties, and divers Skirmishes there were, not without much shedding of blood. Mean while the Chancelour *Crichton*, is beleaguered in *Edinburgh* Castle by *Douglas*. At length, after nine months siege, *Crichton* is pardoned for all offences of his against the King, and is permitted to march away with his Forces; so the Castle is surrendered. Not long after, *Crichton* is again made Chancelour, but he left the Court, and all publick employments: every one knew that *Douglas* was the cause of all these civil broils; yet so great was his power with the King, that no man durst accuse him: some great ones he caused to be put to death, some to be banished. Having done what he could against *Crichton*, he tries what he can do against *Levison* the Regent, whom he causeth with his son *James*, and divers others, to be summoned to the Parliament at *Edinburgh*, where they are accused of high crimes. The Regent, and the two *Dundaffes*, are sent to prison in *Dunbarton* Castle, the rest are beheaded. *James* the Regents son, on the Scaffold, complained much against the inconstancy of Fortune, and vanity of worldly Honours; shewing, that notwithstanding his Father had been Vice-Roy of *Scotland*, and had done so much good service for the King and kingdom, yet all is forgot, the Kings pardon sleighted, the intreaties of the Nobility for his life rejected, therefore wiltheth all men to beware of publick employments, and honours, being the deceitful smiles of flattering fortune: and having so said, laid down his neck on the block, to the great grief of the Spectators.

In the midst of these civil broils, *Crichton* the Chancelour is sent Ambassador into *France*, to renew the old League, and to get a wife for the King. About this time *Cameron*, Arch-Bishop of *Glasgow*, for his cruelties and oppression of his tenants, was called upon by a strange voice to appear before Christs Tribunal; being then asleep, he awaketh in fear, and calls up his servants, who fate down by him: He calls for a Book, and as he was beginning to read, the voice summons him again, to the amazement of his servants; but when the voice called the third time, he gave a hideous groan, thrust out his tongue and died. And now the Truce with *England* is expired: whereupon incursions are made into each others Territories, fire, and sword, raging on both sides, so that the Country for many miles is laid waste: therefore a new Truce for seven years is concluded; before the expiration of which, the Borderers begin to spoil and rob each other. Complaints being made on both sides, Armies are raised; a battail is fought, in which the *Scots* had the better; three thousand of the *English* being slain, and of the *Scots* six hundred only; many were taken prisoners, and much booty is carried into *Edinburgh*. This battail was fought at a place called *Sarc*. Upon the news of this overthrow at *London*, a new Army is appointed to be sent against the *Scots*, for re-gaining of what was lost: but this Expedition was hindered by the intestine commotions in *England*; therefore Ambassadors are sent to *Scotland*, with Propositions of Peace: upon which, when they could not agree, a Truce is made for three years; and presently after a Messenger is sent from the Chancelour out of *Flanders*, about the marriage of the Duke

An. Christi

of *Gelders* daughter, sister to the Duke of *Burgundy*, with King *James*. She the next year is conveyed into *Scotland*, with a great company of Lords and Earls, and is Crowned at *Holy Roods*.

After this, *Earl Douglas* undertakes a journey for *Rome*, being the year of Jubilee, accompanied with many Lords and Gentlemen; who in his absence is complained of by his enemies to the King, who durst not in his presence, whisper against him. He is accused of divers oppressions. The King was not willing to hear any complaints against him, being absent; yet to stop the clamours of the people, he sends to the Earls Proctor, to appear, and to take notice of the crimes objected against his Lord. He refuseth to come, wherefore he is imprisoned for contempt; but at last he submits, and comes into the Court, who Petitioned, that the Trial be put off, till the Earl come himself. But a sentence past for satisfaction of his debts. To this purpose, Commissioners are appointed to take up his Revenues, who were sleighted by the Earls Tenants and Vassals; therefore the King sends an Army into *Galloway* to force them. The Earl hearing of these passages at *Rome*, was much perplexed; he was also forsaken by divers of his followers: so that he returns home with thin Attendants.

Before he came to the King, he premises his brother *James* to sound out how he was affected towards him; and finding he stood right in the Kings opinion, returns home; and upon promise that he would suppress the *Ananders*, who were notable Robbers, he is so highly advanced in the Kings favour, that he confers on him the Title of Vice-Roy of *Scotland*; which afterward he forfeited, by having secret correspondency with the King of *England*. *Crichton* the Chancelor was again advanced, which so angered *Douglas*, that he let some of his followers in the high-way one night, as he was going home from *Edinburgh*, to murder him: but being a stout man, he escaped, by killing one, and wounding another, but he was wounded also himself. Shortly after, being recovered, he returns unexpectedly to *Edinburgh*, with a great Train of his friends and servants, and had almost surprised *Douglas*, who having escaped the danger, to make his party the stronger, enters into league with the two richest Earls of that time; to wit, of *Rosse*, and *Craford*. So that now he began to sleight the King; for one Sir *John Harris* of *Galloway* complaining to *Douglas* of the wrongs he had suffered by the *Ananders*, his Vassals, and finding no redresse, falls himself upon them with some Forces, which he had raised, hoping to recover his losses. But he with his Train was surprised by the Earls Forces, and hanged, notwithstanding the King by his Letters intreated his pardon. This made people give out, that *Douglas* aimed to be King himself; for when the King had interceded again for a chief man of the *Macclerlans*, whom *Douglas* kept in prison for killing one of his name, he sleighted the Kings request, & executed the Gentleman. The King being stirred up by the clamors of the people against *Douglas*, sends for him, who because of his guilty mind, refuseth to come, knowing that he had many enemies at Court. Yet at last, upon the publick faith, confirmed by hand and seal, he adventures to come to *Sterlin* with a great Train, where he is kindly used by the King, who after Supper, calls him aside, and reproves him for his ingratitude, and insolencies; yet promiseth to pardon all by-past offences, if he will break off the league with *Rosse* and *Craford*, which could not consist with the Kings safety or honour. At this the Earl began to boggle, and use tergiversation, saying, he would advise with his friends, and that the King needed not to be so hasty or pressing. At this he was so incensed, that he told the Earl plainly, if you will not (saith he) break off this confederacy, I will, and with that stabs him in the breast with his dagger. The Courtiers hearing a noise, presently brake into the room, each one giving the Earl a wound. Upon the report of this slaughter, a great tumult in the Town is raised by the Earls four

An. Christi

brothers, and his faction; but the tumult was at last appeased. The Earl-dom falls to *James* the next brother, who speaking bitterly against the perfidiousness of the King and his Court, desires his brothers, friends, and followers, to besiege the Castle; but they wanted strength enough for that enterprise, therefore they take the Kings Patent containing the Publick Faith, and ties it to a horse tail, dragging it up and down the streets, and using all opprobrious speeches against the King and his Court. Then in the Market place the King and his adherents are denounced Perjurers, Truce-breakers, and enemies to all good men, by the sound of five hundred horns: at last they plunder the Town, and fire it.

Within few days this enraged multitude falls to spoiling of all the Kings lands and tenants; they besiege also *Dalketh* Castle, but could not take it. In the interim the King raiseth an Army, but because the *Duglassians* were too strong for him, he resolves to forbear action, till *Alexander Gordon* come with his Northern Forces; the Earl of *Craford* to keep these from joining with the Kings Southern Forces, encounters with *Gurdon* at *Brechin* in *Angus*. A fierce Battail is fought, in which the *Crafordians* are defeated, many prime men on both sides were killed, *Gordon* here lost both his brothers, and was forced to return home with his victorious Army, to suppress the Earl of *Murry*, who was raging with fire and sword in *Huntlies* Country of *Bogy*; but the *Gordons* beat him not only thence, but also out of his own Country of *Murry*. Mean while a Parliament is called at *Edinburgh*, to which Earl *Duglas* and the Lords that followed him, are summoned to appear, who refuse to come. The Earl also caused a paper to be fastned the next night on the Church door, wherein he renounceth all Allegiance to the King, saying, that he will never trust him, who murdered his Cousins at *Edinburgh*, and his brother at *Sterlin*, being allured thither upon the publick faith; for this contumacy, this Earl *James*, with his brothers, and *Beatrix*, his deceased brothers wife, with the Earl of *Craford*, are proclaimed Rebels. An Army is raised to pursue them; their houses are plundered, fields wasted, barns fired, and their cattle driven away. Earl *James* in the mean time to keep the wealth once gotten, still in his Family, marieth with *Beatrix*, his deceased brothers wife, and deals with the Pope for a dispensation, which the King by his Letters hindred. The three ensuing years are spent in destroying each other with fire and sword, whereupon followed the famine and pestilence. Some of the Earls wisest friends, advise him to submit to the King, rather then stand out to the ruine of himself, family, and friends: but he is resolved never to trust those that had murdered against their faith, his Cousins, and brother: Earl *Craford* being weary of the wars, and of the injustice of the cause, resolves in time to submit to the Kings mercy; therefore one day bare-footed, and bare-headed, he comes and casts himself at the Kings feet, desiring pardon for what was past, and promiseth his fidelity and loyalty for the future. The King upon this submission, and perswasion withall of Arch-Bishop *Kennedy*, his wife Councellour, considering also that *Craford*s falling off from *Duglas*, would weaken that party, receives him into his favor, which *Craford* ever after retained till his dying day. *Duglas* perceiving his Forces to grow weaker daily, had little hope left him now, but in the King of *England*, from whom he expected help; therefore sends *Hammliton* to *London*, who receives this answer from the King, that he would not make war upon *Scotland*, except the Earl will become a subject of *England*, and trust the King with his person and estate: This hope failing him, and being weakened every day by the Kings Forces, who plundered his Countries, and beat down his Castles; he is resolved upon the advice of *Hammliton*, to venture his Fortunes upon a battail. *Abbrecon* Castle was now besieged by the Kings Army. The Earl raiseth all the strength he could to relieve the Castle; but when he came within view of the Kings Army

An. Christi

Army, he made a halt, and kept off his soldiers so long from fighting, that they grew weary with delays. And *Hammliton* one night revolted to the King, who after he had imprisoned him a while, receives him to his favour: Others also following the example of *Hammliton*, forsook *Duglas*, so the Castle at last is taken by the King, and demolished. The Earl being forsaken by most of his men, flyeth to *England*, vvith a few of his friends: but shortly after, he got some new Forces, and vvith them enters *Annandel*, but is beaten by the Kings party; he escapes again vvith his brother *John*; *Archbald* Earl of *Murrey* is slain, and *George* is wounded, and afterward beheaded. Then a Parliament is held at *Edinburgh*, in which the *Duglasses*, *James* and *John*, vvith *Beatrix*, are proscribed.

Earl *James* having lost his brothers, forsaken by his Soldiers, slighted by the English; betakes himself at last to *Donald* Lord of the Isles, and Earl of *Ros*, vvith whom he enters into a league; they fall first upon the Kings lands next to them, then upon *Argile*, *Arran*, *Lechaber* and *Murray*, which they waste vvith fire and sword, they took the Castle of *Furness*, and fired the Town. Mean vvile the English invade the *Scots* borders, and carrie away great booties. *Beatrix* vvho had married two brothers, being checkt in conscience, submits her self to the Kings mercy, vvho pardoned her: The like did the vvife of *Donald*, and the like favour the obtains *Piercy* and the banished *Douglass* invade *Marcia* again, but are beat back vvith loss by *George Douglass* E. of *Angus*, *Donald* being weary of his wicked courses, sends an humble Petition to the King by his friends, acknowledging his faults, and promising all fidelitie and allegiance for the future, presuming his Majestie vvould be no less gracious to him, then he had been to *Craford* and others: The King vvpon the importunity of his friends, and the necessity also that lay on him then, to settle his distracted Kingdome, sends him a pardon; and so all being quieted at home, he prepares now to make war vvpon *England*. In the interim the confederate Lords, namely the Duke of *York*, the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Warwick*, vvith the rest, send Ambassadors to desire the *Scots* aid against King *Henry* their enemy, vvho had lost *France*, oppressed his Kingdome, and injured the *Scots*, vvithall they promise restitution of vvhat had been lately taken from the *Scots*; this proffer is accepted by King *James*, vvho having raised an Army, and being now on his march, is met by an English Imposter vvho had lived long in *Italy*; he feignes himself to be the Popes Legat, sent from his holiness, to forbid him to make war vvpon *England*, for the Pope was resolved to make a general peace in *Christendom*; this being believed, the King disbands his Army, not knowing that this Imposter was sent by King *Henry*, till afterward; vvhen he saw he was deluded, he assembleth again his Forces, and marcheth straight to *Roxburg* Town, vvhere an Ambassie from the English Confederates assures him, that their King was defeated, and the war ended; therefore having thanked him for his good vvill towards them, desires him to raise his siege from *Roxburg*; otherwise an Army vvill be sent against him: To these the King answers, that as hitherto he hath not made use of the Confederates favour, so for the future he vvill not fear their power: He set down before a Castle built on his own ground, from vvich he is not to be removed by vvords; but by arms: Mean vvile *Donald* of the Isles vvith fresh Forces repairs to the King, vvoffering his service and fidelitie, vvich the King accepted; the Earl of *Huntley* also brings some more supplies; the King growing wearie of this long siege, falls to storming of the Castle vvith great Ordnance; but vvhist he was giving fire to one of the pieces himself, standing too near vvvas suddenly struck dead; his death vvvas a vvhile



*An. Christi* while concealed, least the Soldiers should be disheartned, the Queen calling the Lords apart, desires them not to give off, nor be dejected for the Kings death, she would bring another King shortly in his room, so they fall furiously on the Castle; in the interim the Kings son *James*, now 7. years old, is brought into the Camp and saluted King; shortly upon this the Castle is surrendred, the Garison is permitted to depart with their baggage: And that this Castle may breed no more quarrel, it is levelled to the ground. King *James* died the 23 year of his Reigne, and of his life the 29.

1460

## CHAP. XXVI.

The English History under King Edward 4. Edward 5. and Richard 3. from the year 1460, till the year 1485.

10

1461



Upon the overthrow of King Henry 6. Edward Duke of York is proclaimed King, and Crowned: He begins his Reign with many good Acts, Repeals the last Kings Statutes, concerning Treason, and puts the Earl of Oxford with some other of King Henries Countellours, to death. His two brothers George and Richard are made Dukes; the one of Clarence, the other of Gloucester; divers other Lords also are created. The Duke of Somerset, Sir Ralph Percy, submit themselves to the King, who pardons them, but afterward they revolted! When the Queen had returned with new Forces from France, and in Scotland had raised an Army to invade Northumberland; King Edward sends a Fleet into the Northern seas, and an Army by land under the Lord Montacute; he follows after himself with another. Montacute is incountr'd by the Lords Ross, and Hungerford, and Percy. The Lords fled, and Percy was killed. These being defeated, Montacute marcheth against the King and Queens Army, who before King Edward came up with his Forces, disordered and routed the Queens Army. Somerset with divers other great prisoners are taken, and executed. King Henry with many more fled into Scotland; an Army is sent into Northumberland, where divers Castles were taken; in one of which, was Sir Ralph Grey, who was degraded by leaving off his spurs, renting his Coat of Arms, and breaking his sword over his head, and then beheaded. Montacute for his good service, is made Earl of Northumberland; the Earldom of Pembroke is given from Tuthar to the Lord Herbert. But shortly after, Northumberland upon submission, is restored to his possessions and honours; and Montacute was contented with the title of Marquisse. Then the King rewards his Captains and Soldiers with the enemies lands, he new stamps the Coin, passeth a general pardon, and builds many Castles on the Sea Coast, to keep off Pirates, and on the main land, to suppress Theeves and Rebels. Mean while King Henry disguised, and coming for London, is taken and imprisoned in the Tower. King Edward being desired by his Council to marry, sends the Earl of Warwick Ambassador into France, to procure the Lady Bona, daughter to Lewis Duke of Savoy, for his wife. In the interim, this young King being almost out the age of twenty four years, and impatient of long delays, falls in love with the Lady Elizabeth, the Widow of S. John Grey, who was slain in the battel of S. Albans, as he was fighting for King Henry, and at last marieth her; then he makes her Father the Lord Rivers, an Earl, and High Constable of England. Her son, Sir Thomas Grey, is made Marquis Dorset; this match was the occasion of much mischief, as will appear.

1463

1464

The

*An. Christi* The news of this hasty marriage highly displeased the Earl of Warwick, who took this as an affront; yet dissembles his anger, resolving to depose the king, when time served. The King fearing the power of this Earl, indeavoured secretly to abridge him of his Authority: Warwick gets leave to go to his Castle for his recreations sake, where he hatcheth some plots against the K. About which time was born the Lady Elizabeth, afterward the wife of K. Henry 7. and mother to K. Henry 8. K. Edward to make himself the stronger against Lewis the French K. who was offended with his marriage, taking it as a trumph on him and his Q. sister, makes peace with Scotland for 15 years; and to ingage the Kings of Arragon and Castile, he sent them as some think, many sheep to the prejudice of this kingdom. This K. also marieth his sister to Charles D. of Burgundy, as he had formerly married two of his sisters to the D. of Exeter, and Suffolk. Warwick aiming to restore K. Henry, got his two brothers, the Arch-B. of York and Marq. of Montacute, to join with him; yet the Marq. was still a secret friend to K. Edward. The D. of Clarence also being offended with his brother the K. joins with the Earl of Warwick, upon the Earls perswasions, who complained of the K. for sleighting his own kindred, and preferring the kindred of his wife: the D. also marieth with the Earls daughter, being then at Calice; and a rebellion is made in Yorkshire by the Arch-bishop of York and Montacute, causing the country people to believe that the yearly alms of Governor and Priests thereof, to their own private benefit: Hence the Collectors of these alms were beaten by the Rusticks, with whom divers good people sided: at length they fly to arms, more then 15000, who came and faced York, but in the night Montacute sallied out upon these Rebels, killed many, and struck off their Capt. head. The Rebels weary of the siege, march to London, conducted by S. John Conyers. Herbert Earl of Pembroke, and Humphry Lord Stafford, with 9000 Welch men and others, march against these Northern Rebels, 2000 Archers are utterly defeated by the Yorkshire men. A division also fell out between Pembroke and Stafford, so that Stafford departs with his Archers from Pembroke, who being hereat troubled, but not dismayed, set upon the Rebels the next day, and was like to prevail; but one Clapham carying the Earl of Warwicks banner, and accompanied with 500 Northamptonians, crying a farre off, a Warwick, a Warwick, so affrighted the Welch, supposing Warwick had bin coming with another Army, that they ran away, and were utterly routed, to the loss of 5000 of their company. Sir Richard Herbert, and 8 more, are beheaded at Banbury, by the rebels; so was Earl Rivers, the Q. father, and S. John Stafford is executed by the K. command, for deserting the Earl of Pembroke. At last, the K. marcheth on with his Army against the rebels, with whom were joined the D. of Clarence and Earl of Warwick.

1465

1466

A Parly is proposed for peace, and many messengers for that purpose sent to and fro; this made the K. secure, who in his bed was seized on by the Earl of Warwick, rushing with a good Guard into the Kings Camp, slew his watchmen, and took him, whom secretly he conveyed as a prisoner to the Arch-Bishop of York his brother, who gave the K. so much liberty to hunt, that he made shift to escape to London: at which Warwick was much troubled, with Clarence and the confederates, who had upon the K. Captivity dismissed their Army, but they presently raised another, and so did the King; all things now were in a combustion, injustice and violence raged every where. At length by the mediation of some great and peaceable Lords, a parly was granted between the K. and the confederates in Westminster Hall, but to no purpose, such bitterness there was on both sides. The K. also brought much envy on himself, by cutting off the heads of the Lord Welles, and his brother in law Sir Tho. Dymock, because they could not perswade Sir Tho. Welles, the Lords son, and General of the rebels, to forsake them, and seive under him, Sir Robert to revenge his fathers

An. Christi

fathers and uncles death, ventured too rashly upon the K. great army, with his handful of men, the confederates not being come yet with their army, so that the K. got the honor of that day. In this battel of loose coats (so called, because the rebels flung off their coats, that they might run the more nimble) were slain 10000 men, Sir Rob. Vvells, with some other prime men lost their heads. Upon the report of this overthrow, Warwick and Clarence, fled to Exeter, from thence to Dartmouth, & so to Calice, the K. was much grieved that they escaped. But to prevent their landing in England, with forain forces, the K. intreats his brother in Law the D. of Burgoin, to hinder all aid from the said Earl, and to surpris him with a Navy; to which the D. was willing enough, being angry with the Earl for hindring his mariage with Margaret the K. sister; for siding with K. Lewis of France, the D. mortal enemy, and because the Earl was more beloved of the people, then the K. himself. But when the Duke and Earl came with their wives and friends before Calice, the Earls Deputy Fawceter beat them with his Ordnance from the Castle, not permitting any help or succour to be afforded from the Town to the Dutchess, who was brought to bed on shipboard. The King was so glad of this, that he made the said Deputy chief Captain, and Burgoin gave him an annual pension of 1000 Crowns; yet the Deputy encouraged the Earl to ask aid if Francoe, and Calice should be his, when time served. Upon this the Earl puts to sea, takes some of Burgundies ships richly laden, then lands at Deep. Upon invitation, he repairs to the K. who used him and his company graciously and bountifully, for the hatred he bare to K. Edward, and the D. of Burgundy. Upon the report of this intertainment, Q. Margaret, and Pri. Edward her son, with some others, repair to the confederates, and consult about restoring of K. Henry, they gave their solemn oaths to each other, to stand firm, and for the more strength, the Earl of Warwick married his 2<sup>d</sup> daughter to Pri. Edward, which made Clarence a secret enemy to Warwick, fearing that this match would be the undoing of the family of York; therefore he gave private intelligence to his brother K. Edward of all Warwicks proceedings.

The English Lords being furnished with all necessaries from the French K. make ready for their voyage, but are met with by a Burgundian Fleet in the mouth of the river Senes, which the next evening a sudden storm drove into the sea, drowned many, and disperfed most of them. Warwick glad at this mishap of the Burgundian, and understanding by Letters that he was howrely expected in England, where he should be sufficiently backt, makes haste, leaving the Q. and Prince behind, and so with great celerity lands at Dartmouth. The K. mean while trusting to the Burgundian Fleet, which he did not know was spoiled, neglected his own Fleet, and gave himself to dalliance with Ladies. Warwick sends out Proclamations, commanding all in K. Henries name, to aid him, and to oppose Edward the Usurper, and so in a short time, his army mightily increased, and marched towards London. K. Edward also levied a strong army, but understanding that the people every where affected K. Henry and Warwick, his heart failed him, so that he mistrusted his own army, wherefore he left his army in the night, and with 800 of his best friends, posts to Lincolnshire, thence to Holland, resolving to stay with the D. of Burgundy till times were better; the Kentish men hearing that K. Edward was fled, assembled tumultuously in great numbers, and would by force have entred London Gates, but being resisted, they fire and raffe the suburbs, and murder much people, but were at last suppressed and punished by the Earl of Warwick, who presently goeth to the Tower, sets K. Henry at liberty, and conducts him triumphantly thence to Pauls, where having performed his devotions, he keeps his Court in the Bishops Palace; then he calls a Parliament, in which his chief adherents are attainted of high treason, and their estates confiscated. The Dutchy of York is settled on the D. of Clarence, though the second son; the Crown is intailed to K. Henry, his heirs male, and for default of such issue, to Clarence and his heirs. The Q. and her son Pr. Edward, offer divers times to come over by sea, but are hindred by

cross

An. Christi

cross winds and storms, which the people construed as a judgement on her, for her cruelties in causing so much blood shed. Burgundy was loth at first to furnish K. Edward with ships and mony, fearing lest Warwick would make a new war on him; yet understanding that K. Edward was invited by his friends into England, and that there were great hopes, he furnisheth him with 5000 Florences of gold, and 18 tall ships, with 2000 land soldiers: He lands in Yorkshire, where he found cold welcome, the people being more addicted to King Henry. Yet he marcheth to York, where he publisheth, that he made no claim to the Crown, but to his Dutchy, of which he was unjustly deprived, and shews that in this, they were in equity to aid him. Upon this, he took his oath, that he would be a true subject to K. Henry, therefore he was let in, intertained, and monyed; but before two days were at an end, he plants a Garison there, and forceth the inhabitants to furnish him with all things needful for an army; then he hires soldiers every where, and many Gentlemen came in to him. His old friend Montacute, who had a strong army, gave him free passage to march. Warwick comes to the City of Warwick, with his forces, and writes to Clarence, to hasten thither with his Army, for he meant to give the K. battel; but Clarence made no haste, which bred suspicion in Warwick, that he meant to fail him in his need, therefore he goeth to Coventry with his army. K. Edward dares Warwick into the field, who kept close within the walls, to try what Clarence would doe.

K. Edward went thence towards his brother Clarence, who likewise refused to fight: Hereupon the D. of Gloucester, brother to them both, reconciled them and their armies: then the 3 brothers strive to win Vv Warwick to their side, but he cursing the D. perfidiousness, would not unite with them. Wherefore King Edward to increase his strength, repairs to London, which excluded him a while. But when they considered his just title, his abilities for government, and his great army, whereas K. Henry was weaker every way, chiefly in the gifts of the mind, they open their gates, lets him in, and salutes him K. then was K. Henry seized upon again, and committed to the Tower. Vv Warwick thought to have surpris'd the K. in his march towards London, but was prevented, therefore he marcheth to Barnet 10 miles from London, purposing to venture all upon one battel. K. Edw. army being furnished with all things needful, by the Londoners, marcheth also to Barnet. The right Wing of Warwicks army was commanded by his brother Montacute, and Oxford. The left Wing by himself, and the D. of Exeter; the main battail by the D. of Somerset. K. Edw. Vanguard was led by the D. of Gloucester, the main battail by himself, & Clarence, in which was K. Henry; the Rereward was conducted by the Lord Hastings. A cruel battail of 5 or 6 howres is fought, and it was not known a great while, who had the better, at last Warwick perceiving that his men and friends could not hold out long against the Kings fresh Forces and Supplies, pressed so far among his enemies, killing multitudes of them, that at last he was killed himself, and so was Montacute. The death of these two was the overthrow of the whole army, who ran away, and left the Victory for K. Edward, who that afternoon enters the city triumphantly with his prisoner K. Henry. In Pauls he offered up his standard, with thanks to God for his Victory, in this battail were slain almost ten thousand men.

The K. grieved much for the death of Montacute, his true friend, both he and his brother Vv Warwick are brought to London, where in Pauls Church they lay open faced for 3 days, that the people might see they were truly dead, then they were both buried with their Ancestors in one grave. Q. Margaret landed at Vvaymouth, with some Forces, before she heard of K. Edwards Victory; therefore with her son the Prince, she takes sanctuary in the Abby of Beaulieu, whether the D. of Somerset Earl of Pembroke, Earl of Devonshire, with divers others resorted, resolving to raise a new Army: the Q. and Somerset levy forces about Brisfoll and Gloucester, intending to joyn themselves with Pembrokes

S f f

Welch

*An. Christi* Welch men, but the K. prevented those designs, who sent his brother the D. of Gloucester with an army, who overthrew the D. of Somerset's forces in one hour, of whom above 3000 were slain, among which, was the Earl of Devonshire, with some other prime men. The Q. and Pr. are taken prisoners, with divers others, who the next day are beheaded, except the Q. the Pr. is murdered by Clarence, Gloucester, Dorset, and Hastings. Not long after, Reynier sold Naples & Sicily, and with the money of that sale ransomed his daughter Q. Margaret. K. Henry in the mean while was found dead in his Chamber in the Tower, being murdered by K. Edw. brother, the D. of Gloucester. To assure the people he was dead, his body is exposed to the public view one whole day in S. Pauls Church, his two brothers Clarence & Gloucester for their perjuries & murders, afterward imbrewed their hands in their own blood. Two or 3 years after K. Edw. was settled 1473 his brother in law the D. of Burgundy, persuades him to renew his wars with France, w<sup>ch</sup> he did, because of his title to that kingd. and for that the Fr. K. had assisted Q. Margaret and Warwick, against K. Edw. and for that the Fr. K. made war upon the D. of Burgundy. Now because money was wanting, a benevolence is demanded, and paid, but grudgingly. One old widow, though a niggard, gave the K. 20 l. for which he kissed her, the being proud of this kisse, gave the K. 20 l. more, shewing that 40 l. was little enough for a kings kisse.

The K. having at Dover 500 ships and boats, 1500 Horse men, and 5000 Archers landed at Calice, but the D. of Burgundy failed him, who promised to meet the K. with 2000 Horse, who after he had trifled away much time in the siege of Nuyce, sent his forces to Berroys in Lorrain, to be revenged on Reynier, Q. Margarets father, for some ill language he gave him. Yet K. Edw. marcheth by Bolten to Perone, where he had no provision of the D. for his Army, thence he goeth to S. Quintins, but is beat back from thence, contrary to promise. At last a peace is concluded with the French K. for 9 years, on these conditions: 1. That the Fr. K. pay to Edw. 75000 Crowns, and 50000 more for an annuall pension. 2. That the Fr. K. within one year marry the K. of Englands daughter to the Dolphin, allowing them for their maintenance yearly 50000 crowns and then shall deliver the quiet possession of Guyan to them. 3. That the Lo. Howard and S. John Cheny, should stay with the Fr. K. as Hostages til the Engl. army be landed in England: The D. of Burgundy storms at this peace, shewing it was a dishonourable act in K. Edw. who replied that it was more dishonourable in the D. to call him in, and then to fail him. So the D. went away in a chaffe. The Fr. K. to confirm his amity with England, sends to the English Army 100 Wagons of wine, and gave them leave for 3 or 4 days to solace themselves in Amiens, where they found good chear provided for them And because they carried themselves civilly to the Townsmen, the Fr. K. sends to the chief Commanders, plate and money. Shortly after, K. Edw. by gifts, intreaties, and protestations, that he would marry one of his daughters to the yong Earl of Richmond, got him to be delivered to his Ambass. by the D. of Britany, whom presently they conveyed to S. Malos, but the D. being informed that a marriage was pretended, but his death was intended, and fearing this delivery would be a perpetual stain to his Honor, sends one Peter Landoy to S. Malos, where the yong Earl was, expecting a fair wind. This Peter by his cunning, got the Earl into a Sanctuary, so was the sheep delivered, and the wolf deluded of his money. But the D. promised faithfully to retain the Earl by him as his prisoner, w<sup>ch</sup> in some sort contented K. Edw. After this the D. of Clarence, K. Edw. brother, was condemned of Treason, against the K. life, and is imprisoned in the Tower. But not long after, he was drowned in a But of Malmse, not without the kings knowledge.

1488 This K. the 5 last years of his life, grew extream wretched and covetous, so that with his exactions, he lost his peoples affections. In the 20 year of his reign, he sends into France to have the marriage accomplished between the Dolphin and his daughter. But K. Lewis deluded him with frivolous excuses, and marieth

*An. Christi* marieth him to Maximilians daughter, which Maximilian was the son of Frederick the Emperor, against his oath and articles. James 3<sup>d</sup> K. of Scots desires a match between his son and K. Edw. daughter, which was willingly assented to, and good sums of money disbursed beforehand, conditionally it should be repaid if the match broke off. But the Scots K. after things were concluded, sends an Army to invade England, which spoiled all before them with fire and sword, against whom Gloucester is sent with 20000 men, who took the town of Barwick, and besieged the Castle, but could not take it; thence he marcheth into Scotland, wasting all in his way, and forced K. James into Edinburgh Castle; the Nobility desire peace, and obtain it, on these conditions, that a full amends be made for the hurt done, 2. That K. James would restore his brother the D. of Albany, to his honors and possessions. 3. That the Castle of Barwick be delivered up, and 4. That repayment be made of K. Edw. money lent to K. James. The 3 last conditions were assented to; K. Edw. being deluded by the Fr. K. about the marriage of the Dolphin, and likewise the tribute of 50000 Crowns, which was to be paid him yearly during his life, was denied; resolved to invade France with a Royal Army. But in the midst of his preparations, he fell sick, as some think of a surfeit, or as others of melancholy, and shortly after died the 23 year of his reign.

10 To K. Edw. 4. succeeded his son Edw. 5. at 13 years of age. His uncle the D. of Gloucester (a man as deformed in body, as crooked in conditions, who had murdered both K. Henry, and his son Pr. Edw. and his brother also the D. of Clarence) resolves with the D. of Buckingham, and Lord Hastings, to remove from the yong K. all his mothers kindred, being mean people, and to undertake the charge of government themselves. Therefore when he understood that the Q. with her brother the Earl Rivers, and her son the Lo. Grey, intended to conduct with an army the yong K. out of Wales, towards London, there to be crowned. He wrote to the Q. advising her not to come up to London, in that posture, for fear the people would grow jealous, and raise Civil wars; therefore 30 wisheth her to put aside that Train, and to disband her Army: he swears withal, that this his advice proceeded from his good will and love to her and hers. The Q. being too credulous, and thinking he had spoke as he meant, follows his advice, which he also by his letters gave to the Earl Rivers, and the Lord Grey. So the army is dismissed, and the K. is accompanied by Rivers, Grey, and some other friends to Northampton, and thence to Stony Stratford, which little town not being capable of the whole train, the Earl with his followers remained that night in Northampton. But Gloucester, and Buckingham, with some resolved attendants, bore Rivers company that same night; but withal in the night time, the two D. seized upon all the keys of the Inn, and caused all the ways between 40 these two towns, to be guarded, and none to pass that way; then they fell upon the Earl, who was confident of them till now, and commits him to safe custody. The 2 D. rode to Stony Stratford, and presented their service to the K. which he accepted, having no suspicion of what was done; then they seize on the Lo. Grey, the K. half brother, and some others, whom they sent to Pomfret Castle, where without any judicial proceedings, they lost their heads; they remove also the K. menial servants & officers, giving out that the Earl with the rest of his confederates, meant to destroy all the Lords of K. Edwards blood, and to rule all themselves. The Q. being then at Westminster, hearing of these tragical passages, took sanctuary there, and repented she had advised upon Gloucesters cunning letters, to dismiss the army. The K. also grieved much, but the 2 D. protested they acted nothing but for his weal, and that they would be faithful to him till their lives end. Then they brought him to London, where he is met by the Major and his brethren, in whose presence Gloucester demeaned himself so submissively to the king, that they all, and most of the Nobility and Counsellors of State, were persuaded of the Dukes real intentions for the kings good; so that he was made protector of king and kingdom.

An. Christi

Gloucester having obtained his chiefest desire, labours next to get the young D. of York into his hands; for that end, he complains to the K. Council of the wrong the Q. did both to the K. in that she would not permit him to enjoy the company of his only brother, and to the kingd. in detaining the said D. in sanctuary, as a malefactor in prison; by which all Councillors & Officers of State, are scandalled. This motion so well pleased the Lords, that presently they employ the Cardinal Arch-B. of York, who was gracious with her to desire she would send the yong D. to his brother the K. to solace him, for these reasons: 1. Because it was dishonourable to the whole kingd. that a childe so near to the K. should be kept in prison; for what else is a sanctuary. 2. Because that place was only for such as by their conscience were accused of some crime, which an innocent child could not be guilty of. 3. Because he wants discretion to demand such a privilege. Lastly, they tell her that any person may be taken out of sanctuary, for his good and welfare; and therefore if she refused to let him go, that he must be taken thence without her leave, and the rather because it is suspected she meant to send him beyond seas. The queen alledged, that none was so fit to tutor so yong, tender, and sickly a child, as the mother, & that both their safeties consisted in being separated; but perceiving they meant to have him by force, after she had wept, kissed, and embraced the child, praying for his safety, she delivers him to the Arch-B. from whom the Protector in the Starre-Chamber attending then the queens answer, took the child, kissed and hugged him, protesting that from his soul, nothing in the world was so dear to him, except the king, whereas indeed he meant the destruction of them both; then he brought him to the K. who was exceedingly joyed with his company: but shortly after, he conveyed them both through London in great pomp to the Tower, pretending he did this out of his care to them during the troubles of the kingdom, whereas indeed there were no troubles but by his procurement, and the other Lords who adhered to him.

The Protector having secured the two young Princes, next bethinks himself how he shal obtain the kingd. which he knew would be difficult without the D. of Buckingham, who was a powerful man; therefore he acquaints him with his intention, desiring his assistance, promising to mary his son to the said D. daughter, to give him the Earldom of Hartford, to which the D. pretended a right, but never could obtain it, from Edw. 4. and lastly, to share with him in the K. treasury. Upon these tearms Buckingham assented to, and assisted him in the plot: but the Lo. Hastings, whom the Protector had made Chamberlain, could not be won to this wicked design; for one Catesby a Lawyer, and a Favorite of Hastings, was employed by the Protector to sound his inclination, which when he had craftily done, he informs the tyrant there was no possibility to win him: Hereupon the Protector calls a Council of the Lords at the Tower, under pretence of fitting all things for the K. Coronation, which he least meahed: When the Lords were sit, the Protector at last came, and cheerfully saluted them all: Chiefly D. Morton, B. of Ely, whom he hated, yet employs him to procure som Strawberries out of his garden, which were very good. The Bish. glad to pleasure him, hastneth home; the Protector also presently went out, and returns within an hour, but with a discontented countenance, and troubled minde. All wondered at the sudden change: at last after some silence, he asketh what punishment he deserved, that intended to murder the K. uncle and Protector. At length Hastings answered, that he deserved the greatest punishment imaginable. Then saith the Protector, that forceress the Q. and that strumpet Shores wife, have conspired against my life; of which that you may be sure, you shall see my arm, which is already consumed, and with that he shewed his naked arm, as if they had not all known, that his arm had been ever so from his Nativity. Besides, no man could believe, that the Q. so vertuous a Lady, would intend such a mischief, or that she would have consorted with her deceased husbands concubine, Shores wife. Hastings who after K. Edw. death, consorted with Shores

wife,

An. Christi

wife, was beginning to excuse her; but presently the Protector interrupted him, calling him traitor for doubting of that which he spoke, and with that clapping his hand rudely on the table, the chamber suddenly was filled with armed men, one of which, knockt down the Lord Stanley under table with his Holbard, but killed him not. Hastings is arrested by the Protector, accused of Treason, and without any other proceeding, carried out into the Green, where his head is chopped off. This execution was done that very day, and hour, that the Earl Rivers, Lord Grey, and Sir Thomas Vaughan, were executed in Pomfret Castle, without legal proceeding.

After the execution, the Cardinal of York, the Bish. of Ely, and the Lo. Stanley, are committed there to several prisons. The Protector and Buckingham, put themselves presently into arms, and sends for the chief Citizens; to whom the Protector complains, that his death was conspired that morning by Hastings and his complices; therefore they are required to certify the City of the true cause of this broil and execution in the Tower. Two hours after the execution, a long Proclamation is read by an Herald of Arms, which was thought to have been written and sealed some days before. Then was Dr. Shaa imploied to Preach the next Sunday after at Pauls Cross, a Sermon in commendation of the pedigree, vertues and valour of the Protector, and in detestation of the last K. Edw. lascivious acts, and familiarity with Shores wife, and others; also to shew his children were bastards, and born in adultery; because he was contracted to the Lady Lucy, before he married the Lady Grey, and was also affied to the Lady Bonard, sister in law to the Fr. K. he also accuseth the Protectors own mother of incontinency, in the generation of K. Edw. and the D. of Clarence. At last, he hoped the people would receive the Protector, as their Lo. and K. But the Doctors eloquence could not prevail with the people, to accept Richard for their K. yet the next day in Guild-Hall, Buckingham labours by arguments to make the Protector right heir and inheritor of the Crown, and with much reluctance, got divers of the townsmen to go with him to the Protector at Beunards Castle, where they prayed him to undergo the office of a K. which he refused to do at first; but upon their importunity, he assented to that, which most of all things in the world he desired.

K. Richard being Crowned, to insinuate himself into the good opinion of his enemies, makes Stanley whom he imprisoned, Steward of his house, and enlarged the Arch-B. of York; but Morton of Ely, he sent prisoner to the Duke of Buckingham. Then he creates his only child Edw. Prince of Wales, John Howard is made D. of Norfolk, his eldest son Sir Tho. Howard, is created Earl of Surrey, the Lo. Barkley is advanced to the Earldom of Nottingham, and the Lord Lovel is made Viscount Lovel. He sends also Ambassadors to King Lewis of France, to conclude a peace; but Lewis would not admit any of them into his presence. Upon this he began to think, that so long as the two young Princes lived, his glory would be eclipsed; therefore he makes a progress to Gloucester, appointing that the children should be murdered in his absence, thinking this would take off all suspicion from him. He first writes to Brakenbury Lieutenant of the Tower, to execute his bloody sentence, which he refused to do. Whereupon cursing the Lieutenant, he writes to Sir Ferril, promising him great rewards to execute this murder, to which he assented, and by the K. command takes the keys of the Tower from the Lieutenant; and then the next night he sends two wicked executioners into the childrens chamber, where they smothered them in their beds, and buried them at the stairs foot. The news of the two young Princes found dead in their bed, much perplexed the Nobility and people, but most of all the dying Queen, great sorrow was expressed every where, except amongst the Tyrants confederates. But this wicked Tyrant is crossed and tortured, not only with continual fears and jealousies, and tortments of conscience attending on his bloody soul, but also the next year, by the loss of his only child the Prince of Wales. D. Morton, a witty and learned man, being

Bucking-

*An. Christi* Buckingham prisoner, observing the D. ambitious humour, insinuates so into his favour, that they began to be inwardly familiar, and to impart their secret thoughts to each other: vwithal, the D. shews, how ungratefully the Usurper had used the D. by vvhose means he had obtained the Crown, in not rewarding him, nor restoring to him the Earldom of *Hartford*, but rather labouring to suppress him, being jealous of his greatness. He complains also of the kings ingratitude to his mother, in making her unchaste in the conception of his two elder brothers, K. *Edw.* and the D. of *Clarence*. Lastly, of his murders committed on the Lo. *Rivers*, and the rest; chiefly of Pr. *Edw.* son to *Henry 6.* and of the murder of the same K. and of *Clarence* his own brother, and of the murdering of his innocent Nephews, vvhom he bastardized. Therefore he advi- 10 seth the D. for his own safety, and his Countries, to make use of his own greatness, and goodness, and of the peoples affections, that so he may either make himself K. or else further the uniting of the two Houses of *York* and *Lancaster*, by bestowing K. *Edw.* eldest daughter on the Earl of *Richmond*, descended from *John* of *Gant* the 4<sup>th</sup> son of K. *Edw.* the third; by vvhich means the kingdom should be quieted, both from Civil wars, and this monster of men.

The D. though ambitious enough, yet he knew there vvas much envy, but little security in usurpation; he therefore thought it best to make the Earl K. 20 The Bishop vvas desirous to go into the Isle of *Ely*, promising to furnish the D. with men and money, but the D. fearing lest the Bishops escape should be required at his hands, was loth to let him go, nor was he willing to part vwith such a friend and Councillor; but the Bish. knowing his head was in danger of the Tyrant, whilst he was a prisoner made an escape in a disguised habit to *Ely*, where having furnished himself with money, sails presently into *Flanders*, animates the Earl of *Richmond* then in *Britany*, to marry K. *Edw.* daughter, to depose the Tyrant, and to make himself K. He also by letters stirs up the Gentry and Lords to assist the Earl, who so prevailed with the D. that he enlargeth him, and meant to give him aid, notwithstanding K. *Richard* had importuned the D. to deliver up the person of *Richmond* to him, for jewels, money, and large 30 promises. This plot was not so closely caried, but K. *Richard* knew of it; therefore he means either to win *Buckingham*, or to dispart him: for this cause he kindly invites him to the Court; but the D. knowing *Richards* bloudy disposition, excuseth his not coming by the indisposition of his body; the K. writes a sharp letter, commanding him to come; the D. returns a peremptory answer, that he would not come to such a monster and tyrant, who was no K. but an Usurper. With this, the D. hastneth into *Wales*, where he raiseth an Army; forces also are levied in *Devonshire* by the *Courtneys*, some in *Kent*, by the Gentry there, and some in *Yorkshire*, by *Grey Marq. Dorset*. K. *Richard* to support his bad cause, raiseth another Army, by which he meant to suppress the D. forces, 40 before they were joined with their friends. The D. striving to dare the K. determines to lead his whole Army through the River *Severn*, at a low Flood; but God for his assenting to the murder of the two young Princes, crossed him so with continual rains for ten days, that both his passage was hindred, and the Country thereabout almost drowned, to the great loss of the inhabitants; the *Welch* men run away, and left him alone. The D. is enforced to harbour himself near *Shrewsbury*, at one *Banastors*, who vvas his servant. The D. friends hearing of his bad success, disperse their companies, every one shifting for himself; divers of them took shipping for *Britany*, as the *Courtneys*, *Dorset*, and many knights. The K. proscribes *Buckingham*, promising 1000 pound to him 50 that should take him: Upon this, his faithless servant *Banaster*, betrays him to the Sheriff of *Shropshire*, vvhovvith a strong guard, conveys him to the King then at *Shrewsbury*. The D. upon examination confessed all, & without farther proceeding lost his head. In the mean while, the Earl of *Richmond* with 500 enters the sea, not hearing of his friends arrival out of *England*, nor of their overthrow; but by a sudden storm, his ships were scattered, and driven back, some

some upon *Normandy*, some on *Britany*, the ship in which the Earl was, kept *An. Christi* the sea, with one moffe. The next day the Earl came before *Pool*, but finding the Coasts all along filled with armed men, doubting they vvere his enemies, though they laboured to train him in, returns, and lands safely in *Normandy*, whence he sends to *Charles 8.* for a free passage into *Britany*, which the K. granted, and vwithal sent him store of money: so having come into *Britany*, he meets his exiled friends, vvhovv acknowledge him for their K. conditionally, that he marry with K. *Edwards* daughter, which he promised by solemn oath to do. So they make ready a Fleet by the D. of *Britanyes* help, and levied what soldiers they could get.

Mean while K. *Richard* tyrannizeth over *Richmonds* friends, he makes him a Traitor by act of Parliament; many Lords he puts to death, and seized upon their whole estates as Traitors. He executed one for this distich.

The Rat, the Cat, and Lovel the Dog,  
Rule all in *England* under the Hog.

That is, *Ratcliff*, *Catesby*, and *Lovel*, the Tyrants 3 Favorites, ruled all under K. *Richard*, who gave a Hog for his supporter, to make himself the stronger. He concludes a peace with K. *James* of *Scotland*, and matcheth his Niece the Lady *Anne* with the Prince of *Rothsay*, the said K. eldest son. He also labours again with large bribes and promises, to get the Earl of *Richmond* into his hands, but could not; for the D. of *Britany* vvas then sick, and *Peter Landois*, vvhovv at *S. Malos* had freed the Earl heretofore, now disposed of all business in that Country. He being greedy of so great a prey as vvas promised, to wit, great store of money, and all the Revenues of the Earl and his confederates, promiseth to betray the Earl; but D. *Morton* hearing of the danger, presently acquaints the Earl therewith, who hasteneth out of *Britany* into *France*, where he was welcomed with his friends by the French King, and help promised him. *Landois* had appointed some companies of armed men to attend the Earl into 30 *England*; but indeed to surprize him. Now when it was given out, that the French K. would assist the Earl, divers Commanders from *Calice* secretly repair to the Earl, who courteously received them. But K. *Richard* understanding of preparations in *France* to aid *Richmond*, he deviseth a new plot to keep him off from marrying vwith the Lady *Elizabeth*, as he intended; therefore he gets the Q. Mother upon large promises made to her, to deliver into his custody, her five daughters, hoping hereby to hinder the uniting of the two Houses. So out of covetousness, she delivers her daughters to him, vvhovv had killed her first husband, executed unjustly her brother, and her son, and had bastardized and murdered her two other sons. Having got them into his custody, he intends 40 to marry the said *Elizabeth* his brothers daughter, but that was hindred by Q. *Anne* his wife, who within a few days after is found dead in her bed; some think she was poisoned; others, that it was grief killed her, because she perceived the designs and plots of her wicked husband.

The Queen was scarce cold, vvhovv King *Richard* makes love to the Lady *Elizabeth*; but she kept him off with fair words, desiring him first to subdue the Earl of *Richmond*, and to settle himself and kingdom. Mean while false news comes to him, that *Richmond* and his friends vvere out of hope to receive any aid from the French King. Upon this, King *Richard* began to be secure, and to discharge his Garisons on the Sea Coast. When news was brought 50 to *Richmond*, that his Lady, and her sisters were by their mother delivered into K. *Rich.* hands, that the wife of this *Richard* was found dead, and he now made love to the Lady *Eliz.* his chief hopes. This news hastned *Richmond* to come for *England*; therefore having obtained of the French King money, ships, armor, artillery, and 2000 men, he arrives at *Milford Haven* in *Wales*. The *Welch* understanding that he was the son of *Owen Tudor*, their Country man, and that his marriage with the Lady *Elizabeth*, would settle and unite the kingdom,



*An. Christi* dom, they flock to him from all parts. Besides these, *Thomas Lord Stanley*, Father in Law to *Richmond*, came to him with 5000 men; *Sir George Talbot* also, came with the power of the young Earl of *Shrewsbury*, (then in Ward) which consisted of 2000 men. All these had been levied for King *Richards* service, but were now revolted to a more lawful power. King *Richard* grieved much at this revolt, yet raiseth an Army of 20000 men, purposing to venture all upon a battel. The D. of *Norfolk* could not be drawn away from *K. Richard*, but remained loyal till his death. The 22 of *August*, and third year of this Tyrants Reign, at *Bosworth* in *Leicestershire*, the two armies met, and fought for two howres space. King *Richard* perceiving his men to fight coldly, and that many revolted, and many stood by as Neuters, he rusheth furiously amongst his enemies, and was stoutly encountered by *Sir William Brandon*, the Earls Standerd bearer, whom *Richard* slew. He also knockt down *Sir John Cheney*, a stout man, and gets to the Earl, whom he fights, but is at last killed by him, and so by the death of this Tyrant, the long quarrel ended. *Richard* lost the Duke of *Norfolk*, and 1000 more. The Earl lost not above 100. King *Richards* carcase was found naked in the field, filthy with dirt, and gory bloud, which was cast on an Horses back, and caried to *Leicester* like a Calf, his head and hands hanging down on the one side, and his legs on the other, and so was basely interred, as he had buried his two Nephews. The Crown was found among the spoils, and brought to *Richmond*, by the Lord *Stanley* his Father in Law. There in the field *Henry* is Crowned, with the acclamations of the people. And then he gives solemn thanks to God; and so ended this Tyrant *Richard*, who in his life was monstrous, in his death courageous: He had a deformed body, but a cunning brain, an eloquent tongue, and a ready hand.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XXVII.

The English History under the Reigns of King *Henry the 7.* and King *Henry the 8.* from the year 1485. till the year 1548.

**K**ing *Henry the 7.* being crowned, according to his promise marrieth the Lady *Elizabeth*, uniting thereby the two Roses. After the manner of *France*, he chooseth a guard to attend upon him, and makes his Uncle *Jasper Earl of Pembroke*, Duke of *Bedford*; The Lord *Stall* his father-in-law is made Earl of *Derby*, and divers other honors he conferred; *Stafford* the Duke of *Buckingham*s eldest son is restored to his fathers honors and possessions. Then he calls a Parliament; wherein all former Acts prejudicial to him, or his, are cancelled; the Crown is entailed on him and his heirs. He makes also good Laws, and pardons his enemies upon their submission. He bountifully recompensed the Duke of *Britany* for his former favours, and so he did the French King, thereby redeeming his Hostages, the Marquess *Dorset* and *Sir John Bourchier*. But King *Henry* was not suffered to enjoy long quietness, by reason of unruly spirits, such as the *L. Lovel*, *Hunsfey* *Stafford*, and his brother *Thomas*, who leaving their Sanctuary at *Colchester*, made many people in the North take Arms against the King, who upon this news suddenly sends against them his Uncle the Duke of *Bedford* with three thousand men, whose breast-plates were made of tanned leather, for want of better Armour. But *Lovel* perceiving that the King would force him to fight before he was ready, and that a better strength was coming with the King himself, his fear made him flee to *Sir Thomas Broughton* in the North; the two *Staffords* took sanctuary in *Cuthberts* Abbey near *Oxford*, and the Rebels Army left to the Kings mercy, who upon their submission pardoned them. The *Staffords* are taken out of the sanctuary, which must not protect Treason; *Hunsfey* was put to death, the younger brother spared, because he was instigated by his restless brother *Hunsfey*.

Shortly after the quenching of this fire, breaks forth a new flame blown by *Simond* a Priest, who knowing that *Edw. Plantaginet* Earl of *Warwick*, son and heir to *George Duke of Clarence*, brother to King *Edward the fourth*, had been kept by the two last Kings a prisoner in *Tork-shire* ever from his infancy, and that King *Hen.* had secretly removed him to the Tower, this Priest (I say) got the tuition of a witty boy, one *Lambert*, but of mean parents; him the Priest instructed in all manner of literature and courtship, making him believe that he was the onely son and heir of the Duke of *Clarence*, the boy being now seventeen years old, (the true *Plantaginet*s age) and made fit to act his part, is transported by the Priest into *Ireland*, who quickly works upon the fickle wilde-Irish; to accept him for their King. Shortly after, the Nobility and Commons, and *Gerardin* the Chancellor are all drawn into this net. *Gerardin* concludes from his person, feature, gesture, speech, and other Princely qualities in him, that he was the Duke of *Clarence* his heir, and therefore furnisheth him with money and other necessaries, so did the other Lords of *Ireland*: he informs also the Lady *Margaret* King *Edward the fourth*s sister, daughter to *Charles Duke of Burgundy*, and supposed Aunt to this counterfeit, of his being there, which she knew to be false, yet entertained the conceit out of malice to *Henry* of the house of *Launcester*, (she being of the house of *Tork*) therefore she gives out that the true *Plantaginet* was in *Ireland*, that the Irish had received him for their King, and that she would furnish him with arms, men and money; this report carries over into *Flanders* to the Dutcheff Dowager, her nephew the Earl of *Lincoln*, *Francis Lord Lovel*, with some other prime men, at whose comming the Dutcheffs caused to be levied two thousand men in her Country under *Martin Sward*; these sail for *Ireland*, and joyn with *Sir Tho. Gerardin* the Chancellor who had raised two thousand Irish ready to passe

*An.Christi.* for England. Wife and vigilant King Henry caused the true Plantagenet to be brought from the Tower through the streets, into Pauls Church there to be seen by the people. Then he prepares an Army to encounter Lamberts forces who were arrived near to Lincoln; the two Armies courageously joyn battel, but in lesse space then an hour, the naked Irish are slain with their Commanders, Lovel, Gerardine, Sward and Broughton, the rest submitted, and are pardoned, the Priest is sent to perpetual imprisonment; his personated Pupil is first made a skullian, and afterward the Kings chief Falconer. Then the Queen is crowned, Archbishop Bourchier dieth, Morton Bishop of Ely succeeded in that See, and was also made Lord Chancellor, who shortly after received from 10 Pope Alexander 6. the Cardinals Hat.

1488. The troubles between the French king; and the Duke of Britany did perplex King Henry, for they both had been his friends, therefore was unwilling to side with either, but rather to mediate a peace; the Duke being ruled by his French guests, the Duke of Orleans and his complices refused to hearken to those conditions of peace which the French king proposed. About this time the Lord Woodville, Captain of the Isle of Wight, and the Queens Uncle, without the Kings knowledge sailed into Britany with four hundred expert souldiers to aid the Duke, who was then ready to fight the French king near to Tongiers. Fifteen hundred Britains were clad in coats with red crosses, as if they had been Englishmen; but in the end the poor Britains are slain, with the Lord Woodville, so that the French got the day. Upon this King Henry is advised by his Parliament, rather to adhere to the Britains, then to the French, because he had been more beholding to that Duke, then to King Charles; besides if the French should get Britany from the Duke, they would prove bad neighbours to England. Hereupon an Army of eight thousand men is sent under the Lord Brooks; but as soon as they arrived, the Duke died, and the war ended by the affiancing of the Lady Anne the heir of Britany to King Charles.

1489. The Northern Rusticks of York and Durham, refusing to pay the tax granted to the King for maintenance of the British war, rushed furiously upon, and murdered Henry Earl of Northumberland, for distraining the goods of such as would not pay, and not resting here, they grew to a great body, and force the Gentry of those places to take their parts: Hereupon the King sends an Army under Thomas Earle of Surrey, who was taken prisoner at Bosworth field, but is now set free by King Henry, and received into his favour. The king had another Army comming after, which so affrighted the Rebels, that they all fled every man to his own home; but the king made strict enquiry after the Ring-leaders, who being apprehended, were executed, the meaner sort were pardoned.

1490. King Charles having corrupted the Brittish Nobility, obtained the Lady Anne for his wife, and returned the Lady Margaret to her father Maximilian king of the Romans, who scorning thus to be slighted, resolves to be revenged, therefore he desires aid from king Henry, who by advice of his Parliament concluded to assist him, because France by the addition of Brittain would become too great. A benevolence is demanded and granted by the Gentry, but grudgingly. A fleet of ships is prepared to transport the Army under the kings Uncle Jasper Duke of Bedford, and John Earle of Oxford, but when the Army was ready to be embarked, the king is informed that Maximilian had no military preparations at all, which vexed king Henry, fearing left the people might account him a coward if he should dismissthe Army, or brand him with oppression or covetousness, for pretending a war to pick their pockets, therefore he advieth with his Parliament what were best to be done in this case; they all resolve, that he alone with his own Army should war upon France in revenge of the wrongs lately offered to king Henry.

1491. Shortly after, the king sailed over to Calice, and there having marshalled his

his Army into four battels, he layeth siege to Bulloign; the French king fearing lest the Britains (whom he had lately offended by altering some of their customs) might fall off to the English, sends Articles of peace to king Henry, who accepted of them, and shortly after a peace is concluded, and the sum of 186000. and 200 pounds is paid towards king Henries charges, besides a yearly pension of five and twenty thousand crowns was duely paid whilst king Henry lived: and so the king returns by Calice into England.

Mean while the Dutcheff of Burgundy, a mortal enemy to the house of Lancaster, deviseth a new trick to vex king Henry: she had got a Dutch boy, comely, learned and witty, his true name was Peter Warbeck, but nicknamed Perkin, which in Dutch signifieth weakness; he was educated by this Lady in all Princely qualities, so that he was thought by most to be of a Noble extraction; he was so expert in the pedigrees of the houses of York & Lancaster, that no man could exceed him; for she made him believe that under the name of Richard D. of York second son to King Edward the 4. her brother, she meant to make him King; then she sends him over into Ireland, where he was received as their Lord and King: the French king also willing to divert the English Army intended against him, and to remove King Henry, sends for this Perkin Warbeck, resolving to make him King; as soon as he was come to the French Court, he was received and entertained as if he had been born to a Kingdom, but on a sudden his honours vanished into smoak, for a peace was concluded between the two Crowns, and Perkin ran away secretly to the Dutcheff of Burgundy, and fearing lest the French would have betrayed him to King Henry, the Dutcheff receives him with great joy, giving him all the accommodation becoming a Prince, with a guard of thirty Gentlemen; then she caused it to be published in England, that her nephew Richard Duke of York lived in her Court, therefore wisheth all true hearted English to stick by him, as rightful heir to the Crown.

The report is suddenly believed by those who were willing to fish in troubled waters, who delight in the change, who were discontented with the house of Lancaster, and complained they were not rewarded by King Henry as they deserved. Upon this Sir Robert Clifford is sent into Flanders to enquire the truth of things, who having conferred with the Dutcheff, and seen the behaviour of this Mock-prince, certifies his friends in England, that this is the true son of King Edward the 4. The perswasion of which grew so general, that King Henry prepares for future storms, and Perkins invasions; he guards all the Sea-coast, and by his Letters informs the Burgundians and Flemings of the vanity and foolery of this device; he sends also privately some politick heads to finde out of the Dutcheff and Perkin, who of quality in England sided with him, upon whose information some were put to death. King Henry finding that Maximilian King of the Romans, and his son Philip Archduke of Austria and Duke of Burgundy secretly favoured the attempts of the Lady Margaret concerning Warbeck, removed the English Mart from Flanders and Calice, prohibiting all importation of Flemish wares into England; Maximilian also forbade all English commodities in his Countries: Upon this, great discontent arose among the English Merchants, who could not keep so many Apprentices and Journey-men as formerly, therefore a multitude of Journey-men and Apprentices run furiously into the Still-yard, broke open ware-houses and shops, rising all in their way, and abusing the Easterlings, till the Lord Maior with his forces disperfed them; the Ring-leaders being about eighty, were with many others imprisoned, but at last they obtained the Kings pardon.

Sir Robert Clifford repenting of his journey into Flanders, obtains the Kings pardon, and leave to return home, who in the Tower before the King and his Lords, discovers the whole practice and purpose of the Lady Margaret and Warbeck. The King also enjoyns him to discover the Conspirators, that if

*An. Christi.* they were great ones, they might be presently seized on, without further trouble, being already in the Tower. Sir William Stanley onely is accused, whom the king had highly loved, and made him his Chamberlain: but now having nothing to say for himself, is imprisoned, and a few dayes after beheaded. Yet for all this, many out of several ends were so desirous of change, that they could not keep their tongues from speaking despitefully of the kings, but he curbed their tongues by strict punishments, and strengthened himself against all assaults or invasions.

King Henry remembring the aide which the wilde-Irish gave to Perkin two years ago, sends an Army thither under the command of Sr. Edward Poynings, 10 who could doe but little good upon that wild people, sheltering themselves in Bogs and Woods; nor did the Nobility there give any aide to Sir Edward, for which the Earl of Kildare was suspected, being then the greatest man in that Island, and the kings Deputy. He being falsly accused, is brought over into England; but he so cleared himself before the King, that he is dismissed with honour, and leave to continue in his place: Mean while, Perkin with the off-scum of divers Nations, came upon the Kentish coast, some of them landed to try what the people would do for Perkin; the country people cunningly trained them further into the land, with their fair promises to live and die with Perkin against the King, till finding opportunity, they fell upon them, and killed many; one hundred and sixty they took prisoners, whom the High-Sheriff sent bound with ropes to London, where they were tryed and executed in divers places of the kingdome. Perkin in discontent returns to Flanders, where he recruits himself with more rascals, and with them he sets saile for Ireland, where finding men, but no arms, he leaves the Irish, and comes into Scotland, imploring the help of king James the fourth, being then young. The Scots taking opportunity by this to invade England, raise an Army and enter Northumberland, wasting, burning, and destroying all before them with much inhumanity and cruelty; and after they had left that Country desolate, finding no English aid comming to their new king, they return home with their booty, 20 and let Perkin shift for himself.

Upon the great desolation of the Northern parts, king Henry raiseth a puissant army to be revenged on the Scots; for the maintaining of which war, a tax is granted: No sooner was this Army on foot marching northward, but it is suddenly recalled; for the Cornish-men refused to pay the Tax, and were in arms, pretending that the king and kingdome were abused by Archbishop Morton, and Sr. Reinold Bray, the kings two faithfulest Councillors; that these two polled the people, to enrich themselves. One Joseph a Blacksmith, and Flamock a lawyer, were the two main men of this faction; these being in a great body, presse forward towards London; and by the way they make 40 the Lord Audley their cheif Commander; the king gives them leave to march on, because the farther they are from their own home, the lesse help they shall have; and the long march also will tire their souldiers. Now when they came into Kent, the help which they expected there, failed them; and not onely so, but were ready also to resist and suppress them. Wherefore the Cornish-men being no ways daunted, retired to Black-heath, intending to try their fortune. The king having divided his Army into three parts; chargeth the Rebels in the face with his own part, the other two on either side; the Cornish resist stoutly, so that the fight lasted some houres, in which the Lord D'ambeny was taken prisoner by them; but presently let go again, hoping thereby to 50 finde favour; at last, the king won the field: of his side were lost three hundred, of the Rebels above two thousand, their cheif Commanders were taken prisoners; the ring-leaders of this rebellion were executed as traitours: their heads and quarters dispersed in divers Towns and Castles, for the greater terror of Rebels.

Whilest king Henry was busie about the Cornishmen, lest the Scots should make

*An. Christi.* make an invasion, he requires Thomas Howard Earl of Surrey, with Richard Fox Bishop of Durham to withstand, till he sent more power to aide them. In the interim, the Scots invade England again, and are met with an Army of twenty thousand, which made them retreat; the English enter Scotland, and destroy divers Towns and Forts neer the borders without resistance; in the night-time, the king of Scots dismisseth his Army, who disperse themselves into the woods and mountains: the English pursued a while, but were forced to give off by reason of the storms, and want of provision in that barren part of Scotland.

10 About this time, an Ambassador arrives from Ferdinand king of Castile, to mediate a peace between the two kings. A Truce for some years is concluded, conditionally that Warbeck be banished out of Scotland. The peace also between France and England is ratified; the English trade is also restored to the Flemings upon the desire of Philip Arch-Duke of Austria, and great joy was used in Antwerp upon the return of the English. And now king Henry had peace every where, except with Perkin, who being turned out of Scotland, sails with one hundred and twenty ragged souldiers and four ships into Cornwall; the discontented Cornish flock to him, and aid him with three thousand men; with these he marcheth towards Exeter; which because they within would 20 not yeeld upon his entreaties, he besiegeth it round; and for want of Artillery to batter the wals, they caused them to be scaled in many places at once: but still he is repulsed with the losse of many of his men in the Town-ditches and Trenches. Then they try to set the City-Gates on fire, but the townsmen made greater fires within, till with Banks and Bulwarks they secured those places; then Perkin fals to his scaling again, but to no purpose, whereat he was much disheartned: Mean while, the King resolves with his Army to raise the siege; but before he came, Courtney Earle of Devonshire with a good Army forceth the Rebels to give over the siege, who march away thence to Taunton, which they besiege: The king directeth his march thither, upon the report of 30 whose comming, Perkin flies away with sixty horse to Beaully Abbey, where they take sanctuary; the residue of them were taken prisoners, and divers of them executed: but the meaner sort falling on their knees, begged for mercy, which the king granted them.

After this, king Henry goeth to Exeter, where having thanked and commended the inhabitants for their valour and loyalty, gave to them his sword from his side, commanding that hereafter it should be born before the Major publicly, as formerly: and for the like purpose king Edward the fourth had done. Then the king sends some bands of souldiers to Beaully to apprehend Perkin, who yeelded himself, and was brought to the king, by whom he is carried 40 prisoner to London; but escaped to the Abbot of Shene, who procured him the kings pardon: Then was he brought to White-hall, where his ignoble pedigree was written in a paper, and pin'd upon his back; so being stocked there a whole day, and the next morning upon a high scaffold in Cheap-side, from thence he is committed a close prisoner in the tower. But as he was practising to escape with young Warwick, who had been a prisoner from his infancy, he is condemned of high treason, and executed at Tyburn two dayes after: and the young Earl of Warwick, on the tower hill; for no other crime but for affecting his liberty; for which fact king Henry was much blamed.

After these things, Arthur Prince of Wales being now fifteen years old, is 50 betrothed by deputation to the Lady Catherine, daughter to Ferdinand king of Spaine, being of the age of eighteen years. The next year she is joyfully received into England, and married in Pauls Church. Not long after, king James the fourth of Scotland is affied to the Lady Margaret, king Henrys eldest daughter, and afterward married: by this match, king Henry aimed at the union of the two Crowns; and he knew that if his two sons and their issue failed, the Scots king would be drawn into England, as to the richer and greater kingdom; which

1498.

1499:

1500:

1501:

*An. Christi.* which was better then if England should wait upon a greater kingdome, and be commanded by a Deputy.

Prince *Arthur* about five moneths after his marriage died, to the great grief of all good men, and was buried in *Winchester*: his brother *Henry* Duke of *Tork* succeeded in the Principality of *Wales*, and was the next year after created Earl of *Chester* by the king. The Lady *Margaret*, king *Henry's* eldest daughter, with a great train of Nobility and Gentry, is sent into *Scotland* to king *James*, who meets her on the Borders, receives her from the Earls of *Surrey* and *Northumberland*, and is married to her in *Edinburg*. After this, the king to enrich himself and impoverish his people, takes advantages of forfeitures upon the penal Laws, the chief charge of which businesse is committed to *Empson* and *Dudley*, two corrupted Lawyers, who by their Catch-poles miserably polled and pull'd the people, so that no man was master of his own; this impoverishing of the people was held a good way to keep them from rebelling.

1502. *Philip* Arch Duke of *Austria* going by Sea to take possession of the Kingdome of *Castile*, fallen to his wife *Jane* by the death of her mother, was driven by storms with his Queen into *Waymouth*; Sir *Thomas Trenchard* entertains them both at his house, and acquaints by posts King *Henry* of the Arch-Dukes arrivall: The king presently sends to invite them to his Court, being then at *Windfor*; The Prince of *Wales* with a great train meets them about five miles from *Windfor*, and within half a mile, king *Henry* with his Nobility welcomes them, with all the joy and solemnity that could be conceived; after some stay at *Windfor*, the king conducts his Royall Guests to *London* with all imaginable magnificence; where, after much mirth, the League is renewed; and so having parted with much love, *Philip* and his Queen embark themselves for *Spain*, where they both died not long after. Within a while king *Henry* began to grow weak and sickly, and so *Empson* and *Dudley* took more liberty to oppress the people then before. But as the kings time grew short, so he grew better; for he remitted all offences against his penal laws, he enlarged prisoners (except traitours and murderers) and paid the final debts of those that were in Wards; he gave also money to those that had been wronged by these two wicked Cormorants; He repented heartily for the wrongs he had done, and lent money gratis to divers Merchants. At last he died, having lived two and fifty years, and reigned three and twenty, and was buried in his Chappel which he had erected at *Westminster*.

1505. *Henry* the eighth succeeded at the age of eighteen years; he married *Catherine* daughter to *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, Prince *Arthur* his brothers wife, by dispensation from Pope *Julius*: In the beginning of his Reign, to please the people, he causeth the heads of *Empson* and *Dudley* to be chopt off for their oppressions, and punished inferiour offenders in that kinde with Stocks and Pillories. His Wives father *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, got king *Henry* to aid him against the *Moors*, which he did; He helped also Pope *Julius* against the French king, who had invaded the Churches Patrimony, and proclaimed war against him for detaining from him *Guyen* and *Normandy*, and his other lands in *France*; For this his assistance of the Pope, both against the French sword, and *Luthers* pen, he obtained the title of *Defender of the Faith*. *Ferdinand* also his father in law promiseth to help king *Henry* against *France*, if he would land his men in *Biscae*, from whence they might march to *Guyen*. King *Henry* accordingly sends ten thousand men under *Grey* Marquess of *Dorset*, who being landed in *Biscay* did no good at all; nor had they any aid from *Ferdinand*, whose intention was onely to surprise *Navarre* for his own use, which he did; for having raised an Army under Duke *D'Alva*, which he pretended to joyn with the English forces, he suddenly rusheth upon *Navarre*, surpriseth *Pampalona*, and seisth himself a great part of that kingdome: nor did *Ferdinand* at all assist the English as he promised, but suffered them for foure moneths to perish with

with want and sickness, so that the Souldiers returne to England in discontent.

Whilst things were acted thus by the Spaniard, the English Admiral Sir *Edward Howard* takes divers French vessels, burns and spoils *Britany* in divers places; the Britains dared indeed the Admiral, and he came into the field with two thousand and six hundred men against ten thousand; but when they perceived the English courage, they ran away. King *Henry* upon this sends more aid to his Admiral both of ships and men; with these he encounters the French fleet: the *Regent of England*, in which were seven hundred souldiers, and the great Carrick of *Brest* wherein were nine hundred, both these ships being fast graped together, were unfortunately burnt and drowned in the sea, with all that were in them: the French king increaseth his fleet, and sent it with all necessaries into the Haven of *Brest*. King *Henry* also enlargeth his Fleet, with which the English Admiral resolves to set upon the French at *Brest*, but as he was entering in, the foremost Ship was splitted upon a Rock, which made the rest forbear to proceed. The Frenchmen upon this fortifie the Haven, placing in the mouth thereof four and twenty old Flemish hulks, which were to be set on fire when the English Ships did draw near them; they raised also divers Rapires and Bulwarks for their great Ordnance.

20 The English Admiral fearing the Haven was too shallow for his great Ships, entrench into the harbour with oared Barges, and manfully assailed the three great Gallies of *Rhodes*, brought thither by a knight called Prior *John*; but when the English Barges were gone, the French in great numbers rush into the Gallies, and with continual fresh supplies overmaster the English, the greater part whereof being slain, the Admiral with a Pike is born over-board and drowned, the rest are taken prisoners; the Lord *Thomas Howard*, brother to the deceased Admiral, is put in his place. *Talbot* Earl of *Shrewsbury* is sent into *France* with eight thousand men, and *Somerfet* Lord *Harbert* with six thousand, these besiege *Tyrwin*; shortly after the king himself with eleven thousand comes over and joyns himself with the two former bodies, having left the care of the South part of the kingdome to his Queen, and of the North to *Howard* Earl of *Surrey*, because of the Scots: At *Tyrwin* there were divers sallies of the French upon the English, and many skirmishes, till the French king came with a great Army to raise the siege; after many bravado's and threats, the battels joyn with great eagerness, but at last the French are beat, many whereof are slain, many taken prisoners, the rest fled, *Tyrwin* is surrendered, pillaged, and burnt down, onely the Bishops Palace was preserved with the Cathedral Church; In this siege *Maximilian* the Emperour served under king *Henry*.

40 After this, king *Henry* besiegeth *Turnay*, which after many sharp assaults and skirmishes, yielded to submit and pay ten thousand pound to king *Henry*. *Wolsey* the kings Almoner takes of them the Oath of allegiance, and Sir *Edward Poynings* is made Governour of the Town, and so the winter drawing on, king *Henry* returns home, mean while the English Admiral vexeth the French both at sea and land. The Scots, in the absence of king *Henry*, invade England with eight thousand men under the command of the Lord *Humes* king *James* his Chamberlain, these having done much mischief with fire and sword, are suddenly assaulted by Sir *William Bulmer* and one thousand Archers, who defeated them, and stript them of their booty, being too secure and confident. King *James* in revenge of this defeat, against the peace and articles of marriage, enters England with one hundred thousand fighting men, and besieged the Castle of *Norham*, which he took, the Earl of *Surrey* being aided by his eldest son the Admiral, marcheth with six and twenty thousand fighting men, among which were many Lords and Knights, against the Scots; a bloody battel is fought in *Flooden* field, where after a sharp dispute the Scots are defeated, of whose army were slain king *James*, two Bishops, twelve Earles, fourteen Lords, twelve thou-

*An. Christi.* thousand Gentlemen and common souldiers; on the *English* part were killed fifteen hundred.

King *Henry* to reward the service of those who had fought for him against the French and Scots, confers on them divers honours. *Thomas Howard* Earle of *Surrey* is made Duke of *Norfolke*, and his son the Admiral is made Earle of *Surrey*. *Brandon* Viscount *Lyffe* is stiled Duke of *Suffolke*. *Sommerjet* Lord *Herbert* is created Earle of *Worcester*. *Stanly* is made Lord *Monteagle*, and *Thomas Wolsey* is Bishop of *Lincoln*. About the end of this year the enclosures near *Islington* are thrown down by the Londoners, as hindring their recreations. The French under *Prior-John* land in *Suffex* in the night time, and 1514 burn a village there, but he is beaten to his gallies, with the losse of many of his men, and with a wound in his face; to requite this, Sir *John Wallop* from the Admiral lands in *Normandy* with eight hundred men, where he burns and spoils one and twenty villages. After this a peace is concluded between France and England, upon a match between the French King *Lewis* the 12. and Mary King *Henries* sifter. Hereupon the Duke of *Longueuil*, and the other French prisoners taken at the battel of *Tyrwin*, are released; the Lady with a great train is landed at *Bulloign*, where the Dolphin with the French Nobility receives and brings her to *Abuyle*, where she is married, and shortly after crowned at *Paris*; but within twelve weeks after the marriage King *Lewis* 20 dieth, and Queen *Mary* is brought again into England by the Duke of *Suffolke*, who with the kings consent married her. *Francis* the first successor to *Lewis*, renews the peace with England.

About these times, *Thomas Wolsey* born in *Ipswich* of mean parents, became the most potent man in the Kingdome; First he was the Kings Almoner, then Bishop of *Lincolne*, then a Privy-counsellor, at last Archbishop and Cardinal of *Torke*; yet not content with all this, he gets the King to take the great Seal from *Canterbury*, and to give it him, whereby he became also the Chancellor of England, so that now without him no matter of Church or State was managed. He demands accounts of all officers in the last wars, and thereby en- 1516 richeth himself, either sharing with them, or receiving great bribes from them; they that had nothing were punished; He erecteth also new Courts of Judicature, by which he enriched his coffers: Such was his pride, that he would not suffer Cardinal *Campeius* the Popes Legat here for England to land, untill 1517 he had sent back to *Rome* for a new Commission, in which *Wolsey* is made *Campeius* his Collegate; so at last both the Legats repair to *Greenwich*, where the King was; before them were carried two silver Crosses, two silver Pillars, two gilded Axes, and two embroidered Cushions; their message is delivered in an Italian speech to the King, for his aid, with the other Christian Princes against the Turks; to this the King required some time of consideration: then 40 did *Wolsey* by his Legative authority without the king, erect a Court, in which he visited all Bishops and their Diocesses, enriching himself by bribes, and sequestering for his own use the probate of Wills; and such was his pride, that before and after meat when he washed, he was attended on by Dukes and Earles.

1520. The King and Queen, the twelfth year of *Henries* Reign, resolve to passe over into France, for which cause great and rich preparations are made by Sea and Land; they came at last with all their train to *Callice*, and the French King with his Queen and attendance to *Arde*. Cardinal *Wolsey* is sent before with a large Commission to treat about a further peace with king *Francis*; the Lords and Gentry that attended on *Wolsey* were cloathed with crimson velvet, and wore chains of gold, the yeomen and grooms were apparelled in scarlet: when he came to *Arde*, the French king royally entertained him, and having seen his large Commission, gave him the like under the great Seal of France: Then did both the Kings with their Queen and train meet in the valley of *Andrea*, where they feasted and rejoiced some dayes together, and then friendly departed to their own homes; and because there was like to be wars between the

the Emperor and French, King *Henry* being in league with both, mediated for peace, therefore Commissioners from these three Princes were to meet at *Calice*; the Cardinal is employed by king *Henry*, with the Earle of *Worcester*, and some others in this Commission; he with his Colleagues ride proudly through *London*, where he is met by the Maior and his brethren, and the Companies in their several Liveries; thence he passeth in Barges to *Gravesend*, and thence to *Canterbury*, where he is met by the Archbishop and his Clergy with a solemn procession; from thence he goeth to *Dover*, and so to *Calices*, where he meets the other Ambassadors, a conference there was had, but no- 1521 thing effected: *Wolsey* to shew his greatness, would needs go to the Emperors Court, carrying with him the great Seal of England, which no Chancellor before durst do; he is accompanied with four hundred and sixty horse, being in all places met and saluted by the Gentry. At *Bruges* he was met about a mile from the Town by the Emperor himself, who highly honoured him, both because of his large Commission, and of the broad Seal of England which was carried before him in great state; but the want of the same in England hindred the passing of writs and patents.

At *Bruges*, the causes of the war between *Cesar* and France are disputed at large; the Cardinal makes a witty speech commending the excellency of peace, which 20 the Emperor liked well, but withall told the Cardinal, That God had not put the sword in vain in the Magistrates hand, but that by it he was to maintain his hereditary rights against usurpers, and regain by violence what by violence was detained, and therefore he doubted not of his Uncle king *Henries* help, seeing all Princes were bound to support right, and suppress wrong; he complains also of the wrongs done by the French to him, in repudiating his daughter the Lady *Margaret*, in detaining from him his Towns and Castles in *Picardy*, in getting treacherously from him his wife the Lady *Jane* the young Dutches of *Brittany*, in maintaining his rebellious subject the Duke of *Gelders* against him, and lastly his surprisal of the kingdome of *Naples* from the 30 house of *Castile*. The Cardinal could reply but little to what was said, therefore he took his leave, and returns for England, where he is welcomed and feasted by the king.

The proud Cardinal, under colour of the kings aid to *Cesar* against France, grants forth Commissions under the great Seal of England for every man to set down the true value of his estate, and to pay four shillings in the pound; the same sum is also demanded of the Clergy: this proceeding was most distasteful to all men, as consisting neither with law, nor the peoples liberty, nor with the welfare of those whose credits exceeded their estates, besides that the sums demanded were not payable; notwithstanding *Wolsey* would not (though ge- 40 nerally petitioned) mitigate this rigor; and though in *Hampshire* Viscount *Lyffe* wrote to the Cardinal the danger that was likely to ensue if there were no mitigation, seeing the people were ready to rise, yet he received no other answer, but that it should cost him his head, for offering to differ from his instructions; but at last when he saw how heavy this burthen was to the people, new Commissions are sent out to demand the sixth part of each mans substance; but the people instead of paying the money cursed the Cardinal: so great was the distemper every where; and danger of insurrection; that the king was much grieved thereat, and caused these Commissions to be recalled, protesting they were sent abroad without his knowledge, and that he would require nothing of his people but by way of benevolence.

50 The Cardinal perceiving how the king had laid all the blame upon him, to ingratiate himself with the people, he calls the Maior of *London* with his brethren before him; to whom he protested that he had kneeled to the king to perswade him to revoke the Commission, and to relie on his peoples benevolence; to this purpose he directs his letters to all the Shires, but this policie could not get the peoples good opinion of him; then Commissions are made for



*An. Christi.* for the benevolence, but they also did not take with the people, some pleading poverty; others, that demanding of benevolences was against their liberty, and the statute made in the first year of king *Richard* the third.

About this time, the Cardinal procures a licence from the Pope to pull down some small religious houses, for appropriating their lands and revenues to two Colleges which he had erected, the one at *Oxford*, the other at *Ipswich*: this gave a hint not long after to king *Henry* to demolish all such houses. Then this busie-headed Butchers dog (as the people called him) took upon him to reform the kings house; therefore he put out some of his menial servants, and puts worse in their rooms: He bestows on the king his Mannor of *Hampton* Court, for which he hath leave of the king to keep his court in his Palace at *Richmond*. The French king, about this time, desires in marriage the Lady *Mary*, king *Henry's* onely daughter; but this motion liked not our States-men, who foresaw that if king *Henry* died without issue male, *France* being the greater kingdom, would make this but an attendant upon that. The Cardinal also made a scruple of the lawfulness of king *Henry's* marriage, and it was disputed at *Paris*, whether *Mary* were legitimate, being king *Henry's* daughter by *Catherine* his brother *Arthur's* wife. This doubt the Cardinal first raised in displeasure to *Cesar*, because he had not used his utmost power to make him Pope. Dr. *Longland* Bishop of *Lincoln* and the kings confessor, told him that he had lived almost twenty years incestuously with his Queen, and that therefore he should now leave her bed, and repent for this great sin.

The King presently upon this, employs the Cardinal in an Embassie to the French king, the substance whereof was onely known to the king and him; at his departure, the king takes his leave of him, as of a familiar friend: when he rode through *London* he was attended on by twelve hundred Horse. At *Calice* and *Bulloin* he is received with great honour, and flattering Pageants are presented to him at *Bulloin*: as he rode towards *Amiens*, he is met by the Provost and chief Citizens, and within half a mile by the king himself, who in great state conducted him to his lodging, on the gates whereof was written in fair letters *Cardinalis Pacificus*: after much entertainment and divers conferences, a Peace is concluded, and sealed with a seale of gold: of which afterward the Cardinal bragged in the Star-chamber, and that he had made an everlasting peace; but the people muttered, that *France* never kept peace long with *England*; and that a peace with *Cesar* and the *Flemings* (which the Cardinal kept off) had been better.

The nullity of the kings marriage being smothered a while, is revived again; and the king upon this refrains her bed: *Wolsey* procures a Commission from the Pope, to be directed to him, and his brother *Campeius*; that before them as supreme Judges the matter might be debated: the Commission being granted, *Wolsey* acquaints the Queen therewith, who accuseth him as being chief cause of these troubles, because the Emperour her Nephew had not made him Pope, and because he had gently told him of his tyranny, covetousnesse and leachery: The king permits the Queen to chooe her own Councillours, who named four Doctours, two of the law, to wit, *Warham* Archbishop of *Canterbury*, and *West* Bishop of *Ely*; and two of divinity, namely, *Fisher* Bishop of *Rocheſter*, and *Standish* Bishop of *Aſſaph*: a stately Court is erected in the great Hall at *Black-friars*, where were placed two Chairs, and two great Cushions, covered with Cloth of gold; the Legats took their places, *Wolsey* the right hand: The King and Queen are cited; He by his Proctor acknowledged the Legats power from the Pope, but the Queen appealed from them to the Court at *Rome*, which appeal was not allowed: the proceedings of the Court were so tedious, that the King with the Queen came in person, where he desires a quick end, and withall protests how much he loved the Queen, and what an excellent wife she had been to him; but that now he was troubled in Conscience to keep her company.

At

*An. Christi.* At *Rome*, there is a custom that all legal proceedings cease from the last of *July* till the fourth of *October*; which the two Cardinals willing to observe, resolve to adjourn their Court, at which the king is troubled, and sends the Dukes of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* with other Lords to the Legats for dispatch of their sentence, but could not prevail, which made *Suffolk* cry out in open Court, That never any Legat or Cardinal did good in *England*. The king resolves to wait till *October*, but understanding that *Campeius* was bound for *Rome*, being sent for by the Pope, and that this businesse was to be determined in the Court of *Rome*, which would prove both tedious, chargeable, and troublesome: He began to be sensible of the juggling of these two Legats, and withall to hate *Wolsey*, whom of nothing he had raised to such honour and greatness: The kings Counsel and Nobility being glad that *Wolsey* was like to fall, help to further it, by framing articles against him, for his pride, tyranny, oppression, and secret correspondence with the Pope; by which the kings power was diminished; therefore they conclude he incurred a *premunire* and forfeiture of all his estate, and promotions, and liberty to the king: these articles were delivered to the king and subscribed, who concealed them for a while; then *Campeius* takes his leave of the king at *Woodstock*; *Wolsey* is commanded by the king to attend him into *London*, not knowing what had passed; as they were journeying from thence to the sea-coast, by order, *Campeius* his Trunks are opened, and search made for *Wolsey's* letters to *Rome*, but they were sent away a day before by the post.

The Cardinal was indicted the next Term in the kings Bench, upon the Statute of *Premunire*, by *Hales* the kings Attorney; and the Indictment being found against him, the Dukes of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* are required to take the great seal from him, which was bestowed on Sir *Thomas Moore*; then the Cardinals goods by command are seized on, and he is confined to *Asher near Kingston*: then being required to plead to his Indictment, by his Attorney he confessed all; his places are taken from him, and conferred on others; yet the king left to him the Bishopricks of *York* and *Winchester*, and sent him also much of his plate and household-stuffe. And now the king begins to manage the affairs of the Church and State himself, the charge whereof hitherto he committed to *Wolsey*.

In Parliament a complaint is made against the Clergy for exacting large sums as fees for the probate of Wills. 2. For demanding Mortuaries of poore house-keepers. 3. For becomming Husbandmen, and Grasers, and Farmers. 4. For keeping Tanning-houses, for being Grocers, for ingrossing Wool, Cloth, and other commodities. 5. For enjoying great revenues and benefices, in which they neither preached nor kept hospitality. 6. Because some dunces kept above twelve benefices. This complaint is much opposed by the Bishops, chiefly by *Rocheſter*, who told the Lords, that these proceedings of the Commons were like those of the *Bohemians*, which proceeded not of Faith: The Commons complain to the king against the Bishop for counting them Hereticks and Infidels; the king sends for the Bishop and accuseth him, who clears himself that he spoke that phrase of the *Bohemians*, nor of the house of Commons. Then shortly after this debate between the Bishop and Commons, in which some uncivil words were used, Articles are preferred against *Wolsey*, which are these; 1. That he got himself by sinistrous means to be made the Popes Legate, to the kings prejudice in ecclesiastical things. 2. In writing still, *Ego Rex meus*; as if the king were his inferiour. 3. For calling the Church of *England* a reprobate Church, in his letters to the Pope. 4. For carrying beyond seas the great seal of the kingdom, without leave. 5. For sending a commission under the seal, without the king, about making a Peace betwixt his Majesty and the Duke of *Ferrara*. 6. For presuming to come neer the king and breath upon him, when he had the French Pox. 7. For causing a Cardinals Hat to be stamped on the kings coyn. 8. For inhibiting the kings Clerk of the Market

Vuu 2

*An. Christi.* Market to execute his office in *St. Albans*, being a parcel of his Abbey. 9. For conveying in sixteen barrels two hundred and forty thousand pounds to the Pope, besides other sums at other times, and for exacting by his commissions infinite sums of money from the people, purposely to disturb the kingdoms peace; all these articles *Wolsey* confessed, and submitted himself to the kings mercy.

The king understanding that the Emperor and Pope were together at *Bononia*, sends an Ambassadour to them, to let them know, that it was not out of any dislike he had of his Queen that he desired a divorce, but because the President of *Paris* and many grave Divines conceive this marriage unlawful; therefore he desires; for satisfaction of his conscience, that a speedy sentence may passe. The Emperor said, he would be satisfied by the judgment of the Law in that point. The Pope promiseth an end, when he came to *Rome*; but he meant no such thing: for if he should give sentence against Pope *Julius* his dispensation, he would make all future dispensations of no validity; and if he should give sentence against the Queen, he would make *Cesar* his enemy. King *Henry* seeing nothing but delays, employs the chief Divines of *England* to travel into all Universities to know their opinions about this match: these returning, brought twelve Instruments sealed by so many Universities, all concluding the Kings marriage unlawful. At this time *Wolsey* gets leave to live within his Diocese of *Tork*; one *Cromwell* a servant of his, left him, and got into the Kings service and favour also. The King was content, that the Cardinals Colledge at *Oxford* (called then *Kings-Colledge*, now *Christ-Church*) should be endowed with the Lands which were forfeited; but he destroyed his Colledges at *Ipswich*, as being needlesse.

The King understanding that *Wolsey* had got a Bull from *Rome* to curse him, if he did not restore him to all his goods and places, causeth a Proclamation to be published, That all Appeals, Provisions and Instruments procured from *Rome* against the Kings power, within one year next before that time, or to be procured hereafter, to be void, and the procurers thereof to be punishable. Mean while the Cardinal by his Letters animates the Pope and Clergy against the King, and they on the other side encourage him to constancie, promising his restoration: *Wolsey* being puffed up upon this, makes great preparation for his instalment in the Archbishoprick of *Tork*, inviting the Northern Gentry thither, meaning to feast them magnificently; he erected his seat in the Cathedral-church, in height and state like a Kings throne. The King understood of all these proceedings, that they were done to affront him; therefore to prevent his instalment, a Commission is sent to the Earle of *Northumberland* to arrest him and commit him to *Sheffield-castle*; he stood upon the privilege of a Roman Cardinal, and that he was exempted from the secular power; yet he was seized on, and his goods also, his Officers were discharged, and his Physician sent to the Tower, whither also the Cardinal was to be brought, but that he fell suddenly sick, upon the sight of the Captain of the Tower that came to apprehend him; he took a strong Purge, which in two nights killed him.

The Clergie being guilty of a *Premunire*, by maintaining the Cardinals Legantine power, paid to the King an hundred thousand pounds, to prevent further mischief; and by a publike Instrument acknowledged him *Supreme Head of the Church of England*. So *Wolsey* being gone, the King causeth the Opinion of the Universities to be read openly in his Parliament, and then to be sent to the Queen, who for all this will not relinquish her Appeal to *Rome*, whereupon the King gets her to be divorced, and the Archbishop to pronounce the marriage null; and then he falls in love with the Lady *Anne Bullen*, whom he made Marchionesse of *Pembroke*, and afterward married her.

In this Kings time, on *May-day*, great outrages were committed upon Merchant-strangers and their goods, by multitudes of unruly *Londoners*; but they were

*An. Christi.* were quickly suppressed by the Lord Mayor, and divers of them executed, the rest were pardoned by the king who sat then in *Guild-hall*. *Towney* is delivered up to the French by king *Henry* for sixty thousand crowns, which was disliked by some, because it was a curb to the French, and a nursery for training the English youth in martial discipline. *Charles* after the death of *Maximilian*, coming from *Spain* to receive the Empire, by the way is royally entertained in *England*. King *Henry* being told by his Privy-counsel, that some Gentlemen of his privy-chamber were too familiar and bold with him, the king thanked them, and left those gallants at the Counsels disposing who removed them, and put wiser men in their room: King *Henry* as he returned from visiting the French king, by the way gave the Emperor a visit at *Graveling*, and a peace is concluded between these three Princes. The Duke of *Buckingham* being made believe by a Monk that he should be King, because he bragged of it, and seemed to rejoyce thereat, was arraigned at *Westminster* before the Duke of *Norfolke* High-steward of *England*, and was beheaded on the Tower-hill.

The peace concluded between *England* and *France* is broken by the French; 1. In sending *John Duke of Albany* into *Scotland* to raise new wars. 2. In detaining from King *Henry* the yearly tribute due for *Normandy* and *Aquitaine* &c. 3. By seizing on the English Merchants goods, and committing them to prison. 4. By spoiling and taking the English ships at sea. 5. By refusing to pay to Queen *Mary* Dowager of *France* her yearly pension. 6. And by refusing to pay the money promised for *Towney*. For those wrongs King *Henry* prepares his Navy, which he delivers to the charge of the Earle of *Surrey*; then he restrains the French Ambassador of his liberty, seizeth on the French mens goods, (except such as were *Denizens*) and imprisoneth them. The English Admiral lands some men in *Brittany*, whom he conducteth to *Morley*, and having beaten open with great shot the chief gate, enters the Town; rifles and burns it. Forces also are sent to *Scotland* to prevent the coming in of the Scots hither. The Admiral having ransacked divers Towns in *France*, returns with great booty into *England*. *John Duke of Albany* by the French kings procurement raiseth a great Army in *Scotland* to invade *England*; against them two Armies are sent, the one under the Earle of *Shrewsbury*; the other of eight and twenty thousand under the Lords *Rosse* and *Dacres*; but these Armies onely viewed each other, and so parted without blows.

*Charles Brandon Duke of Suffolk* is sent into *France* with thirteen thousand men, where he makes great havock, and takes *Bell Castle*. From the Emperor to the Dukes service came three thousand foot and five hundred horse; with these the Town of *Bray* is taken by assault, then they passe over the river *Some* into *France*, and do much hurt; but the winter approaching, and the Duke of *Burbon* who was revolted from the French to the Emperor came not with his ten thousand men as was promised, as also because the English had not carts as the Burgundians to carry away their booty, they were resolved to disband; *Suffolk* sends to know the Kings pleasure, who would not assent to their return, but sends the Lord *Mounjoy* with six thousand men, yet notwithstanding the souldiers without the Dukes leave disband themselves.

Mean while the Duke of *Albany* raiseth an Army of eighty thousand Scots against whom the Admiral and Treasurer of *England* march with forty thousand, but there was no blow at all given, for the Scots retreated; then the Scots Queen, King *Henries* eldest sister, obtains a truce till a peace could be concluded. *Albany* perceiving that the Scots Nobility could not endure that he being a Frenchman born, and (next to the king) inheritor of that Crown, should have the rule of their king and kingdom; and fearing some mischief, fled secretly into *France*; upon whose departure a peace is concluded, and a match proposed between the Lady *Mary* king *Henries* daughter, and young king *James*

*An. Christi.* James of Scotland, the Emperor also sends to have the same Lady Mary for his wife, on whom he proffers to bestow for her dowry the Low-countries; he desired also that her portion-money might be presently disbursed for *Cæsars* wars; and that king Henry would in person with a royal Army invade *France* which was an enemy to them both: the king being offended with the Emperor for raising the price of his gold within his Provinces; answered, That his daughter was too young to marry. Then the French king sends to have her for his son the Dolphin; but this motion was crossed by the Duke of *Burgundy* his Army, and the Marquess of *Piscary*, who took the French king and his children prisoners as he lay at the siege of *Pavia*. About this time king Henry 10 in his hawking, fell with his head downward into a ditch, which he offered to leap over, and had been smothered in the mud, if his foot-man *Moody* had not plucked his head out of the mud: Not long after this, the king bestows divers honours; he made his bastard-son begot on *Elizabeth Blunt*, *Henry Fitz-roy* Earle of *Nottingham*; *Courtney* Marquess of *Exeter*; *Brandon* *Suffolk*'s eldest son by the French Queen *Mary* his wife, is created Earle of *Lincoln*; *Manners* Lord *Rosse* is made Earle of *Rutland*, with divers others.

Ambassadors are sent from the Queen Regent of *France* for concluding a peace, with the proffer of twenty hundred thousand crowns for arrearages of the tribute, whereof fifty thousand pounds sterling should be paid in hand, 20 and security given for the rest; they promise also to pay Queen *Mary* her dowry: upon this a peace is made, and now the King by the means of *Thomas Cromwell* (whom of *Wolfsey's* servant he had made a Baron and Counsellor of State) curbed degrees the Popes authority here, in making a law that all should incur a premonition, who appealed to the See of *Rome*; and procured thence any proccesse or judgement whatsoever; the Clergy freely submit themselves to him in spiritual affairs; the Pope is utterly deprived of his Annuities and first-fruits; the lawfulness of his marriage with Queen *Anne* is established, and the unlawfulness of his former match with Queen *Katherine*, the Crown is entailed on him and his issue; to this Act all swore except Sir *Thomas More*, 30 who disliking the Kings proceedings against Queen *Katherine* and the Pope, had delivered the great Seal into the Kings hands; Dr. *Fisher* also Bishop of *Rochester* refused to swear; and both protested against the said Act of Parliament, for which cause they both lost their heads. The next year the Kings supremacie is confirmed by Parliament.

The Lord *Dacres* about this time is suspected of treason, and acquitted. *Elizabeth Furlton* the holy Maid of *Kent* with her complices were executed for conspiring the kings death, under the shew of devotion. The next year the kings supremacie is again confirmed, and the Popes power banished; first-fruits also, tenths and benefices, with all Church-dignities are granted to the 40 king. Not long after Queen *Anne* and the Lord *Rochford* are beheaded unjustly for suspicion of carnal commerce; within twenty dayes after he married with *Jane* Sir *John Seymours* daughter, mother to king *Edward*, but shortly after his birth she died. The Lord *Thomas Howard* is beheaded for marrying without the kings consent; *Margaret* his sister, and wife first to king *James* the 4. and then to *Archibald Douglass*, by whom she had a daughter called *Margaret*. Two and thirty Commissioners are named by the king who were to make Ecclesiastick laws, and by the same Parliament all religious houses not exceeding in revenue yearly two hundred pounds, were dissolved and given 50 to the king; a book of Articles also concerning Church-government is published by the Clergy: these proceedings against the Popes power, occasioned the *Lincolnshire* men to rise in a body of twenty thousand; the king levied a great Army, and marcheth against them; they humbly petition that the religious houses may not be dissolved, nor the old Church-government altered: but the king would hearken to nothing, except a hundred of their Ring-leaders were sent to him to be punished; upon this every one suspecting himself, they all

all forsook the field and went home; but Captain *Cobler* (indeed Dr. *Mackarel*) *An. Christi.* with some others were shortly after found out and executed. This was no sooner appeased, when another Rebellion starts up in the North of forty thousand men, complaining also that the old Religion was changed and wronged: Against these the Dukes of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk* are sent with a great Army; but their intended fight was hindered by the sudden swelling of a small Brook that lay between them, upon a shower of rain, which so wrought upon the Rebels, that a general Pardon being promised, they all went peaceably home.

10 In *Cumberland* a third Rebellion breaks out, by *Tilby* and *Musgrave*, with eight thousand men against the King; but they were defeated by the Duke of *Norfolk*, seventy four of their Commanders are taken and executed. The Lord *Darcy* is put to death for a murder; the Lord *Hussey* with divers Knights and two Abbots, and many more, are executed for denying the Kings Supremacie, and so was *Friar Forrest* for heresie. Divers honours are likewise conferred: Viscount *Beauchamp* is made Earle of *Hartford*, *Fitz-William* Earle of *Southampton*; and among the rest, Sir *Thomas Cromwell* Counsellor of Estate, Knight of the Garter, Lord Privy-Seal, Lord *Cromwell*, is made the Kings Vicegerent in all Church-matters, and had the precedencie of the Archbishop of 20 *Canterbury*; and to shew how officious he was, he destroyed Images and Shrines, the Begging Friars and Nuns. About this time, the Marquis of *Exeter* *Henry Poole*, with divers Gentlemen, for conspiring with Cardinal *Poole* (now beyond the seas) to reestablish the Popes authority, are executed, and so are divers Abbots and others for denying the Kings supremacie. Shortly after this a Rebellion brake out in *Ireland* by *O-Neale*, but is suppressed by the Lord *Grey* Deputy. The Lord *Cromwell* is made Earle of *Essex*, by whose advice the king quarrels with the Religious houses, pretending their vices and idleness, but indeed aiming at their wealth and revenues, which amounted to more then two hundred thousand pounds yearly; all this wealth was given by the 30 Parliament to the King, who exchanged these lands with Noblemen for other lands.

*Cromwell* having made havock of the Church, perswades the King to marry the Lady *Anne* of *Cleve*, a good woman, but no wayes lovely, except in her flattering pictures; which made King *Henry*, after he had been married foure moneths, to slight her. Hereupon the Clergy, to flatter the King, pronounce this marriage to be null, because she confessed the King could not afford her that benevolence due from a husband to a wife: The like sentence is published by the Parliament, and withall, that it was lawfull for him and her to marry when and whom they pleased; it was also enacted, that whosoever 40 spake or wrote to the contrary, should be held as traitors. King *Henry* being now free, within twenty dayes after married *Katherine Howard* the daughter of the Lord *Howard*, brother to the Duke of *Norfolk*: And withall he began to cast off his favourite *Cromwell*, which his enemies perceiving, prefer a Bill of High-treason against him, wherein he is accused of divers things in generall; so then being by Parliament attainted of Treason, and of Heresie also in supporting the *Lutherans*, he is beheaded with the Lord *Hungerford* on the Tower-hill. About this time also *Grey* the Deputy of *Ireland*, for procuring the Irish Rebels to enter and make havock within the English pale, is condemned of treason and beheaded.

50 Queen *Katherine* being accused for her unchaste conversation before her marriage with one *Francis Dyrham*, and after with *Thomas Culpeper*; the two Gentlemen suffer death at *Tyburn*; the Queen, and the Lady *Rochford* who brought *Culpeper* into the Queens chamber, are beheaded. In this Parliament the King is proclaimed King of *Ireland*, which title his predecessors never assumed. Then the King married *Katherine Parre* the Marquis of *Northampton*'s sister, the Lord *Latimers* wife sometimes, who had not escaped with her head; had



*An. Christi.* the Church: he ordained his children to succeed each other, if issue failed; he ordained a thousand marks for the poor, and twelve pence a day for twelve poor Knights at *Windſor*, with a white-cloth Gown yearly, an embroidered Garter, with *S. George* his Croſſe, and a mantle of red-cloth to be worn thereon; ſo having reigned ſeven and thirty years and nine months, he died in the ſix and fiftieth year of his life; he had ſix wives, 1. Queen *Katherine* king *Ferdinands* daughter of *Spain*. 2. Queen *Anne* the daughter of *Sir Thomas Bullen* Earle of *Wiltſhire*. 3. Queen *Jane* *Six John Seymours* daughter. 4. Queen *Anne* ſiſter to the Duke of *Cleve*. 5. *Katherine* daughter to *Edmund*, and neece to *Thomas Howard* his brother Duke of *Norfolk*. 6. *Katherine* daughter to *Sir Thomas Parre* of *Kendal*, and ſiſter to *William Parre* Marquels of *Northampton*; by his firſt wife he had two ſons that died young, and Queen *Mary*; by his ſecond Queen *Elizabeth* by his third King *Edward*, and by *Elizabeth Blunt* he had a baſtard called *Henry Fitz-roy*, whom he made Earle of *Nottingham*, Duke of *Richmond* and *ſommerſet*, Lord Warden of the *Marches* againſt *Scotland*, and Lieutenant-General of the North of *England*. He was a Prince more eminent for his vices, then vertues, for he was counted ambitious in affecting the title of Spiritual ſupremacie; covetous, in appropriating the revenues of religious houſes to his own uſes, and extraordinary exactions from the people; he was alſo prodigal, in waſting ſo great a treaſure as was left him ſo quickly and needleſſely; He was likewiſe cruel in condemning two Cardinals, in putting to death two Queens, twelve Dukes, Marqueſſes, Earls, and Earls ſons, 18. Barons and Knights, ſeventy ſeven Abbots, Priors, Monks and Priests; and of the common fort huge multitudes; his luſt and wantonneſſe, his wavering in Religion, his revengeful and impotent diſpoſition, were too eminent in him.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

The affair of Scotland under King James the 3. and King James the 4. from 3<sup>d</sup> the year 1460. till the year 1513.

1460.

**K**ing James the 2. being ſlain in the camp, his ſon being nine years old ſucceeded, by name James the 3. There was much conteſting between the Queen-mother and her party, with *Angus* and the reſt of the Nobility, who ſhould have the government of the young King and Kingdome; a Parliament is called, and arguments alledg'd on both ſides; the Queen pleads the right of a mother, the Lords the ancient cuſtomes of the Kingdome. At laſt to prevent all animoſities which were like to ariſe, it is ordered that two able men of each faction ſhould be named to govern the King and Kingdome during the minority of King James: of the Queens ſide were choſen *Grame* and *Boyd*, who was then Chancellor; of the other party, *Robert* Earle of *Orkney*, and *John Kennedy*, to theſe were added two Biſhops, of *Glaſco* and *Dunkel*; to the Queen was permitted the ruination of her ſon, but ſhe was not to meddle with the affairs of State; ſhe had alſo leave to educate her other children, to wit, the Duke of *Albain*, and the Earle of *Marr*, with the two young Ladies. Things at home being thus compoſed, the Engliſh Ambaſſadors who came to make peace, had audience, and a peace for fifteen years is concluded, the next year the Kings mother died; *Alexander* the Kings brother returning from *France* is taken by the Engliſh, but releaſed again upon the Scots complaint of the breach of peace.

*Scotland* continued not long quiet; for *Donald* Lord of the *Iſles*, hearing the King was dead, cauſed himſelf to be proclaimed king of the *Iſles*, threatening death to all that ſhould acknowledge any other King there: being invited by the Captain of *Inverneſſe*-Caſtle to a feaſt, he ſeiſed on the Caſtle, and thruſt out the gariſon; then having gathered an Army of malecontents and looſe perſons

*An. Christi.* perſons, he falls upon *Athol*, and ſeiſeth on the Earle and his wife, who had taken ſanctuary in *S. Brigets* Church; but *Donald* violates the Sanctuary, carries away the Earle, his wife, and many others, with all their wealth, which for ſecurty was laid up there, and then ſets fire on the Church, and killed divers of the Priests for making reſiſtance: but as he was returning home by water with his ſacriligious booty, a ſudden ſtorm funk moſt of his veſſels, and he narrowly eſcaped with his life, and after that time till his death continued mad; thus God uſeth to reward ſacrilige. Many of his followers being touch'd in conſcience, went bare-footed, and in white ſheets to *S. Brigets* Church, offering gifts for their attonement. At Court *Robert Boyd* a potent man, and great with the young King, to whoſe counſels he too much hearkened, by his brother *Alexander Boyd* adviſeth the King to ſhake off his governours, and to manage the kingdome himſelf: *Kennedy* a grave man, and one of the kings governours, for adviſing the king the contrary, and for offering to ſtop him from hunting at an unſeaſonable time, is abuſed by this *Alexander*, who with his bow which he had then in his hand broke *Kennedy's* head, this cauſed a great ſewd between theſe families, to the diſturbance of the whole kingdome: ſhortly after *Kennedy* died to the great grief of all good men, for in his life and doctrine he was exemplary and powerful; he had been a great benefactor to the Univerſity of *St. Andrews*: *Patrick Grame* is in his ſtead elected Biſhop by the Canons, who repairs to *Rome*, for confirmation, which was a while hindred by the Archbiſhop of *Torke*, claiming a power over the Scots Biſhops; but at laſt it is decreed at *Rome* that *Grame* ſhould be Primate of *Scotland*, and the Popes Legat alſo for three years, that the Priests might be reformed, and Church-diſcipline eſtabliſhed, yet *Grame* durſt not return home ſo long as the *Boyd*s continued in their greatneſſe, which came to that height, that *Robert Boyd* the elder was made Viceroy by the king during his minority, his ſon alſo *Thomas* is honoured with the marriage of the kings eldeſt ſiſter, which brought much envy upon *Boyd* and his family, for the people began to repine at his greatneſſe, and to aſcribe all the diſtempers of the Kingdom to *Boyd*s miſgovernment, theſe coals were blown by the *Kennedies*.

Mean while Ambaſſadors are ſent to *Denmark* for a match between the young King and the *Dane*s daughter, with inſtructions for removing the old controverſie between the two Kings about the *Iſlands* of *Orkney* and *Shetland*; the chief Ambaſſador was *Andrew Stewart* Chancellor of *Scotland*, who ſends word to King James that the match was concluded, and theſe *Iſlands* given to him for his wiſes dowry, ſo that the *Dane* upon this parted with all his right: *Thomas* the ſon of *Robert Boyd*, and Earle of *Arran*, is ſent with a great train of Nobility and Gentry to bring home the new Queen; in the interim the *Kennedies* begin to work upon the kings affections, and to draw him from the *Boyd*s, againſt whoſe inſolent government the people did much complain; the time was fit for their purpoſe, *Thomas* being abſent longer then was expected, becauſe of the winter which makes the Northern ſeas unnavigable; and the two elder *Boyd*s by reaſon of infirmities, were not able to frequent the Court as they were wont; for this end a Parliament is called at *Edinburg*, to which the two *Boyd*s *Robert* and *Alexander* are ſummoned; *Robert* out of his guilt, and perceiving the kings minde was alienated, and that his enemies were grown very powerful, fled into *England*; his brother *Alexander* not being able to ſlie, becauſe ſickly, appears; it was there objected that he and his brother had by their own private motion made the king come to *Edinburg* from *Sterling* againſt the will of his governours; he replied, that they had the kings pardon under the broad Seal, and deſired alſo the Records might be ſearched, which was denied him, and ſo having received the ſentence of condemnation for abuſing the young kings authority, is beheaded; *Robert* a few years after died with grief at *Anwick* in *England*; his ſon *Thomas* though now employed upon publike ſervice, ſe before being heard proclaimed traitor, and his eſtate conſiſcated.

X x x 2

The

1469.



An. Christi.  
1470.

The next Spring the young Queen arrives with the Danish fleet. *Thomas Boyd* understanding by his wife who met him on the shore, the calamity that had befallen his family, the alienation of the Kings minde, and the power of his adversaries; though some of his friends would have had him repair to the King, from whom in this publike joy he might obtain pardon, yet durst not venture; therefore sails back again into *Denmarke*, from thence he travels through *Germany* into *France*, and from thence he goeth to *Charles Duke of Burgundy*, whom he served in his wars, and was highly honoured by him: the King sends into *Flanders* to his sister *Boyd's* wife, to come home, upon hopes that she might so far prevail with her brother as that he may again receive her husband into favour; but when she was come, the King endeavours to make a divorce, which was effected upon the not-appearing of her husband within sixty dayes after his citation; so the marriage is dissolved, and he forced to marry to another husband, *James Hamilton*, far inferiour in birth and wealth to the former, her children also are called home by the king; mean while he dieth with grief at *Antwerp*, and is honourably buried there by Duke *Charles of Burgundy*; so that family of the *Boyd's* in a few years flourished and faded; and they that overthrew it, were in hopes that things both in Court and Country would have mended, but it fell out otherways, for the king gave himself altogether to his pleasures, and his Courtiers to rapine and oppression; among other abuses there crept in one in choosing of Bishops, whereas hitherto they were elected by the Prebends and Canons, the covetous and sacrilegious Courtiers never left, till they got the king to assume that power to himself, perswading him that by these means his power would be so much the greater, not onely in punishing of vice, but also in rewarding of vertue and learnings, whereas it came to passe that now Church-dignities by the Courtiers were ordinarily sold.

*Grame* the Archbishop being now at *Rome*, and hearing of the great abuses crept into the Church of *Scotland*, resolves to come home, and sends before him the Popes Bull for being Legat; which procured to him much envy, chiefly by those who had made or might make benefit by the sale of Church-preferments, fearing this gain would be pulled from them; therefore they conspire together, and complain to the king, that by *Grames* power from the Pope, the privileges of the Church of *Scotland* were infringed, and that the king himself should be brought into subjection: Upon this, messengers are sent to *Grame*, not to meddle with his function, untill the king had received satisfaction about some complaints exhibited against him; who was therefore summoned by such a day to appear in *Edinburgh*; who being come, and having produced his Patents for the Arch-bishoprick of *St. Andrews*, and Primacy of *Scotland*, and for being the Popes Legate to reform the Church abuses, his adversaries appeal to the Pope, during which time the king forbids him to meddle with the Arch-bishoprick: mean while his enemies got one *Sevest*, who had studied Astrologic at *Lovan*, to be made Arch-deacon of *St. Andrews*, whom the Bishop would not admit; hereupon he combines with the Rector of the University to excommunicate the Arch-bishop, which he slighting, was by the king inhibited from meddling with any Church within his Diocese, and all his goods are confiscated; besides, the Popes Auditors send out an Excommunication against him, for non-payment of his Fees in the Court of *Rome*, for his Parents or Euls: then they made him abjure his Bishoprick, and imprisoned him in a Cloyster within a remote Island or rock rather, called *Emona*; Three years after, he is translated to *Dumfermlin* castle, and from thence to *Lake Lomond*, where he died of grief: thus was that good man persecuted for his pious intentions.

About this time, the Lord of the Isles understanding of great preparations making against him both by sea and land, comes humbly to the Court, acknowledging his faults, and is pardoned: Onely *Rosse*, *Kintyr*, and *Knapdale* are

An. Christi.

are taken from him; the command of the Isles is left to him. This year the peace is renewed again with *England*; which was like to break out into an open war; because the English had seized on a great ship which was built by *Kennedy*, being driven in by storms: King *Edward* gave order, that the value of the goods taken should be estimated, and satisfaction made. The king was much addicted to the study of Astrologic; therefore understanding by the *Scotts Merchants in Flanders*, of one *Andrew* a Physitian and Mathematician, who had foretold the Duke of *Burgundies* death, he sends for him, and prefers him in his Court: by him he understood of his own danger, and how the *Lion* should be killed by his own Whelps; wherefore he became very tyrannical, suspecting every man that was near him: He was jealous of his Lords also, and therefore conferred honours on mean men, which angered the Nobility. The kings younger brother *John*, for speaking too freely against the corruptions of the Court, is imprisoned, condemned, and by the opening of a Vein is forced to bleed to death; It was given out that he had consulted with Witches against the King, and that it might appear the more probable, twelve Witches are condemned and burned: The other brother *Alexander* upon suspicion also is imprisoned in *Edinburgh* Castle; but he having feasted his keepers and made them drunk, escaped with his man by his sheets, which he fastned to the bars of the Window; his man broke his leg in the fall, so that his master was fain for a mile to carry him on his shoulders, so having a bark ready, and a fair winde, they set saile to *Dumbar* Castle, which he fortified, and from thence to *France*.

Not long after this an Ambassadour comes from king *Edward* of *England* to renew the peace, and to conclude a match between his daughter and king *James* his son, when they should be both of years; but this correspondency held not long, for the borderers made divers incursions upon each other; Besides, *Douglasse* an old exile, and *Alexander* the kings brother, lately being returned from *France* into *England*, blew the coals of sedition: King *Lewis* also sends into *Scotland*, to rouse up their drooping spirits against the English, who under *Glocester* were preparing an Army: but the *Scottish* Nobility being more discontented with the misgovernment of their own king, then with the English preparations, assemble, and are by *Archbald Douglasse* Earl of *Angus* animated first to reform the abuses of the Court before they invade *England*; For he lets them see, how carelessie the king was in his Government, how much addicted to Magick and unlawfull studies; how the chief officers at Court were mean men, how the Nobility was slighted, how the kings own brothers were used, the one being murdered, and the other banished, and now by the English employed in the head of an Army against them; therefore he wisheth them to consider how much more dangerous a domestick enemy was then a foreign, and what condition they now were in under such governours, whose avarice (saith he) is neither satisfied with our wealth, nor their cruelty with our blood: Upon this a great tumult arose in the Assembly, and a resolution to break in upon the king and his guard, but that motion was disliked, for fear the kings person might be endangered, who hearing of an assembly of Lords in the Church near the Court, sends *Cocheran* one of his Court-officers to see what the matter was; as he was comming, *Douglasse* apprehends him by his gold-chain which hung about his neck, and delivered him to be secured; mean while *Douglasse* with some officers of his Army breaks into the kings bed-chamber, and there presently apprehends all such servants that were there, or within the Court-walls, whom the souldiers suffered not to come to a trial, but presently hanged them up in their horse-bridles for want of ropes.

Whilst these things were thus acting, the Duke of *Glocester* enters *Scotland* with his Army, and demands restitution of the portion-money which was disbursed by the king of *England* upon hopes of the match, and the surrender of

of *Barwick Castle*; It was answered, That the children were not fit for marriage, nor was the day of repayment of that money come; as for *Barwick*, the English should have it, if they could take it. Mean while, *Argile*, with the Chancellor and two Bishops, of *St. Andrews* and *Dumblain*, send to *Alexander* then in the English Camp to return home, and to enjoy his estate, which in the next Parliament should be established on him. This business he imparts to *Glocester*, who kindly dismisseth him, who being returned home, a Parliament is called, in which he is made governour of the kingdom; and because the State of *Scotland* was then unsettled, it was held dangerous to make war with *England*; therefore they resolve to deliver *Barwick*, after one and twenty years possession, to the English. King *Edward* fearing lest the *Scots* should disinherit their kings Posterity, with whom they were highly offended, sends to *Scotland* to disannul the match between the two young Princes; and to demand back the portion-money; which at a day appointed, was repaid.

*Alexander*, out of his affection to the king his brother, sets him at liberty out of *Edinburgh-Castle*, and restores to him the government: But the king being more mindful of old injuries, then of new courtesies, intends to dispatch his brother, being thereto animated by his enemies, who accused his popularity and affection of the kingdom: therefore by the advice of his friends, he flies into *England*, and delivers up *Dumbar Castle* to king *Edward*. Whereupon he is condemned of treason, for sending underhand messengers thither, for going thither himself without leave, and for combining with the king of *England* against his native Country. *William Crichton* also his chief Counsellor and Abbot is proscribed, and his estate confiscated: after this, *Alexander* and *Douglass* with five hundred English horse falls upon a party of *Scots*, who defeated them, and took *Douglass* prisoner; *Alexander* escaped again. The Earle of *Richmond* having got the crown of *England*, makes a progresse to *Newcastle*, whence he sends Ambassadors to *Edinburgh* to conclude a lasting peace, or truce for some years: King *James* returns answer, that the *Scots* being a warlike people, would not hearken to any long peace; yet he would prevaile so far, as to procure a Truce for seven years; which was accordingly effected, and so king *Henry* returns Southward. Not long after, the king lost his Queen at home, and his brother in *France*, which two kept him in some awe; but now they being gone, he returned to his old wayes, in slighting the Nobility, in pillaging of the people, in filling places of trust with new upstarts: Among the rest, was one *John Ramsay*, whom he made steward of his house; this man fearing the Nobility, which was beginning to raise arms, causeth a Proclamation to be made, that none near the Court should bear arms, except *Ramsay* and his followers; which incensed the Lords so much the more against him: the king in the interim studieth by all means to suppress the Lords. Therefore one day he openeth his minde to *George Earl of Angus*, telling him that he meant suddenly to seise upon, and cut off the chief Lords and heads of this faction: the Earl dissuades him from this, as being dishonourable, to cut off treacherously so many great personages, being reconciled to the king, and having the publique-faith; but his better way were to arrest them openly, one after another, that they may in open Court plead for themselves. The king being satisfied with this advice, dismisseth the Earl, who presently acquaints the other Lords with the kings intention: Upon this, they take arms; the king finding his own danger, takes shipping, and gets over to *Fife* side, where he raiseth an army out of the Northern parts: The Lords seise upon the young Prince, whom they make the head of their army: the king in the interim, sends to the French and English kings for aide against his rebellious Lords, shewing the like danger may befall themselves; He sends also to Pope *Eugenius* the eighth, that he by his Apostolical authority would command them to obey their king; but the Lords who knew of all these messages, hasten to fight the king before either foreign aide or Ambassadors should come; the king

King contained himself in *Edinburgh-Castle*, till his Northern forces were come; but upon the persuasions of some, he was content to remove thence to *Sterling Castle* hoping there to be more secure and nearer his forces; but when he came thither, the governour being made by the adverse faction, denied the King entrance, wherefore not knowing whither to flee, and being followed close by the enemy, he was forced to fight with such forces as he then had, which being defeated, and the king having his horse slain under him, fled into a water-mill near *Sterling*, hoping from thence to escape by some ships that lay near the place, but he was pursued so eagerly, that he and such as fled with him thither were slain; this death of the king was adjudged just in the next ensuing Parliament: he died the eight and twentieth year of his reign, and of his age the five and thirtieth.

To *James* the 3. succeeded his son *James* the 4. being fifteen years old; a Parliament is called, at which few were present except those that had a hand in the kings death; the best of the kings ships held out against the new kings, *Edinburgh-Castle* is summoned to surrender to the young king which it did, and so likewise did *Sterling-Castle*; many grumbled at the kings death, complaining that things were not thereby bettered, but worsted, for the young king did not command, but was commanded by those who had a hand in his fathers death: mean while the English took occasion by these intestine broiles of *Scotland* to invade the kingdom; the young king labours to reconcile the Sea-men, lest they might cause troubles in his absence, therefore he wins with fair promises *Andrew Wood* an expert Sea-captain, who had the command of two men of Warre, with which he surpriseth five English ships before *Dumbar* and brings them all to *Lieth*; mean while the adverse faction cries out, that the kingdom was abused by a company of traitors, who had murdered one king, and kept the other as a prisoner; withall *Alexander Lord Forbes*, chief of that family, carried about the streets of *Aberdene*, and some other chief Towns, the kings bloody shirt, exhorting all good people to take Arms, and to revenge the kings death; *Matthew Stewart* also Earl of *Lenox* endeavoured to raise what forces he could in the Southern parts: in the interim the English were mad that five of their best ships should be thus surpris'd by two Scots-men of war, therefore they furnish *Steven Bull* with a fleet, promising a great reward if he could bring *Andrew Wood* dead or alive; *Bull* watcheth his opportunity, and sets upon *Woods* fleet furiously, they fought so long till the night parted them; the next morning they fell to it again with such eagerness, that they perceived not the tide fail them, wherefore the English ships being of a greater bulk were forced to yeeld, being stuck on the sand; *Bull* with the other English Sea-captains are brought by *Wood* to the king, who restores both the Captains and Ships to king *Henry* of *England*, who took this very kindly, and returns great thanks to king *James*.

About this time a strange monster was born in *Scotland*, which beneath the navel was one body, but above two distinct bodies, having different senses, souls and wills; any hurt beneath the navel is equally felt by both bodies above, but if any of the upper members were hurt, one of the bodies only felt the pain: this monster the king caused to be instructed in Musick and divers languages; one of the bodies died some dayes before the other, which also shortly after pined and consumed away, it lived eight and twenty years. A Parliament is held in *Edinburgh*, there all differences are composed, an Act of oblivion passed, and friendship between the great families confirmed by mutual marriages, so that after great storms follow halcyonian dayes: and that the King may testifie to the world, how his father was killed without his consent and knowledge, he wore an iron chain instead of a girdle so long as he lived; to which every year he added a linke or ring. About this time *Warbeck* the counterfeit Duke of *Tork* comes into *Scotland*, insinuates himself into the Kings favour, obtains in marriage the Earle of *Huntly's* daughter, and an Army against

*An. Christi.* against England, by which all Northumberland is wasted and spoiled, and great booties are carried into Scotland; this wrong king Henry meant to repay, but that he was retarded by the Cornish rebellion; after this the Scots invade England again, but are hindered from doing any great hurt by Fox the Bishop of Durham, and the E. of Surrey who enter Scotland, & having burned some places, return home; In the interim an Ambassador comes into England from Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain about the marriage of Katherine with Prince Arthur; the same also is sent into Scotland to negotiate for a peace with England; the Ambassador with Bishop Fox, could not draw the Scots Commissioners to deliver up Warbeck to King Henry, for King James did not think it could stand with his honour to expose to the enemy an humble suppliant who had cast himself upon his protection, who was of the Royal blood, and affianced to him, having passed his word and faith to the contrary, yea a truce for some months is made, that Warbeck might in that time shift for himself as King James advised him to do.

Warbeck being gone, a peace is concluded, which was like to break off again, upon a quarrel between some of the borderers; but upon complaint made by the Scots, satisfaction is promised by king Henry. The Bishop of Durham is sent into Scotland, who there adviseth with king James about his marriage with king Henry's daughter, which three years after was consummated, after which followed peace and plenty for divers years, the Court and Country began to abound with riot and luxury; the King gave himself to building of stately houses, monasteries, and great ships, one whereof was said to exceed any that had been built before: Francis the French king, and Henry the 8. of England strove to exceed this ship in greatness, but both their ships proved unserviceable. The king having exhausted his coffers upon these needlesse expences, is advised by Elphinston Bishop of Aberdeen, to make the Gentry compound for their Wardships, and such also as had sold half of their lands without their Lords consent. This and some other way, proposed being distastefull to the Gentry, the King resolves (partly to lessen his charges at home, and partly to make satisfaction for taking arms against his father) to make a journey into Syria: for this purpose a Fleet is made ready, a great many bind themselves by vow to wait thither on the king, who had acquainted the neighbouring Princes with his resolution.

Mean while a war was breaking out between France and England: For Pope Julius, Ferdinand of Spain, Maximilian the Emperor, the Venetians and Switzers, with the English, were entering into a league against France, the affairs of which had lately succeeded well in Italy. King James was not willing to side with either party, yet was earnestly importuned by the French faction, who to pick a quarrel with king Henry, sends the Bishop of Murrey to demand a great sum of money due to his Queen by legacie from Prince Arthur. King Henry knowing this message was a preparative for a breach, returns this answer, That not only this debt, but whatsoever else is due to king James, shall be truly satisfied: upon this he resolves not to invade England, yet to help France, therefore sends his fleet thither which he had lately built, of which James Hamilton Earl of Arran is made Admiral; but he instead of going into France, goeth into Ireland, and takes Knockfurgus, which he burned, and so returns home.

In the mean time letters from France come to the king, complaining he was not so good as his word, and that the promised ships were not come; whereat the king was so displeased, that he sends Archibald Douglass Earle of Angus to take Hamiltons Commission from him, and to succeed in the Admiralty; but he understanding the Kings mind beforehand, hoised anchor and was gone to sea, where his fleet by storms is torn and shattered, and the great ship is made unserviceable and left in Britany. Besides some private quarrels fell out among the borderers, about killing of Sir Robert Car king James his favourite English-

English-men, and the taking of some Scots ships by the English, without making satisfaction, occasioned a breach between the two kingdoms: The English borderers began to drive booties out of the Scots ground, where Alexander Hume Governour of the three Scottish Marches, with three thousand horse enters England, and plunders the seven next villages before any help could come; the booty was carried safe into Scotland, but Alexander with some part of his forces staid behind, and were set upon by three hundred English which lay in ambush, divers of the Scots were killed, and two hundred taken prisoners. In the mean time the King calls a Parliament, to advise about making war against England; the wiser part were against it, but the French Ambassador and his faction mainly for it; the King inclines to the French party, and so open war is proclaimed both by sea and land against England; a Herald is sent to King Henry then before Tournay, to denounce war against him, for the wrongs done by the English without satisfaction, as also for molesting Lewis the French king his ancient friend, and Charles Duke of Gelders his kinsman. King Henry returns answer, That he heard no more then what he expected from a King who kept covenant neither with God nor man; His threatenings should not make him give off his enterprise, nor should he care to lose his friendship, who was so inconstant in his affections.

Mean while, whilst the King was at Divine service in his Chappel, an ancient man of a venerable aspect, with long haire, a long garment, and a linnen-girdle, came bare-headed to the king, and leaning on his chair told him, That if he proceeded in that war, he and his Army should repent it; and with that vanished away, nor could he ever after be found; though diligent search was made for him. But the King notwithstanding marcheth on with his Army, and entering England takes divers Castles and overthrowes them, Northumberland is pillaged; he was advised to besiege Barwick, which then might have been easily taken, but he slighted that opportunity. In the interim Heralds come from the English, to know of King James what day and place he would appoint for a battel: the King was advised by his friends to return home with his Army, rather then to venture himself with so few (for many of his forces had forsaken him) against so numerous an Army of English, which was increased by six thousand old souldiers sent thither out of France; and if he will fight, he were best fight upon his own ground, where he will find more provision and advantages then in the enemies country. When the day appointed for the fight came, the English appeared not; wherefore the King is desired again to retreat home, for the enemies policie was by delays to increase their own Army, whilst the Scots did daily diminish; and that it was no more shame for him to retreat, then for the English to fail of the day appointed: but the King was so obstinately bent on a battel, that he told his Lords, if there were an hundred thousand English, he would fight them. This rash answer did much displease the Lords, chiefly Douglass Earle of Angus, who told him that he had done sufficiently for the French king, to divert a great part of the English Army from France hither; and that it was unreasonable, why to please the French Ambassador, he should expose himself and his handfull of men to six and twenty thousand expert English souldiers: The king bid the old Earl go home, if he was afraid; who answered, That his former actions in defence of his Country shew how little afraid he was, but now being aged and weak he was content to take his ease, yet was willing to leave his two sons behind as pledges of the love he bore his Country; and so departed.

The Scots now are resolved to fight, and by reason of their paucity take the advantage of the ground; which the English perceiving, to draw them upon even ground, make shew as if they were resolved by the way of Barwick, to enter Scotland, which the Scots fearing lest their advantage, and so the Armies encounter: Alexander Gordon who commanded the Scots right-wing, defeated the English left-wing; but the Scots other wing, in which were Lenox

*An. Christi.* and *Argile*, was utterly routed by the English; the body of the Scots Army where the king was, fought stoutly, till night parted both Armies; great slaughter on both sides; of the Scots were lost above five thousand, of the English about the same number, but these were of the meaner sort, the most of the Scots that were slain were Gentlemen, this battel was fought neer the hill *Fluddon*: what became of king *James* is uncertain; some think he was killed there, others, that he escaped, and afterwards was murdered by the *Humes*; but whatever became of him, he was a brave Prince, had he not been too head-strong, who for his zeale in the Christian Religion was stiled by the Pope, *Protector of the Faith*.

10

## CHAP. XXIX.

*The Scottish History, under King James the fifth, and his young Daughter Queen Mary, from the year 1513. till 1544.*

King *James* the fourth left his Queen *Margaret*, and two sons behind him; the elder was two years old, whom the Parliament at *Sterling* declares King; *Hume* is made governour of all that part of the kingdome on this side *Forth*, *Gordon* Earl of *Huntley* of all beyond. The Queen is Regent, for so King *James* had ordered it in his last Will, which he had made before he went to battell; This dignity she was to enjoy so long as she continued unmarried, which was not long, for within few moneths she married with *Archibald Douglass* Earl of *Angus*, a Youth endowed with all the parts of fortune and nature. A great part of the Nobility being slain, the Clergy began to rule in Parliament. *Stewart* Archbishop of *St. Andrews* being killed at *Fludon*, three fell in competition for that place, one named *Douglass*, who was chosen by the Queen, being of her husbands family; the other was *Hepburn* Abbot of *St. Andrews*, whom the Monks (as they were wont) elected for Archbishop; the third was *Forman* Bishop of *Murry*, on whom also *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* bestowed the Archbishoprick of *Biturix*; besides, the Pope conferred on him the Archbishoprick of *St. Andrews*, with the two rich Abbies of *Dunfermling* and *Aberbroth*, and made him also *Legatus à latere*. *Alexander Hume* upon promise of the Abby of *Coldingham* to his youngest brother, causeth the Popes Bull for electing of *Forman* to be proclaimed in *Edinburgh*, which occasioned much mischief, for *Hepburn* sought by all means to be revenged on the *Humes* for this.

The Queen perceiving the distractions of *Scotland*, wrote to her brother of *England*, to forbear making war against her and her children, who were sufficiently troubled already with domestick broils; who returns this answer, That he will not quarrel with the *Scots*, if they quarrel not with him. And now the Queen by her marriage having lost the Regency, the kingdome is divided into two factions: the *Douglasses* would have the Queen continued, pretending that would be a means to keep peace with *England*; but the *Humes* would have another elected, because the times were troublesome; The Queen had lost her Regency, and it was not the custome of *Scotland* to be ruled by womens; at last after much debate, *John* Duke of *Albany* being then in *France*, is chosen by most suffrages, he was the son of *Alexander* brother to king *James* 3. *Francis* the French king was glad of this election, for he knew it would be for his advantage; therefore he furnisheth him with men and money for his journey: In the interim, for want of one head, the kingdome is much vexed with highway men. *Forman* fearing lest *Hepburn* would crosse him in his title to the Archbishoprick, remits all the profit he made of it, during the vacancy; besides, he

he resignes to him the Bishoprick of *Murry*, and promiseth to allow him a large yearly pension out of the Church-revenues.

The Duke of *Albany* upon his arrival into *Scotland*, is declared Earl of *March* and Vice-roy during the kings minority: King *James* 4. his bastard son is made Earl of *Murry*: *Hepburn* insinuates himself into the Viceroy's affections; and discovers to him the humors, greatnesse, and factions of the *Scots* Nobility; he acquaints him being a stranger in *Scotland*, with the qualities of each family; chiefly of the *Douglasses* and *Humes*; which he hated; therefore wisheth the Viceroy to send for French forces, to suppress in time the growing factions of these great families. *Hume* perceiving which way the game was like to go, and that *Hepburn* had accused him to the Viceroy, as if he had murdered king *James*; repairs to the Queen, and makes her believe that the Viceroy intended to murder the young king, that he being next in blood might transfer the Crown to himself: therefore how dangerous and unreasonable it was, that a stranger, and the son of him who would have murdered his brother the king, and hath therefore lived still since in exile, should have the custody of the young King; he wisheth her therefore to flee into *England* with her son; and cast her self upon her brothers protection. This comming to the Regents ears, he presently seisseth on *Sterling* Castle, where the Queen was, and removes her with the *Douglasses* from the king, whose tuition he committed to three of the Nobility, whom he most trusted, with a sufficient guard. The *Humes* upon this flee into *England*, and so doth the Queen shortly after with her husband *Douglass*; whom king *Henry* ordered to stay in *Northumberland*, till his further pleasure was known. The Regent troubled at their departure, sends Ambassadors to king *Henry*, to assure him, that neither the Queen nor her followers had reason to leave their country, but their causelesse jealousies; he also deals so with the *Douglasses* and *Humes* with large promises, that he perswaded them to return home: the Queen was fain to stay, because of her great belly; for shortly after, she was delivered of a daughter *Margaret*: When she was fit to travel, king *Henry* sends for her.

The Regent banisheth the Earl of *Angus* his Uncle, with some other prime men; and summons *Alexander Hume* to appear in Parliament, which he refusing to doe, is condemned, and his estate confiscated: Upon this, he suffers or countenances the highway-men to doe much mischief; for suppressing of whom, and taking of *Hume*, ten thousand horse and foot are raised; but before they come, he submits himself to the Regent, who sends him to *Edinburgh*; and confines him to the Earl of *Arrans* house his sisters husband; *Hume* perswades *Arran* to undertake the government himself, being the sisters son of king *James* 3. and fitter to be Regent then a stranger, and a banished man: Upon this, they go away; the Regent presently takes *Hamilton* Castle upon surrender; *Hume* destroys with fire and sword a great part of the town of *Dunbar*: To these, the next spring, was added *John Stewart* Earl of *Lennox*; these seise upon *Glasgow* Castle, which upon the comming of the Regent they forsook; and afterward all of them are pardoned and received into the Regents favour; but not long after, upon new suspitions, are condemned and beheaded; they were accused of the kings death, and of treachery in *Floden* battel; but *Hepburn* the Abbot was their cheif persecutor, ever since they crossed him in the Bishoprick of *St. Andrews*. *Alexander* had three other brothers, two of whom were banished, and the third was murdered by *James Hepburn*.

The December following, the Regent brings the king from *Sterling* to *Edinburgh*, where having obtained leave of the Nobility, he takes shipping for *France*: The charge of the government lyeth upon the Earls of *Huntley*, *Angus*, *Arran*, and *Argile*, with the two Arch-bishops of *St. Andrews* and *Glasgow*. The Queen about a year after her departure, returns into *Scotland*, where new troubles arise upon the killing of the Governour of *Dunbar* by *David Hume*, whereupon the Vice-roy is sent for: quarrels also arise between the

*An. Christi.* Earl of Angus and the Kars. A Parliament is called at *Edinburgh*, where complaint is made against the greatnesse of *Angus*, who falling foule with the *Hamiltons* in the streets of *Edinburgh*, a great slaughter was made, so that about seventy two were killed; among the rest, *Arrans* brother, and *Eglentons* son: The *Hamiltons* to be revenged on the *Douglasses*, besieged one of their Castles, but to no purpose. The next year, *Douglasse* with the two banished *Humes*, enter *Edinburgh*, and take down the heads of *Alexander* and *William Humes*, which had been set up all this while on an eminent place of the City. So the whole five years of the Regents absence, was filled with slaughter and rapine: When he was come, he intended to weaken the power of the *Douglasses*; therefore banisheth the Earl of *Angus* into *France*, his Uncle the Bishop of *Dunkell* he sends to the Pope, to be punished by him, but by the way he died of the plague in *London*.

1521.

The next year after the Regents return, a Parliament is held at *Edinburgh*, and an Army raised, which is sent into *Annandel*, with an intent to invade *England*: When they were come within three miles of *England*, *Gordon* Earl of *Huntley* dissuaded the Nobility from entering, pretending it was unsafe to provoke a foreign enemy, when they had so many enemies at home; but this was indeed to crosse the Regents design, who to please the *French*, intended to invade *England*. The Regent to save his credit, had a party with *Musgrave* and some other English, in which a Truce was agreed on: The Regent shortly after goeth over into *France*, where he stayed some moneths longer then he expected, because the English fleet lay in wait for him: Therefore he sends five hundred *French* souldiers before with a fleet, which falling upon the English near the Isle of *Man* beat them. In the interim, *Howard* Earl of *Surry* is sent with an Army of ten thousand mercenaries, besides others, into *Scotland*, where having no resistance by reason of the Regents absence, and the domestick distractions, they waste *Marcia* and *Teviot*; upon his return, the *Scots* borderers plunder *Northumberland*, so that *Howard* is forced to come back again; who with much losse to his own party, took *Jadburg*. About which time, five hundred English horse being suddenly affrighted in the dark, broke their halters, and run away as if mad, at last they became a prey to the *Scots*; three dayes after the English Army disbanded. The Regent perceiving that the English fleet lay still in wait for him, gave out that he would not remove from *France* till the next spring: Whereupon the English fleet returned home; but as soon as they were gone, the Regent claps three thousand *French* foot besides one hundred couriers in fifty ships, and arrives safely in *Scotland*.

King *Henry* of *England* at this time did much court the *Scots* for an Union, alledging divers reasons why their union with *England* would be more advantageous then with *France*, in respect of vicinity, identity of language, foile, aire, conditions, countenances and habit of bodies: shewing also that the marriage of his daughter *Mary* with king *James*, would make a perfect Union, and much increase the happinesse of *Scotland*. Notwithstanding all this, the *French* faction being bribed, carried it against king *Henry*; for they alledged that this was not the first time the English deluded them under shews of friendship and union: *Edward* the first, against his oath, by which he was bound to end the controversie between the two kings, *Bruce* and *Balliol*, he increased it, by making *Balliol* king; *Edward* the fourth also pretended to marry his daughter *Cecil* to king *James* the third's son, but when it came to the upshot, upon some divisions in *Scotland*, he fell off; therefore king *Henries* aime was not to enrich, but to impoverish and enslave *Scotland*, being destitute of all foreign aide: they deny also that greater benefit can accrue to *Scotland* by their union with *England*, or more security, then with *France*: Therefore they advise them not to exchange without a cause, their old trusty friends, for new and slippery pretenders. The news also of the Regents being landed with foreign forces, confirmed the *French*, and cooled the English faction.

The

*An. Christi.*

The Regent having made his Rendezvous at *Glasco*, and from thence being come to *Edinburgh*, he assembleth the Lords, highly commending their constancie to the *French*, and the old league, and exhorting them to unity: then having refreshed his Army, and united the *Scots* forces with the *French*, he marcheth into *England* with the *French*, but the *Scots* would not follow; knowing this expedition was onely to gratifie the *French* king; the Regent with his *French* besieged *Werk*-Castle, and battered down the outward wall with their ordnance, but they were beaten off again; the Regent seeing no good could be done by the *French*, and that the *Scots* would not fight, hearing also of an Army of forty thousand English comming against him, returning home, the snow having done much hurt both to his men and horse, which made the English also return without action: the next Spring the Viceroy prepares again for *France*, desiring the Lords to keep the King at *Sterling*, and to make a peace with *England* before his return; but in his absence all growing out of order, the young king by divers of the Lords is conveyed to *Edinburgh*, where at *Holy-Roods* he undertook the government himself, and all took the oath of allegiance to him, most officers of State were changed for a while, he rode in state to the Parliament; shortly after the Bishops of *S. Andrews* and *Aberdene* for disliking this change are imprisoned, who to be revenged, curse all within their jurisdiction with bell, book and candle, but all are reconciled again within a moneth; *Archibald Douglasse* who was banished into *France*, returns home through *England*, and is kindly used by king *Henry*, purposely to crosse the Regent; *Lenox* and *Argile* who were out of publike employment, are glad of his comming; but the Queen whose affections were alienated from him, and *Arran*, which two ruled all, were much troubled at it, so was also *Hamilton* who feared his greatness, these with the King kept themselves in *Edinburgh*-Castle; but the adverse faction of Lords chose *Douglasse*, *Lenox* and *Argile*, protectors of the King and kingdome, these presently seise upon *Sterling*, and thence without opposition enter *Edinburgh*, the Castle being unprovided then for a siege is yielded up to them, out of which all are dismissed except the king; these *Triumviri* were to rule four months by turn, but this government lasted not long, for under the *Douglasses* such corruptions and disorders crept both into the Church and State, that the other two fell off, and the king grew weary.

Whilst *Douglasse* waited on the king into *Teviot*, there to suppress the Bandits or high-way men, who having summoned the chief of each family injoynd them to find out and apprehend these robbers, which they did accordingly, and many of them were put to death: I say, at this time a plot was laid by *Lenox* and the other *Stewarts* to get away the king from the *Douglasses*, which because they could not effect by secret plots, they resolved by open hostility to get him away, therefore on a sudden news are brought that the *Stewarts* were in Arms, the *Douglasses* with their friends in a great tumult flie also to their Arms, a hot skirmish followed in which the *Stewarts* were worsted, the king all the while stood as a spectator: after this the *Douglasses* to strengthen their faction, procured the *Hamiltons* (who had been a great while kept from the Court) to enter into league with them; the *Stewarts* on the other side, got divers Lords and Bishops to joyn with them; and in the kings name to call a Parliament at *Sterling*, and to set upon the *Hamiltonian* forces, before they joyned with the *Douglasses*; *Lenox* with his party being too hasty, fell upon the *Hamiltonians* having the advantage of the ground; by whom they are defeated, and *Lenox* to the kings great grief was slain; the *Douglassians* were hasting with their forces, and the king from *Edinburgh*; but the king faining himself to be ill-disposed, came so slowly, that *George Douglasse* suspecting he did this purposely to retard them from joyning with *Hamilton*, told him, Sir, rather then the enemy shall take you from us, we will cut you in two peeces; and reserve the one half for our selves: this speech made so deep an impression

1526.



*An. Christi.* impression on the young king, that he could never after be reconciled to him, though he was to others.

The work being done before the *Douglassians* came, inquisition by them is made of those prime men that took up arms against the king, among the rest the Earl of *Cassels* is summoned to appeare, his kinsman *Kennedy* appeared for him, shewing that the Earle fought not against, but for the king; and by his command, and with that he produced the Kings letters. *James Hamilton* the Bastard was so mad at *Kennedy*, that not long after he caused him to be murdered: *Douglasse* takes the murdered Earls son into his protection, and bestowes his daughter on him; he also plunders Archbishop *Betons* Castle, for 10 his complying with *Lenox*. *Beton*, that he might not fall into *Douglasse* his hands, was glad to hide himself, and so was the Queen, who both feared and hated her husband. Shortly after, one of *James Stewarts* Grooms, being grieved for the death of his master, stabs *Hamilton* the Bastard in fixe several places of his body, in revenge of his masters death: This fellow, though pinched all over with burning irons, shewed no manner of grief either in word or gesture. Not long after this, the King in the night-time, accompanied with a few horse, made an escape out of *Falkland*, and came to *Sterling*, where being now out of the power of the *Douglasses*, he sends for the Lords, who counsel him to remove the *Douglassians* from all government, and that neither they, nor any of their 20 friends, kindred or servants come within twelve miles of the Court upon pain of death: this kept off the Earl and his brother *George* from coming; a Parliament is called at *Edinburgh*, out of which the *Douglastian* faction removes, when they heard the King was coming with an Army: the Earle of *Angus* is ordered to be banished beyond the *Spey*, his brother *George* and *Archibald* his uncle are to be imprisoned in *Edinburgh*-castle; but they refused to obey this Order, therefore they are summoned to appear in Parliament, in the interim the Chancellorship and Treasurership are taken from them: but when the King was gone, they thought by the aid of their friends to take possession of *Edinburgh*, and to hinder the meeting of the Parliament; but the City was so 30 well guarded, they could do no good; upon this, *Douglasse* goeth to his Castle of *Tantallon*, fourteen miles from the town.

In this Parliament the *Douglasses* are proscribed, and their estates confiscated; whereupon they flie out into open hostility, and let loose the reins to all high-way-men, so that much mischief and robberies are committed. The king besiegeth *Tantallon*-castle, but could do no good on it: *Argile* is employed by the king to suppress the Bandito's: the *Douglasses* being forsaken by the *Hamiltons*, flie into *England*. King *Henry* of *England* preparing to make war against *Charles* the Emperor, sends to make a peace with *Scotland*, and to have the *Douglasses* restored: king *James* would not heare any thing of restoring 40 *Douglasse*, and so the peace could not be concluded, only a truce is made for five years; in the mean while *Tantallon*-castle is delivered by *Douglasse* to the king. The next year, the king makes *James* Earl of *Murray* Viceroy, whom he sends to the borders to meet the Earl of *Northumberland*, concerning the peace, and reparation for wrongs, but nothing was concluded: The king sends the Earl *Bothwell* and some other Lords into *Edinburgh*-castle, upon information given, that they were underhand raising war against *England*; then he goeth in person with eight thousand men to suppress the rebellious borderers, whose Chief *Maxwell* with divers others he caused to be apprehended and hanged, at which the English were glad, for he had done them much 50 mischief: shortly after this, the king releaseth the imprisoned Lords out of the Castle.

1531. About this time, one *John Scot* a mean man in *Edinburgh*, grew famous with Fasting; for when he pleased, he could abstain thirty, or forty, or fifty dayes together without meat or drink: Experiments of this he gave both to king *James* in *Scotland*, to the Pope at *Rome*, to the *Venetians*, to the English in *London*, where

where he was imprisoned for preaching at *Pauls-Crosse* against king *Henry's* divorce, and falling off from the Church of *Rome*: when he was asked by what means he fasted so, he still answered, By the help of the Virgin *Mary*. The Duke of *Albany* obtained of the Pope, that the Clergy should out of their revenues allow an yearly salary for Judges to end controversies between man and man about bargains or pecuniary matters: *Dumbar* Bishop of *Aberdene* in this point appeals to the Pope, and then at *Edinburgh* was set up the Colledge of Justice: the king to please the Pope, makes strict inquisition against the Lutherans, in recompence of which, the Pope bestows on him all the Tithes 10 for three years. This year the English having entred into a league with *France* against *Cesar*, are willing to pick a quarrel with *Scotland*, therefore upon some small pretences they invade the Scots borders, and did at first much harm, till they were beat out, and then they were contented by mediation of the French to imbrace a peace; *David Beton* is sent into *France* to complaine that the old league with *Scotland* was neglected; an Ambassador is sent from *France* to compose the differences between the Scots and English; *Cesar* sends an Ambassador from *Toledo* by the way of *Ireland* into *Scotland*, to draw the Scots 15 into a league with him against *England* and *France*, complaining of the wrongs done to his Aunt *Katherine* by King *Henry*; then a match is proposed either with *Mary* of *Hungary*, or *Mary* of *Portugal*, or *Mary* of *England*; but King *James* inclined rather to the king of *Denmarks* daughter by *Isabel* sister to *Charles Cesar*. About this some time was required for deliberation.

Things being settled at home, the King resolves to sail about *Scotland*, for reducing the Islanders to obedience; first he sails to the *Orkades*, which he setteth, and puts garrisons both in the Kings and in the Bishops Castles; then he settles the other Islands, and sends away their chief disturbers to *Edinburgh* and *Dumbar*-Castles; the Lutherans are severely enquired after, and some burnt: the Earl of *Murry*, and the Bishop of *Aberdene*, are sent into *France* 20 about a wife for the king, to whom king *Henry* of *England* sends by one of his Bishops a book containing the Articles of the Reformed Religion, which king *James* upon perswasion of his Clergy rejected as heretical: then king *Henry* sends to desire king *James* to give him a meeting about settling of both kingdoms in one, which was by marrying king *Henries* daughter, whereby king *James* after king *Henries* death should be heire of both, in assurance of which, king *Henry* proffers to make him Duke of *Torke*, and his Deputy or Viceroy of *England*: king *James* intended to give king *Henry* a meeting, but was at last dissuaded from it by the *Hamiltons*, who being next heirs to the Crown, would not have the king marry at all; by the Bishops also, who pretended that king *Henry* meant to have the Religion of *Scotland* altered; they al- 40 leadged the danger that might befall the king if he should trust his person in *England*, whereas king *James* the first, *Malcolme* the first, and his brother *William* kings of *Scotland*, were drawn into *England* upon great promises, and then forced to assent and act such things as stood not with the honour and safety of their kingdom.

With these reasons, and with promises of great sums of money, king *James* his minde was changed, and so king *Henry* was angred, which occasioned new quarrels. King *James* being impatient of celibate, and finding that his Ambassadors in *France* trifled away their time, resolves to go thither in person, 50 but without the knowledge of his Lords; the first time he set to sea he was forced back by storms, the next time he landed in *Deep*; being accompanied with many of his Lords, who suddenly coming to *Paris* before king *Francis* knew of his arrival, was most courteously entertained, and a match presently concluded between him and *Magdalen* the French kings daughter; after much joy and solemnity they both sailed into *Scotland*, but not long after she fell into an hecick fever and died, to the great grief of all except the Priests, who

*An. Christi.* who feared she would incline the King to Protestantisme, for she had been bred by her Aunt the Queen of Navar, after her death, Ambassadors are sent to marry *Mary* of the house of *Guise*, and widow to the Duke of *Longuevil*: *Bothwel* for suspected treason is banished out of *Scotland*, *England* and *France*: the Lord *Forbes* is beheaded, being accused by one *Straughen* of treason, and persecuted by *Huntlies* faction: the Earl of *Angus* his sister was burned for conspiring with some others to poyson the king; her husband thinking by a rope to escape out of *Edinburgh-Castle*, fell and so bruised himself that he died presently; the next year *Mary* of *Guise* is with great solemnity married at *St. Andrews* by the Archbishop to King *James*. Many Protestants that year suffered either death or banishment: *George Buchanan* escaped out of prison: 10  
1539. The Queen this year was brought to bed of a son, and the next year of another. King *Henry* sends again to have King *James* give him a meeting at *Torke*, which he refused upon the dissuasions of his Clergy. *James Hamilton* for treason is beheaded, and his limbs set up in four several places of *Edinburgh*; not long after, the King dreamed that this *Hamiltons* ghost appeared to him in a ghastly manner, brandishing his sword against him, with which he cut off his right hand, and then his left; the king being awakened, and thinking much of the meaning of this dream, news is brought him that both his sons were dead about the same time, the one at *St. Andrews*, and the other at 20 *Sterling*.

Not long after this, the two kings quarrel, the borderers are wasted on both sides; at last Armies are raised, the Scots Army mutined because the king had by his letters named one *Oliver Sinclair* for their General, and so in a confused manner were marching home, which the English perceiving, they set upon them with their whole Army, and routed them; the news of this overthrow so vexed the king, that shortly after he sickned and died, having left one daughter heir to the Crown five dayes old, he was entombed in the Abbey-Church of *Holy-Roods*, near his first wife *Magdalen*. The losse of the Army, and the kings sudden death, put the Scots into a great deal of anxiety; 30 the *Hamiltons* were now in hope to obtain the Crown, at least during the nonage of the childe *Mary*: the Scots prisoners at *London* are for two dayes shut up in the Tower, and from thence being brought in solemnity through the streets to the king, were checked by the Chancellor for breaking the peace, and then were dispersed into some private houses; but when news came that king *James* was dead, having left one daughter, the prisoners are sent for to the Court and kindly used by the king, who having tried how they were inclined to a match between his son and their young Queen, he sends them home into *Scotland*, the two *Douglases* return with them after fifteen years banishment: The 40 Cardinal of *St. Andrews* got himself to be made Viceroy before they came, but as soon as they were come he was thrust out, and *James Hamilton* Earl of *Arran* is named Viceroy.

The next March a Parliament was called, whither Sir *Ralph Sadler* is sent Ambassador from king *Henry* to conclude a peace, and to make up the match, his proposal was much opposed by the Queen, Cardinal and Clergy; the Cardinal is confined, and great hopes appear of a full union, so that the Merchants begin again to traffique freely; but the Cardinal (being set at liberty) with his Clergy and the Queen, strive what they can to hinder any union with *England*, therefore they cause affronts to be put upon the English Ambassador, and withall the hostages which were promised upon the setting of the Scots 50 Lords free in *England*, were denied, for they feared this union would be prejudicial to *France*, and that it would bring in with it an alteration in Religion: Sir *Ralph* complains of the affronts, to whom the Regent promiseth reparation, but shews it was not in his power to deliver any hostages: the Earl of *Cassils* alone professed openly, that he would return to *England*, and there remain a perpetual prisoner, rather then his two brothers which were his hostages

hostages should suffer for him, and so he went streight to *London*; the King *An. Christi.* highly commending his resolution, sets both his brothers at liberty, and sends him also back again with some rich presents. Mean while King *Henry* stays all the Scots ships that were within his harbours, threatening war and destruction against those who had broke the peace, and violated the Laws of Nations: but the Queen and Cardinals faction sends to the French king, that he should now or never hinder the Scots union with *England*, and to that purpose should send home *Matthew Stewart* Earl of *Lenox*, who was the *Hamiltons* great enemy, to suppress them and their claim which they laid to the Crown, 10 he being next heir by King *James* his last Will; they promise also to marry him to the widow Queen, and to make him heiro to *James Hamilton* lately dead, for the Regent was a bastard; besides the French king promised his assistance to *Lenox*, if he would go home.

The young credulous Earle upon these great proffers and promises goeth for *Scotland*, where having saluted the Regent, he repairs to the Cardinal, to whom he shews the causes of this his journey; his friends to the number of four thousand accompany him to the Queen: *Hamilton* to avoid blood, proposeth some Articles for peace, to wit, that the Queen should be transported into *Sterling*, and that she should be educated by four of the Nobility which 20 were of neither faction; hereupon she was crowned at *Sterling*: the Regent finding himself too weak for the other faction, in the Gray-Friars at *Sterling* in the presence of the Queen-mother, and chief Lords of the Court, recanted his opinion concerning the controverted points of Religion, and totally submitted himself to the Cardinal, who was Regent in effect, the other or ely in name; thus the Queen-mother and Cardinal having got the Regent to be at their beck, strive underhand to get *Lenox* out of the way, by writing to the French king, and desiring him to call back *Lenox* again, for he had done what they desired in diminishing the Regents power, but they were afraid lest his greatnesse may cause some faction; in the interim the Queen-mother bare him 30 in hand that she would marry him, and entertained him at Court with feasting, masking and dancing; the Earl of *Bothwel* whom King *James* the 5. banished, is now returned, and was a great servant also to the Queen-mother, which bred emulation in *Lenox*, yet he at last got *Bothwel* to forsake the Court; but when he perceived that the Queen and Cardinal did put him off with long delays, and that they went about to delude him, he grew angry, and with intent of revenge went to *Dumbritton*, where he receiveth from the French king a great summe of money which he was to employ by the advice of the Queen and Cardinal, but he distributed a great part of this money among his friends, and some he sent to the Queen; the Cardinal finding that no share 40 thereof came to him, in anger complies with the Regent, and wiseth him to send speedily an Army to *Glasgow* which might unawares seise upon *Lenox* and the money also; but *Lenox* understanding of this plot, raiseth presently seven thousand Voluntiers, and with them he marcheth to *Leith*, and sends to the Cardinal that he was come to prevent his journey to *Glasgow*, and withall to fight his forces; the Cardinal puts him off from day to day with promises of a fight, but when *Lenox* saw that he lost time, that his Voluntiers were beginning to hold correspondence with the Enemy, and that he was not provided to make a siege, makes his peace with the Regent.

Shortly after *Lenox* understanding that a plot was laid against him, he retired to *Glasgow*, where he fortifies and victuals the Bishops Castle; thence he goeth to *Dumbritton*, where he understands that the *Douglases* and *Hamiltons* were reconciled, and that King *Francis* affection was alienated from him upon the calumnies of his enemies; in the interim the Earl of *Angus*, and *Robert Maxwel* came to *Glasgow*, to take up the differences between the Regent and *Lenox*; mean while King *Henry* of *England* sends his fleet which was intended for *France*, against *Leith* and *Edinburgh*, which had slighted his proffers, and 50 affronted

*An. Christi.* affronted his Ambassador; ten thousand men being landed they quickly seise on the Town, most of the Merchants being gone elsewhere; here they stayed three dayes till their Artillery was landed, with which they battered the walls of *Edinburgh* which they took and plundered; and having set fire on some houses, they marched up and down that Country, wasting divers Gentlemens houses and villages; and so having done what spoil they could, return to their ships; *Lenox* in the mean time sends a messenger with letters to King *Francis* clearing his own innocencie, and accusing his enemies of false calumnies against him; but the King was so prepossessed by the Queen-mother, and the *Guisan* faction, that he would not admit the messenger into his presence; *Lenox* being much perplexed that he was thus abused by the Queen and Cardinal, and slighted by the French king, who had employed him on a desperate service, and then forsook him, understanding also that the Regent was come into *Glasgow* with an Army, and after ten dayes siege had taken the Castle, resolves now to comply with the King of *England*; and having received some encouragements thereto, intends first to be revenged on the *Hamiltons*, therefore with eight hundred Townsmen of *Glasgow* and others, he encounters the *Hamilton* forces which were far more numerous; in the first encounter he beat off the enemy from their Ordnance, but fresh supplies comming to the *Hamiltons* got them that victory, about three hundred were killed on both sides: *Glasgow* is plundered, and *Lenox* having left the Castle of *Dumbritton* to *George Sterling*, set sails for *England*, where he is honourably received and entertained by the King who marrieth him to *Margaret Douglass*, King *James* the fifts sister, and daughter to King *Henries* sister.

## CHAP. XXX.

A continuation of the Scottish History under the two Regents, Hamilton and the Queen-mother, from 1544. till 1560.

1544.

**T**HE *Hamiltons* being glad to be rid of so potent an enemy as *Lenox*, call a Parliament, in which he and his friends are condemned, and their whole estates confiscated; whilst *Scotland* is thus pestered with homebred seditions, the English invade it with an Army, to resist which, the Queen-mother with the Cardinal and Regent, raise between eight and nine thousand men, but the Regent out of cowardise fled with a few to *Dumbar*, the Army upon his sudden departure began to disband: *Archibald Douglass* Earl of *Angus*, with some few of his friends, brought back the Artillery to *Dumbar*, even in the sight of the enemy, wherein he shewed great resolution and boldness; the English mean while wastes all the Country to the *Forth*, and so return home: *Thomas Howard* the Duke of *Norfolk*, with some others, beg from King *Henry* in recompence of their good service in *Scotland*, all such lands there as either they had, or should subdue, and with all a sufficient Army, till the work were done; this was assented to, so they return with three thousand mercenaries, besides the borderers who were voluntaries, and warred on their own charges: the Earl of *Angus* whose estate lay most about the borders repairs to the Regent, shewing him the danger the kingdom was in, and reproved him for suffering himself to be led by the Cardinal and his Clergy, for which he had lost the hearts of the Nobility; hereupon summons are sent abroad to invite the Lords to a meeting, that an Army might be raised, they two in the interim with three hundred horse ride towards the English quarters; some of the borderers joyn their forces with the Regent, to whom came a supply of three hundred out of *Fife*, and some more forces under *Walter Scot*; these encounter with the English who had both the sun and wind against them, so that being blinded with the sun now in the West, and the gun-powder-smoak, they were presently disfranked and confounded, and so suddenly flung down

down their arms and ran away; the *Scots* pursued with great eagerneffe and made a great slaughter; of the *Scots* two onely were slain; of the English about two hundred, and a thousand taken prisoners, eight hundred of which were Gentlemen.

About this time, the *Gourdon*s under *George* Earl of *Huntly*, or rather the *Reginaldins* by his instigation, fought a battel with the *Frasers*; in which the whole family of the *Frasers* were killed, so that it had been utterly extinct, but that there were 80 of their wives left big with childe, all which were brought to bed of sons, who lived till they all came to mens estate. Five hundred horse and three thousand foot are sent out of *France* into *Scotland*, to retard the English from invading *France*; an Ambassador also is sent to enquire into crimes objected against *Lenox*, that he suppressed much of the French money, that he spoiled the publique cause by falling out with the Cardinal, and of his going into *England*; he had also order to leavy an army in *Scotland*, whereupon fifteen thousand make their rendezvous at *Haddington*, whence they march into *England*, wasting for six miles together all with fire and sword. So having spent ten dayes in plundering, they return laden with spoil. *Montgomery* the French Ambassador enquires and findes that the Cardinal had wrongfully accused *Lenox*, and forced him to flee into *England*; Then the Regent and Cardinal undertook a progresse into *Perth*, *Dundee*, and other towns, to punish and suppress the Protestants; they take away the Provostship of *Perth* from the *Kuven*s, in whose family it had continued many years, and put one upon them, whom they would not admit, which caufed great troubles and tumults in the towne, so that sixty men were slain, and many in the confused presse of the people resisting their new Provost and his forces, were trod to death. After this the Cardinal conveys the Regent to *St. Andrews*, where having sumptuously entertained him for three weeks, he goeth to the National Synod then held at *Edinburg*, where *George Sephocard* a Minister is accused of Heresie; him they fetch away with a troop of horse from *John Cockburns* house where he was entertained, then he was carried to *St. Andrews*, where he was condemned by the Cardinal and his Clergie to be burned as an Heretick, for the Regent refused to meddle with him: the Cardinal in great state with divers church-men sate in his window over against the place of Execution: *George*, as the rope was about his neck, and the fire ready to be kindled, told the Cardinal, that ere long, for all his great state, he should be laid as low as he; so he was strangled, and his body burned to ashes: This severity procured much obloquie and hatred from the people and Nobility on the Cardinal, who to make his party the stronger, marrieth his eldest daughter to the Earl of *Crafs* son.

Mean while, the Cardinal understanding that there was a great fleet from *England* comming to infect the coast of *Fife*, he sends to all the Nobility and Gentry of that country to meet him on such a day, to consult about fortifying of that coast. About that time the Earl of *Roths* son, by the assistance of fifteen more that were of the plot, entred one day betimes in the morning into the Cardinals Castle at *Saint Andrews*, the gate being opened to let in the work-men who were then repairing and fortifying of the place; these conspirators break into his bed-Chamber, and with many wounds they stab him to death: then upon a tumult in the Town, his dead body is exposed to publique view in the same place where he beheld the Ministers execution; the murderers are summoned to *Edinburgh*, who stand upon their own guard in the Castle, and refuse to come; whereupon they are proscribed: The Regent by the Queen and Clergies instigation takes arms, and layeth siege to the Castle almost 4 months, till the winter forced them to raise the siege and depart; but they in the Castle being rid of their enemies, waste all the Country about with fire and sword, and gave themselves to all licentiousnesse, notwithstanding *John Knox* preached damnation to them.

*An. Christi.* The English again invade the borders, and new levies are raised to resist them, about which time a French fleet in which were 21 galleys arrived; the French and Scots joyn their forces, and suddenly besiege the Cardinals castle, which they batter with their brasse-ordnance from the towers of the two next Churches, so that at last the besieged were forced to yield, being promised their lives; in this castle was found the Cardinals treasure, with much provision, furniture and householdstuffs, besides much wealth hid there for security by the Citizens; the castle by command is pull'd down to the ground.

1547. About this time news came, that the King of England was preparing both by sea and land to invade Scotland, and to force the Scots to make good their promise about the marriage of their young Queen with king *Henries sonne*. The Regent raiseth what forces he can to oppose the common enemy; some skirmishes there were, and divers both English and Scots killed: at last the English perceiving the Scots army to increase daily, they send letters to the Regent and the Lords, desiring them to consider how unnatural this war was between Christians and neighbours, how happily and quickly it might be composed, if they would stand to their promise and league about the match, which would be so advantageous to them; how impossible it was to find a husband so fit for their Queen, as one born of so great a Prince, in the same Island, of the same language, so near in blood, and of such excellent endowments, 20 besides what unhappinesse will accrue in matching with a stranger: therefore if the Scots will consent to this match, they shall have the education of their young Queen till she be marriageable, and the English will forthwith return home with their Army, promising to make satisfaction for any hurt done on the Scots side, conditionally they will not suffer their Queen to be conveyed away to any other kingdom, nor suffer the French to marry her. These letters the Regent by advice of his Counsellors suppressed, presuming on an uncertain victory, and giving out that the English came purposely to carry away their Queen, and to enslave the Nation: upon this they resolve to fight; *Douglas* Earl of *Angus* leads the Van, *Gordon* Earl of *Huntley* the Rear, the Regent 30 led the main body, the whole Army was about twenty thousand: the English being scant of provisions, were retreating; but seeing the Scots Van following them so eagerly, that they were a good way from the rest of their Army, they face about, and in the first encounter are disordered; but having again recollected themselves, at last worsted the Scots Van, which the main body perceiving began to flee, which the English horse perceiving from the higher ground, pursued, killed and took many of them; there fell of the English horse in the first encounter about two hundred, of the Scots the number is not certain, whose Rear retreated homeward in safety; all this while the Scots army suffered much harm by the English fleet, which plaid upon them with their 40 ordnance.

1548. This battel being fought, the English waste all the Country for six miles together, and take in certain Castles: The Regent repairs to both the Queens at *Sterling*, being sad for this disaster; but the Queen-mother was not much sorry, though she made shew, because she aimed to displace the Regent, and to get the government into her own hand: The young Queen is secured in *Dunbritton*, whilst the Lords consult about settling of the kingdome. Ambassadors are also sent to *Henry* of *France*, for aide against the common enemy, with hopes that the young Queen shall be conveyed over into *France*, and married to the Dolphin; but the French aide came not so soon as was expected: mean while the English invade *Galloway* by the assistance of *Lennox*, to whom a great part of that Country submitted; they waste also the Country about *Haddington*: In the interim three thousand German foot, two thousand French, and one thousand horse, are sent from King *Henry* of *France*; to these the Regent with eight thousand Scots doe joyn, and besiege *Haddington*: A meeting is had of the Lords about transporting of the Queen; many were for the

the union with *England*, chiefly those that desired a reformation of Religion; but the Catholics, and all such as were bribed by the French, chiefly the Regent, who was promised a yearly revenue of twelve thousand Francks, besides a Captainship over a hundred Curriers; all these being the major part, voted the Queen should be sent into *France*: The fleet that waited for her at *Liech*, sailed about the coast and took her in at *Dunbritton*; who after a stormy passage arrived in *Britany*, from whence she is conveyed to the Court.

Whilst the siege continues at *Haddington*, the Scots surprise *Hume-Castle* with some other places from the English. *James Stewart* the Queens brother 10 with some forces in *Fife*, fell upon twelve hundred English lately landed, and drove them back again to their ships, with the losse of six hundred of them, partly slain, and partly drowned, as they were hastening to their fleet; about one hundred were taken prisoners. Then the English fleet resolves to seise upon the town of *Montrose* in the night; but the governour of the Town perceiving by the lights in their ships where they were, placeth divers armed men in ambush, who fell upon eight hundred of them as they were landing, and drove them back into the Sea, so that scarce the third part of them escaped. The siege at *Haddington* continues still: *Thomas Palmer* with one thousand foot and three hundred horse from *Barwick* are sent to relieve the besieged, 20 but they were almost all cut off by the Scots in ambush; after these three hundred more are sent with powder and shot to relieve the besieged, for these the French lay in wait, but missed them: Then news came that a great army was coming out of *England* to raise the siege; whereupon the Scots army not willing to hazard all upon one battell, leave the siege, and send back the Artillery to *Edinburgh*; where the Provost was killed with his son and others by the French, because he resisted them as they were entering the City, fearing lest they should fall to plundering after their accustomed manner. The French return again suddenly to *Haddington*, where they killed the watch betimes in the morning, but as they were breaking open the gate, the English are 30 waked, who discharging the murthering piece before the gate, did such execution upon the French, that they ran away; but not long after, they made incursions upon *England*, and did much hurt there.

Not long after this, *Desjars* the French General is called home, upon the Regents letters complaining of his insolencies, and sedition raised by him at *Edinburgh*: but by the way he retakes from the English *Keth-Island*, and puts most of them to the sword. *Terminus* is sent into *Scotland* with some more French supplies, who regain some Castles from the English; and upon the departure of their Army into *England*, sits down before *Haddington*, which at last, the English garrison for want of provisions were forced to quit, having 40 first set fire on some houses. Mean while, news is brought and proclaimed in *Scotland* of a Peace between *France* and *England*; whereupon the French are shipped away. But in this subsequent three yeares of peace, many disorders, insolencies and oppressions were committed by the Regent, and his brother the Archbishop of *S. Andrewes*, who was altogether ruled by his Concubine; for which their government grew odious to the people: whereupon the Queen-mother makes a journey into *France*, for she aimed at the government, which she hoped to obtain by the French assistance: the French king willing to advance her without tumult, bestowes great pensions and offices on the Regent and his son, and on *Huntly*, whose son had married the Regents daughter, on others also that were of the Queens faction, who were employed to persuade the Regent to resign his power to the Queen-mother; the Bishop of *Rosse* an eloquent man did the Queen good service in this business, for which the French king rewards him with an Abby in *France*. The Queen-mother hoping now a way was made for her greatnesse, returns home through *England*, being accompanied with a French Ambassador, who by their favourites persuade the Regent to resign his Regencie, so full of troubles and care, and which

*An. Christi.*

1549a

*An. Christi.* which he could not keep long, by reason the young Queen was almost of age, and that the French king would recompence him sufficiently; the Regent was contented to resign, conditionally that he might never be questioned for the late kings goods which he had used, not for any act he had done in his Regency, which was granted him, and withall the title of Duke of *Castellorot*, rich presents, and a yearly pension of twelve thousand Franks; it was also voted, that if the Queen died without issue, *Hamilton* should be declared next heir to the Crown; these Articles were sent to France, and there confirmed by the young Queen and her protectors, to wit, King *Henry 2.* of France, the Duke of *Guise*, and his brother *Charles* the Cardinal; but the Regent repenting 10 of his forwardness in promising to resign, began to use delays, untill he saw all the Lords fall off from him to the Queen-mother; then he resigns, conditionally that the Articles be ratified in Parliament, which was done accordingly; the Scepter, Crown and Sword were delivered up solemnly by the Regent to the French Ambassador, who received them in the name of the young Queen, and by her command delivered them to the Queen-mother, a thing not seen before in Scotland, that a woman should govern that Kingdom; but it was ordered that the Castle of *Edinburgh* should not be committed to the French, lest if the Queen should die childlesse, they would make it the place of their 20 tyranny.

1555.

The Kingdom being settled, *Huntly* is employed by the Queen-Regent to suppress the high-way-men, which he undertook, but performed not, wherefore he is imprisoned, and not released untill he had resigned his right to *Moravia*, and his offices he enjoyed in the North, and then he was dismissed, and made a Privy-counsellor; then the Queen-Regent makes a progress as far North as *Inverness*, where she caused divers delinquents to be executed, and sent the Earle of *Athol* against the Rebels, who brought with him their chief Commander *Muderac* with his whole family to the Queen, but shortly after he made an escape, and did more mischief then before; some of Cardinal *Betons* murderers are advanced by the Queen; a new project is set on foot by 30 the French, for raising of monies to maintain an Army of mercenaries, that each man should be rated according to his estate, but this was wholly disliked and rejected, as being both dangerous and needles; it was thought that *Huntly* was the author of this project, purposely to bring the Queen-Regent in dislike with the people.

1557.

The French king sends to the Regent of Scotland, that she would according to the old league denounce war against England, because Queen *Mary* assisted her husband King *Philip* against the French; but the Lords would not consent to any war against England at this time: then a plot was laid to build a Fort near *Barwick*, purposely to induce the English to quarrels, which fell out accordingly, so that quarrel arose, and war is denounced; but the Scots fall out with the French Ambassador *Osellius*, for taking upon him to rule the Kingdom; at which both he and the Queen-Regent were offended, but know not how to help it, except by hastning the marriage between the young Queen and the Dolphin, by which means the power of the Lords would be curbed: After 40 the Dolphin, by which means the power of the Lords would be curbed: After divers excursions, a great skirmish there was between the Duke of *Norfolk* and *Andrew Car*, in which many were wounded and killed on both sides, and the *Car* taken prisoner: After this, a Parliament is held in *Edinburgh*, in which the French kings letters were read, desiring the Scots to send away for consummating of the marriage, and confirming of the old league, some of their 50 prime men; whereupon three Peers, two Bishops, one Prior or Abbot, and two Provosts were sent away, two ships of that fleet were sunk with stormy weather, the Earl of *Rothuse*, and *Reed* Bishop of *Orkney* saved themselves in a Fisher-boat; when all the Commissioners were come on shore they hasten to the Court; the *Guises* who had now the command of all France, use all the celerity they can to consummate the marriage; there were five brothers of them, the

eldest was General of the French forces in France; the second of the Ligurian forces; the third of their Army in Scotland; the fourth commanded the Gallies at *Marseilles*; and the fifth who was *Charles* the Cardinal, had the disposing of the whole treasure of France: after the nuptial solemnities were finished, the Chancellor of France desires the Scots Commissioners that the Queens husband might be solemnly installed and created King of Scotland, and that it might be confirmed by Parliament, which motion was rejected by them as unreasonable, and as no wayes contained within their Commission: shortly after four of the prime Commissioners, with divers of their attendants died suddenly, not without suspicion of poyson; *James* the Queens brother recovered, but never perfectly, for he had still after this an infirm stomach.

About this time the borders are infested on both sides with mutual incursions, a fleet of English was sent to infest the Scots coast, which arriving in *Orkney*, landed many men to plunder and burn the Bishops seat, and Town of *Orkney*, but the ships were scattered and torn by storms, and all that came on shore were cut in peeces by the Islanders: great troubles fell out in *St. Andrews* about the burning of one *Milvins* a revolted Priest, whose tombe was erected and taken down again divers times, till at last the stones were quite carried away for other buildings: At *Edinburgh* on the festival day of *S. Egidius* the Cities Patron, his statue that should have been carried about in Procession, was stolen out of the Church, and another little one being made, and carried about solemnly, was thrown down and trampled upon by the rude multitude, and all the Procession ornaments torn in peeces. Shortly after, *Paul Mefan* a Minister, is summoned to appear at *Edinburgh*, which he refused, being backed and supported by *Dundee*; upon this divers prime men out of *Fife* and *Angus*, dispersed themselves through the kingdom, exhorting the people to shake off the old Religion, and to subscribe to the Reformation, and withall they send to the Queen Regent, that the Divine-service might be used in the vulgar 30 tongue, that the people might chuse their own Ministers, and have power to depose them; this motion was rejected by the Papal-Clergy with much indignation, but the Regent for quietness sake gave way that Divine-service be said in Scottish, conditionally that no Minister be suffered to preach at *Leith* and *Edinburgh*; the Priests notwithstanding ceased not to persecute the Ministers, and caused some old Canons to be printed and fastened to the Church-doors, the copies of which, because sold up and down for farthings a peece, therefore the people called the Roman religion, *The Farthing-faith*.

In the Parliament at *Edinburgh* the French Ambassador, with his faction, labour hard to have the Crown of Scotland set upon the Dolphins head, which 40 at last after much debate was assented to; the Earl of *Argile*, with *James* the Queens brother, are appointed to convey the Crown into France, but they fearing this would prove an enslaving of Scotland to France, put off the journey with long delays; in the interim Queen *Mary* of England dieth, and *Mary* of Scotland claimeth that Crown, therefore assumes the Title and Arms of England, which her husband likewise did: the Queen Regent also began to carry herself more imperiously then before, petitions were preferred to her in behalf of the Protestants, which she rejected; whereupon threatening speeches are given out of shaking off her government. The Town of *Perth* publicly receives the Protestant Religion, for which she threatens *Raven* the 50 Provost; then she sends to *Haliburton* Provost of *Dundee*, to apprehend *Mefan*, and send him to her, but he conveys him away out of danger; she commands that the next Easter should be kept after the Roman manner, but this her command was generally slighted; wherefore in a rage she summons to *Sterling* all the Ministers of Scotland, who at the day appointed came with multitudes of their own side to guard them, so that the Regent was afraid, and dismissed them without acting any thing against them, save



*An. Christi.* save only that the proscribed such as had not appeared there, as contumacious. At this time *Knox* is Preacher at *Perth*, who with his knocking tongue beat down the quires and chancels of Cathedrals, with the religious houses, beginning first at *Perth*, where the mad multitude in a few dayes destroy the buildings of the *Franciscans*, *Dominicans*, and *Carthusians*; The like fury was seen in *Cuper of Fife*, and afterward like a Gangrene it crept into other places. This so highly incensed the Regent, that being assisted by the Earls of *Argile* and *Athol*, with the *French*, he suddenly raised an Army against *Perth*: The Lords of the Reformation with seven thousand repair thither to defend the Town; but by the mediation of friends, a peace is made without shedding of blood, and the Regent upon the disbanding of her Army is permitted to enter and stay in the Town with her ordinary attendance during pleasure, but the *French* are not permitted to come within three miles of the place: But after the Regent had been there three dayes, she banisheth divers of the Townsmen, and divers of them she plunders, and changeth all the officers of the Town; and then having left a garrison of *Scots* there, she goeth to *Sterlin*. This much incensed the people against her; wherefore they assemble in great numbers, being countenanced by some Lords, and fell upon *S. Andrews* and other Towns, spoiling all the Religious houses, so that the Archbishop with his guard were forced to flee: whereupon the Regent in a rage commands all the *French* and *Scots* of her side to be in arms at the sounding of the trumpet; about three thousand *Scots* and *French* repaire to her, but the number of her enemies was far greater; wherefore she sends to make peace with them, which they refuse, because she did not use to keep promise with hereticks, and they knew also that she laboured to gain time, whereby she might have forraign aid; yet some hopes appeared, if she would dismiss her garrison at *Perth*, and suffer the Town to enjoy her old liberties, which she refused to do; wherefore the Protestant army from *Cuper* besiegeth *Perth*, which shortly after is surrendered to them, and *Ruven* is restored to his Provostship; then they march to the town of *Scorne*, which they burn, for murdering a Protestant against their promise; after this they seise upon *Sterlin*, understanding that the Regent was sending thither a French garrison, and there they pull down the Monastery, thence they march towards *Edinburgh*, which put such a terror in the *French* and *Scots* Catholics, that they flee to *Dunbar*; the Protestant Lords in the interim set up preaching Ministers every where.

1559. Mean while news came of the death of king *Henry of France*, which made the *Scots* secure, and the Queen doubtful lest she and her *French* should be expelled the kingdom: but hearing that most of the *Scots* army was disbanded, she hasteneth with her forces to *Edinburgh*, where being met with Duke *Hamilton*, and *Douglasse Earle of Morton*, they obtain a truce for some moneths, in which it was agreed, That no man should be forced against his conscience to any ceremonies, That Priests should not be debarred of their Tythes and other duties, That no garrison should be left in *Edinburgh*, That no religious houses be demolished or converted to other uses, That the Mint and Palace with all the Royal furniture be restored to the Regent. These things being agreed upon, the Regent causeth strange reports to be spread abroad, that the *Scots* Protestants made religion a pretence of their rebellion, and that *James* the late Kings bastard strove by undermining the lawful heire to usurp the Crown: letters also are sent to him from king *Francis* and Queen *Mary*, complaining of his ingratitude and defection, to which he answers by pleading for his own innocencie and conscience. In the mean time a thousand *French* mercenaries land in *Leith*; the Earle of *Arran* also fled out of *France* and came home, being threatned with death by the *Guises* for promoting the Protestant cause in *France*; He perswades his father *James Hamilton*, lately Regent of *Scotland*, to joyn with the Protestant party, who now were preparing to besiege the *French* in *Leith*, to whose relief the *French* king sends two thousand men;

*An. Christi.* men; the Bishop of *Amiens* also with three *Sorbon* Doctors are sent to dispute if need were; the Regent upon their coming was so lifted up, that she vowed to be revenged on the Kings and Churches enemies, therefore divers of the Lords are summoned to appear, who refuse to come, because they saw the Regent and the *French* were bent to enslave the kingdom, by fortifying *Leith*, and filling it with garrisons of strangers; to these she sends a Herald of Arms, shewing that her whole aim was to maintain the ancient Religion, and to keep the kingdom in quietness, not for her self, but for her daughter that was the sole lawful heire; therefore she commands them to lay down Arms, and appear to their summons, or else they must be proclaimed Rebels: the Lords return this answer, That by reason the Regent aimed wholly at the destruction of the kingdom and Protestant Religion, therefore they forbid her to exercise her power any more, but to depart from *Leith* with the Ambassador, *Sorbons* and garrison, or else they must force her, which they are loth to do, by reason of the league between *Scotland* and *France*, and the nearness of blood between her and their Queen.

Presently upon this it is ordered, that the Queen-Regents power and authority was void, that the Embassie from her daughter and son-in-law was of no validity, and withall an Herald is sent to *Leith* to command all the *Scots* there to depart within four and twenty hours, after this some light skirmishes there were; in the interim the Regent by fair promises inticeth divers of the Lords to her side, and for want of pay the Protestant souldiers mutiny, which much advanced the Regents cause, who had secret intelligence of all their consultations; besides the Duke of *Cassellero* was fearful and wavering to help these evils, chiefly to content the souldiers, they send into *England*. To borrow a sum of money, for they could not supply so great a sum of themselves, nor could they coin their plate, because they had not the command of the Mint; but *Cockburn* who was sent to bring money out of *England*, is apprehended by *Bothwell*, and brought to the Regent with his money; the Earle of *Arran* and *James Stewart* thought to have rescued *Cockburn*, but were prevented by *Bothwell*. The Provost of *Dundee*, with his Trained-bands of foot, and some mercenaries, as they were marching towards *Leith*, were driven back by the *French* horse in great disorder; so that many who seemed to be Protestants, slide back again to Popery; *Arran* and *Stewart*, with some forces brake out of *Edinburgh* upon the *French* very rashly, by whom they were defeated, and forced to forsake the City, which they did in the night-time; and the next day came to *Sterling*, where *Knox* encouraged them to perseverance.

The Protestants perceiving the *French* side increase daily, resolve to send to the Queen of *England* for aid, shewing her the danger that might redound to *England*, if the *French* should have the command of *Scotland*: hereupon supplies are promised; mean while some part of the Protestant forces stay at *Glasgow*, and the rest march into *Fife*; the *French* before the English came fall upon those in *Fife*; plundering and wasting all the Protestant Towns, houses & villages in their way. The Protestant forces assemble at the Town of *Disert*, and for twenty dayes together have light skirmishes with the *French*, and lying in ambush apprehended about a hundred Savoyans, half of which they killed with their Captain, the remainder they send prisoners to *Dundee*; in the interim a league at *Berwick* is made between the English and them on these Articles, That they should help each other against any strangers in either Kingdom; That Queen *Elizabeth* should pay both the *Scots* souldiers in *England*, and the English in *Scotland*; That the booties should be permitted to the English, but the Towns and Castles to their right owner; and upon this the *Scots* were to give Hostages.

An. Christi.

## CHAP. XXXI.

The continuation of the English History under King Edward the 6. and Queen Mary, from the year 1546. till 1558.

1546.

TO King Henry succeeded his son King Edward the 6. over whose minority and Kingdome, his uncle Edward Lord Seymour, Earl of Hereford and Duke of Somerset is made Protector: He began his Reign with altering of Religion; Mean while the Protector not obtaining the promised marriage for King Edward, marcheth in person with a great Army to Scotland, and sends about by sea a strong fleet; the Regent of Scotland, caused the Red or Fire-crosse to be set up, a custome used in times of sudden danger, thither all from sixteen to sixty must repair; the place of Rendezvous is Musselburgh, there the two Armies meet, divers skirmishes before the battel, some killed and taken prisoners on both sides; the Earl of Huntley, to avoid effusion of blood, sends a challenge to the English Protector either to fight man to man singly, or ten to ten, or twenty to twenty; this demand was denied and a battel is fought, in which the Scots first encounter was so furious, that the English horse were forced back, and in retiring bare down a part of their own foot-men, and the English Standard was like to be carried away; divers English Captains were slain, and the Lord Grey hurt; the Scots hoping too much to a deceiverable victory, and being too courageously forward disfranked themselves for haste, and fell upon the disbanded English, who being brought again into array, pressed hard upon the enemy, who for want of shot, confusedly retired to the main body, which thinking the day had been lost, turned their backs and fled, the chase was followed almost five miles, divers men of quality were slain, besides ten thousand commons souldiers, and a thousand taken prisoners.

The Protector upon his return, calls a Parliament at London, in which all Chantries, Colledges, and free Chappels are given to the King. The six Articles were repealed, and some other Statutes against heretical Tenents; Injunctions are sent forth to pull down all Images in Churches, beginning at St. Pauls in London, which caused great stirs, chiefly in Devonshire and Cornwall, where one of the Commissioners were stabbed, and a great insurrection against the King is hatched; ten thousand take Arms, and besiege Exeter, which was in such distresse, that the Townsmen fed upon bran and horse-flesh, for this loyalty the Cities Charters were confirmed, their liberties enlarged, and the Mannor of Exilend bestowed on them; the Rebels mean while spoil the Country, of which at last growing weary, and not finding the aid they looked for, sent their Articles of peace to the King: 1. That Baptisme be administered in all times of need. 2. That children be Bishoped or Confirmed. 3. That the Lords body be consecrated and reserved in Churches, and Masse celebrated as before. 4. That holy-bread and holy-water be used. 5. That the Priests sing or say Masse in the Quire of the Parish-Churches. 6. That Priests live chaste without marriage. 7. That the six Articles of King Henry the 8. be used. The King upon this sends them a general pardon, blaming them for their presumption and folly, shewing them that their demands were not to be granted, and that if they did not submit, they should feel the dint of his sword; notwithstanding all this, they persist in their rebellion till Sir John Russell, Lord Privy-seal, was sent with some forces against them, with whom he encounters near Honiton; a cruel fight was maintained by the Cornish till their hearts failing them, they began to give back and flies, the Royalists disorderly fall to the spoil, which the Cornish perceiving, suddenly returned, and gave a new onset, a cruel encounter followed, three hundred Rebels are killed, and the rest take to their heels.

After

An. Christi.

After this, the Royalists being now a thousand strong, by the addition of an Italian-band intended against Scotland under the Lord Grey of Milton; the Lord Russell marcheth over the Downs to the relief of Exeter; the Rebels encounter with him again, and are again defeated, with the losse of most of their lives; the rest got into the Town of St. Mary Clift, who were aided presently with multitudes of people, carrying into the field the Crucifix under a Canopy; another battel is fought wherein the Rebels are utterly defeated and slain, their chiefe Captains are taken and executed by Marshal-law; Boyen the Maior of Bodmin in Cornwall was commanded by the Provost-marshal to set up a paire of Gallows; on which he was immediately hanged himselfe, the Millers man also who called himselfe by his Masters name was hanged upon the next Tree, being told by the said Knight that he could never do his Master better service then to hang for him: At the same time also there were great troubles in divers places about laying open of Inclosures, which the poor people began to put in practice themselves, presuming upon the Kings Commission; but the greatest commotion was in Norfolk raised by John Flowerdew, and Robert Ket, casting down one anothers fences and hedges: At last this Ket is made Captain of this commotion, to him multitudes flock, the High-Sheriffe made Proclamation for them to depart; but had not his horse been the swifter, he had been killed by them; they make Monshold the place of their Rendezvous, their behaviour was very barbarous even to all their friends, for Sir Roger Woodhouse for his kindnesse in bringing them two carts laden with beer and victuals, loseth both his horses and apparel, and almost his life, having his body abused and cast in prison; to these the scum both of Norfolk and Suffolk assembled, who by ringing of bells, and firing of Beacons set all in an uproar, they forced divers good subjects to dance after their pipe; in the Kings name they gave out warrants to apprehend and imprison whom they pleased, their number now was increased to sixteen thousand; Ket the Tanner sits as supreme Judge in an old Tree, which hee called the Oake of Reformation, from thence hee delivered his oracles.

These men were now so high, that they scorned the Kings pardon, which by an Herauld at Arms was proclaimed to them; they batter the walls of Norwich, and enter into it, seising upon all the provision and munitions, imprisoning the Maior and other Citizens; thither Par Marqueesse of Northampton is sent by the King with one thousand five hundred horse, to whom presently the Magistrates surrendered the Cities Sword, and so he enters; the Rebels that same night assaulted it with the losse of three hundred of them, the next day they enter the Town and began a bloody fight, in which the Lord Sheffeld was cruelly slain, having fallen from his horse, and the Marqueesse forced to forsake the City; Sir Thomas Cornwallis is taken prisoner, and at last the Town is ransacked and set on fire by the Rebels: After this the Lord Dudley is made General against them, who shewing himselfe upon the Plain before Norwich, sent againe the Kings pardon, which is rejected, wherefore he plants his Ordnance against Saint Stevens Gate, which being forced open, the Earle of Warwick enters, and in the Market place, with small resistance, executes threescore Rebels by Marshal-law; but they seized on the Earls powder and shot, and conveyed it to their Camp, they manned the streets and kill many Royalists, but at length are forced backe to Monshold, against which place Warwick planted his Ordnance, but the Rebels fell with such violence upon his forces, that they gave back, leaving the Artillery to the Rebels.

The Earl being over-mastered, was advised by some to be gone, but he drawing his sword, caused his friends to do the like, who with a mutual kisse

A a a 2

confirmed

The continuation of the English History under King Edward the 6. and Queen Mary, from the year 1546. till 1558.

1546.

**T**O King Henry succeeded his son King Edward the 6. over whose minority and Kingdome, his uncle Edward Lord Seymour, Earl of Hereford and Duke of Sommerfet is made Protector: He began his Reign with altering of Religion; Mean while the Protector not obtaining the promised marriage for King Edward, marcheth in person with a great Army to Scotland, and sends about by sea a strong fleet; the Regent of Scotland, caused the Red or Fire-crosse to be set up, a custome used in times of sudden danger, thither all from sixteen to sixty must repair; the place of Rendezvous is Musselburgh, there the two Armies meet, divers skirmishes before the battel, some killed and taken prisoners on both sides; the Earl of Huntley, to avoid effusion of blood, sends a challenge to the English Protector either to fight man to man singly, or ten to ten, or twenty to twenty; this demand was denied and a battel is fought, in which the Scots first encounter was so furious, that the English horse were forced back, and in retiring bare down a part of their own foot-men, and the English Standard was like to be carried away; divers English Captains were slain, and the Lord Grey hurt; the Scots hoping too much to a deceivable victory, and being too courageously forward disfranked themselves for haste, and fell upon the disbanded English, who being brought again into array, pressed hard upon the enemy, who for want of shot, confusedly retired to the main body, which thinking the day had been lost, turned their backs and fled, the chase was followed almost five miles, divers men of quality were slain, besides ten thousand commons souldiers, and a thousand taken prisoners.

The Protector upon his return, calls a Parliament at London, in which all Chuntries, Colledges, and free Chappels are given to the King. The six Articles were repealed, and some other Statutes against heretical Tenents; Injunctions are sent forth to pull down all Images in Churches, beginning at St. Pauls in London, which caused great stirs, chiefly in Devonshire and Cornwall, where one of the Commissioners were stabbed, and a great insurrection against the King is hatched; ten thousand take Arms, and besiege Exeter, which was in such distresse, that the Townsmen fed upon bran and horse-flesh, for this loyalty the Cities Charters were confirmed, their liberties enlarged, and the Mannor of Exilend bestowed on them; the Rebels mean while spoil the Country, of which at last growing weary, and not finding the aid they looked for, sent their Articles of peace to the King: 1. That Baptisme be administered in all times of need. 2. That children be Bishoped or Confirmed. 3. That the Lords body be consecrated and reserved in Churches, and Masse celebrated as before. 4. That holy-bread and holy-water be used. 5. That the Priests sing or say Masse in the Quire of the Parish-Churches. 6. That Priests live chaste without marriage. 7. That the six Articles of King Henry the 8. be used. The King upon this sends them a general pardon, blaming them for their presumption and folly, shewing them that their demands were not to be granted, and that if they did not submit, they should feel the dint of his sword; notwithstanding all this, they persist in their rebellion till Sir John Russel, Lord Privy-seal, was sent with some forces against them, with whom he encounters near Honiton; a cruel fight was maintained by the Cornish till their hearts failing them, they began to give back and flie; the Royalists disorderly fall to the spoil, which the Cornish perceiving, suddenly returned, and gave a new onset, a cruel encounter followed, three hundred Rebels are killed, and the rest take to their heels.

After

After this, the Royalists being now a thousand strong, by the addition of an Italian-band intended against Scotland under the Lord Grey of Milton; the Lord Russel marcheth over the Downs to the relief of Exeter; the Rebels encounter with him again, and are again defeated, with the losse of most of their lives; the rest got into the Town of St. Mary Clift, who were aided presently with multitudes of people, carrying into the field the Crucifix under a Canopy; another battel is fought wherein the Rebels are utterly defeated and slain, their chiefe Captains are taken and executed by Marshal-law; Boyen the Maior of Bodmin in Cornwall was commanded by the Provost-marshal to set up a paire of Gallows; on which he was immediately hanged himselfe, the Millers man also who called himselfe by his Masters name was hanged upon the next Tree, being told by the said Knight that he could never do his Master better service then to hang for him: At the same time also there were great troubles in divers places about laying open of Inclosures, which the poor people began to put in practice themselves, presuming upon the Kings Commission; but the greatest commotion was in Norfolk raised by John Flowerdew, and Robert Ket, casting down one anothers fences and hedges: At last this Ket is made Captain of this commotion, to him multitudes flock, the High-Sheriffe made Proclamation for them to depart; but had not his horse been the swifter, he had been killed by them; they make Monshold the place of their Rendezvous, their behaviour was very barbarous even to all their friends, for Sir Roger Woodhouse for his kindnesse in bringing them two carts laden with beer and victuals, loseth both his horses and apparel, and almost his life, having his body abused and cast in prison; to these the scum both of Norfolk and Suffolk assembled, who by ringing of bells, and firing of Beacons set all in an uproar, they forced divers good subjects to dance after their pipes, in the Kings name they gave out warrants to apprehend and imprison whom they pleased, their number now was increased to sixteen thousand; Ket the Tanner sits as supreme Judge in an old Tree, which hee called the Oake of Reformation, from thence hee delivered his oracles.

These men were now so high, that they scorned the Kings pardon, which by an Herald at Arms was proclaimed to them; they batter the walls of Norwich, and enter into it, seising upon all the provision and munitions, imprisoning the Maior and other Citizens; thither Par Marquess of Northampton is sent by the King with one thousand five hundred horse, to whom presently the Magistrates surrendered the Cities Sword, and so he enters; the Rebels that same night assaulted it with the losse of three hundred of them, the next day they enter the Town and began a bloody fight, in which the Lord Sheffeld was cruelly slain, having fallen from his horse, and the Marquess forced to forsake the City; Sir Thomas Cornwallis is taken prisoner, and at last the Town is ransacked and set on fire by the Rebels: After this the Lord Dudley is made General against them, who shewing himselfe upon the Plain before Norwich, sent againe the Kings pardon, which is rejected, wherefore he plants his Ordnance against Saint Stevens Gate, which being forced open, the Earle of Warwick enters, and in the Market place, with small resistance, executes threescore Rebels by Marshal-law; but they seised on the Earls powder and shot, and conveyed it to their Camp, they manned the streets and kill many Royalists, but at length are forced backe to Monshold, against which place Warwick planted his Ordnance, but the Rebels fell with such violence upon his forces, that they gave back, leaving the Artillery to the Rebels.

The Earl being over-mastered, was advised by some to be gone, but he drawing his sword, caused his friends to do the like, who with a mutual kisse confirmed

A a a 2

An.Christi.

confirmed their courage and resolutions; then they stop all provisions from the Rebels, but they arose thence and entrenched themselves in the valley called *Duffindale*, upon a vain prophesie that [*Hob, Dick, and Hick*] that is, the Rusticks with their clubs should fill that valley with dead bodies; the next day the Lord General prepares to fight, having received a supply of one thousand and four hundred Lances, but first sends a pardon which they reject again; the Rebels place all their prisoners coupled in irons in the fore-rank of their Army, and with a shot struck the Kings Standard-bearer in the thigh, whereupon the Earl dischargeth his whole Artillery upon them, and so opened their battel that most of the captive Gentlemen escaped; the Royalists fought so stoutly, that the Rebels gave back and fled, the fore-most of which was their Captain *Ket*; the chase continued three miles, with the slaughter of three thousand five hundred Rebels, some resolute men staid to keep the Ordnance, to whom the General proffers a pardon, which they refuse, chusing rather to die like men than to be hanged up like dogs, as was intended; the General sends again that he would come in person and confirm the pardon if they made any doubt thereof, which he did accordingly, and so they flung down their Arms and prayed for the King.

Captain *Ket* the next day hid himself in a barn, and was betrayed by two of his servants, then with two hundred horse was conveyed to *Norwich*, nine chief Rebels are hanged upon the Oak of Reformation; *William Ket* the younger brother was hanged upon an high steeple, and *Robert Ket* the Arch-rebel in chains upon the Castle of *Norwich*; the Townsmen solemnised yearly the day of their delivery. The North also was not a little troubled about Religion, divers parts of *Tork-shire* standing up for the old Faith, the flame brake out first at *Seimer* in the North-riding, the Beacons are fired, and multitudes flock together, who first murdered *White* a Gentleman, with some others, whose naked body they left upon the Wold before *Seimer*, then they carried many prisoners away, and being now increased to three thousand began to grow formidable; but when the Kings pardon came, *Ombler* a yeoman, and *Dale* a Parish-clerk, the chief King-leaders, were forsaken by the multitude, and shortly after with some others were executed at *Tork*.

Not onely is the Country disquieted, but the Court also by the Kings two uncles Queen *Janes* brothers, to wit, *Edward* Duke of *Sommerfet* the elder, and Protector of the Kings person and Kingdom; and *Thomas* Lord *Seymour* the younger, Admiral, who married *Katherine* Par King *Henries* last wife: the striving for precedencie with the Protectors Dutcheffe, raised such a Tragedy, that Lord *Thomas* is accused, attainted and condemned of Treason, and under his brothers hand-writing, beheaded on the Tower-hill for purposing to destroy the King, and to translate the Crown to himself: shortly after this seventeen Counsellors, and many Lords accuse the Protector of ambition, misgovernment, pride, sedition, and divers treasons, for which they desire the Londoners help to remove the King from him; the Protectors party on the other side, desire the Londoners aid against these mutinous Lords: in their assembly the Citizens were divided, till the Recorder stood up, and told them what danger it might be to act any thing against the King, as the Londoners once did by aiding the Barons against King *Henry* the 3. for which they lost their priviledges, therefore he adviseth them to petition the King that complaints may be heard against the Protector; whereupon the King is sent to, the Protector commanded from his presence and sent to the Tower, where he is accused by the Kings Counsellors for acting without the assent of the last Kings Executors, for subverting Laws, and stopping of Justice, for releasing divers traitors and murderers out of prison, for making Captains under his own seal, for communicating alone with foreign Ambassadors about matters of State, for threatening the Privy-counsellors who dissented in any thing from

An.Christi.

from him; for erecting a Court of Requests in his own house; for selling of Offices, Bishopricks and some of the Kings lands without consent; for commanding multiplication by *Almonistry*, to the abuse of the Kings Coyn; for setting forth Proclamations against inclosures, causing thereby divers insurrections; for giving Commissions against law, concerning Commons, High-ways, and Cottages; for not suppressing the Rebels, and for encouraging divers of them; and for setting forth Proclamations in favour of them; for neglecting the Forts of *New-haven* and *Blacknesse*; for sowing discord among the Lords, and incensing the king against them; and lastly, for accusing the Lords of high-treason, because they consulted how to have these abuses reformed.

The protector notwithstanding these accusations, is by the king set at liberty, though not restored to his former dignity, and so he remained untouched two years; Mean while the Lord *Grey* was not idle in *Scotland*, but took in some forts; before him one *Newton* and *Hamilton* fought a duel, accusing each other for some opprobrious words uttered against king *Edward*, *Hamilton* is slain, and *Newton* rewarded with a gold Chain and the Lord *Grey's* Gown: But not long after, the English by the Scots and French are totally driven out of *Scotland*, and all the Forts retaken by them. The French also attempt to surprise *Bulloignebergh*, but were prevented by one *Carar* an English souldier, who discovered the plot; many of the French were slain in the attempt, so that fifteen waggons went away laden with dead bodies: after this they attempt the Isles of *Jersey* and *Gernsey*, but were repulsed with the loss of one thousand of their men, which made them ashamed to divulge this expedition. But not long after, the French obtain by surrender, *Hamiltounne*, *Blacknesse*, *Bulloignebergh*, and *Bulloigne* it self. About this time the sweating sicknesse raged fiercely in *England*, and on the English onely beyond seas, which made them to be shunned in all places.

The Duke of *Sommerfet* is now again apprehended, after he had married his eldest son the Lord *Lise* to the Earl of *Warwicks* daughter, which Earl had been his greatest enemy; who now by *Sommerfets* means is made Duke of *Northumberland*; but is accused notwithstanding by *Warwick* and the other Counsellors, for wearing a coat of defence under his garment at the Counsel-Table, as if he intended the death of some Counsellour; wherefore he is attached, and sent to the Tower, with the Lord *Grey* of *Milton* and some others; and the next day the Dutcheff of *Sommerfet* is committed, all upon suspicion of Treason: The Duke was indicted of treason and felony; but having put himself upon his Peers, is cleared of the treason, but not of the felony; for which he is condemned to die; therefore is sent back to the Tower, where he kept a sad Christmasse: the 22 of February after, he was brought to the Scaffold upon the Tower-hill, where he acknowledged how willing and ready he was to dye, and to pay that debt, which God might on a sudden have exacted from him: Upon this a great tumult arose among the spectators, upon the coming in of the Hamblets to guard the Tower-hill, some supposing they were come to rescue the Duke, which was no sooner quitted; but another ensued upon Sir *Anthony Browns* riding towards the Scaffold; the people thinking a Pardon had been come, for which they were glad; but the Duke desired them to be quiet, that he might die without trouble; and praying for the prosperity of the King and his Council, laid down his head to the Axe.

The king takes the Dukes death so much to heart, that he fell into a Consumption; Mean while, to alter the succession of the Crown, three marriages are solemnized in one day: betwixt *Dudley Northumberland's* fourth son, and *Jane*, *Suffolks* eldest daughter, the other was betwixt *Herbert*, *Pembroks* heire, and *Catherine*, *Suffolks* youngest daughter; the third between *Hastings*, *Huntingtons* heir, and *Catherine*, *Northumberland's* youngest daughter. *Jane* the eldest daughter of *Suffolk* was thought fittest for the Crown, to whom king *Edward*

*An. Christi.* Edward left it by his Will, being perswaded thereto by those who would have disinherited Mary and Elizabeth. This was subscribed by the Kings Council, the Lords, the Bishops, and Judges; onely Sir James Hales Justice of the Common-Pleas would not subscribe; shortly upon this the king died. He was a Prince, though young, yet of great hopes and parts; much inclined to mercy, so that he could hardly be induced to set his hand to the Warrant of Joan Butchers execution, a notable Heretick, till he was urged thereto by Crammer his God-father, and Archbishop of Canterbury; He was very zealous for the Protestant Religion, so that he could not be moved by Charls the Emperour, to give way that the Lady Mary should have Masse said in her house, but wept when he was urged to it; and wrote a passionate letter to his sister, dissuading her to continue in her Catholick resolution. Upon a Sermon which Dr. Ridley preached before him, concerning mercy to be shewed by rich men to the poore, he was so touched in conscience, that he conferred after dinner with the Doctor of some way, whereby he might doe most good to the poore; the Doctor adviseth him to take directions from London: The king upon this writes to the Lord Major about this businesse, and sends his letter by Bishop Ridley, who having conferred with the Major and his Brethren, returns to the King with the Cities advice: Hereupon, he gives to them St. Bartholmews Hospital by Smithfield, and the Gray-Friers Church neer to it, with all its revenews; also his house of Bridewell (new built by king Henry for the reception of the Emperour) to be a House of Correction for idle and dissolute persons: He gave also the Hospital of Saint Thomas in Southwark, with seven hundred Marks by year out of the rents of the Hospital of Saint John Baptist or the Savoy, with bedding and other furniture; other charitable works he also did, and then died at Greenwich the seventeenth year of his Age, and the seventh year of his Reign; and lieth buried at Westminster, neer Henry the seventh.

1553.

To him succeeded his sister Queen Mary; but the Statésmen concealed his death two dayes, intending Jane should succeed, as being more firm to Protestantisme then Mary; for this cause the Counsel sends for the Major of London, six Aldermen and twelve Commoners, who all swear for the Lady Jane: But the Lady Mary hearing of this news, writes to the Lords, accusing them for concealing her brothers death; for neglecting her who was next heire to the Crown, ordained by act of Parliament, and her fathers testament; therefore wills them to Proclaim her Queen in London, and other towns: To these letters the Lords made answer, that according to the last Kings Will, Jane daughter to Henry Duke of Suffolk should succeed to the Crown; they also put her in minde of her mothers Divorce, and her own illegitimation; therefore they wish her to desist from any such claime: this letter was subscribed, by the Archbishop, the Chancellour, and divers Lords. The Lady Mary upon reception of this letter removes to Frensham Castle, to whom the Suffolk-men resorted first, hoping she would establish Protestantisme: The Lords at London Proclaim the kings death, and Queen Jane his successour by his last Will; but at Norwich Queen Mary is proclaimed, and assisted by the Earls of Suffex, Bath, and Oxford, with the Lord Wentworth, and divers others: To encounter these, Queen Jane's father is appointed with an army to repair into Norfolk, which so grieved Queen Jane, that with tears she got him to stay; then was the Duke of Northumberland assigned Lord Lieutenant for Queen Jane, whom his son had married; he fearing the worst, wished the Lords to be carefull of what they went about, and so with six hundred men he marcheth out of London through Shoreditch, the people shewing no signe of joy at all, which the Duke observed.

Mean while the Lord Windsor with others, raise the Commons of Buckingham-shire, and proclaim Queen Mary; the like is done in Oxford-shire, and Northampton-shire; all these made forward towards Norfolk: besides six tall ships, appointed to have taken the Lady Mary if she had fled, being driven by

storms

storms into Tarmouth haven, revolted to Queen Mary; at the report of this, the Lords in the Tower began to be afraid; and their Tenants to deny them any aide; Northumberland still solicited the Lords for more assistance, but little came; Dr. Ridley Bishop of London by command maintains Queen Jane's cause in his sermon at Pauls Crosse, but could not work upon the people; which the Lords perceiving, fell off from the Duke then at Bury, and proclaimed Queen Mary in London: the Duke willing to follow the stream, returns to Cambridge, where being forsaken by most of his souldiers; he proclaims her Queen himself without Trumpet or Herald, and in signe of joy threw up his Cap: yet all were pardoned by her, except this Duke and Sir John Gates Captain of the guard: the Duke was first arrested by a Sergeant at arms, and the next morning by the Earle of Arundel, and thence was conveyed with his three sons, the Earle of Huntington and divers others to the Tower, where also the Lady Jane and her husband Dudley were imprisoned.

At the Queens entrance into the Tower, Thomas Duke of Norfolk was released, who had lain there from the last of Henry the eighth; so was Edward Lord Courtney, whom she makes Earle of Devon-shire, Tunstall Bishop of Durham, and Gardiner of Winchester are released also; Doctor Ridley and some other Protestant Bishops are deposed, Ridley, and Crammer Arch-bishop, are sent to the Tower; so constantly devoted she was to the Catholick Religion; that her brother king Edward could never work upon her; nor any worldly respects alter her resolution: The Duke of Northumberland upon the Scaffold renounces the Protestant Faith, and exhorts the people to the Catholick Religion; yet he was beheaded with Sir John Gates and Sir Thomas Palmer. The Queen is crowned at Westminster by Gardiner Bishop of Winchester, the Lady Jane with her husband are condemned in Guild-hall; she was pittied, because she was in a manner forced to accept the title of Queen; therefore she had the liberty of the Tower, and had been pardoned, but that her father the Duke of Suffolk went about to hinder the Queens marriage, with king Philip of Spain; and to this purpose instigates Leicester-shire and Warwick-shire against the match: Upon this, the Earle of Huntington is sent who takes Coventry, and afterward the Duke, whom his own servant betrayed, and his brother John Lord Grey; the other brother Lord Thomas escaped, but was retaken, and all three sent to the Tower: Lord Gilford Dudley is first beheaded, whose bleeding body was in the sight of his sad Lady brought into the Tower Chappel; who was the next that suffered, and was much lamented for her innocency: Judge Margan that condemned her, fell mad eleven dayes after the Duke of Suffolk was executed on the Tower-hill, and about two moneths after his brother Lord Thomas Grey in the same place suffered.

Gardiner, now Lord Chancellor, sets forth highly the match with Spaine, to the Lords in the Presence Chamber; yet many of them so disliked it, that combinations were made, and arms taken up by Sir Thomas Wyatt of Kent, who at Maidstone published a Proclamation against the Queens match; from thence he goeth to Rochester, and breaks down the Bridge; divers sided with Wyatt and many in Kent were against him, so that the Country is much divided. The Duke of Norfolk is sent to Gravesend with five hundred Londoners to maintain the Queens cause: when the two adverse factions met, a cruel skirmish ensued; but at length the Queens party prevailed, and the other fled; but shortly after, the Duke by his own treacherous party was so betrayed, that he was forced to flie, and leave behind him to Wyatt eight brasse pieces of Ordnance; with these Wyatt assaileth Cowling-Castle, but was resisted by the Lord Cobham: Shortly after, he had a Parly at Dartford with Sir Edward Hastings, Master of the Horse, and Sir Thomas Cornwallis, who demand of him the cause of this Rebellion; he answers, that he feared the Land would be overrun by strangers: Then they desire him to come and communicate the cause before the Queen, which he refused except he might have the custody of the Tower

1554.



*An. Christi.* Tower, and the Queen in it, with power to place and displace the Queens Counsellors; to which *Hastings* replied, That *Wyat* and twenty thousand more should die, before he should have his traitorous demands granted; so they parted, and *Wyat* approacheth with his forces towards *London*, at which both the Court and City were afraid, who all take Arms, even the Lawyers in *Westminster* pleaded in harness. The *Spanish* Ambassadors steal away by water.

Mean while good news came, that the seditious *Carews* and *Gibs* in *Cornwall* were defeated and fled; the Queen comes in state to Guild-hall, where before the Maior, Aldermen, and chief Citizens, she made a speech, declaring her right to the Crown, the unreasonableness of *Wyats* demands, making her marriage a cloak for his pretended purposes against her person and dignity, she also shews her true love to them, and that she will not marry but by their consent, and for their good, therefore she wisheth them to be as careful of her honour and safety, as she will be of their weal and happiness; the Queen having said, returns to the Court, and makes *Herbert* Earl of *Pembroke* her Field-General, and proffers a hundred pound land by the year to him that shall bring *Wyat* dead or alive, who understanding all passages marcheth toward *London* with four thousand men, at whom the White-tower shot but did no hurt; he enters *Southwark* peaceably, the people there joyning with him; *Winchester* house is rifled contrary to his Proclamation.

*Wyat* having got *Southwark*, comes to the Bridge, but finding the gate shut, he planteth his Ordnance against it; the Lord Maior cuts down the draw-bridge, and fortifies the City every where, causing the Ordnance in the Tower to be levelled against the Bridge-foot: much Artillery is planted against *Southwark*, which made the inhabitants with teares to beseech *Wyat* to be gone, who presently marched to *Kingston* upon *Thames*, where finding the bridge broken down, he quickly again repairs it, and so marcheth to *Branford*; the Queens Army takes *S. James* fields; *Wyat* marcheth towards *Charing-crosse*, the Ordnance playing upon each other, but to little purpose; the Lord Chamberlain at *Charing-crosse* made some resistance, but was forced back to the gates of *White-hall*, which were shut, the Court being affrighted with a report that the Lord General was revolted to *Wyat*, who in the interim hasteneth to *Ludgate*, but could not there have any admittance; some of his straglers that had taken into *Westminster*, comming before the Court-gates, shot their arrows into the garden and into the windows, but no hurt was done: At *Charing-crosse* as they were going to joyn with *Wyat*, they are encountred by the Captain of the guard and defeated, twenty of them being slain; *Wyat* returns discontented from *Ludgate*, and is staid at *Temple-bar* by some of the Queens horse, some bickering there was, but upon the counsel of an Herald at Arms, *Wyat* submits to the Queens mercy, who with *Cobham* and some others are carried to the Court, and thence to the Tower; in *London* 50 were hanged for *Wyats* conspiracy, and 400 more led through the City to *Westminster* with halters about their necks, who were all pardoned by the Queen; *Wyat* having acknowledged his offence upon the Scaffold, and exhorted the people to take heed they rise not against the higher powers, submits his neck to the stroke of the Axe.

In *Kent* divers persons were executed for this rebellion; the Lord *Courtney* and Lady *Elizabeth* the Queens sister are suspected as aiders unto *Wyat*, and therefore are sent to the Tower; the Lady *Elizabeth* being sick at *Ashbridge*, is conveyed away by a Troop of horse to the Court, where she was for a fortnight in the nature of a prisoner, none being suffered to visit her but they that kept the door; she was accused by Bishop *Gardiner* and nine more of the Council, that she was privy to *Wyats* conspiracy, and the stir in the West, all which she constantly denied; then they told her she must go to the Tower, at which she was much troubled, desiring the Lords that they would mediate for

for her; but about an houre after her attendants are discharged, except her Gentleman-usher, three Gentlewomen, and two Grooins of his chamber, and withall a strict guard is set over her; the next day she is commanded to the Tower, and her Barge was ready for her; she desires to stay till the next tide, which was denied her; then she intreats so much time as to write a letter to the Queen, one of the two Lords that came to her would not yeeld to her request, but the Earl of *Suffex* granted it, and promised to deliver it with his own hand to the Queen; in the interim the tide was spent, and they durst not trust her to the next tide, which fell out in the night, for fear she might be forcibly taken from the guard; therefore the next day being *Palmsunday*, and the Londoners then all at Church, she is conveyed to her Barge, casting her eyes towards the windows as she passed through the garden, hoping some would pity her; such haste was made to have her away, that they would not stay till the water was level, whereupon as she passed the Arch, the stern of the boat struck against the ground, so that she was forced to step into the water before she could come to the stairs.

When she entred the Tower, she rested her self a while upon a cold stone in the rain, and then was put into a room which was locked and bolted upon her, so with her family she went to prayer; the Lords would have had her been a close prisoner, but the Lord *Suffex* would not yeeld to it; then after two dayes it was commanded she should have Masse in her lodgings: *Winchester* with some others of the Council examined here in the Tower of the talk she had with Sir *James Croft* a prisoner, and of her removing from *Ashbridge* to *Dunnington*-Castle, and of such other frivolous matters, at which the Lord of *Arundel* was offended that she should be vexed thus causelessly: growing sickly in her close prison for want of aire, liberty was given her to walk in the Queens lodgings, and in the garden, all prisoners being inhibited to look that way whilst she was there; she took delight in a little boy that brought her flowers every day, but upon suspicion the boy might convey letters between her and the Lord *Courtney*, he was kept from her; some of her enemies had got a warrant to be signed for her execution, at which Mr. *Bridges* the Lieutenant being troubled, went to the Queen to know her further pleasure therein, who denied she knew of any such warrant, blamed the doers, and gave a contrary command: but shortly after the Constable is discharged, and Sir *Henry Bennisfield* was placed in his room; she was not long after removed from the Tower to *Richmond*, where upon the removal of her servants, and placing of souldiers about her, she thought she should have died that night, but the Lord *Tame* who then attended her, assured her of the contrary.

From *Richmond* she is conveyed to *Woodstock*; the people who wished her well, not being suffered to salute or pray for her; some were put in the stocks for ringing the bells, hoping she had been delivered: when she was at *Woodstock*, it was suspected that some *Russians* had been sent to murder her, but they could not have any access to her; one night (whether accidentally or purposely it was not known) her lodgings took fire, to the great endangering of her person; so comfortlesse was her life to her, that one day seeing a maid milking her kine in the Park, she wished that her self was a milk-maid.

Queen *Mary* shortly after her Coronation called a Parliament at *Westminster*, and a Convocation in *S. Pauls* Church, where she commanded a disputation to be had of some controverted points of Religion; for six dayes disputations were had, but to no purpose, wherefore she by *Bonner* dissolves the Assembly; not long after, *Cranmer*, *Ridley* and *Latimer*, sometime Bishops, were sent to *Oxford* to dispute upon the same points, but these three at the end of the disputation are condemned to die; and were burned as hereticks: at *London* a Rain-bow inverted, and two Suns at once were seen, which were held bad preages of the marriage with *Spain*, much disliked by the people; but the queen gave order that *London* and other places should be informed of the benefits

B b b b

which

*An-Christi.* which would accrue to this Kingdome by that match; the Earl of Bedford and the Lord Fitz-waters were sent into Spain to conduct King Philip, the Lord Admiral with eight and twenty ships secured the seas, Philip with a Navy of 150. sail arrived in England, and lands in Southampton, he was the first of the fleet that landed, all the way as he went he bare his naked sword in his hand; but before he went to his lodging, he betook himself to his devotions in Holy-Roods Church, the like he did at Winchester; the Earl of Arundel Steward of the Queens house presents him with the Garter, and the Maior with the keyes of Southampton; the Queen meets him at Winchester, where these Articles were agreed on: 1. That Philip should be stiled King of England during the Matrimony, but not dispose of any lands or offices. 2. That Mary should be Queen of the dominions of Spain. 3. That her dowry should be yearly sixty thousand pounds Flemish. 4. That their issue male or female should succeed according to the Laws. 5. That if Charles the Infant of Spain died issuelesse, then the eldest son of this Matrimony should succeed in all the dominions of Charles the Emperor. 6. That the dominions of the Low-countries and Burgundy should be excluded from the said Charles his issue if they remained, and should be enjoyed by the eldest born of this marriage, without further claim to any other dominions of Spain. 7. That the eldest female of this marriage, for want of male, should possesse these dominions, provided she marry a Nobleman either of Belgium or of England. 8. That the eldest daughter of King Philip and queen Mary should succeed to the Realms of England, Spain and Belgium. 9. That these severall dominions be governed by their Natives. 10. That a firm peace be concluded betwixt these Nations for ever.

Besides these generals, the King articles, That he will bestow no English preferments on strangers, That his Court shall be replenished with natives of the land; That he shall not violate any priviledges of England; That he shall not carry the Queen out of her Kingdome without her consent, nor her children, but by the assent of the Lords; That if he die issuelesse, the succession shall come to the next heirs; That he suffer not to be carried away the Jewels of the Crown, neither guns, nor any furniture of war; And lastly, That he shall not entangle England with the wars of his father, and the French King. Things thus ordered, the marriage is solemnized at Winchester on St. James day, where Cæsars Ambassadors pronounced, That their Master in consideration of this marriage had given to his son Philip the Kingdomes of Naples and Jerusalem; whereupon their titles were there solemnly proclaimed; then they went from the Church, having two swords carried before them. So discontented were some Protestants at this match, and advancement of the Roman faith, that one Bourn preaching at Pauls-crosse, had a dagger thrown at him, which caused the Crosse the next Sunday to be guarded by the Queens guard; The next year Dr. Pendleton had a gun shot at him; A maid was taught to speak in a wall, as if it had been an Angel, against the Queen, the Prince of Spain, and the Masse; a Cat was hanged on a gallows in Cheap; her head shorn, and wearing a vesture like a Cope, and many other abuses were offered, which made the Queen and Bishops even after jealous of the Londoners.

Queen Mary, to be better directed in matters of Religion, sends for her kinsman Cardinal Pool, the son of Margaret Countesse of Salisbury, the onely daughter of George Duke of Clarence, King Edward the 4. second brother, he had been bred in Oxford, and made Dean of Exeter by K. Henry, at 50 Padua he studied seven years, where understanding the King had cast off the Pope, refused to return into England, wherefore he is proclaimed Traitor and his Denary taken from him, to recompence which losse, the Pope made him a Cardinal; he did sollicite foreign Princes against King Henry, for which he not being able to be revenged on Pool, wracks his anger on his mother, being now eighty years old, whom he caused to lose her head; then he was made Legate of

*An-Christi.* of Viterbion, and is appointed by Pope Paul the third to be one of his Vicegerents in the Council of Trent; he was afterwards chosen Pope, but being accused by Cardinal Caraffa, as a favourer of Protestants, he cleared himself, and was chosen again; but he not being nimble enough to strike the Iron while it was hot, the Cardinal de Monte, afterward Julius the third, steps between him and the Papal-chaire, who caused Caraffa to ask Poole forgiveness; then Poole retires to Verona, where in the Monastery of Saint Bennet, of which order he was both Professor and Patron, he resides a while.

Shortly after this, Queen Mary sends for him into England, for she had been bred under the Countesse his mother, and he was also of the blood royal; which put him in some hopes he might change his Hat for a Crown: But Cæsar mistrusting his intent, kept him back, till the match was concluded between his son and Queen Mary. Caraffa being now Pope, sends Friar Peto to discharge Poole of his Legative power, which much incensed the Queen; so that she forbids Peto to enter the land, till the Pope and Poole were reconciled: The queen caused all the acts made by king Henry against Poole to be repealed, and the house of Parliament upon their petition to him is absolved, and received again into the bosome of the Church: All the ancient Ceremonies of the Church are restored again, and all Church-livings that had been assumed to the Crown; The queen affirming, that she preferred her souls happinesse to ten kingdoms.

Though queen Mary was pious and zealous in her Religion, yet many barbarous cruelties were by her Officers exercised on Protestants, her power in this case being much abused; so that five Bishops, one and twenty Divines, eight Gentlemen, eighty four Artificers, besides many others, even women and children, were cruelly put to death; many were forced to fly the land, amongst whom was Catherine Dutchesse of Suffolk, who had married Richard Bartie Esquire, these were persecuted by Bishop Gardiner, because she had persecuted him and other Papists in king Edwards dayes; she was forced to go disguised on ship-board, with her young daughter, her husband being gone away before: she suffered much by storms at sea; and more by want, persecution, and cold on the land, in these places of Belgium and Germany where she travelled; till she was relieved with her husband and childe, by Pernsel a Minister in Wiesel: After this, they endured much more hardship, till they got into Poland, where they staid till queen Maries death.

Queen Mary being supposed to be with childe, caused Te Deum to be sung, and solemn prayers made for her safe delivery; in hope of which, Mid-wives, Rockers, and all things else were provided. An act was made, that king Philip should be Protector of her issue and realm; but yet king Philip had no great confidence that his queen was with childe, nor durst he trust the English, or think that they could be kind to strangers, who were so cruel to their own Princes, for he found that the Lord Paget and some others had consulted to cut off the Lady Elizabeths head; therefore in compassion to her, he never gave off, till he got the queen to set her at liberty; so she is brought to Hampton Court, where after fourteen daies she was admitted into the queens chamber; there falling on her knee, she prayed for her, and declared her loyalty to her Majesty, which the queen questioned, and checked her for not acknowledging her offence; but she still pleaded for her own innocency: seven daies after the Lady was discharged of Bencefield her Jailour, her maids are sent to the Tower; and Gardiner died shortly after. About this time, one Fetherstone a Millers son gave out, that he was king Edward 6. but being taken at Eltham in Kent, he was brought to Hampton Court; where being found by his simple answers little better then frantick, is sent to the Marshalsea; and from thence with a paper-crown on his head to Westminster, and from thence whipped to Smith-field, and then banished into the North: but the next year falling into the same madnesse, is apprehended, condemned of treason and hanged at Tyburnt.

An. Christi.

1555.

1557.

The time of Queen *Maries* deliverance being come, it was given out that a Prince was born, which caused great joy and triumph, both in *London* and *Antwerp*; but all this came to nothing, for she was never with child: Hereupon King *Philip*, in anger, went over the Seas, pretending to visit his father, and to take possession of *Belgium*, where he staid one year and a half, to Queen *Maries* great grief; who met him on the way as he returned, and brought him with great pomp through *London*. In his absence, some plotted to rob the Queens Exchequer at *Westminster*, to raise war in the land; but the plot was discovered, and the plotters executed. One *Clebecka* School-master, read publicly a traitorous Proclamation against the Queen, perswading the people to take arms. *Thomas Stafford* dispersed slanderous books against the Queen, and by stealth took the Castle of *Scarborough*, incensing the people against her; but he was suppressed by *Thomas Piercy* Earl of *Northumberland*, and sent to *London*, where he was beheaded. About this time, *Charles Cesar* called his son *Philip* into *Brussels*, where he resigns to him all his dominions, counselling him to entertain peace with the French, for the general good of Christendom; a peace for five years was made, but held not long; for the Pope being then besieged by Duke *Alva* at *Rome*, sends to the French for aide, who by the *Guise* made his way open into *Rome*; but the French falling away for want of pay, the Pope renounced his amity with *France*, and entertains it with *Spain*. Queen *Mary* to shew her love both to the Pope and king *Philip*, falls out with *France*, pretending divers wrongs from thence; so she sends a Defiance unto King *Henry* of *France*, and proclaims wars against him in *London*, contrary to her promise and articles. King *Philip* passeth over to *Flanders*, after whom the Queen sends one thousand horse, four thousand foot, and two thousand pioniers under the Earl of *Pembroke* as General, these joyned with king *Philip*, whilst the Dukes of *Savoy* and *Brunswick*, with some Lords, had invaded the French confines, and besieged *St. Quintins*; which *Montmorancy* Constable of *France* came with great forces to relieve; but he so miscarried, that he was hurt, and taken prisoner with eight Knights of the order: Shortly 30 after *St. Quintus* is taken by King *Philip* and the English.

Upon the taking of this town, the English grew secure, and negligent of *Calice*, so that the Duke of *Guise* with great celerity approached the English frontier, under colour to victual *Boloigno* and *Arde*, he divided his Army into two parts; the one he sends to *Ricebank*, whilst the other battered two forts at once, which they wan in twelve houres space; *Ricebank* is also abandoned by the English, and left to the *Guise*: then the Duke batters the walls of *Calice* three dayes together, and made a great breach, He planted also fifteen double Cannons against the Castle; they within finding themselves too weak, thought to blow up the French with Gun-powder, as they entred, 40 but the train would take no fire, being wet with the drops of water that fell from the French-mens cloths; having waded through the ditch; so that they got the Castle, with the death of *Ager* Marshal of the Town, his son and heir, and eighty English more. The Lord *Wentworth*, Deputy of the Town, sent to the Castle for a parly, which was granted, and these Articles agreed on. 1. That the Town with the Artillery, Victuals, and Munition should be yeilded freely to the French. 2. That the lives of the Inhabitants shall be saved. 3. That the Deputy with fifty others remain prisoners till they pay their ransom.

The English were shut up in two Churches, where they remain a whole day and night without meat or drink. The Duke commanded that all their plate, money and jewels be laid on the altars, upon pain of death; so the Town was voided of five hundred ordinary souldiers, of townsmen women and children four thousand and two hundred, and all these stript of the wealth they had been long in gathering: In the space of eight dayes was this Town lost, which cost king *Edward* 3. eleven moneths siege, and had been possessed by the English two hundred and eleven years; fifty prisoners are sent away into *France*. King

An. Christi.

1558.

King *Philip* being sollicitd by Queen *Mary* to recover this lost honour, makes an attempt upon *Brest*; and takes *Thermes* the new Captain of *Calice* prisoner; yet *Calice* could not be regained, which so grieved Queen *Mary*, that she said, The losse of *Calice* was written in her heart, and might be therein read when her body should be opened. The losse of this Town, and long absence of king *Philip*, increased her melancholy, which ended in a fever that was her death, at *S. James*; she reigned 5 years, 4 moneths, and 11 dayes, and lived 42 years and 9 moneths. Cardinal *Poole* died the same day with Queen *Mary*.

10

## CHAP. XXXII.

The English History, interwoven with the History of Spain, France, Ireland, and Netherlands, under Queen Elizabeth, from 1558. till 1602.

Queen *Elizabeth* succeeded, being twenty four years old. She presently 1558. orders that the Liturgy be said in English. As she was passing through Cheap in her Chariot, the Bible was presented to her, which she took and imbraced, professing to make it the rule of her government: then she assures the Lord Maior and City of her care and love to them: then she comes to *Westminster*, she is crowned by the Bishop of *Carlisle*, the See of *Canterbury* being vacant. In her first Parliament, the title of Supremacie, with the Tenth, First-fruits, and Benefices are restored to the Crown; Queen *Maries* Acts are repealed in favour of Catholikes. A Conference was held at *Westminster* concerning the English Service-book, the changing of Ceremonies, and the Mass; but this Conference came to nothing. She was petitioned by her Parliament to marry; but she told them, that she meant to reigne, live, and die a 30 Virgin.

A peace being on foot between *France* and *Spain*, the Queen interposeth for *England*, and demands restitution of *Calice*, being lost not in the quarrel of *England*, but of king *Philip*, against the will of the English Council. It was alleadged, that great sums of money for arrearages were due to the English from the French king, all which the Queen was willing to remit, conditionally that *Calice* may be restored, without which restitution no peace could be concluded between *England* and *France*; it was at length agreed, that *Calice* should remain French for eight years, and then return to the English, upon forfeiture of five hundred thousand Crowns, but neither the one nor the other were ever 40 performed. The Lord *Wentworth* Deputy of *Calice*, was arraigned at *Westminster* for the losse of the Town, but was acquitted by his Peers. The oath of Supremacie is offered to the Clergy: in place of *Poole* deceased, *Parker* is made Archbishop of *Canterbury*: the Monasteries are again suppressed, and Images abolished: then care is taken for refining the Coyn, and for furnishing the kingdom with munition, armour, and powder. The French king, in favour of his son the Dolphin, and Queen *Mary* of *Scotland*, caused their right to the Crown of *England* to be proclaimed at *Paris*, commanding *England* to be put among their Titles, and the Arms thereof to be impaled with *Scotland* and *France*, in 50 their Seals, Plate, and Tapistry: but afterward upon Articles of Accord between *England*, *Scotland* and *France*, it was agreed, that the Arms and Titles of *England* and *Ireland* should not thenceforth be used by the French king, nor his Queen of *Scotland*.

*Gustavus* King of *Sweden* proposeth a Match between his eldest Son *Ericus* and Queen *Elizabeth*, which suit afterward was renewed by *Ericus* himselfe being King, but is both times rejected by Queen *Elizabeth*. Who sends aid first into *Scotland* for supporting of the Protestant religion, then into *France* for

1560.

*An. Christi.* 1562. for the same purpose: her Forces are received into *New-haven, Roan* and *Deep*, under the command of *Ambrose Dudley* Earl of *Warwick*, who is assisted by some Scots forces from *Deep*: but *New-haven*, after eleven moneths possession, was lost again by the English, for want of water, which the enemy had cut off, and by reason of the Plague which raged there, and afterward in *England* receiving infection from thence. About this time fell out the Massacre at *Paris*, in which the Admiral was barbarously murdered, mangled and abused, besides many thousands of men, women and children.

About the same time *Ireland* rebels under *Shan* or *John O-Neal*, who claimed an hereditary right to the Province of *Ulster*, as the *O-Neals* had formerly done of all *Ireland*; for when *Edward Bruce* named himself king of *Ireland*, *Donald O-Neal* stiled himself king of *Ulster* and heir of *Ireland*; but the English quashed his title, till in the wars between *York* and *Lancaster*, they forsook *Ulster*. At this time *Henry O-Neale* raised his family, by marrying the daughter of *Thomas* Earl of *Kildare*, from whom issued *Con O-Neal*, surnamed *Bacco* from his halting, who cursed his posterity, if they learned the English tongue, sowed wheat, or built houses. But king *Henry* the 8. so crushed *Kildare*, that he submitted, and was content to hold his revenues in fee of the King, with the title of Earl of *Tiron* or *Tir-Oen* to him, and to *Matthew* his false reputed sonne, and to their lawful heirs. *Shan O-Neale* upon this murders *Matthew*, and drives his father *Con Bacco* out of his house and all his possessions, so that he died for want and grief. *Shan* being then chosen, and inaugurated by an old shoe cast over his head, seized upon his fathers estate, and to secure himself, he murdered *Brian Matthews* eldest son, the other two *Hugh* and *Con-mack* escaped: so being seated in *Ulster*, there he plays the tyrant, declaring that he was the son and heir of *Con O-Neal* lawfully begotten, and that *Matthew* his supposed brother was a Black-smiths son, and was obtruded upon *Con* by his Concubine the said *Smiths* wife; he pleads also the Irish law *Tanistry*, whereby a man at his full years is to be preferred before a boy, and an uncle before a nephew. So bearing himself as absolute king of *Ulster*, he overthrew *O-Railly* in the field, took *O-Donel* prisoner with his wife and children, and committed adultery with her.

This *Shan* hearing of the Lord Deputies preparations against him, went over into *England*, and humbly submits himself to Queen *Elizabeth*, who sends him back upon promises of allegiance, and for a while he carried himself loyal and civilly; but afterward fell off again, fired *Armagh*, besieged *Dundalk*, and spoiled the Country. Against him Sir *Henry Sidney* then Deputy of *Ireland* came with seven Companies of foot and a Troop of horse; *O-Neal* in a pitch'd field is overthrow, and in divers other skirmishes so foiled, that he purposeth with an halter about his neck to submit himself to the Deputy: but his Secretary adviseth him to try his fortune once more by the sword, in making amity with the wild Scots then in *Clancboy*; this counsel he takes, and repairs with *O-Donels* wife his Adulteress-concubine to the Scots camp, where being at first welcomed and entertained, was afterward hacked in peeces by *Mac Gillespie* and *Alexander Oge* two Scots Captains, because *Shan* had killed heretofore this *Alexanders* brother; a few of *Shans* followers escaped by flight; and so *Ulster* is freed from its oppression under *O-Neal*.

The eight years being expired for restitution of *Calice* to the English, Sir *Thomas Smith* is sent with Sir *Henry Norris*, to demand the Town and Forts about it, according to agreement; but the Towns-governors will not be spoken with; whereupon they repair to King *Charles*, who told them, That none had right to *Calice* but himself; the Queen-mother also added, That the English by invading *Scotland* and *New-haven*, had forfeited *Calice*: Sir *Thomas* replies, That the French had lost *Calice* by sending forces into *Scotland*, and soliciting the Scots Lords to invade *England*, which they refused to do, as being against their late treaty and league with Queen *Elizabeth*; the French also had armed

*Normandy*

*Normandy* and *Britany*, and hired divers German forces against *England*, and did beare also the Arms of *England*: The Queen-mother replied, that the English did beare the Arms of *France*; but however she affirms, that what the King of *Scotland* did in his Wives right, should not be imputed to King *Charles* her son. Then the King willed the Ambassadors to absent themselves a while, till he had talked with his Council; and so after an houre they were sent for again, and told, That five thousand French onely were sent into *Scotland* to suppress the rebellion of the Protestant Lords there, and not to invade *England*, whereas Queen *Elizabeth* had sent fifteen thousand thither to assist the Rebels: Sir *Thomas* answers, That the Queen hearing of such great preparations, was necessitated to send great aid both by sea and land, not to assist Rebels, but to maintain such as were oppressed for their conscience. The Chancellor of *France* also tels him, that *Calice* stood upon French, not English grounds; and as the English had right to it by the fortune of war, so now the French have the same, besides that they enjoyed it long before the English took it; who had also once possessed and enjoyed *Aquitain* and other places, which long since they have lost; the English claim two hundred years possession, the French above five hundred years; if prescription then could stand among Princes as among private men, the French can prescribe a far longer time than the English: As for king *Francis* the 2. he did not therefore intend to invade *England*, because the English thought so, for suspicions and thoughts are no realities; but the English Queen did really invade *France*, upon a fair pretence of keeping the Towns for the Kings use, but she kept *New-haven* as a pledge for *Calice*, whereby she hath lost her right to *Calice*; withall he shews, that God having divided *England* from *France* by the sea, the English should content themselves within their own confines: therefore he wissheth them to entertain peace with *France*, which will do them more good then the gaining of *Calice*. To this Sir *Thomas* answers, That the English made no invasion upon *France*, but were invited thither by divers of the Nobility and others then in danger; nor when they were landed did they use any hostility, or take an hen or egge but what they paid for; and if that aid had not come from *England*, much of *France* had been ruined: As for the Queens keeping of *New-haven*, she had reason so to do, having been at so great charge and cost; she deserved to have some reason offered her in her right to *Calice*. But (saith the Constable) so much provision of victuals, men and ammunition, and so many ships, could not be for *New-haven* alone; therefore the Queen must have had further designs: No (saith Sir *Thomas*) it was onely out of providence that this provision was had, because sea and winde doe not serve at all times. At last after much debate, both the King and Queen-mother, and all the Council told him plainly, that they would entertain amity with the English Queen, but *France* would not part any more with *Calice*.

At the same time the troubles of *Scotland* were so great, that the King was shamefully murdered, and the Queen banished; who setting sail for *France*, was by contrary winds driven into *Cumberland*. Queen *Elizabeth* solliciteth the Scots on her behalf, but they could not be induced to admit her again, so she is forced to stay in *England*. Mean while the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Westmorland* with some others, pretending Religion, flie out into Rebellion, intending to surprize the Earle of *Suffex* Lieutenant of the North; but they were prevented, and the Queen had notice of their intents, wherefore she sends for *Northumberland* to the Court, who out of feare removed from his Castle of *Topcliffe* in *York-shire*, and goeth to *Bransford*, where meeting with the Earle of *Westmorland*, they command the Country to take arms, pretending it was to aid the Queen, and to restore the old Religion; which if they should neglect, forraigne Princes would do it, to the danger of the whole kingdome. From thence they go to *Durham*, where they tore the Bible; at *Rippon* they heard Masse; thence they went to *Bransham-Moore*, where they mustered sixteen

*An. Christi.* sixteen hundred horse and four thousand foot; then they fall upon *Barnard's Castle*, which in eleven dayes they took; they grew so high, that in their letters they called the queen, *Elizabeth* the late and pretended queen: Upon this they are proclaimed traitours; *Carlisle-Castle* is kept against them by the Lord *Scroop* and Earl of *Cumberland*. The Earl of *Suffex* Lieutenant of the North with an army follows the enemy, who was both heartlesse and moneyless, the one hundred thousand crowns failing them which the Pope promised. The chief heads of these Rebels finding their inability to resist so great a power as was coming against them, resolve to flie into *Scotland* to those Lords that stood out for the Roman religion, which they did accordingly, and left their army 10 to the mercy of *Suffex*, who surpris'd them without resistance, so that at *Durham* and about in the country many were put to death.

This execution made many desperate, who in revenge of their friends put to death, gather head under *Leonard Dacres*, these neer to *Naworth* fought desperately with the Lord *Hunsdon*, who at last caused them to give back, and *Dacres* to flie into *Scotland*; where *Northumberland* is taken by the Regent, and sent into *England*, and beheaded at *Tork*, declaring the Popes supremacy, the Queens heresie, and the kingdome misery, being now in a schisme. *Westmerland* was shifted away into *Flanders*, where he died miserably of ulcers.

About this time, *Nicholas Morton* an English-man, made Bishop by Pope 20 *Pius Quintus*, procures at *Rome* a Bull against queen *Elizabeth*, whereby she is declared an Heretick, an usurper, and incapable of the Crown; therefore all her subjects are absolved from their allegiance to her, and curses denounced against such as should obey her: this Bull was hanged up at the Bishop of *Londons* gate, and had many patrons and abettors, who came to untimely deaths; among whom was Dr. *Story* a Civilian, who having escaped out of prison, got over into *Antwerp*, where being employed by the Duke *Alva* to search all ships for English-bibles, was caught by one *Parker* a Merchant, as he was searching his ship, and carried over into *England*, where he was executed 1571. at *Tyburn*. One *Sommervell* intended to murder the queen, but was prevented, apprehended, imprisoned and condemned, but in the prison he strangled himself to death. One hundred and twenty Jesuits were apprehended, fifty three of which were banished, the rest executed, among whom was *Edmund Campian*; *Robert Parsons* escaped. In *Cornwall*, *Culbert Mayne* disswades the people from obeying the Queen; In other places, *Nelson* and divers others were employed to the same purpose; *Thompson* brought holy-oyle to anoint the Priests, and *Hemford* a dispensation from the Pope: *Haddock* was employed to find out the fittest landing-place for strangers, and to prepare aides at home: *John Pain* with fifty more were encouraged to kill the queen by a violent assault. 40

*Francis Throgmorton* was employed by *Mendoza* the Spanish Ambassadour in 1583. *London*, to collect the names of the English great-men who stood for the Catholick cause; to whom was joyned *Charles Paget*: abroad divers were set on work, to sollicite the king of *Spain* to invade *England*: The Duke of *Guise* undertook to be the leader, if *Rome* and *Spain* would bear the charges. *Throgmorton* delivers to *Mendoza* his chard of the Havens of *England*, with a list of Catholick aides; *Arundel* in *Suffex* was held the fittest place for landing: but *Throgmorton* upon suspicion is apprehended, and his study searched, where were found the list of his Catholicks, the Havens for landing, with pedigrees touching the English Crown, and some libels against the Queen; but a casket with some other things unknown were secretly conveyed to the Spanish Ambassadours. This whole conspiracy *Throgmorton* confesseth, & suffereth. *William Parry* for burglary was to die, but obtained pardon from Q. *Elizabeth*; yet afterward he went about to take away her life, by pretending that he would discover the names of divers who had plotted against her, but still his heart failed him, when he came to speak with her. At last his treason was discovered by one

*An. Christi.* one Mr. *Newil* whom he thought to be sure on his side, which Treason he confessed himself, and by his letter to the Lords of the Council seems to abhor it, and craves pardon for it; but when he saw he was to be executed, he denied his former confession. One *Appletree* (whether purposely or casually was not known) discharged a bullet, and shot the water-man in the Barge where the Queen was, within six foot of her seat, but the pardoned the offender, *Henry Percy* Earl of *Northumberland*, being of *Throgmortons* conspiracy, was sent to the Tower, where he murdereth himself by discharging a dag with three bullets under his left pap.

There were besides these, divers other Treasons hatched by the Earl of 10 *Arundel*, Sir *John Perot* Deputy of *Ireland*, *Babington*, *Tichburn*, *Ballard*, and divers others, some of these suffered at *Tyburn*, *Babington*, *Charnock* and *Savage* in *Lincolns-Inne-fields*. *Cullen* an Irish Fencer undertook the death of the Queen for thirty pounds, he suffered at *Tyburn*. *Sanders* wrote against the Queen, so did *Creswel* under the name of *Philopater*, and *Parsons* under the title of *Doleman* concerning titles of the Crown. Dr. *Lopez* the Portugal Physician for a rich jewel given him by a Spanish Counsellor, and a promise of fifty thousand crowns, undertakes to poyson the Queen by a potions but the matter was not carried so close as was thought: *Lopez* was appointed to give the 20 Queen physick, purposely to try him, the physick being brought, the Queen wilth him to minister to the Treasurer *Cecil* who had more need of physick then she; when he came to *Cecil* he is apprehended for a Traitor, the ingredients of his potion are examined by other Doctors, and it was found poyson; so he is arraigned, and with his two comforts hanged at *Tyburn*.

After these, *Terk*, *Williams* and others, were animated at *Bruxels* by *Holt* the English Jesuite to kill the Queen, but the plot was discovered and prevented, and the plotters hanged. The last that publickly attempted the Queens death was *Squire*, first a Scrivener, and then a Purveyor in the Queens stable, he being taken at sea (as he was sailing after Sir *Francis Drake*) by some Spaniards, is 30 set upon by *Walepool* an English-man, to poyson the pommel of the Queens saddle, which he did as soon as he came into *England*, being exchanged for a Spanish prisoner; but the poyson had lost its vertue, for it did no hurt neither to the Queen, nor to the Earl of *Essex*; as was intended; but *Walepool* hearing no news of his plot, suspected *Squire* for a false brother, and fearing he would reveal divers secrets, prevents him, by dispatching one into *England* to inform against *Squire*; this Informer at first was not credited, yet *Squire* was examined, and some passages in his answer laid hold on, which made him be suspected, and so upon advice of his friends he confessed; and accordingly suffered.

The thirteenth year of her Reign an Act was made that none should name 40 any particular person to be the Queens heir or successor: *Thomas Howard* Duke of *Norfolk*, for favouring too much the Scots cause, is beheaded on the Tower-hill. This year was seen that strange Star or Comet in *Cassiopea*; it was observed to be higher then the Moon, and not much lesser then *Venus*. Queen *Elizabeth* sends fifteen hundred men to aid the Regent of *Scotland* against the other faction; *Edinburgh-Castle* is battered with thirty Canons, and at last for want of water is surrendered by composition to the use of the young King. About this time the Royal-Exchange was built by Sir *Thomas Gresham*. Sir *Martin Forbushier* made sail into the North-East-seas, further then any other 50 had done; he attempted the next year thirty leagues further, and a third time he assayed further. Sir *Francis Drake* with five ships, and a hundred sixty four men past the line three and thirty degrees of latitude; and in the six and thirtieth degree enters the river *Plate*; with three of his ships he passed the strait of *Magellan*, leaving the other two as impediments to him; the *Marrigold* was also lost, Mr. *Winters* ship shaken off by storms recovered *England*, but the Pelican; whereof he was Admiral, held on her course upon the West of *America*



*An. Christi.* 1578. *rica*, where he passed the line to the latitude 47 but finding no passage by reason of fogs and ice, returned South-west, and came to anchor eight and thirty degrees from the line, where the King of that Country presented unto him his Crown of feathers, admiring our men, and sacrificing to them as to gods: this place he calls *Nova Albion*; at his departure he erects a Plate of brass as a monument, wherein was engraven the Queens name, and her picture, with her Arms in a peece of silver under the Plate; from thence he came to the Isles of *Molucco*, and thence to *Java Major*, and so to the Cape of Good-hope, and then he fell with the coast of *Guinea*, whence crossing again the line, he came to the height of the *Azores*, and then to *England*, having been absent three years wanting twelve dayes; his ship was laid up in the Dock near *Deptford*; and the Captain Knighted.

1580. And now the English begin to trade with the *Muscovites* and *Turks*; the *Sultan* upon the request of the *English* Ambassador made peace with the *Potander*, which *Sultan* by his letter to *Queen Elizabeth* inciteth her to make war against *Spain*. Pope *Gregory* the 13. stirs up the King of *Spain*, having obtained *Portugal*, to war against *England*, in favour of the *Irish* Rebels, offering to acquit him of the fruits of the Archbishoprick of *Toledo*, long retained in his hands; the Archbishop being suspended, wherefore they two joyn in hope to conquer *Ireland*; the Pope sends six hundred men under the command of *Thomas Stukely*, whom he stiled *Marquesse of Ireland*; the *Spaniard* bears all the charge, with the addition of three hundred *Spaniards*, and sends money to raise four thousand men more; these landed in the County of *Kerry*, raised their Standart, and built a fort; by these means *Desmond* hoped to be King of *Ireland*.

The Lord *Grey* Deputy of *Ireland*, with his forces fell upon these strangers, and puts them to the sword, a few being reserved for ransomes: the Fort had store of money, armour, shot, powder, and other provision; all the *Irish* there as well women as men died, and *Desmond* driven into the woods, was in a cottage wounded by a souldier, who at length cut off his head. The Earl of *Essex* is sent over to reduce the wilde *Irish* in *Ulster*, which had been pretty quiet after the Queen had enacted, That no man should assume the name of *O'Neill* till *Turlough Leinigh*, a brothers son of *Con-More* grand-father of *Shan-O-Neal*, of whom we have spoken already. This *Turlough* disquieted the *Scots* of the Islands, and slew *Alexander Oge*, the slayer of *Shan O-Neal* his son-in-law; *Hugh* Baron of *Duncannon* escaped from him into *England*, on whom the Queen bestowed the command of a troop of horse, and a thousand marks per annum, and for his good service against *Desmond* he obtained the title of Earl of *Tir-Oen*; upon this old *Turlough* resigns to him the government of *Ulster* on certain conditions, chiefly, that they both should joyn their forces to maintain the *Roman* Religion. *Mac-Guyre* encouraged by *Guaran* Primate of *Ireland*, began first to stir, but is discomfited by *Sir Richard Fingham*, and *Guaran* slain in the field. *Mac-Guyre* after this flies out into open Rebellion, whom *Tir-Oen* pursueth and receiveth a wound in his thigh, which made him gracious at the *English* Court: he procured *Fitz-williams* the Deputy to be called home, in whose place *Sir William Russel* is put, whom he flatters with such fine words, that although the Marshal charged him with many subordinations of *Mac-Guyre*, yet he was dismissed, to the great discontent of the Queen, and disquietness of the land.

King *Philip* of *Spain* had before this been incensed by *Queen Elizabeth*, for entertaining the fugitive *Netherlanders* his subjects in her Kingdom, whom she thought he could not in honour banish, having fled thither for the safety of their lives, and liberty of their consciences: She also desires that *Westmerland*, with others of her Rebels should be banished the *Spanish* dominions. The *Netherlanders* abhorring the *Spanish* Inquisition, send to *Queen Elizabeth* to protect them, which at first she seemed to be unwilling, as being loth to pro-

*An. Christi.* voke *Spain* against her, but sent to King *Philip* to commiserate his afflicted people, which he refusing to do, she sends (being solicited the second time by the *Netherlanders*) in Bullion the value of forty thousand angels in part of an hundred thousand pounds promised; which made *Don John* of *Austria* then governour of *Belgium* interpose himself in the *Scottish* affairs to disturb *England*. The *French* to make *England* furer to them, send over Monsieur Duke of *Anjou* the Kings brother, to marry *Queen Elizabeth*, whom she magnificently entertained, but would not assent to marry him.

The fame of this Monsieur was so great, that the *Netherlanders* (having declared against the tyranny of King *Philip*) chose him for their Protector; but he died not long after in *France*, and *William* of *Nassaw* is proclaimed Traitor; his estate confiscated, and promised with twenty thousand crowns annual to him that shall bring him dead or alive, whereupon he is murdered at *Delph*; therefore the Queen is solicited again, as also *Henry* the French King for relief; the Queen sends the Earl of *Derby* into *France* in behalf of these Provinces, but he being in danger of the *Guise* and the League, recommends back again their distresses to the Queen, promising his relief; hereupon she undertakes their protection by advice of her Councel; because she was bound (say they) to defend the Gospel, to relieve the oppressed Protestants, to keep off the strength of *Spain* from setting too near; and to revenge the invasion of *Ireland*: hereupon Articles being drawn, *Sir John Norrk* is sent over with five thousand foot, and one thousand horse on the Queens pay during the war; for which money, *Flushing*, *Bril*, two Sconces; and the Castle of *Ramekins* in *Holland* were pledged to the Queen.

The Pope and *Spaniard* were highly displeased with the Queen, who in two books taxe her of ingratitude to *K. Philip* who saved her life, and of intended murdering of the Prince of *Parma*, to which an answer was published, and reasons shewed why she undertook the protection of these Provinces, because of their situation and vicinity, because of many ancient leagues between *England* and the Dukes of *Burgundy*, because of the *Spaniards* tyranny, and the privileges those Countries have to make choice of any other head, when they are oppressed by the present governour, and because *Mendoza* practised with *Throgmorton* to bring into *England* foreign power.

Things thus ordered, *Robert Dudley* Baron of *Denbigh*, Earl of *Leicester*, and the Earl of *Northumberland* son, is sent over as the Queens Deputy-General; who at the *Hague* took an oath of the States to the Queen, and claimed absolute authority over them; at which she was offended, declaring she promised to be their Protector, but not their Sovereign; mean while all *English* ships and goods are arrested in *Spain*. Pope *Sixtus* 5. sends to the Prince of *Parma* a consecrated Sword, with a Hat. The *Netherlanders* are put in fear that the Queen meant to make peace with the *Spaniard* without them, but by her letters she freed them from this fear. After this the *Spaniards* and *English* skirmish near *Zutphen*, in which though the *Spaniard* was worsted, *Sir Philip Sidney* being shot in the thigh lost his life: but the States grew discontented with *Leicester* their governour, for making *Tork* and *Stanly* two *Spaniolised* persons governours of Towns, to wit, of *Deventer* and *Sconce*; which afterward they sold to the *Spaniard*, and for some other points of his misgovernment; but he hasteneth over into *England* to be present in Parliament at the handling of the Queen of *Scots* cause, who was beheaded at *Fotheringhay*-Castle; *Queen Elizabeth* seeming much grieved at it, by punishing her Secretary the chief actor therein, with imprisonment, and the losse of her presence and his place: the body of *Queen Mary* was interred in *Peterborough*-Church under a hearse of black-velvet, and was translated thence by her son King *James* to King *Henry* the 7. Chappel, and laid under white-marble.

In *Leicesters* absence, many disorders were committed by the English; wherefore *Maurice* the younger sonne of *William* Prince of *Orange* is chosen

*An. Christi.* Governor. *Buckhurst* is sent into *Holland* to examine complaints, at which *Leicester* is offended, who recalls Sir *John Norris*, (to the dislike of the States) and sends him into *Ireland*; then he returns into *Belgium*, where he is blamed for the surrendring of *Sluce*; factions did increase, and many Towns reject his government; hereupon he is recalled into *England* by the Queen, and commanded to resign his government, which done, it is proclaimed through all the Provinces. Mean time king *Philip* is preparing of his great Fleet, and withall bears the Queen in hand that he aimed at a generall peace, which she believed, but could not perswade the States to give credit that he intended peace, who was head of the Holy-league, persecuted Protestants, and was preparing of a Fleet; therefore they to be in readinesse, fit their War-ships, and presse a thousand Sailors to aid her, if need be. Notwithstanding this, Commissioners are sent out of *England* to confer with *Parma* about the peace, with king *Philip's* Commissioners; much time is spent about precedencie, and the place of meeting, at last the English have the priority, and the place is *Offend*.

1588.

The Queen demands a Cessation of arms, a present Truce, a dismissal of foraign souldiers, a restitution of the monies lent by her to the States, an enjoyment of their ancient Liberties, and a Toleration of Religion for two years, and a Confirmation of the Articles of *Gaunt*; so she promiseth to deliver up the Towns again. All these demands are rejected by the Spaniards. Meanwhile Pope *Sixtus* 5. sends out his Bull to confirm the Excommunications of his two former Predecessors against the Queen; and Cardinal *Allen* sets out a bitter book, wherein he exhorts all to joyn with King *Philip* and *Parma* against her: This book the Queen sent to *Parma*, but he slighted it off with a complement. In the interim it is given out, that King *Philip* had kept fifty thousand men in pay almost a whole year, by means of that Treaty: And at last the great *Armado* begins to appeare, in which were 72 Gallions and Galliasles, 47 Ships and Hulks, 11 Pinaces and Carvals, 2843 great Ordnance, 8094 Sailors, 18658 Souldiers, 2088 Gally-slaves, 220000 Bullets for great shot, 4200 Kintals of Powder, 200 Kintals of Match, 7000 Muskets and Calivers, besides incredible store of other provisions, Bisket and Wine for sixe moneths, with Bacon, Cheese, Fleth, Rice, &c. this Army cost king *Philip* thirty thousand Ducats every day. The Generall was the Duke of *Medina*, the Admiral Don *Martinez*; Don *Martin Alorcon* was Vicar-general for the Inquisition, with whom were an hundred Monks and Jesuites; Cardinal *Allen* is Superintendent of Church-matters, he translates the Popes Bull into English and sends it away; In this Fleet were divers of the Nobility and Gentry of *Spain* and *Portugal*. The Duke of *Parma* also prepared a great Navy, with 300 small Boats, and 70 flat-bottom'd, every one able to beare 30 horses, with a world of all sort of furniture and provision: Neer *Newport* he had 30 companies of *Italians*, 2 of *Walloons*, and 8 of *Burgundians*; at *Dychem* he had 80 Companies of *Netherlanders*, 60 of *Spaniards*, and 60 of *High-Dutch*, besides 7 of *English*. The Pope sends forth his Crusado, and promiseth a million of gold, with a proviso that he should hold the English Crown as feudatory to the See of *Rome*.

To prevent this storm, *Charles Howard* High-Admiral of *England* is sent into the seas; the Lord *Seymer* with the ships of *Belgium* kept betwixt *Calice* and *Dover*: The Queen being advertised by the French king, that this fleet was for *England*, caused all the Trained bands through the kingdom to be mustered and in readinesse, the Earl of *Leicester* is made Lieutenant over them, *Tilbury* in *Essex* was the place for the Camp; there were two and twenty thousand foot and sixteen hundred horse; the Queens guard consisted of two thousand two hundred and fifty two horse; and of foot thirty four thousand and fifty. But the great Spanish Navy is so tossed with a storm, that the Duke of *Medina* is driven back into the *Groine*, and eight other of their ships dispersed and torne, besides three *Portugal* gallies which fell upon the coast of *Bayon* and

and were set upon by their own slaves, who freed themselves by the slaughter of many *Spaniards*. Sir *Francis Drake* Vice-Admiral goeth westward, and joyneth his fleet with the rest, which made up an hundred saile. *An. Christi.*

The Admiral hearing in what distresse the Spanish fleet was, did bear saile towards *Spain*; but the wind turning South, he returns homeward and Anchored his fleet in *Plimouth* haven; the Spaniards put again to sea, and at last cast anchor in the Channel of the Narrow-seas; some Pinaces are dispatched to the Admiral, that the Armado was come, which by reason of sicknesse, and the former storm, was not expected that year: Wherefore all hands are set on work to warp out the ships then in the harbour, and many of the men on shores at length they got out to sea, and having advantage of the wind, discharged their Cannon on the Spaniards, and were answered in the same language; the next day, the two fleets fought within musket-shot; the English Admiral fell fiercely on the Vice-admiral of *Spain*; a Gallion in which were some Dons, was sorely battered by the English, whose ships were lower and nimbler; whereas the Spanish high Vessels were fitter for defence then offence: The next day *Drake* commands this Gallion to yeeld, Don *Pedro* at first refused, but understanding that it was *Drake*, who had him in chase, came on board his ship, where after some complements, he is kindly used by *Drake*, and lodged in his own Cabbin; the rest of that company were sent to *Plimouth*, where they staid eighteen moneths till their ransome were paid; in that ship were found five and fifty Ducats in gold: that same day *Oquendo's* great Gallion fell on fire, the upper part whereof, and most of the persons were consumed, the Hulk was brought into *Plimouth*.

Neer *Portland* a fierce encounter was between the English and Spaniards, wherein a great Venetian ship with some smaller were surprised. The 24. day of July, a great fight was between four Galliasles and the English fleet, in which though the Spaniards were galled with chain shot from our ships, yet they had the advantage because our powder failed; which being supplied, our fleet is divided into four squadrons, under four Commanders; namely, the Admiral, *Drake*, *Hawkins*, and *Forbisher*. July 25. against the Isle of *Wight*, was a cruel encounter, each discharging their whole-sides. The 27 of July, the Spaniards anchored in sight of *Calice*, intending for *Dunkirk*, there to joyn with the Duke of *Parma*, to whom *Medina* sends to hasten his forces; but the Spanish ships were so planked with beams, that Bullets could not pierce them; wherefore eight English-ships are filled with powder, brimstone, and other combustible matter, which July 28 about midnight were let drive with Wind and Tide among the Spanish fleet; this caused the Spaniards, being suddenly affrighted, to cut their cables, or else they had been all fired; in this confused haste, one of their Galliasles of *Naples* fell foule on another ship, and lost her rudder, and so was assaulted by the English on a shelve in the shore of *Calice*; her General *Moncado* was slain in the fight, and many more Spaniards, many leaped into the Sea and were drowned: In her were four hundred souldiers, and three hundred slaves, which were now freed from their fetters; and a booty found of fifty thousand Ducats; the governour of *Calice* would not suffer the vessel to be set on fire.

The 29 of July, over against *Greveling*, a sore conflict continued that day, in which a Gallion of *Bisca* perished, wherein the Captains in madnesse killed each others: Two great ships besides presently sunk; *Francis de Toledo*, with others, committed themselves to the Skiff, and arrived at *Offend*. The St. *Philip* a Gallion of *Portugal*, in which he was, with the souldiers in her, were taken by the *Flussingers*. The St. *Mathew*, another *Portugal* Gallion was so shot, that her leaks could not be stoppt. Don *Diego Pimentelli*, refusing *Medina's* courtesie, who would have saved him in a skiff, was afterward taken on the coast of *Flanders* by five men of war, and carried into *Zealand*; In the interim, *Seymer* with his Squadron

*An. Christi* Squadron is sent to joyn with the 35 ships of *Holland*, that lay on the coast of *Flanders* to keep in the Duke of *Parma*; but the Armado being weary of fighting, spread their main-sails and put to sea, the English Admiral following lest they should put into *Scotland*, but they bent their course toward *Norway*, so about the degree of latitude 57. our Admiral left them.

The *Spaniards* considering with themselves, how they had lost five thousand of their men, that many maimed and sick souldiers lay on their hands, twelve of their greatest ships were sunk, lost and taken, their tackling spoiled and anchors lost, their victuals failing and fresh-water spent, which made them fling their horses and mules overboard, knowing also that *Parma* could not, and *Scotland* would not help them, by reason of their correspondence with *England*, they held it best to return into *Spain*; so sailing between the *Orades*, about *Caithness* and the coast of *Ireland*, kept westward in the main ocean, and returned at length into *Spain*, where the Duke is deposed from all his authority and confined to his house; The residue of the ships, about forty in number, were so battered on the coast of *Ireland*, that divers of them perished, amongst others *Oquendo's* great Galliasse and two great ships of *Venice*, some were driven on the English, some on the French coast, and were taken; so that of 134 ships only 53 returned to *Spain*, of the whole fleet were missing 81 vessels, and of 30000 souldiers 13500. above 2000 prisoners were taken in *England*, *Ireland*, and *Low-Countries*.

All danger being past, the Camp at *Tilbury* is disbanded, and not long after *Leicester* died. The Queen on the 8. of *September* gives solemn thanks to God for this Victory in *S. Pauls*, where on the lower battlements eleven Spanish Ensigns are hung up, the next day they were spread upon *London-Bridge*; the 19. day of *November* was appointed to be kept holy throughout the Land; the Queen upon the Sunday following, being the 24. of *November*, went in state from *White-Hall* to *S. Pauls*, where at the West-door she fell down on her knees, giving solemn thanks to God, and exhorting the people to the same duty. The *Zelanders* on their Coyn stamped the memorial of this day and victory, so did the *Hollanders*.

1589. It being reported that king *Philip* was preparing a new Fleet to recover his lost honour, It was resolved by the Lords and Commons of *England*, That an attempt be made upon *Spain*, and aid given to Don *Antonio* the expelled King of *Portugal*, who was given out by king *Philip* to be a bastard; after he had driven him out of *Portugal*, he proclaims eight hundred thousand crowns to him that should bring him either dead or alive, yet he was kept disguised eight months in *Portugal*; then he fled unto the Court of *France*, where he received aid from the Queen-mother, a competitor also for the *Portugal*-crown. A fleet is sent to the Isles of *Terceres*, which by the *Spaniards* is overthrown, eight of the tallest French ships are lost, and two thousand men slain; divers *Portugal* Captains for this losse were imprisoned as cowards. So *Antonio* having no more hopes of *France*, repaires into *England*, where he desires the Queen to land him safe in his country; whereupon six of her ships, and twenty more of war, besides others for transportation, accompanied Don *Antonio* from *Plymouth*, Sir *Francis Drake* was Admiral, Sir *John Norris* Generall for land-service, with eleven thousand souldiers, two thousand and five hundred mariners; these landing in the Bay of *Galicia* near the *Groin*, were encountered by the enemy near the Town, who forced them back to their gates.

*Norris* the next day, forced the Gallies which plaid upon his troops, to abandon the road; the Base-town is surpris'd, five hundred that fled thence to the rocks were slain; in this Town was an incredible magazine of mony, victuals, and arms provided against *England*; the English by immoderate drinking of wine, caused a great infection and mortality in the army; a great Gallion is set on fire by overcharging the great ordnance, this burned two dayes together, so that of fifty great pieces, sixteen only were left; the higher town

*An. Christi* Town held out, being built on a rock, the Miners attempting to blow up the walls, overthrow a part of a tower, the other part falling down unexpectedly. New Captain *Sydneyham* with thirty souldiers; after this *Norris* with nine Regiments met a Spanish Army coming against him, and a hot skirmish ensueth; in which Sir *Edward Norris*, with some other Commanders are wounded, notwithstanding the whole Army of *Spaniards* was routed in this service; the Kings Standard is taken, which was displayed before the General; then returning to the *Groin*, the English fired the base Town, and so put again to sea; the Earl of *Essex* meets with the fleet, and they all land in *Portugal*, under shot of the Castle of *Roniches*, the enemy fell presently on the English, but are beat so; that they take their heels and leave the Town undefended, which presently yeeldeth, and so doth the Castle upon summons, understanding that Don *Antonio* was there.

Seven Companies of foot being left to guard the ships, the main Army marcheth over-land to *Lisbon*, and took a Castle by the way: many of the English souldiers were poysoned with drinking of standing waters; and eating of poysoned honey left purposely in the houses. The 25. of *May*, our Army came to *Lisbon*, whose Suburbs were abandoned and store-houses fired; the enemy in the night time (whilst the English were at rest, being wearied with six dayes march and watching) sallied out, and killed Colonel *Bret*, with divers Captains and others; but the Earl of *Essex* fell on them unexpectedly, and drove them to the City-gates: in the interim *Cascais* is surpris'd, the inhabitants being fled to the mountains, who understanding their King was come, professed their loyalty to him, but the Castle held out for the *Spaniard*.

The Duke of *Bragansa*, *Francisco da Toledo* and others, promised to aid *Antonio* with three thousand horse and other supplies, but could make no head, because of the Spanish Commanders every where: *Antonio* hoping aid would come at last, desired the English to stay before *Lisbon* for nine dayes, which could not be granted, because the English were sickly and much weakened, nor was there any forwardness in the *Portugals*; *Antonio* desires the Suburbs might not be spoiled; *Essex* in a bravery run his spear and brake it against the gate of that City, challenging any *Spaniard* within to fight with him, but none appeared. The Castle of *Cascais* is rendred upon conditions. Sixty Spanish hulks laden with provision for *Lisbon* are taken.

The English being at sea again, are overtaken in a calm by nine gallies which sunk some of our stragling ships; Captain *Minsbaw* fought to the last after his ship was on fire; so continuing seventeen dayes on board, many dead souldiers are cast into the sea: Then they came to *Vigo* a Town, which with the Country for seven miles compass they set on fire: Then *Drake* arrives safely at *Plimouth* June 21. and *Norris* July the 2. after.

The state of *France* at this time was much distracted and out of order; therefore a meeting at *Blays* is appointed of the three Estates for establishing peace and union: For the Clergy appeared a hundred thirty four Deputies, among whom were four Archbishops, one and twenty Bishops; and two Generals of Orders; For the Nobility, a hundred and eighty Gentlemen; For the Commons, a hundred ninety one Merchants and Lawyers: To these King *Henry* the third made a speech tending to union, which was prosecuted by the Chancellor, by the Archbishop of *Bourges*; and by the President for the third Estate; whereupon an oath of union is taken, but the Leagues in the interim disgrace all the Kings actions; and make his government odious, purposely to set the *Guise* in his Throne: who temporis'd with both. The Clergy excommunicates King *Henry* of *Navarre* as an heretick, and deprived him of the government of *Guienne*; but King *Henry* would have him to be summoned, and again to be sworn to the union: To this it was answered, That he had been many times wrought upon to renounce

*An. Christi.* nounce his heresie, to no purpose; he was excommunicate by the Pope, and therefore king *Henry* was bound to subscribe thereto, otherwise *Guise* would dissolve the assembly; and so *Henry of Navar* is pronounced incapable of the crown of France.

The king to be rid of the *Guises*, intended to destroy them both; notice was given to the Duke of this, but he would not believe it, presuming on his own greatness; but at last, he was killed by the kings guard, and so was his brother the Cardinal not long after; which so incensed the people, that they destroyed the King, defaced his furniture, brake his pictures, dragged his image through the streets of *Paris*, and beat down his arms: The Sorbonists also concluded, that the people were free from their allegiance to him; whereas the Duke of *Guise* was highly commended and lamented. The Leaguers prevailed so against the Parliament, that all sorts of insolencies were permitted; besides, one *Clement a Jacobin*, vowed to kill the King, which he did at *Paris*; where he delivered the king a Letter, and with a knife wounded him in the belly, which the king drew forth, and struck the *Jacobin* above the eye, whom also the kings servants stabbed to death: So *Henry* died of his wound.

Upon this, *Henry of Navar* is proclaimed by the Army, and named by the last *Henry of France* his successor, in his last Will; him Queen *Elizabeth* assisted against the leaguers with twenty thousand pounds, with ships, Arms, and Powder, and with four thousand souldiers at one time, and with three thousand at another; and to resist *Parma* who was entred France, she sends over *Essex* with four thousand foot and two hundred horse, these landing in *Normandy*, laid siege to *Rohan*, where his brother *Devereux* was slain: *Henry* finding the Leaguers too strong for him, and the Popes power so great; at last renounced his religion, and embraced the Roman Faith; so he is absolved and crowned. In *Brittany* the Spaniards are worsted, with the losse of Captain *Forbisher*, and divers other English: The Leaguers by treasons lay wait for his life, and cross him what they can at *Rome*; at last, war is proclaimed between France and Spain.

To *Ernestus* in *Belgium*, succeeded *Albert Arch-duke*, who prepares against the French, and falls first upon *Calice*. *Richbank* left unmanned, is seized on by him, and the town at length upon composition is surrendered: Queen *Elizabeth* not willing the Spaniards should possess that Town, proffers aid to the French king against him; but he weakened by war, was more inclined to harren to conditions of peace; whereat the Queen was displeased, and prepares another sea expedition, with a Declaration, shewing the causes of preparing this fleet, to wit, for defence of her friends and subjects; All which she wils to forbear helping of, or trading with the Spaniards: Then about 150 saile of English and Flemmings met at *Plymouth*, under the command of *Charls Howard* Admiral, and the Earl of *Essex*: before they put to sea, the Queen prayed solemnly for their good successe: At sea, they met an Irish Bark from *Cadiz* shewing the strength of the Town, and shipping in the Bay; to wit, twenty Gallies, ninety ships, five great Gallions, two Galliaffes, with divers other vessels, all richly laden, and bound for divers places.

On the twentieth of June the English attempt to land on the West side of *Cadiz*, but could not; the place was so strong, the next day the Spanish fleet prepares to fight: Lord *Thomas Howard*, with some Londoners, and a Squadron of *Belgick* ships began the skirmish; *Essex* and *Charls Howard* seconded them: *Winkfield* assailed the Gallies, which got passage at the bridge: The Spanish Admiral *St. Philip* is sore battered, and set on fire, and so was the *St. Thomas*; that they might not come into the English hands, the rest of the Spanish fleet ran themselves on ground. Then *Essex* lands his men; some Regiments are sent to the Bridge to impeach all supplies from the main, *Essex* with the rest took towards *Cadiz*, which at first plaid so sore upon the English, that the foremost began to give back, till *Essex* caught his own Colours, and cast them over

over the wall into the Town, to engage his men: a furious assault is made, the Colours regained, and the Town surprized, though with the losse of many English, among whom *Sr. John Winkfield* was slain.

The Town and Castle being surrendered, the fury of the souldiers is staid by proclamation; great respect was shewed to religious Persons, women and children; the Ladies were suffered to depart quietly with their Jewels; the Generals standing by to see them safely shipped. The Bishop of *Cusco* is released without ranfome, the spoile of the town is given to the souldiers; one hundred and twenty thousand Ducats are promised by the townsmen for their ransom; the ships also that ran on shore offered two millions and a half of Ducats for their ransom; but the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, Admiral of Spain, caused them all to be set on fire, yet the *Matthew* was saved, and so was the *Andrew*; thus was that rich fleet suddenly consumed, the town ranfacked and burned, and the whole Island wasted.

The English having abandoned *Cadiz*, set saile Westward towards *Faro*, a town in *Algarva*; where the Earl landing his men, took what they found in the town forsaken by its inhabitants, and foraged the Country for three leagues about. Thence they put to sea again, and landed safely at *Plymouth*, August 7. The next year, the Earl of *Essex* is employed by the Queen, both as Admiral and General in another Voyage against the Spaniard, with six thousand men, besides Mariners, in one hundred and twenty ships, which July 9. set saile from *Plymouth* for the *Azores*, but were driven back by storm; they set saile again August 17. and September 15. they arrived at those Isles, which submitted presently; they sack the town *Villa Franca*, took a *Brasl*-man; and three prizes, which they brought into England; worth four hundred thousand Ducats.

The traffique of Spain failing by reason of these wars, the young king of *Poland*, *Sigismund*, sent an Ambassadour to Queen *Elizabeth*, who had audience at *Greenwich*; He complains that the *Poland* Merchants are hindered in their trade with Spain by sea, which should be open to all; therefore wisheth some redresse and restitution be made, or else his Master who is so neerly allied to the King of Spain and house of *Austria*, would seek some means to right himself: to this the Queen in latine answered, That his Master was too young and unexperienced in negotiating with Princes; and that his threatening speech favoured more of ignorance and arogance, then of judgement and good manners; She shews him that it was not against the law of nature for her to intercept military helps from any to her enemy: so wishing him to wait for a further answer from her Counsel, she riseth in anger.

Another Ambassadour comes from *Denmark*, to intreat a peace between Spain and England, and amity between England and Denmark, and a free Traffique between Spain and Denmark; whereas hitherto the Danish Merchants had suffered by the English; and lastly, he delivers to her the Garter; which the former King deceased had worn: For the peace with Spain, she told him, she broke it not; nor would she sue for confirmation of it; especially by so young a King as the *Dane* was; as for peace with Denmark, she was willing to continue it; but for any wrongs done by her ships on the Danish Merchants, she knew not; if any should appear, satisfaction should be made. Shortly after this, the English Merchants are arrested in the Sound, for which cause the Queen sends thither an Ambassadour, to whom all satisfaction and content is given by the *Dane*.

Mean while *Tir-Oen*, whom the Queen had made an Earl; and pardoned twice, begins to stir against her; and first he assails the Fort of *Black-water*, by which the entry lay into his country, and got it by surrender; Then he writes to *Kildare*, to side with him; and to *Sir John Norris* appointed Lord General, to use him mildly, lest he should flie out into disloyalty: In this mean time, his guard consisted of one thousand horse, and six thousand two hundred and eighty foot of *Ulster*, and two thousand three hundred of *Conanght*; all which

D d d

are

*An. Christi.* are proclaimed traitours: The Queen willing to be quiet, sent Commissioners to confer with the Earl, who complains of the wrongs done him by Sir Henry Bagnal Marhal: then he petitions that he and his may be pardoned, and restored to their estates; that they might freely exercise the old Religion; that no souldier or Sheriff should meddle with the jurisdiction of his Earldome; that he may be restored to his pay, and Company of fifty horse; that the spoilers of his Country be punished; and that Bagnal should pay him the thousand pounds promised him in Dowry with his sister, *Tirons* wife: Then the Commissioners propounded these Articles to him, That he would lay down Arms and submit, reedifie the defaced Forts, admit the Queens Officers, restore the spoils, confesse how far they had dealt with foreigne Princes, and lastly to disclaim all foreigne aide. *Tir-Oen* would not hearken to these demands; therefore *Norris* with the Deputies help, marcheth into *Armagh*; whereupon *Tir-Oen* forsakes *Blak-water* Fort, fires the Villages about, and plucks down *Duncannon* town, with part of his own house: *Norris* sets a garrison in the Church of *Armagh*, and proclaims *Tir-Oen* traitour.

*Tir-Oen* to gain time, presents a feigned submission, prostrates himself before the Queens Picture, ungirds his sword, and craves pardon; where in the interim he deals with *Spain* for aide, and messengers thence are sent him with promises of men and arms: Hereupon he makes havock of the countrey, and then sues for pardon again; and withall sends king *Philips* letters, and the causes of his own discontent to the Deputy: In the mean time, most of *Connaught* revolteth, and all *Ulster* rebelleth, except seven Castles that kept for the Queen. *Thomas* Lord *Burrough* is sent Deputy into *Ireland*, and *Norris* upon discontent dieth. The new Deputy makes forward to meet with the Rebels, who encountered him, but they loose *Blackwater* Fort again; and whilst they endeavoured to rescue it, *Kildare* interpose, and discomfitteth them, but with the losse of some prime men, and dear friends; for which he died of grief. *Tir-Oen* rallieth his forces again, and in the Deputies absence, beleaguers it with all his strength: The Deputy hearing of this, hastneth to rescue it, but by the way he dieth. Then was the Earl of *Ormond* made Governour of *Ireland*. *Tir-Oen* again complains of the wrongs he sustained, and oppressions of *Ireland* under the English, by which his disaffection to the English Nation was known: *Bagnal* is sent to raise the siege at *Blackwater* with fourteen companies; neer *Armagh* the enemy meets him, where in a bloody conflict *Bagnal* is slain, and the English quite defeated: here thirteen Captains were slain, and fifteen hundred common souldiers were routed and cut off; hereupon the garrison of *Blackwater* is surrendered, and *Tir-Oen* furnished with all sorts of provision and arms.

*Tir-Oen* putt up with this successe, sends four thousand into *Munster*, who prosecute the English there with fire and sword, and after a moneth return richly laden: He sends letters also to king *Philip* of *Spain*, promising to keep his allegiance to *Spain*, and enmity with *England*. In this sad condition of *Ireland*, the Earl of *Essex* is sent over with sixteen thousand foot, and four thousand horse; being arrived thither, he falls upon the Rebels of *Munster*, and chaseth them into the woods, with great losse both of men and time; thence he made into *Leinster*, against the Rebels there, whom he vanquished; but Sir *Conyers* Clifford governour of *Connaught* is slain, and his forces defeated; whereupon the Lord General enters *Ulster*; *Tir-Oen* desires a parly with him, which is denied: The next morning, the Earl desires a parly again, and is again refused; but upon his third petition, it is granted. He had conference with *Essex* for an hours space, then both returned to their Companies, and some choise men are appointed to confer with *Tir-Oen*, and Commissioners for a treaty of peace. But the Queen was highly displeased, that so much blood and money had been spent in vain, and so much time lost without service upon the Arch-rebel: Wherefore *Essex* having received sharp letters from her, who was also incensed

incensed by his enemies, he hastneth into *England*, where at *Non-such*, he had access to the Queen; but shortly after, is commanded to his Chamber, and then committed to the custody of the Lord-keeper.

The news of this commitment gave occasion to *Tir-Oen* to flie out again; who gives out, that he would restore *Ireland* to her ancient religion and liberty, and expell all the English; he receives from *Spain* money, and arms; and from *Rome* Indulgences, with a plume of *Phoenix* feathers, for a trophie of his victories: After this, in the midt of winter, he goeth on Pilgrimage to the holy-crosse in *Tipperary*, whence he sends *Mac-Guire* to spoile the Country; to whom Sir *Warham* Saint *Legar* ran with a Lance through the body, and was by him run through himself: Hereupon *Tir-Oen* returns from *Munster*. The Lord *Montjoy* at this time is made Deputy of *Ireland*, who in *May* prepares to invade *Ulster*; where he forced *Tir-Oen* to draw back into his old corners; He kills the chieft of the Rebels, he breaks through the Irish Pallisadoes, beats the enemy back, and plants a garrison eight miles from *Armagh*, which he named *Mount Norris*, in memory of Sir *John* *Norris*; at *Carlingsford* he gave a total rout to the enemies. In the midt of Winter he clears the *Glinnes* or *Valleys* of *Leinster* from Rebels; he subdues divers other places, fortifies *Armagh*, and drives *Tir-Oen* from *Blackwater*.

In the mean time, king *Philip* of *Spain* sends *Don John* de *Aquila* with two thousand Spaniards and some Irish fugitives to help *Tir-Oen*; these land at *Kinsale* in *Munster*, where they publish their Commission, and Queen *Elizabeths* Deposition: The Deputy encamps neer *Kinsale*, and Sir *Richard* *Levison*, with two of the Queens ships incloseth the Haven; but hearing of two thousand Spaniards more at *Bere-Haven*, makes haste thither, and sinks five of their ships; to this new supply of Spaniards, the rebels repair, who made up six thousand foot and five hundred horse: These intended to have put the Spaniards and eight hundred Irish into *Kinsale*, but they were prevented by the Deputies vigilancy, who followed the Rebels as they were retreating towards a Bog, where their horse were routed by the Earl of *Clanricard*; the main battel was charged by the Deputy, who quickly put the Rebels to flight; many of whom were slain, with twelve hundred Spaniards, and divers commanders taken prisoners, *Tir-Oen* flieth to his starting-holes in *Ulster*, and *O-donel* driven into *Spain*.

The General being returned to the siege of *Kinsale*, and having mounted his Canons, is sent to by *D. Aquila* for a parly, complaining of the Irish rudenes, perfidiousnesse, and cowardise; and shewing that he desired peace not out of want either in the town, or from *Spain*: the Deputy willingly hearkened to a peace; and it was Articled, that *D. Aquila* should quit all places he had in *Ireland*, and should with his Spaniards depart; with arms, money, munition; and banners displayed; that they should have ships, and victuals for their money, that they should be used as friends; if driven into any harbours of *England* or *Ireland*; that a cessation should be from war, that their ships should freely passe without molestation from English ships; Many of *Tir-Oens* men were drowned in their flight by the Winter floods, and he himself shifted from one corner to another.

The next Spring the Deputy marcheth from *Dublin* towards *Ulster*; where he forceth *Tir-Oen* to set his own house at *Duncannon* on fire; who flies from place to place; then the Deputy wastes all his Country, and takes in many places, so that now the Rebels exclaim against *Tir-Oen*, and resolves to come in to the Deputy; which caused this Arch-Rebel to beg pardon again of the Queen, who granted it; then he came in a poor array to the Deputy, and fell twice on his face before him, acknowledging the Queens goodnesse; and his own wickednesse in rebelling so often, hoping he should finde her wonted clemency, and she should not faile of his true loyalty; but when he began to excuse himself in some things, the Lord Deputy commanded him to be silent,

D d d d 2

and



*An. Christi.* and to depart the presence, which he did, and had been sent over into England, had not the news of the Queens death hindred this designe.

The Earl of *Essex* was ever held in jealousy, since his conference with *Tir-Oen*; yet presuming on his own merits and innocencie, carried himselfe so stoutly and stubbornly to the Queen, that the Lord Keeper by a Letter prudently adviseth him to yield to the times, to submit to the Queen, and not to live such a discontented life as he did, whereby he wronged his friends, his honour, his fortunes, his country, and his Sovereign, and withall encouraged the foraign enemy to rejoyce and insult: He intreats him therefore to yield, if he be guilty, out of duty; if not guilty, out of policie; for in this he would shew both his honour, prudence, and piety, and withall his true valour in conquering himself. To this Letter the Earl answers, by laying the cause of all his discontents upon the Queens obduratenesse to him, who had deserved so well of her; He shewes, that willingly he doth not wrong either his friends, honour, fortunes, country, nor Sovereign by his retirednesse, seeing he is forced thereto, and driven by the Queen to a private life, who hath disabled him from serving his country in any publike way, but hath made him capable to serve it by sacrificing his life and carcase to it: He is indeed bound to her Majesty in the duty of Allegiance, not of Attendance; in the first he will never fail, of the second there is no need: He yields to the time, for he saw the storm coming, therefore put himself into the harbour; but he will never yield himself to be guilty, or the imposition laid on him just; however he will patiently bear all, for Princes may erre, and subjects may receive wrong; no power shall shew more strength and constancie in oppressing, then he will shew in suffering.

The Queen notwithstanding this Letter, which laid all the blame of his sufferings on her, was contented he should be removed to his own house; then she sends some of her Councillors to convert him about the manner of his treating with *Tir-Oen*, and his leaving of *Ireland*, contrary to the Queens command: his answer was, That he had to do with bogs and woods, as well as with men, and forced to do things there, which he would not have done elsewhere. The Queen was contented with his answer and submission; yet he is suspended from the exercise of his office for a while, and shortly after he is set at liberty, the Queen hoping his surest guard would be his own discretion: But his liberty, without his offices and wonted power at Court, could not settle his discontents, which also were fomented by his followers; wherefore at *Drury-house* they consult and agree to bring the Earl by violent hand into the Queens presence, and to remove thence his opposites: but the Queens jealousies increased, by the continual flocking of Lords, Knights and Captains to *Essex-house*, by his refusing to come before the Lords of the Council when he was commanded; therefore she sends the Lord Keeper, with some others of his friends, to offer him justice for any griefs, and to dismisle his assemblies. These being let in, but not their followers, the Earle complains his life was fought after, and had been perfidiously dealt with: he was desired to expresse the particulars of his grievances, and he should have justice and satisfaction; and withall his Attendants are commanded to lay down arms and to depart: but the Earl shut up the four Councillors in his Bed-chamber under sure custody, and in a tumultuous manner made into *London*, his followers crying that *Essex* should have been murdered by *Cobham*, *Cecil*, and *Rawleigh*; so he passeth to *Fenchurch-street*, where he entred the house of a supposed friend, one of the Sheriffs, but he absented himself; in the interim *Essex* is proclaimed Traitor; in *Gracious-street* he stood a while with a halbert in his hand, and a napkin about his neck, but no body came to assist him; Then he passeth towards *Ludgate*, but there he is resisted by some Pike-men, and thrust through the hat, some of his company were hurt, and young *Tracy* slain; So returning thence to *Queen-hive*, he took Boat and lands at his own house, which he fortified,

fied, and the Lord Amiral assaulted; upon resistance some are slain, which the Earl perceiving, presently yeelded, desiring civil usage and an honourable trial, so he was carried to *Lambeth-house*, and from thence, with some others, to the Tower.

Upon the 19. of February, *Essex* and *Southampton* are arraigned; and *Essex* the 25. of February is executed on the Green within the Tower, having first confessed this great sin of Rebellion, but that he never meant to wrong the Queen, desiring all to think charitably of him, to hear the confession of his faith, to forgive him, and to pray for him, so his head was cut off at three strokes, to the endangering of the Executioners life by the multitude; divers of his accessaries died, some at *Tiburn*, some on the *Tower-hill*, the Earls death was much lamented both by the people, and the Queen her self till her dying day: *Southampton* was imprisoned in the Tower till he was released by King *James*. At last Queen *Elizabeth* having settled her dominions in peace, died the 24. of March, the 69. year of her age, and of her Reign the 44. She was a Queen of such eminent endowments, that to say little were to wrong her, and to say much were to flatter her, therefore let her own works praise her. She was happy in this, that never any Prince of this land had such wise Counsellors, such politick Statists, such resolute and courageous souldiers.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

The History of Scotland under Queen Mary, from the year 1560. till the year 1567.

Whilst an Army is preparing in England to assist the Scots Protestants, the French plunder *Disert* and *Wimes*, two Towns in *Fife*, then they march toward *St. Andrews*, and in the way they spie eight great ships as far off in the sea, who being in hope that these were ships from France coming to aid them, discharge for joy their great Ordnances, but understanding by some small barks that this was an English fleet comming to aid the Protestants, and that a Land-army was upon the borders, their joy is turned into fear and grief, and they presently disperse themselves sundry wayes, the richer sort of those places send away their wealth into remoter Countries. The French plunder friends and foes, affirming that the Scots Catholics were too sparing in helping their friends, for which cause many of them fall off from the French faction, so that all *Fife* turns Protestants, the example of which was followed by divers other Countries in shaking off the French tyranny; two ships in the interim with a thousand foot, and some horse are sent from France, the French were no sooner landed, but the two ships are carried away by the Scots in the night: shortly after eight French ships more arrive with men, money and munition, but finding the Frith so full of English ships, they return home again; another English fleet comes, so that now the Isle of *Keth* is beset round, and all commerce by sea kept from *Leith*; mean time the governors of *Fife* meet Huntly at *Perth*, where after three dayes conference, he with all the Northern parts come in to the Protestant party.

The Lords of the Reformation hearing that the English Army of six thousand foot and two thousand horse were come, they go to meet them at *Haddington*; the Regent with some few of her servants, to be out of danger, betakes her self into *Edinburgh-Castle*; *Areskin* the governour, though he held the Castle for the Protestants, yet was content to admit the Regent, hoping thereby she would be the easier wrought upon; being now in his power, to this purpose the Protestant Lords send a letter to her, wherein they complain of the wrongs sustained by her means in filling the Kingdome with French, by whom the people are much afflicted; that they have often besought her

*An. Christi.* her to dismisſe them, which becauſe ſhe will not conſent to, they have there- fore intreated the Queen of *Englands* aſſiſtance, not thereby to caſt off their allegiance to their own Sovereign, but to eaſe their own necks from the ſtrangers yoke; therefore they beſeech her to diſmiſſe the *French* forces, who ſhall have ſafe conduct by the *Engliſh* either by ſea or land; if ſhe reſuſe this, they take God to witneſſe, they are clear of the miſchiefs that will enſue.

Upon the approach of the *Engliſh*, thirteen hundred *French* came out of *Leith* to ſeiſe themſelves of a hill not far off, there was ſkirmiſhing for five hours for obtaining that place: at laſt the *Scots* horſe furioſly breaking in 10 upon the *French* Army drove them back into the Town, and had the *Engliſh* horſe been in readineſſe, that *French* party had been all cut off; ſome parties were held with the Regent about a peace, which took no effect, becauſe the *Scots* would conſent to nothing till the ſtrangers were ſent away; and now the *Engliſh* having ſhot often againſt *Leith* to no purpoſe, draw nearer to the Town with their Ordnance, a part of which caſually fell on fire, and burned till the next day, ſo that much of the *French* proviſion was conſumed; then the *Engliſh* ſet the water-mills near the Town on fire, which the *French* would have quenched, but could not; the beſiegers aſſayed to ſcale the walls, but were beat off with the loſſe of a hundred and ſixty of their men; whereupon the 20 ſiege riſeth, and the *Engliſh* forbear to attempt any more till they have further directions from the Queen; in the interim letters come from the Duke of *Norfolk*, wiſhing the *Engliſh* to be couragious, and to continue the ſiege, promiſing them aid enough, and his own preſence, if need required, withall he ſends them his pavillion, and ſhortly after two thouſand Auxiliaries, ſo the ſiege is renewed again, and divers ſkirmiſhes followed.

In the mean time Queen *Elizabeth* ſends ſome *Engliſh* Commiſſioners into *Scotland* to treat with the *French* Commiſſioners for a peace; about which time the Queen-Regent died of grief in the Caſtle of *Edinburgh*; a Lady of her own nature inclined to goodneſs and peace, but ſhe was over-ruled by the 30 King and Queen of *France*, and they by the *Guiſes*; the Commiſſioners at firſt could not accord, becauſe the *French* deſired to carry home all their booty with them, which was denied; wherefore they broke out again into open hoſtility; but the *French* finding their proviſion almoſt ſpent, and no hopes of ſupply; the *Engliſh* alſo growing weary, and the *Scots* ſouldiers wanting their pay, they all inclined to peace, which was concluded on theſe Articles, That the *French* ſhould be gone within twenty dayes, and ſome *Engliſh* ſhips ſhould be provided for them: That *Leith* ſhould be reſtored to the *Scots*, and the walls demolished: That the fortifications erected by the *French* about *Dumbar* be thrown down: That the *Engliſh* ſhould withdraw their Armies out of 40 *Scotland*: And that an Act of oblivion paſſe. It was alſo agreed that ſixty *French* ſhould keep the poſſeſſion of *Kerth*-Iſland and *Dumbar*-Caſtle; leſt the Queen ſhould think that ſhe is quite deprived of all government.

After the *French* were gone, *Scotland* was very quiet till Queen *Mary* came over, a Parliament is held in *Edinburgh*, where the Proteſtant faith is eſta- bliſhed, and ſent to Queen *Mary* for her approbation: Ambaſſadors are alſo ſent into *England* to thank the Queen for her aſſiſtance; and now about this time King *Francis* dieth, at which the *Scots* were glad, hoping now to be quite freed from the *French* yoke. James the Queens brother haſteneth into *France* to his ſiſter, who with her uncles was retired in *Lorrain* from her mother in law, who 50 now took upon her the government of the Kingdome: Queen *Mary* ſignifi- eth to her brother, that ſhe was willing to return into *Scotland*, and therefore appointed a day for that purpoſe, deſirous rather to command as a Sovereign in her own Country, then to live as a ſubject to a mother-in-law in a foreign Kingdome; mean while ſhe ſends back her brother into *Scotland*, with her Letters-patents for calling of a Parliament, that the *French* Ambaſſador who was

was lately ſent thither, might have audience; his demands were to have the *An. Christi.* old league renewed with *France*, and the new broken with *England*, the Priests reſtored again to their places and reveuſes: To the firſt, it was answered by the Lords, they never broke the league with *France*, but the *French* have broke with them, by endeavouring to infringe their liberties: as for the league with *England*, they can no wayes break without extreme ingratitude to their deli- verers; as for the Priests, they need none of their ſervice, being they know no uſe of ſuch, but are now better ſupplied.

In this Parliament an Act was made for demolishing of all Monasteries, and 10 Commiſſions ſent abroad for that purpoſe; but the Queens friends adviſed her, that at her firſt coming into *Scotland*, ſhe ſhould not meddle with matters of religion, till ſhe had got ſure footing, and then ſhe might ſhew her power; her Uncles animated her to reeſtabliſh the Roman Faith: *Charles* the Cardinal counſelled her to leave in his cuſtody her richeſt houſhold-ſtuffe, jewels, and robes, becauſe of danger by ſea; but ſhe told him, that her life was more dear to her, then her jewels, if then ſhe truſted the one to the ſea, ſhe would not leave the other behind: An Agent is ſent to Queen *Elizabeth* to ſound her how ſhe was affected, if queen *Mary* ſhould make her journey through *Eng-* 20 *land*; It was answered, that none ſhould be welcomer to her then queen *Mary* her kinſwoman; With this an *Engliſh* fleet is ſent out, ſome thought it was to intercept queen *Mary*, if ſhe ſhould go home without viſiting queen *Elizabeth*; but queen *Mary* notwithstanding, by reaſon of a great miſt, got into *Scotland*, upon the report of whoſe arrival, the Lords and Gentry flock from all parts of the kingdome, ſome for one end, ſome for another: At firſt it was agreed that the Religion ſhould ſtand as it was now eſtabliſhed in *Scotland*, onely the Queen ſhould be permitted to have Maſſe at Court for her ſelf and family.

Shortly after, as the Priests were going into the Queens Chappel, one ſwatcht the Taper out of the hands of one, which made a ſudden hubburb, but all was pacified again by James the Queens brother; the Earl of *Huntly*, whoſe fami- 30 ly hath been ever conſtant to the Roman profeſſion, took this affront in very ill part, and told the Queens Uncles (who were then preſent) that he would reduce all the Northern parts again to the old religion; the reſt of that year was ſpent in feaſts and masks to entertain the *French* Peers, who accompanied the Queen into *Scotland*: ſhortly after, an Ambaſſadour is ſent by the Queen and her Lords to Queen *Elizabeth*, for confirming of the league, and continu- ing mutual love to each other; withall ſhe is deſired to declare the Queen of 40 *Scots* to be her next heir, as being next in blood, if ſo be ſhe have no children of her own: To this ſhe answers, wondring that Queen *Mary* and her Peers did not rather ſend a confirmation of the league at *Leith*; this the Ambaſſa- dour excuſed, that he was preſently ſent away upon the Queens landing, and that as yet ſhe hath had ſcarce time to conſerr with her Lords about the affairs of the Kingdome, and ſettling of Religion: But ſaith Queen *Elizabeth*, ſhe was tied by her hand and ſeal to confirm that League; therefore ſhe needed no great time for that; to this the Ambaſſadour could ſay nothing, as being no part of his Commiſſion: then ſaith the Queen of *England*, I grant that your Queen is next in blood to me; and all the world knows, I never attempted to doe her wrong, even when ſhe wronged me; in uſurping my titles and arms; but I impute this rather to others, then to her ſelf; however, I hope, ſhe will give me leave to enjoy my kingdome, whiſt I live, and my children 50 after me, if I have any, if I have none, I ſhall not any waies hinder her right; neither doe I know any (I ſpeak in the preſence of God) whom I ſhould pre- ferre to her, or who hath any right after me to my Crown, but her ſelf; and ſo deſiring ſome longer time to think upon ſo weighty a buſineſſe, ſhe diſmiſſeth the Ambaſſadour.

A few daies after ſhe ſends for him again, and wonders what the Scots Lords meant, to ſend her ſuch a meſſage, upon the landing of their Queen, and before ſatisfaction

*An. Christi* satisfaction be made for former wrongs; I am not (saith she) destitute either of force at home, or friends abroad, to maintain my own right: the Ambassador answers, That their intent was only to shew their affection to their Queen, and to avoid the shedding of much blood, and setting the two kingdoms at odds, if any question should arise about the title of succession: I dislike not their intent (saith she) but what needs all this, seeing I never went about to question her title? but however, I am not willing whilst I am alive to look upon my own winding-sheet; nor do I think it prudence in me to declare her my successor, for that will breed many disputations according to peoples affections; besides, I am married to my kingdom, whilst I live this marriage cannot be dissolved, when I am dead let them succeed that have most right; again, my declaration in this point may occasion rather some emulation between the two kingdoms, then confirm union; Princes use to be lesse affected to those whom they know shall succeed them, then otherwise; so was *Charles 7.* of France to *Lewis 11.* and he to *Charles 8.* and lately *Francis* to *Henry* his successor: again, I know the inconstancie of this people, and how more do worship the rising then the setting sun; my sister *Mary* was not willing to hear that I should succeed her; I know that many out of every discontent, and because I do not satisfie their expectations, their covetous and ambitious thoughts will be apt to fall off from me to my successor, who the more he or she shines in the peoples affections, the dimmer will be my light, and the more I strengthen her title of succession, the more I shall weaken my own security: but I will take time to think more seriously of this busines, and shall endeavour in this to gratifie your Queen, when she shall confirm the League to which she is bound.

After divers other discourses, Commissioners are appointed on both sides to review the former League, and to bring it into these heads, to wit, That the Queen *Mary* should forbear the titles of *England* and *Ireland*, and likewise the Queen of *Englands* Arms; on the other side, That Queen *Elizabeth* should not either by her selfe or her posterity go about to hinder the succession of *Scotland* to the Crown of *England*. But whilst these things were in agitation, 30 the Queen commits the Provost and Magistrates of *Edinburgh* to the Castle, for setting forth a proclamation, That all Papists must avoid the City by a certain day. The Ministers of *Edinburgh* complain against the Queen in their Sermons, for celebrating Masse with such solemnity upon All-Saints day, shewing that it was lawfull for the people to force the Prince to observe the Lawes established, and to abolish Popery: but the Nobility were loth to hearken to this doctrine. In the interim the Borderers fell to spoiling and plundering the neighbouring countries; against these *James* the Queens base-brother is sent with some forces, who suddenly surpriseth them, of whom he hanged eight and twenty, others upon hostages given he dismissed. The Queen also 40 made the people jealous of her, by securing her self with a stronger guard then her predecessors used to have, which was occasioned upon a report that the Earl of *Aran* (whom she did not affect for his religion, being a rigid Calvinist) intended to seize on her person, and to carry her to his castle sixteen miles off; she angered also the Priests, by exacting of them the third part of their revenues for maintenance of Preachers, and the rest for her own use, having wasted much of the Crown-revenues. To make herself more gracious with the people, she creates her brother *James* Earl of *Mur*; but this honour being found to belong anciently to the *Areskins*, she makes him in stead of 50 *Mar* Earl of *Murray*, and procures him the Earl-Marshalls daughter for his wife; but *Huntly* storms at this, having been governour of these two Provinces a great while, and challenged *Murray* for his inheritance; so that at this time he was the richest and powerfullst Peer of the Kingdom, and all the Northern parts were at his beck, only *Makintose* a great man among the *Highlanders* refused to be subject to him; which so incensed *Huntly*, that he unawares seized upon his person and imprisoned him, and in his absence his Countesse

caused his head to be struck off, not without suspicion that it was done by *An. Christi* *Huntlies* command.

The same *Huntly* was also highly incensed against the Earl of *Murray*, whom he accused to the Queen that he aimed at the Crown, but his proofs were invalid. The Earl *Bothwell* at this time, having lavishly wasted his patrimony, knew not how to live but by fishing in troubled waters; therefore to set the Kingdom in a Civill-war, he endeavours to make dissention between *Murray* and the *Hamiltons*; so he strives to perswade *Murray* that the *Hamiltons* aimed at his and the Queens destruction, and promiseth assistance to cut them off, which saith he, will be a work acceptable to the Queen, for so she shall be rid of near kinsmen pretending to the Crown, besides that *Aran* is her great enemy: *Murray* refused to meddle in such a bloody businesse, therefore *Bothwell* incensed the *Hamiltons* against him, accusing him as their great enemy, and that it was easie to seize upon him as he usually walked alone in *Falkland* Park. *Aran* abhorring this plot, by private letters informeth *Murray* with it, who returns answer by the same messenger; but *Aran* being absent, his father openeth the letters, and withall imprisoneth his son, who escaped in the night to *Falkland*, where the Court then was, and discloseth the whole plot; whereupon *Bothwell* and *Galvin* *Hamilton* the chief actors are apprehended and imprisoned, the 20 one in *Edinburgh*, the other in *Sterling* Castle, and *Aran* himself who faltered in his discovery, is sent to *St. Andrews*-Castle, where he feigned himself mad, lest he should detect his father who had a hand in the plot; but he constantly accused *Bothwell*, that he offered in vindication of the truth to fight a duell with him.

Mean while *Huntly* useth all the means he can to cut off *Murray* his competitor, divers wayes he attempted, but all failed; at length he procures some of his followers to fall upon him in the night-time as he was going home from the Queen, for he usually staid late with her; but *Murray* hearing of the plot, got some of them who lay in wait for him to be apprehended in their Arms, 30 *Huntley* excused the matter, that they meant to ride home in their Arms, and had no other intent, and so the businesse was silenced; but the *Guises* with *Huntley* and others, did altogether aim at *Murries* destruction, not onely out of private respects, but also because he was a main supporter of the Protestants. The Queen is advised to bear *Huntley* in hand, that she would marry with his son *John*, purposely to further his designs in promoting the Catholick cause; for this end she makes a progresse into the Northern parts: now she hated both *Huntley* for his greatnesse, and *Murray* for his religion; she tells *Huntley* that she could not with her honour be reconciled to his son *John* who raised a tumult lately in *Edinburgh*, till first he were imprisoned in *Sterling*-Castle a 40 while, this she intended, because she knew that during *Johns* absence, she could not be desired to marry; but *Huntley* was not willing his son should be committed to custody, chiefly under *Mar*, *Murries* uncle, who was governour of *Sterling*-Castle: but *John Gordon* *Huntlies* son, who had escaped out of *Edinburgh*-Castle, was now near *Aberdeen* quartered with a thousand horse.

About the same time *Bothwell* by a rope escaped out of *Edinburgh*-Castle: the Queen intends to go further North, the murder was put off till she came to *Strathbogie* the Earls house; but in the way when she could not perswade him to be content that his son should be sent a prisoner for a while, she turned aside and would not lie at his house, but went for *Inverness*; when she came thither 50 she is not suffered to enter the Castle which was kept by *Huntlies* forces, wherefore she is faine to lie in the Town, which she commands to be strongly guarded, and the ships which lay there to be ready to convey her away if any danger should be; when the *Clanchatans*, *Frasers* and *Monroes*, with divers other families understood in what danger the Queen was, repaired all to her aid, and presently lay siege to the Castle, which for want of necessaries yeelded, and divers of the garrison were hanged; from thence she returns to *Aber-*

*An. Christi* *dene*, where she expresth her indignation against *Huntley*: he perceiving there was no way to obtain his will over the Queen, but by the death of her brother, he intended to dispatch him with all speed; *Murrey* understanding in what danger he was raiseth what forces he could and marcheth out against *Huntley*, a hot skirmish ensueth in which the *Huntlyans* are discomfited, 120. were slain, and 100. taken prisoners, among whom was *Huntley* himself with his two sons *John* and *Adam*; the father being aged and corpulent, died as soon as he was taken, the rest are brought to *Aberden*, where *John* was beheaded, or rather mangled by the unskilful Executioner to the great grief of the spectators, and of the Queen her self, for he was of a comely presence, and in the flower of his age; *Adam* is pardoned because he was young: many *Gordons* were either fined or banished, *George Huntly* eldest son fled to his father-in-law *Hamilton*, who came to the Queen, now being returned from *Aberden* to *Perth*, to beg pardon for his son-in-law; the Queen gave good words till she had got him out of *Hamiltons* hands, then she sends him to *Dumbar-Castle*; the next year he is sent to *Edinburgh*, where he is condemned of Treason, and remitted to *Dumbar*.

1563.

1564.

Things being thus settled, *Bothwell* is summoned to return to his prison, which because he refused, is proclaimed Traitor; *Matthew Stuart* Earl of *Lenox*, after two and twenty years banishment returns home, and is restored again; his son *Henry* returns out of *England*: Mean while the Archbishop of *St. Andrews* for saying Masse is imprisoned in *Edinburgh-Castle*. The Queen falls in love with young *Lenox*, being her Aunts son, and a comely youth, and equally allied to Queen *Elizabeth* as her self, who seemed to approve of this match, thinking it safer for her that Queen *Mary* take him for her husband then a foreign Prince; yet she sends Ambassadors to Queen *Mary*, desiring her not to be too hasty in a matter of that consequence; a Parliament is called at *Sterling*, some of the Lords were for the match, some against it, chiefly *Stuart of Ochiltrey*, who said he would never assent to have a Popish King over them, and it was held fitter for the people to chuse a husband for one, then that one should chuse a King for them all; at last her side prevailed, and to make this young Lord *Darby* the fitter for so high a fortune as to marry a Queen, and the widow of so great a King, she honoureth him with the titles of Duke of *Rothsay*, and Earl of *Rosse*.

The Queen fearing lest her Uncles the *Guises* would hinder the marriage, makes what haste she can to finish it, being thereto also advised by *David Rix*, whom of one of her Musicians she had made her Secretary for the *French-tongue*, and who sowed the coals of dissention between her and *Murrey*, whom he intended to murder, who also advised her to send for *Bothwell* out of *France*, *George Gordon* Earl of *Sutherland* out of *Flanders* (who had been banished for Treason) and to release *George Gordon* of *Huntly* out of prison, which she did, and restored them to their honours. *Murrey* was much incensed at *Bothwells* return to advancement, so that he forsakes the Court, and sueth *Bothwell* for the wrongs he had done him in seeking to murder him; but *Bothwell* presuming on the Queens favour and his friends, slighted his citation, and did not appear: mean while the marriage between the Queen and *Darby* is hastened by *David Rix* for his own private ends, and also for promoting the *Roman Religion*; whereof both Earl *Matthew* and his son *Darby* were stout assertors, and which the *Guises* were striving to advance through all Christendome.

The marriage is performed about the end of *July*, and the next day *Darby* is proclaimed King, to the great offence of divers Lords, and of the people, who grumbled they should have a King imposed on them without consent of Parliament; divers Lords absented themselves, who are therefore banished, and their enemies called to the Court; the banished Lords met at *Passet*, the King and Queen with a guard of four thousand go to *Glasgow*, *Hamilton-Castle*

*Call e* is summoned to be delivered up to the Queen, which is denied: the banished Lords were of different minds; the *Hamiltons* would have both the King and Queen to be slain, saying there could be no security for them but in their deaths; the other Lords (who perceived the *Hamiltons* drift in aiming at the Crown as next heirs, by the death of the King and Queen) would have all differences composed in an amicable way; of this opinion were the *Hamiltons* at last, except *James* their chief: these discontented Lords repaire to *Edinburgh* to consult of raising an Army, but were so shot at from the castle, that they were forced to be gone thence towards *Dumfries*; the Queen makes the Earl of *Lenox* Lieutenant of the West; the goods of those are plundered that were fled into *England*, and an oath is taken of the Nobility of *Esse* to be in arms for the defence of King and Queen, if any forces should come out of *England*.

The next year a Parliament is called at *Edinburgh*, for sequestring the estates of those Lords who were banished, for degrading of them, and tearing of their Arms, which the Prince cannot do there without consent of the Parliament. In the interim the Queen is advised by *David* to raise an Army for suppressing of her enemies; and because she could not trust her own subjects, to send for German souldiers, or Italians rather his country-men, who would be at his beck: thus divers strangers are brought in by parcels and privately, that there might be no suspicion. Divers discontents and jealousies are sown between the King and Queen, by which he became lesse gracious in her eyes, so that his power was lessened, and his outward estate and honour impaired: *David* is blamed for being the cause of this; wherefore the King by the advice of his friends conspired his death, which the Queen understanding prevented, but the second conspiracie was carried more closely; for as the Queen was one night at supper, the King with some armed men by the private stairs enters the room, pulls *David* from thence, and held the Queen in his arms, till in an outward chamber the Favourite was stabbed to death by the Earl of *Mortons* servants, who were there waiting on their Lord purposely for this execution, at which many were offended; because the execution was not done publicly by the Hang-man, as a fit spectacle for the people.

Upon this murder, a great tumult arose in the Court: the Earls of *Huntley*, *Athol* and *Bothwell*, being at supper in the other side of the Palace, as they were upon the noise going out of the chamber, are by a guard kept in: *Patrick Ruthen* a great actor in this tragedy, comes into the Queens chamber, and adviseth her to be more carefull of her Nobility and Lawes, without which she ought not to act any thing; and not to rely too much on strangers; who are altogether for their own ends; and which the Nobility cannot brook. In the interim, upon the fame of this murder, the Citizens take arms and come in great multitudes to the Court, to whom the King spoke out of a window, desiring them to return peaceably home, that he and the Queen were safe, that nothing was acted but what he had commanded, and which he would at another time acquaint them with: so they departed peaceably, except a few that were left to watch. The banished Lords return, and are ready to answer their accusers, but none appeared against them. The Queen in the night-time escapes out at a back-door, where *Seton* with two hundred horse was ready to receive her, who first conveyed her to his own house, and thence to *Dumbar*, there having raised sufficient strength; she persecutes all those that had a hand in the death of *David*, some with banishment, some with fines, and some with death; she causeth *David* body to be transferred from before the Church-door where he was buried, into the next Kings tombe, which occasioned great obloquies among the people. Not long after she betakes her self to *Edinburgh-Castle*, where she is brought to bed of a Son, called *James* the sixth.

*James Melvijn* is sent to queen *Elizabeth* to signifie the birth of this young Prince; who presently sends *Henry Killebrew* to congratulate with her for her

*An. Christi*

1565.

1566.

*An. Christi.* safe deliverance, and to wish her not to favour any more *Shan-O-Neal* the Irish rebel, nor to entertain the English fugitives, and to punish the theevish borderers. Not long after, the Earl of *Bedford* is sent from *Queen Elizabeth*, being Godmother, with a Font of massie gold for a gift; and commanded that neither he nor any of his followers, should call the Lord *Darby* by the name of king: after the ceremony was finished, *Bedford* dealt with *queen Mary* about composing the differences between her and her husband; and ratifying the treaty at *Edinburgh*: this last she refused to doe, as being derogatory to her and her sons right unto the crown of *England*; yet she promiseth to send Commissioners to *queen Elizabeth* about this Treaty; and that she will forbear to use the Arms and Titles of *England*, whilst *queen Elizabeth* lived: But before these Commissioners were sent, about a moneth or two after the Prince was Christened, *Darby* the *Queens* husband is in the dead of the night villanously strangled in his bed, and cast into a garden, so was his servant that attended on him in his chamber, and then the house is blown up with Gun-powder; a rumor is spread that this was done by *Morton*, *Murry*, and their confederats, who laid it from themselves upon the *Queen*.

1567.

*Bothwell* being now reconciled to *Murry*, was the man who was employed to murder the king, in hope he might obtain the *Queens* marriage after: *Murry* goeth home fifteen houres before the murder, to avoid suspicion; afterward he with the conspirators perswades her to marry *Bothwell*, purposely to overthrow her. *Lenox* the kings father accuseth *Bothwell* of the regicide, who is commanded to bring in his accusations before the Parliament, within twenty dayes, which he durst not doe; having so many enemies in the City, and *Bothwell* so backt with friends; so *Bothwell* is acquitted, *Morton* maintaining his cause; and most of the Lords under their hands and seals gave their consents to the marriage; Upon this he is created Duke of *Orkney*, and a suspicion is raised that the *Queen* was consenting to her husbands death: wherefore the Conspirators intend to kill *Bothwell* and depose the *Queen*; *Murry* to avoid all suspicion goeth into *France*: Immediately after, these men that perswaded the marriage, raise arms against *Bothwell*, willing him secretly to be gone, left being taken, he discover the plot; and withall, that they might lay hold of his flight, as an argument to accuse the *Queen* of killing the King; but when they took her, they used her contumeliously, putting an old cloak on her, they thrust her in prison at *Locheleven*, under the custody of *Murry's* mother, king *James* the fifths Concubine, boasting that she was king *James* his lawfull wife; which insolencies were highly reſented by *queen Elizabeth*: Therefore she sends *Throgmorton* into *Scotland*, to expostulate with the Conspirators for their insolencies against their *Queen*; she desires her restauration and justice on the Regicides, and that the young king be sent rather into *England* then into *France* for his security.

But so much was *queen Mary* hated, that neither the English nor French Ambassadours could have access to her; some would have her restored, and *Bothwell* divorced; others will have her banished, others again desire she may be publickly arraigned and imprisoned; but *Knox* and his fellow-Ministers will have her deprived of life and kingdom, by a publick execution; at last by threatening her with death, for tyranny, incontinency, and violation of the laws, they forced her to put her hand to the Letters-patents which she never read, wherein she resignes her realm to her son, now thirteen moneths-old, makes *Murry* Regent, during the Kings minority, and if he refused, then *James* Duke of *Chastelroy*, *Mathew* Earl of *Lenox*, with *Argile*, *Morton*, *Glencarn*, and *Marre*. Five daies after this resignation, *James* her son was anointed, and crowned King, the Coronation Oath in his name was taken by the Earls of *Morton* and *Hume*, That he will maintain the Laws and Religion, as it is now established.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIV.

*An. Christi.*

A continuation of the Scots History under King James the 6. from the year 1567. till 1602.

When *Queen Mary* and *Bothwell* perceived that an Army was raised to apprehend them, they make an escape in disguised habits to *Dumbar*; in the interim the conspirators repair to *Edinburgh*, where *Hamilton*, *Huntley*, and other Lords of the *Queens* side were; these are driven into the Castle, being let in by *Balfour* the Captain, the City presently submits to the conspirators, a great number of all sorts flock to the *Queen*, who having now made up a sufficient Army, marcheth presently towards *Leith*; the sudden news whereof awakes *Edinburgh*, all the inhabitants are in Arms and in the field by break of day: As the two Armies were ready to joyn battel, *Croceus* the French Ambassador endeavours to make attonement, by shewing them the uncertainty and danger of a battel, and the *Queens* willingness to give a general pardon, and her propensity to peace: to whom *Morton* answered, That he took Arms not against the *Queen*, but the murderers of the King, whom if she will either punish, or put from her, they will lay down Arms and submit to her; Neither are we come (saith he) to desire, but to grant a pardon: So upon this resolute answer, *Croceus* takes his leave and returns to *Edinburgh*; *Bothwell* to end the controversy, challengeth any one of the conspirators Army to fight with him, three after each other present themselves, but the *Queen* would not give way: the Lords that were with her, finding the unwillingness of the common souldier to fight in this quarrel, desire the *Queen* to forbear fighting till some other time, whereupon *Bothwell* perceiving his own danger, escapes to *Dumbar* in great haste and fear.

The *Queen* understanding that *Huntley*, and Archbishop *Hamilton* were coming with some forces, she desires of the Army leave to meet them, promising to return, but this is denied, divers of her souldiers railing against her, and holding out one of their colours, in which was painted King *Henry* lying dead, and his infant-son by him, praying to God for vengeance on the paricides; at which fight the *Queen* swooned, who towards the evening was brought to *Edinburgh* in great contempt, the streets being filled with people to see her. That Banner we spake of, was the next day presented again to her as she looked out at a window, complaining of her wrongs; the day after she is sent prisoner to *Loch-Leven*: *Bothwell* finding no security for himself, nor help for the *Queen*, flies into the *Orkades*, thence into *Sheland*, and at last turns Pyrat. The *Queen* as we have said, is forced to resign her Crown, and *Murry* being lately returned from *France*, is by the conspiring Lords made Regent.

Shortly after the Infant-King was crowned, a Parliament is summoned, where it was ordered that a fleet should be sent to catch *Bothwell*, who did much hurt in the Northern-seas; but though some of his fellow-pyrats were taken, yet he escaped into *Denmark*, where being known by some Merchants, is laid in irons, so he continued in much misery for ten years, and then falling mad, died. Not long after this, an Ambassador comes from *France*, shewing that his Commission was to speak with the *Queen*, or else to return instantly; the Regent told him, that it was not in his power to help him to the speech of the *Queen* without their consent that imprisoned her, but to gratifie him, he promiseth to call the Lords together for that purpose; in the interim the *Queen* having bribed a boat-man is conveyed over the lake, they in the Castle made haste to follow her, but could not, for all the boats were drawn on the dry ground, and bored through with many holes; the *Queen* had horses laid for her, and so gets to *Hamilton* a small Town eight miles from *Glasgow*, where she



*An. Christi.* she is guarded with five hundred horse, and a great many more flock to her from all parts: the French Ambassador goeth to and fro, pretending a pacification, but indeed he encourageth the Queen to fight, who was now 6500 strong, whereas the Regent was scarce 4000. A battell is fought, wherein the Queens horse had the better a while, till they were so galled by the Regents archers, that they were forced to flie to the Queen, who about a mile off beheld the fight; she with her horse flie towards *England*. The Regent appoints a Parliament, which the Queens party do what they can to hinder, queen *Elizabeth* also sends letters to him for that end, that he should not be too hasty in determining any thing against the Queens party, whom she would not suffer to receive wrong from her subjects.

The Regent, notwithstanding those letters, calls a Parliament, in which it was questioned, Whether all they that assisted the Queen should not be condemned of treason, and their estates confiscated? At last it was resolved, that some should be punished for example sake. Shortly after the Regent raiseth an Army, and subdueth those parts that stood out for the queen: but queen *Elizabeth*s letters put some stay to his proceedings; for she was informed by the banished Lords, that queen *Mary* was extremely wronged by her subjects, and the Majesty of Princes slighted, if this power should be tolerated in people to depose their Princes; therefore she desires Commissioners may be sent to inform her truly of his proceedings, and to clear himself of the crimes objected against him. This seemed harsh to the Regent, that things already decided should be again questioned; yet knowing that if queen *Elizabeth* should fall off from him, he should be exposed to inevitable danger, having *Lorrain* the Queens uncle, who ruled the Court of *France*, against him, and divers of the Scottish Nobility, therefore he appoints certain Commissioners to go, but perceiving them unwilling, he goeth himself with two Lords, one Bishop, one Abbot, two Lawyers, and *George Buchanan*, he takes also with him *William Metland*, fearing to leave so publike a man, and so well-affected to queen *Mary* behind him; his whole train was but an hundred horse. At *York* he is met by the Duke of *Norfolk*, (who was thought to marry with queen *Mary*) the Earl of *Sussex*, and Sir *Ralph Sadler*; A few dayes after, queen *Maries* Commissioners came to complain against the Regents proceedings, who excuseth himself that he acted nothing but by consent of Parliament: queen *Elizabeth* sends for two of the Regents side, to be fully instructed in the particulars; *Metland* and *Macgill* are sent; and at last the Regent is desired to come to the Court, that the queen might know what he could say for himself, or against queen *Mary*.

In this mean while rumours are spread abroad in *Scotland*, that the Regent went about to betray the kingdom and the young king to the English, whereupon great commotions and distempers began to break out; the Regent to prevent them was willing to be gone, and so was queen *Elizabeth* to gain the more time for queen *Mary*, therefore she adviseth him to leave one of his friends behind, that might answer to any crime that might be objected against him. But *Hamilton* now being returned from *France*, is set on by the banished Queens side to stand for the Regencie, as being so neer in blood to the young King; but his suit is denied him, because by many instances it was proved, that there is less danger for a young Prince to be under the tuition of strangers then of a neer kinsman who aimeth at the Crown, as may be seen in king *Richard 3.* of *England* his cruelty to his brothers sons: Therefore *Hamilton* is detained in *England*, till the young Kings Commissioners were first gone, lest new troubles might be raised. But because rumours were spread of divers plots to kill the Regent in his journey homeward, queen *Elizabeth* gives order that all the suspected ways through which he was to travel should be strongly guarded.

The Regent being returned safely into *Edinburgh*, a great meeting ensued of the Kings Lords at *Sterlin*, who ratified all that was concluded and agreed upon

upon with the *English* last; *Hamilton* also being returned is forced to submit to the Kings side, for he found that help came not to him as he expected; and that the Regent had an Army in readines; but when he understood that queen *Mary* had more liberty in *England* then before, and that she was to marry with the Duke of *Norfolk*, he began to fall off again from the conspiring Lords; wherefore he is sent with *Maxwel* to *Edinburgh-Castle*. *Argile* is questioned for comming to *Glasgow* with fifteen hundred men, purposely to raise the Country for the Queen whilst the Regent was absent; but he upon his submission, and taking the oath of allegiance is pardoned. *Humiley* also is accused in raising forces for the Queen, and in oppressing of divers families, and he likewise is absolved, but withall is enjoined to make restitution to those whom he had wronged.

After this the Regent makes a journey into *Aberden*, *Elgin* and *Inverness*, for settling of these places and the Northern Countries; thence returning into *Perth*, he receives letters from the Queen of *England* which he imparts to the Nobility being summoned thither; the contents of these letters were, That either Queen *Mary* should be restored to her former dignities, or else that she may be colleague with her son in the government; or if neither of these could be obtained, that she may live privately at home, and be made capable of such honours as might not be derogatory to the young King; this last clause was assented to, but they would not yeeld that the Kings power should be any wayes impaired. Then were read Queen *Maries* letters, wherein she desires that if her marriage with *Bothwel* be unlawful, she might be divorced: At this the Conspirators were offended, in that she stiled her self Queen, and wrote to them as subjects; therefore they thought her letters not fit to be answered, shewing that her best way to dissolve the marriage, were to send to the King of *Denmark* to do justice on *Bothwel* as the murtherer of her husband, and so he being dead, she might marry with whom she pleased. Then an Agent is sent to Queen *Elizabeth*, with the Regents answer to her letters, with which she was not satisfied, but desires further satisfaction; upon this *Petcarne* is sent to acquaint her, that for divers reasons they could not admit Queen *Mary* into any share of the government, fearing that she who was so unnatural to her husband, would not be too kinde to her son, having obtained her Crown and dignity from her.

Mean while a plot is detected in *England*, that Queen *Mary* and *Norfolk* were suddenly to marry, and that they might obtain both Kingdomes without opposition, Queen *Elizabeth* and King *James* were to be murdered at one time; hereupon *Norfolk* is sent to the Tower, and Queen *Mary* is appointed to be sent home to the Regent by sea; but this resolution is altered: About the same time *Metland* and *Balfour* Captain of *Edinburgh-Castle*, are convented before the Lords for holding correspondencie with Queen *Mary*, but both are pardoned, onely *Metland* is confined to a private house in *Edinburgh*, whom *Kircady* the Captain of that Castle got into his custody; by feigning the Regents letters, as if he had written to *Kircady* to take *Metland* into his custody, at which the Lords were angry, the Regent sends for *Kircady*, who refuseth to come; hence it was conceived that he sided with the Queen, who was now said to be comming with *Norfolk* out of *England*; but it was otherwayes, for he is sent to the Tower, and she is confined: the Regent notwithstanding his repulse, goeth up next day into the Castle, and having conferred with *Kircady*, comes away thence well-pleased, and marcheth towards the borders to suppress the Rebels there, which he did to the great content of Queen *Elizabeth*, who also thanked him for apprehending *Northumberland*, who fled thither out of *England*, whom the Regent imprisoned in *Loch-Levin*.

Queen *Maries* faction perceiving the Regents power to increase daily, by the correspondencie he held with Queen *Elizabeth*, and finding that no good could be done so long as he lived, they combine to kill him; therefore one day

*An. Christi.* as he rode through the streets of *Lithgo*, he was shot by one *Hamilton* out of a private place through the body a little beneath the navil; finding himself hurt he lights from his horse, and is carried to his lodging, where he died shortly after; *Hamilton* escapes into *France*: upon the death of *Murrey* great disorders arose, *Metland* and other prisoners are let out of the Castle; great debating there was who should be Regent, and by what power he should be chosen. 1571. *Car* and *Scot* with some forces they had raised, invade the borders of *England* with fire and sword: *Queen Elizabeth* sends *Kandolph* to complain, and to desire the Lords to unite themselves to choose a Regent, and to settle the Kingdom, that justice may be done on those who had invaded her borders; but when no redresse could be had, she sends an Army under the Earl of *Suffex* to assist the Kings side against the other faction who stood out for the Queens; these understanding that the Army was upon their march, write letters to the Queen of *England* to be conveyed by the Earl of *Suffex*, who is desired by Queen *Maries* side; not to march further till he should receive the Queens answer; but he suspecting that these were delatory letters to gain time, and his charge being to make haste, openeth them, wherein he findes nothing but brags and threatnings, therefore he marcheth on.

When the queens faction heard that the *English* Army was on the borders, they remove presently from *Edinburgh* to *Linnmurchum*, where the Earls of *Huntley*, *Aran* and *Argile* call a Parliament; the Kings faction sends to the queen of *England* to have her assistance in naming of a Regent, shewing they should be ready to imbrace him whom she will nominate; in the interim the *English* Army fall with fire and sword upon the *Cars* and *Scots* Territories who had lately invaded *England*: *Hume*-Castle with much wealth in it, is surrendered to *Suffex*, upon hope that he had been of *Norfolks* faction. The Lord *Scrupe* on the other side enters *Anandel*, and spoils the lands of the *Johnstons*, who had also invaded *England*. The *Hamiltons* upon the report of the *English* Army hasten to *Glasgow* to pull down the Archbishops Castle, fearing lest *Lenox* returning from *England* should make it the seat of the war; they besiege the Castle to no end, for it held out so long, that upon the coming of the *English* Army to *Edinburgh* they rise from the siege, and hasten away; *Huntley* goeth home, *Hamilton* and *Argile* into *Argiles* Country; the *English* two dayes after come to *Glasgow*, and spoil all the lands belonging to the *Hamiltons*, or those who had a hand in the Regents death, or who had received any *English* fugitives; they set on fire the *Hamiltons* Palace, with the Town, and beat down a part of the Castle; so the *English* return to *Barwick*, and the *Scots* who aided them to their homes.

In the interim *Petcarne* returns from the Queen of *England*, who wonders that after four moneths they should now acquaint her with their business; she tells them that the Ambassadors of *Spain* and *France* had importuned her to hear the complaints of Queen *Mary*, which she had promised to do, if in the mean while queen *Mary* will give order that her side will forbear all acts of hostility, and suffer things to remain as they were in the Regents time; but she will have no hand in choosing them a new Regent, lest she should seem to wrong queen *Mary*, her cause being not yet heard; but withall she wisheth them to forbear a while the naming of a new Regent: At this the Kings side was troubled, fearing lest by this delay the Queens faction would gather strength, therefore they resolve to choose an Inter-Rex, or Vice-Roy for a while, till Queen *Elizabeths* business at home be settled, who was troubled about the Popes Bull against her, in procuring of which (so it was given out) the queen of *Scots* had a hand: Then they name for their Viceroy Matthew Earl of *Lenox* the young Kings Grandfather; mean while Queen *Elizabeth* writes that she will not name any Regent for them, but she thinks none fitter for that place then *Lenox*, as being nearest and dearest to the young King; so he is presently of a Viceroy made Regent.

He

*An. Christi.* He having taken his oath, gives order for raising of an Army to hinder the Parliament appointed by the Queens faction, and withall summons a Parliament in the Kings name to be held in *Edinburgh*: then he sends to the Governor of *Edinburgh*-Castle for some Brasse-guns and other warlike necessities; at first he promised, but afterward denied, shewing he was for peace, not war; notwithstanding the Regent with five thousand goeth to *Linnmurchum*, where hearing of some forces of *Brechin* placed there by *Huntley*, who was raising an Army in the north, to hinder his design sends a party to *Brechin*, at the news of whose approach *Ogleby* and *Balfour* fled, leaving a garrison, who maintained the Church-Tower and the Countesse of *Mars* Castle a while against the Regents forces, but at length yielded, and thirty of them were hanged: *Huntley* finding that supplies came not as he expected, removes farther north; the Regent returns him to *Edinburgh* to the Parliament, where nothing was acted against the murderers of the Regent, because *Q. Maries* cause was not yet heard. In the interim the Queens side sollicite the Pope, *Spain*, and *France*, to send forces into *England* for restoring of *Q. Mary*. *Montgomery* Earle of *Eglinton* with some others submit to the Regent, who had lately hurt himself by a fall from his horse. An attempt is made upon *Dunbritton*-Castle, which with much difficulty at last they took by scaling-ladders; *Fleming* the Captain escaped into *Argile*; but *Hamilton* the Archbishop of *S. Andrews*, with some other prime men, and the French Agent who lay there as a Spy, are apprehended. The Regent hearing that the Castle was taken, in great joy hasteneth thither, where he restores to *Flemings* wife her plate and household-stuffe; and wondering at the courage of the souldiers who could venture to scale such an inaccessible Rock, commends them highly. The French Agent is accused for robbing some Merchants, wherefore he is sent to *S. Andrews* to answer to their suit, but he escaped from thence. There was also an English-man taken and sent home, who afterward was found to have been sent by the *Norfolkians* purposely to poyson the young King. The Archbishop being found guilty both of the Kings death and Regents, was hanged at *Sterlin*; his chief accuser was a Priest, to whom one *John Hamilton* a principal actor in the Kings death had confessed the whole murder secretly.

*Morton* being returned from his *English* embassie, gave an account thereof before the Lords at *Sterlin*; How they had exhibited in writing to *Q. Elizabeth* the reasons that moved them to depose *Q. Mary*, alleading divers precedents out of ancient and modern histories, of the like deposition of Princes by their people; but yet the Queen was not fully satisfied of the legality of this fact, therefore she desires there may be an expedient found out for composing the differences betwixt her and her subjects; it was answered by the Commissioners, that they had no commission to treat about any expedient, nor could they consent to the diminishing of their Kings power, nor if they did consent, would the Scots Nobility allow it; upon this the Queen checkt them for being so stiffe in their resolutions, in not harkening to an accommodation, and withall she desires them to confer again with her Commissioners, with whom they had conference the other day; to this they condiscended, but this conference took no effect; wherefore the Queen wisheth that in the next Scottish Parliament the matter may be discussed; but she would not permit the Scots to depart home, untill the Bishop of *Rosse* who was one of Queen *Maries* Agents, had received answer from his Queen of these passages; at last her answer came, wherein she complaines of the hard measure offered to her by her subjects; therefore Queen *Elizabeth* wisheth them to shew their duty to their Prince, upon her true repentance; and so she dismisseth them.

The Commissioners having finished their relation, a Parliament is appointed to be held at *Edinburgh*; but because the Queens party were masters of the Town, they resolve to sit in the suburbs; in the interim it is proclaimed at

Ffff

Leith;

*An. Christi.* Leith, that no provisions or arms either by sea or land be brought to *Edinburgh* upon pain of treason; the Herald was accompanied with about an hundred horse and foot, on whom some Citizens sallied out as they were returning home near the walls, but were beat in again. Whilst the Parliament sat without the Town, they within call a Parliament of their own; the Castle in the interim plaid with their Ordinance upon the Kings Parliament, but no hurt was done. When both the Assemblies were dismissed, two hundred and twenty muskietiers, and a hundred horse, with two field-peeces, are sent out of *Edinburgh* against *Dalketh*, where the Earl *Mortons* house was, who hearing of this presently arms two hundred foot and sixty horse; a skirmish followed, in which the Queens men were put to run, which the City-garrison perceiving sends out presently fish forces, who put *Mortons* men to flee, some were slain and taken on both sides, some also of the Queens party were killed by a barrel of gunpowder accidentally having taken fire. Some bickering also there was between the two factions about a company of Scots souldiers lately arrived out of *Denmark*; these intended all to serve the King, but six and twenty of them were intercepted at *Leith* by the Queens party, and carried to *Edinburgh*-Castle.

When *Drury* the English Agent, who had been mediating for peace, to no purpose, was upon going away, a skirmish fell out between the two factions, in which the Queens party was worsted by *Mortons* forces, who killed fifty of the enemy, and took a hundred and fifty prisoners; almost there were daily skirmishes: the Regent kept *Leith* to intercept all provisions by sea from the *Edinburghers*; land-provisions could not be cut off, being so many ways to bring it: A French vessel laden with arms, in which also good store of money is found, was taken; the money paid the souldiers, and the arms were carried to *Sterlin*; shortly after another French ship was taken with letters from the French, promising speedy aid to the Queens party. The Regent being gone to *Sterlin*, the *Edinburghers* with all their forces march out into the field, to draw the Kings party out of *Leith*; who sallying out furiously, drove their enemies back to *Edinburgh*, of whom they killed and took divers.

After this, the Queens party with two hundred horse and three hundred foot march out of *Famburgh* towards *Sterlin*, by the way they presse all the horses they found, then be times in the morning they enter the Town without resistance, all being secure and asleep; they beset the Lords lodgings with armed men, *Mortons* house they set on fire, and himself having escaped the fire they took prisoner, the Regent is also taken, the Earls of *Glencarn* and *Eglinton* are secured: *Areskin* Captain of the Castle sends some companies of muskietiers to seize upon his own house, not then quite finished, which looked full upon the market-place possessed by the enemy, who being sore galled by the muskietiers fled confusedly to the gates, in the narrow streets (making more haste then good speed) many of them are trampled upon; the Regents life was saved a while by *David Spence*, who to keep off the blows received them himself, and died the same day of his wounds, two of those that killed him were put to death, the other prisoners in the flight escaped, and the Regent himself also died of his wounds that day. Three Regents are named till the next Parliament, to wit, *Argile*, *James Douglass* Earle of *Morton*, and *Areskin*-Earle of *Mar*; He by all the suffrages is preferred to the rest, who resolves to besiege *Edinburgh*, but it was so strengthened that he could do no good that way; after this for divers months there were many excursions and skirmishes and divers slain on both sides.

About this time the North was much troubled by the falling out of two great families, the *Gordons* and the *Forbeses*; these were for the young King, but the *Gordons* for the Queen: the quarrel grew to that height, that near *Aberdeen* a great battel was fought, in which the *Gordons* had the upper hand; many other skirmishes were between the two great factions, till *Edinburgh* was

*An. Christi.* was strictly besieged by the Regent, who pulled down all the Mills near, and intercepted all the provision that came thither, and made garrisons of all the Noblemens houses round about: *Blacknesse* is betrayed to *Hamilton*, by which means all navigation between *Leith* and *Sterlin* is hindred. Mean time the King of *Spain* sends from the *Low-Countries* seven great peeces of Ordnanee with powder and arms to *Huntley* Lieutenant of the North, for queen *Maries* use, who sends the Lord *Seaton* to the Duke of *Alba* for his aid, and that he would forbid the Scottish rebels to traffick there; he answers, That he would aid her with money, but he could not hinder the Scots from trading, because it was contrary to the liberty of the *Low-Countries*.

The Bishop of *Rosse* Agent for the Queen of *Scots*, is committed into custody of the Bishop of *London*, because he had secretly kindled the Rebellion in the North: but being now delivered, deals with the French king, that he would use means with queen *Elizabeth* for delivering of queen *Mary*, which queen *Elizabeth* would not assent to, as being dangerous to her self and kingdome, seeing queen *Mary* aspired by all evil courses (saith she) unto the kingdome of *England*; yet she urgeth a confirmation of the Treaty of *Edinburgh*, which in part was assented to, so far as concerned *Elizabeths* title, but the Scots could not be induced to break their old league with *France*, except *England* would allow them the same priviledges and benefits they have in *France*. The Bishop of *Ros* is searched for letters sent to him from the D. of *Alba* about *Elizabeths* deliverance, and is sent away into the Isle of *Ely*; some money also which *Mary* sent to her friends in *Scotland* is intercepted. *Rosse* being found to have often conference with *Elizabeths* enemies, is committed to the Tower, after it had been argued by the Lawyers, that an Ambassador loseth his priviledge who raiseth rebellion. The Regent *Mar*, having ruled 13 moneths, died.

To him in the Regencie succeeded *James Douglass* Earle of *Morton*, who enacted certain lawes against Papiests and Hereticks: the custody of the King is committed to *Alexander Areskin*, because the Earle of *Mar* was under age, to whom by peculiar right doth belong the custody of the king in his minority; and it was ordered that none should be admitted into the kings presence but such as were unarmed, that Papiests and they of the Queens side should be excluded, that an Earle might come in with two men, a Baron with one, and other men alone. *Hamilton* Duke of *Chastelroy*, and *Huntley*, are drawn by queen *Elizabeths* means to submit to the king and his Regent, and to acknowledge the religion established; she sends also Sir *William Drury* with forces into *Scotland*, to joyn with the Scots in reducing of *Edinburgh*-Castle, which was at last surrendered the 33. day of the siege, *Kircady* the governour is hanged. The Bishop of *Rosse* is banished out of *England*, who notwithstanding leaves not to sollicite foreign Princes in queen *Maries* behalf, who all gave good words, but did nothing. King *Henry 3.* of *France*, and his mother, labour what they can to get young king *James* into *France*, so did queen *Mary*, hoping thereby the Catholikes would be more mildly dealt with here. *Mary* is blamed also for contriving a marriage between *Charles* uncle to the Scots king, and *Elizabeth Canisish* daughter to the Countesse of *Shrewsbury*. The Duke of *Chastelroy*, and the Earle of *Arran*, who were *Maries* faithful friends, died this year. Don *John* of *Austria* intends to marry with the queen of *Scots*, therefore deals with the Pope about the expulsion of *Elizabeth*, and sollicitates the king of *Spain* to invade *England*. *Morton* the Regent is removed from his regencie, and the government is delivered to the king being now twelve years old, and to twelve Noblemen, of whom three every three moneths should be present with the king to advise him, of these *Morton* was one; but he loth to leave his greatnes, drew all the power to himself, and kept in his hand the king within the castle of *Sterlin*, wherewith the other Lords were angry, who made the Earle of *Athol* their Captain, and raised an Army, whereupon *Morton* yielded and went home secretly, and *Athol* died incontinently, not without suspicion of poyson.

*An. Christi.* 1579. *Esmens Stuart*, son of *John* brother to *Matthew* Earl of *Lenox* the Kings grand-father, and called *Aubigny* of a Town in *Berry*, which was bestowed upon *John Stuart* by king *Charles* 7. for defeating the English at *Daugy*, is now come into Scotland to see his Cousin, who made him a Privy-Councillor, Lord Chamberlain of Scotland, Captain of *Dunbritton*, Earl of *Lenox*, and after Duke, which procured some envy on the King as a favourer of the *Guises* and Roman religion; therefore the Ministers and some envious Lords raised one *James Stuart* of the family of *Ochiltree*, Captain of the Guard and Earl of *Arran*, to affront him; but the King in short time reconciled them: Then they accuse him to queen *Elizabeth*, as one sent by the *Guises* against the Protestants, to free the Queen, and to dissolve the amity between *England* and *Scotland*; but he cleared all objections, and shewed himself a Protestant: It was also feared, that by *Dunbritton* he would either let in the French, or transport the King into France; and that he perswaded the King to resign to his Mother the Crown, and take it again by a lawfull resignation: Hereupon *Robert Bomes* is sent to challenge *Lenox* before the King and his Council; but before his cause was heard or known, he would have him removed from the Council, which was denied as a thing not heard of; withall they desire him to shew his Instructions, which he denied, and so being unheard was called home.

1580. Upon this, *Alexander Hume* is sent to queen *Elizabeth*, who admitted him not, but sends him to *Burleigh*, who complained that the Queens Ambassador was slighted, and the Kings French cousin, a Papist, and who perhaps aimed at the Crown, was preferred to the Queen of *England*: so *Hume* is sent back, with a caveat to the King to beware of the French plots and faction. In the interim 1581. *Morton* is accused by *Arran* of treason, and imprisoned, though a great friend for *England*; therefore Sir *Thomas Randolph* is sent into *Scotland* to conserve amity with *England*, to defend *Morton* from wrong, and to remove *Lenox*; He told both the King and his Council, what queen *Elizabeth* had done in freeing *Scotland* from the French, in defending their King and Religion, without taking a foot of Scottish ground; that now *Lenox* hath diverted the Kings mind from her to the French, slighteth the Ministers, and puts out the Kings best officers. The King told him, that he acknowledgeth the Queens good will, but that *Lenox* was wronged; that in justice he must bring to trial a man accused of treason. Then *Randolph* strives to stir up *Argile* and some other Lords, to effect by arms what they could not do otherwayes, shewing that English forces were ready on the borders to joyn with them; but this took not effect with these Lords. *Angus* and *Mar* devised plots for *Morton* against *Lenox*; but the King banisheth *Angus* beyond the river of *Spey*, and the Castle of *Sterlin* is taken from *Mar*. *Randolph* fearing danger to himself, got away secretly by sea to *Barwick*; the English forces are called back from the borders; and *Morton*, as privy to the murder of the kings father, is beheaded; *Angus* 40 with others who stood in his defence, fled into *England*.

1582. *William Ruthen*, lately made Earl of *Gowry*, with *Mar*, *Lindsey* and others, in the absence of *Lenox* and *Arran*, invite the king into the Castle of *Ruthen*, where they detain him violently, and put away his best servants, they imprison *Arran*, and call back *Angus*, and send away *Lenox* into France; they force the King to approve this his surpris, by his letters to queen *Elizabeth*; the French King hearing of this, sends two Ambassadors to set the King free, and to confirm the French faction: queen *Mary* in the mean while in her letters to queen *Elizabeth* bewaileth the hard condition and miseries of her son now detained 50 as a prisoner by Rebels, who had been the cause of all her miseries, and withall blameth queen *Elizabeth* for countenancing and supporting such, shewing her needlesse jealousies and fears, and how she had perswaded her to resign her kingdom, and had denied her assistance when she had escaped out of *Lochelewin*, when she sent back the Diamond which she had received from queen *Elizabeth* as a pledge of her love, and how she suffered her (when she escaped to

*An. Christi.* to *England* for shelter, as her last assured anchor) to be intercepted and guarded with keepers, and to be shut up in strong places till now; she clears her self also of any combination with *Norfolk* prejudicial to queen *Elizabeth*, upon whose perswasion she had suffered divers of her friends to be put to death in *Scotland*; therefore she desires, that she may have some more liberty, however some Catholick Priest to direct her in Religion, a courtier not, denying to foreign Ambassadors; as for the suggestions of *Beal* about her transferring her right of *Scotland* to her son, without queen *Elizabeths* promise, she desires that he may not be credited, and so concludes, wishing her to commiserate a distressed queen, and her nearest cousin. 1583.

These letters much trouble queen *Elizabeth*, who sends *Beal* a Clerk of the Council to expostulate with her for her complaining letters; the Council of *England* was content she should be delivered, conditionally, That she practice nothing against queen *Elizabeth*; That she would disallow as unjust what was done by king *Francis* her husband; That she claim no right to *England* during the life of queen *Elizabeth*; That she procure the king and States of *Scotland* to confirm these, and give hostages withall; but the Scots of the English faction rejected these proposals. About this time the Earl of *Lenox* died; the Ambassadors depart unsatisfied, and the king escapeth from the government 20 of the three Lords to the Castle of *S. Andrews*, and openly declares that this his surprisal was traitorous, yet the busie-headed Ministers in their Synod pronounced the same to be just, darting out Excommunications against the disapprovers thereof.

*Gowry* with some others conspire to take the King again, pretending his good, the security of Religion, and amity with *England*: but *Gowry* is apprehended and imprisoned; his other conspirators suddenly surpris *Sterling*, and as suddenly quitted it out of fear and want of supplies from *England*. *Murr*, *Glames* and *Angus* fled unto queen *Elizabeth* for her help and mediation with the King; in the interim *Gowry* is arraigned before his Peers at *Sterling*, for imprisoning the King and conspiring against him, for intending to seize upon 30 *Perth* and *Sterling*, for resisting the Kings authority at *Dundee*, who being found guilty was beheaded: queen *Elizabeth* makes shew of a treaty with queen *Mary*, if she would mediate with her son for the Scots fugitive Lords, and detect the plots of the *Guises*: for the first queen *Mary* was content to mediate, if these Lords would submit and turn loyal; for the second, she refused till she were fully assured of her liberty; for she will not lose certain friends for uncertain hopes, therefore she desires the same usage from her which she had from her sister queen *Mary* when she was her prisoner, or the King of *Navarre* from the French king; but this Treaty was put off, and came 40 to nothing, upon discovery of some letters carried by *Crichton* the Jesuite, importing the invasion of *England* by the Pope, *Spaniards* and *Guises*: then she sends *Naumes* her Secretary with proffers of entertaining a strict league of amity with queen *Elizabeth*, of renouncing all claim to *England* during her life, of acting nothing against her, or the rebellious Scots, and their Religion, nor in her sons marriage without the privy of queen *Elizabeth*.

But the Presbyterian Ministers, and their upholders, crossed all means of pacification; so the Pulpit being advanced above the Throne, all went as the Presbytery would have it, till this year they were curbed by some wholesome Laws advancing the Kings power over them, and restraining Presbyterial assemblies, and abrogating equality of Ministers by restoring the Bishops; and condemning slanderous books against the king and his mother; mean while Queen *Mary* is taken from the custody of *Shrewsbury* after fifteen years, and is committed to *Paulet* and *Drury*, purposely to make her fall upon desperate attempts; strange whispers went abroad about the deposition of queen *Elizabeth*, and the marriage of queen *Mary* with some Noble English Catholick, but who this man should be could not be found out. About this time 50

Henry

*An. Christi.* Henry Percie E. of Northumberland being a prisoner in the Tower, and suspected to have been a plotter against Queen Elizabeth, murdered himself; upon the discovery of Babbingtons treason, Queen Maries closet is broken open whilst she was hunting abroad, and all her cabinets, desks and papers are sent to the Court; all her money also was seized on, divers letters of strangers were found, and about sixty kinds of cyphers; divers letters also of English Lords offering their service to her, which the Queen dissembled; Queen Maries two Secretaries were examined, and confessed that she knew of Babbingtons plot, wherefore Commissioners are sent to Fodrington-Castle to examine Queen Mary, and to pronounce sentence of death, if found guilty: when they came they delivered her Queen Elizabeths letters, which she read with great and Princely magnanimity, shewing she was a Queen, and not subject to their Laws, nor was she guilty of what she was accused; therefore refuseth to appear or answer as a criminal, or to admit that law lately made against her, yet upon perswasions she appears, divers accusations were brought in against her, of which (though she stoutly defended herself) yet she was found guilty. Shortly after the Parliament petitioneth that she might be put to death, which Q. Elizabeth seemingly refused to consent to, as being a dangerous president.

Yet shortly after Buckhurst and Beal are sent to Queen Mary to acquaint her with the sentence given against her, and that therefore she should repent and prepare her self; upon this she answered, That she was exceedingly glad for being accounted an instrument of re-establishing religion in this Island; so she desires a Catholick priest, then she writes a letter to Queen Elizabeth, desiring her body might be sent into France there to be laid by her mother, and not into Scotland where violence hath been offered to the ashes of her Ancestors, that so she may have rest after death, who could never enjoy any in her life. Secondly, she desires to die publicly that she might witnesse her faith in Christ, and her obedience to the Church. Thirdly, that her servants might peaceably depart, and enjoy the legacies she had bestowed on them.

King James being much afflicted about the sentence of death against his mother, sent divers Ambassadors to Queen Elizabeth, shewing how much he was bound both in honour and nature to intercede for a Queen, and his mother, how dishonourable and dangerous it might be to Queen Elizabeth to shed the blood of a Queen so near to her: but the Ministers of Scotland, and the rest of her enemies were so earnest and prevalent with queen Elizabeth, that the Kings letters could not prevail, nor the French kings Ambassadors which he also sent to this purpose; besides the Queen was affrighted daily with rumors of the Spanish fleet, of the Scots invasion, of the Guises preparations, of domestick rebellions, of plots to murder her, all to hasten the Scots queens death, therefore she delivers to Davison her Secretary letters signed with her hand, that a mandate should be made under the Great-seal for her execution, and to be in readinesse if need should be. This mandate is presently conveyed to the Queens Counsellors by him, and dispatched away to Shrewsbury, Kent, Derby and Cumberland, which four Earls came to her, willing her to prepare, for she was to die the next day; she with a settled minde answered, That death was welcome to her, and that her soul was not worthy of eternal joy, whose body cannot endure the Executioners blow; she desired the speech of her Confessor which was denied her, yet she wrote to him that he would pray for her; that night she supped, drunk to her servants encouraging them, she read over her last will, then went to bed, slept a while, and spent the rest of that night in prayer.

The next day she came in a Majestick manner to the Scaffold, carrying the Crucifix before her, where having professed her constancie to the Roman religion, and taking leave of her friends and servants, laid down her neck on the block, repeating these words, *Into thy hands, O Lord, I commend my spirit;* and so at two blows her head was cut off, her body was buried in Peterburgh-Church,

*An. Christi.* Church, and her magnificent funeral kept at Paris at the charges of the Guises, she lived forty six years, and was a captive eighteen: when Q. Elizabeth heard of her death she was ready to swoon for grief, she commands her Counsellors, to come no more into her presence, and Davison to be brought into the Star-chamber; then she writes a letter to King James, shewing how without her knowledge his mother was put to death, and how grievous it is to her; withall she assures him, none shall be more affectionated to him, nor so careful of him as her self; mean while Davison is sharply reprov'd in the Star-chamber for his forwardnesse, and fined ten thousand pounds, and imprisonment at the Queens pleasure.

The King was so displeased at the death of his mother, that he would not suffer the English Ambassador to come into Scotland, and would hardly hear him by another man, or receive his letters; he called home his own Ambassador out of England, and threatneth revenge; the Estates of Scotland proffer to spend their lives and estates in this quarrel; some perswade him to require a Navy of the King of Denmark, to whose daughter he began to be a Suitor; some would have him joyn with Spain and France, and the Pope, and that he should not trust Protestants who had killed his mother, lest they also kill the children; some would rather have him stand as neuter, but others advised him to keep peace with England, and be constant to his Religion. Queen Elizabeth perceiving the French tampering with King James to withdraw him from his religion and amity with England, sends to him, to let him see how dangerous it will prove to him and his Kingdome to fall out with England at this time, how uncertain the aids of France and Spain will be; how he may by this lose his claim to the Crown of England, and how she will be a mother to him; withall she sends him the sentence against Davison, and the Judges of Englands opinion, shewing that the sentence against his mother was no wayes prejudicial to his right of succession.

From this time till the coming of King James into England, fell out no matters of great concernment in Scotland, except the driving of some Spanish ships (after the Armado was defeated) upon the Islands of Orkney; the voyage of King James to bring home his new married Queen Anne from Denmark; the attempt that Bothwel made upon the King and Queen in their chambers, from whence he was repulsed and forced to flye; some of whose Pages and followers were apprehended and hanged, for which treasonable attempt of his he is proclaimed Traitor, and because he was harboured by the Earl of Murray, contrary to the proclamation, Huntley by command seisceth on Murray in his own house and kills him; Bothwel in the interim escapes into England, where he lurked a while, and from thence returning is apprehended and confined, he endeavours to raise a rebellion, but to no purpose. This year Prince Henry was born; divers contestations the King had with the Presbyterian Ministers about the Bishops and Church-government; in which the King was extreemly vexed, persecuted and preached against by them, whose power was at that time no lesse formidable then the Popes heretofore. About this time was fought that cruel battel of Avinion between Huntley and Argile, in which seven hundred of Argiles side were slain, and the rest put to flight; these stirs were raised and fomented by some rigid Presbyterian Ministers, as Robert Bruce Super-intendent of Edinburgh, Balquankel and others, because the King kept correspondency with Catholick Princes, and was not cruel enough against the Papists in Scotland; therefore they encourage Bothwel against the King, though he had been proclaimed Traitor, and furnished him with money which they had gathered for redeeming of some Protestant Scots from the Turks; Bothwel with three hundred horse surpriseth Leith, the King desires the assistance of the Edinburghers against him, but they would not stir, being forbid by their Ministers to help the King, so that he was forced to come up to the Church of S. Giles, and there publicly before the people held up his hand



*An. Christi* hand and protested he would be an utter enemy to the Papists; whereupon the Citizens take Arms, whereby *Bothwells* hopes were frustrated, who cursed the Ministers for deluding him thus.

Upon this the King was forced by the importunity of the Ministers, to make *Argile* (who was their great Protector) Lieutenant of the North, a man unfit for that employment, as being of too haughty and cruel a disposition, and besides weak in horse, though powerful enough in foot-forces; the King also was persuaded to bestow on him the Country of *Lochaber* which belonged to *Huntley*: *Argile* having received his Commission, raiseth an Army of twelve thousand, with which he intends to prosecute *Huntley*, *Arrol* and *Angus*, three Catholick Earls, with fire and sword; they hearing of this preparation, raise also a thousand horse with a foot-army, I mean *Huntley* and *Arrol*, for *Angus* had an Army of his own to defend his Country, and could not come in time to joyn with the other two, because of the Rivers between. *Argile* placed two thousand musketers in his Van, against which *Huntlies* great Ordnance did so play that they forced them to give back, and joyn with the main body where *Argile* was himself, which *Arrol* perceiving, wheels about with his horse, and falls upon them in the Rear, and withall receiveth two wounds with forked arrows, one in the arm, another in the foot; to help him, *Huntley* breaks in furiously with all his horse upon the main body of *Argiles* Army, and puts them with *Argile* himself to flight; the fight continued two hours; of *Huntlies* side few were killed, but many wounded, and above two hundred horse slain; of *Argiles* side some say seven hundred, others five hundred. The next five years fell out no memorable accident, but *Gowries* Treason, and not long after the birth of Prince *Charles*.

1600.

1601.

## CHAP. XXXV.

*The History of England and Scotland together, from the comming in of King James to be sole Monarch of the whole Island, from the year 1602. till 1625.*

1602.

**Q**ueen *Elizabeth* being dead about ten a clock in the morning, King *James* the very same day (Secretary *Cecil* reading his Title and Queen *Elizabeths* Will) was proclaimed by sound of Trumpet first at *White-hall*, then in *Cheap-side*, King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France* and *Ireland*. Sir *Robert Cary*, the Lord *Hunsdons* younger son, posted away unsent, to King *James* with the news of the Queens death, who afterward was made a Baron: A few dayes after, the Lords of the Councel send Sir *Charles Percy* and Mr. *Thomas Sommerset*, and after them Sir *Thomas Lake* Clerk of the Signet, to acquaint the King of the peoples affections towards him, as likewise with the State of of the Kingdome. *Egerton* Lord Chancellor, *Buckhurst* Lord Treasurer, *Nottingham* Lord Admiral, and *Cecil* chief Secretary are confirmed in their places: *Thomas Howard* the brother, and *Henry Howard* the son of *Norfolk* who had suffered for the Kings mother, are advanced by him, though they were Catholicks, to let Pope *Clement* 8. see he was no such enemy to Papists as some would have had him, and that his two Bulls sent out against his succession to the Crown were needlesse.

King *James* having settled *Scotland*, on the fifth of *April* begins his journey for *England*, and comes to *Theobalds* the third of *May*, where he was met by the

1603.

Lords of the late Queens Privy-council, and entertained with an Oration by the Lord Keeper: Here divers Lords of *Scotland* are made Privy-counsellors of *England*. The seventh of *May* he rode towards *London*, where by the way near *Totnam-High-crosse*, the Maior, Aldermen, and five hundred choice Citizens all mounted with chains of gold, met him and attended him to the

Charter-

*Charter-house*, where came forth Proclamations the same day against Monopolies and Protections, and divers other abuses. All the way the King had travelled, prisoners for small offences were set free, and he plentifully distributed his favours, chiefly the Order of Knighthood. Divers Lords and Countesses are sent to conduct the Queen, with Prince *Henry* now nine years old, and the Lady *Elizabeth*; the King meets them at *Easton* in *Northamptonshire*: *Charles* Duke of *Albany* came not, being weak and sickly, till the next year: The king also makes divers Barons and Earls: Divers Abassadors arrive to congratulate his happy comming to the Crown, namely from the *Palsgrave*, the *Hollander*, the Arch-duke, the *Spaniard*, the *Venetian*, the *Florentine*, and the *French*; for entertaining of whom a Master of the Ceremonies is ordained: There were also made this year fourteen Serjants at Law. *Valentine Thomas* for conspiring against Queen *Elizabeth*, was drawn, hanged and quartered. The Lord *Montjoy* returns out of *Ireland*, bringing with him *Tir-Oen* whom the king pardoned, who sends to his brother of *Denmark* the Earl of *Rutland* with the Garter, and to be god-father to his son *Christianus*. The Lord *Spencer* also is sent with the Garter to the Duke of *Wirtinberg*.

This year produced a plot against the King and Prince *Henry*, by the Lord *Cobham*, Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, and divers others, upon some discontents, they knew not what; they are apprehended in *July*, and arraigned in *November* at *Winchester*, because of the sicknesse then at *London*, wherefore the Terme also was kept there. The Lord *Grey* is accused for raising two thousand men to defend the *Low-Countries*, but indeed to seise upon the king and Prince: *Cobham* and *Rawleigh* met in *S. Martins*, and consulted about raising sedition, altering Religion, & setting up Lady *Arabella*; it was proved that *Watson* the Priest was designed to be Lord Chancellor, and others for other offices: *Rawleigh* was to treat with Count *Aremberg* for money, and *Cobham* with the *Spaniard* and Arch-duke for assisting *Arabella*; these pleaded, the king not being yet crowned this could be no Treason, and that it was onely discourse, and not matter of fact; but they were refuted and condemned, the Priests *Watson* and *Clerk* were executed, and *Brook* beheaded; *Cobham*, *Grey* and *Markham*, at the point of their Execution were reprieved by the Kings warrant, and carried back to the Tower. After this the King kept the feast of *S. George* at *Windsor*, where the Prince with some others are installed; the Earl of *Southampton* is restored; divers other honours are conferred, and on *S. James* day the King and Queen are crowned and anointed at *Westminster* by Archbishop *Whitegift*; command is given for observation of *Gowries* conspiracy. The King calls in all letters of Mart against the *Spaniard*; and concludes a peace with him, which was confirmed by mutual oaths solemnly taken: the *Spanish* Ambassador held the Kings hands between his, and in like manner the *English* Ambassador at *Valledolid* held the King of *Spains* hands, when they took their oaths: *Nottingham* Lord Admiral was Ambassador for *England*, and *Valesco* Constable of *Castile* for *Spain*: by *Nottingham* the king sent these presents to the *Spaniard*, six horses with saddles and saddle-cloaths embroidered; whereof three for the King and three for the Queen, two crosse-bows with sheaffes of arrows, four fowling-peeces inlaid with plates of gold, and a couple of lyme-hounds. The Earl of *Hartford* is sent Ambassador to *Albert* and *Isabella* to take their oaths, who bestowed on the Arch-dukes servants three thousand pounds, to the Arch-duke presented him with a Jewel of nine hundred pounds value, and a suit of Arras worth three hundred pounds, and bare his charges all the time of his stay at *Bruxels*.

After this, the kings second son *Charles* Duke of *Albany* is created Duke of *York*, being now four years old. *Richard Haydock*, a Physitian, pretending to preach at night in his sleep, acknowledgeth his forgery to the king who had detected it. One *Douglasse* a Scots-man, for counterfeiting the kings Privy-seal to divers Princes in *Germany*, is sent over by the *Palsgrave*, and in *Smith-*

G g g g

field

1604.

*An. Christi* field hanged and quartered. A second Parliament is called at *Westminster*, four dayes before the sitting, the King, Queen and Prince rode solemnly through *London*, where divers Pageants were erected, Presents given, and speeches made. In the time of this Parliament was discovered the Gunpowder-plot, contrived by *Catesby*, *Percie* and others, who hired a cellar under the Parliament-house, laying in it twenty barrels of powder which they had under billets and faggots; their intent was to blow up the King and Prince, Nobles and Commons, to surprize the Duke of *York*, and to proclaim the Lady *Elizabeth* Queen; but the plot was detected by a letter sent to the Lord *Monteagle*, which his foot-man received from an unknown man, the letter was to desire him to forbear being at Parliament, because of a terrible blow that was to be given; the letter was delivered to the Earl of *Salisbury* by *Monteagle*, who could make no sense of it; but the King when he read it, apprehended presently, that by the word (blow) was intimated a blowing up with Gunpowder, therefore command is given to search all the rooms about the Parliament-house, in the cellar under the faggots were found six and thirty barrels of powder; *Fawkes* upon suspicion is apprehended, in whose pocket is found a peece of touch-wood, a tinder-box, and a watch, to try the short and long burning of the touch-wood: the plot being discovered, some fled to *Worcestershire*, where *Catesby* & *Percie* were slain by one shot of a musket, both the *Wrights John* and *Christopher* are likewise slain, the rest were publicly executed, except *Tresham* who died of the Strangury in the Tower, whither *Northumberland* upon suspicion is sent; great joy there was for this deliverance, so that the Spanish and Arch-dukes Ambassadors made bone-fires, and threw money amongst the people.

About this time the King receives as a present from the *Spaniard* six Jennets of *Andalusia*, with embroidered saddles, and saddle-cloth of Tissue, one of these Jennets was snow-white, whose main reached to the ground: the Queen of *Spain* also sent our Queen *Anne* rich presents of embroidery, amber-greece, a rich cap and girdle in a bason of gold to congratulate the kings happy deliverance, in memory whereof the fifth of *November* is appointed to be kept holy, and the Lord *Monteagle* is rewarded with two hundred pounds a year for ever, and five hundred pounds besides for his life. Shortly after a rumor was spread that the king was slain at *Oking*, which caused great fears in *London*, till within two hours after news came that he was safe, to the great comfort of all; so that the Spanish Ambassador gave Sir *Lewis Lewknor* a chain of gold for bringing him the news. *Henry Garnet* Provincial of the English Jesuits, suffered death for concealing the Gunpowder-treason: *Northumberland* is fined to pay to the King thirty thousand pounds, to forfeit all his offices, and to be kept prisoner during the Kings pleasure for misprisions of Treason.

At *Hampton-Court* an Assembly of Divines is called by the King to confer about the Liturgy and Church-government; the first sitting was in the privy-chamber, where in the presence of his Privy-council, he shewed the causes why he called these Divines, not that he thought there was any thing in the Church that required alteration, all things being so well settled already, but like a wise Physitian to make search into the supposed diseases thereof, and to remove the occasion of complaints, that the mouths of complainants may be stopped, and sober mindes satisfied: He acknowledgeth Confirmation after Baptisme, by Episcopal benediction and imposition of hands, after the childe hath professed his own faith, to be of great use and antiquity in the Church, and so the Bishops made it appear to his Majesty, that confirmation was no essential part of Baptisme: for Absolution they shew it is used in the reformed Churches of *Auspurg*, *Saxony* and *Bohemia*, and that Christ gave power to his Ministers to pronounce it: for private Baptisme, they say, That it is not to be administered by women and Laicks, but by lawful Ministers onely: and as for Excommunication, they say, That the abuses being removed,

moved, it ought to retain its vigor in the Church: and so for that day the Assembly of the Prelates was dismissed.

The Monday after, the King calls into his privy-chamber the complaining Doctors, telling them, That he meant not to innovate the Church-government so found and so long established, but to settle uniformity and unity, and to remove abuses if there be any, therefore desires them to declare their grievances: hereupon Dr. *Reynolds* the foreman reduced all the matters in debate to these four heads: 1. For preservation of true doctrine. 2. For placing of good Pastors. 3. For sincere Church-government. 4. For explanation of some clauses in the Service-book. All these points were exactly handled and cleared by the Prelates, and so moderated by the King with that judgement and learning, that all who were present were ravished with admiration. The Wednesday following, being the third dayes Conference, the King declares what formerly had past, and shuts up all with a godly exhortation, perswading all to unity, and diligence in their charge, shewing the duties both of superiors and inferiors, wishing them to build Gods Temple without the sound of discord, and to shew their obedience and humility by a peaceable conformity, seeing the points in controversie were matters of meer weaknesse. After this the King gives order for a new translation of the Bible according to the originals, and then sends some learned and judicious Divines into *Scotland* to confer with the Divines there about an uniform government in both Churches: Then by Act of Parliament he provides for the Churches constant maintenance, that none of her revenues or lands be alienated.

The king, to shew how willing he was to unite the two kingdomes into one, causeth one name to be given to both, and himself to be proclaimed king of *Great-Britain*; he causeth another Proclamation to come forth for banishing of Jesuites and Priests, and a third for confirming the book of Common-prayer, as it was in the late Queens time.

In the fourth year of the kings reign, the king of *Denmark* arrives in the *Thames* with eight ships, and anchored before *Gravesend*, thither the King with the Prince and Lords went in Barges to meet him, and conducted him to *London*, where he stayed till the 12. of *August*, having landed the 17. of *July* before; after whose departure arrived at *London*, *Francis* Prince of *Vandemont* the Duke of *Lorrains* third son, accompanied with seven Earls, ten Barons, forty Gentlemen, and sixscore common persons, who were for fourteen dayes together entertained by the king at *Hampton-Court*. The next year in *May*, some malecontents in the Shires of *Northampton*, *Leceister* and *Warwick* in great companies began to throw down Inclosures, whose Ring-leader was one *Reynolds*, or Captain *Pouch*, so called from his green-leather-pouch hanging by his side, where he said he had sufficient to defend them against all opposers, but when he was apprehended, there was nothing found there but a peece of green-cheese; some Lords, with *Cook* the chief Justice, suppressed them by force of Arms, and punished some of them by death, others by fines. In *June* following the King dined with *Wats* the Lord Maior, who after dinner presented him with a purse full of gold; and then the King was made free of the Company of Cloath-workers, to whom he promised a brace of Bucks yearly for ever, to be spent at the election of their Master.

In *July* following, the king dined at Merchant-Taylors-hall, where he was presented with a purse of gold, and a Roll shewed him wherein were registred seven Kings, one Queen, seventeen Princes and Dukes, two Duchesses, one Archbishop, one and thirty Earls, sixty six Barons, seven Abbots, seven Priors, with many Knights free of that Company; the king being free of another Company, refused to be of theirs, but gave way that the Prince should be free, and that he would see the Garland put on his head, whereupon a purse of gold is presented to the Prince, and he with divers Lords are made free. About this time ungrateful *Tir-Oer*, with some other Irish Lords went away to sollicite

G g g g 2

foreign

*An. Christi*

1606.

An.Christi foreign Princes against the King, and to offer Ireland to the Pope.

1608.

This year Virginia is planted. George Jervis a Priest, and Thomas Garnet a Jesuite are executed; a pardon was offered to Garnet, if he would take the Oath of Allegiance, which he refused. Divers English Pyrates turn Turks. The New-Exchange is erected, where a long old Stable stood before, by Salisbury the Treasurer, and is named by the King (who with the Queen and Prince came to see it) Britains-Burse. Foraigners are prohibited to fish upon the Kings coasts without leave. Now Allom is made in England, which heretofore was brought from other places; This year also Silk-worms were brought into England.

1609.

1610.

The King having received aid for Knighting Prince Henry, and he being now come to the age of seventeen years, is made Prince of Wales. Garter King at Arms bore the Letters-Patents, Sussex the Purple-Velvet Robes, Huntington the Train, Cumberland the Sword, Rutland the Ring, Darby the Rod, and Shrewsbury the Cap and Coronets; Nottingham and Northampton supported the Prince, being in his Surcoat only, and bare-headed: Thus he was conducted to the King, and attended on by five and twenty Knights of the Bath; Salisbury read the Letters-patents, the Prince kneeling all the while before the King, and at the words accustomed the King put on him the Robe, Sword, Cap and Coronet, the Rod and Ring, and then kissed him on the cheeks; so then he was allowed to keep Court by himself.

The King to keep peace at home, in his own person heard the differences between the Ecclesiastick and temporal Judges, argued touching Protections; he heard also the complaints of the Victuallers and other Officers of his Navy. Upon the news of king Henry 4. of France his death, king James by proclamation commands all Priests and Jesuites to avoid the land, and all Recusants to return home to their dwellings. The East-India Merchants are made a Corporation for ever, who built a ship of 1200 Tun, which at Bantham was lost: the King also builds a ship of 1400 Tun, which he gave to the Prince, who called it by his dignity, The Prince.

About this time Mr. Carr, who had been one of the Kings twelve Pages, whom he dismissed upon taking so many Footmen, was afterward made one of the Bed-chamber, upon breaking of his leg, as he lighted from his horse in the kings presence, who ever after cast an affection towards him; he made him knight, then his Secretary, then Viscount Rochester, and a Privy-councillor, afterward he made him Earl of Somerset, and at last Lord Chamberlain. These great Honours made some to envy, others to admire and flatter him; among the rest the Countesse of Essex the Earl of Suffolks daughter, who so much fell in love with him, that she slighted her own husband, and procured Mrs. Turner, one Gresham, and Dr. Forman, by enchantments to disable him, and to procure Carrs love; places of meeting are appointed at Hammer-smith, where much loose behaviour was used between them, so that Sir Thomas Overbury, Carrs favorite, was much displeased with it; and Prince Henry hearing of his loose kind of life with her, slighted him, which some think hastened the Princes death.

The Lady Francis Howard complaining of her husbands frigidity, and that she was still a Maid, procures a Divorce, which was granted upon a search made on her by twelve Matrons: then a marriage is thought on by Carr and Howard, to which Overbury was altogether averse; upon this Rochester and the Countesse meet, and conclude the death of Overbury, who was a main obstacle to their proceedings; for the facilitating whereof, Wade is removed from the Lieutenantship of the Tower, and Elvis is preferred; then the Countesse confers with Mrs. Turner, complaining of Overburys insolencie for defaming her name; hereupon they resolve to poyson him, by one Weston an Apothecary sometimes servant to Dr. Turner. And because Overbury was to be employed as an Ambassador into the Low-Countries to the Archduke, Rochester dissuades him from that employment, promising to take him off with credit; but in

10

30

40

50

stead of so doing, he incenseth the king against him, shewing that Overbury was become so insolent, that he scorned that employment to the Archduke as too mean for him; therefore the king having received a denial from Overbury, sends him to the Tower; Northampton and Rochester his two great enemies, command the Lieutenant to keep him close prisoner, and Weston is preferred to wait on him in the Tower, Gresham in the interim dies, and one Franklin is entertained in that business, a man fit to make poysons.

Shortly after, Elvis the Lieutenant was acquainted with the poysoning of Overbury by Weston, as he was carrying a part of his supper in one hand, and a glasse of blue water in the other: The next day Elvis is sent for by Northampton, by whom he was encouraged to persist, and a thousand pounds promised him for a reward; he is also desired to sift out Overburys minde, how he is affected to the match between Rochester and the Countesse; in the interim more poysons are sent by the Countesse, which by Weston are tempered with his broth and meat; some poysoned Tarts and Jellies also are sent by the Viscount to Sir Thomas Monson, whose servant delivered them to Weston, which brought the said Sir Thomas to be suspected as having a hand in this act; by this means Overbury grew very sick, but by a cooling bath he received some ease: hereupon the Lieutenant is commanded by the Council (as he gave out) that no man might have liberty to speak with him.

Now the intended marriage comes to light, much questioning and debate there is about it; the bishops are divided, Canterbury and others against it, Winchester and Ely for it, at last a nullity is obtained, and order is sent to Essex to repay the portions of five thousand pound: when Overbury heard of the marriage, he grieved exceedingly both for the Earl of Somerset, as for himself, suspecting it would cause his death; therefore he writes to the Earl to be released, who returns him some Court holy-water, and a white-powder to ease his pain, which it did shortly after, for being given to him in a glister, proved poyson, which the next day with excessive pains in the guts killed him; after his death, it was spread abroad he died of the pox by excess of lasciviousness.

This year gold is enhauned; one Legate an Arian is burned; and the Lantgrave of Hesse commeth to visit King James. The next year the Lord Zanchir is hanged for causing one Turner to be murdered. The body of Queen Mary of Scotland is removed from Peterborow to Westminster, where a stately tomb of marble is erected over it. The Palsgrave Elector commeth into England, who with Grave-Maurice are invested with the Garter. The year following was fatal to this Island by the death of Prince Henry, and the marriage of his sister the Lady Elizabeth to the Palsgrave.

The nullity being obtained, the match is made, and honoured by the Kings presence, and a Mask; a few dayes after, the new married couple were feasted with the Nobility of the Kingdome, at Merchant-Taylors hall by the Lord Maior and Aldermen. Rumors are spread abroad of a Spanish fleet; as if intended for England; and this suspicion increased by a Proclamation against Spanish money: the Scots in the Western Islands flie out into rebellion, so do the Wilde-Trish in Ireland; but were quickly suppressed. In the Islands of Orkney there was great commotions raised by the Earl of Orkney then a prisoner in Edinburgh-Castle, who wrote letters to his Bastard-son, and other of his friends there to take possession of his houses, whereof he accounted the Castle of Kirkway one; whereupon the Council at Edinburgh send thither some ships of war; and land-forces out of Cathness, who besiege the Castle both by sea and land, which at last yeeldeth to mercy; the Earls son with the besieged are hanged up close by the Castle, which is demolished, the Ordnance carried away, and not long after the Earl himself was beheaded at Edinburgh.

The Earl of Northampton is publicly spoken against for countenancing and advancing the Roman Religion; a Bill is exhibited in the Star-chamber by him

1611.

1612.

1613.

1614.

An.Christi

*An. Christi* him against such as defamed him; but *Canterbury* maintains their cause, shewing there were never in his time so many Priests in *England* as now: My Lord hereat being much troubled, went to *Greenwich*, made his will, then returned to his house at *London*, where he died. The Cloath-workers obtain at last that no more white-cloaths be carried over the seas undied and undressed, the Dutch proclaim that none shall buy any such cloaths so dressed and died: hereupon wools are prohibited to be transported out of the Kingdome; yet at last it is ordered by the Councel, that a certain number of white-cloaths shall be transported.

*Sommerfet* having lost *Northampton* his great friend, and fearing the detestful on of *Overburies* death, procures a general pardon of all treasons, misprisions, murders, felonies, outrages whatsoever, which the King signed, but Chancellor *Egerton* refuseth to let it passe the Seal, and acquaints the King of the danger might arise thereby: whereupon the King suspecting all was not well with *Sommerfet*, withdraws his favour from him, and begins to cast his affection upon a young Gentleman lately come from *France*, Mr. *George Villiers*, on whom he bestows a thousand pounds, then Knights him, invests him with the Garter, makes him Master of the horse, and afterward Earl, Marquesse, and Duke of *Buckingham*.

*Sommerfet* being troubled in conscience about *Overburies* death, sendeth to *France* to have the Apothecary dispatched who gave the Glister; he causeth all places to be searched where he thought any letters were which concerned that mischief, and by reason of his pride, covetousnesse, and insolent carriage, he is every day lesse in the Kings favour, and the peoples affections: At last upon petition of *Overburies* man to my Lord *Cook*, and upon the information of Sir *Ralph Winwood* to the King *Weston*, is examined, and after much adoe at last confesses all, who with *Turner*, *Franklin* and *Elvis* are condemned and hanged; *Sommerfet* is committed to the Dean of *Westminster*, he stood still upon his innocencie, and denied all, but his Countesse confessed; whereupon his money, plate and jewels worth 200000 li. and his lands to 19000 li. per annum, are seised upon for the Kings use, who bestowed divers of them upon the Prince.

About this time Sir *Walter Raleigh*, after ten years imprisonment in the Tower, was set at liberty: he hated *Sommerfet* exceedingly, because he had begged and got his lands; the Countesse of *Shremsbury* also, who was privy to the escape of the Lady *Arabella*, was released out of the Tower.

In the year 1614. the *English* sends a Plantation to the *Barmudes*, as the *Londoners* had done the year before into *Ireland*. The King of *Denmark* this year came privately into *England* again. *Hugh Middleton* brought the water into *London*, and *Suttons* Hospital is founded. The next year after, the Lady *Arabella* who married to Mr. *William Seymour*, now Marquesse of *Hartford*, dieth, which also was the fatal year of Sir *Thomas Overbury*. The tryal of *Sommerfet* and his Lady is put off, because she was with childe; but after she was delivered of a daughter, the Lord Chancellor is authorised to be High-Steward of *England* for the time being, to whom were joyned eight Judges for his assistants, a Seat-Royal is placed in the upper end of *Westminster-hall*, the two prisoners are brought from the Tower; the Countesse pleaded guilty, but *Sommerfet* pleaded not guilty; yet being found guilty by his Judges, is condemned, and sent back to the Tower; they were afterward both pardoned and released out of the Tower. This same year the Archbishop of *Spalato* comes into *England*, and the Cautionary Towns are restored to the States. About two years before this, the Order of Knight-Baronets was instituted by King *James*, who were to maintain thirty foot-souldiers in *Ireland* for three years, after the rate of eight pence a day, and to pay the wages of one whole year upon the passing of their Patent, then they must be Gentlemen of three descents, and should be worth a thousand pounds per annum, the number

number to be installed was not to exceed two hundred. An Ambassador came from the *Russian* Emperor to King *James*, desiring his amity, and to mediate for a peace between him and the King of *Swethland*, and presents him with rich Furs: and not onely the *Russian*, but the *Persian* also, admiring the wisdom and happinesse of King *James*, some time before this, sent Sir *Robert Sherley* to desire his amity, and withall freely offers commerce to the Kings subjects through all the *Persian* dominions: This Sir *Robert* was made an Earl of the Empire by *Rodolphus Cesar*, then having served the *Persian* ten years, was made General of his Artillery, and married him to the Lady *Teresa*, whose sister was one of the Queens of *Persia*; she was brought to bed here of a son, whom the Queen and Prince *Henry* Christened. About this time *Moorefields*, before a stinking place, were made out into pleasant walks; Prince *Charles* is created Prince of *Wales*, which action was accompanied with much joy, and the installing of five and twenty Knights of the Bath.

This year the King after fourteen years absence returns into *Scotland* for settling both the Church and State there, whose presence was so welcome, that every place and City whither he went did strive to outstrip one another in magnificent entertainment: having settled all things, and confirmed the five Articles of *Perth*, after six moneths abode there, he returns into *England*; Sir

*Walter Rawleigh* being now at liberty perswades the King to afford him some ships for *Guyana*, where he thought was a Mine of gold, which would enrich him and the whole kingdome without any prejudice to the *Spaniard*, but when he came thither no treasure could be found; wherefore that he might not return empty-handed, he falls upon *S. Thome*, a Town of the *Spaniards*, which he sacked, pillaged and burned: *Gundomore* the *spanish* Leiger complains: King *James* to avoid a breach between *Spain* and *England*, prefers the death of one man, already condemned, before the breach of publike peace, therefore he is newly arraigned and condemned to die, his head was cut off on a Scaffold in the Pallace-yard.

Queen *Anne*, after she had been married twenty years, died at *Hampton-Court*, whose death cast the king into a dangerous sicknesse, of which he recovered. In a Parliament at *Westminster* (in which Chancellor *Bacon* for bribery was put from his place, and sent to the Tower, into whose place Dr. *Williams* Dean of *Westminster* succeeded) *Montpesson* and *Michel* are for abuses censured: Sir *Richard Weston* is sent Ambassador to the Emperor to sollicite the restoring of the *Palsgrave* to his own Country: *Gundomore* assures the king there was no readier way to recover the *Pallatinate*, then by making a match between Prince *Charles* and the *Infanta* of *Spain*, which might be effected, if the Prince were sent thither; whereupon the king sends him with *Buckingham*, *Porter* and *Cottingham* by land; in the way at *Paris*, being disguised, he saw the Court, and Princeesse *Mary*, whom afterward he married; *Gundomore* in the interim obtains of some Ladies large summes of money for places with the *Infanta* when she came: The Prince being arrived in *Spain*, was received with as much love and magnificence as could be expected, for as the charge of his entertainment stood the King of *Spain* in nine and forty thousand Ducats, yet he was so restrained from the Lady, that the eight moneths time he stayed in *Spain* he saw her very seldome, and that at a distance, and never spake with her but twice, and that before company, and was limited also in his speeches.

This match was hindred by the falling out of *Buckingham* and Count *Olvares* the King of *Spains* great favourite: much time also was protracted upon pretence of difficulties to obtain the Popes dispensation; wherefore King *James* wearied with delays sends for the Prince home, who having taken his leave of the King of *Spain*, returns by sea, and lands at *Portsmouth*, to the great joy of the people: the Articles of the marriage were so strict and large for exercise of the Catholick Religion, and none at all for restoring of the

An. Christi

the Palatinate, that King James broke off all treaty of the marriage, and signified so much to the Spaniard and other Princes; wherefore a consultation is had for recovering it by Arms: to this end a great contribution by way of benevolence was collected for raising men. Then another match was thought on for the Prince; for this cause the Earls of Carlisle and Holland are sent into France to treat of a marriage with the younger daughter of Henry 4. which was accomplished shortly after King James his death. About this time the Archbishop of Spalato was burned at Rome for apostacie; he came into this Kingdome pretending Religion, as he shewed in his writings by maintaining Protestantisme, and was therefore made Dean of Windsor, and Master of the Savoy; but being fickle-headed, after he had stayed here five years, he retracted all he had written or said before, and therefore is commanded by the King to depart the Kingdome within three dayes, and so he returns to Rome, where he inveighed as bitterly against the Protestants, as he did here against the Papists.

1624.

1625.

This year was fatal by the fall of that great Cedar King James, the wisest, fortunate, and most peaceable Prince that ever was in this land; under whose two and twenty years government, this kingdome attained to the height of peace, plenty and happiness; in whose halcyon days, more works of piety were done then in any other Princes reign of the like continuance; such were the reparations of Pauls begun then, the endowments of S. Johns Colledge in Oxford by Dr. Laud the Archbishop, the Almshouse at Croyden by Archbishop Abbot, and that in Suffex by Robert Earl of Dorset, that of Sutton in the Charterhouse, Wilby Colledge in Oxford by Mr. Nicholas Wilby, Dulwich Almshouse by Edward Allen the Player, the History-Lecture at Oxford by Mr. Camden, three thousand and six hundred pounds given to good uses by Mr. Patyn Grocer of London, Camden-Hospital in Gloucestershire founded by Sir Baptist Hicks, five thousand pounds given by Mr. Thomas Teasdale for maintenance of seven Fellows and five Schollars in Ballyol Colledge, three fair Hospitals founded by Henry Earl of Northampton, one at Ryding in Norfolk, a second at Clun in Shropshire, the third at Greenwich in Kent, 8000 li. given by William Jones of London for a Free-school and Almshouses in Wales, and a 100 li. for ever yearly to a preacher in London. Not to speak of Chelsey-Colledge, divers Churches and Chappels by private men, and other sums of money left by charitable men, all which were the fruits of his peaceable government: and among the rest, we may not omit the Plantations of Ireland, Virginia, Bermudas, and New-England; in Virginia, the first Town that ever was built there bare his name; for though this was discovered in the Queens time, yet it was not planted till the kings: thenext was the plantation of the Bermudas, and the last of New-England, the patent whereof was granted by king James to Bristol, Exeter, and Plymouth. In his time also divers Schools, Churches and Hospitals were erected in Scotland, and a Plantation by the Scots was thought on in the north part of Canada, which in king Charles his time was set on foot. This king James for his wisdom was admired of foreign Princes, for learning by the Universities, for his wife, just, and peaceable government, by his subjects. Protestantisme had never a greater Champion, as may be seen by his books, by his care in causing Conferences to be held in Scotland about uniformity of Discipline, and unity of Doctrine; about expelling Vorstius out of Leyden, and sending Divines to the Synod of Dort, and his learned moderating of the Conference at Hampton-Court; so that he was Plato's Prince, a Philosophical King, or a Kingly Philosopher. He died the 27. of March, the 59. year of his age, having reigned over all Great-Britain 22. years compleat. In his time fell out divers strange accidents; the great Plague, whering died in London above 38000. in one year, the great Frost, great inundations and fires, chiefly that of Dorchester, the falling of the room at Black-Friars, a Whale within eight miles of London, the Blazing-star, the killing of a man by Archbishop Abbot.

CHAP.

An. Christi.

## CHAP. XXXVI.

A Continuation of the History of Great-Britain, under King Charles, from the year 1625. till the year 1641.

Prince Charles being about the age of 25 yeares, is proclaimed King of Great-Britain, &c. Who shortly after his Coronation was married to Henrietta Maria, younger daughter of King Henry 4. of France. The Match was made upon these conditions: That the Popes dispensation should be procured within the space of three moneths before; That the free exercise of the Catholike Religion be permitted to the Queen and her servants, and her Children; that therefore she should be allowed her Chappel, and Burial-place peculiar to herself and family, with 28 Priests and a Bishop chosen by the French king, who should be exempted from the Secular power; And that King Charles should sweare never to withdraw from, or perswade her to embrace any other Religion. Her Portion was 800000 Crowns; her Dowry 18000 lib. sterling; besides so much Lands as should maintain her and her Court, answerable to her Greatness.

Not long after the marriage was consummated, all amity with Spain is rejected, and Commerce prohibited: a Fleet of 150 Sail, with 10000 Foot and some Horse, are sent against Spain; they landed at Cadiz, but were beaten back into their ships with losse, by Ferdinand Gironius; the ships by storms in their return were much shattered, many of the passengers died with sickness and cold, so that few returned home. This unlucky Expedition hindred the League that was made between England, Denmark, Swethland, Venice and Holland, against the House of Austria.

The next year, King Lewis of France falls out with King Charles of Great-Britain, because he sent back the French Priests into France, upon some distaste taken against them for injoining an unseemly Penance on the Queen; and because he entertained Monsieur Subize, and armed him against the French King: and however King Charles was content to allow the Queen twelve Priests and one Bishop, twelve Women, one Chamberlain, one Secretary, one Physician, and three other Catholike servants; yet he could not be dissuaded from defending Subize, and the Protestant cause; which occasioned a warre between them; therefore the English ships and goods are arrested in France, and the half of the Queens dower was retained: Upon this, an English Fleet is sent to the Isle of Rhee, under the Duke of Buckingham, who took it; but not long after it was lost again, and the English driven to their ships, not without the losse of many a brave man. Yet K. Charles being nothing dismayed, prepares another Fleet against the next year, for relief of Rochel now besieged by the French King; but whilst the Duke was ready to imbarque at Portsmouth where the Fleet lay, he was suddenly stabbed by one John Felton, which caused great discontent in the King, and a tumult in the Dukes lodgings; the French being accused as actors in this murder; but Felton confessing that he had killed the Duke, the tumult was appeased, and he apprehended, who confessed he could not be quiet in mind till he had acted that tragedy, being perswaded that the Duke was no good Patriot, having exasperated the King against the former Parliament which was assembled for giving aid to the King in defence of the Protestant cause, which was then in great danger both in France and Germany, the King of Denmark being brought very low by the Emperor.

Notwithstanding the Dukes death, the Fleet was dispatched to the reliefe of Rochel, but could do no good, because it came too late; for the Town was begirt with impregnable Barracadoes and Circumvallations both by sea and land, so that re infecta it returned home. The next year a Parliament is called;

H h h

Peace



*An. Christi* 1629. Peace is concluded with France; A new Plantation is begun in *America*, called *New-England*. Not long after, on the 29. of *May*, Prince *Charles* was borne: the next day, the King at *Pauls-Crosse* gave thanks to God for the Queens safe delivery, and the birth of his Son. This year a Peace is concluded with *Spain*. 1631. In the year following, the King sends to the Emperor for restitution of the *Palatine* into his inheritance, but nothing was effected. In the year 1633. the King about *May* began his journey into *Scotland*, where he was Crowned the 18. of *June*, with great solemnity. Not long after, as he was crossing the Ferry between *Leith* and *Brunt-Island*, there arose so sudden a storm, that he was in danger to be cast away; some of his servants were then drowned, and much of his Plate and household-stuffe was lost. He erected about the same time a Bishops See in *Edinburgh*, and serled Mr. *William Forbes* of *Aberden* (an eminent man for learning) Bishop there; but he died shortly after, being vexed by the people of that place, who could not endure to be subject to a Bishop. The King having called a Parliament there, in which some things in favour of the Church were enacted, which pleased not divers of the Great ones there; whereupon the King returns abruptly into *England*, which was ill relented by the *Scots* Lords.

1634. The next year following, King *Charles* for maintenance of his Navy, raised the Tax of Ship-mony, by which means the Sea-men were well paid, and for two years together the Kingdome was well guarded by the Royal Fleet. But this Tax was so unequally laid by the Sheriffs and their Deputies, upon divers of the meaner sort, that it caused great discontent: (For I know a Minister, whose Benefice was scarce 100*l.* per annum, forced to pay 15*l.* for his Tax the first year.) This Ship-mony was at last opposed and voted down in Parliament. In the year 1636. the King sends again to the Emperor in behalf of the *Pallgrave*, in which Embassie much mony was spent to little purpose. In the year after, the Popes Nuntio's are received and entertained at the Queens Court. In *Scotland* fell out the great Tumult at *Edinburgh*, *July* 23. upon the reading of the New Service-book in *S. Giles Church*, the Women beginning the fray by flinging their stools and Bibles at the Deans head, as he was reading; who hardly escaped, with the Bishop, out of the Church with their lives: But the tumult was appeased by the Privy-Councillors then present, and the Bishop conveyed away by the Lord *Weems*. So things remained quiet till the next Spring, that new troubles arose. A Generall Assembly, against the Kings command, is held at *Glasgow*, in which the Bishops are deposed, excommunicated, and abjured; the Articles of *Perth*, Service-book, and Canons are rejected by the Presbyterian Assembly, who also impose an Oath and Covenant upon the people, the chief promoters whereof were three Ministers, *Henderson*, *Dickson*, and *Cant*; who coming to *Aberden*, received some stop by the learned Divines there, who would not condiscend that the Covenant should be propounded or recommended in their Pulpits to the People under their charge, till they were satisfied in these demands. 1. By what warrant or power they imposed a Covenant on them; seeing they were not authorized by the King nor his Council; nor any established Judicatory or National Synod. 2. Whether they ought to subscribe a Covenant of mutual defence by arms, seeing such Covenants are forbid by Parliament, *an.* 1585. 3. Whether they ought to feare any danger of Innovation in Religion, seeing the King hath protested, declared and sworn to the contrary, and hath removed all occasions of fear, as the Service-book, Canons, and High-commission. 4. What reason is there for them to abjure Episcopacie and the Articles of *Perth*, and to have an interpretation of the Negative Confession imposed on them against their judgments. 5. Whether the abjuring of the late introduced Rites, be not an assent that the former Rites are unchangeable; whereas all Rites according to times and occasions may be changed. 6. Whether the abjuring of *Perth*-Articles be not a contradicting of the judgment of most modern Divines, who hold

*An. Christi* hold them in their own nature lawfull; as also a condemning of the ancient Church, which practised them. 7. Whether they can abjure these Rites as Popish, which according to the light of their conscience and sincerity of their hearts, they have practised as lawfull so many years; And whether they ought not to have some time given them to consider of so weighty a business. 8. Whether the Kings person ought not to be defended, though he preserve not the true Religion. 9. Whether this can be consistent; To swear to maintain the Kings authority, and yet swear disobedience to the Articles established by his authority. 10. Whether the abjuration of *Perth*-Articles be not prejudicial to the liberty of Voting in a National Assembly. 11. Whether the subscription to the Profession of Faith, registred *an.* 1567. in Parliament, be not sufficient to shew the sincerity of their Profession. 12. Whether the late practise of the Covenanters in contemning Authority, and Gods service in his own house, on his own day, as to lay violent hands on the Prelates and Pastors in time of Divine service, whilst they practise what the King and his Council commanded: I say, whether these disorders are tolerable, or is it fit that the Anticovenanters should joyn with them. 13. How this Covenant can be subscribed without scandals; first, of dissenting from other Reformed Churches; secondly, of dissenting from Antiquity; thirdly, of perjury, having sworn obedience to the Articles of *Perth*, and to the Ordinary at their admission to the Ministry. 14. Whether these Covenanting Ministers can with reason desire the use of our Pulpits, to withdraw (say they) our Flocks from their obedience and allegiance, and that Doctrine which we in our conscience think to be true?

To these *Quere's* the Covenanting Ministers put in their Answers, but such as were not satisfying to the Divines of *Aberden*, as may be seen in their Replies and Duplies. The Bishops also protested and declared against the Assembly at *Glasgow*, as being altogether unlawfull, because it met without the Kings warrant; because it consisted of more Lay-men than Ministers; because most of these Ministers were scandalous either in their lives or doctrine, or both; because they were enemies and persecutors of the Bishops, to whom they owed Canonical obedience, and that it was unreasonable they should be both Judges and parties; and because they are such Ministers as have not sworn to the Articles of Religion, nor taken the oath of Allegiance, and usurp more authority to themselves, then can stand with the freedome of an Assembly; and as justly might the Bishops except against this Assembly, which hath already precondemned Episcopacie, as *Athanasius*, *Hosius* of *Corduba*, and *Maximus* Patriarch of *Constantinople*, did except against some partial and prejudicating Councils; or *Luther*, against the Council of *Trent*, because he was precondemned by Pope *Leo*. But these Reasons of the Bishops were slighted, and the Assembly notwithstanding proceeded, though the King sends the Marquis *Hamilton* to dissolve it: For the Presbyterian side prevails more and more; who made an Act against the Bishops, and expelled them the kingdom; whereat the King was so angry, that he caused the *Scots* ships here to be seized, and their Trading with *England* to be prohibited.

Mean while, the Queen-mother of France, King *Henry* the Fourths widow, came to *London*, *Octob.* 31. whom the King received courteously, and entertained royally. In November Proclamation is made against the Assembly in *Scotland*, by the King: but it was so slighted, that an Army is raised by the Presbyterian Scots; against whom the Bishops contribute and raise among the Clergie great sums of mony, for maintaining of an Army against the Presbyterians. The next year, about the 27. of *March*, the King begins his journey for *Scotland*, whom his Army followed under the conduct of the Earl of *Arundel*, accompanied with most of the English Nobility; the two Armies pitched their Tents in view of each other, but there was no resolution, or desire in either side to fight; therefore a Peace was concluded the same year in *June*.

H h h h 2

but

*An. Christi* 1640. but when the King returned to London, the Articles of the Peace were published, which again incensed the Scots, so that the next year they raised another Army; upon which the King summons a Parliament in April, for raising of money and new forces against the Scots; but finding his peopleaverse either to contribute men or money, he dissolves the Parliament in May, which both discontented the English, and encouraged the Scots, on the 17. of August following, to enter England, and possess themselves of Newcastle. Hereupon the King raiseth new forces to resist the Scots; but the new-raised Souldiers grew mutinous, killed divers of their Officers, and would neither march nor fight: Yet the Clergie desired not to animate both the King and people against the Scots, and in their Convocation gave a great summe to maintain the war. The Lords are commanded to attend the King in this Northern expedition.

About the midst of October the former year, the Spanish Fleet, close by the English shore, for want of powder and ammunition (which they alleadged the King had promised them) were defeated by the Hollanders: There were in this Fleet 8000 Spaniards, which should have been planted among the Wallons, and so many of them to be transported into Spain. About the same time also, a Bill is exhibited against the Londoners, for some misdemeanors committed by their Under-officers about London-Derry; wherefore in the Star-chamber the Londoners are fined, and their Plantation forfeited to the King, whereupon the Citizens would not contribute or advance any sums of money towards this expedition against the Scots. When the King saw he could raise no money, and that the common-souldiers would not engage; upon the earnest intreaties of the Lords, he summons a Parliament at Westminster, the 3. of November.

1639. But before we conclude this History, I will speak a little more fully of these fatal begun troubles in Scotland. When the King understood what Forces were raising there, he sends to Marquis Douglas, to the Earle of Niddale, to Traquair the Treasurer, to Roxburgh and other Lords of his side, to be ready with their Forces: but the Covenanters seize upon all the arms and ammunition in Scotland, and send 10000 foot, with 4000 horse, and 30 peeces of canon, against Aberdeen, which held out for the King, and whither he meant to send great forces. Of the Nobility that stood out for the King, were about twenty Lords and Earls, of the Covenanters about eight and twenty. When the King was come to Barwick, he understood that the Scots Army was divided into two bodies; one under Hume, of 8000. not far from Barwick; the other of 5000. under Johnston neer Carlisle. To these the King sends his Heralds with a Proclamation, commanding them not to come ucer the borders of England, for then he will construe it as an invasion: They on the other side send him a Petition, desiring their complaints may be heard, and grievances redressed. Upon this, Arundel with other Lords are named by the King to confer with the Scots Commissioners, and to know their grievances: They desire that the King would by Parliament ratifie the Articles of Glasgow. 2. That all Church-affairs in Scotland may be determined by their Generall Assemblies, and that all Civil matters may be decided by Parliament, which they desire may be held every second or third year. 3. That the King would withdraw both his Ships and Land-forces, and restore to the Scots their Ships again. 4. That all the Incendiaries and seditious persons who were fled into England, may be sent home to be tried and punished. 5. That the King would confirm their Lawes, Religion, and Priviledges.

The King was not well pleased with these particulars; therefore the Lord Lowden desires him, that he would but confirm their Religion and Liberties according to the Ecclesiastical and Civil lawes of Scotland, and that should content them: Upon this, the King declares, That he will confirm the Canons of the Assembly of Glasgow, concerning the abolition of the Liurgie, High Commission,

*An. Christi* Commission, Book of Canons, with the five Articles of Perth; That the Ministers shall be bound to take no other Oath at their admission, but what is prescribed in Parliament; and that the Bishops shall stand to the censure of the General Assembly of Glasgow; and that all things shall be determined by the Assembly and Parliament which shall be held in Edinburgh the next August, in which an Act of Oblivion shall passe, and at which he will be present himself; and withall he promisseth to restore their ships and goods, and to recall his fleet, conditionally they will disarm and disband their Armies, and dissolve their tables and meetings, and that they will restore his Forts and Castles, with their Ammunition, as likewise the Crown, Scepter and Sword, with his other Royal ornaments; and besides, that they will suffer his good subjects to enjoy their lands and liberties, which have been detained from them since the last Assembly.

The peace being concluded, and the Armies disbanded, the King is received into Edinburgh with great solemnity, and his Castles are restored, on condition that they shall not be victualled for above four and twenty hours at a time. But shortly after the King declared, that he would have the Bishops sit in the General Assembly, which was denied; and the Bishops were excommunicated, and withall two hundred thousand pounds is demanded to be raised upon the Bishops lands and estates, for satisfaction of the damages sustained by the detention of the ships in England: the Parliament then sitting, rather favoured the Assembly then hindred it, or discountenanced their proceedings, wherefore the King would have adjourned the Parliament till June the next year, which could not be assented to; but four Deputies are sent to the King to compose all differences. In the interim, new forces are raised both in England and Ireland, whilst the Scots Commissioners are kindly entertained at Court; but the Scots being jealous (because their Commissioners were so long detained in suspense) that the King meant to keep them as prisoners, when his Army was ready to march, they seized upon two English Lords, whom they meant to detain till their Commissioners were returned.

The Presbyterian Scots understanding that both the Armies of England and Ireland were ready to march, enter presently into a Covenant which they called National, and tax the tenth part of their estates toward maintenance of the war; sixteen thousand men are raised under the conduct of Argile, to guard the Sea-coast, and hinder the Irish forces from landing: The like number is to be in readinesse against the King begins his march. They would not suffer Generall Ruwen, governour then of Edinburgh-Castle, to repair a part of the wall that was fallen down; nor would they suffer the Garrison-souldiers to go out and in, but at their devotion; therefore they place a guard of five hundred men before the Castle gate, and raised a Fort in the Town to keep the Castle in awe, and raised a Rampart to keep off the bullets that might be shot against the City.

Mean while the English Fleet puts to Sea; and the Land-forces of England consisting of forty thousand, are divided into three bodies, under Hamilton, Goring, and Northumberland. The Scots main body consisted of thirty thousand under General Lesly in Lothien, the rest of their Army was employed to guard the borders and coasts on all sides, to wit, six thousand under the Lord Levison near Kelfo; Lothien and Johnston had the command of eight thousand on the Western marches; Rothes and Lindsey commanded fifteen thousand in Fife; Montrose and the Earl Marshal encamped near Aberdeen with twelve thousand, besides they had a garrison of two thousand within the City. Argile guards the coast on the Irish-seas with sixteen thousand. In the interim the Lord Lowden one of the four Scots Commissioners, is sent to the Tower, for having about him a copy of the Scots Declaration which had been burned. This incensed the Scots so much the more, complaining that the imprisoning of their Commissioner was against the Law of Nations; the King sends Commissioners

*An. Christi* missionaries to examine him in the Tower, to whom he would not answer, being a subject of *Scotland*, where he ought to be examined and tried by his Peers; and also told them, that what he was accused of was acted before the Pacification 1639. when an Act of oblivion passed. Hereupon he is enlarged and employed by the King in a new Commission into *Scotland*, to settle the troubles there.

Whilst these things are acting, *Edinburgh* raiseth two Batteries against the Castle, the great Ordnance play upon each other without any great hurt; at length the Governour is summoned to deliver up the Castle within fifteen dayes; which time being expired, and the Castle not likely to be surrendered, the great Artillery from the batteries plaid so furiously on it, that a breach was made in the wall; there were also two Mines sprung which did great hurt, the Governours son lost his arm by a canon-bullet; at last they come to a parley; the Governour desires to acquaint the King with the state of the Castle before he deliver it up, which was granted by the City, and so followed a cessation from hostility. The Scots in the interim (whose intention at first was onely to stand upon their own defence) to keep their souldiers from idleness, enter *England* with thirty thousand; fifteen thousand march into *Cumberland*, and the other fifteen thousand, into *Northumberland*, with a Declaration that they come in as friends, not as enemies, for no other end but to have a ratification of the last years Treaty; they promise also to take nothing but what they shall pay for.

The King being at *Tork* with six thousand horse, and eighteen thousand foot, understood that the Scots were marching towards *Newcastle*, therefore sends fifteen hundred horse, with a battalion of Infantry to dispute the passage over the *Tine*; a skirmish followed, in which four hundred of the *English* were slain, and two hundred Scots, whose Army being far greater then the other, caused them to retreat. Then the Scots for two hours lay siege to *Newcastle*, which upon the first summons opened their gates. Then the Scots make themselves masters of *Hartpool*, and of two Castles on the *Tine*. Upon this the King sends to them to know their demands, and withall dissuades them from advancing any further with their Army; the Scots return a petition to the King, wherein they desire a free Parliament, for ending of all differences, and settling of a solid peace; the *English* Lords being assembled at *Tork*, desire likewise of the King that he would call a Parliament, which at last was assented to, and five and twenty thousand pounds Sterling was assigned to the Scots towards the defraying of their charges; in the mean time the Castle of *Edinburgh* is delivered up, and some *English* horse, with five hundred of their foot, (which were sent from *Barwick* to *Dunce*, to carry away nine peeces of Ordnance left there by the Scots) are defeated and slain by the Lord *Haddington*.

*Virgil.* Hitherto we have seen King *Charles* in his glory: but now, [*Nox atra caput tristi circumvolat umbra*] The bright day of his Reign is overcast with a dark and dismal cloud. The morning of his day shined out clear, but it was shut up in a dismal evening:

*Seneca.* Quem dies vidit veniens superbum  
Hunc dies vidit fugiens jacentem.

Whom Phæbus rising saw with Glory crown'd,  
Him Phæbus setting sees flat on the ground.

In the tragedy of his life, we may see the catastrophe of humane felicity. Kings are crowned with thorns as well as with gold; and with *Peter* they walke upon the waters; their heads like *Nebuchadnezzars* Image are of gold, but their feet are of clay; they live like gods, but dye like men:

*Quisquam*

*An. Christi.*  
*Seneca.*  
*Quisquamne regno gaudet? O fallax bonum,  
Quantum malorum, quam fronte blanda regis?  
Ut alta ventos semper excipiunt iuga,  
Rupemque saxis vasta dirimentem freta,  
Quamvis quieti verberant fluctus maris:  
Imperia sic excelsa fortune objacent.*

10  
10  
*U bol dote on Kingdomes? O mans vanitie!  
U bat mischiefs under smiling faces lie?  
As storms rage most on Hills, and as the Rocks  
Which part the Sea, are subject to its knocks:  
So highest Principalities and Crowns  
Are liable to angry Fortunes frowns.*

And here I will conclude, being arrived into the wish'd for Harbour: & nunc immensum spatium confecimus aquor: I have sailed over a great Sea, and it's time to cast anchor. I will not venture upon the stormy rocks, quick-sands, contrary tides, and whirlpools of these last ten years, lest I make shipwrack, and so be forced to hang up my wet cloaths in *Neptunes* temple: Ne me tabula sacer votiva paries indicet voida suspendisse potenti vestimenta maris Deo. In the mean while, let us beseech Almighty God, who hath set bounds to the Sea, and to its proud waves, who holdeth the winds in his fist, whose word is fulfilled by fire and hail, snow, vapour and stormy wind, that he will be pleased to appease this storm which hath lasted so many years among us, and to assuage this tempestuous wind, worse then *Euroclydon*, which vexed *St. Paul* and his passengers; that he would bring again the Sun and Stars so long hid from us, and that he would conduct the weather-beaten ship of this Church and State into the harbour of *Tranquillity*; that at last enjoying some serenity and *Halcion* dayes, we may sit securely under our Vines and Fig-trees, and sing the songs of *Sion* in our own Land. Amen.

FINIS.

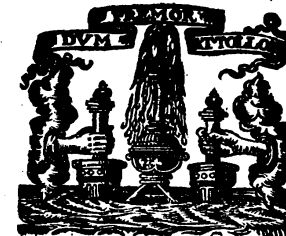
A BRIEF  
**CHRONOLOGY**  
OF THE  
Principal Passages  
Fallen out in the  
**WORLD:**

FROM THE  
*MACEDONIAN* KINGDOM,  
TILL

The last TEN YEARS:

Divided into  
180 DECADS, containing 1800 YEARS;

BY  
*ALEXANDER ROSSE.*



LONDON,

Printed for *John Saywell*, and are to be sold at his Shop, at  
the sign of the *Greyhound* in *Little-Britain*, without *Adlersgate*,  
M. DC. LII.

# CHRONOLOGICAL

OF THE

Principles of

History

# WORK

BY

WILLIAM B. ELLIOTT

OF

THE UNIVERSITY OF

OXFORD

Printed by J. B. Nichols and Son, Stationers, Strand

ALBANY, N. Y.



1843

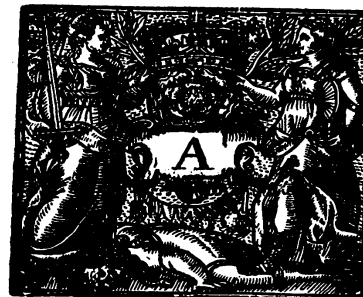
Printed by J. B. Nichols and Son, Stationers, Strand

ALBANY, N. Y.



TO THE  
RIGHT WORSHIPFULL  
S<sup>r</sup> JUSTINIAN EISOM,  
KNIGHT and BARONET.

SIR;



S *Aeneas* after seven Years  
tossing and tumbling up-  
on the impetuous Billows  
of the angry and enraged  
Sea (*Per Syrtes & inhospita  
saxa*) was at last so happy  
as to cast Anchor in his  
long-wish'd for Harbour,  
(*Sedes ubi Fata quietas osten-  
dunt;*) So I having some Years crossed the Ocean of  
*History*, (where likewise I have been crossed by  
Storms and contrary Winds and Tides) at last have  
sheltered my Weather-beaten Historically-Ship,  
under the Lee-shore of a knowing and honourable  
*Patron*. I have adventured also to secure this  
*Chronological Cock-Boat* under the Cliffe of your  
*Protection*, being thoroughly acquainted with your  
Worth, Ingenuity, and Learning. That *Latin-  
Piece* you set me upon, wherein I shew how farr  
short the *Latin Poets* are of *Virgill*, is not as yet come  
to perfection; in the interim I was desirous, as an  
earnest

Iiii 2



The Epistle *DEDICATORY*.

earnest of that, to present you with this Piece; not doubting but ere long I shall be able to give a full account of my Pains in the other; So with a thankful recognition of your Favours towards me, I take leave, and will ever be found

(SIR)

Your humble servant,

ALEXANDER ROSSE.

A BRIEF

A brief  
**CHRONOLOGIE**

Of the Principall Passages since the end of the

MACEDONIAN KINGDOME till these present Times, according to the years of CHRIST, before or after his Birth:

Divided into Decads.



Onathas brother to Judas is made General of the Jewes.

Demetrius encroacheth on his Neighbours, is overcome and slain by Alexander the supposed son of Epiphanes.

The Dalmatian War, and then the Spanish under Claudus, Lucullus, and Scipio.

158  
Tea. bef. Chr.

Simon succeedeth Jonathan, he takes Gaza, raiseth Simon, &c. is slain with his two sons Mattathias and Judas; John escapeth.

Ptolomy Physcon or Evergetes marrieth Cleopatra the mother, kills her son, and then marrieth her daughter.

The third Punic War, and Carthage destroyed.

148

John Hyrcanus succeeds his father, besiegeth Ptolomy, makes peace with Antiochus Pius, demolisheth the Temple on Mount Garizim, reneweth the League with the Romans, besiegeth and takes Samaria.

The Servil war in Sicily. Numantia destroyed.

138

Demetrius freed from the Parthian captivity, to him succeeds his son Antiochus Gryphus. Fabius recovereth Lusitania, and cuts off the right hands of all the Rebels. Pompey is beaten by the Numantines.

128

Antiochus Cyzicenus brother to Gryphus, makes war against him.

Ptolomy Lathurus or Lamyrus reigns four years with his Mother, by whom he is expelled.

The Romans make war against the Thracians, and Dalmatians; and Mithridates King of Pontus and Jugurtha.

118

Aristobulus the first King of Judea since Zedechias.

Ptolomy Lathurus kills his Mother, and assumes again the Government.

The Romans make war against the Cymbrians.

108

Alexander Jannæus son of Hircanus, brother to Aristobulus, obtains divers Victories against his enemies.

Ptolomy Alexander, Cleopatra's other son, is forced by her to marry Selene, taken from Ptolomy Lathurus by Cleopatra.

At Rome, Metellus is banished and revoked. Marius raiseth sedition at home, and stirs up Mithridates abroad. Rutilius condemned for extortion in Asia. Livius Drusus slain for raising sedition. The Marsi and others in Italy make war against the Romans.

98

Kkkk

Hanna

## A brief Chronologie

Years bef. Chr.  
88

Hanna the Prophetess becometh a widow; the Pharisees overcome Alexander; he crucifieth the authors of the Rebellion, and kills their wives and children; he falls sick of a Quartan Ague, which held him three years till his death.

Tigranes King of Armenia is invited by the Syrians, over whom he reigneth 18. years in peace.

Arctas King of Arabia obtaineth Damascus, by killing Antiochus Dionysius the fifth brother of Seleucus.

Latharus returns to his Kingdome of Egypt.

Pompey, father, to Pompey the Great, defeateth the Picens, with others. Scylla overcommeth the Samnites. Sulpitius slain by Scylla, Cato by the Mariti, Octavius and Mervla by Cinna. Scylla hath divers Victories. Rome besieged by Marius, Carbo, Cinna and Sertorius. Pompey killed with thunder, Cinna stoned, Marius slain.

78

Alexandra Sabonne, wife of Jamneus, great with the Pharisees.

Ptolomy Anletes, so called from his delight in Musical Instruments, King of Egypt, he was father to Cleopatra the wife of M. Antony, he dieth about this time.

Antiochus Cizicerus lurks in Cilicia till Tigranes was defeated by Lucullus, who again restores him to his Kingdome of Syria.

At Rome, Scylla tyrannizeth, then dieth. Lepidus defeated. Sertorius rebels in Spain, who beats Pompey and Metellus. Mithridates overcome by Lucullus, the Dardani by Scribonius, Cassius by Spartacus, who is at last defeated and slain by Crassus: Nicomedes of Bithynia makes Rome his heir, It's made a Province.

68

Aristobolus possesseth two and twenty Castles, overcomes Hircanus, and deposeth him. Antipater, Herods father, attempts the restoring of Hircanus. Aretas the Arabian besiegeth Aristobolus in Jerusalem, the siege raised by Pompey, who takes Jerusalem; he heareth at Damascus the difference between the two brothers, and giveth the Priesthood to Hircanus, but not the Kingdome, and carrieth Aristobolus with his two sons to Rome, Alexander the younger escapeth.

Syria with Cilicia is made a Province by Pompey; Tigranes submits to him, who deposeth Antiochus for not keeping his Kingdome when he had it.

At Rome the Capitol is rebuilt. Metellus ends the three years war in Crete, called therefore Creticus. Pompey ends the Pyrrical war, and hath divers victories. Catelines Conspiracy defeated. Clodius desloureth Pompeia. Pompey triumpheth. Helvetians attempt Gaule.

58

Alexander the Jew submits to Gabinius, then rebels, and is defeated. Crassus robs the Temple of Jerusalem.

In Syria, Gabinius is President; he brings seventeen millions to Rome, is banished, and Crassus sent in his place, who was slain by the Parthians, and melted gold put in his mouth. The Parthians expelled out of Syria by Cassius.

In Egypt, Ptolomy is deposed by his Subjects, is restored by Pompey; his daughter whom the Egyptians made their Queen, strangleth her husband, and marrieth one Archelaus; both are killed by Gabinius, when Ptolomy was restored; To him succeeds Ptolomy Dionysius, with his sister and wife Cleopatra.

At Rome, Crassus, Pompey, and Cesar make a league; Cesar subdues the Gallicans, hath Illyria and Gaule assigned him for five years, makes war with the Gauls nine years, defeateth Ariovistus, makes an attempt upon Brittain, envied by Pompey, he had many victories, he retains his Army for his own defence. Cicero banished and restored.

48

Aristobolus released by Cesar, and slain by the Pompeians, his son Alexander beheaded by Scipio at Antioch. Antipater made Governour of Judea, who makes Phaselus his eldest son Governour of Jerusalem, and Herod of Galilee, who was in danger for executing Ezechias the thief, but acquitted by Hyrcanus. The Jews made Citizens of Rome. Antipater poisoned by Malichus, and is killed by Herod, whom Cassius makes Governour of Celo-Syria. Antigonus son of Aristobolus invades Galilee, whom Herod expelleth, who with Phaselus are made Tetrarchs of Judea by Antony. Antigonus takes Jerusalem by meanes of Pacorus

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Pacorus the Parthian, and sends Hircanus and Phaselus bound to Galilee. Phaselus datheth out his own brains. Herod escaped into Egypt.

In Egypt, Ptolomy banisheth Cleopatra, who takes Cesar for her Protector. Ptolomies Tutors kill Pompey. Ptolomy defeated by Cesar, and is drowned. Alexandria and the Library burnt by Cesar, who seileth Cleopatra; she poysoneth her brother, and kills her sister Arsinoe; she dissolves a Pearl in Vinegar; Antony doats on her.

At Rome, the civil war between Cesar and Pompey lasted four years; Pompey defeated in Pharsalia, and flyeth into Egypt; Cesar hath divers Victories, and is made Dictator; Pompey's son stirred up by Cato and others to renew the war; Scipio slain; Cato kills himself; Cesar subdues Africk, makes Numidia a Province, defeats Pompey's son in Spain, and kills him, reforms the Kalendar, and is slain with 23 wounds.

Herod made King of Judea, gets many Victories, takes Joppe, recovers Galilee, overthrowes Antigonus, marries Mariamne the Nece of Hircanus, takes Jerusalem, and beheads Antigonus, so ends the Asimonæan Race; Aristobolus drowned by Herod; he overcomes the Arabians, and puts Hircanus to death, and is at Rhodes confirmed King. Syria is regained by Ventidius from Pacorus the Parthian.

At Rome, Octavius and Antony are reconciled; Sext. Pompeius seizeth on the Corn going for Rome, with whom Octavius hath war; at last Pompey flyeth into Parthia, and is killed. Lepidus resigns his Triumvirate. Antony hath bad successe in Parthia; The Dalmatian and Panonian war; Africk, Judea, and Spain subdued; Mauritania made a Province; divers other places subdued; Octavius and Antony at variance about Cleopatra; the battel at Actium, Antony is defeated, and kills himself.

In Judea, Mariamne executed, with Alexandra, and others of Antigonus his Faction by Herod; His buildings at Jerusalem, at Samaria, which he called Sebaste, and Cesaria, called Straton's Tower.

In Egypt, Cleopatra kills her self; Egypt is made a Province.

At Rome, the Temple of Janus is shut; Octavius triumpheth, and is called Augustus. Gallus President of Aegypt is banished, and kills himself; Spain subdued; the Pantheon built; Tyber breaks in upon Rome.

In Judea, Herod builds a Temple of white Marble to Augustus, reedifieth the Temple of Jerusalem, and builds the Tower Antonia, he brings back his two sons from Rome. Agrippa entertained by Herod at Jerusalem; he accuseth his two sons Aristob. and Alexander by Mariamne.

At Rome, Augustus confines the Senate to a lesse number; Agrippa recovereth the Roman Ensigns taken by Mithridates, and regains the Colours which were lost by Crassus and Antony. Augustus adopteth Agrippa's sons by his daughter. Agrippa overcommeth the Spanish slaves, and the Bospori, but refuseth a Triumph. Tiberius subdueth the Panonii, and is made Colleague to Augustus. Drusus overcommeth the Frisians.

In Judea, Herod is reconciled to Augustus, he accuseth his sons, and they are executed. Antipater conspireth against his father, and is put to death; A Tax is imposed on the Jews by Cyrenius. John the Baptist is born, and six months after our Saviour Jesus Christ: Herod commands the children of Bethlehem to be murdered, he dieth shortly after; Archelaus succeeds: Antipater Tetrarch of Galilee, and Philip of Trachonitis: At the Passover 3000. Jews slain.

At Rome, Claudius the son of Drusus is born, Drusus is killed with a fall from his horse: Tiberius triumpheth, and hath the Tribunes power for five years, to keep under Caius and Lucius, Augustus his Nephews: A general Tax over the Roman world; the Temple of Janus shut the third time. Varus President of Syria pillageth the country. Caius Cesar parteth Herods lands among his children. Lollius being accused of Treason, flew himself. Augustus forbids any man to call him Lord.

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

1

Christ is born in *Bethleem*. *Archelaus* confirmed by *Augustus*. Christ flyeth into *Egypt*. *Archelaus* marrieth incestuously with his brother *Alexanders* widow; is accused to the Senate for his cruelty, for which he is banished to *Vienna*; And *Judea* annexed to the Province of *Syria*.

At *Rome*, *Augustus* adopteth *Tiberius*. *Armenia* is left by the *Parthian* to the *Romans*. *Ariobarzanes* governour of *Armenia*. *Cinna* conspireth against *Augustus*, is pardoned and made Consul. *Agrippa* Nephew to *Augustus* banished for his intolencis; and *Julia*, *Augustus* his daughter for adultery. *Germanicus* makes war in *Dalmatia*. *Ovid* banished. *Vespasian* born. *Magicians* and *Astrologers* expelled *Rome*, the *Pannonians* tie for peace.

10

In *Judea*, the *Samaritans* prophane the Temple; Christ disputeth there: *Judas Ganolites* raiseth a sedition. *Cæsarea Philippi* built by *Philip* the Tetrarch, in honour of *Augustus*. The *Jews* are expelled *Rome* and *Italy*, and employed against the *Samaritans*. In *Syria* *Varus* is governour; he being defeated by *Arminius*, kills himself in *Germany*.

The *Romans* under *Tiberius* break league with the *Goths*, who therefore waste *Mesia*. *Augustus* dieth at *Nola*; *Tiberius* succeeds, who puts *Agrippa* to death, and famisheth *Julia*. *Tyber* overfloweth. *Germanicus* hath divers victories, and triumpheth over the *Catti*, &c. not long after he is poisoned by *Piso*, who being accused of this murder kills himself. *Zeno* king of *Armenia* makes peace with *Parthia*.

20

In *Judea*, *Pilate* is president, who upon the *Jews* threats, removes his standards with the statue of *Tiberius*, out of the Temple into *Cæsarea*: He takes also the *Corban* or Treasure out of the Temple, and with it pays for the publique water-works. *Herod Antipus* builds *Tyberias*, divorceth his wife *Areta*, and marrieth *Herodias* his brother *Philip* his wife, and then beheadeth the *Baptist*; for which he is defeated by the *Arabians*: Christ is Baptized.

At *Rome*, the *Players* are expelled the City: *Pompey's Theatre* repaired by *Tyberius*, and the statue of *Sejanus* erected in it. *Livia* poisoneth her husband *Drusus*, and lyeth with *Sejanus*, who destroys the friends of *Germanicus*. *Tacfarinus* killed by *Dolobella*. *Sejanus* put to death, his son strangled, his daughter deflowered, then murdered. *Tiberius* goeth into *Campania*, then to *Capree*, upon the burning of Mount *Cælius*. *Agrippina* bears *Nero* to *Domitius*. At *Fidene* the Amphitheater kills with its fall 50000 people. *Tiberius* his hatred against the family of *Germanicus*. In this ten years see the *French*, *Thracians*, and *Frisians* rebell.

30

In *Judea* Christ suffereth, after him *St. Stephen*; and *St. James* is Bishop of *Jerusalem*: the Disciples are persecuted; *St. Paul*, the *Eunuch*, and *Samaria* converted. *Paul* preacheth in *Arabia*, *James* in *Spain*. *Peter* healeth *Eneas*, and raiseth *Tabitha*. *Cornelius* converted; *Paul* and *Barnabas* expelled *Antioch* by the *Jews*. *Pilate* writes to *Tiberius* about Christ's Miracles. *Herod Agrippa* imprisoned at *Rome* for wishing *Tiberius* dead; he is released by *Caligula*, and made King of *Judea*, and gives him a golden Chain which he hanged up in the Temple. *Philip* dyeth, his Tetrarchy annexed to *Syria*. *Herod* banished by *Caligula* to *Lions*, whom *Herodias* follows, his Tetrarchy is given to *Agrippa*. *Caiphas* the High-Priest kills himself.

At *Rome*, *Nero* son of *Germanicus* is starved by *Tiberius*, so was *Agrippina* wife to *Germanicus*. *Tiberius* ragech and tyrannizeth over the people and Nobility; he hath war, then makes peace with *Artabanus* King of *Parthia*. *Caligula* succeeds, he spends a hundred millions in three years, abuseth his three sisters, wished the *Romans* had but one neck, makes himself a God, executeth many innocent people in sport, pillageth *France* and *Spain*, employes his Army to gather Cockle-shells on the *Brittish* shore: he had two books called the *Sword* and *Dagger*, in which he writes the names of those he meant to murder. *Nero* the Emperour, and *Titus Vespasian* are born.

In

## of the principall Passages, &c.

Years of Christ.

40

In *Judea*, *Petronius* is commanded by *Caligula* to set up his statue in the Temple. *Agrippa* having obtained *Jerusalem* and *Samaria* of *Claudius* without tribute, was struck with vermin and died. *Judea* again is made a Province. *Theudas* for an insurrection is beheaded. *Paul* and *Barnabas* stay two years at *Iconium*. *St. Matthew* writes his Gospel. The name Christians begins at *Antioch*; *St. James* is beheaded; *St. Peter* delivered out of prison miraculously; *St. Mark* is Bishop of *Alexandria*; *Paul* stoned at *Lysra*; the Apostles Synod at *Jerusalem*; *Barnabas* and *Mark* saile to *Cyprus*; *Paul* and *Sylus* passe through *Syria*; *Timothy* is circumcised; Many *Jews* smothered between the Temple-Gates upon a sedition.

At *Rome*, *Caligula* is slain. *Claudius* succeeds; his wife *Messalina* insatiable in lust: He makes war with the *Britains*, from which he calls his son *Britannicus*: He depriveth the *Rhodians* of their privileges, for killing some *Romans*. *Vespasian* goeth into *Britain*; he renews the secular Playes. *Messalina* and her Paramour *Silius* are both slain. *Claudius* marrieth *Agrippina* his brother *Germanicus* daughter, who by her persuasions adopts her son *Nero*, and recalls *Seneca*, whom he makes his Tutor. *Vespasian* takes the Isle of *Wight*; and *Claudius*, *Orkney*; the *Britains* and *Picts* yeeld to the *Romans*. *Asinius Pollio* is banished; and *Valerius*, the Consul kills himself.

In *Judea*, *Cumanus* the Governour maintaineth a faction between the *Jews* and *Samaritans*, which was the destruction of many; wherefore he is banished, and *Felix* set in his place; who marrieth *Drusilla*, *Agrippa's* sister, and puts *Jonathan* the High-priest to death, and tyrannizeth over the *Jews*. To *Felix* succeeds *Portius Festus*. *Lydia*; and *Dennis* the *Areopagite*. *Iustus* and *Crispus* are converted. *Paul* writes his two Epistles to the *Thessalonians*, his first Epistle to *Timothy*, his two Epistles to the *Corinthians*, to *Titus*, to the *Romans*, and his other epistles. *St. Luke* writes his Gospel. *Philip* is crucified at *Hierapolis*. *Paul* fighteth with beasts at *Ephesus*, raiseth *Eutichus*, is imprisoned at *Cæsarea*, appeals to *Cæsar*: his ship-wreck and imprisonment.

At *Rome* is a great famine. *Nero* marrieth *Octavia*, daughter to *Claudius*, who by *Agrippina* his wife is poisoned. *Caracæus* General of the *Britains* brought to *Rome*. *Nero* succeeds to *Claudius*, a good Emperour for the first five years: he poisoneth *Britannicus*, fearing that *Agrippina* would make him Emperour: He builds an Amphitheatre in *Campo martis*. *Janus* Temple shut the fifth time. *Artaxata* the chief City of *Armenia* taken by *Corbalo*. *Poppæa Sabina* becomes *Nero's* Concubine: he commits incest with his mother, then murders her; he institutes the Quinquennial games, called *Neronia*: a thunder-bolt struck the Cup out of his hand: he committed many works of darknes in the night.

In *Judea*, the *Jews* and *Agrippa* differ, about a Prospect which he erected on his house. *Annianus* High-Priest, and son of *Annas*, is deposed for stoning of *St. James*. *Jesus Annas* foretels *Jerusalem's* destruction. *Agrippa* beautifieth *Cæsarea Philippi*, and calls it *Neroniades*. The building of the Temple is finished: strange Prodigies and Apparitions were seen at *Jerusalem*. *Florus* for his cruelty is slain by the *Jews*, and six thousand *Romans*. *Agrippa* stoned out of the City. *Vespasian* is sent thither, who takes divers places. *Titus* is left to end the war. Three factions in *Jerusalem*; with a horrible famine, in which a woman eat her childe; at last it is taken by *Titus*.

In *Rome*, *Nero* kills his wife *Octavia*, and marrieth his Whore *Poppæa*: by *Suetonius* he overcomes the *Brittans*, and expels *Vologesus* the *Parthian* king out of *Armenia*: in a woman's habit he marrieth *Pythagoras*; he sets *Rome* on fire, and sings *Homer's Iliades*. Upon the discovering of a plot, he kills *Seneca*, *Lucan*, and many more: he kicks *Poppæa* great with childe, and kills her. He crowns *Tiridates* king of *Armenia*, at *Rome*. He goeth into *Greece* with his Fiddlers, marrieth *Sporus* an Eunuch; attempts to cut the *Isthmus* in *Peloponnesus*: is proclaimed an enemy to the State, and murders himself. *Galba* succeeds, who is slain by *Otho*; he kills himself being defeated by *Vitellius*, who also after nine moneths is killed.

The Church begins to be persecuted generally under *Nero*. *St. Mark* having written his Gospel from *St. Luke's* mouth, is slain at *Alexandria*: *St. Luke* writes the Acts; *St. Paul* returns into *Italy*, and writes his second Epistle to *Timothy*. *Ioseph* of *Aramathea* converts the *Britains*: the Christians are secretly warned out of *Jerusalem*. *St. Iohn's* Gospel.

50

60

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

Gospel written at *Ephesus*; Peter and Paul suffer at *Rome*. Menander the Heretick, father of the Gnosticks, makes himself the Saviour of man. The Nazarens observe the Law with the Gospel.

70

In *Judea*, *Titus* commands the two Drachmes usually offered to the Temple, to be payed to the Capitol; the ornaments and wealth of the Temple brought to *Rome*, and laid up in the Temple of Peace. Many miseries befall the Jews. The Temple of *Onias* at *Heliopolis* is shut up by *Vespasian's* command.

At *Rome*, *Vespasian* is Emperour, who with *Titus* triumphs over the Jews. The Batavians are brought to obedience: He expels the Philosophers out of *Rome* for some abuses: He dedicates the Temple of Peace; and the Temple of *Janus* shut the sixth time. *Icabaia*, *Greece*, and divers other places made Provinces; The Sarmatians invade *Mesia*; He sets the Image of the Sun upon *Nero's* statue, instead of *Nero's* head: The *Alani* waste *Media* and *Armenia*; Two Senators plot *Vespasian's* death; he dieth of a Flux; *Titus* succeeded for two years; he built an Amphitheater; at the dedication of which 5000. beasts slain.

In the Church *Linus* succeeds *St. Peter*; the Nazarens held there was but one soule in substance of man, beast, and plant.

80

At *Rome*, the Capitol is fired from heaven, which is consumed with many fair buildings. *Titus* dyeth, the delight of mankind; whom *Domitian* succeeds, the Fly-catcher, and an excellent Archer; he repudiates his wife, and marrieth his brothers widow *Julia*; he makes Lawes against Adultery, and Gelding; he kills his cousin *Flavius Sabinus*, and causeth more Corn to be sowed, and lesse Vines planted; The Capitol is rebuilt. *Agricola* having subdued the *Brittains*, passeth over to *Ireland*, then is made Governour of *Syria*. Philosophers and Mathematicians expelled *Rome*. *Nerva* banished, and recalled. Playes appointed every fourth year to *Jupiter*. *Capitolinus* his tyranny over the Senators; he assumes divine titles. *Agricola* subdueth *Fife* in *Scotland*.

In the Church, to *Linus*, who was martyred, succeeded *Cletius*, or *Anacletus*. *St. Andrew* crucified in *Achaia*. The Nicholaitan Hereticks held promiscuous Marriages, and the creation of all earthly things by Angels: The *Ebionites* called also *Sampsai* and *Elcesaites* denied Christs Divinity, and rejected *St. Pauls* Epistles, and all the Gospels except *St. Matthews*: *Corinthus* denies *Maries* Virginity, makes *Jesus* and *Christ* two different persons, held Circumcision, and are the first Millenarics; *St. John* would not stay with him in the Bath.

90

At *Rome*, *Domitian* triumpheth over the *Dacians* and *Germans*; he unjustly buried alive *Cornelia*, the chief Vestal virgin. The Romans lose divers Armies. *Decabalus* the Gothish King, deludeth the Romans by putting Armour on the stumps of Trees; he murdereth divers, and puts all the Line of *David* to death; he intended to kill his wife, with many others, who conspire and murder him. *Cocceius Nerva* succeeded, who ruled well, and repealed all *Domitians* Acts; he died after one year and four moneths; *Trajanus* whom he adopted, succeeded for 19. years, a just Emperour, whose Tutor was *Plutarch*.

The Church is persecuted the second time by *Domitidi*. *John* having escaped the scaling Oyle, is banished into *Pathmos*, where he writes his Revelation. *St. Dennis* is beheaded at *Paris*; *Timothy* stoned at *Ephesus*. *Protasius* and *Garvasius* suffer at *Milkin*; *Flav. Clemens* the Consul slain for Christianity; his wife *Domicilla* is banished into *Pontus*; *Clemens* Pope ten years.

100

At *Rome*, *Trajan* refuseth Consulship; The *Dacian* wars lasted five years; He defeats *Decabalus*, and renews the Sword-playing; he builds a Bridge over *Danubius*, and overthrowes *Decabalus*, who for grief kills himself at *Zarnia* or *Alba Julia*; his treasure is found hid in the River; the Bridge is broken down, and Colonies planted in *Transylvania*;

## of the principal Passages, &c.

*slvania*; he erects a Library and Column at *Rome*, he hath divers Victories in the East; *Nero's* golden house burnt; he builds a Fleet in the Red Sea; he is stiled *Optimus*.

Years of Christ.

In the Church, a third persecution is raised by *Trajan*. *John* dieth at *Ephesus*, whose successor was *Onesimus*. *Simen* Bishop of *Jerusalem* is crucified. *Ignatius* Bishop of *Antioch* is sent bound to *Rome*, where he is torn by the Lions. *Onesimus*, *St. Pauls* Disciple, is stoned. *Clemens* bound to an anchor, and cast into the sea. *Anacletus* succeeded for 10 years.

At *Rome*, the Pantheon is burnt by lightning. *Trajan* in the East beats the Kings of *Armenia* and *Parthia*. *Armenia*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Assyria* made Provinces. *Trajan's* Column finished: He takes *Nisibis*, *Edeffe*, and burns *Seleucia*: He is endangered by the Earthquake at *Antioch*: He makes the Haven at *Ancona* navigable: He dieth at *Seleucia*; his bones are buried under his Column. *Adrian* succeeded for 20 years; he kills *Palma* and other brave men; he subdueth the *Sarmatians*; he gives *Armenia* and *Mesopotamia* to *Cosroes*. The *Brittains*, *Scots*, and *Picts* rebell.

In the Church, the persecution ceaseth, upon *Pliny's* letters in behalf of the Christians to *Trajan*. *Papius S. Johns* disciple Bishop of *Hierapolis*, maintaineth the Millenarics Sect. *Quadratus* Bishop of *Athens*, who lived in the time of Christ, died about the time of *Hadrian*. *Anacletus* martyred.

At *Rome*, *Adrian* forbid men and women to use one Bath: he builds *Adrianopolis* in *Thrace*, sends *Antoninus* Proconsul into *Asia*, and visits all the Roman provinces: He plants Colonies in *Cyrene* and *Lybia*; He honours *Platina*, *Trajan's* widow, with a Temple, for by her he got the Empire: He makes a wall in *Britain*, to keep out the *Scots*: He disputes at *Athens* with the Philosophers: He seileth the Provinces in *Africk*, and erecteth a Library at *Athens*, and a monument to his dead Horse.

In the Church, *Evaristus* a Greek is Pope 9 years, and then is martyred. In *Asia*, the Christians are persecuted by *Antoninus*. *Alexander* the first is Pope 10 years; he brought in Holy-water. Divers Apologies written in the Christians behalf, which made *Adrian* stay the persecution, and was minded to build them a Church, but was hindered by their enemies.

At *Rome*, *Adrian* makes his own Tombe, called *Moles Adriani*: He builds a City to his favourite *Antonius*, who was drowned in *Egypt*; he rebuilds *Jerusalem*, and calls it *Aelia*. The Jews rebell, because he built a Temple to *Jupiter* there where *Solomons* Temple stood; *Iulius Severus* is sent against them. *Adrian* dieth, to whom succeeded *Antoninus Pius* 22 years, who adopted *M. Annus Verus*, and calls him *Aurelius*. The Northern *Brittains* rebell, and are subdued by *Lollius*.

In *Judea*, the Jewes are forbid to dwell in *Jerusalem*. They rebell, and are defeated with their Captain *Cochabas*, by *Severus*, who destroyes their Castles and Towns, and wastes all their Country; their Captives are sent into *Spain*, where they continued 1500 years, till *Ferdinand* and *Emanuel* expelled them.

In the Church, Pope *Alexander* is martyred. *Sixtus* the first succeeds Pope 10 years; he instituted Altars. *Iustin*, of a Samaritan becomes a Christian: *Aquila Ponticus*, of a Christian became a Jew; he translated the Bible into Greek, and was cast out of the Church for studying Astrologie. *Saturninus* the Heretique held Christs body phantastical, that Marriage was the doctrine of Devils, that the Jewes and Christians had two different gods, &c. *Baslides* the Heretique held, that Christ suffred not, but *Simon* of *Cyrene*; that Faith was natural, and divers other wild opinions.

At *Rome*, *Antoninus* repaireth the decayed Bridge, and forbids the reading of *Sybilla's* books: He reforms divers abuses; subdues the *Moors*, *Daci*, and *Alani*: He is bountiful to *Rhodes* and other places shaken with earthquakes.

In the Church, *Sixtus* is martyred. *Telaphorns* succeeded 11 years: He appointed Lent-Fast,

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

Fast, and the Hymn [*Gloria in excelsis*] Mark, the first uncircumcised Bishop of Jerusalem; the debate about the observation of Easter began: *Carpocras* the Heretick makes Christ a meer man, holds transfiguration, denies the Resurrection, and affirms that Satan made the world; his disciples were called Gnosticks. *Cerdon*, another Heretick, held two Gods, denied Christs humanity, and the Resurrection, and the Law: *Heracleon* held the same opinions, and after him *Valentinian*. *Marcus*, father of the Marcionites, held the same, and had a peculiar form of Baptism.

150

At Rome, *Antoninus* causeth persecution to cease, upon the inundation of *Tibris*, fires, and Earthquakes; he makes men as well as women subject to the Law of Adultery.

In the Church, *Polycarpus* Bishop of *Smyrna* converts many at Rome from Heresies, and then is martyred: *Justin* writes his first Apologie: Churches are consecrated, and Witnesses ordained in Baptism by Pope *Higinus*, who succeeded *Telephorus* the Martyr: he sat four years, and the first that stiled himself Pope: *Pius* succeeds 9 years; he appointed Nuns, and that Easter should be kept on Sunday; and Fonts in Churches.

160

At Rome, *M. Aurelius Antoninus Philosophus* reigned 19 years; his brother *Luc. Aur. Verus* is made Colleague, who marcheth against the Parthian, but dallies at *Antioch*, but his Army fight successfully, and take *Seleucia*, with 40000. Captives: The *Catti* are expelled out of *Rhetia*: *Antoninus* makes good Lawes; his son *Commodus* made *Cæsar*: *Pertinax* defeats the *Germans*, who had invaded *Italy*: The Marconian war is begun. *Lucius* returning home, dyeth by the way of an Apoplexie: The *Britains* rebell, and are suppressed by *Agricola*, who repaireth *Adrians* wall broken down by the *Scots* and *Picts*, who had invaded *Westmorland*.

In the Church is raised a fourth Persecution, in which *Justin* having written his second Apologie, is beheaded at Rome. *Polycarpus* suffers from *Anicetus* (who was now Pope 8 years) about the time of Easter; but it was agreed, that each Countrey should use their own custome. *Marcion* a Bishop's son, of a Christian became a Cerdonian: *Polycarpus* is martyred at *Smyrna*: *Photinus* Bishop of *Lions* suffers with many others: *Hegeippus* of a Jew becomes a Christian, and writes the Church-story: *Melito* Bishop of *Sardis* is also martyred. Pope *Anicete* ordaines shaving of Priests, and consecrating of Bishops.

The Gnosticks about this time lived; they held two Gods, two souls in each faithful man, *Jesus* and *Christ* to be different, that *Christ* remained 18 months on earth after his Resurrection, and that the world was made by Angels: *Tatian* held that *Adam* was damned, Marriage was fornication, *Flesh* and *Wine* not be eat and drunk; he held many Gods, and denied *Christ* to be of *David*; of him came the *Eucratites*: *Marcion* denied Christs Divinity, transfiguration he held, and rebaptisation as often as men fell; he rejected Marriage, the Old Testament, and eating of flesh, he also held all wars unlawful.

170

At Rome, the Emperour pawns his Plate and Jewels, to ease the people of Taxes, which afterward he redeemed. *Cassius* in *Armenia* calls himself Emperour, and is slain by his Souldiers: The Romans defeat the Marconians, by the Christians prayers: *Commodus* is made his fathers Colleague, they defeat the *Scythians*: *Antoninus* dieth in *Pannonia*: *Commodus* reigned 12 years, he kept 300 Concubines, and 300 boyes; he killed his sister *Lucilla*, and ravished the rest: before he subdued the *Germans*, he triumphed over them. In Britain, *Lucius* is the first Christian King; he erected three Arch-bishops, and built *St. Peters* in *Cornhill Lond.* which was the Cathedrall till *Pauls*

180

In the Church Pope *Anicetus* is martyred; his successor *Soter* sat four years; he ordained the Fathers consent, and Priests Benediction in Marriage; to him succeeded *Eleutherius* 15 years; he sends *Damianus* into Britain to baptize King *Lucius* and his people. The *Ophit* Hereticks worshipped the Serpent, holding *Christ* to be that Serpent which deceived *Eve*; they denyed the Resurrection, and Christs humanity. The

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Years of Christ.

The *Caini* held divers of the former opinions; so did the *Scetites*, but that these made *Seth* the Saviour of the world, the others *Cain*, *Ejau*, and *Judas*. The *Adamites* were naked in their Assemblies, had women in common in the dark, and denied Prayer. *Montanus* affirmed himself to be the Holy Ghost, denied the Trinity, allowed Incest, and baked the bread of the Sacrament with mans blood; his chief disciple was *Noetus*; *Lucian* and *Apello* were Marcions.

180

At Rome, *Commodus* gives himself to pleasure, and leaves the Government to *Perennius*, who murdered many Senators, at last he and his son are put to death for treason, and *Cleander* put in his room, who makes sale of all places and offices. The *Daci* are subdued by *Albinus* and *Niger*: 2000 die daily at Rome of the Plague; the Capitol and Library are burned by Lightning. The *Britains* after the death of *Lucius* have civil Wars, and rebell, but are subdued again by *Marcellus*: *Pertinax* being sent hither, was almost killed by the Souldiers, and is sent away again. The *Scots* and *Picts* again break *Adrians* Wall.

In the Church *Theodosian* makes the third Translation of the Bible; he was a Marcionite, then a Jew. *Pantenus*, whose scholler was *Clem. Alexandrinus*, sets up the first Christian Schoole at *Alexandria*: *Apollonius* the Senator is martyred: The Jews *Thalmud* is now made: The *Pepuzian* Hereticks, so called from *Pepusa* a Phrygian Town, were Montanists; they held *Pepusa* to be the heavenly Jerusalem mentioned in Scripture: The Apostolici held all things in common, condemned Marriage, thinking the Apostles did so; made Apocryphal Books their Gospel, and refused to admit those into the Church who fell after Baptism: *Artolyritæ* made up their Sacrament of bread and cheese. *Origioniani* and *Turpes*, so called from their filthy lives, forbidding Marriage, and extolling Fornication.

190

At Rome, *Commodus* removes the head from the Colossus, and puts his own head on it; He acteth *Hercules* in a Play, and is at last strangled by *Martia* his Concubine, and *Letus*. The Temples of *Vesta*, *Peace*, and others are burned. *Pertinax* reigned not full three moneths, being slain by the Souldiers, and *Did. Julianus* not much above two moneths, being also killed by them; then *Niger* in Syria, *Albinus* in Britain, *Severus* in *Pannonia*, (who reigned 17 years) are made Emperours: *Severus* defeats *Niger*, and besiegeth *Byzantium* three years; he hath many Victories in the East, and makes *Caracalla* his son, *Cæsar*; he takes *Bizantium*, kills *Albinus*, and sends his head to Rome, where he put 29 Senators to death; he makes *Geta* his other son, *Cæsar*, and makes *Caracalla* his Colleague. The *Britains* help *Albinus* against *Severus*, whom he defeats: *Viriatus Lupus* sent to Britain.

In the Church, *Tertullian* being vexed by the Roman Clergy, turns Montanist. *Severus* the Heretick followed *Marcions* opinions. *Theodosius* denied Christs Divinity, and took upon him to alter the Gospel. *Quarto-decimani* kept Easter on the 14. day of the Moon, and then fasted, they were *Antilapsarians*. *Alogi* rejected the Gospel and Apocalypse, saying they were written by *Cerubus*; they denied *Christ* to be the Word, or God. *Victor* Pope 9 years.

200

At Rome, *Severus* undertakes an Expedition into the East, and makes League with the King of *Armenia*; he wasteth *Arabia*, and mastereth King *Abgarus*, and hath divers other Victories; he repaireth the Pantheon: *Plantianus* the Favourite is killed by *Caracalla's* treachery, whose daughter *Plantilla* his own wife, with her sister, he banisheth: *Caracalla* striving with his brother, breaks his own thigh. *Severus* with his sons go into this time Scotland receiveth the Faith. Many of the *Caledonians* massacred for rebelling against the Romans.

LIII

In



## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

In the Church the 5. Persecution is raised by *Severus*. *Leonidas*, *Origen's* father, suffered at *Alexandria*, so did *Philip* Governour of *Egypt*. *Ireneus* Bishop of *Lyons*, with others, are martyred. *Narcissus* Bishop of *Jerusalem* flyeth into the wilderness: *Speratus* is martyred at *Carthage*. *Symmachus* translates the Bible. *Zephrinus* is Pope 18 years; he ordained the Eucharist to be received once a year. *Hermiani* and *Seleuciani* held the Chaos eternal with God, Angels Creators of mens souls, that Christ left his flesh for the Sun, they denied Baptism and the Resurrection. *Praxeas*, father of the *Patristic* *passiani*, held that God the Father onely suffered. *Melchisedeciani* made *Melchisedec* greater then Christ, whose Divinity they denied.

210— At *Rome*, *Caracalla* reigned six years; *Geta* ruled one year with him, whom he killed in his Mothers armes, and multitudes of his party; he married with *Julia* his mother-in-law; he overcomes the *Germans*; he marcheth into *Asia*, he murders the *Alexandrian* youth, for calling him *Oedipus*, and his wife *Jocasta*; burns *Aristotles* books; treacherously murders the *Parthians*; is slain by *Avitus*, *Caracalla's* Bastard, who succeeds, and is called *Heliogabalus*, a most luxurious and cruel Prince. The *Britains* rebel.

In the Church, *Calixtus* is Pope six years; he instituted the four Embers or Fasts before Ordination, and Church-yards: The fifth Edition of the Bible, called *Vulgata*, found at *Jericho*. A Council in *Africa* about Repabilitation. The *Elcefi* Hereticks held two Christs, denied *Maries* Virginity, deified the Water, rejected Scripture; *Angelici* adored Angels.

220— *Heliogabalus* brings his God, the Sun, to *Rome*, and builds a Temple for him. *Bassianus* his cousin made *Cesar*; *Heliogabalus* is slain with his Mother, and his body dragged and flung into the *Tibris*; *Alexander Severus* succeeded thirteen years, a good Prince, he had Christs Picture in his Closet; *Ulpian* his chief Lawyer and Counsellor is slain by the Souldiers. *Armenia* invaded by the *Persians*.

In the Church a persecution is raised by *Ulpian*. *Calixtus* martyred. Pope *Urban* succeeded seven years. Christians begin to build Churches. The sixth Edition of the Bible.

230— *Alexander* the Emperour goeth against *Artaxerxes* the *Persian*, and returns to *Antioch* with loss; he was severe against corrupt Judges, Harlots, Theeves, and false Notaries; he erects an Hospital for children, triumpheth over the *Persians*; *France* invaded by the *Germans*: He is slain with his Mother *Mammaea*. *Maximinus* a tall Goth succeeded two years, a great Trencher-man; he had been a Mulettor; *Gordian* is set up against him, who hanged himself upon the death of his son: The Senate choose two Emperours, *Publinus* and *Pupienus*, whom the Souldiers slew: *Maximinus* is slain before *Aquileia*, and his carcase flung to the dogs; *Gordianus* succeeded five years.

In the Church, *Urban* being martyred, *Pontianus* succeeded Pope four years, who being banished, dyed miserably in *Sardinia*: *Anterus* succeeded one moneth, who being martyred, had *Fabian* for his successor 14 years. *Cecilia* the Virgin and others are martyred. *Origen* instructeth *Mammaea* in the faith, and finisheth his *Octopla*. The sixth Persecution is raised, and ends with *Maximinus* his death.

240— At *Rome*, *Gordian* openeth the Temple of *Janus*, and defeats the *Persian*; he is slain by *Philip* the Arabian, who succeeded 5 years; he makes peace with the *Persian*. In the secular Playes, *Pompey's* Theater and many houses burnt; *Philopopolis* in *Thrace* is built by him.

In the Church, Pope *Fabian* admits *Philip* the Emperour upon his repentance: *Laurence* the Deacon is broyled on a Grid yron. A Council is held in *Arabia* against the Hereticks which held the souls Mortality, of which opinion was *Beryllus* Bishop of *Eoftra*, whom *Origen* reclaimed.

At.

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Years of Christ.

250

At *Rome*, *Philip* leaves his son, and goeth against *Decius*, whom the Souldiers in *Illyria* chose Emperour: *Philip* with his son are slain: *Decius* succeeded one year, who being slain by the *Goths*, *Gallus* succeeds two years, who became a tributary Prince to the *Goths*, the Empire is wasted by the *Goths* and *Persians*. *Gallus* and his son are slain by *Emilianus*, and he by *Valerian*, who reigneth 7 years; The *Goths* waste the Eastern parts; so doth *Sapores* the *Persian*, who made *Valerian* his foot-stool, and flaid him alive.

In the Church, *Fab. Pope* is martyred. *Novatianus* makes a Schisme: *Cornelius* a Roman Priest is banished, whipped, and beheaded. *Lucius* is Pope two years; he is martyred; *Stephen* Archdeacon is Pope three years; he ordained sacred Garments for those that served at the Altar; he also is martyred, whom *Sixtus* followed: Divers Synods were held about this time about the cause of *Novatus*, and the Lapsed: *Paul* the Eremite lived in the wilderness till *Constantine*; from him the Monks sprang up. The seventh Persecution is raised: *Cyprian* and many others are martyred: The *Valefi* held that they onely were saved, who made themselves Eunuchs: *Novatus*, father of the *Cathari*, who would admit none Lapsed: *Sabellius* denied the Trinity and Unity of God, and held that the matter was coeternal with God.

At *Rome*, *Galien* reigns alone, who mitigates the Christian persecution: Many Commanders usurp the Empire, which is wasted by the Barbarians, and the Commanders destroy each other: *Galien* is slain; *Aurelius* succeeds ten years, who is defeated and slaine at *Millan* by his Souldiers: *Marcus Aurelianus* succeedeth six years.

In the Church, to *Sixtus* succeeded Pope *Dionysius* nine years, who divides *Rome* into Parishes, and the Countrey into Diocesses. *Hieracitus* denied Marriage and the Resurrection, debarred children from Heaven, and held *Melchisedech* to be the Holy Ghost. *Origimis* made the Holy Ghost a creature, held that the souls were created before the body, and that the Devils after 1000 years should be released from punishment. *Samosatenus* Bishop of *Antioch* denied Christs Divinity, therefore would not baptize in Christs Name.

At *Rome*, *Aurelian* useth the Diadem, overcommeth the *Goths*; is beaten by, and beats the *Marconians*; He erecteth a Temple to the Sun; defeats the *Goths* in *Thrace*; incompasseth *Rome* with a Wall of fifty miles about; He triumpheth over *Zenobia* and *Tetricus*; she dyeth at *Rome*. Silk brought out of *India*: The *Boii* are suppressed; he is slain by the treachery of his Secretary *Mnesseus*, who for this is flung to wild beasts: *Tacitus* succeeds 6 moneths, and is slain by the Souldiers; his brother *Florianus* is slain; *Aurel. Probus* succeeds 6 years; He hath divers Victories. *Constantine* is born in *Britain* to *Constantinus* and *Helena*.

In the Church, *Felix* late Pope three years; He instituted Consecration of Altars, and Registered Martyrs names. *Eutichianus* succeeded 10 years, who buried with his own hands 342. Martyrs. A Synod is held at *Antioch* against *Samosatenus*. The ninth Persecution is raised by *Aurelian*, whose hand became stiffe as he was subscribing the Edict; but he dyed before it took effect. *Manes*, father of the *Manichees*, held all the Heresies of the former Heretiques: He was flaid alive by the *Persian* King.

At *Rome* much mischief is done by the Sword-players, who broke prison. *Probus* overcommeth the *Goths*, gives peace to the *Persian*, and defeats *Proculus* and *Bonofus*, usurpers; He is slain by his Souldiers. *Aurelius Carus* succeeds one year; obtains divers Victories, and is slain by Thunder: *Dioclesian* succeeds 20. yeares: He subdues the *Sarmate*, and *Persians*, and *Goths* in *Pannonia*, and Rebels in *France* and *Germany*, and *Julian* the Usurper; He had six yeares warrs with *Achilleus* the other Usurper.

LIII 2

In

280

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

290

In the Church, *Caius* late Pope 13 years: He instituted the 8 Ecclesiastical degrees. *Cyril* Bishop of *Antioch*, for hindring *Numerian* from entering into the Church, is slain by him. *Proclianite* hereticks, of one *Proclus*, held that Christ was not come in the flesh.

At *Rome*, *Dioclesian* assumes divine honours. *Constantius Chlorus* is made governour of *Britain*; *Galerius* is made Cæsar: these have divers victories. *Dioclesian* takes *Alexandria*, and *Archillus* in it, whom he flung to wild beasts. *Galerius* defeated by *Narjes* the Persian, and then defeats him. *Constantius* kills the French and *Almains*.

In the Church, *Caius* is martyred. *Marcellinus* succeeded Pope 8 years; he sacrificed to Idols. *Anthony* the Eremita then flourished. *Arnobius* converted to the faith, and writes against *Porphyrus*. *Amphibalus*, and ten more, suffered martyrdom in *Britain*. *Susanna* Niece to Pope *Caius*, martyred, for not marrying with *Maximian* a Heathen.

300

At *Rome*, *Dioclesian* and *Maximian* triumph over the Persians and Goths: *Diocles* will be called *Jovius*, and *Maximian*, *Herculeus*. They give over the government. *Galerius* and *Constantius* made Emperors, this of the West, the other of the East. *Constantius* dieth; to him succeeded his son *Constantine* 30 years; who married *Fausta Maximian's* daughter: He makes a Bridge over the *Rhine*, and hath divers victories. *Fausta* discovers *Maximian's* plot against *Constantine*.

In the Church, Pope *Marcelline* having at the Synod at *Sinveffa* in *Campania* publicly in a hair-cloth confessed his fault, is at last martyred, and his body after 36 dayes was interred by his successor *Marcellus*, who late 5 years, and was stifled to death by the stench of a filthy stable where he was inclosed; that stable afterward was turned to a Church, and called by his name. To him succeeded *Eusebius* 2 years. Many Christians are burnt in a house at *Nicomedia*, by *Valerius*. The tenth Persecution is raised, in which incredible numbers suffered in Egypt: *S. Alban* and others martyred in *Britain*. *Constantine* expelleth those of his Court, who for rewards would sacrifice to Idols. At this time the *Donatists* had divers Conventicles at *Carthage*. The traitors or betrayers of the Bible, are condemned in a Synod at *Cyrt* in *Africa*. Bishop *Melitus* an Antilapsarian; he had many followers, who held divers Jewish ceremonies. Fifteen Cardinals were instituted by the Pope, to bury and baptize. *Donatus* the Priest of *Carthage*, held the true Church no where but with him and his followers; He rebaptized, and held the Persons of the Trinity superior to each other.

310

*Galerius* having made *Licinius* Emperor in *Illyria*, kills himself, being troubled with a loathsome disease in his privities. *Constantine* defeats three times *Maxentius*, who is drowned in *Tyber*. *Constantine* triumpheth, and marryeth his sister to *Licinius*. *Maximian* is defeated by the Persian, then by *Licinius*, at last strangles himself. *Constantine*, by himself and his two sons, gets many victories; He overcomes *Licinius*, who turns Apostate. The *Britains* rebell, and defeat *Traberus*.

In the Church, Pope *Eusebius* is martyred. His successor *Melchisedes* late three years, who abolished Fasting upon Sundayes and Holy-dayes; he dyed a Martyr. In his time fell out the Schisme between *Donatus*, and *Cecilian* Bishop of *Carthage*. *Sylvester* succeeded Pope 21 years; he instituted the feast of *S. Peter ad Vincula*; he appointed the *Albe* and *Corporal* for the Altar. Divers Councils held at this time against the *Donatists*, *Antilapsarians*, *Jewes* and *Arians*. *S. Catherine* is martyred at *Alexandria*. *Constantine* becomes Christian, upon the sight of a Croffe in the aire. *Arius* brogeth his blasphemy, and is condemned in a Synod at *Alexandria*; *Constantine* confutes him by his letters.

320

*Constantine* appeaseth the tumultuous souldiers in *Gaul*; defeats the *Sauromates* and *Licinius* two times, at last puts him to death for plotting against him: He kills his own son *Crispus*, upon *Fausta's* false accusation: He repairs *Jerusalem*, and executes the younger *Licinius*:

## of the principal Passages, &c.

*Licinius*: *Fausta*, for her fallhood, is put to death in a hot Bath. He repairs divers Towns; and transfers his seat to *Byzantium*, which he now names *Constantinople*.

In the Church, *Constantine* ordained burning of Wax-candles by day. *Sylvester* is discontented, because Soothsayers were tolerated; therefore retires to Mount *Soracte*. *Constantine* ordains the Lords Day; builds *S. Peters Church*, *S. Pauls*, and the *Lateran*. His mother *Helena* finds the Croffe. The first General Council of *Nice*, held against *Arius*; where the *Nicene Creed* was made, [*Sicut in principio*] added to [*Gloria Patri*]. *S. Basil* gathereth together the dispersed Monks, and makes lawes for them. *Arius* is recalled by *Constantine*, upon his sisters intreaty. *Athanasius* is persecuted. *Constantinople* made a Patriarchate.

*Constantine* subdueth the *Goths*, and gives them *Pannonia* to inhabit; he makes his son *Constantius* Cæsar. *Sapor* (who was made King in his mothers wombe) wastes *Mesopotamia*. *Constantine* is baptized, and dieth at *Nicomedia*, leaving the Empire to his three sonns: *Constantine* the eldest had the West, and reigned 3 years; *Constantius* had the East, and reigned 24 years; *Constans* had *Italy* &c. and reigned 12 years, he slew and defeated his brother *Constantine*.

In the Church, to *Sylvester* succeeded *Marcus* 8 months: He ordained the *Nicene Creed* to be sung after the Gospel. *Julius* succeeded Pope 15 years. Conventicles are held at *Tyre*, *Jerusalem*, and *Byzantium*, against *Athanasius*, and in favour of *Arius*. *Athanasius* is accused of fornication and murder, by *Eusebius*. He refuseth to admit *Arius* into his Church, wherefore he is banished by the Emperor. *Arius* dyeth by the cursed to Pope *Julius* by the *Arians*. The *Theopaschites* held, that Christs divinity suffered.

*Constantius* raiseth *Sapor* (who had destroyed many Christians) from the siege of *Nisibis*. He persecutes the Orthodox Bishops; shuts up the Heathen Temples; condemneth great loss. *Constans* subdueth the *Gauls*; and is odious for his evil life.

In the Church, Pope *Julius* holds a Synod at *Rome*, where *Athanasius* and *Marcellus* are restored, to the grief of the *Arians*. At *Rome*, *Athanasius* writes his Creed; he is deposed in a Conventicle at *Antioch*. Great tumults in *Constantinople*, and laughter about the deposing of *Paul* the Orthodox Bishop, and consecration of *Macedonius* the Arian. The *Arians* new form of Faith is rejected by the Western Bishops. The Council of *Nice* is confirmed by that of *Sardis* now assembled. *Paul* and *Athanasius* restored to their seats. *Marcellus* denieth Christs Divinity. *Paul* and *Athanasius* reject the Holy Ghost. *Photinus* held Christs Kingdome but temporary. *Euphrates* denieth Christs Divinity.

*Constantius* makes *Gallus* his cousin, Cæsar; who kills the rebellious *Jewes*, and takes divers Towns from them: He defeats *Magnentius* three times, who had murdered *Constans*, usurped the government, tyrannised in *Rome*, martyred his own mother, wounded *Desiderius* his brother whom he had made Cæsar, and at last kills himself; *Decentius* his other brother, and Cæsar, hanged himself. *Constantius* being sole Emperor, puts *Gallus* to death for his cruelty, and makes his brother *Julian* Cæsar, who beat the *Almains*, and got divers victories. *Silvanus* the Usurper is slain. The *Germanes*, *Sarmates*, and *Persians* do much mischief; but are subdued. *Sapor* takes *Amida*. *Julian* studyeth Magick; and is saluted Emperor by the Army, but refuseth it.

In the Church, *Licinius* late Pope 15 years: He is persecuted for not condemning *Athanasius*; *Felix* is placed in his room, and again displaced. *Liberius* being recalled. Divers Synods and Conventicles were held about this time. The *Acatian* hereticks held, that Christ was like his Father in will, not in substance. *Actius* was an Arian, and held besides that God was comprehensible. About this time the feast of the Annunciation began to be observed. *Paul* Bishop of *Constantinople* is strangled by the *Arians*, and divers Bishops banished by them, among the rest *Athanasius*. *Ofius* Bishop of

Years of Christ.

130

140

150

## A brief Chronologie

Tears of Christ.

of Corduba, out of feare subscribes to the Arian new Confession of faith, which is rejected by the Council of Ariminum. S. Andrew's bones translated to Constantinople.

360

Julian is saluted Emperor, and defeats the French and Almans; he reigned one year. *Constantius* returning from the Persian war, dieth. *Apollo's* Temple is burnt. *Julian* marcheth against the Persian, and threatneth the ruine of Christianity; but is wounded and dieth. *Jovianus* succeeds 7 moneths; he makes his Army protest themselves Christians; he makes peace with the Persian, and is stifled in his bed with coal-smoke. In the West succeeded *Valentinian* 11 years; in the East *Valence* 14 years. The *Picts* and *Scots* kill the Roman Commanders, and seise on the greatest part of Britain. *Valentinian* restores the Standard and Crucifix, despised by *Julian*. He had both good and bad successe against the Germans: he makes his son *Gratian* his Colleague 16 years; *Ambrose* is made Governour of *Lombardy*. *Valence* overcomes *Procopius* the Usurper, and kills him; then wastes the *Goths* territories, and defeats their King *Theodosius*; having settled Britain, calls it *Valentia*. *Romachus* the Tyrant of Scotland is beheaded by his Nobles, and his head fixed on a pole.

In the Church, a third schisme arose about the Popes election. *Ursicinus* and *Damasus* are both chosen, not without great slaughter: but *Valentinian* banished *Ursicinus*, and chose *Damasus*, who sate 17 years; He added *Gloria Patri* to the end of the Psalms, and *Allelujab*. About 11 Councils were assembled within this Decad of years. The heretick *Eunomius* held, that the Holy-Ghost was created by the Son, and that Christ assumed mans body without a soule. *Jovianus* made all sins equal, denied *Mary's* Virginity, contemned Fasting, and held that men sinned not after Baptisme. *Collyridians* offered sacrifices to the Virgin *Mary*. *Lucifer* said, that Satan made mans body; and held self-murther lawful; he rejected some part of the Old-Testament. The Christians are persecuted by *Julian*, who advanceth Gentilisme, and condemneth *Athanasius* to death. He is hindred by strange prodigies from rebuilding the Temple of *Jerusalem*; he writes books against Christ. *Valentinian* restores the Christian professors. *Valence* is baptized by *Eudoxius* the Arian Bishop. Prodigious Haile falls at *Constantinople*. Marriage is forbid in *Lent*, by the Council of *Laodicea*. The Order of *S. Lazarus* in *Savoy* founded.

370

*Severus* subdueth the Saxons; and *Valentinian* treacherously kills them; therefore becomes odious. *Firmus* the Usurper in *Africa* kills himself. The Romans are beat by the *Quadi*; the *Sarmatae* defeated by *Theodosius*; peace granted to the Almans. *Valentinian* died suddenly, when he understood what base beggerly people the *Sarmatae* were, with whom he had so often fought. *Gratian* kills the Germans. *Valence* in the East, executeth the Philosophers, and imprisoneth them whose names began with *Theod*. He kills *Para* King of *Armenia* treacherously; he suffers the *Goths* to plant in *Thrace*; they waste *Thrace* and *Thessaly*; *Valence* going against them, is burnt in a cottage. *Theodosius* succeeds 16 years, who subdued the *Goths*. Great wars between the *Scots* and *Picts*.

In the Church, a great tumult was raised in *Alexandria* about *Athanasius*, who hid himself in his fathers monument: *Evagrius* the Orthodox Bishop is banished by *Valence*, and 80 Priests drowned. *Athanasius* dieth; his successor *Peter* flyeth to *Rome*. The *Stracens* are converted. *Ambrose* made Bishop of *Milain*. The *Goths* turn Arians. The feast of *Epiphany* observed. The banished Bishops restored by *Gratian*. *Audeani* or *Anthropomorphites*, gave to God a mans body; held Darknesse, Fire and Water eternal. *Apollinaris* gave Christ a heavenly body; he denied the Trinity, held transduction of souls, that the Ceremonial law should be in use after the resurrection, and denied Christ a humane will. The *Messalians* denied the Trinity, made God visible; contemned Christs sufferings, Sacraments and Alms; allowed perjury, to advance Religion; and ascribed salvation to Prayer alone.

380

*Gratian* in the West, defeats the *Goths* of *Macedonia* and *Ioqnonia*. *Maximus* the Usurper in Britain, makes his son *Victor* Emperor; he kills *Gratian* treacherously at *Lyons*; then seisseth upon *Spain*, *France*, *Britain* and *Afric*. *Maximus* invades *Italy*. *Valentinian* flyeth to *Theodosius*. *Maximus* and his son *Victor* both are slain; their Generall cast himself into the sea. In the East, *Theodosius* falls sick, and is baptized. The *Goths* submit to the Romans.

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Tears of Christ.

Romans. *Antioch* rebels against *Theodosius*, whom *Flavian* the Bishop asswageth: he makes his son *Arcadius* Emperour at 8 years of age: he defeats the *Scythians*, restores *Valentinian*, and defeats *Maximus*; his governour is killed at *Thessalonica*, which cost 7000. men their lives, for which he after was sorry.

In the Church, *Siricius* is Pope 13 years: he was an enemy to the married Clergy; he added *Anthems* to the Liturgie. *Priscilian* the Heretick, denied the Trinity, makes the soul to be of the Divine essence; he condemned Marriage and Fleish-eating, allowed Perjury and lying in Religion. *Euchyts* held Baptisme needlesse. *Helvidius* author of the *Antidicomarionites*, held that *Joseph* had children by *Mary*, after Christs birth. The second general Council at *Constantinople* against *Macedonius*; besides nine other Synods within this Decad. The *Nicene Creed* (read after the Gospel) is confirmed by the Council of *Constant*. *Ambrose* is persecuted by *Valentinian* and *Justin* the Emperre. *Psalms* began to be sung by turns; and *Anthems* brought into the Church by *Ambrose*. *Maximus* subdueth *Armortica*, and names it *Little-Britain*. *Ursula* and 1100. Virgins going from *London* in Britain, lost their lives to save their Virginity. The Order of *Augustine* Friars began now.

*Theodosius*, upon the slaughter of *Thessalonica*, makes a law, that 30 dayes should come between the sentence and execution; and is excluded the Church, till he had made publique Penance; he makes his son *Honorius* Cæsar, and defeats *Eugenius* neer *Aquileia*; he dieth at *Milan*. *Arcadius* reigns 13 years, his Tutor *Rufinus* rebels and is killed. *Eutrepus* succeeds, who proclaims *Stilico* a traitor, and banisheth good men. *Alaricus* invades *Greece*, he flyeth to the sanctuary upon a capital crime, but is not saved by it; for he made a law against sanctuaries. In the West, *Arbogastes* strangleth *Valentinian*, and sets up *Eugenius* a Schoolmaster to be Emperour two years. *Theodosius* having triumphed over him, makes his son *Honorius* Emperour in the West 28 years, whose assistant was *Stilico*; who falls out with *Eutropius*. Sword-players are put down by *Honorius*, who marrieth *Stilico's* daughter: *Gildo* is strangled: the Empire begins to decline.

In the Church, *Anastasius* is Pope four years; he ordained that the Gospel should be heard standing: 13 Synods were held within this Decad; *St. Hierom* instituted Canonical hours for Prayer. The Baptists head is brought out of *Cilicia* to *Constantinople*. *Hierom* expelled his Church for condemning *Origen*; he translates the Bible out of the Hebrew. The *Marcomans* and *Huns* converted. *Stilico* burns the *Sybil's* books at *Rome*. The third Council of *Carthage*, ordains that the Eucharist should be received fasting.

In the West, *Alaricus* invades *Italy*, besiegeth *Honorius*, and is twice defeated by *Stilico*; who also defeats and kills *Rhadagisus* the Goth; *Stilico* conspires with *Alaricus* against *Arcadius*, but he is slain by *Honorius*, upon suspicion that he aimed at the Eastern Empire. The *Vandals* waste *Germany*: one *Constantine* is chosen Emperour in Britain. The *Scots* beat down the wall of *Severus* & pillage Britain. *Alaricus* besiegeth *Rome*, and sets up *Attilus* against *Honorius*, who unites himself to *Constantine* the usurper. In the East, *Theodosius* the younger is born, and baptized by *Chrysostome*; he is made Emperour, but under the government of *Isidgerdes* King of *Persia* 42 years.

In the Church, *Innocent* 1. is Pope 15 years; he made Saturday a fasting-day, excommunicates *Atreadius* and the Eastern Bishops for persecuting *Chrysostome*. About this time began the rights of Patronages in the Council of *Mela*. *Chrysostome* for taxing *Eudoxia* is banished twice; he died in exile. Ten Councils held within this Decad. *Vigilantius* an enemy to Churches and Virginity. *Triformiani* held the Divinity imperfect in each of the three Persons. *Melanius* held that the Son was in the Father, as a lesser vessel in a greater. *Pelacius* held *Adam* mortal by nature before his fall; that his sin was merely personal, that there is no Original sin, that our natural concupiscence is good; that men have free will to good without grace; that the Infants of faithful men are saved without baptisme, but shall not enter into Gods kingdom.

*Rome* is taken by *Alaricus*, and *Attilus* degraded; the Roman Commanders kill each other. *Maximus* is defeated in *Spain*: *Heraclian* the Usurper in *Africk* is defeated and slain.

390

400

410

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

slain. *Attilus* is set up by *Athaulphus* the Goth, and then taken; *Honorius* cuts off his right hand, and banisheth him to *Lipara*. *Constantinus* marrieth *Placidia*, whom he rescued from the Goths, the sister of *Honorius*, of them came *Valentinian*, who succeeded *Honorius*. The Burgundians take *Trevers*, and obtain a seat near the *Rhene*. *Alaricus* loſt all the ſpoiles of *Italy* in a ſtorme. The *Vandals* ſack *Majorca* and *Minorca*, ſeat themſelves in *Betica*, and call it *Vandaluſia*, whence they are expelled by *Vallia* and the Goths.

In the Church, *Zoſimus* was Pope two years, who prohibited Priſts to drink in Taverns; to him ſucceeded *Boniſace* the firſt 5 years; with him *Eulalius* is choſen by ſome, which makes the third Schiſm, but *Eulalius* is expelled by the Emperour: In this Decad were ten Councils, the chief was that of *Carthage* which condemned *Pelagianiſm*. The Jews kill many Chriſtians at *Alexandria*. The *Donatiſts*, to be accounted Martyrs, kill themſelves. The Jews crucifie a child in *Paleſtina*. *Pelagius* at *Diaſpolis* in *Paleſtine* recants his Hereties.

420

In the Weſt, *Honorius* makes *Constantinus* his Colleague. *Constantinus* dieth. *Placidia* his widow, and *Valentinian* her ſon being ſuſpected by *Honorius*, ſlie to *Theodoſius*, who entertains them. *Maximus* and *Jovinus* Uſurpers in *Spain*, are ſent in bonds to *Rome*, and there executed. *Honorius* dieth: his Secretary *John* invades the Empire. *Valentinian* created Cæſar by *Theodoſius*. *John* is taken and beheaded. *Valentinian* 3. reigned 29 years. *Boniſace* governour of *Aſrick* rebels, and calls the *Vandals* into *Aſrick* out of *Spain*, whom *Placidia* could not remove thence. *Venice* is founded by the Romans, flying from *Attila* and the Huns. *Martian*, afterward Emperour, ſleeping is covered with an Eagle. *Genſericus* makes a league with him. In the Eaſt, *Theodoſius* warreth againſt the *Persians*, who are forced to ſue for peace, and to give off perſecuting the Chriſtians. *Theodoſius* recovers *Pannonia* from the Huns.

In the Church, *Celeſtine* is Pope 8 years. The wanton Hereticks, called *Paterniani* and *Venuſtiani*, held that mans lower parts were made by Satan. *Neforius* Biſhop of *Conſtantium*, gave to Chriſt two perſonalities, but one will; He would not have *Mary* to be called the Mother of God. He was condemned in the Council of *Ephesus*, which was the 3. Oecumenical; his tongue was eat up with worms. Within this Decad were held 6 Councils. Pope *Celeſtine* ſends *Palladius* into *Scotland*, to ſuppreſſe *Pelagianiſm* there; and *Germanus* for this end is ſent into *Britain*. The Emperors ordain, that Chriſts picture be not placed near the ground.

430

In the Weſtern Empire, *Hippo* is taken by the *Vandals*, and *Aſrick* ſubdued by them; a peace is made with them, and *Numidia* given for them to dwell in; but *Genſericus* againſt the League takes *Carthage*, and ſeizeth upon all *Aſrick*. In the Eaſt, *Conſtantinople* burneth for three dayes; a great Famine followed. Peace is granted to the *Persian*. *Theodoſius* gives a great ſum to the people to buy Corn; He finiſheth the Code. The Scots break down *Severus* his Turſſ wall; *Ætius* rebuilds it of brick; this alſo the Scots and *Piſts* overthrow. *Clodio* called *Criminus* reigned in *France*.

In the Church, *Sixtus* the third ſate Pope 9 years; He was accused of Fornication by *Baffus*, but is cleared afterward; this *Sixtus* imbalmed and buried with his own hands the body of *Baffus*. Four Councils held within this Decad. The Burgundians are converted. *Patrick* is ſent into *Scotland*, where he ſate Biſhop 60 years. The Jews of *Crete* are drowned in following their falſe *Mofes* through the Sea. The Orthodox Biſhops are perſecuted by *Genſericus* the Arian. *Eudocia*, *Theodoſius* his wife, builds St. *Stevens* Church at *Jeruſalem*.

440

In the Weſtern Empire, *Sicily* is invaded by *Genſericus*; He becomes tributary for a part of *Aſrick*. In the Eaſt, the Huns waſte *Thrace*, *Mæſia*, and *Greece*. *Theodoſius* helpeth *Valentinian* againſt the *Vandals*. The Emperour is ſain to buy peace of *Attila*. A great Earthquake at *Conſtantinople*. *Saturnine* ſlain by the Emperors. *Attila* threatneth war for want of his tribute; He is defeated by *Authenius*. *Theodoſius* dieth with a fall from his horſe in hunting. The Anglo-Saxons called into *Britain* by *Vortiger* the Uſurper. The Scots

Scots

## of the principal Paſſages, &c.

Scots and *Piſts* vex the Britains. In *France*, *Clodio* beats the Romans; *Merovee* ſucceeds him, whole poſterity continued till *Pipin*.

In the Church, *Leo* ſate Pope 20 years; He was excommunicated by *Dioſcorus* Biſhop of *Alexandria*, for rejeſting the Council of *Ephesus*. Nine Councils held within this Decad. *Eutiches*, Abbot of *Conſtantinople*, gave Chriſt but one Nature, divine ſonely, which he made poſſible; He is abſolved in the Council of *Ephesus*. St. *Patrick* converts *Ireland*. Rogations or Litanies inſtituted by Pope *Leo*. The *Markbees* at *Rome* recant and burn their Books. The ſeven Sleepers awake after two hundred years ſleep.

In *Italy* the Famine was ſo great, that Parents exchanged their children for food. *Attila* invades *France*, and is overthrown; He takes *Aquileia*. Pope *Leo* perſwades him to leave *Italy*; he is forced by the *Alani* into *Scythia*. *Valentinian* kills *Ætius* with his own hands; *Ætius* his Souldiers kill him in revenge: *Maximus* is killed by *Eudocia*. *Ætius* uſurpeth the Empire 9 moneths. *Genſericus* is expelled *Italy*. *Mauritania* loſt and won by *Majoranus*. In the Eaſt, *Martian* is Emperour 6 years; he dreamed that *Attila*'s Bow was broken, the ſame night he died; *Martian* died two years after; *Leo* ſucceeded 17 years; *Majoranus* is by him made Emperour of the Weſt. In *Britain*, *Vortiger* is depoſed and reſtored; 300 of the Nobles ſlain by the Saxons, and *Vortiger* taken priſoner. The French and Gauls unite themſelves by Marriages. *Childericus* reigns. *Attila* ſtrangled by his own blood in the night. *Theodoricus* the ſecond reigns in *Spain*. *Attila*'s ſons loſt what he had got.

In the Church, Pope *Leo* reſutes the *Acephali*. *Dioſcorus* the *Eutychiean* with his Diſciples, were called *Monophiſite* and *Theopachiſite*, for ſaying Chriſt had but one divine Nature poſſible; theſe with *Eutiches* are condemned in the fourth General Council of *Chalcedon*; five Councils were held in this Decad. Conteſtation between *Rome* and *Conſtantinople* about ſupremacy. The Orthodox are perſecuted by the *Vandals* in *Africa*, *Auſtria*, *Bavaria*, and *Pannonia* converted. *Avitus*, of an Emperour becomes Biſhop of *Placentia*. The *Eutychieans* cruelly againſt *Proterius* Biſhop of *Alexandria*, whom they ſlew, and chewed his entrails. Bells uſed firſt at *Nola* in *Campania*. Monks called *Studee* at *Conſtantinople*.

In the Weſt, *Majoranus* beats the Goths in *Gaul*, and is beaten by the *Vandals* in *Spain*; He is ſlain by *Severus* his General, who reigned 3 years. *Ricimer* expels the *Alani* out of *Italy*, and poiſoneth *Severus*. *Authenius*, *Martian*'s ſon-in-law, is made Emperour by *Leo*, five years. In the Eaſt, the Goths waſte *Illyria*. *Genſericus* ſpoileth the Sea-coaſts of the Empire. *Conſtantinople* burneth 4 dayes. *Leo* ſets out a Fleet againſt *Genſericus*, to whom it is betrayed. *Leo* hated by the people, for betrothing his daughter to *Aſpar*'s ſon an Arian. In *Britain*, *Hengiſt* reigns over *Kent*: *Vortiger* driven into the woods. *Theodoricus* the Goth drives the Romans out of *Spain*, after 700 years poſſeſſion; He perſecuted the Catholikes; and wrote the Gothick Laws: The *Oſtrogoths* defeat the Huns in *Hungary*, cut off their Kings head, which they ſent to *Conſtantinople*: The *Sueves* in *Gallicia* take *Lisbon*. The *Vandals* expelled *Sicily* by *Marcellinus*, who was treacherouſly ſlain.

In the Church, *Hilary* ſate Pope 6 years; He excluded unlearned men from the Clergy, and prohibited Popes from naming their ſucceſſor: To him ſucceeded *Simplicius* 16 years. 4 Councils held within this Decad. *Paulin* Biſhop of *Nola*, was the firſt that introduced *Hiſtorical Pictures* and *Crucifixes* into Churches; He pawned himſelf to redeem a widows ſon that was captive. The Painters hand withered at *Conſtantinople*, for offering to paint Chriſt like *Jupiter*. *Litania minor*, or three dayes Rogation in *Aſcenſion-week*, inſtituted by *Mamarcus* and *Sidonius Apollinaris*, againſt Wolves and Beares.

In the Weſt, *Ricimer* rebels againſt the Emperour; is reconciled; rebels again, and kills *Authenius*. Divers petty Emperours at *Rome* expell each other; the laſt is *Auguſtulus*, whom *Odoacer* one of the *Heruli* baniſhed, and took *Rome*. Thus endeth the Weſtern-Empire. *Odoacer* and the *Heruli* reigned in *Italy* till *Juſtinians* dayes. In the Eaſt, *Leo*, to pleaſe the people, cauſeth all *Aſpars* Family to be ſlaine: *Leo* dyeth; To him ſucceeds *Leo* the ſecond, and after him *Zeno* 17 years; He is depoſed by *Baſiliſcus*, and after ward recovereth, and depoſeth *Baſiliſcus*. *Marſon*, *Ricimer*'s ſon

470

## A brief Chronologie

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Years of Christ.

son, defeateth Zeno. The Lombards transport themselves into Panonia. Childerick of France takes divers places from the Empire. Vertiger is burnt in his Castle in Wales. Stone-hedge erected on Salisbury-Plains, in memory of the Saxon-treachery there.

In the Church, Aratius Bishop of Constantinople claims the second place after the Pope, which is confirmed by Leo the Emperour. Peter Fullo the Eutychian is made Bishop of Antioch, and condemneth the Council of Chalcedon. The Hebrew Vowels were invented about this time. Basiliscus condemneth the Council of Chalcedon, but upon Zeno's railing of forces, he recants. The Library of Constantinople burnt, in which was Homer in Golden Letters.

480

In the West, Julius Nepos is slain. In the East, Theodorick the Goth threatneth Constantinople, and dieth of a fall from his horse. Iulus and Leontius, Usurpers, are taken, and their heads sent to Constantinople. Zeno gives himself to tyranny and riot. Clovis the great, the first Christian King of France. In Britain, Hengist is slain; the South-Saxons possessed Surrey and Sussex. Hunnerick the Vandal persecutes the Catholics, and is killed by worms.

In the Church, Felix is Pope 9 years; He instituted the Feast of S. Michael: Six Councils were held within this Decad. Eutychus his heretic spreadeth far in the East.

490

Zeno the Greek Emperour is buried in a fit of the Epilepsie; Ariadna would not suffer the Tombe-stone to be removed, though he revived, so he died miserably: Anastasius狄corus succeeds 27 years. Longinus, Zeno's brother, usurpeth in Isauria, and occasions a war. The Emperours statues dragged about the streets of Constantinople: Longinus is taken and tortured to death. The Bulgarians waste Thrace; for money they give off and return. Clovis the King of France hath divers Victories; so hath Aurelius in Britain, who was poisoned by a Monk. Theodorick the Ostrogoth wastes Italy, takes Ravenna, kills Odoacar treacherously at a Feast, so he becomes sole King of Italy 33 years; He hath divers Victories. The Heruli and Lombards live together, and then quarrel; the Heruli defeated. The Vandals make peace with the Romans, and recall the banished Catholics. The Goths burn the Roman Governour in France within a brazen Bull.

In the Church, Galasius is Pope 5 years; He excluded the lame and blind from the Priesthood: Anastasius the second succeeded two years; He was an Acatian, and died the death of Arius: Symmachus succeeds 15 years; His Antipope was Laurence, and so there followed a fifth Schisme. Four Councils held this Decad. Acephali, so called from having neither Bishop nor Priest; they were called also Theodosiani, from Theodosius Bishop of Alexandria; they rejected the Council of Chalcedon, and were Eutychians. The Canonical Scripture distinguished from Apocrypha. The Babylonian Talmud, which is the Jews Civil and Canon Law, is finished.

500

In the East, Cabades the Persian takes Amida, which is redeemed again. The Bulgarians take Syrmium in Panonia. The Emperour hires the Goths to depart his Dominions. Anastasius repaireth Darius in Mesopotamia, and aideth Clovis with men and ships. Uther-Pendragon, in Britain, father of Prince Arthur, makes a League with the Scots. Cheridick foundeth the Kingdom of the West-Saxons, which contained Berke-shire, Hampshire, Wilts, Sommer-set, Dorset, Devonshire and Cornwall. Alaricus and his Arian Goths slain by Clovis the French King. Theodorick the Ostrogoth relieves Rome with Corn, expels the Magicians thence, and erecteth Water-works at Ravenna: By Vitiges he takes Syrmium from the Bulgarians.

In the Church, Symmachus is confirmed Pope by Theodorick: He banished the Manichees, doth many good works; 8 Councils held within this Decad, whereof 5 were kept at Rome, 3 of them about the cause of Symmachus. Anastasius murdered 3000 Catholics; He is excommunicated by the Pope. The Feast of Peter and Paul instituted. The Christians persecuted in Arabia and Palestine. The Emperour hates Images, therefore causeth divers Monsters to be painted. As an Arian was going to baptize, the water dried up suddenly in the Font.

In

Years of Christ.

In the East, Vitalianus the Scythian helps the Catholics; subdueth Thrace, Scythia and Mesia; forceth Anastasius to revoke the banished, and is bribed with money and honours to depart. The Huns also are bribed to leave the warring of Armenia and Capadocia. Anastasius is slain by thunder. Justin succeeds 9 years, who got the Empire by bribing; he defeats his Usurpers, and kills Vitalianus: he makes peace with the Persian. Clovis of France dieth, and leaves his kingdom to his sons. Arthur in Britain takes London, and beats the Saxons.

In the Church, Hormisdas late Pope 10 years. In this Decad were held 8 Councils. Anastasius persecutes the Catholics against his own Instrument made to the contrary, which he burned: he added to the Trisagion [Who was crucified for us] this caused a sedition: he sleighted the Popes Ambassadors. 350 Orthodox Monks slain by Severus the Eutychian Bishop of Antioch; who being condemned to lose his tongue, flyeth into Egypt. Bennet founded his Order on mount Cassin.

The Sclavi of Scythia takes Istria: the Lombards for the service against the Goths obtain Austria of Justin; he dieth: his fifters son Justinian succeedeth 38 years; he sends Belisarius and Procopius against the Persians, and aideth the king of Colchop against them: he fettereth out his Code: by Mundus he defeats the Geres and Bulgarians in Britain; York yeeldeth to Arthur, who forceth the Saxons to Peace: the East-Saxon kingdom founded by Erchenwyn; it contained Essex, Middlesex, and part of Hartford-shire: the Scots and Picts aid king Arthur. Sigismund king of Burgundy is slain and cast into a Well. Gandamare is chosen, and expelled by Clodomire and Thyerre. Athalaricus king of the Ostrogoths, son of Amalasuntha a learned woman in all languages. The Lombards possess Panonia. Hilderick is imprisoned and slain by the Vandals.

In the Church, John late Pope 3 years, he is imprisoned and famished: his successor Felix fourth, late 4 years; he instituted Extreme Unction, and did good works. Seven Councils held within this Decad. To the Order of Bennet the Italian Monk belong the Caelestians, Carthusians, Cisteaux, and Monks of Clugny. Zaras king of Colchop baptized at Constant. Pope John is forced to intercede with Justin for the Arians. Gebtes king of the Heculi baptized at Constant. Justinian ordered swearing by the Gospels. Izani of Armenia subdued by Justinian, and converted.

Belisarius is defeated in Persia, he overcomes Probus, and the other Rebels. Sardinia is rendered to Justinian. Belisarius recovers Carthage from Giler, after it had been possessed 95 years by the Vandals. Giler brought captive to Constantine, and kindly used by Justinian, who divides Africk into 7 Provinces. Belisarius takes Syracuse and other towns in Sicily. Mundus and his son slain. Belisarius hath divers Victories and Conquests in Asia, being aided by Narjes the Eutuch. Vitiges the Ostrogoth led in triumph to Constantinople by Belisarius. Cosroes the Persian makes a long league with the Romans, but is soon broken. Cardick the West-Saxon takes the Isle of Wight; Henrick his son overthroweth the Britains: the French kings divide Burgundy amongst them, so that kingdom endeth: The French invade Spain, and makes the Goths abjure Arianisme. Amalari the Visigoth is killed by his wives brothers. Vitiges king of the Ostrogoths, is employed against the Persians. Giler the Vandal puts out his brothers eyes. The Vandals being driven out of Africk, seek out new Plantations in Poland, Hungaria, Greece and Germany.

In the Church, Boniface late Pope 2 years; his Antipope was Dioscorus, which made the sixth Schisme. John 2 late 3 years: Agapetus 3 years: Silverius 3 years; his Antipope is Vigilius, and so is the 7 Schisme. This Vigilius late 16 years, who banished and famished Silverius. 9 Councils held this Decad. Dionysius a Roman Abbot begins to reckon the years from Christs Birth, which before were reckoned from the Era of Dioclesian. Justinian publisheth his Institutions and Pandects. Zanabazus king of Iberia baptized at Constantinople. The spoils of Jerusalem taken by Titus, and transported by Geneserius to Africk, are restored by Justinian to Jerusalem. He converteth the Stews into a Covent of Penitents: he becomes an Eutychian, and is converted by Pope Agapetus. Bavaria is converted. Justinians [Constit. novell.] published.

M m m m 2

In



## A brief Chronologie

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Years of Christ.

540

In the East, *Belisarius* beateth the *Persian*; *Justinian* repaireth *Antioch*, and buildeth a Church there: *Belisarius* called out of *Persia* into *Italy*, where he raiseth *Totila* from the siege of *Hadrumtum* in the West. *Totila* taketh *Rome*, which is by *Belisarius* retaken; with other towns in *Italy*. *Belisarius* recalled into *Persia*: a plot discovered against the Emperour; *Cosroes* upon the coming of *Belisarius* returns home from vexing the Empire: he is removed by bribes from *Edessa*. In Britain *Arthur*, and *Mordred* differ, and are slain; *Mordred* two sons killed by *Constantine* the Usurper. *Northumberland* a kingdom, founded by *Ella* and *Ida*; it contained besides *Northumberland*, *Torkshire*, *Lancashire*, *Durham*, *Cumberland*, and *Westmorland*. At *Rome*, *Basilus* was the last Consul. The French returning from *Spain* with much booty, bring with them the garment of *Vincentius* the Martyr, and build a Church for him at *S. Germans*.

In the Church, *Vigildus* sits as lawful Pope; he sends divers ships to *Rome* with corn, which *Totila* intercepteth. 3 Councils held within this Decad. An Indian king sends to *Justinian* for some to Baptise him and his people. The Feast of Purification ordained at *Constantinople*.

550

*Rome* and all *Italy* subdued by *Totila*, who also wailes *Sicily*: *Artabanes* expels the Goths, and recovers it. *Narjes* kills *Totila* and recovers *Italy*; the *Persian* defeats the *Romans*, and is defeated by them: *Justinian* kills his Commanders for slaying the King of the *Lazii*. After *Totila* and *Thedis* his successor were killed, there were no more Gothic kings in *Italy*: but *Narjes* governed it under the title of Duke, till being angered by *Justinian* wife, he called in the *Lombards*: the Goths had held *Italy* 70 years, the *Lombards* kept it 204 years, that part which is between the *Alpes* and *Appennin*. In *France* *Clothaire* subdueth the *Saxons* and *Thuringi*; he pursueth *Cramnus* into *Britain*, and burns him.

In the Church, the 5 General Council is held at *Constant.* for suppressing of Heresies, there were four more National Synods within this Decad: *Vigilius* opposeth the Council of *Constant.* and is banished; at last submits and dyeth. *Pelagius* succeeds 4 years: The Western Bishops at *Aquileia* reject this fifth General Council, which made a Schisme between the Eastern and Western Churches, almost 100 y. ars. To the Bishop of *Constant.* is assigned the next place to the Pope. *Julius* *Halicarnassensis* taught that Christs body was impassible after his Conception: the *Armenians* are again converted to the Faith.

560

In the Empire to *Justinian* succeeded *Justin* second 11 years; he was a just Prince, in giving way that an exemplary punishment should be inflicted on a great man, who had oppressed a poore woman; but he was unfortunate in his wars against *Persia*; so he fell into a Phrensie, and dyed. In *France*, a hill near *Roban* belloyed many dayes like an Oxe, and then brake a sunder to the destruction of many Villages, People and Cattel. King *Clothaire* dying left his kingdom to his four sons. *Levigildus* king of the *Visigoths* in *Spain*, wins *Corduba* and other places: the Exarchat of *Ravenna* now began. *Alboinus* reigns in *Lombardy* 3 years.

In the Church, *John* 3. sate Pope 12 years: the Christians are persecuted by the Jews and Samaritans in *Palestina*, but are suppressed and punished by the Emperour. The Monothelites increafe about this time. The French and Spanish Clergy differ about the time of Easter. The Church of *Armenia* is vexed by *Cosroes* the *Persian*. *Alboinus* king of *Lombardy*, murders the Christians of *Italy* and *Sicily*; and he not long after is murdered. *Theodimirus* in *Galicia* king, of an Arian becomes a Catholike. 2 Councils held within this Decad.

570

In the East, *Martian* was forced to raise the siege from *Nisibis*. *Apamea* taken by the *Persians*. The *Avars* passe *Danubius* and doe much hurt: *Cosroes* defeated by *Justinian* the General. *Thiberius* is Emperour 7 years in Britain. *Vffa* founded the kingdom of the East-Angles, containing the Isle of *Ely*, *Norfolk*, *Suffolk* and *Cambridge-shire*. The *Lombards* enter *France*, and are repulsed: *Charibers* brethren dissent: Civil wars in *France*. *Livigild* winneth *Campanio*. *Alboin* the Lombard for making his wife drink in her fathers skul, is murdered; she is poisoned. *Cleppes* *Alboins* son, reigned 1 year 6 moneths, and was slain: then *Lombardy* was governed 10 years by 30 Dukes. *Longinus* the Exarch lost his eyes at *Constantinople*, for which he killed two Patriarchs. The *Huns* expelled *Germany* by the French.

In

In the Church, *Bennet* is Pope 5 years; *Pelagius* 2. succeeded 12 years. He was the first elected Pope without the Emperours consent, the City being besieged by the *Lombards*. Two Councils held this Decad.

In the East, *Hormisdas* *Cosroes* his successour, is beat by the *Romans*. *Mauritius* regaineth all from the *Persian* that was lost. *Tiberius* died of a surfeit of Gourds. *Mauritius* succeeded 16 years. The *Huns* take *Sirmium*: they are defeated by *Commentiolus*. *Philippicus* beats the *Persians* twice; and *Germanus* once. *Malgo* *Conanus* King of Britain, a wicked Prince. *Crida* founded the kingdom of *Mercia*, containing 17 Shires, and half of *Hartford-shire*; after the death of *Carecaus*, lost the East part of the kingdom: wars between the Scots and *Picts*. *Childebert* of *France* goeth against the *Lombards*, at the Emperours desire; he is murdered. The kingdom of the *Sueves* in *Gallicia*, after 176 years possession is annexed to the *Visigoths*. The *Lombards* chose themselves a new King: *Livigild* the *Visigoth* kills his own son. *Recaredus* the first, becomes a Catholike, he was a good Prince.

In the Church, *Gregory* is sent to the Emperour, to excuse the Election of *Pelagius*. 11 Councils assembled this Decad. The *Benedictines* expelled out of *Mount Cassine* by the *Lombards*: They build a Covent at *Rome*. Christs seamless Coat was found by a Jew. The Pope and Bishop of *Constantinople* differ about the title of Universal Bishop.

*Mauritius* makes peace with *Cosroes*; the *Huns* invade *Thrace*. *Piscus* defeats the *Huns*, and expels the *Slavi* out of *Thrace*; he is removed and then restored: he beats the *Huns* again. *Cosroes* deposed by his Subjects, and restored by *Mauritius*, and made his Guard of Christians. *Edithwach* Christian king of the South-Saxons; a great famine in his time, so that people drowned themselves. *Ethelfred* defeated the Britains, & slew 12000 Monks at *Bangor*. *Ethelbert* king of *Kent* converted by *Augustine*; he built *S. Pauls* in *London*. Scots and Britains have war with the Saxons and *Picts*. *Childebert* the French king, takes divers towns in *Italy*. *Agilulphus* the Lombard is baptised, and named *Paul*; he hath divers victories. *Chaganus* the *Hun*, invades the *Venetian* territories: He abuseth *Tomilda* the widow, and then slaketh her for her treachery.

In the Church, *Gregory* the great sate 13 years; he was elected against his will: he styles himself, Servant of Gods servants; he added to the Liturgie [Give peace in our time O Lord] and [Lord have mercy on us] and *Hallelujah*: He confirmed Prayer to Saints, Purgatory, and sacrifices for the dead: He redeemed many Captives, and kept daily 3000 Monks. 12 Synods held within this Decad. *Gregory*, upon a great Plague, of which 800 died in an houre, instituted the seven-fold Letany or Procession, called the Great, Roman, and Gregorian. 40 Virgins brake out of *S. Radegunds* Monastery, who expelled the Abbess, and beat the Bishops and Monks. *Gregory* reproves *John* of *Constantinople* for assuming the title of [Universal Bishop.] By *Gregory* the Britains and *Lombards* are converted.

*Mauritius* will not redeem the Captives taken by *Chaganus*, therefore they are slain. *Phocas* is beaten for urging the Emperour against *Commentiolus*; this *Commentiolus* with *Priscus* kill *Chaganus* his 2 sons, 12000 *Huns*, and took 13000, at which *Mauritius* was offended: he was forewarned of his death: upon suspicion he imprisoneth *Philippicus*, because his name began with *Ph*. but *Phocas* slew him with his two sons, and so succeeded 8 years. *Theodosius* son to *Mauritius* is slain, as he was going to *Cosroes*. *Narjes* suffers him self to be beaten by *Cosroes*, with whom he joyns, then is reconciled to *Phocas*, and burnt at *Constantinople*. *Mauritius* his widow and daughters put to death. *Phocas* tyranniseth over the Nobility; attempts to kill his son in law *Priscus*; he is at last cut in peeces and burnt. In *France* *Pipin* is brought to *Clothairs* Court by *Caroloman* his father. *Liuba* Prince of the *Visigoths* is slain by *Vitigericus*. *Padua* burnt by the *Lombards*, upon which *Venice* increaseth by new commers.]

In the Church, *Sabinian* was Pope 2 years: he hated *Gregory* and his writings. *Boniface* 3. succeeded 1 year. He appropriated the name Pope, by *Phocas* his means, to the Bishop of *Rome*. *Boniface* 4. succeeds: He instituted the Feasts of All-Souls, next day after All-Saints: He consecrates the Pantheon to the Virgin *Mary* and all Martyrs. 4 Councils this Decad. The *Agnoeta* held that Christs divinity was ignorant of the last day. The *Trithets* founded by *Johannes* *Grammaticus* or *Philoponus*, made three Natures or Essences in God. The *Jacobites* from *Jacob* the Syrian, were *Eutychians*. *Armenii* so called from their Country, held a Quaternity in God; Made

Years of Christ.

580

590

600

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

made God passible, and denyed that Christ took his humanity from Mary. Boniface called Universal-Bishop by Phocas. The Emperor is in a dream accused of homicide, for not redeeming the Captives; therefore growes penitent. Mahomet begins to broach his doctrines. The Bishop of Antioch abused and burnt by the Jews, and the Christians persecuted by them.

61C

In the East, *Heraclius* reigns 31 years: he makes his son *Heraclius* Emperor, and new-names him *Constantine*. The *Slavi* plant themselves in *Dalmatia* and *Isria*, now called *Slavonia* from them. *Palestine* and *Jerusalem* won by the *Persians*; who subdue *Egypt*, and take *Damascus* and *Carthage*. *Cosroes* refuseth to make peace with *Heraclius*, except he will reject Christ, and adore the Sun. The Emperor is betrayed by *Chaganus*, and defeated in *Thrace*. *Cosroes* is adored as a God. *Ebald* King of *Kent* becomes a Gentle, and marrieth his stepmother, but is reclaimed by the Archbishop. *Brunchild* in *France* sets the Kings at variance; at last being found guilty of the death of ten Kings, is tyed by the hairs of her head to a wild-horse and torn in peeces. *Vijtericus* the *Viligoth*, is slain by his own people at a feast. *Sisebutus* his successor and brother converted 90000 Jews: *Eleutherius* the Exarch stileth himself King of *Italy*; he is slain by his souldiers, and his head sent to *Constantinople*.

In the Church, *Deus-dedit* fate Pope 3 years: He ordained, that none should marry their godfathers or godmothers, and that none should answer for their own children in baptisme. *Boniface* 5. succeeded 8 years; He instituted Sanctuaries. Six Councils gathered this Decad. *Cosroes* carrieth the Crosse of Christ from *Jerusalem* to *Persia*. The Jews flee out of *Spain* into *France*, where strict lawes are also made against them.

62C

*Heraclius* robs the Churches, to pay the souldiers in his *Persian* expedition; He leaves the care of the City, and of his son, to the Patriarch, and a Patritian. Seventy Ambassadors betrayed by *Saes* the *Persian*, and sent in chains to *Cosroes*. The *Persians* defeated by the Emperor, and the Temple of the Sun overthrowen. *Ninive* is taken, and *Cosroes* driven to *Seleucia*. *Sarbara* with his forces revolteth to *Heraclius*, who returneth with the Crosse and other spoils to *Jerusalem*, and driveth the Jews out of the City. *Cosroes* slaieth his General *Saes*, because he did not catch *Heraclius*. *Siroes* the eldest son of *Cosroes*, kills all his brothers first, and then his father. About this time the Faith was embraced in *Northumberland*, and the Archbishopric of *York* founded. In *Scotland*, King *Fergubard*, for *Pelagianisme*, is imprisoned by his Nobles, and then kills himself. In *France*, *Pipin Caroloman's* son is made by *Clothaire* the 1 Duke of *Brabant*. *Mahomet* fleeth to *Mecha* from his enemies; from this flight the *Turks* begin their Computation, called *Hegira*: He becomes of a Prophet a Robber, and takes *Mecha*.

In the Church, Pope *Honorius* fate 13 years: He built and repaired divers Churches; he covered *S. Peters* with brass, taken from the Temple of *Romulus*. *Heraclius* the Emperor becomes a Monothelite; this heresie was condemned in the 6. General-Council held at *Constant*. The feast of the Exaltation of the Crosse, instituted Sept. 14. being now regained from the *Persian*.

63C

The *Saracens* being denied their pay, and called Dogs by the Emperors Treasurer, they make war against *Mauritius*; they take *Gaza* and other places, with *Arabia*, and deieat the Emperor twice, whose garrison they drive out of *Damascus*; then they invade *Egypt*, and take *Jerusalem*, which the Emperor fearing, plundered it before: It was held by the *Saracens*, till *Godfrey of Bulloign's* time, 463 years. The *Saracens* take *Antioch*, *Edessa*, *Daras*, and all *Mesopotamia*. *Erpenwald* King of the East-Angles, slain by his people for being a Christian. *Dagobert* becomes sole Monarch of *France*; he founded a College for Fair women, and beautifieth *S. Dennis*; he hath divers victories. *Rotharis* the Lombard gave liberty of conscience to Catholikes and Arians. *Isaacus* the Exarch robs the Popes treasure. *Mahomet* dieth. The *Persians* subdued by the *Saracens*.

In the Church, *Severinus*, *John* 4. *Theodorus* Popes, succeeded each other in a short time, *Martin* fate Pope 6 years. Six Councils were held within this Decad: in the 6. of *Toledo*,

## of the principal Passages, &c.

*Toledo*, the Kings of *Spain* are ordered to swear, that none but Christians should be suffered to live within their Kingdoms; hereupon the Jews are banished. *Amandus* Bishop of *Utrecht* converts *Gaunt* to the faith. The Christians are permitted to exercise their Religion at *Jerusalem*. About this time, *England* was divided into Parishes.

Years of Christ.

In the East, *Constantine* 2. *Heraclius* his son, reigned 4 moneths, and is poysoned by his step-mother *Martina*, who with her son *Heracleon* reigned 4 moneths; she lost her tongue, and he his nose, for the murder of *Constantine*, whose son *Constans* reigned 27 years. *Winchester* Church in *England*, and *Malmesbury* Abbey, founded by *Kenwalk*. *Fregubard* 2. King of *Scotland*, ravisheth his Daughter, and killed his Queen. *Dagobert* of *France* repairs *Utrecht*, and bestows it on the Bishop of *Cole*. The *Saracens* take *Casarea* in *Palestine* after 7 years siege; they subdue all *Asia*, 839 years after *Antiochus* the Great lost it. *Hautmar* builds a Temple in *Jerusalem* for his Superstition, in which he was murdered. *Hothman* his successor makes *Africk* tributary, and conquereth *Cyprus*.

In the Church, Pope *Martin* for opposing the Monothelites, is sent by the Exarch to *Constantinople*, where he is imprisoned, and then banished to *Pontus*: 6 Councils held this Decad. The Emperor sets out an Edict, forbidding Disputations about one or two Wills in Christ. *Pyrrhus* the Monothelite, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, recanteth and relapseth.

The Emperor buyes two years peace of the *Saracens* for a great sum; they take *Rhodes*, and defeat the Emperor in a Sea-fight, he escaped in a disguise, then he beats the *Slavi*. *Muhavias* the *Saracen* makes peace with the Emperor, and promisseth a daily tribute. The Emperor kills his brother, and is affrighted in his sleep about him. *Pæda* of *Mercia* the first Christian king there, laid the foundation of *Medbamstead*, now *Peterburgh*, but was slain before he finished it. *Sigebert* of *France* adopteth *Hildebert* son of *Grimoald*, but afterward having a son *Dagobert*, him *Grimoald* shut up in a Monastery in *Scotland*, and makes his son *Hildebert* King, whom *Clodoveus* imprisoneth, and makes his son *Childerick* King. The *Saracens* Fleet burnt by the Christians.

In the Church, *Eugenius* 4. supplieth *Martin's* place being absent; he appointed Bishops to have prisons of their own for Clergy-delinquents. Pope *Vitalianus* succeeds 14 years; he brought Organs into the Church. Four Councils held this Decad. The Roman Clergy solicited by the Emperor to subscribe to the Type or Edict, but in vain. *Maximus* the Abbot, for refusing is scourged, his tongue cut out, and his right hand cut off, and then banished. *Casara* 9. of *Persia*, or *Parthia* rather, is baptised at *Constantinople*; and by her means, her husband and people.

The *Saracens* make peace among themselves, and refuse to pay the Emperour his Tribute; he is defeated by the Lombards, and transporteth from *Rome* to *Sicily* all the brass-monuments; He intended to make *Syracuse* the seat of the Empire. *Sapores* governor of *Armenia* rebelleth; but is killed by his horse. The Emperour staves at *Syracuse*, and is slain. *Constantine* his son succeeds 17 years, who slew *Marcianus* his Competitor, and cuts off his two Brothers noses, that they might not rule with him. *Wulphere* king of *Mercia* kills his 2 sons with his own hands, for being baptised, but repents, and finisheth *Peterborough* Church, which his brother began. *Clodis* of *France* openeth *S. Dennis* Tomb, and upon this fals mad. *Gundebert* and *Pertbairt* two brothers, strive for *Lombardy*, but both are expelled by *Grimoald* D. of *Benevent*. The *Saracens* depopulate *Afric*.

In the Church *Adeodatus* fate Pope 7 years. 5 Councils this Decad; one was held in *England*, about the difference between the English and Scots for observing the Feast of Easter. The Emperour robs the Church of *Rome*, and gives her privileges.

The *Saracens* take *Syracuse*, and carry thence to *Alexandria* the brass-monuments, which *Constans* had taken out of *Rome*; they besiege *Byzantium* 7 years together. 30000 *Saracens* slain, their Fleet fired by *Callinicus* with wild-fire. Peace granted to them for 30 years paying a tribute of Gold, Captives and Horses. The *Bulgars* seat themselves in the

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

the lower *Mesia* called from them *Bulgaria*. The Emperour is forced to peace with them. *Bamba* the Visigoth overcometh his Rebels: he is poysoned. *Chileric* the French king, for causing a Gentleman to be whipped, is slain by him, with his Queen great with child. The *Saracens* invade *Spain*, and loose to *Bamba* 270 ships.

In the Church, *Donnus* the first late Pope 2 years; he subjected the Church of *Ravenna* to *Rome*. *Agatho* succeeded 4 years. 5 Councils this Decad. Christ's Napkin, 8 foot long, found by the Jewes, taken from them by the *Saracens*, and given to the Christians.

680—*Constantine* being dead, his son *Justinian* succeeds 10 years. Divers countries taken from the *Saracens*, who are forced to pay a yearly tribute of 1000 Crowns, with a horse and servant daily for 10 years. *Justinian* defeats the *Slavi*, and is defeated by the *Bulgarians*. *Cadwallader* the last King of the *Britains*, becomes a Monk in *Rome*. *K. Maldoyn* of *Scotland* is strangled by his wife, and she is burnt. In King *Eugenius* the 6. his time, it rained blood through all *Brittain* for seven dayes. In *France*, *Theodoric* of a Monk is made King; he persecutes his Bishops. The *Maronites* take from the *Saracens* all from *Taurus* to *Libanus*. The *Saracens* have civil-war among themselves.

In the Church, *Leo* 2. was Pope; He ordered the kissing of the *Pax*. To him succeeded *Bennet* 2. The Emperour gives way, that the Popes election stand good, without his or successors approbation. *John* 5. succeeds; After him is the 8. Schisme between *Peter* and *Theodore*, the one being chosen by the Exarch, the other by the people; a third is chosen, *Conon* by name; then follows the 9. Schisme between *Theodore* and *Paschal*. at last *Sergius* succeeds 14 years. 7 Councils held this Decad. All the *Manichees* in *Armenia* burnt by *Justinian*. *Sergius* appointed to be sung at the Communion, [O Lamb of God, which takest away the sinnes of the World!]

690—The *Saracens* offer satisfaction to the Emperour for wrongs done by them, which is rejected, and the peace broken; He hireth the *Slavi*, and by them beats the *Saracens*, but 20000. of them revolt, the Emperour is thereby defeated, and kills the rest of them: upon this losse, *Sabatinus* governour of *Armenia* delivers up the Country to the *Saracens*. *Leontius* being delivered by the Emperour out of prison, and made governor of *Greece*, takes *Justinian*, cuts off his nose, and banisheth him into *Pontus*. This *Leontius* reigned 3 years; He expels by his brother *Iohn* the *Saracens* out of *Africk*, and he again expelled by them; He sits up *Tiberius Abismarus* 7 years; he cuts off *Leontius* his nose, and thrusts him into a Monastery. The *Saracens* in *Syria* defeated by the *Romans*. *Pipin* is made Major of the Palace over all *France*; he had *Charles Martel* by his Concubine. *Ina* King of the West-Saxons built *S. Andrews* Colledge in *Wells*, beautified *Glasfenbury*, and was the first that paid Peter-pence. The Jewes conspire against the King of *Visigoths* in *Spain*; they are upon this made slaves. The *Venetians* chöose them a Duke called *Paulus Lucius*, upon the *Lombards* incursions into their territories.

In the Church, Pope *Sergius* rejecteth the Council of *Trullus*, for adding 103 Canons to the 6. General Council; He is accused of whoredome, and strangely acquitted by the *Bastards* at 19 dayes old. 6 Councils called within this Decad. It was decreed that *Easter-week*, called *Septimana in albis*, should be kept holy; the Virgin *Mary's* Nativity is made a Feast.

700—The *Saracens* killed in *Armenia*. *Mahomet* reduceth again the Country into obedience 12000 *Saracens* killed in *Cilicia*. *Philippicus* is banished, for dreaming he should be Emperour. *Justinian* is restored again to the Empire by the *Bulgarians*, 8 years; He hangeth *Abismarus*, *Heraclius*, and *Leontius*; He breaks league with the *Bulgarians*, and is beaten by them. *Offa* King of the East-Saxons, enlarged *Westminster-Church*; He with *Kenred* King of *Mercia*, went to *Rome* and became Monks. *Eugenius* the 7. of *Scotland* lost his Queen by two Rebels who entred his chamber, and missing him, killed her great with child. The *Normans* make the first onset upon *France*, and do much mischief on the Coast. *Aripert* invades *Lombardy*, and doth many cruel acts; the *Saracens* invade *Spain*, and do much hurt. *Cricus* Prince of *Poland* expels the *Franconians* out of his dominion, builds *Cracovia*, and makes it his chief residence: He destroyed a mischievous Monster,

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Monster, by flinging into its cave a Calfs-skin stuff with brimstone, pitch and nitre, which he devoured, and so dyed.

In the Church late *John* the 6. 3 years; He repaired Churches, and redeemed *Gaptives*; upon his intreaty, *Gisulphus* D. of *Benevent* gave off plundering of *Campania*. *Aripert* the *Lombard* bestoweth the *Cottian* Alpes on the Church: This was the first pel in *St. Peters* Church: *Zozimus* succeeded 20 dayes, then *Constantine* 7 years; the Emperour met him at *Nice*, and kissed his feet. *Callinicus*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, had his eyes put out, and banished to *Rome*: The Emperour could not procure the Pope to confirm the Council of *Trullus*. *Felix* Bishop of *Ravenna*, lost his eyes, and is banished to *Pontus* for refusing to pay his tax due to the Pope at his Consecration: The Pope freeth *Papia* from *Millans* jurisdiction.

*Justinian* sends an Army against *Cherfonesus*, which killed multitudes, rosted the Nobles upon spits, & 73000. children were drowned: The *Cherfonesians* at this proclaim *Philippicus* Emperour 1 year, who beheaded *Justinian*, and cut the throat of his son *Tiberius*. *Thrace* is wasted by the *Bulgarians*: *Philippicus* is taken, and his eyes put out: *Anastasius* succeeds 2 years. The *Saracens* send a Fleet against *Constantinople*. A mutiny in *Phenicia* in the Emperours Army, in which the General is killed, and one *Theodosius* chosen, who besiegeth *Constantinople*, takes *Anastasius*, and thrusts him into a Monastery; his General *Leo Iaurus* is chosen 24 years. *Theodosius*, to redeem his son, resigneth and becomes a Priest. *Sohman* besiegeth *Constantinople*, where he dyeth, with most of his Army. *Omar* reneweth the siege, and departeth with losse. *Constantine* *Copronymus* born, The Archbishop of *Thessalonica* and the *Bulgars* set up *Anastasius* again; but the Authors are executed. The French beat the *Goths* quite out of *France*. *Charles Martel*, heir to *Pipin*, doth great feats. The *Danes* waste *Herefordshire*. *Ethelbald* King of *Mereia* builds *Crowland* Abbey. *Mordacus* King of *Scots*, built many Churches and Abbeys. *Roderick* the Visigoth, is killed with his Army by the *Saracens*, who makes *Corduba* the seat of their Kingdome. The *Goths* retire into *Cantabria*. *Pelagius* defeateth the *Moors*, and is made King of *Oviedo*. *Aripert* of *Lombardy* is drowned with his Treasure in the River *Papia*. A great dissention falls out between the Bishops of *Aquileia* and *Grada*. The *Saracens* waste and take much of the Empire.

In the Church, *Gregory* the 2. late Pope 17 years; He redeems *Cume* from the Duke of *Benevent*: Two Councils held this Decad. *Omar* persecuteth the Christians. *Germany* converted by *Boniface*. *Radboldus* D. of *Frisia* will rather go to Hell with many, then to Heaven with a few. *John*, a blind Monk, made Patriarch of *Constantinople*, because he foretold that *Philippicus* should be Emperour.

*Leo* makes his son *Constantine* Emperour; from him all the West falls off, for prohibiting Images; His Army also rebels. *Nice* in *Bitinia* besieged by the *Saracens*. *Charles Martel* hath great Victories against the *Germans*, *Bavarians*, *Frisians*, and *Moors*. *Luitprand* the *Lombard*, takes *Ravenna* from the Exarch, and loseth it. *Pane* the Exarch, and his son, are slain at *Rome*, for intending to kill the Pope. *Eutychius* the Eunuch was the last Exarch, for he was expelled afterward by *Luitprand*: The Exarchs had ruled in *Italy* under the Emperour 182 years. *Chaganus* defeats *Musalmes* and his *Saracens*.

In the Church, Pope *Gregory* sits, and is oftentimes attempted to be slain by the Emperours emissaries; At last he excommunicates the Emperour. The Jewes are seduced by a false *Messias*. 3 Councils held this Decad all at *Rome*. The Jewes great enemies to Images. *Leo*, upon hope of long life, pulls down Images, he was called therefore *Iconomachus*; His Edict against Images causeth much trouble; He burneth a great Library, and 12 Library-keepers in it; His Statues are overthrown, and *Constantinople* besieged by the *Greeks*. The *Frisians* are converted. *St. Austins* bones redeemed from the *Saracens*, and translated to *Papia*. *Franconia* and *Hassia* converted by *Winifred*.

N n n n

*Tiberius*.

Years of Christ.

—710

—720

Years of Christ.  
730

*Tiberius* the Usurpers head is sent by the Exarch from Italy to Constantinople. The Saracens plunder Asia. One *Philippicus* scourged for absolving Witches, who had killed some Infants. *Solyman* the Saracen General, takes many Towns and Captives from *Leo*. In France, *Charles* is victorious over the Moors and Goths. In Spain, *Alphonfus* King of *Leon* assumes the title of Catholique. *Rittogarius*, a German Prince, for being beaten by *Venda* daughter to *Cracus* of Poland, kills himself. The Venetians kill *Orso* their Duke, and choose annual Magistrates. *Luitprand* the Lombard, and the Exarch, make league against the Pope.

In the Church, *Gregory* the 3. sate 11 years; His Revenues in Sicily and Calabria amounting yearly to 8000 l. are detained by the Emperour. *Luitprand* besiegeth Rome, and takes four Cities from the Pope; the Emperour will not be persuaded by the Pope and Italians to restore Images. One Council held at Rome this Decad. *Boniface* founded the Bishopricks of *Ratisbone* and *Salzburg*.

740

*Copronimus* succeeds *Leo* 34 years; he takes *Ardavastus* the Usurper with his two sons, and puts out their eyes, and causeth *Anastasius* the Patriarch to be led back upon an Ass through Constantinople, for aiding him. A great earth-quake in Syria, and a Plague in Constantinople. The Emperours Fleet beats the Egyptian Moors, and the Saracens of Cyprus. *Charls* dieth in France, and leaveth four sons; the two elder *Caroloman* and *Pipin* subdue the *Gascains*, *Almains* and *Saxons*. *Pipin* becomes Major of the Palace alone. *Luitprand* the Lombard recovers *Spoletum* and *Beneventum* by the Popes aide; therefore restores him four Cities, with the Patrimony of *Ancona*, *Sabina*, and *Narne*. *Rachisus* the Lombard breaks the peace made with the Pope; upon which he with his Queen enters a Monastery. The *Polonians* choose *Palatinus* again: *Venda* drowns her self out of superstition. The *Huns* or *Hungarians* transplant themselves out of *Scythia* into *Pannonia*. *Soloman* the Saracen rebelleth, and is executed. The Venetian choose Dukes again. *Theodatus* *Orso's* son is elected.

In the Church, *Zachary* sate 10 years; He composeth the distractions of Italy. 7 Councils were called in this Decad. The Christians of *Antioch* are permitted by the Saracens to choose them a Patriarch after 40 years vacancy. *Peter* Bishop of *Damascus* hath his tongue cut out by the Saracens, for refusing Infidels. The Pope would not have the Child in *Bavaria* baptised with false Latine, to be rebaptised, being no heretic. *Gervilius* Bishop of *Mentz*, for murder, hawking, and hunting, is deposed. The *Pater Noster* and *Creed* ordered to be read in English, at *Cliffe*-Council.

750

*Constantine* makes his son *Leo* Emperour: the Exarchat falls to the Lombards possession. Constantinople recaptured by *Armenians*. *Constantine* sends Organs and other Presents to *Pipin*. He expells the *Sclavi* out of Macedonia, but is beaten by the *Bulgarians*. *Chilperick* the French King, and last of the *Merovinges*, is thrust by *Pipin* into a Monastery, who reigns alone 17 years: he with his sons *Caroloman* and *Charls* are anointed by the Pope at *Paris*. *Pipin* forceth *Aistulphus* the Lombard to make restitution to the Pope; and to buy his own Peace: He subdueth Saxony: *Vaisarius* Duke of *Aquitain* forced to make peace with *Pipin*. *Alphonfus* of Spain recovers *Navar*, and much of *Portugal*, and rooteth out Arianisme. *Aistulphus* the Lombard having taken *Ravenna* claimeth jurisdiction over Rome; but *Pipin* helps the Pope. *Aistulphus* breaks his neck in hunting. *Desiderius* made King who bestows *Ferrara* and other places on the Pope. *Poland* is invaded by the *Moravians* and *Pannonians*. The *Venetians* to curb the Dukes power, joynt two Tribunes to govern with him. *Seleucia* is repaired by the Saracens, and called *Bagdet*. *Habdel* the Saracen oppresseth the Christians, the *Turks* waste *Armenia* and *Persia*.

In the Church, *Stephen* 2. was Pope but 8 days. *Stephen* 3. succeeded 5 years. He was the first Pope that was carried on mens shoulders. *Pipin* bestows on him the Exarch, and the Country about *Luna*, with *Corfica*, *Soranum*, *Parma*, *Rhegium*, *Manua*, *Spoletum* and *Beneventum*. *Paul* succeeded 10 years; he is opposed by *Theophilact* Antipope, which made the tenth schisme. *Paul* built a Monastery in Rome, where the Greek-Psalms were to be sung. In this Decad were held two Councils. *Boniface* is slain by the *Frisians* who were revolted from Christ. The *Turks* receive *Mahumets* Alcaron.

Constantine

Years of Christ.

*Constantine* defeats the *Bulgarians* divers times, but lost his Fleet: He beheaded the Patriarch: he makes *Nicephorus* and *Christopher* his sons Cæsars. *Leo* marrieth *Irene* the Athenian. *Fergusus* of Scotland strangled by the Queen, which fact she confessed, because he preferred Concubines to her, and so stabs her self before the people. *Pipin* subdueth all *Aquitain*, and instituteth the Parliament of *Paris*. *Charls* the Great succeeded in France, Burgundy, and *Aquitain*. *Soysons* left to *Caroloman*. The *Danes* defended of the *Cimbri*, being expelled *Scythia*, place themselves in that Chersonese called *Cimbriick* from them. The *Venetians* depose their Duke *Monegario*, and put out his eyes for tyrannising.

In the Church, a schisme which is the 11. is made by *Philip* a Priest, but he is cast out of the Lateran the fifth day, and *Stephen* the 4. chosen, who sate 4 years. This Decad produced 3 Councils: The Emperour assembleth all the Asian Monks at *Ephesus*, commanding them either to marry, or lose their eyes, and to be banished into Cyprus: He expels the Monks, and fels their Monasteries.

The Saracens invade the Empire, and defeat the Emperours army in *Isauria*. The *Bulgarians* break the peace, which cost the lives of 12000 of their men. *Leo* the 4. succeeded the Emperour 5 years: His brother *Nicephorus* for aspiring is banished. *Telerick* king of *Bulgaria* expelled by his subjects; is baptised in Constantinople, and made a Patriarch. Five of the Saracens Amira's killed in Syria by *Leo's* army. By putting the cold Crown kept in the Temple on his head, he sickned and died. *Constantine* 7 succeedeth with *Irene* 17 years. *Mac-Donald* seileth on the *Abudes*; he with the other rebels are killed by *Argiles* forces. *Charls* taketh *Desiderius* the Lombard, brings him into France, and restores all except Lombardy to the Pope. *Charls* beats the *Saxons*, and forceth them to be Christians. He expells the *Westphalians* out of his Kingdom, and takes *Navarre*, kills two Saracen Kings, instituteth the 12 Peers of France. *Godfrey* King of *Denmark* subdueth the *Saxons*, who are enjoined to present every new King with 100 white-horses. The *Spaniards* are forced by the Saracens to pay a yearly tribute of Christian Virgins. *Lescus* 2. chosen King of Poland, for detecting the fraud of one *Lescus*, who used sinistrous means to be Prince.

In the Church, *Adrian* was Pope 24 years; he first sealed with Lead. *Desiderius* makes a lay-man Arch Bishop of *Ravenna*, whom the Pope expels. *Desiderius* for oppressing the Pope, is subdued by *Charls*. The title of Patriarchs in Rome abolished by Pope *Adrian*. 9 Councils assembled this Decad. *Habdalla* the Saracen, commands all Christians and Jews to be marked in their hands: The Pope and Council gave full power to *Charls* and his successors to choose the Pope.

A Sedition raised at Constantinople, in behalf of *Nicephorus*. *Charls* is sent to by *Irene*, for a match between his daughter and her son: She recovereth the booty from the *Sclavi*. *Irenes* forces defeated in Italy by the French, and break off the marriage of her son, whom she married to a mean *Armenian* called *Mary*. The *Danes* invade England; a League made between France and Scotland. The *Scots* and *Irish* make war upon each other. *Pipin* son to King *Charls* is crowned at Rome, King of Italy. The *Saxons* rebell, and are subdued: they are transplanted into *Brabant* and *Flanders*. The Dukes of *Benevent* and *Bavaria* rebel, and are subdued. *Charls* subdueth the *Sclavonians*. *Ethelburga* daughter to *Offa* the Saxon, poysoned her husband unwittingly, and fled into France, where she is thrust into a Monastery. *Irene* forced by the Saracens to pay tribute; her Fleet is surprised by them.

In the Church, Pope *Adrian* is god-father to *Pipin* *Charls* his son: he repairs Churches, and feeds 100 people daily in the Lateran. In this Decad were 5 Councils; one whereof was the 2. of *Nice*, or 8. General of 350 Bishops, for restoring Images. In *Thrace*, was digged out of a wall a stone-Coffin, with this inscription, *Christ shall be born of the Virgin Mary*, &c. *Charls* founded the Bishoprick of *Breme*. A Council at Constantinople, disturbed by the people, about Images.

*Constantine* undertakes the government, and deposeth his mother, and admits her again upon entreaty; he is defeated by the *Bulgarians*: he puts out the eyes of *Nicephorus*, *Christopher*, and his Uncle *Niceas*: Upon this, the *Armenian* Legions rebell: He put away his wife, and marrieth her maid: he overcomes the Saracens, and spoiles the *Bulgarian* Country. *Irene* puts out his eyes, the same day he so served his Uncle.

N n n n 2

He

770

780

790

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

He dieth shortly after, and she reigns alone: She extinguished the line of *Leo Isauricus*, (About this time, the Sun darkned 17 dayes together) She makes peace with *Charles*, and puts out the eyes of *Copronymus* his son. Intercourse prohibited between *Charles* and *Offa's* subjects. The Danes waste England again. *Egbert* King of the West-Saxons becomes sole Monarch of England. *Charles* defeats the Hungarians and Saxons again; His son *Pipin* rebelleth, and is put into a Monastery. *Charles* builds a Bridge at *Mentz* over the *Rhine*; he kills 4000 rebellious Saxons. *Alphonfus* in Spain kills 70000 Moors, and frees the Land of the tribute of Virgins: He takes *Lisbon* from them, and makes a League with *Charles*. *S. James* is made Patron of Spain, whose Body was now found, and a Church built by *Alphonfus* for it. He sends rich Presents to *Charles*, who takes *Buda* in Hungary.

In the Church, *Adrian* is yet Pope: He repairs the walls of *Rome* ruined by the *Tiber*. To him succeeds *Leo* 3. 21 years. 4 Synods held within this Decad. The Council of *Frankfort* condemns the 2. Council of *Nice*. *Charles* founded the Archbishopricke of *Hamburg*, which afterward was translated to *Breme*. The Patriarch of *Constantinople* is excommunicated by the Abbot, for consenting to the Emperors second marriage, his first wife yet living.

800

In the East, *Irene* and *Charles* treat about a marriage; mean while *Nicephorus* banisheth her, and reigns 8 years, he makes peace with *Charles*; *Sicily* and a part of *Italy* are reserved for the Greek Empire. *Bardanes* is proclaimed Emperor, but he waves it, and enters into a Covent: *Nicephorus* puts out his eyes, and makes his own son *Stauratius* Emperor; He is beat by the Saracens, and forced to pay an annual tribute; He tyranniseth, and loseth *Sardinia* with much treasure, and 6000 Greeks to the Bulgarians. In the West, *Charlemain* is crowned Emperor by Pope *Leo*; He reigned 14 years; He repaireth *Florence*, punisheth the plotters against the Pope, takes *Nuceria* and other places from the Greeks, transplants the Saxons into France, and gives their lands to the Vandals, he waists *Bobemia*, kills *Lescus* the Polonian; he builds *Dresda* & *Numberg*; then by will leaves *Italy* to *Pipin*, France to *Lewis*, Saxony and the rest to *Charles*. The Spanish Moors waste *Sardinia* and *Corfica*. *Egbert* the English Monarch expels *Balred* of *Kent*, which he makes a Province, and calls the whole Island by the name of England. The Scots begin to wear *S. Andrews* Croffe in their Banners, upon the Victory they had against *Athelstane* of *Northumberland*, which *S. Andrew* appearing promised to them. *Frisia* is subdued by the Danes. The Earldome of *Arragon* by marriage falls to *Garzia* King of *Navarre*. *Mauritius* Duke of *Venice*, flung the Bishop of *Grada* from an high tower, for reproving him of his lusts; upon this flith with his father. Quarrels between the *Herocleans* and *Aquileians*. The *Venetians* side with the Moors against *Pipin*. The Saracens divide themselves into six Principalities.

In the Church, Pope *Leo* sits again, after he had been beaten and imprifoned upon false crimes, of which he clears himself in a Synod at *Rome*. 4 Councils were held in this Decad. *Paulus Diaconus* was the first that composed Postils for the year, at the command of *Charles*.

810

In the East, *Nicephorus* and most of the Nobility slain by *Crumnus* the Bulgarian. *Stauratius* after two moneths is thrust into a Covent by *Michael* Curopulata. *Thrace* and *Macedon* waisted by the Bulgarians; the Saracens defeated by *Leo* the General, who succeeded Emperor 7 years, *Michael* being retired into a Monastery, whose sons were gelded by *Leo*, and banished with their mother; He beats the Bulgarians into a peace. *Michael* is condemned to be burnt for conspiring against *Leo*, but is reprieved till after Christ-masse, in the interim *Leo* is killed in the Temple. In the West, *Pipin* dieth at *Ravenna*, he left one son; his eldest brother *Charles* dieth issuelesse. *Pipin's* son *Bernard* is made King of *Italy*. *Charlemain*, a little before his death, crowns his son *Lewis* Emperor; he then dieth aged 72 years. His son *Lewis*, called the Pious, succeeded 27 years; He makes *Lotharius* King of France, and his Colleague. *Pipin* is made King of *Aquitain*, and *Lewis* King of *Bavaria*. *Bernard* *Pipin's* son rebelleth, with divers Bishops. *Bernard* dieth, and leaves three sons. The Bridge at *Mentz* burnt in three hours, which was not built in ten years. *Lewis* subdueth the Vandals. In Spain, the Moors rebell, and are slain by *Alphonso*. *Popielus* Prince of Poland had one of his sons devoured by Rats, as he used in his

## of the principal Passages, &c.

his anger to wish. *Sinard* and *Ringo* striving for the Kingdome of Denmark, are both slain in battel. The Norwegians infest the Danish coast. *Gaunt*-Monastery burnt by accident.

In the Church, *Steven* 5. fate 7 moneths: To him succeeded *Paschalis* 1. 7 yeares; he redeemed Captives, and built Churches. 10 Councils were held in this Decad. *Herbert* a Bishop is sent to the King of *Swevia*, to convert his people. *St. James* of *Compostella* began about this time to be famous for miracles *Leo* an enemy to Images. The Romans are permitted by the Emperor to choose their own Popes.

In the East, *Michael Balbus* is released, and reigneth 8 years: He geldeth *Leo's* sons. One *Thomas* aspires at the Empire, besiegeth *Constantinople*, but is defeated, taken and executed, with his son. The Moors do much hurt by sea; they build *Candy* in *Crete*; they are there overcome by the Imperialists, who shortly after in their security are slain by the Moors. *Euthemius* Governor of *Sicily* revolteth to the Moors, but he is killed at *Syracuse*. To *Michael* succeeded his son *Theophilus* 12 years: He puts to death the murderers of *Leo*; He makes his subjects to wear short haire, because his were thin. In the West, *Lewis* warreth against Hungary; *Lotharius* is crowned Emperor at *Rome*; *Afric* waisted by the Imperial forces; A new plot detected against the Emperor. About this time it rained Corn in *Gascoign*. In Spain, the Moors are beacen; The country is waisted by the Normans. The Danes commit pyracies, at far as *Constantinople*. *Harold* King of Denmark, being expelled, is baptised with his brother *Ericus*, at *Mentz*. *St. Marks* Body is brought from *Alexandria* to *Venice*, which is laid in the Castle-chappel, and a Church erected to it. The Saracens invade *Palestine*, and waste *Sicily*. The Monastery of *Gaunt* rebuilt by the Abbot.

In the Church, *Eugenius* 2. fate 3 years. A 12. Schisme is made by *Zifinius* the Antipope. *Valentine* succeeded 40 dayes. Then *Gregory* 4. 17 yeares. 8 Councils held in this Decad. The Greek Emperor gives way to erect Images without the City, but not within. *Ebbo* Bishop of *Rhemes* sent by the Pope to convert the Danes. At *Acon* Organs are used, the first in the Western Church. Denmark and *Swedeland* converted.

In the East, *Theophilus* defeats the Saracens; His son-in-law *Alexius* fights successfully against the Lombards. The Emperor was almost surprised by the Saracens, who take many Cities from the Empire; they are beaten out of *Asia* by *Manuel* the Emperors Generall. In the West, *Lewis* pardoneth the Conspirators; his Emperesse falsely accused is restored to his bed. *Pipin* upon his second rebellion is committed to *Triers*, whence he escapeth. The Emperors sons take arms against him. The Pope with his Bishops banish the Emperesse, and imprison the Emperor; who again by the German Peers is restored, his wife recalled, and his sons pardoned. *Frisia* invaded by the Normans, and *Antwerp* burnt by them. *Lotharius* takes some places in *Italy* from the Pope. *Lewis* makes his son *Charles* King of *Normandy*. *Pipin* dieth, and the Kingdome of *Aquitain* is divided between *Lotharius* and *Charles*. *Lewis* of *Bavaria* rebells against his father. The Danes defeat *Egbert* King of England, and are defeated by him; At *Portsmouth* they beat, at *Southampton* are beaten. About this time ended the *Picts* Kingdom, being utterly destroyed by the Scots. The Bishops of *Lions* and *Vienne* excommunicate *Lewis* for marrying his Kinswoman: The Bishop of *Utrecht* slain by her command, for threatening to excommunicate *Lewis*. *Ordonius* the Spanish King takes *Cawia* and *Salmantica*, and kills the Moors, who in battel slew *Sancho* King of *Navar*. *Regner* the Dane taken by *Hella* King of *Ireland*, and flung to death with serpents. *Ericus* King of Denmark, of a Persecutor becomes a Convert. *John* Duke of *Venice* forced to flee into France, from whence returning is put into a Monastery.

In the Church, Pope *Gregory* 4. instituteth the Feast of the Holy-Trinity; he calls the Feast of All-Martyrs, All-Saints. 4 Councils held within this Decad. The Feast of All-Saints translated from the 12. of May to the 1. of November. *S. Bartholmew's* Bones drowned in the Indian sea, are brought from *Lipara* to *Benevent*.

In

Years of Christ.

820

830



Tears of Christ.  
840

In the East, *Theophilus* taketh *Sosopetra* the Saracens chief City. The Persians, for want of pay, salute *Theophilus* Emperor, who is taken and imprisoned, and at last executed. To *Theophilus* succeeds his son *Michael* 25 years. The Bulgarian King is expelled by his subjects, for being a Christian: the Emperor gives him another country. In the West, *Lewis* dieth; *Lotharius* succeeds 15 years. *Pipin* obtains *Normandy*. *Lotharius* is twice defeated by his brothers: The difference is referred to 120 Noblemen, who award to *Lotharius*, Italy, a part of France, Burgundy, and Austria, which from him was called *Lotharingia*. *Lewis* King of Germany beats the Vandals. *Bonnia* raised by the Emperor, for abusing his Son. The *Bohemians* rebell, and are subdued by the Emperor, whose forces are at last mastered by them. The English defeat the Danes. *Kenneth* the Scots King, removes the Marble-stone (brought from Spain to Ireland, and thence to Scotland) out of *Argile* into *Scone*, which he inclosed in a Wooden-Chair, wherein the Scots Kings were crowned. In France, *Charles* the Bald reigns. The Normans enter France as far as *Paris*. *Alphonfus* 3. of Spain, called the Great, makes *S. James-Church* of stone, which before was earth; He wasteth the Moors Country. The Normans loose 70 ships at *Gallecia*. *Toledo* taken by the Moors. *Papius* Prince of Poland, with his wife and children devoured by Rats, which grew out of the Bodies they had murdered. The Venetian ships taken and sunk by the Saracens, who waste *Dalmatia*, and take *Ancona*; They fire also the Suburbs of *Rome*, and rob the Churches of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*.

In the Church, *Sergius* 2 was Pope 3 years: He is opposed by *John* a Deacon, which made the 13. Schisme. *Sergius* (at first) was called *Os Porci*. He built the Castle of *S. Angelo*. *Leo* 4. succeeded 8 years; He built a new City begun by *Sergius*, and calls it *Leonina*; He with the Neapolitans beats the Saracens at sea. 7 Councils assembled this Decad. The Romans refuse to confirm *Leo* Pope, without the Emperor. *John* the Patriarch deposed, for opposing Images.

850

In the East, *Bardas* the Emperors Uncle made him kill his Tutor *Theoditus*, because he was not advanced. *Michael* sends his mother and sisters into a Monastery: He is beaten by the Saracens at *Samofata*, and beaten again by *Aner* the Saracen in the West. The Saracens are expelled *Benevent* by *Lewis*, who is made Emperor by *Lotharius*, and he enters a Monastery. *Lewis* reigned 18 years: He makes the *Dalmatians* pay Tribute; He warreth against the *Slavi*, *Vandals*, and *Sarab*. He wins most of France. The Danes enter the *Thames*, plunder *Canterbury* and *London*, but are defeated in *Surry*. The Scots beat the English, and are beaten by them. The *Picts* passe into *Denmark* and *Normay*. In France, *Pipin* escaping out of his Monastery, is taken and imprisoned. The Normans take *Tours* and *Anjou*, and upon civil-wars at home, return. In Spain, *Toledo* and *Corduba* rebell. *Alphonfus* raiseth the Moors from the siege of *Comimbria*. The Danes invade *Holland*. *Lotharius* confirms the Venetian priviledges.

In the Church, *Leo* made many Collects. He builds *Centum-celle*, or *Civita-Vecchia*, spoiled by the Saracens, and calls it *Leopolis*. To him succeeded *John* 8. who, some say, was a woman, others deny it. *Bennet* 3. succeeded 2 years; opposed by *Anastasi*, in the 14. Schisme. *Nicholaus* 1. succeeds 9 years: He hid himself, that he might not be chosen. This Decad afforded 9 Councils. The *Manichees* are punished by *Theodora* in the East.

860

In the East, *Constantinople* is besieged by the *Russians*. *Bardas*, by *Michaels* negligence, made *Cesar*: he favoured Learning. The Church of *Sophia* burnt. *Bardas* killed by *Basilus*, who is made *Cesar*; he kills *Michael*, and reigns 19 years; he caused restitution to be made of half, which *Michael* had spent on his Flatterers; he raiseth the Saracens from *Racusa*, and takes *Samofata* from them, and helpeth *Lewis* against them. In the West, *Caroloman* rebels against his father *Lewis* the Emperor, forceth the *Slavi* to peace; he expels the Saracens out of *Campania* into *Calabria*; he is reconciled to his brother *Charles*. *Lotharius* forsakes his Concubine, and takes his Wife again. *Lambert* Duke of *Spoleum* loseth his Dutchy for plundring *Rome*. The Saracens lose many places to the Western Princes. *Bari* is taken, and in it the Saracen-Sultan. *Ethelred* the English King defeated the Danes nine times; slew nine of their Earls, and one of their Kings. The Danes challenge *Pictland*, and commit great outrages in *Fife*. *Thierry* son to *Sigebert* Duke

Duke of *Aquitaine* is made the first Earle of *Holland* by the French King *Charles*. The Normans waste *Anjou* and other places. *Charles* invadeth *Lotharius* his kingdome, and is crowned at *Mentz*, and divides the Kingdome with *Lewis* King of Germany: the Saracens are expelled *Grada*, by the Venetians. *Baldwin* of Flanders reconciled to *Charles* the Bald. *Thierry* of *Holland*, subdueth his rebellious people, and the Frislanders; obtaineth *Zealand*, and drives the Danes out of *Holland*.

In the Church, *Nicolaus* sits yet; he opposed the Synod of *Constantinople*, and excommunicates *Photius* the Patriarch, and is excommunicated by him; and forceth *Lotharius* to take his wife again. *Hadrian* succeeds 4 years: He threatneth *Charles* and *Lewis* for invading the kingdome of *Lorrain*. 16 Councils held this Decad; one whereof was the eighth General Council of *Constantinople*, against *Photius*. The *Slavi* in *Moravia* receive the Gospel: the Arch-Bishop of *Coleman* and *Trevers* deposed for causing *Lotharius* to repudiate his wife. *Lotharius* denies the Popes power in Temporals. The King of *Bulgaria* becomes a Monk, and puts out the eyes of his Apostate son. The *Huns* and *Russians* converted: The Pope in the Synod of *Constantinople* obtaineth jurisdiction over the *Bulgarians*; but they fell afterward to the Greek Church.

In the East, *Basilus* refuseth to acknowledge *Lewis* Emperour: therefore the match between *Constantine* his son and *Lewis* his daughter is broken off. *Basilus* takes *Cesarea* in *Cappadocia*, with much booty. The Saracens invade the Empire, but are expelled: They of *Tharfin* and *Cilicia* are beaten at Sea. In the West, *Lewis* is crowned King of *Lorrain* at *Rome*, and is taken prisoner by *Aldegisus* D. of *Benevent*. *Lewis* warreth against the *Bohemians*, who are forced to pay Tribute. The Emperour dieth at *Millan*, and *Charles* the Bald crowned at *Rome*. 2 years after, *Lewis* of Germany dieth; his three sons divide his lands. The Emperour is defeated for incroaching on them: he makes *Boso* King of *Arles*, and is poisoned by a Jew. *Lewis* the Stammerer succeeds 18 months; he dyeth. *Caroloman* the next heir resigns (being paralitick) to *Charles* the Groffe 8 years, so the Empire is translated from the Western French to the Eastern. *Edmunds-bury* in England built to the memory of *Edmund* the Martyr. Peace made between the Danes and English. *Denewolf* of a Cowheard is made Bishop of *Winchester*, for entertaining King *Elfred* in his flight from the Danes: the Scots beat the Danes, and are beaten by them. In France, *Carolomans* eyes are put out for rebelling: a great Plague of Locusts, and *Dearth* ensueth. Peace in Spain between *Alphonfus* and the Moors. Most part of England subdued by the Danes. *Canutus* their king is baptized in England: the Normans defeated in *Frisia*: the Saracens are beaten by the Persians; they force the Pope to pay tribute, they take *Syracusa*.

In the Church, *John* 8. fate ten years; he payes to the Saracens 25000 crowns, to leave his territories: He is imprisoned by the D. of *Spoleum*, whom upon his escape to France, he excommunicated. 7 Councils held this Decad. Bells first used in the Greek Church; upon the sending of twelve Bells to *Basilus* the Emperour, by *Urso* D. of *Venice*. *Photius* the Patriarch is restored by a Synod of *Constantinople*.

In the East, *Basilus* imprisoneth his son *Leo*, for wearing a Dagger; but is freed by some words uttered by a Parrot: *Basilus* being wounded by a Stag, dieth. *Leo* 6 succedeth 25 years; he loseth much by the Lombards, and his forces in *Macedonia* are defeated by the *Bulgarians*, who desire peace, upon the coming of the *Hungarians* to aide the Emperour. In the West, *Charles* the Emperour, with *Lewis* king of Germany, besiege *Vienna*, and drive *Boso* out of France. *Lewis* robs the Church of *Mentz*, to pay the Normans, who had invaded his Territories; upon his death *Charles* seizeth on his lands: the Normans burn *Constance* and *Trevers*. *Guido* E. of *Tuscany* aids the Saracens against the Emperour, who are afterward reconciled. *Bavaria* and *Austria* spoiled by the *Slavi*: the Emperour is deposed for giving away *Normandy*, and being unfit for government. *Arnulph* succeeds 12 years. England about this time was divided into Shires, Hundreds and Tythings, under King *Elfred*. The Danes are forced into France. The Scots beat the Irish, and take *Dublin*. *Boso* makes himself King of *Burgundy*. *Paris* besieged by the Normans; of them *Caroloman* buyes his peace, after he had taken *Vienna*: they waste France, and besiege *Paris* again; the Emperour to quiet them gives them *Neustria*, now called *Normandy*. *Odo* of Saxony, of whom came the *Capets*, defeats the Normans in *Flanders*. *Gallecia* in Spain is made a kingdome, and *Ordogno Alphonfus* second son King thereof. *Alphonfus* is forced by his son *Garzia* to religne *Leon* to him, who died childlesse: so

Tears of Christ.

870

880

Leon

## A brief Chronologie

*Years of Christ.*

Leo falls to his brother *Ordogno*, who beat the Moors. The Hungarians being deluded by *Leo*, invade the Western Empire, chiefly *France*, to be eased of their Tribute laid on them by *Charlemain*.

In the Church, to *John* (whose brains were beaten out with a hammer) *Martin 2.* succeeded 1 year; then *Adrian 3.* 1 year; then *Steven 5.* 6 years. 3 Councils were held in this Decad. *Godfrey* King of the Normans baptised. The Monastery of *Mount Cassin* burnt by the Saracens. *Photius* the Patriarch deposed.

890

In the East, *Simeon* the Bulgarian, upon the departure of the Hungarians, vexed *Leo* again; who to quiet them, restores their prisoners. The Saracens take *Lemnos* and *Taurome-nium* in *Sicily*. The Lombards lose *Benevent* to the Marquis of *Tuscany*, after 330 years possession. *Theffalonica* taken by the Saracens. In the West, *Arnulph* makes the Duke of *Moravia* King of *Bohemia*. *Guido* is crowned Emperor by the Pope. *Arnulph* is aided by the Hungarians against *Zuindebold* the Moravian, whom he had made King of *Bohe-mia*; He takes divers Towns in *Italy*; *Rome* is taken by means of a Hare: his wife is convicted of adultery; he falls into a Palse, and dieth of the *Lousie-disease*; His sonne *Lewis 4.* succeeds 12 years. The Danes do much hurt in *England*; the Scots help the English against them. The Normans are beaten in *Britany*. *Charles* the Simple of *France* and *Odo* have great wars. *Ordogno* of *Spain*, and *Garzius* King of *Navar*, are defeated by the Moors. Possessions are given to the Hungarians, for their service to *Arnulph* the Emperor.

In the Church, *Formosus* is Pope 4 years: He is opposed by *Sergius* the Antipope, which made the 15. Schisme. *Boniface 6.* succeeds, who was expelled within a moneth for his lewd life. His successor was *Steven 6.* 3 years: He abused and mutilated the dead body of *Formosus*, which he caused to be digged up; he is taken by *Aldebert* Marquis of *Tuscany*, and strangled in prison. *Romanus* succeeded 3 moneths. 5 Synods held within this Decad.

900

In the East, the Saracens invade *Greece*, and are defeated, and then defeat *Himerius* the Emperors Generall. *Constantine* son to *Leo* is crowned Emperor. The Saracens defeat the Emperors Fleet. In the West, *Lewis* is beaten by the Hungarians, who waste all *Germany*. The rebellious Frislanders are subdued by *Therry* the Hollander; who in signe of subjection enjoined them to make low-doors, that they might stoop as they entred. *Berengarius* in *Italy* is defeated by the Hungarians, and their departure is procured with money. In *Spain*, *Alphonso* defeats the Saracens, then entred a Monastery, which shortly after he forsook, then he was imprisoned and lost his eyes. *Ramirus* of *Spain* invades *Toledo*, takes *Madrid*, and defeats the Moors. *Roan* in *France* with other places taken by *Rollo D.* of *Normandy*, who besiege *Paris* and beat the French.

In the Church, *Theodorus 2.* sits 20 dayes: *John 9.* succeeded 4 years: He confirmed the Acts of *Formosus*, which caused a sedition, so that he fled from *Ravenna*. *Benet 4.* succeeded 2 years. The 16 Schism, in which *Leo 5.* after 40 dayes, is imprisoned by *Christopher*, aided by the Marquis of *Tuscany*, and after 7 moneths, is sent unto a Convent by *Sergius 3.* *Theodora*, the Marquises Concubine, ruleth in *Rome*, *Sergius* makes her daughter *Marozia* his Concubine, of whom he begot *John* the 11 or 12. This Decad produced 5 Councils. The Bohemians and Normans converted to the Faith. *Leo* the Emperour takes a fourth wife, against the Custome of the Greek Church, therefore he is Excommunicated by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, whom for this, *Leo* banished.

910

In the East, to *Leo* succeedeth his son *Constantine 8.* 50 years, who ruled with his mother *Zoe*. *Constantinople* besieged by *Simeon* Prince of *Bulgaria*, who is hired to return home. He breaks the peace, and takes *Adrianople*. The Italian Princes crave help against the Saracens, who had invaded *Calabria* and *Apulia*. The Greeks beat the Bulgarians, and are beat by them. *Zoe* is sent into a Monastery, and *Romanus* rules with the Emperour his son-in-law. In the West, the Emperor buys his peace of the Hungarians: he dieth

## of the principal Passages, &c.

*Years of Christ.*

of grief, and in him endeth the race of *Charlemain* in *Germany*. *Conradus* Duke of *Frah-conia* succeeds 7 years. *Henricus* *Auceps* aspires. The Dukes of *Suevia* disturb the peace. The Emperor is beaten by the Duke of *Mersburg*. *Ratisbone* taken from the Emperour by *Arnulph* Duke of *Bavaria*, and lost again. *Conradus* sickneth, and commends *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* to the Empire: This *Henry* reigned 17 years; He was surnamed *Henry* *Falconer*. In *France*, *William* Earl of *Aquitain* founded the Monastery of *Clugny*. *Robert* Earl of *Paris* rebels against the King for his insufficiency, who is surprised and imprisoned by *Robert* Earl of *Vermandois*. In *Spain*, the Moors are beaten again, and the Rebels suppressed. The *Navarrois* are defeated by the *Castilians*. The *Venetians* obtain leave of the Emperor to coyn money. The Hungarians invade *Italy*.

In the Church, *Anastasius* sits 2 years. *John 10.* succeeded 16 years: He falls out with *Albericus* Marquis of *Tuscia*, and is expelled the City; whereupon he calls in the Hungarians; who commit many outrages. *Albericus* is slain by his people. One Council was held this Decad at *Constans*, inhibiting marriage in the 7. Degree.

In the East, *Romanus* crowns his wife and son, and subscribes before the Emperor; he is overcome by the Bulgarians, who take *Hadrianople*, but are expelled by *Romanus*. The Saracens at *Lemnos* are defeated by the Emperors fleet. *Romanus* makes two of his sons *Cæsars*, & another a Church-man. In the West, *Burchard D.* of *Sveve* is forced to acknowledg *Henry* Emperor, who gets *Lorrain* from *Charles* of *France*. *Arnulph* is forced to obedience. The Hungarians being defeated by the Emperor, make peace for nine years, after which time they are expelled *Germany*. The Vandals subdued, and *Brandeburgh* taken by the Emperor; multitudes of Vandals killed near the Baltic sea. In *France*, *Robert* Earl of *Paris* is chosen King, whom *Charles* assisted by the Normans slew: then *Raoul* Duke of *Burgundy* is chosen, who leagueth with the Normans. *Charles* is released, and again imprisoned, then dyeth. In *Spain*, the rebellions of *Castile*, *Navar* and *Gallecia* are suppressed by *Ordonius 3.* who dyeth in his expedition against the Moors. *Elfred*, an English Nobleman, who had conspired to put out King *Athelstan* eyes, abjured himself at *Rome*, fell down and dyed 3 days after. *Athelstan* overcomes the Welsh, and beats the Scots. *Venice* burnt by the Hungarians. *Siffrid* the Dane having wasted *Flanders*, and ravished the Earls daughter, hanged himself.

In the Church *Anastasius* sits, who consecrated a Boy of 5 years old Bishop of *Rhemes*. *Raoul* King of *Burgundy* is made King of *Italy*, to cross *Berengarius*, who is expelled *Italy*, who therefore called in the Hungarians, that burn *Papia*. The Pope makes *Hugh*, Earl of *Arles*, King against *Raoul*, who returned to *France*. *Guy*, this *Hugh's* brother, imprisoneth, and strangleth the Pope, after he had killed his brother *Peter*. *Leo 6.* succeeds, whom *Guy* after 7 moneths imprisoned; he dyed, and *Stephen 8.* succeeded two years. *Marozia* the Strumpet, was the death of these two Popes. 3 Councils kept this Decad. *Raoul* King of *Burgundy*, bestows on the Emperour the Spear that wounded Christ.

In the East, the Russians waste the country about *Constantinople*: divers Greeks gelded by the *Beneventines*. In the West, the Hungarians being denied their tribute of the Emperour, spoil *Germany*, but are at last defeated and expelled. *Misia* made a Marquisat, and *Guelthers* an Earldom: *Henry* dieth, to him succeeds *Otho* the first his son 42 years. The *Palatine* for rebelling, is banished, who being pardoned, conspires with *Henry* the Emperours brother. In *England*, King *Athelstan* drives the Britains out of *Devonshire* into the remote parts of *Cornwall*; he takes *Westmerland* and *Cumberland* from the Scots; to him was sent out of *France*, *Constantine* the Great his sword, in the hilt of which was one of the nails of the Cross. In *France*, *Lewis* son to *Charles* returns out of *Eng-land*, and reigneth 18 years. In *Spain*, *Sancho* King of *Leon* recovers his Kingdom, to whom *Ferdinand* of *Castile* selleth a horse and a hawk, conditionally to double the pay-ment every day, after it should become due: This *Ferdinand* is taken prisoner by the *Navarrois*, and released; so was the King of *Navar* taken and released: *Ferdinand* escapes out of prison by his wifes means, who exchanged apparel with him. *Sancho* makes *Castile* a Kingdom, in satisfaction for his horse and hawk. About this time some Bishopricks were founded in *Denmark*. The Istrians by surprising some *Venetian* Virgins, as they presented themselves after their custome; in our

Oooo

Lady-

920

930

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

Lady Church, (the memorial whereof is kept at *Candlemasse*) are forced to pay a yearly tribute to *Venice*. *Comaculum* refusing to pay, is taken and annexed to the Venetian Territories. The Saracens are beaten in *Castile* and *Germany*: *Genoa* is taken by them, and cruelly used.

In the Church, *John 11*. fate 6 years; *Marozia* delivers *Rome* to *Hugh*, who imprisoneth the Pope; whom *Albericus* freed, and expelled *Hugh* with *Marozia*. *Leo 7*. succeeds 4 years. Two Councils held this Decad. The *Audean* Hereticks obtain now the name of *Anthropomorphites*. *Romanus* makes his son at 16 years, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, to whom he procures a Pall from the Pope.

940

In the East, *Romanus* hires the Turks to leave *Thrace*: he is sent to a Convent by his sonne *Steven*. *Romanus* having lost two of his other sons, dieth. *Constantine* reigned 12 years; he inviteth Schollars into *Greece*. In the West, the Emperour and French King are reconciled. *Henry* the Emperours Brother obtains pardon for his Rebellion. *Otho* being wounded in hunting, makes his son *Ludolphus* his Colleague and successor, but afterward changed his mind: He makes his Brother *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria*; who expelled thence the Hungarians. *Otho* defeats the Danes. In *Italy*, *Hugh* made a league with the Saracens: his people upon this revolt; he flies into *France*, and becomes a Monk. The Saracens beaten out of *Calabria* by the Greeks. *Otho* invades *Flanders*, and is opposed by the Gauntois. *Aquileia* taken by *Henry* the Emperours Brother. *St. Wenceslaus* is made King in *Bohemia* by the Emperour; he refused the Title, not the Government: he is murdered by his brother in the Church; and his wicked mother the cause of this murder, was swallowed quick in the Earth. *Otho* beats the Danes, and wastes their Country. In *Spain*, *Zaicho* is poysoned with an Apple by *Gonsalvus* the Rebel, whom he had pardoned. *Ferdinand* loseth many places in *Castile* to the Moores, and dieth for grief. *Ramire* defeats the Moores in *Leon*. In *France*, the D. of *Normandy* is reconciled to the King, who takes *Roban*, and makes *Robert* Earl of *Paris*. *Hugh* Major of the Palace, takes the King in *England*. *Analph* of *Ireland* intrudes into *Northumberland*, who is banished by King *Edmund*, and *Cumberland* bestowed on the Scots. King *Edmund* is slain treacherously at a feast. *Analph* is recalled by the *Northumbrians*, and made King there.

In the Church, *Steven* being dead of a wound received in a tumult, *Martine* the 3. fate 3 years; to him succeeded *Agapetus* the 2. 9 years. In this Decad were called 5 Councils. The Russians persecute the Christians. *Otho* spreads Christianity in *Denmark*, *Swethland* and other northern parts.

950

In the East, the Emperours Fleet is defeated by the Saracens at *Candy*. *Bardus* the Emperours General, taketh much from them. *Romanus* poysoned his Father, who died not in two years after, some of the poyson being spilt. In the West, *Otho* forceth *Boleslaus* the Bohemian to submit: he adds *Belgium* and *Burgundy* to the Empire: divers rebell against *Otho*, who at last submit. The Bishop of *Salzburg*'s eyes are put out for calling the Bavarians into *Bavaria*, where they were all slain. *Otho* subdueth the Vandals; *Otho* by marrying *Adelheida* becoms King of *Italy*, which he leaves to *Berengarius* except *Verona* and *Aquileia*, which he gave to *Henry* his brother. *Berengarius* plays the tyrant, and wars with the Pope for the Duchy of *Spoletum*. *Pietro* of *Venice* is banished, and turns Pyrat against the Venetian ships, the report of which killed the Duke his father with grief: he is notwithstanding recalled by the State. The Church of *Grada* is made Metropolis of *Venia* and *Istria*. *Harold* the Dane holdeth of the Emperour, and receiveth the Faith. Five of the Hungarian Kings hanged in *Bavaria*. In *Spain*, *Garzias* of *Castile*, invadeth *Leon*: he pursueth his wife with her Adulterer, and kills them both in bed. The Moores mean while invade his Territories. In *France*, *Lewis* is killed by a fall from his horse; His son *Lotharius* succeeds 32 years: *Hugh* by his death, leaveth his Duchy of *Paris* to *Hugh Capet*, who is declared Duke of *France* and Earl of *Poitou*. The *Northumbrians* and *Mercians* revolt from *Edmy* King of *England*, for his evil life, and set up his brother *Edgar* against him: The King hereupon dieth for grief. *Edgar* reigned 56 years; He rigs out a great Fleet to guard the Coasts. *Malcolme* King of *Scotland* is murdered in *Murrey*.

In the Church, *John 12*. fate 8 years, he was the first Pope (say some) that changed his name from *Octavian* to *John*. 3 Councils held this Decad. *St. Matthews* reliques translated from *Ethiopia* to *Salernum*. *Helen* Queen of *Russia* is baptized at *Constantinople*; she sends to *Otho* for Priests to convert her Subjects.

In

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Years of Christ.

960

In the East, *Romanus 2*. reigned 3 years; he beat the Saracens in *Crete*, by *Nicephorus Phocas*; he was forbidden to return to *Constantinople*, because there was a prophesie, that the Conquerour of *Crete* should be Emperour: which fell out true; for he succeeded 6 years: he beats the Saracens out of *Cilicia*: He is sorry that his forces took *Antioch*; because he was told, that if it were taken he should miscarry; he becomes covetous and odious; he kills *Otho's* Ambassadors, who by his own order came to treat with him about a match, between young *Otho*, and his daughter *Theophania*: He is killed by *John Zimisces*, and his own Empreffe. This *John* succeeded 6 years; he thrusts the Empreffe into a Monastery, and sends *Theophania* to *Otho*: In the West, *Otho's* aide is intricated by the Pope against *Berengarius*, whom *Otho* defeats, and causeth his son *Otho* to be crowned: He sends the wife of *Berengarius* to him; he seileth *Lombardy*, and deposeth the Pope for adhering to his enemy: He banisheth *Bereus* with his wife and children into *Bavaria*. *Adelbert* his enemy being defeated, the Pope is by him restored: then to revenge the death of his Ambassadors, he cut off the Noses of divers *Calabrian* and *Apulian* Greeks, and sends them to *Constantinople*. The Saracens lose *Crete*, *Cyprus*, with 100 Cities, *Cilicia*, *Tripolis* in *Phenicia*, *Antioch*, *Calabria*, and *Apulia*, all this within this Decad. *Harold* of *Norway*, by sacrificing his two sons, obtained a Tempest which dispersed the Danish Fleet, that came to demand tribute. *Mecislaus* King of *Poland* is Baptized; he builds many Churches, and erects two Archbishopricks. *Edgar* King of *England*, imposeth a yearly tribute of 300 Wolves upon the Welch: He is cheated of his wife by his favourite *Ethelwolde*, whom he slew, and then married her. The Danes land in *Scotland*, and are forced to flee to their ships.

In the Church, Pope *John* is depofed for divers crimes. *Leo* the 8. is chosen, but upon the Emperours departure *John* is restored again; *Leo* fleeth to *Otho*; he is slain in the act of Adultery by the womans husband. *Bennet* the 5. is chosen. *Otho* returneth and seiles *Leo*; so *Bennet* is banished to *Hamburg*. This makes the 17 Schisme. *John 13* succeeds 6 years; he is imprisoned 11 moneths, and restored by the Emperour; he was the first that consecrated Bels, and gave them names. 6 Councils held this Decad. *Miesco* King of *Poland* ordereth, that every Knight at the reading of the Gospell should draw his sword in defence thereof, and at the naming of it, to say, [Glory be to thee, O Lord.] *Hungary* is converted.

In the East, *Bardus* overcomes the Rebels in *Asia*: the *Ross* expelled out of *Bulgaria*. *Zimisces* is murdered by an Eunuch for complaining against the wealth of the Eunuchs. *Basilus* and *Constantine* sons of *Romanus* succeed 50 years. *Bardus* rebelleth, and joyneth with the Saracens. The Imperialists beaten by the Bulgarians. In the West, *Otho* marrieth with *Theophania*: *Otho* the father dieth, and *Otho* the son succeeds 10 years. *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria* opposeth him a while, then desisteth; *Henry* afterward rebelleth, and fleeth into *Bohemia*, which is wasted by the Emperour, and *Henry* with his son banished: *Otho* makes peace with *Lotharius*. *Elvain* the Saracen Prince makes *Alcain* in *Egypt* his Seat: they lose *Fraxinetum*, and recover *Consentia*. The Venetians drive them from *Capua*. *Pietro* Duke of *Venice*, for his tyrannies is killed with his son: he set his Palace, *S. Marks* Church, and 300 houses on fire: His successor *Pietro Ursulo* repaired all again; and bestowed a Table of Gold on the High-Altar. The Isle of *Sembia* in *Russia* is subdued by *Aquinus* the King of *Denmarks* eldest son: his youngest son *Sueno* rebelleth against him; at last, this *Harold* the father is slain, and *Sueno* succeeds: A part of *Lorrain* is given by *Otho* to the Bishops of *Liege*, *Trevers*, and *Colen*. *S. James* of *Compostella* overthrown by the Moores; they are defeated by King *Pharemund*. In *England*, King *Edgar* built 47 Monasteries, besides *Rumsey*-Abby for Nuns; he is murdered by his mother in law: she in penance built the Monastery of *Malmesbury* and *Wharwell*. *Duffus* the Scots king is bewitched and murdered: *Culen* his successor, for his wicked life, is also slain by a Thane whose daughter he had ravished.

In the Church, *Domnus 2*. fate 3 moneths; *Bennet 6*. succeeded: he is strangled in the Castle of *St. Angelo*, by means of *Boniface 7*. which makes the 18 Schisme: he seeing the City bent against him, fleeth to *Constantinople* with all the Jewels of the Vatican. To him succeeds *Bennet* the 7. 9 years. This Decad produced 5 Councils. The Patriarch of *Constantinople* prohibits *Zimisces* to enter the Church, for murdering *Nicephorus*; he layeth the fault on the Empreffe, who is made a Nun, and he an Emperour. A Wheel-wrights son is made Archbishop of *Mentz*: hence a Cart-wheel was added to the Arms of that See.

O o o o

In

In the East, *Basilius* by the Saracens help recovereth *Calabria* and *Apulia* from *Otho*, whom they put to flight, and took him in Merchants Cloths, but he redeemed himself, and fled into *Benevent*. *Earissa* is taken from the Greeks by *Samuel* King of *Bulgaria*. The Army proclaims *Baris Phocas* Emperour, who laid siege to *Constantinople*, but he died suddenly: Upon this, the Greeks submit to the Emperour. In the West, the Greeks are expelled out of *Illyricum* and *Dalmatia* by *Otho*: in his absence, *Germany* is wasted by the *Slavi*, and *Brandenburg* taken. *Otho* having defeated the Saracens of *Italy*, is wounded by a poysonable arrow, and dieth: he is interred at *Rome*. His son *Otho* 3. succeeds 17 years. *Henry* of *Bavaria* proclaims himself Emperour, seifeth on *Otho*, but is forced to restore him to the Bishopricks of *Mentz*: *Otho* subjugates *Bohemia*, and institutes the *Palatinat* of the *Rhene*. In *France*, *Lotharius* invadeth *Lorraine*, takes *Verdun* with the Earl, and then restores them: to him succeeded his son *Lewis* 5. who is poisoned by his wife. *Hugh* *Capet* is chosen, and *Charls* of *Lorraine* the heir rejected; he taketh *Leon* and driveth *Hugh* from it. In *England*, the Danes doe much mischief, but are beaten in the West. *Richard* Earl of *Normandy* having invaded *England*, is perswaded by the Pope to return. *Hay* a plough-man in *Scotland*, put the Danes to flight, after they had defeated the Kings forces. Great troubles between the Countries of *Anguse* and *Mernes*. In *Spain*, to *Pharemund* succeedeth *Alphonso* 5. King of *Leon* 28 years. In *Denmark* King *Sueno* Apostatizeth; he is taken three times by the *Futians*, and redeems himself, 1. for his weight in Gold, 2. and twice his weight in Silver: the last time he is redeemed by the Danish Ladies, who sold their Jewels to free him; therefore he made women capable to inherit: He is at last expelled his kingdom by *Ericus* King of *Sweden*. *Otho* prohibiteth all *Italy* from commercing with *Venice*: wherefore the houses of the *Caloprini* are rased, their wives and children imprisoned, for incensing *Otho* against *Venice*: the Duke becomes a Monk.

In the Church, *John* the 13. fate 8 moneths; and is starved by *Boniface* the 7. who after 9 years returneth to *Constantinople*, and after 4. moneths died suddenly: his body was dragged through the streets: succeeded *John* 14. 11 years; he was expelled by *Crescentius* the Consul, and is by him again recalled. Two Synods held this Decad. *Adelbert* B. of *Prague*, preacheth to the Hungarians, and leaves *Bohemia*.

In the East, *Samuel* Prince of *Bulgaria* takes many Greek Commanders prisoners, whom the Emperours army redeemeth by seising on his Tents. In the West, *Otho* is crowned at *Rome*; he puts *Crescentius* to death for rebelling, and restores the Pope: he makes *Crescentius* his widow his Concubine, whom he burned, for causing him execute an Earl whom she falsely accused. In *France*, *Charls* taketh *Rhemes*: he is betrayed and dieth in prison. *Hugh* dischargeth the office of Major of the Palace, and erecteth a Constableness: he excluded Bastards from inheriting the Crown. To him succeeds *Robert* his son. In *Spain*, *Sancho* poysoned his mother with that poyson he had provided for him: Hence the custom of *Spain* is for the women to drink first. *Barcelona* spoiled by the Moors, and the Earl killed; 70000 Moors are slain, and all recovered from them. In *England* the Danes are hired by *Etheldred* to depart; they enter the land again with divers fleets, and waste many parts of the kingdom. *Kenneth* in *Scotland* poysoned the Prince of *Cumberland*, that his own son might succeed, whom he declareth heir: he is affrighted in a Vision for this murder; visits the Shrine of *Palladius*, and is murdered by a woman. *Constantine* the Bald, assumeth the crown: *Malcolme*, *Kenneth*'s son opposeth him in vain: *Kenneth*, *Malcolme*'s base brother, and *Constantine* are slain in a battell. *Grime*, Nephew to *Duffie* makes himself King. *Adelbert* B. of *Prague* labouring to convert *Borissus*, is slain there. In *Hungary* King *Stephen* establisheth Christianity. In *Denmark*, *Sueno* by the Scots help, recovereth his kingdom. *Olaus* king of *Norway* is defeated at Sea, and drowned by *Sueno*, who thereupon possessed that kingdom. The Venetians take *Corcyra*, and destroy *Pharos*: they obtain of *Otho*, jurisdiction over their own Churches: It is ordered that the Duke of *Venice* should be also stiled Duke of *Dalmatia*; they take 40 Ryrat ships.

In the Church, *John* 15. fate 4 moneths; *Gregory* 5. 3 years; the 19. schisme follows: for *Crescentius* expelleth him, and sets up *John* Bishop of *Placentia*; but *Gregory* is restored, *John* whipped, excommunicated and slain; and *Crescentius* after the losse of his members hanged. *Silvester* 2. succeeded 4 years; this Decad produced 7 Synods.

In the East, the Bulgarians are beaten by the Emperour, who recovers most of his Cities: he sends forces against the Saracens, now before *Capua*. In the West, *Otho* visits the body of *Adelbert* in *Polonia*: He is taken at *Rome*, and released; at last is poysoned with a pair of gloves, which *Crescentius* his widow gave him. *Henry* 2. succeeded 23 years; he defeats all his opposers: he being in danger at *Papia*, leapeth down from a Wall, and dis-joyns his thigh, whence he halted, and from this was nicknamed, The lame. He had wars and peace with *Flanders*, and quarrels with the D. of *Bavaria*. *Robert* the French King makes his son *Robert* Duke of *Burgundy*, being escheated to the Crown. *Alphonso* of *Spain* correcteth the Gothic Laws. *Sancho* King of *Navar* stiles himself King of *Spain*: His son *Garzia* is dis-inherited for accusing his mother of Adultery, and *Ramire* made King of *Arragon*. *Alphonso* besieging *Viscum* in *Portugal* is shot dead with an arrow. The Danes are burnt in a Church at *Oxford*: they rase *Excester*, spoil *Normich*, take the Isle of *Wight*; the Cantabrians redeem their peace with money. In *Scotland* it is agreed that *Grime* should remain King, and *Malcolme* with his heirs should succeed. *Grime* tyrannizeth, he is taken by *Malcolme* in *Atholl*, and his eyes put out: To him succeeds *Malcolme* 2. 13 years. *Boleslaus* is made King of *Poland* by the Emperour, who giveth the spear of *St. Maurice*, and a nail of the Cross for the Armes of that Kingdom. *Cracovia* is taken by the Bohemians, and *Prague* by the Polanders; with the Vice-grave and *Silvania* invades *Hungary*. King *Stephen* takes *Giulas* wife and children, and treasure enough to build a Church in *Alba*. *Giula* is baptized with his Family, and dismissed. The Earl of *Flanders*, and the Emperour differ about *Lorain*: the Earl takes *Valenciens*, and restores it to the Emperour, who bestows it upon the Earl, with the Isles in *Zealand*, which occasioned a long War between the Flemmings and Hollanders. *Jerusalem* taken by the Saracens.

In the Church, *John* the 16. fate 5 moneths; *John* the 7. succeeded 6 years, then *Sergius* 4. 3 years. In this Decad were held 3 Councils. The Greek Church is united to the Latine. The feast of *Mary*'s Nativity observed by *Fulbert* B. of *Charters*. The Temple of the Sepulchre overthrowen by the Priace of *Babylon*, upon the Jews importunity; but they are banished, and the Temple rebuilt by *Mary* the Princes mother.

In the East, the Bulgarians are defeated, and there eyes put out, except their Commanders, who lost but one eye. The Emperour defeateth the Saracens, and subdueth all *Bulgaria*, Prince *John* being slain. The Normans are expelled *Apulia*. In the west, *Brem* and *Hamburg* spoiled by the Saxons and Vandals. The Emperour is worsted by the Bohemians. The King of *Burgundy* makes the Emperour his Heir; hereupon the Burgundians rebell. In *Spain*, *Pharemund* the 3. King of *Leon* repaireth the Churches ruined by the Saracens. The Earldom of *Castile* falls to the King of *Navar*. *Mahumet* is the last King of the Moors in *Corduba*: *Pharemund* is slain in battell by *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, the first of that name, King of *Castile* and *Leon* 37 years. The Danes invade *Canterbury*, kill the Archbishop, Monks and multitudes of People: *Sueno* kills the Bishop and *Ethelred* being dead, the Kingdom is divided between *Edmund Ironside* and *Canutus*: *Edmund* is slain, and *Canutus* crowned. The Danes in *Scotland* are overthrowen at *Aberdeen*, in memory thereof a Bishopricks is erected there by *Malcolme*. The Polanders invade *Pomerania* and are defeated by the Emperour: The Normans waste *Frisia*, and burn *Vitrich*. The Saracens take *Sardinia* from the *Pisani*, and lose it again: they are expelled *Italy* by the Popes Army.

In the Church, *Benet* the 8. fate 12 years. *Gregory* is set up by another faction, and *Benet* expelled, which makes the 20. Schism. *Benet* is restored by the Emperour. 5 Councils assembled this Decad. *Jews* executed at *Rome* for whipping Christs Picture. 13 Manichees burnt at *Orleanee*. It was decreed in the Council of *Nimigen*, that the Bread should stand on the right side of the Altar, and the Chalice on the left.

In the East, *Basilius* being dead, his brother *Constantine* reigned alone 3 years, he takes 12 Saracen ships which had invaded the *Cyclades*. The Greeks recover *Capua*: To *Constantine* succeeds *Romanus Argyrus* 5 years, whose eyes were preserved by his wives entering into a Monastery. In the West, the plague rageth through *Germany*, and out of the

## A brief Chronologie

YEARS of Christ.

the dead bodies grew Serpents. The Emperour recovers *Capua*, *Apulia* and *Calabria* from the Greeks. The Marquis beat out of *Brandeburg* by the Vandals, and he forced to live upon a Canons place in *Magdeburg*. To *Henry* succeeds *Conrade* 15 years; he Crowns his son King of the Romans, and goeth into *Italy*: he is crowned at *Rome*, and ordereth that the Emperours should be crowned Kings of *Italy* by the Bishops of *Milan*, and to wait on them at their Imperiall Coronation. He hath Wars with *Steven* King of *Bavaria*. *Rudolph* King of *Burgundy* revoketh the Aft which he made to the Emperour. *Boleslaus* of *Poland* forceth his Gentry to pay Tithes, he maketh *Russia* pay Tribute. *Olavs* of *Norway* is slain by *Canutus* his faction, and Canonized: *Sueno Canutus*'s son is beaten in *Scotland*. *Boleslaus* of *Bohemia* built 20 Churches: His successor *Boleslaus* 2. lost *Cracovia*, he lost his eyes, and resigneth to *Jaromire*, whose eyes were also put out by *Udalric*. *Otho* Duke of *Venice* is shaved and banished by *Flabenico*. *Otho*'s brother *Urfo* Bishop of *Grada* procures *Flabenico* to be banished. The Bishop governeth the State till his brother *Otho*'s return, who died before the message came. The Earl of *Holland* hath War with *Frisia*. *Edward* and *Edmund*, the sons of *Ironside*, are sent to *Sweden* to be murdered; but *Olavs* King of *Sweden* pitied them, and sent them to *Steven* King of *Hungary*, who used them kindly.

In the Church, *John* the 19. late 9. years: A Saracen King is baptized at *Rome*. 3 Councils held this Decad. The Polonians will rather serve the Devil, then be Christians and pay Tithes, therefore they rebell, but are suppressed: The Greek Church falls off again from the Latine, because the Pope would not give way that the Patriarch of *Constantinople* should be stiled General Patriarch. The Gospel preach- in *Norway* by the English.

1030

In the East, *Argirus* is beaten in *Syria*: He taketh Tribute of the Saracens. *Mysia* and *Illyria* wasted by the *Pazinaxæ*. The Saracen Fleet beaten by *Nicephorus*. *Zoe* the wife of *Argirus* falls in love with one *Michael*, who strangle *Argirus* in the Bath. This *Michael* succeeded 7 years, he married *Zoe*. The Saracens waste *Thrace*. *Michael* slighteth the Emperess: The Greeks are called into *Sicily*, where the Emperour recovers 13 Cities. *Maniaces* the Sicilian Governour called home, and one sent thither who loseth all. In the West, *Rudolph* King of *Burgundy* sends his Crown to *Conrade*, who expels *Odo* Prince of *Champaigne*, out of *Burgundy*. *Conrade* taketh *Milan*, and banisheth the fedtious Bishops: He takes *Capua* from *Pandulphus*. He giveth *Burgundy* and *Suevia* to his son *Henry*, who succeeded 17 years. *Hardi-Canute* King of *England* and *Denmark*: In his absence *Harold Harefoot*, base son to *Canutus*, invades the Kingdom: He banisheth *Emme* his mother in law. Her son *Elfred* is betrayed in *England*, and his eyes put out in *Scotland*. King *Malcolme* is murdered. Civil Wars in *France* between the Kings children. *Robert* Duke of *Normandy* dieth at *Nice* in *Bitbynia*; *William* his bastard son succeeded. In *Spain*, *Ferdinand* takes divers places from the Moors, and expels them. The Queen of *Poland* flyeth with her young son, the treasure, and two Crowns of the Kingdom, to the Emperour; who sends the young King *Casmire* to *Paris*, who enters the Monastery of *Clugney*. *Poland* being full of troubles sends to *Casmire*, who being a Deacon was unwilling to return, till he was absolved by the Pope, upon the Polanders promise to pay yearly, by the Pole, a half-penny to St. *Peter*, and to cut round the hairs of their head; the Nobles and Clergy were exempted from the pay: so he returns, and the Emperour restores him his two Crowns, and aides him against the Bohemians in *Hungary*. King *Stephen* and *Conrade* make peace, upon a Divine warning to *Comrades* souldiers to return home. *Stephen* nameth *Vasul* for his successor, but the Queen puts out his eyes, and makes *Peter* King, who reigned 3 years, and commits all places of trust to the Germans. *Canutus* of *Denmark* makes war against the Duke of *Normandy* for repudiating his sister. An Agreement is made between *Hardi-Canute* of *Denmark*, and *Magnus* of *Norway*, that the survivour should enjoy both Kingdoms. *Bretislaus* of *Bohemia*, takes *Cracovia* and other places, with a Crucifix of 300 l. *Flabenico* is called home to *Venice* and made Duke; he banisheth the family of the *Urfeoli*.

In the Church, late *Benet* the 9. 12 years; he was but 12 years old. This Decad afforded 3 Councils. The Saracen King of *Carthage* is baptized at *Rome*. *Berengarius* Arch-deacon of *Anion* condemned for affirming that *Christ*'s body was not in the Eucharist.

In

## of the principal Passages, &c.

In the East, the Emperours forces revolt to the Bulgarians. The Emperour repenting the murder of *Romanus*, enters into a Monastery and dieth. The Normans drive the Greeks out of *Apulia*. *Michael Calaphates* is forced to revoke *Zoe* whom he had banished, and then having lost his eyes, is thrust into a Convent. After 4 moneths *Constantine Monumachus* succeeds 12 years: he marrieth *Zoe*: *Maniaces* rebelleth; and is slain. The Emperour like to be stoned for keeping a Concubine, but *Zoe* pacified them, being she consented to the keeping of a Concubine. *Calcinus* in *Iberia* rebelleth; and submitteth. One *Leo* is saluted Emperour, but his eyes are put out. The *Pachinæ* return to *Muscovia*. In the West, great differences between the Emperour and *Bretislaus* the Polander: The Emperess purgeth her self of Adultery by fire, and then enters a Monastery. The Emperour bestows a part of *Hungaria* on *Albert* of *Babaria*, and calls it *Austria*; he deferts the Russians, imprisoneth the Duke of *Lorain* for rebelling, and then releaseth him, he settles also *Peter* in *Hungaria*: He is crowned with his Emperess at *Rome*. His Palace at *Nimigen* is burnt by the Duke of *Lorain* and Earl of *Flanders*, but they submit and are reconciled to him. *William* Duke of *Normandy* expelled by his Subjects, and restored by the Emperour. *Ferdinand* in *Spain*, makes the Moors his Tributaries, he recovers from them the body of *Isidore*. *Casmire* in *Poland* subdueth the rebels and Russians; the Arch-rebel *Myslaus* is by the Prussians sleid and hanged; and so they make their peace with *Poland*, on promise of tribute. In *Hungary*, *Peter* for tyrannizing is deposed; he flyeth to the Emperour. The Hungarians waste *Germany*. *Peter* is restored, and tyrannizeth again. *Andrew* and *Bela*, sons of *Ladislaus* the Bald, are invited by the Nobles, they restore *Paganisme*: *Peter* flyeth, and is restored again by the Emperour; at last his eyes are put out, and he dyeth. *Andrew* succeedeth, who restoreth Christianity: He gives the 3. part of *Hungaria* to his brother *Bela*. *Sueno* the Dane is overcome twice by *Magnus* King of *Norway*, who was killed with a fall from his horse. A great inundation in *Flanders*. *Baldwyn* the Gentle, Earl of *Holland*, hath great troubles with the Germans. The Turks are defeated by the Greeks. In *England*, *Harolds* body is by *Hardi-Canute* cast into the *Thames*; he died of an Apoplexie, and in him ended the Danes reigne. St. *Edward*, son to *Ethelred*, succeeded 20 years: he recovers the Dane-gilt. *Severn* infested by the Irish and Welsh, and *Kenut* by the Danes. *Emme*, the Kings mother, clears her self of Adultery, by passing bare-foot and blind-fold between 9 Plow-shares red hot: the Lord *Coventry*'s Lady rideth naked, to free the City of their Tax. King *Duncan* of *Scotland* much molested by the Island-rebels. *Sueno* the Dane defeated by *Macbeth*. Witches foretell *Macbeth*'s reigne, who thereupon kills the King, and ulurpeth 17 years: He tyrannizeth over the *Thanes*.

In the Church is the 21. Schism. *Benet* is deposed, and *Sylvester* 3. comes in by Symonie, and is expelled by *Benet*, and he by the People. He resigneth to *Gregory* the 6. so now 3 Popes live in *Rome*; they are all deposed at *Sutrium*, and *Clement* 2. chosen, who flyeth into *Germany*, and is poisoned. *Benet* 9. again 8 moneths: then *Leo* 9. succeeds 5 years. This Decad had 8 Councils.

In the East, the troublesom *Pacinaxæ* have peace granted them for 30 years: The frontier Provinces are so taxed by the Emperour, that they let in the Turks, *Zoe* and *Constantine* die: *Theodora* *Zoe*'s sister reigned 1 year; she banished *Nicephorus* whom *Constantine* named his successor, and makes *Michael Stranoticus* her successor. He is thrust into a Convent by *Isidarius Commenus*, who after 4 years, being affrighted with lightning, became a Monk. In the West, the Pope makes peace between *Germany* and *Hungary*. The Duke of *Bavaria* is expelled and flyeth to *Hungary*. *Tourne* and *Seven* taken from the Earl of *Flanders* by the Emperour. *Henry* 4. succeeds 50 years; his reign was full of troubles by the Saxons rebellions, and Pope *Hildebrand*'s fury against him. In *England*, *Goodwyn* is choaked with a piece of bread, for so he wished if he knew of *Elfred*'s death. *William* the Norman comes into *England*, and is promised to succeed, if the King die issueless. King *Edward* was the first King that healed the Kings-Evil. *Macbeth* in *Scotland* tyrannizeth over the Lords. In *France*, *Henry* crownes his son *Philip* at 7 years of age. Wars between *Navar* and *Arragon*. *Ferdinand* of *Spain* assumes the title of Emperour, which angered the German Emperour: He kills *Garcia* of *Navar*. *Sauzins*, son to *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, invadeth *Leon*, and forceth *Alphonfus* to flee to the Moors of *Toledo*, where he was well used. *Andrew* of *Hungary* killed by *Bela*, who obtains the crown 4 years; he maintaineth Christianity. In *Poland*, *Boleslaus* the Bald was King, who reigned 24 years. *Spitigenius* King of *Bohemia* expels all the Germans. *Uratissaus* succeeded 36 years; he invaded *Polonia*. The Earl of *Flanders*, *Baldwyn*, recovers the Islands of

YEARS of Christ.

1040

1050

of



## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ

of Zeland from the Hollanders; he is reconciled to the Emperour. The Earl of Holland at Dort, in Pir-falls, drowned the forces of the Bishop of Colen and Leige, kills the Bishop of Leige, and takes many prisoners. The Persian-Turks invade Media, Syria, and take Jerusalem.

In the Church, Leo 9. sits, he imprisoneth Richard the Norman. Victor the 2. succeeds 3 years: Steven 9. succeeds 7 moneths. The 22 Schism, by choosing Cassin brother to the Duke of Lorrain, and Nicholas 2. who sat 3 years; he gives Sicily, Apulia and Calabria to the Normans, conditionally that they should hold them of the Church, and pay tribute yearly for them. This Decad produced 13 Councils. The Patriarch of Grada is translated to Venice. At Mentz, the Pope and Bishop quarrel about a Deacon that read the Gospel. The Whippers about this time, delighted so much in whipping-cheer, that in one Covent 3000. brooms were worn in this exercise. The Patriarch of Constantinople is banished, for assuming power to throne and un-throne Emperours. Berengarius acknowledgeth Christs Body in the Eucharist, but denyeth his passing through the doors shut.

1060

In the East, Constantinus Ducas reigns 7 years: in his time St. Sophia's Temple was overthrown with earthquake: the Scythians waste Greece, and are consumed by the Plague: his son Michael Ducas with his mother succeeds 7 moneths. Romanus Diogenes aspireth, is condemned, then married to Eudocia the Empress, and so becomes Emperor 3 years; he sligheteth his wife, and beats the Turks in the West: Richard the Norman strives to be Emperor. The Emperor is hindered by the Pope from repudiating his wife. The Earl of Flanders is made Regent to King Philip 1. of France; he subdueth the Rebels of Gascon. Garzias of Gallicia, imprisoned by Sanctius of Castile: Sanctius is slain at the siege of Zamora. His brother Alphonus reigns 43 years. Garzias King of Navar succeedeth in Arragon. Boleslaus of Poland subdueth the Russians in Hungary, Bela is killed by the fall of some Houses; Salomon the son of Andrew succeeds 12 years: Bela's sons flee into Polonia; but these are reconciled: St. Peters Church in which Salomon was crowned, was burnt the next night. Edward of England, enlargeth and enricheth Westminster Church. To Edward succeeded Harold son of Godwyn 9 moneths, & is slain by William of Normandy, who reigned 20 years. Kent keeps its privileges. Edgar flyeth into Scotland; he should have been heir. Coverfen is instituted. William is much opposed by Edgar and the Scots, who waste all, and burn York. In Scotland, Thanes are altered to Earls and Barons: Macduff is made Earl of Fife, who is honoured with divers privileges: Malcolm son to Duncan reigns 36 years; he is opposed by Macbeth's son. Dunbar for his service is made Earl of March. In Holland, the Earl is killed by the Earl of Guycy, and his forces defeated.

In the Church is the 23 Schism, between Pope Alexander 2. chosen by the Cardinals, and Honorius 2. by the Emperour; he is forced from Rome, he holds Leonina and the Lateran 2 years: He opposeth Richard the Norman, in his claim to the Empire. This Decad yeelds 11 Councils. The Christians at Jerusalem suffered by the Caliph to inhabit a fourth part of the City, and to have a Patriarch. The Christians persecuted by the Sclavi, who killed their Prince. The Bishop of Bamberg with others make an expedition into Palestina: The Patriarch absolves Eudocia from her oath of not marrying. The Virgins Feast of Conception, instituted in England.

1070

In the East, Manuel Comnenus is taken by the Turks, and the Emperess put into a Covent. Romanus taken by the Turks, released, and his eyes put out. Michael Ducas reigns 6 years; he is defeated by the Turks. Michael is deposed, he with his wife and son are put in a Monastery. Nicephorus Boioniates succeeds 3 years. In the West, Otto of Bavaria is proscribed, and his Country wasted by the Emperour, is reconciled with the loss of his Dukedom. The Saxons and Thuringers rebell, they are defeated. The Princes and Bishops complain to the Pope against the Emperour: He and the Pope depose each other. Rodulph of Svevia chosen by the Germans, whom Henry being absolvd defeateth. Henry is deposed again. Rodulph after 9 battels, loseth his right-hand and dieth. Burgundy is divided into four parts. Lewis son to Philip of France falls out at Chers with the King of England's two sons, which occasioned long Wars. William of England imposeth hard Laws on the English; appoints 4 Termes: he sweares the observance of King Edward's Laws, upon the setting up of Edgar, who flies again into Scotland. Roy-Crois erected on the borders. He seileth Normandy, and useth Edgar honourably: He takes the life of Ely, forceth Wales to do homage: Hereford imprisoned, and Northampton beheaded for Rebellion. His son Robert rebels in Normandy, unhorseth his father, and is pardoned. The Tower of London begun. He makes a Forrest of 36 parishes. The Scots waste Northumberland. Solyma of Hungary hath divers Victories, and is at last defeated. Ladislaus is chosen K. The Venetians are beaten by the Normans. Therric of Holland defeats the Bishop of Utrecht, and recovers Holland. Godfrey of Lorrain buildeth Delf, Rhodes and Cyprus taken by the Turks. The Bishop of Cracovia slain and quartered by the K. of Poland, for improving his vicious life.

In

## of the principal Passages, &c.

In the Church, Gregory the seventh sitteth 12 years. He persecutes the Emperour, is imprisoned, sends a Crown to Rodulph. Twelve Synods held this Decad. Canterbury is made Primate of England. The Emperour robbeth the Church of her Tythes, which causeth much trouble between the Pope and him. Boleslaus King of Poland excommunicated for murdering the Bishop Stanislaus.

Years of Christ

In the East, Constantinople is taken by Comnenus. Nicephorus is sent to a Covent. Alexius Comnenus, Isaac's son, succeeds, 37 years. The Normans strive to restore Michael. In the West, Pope Gregory is besieged in Rome by the Emperour; who takes Rome, and is Crowned by Clement. Gregory hides himself in S. Angelo. Herman D. of Lorrain being Crowned by the Saxons, is expelled by the Emperour, who again is defeated by the Saxons. Herman at last yieldeth, and is pardoned; and rebelling again, is stoned by a woman, and brained. The Saxons submit. Normandy is invaded by the French, and France by the English. Alphonus in Spain getteth Toledo, with other places. The Arch-Bishop of Toledo made Primate of Spain. Alphonus gives to Henry of Lorrain his daughter, with Portugal, to hold of Leon. Spain invaded by the African Moors. William King of England built two Monasteries in England, and one in Normandy: he dyeth, and is denied burial at Caen. Succeeded William Rufus 12 years. Robert Duke of Normandy attempteth England. The King compounds with Odo his Uncle. Malcolm King of Scotland rebuildeth the Church of Durham, buildeth Dumfermling Church, and makes it the Sepulchre of the Kings of Scotland: he erected the Bishopricks of Murray and Cathnes. Solomon of Hungary built Varadinum, and makes it a Bishoprick. Boleslaus of Poland falls mad: his Brother Vladislaus reigned 20 years, but would not be called King. Canutus of Denmark falls out with his people, and is slain with his brother in a Church. His brother Olaf succeeded 7 years. Uratislaus made King of Bohemia, Moravia, Lusatia, and Silesia, by the Emperour. In Flanders there was some difference between Robert and Baldwin about St. Omars. Robert goeth to Jerusalem, but is miraculously kept out of the Temple till he had promised restitution to Baldwin. The disease called Erysipelas, or Ignis sacer, followed upon the sight of a fiery Dragon in the Ayre. Friezland bestowed upon the Bishop of Utrecht by the Emperour.

In the Church, Against Pope Gregory is set up Clement the third, 21 years; which made up the four and twentieth Schism. Rome taken by Henry, and burnt by Robert the Norman, who carryed Gregory to Salernum, where he dyed. His faction the next yeer chose Victor the third, who sat two years. He is driven by Clement to S. Angelo. Clement flyeth to Ravenna. Victor is poisoned. Urban the second succeeded 11 years. This Decad produceth fourteen Councils. The Bohemians are inhibited by the Pope to Preach publicly in their own tongue. Bruno instituted the Carthusian Order. A Sect of the Messalian hereticks appear under the new name of Bogomils. Urban the second makes Pisa an Arch-Bishoprick.

In the East, Alexius builds a School and Hospital. He sends to the Pope for help against the Infidels. An expedition is undertaken into Palestina. The Christian Armies meet at Constantinople. They promise to restore to the Empire all they did win, except Jerusalem. Alexius keepeth not promise with them. They restore to him Nice, and tender Antioch; which he refuseth. In the West, Henry makes peace with Strasburg and other places. 12000 Jews killed by the Croysadoers in Germany. Conrad is proscribed by Henry, who besiegeth and takes Mantua, with some other places. Conrad is made King of Italy. Godfrey of Bullen made Duke of Lorrain. Henry repudiates and imprisoneth his wife. Philip of France repudiates his wife, and is excommunicate for marrying the wife of Fulk Earl of Anjou. He forsakes her, and is absolved from two Excommunications. Upon the death of Urban, he takes her again, and is excommunicated again. In Spain, Alphonus chargeth the Gothic characters into Latin. Ramire slain by the Moors, and they by D. Pedro in Navar and Aragon. The Moors invade Toledo, and kill Sancho heir to Alphonus, with many Christians. William of England invades Normandy, is reconciled to Robert: they both besiege Henry. They are all three reconciled. The roof of Bow-Church, with six hundred houses in London, overturned with the winde. William and Robert are reconciled to Malcolm, who is slain at Alnwick Castle. The French King aideth Robert against William. Peace is made, and Robert morgageth Normandy to William. The King drives the Welch into the Woods and Hills. A Well springs with blood fifteen days. Robert goeth to Palestina. The Earls of Chester and Shrewsbury oppreis the Welch. Shrewsbury slain in Anglesey by the Norwegians. William builds Westminster-hall, and the Tower

PPP

Tower

1080

1090



## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ

of Flanders, with his Almoner, distribute in one day to the poor 78000 loaves. He is killed in the Church of Bruges for his charity, by the family of the *Stratenfes*. *William, Robert's* son of *Normandy*, made Earl by the French King. He oppressed the people, and is killed at the siege of *Aloft*. Prince *William of England*, with 150, is drowned in the sea. *Normandy* rebels, and is subdued. King *Henry* invadeth *France*, for aiding *William* Earl of *Flanders*. *David* King of *Scotland* punisheth severely unjust Judges: he built Holy-Rood-houle, and founded fifteen Abbeyes.

In the Church: *Calixtus* sits yet. *Gregory* the Anti-pope is carried about the streets of *Rome* on horse-back with his face to the tail, and then imprisoned. To *Calixtus* succeeds *Honorius* the second, five years: he resisteth *Roger* in the Kingdom of *Apulia*. There were seven Synods held this Decad. At *Rome*, the Archbishop of *Lyons* slain, for slandering the Clergie.

1130

In the East, it is agreed that *Antioch* should hold of the Empire. *John*, son to *Isaac* the Emperours brother, revolts to the Sultan of *Iconium*. The Emperour both commends and beats his son, for setting rashly upon the Turks. In the West, the Emperour is crowned by the Pope at *Liege*. *Lotharius* crowned at *Rome*. The Civil Laws are revived. The Emperour subdueth *Lombardy*, except *Milan* and *Verona*: He expels *Roger* King of *Sicily* out of *Italy*, giveth *Apulia* to one *Raynulf*. To him succeeded *Conrad* 3, fourteen years. He pro- scribes *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*. The *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* begin now to quarrel, under these names. King *Lewis* the sixth of *France* dieth; to whom succeeded his son *Lewis* the seventh, 44 years. In *Hungary*, divers Lords rebel against King *Bela*, and call in the *Poles* and *Russians*, who are defeated. In *Denmark*, *Ericus* kills *Harold*, and two of his sons: *Olau* the third escapeth in womans apparel, unto *Norway*. *Harold* of *Norway* is killed by *Syward*, and he by *Harold's* sons. The Emperour takes *Frisia* from the Bishop of *Utrecht*, and gives it to *Thierry* Earl of *Holland*; who wastes the Bishops country, and expels him. To *Baldwyn* in *Jerusalem*, succeeds *Fulk* Earl of *Anjou*, 11 years: He takes *Cesarea-Philippi*, and buildeth two Castles near *Ascalon*. In *England*, *Steven*, nephew to *Cesarea*, reigneth 18 years: He is opposed by his Peers, and defeats the Scots: He takes divers Castles from his Lords, and drives the Earl of *Gloucester* into *France*. Peace between *England* and *Scotland*.

In the Church, *Innocent* the second sate 13 years: *Anastasi* his Anti-Pope makes the 26 Schism. *Innocent* fleeth into *France*, and is by the French restored. The Towns that held with *Innocent* are taken by *Roger*, who spoils the Popes territories. He takes *Innocent*, and compels him to crown him King of *Italy*. This Decad produced ten Councils. The Pope makes *Genoa* an Archbishoprick. The Feasts of *S. Thomas*, *S. Luke*, and *S. Bartholomew*, were instituted about this time.

1140

In the East, the Emperour died of a wound by a poisoned arrow, and makes his youngest son, *Emanuel Comnenus*, successor, 38 years. His coasts are infested by Pirates. He discovereth *Conrad's* counsels to the Turks, and sells Meal mingled with Lime to his Army. *Roger* King of *Sicily* takes divers places from him; who is defeated in *Sicily* by the Emperour's army. *Servia* and *Hungary* wasted by the Emperour. In the West, the Emperour takes *Winsburge*; where the women, in stead of their goods, carried out their husbands. *Henry* the Lion restored to the Dukedom of *Saxony*. The new Senate at *Rome* incense the Emperour against the Pope. The Emperour raiseth 200000 men for the Holy Land, under *Conrad*; whose projects at *Constant* are discovered by *Emanuel*: upon which, he returns, having lost the most of his men. He makes *Frederic Barbarossa*, his brother's son, successor; passing by his own son. The French King undertakes an Expedition into *Syria*, to expiate his burning of a Church with three hundred people in it. King *Lewis*, in his return from *Syria*, is taken prisoner by the *Greeks*, and rescued by the *Sicilian* Fleet. *Alphonfus* makes *Portugal* tributary to the Pope. *Alphonfus* the Emperour takes *Corduba* and other places from the *Moors*. The *Arragonians* worsted by the *Navarrois*. The *Moors* lose *Lisbon*. *Peter*, an Earl of *Poland*, loileth his tongue and eyes, for reproving the King. He is deposed by the people, and fleeth to the Emperour; who would have restored him, but could not. *Boleslaus* his brother succeeds 27 years. The *Hungarians* put the Imperialists (who had invaded *Hungary*) to flight. *Olau* *Harold's* son, claims *Denmark*; but is defeated by *Ericus*, and driven into *Holland*, where he was drowned. *Ericus* goeth into *Syria*; returns, and becomes a Monk, and resignes his Crown. His son *Sueno* is chosen by the *Silanders*; and *Canutus*, son to *Magnus*,

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Years of Christ

*Magnus*, by the *Jutlans*. This bred Civil Wars. *Ericus* of *Suevia* is slain by *Henry*, *Sueno's* son of *Denmark*. *Venice* aideth *Emanuel* against King *Roger* of *Sicily*. *S. Mark's* tower built. The Pirates defeated by the *Veneians*. *Fulk* King of *Jerusalem* is brained with a fall from his horse. *Baldwyn* the third succeedeth; with his mother, 20 years. *Edessa* taken by the Sultan; who, for his cruelty, is slain. The Christian Princes fall out at *Damascus*. *Antioch* taken by *Noradin* the Sultan; and Prince *Raymund* killed. The Earl of *Flanders* goeth into *Syria*. In *England*, *Maud* laudeth, and is crowned: *Steven* taken, and imprisoned. She fleeth to *Oxford*, and is carried thence in a Coffin to *Gloucester*. King *Steven* is released: he besiegeth *Maud* in *Oxford*; who escapes in a snowe night. Divers places yeeld to *Steven*. *Maud* goeth into *Normandy*. *Henry* lands in *England* with an Army, and goeth into *Scotland*; where he is knighted. King *David* of *Scotland* erecteth four Bishopricks.

In the Church: *Innocent* sits yet: he takes *Tybur*: he opposeth the Romane Government by two Consuls, and three hundred Senators: he is reconciled by *S. Bernard* with *France*. *Celestinus* the second succeeded five months: then *Socius* the second, eleven months: He was slain in a sedition. The Senate challenge the Pope's revenues. *Engenius* the third succeeds seven years. He, by *Lewis* of *France* his Forces going for *Syria*, reduceth *Rome* to her old Government. He fleeth into *France*. Ten Synods this Decad. The Carmelites Order founded on Mount *Carmel*. *Petrobrusianus* denieth Baptism to Infants. The Alcoran translated into Latine by *Peter* Abbot of *Clugney*.

In the East, the Emperour being beaten by *Roger* twice, makes peace with him. The Greek Fleet overcome by *William* King of *Sicily*. The Emperour makes an Expedition against the *Armenians* in *Cilicia*. *Baldwyn* King of *Jerusalem* defeats the *Egyptians*, and kills 5000 of them. He gives *Ascalon* to the Earl of *Joppa*. The Bishops complain to the Pope against the Templers, for refusing to pay tythes. *Baldwyn* beats the Turks, and defeats *Noradin* near *Jordan*. In the West, the Emperour takes *Placentia*, and some other places: He holds the Pope's stirrup at *Sutrium*: He is crowned at *Rome*, and overthrows *Spoleum*. *Frederic* the Emperour quarrels with the Pope, and is reconciled. The Pope quarrels again with *Frederic*, and excommunicates him. In *Denmark*, *Canutus* obtains the Government of *Justia*: he makes himself King. *Sueno* fleeth into *Germany*. The Kingdom is divided between *Sueno* and *Canutus*. *Sueno* kills *Canutus* at a feast; and *Sueno* is killed not long after. *Waldemar*, son of *Canutus* that was slain by *Magnus*, reigns alone. *Ingo* King of *Norway* with most of his Nobles, pursuing their enemies on the ice, are drowned. The *Danes* invade *Suevia*, and are driven back with cold. King *Charles* of *Suevia* is slain by *Canutus* son *S. Ericus*. The *Venetians* make *Pole* tributary. In *Holland*, the people of *Harlem* kill 900 Frilons, who had invaded the Countreys. *Henry* returns into *England*: thirty Cattles revolt to him: he is adopted by *Steven*; who succeeded King 34 years. He reforms the Laws, and raiseth divers Castles. He takes *Cumberland* and *Northumberland* from *Malcolm*, and gives him *Huntington*. He doth homage in *France* for *Normandy*. He is beaten by the *Welch*. Peace between *France* and *England*, by the marriage of *Henry's* eldest son *Richard* to *Margaret* the French King's daughter. *Malcolm* of *Scotland* forced to accompany *Henry* into *France*; for which he was troubled at home, when he returned.

In the Church: *Anastasi* the fourth sate 4 months: then *Adrian* the fourth, an English man, 4 years. He is forced to crown *William* King of *Sicily*. He excommunicates *Frederick*, and is choaked with a flye in his drink. This Decad affordeth three Councils. *Gratian* collecteth the books of Decretals. The *Eremites* of *S. Austins* Rule set up by *William* Duke of *Aquitane*. Christianity planted in *Livonia*. *Petrus Waldo*, a Merchant of *Lyons*, father of the Waldenses. The Templers prevail at *Rome* against the Bishops.

In the East, *Emanuel* the Emperour persecutes the *Venetians*, upon a Prophecie that they should be masters of *Constant*. He desires of the Pope to be Emperour of *Italy*; and thereupon promitteth to reconcile the Greek and Latine Churches. He besiegeth *Damiat*, and returns with much plunder. He is forced from *Damiat* the second time by rain. The Prince of *Antioch* taken by the Governour of *Damascus*. *Almaricus*, *Baldwyn's* brother, is King of *Jerusalem* twelve years. He aideth the Egyptian against the Persian: then, against promise, aideth the Greeks against the Egyptian. He implores the Turks aid. *Syzaconus* the Turk, having killed the Egyptian Sultan, makes himself Caliph. In the West, *Frederick* burns

1160

burns *Cromona*, raseth *Milan*, and soweth it with salt; subdueth *Lombardy*, and plundereth *Mentz*, for killing their Bishops. The *Lombards* and *Venetians* joyn against him, and rase *Milan*. He is crowned at *Rome*. *Boleslaus* of *Poland*, by gifts, winketh at the pair *Milan*. He is rebel twice. The *Polanders*, in pursuing them into the marshes, *Prussians* Idolatry; who rebel twice. The *Polanders*, in pursuing them into the marshes, are drowned. The *Hungarians* win *Dalmatia*, invade the *Venetian* Lands, and stir the *Greeks* against them. *Bohemia* is invaded by the Emperour. *Waldemare* King of *Denmark* submits his Kingdom to the Emperour. The Danes have Wars, then Peace with the *Rugians*. They are forced to Christianity. *Abalon* Bishop of *Roschild* beats the *Vandals* in their own Country. *Ladislav*, Vicar of the Empire, and King of *Hungary*, aids the Emperour against *Milan*; whereupon, his Arms are changed from an Eagle to a Lion Argent. The King entereth into a Monastery, and makes *Vogislaus* Governour; whom the King's son woundeth. The *Venetian* Merchants treacherously killed by the Greek Emperour: they take *Clios*. *Thierry* of *Flanders* maketh his fourth Expedition into *Syria*. *Philip* his son succeeds 25 years: he obtains *Dowry* from the Earl of *Heinault*. The *Hollanders* and *Frieslanders*, at variance. In *England*, the King and *Becket* differ: *Becket* fleeth into *Flanders*; his goods are confiscated; and appeals to *Rome* for bid. The *Welch* are subdued. *Becket* is restored by the French King's means. *Malcolm* King of *Scotland* builds the Abbey of *S. Andrews*. His brother *William* succeeds 49 years: to him is restored a part of *Northumberland* by *Henry*, who repents of his grant, and quarrels with *Malcolm*: hereupon, the English invade *Cumberland*.

In the Church: *Alexander* the third sits 22 years: his anti-Pope was *Victor* the fourth; which makes the seven and twentieth Schism. *Victor* and the Emperour are excommunicated by *Alexander*. *Victor* dieth; and the Emperours faction chuseth *Paschal* the third. *Alexander* fleeth to *Benevent*, and fortifieth *Tusculum*. *Paschal* dieth, and *Calixtus* the third chosen. Seven Synods held this Decad. The bodies of the three Wise-men are translated from *Milan* to *Colen*. *Paschal* canonizeth *Charles* the Great. The Order of *Humilians* began now in *Lombardy*: these were poor people who in white clothes had restitution of their possessions from the Emperour: these habits they retained still.

In the East, the Emperour gives in Dowry with his daughter the kingdom of *Theffaly*, to *Reynor* son to the Marquis of *Montferrat*: he is beaten by the *Venetians*, and by the Sultan of *Iconium*: he marrieth his son to the French King's daughter. *Emanuel* dieth. In *Jerusalem*, to *Atmaricus* succeedeth *Baldwyn* the fourth. The Count of *Tripolis* is his tutor. He waketh the Country of *Damascus*. *Baldwyn* becometh leprous. In the West, the Emperour takes the Emdivers places in *Italy*. Divers places in *Germany* taken by the Bishop of *Mentz*, for the Emperour. At *Venice*, peace is made between the Pope and the Emperour. *Henry* the Lion being returned from *Syria*, where he was opposed by the Templers, is proscribed by the Emperour, and condemned of treason. In *Poland*, *Micesslaus* is deposed; and *Casmire* his brother chosen; to whom *Micesslaus* submits. In *Denmark*, are divers rebellions. In *Bohemia*, *Frederic*, son to *Ladislav*, is aided by the Emperour to recover his kingdom: he incurreth the peoples hatred, for oppression, and preferring the Greeks to abuse the State. Two great Pillars erected at *Venice* by a *Lombard*, who desired that Cheaters might play at Dice between them. unpunished. The Bank is here first erected. The Pope bestows a Ring on the Duke, to cast into the Sea, in signe of its marriage and subjection to them: a Custom yet observed yearly. The Pope priviledgeth the Duke and his successors to have a Canopie over them, and eight silver trumpets to be sounded before them. The Earls of *Flanders* and *Heinault* make War upon the Earl of *Avignon*, for murdering the Bishop of *Cambrey*. The Earl bestoweth West-Flanders on *Philip* the French King with his Niece. In *England*, *Becket* is killed in *Canterbury*-Church. *Ireland* is mastered. *Becket*'s murderers condemned to serve all their days in *Syria*. The King is enjoyned Penance, and to maintain 200 men in *Palestine* for one year. The King overcomes those that would have deposed him. He goeth bare-foot, and is whipped. The Scots King taken prisoner: then a peace is made. Itinerant Justices appointed. Prince *Arthur*'s body digged out of *Glastenbury* Church-yard. The Scots aid Prince *Henry* of *England* against his father. King *William* of *Scotland* ransomed, upon the payment of a great sum, and rendering of divers Castles. The Abbeyes of *Arbroth* and *Haddington* built.

In the Church: Pope *Alexander* yet sits, but is kept out of *Rome*. Peace between the Pope and Emperour: so the Schism endeth. The Pope is recalled to *Rome*. Four Councils held this Decad. The Order of Crossed Friars instituted. The Pope erecteth a Bi-

a Bishoprick at his own City *Alexandria* in *Italy*, for their good service against the Emperour. The *Albingenses* driven out of *Tholose*, infect *Bohemia*. In a Synod of *Rome* of three hundred Bishops, *Peter Lombard* is declared an Heretick, but 36 after he was justified by Pope *Innocent* the third.

In the East, *Emanuel* being dead, his son *Alexius* succeeds, under his Mothers tuition. 2 years. *Andronicus*, *Emanuel*'s cousin, kills the Tutors, strangles the Emperours mother, poysoneth his sister, murders *Alexius*, and flings his body into the Sea; and so sets up himself 2 years. *Isaac Angelus* plotteth against him. *Andronicus* murders *Isaac*'s brethren. *Isaac* being in danger, fleeth to the Temple, and is proclaimed Emperour. *Andronicus* is tortured to death. *Isaac Angelus* reigns 9 years. The Pyrats takes seventy of his Ships. His General *Brana* alpireth, besiegeth *Constantinople*, and is killed. He makes a wicked League with *Saladine*, who takes all the Cities of *Mesopotamia* and *Aleppo* by treason. He invaded *Palestina*, and is driven back by the Earl of *Tripolis*. King *Baldwin* dieth. *Baldwin* the fifth succeeded, who after 7 months was poysoned by his mother, that her husband *Guy* of *Lusignan* might succeed, who reigned 10 years. The Apostate Christians called *Mamelucks*, are instituted by *Saladine*. The Earl of *Tripolis* calls in *Saladine* against *Guy*, whom he takes prisoner, and subdues all *Syria*, except *Tyre* and *Tripolis*. *Guy* abjurreth the kingdom, and is released. *Barbarossa* coming towards *Syria*, defeats the Turks three times. He is drowned in the River. In the West, *Otho* of *Bavaria* doth much mischief in *Germany*. He is expelled. *Henry* is maintained in *Normandy* by the English. Peace with *Lombardy*. At *Erford* Dyet, six Earls with many others, slain by the falling of the roon. The Emperour and Pope at odds about the Bishoprick of *Triers*. The Pope denyeth to part with the inheritance of *Matilda*, to Crown the Emperours son, and to admit his Bishop to *Triers*. The Bishop of *Mentz* deposed for adhering to the Pope. *Frederick* hasteneth for *Syria* with an hundred and fifty thousand men, and is ill used by *Isaac*. *Henry* the Lion returns, takes *Lubeck* and other places. In *France*, *Philip* the second reigns 42 years. The Jews are expelled *France*. The French have wars with *Flanders* and *Burgundy*. The *Flemings* forced to Peace. *Richard* and *John* of *England* besieged by the French, who make wars against *England*. King *Philip* and *Richard* undertake an expedition into *Syria*. Wars in *Spain* between *Ferdinand* and *Alphonso* of *Portugal*. The Moors defeated, and their King slain. *Sanctius* reigns in *Portugal* 26 years. He is ayded by the *Hollanders* against the Moors. The *Polander* recovers much of *Russia* and *Lithania*. The *Polenians* and *Hungarians* invade each other. Peace for 2 years. *Micesslaus* the Kings brother, is received as King into *Cracovia*. *Casmire* takes the City, and pardoneth his brother. *Canutus* of *Denmark*, defeats *Harold* the usurper. He denyeth fealty to the Emperour. The Danes beat *Bugislaus* the *Vandal*. The Emperour returns the Kings sister for not paying the rest of her Dowry. The *Bohemians* are proscribed by the Emperour: whom they slight. Great troubles in *Bohemia* between King *Frederick* and his rebellious subjects. *Philip* leaveth the Government of *Flanders* to his wife, and goeth into *Syria* with eighty seven Netherland Ships. In *England*, the King makes his son *John* King of *Ireland*. The *Welch* swear fealty to the King. *Richard* joyneth with the French against his Father. *Jessery* the Kings son trodden to death at *Paris*. King *Henry* dieth cursing his children. *Richard* the first succeeded 9 years. He releaseth his mother, and maketh the Bishop of *Ely* his Deputy. The Pope sends to the Scots King a Rose of gold. He payeth part of his ransom, and *Edinburgh* Castle is restored.

In the Church: Pope *Alexander* perswades a new expedition into *Syria*. To him succeeds *Lucius* the third 4 years. He is expelled the City. The Emperour sends an Army, many of which die with poysoned waters. He refuseth to Crown the Emperours son. *Vriban* the third succeeded 1 year. He dieth upon the lofs of *Jerusalem*. *Gregory* the eighth succeeds 1 month. Then *Clement* the third 3 years. This Decad produced eight Synods. The *Maronites* forsake the Heresie of the *Monothelites*. The Temple-Church in *London* dedicated by *Horacius* Patriarch of *Jerusalem*. *Livonia* converted, and *Riga* made a Bishoprick.

In the East: *Isaac* is blinded and put into a Covent by his brother *Alexius Angelus*, whom he had ransomed. This *Alexius* reigned ten years. He pacifieth *Henry* with seventy talents. *Alexius* son to *Isaac* the Emperour, goeth for ayd to the *Latin* Princes. *Acon* taken by the French and English. *Joppa* taken by *Richard*. He exchangeth *Cyprus* for *Acon* with *Guy*. *Saladine* dieth, and commands his shirt to be carried before him. *Guy* is killed with a fall

## Years of Christ.

In the Church, *Clement* the third sitteth. He ayded *Tancred* against *Henry*. *Celestine* the third succceeded 6 years: he gets *Tusculum* from the Emperour: he makes *Viterbium* a Bishoprick: by his Legat into *Germany*, he solicites for a new expedition into *Syria*. *Innocent* the third succceeded 18 years: he resciteth *Philip* the Emperours Election. Two Synods held this Decad. The Jews in a Castle in *York-shire* kill themselves. *S. Dominic* of *Spain* instituted the *Jacobin* or *Predicant* Fryers.

1200—

*Years of Christ*

In the Church, Pope *Innocent* sits. He sets out his Decretals. He excommunicates *Philip* the Emperour, and *Raymond* Earl of *Tolose*. Two Councils held this Decad. The Heretics *Almaricans*, under shew of Chastity, committed all Uncleannesse. The Greek Churches receive the Latin Ceremonies. The Order of women called *Begines* from *Rege* the Foundress. Saint *Francis*, Author of the *Franciscans*, or Friars minors.

1210

৯৭৭৭

In



## A brief Chronologic

Years of Christ.  
1220

In the East, *Robert of Constantinople* cuts off his wives nose, and flings her mother into the Sea: he loseth many Towns. To him, succeeded *Baldwin* the second 34 years: whose tuition was undertaken by *John Bren K. of Jerusalem*. In *Adrianople*, to *Lascaris* succeeded *John Ducas* his son 33 years: he defeated *Isaac* and *Alexius*, and *Robert of Constantinople*, who aided them. *Theodorus Angelus* taketh *Thessalonica*, and makes himself K. there: he is taken and excommunicated by the *Bulgarians*. *Ducas* takes divers Islands in the *Aegean Sea*. The Christians that besieged *Cayre*, are forced by the overflowing of *Nilus*, to rise thence, and to restore *Damietta*. *Palestina* is recovered by *Frederick* the Emp. He makes a Peace with the Sultan for 10 years, against the Popes will: he is crowned at *Jerusalem*, and makes *Raynold D. of Bavaria* his Lieut. of *Syria*. In the West, *Frederick* expelleth the Saracens out of *Sicily*, and punisheth Pope *Innocents* two brethren: he renews a League with *France*. The Bish. of *Coleu* murdered by Count *Isenberg*; for which he was broken on the wheel. *Lombardy* rebelleth by the Popes instigation, who excommunicates the Emp. for feigning himself sick in his Syrian expedition: the Emp. goeth notwithstanding, and the Pope is angry thereat: having recovered *Jerusalem*, he is forced to return, to recover his own right at home. *Avargne* is forfeited to the Crown of *France*. The French K. dieth, and by his will bequeatheth 60000 Crowns to the Syrian wars. His son *Lewis* the 8 succeeded 3 years: he compoundeth for *Languedoc* with *Simon Montforts* heir: his son *S. Lewis* succeeded 46 years: his mother is Regent, which place is usurped by his uncle *Philip*, whom the Barons assisted, and the D. of *Britain*: who are beaten by the Q. Army. The *Moors* lose much in *Adalusia* and *Majorca* also. The K. of *Sevil* is made tributary to *Castile*. In *Poland*, the Teutonicks being driven out of *Syria*, have possessions allotted them by *Conrade* the Kings uncle, to defend his Lands against the *Prussians*. The K. is murdered by *Suentoplicus* Governour of *Pomerania*, who makes himself Pr. thereof. *Boleslaus* is K. 51 years. *Conrade* puts the K. and his mother into a Monastery. The K. of *Denmark* is ransomed, with his son. *Lubeck* revolteth from the Danes. The *Dutchmarks*, who had revolted to *Holfst*, submit to the K. *Wenceslaus* the K. of *Bohemia*'s son wasteth *Austria*. *Candia* revolts from the Venetians, who recover it again. The rebels there kill *Rayner* their Governour. The Venetians being beaten by the Greeks, make Peace with them. Many people perish in *Frisia* by inundations. The Bish. of *Utrecht* is taken by his vassals, and beheaded. *Ferdinand of Flanders* takes *Henry D. of Brabant* prisoner. In *England*, four years Truce is made with *France*. Some rebellions in *Wales* and *Lincolnshire*, and a Sedition in *London*. *Lewis* of *France* takes *Roche* from the English. The *Gascoids* rebel, and are reduced by *Rich. E. of Cornwall*. The Kings brother fideth with the Barons against the K. he makes a dishonourable Peace with the rebellious Welch in *Scotland*, the Bish. of *Cathness* is burnt in his house by the people for exaction. *Ennerness* taken by the rebels. Upon the death of *Alan of Galloway*, high-Constable, his possessions are invaded by his base son, which caused great troubles.

In the Church, *Honorius* sits yet; he leagueth with *Lombardy* against the Emp. To him succeeded *Gregory* the ninth 14 years: he excommunicates the *Romans*, for expelling him: he instigates *John Bren* to invade *Sicily*. By the overflowing of *Tyber*, 7000 people are drowned. Three Synods held this Decad. The Gray Fryers about this time appear in *England*. The Pope demandeth two Prebends in every Bish. oprick, which K. *John* denyeth.

1230

In the East, *John Bren* sends *Baldwin* of *Constantinople* for aid against the Greeks. *Theodorus Angelus* loseth his eyes by the *Bulgarians*. The Latins being besieged in *Constantinople*, are relieved by the Venetians, who obtained from *Baldwin* a piece of the Cross, with the Sponge and Lance which pierced our Saviour. *Ducas* of *Adrianople* takes *Cyprus*. The Sultan takes *Gaza* and *Ascalon*, and defaceth *Jerusalem*, with the Sepulchre. *Theobald K. of Navar*, with some French troops, return from *Syria* without acting. In the West, the Emperour is absolved for a great sum: he receives from the Sultan of *Babylon*, a rich Tent, wherein the Sun and Moon by their motion shewed the hours of the day and night. *Messana* in *Sicily* rebelleth. The Emp. subdues *Milan*, and most of *Italy*; and refuseth to restore *Sardinia* to the Pope: wherefore he is excommunicated. The Popes *Croisadoers* defeated by him. *Baldwin* of *Constantinople* leaveth with the French K. the Crown of thorns. The *Moors* in *Spain* lose the kingdom of *Certuba* after 260 years possession. They flee to *Granada*, and make it their kingdom: they lose *Valencia* to the Arragonian. The K. of *Poland* and his mother escape to *Henry* the Kings old Tutor, and recover *Cracovia*: he is chosen Governour again. *Elizabeth* the K. of *Hungaries* daughter is Canonized. *Bela* 4th reigneth 35 years: he protects the Cumani-ans against the Tartars. The K. of *Denmark* receiveth by resignation some Towns from the Teutonicks. Mr. Wars in *Bohemia* between K. *Wenceslaus* and his son *Primislav*. The Venetians quiet *Candy*: they take *Rhodes*; joyn with the Pope against the Emp. and burn his best ship. *Floris* 4 E. of *Holland* slain by the E. of *Clermont*, and he by the Earl of *Cleve*. *William* the

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Years of Christ.  
1240

the second succeeded Earl of *Holland* 20 years. In *England*, the K. makes a League with the D. of *Britain*: he subdues the Irish. The E. of *Kent* imprisoned. *Pembroke* and others rebel. The Welch invade *England*. The Pope is denied aid. The K. reconciled to the Earl of *Kent*. The B. of *Winchester* causeth great troubles. The Welch Prince submits to *England*. The E. of *Kent* degraded. A traitor drawn in pieces for attempting to kill the K. The Popes Legats brother is killed by the *Oxford-Scholars*. The Scots make peace with the English. The Popes Legat is denied entrance into *Scotland*, by K. *Alexander*.

In the Church: *Gregory* sits yet: he raiseth *Italy* against the Emp. for denying to restore *Sardinia*. This Decad affordeth two Synods. *Prussia* receiveth the Faith. The King of *England* erecteth the house of Converts, now the Rolls. The Greek Church falls off from the Pope.

1240

In the East, *Will. of Verona* is made King of *Thessalonica* by *Baldwin*. *Ducas* of *Adrianople* grew so rich with selling of eggs to the Turks in a famine, that he made a Crown of the profits of eggs; which he therefore called *Ovara*: he suffered no apparel but of the manufactures of his kingdom to be worn. The Turks are expelled out of *Cappadocia* by the Tartars. The Saracens beaten and killed by the Templers: they persecute the Teutonicks for siding with the Emperour. The Sultan prevails in *Palestine*. The French K. and his two brothers are taken in *Egypt*. In the West, the Emp. prevails in *Italy*, and there stampeth leather money. *Leopold* of *Austria* takes the title of Arch-duke. Divers Cardinals taken by the Emperour, and released. Divers towns in *Italy* revolt from him: he is deposed by the Pope. The *Gibellines* are for him. *Guelphs* for the Pope. *Henry* Land-grave of *Thuring*, set up against *Frederick*: he defeats *Conrad* the Emp. son. *Henry* besiegeth *Ulm*, where he is killed. Much of *Florence* burnt by the two factions. *Will. Earl of Holland* set up against *Frederic*; who is defeated by *Conrad* *Frederick*'s son. *Lewis* of *France* will not invade *England*, though the Pope requested him. *Murcia* and *Granada* made tributary to *Castile*. *Poland* is wasted by the Tartars and Civil Wars. *Hungary* is wasted by the Cumans. The K. fleeth to *Frederic* Duke of *Austria*, to whom he pawns three Provinces: but by the aid of the Knights of *Rhodes*, he recovers his kingdom. Civil wars in *Denmark* between K. *Ericus* and his brothers. A peace concluded. *Ottocar* K. of *Bohemia*, to enlarge his kingdom, buyeth *Carintha* and other places adjacent, towards the *Adriatick* Sea. *Apulia* is taken by the Venetians. *Margaret* of *Flanders* hath two sons, by two husbands, both which claim the Earldom. The French K. and Pope order, that to her *William* her younger son should succeed in *Flanders*, and *John* the elder should have *Henalt*. *William* goeth into *Syria*: *John* invadeth *Henalt*, and forceth his mother to buy her peace in *England*; banisheth the Italian usurers, and sends away the Popes Legat: he is forced to return from *Poitou* dishonorably. *Griffeth* Prince of *Wales* broke his neck from the Tower. The Welch invade *England*. The King tells his Plate and Jewels to the Londoners for want of money, and stampeth a new Coin called *sterling*-money. In *Scotland*, *Argile* rebelleth, and is overcome and pardoned.

In the Church: *Caelestine* the fourth sate 17 days. To him succeeded *Innocent* the fourth 11 years: he excommunicates the Emperour, makes ten Cardinals, and gives them red hats: he deposeth *Frederick*; and demands the fifth of Benefices through *Europe*: he aideth *Henry* with money against *Frederick*. Two Synods this Decad. At *Lyons*, the Pope accuseth the Emperour of heresie; and he the Pope of exactions. The Cham of *Tartary* converted. *Pet. de Vineis* loseth his eyes for accusing the Pope, being hided thereto by the Emperour; and dasheth out his own brains.

In the East, *Baldwyn* despairing to hold *Constant*, goeth into *Italy* to *Frederick*, with the treasure which he took out of the Temple. *Ducas* Emperour of *Adrianople*, makes *Michael Angelus* and his son *Delpots*. After him succeeded *Theodorus Ducas*, or *Lascaris* the younger, 4 years. He forceth *Michael* and the *Bulgarians* to submit. *Michael Paleologus* fideth with the Turks; is called home, and made high-Constable. To *Theodorus* succeeded his son *John Ducas*, 6 years old. His Tutor was *Michael Paleologus*, and then Emperour, conditionally to resign when *John* was 24 years of age. *Damiatra* restored upon the restitution of the French King. *Sidon* taken by the Sultan of *Egypt*, and recovered by *Lewis*, who returns into *France*. *Bela* King of *Hungary* sends Forces into *Syria*. The Tartars subdue *Mesopotamia* for the Christians: they take also *Babylon* and *Aleppo*, and subdue *Syria*. In the West, *Frederick* the Emperour dieth. The Empire stood long void. *Conrad* his son, murdereth his brother *Henry*; spoileth *Naples* and *Capua*: he is poisoned by *Manfred* his bastard-brother. *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, and *Alphonso* King of *Castile*, in competition for the Empire. *John* Earl of *Britain* is the first Duke thereof. King *Lewis* gives *Gwynen*

Qqqq 2

to

1250

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

to King *Henry*, conditionally he renounce his interest to all other lands in *France*. At this time lived the great Astronomer *Alphonfus* the tenth, King of *Leon* and *Castile*. *Theobald* of *Navar* becomes vassal to *Castile*; who expels five Moorish Kings out of *Spain*. *Alphonfus* elected Emperour; but he neglects it. The Duke of *Lituania* becometh apostate. The King of *Hungary* invades *Austria*, and kills *Frederick* in battle. In *Denmark*, *Abel* the King's brother causeth the King to be beheaded and cast into the Sea: he succeeds King; is defeated by his subjects, and slain by the *Frisians*. The *Bohemians* convert *Prussia*. The *Venetians* take *Padua*. *Venice* taken by the *Genoese*s, and are expelled. The Dean of *S. Marks* privileged by the Pope to wear a Mitre and Crozier-staff, at solemn times; they quarrel with the *Genoese*s about a Church in *Acon*. *William* of *Flanders* returns from *Syria*, and is killed in a Tournament. *Margaret* loveth *Nemours*: she is fain to part with *Henault* to her son *John*, who dieth. *Margaret*'s sons are taken; and released, conditionally that she bestow her daughter *Beatrice* on *Floris* Earl of *Holland*, and should have for her Dowry the Islands of *Zealand*. The Earl of *Holland* is crowned at *Aken*: he builds the Palace at the *Hague*: he helps *John* against *Margaret* of *Flanders*: he is wounded at *Utrecht*, and is slain by the *Frisians*. His son *Floris* the fifth succeeded young: his Protector *Floris* is slain. *Henry* Duke of *Brabant* made Protector, and is expelled. The Nobles chuse *Otho*; but the people, *Alice* the Countess. *Henry* the third of *England* exacteth money of the Jews: he confirmeth *Magna Charta*, and reduceth *Aquitain*: his son *Edmund* invested in *Sicily* by a King which the Pope sent: his eldest son made first Prince of *Wales*, and Governor of *Ireland* and *Aquitain*. *Richard* the King's brother chosen Emperour: he is forced to swear the expulsion of strangers. The Pope dispenseth with his Oath. He resigns *Normandy*, *Maine*, and *Anjou* for money. *Alexander* the third of *Scotland* marrieth King *Henry*'s daughter of *England*: he is oppressed by the Commons, and carried to *Sterling*. They restore him, and are pardoned: the chief of their faction, *Mentith*, is poisoned by his wife. *Alexander* is by King *Henry* made Earl of *Huntingdon*.

In the Church: *Innocent* sits yet: he proffered *Sicily* to *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*. *Alexander* the fourth succeedeth 6 years: he takes divers places from *Ecceline* of *Padua*: against whom, *Lombardy* ariseth in Arms. The Pope, upon a sedition of the Romanes, fleeth to *Viterbium*. The Pontificians are driven out of *Apulia* by *Manfred*, who poisoneth *Conrad* of *Sicily*, and got himself to be crowned. In this Decad there was but one Council held, at *Uraistavia* in *Poland*: where the Pope demands the fifth part of all Benefices for three years. About this time, the Bible was distinguishing into Chapters, and the *Kra* of *Alphonfus* begins. *Robert Sorbonius* erecteth the Sorbonists Colledge at *Paris*. The Books of *W. de S. Amore*, written against the *Mendicants*, burnt by the Pope. The *Carthusians* renounce flesh-eating. *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal* lets the Order of *Sacchari*, or *Bon hommes*.

1260

In the East, the *Greeks* set up forts against *Constantine*; which are taken by *Alexius Strategopulus*. *Baldwin* dieth in *France*. *Michael* puts out the eyes of the young Emperour. *Thrace* invaded by the Turks and Bulgarians. The Tartars expelled out of *Syria* by the Sultan of *Egypt*. *Tyre* taken by the *Venetians*. *Hugh Lusignan*, Viceroy of *Naples*, arrives at *Acon* besieged by the Sultan, who kills 500 Citizens: he takes also *Joppa* and *Antioch*, to the loss of many Christians. *Lusignan* is crowned at *Acon*. Prince *Edw.* returns from *Syria* into *Sicily*, where he is wounded by an Infidel. In the West, a sedition at *Colen*; the B. is imprisoned by the E. of *Juliers*. *Charles* K. of *Sicily* made Vicar of the Empire. *Ottocar* K. of *Bohemia* refuseth to be Emperour. *Rodolph* Earl of *Habsburg* chosen 17 years: he refuseth to go into *Italy*. *Florence* is taken by *Manfred* of *Sicily*, who expels the *Guelphs*. *Charles* the French Kings brother is made K. of *Sicily* and *Jerusalem* at *Rome*, for a tribute of 40000 crowns: he kills *Manfred*, and beheadeth *Conradin* D. of *Austria*, and the Marq. *Baden*. *K. Lewis* of *France* takes *Carthage* from the *Moors*, and besiegeth *Tunis*: his Army weakened by the Plague. The African Moors invade *Castile*: peace between them. *Alphonso* is molested by his Nobles for releasing the homage of *Portugal*. The *Russians* are defeated by the Palatine of *Cracovia*. The E. of *Cracovia*'s wife delivered of 36 boys at a birth. The K. of *Denmark* and his mother taken in battle by the Duke of *Holf*. *Albert* D. of *Lunenburg* made tutor to the K. He is expelled by the people, and the Land interdicted by the Pope. The K. of *Bohemia* finding his wife barren, begets his maid with child, upon his wives permission, whom he at last divorceth. The *Genuans* take *Canta* in *Candy*, and a rich ship from the *Venetians*, who send another Fleet into *Acon*. In *England*, the Barons rise against the King, who takes *London*-tower, with *Dover* and *Rochefer*-Castles. *Oxford* Act made void. Great Civil wars between the K. and his Barons: he is taken, with his brother *Richard*. *Leicester* is slain. 500 Jews

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Jews killed at *London*. Divers Bishops excommunicated by the Pope for siding with *Leicester*. *London* taken by *Gloucester*. The Prince of *Wales* reconciled to the King. *Alan de la Zouch* killed. *Aquin* of *Norway* expelled out of the Isles by the K. of *Scotland*. *Olau*, *Aquin*'s successor, quits his claim for a sum of 4000 marks, and 100 marks yearly.

Years of Christ.

In the Church: *Urban* 4 sate 3 years: he excommunicated *Manfred*, and instituted the feast of *Corpus Christi*, by *Tho. Aquinas* his pervasion. *Clement* 4 succeeded 3 years. This Decad were held five Councils. The whipping fest now begin. The Order of redemption of Captives instituted. The *Lituanians* fall off from Christ, and persecute his members. An hundred thousand Albigenes defeated by eight thousand Catholicikes, under *Simon* Earl of *Montfort*. *S. Austin*'s Eremites are reduced to one habit.

In the East, the Emp. *Michael* acknowledgeth the Pope's Supremacie in the Council of *Lyons*, consisting of 500 Bishops and 1000 Abbots. *Alexius* is Emp. of *Trapezund*. The Greeks beaten out of *Asia minor* by the Turks. *Michael* dieth, and is dishonourably buried. The Pyrates come to the Ports of *Constant*. *Acon* is again besieged by the Sultan. *Hugh* concludes a peace with him. *Henry* Prince of *Meckleburg* is imprisoned 26 years at *Caire*, and then returns home. *Charles* of *Sicily* claims title to *Jerusalem* from *Maria Dominilla* a pretender: his Viceroy is received by the Templers. The Hospitaliers waste the Saracens Country, and take from them *Margath* Castle, which they besiege, and are beaten off. The Sultan of *Babylon* defeated by the Tartars and Armenians. In the West, the Emp. taketh *Austria*, and besiegeth *Vienna*. *Ottocar*, not able to relieve it, submitteth, and rebelleth again. The Emp. bestows the Exarchat and *Heimria* on the Pope, to maintain the Syrian war. *Ottocar*, with 14000 *Bohemians*, cut off by the Emp. who bestows on *Wenceslaus* his daughter & the kingdom. In *France*, *Philip* 3. reigneth 15 years: his Q. dieth at *Tunis*: his son *Lewis* is poisoned by *Peter la Broch*: the Q. is suspected, and poisoned with her son. *Peter* of *Arragon* drowneth his brother by the advice of his father. *Henry* of *Navar* being dead, the government of that Kingdom is undertaken by *Philip* of *France*, in right of his son, who had married the *Infanta*. *Peter* 3 of *Arragon* is K. of *Sicily*, in right of his wife. His brother *James* made king of *Majorca* and *Minorca*. *Steven* 5 of *Hungary* recovereth *Buda* from *Ottocar*, and subdueth the Bulgarians. *Ladislaus* his successor kills *Ottocar* in battle, in defence of the Emperor. *Dansk*, which was morgaged to the Marquess of *Brandenburg* is recovered by the king of *Poland*: who defeated the rebels that conspired his death, for naming *Lejso* his successor without the peoples consent. *Poland* troubled with the *Prussians* and *Lituanians*. In *Denmark*, there is war with the D. of *Sleswick*. *Olau Magnus* of *Norway* inhibits trading with strangers in his Country, till his Ports were shut up by their shipping. The king of *Suevia* being overcome by *Magnus* his brother, and the Danes, resigns up his Crown. *Ottocar* of *Bohemia* being disgraced by the Emperour, rebelleth, and is slain. *Venice* is distressed by the *Genuans* and *Paduans*: a peace with them for 5 years: and they renew their League with the Greeks. The *Isrians* revolt, and are subdued. The *Ancmans* incense the Pope against *Venice*. Troubles between *Flanders* and *England*; between *Flanders* and *Liege*. *Margaret* Countess of *Henneburg* in *Holland*, died: she had at one birth 365 children, baptized by the Bishop of *Utrecht*. In *England*, *Edw.* 1. reigneth 34 years: he finished the Church of *Westminster*. *Leolin* Prince of *Wales* refuseth to be present at his Coronation; against whom the king marcheth, and forceth him to submit. The King of *Scots* sendeth men and money into *Syria*: he, with his Q. are present at K. *Edward*'s Coronation. *Ferquard* made Earl of *Ross*, for overthrowing a strong bragging Norman in the English Court.

In the Church: *Gregory* 10 sits 4 years. He interdicteth the Florentines for banishing thence the *Gibellines*. To him succeeded *Innocent* 5. five months: then *Adrian* 5. one month: then *John* 20. eight months. He was killed by the fall of a room at *Viterbium*. *Nicholas* 3. succeeded 3 years: he alters the Government of *Rome*, and takes from *Charles* the title of Vicar of the Empire. One Synod held this Decad. At *Salzburg*, the Order of *Celestines* founded by *Peter de Marcone*. *Michael* the Greek Emperour despised at home, for acknowledging the Pope. At *Lyons*, in that Synod the Conclave is erected, and geniculation at the naming of *JESUS*, and the tenths of Benefices granted towards the holy war.

In the East, *Andronicus* the Emperour imprisoneth his brother *John* for his popularity. *Asia minor* divided by the Turks into Satrapies. The Christians persecuted by the apostate Cham of *Tartary*. *John*, son to *Hugh* K. of *Jerusalem*, succeedeth in *Cyprus*: then *Henry*, who is crowned at *Tyre*. *Tripolis* taken, with the loss of 7000 Christians. *Henry* and the Sultan make peace.

1280

peace. In the West, the Switzers, hitherto subject to *Savoy*, are subdued by the Emperour, who enlargeth the privileges of *Luca* and *Florence* for money: he demolisheth 60 Castles in *Thuring*, which harboured thieves. *Peter* of *Arragon*, who married *Manfred's* daughter, is called in by the *Sicilians*, who kill all the French in two hours, when the bell rung to the *Vespers*. *Peter's* General defeats *Charles* his Fleet. *Charles* recovereth *Naples*; where the French are beaten by *James*, *Peter's* son. Wars between *France* and *Arragon*; in which *Peter* dieth of a wound. *Philip* the fourth reigns in *France* 28 years. *Peter* of *Arragon* dieth; whose two sons succeeded; to wit, *James* in *Sicily*, and *Alphonfus* in *Arragon*, who took *Majorca* from *Lames*. The Moors expelled *Minorca*. Great troubles in *Castile*. *Lescus* the Polonian spoileth *Russia*, and expels the *Lituanians* out of *Poland*. *Lescus* forced by his people into *Hungary*; who returns, and expels his competitor *Conrad*. The *Tartars* carry away out of *Poland* twenty thousand Virgins. Great troubles there, between *Lescus* and *Conrad*, and their brothers. *Ladislau* of *Hungary* defeateth *Oldamir* King of the *Cumantians*; who return with the *Tartars*, and spoil *Hungary* and kill the King, whom the Pope a little before had cursed for his Concubines. *Ericus* King of *Denmark* killed with 56 wounds: the Rebels flee to *Norway*. The *Norwegians* and banished Lords invade *Denmark*. The *Venetians* make war upon the Patriarch of *Aquileia* for helping the *Istrians*. The Pope makes peace between them. In *Flanders*, there is a rebellion at *Bruges*. War between *Brabant* and *Guelthers*, about the Earldom of *Nemours*. *Floris* of *Holland* subdueth the *Frissians*, and transports his fathers bones thence to *Middleburg*. Many people perish in *Frissa* by Inundations. In *England*, *Leolin* of *Wales* is slain, and his head set upon the Tower: his brother *David* hanged and quartered. King *Edward* sits as a Peer in the French Parliament: he ransoms *Charles* king of *Sicily's* son: he makes the competitors of *Scotland* swear to stand to his arbitration. The Scots king dieth without issue, being slain with a fall from his horse. Six Governours appointed. Great troubles between *Bruce* and *Baliol* about the Crown.

In the Church, late *Martin* the fourth, 4 years: he excommunicates and deposeth *Peter* of *Arragon*, and bestows it on *Charles Valois* the French king's youngest son. *Honorius* the fifth succeeds 2 years: he is opposed by the Germans in a tax. *Nicholas* the fourth succeeded 4 years. This Decad yeeldeth four Synods. Seven rich Merchants of *Florence* instituted the Order of Servants of *Mary*. The Order of Chaplains also and Anchorites set up. The Pope excommunicates the Greek Emperour, for breaking his promise made at *Ljons*. At *Wesel*, the Jews crucifie a young man.

In the East, the *Turks* invade the Empire. *Michael Strategopulus* imprisoned by *Andronicus*. The Emperours forces defeated by the *Turk*. *Ronzerius* a Pirate made *Cesar*: he oppresseth *Asia*, and is slain by the Army of *Michael* the young Emperour. The *Saracens* take *Syria*, after 192 years possession by the Christians, since *Godfrey* recovered *Ierusalem*. Thirty thousand *Saracens* killed by *Cassan* the Cham, who recovers *Damascus*; but loseth all again, being called home by domestick troubles. *Ottoman* the first, son to *Ertogul*, takes the title of Sultan. In the West, *Wenceslaus* king of *Bohemia* is confirmed in the Electorate, and chief Imperial Butlership. *Adolph* Earl of *Nassau* named Emperour by the Bishop of *Mentz*, who had got the other Electors to assent. The *Syrians* submit to *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, who is forced to flee. The Emperour takes pay of the king of *England*, for his aid against the French; with the which he buyeth *Thuring* for his stipend; and for sacrilege and adultery he is deposed, and is killed by *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, who succeeds 9 years. At his Coronation, the Duke of *Saxony* is smothered in the preas of people. *France* makes peace with *Arragon*, and war with *England* and *Flanders*. The Parliament of *Paris* is set up. *Philip* of *France* obtains *Sicily* by marrying with the sister of *Charles* the lame. King *Lewis* is canonized. *Flanders* united to the Crown of *France*. *James* of *Arragon* made king of *Sardinia* by the Pope. The *Bohemians* seize upon *Cracovia*. *Ladislau*, who had escaped in a Monks habit, returneth, and beats the *Bohemians* in *Cracovia*. The *Tartars* waste *Poland*. *Primislau* Duke of great *Polonia* is crowned king, that title having been omitted 215 years: he is murdered by the Marquess of *Brandenburg*. *Lodowick* succeeded, who refused the title of king: he is deposed, and *Wenceslaus* king of *Bohemia* chosen. Whilst *Andrew* king of *Hungary* is wasting *Austria*, the Peers, by the Pope's perswasion, chuse *Charles*, son to *Charles Martel*, for their king. The king of *Denmark* falls out with his Archbishop; wherefore the king is censured at *Rome* to pay to the Archbishop 49000 marks; and the Land is interdicted. The *Frissians* having put themselves into the king's protection, murder his Governour. *Lubeck* craves protection of the *Dane*. In *Bohemia*, the Lords rebel, and make the Duke of *Uratflavia* king; who was shortly after poisoned.

Pera

*Pera* by *Constantinople* is taken by the *Venetians*, whose Fleet is taken by the *Genuans* at *Corfu*, who also take *Cydon* in *Crete*. The *Genuans* attempt *Venice* to no purpose. Great executions at *Venice*, for plots against the State. The *Paduans* build a Fort in the *Venetians* territories, which they demolished. They make the Greek Emperour pay his debts. *John D.* of *Brabant* is killed. The Earl of *Flanders*, and his wife, the Prince of *Wales* daughter, are invited to *France*, and imprisoned at *Paris*: he sides with the English against *France*. *Charles Valois* invadeth *Flanders*, takes *Guy*, and many of his Nobility prisoners. The Earl of *Holland* claims *Scotland* in right of *Ada* his grand-mother; but is dissuaded from it by the King of *England*: he is slain for Adultery. His son *John* the first succeeded, who subdued the *Frissians*, and proscribed *Dort* for rebelling: he died childless, the Earldom having lasted in that line 437 years. *Friesland* torn with factions. King *Edward* of *England* banisheth the Jews. The French and English take each others ships at Sea. *Aquitain* seized on by the French King, because *Edward* came not upon his citation. *Baliol* doeth homage for *Scotland*, and aids the French against the English. The king takes divers strong holds in *Scotland*, with the Regalities, and Marble Chair. The English expelled by *William Wallace*. The Scots and *Wallace* beaten in the battel of *Fawkirke*. The King of *Norway* claimeth *Scotland* in right of his daughter deceased. *Baliol* is named king of *Scotland* by king *Edward*. *Baliol* took to ill, that he was forced to plead at the bar against *Macduff's* brother, that he fell off from the English to the French. *Baliol* is sent to the Tower: he is released, and goeth into *France*.

In the Church, *Celestine* the fifth called before *Petrus de Murcome*, sits 5 moneths: he was an ignorant Eremitic. To him succeeded *Boniface* the eighth, 8 years. He deluded *Celestine* by the sound of a Cane, and made him resigne: he persecuted the family of *Colonna*, and opposeth *Albert's* Election: he causeth *James* to forsake *Sicily*, whose brother *Frederick* is chosen by the people in hatred of the French. Eight Synods held this Decad. The hereticks *Patarians* and *Cazarani*, about this time appeared, and held that married men could not be saved. *Fraticelli* a kinde of *Anabaptists*. *Boniface* sets out the fifth book of Decretals. The Church of *Loretta* enlarged, for reception of Pilgrims.

In the East, *Andronicus* is excommunicated by the Pope, and the K. of *Rasfa* set up against him. *Ottoman* keeps his residence at *Neapolis*, which he called *Despotopolis*, 20 miles from *Nice*: he beats the Christian Armies. In the West, the Emperour wastes the Lands of the Bishop of *Trevers*. The *Helvetians* begin to make head against the Emperours Officers. The Emperour is murdered by his brothers son, for keeping his Patrimony from him. To him succeeds *Henry* the seventh, Earl of *Lutzenburg* 4 years: he is crowned at *Millan*, and loseth many places in *Italy*. *Philip* of *France* excommunicated; he burns the Popes Bulls. The French are beaten by the Flemings in the battel at *Cowiray*. *Philip* is reconciled to the Pope: he defeats the Flemings, and makes Peace with them: he banisheth the Jews out of *France*. The Moors driven from *Gibraltar* by the *Castilians*. *Ferdinand* of *Castile* wrongs his brothers, who summon him to Christ's Tribunal within thirty days; he dieth within that time. In *Hungary*, three Kings are chosen by three Factions, viz. *Wenceslaus* of *Bohemia* (who is carried thence into *Bohemia*, with the Crown of *Hungary*, by his father *Ladislau*) *Charles* and *Otho* Dukes of *Bavaria*, to whom *Wenceslaus* resigneth the Crown. *Otho* is taken by the Vayvod of *Transylvania*: he is cursed by Cardinal *Gentilis*, for detaining the Crown from *Charles*. *Otho* resigneth, and is set free. In *Poland*, *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, is chosen; who leaves *Bohemian* Governours, and returns home. To him succeeded *Ladislau* 29 years. *Dansk* besieged by *Brandenburg*. *Ladislau* employeth the *Tentonicks* to defend it, who seize on it to their own use. The troubles of *Denmark* composed, by the payment of 10000 marks to the Archbishop by the king. The Norwegians invade *Denmark*, but are repulsed. The king of *Suevia* imprisoned by his brethren. *Wenceslaus* of *Bohemia* selleth *Misnia* to the Marquess of *Brandenburg*: he is killed by a Russian: in him endeth the male line. *Henry* Prince of *Carinthia* claims the kingdom in right of his wife: they are both driven by the Emperour into *Bavaria*. *Frederick* the Emperours son striving for that kingdom, is slain. *Henry* returns, and carrieth thence much wealth into *Carinthia*: he is expelled by *John* the Emperours son, who reigned 36 years. The *Venetians* excommunicated by the Pope, for taking *Ferrara*; and all their goods confiscated in *France*. *Zara* besieged, and submiteth to the *Venetians*: they aid *Charles Valois* against the Greek Emperour. Many of the French faction killed in *Gann* and *Brugu*. *Guy* of *Flanders* dieth a prisoner in *France*: his son *Robert* succeeds 18 years: he hath wars with *Holland*, because the Earl neglected to do his homage for *Zealand*. Peace between *Robert* and the French. In *Holland*, *William* the good ruleth 32 years. In *England*, the King confirmeth

Magna

*Magna Charta*, releaseth *Baliol*, and sends the Lord *Segrave* into *Scotland*; who is beaten there: the king marcheth with his Army three hundred miles into *Scotland*, without opposition. The Prince is sent thither with an Army. *Wallis* is taken and executed. The king in his journey to *Scotland* dieth. His son *Edward* the second succeeded 19 years: he imprisoneth the Bishop of *Chesler* in the cause of *Gaveston*. In *Scotland*, *Robert Bruce* having escaped out of *England*, kills *Cumyn* for betraying his plot to king *Edward*. *Robert* Reigned there 24 years: he is forced into the Woods and Isles a while: he recovers divers Castles.

In the Church, *Boniface* yet sits: he gives away *France* to the Emperour: he fleeth with his treasure to *Anagnia*, and is taken by the *Columnii*, and dieth of grief. To him succeeded *Bennet* the ninth 8 months: he was poisoned. *Clement* the fifth succeeded 8 years: he removeth his seat to *Avignon*, where it continued 72 years: at his Coronation, he lost a stone out of his Mytre, worth 6000 Crowns; the French king was hurt, and the Duke of *Brittain* slain; with twelve more. The Pope being recovered of a great sickness, bestoweth *Mentz* on his Physician: he makes *Robert*, son of *Charles*, king of *Sicily*, by paying eight thousand pound fealty, and the annual profits of *Benevent*. This Decad produced two Councils; one at *Rome*, against the French king; the other at *Paris*, against Pope *Boniface*. The first Jubile is instituted by *Boniface*. The Templars condemned in *France*, and *James* their chief Master burnt, with fifty more of that Order at *Paris*.

In the East, the Turks are expelled by the Christians out of *Thrace*. In the West, the Emperour rageth with fire and sword in *Italy*. He is crowned at *Pisa* and *Rome*. The Bishop of *Liege*, and two thousand slain there: he burns many places, and is poisoned by a Monk in the Eucharist. *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, and *Frederick* of *Austria*, strive for the succession. *Lewis* is crowned at *Acon* by four Electors, and *Frederick* at *Bonna* by the rest. Three Cantons of *Switzers* enter into an offensive and defensive league. The Guelphs in *Italy*, the Emperours enemies, are slain, about a hundred thousand. The French king in hunting is killed with a fall from his horse. His son *Lewis* the tenth succeeded two years: he hanged his Treasurer, and died suddenly: his brother *Philip* the fifth succeeded 12 years. The *Salique* Law is confirmed, and *Lewis* his daughter omitted. The League with *Scotland* is renewed. The Shepherds rebellion in *France*. In *Castile*, *Alphonso* the eleventh is King 40 years. The Teutonicks subdue *Pomerania*, and take *Riga*. *Ladislaus* of *Poland* recovers *Cracovia* from the Duke of *Opolium*, and takes away the Cities Liberties, for betraying it. *Charles*, son to *Charles Martel*, is King of *Hungary* 32 years. *Christopher* reigns in *Denmark* 14 years. The King of *Suevia* imprisoneth his brothers in a Castle, where they die. The people rebel: he fleeth: his son *Magnus* is taken, and he is slain. *John* the Emperours son reigns in *Bohemia* 36 years: he is made Lieutenant of the Empire: he aideth his father; and, after his death, *Lewis* against *Frederick*. *Pr. Pandulo* the *Venetian*, to pacify the Pope, suffers himself to be tied like a dog with a chain under the Popes table. The *Gennans* war against the *Venetians* by Sea and Land: they besiege *Pera*. *Crete* rebelleth; so doth *Gaunt*. The French and *Hollanders* invade *Flanders*. Upon restitution of *Doway* and some other places, and a marriage between *Philip's* daughter and *Robert's* grand-child, peace is concluded. At *Middleburg* a Colledge is erected, with a Dean and four Canons. In *England*, *Gaveston* is made Earl of *Cornwall*; is banished, and made General of *Ireland*: he is recalled, banished, returneth, and is made Secretary: the Lords strike off his head. The King is overthrown by the Scots at *Bannockburn*. The Earl of *Lancaster*, chief of the Barons faction, is reconciled to the King. *Edward Bruce*, King *Robert's* brother, is crowned King of *Ireland*, and slain three years after. The Scots take *Berwick*, and many other places. King *Robert* invadeth *England*. Divers put to death in *Scotland*, for endeavouring to betray the kingdom to the English. *Robert* King of *Sicily* proscribed by the Emperour; which the Pope makes void. *Frederick* Prince of *Trinacry*, calls himself King of *Sicily*. *Robert* is reconciled to *Frederick*: they fall at odds again.

In the Church: *Clement* yet sitteth, who wrote the *Clementine* or seventh of the Decretals. The Emperour denieth fealty to the Pope. Succeeded *John* 21, who fate 18 years. His tenent concerning deposing of Kings, is opposed by *Occam*. He besiegeth *Genoa*, and sets out the extravagants. This Decad were held seven Synods. The Templars suppressed at *Vienna*. *Rhodes* is bestowed upon the Knights Hospitallers. The Works of *Lullius* are condemned. *Begwins* and *Beguards* Hereticks, with the *Armenian* Hereticks, were busie about this time. Three Gentlemen of *Siena* set up the Order of White Monks of *Olivet*.

In

In the East, *Andronicus*, the Emperours grand-child, besiegeth *Constantinople*; so that the Grand-father is forced to give him *Thrace* and *Macedonia*. *Constantine* son of *Andronicus* sent against the young Emperour; he is taken and imprisoned, they are reconciled: young *Andronicus* joyhs with the Despot of *Bulgaria* against his Grandfather, and takes *Constantinople*; he attempts to relieve *Nice*, and is beaten by the Turks, who take *Nice*. The old Emperour is made a Monk, and called *Antony*; the Turks take *Philadelpia*. *Prusa* the Metropolis of *Bithynia* is taken, and made the seat of the Ottoman Empire. To *Ottoman* succeedeth his son *Orchanes* 31 years: the Christians recover *Nice* with divers Forts. In the West, *Germany* is vexed between the two Emperours. *Ferdinand* is taken, and after three years imprisonment, is restored to *Austria*, but renounceth the Empire. The Pope and Emperour quarrel; the Bishop of *Magdeburg's* brains are beaten out by the Citizens. The Emperour is crowned at *Rome*, and sets up an Antipope. *Reynold* Earl of *Gelders* is made Duke; *Juliers* made a Marquisate: The Emperour besiegeth *Millan*. In *France*, to *Philip* succeeded his brother *Charles* King of *Navar* 6 years; he forced the Flemmings to submit; to him succeeded *Philip* of *Valois*, brothers son to *Philip* the fair, 22 years. In *Spain*, *Aragon*, *Catalonia* and *Valentia* united: *Aragon* subdued *Sardinia*. *Silesia* falls off from the *Polander* to the *Bohemians*, with whom the Teutonicks side: 130 towns burnt in *Massovia* by the *Lituanians*. Upon a marriage between the Kings son *Casimire* and the Dukes daughter, a peace is made with the *Lituanians*: the *Massovians* and *Teutonicks* defeated by the *Poles* and *Lituanians*. *Ladislaus* beateth the *Bohemians* and *Prussians*. In *Denmark* a great Rebellion, in which *Waldemar* Duke of *Sleswick* is chosen King; but two years after the King is reestablished, and *Waldemar* gives up his title of King. *Henry* of *Austria* is released for 30000 Crowns. The *Bohemians* rebell, upon the Kings attempting to exchange *Bohemia* for *Bavaria*: he invadeth *Poland*, and loseth one of his eyes with the moisture of the *Lituanian* aire. At *Brugis* a great sedition between the people and Magistrates: they detain their Earl, a prisoner 6 months; a peace is made, and they rebell again: the Earl is restored, and 22000 of the Rebels killed. *Holland* enjoyeth *Zeland* upon a peace with *Flanders*: Many towns drowned in *Holland* with 5000 people: A civil War in *Sicily*. The Emperour attempteth King *Robert* in vain. The *Spencers* in *England* are banished: the King wasteth *Durham*, *Preston* and *Lancaster*. The Scots beat the English: they renew their league with *France*. The Lords defeated at *Burtonbridge*: *Lancaster* and other Lords executed. The *Mortimers* sent to the Tower. Peace with *Scotland* 13 years. The Queen and *Mortimer* proclaimed Traitors; the Queen landeth, the *Spencers* executed: the King resigneth, and is murdered. *Edward* 3 his son succeeded 50 years: the King returns dishonourably from *Scotland*. *Mortimer* hanged. *Baliol* resigns *Scotland*; *Hamilton's* begin.

In the Church, Pope *John* sitteth yet; he sides with *Robert* against *Frederick* king of *Sicily*; he quarrels with the Emperour: against him is set up *Nicholis* 5. which makes the 28 Schisme. The Emperour excommunicated again: *Nicholis* is carried into *France*, where he giveth up his title. Three Synods held this Decad. The Poor-men of *Lyons* called *Fratricelli* condemned by the Pope: the French King maintaineth the Clergies temporalities against the Advocate, and is therefore stiled (Catholick).

In the East, the Bulgarians are defeated, and do defeat the Emperour, who sets out a fleet, and enters into league with the Latine Princes against the Turk. *Thrace* is wasted by the Scythians and Turks; the Emperour takes 14 of their ships, and beats them out of *Acarnania* and *Aetolia*. *Nice* is taken by *Orchanes*, and so is *Alydus*: the Emperour is wounded in the foot: the Turks are driven from the siege of *Philadelpia*: The Turks waste divers Islands: They are beaten at sea by *Andronicus*. In the West, the King of *Bohemia* takes divers Cities for the Pope, *Parma* and *Padua* taken by the Scaligers, and other towns of *Italy* by others: the Pope dares not absolve the Emperour; for fear of the French: He makes *Edward* of *England* Lieutenant of the Empire; and then displaceth him: the Emperour appealeth from the Pope to a General Synod. It was concluded in a Diet of *Frankfort*, that any Bishop may Crown the Emperour, as well as the Pope. *Robert* of *Artois* is defeated of his Earldome by the French King, who proclaims him traitour, for soliciting the King of *England* to claim his right in *France*. *Philip* aideth the Scots: *Edward* for this, and for setting upon *Aquitain*, proclaims war against him: he quartereth the Arms of *France* and *England*. At the siege of *Lis*, the English are defeated; and the French at *Sluce*. Divers discontented Lords in *Spain* side with the Moors against *Castile*: The *Castilians* defeat the forces of *Aragon* and *Navar*. *Peter* of *Aragon* doth homage to the Pope for *Sardinia* and *Corfica*. Wars between *Ca-*

Rrrr

stite

stille and Portugal. The Teutonicks waste Polonia, and at last by the King defeated; Peace made between them; the Lithuanians burn themselves, wives, children and goods, that they might not fall into the hands of the Teutonicks. King Casimire setteth the succession of Hungary upon Charls, who had married his sister. Russia taken by the Lithuanians: Casimire takes Leopold, where he found two crowns, and a piece of the Croffe, now kept at Cracovia. In Hungary was a great plague of Locusts; the Nobles of Denmark send to Valdemar Christophers son, being now in Germany, to recover the kingdom, which was now in competition. Wenceslaus of Bohemia, who in the French Court was named Charls, defeats the Lombards, and is made Marquess of Moravia. John of Bohemia releaseth his title to Poland for 10000 Marks: A Jew puts out his eye, having lost the other before. The Venetians joyn with Florence against Mastin Tyrant of Escailla. 60 several Ambassadors arrive at Venice to reconcile them and Mastin; Peace is granted to him, and he is made a Patritian of Venice. Lewis of Flanders buyeth Melchyn of the Bishop of Liege, and the Duke of Geldres; the Duke of Brabant challengeth it; but they are reconciled by marriages. The Flemmings defeated by the English: the Earle is against the Flemmings league with England: he flieth to Philip of France: The Earle of Holland doth notable justice on the Bailiffe of South-Holland, for forcing a Cow from a poor woman. William 4. of Holland ruleth ten years, he spoileth Prussia. The king of England doth homage in France for Aquitain, and returns discontented: he aideth Edward Baliol, because David King of Scotland refused to do homage. In the battell of Halldown-hill, the English are victorious and recover Barnwick; he entrench Scotland, and returneth with Baliol: He enters Scotland again, and setteth Baliol, who contents himself with a Pension. The first Duke in England, is Prince Edward made Duke of Cornwall. The King sends to demand his Holds in Aquitain: he leagueth with the Emperour and Dutch; he is made Vicar of the Empire. Southampton burnt by the French: they besiege Burdeaux and are all killed. King Robert of Scotland having vowed an expedition into Syria, desired on his death-bed, Robert Douglass to carry his heart to Jerusalem: Douglass in his journey thither was slain, in siding with Arragon against the Saracens; that Family ever since bear an Heart in their Coat: This Robert had won 70 battels. Earl Murry Regent, during King Davids minority, was poysoned by a Monk: The King and Queen are driven into France. Edward Baliol crowned; Aberdeen burnt by the English. Davids faction groweth to strong for Baliol. Salisbury and Arundel forced from the siege of Dunbar-Castle. At Blackburn the Scots are beaten; Perth and Sterling taken by the Regent. Baliol flieth into England.

In the Church, the Schisme continueth, till Nicholas the Antipope was carried into France, where he resigneth: the Bononians rebell against the Pope, who dieth and left behind him a treasure of 1700000 Florens; to him succeeded Benmet 12. 7 years; One Synod held this Decad, at Toledo. Pope John believed that the souls slept till the Resurrection. The Greek Church dissenteth from the Latine. In a Diet at Mentz it was concluded, that the Council was above the Pope, and that the Emperour held immediately from God.

In the East, Nicomenia in Bithynia is taken by the Turks. John son to Andronicus is Emperour 41 years; he is as yet under the tuition of John Cantacuzenus father-in-law to Orchanes; the Patriarch excommunicates him; upon this the Patriarch is deposed. The Turks are beaten out of Smyrna by the Venetians: they defeat the Venetians with those of Cyprus & Rhodes. In the West, the Pope takes Ferrara, Mantua & Verona from the Emperour, and denyleth to absolve him, till he resigne his Empire to him. Lewis is deposed and dieth. Charls 4. elected, he was son to John King of Bohemia. Some of the Electors preter the Empire to King Edward of England; he refuseth it: then they choose Ferdinand Marquis of Misunia, whom Charls bought out with 10000 Marks. Gunther also being elected by some, compoundeth with Charls, and is poisoned. In France, John Mousfort loseth Britany; King Edward assisted him: he is taken and imprisoned. The Gabal of Salt now imposed. At Crefcy the French lost 30000 with the King of Bohemia, and 11 Princes, 80 Barrons, and 1200 Knights. Calice lost, and the French who would have bought it, cheated of their money, and slain. The Dolphin of Vienna sold to the French, on condition that the eldest son of France should be called the Dolphin. In the battell of Salcedos 450000 Moores slaine, and but twenty Castilians. The Alcavale, that is the Tenth of things sold, raised for the maintaining of the Moores war. Alphonjus of Castile obtaineth of the Pope the Canaries, conditionally that he plant

plant Christianity there. James of Majorca killed in battell by the Arragonians: The Tartars and Bohemians driven out of Poland, by Casimire: He is excommunicate for his Concubines, and adultery: he totally subdueth Russia, and names Lewis of Hungary his heir. To Charls of Hungary succeedeth his son Lewis 1. 41 years; he subdueth the Saxons in Transilvania: Andrew his brother and King of Naples, sells his possessions to the King, who aideth the Polander against Lithuania and Bohemia. Zara falls off to Hungary, and is recovered again by Venice: they make peace for 10 years. Lewis to revenge his brothers death, whom his wife strangled, marcheth into Italy and takes the Kingdom of Naples: She flieth to the Pope with her new Husband, who for reconciling them hath Avignon. In Denmark, Waldemar reignes 35 years; he leagueth with the Swedes, invadeth Brandenburg, and goeth to Jerusalem. Prague in Bohemia is now freed from Mentz, and made an Archbishoprick. King John being slain at Crefcy, his son Charls succeeded, who also was Emperour, who built new Prague. The Venetians troubled with an Earthquake, Plague and Famine: they invite strangers to come and inhabit their City. A great faction at Gaunt against the French, in which Artweld the chief man of the faction is slain, and E. Lewis is killed at Crefcy, to whom succeeded Lewis of Male 38 years; he promised to marry the King of Englands daughter, but married the daughter of Brabant. William of Holland is slain in the battell he fought against Utrecht; his Sister Margaret succeeded 8 years: she makes her son William Governour, reserving 10000 crowns yearly; but when the Emperour died, she assumeth Holland, and bestoweth Henault on William. Now began there the faction of Cabillaucks and Hoecke, which held 150 years; the Cabillaucks call in William against his Mother. Towney besieged by King Edward, and truce granted for one year: He quarrels with the Pope for denying him the making of a Cardinal. The order of the Garter instituted; and the Round-Table at Windsor erected. Divers of King Edwards friends put to death in France. He taketh Caen in Normandy; with 10000 English he defeats 60000 French. King David of Scotland taken by Copland, who is rewarded with 500l. and made a Banoret. The English quite driven out of Scotland. King David and his Queen return. Great emulation between Douglass and Ramsey: David upon the French score invades England thrice, and waiteth all as far as Durham: he is defeated and taken; Percy and Baliol spoil Lothian. Robert of Sicily being dead, Andrew the King of Hungary's son, whom he had adopted, succeeds in Apulia, for which he paid a great summe to the Pope: he is strangled by his wife, who married with Lewis Prince of Tarentum.

In the Church, Bennet sits yet, he confirmed Verona to Scaliger, Mantua to Gonzaga, and Ferrara to Este. Clement 6. succeeded 10 years: he reduced the Jubile to 50 years; he makes some of the Electors choose a new Emperour. Nicholas a Tribune of Rome aspireth, and is confined to Avignon. This Decad had but one Synod, at Toledo. One Picard a Walloon began the Heresie of the Adamites. Popish Provisions put down in England. The Pope suppresseth the Whippers. Many Jews executed for poysoning the waters.

In the East, Paleologus helpeth the Venetians, and Cantacuz: the Genuans. Losbos is given to Catelufius for his service against the Greeks, after almost 100 years possession by his posterity; it was lost to the Turks. Cantacuz: made a Monk, and his son suppressed. Soymon son to Orchanes breaks into Europe; and takes divers Castles with Callipolis the chief City of Chersonesus: as he was Hawking he is drowned in a Ditch; whereupon Orchanes dieth with grief. To him succeeded Amurath the first, his son, 30 years. The Janisaries now begin. In the West, Cleve for want of Heirs male, falls to the Empire. Wenceslaus fouleth the Font, when he was Christened. The Pisans punished for carrying the Empreffe and her daughter into the Stews. The Emperour is crowned at Milan and Rome: he publisheth the Golden Bull, and annexeth Brandenburg to Bohemia. Juliers made a Dutchy; he helps the Pope against Milan, and hath wars with Philip of Austria, who put him to flight, by corrupting some about Charls. To Philip of France succeeded John his son 15 years: Charls grand-child to the King of Castile, and Constable of France, is killed by the K. of Navar. Charls



## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

of Navar imprisoned for favouring the English; who beat the French at *Poytiers*. *Charles* being released, makes new troubles. The Provost of *Paris* murdered. The King and his son transported into England. France spoiled by King *Edward*. Upon a Peace, King *John* is released to get money. The Jews are again admitted. He returns into England, and dies. Peter King of Portugal banisheth Lawyers out of his Kingdom. Peter King of Castile puts his brother with many Nobles to death; he murdereth two more brothers, and poysoneth his wife. Lewis of Hungary makes peace with Padua and Austria; he invadeth Dalmatia, and takes divers Towns; he restores Tarvisium and Istria. The Russians rebell against Poland. Casimire is absolved, and buildeth many Churches. Prussia is spoiled by the Lituaniens. Hungary disclaimeth all tribute from Polonia: The King of Denmark imprisoneth his Queen upon suspicion of Adultery; he afterward begot Margaret of her, who became Queen of 3 Kingdoms. Ericus rebelleth against his Father the King of Sweden. Istria spoiled by the Prince of Croatia, who makes restitution. The Venetians beaten by the Germans at *Bosphorus*. The Germans are defeated, and put themselves under the protection of Milan: At last a peace is made. The Venetians make a dishonourable peace with Lewis of Hungary. Lewis of Flanders subdueth Brabant; he restores all again except Antwerp, which he retains for his wives Dowry. William's forces in Holland are defeated by his mother the Empreiss, who was at last defeated by him, and is contented with Henault, and leaveth Holland with him, who invaded Utrecht, and fell mad: His wife is chosen Regent by the Cabillaunks, and his brother Albert by the Hoecs, who besieged Delf and took it. The Spanish Fleet at *Winchelsey* defeated by the English. Sir Walter Bently beats the French in Britain. Groats first coined. The King wasteth France, and removes the Staple of Wooll out of Flanders into England. The battell of *Poytiers*, where the French King with many Lords, Knights and Esquires are taken and slain. The French aid the Scots; they take Barwick and dismember it, they burn Northam. King David ransomed for 100000 marks. Peace for 14 years: The King cuts off Robert Stuarts succession to the crown, and appoints Alexander of Sutherland his younger sisters son for his successor, upon whose death Robert is reconciled to the King and to his hopes. The Pope makes Lewis of Tarentum King of Sicily, against the King of Hungary.

In the Church, Clement keepeth the 2. Jubile: To him succeeds Innocent 6. 9 years. new troubles in Rome. Nicholas is sent home and restored to his Tribunat, and is slain by the Columni. The Popes Legat is sent to Rome, who recovers all in 5. years that was lost from the Church. One Council held this Decad, at Toledo again: The Pope strives with *Canacuz*, to unite the Greek and Latine Churches.

1360—

In the East, the Turks take many places, and make Paleologus tributary, who craveth help against them from the Pope and Queen of Sicily. The Turks transport 60000. into Europe by the help of the Genuans. Amurath makes his seat at *Adrianople*, he circumciseth his sons. In the West, The Imperial Cities league against the Princes. In France, Charles 5. reigneth 16 years. Montfort kills Charles of Bloys, and recovereth Britain. King Charles makes his guard of 100. Scots Archers: He gives the Kingdom of Arles to Lewis Duke of Anjou. Peter of Castile treacherously killed the Moorish King. War between Castile and Arragon. Peter is driven out of Castile by the French; he flyeth to Prince Edward, and is restored, and abjureth his Religion. He is at last taken and beheaded. The Polander subdueth the Russian. Bosnia and Bulgaria reduced to the obedience of Hungary. About this time the Hanse-Towns being 77. begin to set up. Hainburg submits to the Duke of Holst. Magnus of Suevia taken, and imprisoned. Venice forceth the Paduans to buy their peace for 15 years. The Earldom of Burgundy falls to Margaret mother of Lewis by the death of Philip. The Duke of Burgundy marrieth the Earls daughter. King Edward of England affrighted with thunder, makes peace with France. King John is released for 300000 crowns: The King being 50 years old, keepeth a Jubile: he turneth all the Records out of French into Latine or English. The Staple at Calice. King John came to England to release his hostages, and dieth at the Savoy. Prince Edward III rewarded for his aide, by Peter of Castile. The Highlanders in Scotland are permitted by the King to destroy each other.

In the Church, Urban 5. sate 8 years. The Viscount of Millan begs peace of the Popes Legat. The Pope comes to Rome, and sends for the Emperour to suppress the Gibelins

## of the principal Passages, &c.

lins. This Decad affordeth no Council. John Columbinus begins at Sena the order of Jesuites. Paleologus submiteth to the Roman Church, on promise of help against the Turks. St. Bridgets Order confirmed by the Pope.

Years of Christ.

In the East, Paleologus being expelled by Andronicus his son, is restored by the Venetians: he taketh Tenedos from the Genuans, and gives it to the Venetians. At the Marriage feast of Bajazet, a Nobleman sent 100. Boyes, and so many Virgins in rich apparel, with two Cups in each hand, the one filled with jewels, the other with gold: the Despot of Servia loseth Nissa to the Turk, and becomes his Tributary. Aladin the Turks son in law rebelleth, and forced to sue for peace. The Servians fall from Amurath, and joyn with the king of Bosnia. 20000 Turks killed in Bosnia by the Christians. In the West, the Emperour promiseth more to the Electors to choose his son Cesar, then he was able to pay. War between Saxony and Brunswick, for the Dutchy of Luneburg. To Charles succeeded his ill-conditioned son Wenceslaus 22 years. Charles of Navar indicted for attempting to kill the French King: he forfeiteth his estate, and is reconciled to the King. Navars eldest son imprisoned, and his Officers executed for intelligence with the English. The French invade the Isle of Wight: Montpelier rebelleth, and is reduced. The King leaveth the Government to his 3 brothers, and dieth rich. His son Charles 6. succeeded 42 years. The Kings of Aragon, Fex and Granada league against Castile, which makes peace with Portugal. The Duke of Lancaster claimeth Castile in right of his wife. Henry of Castile poysoned by a Monk. Casimire of Poland being dead, Lewis King of Hungary succeedeth, Casimirs sisters son, 13 years: he returneth to Hungary, and leaves his mother Regent of Polonia: the Hungarians kill the Governour of Cracovia, for which 160 Hungarians are killed by the Polacks. King Lewis persuades the Polacks to admit one of his daughters to the succession, which they do assent to, conditionally they might be eased of their Taxes. He subdueth the Valachians, and adopteth his daughters husband. Magnus of Suevia is released for 12000. Marks. Wenceslaus of Bohemia drowneth his wives Confessor, for not revealing her confession. The Venetians and Genuans at War for Tenedos; they are reconciled by the Duke of Savoy. In Flanders, 17 Towns are drowned, and 5000 houses burnt in Gaunt. The French and Flemmings quarrel, for receiving John Duke of Britain. The Earls heavy Taxes cause a civil War in Flanders. Wars between Holland and Utrecht. Limoges taken by the English. Rochel besieged by the French: Peace between England and France. The English defeated in Garnsey. The French lose Aquitain. Richard 2. reigns in England 22 years. The French burn Rye, and the Scots Roxburg. Barwick taken and lost by the Scots in 9 dayes. In Scotland, Robert Stuart is king 20 years; he reneweth the League with France.

In the Church, sate Gregory 11. 7 years. The Florentines quarrell with the Popes Legats, and deny come to Rome. They assist the Bononians and Pisans against the Pope, who curseth, and then absolveth them: He removes from Avignon to Rome. To him succeeded Urban 6. 11 years: against him Clement 7. is chosen by the French Cardinals, which makes the 2d Schisme, which continued 50 years: Urban sits at Rome, Clement at Avignon. Urban drowned seven Cardinals of Clement, being bound in sacks. S. Katherine's Nuns founded by Katherine of Sena. The Cynique-heretiques, called Twelupini, went naked, and were given to the flesh. Wicklifs Doctrine condemned at Oxford. England, Hungary, and Germany declare for Pope Urban; France, Scotland, Arragon, and Sicily for Clement.

In the East, Andronicus is settled in the Empire by Bajazet, for which he sweareth fealty to the Turk, and imprisoneth his father; who escapeth, and causeth the Turk to set up his son Manuel, who reigned 30 years. Andronicus flieth into Asia, and shelters himself in the Turks Court. The Turks subdue and destroy the Christians in Bosnia, Croatia, and the adjacent places. Tamerlan makes an expedition into Babylon, and Sultan Achmet flieth to Alcaire. One of Amuraths sonnes loseth his eyes, for plotting against his father. Lazarus Despot of Servia, with five hundred thousand Christians, slain in the Plains of Cassovia. One Cobelets a Christian, kills Amurath, as hee was viewing the dead. To him succeeds his sonne Bajazet, 11 years: He strangled his brother Jacup, to prevent competition; so this strangling of the Sultans brethren grew customary. In the West, Civil warres

—1380

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ

in Germany among the Princes. The Duke of *Austria* killed by the *Switzers* in battel; after much bloodshed, a peace there is concluded. In *France*, *Charles 6.* reigned 42 years; he contents himself with the three *Flowers-de-luce* for his Armes. The *Parisians* and *Rohaners* are punished for mutinying. The *French* invade *England*. *Lewis of Anjou* removed from his Regency, the *Dukes of Burgundy* and *Berry* put in his place. The *English* take 100 *French* and *Flemish* ships. The *King* assumeth the Government. His Brother made *Duke of Orleans*: Great faction between the *Constable* and *Duke of Britain*. The *English* help *Portugal* against *Castile*. The *King of Castile* expelled by *John* base son to *Peter*. *Navar* attempteth to poyson the *Dukes of Burgundy* and *Berry*; He groweth leprous. *John*, *Peters* base son chosen *King of Portugal*. The *Duke of Lancaster* marrieth in *Spain*, one daughter to the *Infant of Castile*, the other to the *King of Portugal*. In *Poland*, the *Bishop of Cracovia* falls down dead, as he was going to deflowre a Country-maid. *King Lewis* dieth, and *Hedwigis* the *Queens* daughter is chosen. *Jagello Duke of Lithuania* christened in *Poland*, and named *Ladislaus*; by marrying *Hedwigis*, he unites *Lithuania* to *Poland*, and converts the *Lithuanians* in *Hungary*. *King Lewis* being dead, his daughter *Mary* succeedeth 10 years. *Charles King Andrews* son of *Sicily* is received *King* by some, and is murdered by the *Queens* mother, who is drowned by the Governour of *Croatia*, and *Mary* imprisoned. *Sigismund*, *Charles* the fourths son marrieth *Mary*, is crowned, and persecuteth the Governour of *Croatia*; upon this the *Lords* rebell, and some of them are executed by *Sigismund*. He subdueth *Bosnia* and *Dalmatia*. Truce between *Denmark* and *Sweden*. *Margaret* reigns alone 24 years: she hath War with *Albert of Suevia*, and takes him, with his son prisoners, and so she becomes *Queen* of all the three Kingdoms. The *Venetians* take *Verona* and *Padua*, and recover *Treviso*. The *League* with other States against *Galeas Viscount of Milan*. The *Earl of Flanders* forced by his people to hide himself: He expels the *English* for siding with *Gaunt* against him: they take *Dam* and *Greveling*. *John* the *French Kings* son slays the *Earl*, quarrelling for *Bononia*: to him succeeded his daughter *Margaret*. The *French* recover *Dam*. The *English* beat the *Flemmings* at Sea, and take many of their Ships. *John* the *Earl of Hollands* son is made *Bishop of Liege* at 16 years old. The *Earl of Northumberland* is sent against the *Scots*, and recalled. *Jack Straw* rebelleth, and is slain. *Barnick* recovered from the *Scots*. The *Duke of Lancaster* having made peace in *France*, goeth against *Scotland*, but doeth nothing: he is reconciled to the *King*: the *Duke* claimeth *Castile*. *Flanders* put themselves under the *Kings* protection. The first *Marquis in England*, was *Robert de Vere* the *Kings* Minion, made *Marquis of Ireland*. Many Ships taken by *Arundel* and *Nottingham*: The *Lords* quarrell with the *King* about his favourites: the *Chief Justice* and others executed. Peace with *France* and *Scotland* for three years: *Warwick* and *Glocester* are displaced. *Edinburgh* burned by *King Richard*: The *Scots* invade *England*, and do much hurt in *Ireland*, and in the *Ile of Man*. *Cockermouth* taken by the *Scots* and *French*. The battell of *Otterburn* between *Douglas* and *Piercy*: *Robert Earl of Fife* the *Kings* younger son made *Regent*; his brother *Alexander* burned the Church of *Murray*, for which he was imprisoned. *Jone of Sicily* is strangled, and her sister *Mary* beheaded by *Charles of Dyrrachium*. *Lewis of Anjou* poysoned, whose son *Lewis* is made *King of Naples* by the *Pope*.

In the Church, *Boniface* the 9. sits 14 years. This Decad produced one Synod. The Order of *St. Peter of Pisa* founded by a *Pisan*. The *Archbishop of Magdeburg*, dancing all night with a woman, both fell down and broke their necks. The feast of our *Ladies* conception instituted. The *Dominicans* free the *Virgin Mary* from *Original sin*, and are opposed by the *Parisians*. *Annates* or *First-fruits* granted against the *Turks*.

In the East, *Constantinople* is besieged 8 years by *Bajazet*. *Manuel* goeth into *Italy* for aide against the *Turk*. *Philadelphia* taken by the *Turk*, with other places: *Caria* submitteeth. *Sigismund* in *Hungary* beaten by the *Turks*, and so are the *Latine Princes* who came to raise the siege from *Constantinople*. *Bajazet* hangeth the *King of Caramania*, and subdueth his Country. He is defeated at *Mount Stella* by *Tamerlan*, fettered with gold, and incaged. His son *Solyman* is kingd at *Adrianople*, *Bajazet* beateeth out his own brains, civil Wars among his sons 15 years: *Tamerlan* restores to the *Christians* the Countries taken by *Bajazet*

## of the principal Passages, &c.

*Bajazet*. In the West, the *Jews* are expelled *Germany*, and peace concluded there: the *Emperour* is imprisoned, and escapeth. The *Bishop of Magdeburg*, and *Saxony* quarrell. *John Galeas of Milan* made *Duke* for 100000 crowns. *Savoy* made a *Dutchie*. The *Electors* depose *Wenceslaus*, and choose *Frederick Duke of Brunswick*, who is slain by the *Bishop of Mentz* procurement, and *Robert Palgrave* succeeds 10 years. In *France* the *Duke of Britain* invades the *Constables* possessions: the *King* marching against him, falls mad. *Burgundy* made *chief Regent*, he banisheth the *Constable*: the *King* recovereth, and relapseth at a *Malque*: The *Regent* incengeth the *Queen* against the *Duke of Orleans*, as if he aimed at the *Kings* death and his childrens. The *French* reduce the *Millanois* to the obedience of the *Dutchies*, the *Kings* brothers wife. *John of Castile* killed by a fall from his horse, to whom succeeded *Henry 3.* his son 17 years. The *Rebels of Russia* subdued by the *Polander*. The *King of Poland Ladislaus*, claimeth *Hungary*, but is opposed: his brother *Vitondus* made great *Duke of Lithuania*; he invadeth *Scythia* and is overthrown by *Tamerlan*. *Sigismund of Hungary* makes peace with the *Polander* for 16 years: he puts to death 32 *Lords*. *Margaret of Denmark* makes a *League* with the *Prince of Rugia*, and with the *Earl of Holst*, and *Duke of Schleswick*. *Stockholm* stands out against the *Queens* decree, it is besieged. *Albert* promiseth to deliver it in 3 years, in performance whereof, *Lubeck*, *Danzk*, and some other *Hance-towns* are pledged. *Stockholm* surrendred. *Copper-Mines* adjudged to the *Crown*. *Ericus*, *Margarets* sisters son, is associated: he recovereth *Gothland*, paying to the *Teutonicks* 9000 *Nobles*. *Wenceslaus of Bohemia* escapeth 3 times out of prison: His son is disgraced at *Table* in the *French Court*, because *William* the second's body was not recovered from the *Frifons*; whereupon the *Frifons* are beaten, and the body brought thence to *Valencien*, and there buried. *Martin King of Aragon* seileth *Sicily* on his son. In *England*, the *King* quarrels with *London*, for not lending him 1000 l. The *Irish* rebell, and are beaten: *Warwick* banished, and *Arundel* beheaded. *Glocester* smothered at *Calis* by *Moubray*; *Hereford* and *Moubray* banished. *Mortimer* next heir to the *Crown* slain by the *Irish*; the *King* to be revenged goeth thither: At his return he is taken, and resigneth to the *Duke of Hereford*. In *Scotland*, *Robert 3.* reigns 17 years. Great troubles raised by *Duncan Earl of Buchan*. 600 *Highlanders* decide their quarrel before the *King*. The *Earl of March* falleth off to the *English*, and with *Hospur* waistes the borders. *Wark-Castle* taken by the *Scots*.

In the Church, to *Clement* the *Antipope* succeedeth *Bennet 13.* *Boniface*, upon the intreaty of the *Princes*, is willing to resign, but *Bennet* denieth: He is imprisoned at *Avignon* by the *French king*, and escapes. One Synod held this Decad at *Westminster*, where *Appeals* to *Rome* are inhibited, and *First-fruits* opposed. Because *Christ* began to preach at thirty years, therefore the *Jubilee* is reduced to thirty years. *John Hus* appeareth; divers of his *Disciples* burnt at *Ausburg*. The Order of *White-coats* in *Italy* 700 years, is brought thither again by *Chrysolorus*.

In the East, *Isa* being expelled by his brother *Mahomet* from *Prusa*, flieth to *Constantinople*. *Solyman* makes his brother *Isa* *Generall* against *Mahomet*, who ruleth at *Amasia*, and kills *Cardaules* whom *Tamerlan* had placed against *Mahomet*, who received as *King* by *Prusa*, *Nice*, and *Nicopolis*; He refused to marry *Tamerlans* daughter; He expels his brother *Isa* into *Caramania*, where he died obscurely. *Solyman* takes *Prusa*, against whom *Musa* another brother is employed by *Mahomet*; who having married the *Prince of Valachia's* daughter, is received *King* at *Adrianople* in *Solyman's* absence: But the *Greek Emperour* helpeth *Solyman*, and expels *Musa*, who suddenly affaulting *Solyman* in his riot, strangles him and possesseth his kingdom, and besiegeth the *Greek Emperour* in *Constantinople* for aiding *Solyman*. In the *Isthmus of Peloponnesus*, a Wall is built neer to *Corinth* against incursions. In the West, *Prague* is besieged, because *Wenceslaus* will not release the *Imperial Cities* from their Oath made to him. *Erfort* wasted. A fdition in *Mentz*. In *France*, the *Regent* dieth, and *Orleance* is made *Regent*. *Nemours* is bestowed on the *King of Navar* by the *French King*. The *Duke of Burgundy* opposeth the *Regent* in his Taxes. The *Duke* raiseth an Army, and is in shew made friends with the *Regent*, who

Years of Christ

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

who crosseth the Dukes intent in besieging Calice: He murdereth the Regent, flieth into Flanders, and returns with an Army, justifieth his fact, is absolved, and reconciled to the sons of Orleans; his daughter is married to the Dolphin. The Teutonicks are called into Poland by the Kings brother, who rebelleth, but is beaten by Vitondus. Ladislaus kills 50000 Teutonicks in Lituania, and takes the Master, with many prisoners. Ladislaus son to Andrew is sent for by the Hungarian Lords. Sigismund flieth into Moravia, and by the Bohemian help recovers Hungary. Ladislaus returneth into Italy. Steven the Vaivod executed for rebellion, and intelligence with the Turks, who defeat Sigismund. He quarrels with the Venetians. Gothland is redeemed from the Teutonicks; the Danes defeated in Frisia. The Holfatians pawned Flensburg and News to the King of Denmark. The Genuans beaten at sea by the Venetians, who protect the Vicenzans. Escalla of Verona poysoned by Novello, who kills his sons, and takes the City. Novello cuts off the eares and noses of the Venetian Ambassadors; but he being taken and his three children, with Verona and Padua, are all strangled at Venice. They buy Zara from Ladislaus for 100000 Crowns. John Bishop of Liege is expelled for refusing to take Orders; he is aided by the Duke of Burgundy, who burned the City and slew 36000. Parvis helps the Liegeois, who makes his son Bishop; both are killed by Johns friends, with 40000 people; the Bishop is restored, and the City fined at 200000 Crowns. In England, Henry 4. reigneth 13 years. Exeter, Surry, and Aumarle executed for striving to restore Richard, who is starved at Pomfret. The Queen returns into France. At Hallydown-hill the Scots are beaten; the English defeated in Wales. A Battel at Shrewsbury between the King and some Lords. A rebellion raised by Mowbray and the Archbishop of York. Barwick and other Castles taken by the King. The Earl of Northumberland fleeth into Wales. Glendower spoileth the Marches; he is aided by the French with 140 sail. The Prince invaleth Scotland. Northumberland and the Lord Bardolf overcome and slain. A false Richard entertained in Scotland. Warke-Castle taken by the Scots. Prince David starved by the Duke of Albany the Kings brother. Douglass kills many at Shrewsbury. Prince James going into France, is taken by the English; his father at the news thereof dieth with grief. Robert Duke of Albany Regent. The Scots enter England. The Earl of March is reconciled to the Regent.

In the Church, Boniface 9. yet sitteth. Bononia with some other places recovered from Galeas by the Pope. To him succeeded Innocent 4. 2 years: He removeth into Viterbium, upon a sedition raised by Ladislaus of Sicily against him. Gregory 12. succeedeth: He swears to resign for the peace of the Church: He forbids all union between his Cardinals and those of France. A Pasquil set up in Rome against him: The Devil discharging him of his oath, his forces beat Ladislaus out of Rome. Lewis Duke of Anjou, confirmed King of Naples. 2 Synods in this Decad; one at Aquileia, the other at Pisa, where Gregory and Benet are deposed, and Alexander 5. chosen. The Order of the White-coats is condemned. A Church at Luca built to the Crucifix.

1410

In the East, Musa is taken and strangled by Mahomet, who reigns 8 years. Orchanes, Solymans son, is taken, and his eyes are put out. Carmania subdued, and the Varachian Princes made Tributaries. In the West, Sigismund King of Hungary, son to Charles 4. reigneth Emperor 26 years: He meets the Pope in Italy about appointing the Council of Constance; He laboureth with France and England for a peace. Cleve made a Duke-dome. Sigismund, after his Brothers death, obtaineth Bohemia. Zisca rebelleth, and becomes Captain of the Hussites. In France, the Duke of Berry with the sons of Orleans make a faction against the Duke of Burgundy, whom the Dolphin also opposeth. Burgundy plots the death of Berry, Euron, and Orleans. The Dolphin is Regent, and Burgundy proclaimed Traitor; he makes his peace. Agincourt-Battel. Burgundy leagueth with England. The Dolphin dieth, and the Queen is Regent. Normandy invaded by the English; The Queen confined to Tours; Burgundy doth all; The Constable, Chancellor, and 1600 murdered. The English get the Isle of France and Normandy. The Dolphin murdereth the Burgundian. In Spain, 15000 Moors are slain: Arragon united to Sicily: Ferdinand Perez King of Sevil, buyes the Canaries from the King thereof. Ladislaus of Poland subdued much of Prussia, and defeateth the Teutonicks, and brings 52 of their Colours into Cracovia. Sigismund pawneth Sepusian to Ladislaus; He grants peace to the Teutonicks for 2 years. Upon the Popes request, Pipus the Florentine takes many places from the Venetians for Sigismund of Hungary: but being corrupted by Venetian gold, is by Sigismund choked with molten gold. 5 years peace between Hungary and Venice. The Danes are defeated in Frisia. Margaret of Denmark dieth, and Ericus reigneth alone

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Years of Christ

alone 29 years: wars between him and the Dukes of Holst about the Dutchy of Sclerwick. Wickliffs books are burnt in Prague, which made a sedition. Moravia is united to Bohemia: 7 Senators at Prague cast out at the windows. Sigismund the Emperour, upon his brothers death, reigneth in Bohemia 20 years. 40000 rebel with Zisca. The Venetians recover divers places taken by Pipus: A part of St. Marks Church the Palace burnt; a Decree made against the building of a new Palace. The Duke reverleth the Decree of paying 1000 Ducats: the Turks claim Ionia from them; They take Lamp-sacum. In Flanders, Philip the Good rules 44 years; he fideth with the English. The Frisons revolt from Holland: the Earl dyeth, being bitten by a mad dog. Jaquelin his daughter succeeds 18 years. The Bishop of Liege resigneth his Bishoprick, and obtains of the Emperour the Earldom of Holland, being educated for want of heirs-male. In England, Henry the 5. reigneth 9 years, he banisheth the French: some French executed for Treason. At Agincourt 10000 French slain, and as many taken by the English. The Emperour cometh into England; he with Burgundy side with the English: Harfien besieged, and relieved: the English take Caen, and other places. The Genuans, French and Scots defeated: Queen Joan suspected of Sorcery, and committed. Peace with France and Burgundy. Donald of the Isles, recovers his Earldom of Ross: Wars between him and the Earl of Mar. Barwick and Roxburg besieged by Albany and Douglas.

In the Church, sits Alexander 5. 11 moneths, then John 22: He removeth to Ariminum. Gregory stayeth at Rome, and Benet goeth out of France into Aragon. John goeth to the Council at Constance, he with Benet are deposed. Gregory resigneth, and is made chief Cardinal. John in disguise is taken and imprisoned. Martin 5. is chosen 7 years, and so this Schism endeth. The Pope goeth from Constance against the will of the Emperour, and so the Council endeth. The Pope loseth some Towns. In this Decad was held the Council of Constance, where were 4 Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 346 Bishops, 564 Abbots and Doctors, besides multitudes of secular Princes. In this Council were found of the Benedictines 15107 houses in Europe. Hus is first Excommunicated; his books, and then himself, burnt. Wickliffs Doctrine is condemned, and his books burnt. Jerome of Prague is also burnt: their ashes cast into the river. Sir John Oldcastle hanged and burnt for Religion. Gerson persecuted by the Pope, for speaking against the Roman Church. Zisca's followers are called Thaborites.

In the East, John 7. son to Andronicus, reigneth 5 years; then John 8. 20 years. To Mahomet the Turk succeeded Amurath 2. his son 38 years. The false Mustapha set up by the Greeks, is strangled. Constantinople is besieged: Mustapha the Sultans brother taketh Nice, and is strangled. Servia, and much of Natolia subdued by the Turk: Smyrna annexed to the Turks Empire, the Prince and his son being taken. The Turks take Theffalonia from the Venetians, and subdue Etolia, whilst three Princes strive for it. In the West, Zisca is beaten by the Imperialists, and loseth his only eye: He overthroweth the Imperialists. Frederick Marquis of Misfia, made Duke of Saxony and Elector, for money. Zisca dieth of the Plague, and orders a Drum to be made of his skin. The Elector is defeated by the Hussites, and flyeth: they burn Aldenburg. In France, the Dolphin is cited for murdering Burgundy, and for non-appearance is disinherited. The King dyeth, and his son Charles 7. reigneth 38 years. The English are beaten by the Bastard of Orleans: they take Pontarson, and the French Tourney. The battel of Harrings. Alphonsus of Arragon first adopted by Jean of Naples, and then Lewis of Anjou. Arragon and Navar joyne against Castile. Vitondus accepteth Bohemia, which the King of Poland refused. The Teutons set against the Polanders by the Emperour: the King breaks his leg in hunting. King Ericus of Denmark being returned from Syria, freeth all that should build timber-houses in Essene from Taxes for 10 years, and for 20 those that built of stone. The League renewed between Scotland and Denmark. Vandalia forbid Traffique in the Danish Seas. Henry Duke of Sclerwick slain in scaling the walls of Flensburg. The Pope raiseth forces against the Hussites. 3 Armies of Franks, Bavarians, and Saxons fall upon Bohemia: they all flee away without fight. The Venetians denounce War against Philip of Milan, for oppressing the Florentines. Philip takes Brescia, which again revolted. Philip of Flanders aideth the Duke of Brabant against the Duke of Gloucester, and makes War against Jaquelin of Holland, whose heir he got himself to be after her death. He instituted the Order of the Golden-fleece. The Lords of Holland dislike John of Brabant, and call in his brother the Earl of St. Pol, but the Duke is received, and the faction of the Countess banished. Jaquelin divorced from the Duke, and married to the Duke of Gloucester, who also forsakes her. King Henry of England is declared heir of France, and

1420

8111

Regent

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

Regent during the life of *Charls*. The Duke of *Clarence* slain; the King pawneth his Crown to Cardinal *Beaufort*, for 20000 l. The Duke of *Bedford* Regent of *France*. *Henry* 6. reigneth in *England* 38 years; he is crowned King of *France*. The *French* beaten at *Vernol*; Great-Ordinance now first used in *England*. *Warwick* left Lieutenant in *France*. *Talbot* doth good service in *France*; *Salisbury* slain at the siege of *Orleans*, which is relieved by *Joan of Ark*. *Suffolk* and *Talbot* taken; *S. Dennis* and other places lost by the *English*: the *Scots* aide the *French*; the Earl of *Buchan* Constable of *France*: King *James* carried by King *Henry* into *France*, he is ransomed; *Buchan* and *Douglass* slain at *Vernol*; *Mordo* with his two sons, and *Lenox*, executed in *Scotland* for oppression; *Alexander* Lord of the *Isles*, rebelleth and is taken; his brother kills the Earl of *Cathness*, and defeats the Earl of *Mar*. *Alexanders* brother is driven into *Ireland*, his head is sent thence to the King.

In the Church, *Clement* 8. is chosen Antipope, by means of *Alphonfus* of *Aragon*, he sate 8 years; he is forced to resigne, and become Bishop of *Majorca*. Pope *Martin* who refused to give the title of *Sicily* to *Alphonfus*, is reconciled to him. *Julian* the Cardinal sent by the Pope against *Bohemia*, and to treat with the Emperour about a Synod at *Basil*: *Rene* King of *Sicily*, striving for *Lorrain*, is taken. *Alphonfus* seileth on *Naples*. At *Papia* was a Synod held, which because of the Plague, was removed to *Sena*, and dissolved by the Pope, for fear of *Aragon*. The *Adamites* revive in *Bohemia*; and the *Eremites* at *Rome*: one Set of the *Thaborites*, call themselves *Orphans*, for the losse of *Zisca*. *Wickliff*'s body after 41 years, is digged up and burnt.

430

In the East, the Prince of *Epirus* is forced to send his three sons to the Turk, *Scanderbeg* was one of them: The Turks taketh many places from the Christians; he exoculateth and geldeth *Gregory* son to the Despot of *Sinderovia*: the Greek Emperour with *Demetrius* Prince of *Peloponnesus* repair to Italy for help, and are present at the Council of *Florence*. In the West, *Sigismund* is crowned at *Millan* and at *Rome*; he makes *Fran. Gonzaga* Prince of *Millan*, and his son *Lewis* Marquess of *Mantua*: the Emperesse imprisoned upon suspicion, and released: the Emperour died of a surfeit of Melons: his son in law *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, is made King of *Bohemia*. The *English* lose *Chartres*, are defeated at *Vivaine*, and subdue the Normans. *Paris* falls off to the *French*, the Duke of *Burbon* sets up the Dolphin, who are reconciled to the King. The Marshal of *France* burnt for Witchcraft. Peace made between *Castile* and *Portugall*. The Moors are beaten. The *Genuans* take *Arragon*, *Navar*, with 100 Princes, and 200 Knights at *Cajetta*; they are sent to the Duke of *Millan*, and by him released. The *Castilians* and *Portugals* beaten by the Moors. *Alphonfus* 5. obtains many victories against the Moors; great troubles in *Castile* about the Constable. A sedition of *Rusticks* in *Hungary*. *Ladislaus* of *Poland*, hath fealty sworn to him by the *Vayvod* of *Valachia*. The *Swedes* rebell against the Danes; the King hardly escapeth with his treasure into *Gothland*. *Christopher* Duke of *Bavaria*, sisters son to *Ericus*, is sent to, to be King. *Julian* the Cardinal flyeth out of *Bohemia*. The *Thaborites* take divers towns. The Cup is allowed to the *Bohemians* in the Council of *Basil*. *Bohemia* much distracted upon the death of *Sigismund*. The *Venetians* defeat *Philip* of *Millans* forces by sea; they fight with him neer *Cremona*. *Millan* invaded by the Duke of *Savoy* and *Montferrat*. *Philip* loseth many places, and his Generall is taken. *Flanders* spoiled by the Duke of *Glocester*, who carrieth away many captive Children. The *Hollanders* for scouring the Seas from the Easterlings, have carried a Broom ever since on their main-top. *Jaquelin* surrendreth her Countries for the ransome of her husband. *Jone* of *Ark* is burnt for a Witch. The Treaty of *Arras*, where the *Burgundian* sideth with the *French* against the *English*: He is raised by the Protector of *England* from the siege of *Callis*. *Warwick* the Regent spoileth *Picardy*. The *French* twice beaten in *Normandy*. In *Scotland* the Earle of *March* made Earle of *Buchan*. *Roxburg* besieged by the *Scots* King, who is murdered by the Earle of *Abol*. His son *James* 2. succeedeth 23 years: the Chancellor and Regent at odds, and are reconciled. *Douglass* troubleth the State; the Queen takes the young King from the Chancellour.

In the Church, *Eugenius* 4. sits 15 years; the *Columnii* rebel, and he flieth in a disguised habite to *Florence*; the people fortifie the Popes Castle against him; they are at last reconciled: he helpeth *Rene* against *Alphonfus*; he attempteth to adjourn the Synod of *Basil* to *Ferrara*, but is opposed and suspended by the Synod: It is decreed, that the Council is above the Pope. The Greek Emperour acknowledges the Popes Supremacy; nevertheless he is deposed by the Council of *Basil*. Queen *Joan* of *Sicily* dieth, and nameth *Rene* her heire, who now was a Prisoner in *Burgundy*.

## of the principal Passages, &c.

*dy*. *Alphonfus* is taken, as he was going to take possession. The *Aragonians* defeated by *Rene*; the Council of *Basil* continued there, at *Ferrara* and *Florence*, 15 years. The *Bohemians* are declared sons of the Church by the Emperour and Bishop of *Constance*; this was engraven on Marble, in golden letters at *Prague*; their pragmatical Sanction published at *Paris*, but condemned by the Pope as heretical.

In the East, *Theodore* the Emperours brother, and the Turk besiege *Constantinople*: The other brother *Constantine* recovered *Peloponnesus*, and rebuilds the wall. He succeeds to his brother in the Empire 8 years. *Peloponnesus* divided between the other two brothers; they pay tribute to *Mahomet*. The Turks are beaten out of *Hungary* by *John Huniades*. *Woldavia* won by the *Hungarians*. *Huniades* defeats the Turk twice, and kills two Bassas. *Scanderbeg* escapeth into *Epirus*, and possesseth it. *Bulgaria* lost by the Turks, whereof 30000 were slain: Peace for 10 years between the Turks and *Hungarians*; they break the peace and are defeated by the Turks at *Varna*. *Scanderbeg* refuseth to make peace with the Turk. *Peloponnesus* taken by *Amurath*. *Huniades* defeateth the Turks in *Rascia*, and is defeated by them in the *Plaines of Cassovia*. *Scanderbeg* overcomes *Mustapha* twice; *Amurath* dieth at the siege of *Croja*: To him succeeded *Mahomet* the great, his son 32 years; he begins with the murder of his Brothers. In the West, *Frederick* Arch-Duke of *Austria* reigneth 53 years: Wars in *Bavaria* between *Lewis* the father, and the son. *Lucelburg* sold by the Emperour to the Duke of *Saxony*; causeth war: The Emperour reuinth the Crown of *Bohemia*. *Huniades* makes war on the Emperour for not restoring the King, and Crown of *Hungary*. The Imperial Cities and Earl of *Wirtzburg* fall out. The *Norimbergers* defeated 8 times by *Albert* of *Brandenburg*. The Duke of *Burgundy* ransometh the Duke of *Orleans*, for 300000 Crowns. The Parliament of *Tholose* set up for *Languedoc*. *Diepe* besieged by *Talbot*, and relieved by the Dolphin. 5 years Truce with *England*: the Duke of *Brittain* starveth his brother, for intelligence with the *English*. *Pont L'Arch* taken from the *English* by the Duke of *Brittain*, who with *French* help, recovereth also *Normandy*. War between *Castile* and *Navar*. *Ladislaus* of *Poland* is chosen King of *Hungary*. *Casimire* the Kings brother made Duke of *Lituania*, the Prince thereof being slain. *Silesia* waiked by the *Polanders*. The Turks exoculate the Despot of *Rascia* and his sons, who fled to *Ladislaus*; war between *Masovia* and *Lituania*. The King is killed: *Casimire* refuseth to be King: *Boleslaus* Duke of *Masovia* was chosen; then *Casimire* accepted it, and reigned 45 years: He neglects *Polonia*, and resides in *Lituania*; he refuseth his Coronation-Oath, till the *Polanders* began to reject him, then he took it. *Ladislaus* being chosen King of *Hungary*, the Queen carrieth her son and crown of *Hungary* to the Emperour. *Julian* the Cardinal perswades the *Hungarians* to break the 10 years peace with the Turks; whereupon the King is defeated and slain at *Varna*. *Ladislaus Posthumus* succeeded 14 years: he was son to *Albert*. *Huniades* kills the *Vayvod* of *Valachia*, who detained him, after the battell of *Varna*. *Huniades* and the *Polander* fight for *Valachia*. *Christopher* of *Bavaria* reigns in *Suevia* 8 years; he restores to *Adolphus* the Dukedome of *Sleswick*; the Rebels in *Julia* defeated, and the chief of them executed: He is crowned first in *Suevia*, then in *Norway* and *Denmark*, he lost much treasure by shipwrack; to him succeeded *Christiernus* Earl of *Oldenburg* 30 years; *Adolphus* Duke of *Sleswick* was named, but he refused the Crowns. The *Swedes* chose *Charls* son to *Canutus* for their King. In *Bohemia*, *Ladislaus Posthumus* *Alberts* son reigneth 19 years: *Menard* the governour is imprisoned, and *Prague* taken by the *Thaborites*. A great losse of goods in *Venice*, by an inundation. The *Venetians* take all from *Sforza*, which they had given him, for aiding *Philip* of *Millan*, whom they defeat, and take *Landum* with *Placentia*. *Landum* recovered by *Sforza*. Saint Marks Church robbed by a *Cretan* of two Millions of Gold; the *Venetian* Ambassador murdered by *Sforza*. *Philip* of *Flanders* restoreth the Dutcheffe of *Luxelburg*: he pacifieth the factions of *Hoecks* and *Cabillaucks*. An inundation at *Dort* destroyed 100000 people. *Philip* and the *Gauntois* make war, because they refuse to pay his customes of Salt. The Duke of *Orleans* who had been prisoner in *England* 25 years, is ransomed by *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*; who was therefore called the Good. The Duke of *Glocesters* wife imprisoned for Sorcery: *Pauls* sceptre fired by lightning; *Whittington* builds *New-gate* and a Colledge. The King hath with *Renes* daughter, whom he married, *Anou* and *Mayne*. *Thomas* Eyre built *Leaden-hall*: The Duke of *Sommerfet* made Regent of *France*: the Duke of *Glocester*, and the Cardinal of *Winchester* die suddenly, within fifteen dayes of each other. The *English* surprise *Fogeres*, and in three years lose *Normandy* and *Gascoine*. The Irish suppressed: the Duke of *Suffolk* beheaded at Sea. *Douglass* and his brother executed at *Edenburg*: *William* sonne to *James* *Douglass*, the Kings favorite, displaceth the Chancellor and Regent, which caused much mischief: Sir *James* *Smart* who had married

Stiff 2

the

1440

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

the Kings mother banished: the English beaten back from invading Scotland; 3 years peace concluded. Rene expelled out of Naples by Alphonsus, who promiseth to pay to the Pope yearly 8000 ounces of Gold.

In the Church, Eugenius sits yet, in whose time the 30 Schisme breaks out: Amadeus Duke of Savoy being chosen; he was called Felix 5. and fate 9 years, having been Duke 40 years, he became an Heremite: Eugenius dieth, to whom succeedeth Nicolas 5. 8 years; he erected the Vatican Library: Felix resigneth, and is made Cardinal and Legat. 4 Synods held this Decad; one of them at Lateran; to nullifie the Council of Basil. The Feast of our Lady's Visitation instituted at Basil. Palmerius the Chronologer burnt for heresies.

1450

In the East, Constantinople is taken, the Emperor slain, and 60000 people carried away captives. Scanderbeg beateth the Turks many times. Mahomet striketh off the head of his fair Concubine Irene, at a publique meeting: He recovers Servia; he loseth an eye. Humides beats him off from the siege of Belgrad, 40000 Turks slain, he besiegeth Rhodes, but is beat back by the Pope and Genuans; he loseth Lemnos, taketh Corinth, dismantlith Athens; he marrieth the daughter of Demetrius Prince of Peloponnesus, whom he expelled, and gives him the town Oenium, and the Custome of Salt for his maintenance. In the West, the Emperour restores the Crown of Hungary; the Duke of Brunswick taken by the Bishop of Colen in fight. A sedition in Austria of ten years continuance. The Pope displaceth the Bishop of Mentz for refusing to pay his First-fruits, which caused much trouble: the Emperour is taken by the Citizens in Vienna, and released. Aquitain revolteth to the French: A Parliament set up at Grenoble in Dauphiny. Talbot is slain, the Dolphin rebelleth, and flies into Burgundy. The French burn Sandwich; the Duke of Alençon imprisoned for intelligence with the English. The King being forewarned of poyson, abstained so long from meat, that he starved himself and died. The Moors in Andalusia defeated. By the death of Charles, Navar fell to Blanch the repudiated wife of Henry, and Arragon to Ferdinand son to King John. To Alphonsus of Arragon succeeded his brother John King of Navar, Father to Ferdinand the Catholick, 21 years, Casimire of Poland refuseth to restore Prussia to the Teutonicke; at last he is defeated by them. Pedolia invaded by the Tartars. A league between Poland and Bohemia. Huniades made Regent of Hungary; his death plotted by the Earl of Cilia. Ulrich slain by Ladislaus, son to Huniades; he is executed, and his brother Matthias imprisoned; the king dieth, and the same Matthias is chosen, 32 years: he was forced to promise to his keeper Podiebrad, who was Regent of Bohemia, to marry his daughter, and to pay him 60000 Crowns. Charles of Suevia is forced for his tyranny to flee to Dansk with his treasure. Christiern is chosen King of Suevia; the King seizeth upon Schleswick and Holst, being cheated by the death of Adolphus: Hamburg submits to Denmark. Ulrick Earl of Cilia, Governour of Austria, and of the king of Bohemia's person; he is removed and restored; the King dieth. Pediehard crowned, he reigned 13 years; he is opposed by Silesia for being a Thaborite. The Venetians expel the Florentines out of their territories. Cosmo aideth Sforza against them, who taketh Milan, and is honoured by the Pope with a rich Sword. A peace is made between Venice, Florence, and Sforza. The French king offended for the peace made between England and the Flemmings. Jack Cade rebelleth in Kent, and is executed. The Duke of York takes arms against the King; he submits, and swears Fealty. He accuseth Sommerfet, and is accused by him; Sommerfet sent to the Tower, released, and made Captaine of Calice. York, Warwick and Salisbury take arms; the battell of S. Albans; The King hurt and taken, York made Protector, and displaced. 9 years peace with Burgundy. Warwick goeth to Calice: the King forces beaten at Blore-beath, by the Earl of Salisbury: At Ludlow the Yorkshire men take arms. Douglass returning from Rome is pardoned, and made Vice-roy; He is slain at Sterling, for plotting against the King: His brother James besiegeth it, and is forced thence by Huntly: His forces forsake him, he fleeth into England: The Family of the Douglasses put to the Horne. Archbishop of S. Andrews made Chancellor. Douglass with the English invade Scotland: the King at the siege of Roxburg is slain by the breaking of a Cannon.

In the Church, Calixtus 3. sits 3 years; he procured a warr between the Persian and Turk, he left behinde him 500000 crowns. Pius 2. succeedeth 5 years; He was Aeneas Sylvius, and Scribe in the Council of Basil; he will have no appeals from the Pope to a Council; he thought otherways at Basil. Calixtus 3. instituted the Feast of Christs transfiguration, upon the defeating of the Turks in Hungary.

In

## of the principal Passages, &c.

In the East, Ussum Cassanes the Persian makes war against Mahomet. Mytilene and other places taken by the Turks. Trapezund taken. David the Emperour and his two sons killed. Mahomet taketh Chalcis from the Venetians. The Governor of Myssa sleid. Scanderbeg dieth. Epirus taken again, and Scanderbeg's sons driven out. Mahomet's Fleet spoiled, bound for Trapezund: The Turks waste Hungary. In the West, the Emperour renders his Daughter to Mahomet, if he will alter his Religion; but Albert of Bavaria stole her away. The King of Bohemia freed the Emperour from those of Vienna. Brunswick makes war against the Hans-towns. The Emperour entertained at Rome by the Pope. The Turks enter Germany. In France, Lewis 11 reigneth 22 years: His covetousnesse causeth a Civil war: He redeems the Towns mortgaged to the Duke of Burgundy at the Treaty of Arras: The Duke with the Lords besiege Paris; the King dispereth the Lords by fair promises. He takes the Duchy of Normandy from his brother, and fleeth to the Duke of Burgundy. The King makes the Duke of Britain to renounce the League with Burgundy, and causeth Liege to rebell against the Duke. The Duchy of Guyen bestowed on the Kings brother. Divers Lords of Castile league against Henry their King; they force him to put away his supposed daughter, and to declare his brother Alphonsus heir: Alphonsus is crowned, and Henry deposed; but at last Henry prevaileth, and Alphonsus dieth. Peace setled in Castile, and Isabel the Kings sister is declared heir, she marrieth Ferdinand of Arragon. Marieburg yields to the King of Poland. Pomerania after 180 years united to Polonia. Peace with the Teutonicke. Ladislaus the Kings son is designed King of Bohemia, after the death of George. The Tartars defeated by the Vaivod of Moldavia. Matthias is crowned King of Hungary at Alba; Venice alloweth him 60000 Crowns yearly, and the Pope 50000 against the Turks: his Uncle is beheaded at Constantinople by the Turks. Transylvania reduced by Matthias; he is beaten and wounded in Valachia, by the Vayvods treachery. War with Bohemia. 10000 Captives carried away by the Turk out of Hungary. The Swed s rebell against the Danes: the King forced to flee. Charles is sent for, but quickly forsaketh them again. A rebellion in Holst by Gerard the Kings brother, who is imprisoned. The Danes take two English ships: Their goods and persons attached in England. Gerard expelled out of Holst. King George of Bohemia condemned by the Pope of heresie; Matthias of Hungary set up against him. The Venetians lose Negropont to the Turk. Charles of Burgundy helps the Pope against the Turk; he falls out with his father, and is reconciled again. Arnold Duke of Guelders imprisoned a year by his son. Liege submits and is pardoned. Philip d'eth: His son Charles succeedeth 10 years; he demolisheth Liege for rebelling. Gaunt submits and is pardoned. In England, York is attained, and the King taken. York confirmed Heir to the Crown; he is slain by the Queen: his son Edward defeats the Queens forces, and she his. Edward 4. reigns 22 years. Henry and the Queen are overcome, and flee into Scotland. The Queen enters Northumberland with French forces, and is beaten: the King fleeth into Wales; he is taken disguised, and sent to the Tower. Sheep transported into Spain. The King marrieth the Lady Elizabeth Gray. Warwick plotteth against King Edward, who is defeated, and committed to the Archbishop of York; he escapeth to London; He defeats the Lincolnshir-men. Warwick and Clarence flee into France; Edward fleeth to Burgundy. Henry released, and the Crown entailed upon Clarence; Warwick is made Regent. In Scotland, James 3. reigneth 28 years; Roxburg and War-Castles taken; Donald of the Isles rebelleth, and is killed. King Henry reigns Burwick to the Scots; Peace with England 15 years. The Lords of Barcellona call in Rene to be King of Castile; the French assist.

In the Church sits Paul 2. 6 years: He was a Dunce; therefore hated Schollars. He imprisoned Platina and Pomponius Leans; He spent upon the Emperours entertainment in 17 dayes 18000l. Cardinals are privileged to ride on Mules. Divers bribe the Turk, to be Patriarch of Constantinople.

In the East, the Turks are twice beaten by the Persians. Dalmatia, Austria, Myssa, Bosna, Styria, and Carinthia wasted by the Turks; they win Taurica Cherfonesus, and are beaten in Valachia. Ali-Beg defeated in Hungary. The Turks do much hurt in Hungary, Dacia, and Venetian territories; 30000 Turks killed in Transylvania; divers Islands taken by the Turk. In the West, war between the Palatise and Bavare about Mentz: The Grisons league with the Helvetians: The Archbishop of Svirigonium fleeth to the Emperour with much treasure; he is made Archbishop of Saltzburg. Matthias of Hungary subdueth much of Austria: Peace with Hungary. The French King takes Amiens and S. Quintins from the Duke of Burgundy, who recovereth S. Quintins; he hireth one to kill

Years of Christ.

1460

1470



kill the King. The Constable seeketh to corrupt *Burbon*. Peace with France and England; peace also between Burgundy and Britain; The Constable is executed. Orange made a Principality subject to France. At *Digion* in Burgundy, a Parliament is erected: The King takes divers Towns from the Dutchesse of Burgundy. The Switzers begin to serve the French: The Archers are put down, which were instituted by *Charles 7.* The Bishop of *Pampelone* killed by the Constable, upon suspicion of adultery with the Queen. *Ferdinand* the Catholique reigneth 41 years; He and *Isabel* claim *Portugal*, and seise on it; she is declared heire of *Castile*. The first Voyage of Spaniards to *Guiny*. In hatred to *Matthias*, *Casimir* is made King of *Poland*; but he is reconciled to the people, and *Casimir* returneth. *Poland* invaded by the Hungarians, and *Russia* by the Tartars. The Teutonicks renew the war with *Poland*, and then submit: the Tartars waste *Podolia*, and the Turks *Carinthia*. It was agreed, that *Matthias* of Hungary should enjoy *Moravia* and *Silesia* for his life-time; and should be killed King of *Bohemia*; but after his death, these Provinces should return to *Bohemia* on payment of 600000 Crowns, and the rest of *Bohemia* should fall to *Matthias*, if he survived *Ladislaus*. Much mischief done by the Turks in Hungary, during the Nuptials of the King with the Daughter of *Aragon*. *Matthias* recovers from the Turks 30000 Captives, and wasteth their Country 30 miles: He takes also divers Towns in *Styria*, because the Emperor kept not promise. The King of *Denmark* enters *Suevia*, without asking any thing; He is honorably entertained at *Rome*. *George* of *Bohemia* dieth with grief, that the Prince was taken by *Matthias*. *Ladislaus* the son of *Casimir* is elected 46 years. *Matthias* being rejected, invadeth *Bohemia*. *Sicily* and *Venice* league against the Turks; they spoil divers Turkish places. The King of *Cyprus* doth bequeath his Wife and Kingdom to the Venetians: they settle her in it. The Turks are driven from the siege of *Lepanto*; Peace is made with them. *S. Quintus* taken by the French, they invade Burgundy. The Burgundian sideth with King *Edward* against King *Henry*. The *Frisons* refuse to pay the Chimney-penny demanded by the Duke: he prevailed in France. The Duke of *Guelders* being angry with his Sonne, sells his Duchy to the Burgundian for 92000 Florens, and an annual pension. The Emperor refuseth to make the Duke King of Burgundy; and he denieth to match his Daughter with his Son *Maximilian*. The Duke of Burgundy, and *Rene* Duke of *Lorain*, invade each others territories. *Nancy*, which *Rene* had taken, is besieged by Duke *Charles*, who is slain there: his daughter *Mary* succeeded: the French seise on some places of the Duchy: *Maximilian* is espoused to her, and the Dolphin rejected. *Henault* recovered from the French; *Guelders* revolteth; the French lose *Tournay*; the Lord of *Montigny* is made Governor of *Holland*. In England King *Henry* is taken by *Edward*, and committed; *Warwick* killed in *Barnet-Fight*; the Queen is taken; *Glocester* murders the King and Prince; *Pembroke* and *Risford* escape into Britany; *Oxford* sent prisoner into Normandy; the Laves of *Henry* cancelled: the Burgundian animateth the King against the French, but faileth him; therefore he makes peace with France, upon a match between the Dolphin and his daughter *Elizabeth*. The King bribes the Duke of Britany to have the Earl of *Richmond*, but faileth: *George* Duke of *Clarence* condemned of treason; he is drowned in a But of *Malmsey* in the Tower: the King hated for his covetousness. The King of *Denmark* relinquisheth his Title to the *Orcades*, upon the matching of his daughter *Margaret* to the King of *Scotland*. *S. Andrews* made an Archbishoprick: the King persecutes the Archbishop, gives himself to rapack and oppression; he makes one *Cockram* a Mason his favourite: *John* Earl of *Mar* the Kings brother, for treason, hath his veins opened, so that he bleedeth to death.

In the Church sate *Sixtus 4.* 13 years: He sets out a Fleet against the Turks; A Jubile at *Rome*, the Jubile now reduced to 25 years: He erecteth *Glasgow* and *S. Andrews* into Archbishopricks in Scotland; in *Castile* he instituteth the Inquisition against the Jewes and Moors. *Weselius* a Preacher at *Worms*, burnt for speaking against Indulgences.

In the East, to *Mahomet* succeeded his son *Bajazet 2.* 32 years: *Zemes* another son aspireth and flieth into Egypt and *Rhodes*. *Epirus* recovered by *John* son to *Scanderbeg*; the Turks lose *Besnia*; they take *Valachia*, and invade *Moldavia*. *Bajazet* attempted to destroy the Janizaries, but failing, temporiseth with them: He bestows other lands on the King of *Caramania* for his kingdom. The two *Bassa*s sent against Egypt for receiving of *Zemes*, are defeated and taken. *Bajazet* sues to the Egyptian Sultan for peace: *Zemes* is sent to the Pope: The Despot of *Servia* takes 7000 Turks with their plunder, and rescueth 10000 Captives. In the West, *Matthias* takes *Vienna* with other

other places. *Maximilian* chosen King of the Romans: the Duke of Saxony helpeth the Emperor against *Matthias*, and peace is made: *Maximilian* invades *Picardy*, takes *Artois*, *Arras*, and *Burgundy*; he brings back his daughter that was betrothed to the French king; he takes *Belgrad* upon the death of *Matthias*. In France, *Charles 8.* reigns 14 years: The Duke of *Orleans* leagueth with divers Lords against the Kings sister who was Regent; they submit, and league again: the King prevails against the Britains: *Orleans* committed to the Castle of *Bourges*, and afterward released: The Duke of Britain being dead, king *Charles* takes divers places from his daughter and heir *Anne*; the difference is referred to *Maximilian*, he takes her part. *Francis* of *Navar* poysoned; his sister *Katherine* succeedeth. The Castilians take the Canaries. The Duke of *Braganza* executed, for intelligence with *Castile*. Many Towns taken in *Granado*. *Castile* takes *Malaga* from the Moors: the Portugals begin to sail to the East: the Friars of *Jerusalem* receive an annual pension of 1000 Ducats from the king of *Castile*. *Charles* of *Anjou* dieth; he was Titular king of *Naples* and *Sicily*, from him the French kings claim their titles to those kingdoms. *Novograd* in *Lituania* is taken by the Muscovites. *Casimir* the King of *Poland*'s son, will rather die, then lie with a Woman to recover his health. The Tartars spoile *Moldavia*. The *Vayvod* swears fealty to the King of *Poland*, who thereupon drives the Turks thence. *Casimir*'s youngest son Bishop of *Cracovia*. The *Polander* beats the Tartars in *Russia* and *Podolia*. *Matthias* of Hungary warreth successfully against the Turks and Germans, and takes many Towns; he makes peace with the Emperor. To *Christiern* of *Denmark* succeedeth his son *John*; he hath some controversies with the English. *Steno Sture* made Governor of *Swedeland*. *Venice* and *Florence* joyn against the Pope. *Ferrara* ingratefull to the Venetians, who had got him his Estate; most of the Italian Princes league against *Venice*; at last a peace is made: The Venetians have war in *Austria* and *Rhetia*; they are beaten near *Trent*. *Katherine* the Queen of *Cyprus* resigneth her kingdom to *Venice*, to whom they allow 50 l. weight of gold yearly, and the Castle of *Azola*. In *Holland*, the *Cabillaucks* take *Dort*, and the *Hoecks Leyden*: War between *Holland* and *Utrecht*. *Mary* of Burgundy is killed by a fall from her horse; *Maximilian* is received Governor of *Holland*, but rejected in *Flanders*; Her daughter *Margaret* betrothed to the Dolphin; Prince *Philip* is received. Troubles between *Antwerp* and *Bruges*. *Egmond* made Governor of *Holland*; then *Englebert* Earl of *Nassau*. Troubles in *Frisia*. As *Maximilian* endeavoured to reconcile *Bruges* with *Antwerp*, he is imprisoned, and some of his servants killed: Upon resignation of the government to his son, he is set free. The Emperor makes *Albert* of *Saxony* Governor of the Low-Countries; he is opposed by the Flemings, who take *Rotterdam*, and lose it again to *Maximilian*. The Scots invade England, and the English *Scotland*; *Barnwick* taken from the Scots. The French will pay no Tribute to England. *Edward 5.* succeeds his father one moneth: *Gloucester* made Protector, then King; his name was *Richard 3.* he reigned 3 years: the Queens kindred cut off, the Princes are murdered, and *Buckingham* beheaded. *Morton* Bishop of *Ely*, attempteth to advance the Earl of *Richmond*, who landeth, and killeth King *Richard*; this was *Henry 7.* who reigned 23 years; the Kingdom is entailed to his heirs; He instituted the Guard. The Lord *Lovel* rebelleth; and *Lambert* a Counterfeit set up, who was crowned at *Dublin*, and overthrown at *Stoke*, he is made a Skul lion in the Privy-kitchen. Peace with *Scotland*. England sides with Britany against France. The Northern Rebels overthrown, and the chief executed. In *Scotland*, *Cockram* the Mason is made Earl of *Mar*: The Kings brother *Alexander* Duke of *Albany* flieth into England; he is reconciled, and *Cockram* hanged: *Albany* made Regent, but out of fear escapeth into France; he died by a splint in Tilting with *Lewis* of *Orleans*. The Lords rebell against the King, and make his son *James* their Captain: the Kings forces beaten, and he slain: His son *James 4.* succeeded 26 years; he alwayes wore an Iron-chain in stead of a girdle, as a penance for his rebellion. A double-bodied Monster from the navel upward, born in *Scotland*.

In the Church, sate *Innocent 8.* 7 years: He was the first Pope that advanced his Bastards. *Zemez*, *Bajazet*'s brother, delivered to him by the Master of *Rhodes*, for which he is made a Cardinal: this Pope died of an Apoplexy.

In the East, the Turks aide the Rebels in Hungary against the King, whom they defeat, and took his General in *Croatia*. The Turks are beaten by *Ericus* Duke of *Brumswick*. *Zemez* poysoned by the Pope. The Turks do much mischief in the Venetian Territories. They take *Lepanto*, *Modene*, and other places; 80000 of them slain in *Russia*. In the West, the Emperour being dead, his son *Maximilian* succeedeth 25 years: he drives the Turks out of *Croatia*. *Basil* falls off from the Emperour to the Switzers: the Emperour

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

perour is defeated by them, and grants them peace. Maximilian marrieth Anne of Britany by Deputy; but the French King marrieth her, and casts off Maximilian's daughter. Charles besiegeth Naples, where the French malady breaks out. He takes Naples and loseth it again: He dyeth, to whom succeeded Lewis 2. Duke of Orleans, 18 years: he divorceth his wife, and takes Anne the former Kings widow: he takes Milan in his mothers right, and puts the Grandchilde of Gabeas into a Covent. Alphonso of Portugal kill'd with a fall from his horse. Granada conquered by Ferdinand and Isabel. America discovered by Columbus; he brought home the Venerial Pox. Jews and Moors banished. The French King resignes to Ferdinand Roussillon, that he might not cross him in the Conquest of Naples. The Pope limiteth the discoveries of Castile and Portugal: The Moors of Castile compelled to embrace the Faith. The French invade Roussillon, because Ferdinand assisted Naples. Columbus makes a third voyage to America. Casimire of Poland dyeth, and John Albert his son succeeded: 10 years he makes a League with Bohemia, and peace with the Turk. The Polacks defeated in Podolia by the Tartars: the King invades Moldavia, and is beaten. The Valachians carry many away captives out of Russia and Podolia: The Turks defeated in Russia. Ladislaus of Bohemia is made King of Hungary 26 years: he recovers Alba Regalis. The Hungarians plunder Mysia. The Turks beaten from Belgrad: the King spoileth the Turks lands for 100 miles. Hungary, Pole and Russia league against the Turk. The Norwegians are dispensed to receive the Sacrament without wine. John King of Denmark subdueth the Swedes: he taketh the Lubec ships, and they his: He is chosen King of Smedeland, and Steno deposed. The Venetians protect Pisa against Florence, they are Neuters to France and Naples. Sforza strives to get Pisa from the Venetians: they League with France against him; he calls in the Turk. Milan loseth Cremona. Eug. of Nassau subdueth the Brugesois, who built him an house, yet belonging to the Prince of Orange. Nassau and Guelders taken by the French King: The Boors of Holland do great insolencies. The Dutchy of Guelders escheated to the Emperour, who makes the Duke of Saxony hereditary Governour of Frisia, against whom the Frisons league: they rebell against his son: The Duke is slain at the siege of Groenengen. The King of England helpeth Maximilian against the French; he beliegeth Bolan: the French King payeth the charges of the War, and an annual sum, and so obtains Peace. Perkin Warbeck set up against King Henry by the Dutcheffs of Burgundy: he pretends he was the younger son to the Duke of York: he goeth into Scotland, and makes the Scots invade England: he marryeth the Earl of Huntly's daughter. The Cornish Rebels defeated at Black-heath: The Scots are resisted by the Bishop of Durham, and Earl of Surrey: Perkin defeated and taken, and sent to the Tower; he is hanged at Tyburn, and the Earl of Warwick beheaded on the Tower-hill. Truce made by the Scots with England.

In the Church, Alexander 6. sat 11 years; he makes one of his bastards Prince of Sicily, the 2. a Cardinal, and the 3. a Duke of Spain. Cesar the Cardinal, leaves his Hat, and marrieth the French Kings Cousin: he is made Duke of Valentinois, Valentia is made an Archbishoprick. At Paris begins the Order of Penitent women, converted from the Stews. Savonarola hanged and burnt at Florence for his opinions.

1500

In the East, the Spanish, French, and Venetian Fleets against the Turk are dispersed. Dyrachium taken by Bajazet: Peace made with Venice. He is wounded by a Dervish, whose body was torn, his brains dash't out, and the Order banished. 3 Baffas defeated in a Rebellion. Constantinople ruined by earthquake, and repaired by Bajazet, by setting at work 80000 men. In the West, the Norinbergers are worsted by Brandeburgs forces: the Boors in the Diocess of Spire rebel. At Lyons, the Emperour makes a League with France and Spain: the Emperour hath War with the Palatine of Bavaria, for some part of that Countie, and with Venice. The Swedes, in favour of Denmark, proscribed by the Emperour, they slight his Act. The Bohemians having wasted Germany, are driven out. Presburg or Posonium in Hungary, taken by the Emperour: he is not suffered to pass armed through the Venetian Lands. A League at Cambray between the Emperour, Pope and French against Venice. The Imperial Chamber is transferr'd from Wormes to Ratisbone. Verona, Padua and Vicenza taken by the Emperour. Milan is subdued again by the French. Sforza and his brother carried into France. At Roan and Aix Parliaments are set up. The French and Spaniard having expelled the Emperour from Naples, they agree that the French should have Naples, and the Spaniard Magna Grecia with Apulia. The Spanish General Gonzalvus expels the French out of Naples. The Genuans rebell, and are subdued by Lewis: The Portugals sail to Calcut. Philip is acknowledged heir

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Years of Christ.

of Castile, and succeedeth with Jone his wife. Philip dyeth, the title of Catholique made Hereditary by the Pope to the Kings of Spain: The Portugals overcome at Cambaia. Ormus in the Persian gulf taken: the King of Cambaia made tributary to Portugal: The Venetians are stript of Tarentum and Brundysium by the Spaniards. The Polander makes peace with the Muscovite and Turk. The King of Poland dyeth: His brother Alexander succeedeth 5 years. Lithuania united again to Poland: the Tartars expelled Russia and Podolia: the King dyeth, to him succeeded his brother Sigismund 41 years: he gains much from Basil Duke of Muscovia; he beats the Tartars and Valachians. Christiern of Denmark subdueth the rebellious Norwegians: He makes peace with Lubec; they make War against him, for not performing Articles. The Queen of Sweden taken in the Castle of Stockholm, and freed by the Popes means. The Venetians take divers ships and places from the Turks. The French take divers places in Italy, and lose them again to the Pope and Spaniard. Philip and Jone of Flanders go into Spain; he dyeth at Bourges, his heart buried at Jerusalem. Guelders invadeth Brabant. The Emperour becomes Guardian to Charles, and his other Nephews. Margaret of Saxony named Regent of the Low-Countries. King Philip of Spain, and his Queen, cast by stormes on the English coast, land at Falmouth, they are Royally entertained. The Earl of Suffolk practiseth with the Dutcheffs of Burgundy against the King; he is sent by King Philip into England, and is committed to the Tower. Henry 7. his Chappel finished, and so is the Savoy; the King dyeth: to him succeeds his son Henry 8. 37 years. Empson and Dudley, who were employed in the former Kings time about the Penal-Laws, are now executed: He makes a League with the Emperour and Spaniard. The King of Denmark having fallen out with his Lords, cometh into Scotland, and is restored by the Scots. The Hollanders for robbing the Kings Merchants, are taken, and their heads cut off, and sent to the King in barrels. The King is declared Protector of the Faith, by the Pope.

In the Church, Pope Alexander sits yet. Sforza regains Milan from the Pope. Borgia taketh the Dutchy of Urbino and Camerinum. The Pope, by the Butlers mistake, is poisoned, with that cup which he had provided for some Cardinals. Pius 3. succeeded 26 dayes, then Julius 2. 10 years; he was a better Souldier then Scholar; he is assisted by the French against Bentivolo an usurper in Bononia, who resignes it to the Pope. Borgia escapeth prison in Spain; he is slain after he was made General by the King of Navar. The Pope, by the Emperors and French help, recovereth divers places from the Venetians. In Germany appeared bloody Croffes upon peoples garments. The Boors of Spire rise against the Monasteries and Clergy, refusing to pay Tythes. The Kingdom of Congo converted to Christianity.

In the East, Bajazet intended to make Achmet his eldest son successor; but the Bassas set up Selymus: Bajazet retireth himself, and is poisoned by Selymus; he slew two Pages for lamenting the death of Bajazet their Lord, and his father. Selymus reigned 8 years: he murdered five of Achmets children, and strangleth his brother. The Plague at Constantinople sweeps away 160000 people. Selymus takes divers places from the Persian, and makes War upon Hungary, and Egypt also, because Campson Gaure the Sultan, took part with the Persian: In the taking of Aleppo, the Sultan is trodden to death. Syria submitted. Selymus with reverence enters Jerusalem, and gives to the Christian Priests 6 moneths allowance. Tonembeius the Sultan is overthrown at Cayre, and hanged. Gazelles made Lieutenant of Syria. As Selymus was preparing against the Christians, he is struck with a Canker in his back, which rots his flesh, and so he died. In the West, there are troubles between the Duke of Saxony and Bishop of Mentz. Germany divided into 10 Provinces in a Dyet at Triers. The Synods of Pisa and Tournes called against the Pope, are nullified by the Emperour in a Dyet at Colen. The Emperour expels the Venetians out of Lombardy: the Emperour meets the Kings of Poland and Bohemia at Vienna, about the succession of these Kingdoms, if Ladislaus should die without issue. The Emperors Army for want of pay forsake him: he therefore makes peace with France. Upon Maximilian's death, Charles of Spain carrieth the Empire from Francis of France. He reigned 38 years. The French besiege the Pope and Cardinals in Bologna, but are forced to give off for want of food. The French kill the Switzers Ambassadors going for Rome; therefore they denounce War against them: they refuse to compound, and invade Milan. The French lose all in Italy, by withdrawing their forces thence against the English. Lewis cannot recover Milan. He makes peace with the Pope, and with England, and then dyeth. The Switzers invade Burgundy. To Lewis succeedeth Francis the first 33 years. He regains Milan, and meets the Pope at Bologna. The French and Swit-

1510

T t t

zers

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

zers League against the Spaniards, take Tripolis. Ferdinand uniteth Navar to Castile by expelling John Albert. The Moluccos taken by the Portugals, and the river Plata discovered. Ferdinand languisheth and dyeth of a Love-potion: Charles son to Philip succeedeth 43 years. Joan and her husband die, having attempted in vain to recover Navar. The Tartars invade Russia, and are beaten back. Smolensco taken by the Muscovites; they are defeated by the Polanders at Borysthenes. The King of Poland makes War against the Marquis of Brandenburg Master of the Teutonicks, for not swearing homage to him. The Hungarians and Turks invade each others Lands. The King of Hungary dyeth, his son a child succeeds 11 years. The Lubbeckers spoil Denmark and assist the Swedes: the Hollander helps the King: a peace at last with him is concluded, and the Swedes excluded. The King dyeth; his son Christiern succeeds 10 years: He with the Bishop of Upsale plot to reduce the Swedes, therefore he besiegeth Stockholm, but gives off, for want of necessities; He takes the Town at last, spoils it, exerciseth strange cruelties, and returns to Denmark. Steno Sture the younger made Governor of Swedeland; he deposeth the Bilhop of Upsale, who was restored upon the death of Steno, and taking of Stockholm. In Bohemia, Lewis an Infant-King is brought up by George Marquis of Brandenburg. The Venetians league with the Pope and Aragon against France. Venice recovereth Brixia. The Switzers joyn with them against the French: The Emperour beats them at Vicenza: they league with the French, and quarrel with the Pope, and relieve Vicenza. The French restore Verona to them. The Duke of Guelders takes divers places from the Burgundians, and makes War against Utrecht: by the quarrelling of Saxony with the Earls of Embden, for Groning, Frisia is waisted. The Duke of Saxony religneth Frisland for money. Charles takes possession of Belgium, and goeth into Spain. Peter a notable Pyrate, surpriseth Horne. King Henry sits down before Turwyn; the Emperour taketh pay of him. The Lord Darcy sent with forces to Ferdinand the Kings Father in Law, against the Moors. Marquis Dorset invadeth Aquitaine, but the Flux in his Army drives him back again. Turwyn and Tournay taken; the French defeated in the battel of Spurs, which were then much employed in the horse sides when they fled. King James of Scotland defeated and slain at Floddenden. The French by the Rhodians invade Sussex, and Sir John Walslop Normandy: peace with France. Mary the Kings sister, and Queen of France, upon the death of King Lewis, returneth, and marrieth Charles Brandon. Peace for 3 years with Scotland. Cardinal Wolsey erecteth the Star-Chamber, and Court of Requests: the Apprentices rise against Strangers: the Sweating sickness. Tournay restored to the French. The Emperour, and Cardinal Campeius arrive in England. Barton the Scots Pyrate taketh 13 English Ships. James 5. reigneth in Scotland 30 years: the Queen widow is Regent whilst a widow, and the Duke of Albany Tutor: by marrying Archibald Douglas, she loseth her Regency; she is delivered of a daughter in England, afterward married to the Earl of Lenox: Douglas and Hume disturb the Kingdom: Arran and Hume committed. Dunbar burnt by the Humes; the Rebels are pardoned: The Regent leaveth seven Deputies, and saileth into France. Angus and Arran differ.

In the Church, Pope Julius sits yet: He Excommunicates the Kings of France and Navar: In a Battell on Easter day, he loseth 16000 men; and Ravenna to the French. He begins St. Peters Church in the Vatican. Leo the 10. succeedeth 8 years: he continues the Lateran Councel: He bought Mutina of the Emperour for 30000 crowns. He helpeth Sforza against France; He gives Urbino to his Nephew, who the next year lost it. He made 31 Cardinals; he strangled Cardinal Petrucci for conspiring: He recovers Parma and Placentia: The Councel at Tours decreeth, that the Pope should be forced to call a General Councel, if he will not hearken to Peace. The Lateran Councel rejecteth that of Pisa, called by the Emperour and French against the Pope. The Pisan removed to Milan. Luther disputes against Indulgences, sent abroad by the Archbishop of Mentz to pay for his Pall. The Pope and French King strive to abolish the Pragmatical Sanction. The Complutensian Bible set out by Cardinal Ximenes; containing the Hebrew, Chaldee, Greek and Latine. Luther sets abroad Theses against Indulgences. Luther confers with Cajetan at Auspurg. Eccius disputes with Carolostadius at Lipsic about Free-Will; and with Luther, about the Popes Supremacy, and Purgatory.

In

## of the principal Passages, &c.

In the East, Solymán the Magnificent reigns 47 years: Gazelles the Rebel is killed in battel: Solymán takes divers Towns from the Hungarians: he attempteth Chios in vain: after 6 moneths assault, he takes Rhodes, and dismisseth with honour Viliers the Governor: A mutiny at Constantinople among the Janisaries. Als Beg a King in Armenia; with his four sons are killed by Solymán, who possessed his Kingdom: He beats Lewis off Hungary, and takes Buda: he denounceth war against Ferdinand King of Bohemia, and protects John Sepusius: he kills the cowardly Souldiers in the Castle of Buda, but freed the Captain for his valour: He gives off the siege of Vienna, having lost 80000 men. In the West, the Emperour invadeth Picardy. The Pope, Emperour, English, Italy and Austria league against France: The Imperialists beat the French and Switzers near Milan. The Boors of Germany, whereof 30000 were slain, rose against the Nobility. Marseilles besieged by Bourbon, who sided with Charles. Manica made a Duchy. King Frapais taken at the siege of Papia. The French King released. The Emperour abrogates the Popes power in Spain, and takes Milan from Sforza. Rome taken and plundered by Bourbon. Naples besieged by the French. The Bilhop of Utrecht relignes his temporalities to Charles. War made on the Papists by Saxony and Hesse. Sforza recovers Milan for 50000 Crowns: He makes peace with Venice. The French take some places from Charles: the Castle of Milan yields to the French, and a great part of Lombardy. Bourbon raised from Marseilles by the French: The King is forced to promise that he will renounce his right in Naples, Milan and other places, to restore Burgundy, and to pay 200000 crowns. The holy League between France, England, Venice, Milan and the Pope against Charles: Lascares and Budens cause the Library at Fontainebleau to be set up. The Kings ransom paid at Cambray and the hostages restored. The Spaniards take Mexico. Henry of Navar who sided with the French, beaten by the Castilians, Brandenburg swears fealty to the Polanders, and is made Duke of Russia. Massovia cheated to the Crown of Poland: The Polanders beat the Tartars, and take their Prince, Dansk rebelleth. The King of Hungary drowned in a ditch, and his Nobility slain in the battel at Mohats. Sepusius Vayvid of Dacia expelled by Ferdinand: Solymán protects him, and invadeth Hungary with 150000 Turks. The King of Denmark expelled, and flyeth into Germany and England: Frederick Duke of Holst, Christierns Uncle, is chosen King; he leagueth with the Swedes: their Governor Gustavus, Nephew to Steno the elder, embraceth Lutheranism, and is crowned King. Ferdinand of Austria chosen King of Bohemia. Venice helps Hungary with money against the Turk: A peace concluded at Cambray between the Emperour, Venetians, French, and Milanois. The Gueldrois take Newport, and oppress Frisia: Charles sendeth forces against them. The Gueldrois spoil Holland; they force Bosseduc to pay Taxes: The women of Hague mutiny against the Customers. The Duke of Gueldres makes a League with the Burgundian. Utrecht expels the Bilhop, and calls in the Duke of Gueldres: the Hague taken by his forces: they are expelled by the Emperour, who re-established the Bilhop: the Mutineers executed, and peace between the Duke and Bilhop. In England, Buckingham beheaded for Treason: the French are imprisoned in England, for some wrongs done by them to the English. The Pope styles the King, Defender of the Faith. The Lord Admiral taketh Morlays in Britany. The Emperour is in England affianced to the Lady Mary. Scotland is invaded by the English, and France by the Duke of Suffolk: Surry burneth divers Towns in Scotland: the King receiveth from the Pope a Rose of gold. Greenwich-Castle built. Truce with France and Scotland: The king quarrels with the Emperour, for not marrying his daughter. Rildare accused and acquitted. The Pope dispenseth with Wolsey to dissolve 4 Monasteries. The sedition in Suffolk appeased: Cardinal Campeius comes into England about the Kings divorce; Commissioners chosen for the Queen; who appeal to the Pope; the marriage made unlawfull by some Universities. In Scotland, the Earl of Angus, and his brother are banished by the Regent, who goeth again into France for aid against the English: He religneth; the Queen, and some others made Regents: the Queen casts off Angus, and marrieth Henry Stuart Earl of Metbwen; who are both committed by the King, who now assumes the Government; Angus flyeth into England; Bothwel convicted, and Archibald Douglas banished.

In the Church, Leo sits yet: he executeth the Tyrant of Perugia, for aiding the Duke of Urbino. To him succeeded the Emperors Tutor Hadrian 6. 8 moneths: he took Parma and Placentia. Clement 7. succeeds 10 years; he had been a Knight of St. John of Jerusalem: he is besieged in the Castle of St. Angelo by the Columnis, who waste Rome and the Vatican. He warreth against Sema and Naples, and is reconciled to Charles. Luther is Excommunicate, and his Books burnt, who in requital burns the Popes Bull, and Canon-Law, and writes the Babylonian-Captivity: He justifies his Doctrine before the Emperour at Wormes. King Henry writes against him, and is

T t t t 2

answered

Years of Christ.  
1520

answered by him: *Zuinglius* and *Oecolampadius* preach at *Tigurum*: *Carlostadius* joyns with *Luther*; the Pope complained against in the Diet of *Norinberg*: two Monks suffer at *Brussels* for changing their Religion. *Luttheranism* received in divers places. The *Capuchins* Order instituted by *Balsay* of *Ancona*. *Anabaptists* spread. *Oecolampadius* and *Zuinglius* differ from *Luther* about the Sacrament: at *Berne* and there about, and at *Strasburg*, and *Basil*, the Masse is abolished: the Elector and Landgrave protesting against the Edict, brought in the name of Protestants: Disputations held in divers places.

In the East, *Solyman* setteth *Iohn* in *Hungary* as his Tributary; he assaults *Gunsrum* 13 times, and is repulsed; at last upon the coming of the Imperialists, he raiseth the siege: He invades *Hungary* again with a vast Army; his General is slain; he carrieth away 30000 Captives: he makes *Barbarussa* the Pyrat his Admiral; he takes *Tunis*, and loseth it to *Charles*: He takes many places from the Persian: upon the instigation of *Roxelana* his mother, he cuts the throat of *Ibrahim*. The French King draws the Turks into *Apulia*, who spoil it, and take divers places; *Auria* takes a part of their Fleet. *Barbarussa's* Fleet beaten at *Crete* by the Venetians; in a storm he loseth many Gallies and 20000 men: He recovers *Castro Novum*, 700 prisoners burnt at *Constantinople* by a casual fire. In the West, the Emperour is crowned King of *Lombardy* at *Bologna*, and takes *Florence*. *Ferdinand* the Emperours brother is crowned King of the Romans. In the war between *Tigurum* and the Cantons, *Zuinglius* was killed. *Charles* restoreth *Muleasses* to *Tunis*. *Sforza* dying without issue, *Millan* is elcheated to the Emperour; the French claim it, and so a war is occasioned. Truce between the Emperour and French for 10 years. The war between *Brandeburg* and the *Norinbergers* taken up. The Dutchy of *Britany* united to the Crown of *France*. The French Kings Ambassadour put to death at *Millan*, because one of his company slew a Citizen. The French war with Savoy: *Francis* the Dolphin poisoned by the Earl of *Monte-Cucullo*, who was therefore torn by wilde horses: At *Lisbon*, an Earthquake lasted 8 dayes, which overthrew 1500 houses and many Churches. *Peru* is now found out. The King of *Cambaia* killed by the Portugals. The Turks and Portugals have wars in the Indies. The Muscovites waste *Lithuania*, and are driven out. *Gritius* *Solymans* favourite setteth *Hungary*; he kills the Bishop of *Varadinum*, and for this is killed himself by the Transilvanians. It is agreed that in *Hungary* *Ferdinand* should succeed to *Iohn*. *Solyman* subdueth *Moldavia*, and restores the Vayvod; the King dieth with too much joy that his Queen was delivered of a sonne. *Christiern* striving to recover *Denmark*, is imprisoned 27 years at *Sunderberg*. *Fredrick* dieth, who leaves a young son. Count *Oldenburg* undertakes the Regency, because *Christiern* Duke of *Holst* refused it; but at last accepteth it, takes *Copenhagen*, and setteth the Kingdome; he is crowned, and called *Christiern* 3. he changeth Bishops into Superintendents. *Smolard* rebels against the Swedes; but is reduced by the Danes help. The Venetians are Neuters in the Turkish war against *Hungary*: they beat the Turks at *Sea*, and take *Assam Beg* the Pyrate. *Barbarussa* takes from *Coreyra* 16000 Captives, who are sold at *Constantinople*. Two Turkish Gallies burnt by *Contarenus* in the Gulph, for not striking their Top-saile. They made peace with *Solyman*, because the Spaniard refused to deliver *Castro novum*; they are forced to give up *Nauplum*, and some other places to the Turk. By an inundation in the Netherlands, 404 Parishes are drowned: *Mary* of *Austria* is Regent of *Flanders*: *Anabaptists* executed at *Amsterdam*: *Lubeck* quarrels with *Holland*, for assisting *Christiern* King of *Denmark*: At *Delft* 3300 houses, with two Churches, and divers Monasteries burnt. The Regent will not suffer the Emperour to resign *Flanders* and *Artois* to the French. The Duke of *Cleve* succeedeth in *Guelders*. The *Gantois* behead their Magistrates. In *England*, *Wolsey* is out of favour, and dieth. *Saint James* built. The Clergy condemned in a Premunire, and pay 100000 l. to the King. *Cromwell* great with the King. *Katherine* divorced; the King marrieth *Anne Bullen*: Peace with *France*: the holy Maid of *Kent* executed. The Popes power abrogated: The King setteth on the First-fruits and Tenth, and called, Head of the Church; for denying this, *Sir Thomas Moore*, and *Fisher* Bishop of *Rochefer* beheaded; Religious Houses under 300 l. value, given to the King; *Queen Anne* beheaded; and *Jane Seymour* married to the King; Rebellsions in *Linc.*shire, and in the North. *Kildare* and his 5 Uncles executed; the Bible read in English; *Oneale* repulsed by the Lord Grey; *Anne* of *Cleve* married to the King, and divorced shortly after; The order of *S. Iohn* of *Ierusalem* suppressed. In *Scotland*, the Court of Sessions is instituted, *Iohn Scot* fasteth 50 daies together; The Earl *Bothwell* committed for going into *England*; The King goeth into

*France*

*France*, and marrieth *Magdalen* the Kings daughter; divers executed for treason; The King marrieth the Duke of *Guize*'s daughter.

In the Church, *Clement* 7. yet sits; he excommunicated King *Henry* of *England*: *Paul* 3. succeedeth 15 years; he appoints a Synod at *Mantua*, and transfers it to *Vienza*; it came to nothing: the Protestant Confession made by *Melancthon*, is presented to *Charles* in the Diet of *Ausburg*; therefore called *Confessio Augustana*. Peace granted to the Protestants in *Germany*; upon news of the Turks preparation: the Protestants are persecuted in *Misia* and *France*; the *Anabaptists* raise seditions in *Munster*, who are taken and executed: *Geneva* becomes Protestant and expels the Bishop. *Ignatius Loyola* instituteth the *Jesuites* order; the League of *Smalcald* for the Protestants: A Council at *Colen* for Reformation. The *Augustan* Faith received in *Denmark*. *Luther* exhibits Articles at *Smalcald*. At *Norimberg* is made an Anti-league, *Antinomians* now appear.

In the East, *Solyman* takes divers towns in *Hungary*; subdueth *Transylvania*, and gives it to *Iohn*: *Barbarussa* is sent to help the French; he takes *Rhegium* in *Italy*; and *Nice* in *Provincie*, with some places in *Tuscany*, *Ischia* and *Lipari*. *Solyman* at the French Kings request, breaks the 5 years Peace with *Charles*; he fails in his expedition against the Persian. *Charles* his expedition into *Algiers*, unfortunate; his forces sent to relieve *Buda*, are beaten by the Turks. The French Ambassadors going to the Turk, are killed by the Imperialists, which makes a war. *Charles* leagueth with *England* against *France*; *Saxony* and the *Lantgrave* are proscribed. *Henry* of *Brunswick* taken by the Duke of *Saxony*. *Lipsick* besieged, and *Breme* taken: the *Lantgrave* is imprisoned. *Muleasses* being excoluted by his son, comes to the Emperour. *Magdeburg* proscribed; and *Constance* taken by the Imperialists. In *France*, the *Rochellers* rebell against the King; the Admiral is condemned: the Imperialists beaten by the French in *Piedmont*: the French invade *England*, they lose *Bohen*. The King dieth; his son *Henry* 2. succeeds 13 years; *Bordeaux* rebelleth, they are forced to burn their Priviledgts, by the Constable, who appeareth the Rebellion in *Aquitain*, raised upon the custome of Salt. The *Le. Vevain* executed for surrendering *Bohen*. The Duke of *Lituania* translates the Bible into the *Polanders* tongue. Wars between *Ferdinand* of *Bohemia*, and *Iohn* of *Hungary*; that Country is plagued with Locusts. *Gustaphus* of *Suevia* obtains that the succession may be established on his heirs. *Ferdinand* unpriviledgeth *Prague*, for not helping him against the Elector. Gaunt for rebellion loseth her priviledges and Castle: The Emperour fees a Garrison there; he claimeth the Dukedome of *Cleve*: the Duke leagueth with the French, they invade *Brabant*; the Prince of *Orange* is beaten: *Antwerp* attempted by the *Geldrians*, in vain; they are beaten by the Schollars of *Lovain*. *Juliers* won by *Charles*. The *Hollanders* spoil and carry away the Kings ships out of the river of *Burdeaux*. The *Belgians* present *Charles* with 15000 Florens of Gold, at his return from *Afric*. The French Queen entertained by *Charles* at *Brussels*: *Cleve* is reconciled to him: *Mechlin* burnt by lightning, which fell among Powder. Some places recovered out of the Sea. In *England*, *Cromwell* is beheaded: The Court of Wards and First-fruits erected: The Lady *Katherine Howard* married to the King, and beheaded: The Act passed for Supremacy: The six bloody Articles: The King marrieth *Katherine Par*, and calls himself King of *Ireland*. The Scots defeated by the Duke of *Norfolk*; the Scots prisoners returned without ransom, upon the death of King *James*. A match proposed between *Mary* Queen of *Scotland* and Prince *Edward*; but crossed by the French. The English enter *Scotland*, burn *Edenburg* and *Lieth*. The French invade *Suffex* and the Isle of *Wight*. Peace with *France*. *Bohen* restored for 800000 crowns: The Earl of *Surry* beheaded. To King *Henry* succeeds his son *Edward* 6 years; The Duke of *Sommerset* Protector; The Scots are defeated at *Musselburgh*; Chantries suppressed; The Protector and his brother the Admiral, fall out about their wives; The Admiral executed, and the Protector committed; Rebellsions in *Cornwal*, *Norfolk*, and in the North; the French attempt *Jersey* and *Garnesey*. In *Scotland*, the King dieth of grief: His daughter *Mary* was five dayes old; The Earls of *Huntly*, *Murrey*, and *Argile* made Regents by Cardinal *Beton*; but the Earl of *Arran* by the Protestants: The Cardinal of *St. Andrews* murdered for burning *George Wishart*; Civill wars about Religion; The French besiege *St. Andrews*; Cardinal *Beton* burneth *Sophocardin* a Minister, and is killed shortly after: the English expelled *Scotland*; the Scots refuse offers of Peace from *England*.

In



In the Church, Paul sits yet 2. his son Petrus Moyfius murdered at Placentia. The City is taken by Gonzaga Governor of Milan. Eccius and Melancthon confer about Original sinne, at Wormes and Ratibone. Xaverius the Jesuite sent to convert the Indians. The Palatinate becomes Protestant. Herman Archbishop of Copen strives to reform Religion, but is crossed by the Clergy and deprived. David George stiles himselfe Christ: he flieth from Delf to Basil. The Council of Trent begins. The French King slaughtereth the Waldenses. The Protestants assembled at Frankfort against the Council of Trent. The Inquisition causeth a sedition in Naples. Councils held at Augspurg, Colen, Mentz, and Trevers. A Schisme among the Protestants, by publishing the Emperors Interim concerning observation of indifferent matters, during the Council of Trent. Spira died despairing. In France, the Protestants are persecuted. Divers Conferences held.

In the East, the Turkish Pyrats do much mischief; they take Tripolis in Barbary. Solymann strangles his son Mustapha, by Roxalano's instigation, that her son Bajazet might succeed. Haly Bassa attempteth Agria in vain. The Venetians sack Dyrrachium, a Harbor of the Turks. The Duke of Florence his lands spoiled by the Turks; so is Corfica. Haly Bassa beaten from Zigeth. Bajazet sets up a false Mustapha against his father; he is pardoned at the request of Roxalana. Bajazet aspires again, and flieth to the Persian, who strangled him and his four sons, Solymann consenting to it. In the West, Magdeburg is besieged by Saxony, Brunswick, and Brandeburg. Charles and Ferdinand differ about the succession of the Empire. Saxony and the Landgrave released. The French take Metz. Maurice killed by Brandeburg in battel. The French spoil Artois and Henault. The Emperor resigns his kingdom to Philip his son, and enters into a Monastery, where he died: In the Empire his brother Ferdinand succeedeth 6 years; the Pope refuseth to confirm him, because he gave peace to the Protestants. The French king takes 22 ships of Zealand, with some places: the Emperor and French king spoile each others territories; Casal taken by the French; they are beaten at sea by the Flemings; S. Quintins taken. France makes peace with Spain, and restores Savoy and Piemont to the Duke: the King killed at Tilt by Montgomery; his sonne Francis 2. succeeded: great factions between the Guises and the Constable: the King dieth; to him Charles 9. his brother succeedeth 13 years; his mother made Regent. Japan about this time discovered. In Spain, King Philip causeth 28 Gentlemen to be burned for Religion. The Polander, forceth the Master of the Teutonicks to swear fealty to him. The Muscovites invade Livonia. The Queen of Hungary resigneth Transylvania to Ferdinand, who giveth her Caffovia and 100000 Ducats yearly. Dobus for his service against the Turks at Agria, is made Vayvod of Transylvania. To Christiern 3. of Denmark succeeded his son Frederick 2. 29 years; he forced the Diethmarsians (who made themselves members of the Church of Breme) to submit to him. In an Assembly at Brussels, the Emperor resigneth the Collar of the Golden-leece to Philip, with the Low-Countries, who makes the Duke of Savoy Generall there; He is opposed in his Taxes. At Brussels there died of Famine and Cold, 19000. The French take Calice, Dunkirk, and Guines; Dunkirk recovered by Count Egmont, with the losse of 15000 French. In England, the Duke of Somerset beheaded; Christs-Hospital in London founded: the King dieth; by his Will Jane daughter to the Duke of Suffolk should have succeeded, she is proclaimed by Northumberland and others, who suffered for it; but Mary succeeded 5 yeares, who put to death the Lady Jane, with her husband and father; Wyatt rebelleth; Cardinal Poole made Archbishop of Canterbury; the Queen marrieth with King Philip; S. Quintins taken by the English. To Q. Mary succeeded Elizabeth 44 years; Calice is demanded; the French aid the Scots against the English; the Queen aideth the Scots Lords, Lieth besieged by the Lord Gray; the Queen-Dowager of Scotland entertained in England, she is made Regent of Scotland, the old Regent Duke of Chastelraunt; Huntly is committed: the Scots invade England, and are repelled; Knox with the other Protestants put to the Horn; they take Glasgow and Blacknesse.

In the Church, Julius 3. sits 5 years: He keepeth the Jubile, and continueth the Council of Trent; he betrayeth Sena to the Emperor. To him succeeded Marcellus 2. 21 dayes: then Paul 4. 4 years; to him the Romans erected a Marble-statue, for enlarging their priviledges; He refuseth to confirm King Philip of Naples: He dieth, and the Romans cut off the head and right-hand of his statue, and fling it into Tyber. The Protestant-Ministers are expelled Augspurg; Otfander and the Professors of Wittenberg differ about Justification. Mary the Regent opposeth the Inquisition in the Low-Countries. The Protestants differ about the Necessity of Good works. Servetus the Arian burnt at Geneva.

Geneva. Protestants persecuted in England; Latimer, Ridley, and Cramer burnt. The Agreement at Passau confirmed. The body of David George taken out of his grave, and burnt, 3 years after his burial. The Catholiques and Protestants confer at Wormes, and so at Westmister: At Augspurg, peace confirmed to the Protestants. Hugonots in France, so called from S. Hugo's Gate, where they used to assemble in Tours.

In the East, Solymann yet reigneth: some Christian Princes attempt Tripolis, but Pial Bassa defeateth them: Malta besieged by the Turks in vain; they are forced to be gone after 5 monthes, and the losse of 24000 men: Solymann makes peace with the Emperor: Pial Bassa subdueth Chios for aiding Malta, after it had been possessed by Genua 200 years. Zigeth is taken; at the siege thereof Solymann died: His son Selymus 2. succeeded 8 years; he makes peace with Persia, Hungary and Venice; he invadeth Scythia with losse; he demandeth Cyprus from the Venetians, who refuse to part with it, so the peace is broken. In the West, Ferdinand the Emperor dieth: His son Maximilian 2. succeedeth 12 years; he makes 8 years peace with the Turk. In France, Conde who was condemned to die, is released; the King of Navar forsakes the Protestants. The battel of Dreux in Normandy, where the King of Navar is slain, with 9000 on both sides, and Conde taken; the Duke of Guise slain at the siege of Orleans. The Holy-League with Spain against the Protestants. Within this Decad were 3 Civil-wars for Religion in France: The Prince of Conde is aided by Casimir with 3000 men; the King with as many by the Duke of Saxony; After a battel, Liberty of Conscience is granted: The Prince of Conde is taken, and slain with a pistol: The King taketh S. John de Angelo. King Philip of Spain giveth 30000 Ducats towards the Printing of the Complutent Bible at Antwerp. In the Council of Trent, France and Spain strive for precedence. The Philippina's are discovered. The Inquisitors question the Archbishop of Toledo. The Duke of Alva cometh into Flanders. Prince Charles accused by the Inquisitors, dieth in prison. The Spaniards and Moors of Granada at war 2 years. The King of Poland leagueth with Denmark against the Swedes. The Teutonick-Master submits to the Polander, and is made Duke of Curland. The Muscovite is beaten by the Polacs and Livonians, and loseth 5000 laden wagons. The King recovereth Parnovia in Swedeland; he overthrowes the Swedes in Livonia, and abridgeth Dansk of divers priviledges. Maximilian and Mary are crowned King and Queen of Hungary: the Tartars waste the Country: the Turk besiegeth Zigeth, and takes divers Towns there. Breme adjudged by the Emperor to be under the government of Denmark and Holst. The Hamburgers take some of the Kings ships in the Elbe, for which they are forc'd to pay 12000 crowns. The King and Lubekers take the Castle, Town, and Harbor of Elsenburg in Swedeland. The Polander intercepteth some Danish ships; the King hindreth the Trade at Dansk, till they were faine to redeem it with 100000 Crowns. Ericus of Swgd Land fortifieth Revalia, and hinders the Lubekers trade, by which he made the Polander and Dane his enemies; He is beaten off from the siege of Helmsstadt in Denmark; he taketh Drentham in Norway, and loseth it again; He imprisoneth his brother John and his son, upon suspicion that they fomented these wars, by lending mony, to the Dane; he kills also many of his best friends upon jealousie; he releaseth his brother, and is deposed and imprisoned: His brother John 3. succeedeth 23 years. Venice will not admit the Popes Inquisition. The Arsenal burnt; whereupon Selymus invadeth Cyprus. 14 Bishoppicks erected in the Low-Countries, at which the people repine, for so the Inquisition was brought in; Count Egmont sent with complaints to the King, but no satisfactory answer; the King commandeth obedience to the Council of Trent, aid to the Kings Letters, begin to stand upon their guard; Images are defaced, and Protestants permitted at Antwerp to build Churches: Protestantisme is again inhibited: the Regent taketh arms. Valenciens taken, for favouring Protestants. Alva commits the Earls of Egmont and Horn, and buildeth Antwerp-Castle: Horn and Egmont, with others, executed. The Prince of Orange his eldest son is sent into Spain: The Prince of Orange and his brother take arms, and are driven into France by the Duke, who brings in the new Bishops, and setleth the Inquisition: Multitudes of people forsake the Netherlands: Traffique with England ceaseth. The Scots Queen quartereth the English Arms, and assumeth the Titles of England and Ireland, by the advice of the Guises. The Queen of England seeketh to reconcile the factions in France, and sends the Earl of Bedford thither; she helpeth the Protestants, takes New-haven, Roban, and Deep, which were lost again. Shan-Oned the Rebel is pardoned by the Queen; but he returns and rebelleth again. Leivesfer designed by Queen Elizabeth, for Queen Maries Husband of Scotland. Oned defeated by Sidney the Lord Deputy, and slain by the wilde Scots. Thornton committed, for



## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

for making doubts about Queen Maries Title. Queen Elizabeth Godmother to the Prince of Scotland; Bedford is the Deputy. She demands Calice, and is refused. Queen Mary cast upon the Coast of England in her flight. Northumberland and Westmerland rebell, and are driven into Scotland. The Duke of Norfolk committed, for intending to marry Queen Mary. The French expelled Scotland. Queen Elizabeth refuseth to declare Queen Mary Heire. The Queens base-brother made Earl of Murray: Earl Huntly slain, and his Son beheaded: Bothwell escapeth: Archbishop of S. Andrews committed for keeping Masse: The Queen falls in love with the Lord Dornly, and makes him Earle of Rosse and Duke of Albany; He marrieth the Queen, and is proclaimed King: divers Lords flee into England, return, and are reconciled: Rizzius the Queens favourite murdered; whereupon Morton and others flee into England. The King murdered by Bothwell, who marrieth the Queen; she is taken, and resigneth; he fleeth into Denmark, and there dieth in prison: Murray made Regent. James 6. reigneth 57 years. The Queens forces defeated; she fleeth towards France, but is stopped in England.

In the Church, Pius 4. sitteth 5 years: he strangled Cardinal Caraffa with some others for opposing him in the Conclave: He comes to the Council of Trent, and dissolveth it: He citeth the Queen of Navar, being a Protestant, to Rome; the French King protesteth her. Pius 5. succeeded 6 years: He supplies the Emperor with money towards the Turkish war: He sends to the Duke of Alva for his service against the Protestants, a Consecrated Helmet, and a Pair of Gantlets. The King of Mauritania is baptised. At Passau in France, is a Conference between the Cardinal of Lorraine and the Bishops, and Peter Martyr, Marlorat, and Beza. The Protestants are murdered in a Church at Paris. The Council of Trent endeth. Religion in France is tolerated by the Kings Proclamation. The Pope dispenseth with the Bavarlans and Austrians to receive in both kinds. At Antwerp, Lutherans and Catholics joyn against the Calvinists. A Council is held at Milan; divers Conferences in Germany between the Lutherans and Zuinglians.

1570

In the East, Piali Bassa takes Nicofia in Cyprus, with 250 Field-peeces, and many Captives, which as he was conveying to Constantinople, the ship was fired by a Lady, and they all were blown up. Famagusta is taken by Mustapha, who falsified his promise to Bragadinus the Governor, whom he had alive. At Lepanto the Turks lost 32000 men, 3200 prisoners, 161 galleys, with much wealth. Selymus by treason takes Moldavia, and annexeth it to Valachia, he kills also the Vayvod; He makes peace with Venice. To him succeedeth his son Amurath 3. 21 years: He looks upon the strangling of his five brothers: He invadeth Polonia, and burnt 200 Gentlemens houses, with some Towns and Villages; then he makes a league with the Polander: Hearing there were Civil wars in Persia, he invades the Country with 110000 men, of which the Persian cut off 70000. Syrran taken by Mustapha, who loseth 10000 of his forragers, and so returneth disgracefully, and dieth. In the West, the Emperor appointeth his son Rodolph to be King of Hungary; he makes the Marquis of Montferrat Duke. Rodolphus is chosen King of the Romans and of Bohemia, and succeedeth in the Empire to his father Maximilian 37 years. Salentinus Archbishop of Colen resigneth, and marrieth Count Arnebergs daughter. In France, the Queen of Navar secures her selfe with her son in Rochel; she dieth, and her son marrieth the Kings sister, upon which followed the 4. Civil war, the Massacre of Paris, and war with Rochel. Navar and Conde renounce Protestantism: with Rochel and Mont-Alban a peace is concluded. Henry the Kings brother elected King of Poland: Montgomery executed: The King dieth; to whom succeeded his brother Henry 3. 16 years, the Queen-mother is Regent; Conde removeth into Germany; the 5. Civil war followed, D'Auville takes the Protestants part; The Germans invade France by Condes means; Navar escapes into Picardy; The Guises aim at the Crown; the Duke of Alencon the Kings brother, head of the Protestants, is reconciled to the King. A 6. Civil war was beginning, but the King was 100 millions in debt: Navar takes arms; D'Auville leaveth the Protestants; peace is made with Conde. The Order of the Holy-Ghost was now instituted. Don Requiescens sent Governor into Belgium, and after him Don John of Austria. Antwerp is taken by the Spaniard. Sebastian of Portugal in his Africk expedition is killed, to whom succeeded Henry the Cardinal. Sigismund King of Poland, and last of Jagello's line, dieth; the French Kings brother Henry Duke of Bourbon is elected; He understanding his brother was dead, gets away in the dark out of Cracovia. Maximilian the Emperor is chosen by the greater part, but at the Turks intreary Steven Prince of Transilvania is made King; he reigned 11 years: He takes Dansk, and useth it hardly. Livonia spoiled

## of the principal Passages, &c.

Years of Christ.

spoiled by the Muscovite; the Dane and Swede make peace at Stetin: six years war between the Danes and Hamburgers, upon taking of one of the Kings Ships by them; but upon the payment of a great sum they are reconciled to the King. Venice makes a perpetual League with the Pope and Spaniard. A Plague at Venice, which killed 70000. upon the ceasing whereof a Church is built to the Redeemer, as the Senate and Duke had vowed before. The Flemings refuse to pay new Taxes; a great destruction among them by an inundation. Bergen taken by the Spaniard. Alva called home, and Medina Celi sent Governour; the Zelanders take much booty from him; he taketh divers Towns, and returns to Spain; his successor Requiescens besiegeth Leyden twice, to no purpose; he takes divers Towns, and dieth. The Spaniards mutiny for pay, and are expelled the Country; John of Austria is made Governour; Antwerp is plundered, and the Castle dismantled; John retireth to Luxemburg, being proclaimed enemy to Belgium; a pacification is made, and Matthias Arch-Duke of Austria becomes Governour; upon the death of Don John, Alexander Farneses Prince of Parma is made Governour; he takes Mastricht, and other places; the Antwerpians drive out their Catholique Clergy; the Holland-Company, called the Gueux, take the Brill: the Hollanders make William of Nassaw Prince of Orange their Governour; he relieveth Leyden, and takes divers Towns: A general pardon to all the Belgians, except Nassaw and some others. Queen Elizabeth lendeth the Hollanders 20000 pounds; they take Gaunt, Utrecht, and many other Towns; Matthias Arch-Duke is Governour a while, and resigneth to Anjou. Amsterdam and other Towns yield to the Hollanders. In England, Dacres that renewed the Rebellion, is defeated by the Lord Hunsdon; Westmerland fleeth into Flanders, Northumberland beheaded at York; The Royal Exchange built; Story executed for Treason; the Duke of Norfolk beheaded; Sir Francis Drake saileth to the Indies; the Queen is Godmother to the French Kings Daughter, her Deputy was the Earl of Worcester; Alencon a suiter to the Queen; she refuseth the protection of Holland, but strives to make peace there; a Rebellion in Ireland; Frobishers Voyage; Trade with Turkey and Muscovy; Alencon now Duke of Anjou comes over hither; Desmond rebelleth. In Scotland, the Regent is slain: Matthew Earl of Lenox succeeds; Huntley raiseth Forces in the North for the Queen; the Regent takes Dunbritton Castle, and the Archbishop of Saint Andrews in it, whom he hangeth for consenting to the Kings murder; The Regent is killed, and the Earl of Mar succeeds; Commissioners sent by Queen Elizabeth to examine Queen Mary upon some Articles; Queen Elizabeth gets Earle Morton to be Regent; she helpeth him; the Bishop of Rosse, Queen Maries diligent Agent, is banished England; Edenburg taken by the Protestants; John of Austria practiseth to marry Queen Mary; the French King strives to get the young King into his custody; Morton displaced, and 12 Peers named to the King, whereof Morton was one; difference betweene him and the rest; the Lord Aubigney made a Duke by the King.

In the Church sits Gregory 13. 13 years, he makes Cosmo di Medices Great-Duke of Tuscany; he grants to the Portugals against the Moors a Croysado; his Chappel in the Vatican which he built, stood him in 100000 Ducats. Pope Pius his Bull against Queen Elizabeth is fastned to the Bishop of Londons gate. A pacification in France published and revoked. The Palatine Divines and Anabaptists have a Conference; the Duke of Batlen turns Protestant; Henault and Artois exclude themselves from the peace of Gaunt; and are called the Male-contents; a form of Concord drawn up by the Divines of Auspurg. Three Councils held this Decad at Milan.

In the East, Sinan Bassa goeth General against the Persian, and loseth his men: the like success had Mustapha: Ferat is made General, who returneth without success. The League with the Emperour renewed for 8 years, but the Turks brake the League by invading Hungary, for which the Bassa of Buda is strangled: Sinan recalled from his banishment, and made Bassa there. Amurath is troubled with the Falling-sickness. Osman taketh Jauris: Cicala his Successor loseth 80000 Turks. Peace is made with the Polander and Persian. The Janisaries mutiny, and 15000 houses burnt in Constantinople. Sinan displaced, and Ferat sent in his room. In the West, the Emperour sends Commissioners to Colen for settling peace in the Low-Countries, but in vain. The Germans that invaded France, are defeated by the Guises: The Polander defeats Maximilian the Archduke, and takes him: A peace is made, and he set free. In France, a league is made against the King, for favouring the Protestants: upon which followeth the 7. Civil War. Divers places taken by the Guises, who oppose the King, desirous of peace. Navar and Conde excommunicated by the Pope; they prevail in Poitou: Navar gets the day at Courray, wherein Joyeuse is slain. Navar excluded from succession, and Conde poysoned. The Duke of Guise and the Cardinall his brother are slain for aspiring.

—1580

aspiring. *Navar* helpeth the King, whom the Duke de *Mayne* was like to surpris. *Clement* a *Jacobin* stabbeth the King. *Philip* of *Spain* expels *Antony* Prior of *Crato*, whom the Portugals had made their King; he beats the French who aided *Antony*. The *Tercera* taken by the Spaniard. The English and their goods arrested in *Spain*: the English lose some Ships in *Cadix*: the Armado defeated by the English, who strive in vain to restore *Antony*. The Spaniard aideth the *Savoyen* against *Geneva*. The *Polander* beats the *Muscovite*, who at last surrenders *Riga*, and all *Livonia* to the *Polander*, and makes peace, and withall kills his son for his bad success. *Dansk* is reconciled to the Queen. King *Steven* dyeth: *Maximilian* Duke of *Austria*, is chosen by some, and *Sigismund* the King of *Swedes* son by others. In *Denmark*, *Christiern* the 4. reigneth. The *Swedes* take divers places from the *Muscovite*. The *Persian* sendeth to the State of *Venice* to league with them against the Turk. The *Malteſes* trouble the Turks in the *Venetian* seas, for which *Venice* and the *Knights* fall out. *Venice* sends to *Amurath* 400 slaves with 800000 Ducats, who was angry for the wrong done to the Vice-roys wife of *Algiers*, by *Gabriel Heme*, in her passage to *Constantinople*, which *Heme* also they executed. The States totally reject King *Philip's* Government. *Anjou* made Duke of *Brabant*, *Marquis* of the holy Empire, and Earl of *Flanders*. The Prince of *Orange* shot. Divers Towns taken by the States. The Duke resigns the places he had taken, and returns to *France*. *Orange* is murdered by one *Gerard*: *Maurice* his second son chosen Governour; the elder was a prisoner in *Spain*. Queen *Elizabeth* becomes Protector of the Low-Countries; who for her money lent, receiveth some cautionary Towns. *Leicester* sent Lieutenant-Governor; he takes some places, and returns: the States dislike him. The *Hollanders* take divers places. *Tournay* taken by the Duke of *Parma*. The Spaniards take divers Towns, and recover *Dunkirk*, *Gawnt*, *Brussels*, *Antwerp*, *Grave* and *Vento*. Divers Forts betrayed to the Duke, he is driven from the siege of *Bergen-op-Zoom*. The Spaniards assist *Desmond*, and are driven out of *Ireland*. The Lord *Grey* suppresseth the Rebels. A Proclamation in *England* against Seminaries and Jesuites. *Antonio* of *Portugal* cometh into *England*. *Campion* put to death. The King of *Denmark* made Knight of the Garter. *Guise* plotteth Queen *Maries* delivery. *Throgmorton* executed. *Desmond* slain: *Northumberland* confined; *Arundel* sent to the Tower: *Northumberland* found dead in the Tower, being shot: 14 executed for Treason. *Drake* takes some places from the Spaniard: *Drake*, *Norris* and *Essex* sent to aide *Antonio* of *Portugal*: the Queen supplyeth *Navar* with men and money. In *Scotland*, *Morton* is imprisoned being accused of Treason: the Duke of *Lenox* unjustly accused by the Ministers: *Morton* beheaded for being accessory to the Kings death. The *Ruthens* imprison the King, and force him to recall *Angus*: the King is set free, confineth *Angus*: *Gowry* executed for Treason. *Arran* and *Ferniburst* invade *Ireland*; *Bingham* subdueth their forces. Queen *Mary* beheaded. The King marryeth the King of *Denmark's* daughter, and goeth thither himself.

In the Church, *Gregory* yet sits: He sets free the Master of *Malta*, whom the King had imprisoned, and reformeth the *Calendar*, which occasioned some troubles in *Poland*. To him succeedeth *Sixtus* 5. 5 years, his father was a Swine-herd: He removed the Obelisk into the Vatican, and there erected a new Library: he made his young Nephew a Cardinal, and gives him 10000 crowns revenue: He left behinde him 10 Millions; he had a Statue erected to him. The new *Calendar* rejected by the Duke of *Saxony*: it occasioneth troubles at *Ausburg*, and *Riga* in *Livonia*: The Protestant Princes meet at *Luneburg*; the Churches of *Poland*, *Russia* and *Lithuania* agree in the points of Religion, wherein they had heretofore disagreed.

In the East, The Turks break the league in *Hungary*; the Emperour complains: *Amurath* pretends ignorance: The *Bassa* of *Bosnia* taketh *Whitz*, the chief City of *Croatia*, and murdereth 65000 Christians in the hills. He intercepteth 150 Waggon and money sent to relieve *Croatia*; at *Siege* he is slain with 18000 Turks by the Imperialis: the Turks take and lose many Towns, and villages. 30000 Tartars taken by Christians, with many places: *Valachia*, and other places revolt from the Turk. To *Amurath* succeedeth his son *Mahomet* 3. 9 years: He strangleth 18 of his brothers, and *Ferat Bassa*, for the loss of *Strigon*: he wins and loseth divers places and men: the Turks kill 20000 Christians, being too eager in loading themselves with the plunder of *Karesta*, where 60000 Turks were slain. The Vayvod of *Valachia* having revolted from the Turk, burneth *Nicopolis*. *Paradin* in *Transylvania* relieved by *Basta* the Emperours Lieutenant. The Turks and *Valachians* insist each others Territories. The Cardinal

Cardinal of *Transylvania* leagueth with the Turk; the *Bassa* of *Agria* beaten, and of *Buda* taken. In the West, the Germans league with *Transylvania* against the Turk; the Prince of *Transylvania* resigneth to the Emperour for *Silesia*, but repents, and returns home, where he resigns to his Uncle, the Cardinal, whom the Vayvod of *Palachia* killed in fight, for leaguings with the Turk, and recovers *Transylvania* to the Empire, and is made Governour thereof. In *France*, *Henry* 4. of *Navar* reigneth 21 years, he defeats *De Mayne*; it is held Treason by the Parliament of *Roban* to side with the King, who takes *Chartres* and *Noyon*, defeats the *Savoyen*, and besiegeth *Roban*; the President of *Paris* strangled by the Tribunes; Duke *Joyeuse* drowned, and 300 of the League slain in *Languedoc*; the King becomes Catholic, upon which many Leaguers fall off to him; he is Crowned, and most places submit; *Guise* is reconciled to him; the Jesuits banished, for a stroke given to the King by one of them; the King defeats the Spaniards in *Picardy*; *De Mayne* and *Nemours* reconciled to him; *Joyeuse* made Admiral; *Marselles* priſed for him; *Amiens* recovered; a League with *England* and *Holland*; *Callais* restored upon peace with the Spaniard; *Britain* submits, and so the Civil War ends. At *Nantes*, the Edict of Pacification for exercise of the Protestant Religion; the King is divorced from Queen *Margaret*, and marrieth *Katherine de Medices*; Duke *Joyeuse* becomes a Capuchin: Cardinal *Albertus*, the Emperours youngest son, is made Governour of *Portugal*, and Archbishop of *Toledo*: Another Spanish Fleet miscarrieth at the Cape of *Saint Vincent*: To King *Philip* succeedeth his son *Philip* 3. 24 years. *Amiens* taken by the Cardinal *Albert*, who married *Isabella* the Infanta: *Sigismund* King of *Poland* swears to receive the Confession of *Ausburg*, before he is admitted to the Swedish Crown; he conquereth *Moldavia*, and is deposed in *Svevia*. In *Hungary* many Turks slain; At *Alba Regalis*, the Governour of *Rab* executed for surrendering it to the Turk; many Towns lost and won; *Rab* recovered, with some other Townes. The *Swedes* and Tartars beaten by the *Muscovite*; peace made with him. *Charles* the King of *Swedes* Uncle is Governour of *Suevia*. *Sigismund* cometh with an Army against *Charles*, who taketh *Calmaria*, and subdueth *Finland*: The *Uſques* out of *Dalmatia* and *Hungary* notable Pyrats. To *Parma* in *Flanders* succeeded *Peter Ernest* Duke of *Austria*, brother to *Rodulph* the Emperour; the States refuse his proffer of peace; to him succeedeth Arch-Duke *Albert*, he takes *Calais* and *Hull*, with *Amiens*; *Grave* *Maurice* defeats him; the King bestowes *Belgium* and *Burgoin* on *Albert*, with the Infanta his wife; the Spaniard takes divers places in *Frisland* and *Cleve*; *Maurice* made Lieutenant-General of the united Provinces; he takes *Breda*, and other places; A Council of Estate set up, wherein the Queen was to have two Counsellors; Prince of *Orange* released in *Spain*; the *Grave* taketh 11 Towns in 3 months; one *Panne* is executed for attempting to kill the *Graves*; the States prohibited from trading in *Spain*; they trade into the East-Indies. Queen *Elizabeth* furnisheth the French King with money, and procureth peace of the Turk to *Poland*; *Grevil* fighteth the Spanish Fleet: The Voyages of *Cavendish* to the Straits of *Magellain*, and of *Lancaster* to the East-Indies; *Raleigh's* Expedition into *America* and *Guiana*; *Tyr-Oen* Rebellion; the *Thames* dry; *Farnabuc* taken by *Lancaster*; *Cadiz* raken by *Essex*; *Mac Hugh* the Irish-Rebel slain; the French King made Knight of the Garter; the English Expedition to the *Azores* at *Black-water*; the English defeated by *Tyr-Oen*; *Essex* parlieth with him; he is committed to the Lord Keeper. In *Scotland*, *Bothwell* attempteth the Kings chamber, he is proclaimed Traytor, and some of his Pages hanged; *Huntley* kills *Murry*, for harbouring *Bothwell*; he fleeth into *England*, returns and rebelleth again.

In the Church sits *Urban* 7. 12 dayes, then *Gregory* 14. 10 moneths; he excommunicates the French King; succeeded *Innocent* 9. 2 moneths, then *Clement* 8. 13 years; he absolves the French King: *Ferrara* being escheated to the Pope for want of Heirs, a war ensueth with *Cesar* *Estensis* about it, which shortly after was taken up. Protestantism in *Saxony* is forsaken; the Protestants are persecuted in *Styria* and *Carinthia*, but permitted in *France*. *Hacker*, for blasphemy, is hanged.

In the East, the Turk and Persian quarrel; *Alba Regalis* lost; *Hassan Bassa*, and his Army of 60000 overthrown; the Wines in *Constantinople* stayed upon a sedition of the Janissaries, but some wine was allowed to the Christian Ambassadors: *Basta* defeats the *Valachians*, and 2 *Bassas*; *Ali Bassa* surpriseth with 200 Waggon and 70000 Ducats by the *Heyducks*; *Alba* recovered, and *Pest* lost; *Mahomet* strangleth his son, and drowneth his mother for treason; his son *Achmat* succeedeth 13 years; the Turks defeated twice in *Asia* by their Rebels; *Pest* and *Hatwan* lost to the Turk; *Tauris* recovered by the

## A brief Chronologie

Years of Christ.

the Persian; some Towns taken in Hungary: the Persian defeats two Bassa's: the Bassa of Aleppo rebelleth, he defeats two Bassa's, takes Tripolis and Damascus, and leagueth with the Persian: The Turk makes peace with the Emperor for 20 years: The Bassa's of *Agria* and *Buda* are put to death, for striving to break the peace; the Turks are spoiled at Sea by the Duke of *Florence*. In the West, *Bassa* beats the Transylvanian, and kills the Vayvod of *Valachia*, for intending to call in the Turk. *Bassa* is thrust out by the Prince, who at last submits to *Bassa*, and swears fealty to the Emperour; *Bassa* subdueth the rebellious Transylvanians: The Emperour and Persian league against the Turk. *Botskay* winneth some part of Transylvania; he makes his peace with the Emperour, and obtaineth Transylvania to him and his Heirs: The Catholike Clergy wronged by *Donaward* a free City, therefore it is proscribed and taken by the Duke of *Bavaria*. The Jesuites Colledge and Library burnt at *Vienna*. Transylvania rebelleth again, and makes *Gabriel Battori* their Governour; upon the Duke of *Juliers* death without Heirs, *Brandeburg* and *Newburg* lay claim to it: The Bishop of *Strasbourg* is sent thither by the Emperour, and expels their Governours: The French subdue *Savoy*, because the Marquis of *Salusses* is not, according to promise, restored: The Dukes peace is made by Cardinal *Aldobrandin*. The French Embassadors doors broken open in *Spain*, and his Nephew imprisoned, but he is released again. *Byron* executed for Treason: League renewed with the Switzers: Traffique forbidden into *Spain* and *Flanders*, upon a new Impost there. Father *Cotton* gets the Jesuites to be restored. Count *Avergne* once pardoned, falls to new practises, and is imprisoned. *Marfelles* like to be betrayed to the Spaniard, whereupon the Governour of *Provence* is executed. The revenues of *Navar* united to the Crown of *France*. At *Bolloign* the Treaty of peace between *France* and *Spain* is broken off, for precedence: *Spain* makes peace with *England*. *Nottingham* arriveth in *Spain*, to take the Kings Oath to the peace: A peace also is made with the Hollander for 12 years. In *Poland*, about some troubles raised by the Jesuites, the Lords meet at *Lublyn* about Toleration of Religion, who are suddenly surprised by the King, and many of them slain. Hungary is wasted by the Tartars; divers Towns lost. The Turk sendeth *Botskay* the Crown of Hungary, taken from *Ladislaw*. *Botskay* repents his league with the Turk, and dieth. The Turk takes divers Townes in Hungary; the Emperour resigneth Hungary to his brother *Matthias*. Exercise of Protestantism granted to *Austria*. In *Swethland*, *Charles* is declared King, he attempteth *Livonia* in vain; His Bastard-son is taken by the *Polander*; He besiegeth *Riga* in vain, and loseth 9000 men; he loseth the Castle of *Wessenstein*, and recovers it again. The King of *Denmark* cometh to *Hamburg*, and taketh the Oath of Allegiance of them. *Matthias* is chosen King of *Bohemia* by the Lords: Liberty of Conscience granted to the Bohemians and Silesians. The Venetians league with the Grifons, and forbid building of more Monasteries and giving Lands to the Clergy, which Act had been made *An. 1337*. and now revived; they are hated by the Pope for this Act, and by the Spaniard for their League with the Grifons: They make an Edict against the Jesuites, and are excommunicated, which they slight, and raise an Army for their defence. Cardinal *Jayuse* is sent from *France* to compose the difference, at last the prisoners are set free, and they absolved; they protect and enrich such as had written in their defence: The Arch-Duke is defeated neer to *Newport*: The Admiral of *Aragon* being taken, is exchanged for the Hollanders imprisoned in *Spain*: *Ostend* besieged by *Albert*. 6 Gallies of *Spinola* sunk by the Hollanders and English; he is slain, and his 8 Gallies defeated: *Ambrose Spinola*, to revenge his brothers death, aideth *Albert* at *Ostend*; after almost 4 years siege, and the loss of 72900 men in the Town, and great numbers in the field, *Ostend* yieldeth on composition: *Spinola* takes divers Towns, but faileth of *Bergen* and *Grave*: The Netherlanders acknowledged free States by *Albert*: Many Towns taken by the Hollander and Spaniard; The States aide *Embden* against their Earle: *Hertogenbusch* besieged by *Maurice* in vain; *Sluce* taken from the Arch-Duke; some Spaniards fall off to the States; *Maurice* faileth of his design against *Antwerp*; *Embden* and the Earle reconciled; The Hollander beats the Spaniard in the Straits, and the Portugals in the Indies. The Lord *Montjoy* doth good service in *Ireland*; *Essex* beheaded; difference between English and Danes about Trade; Commissioners sent into *Denmark*; the Spaniards land in *Ireland*; *Tyr-Oen* submitteth: Queen *Elizabeth* dieth; King *James* succeedeth 22 years: *Tyr-Oen* is restored by him; *Ra-leigh*, *Grey*, and *Cobham* attainted for Treason; some Priests put to death; the Gunpowder-Treason; the King of *Denmark* cometh into *England*; an Insurrection upon Inclosures; *Virginia* planted; the New-Exchange built.

17

## of the principal Passages, &c.

In the Church, *Leo 11.* sits 26 dayes: then *Pau* 5. 16 years; He quarrels with the Venetians. *Du-Plessis* disputeth with the Bishop of *Eureux*. At *Katibone* the Jesuites dispute with the Lutherans. The Duke of *Savoy* expels the Protestants; the *Poland*-Jesuites burn a Protestant-Church. *Marpurg* reformed. Liberty of Conscience in Hungary. An Archbishoprick erected in the *Philippina's*.

Years of Christ.

In the East, the Persian invadeth *Babylon*, defeateth *Nassus Bassa*, and kills 20000 Turks. *Achmet*s Fleet sent against *Florence* and *Malta*. 200000 die at *Constantinople* in one year of the plague. 42 Turkish Gallies defeated by the Florentine, who took one Gally with 300 slaves. A Dervisar flingeth a stone at the Turk, and is executed. The Tartar invadeth *Moldavia*. Peace between the Turk and Persian. The Jewes expelled *Pera*. *Holland* trades with the Turk. The Florentine and Sicilian takes some places and Gallies from the Turks. The Bassa of *Sidon* lieth to *Florence* with 14000 l. weight of gold. A Rebellion in *Asia* and *Arabia*. *Nassusse* the Bassa executed for intelligence with *Persia*. Two rich Turkish Gallies taken by the Florentine. *Jacata*, *Mahomet* 3. his supposed son, joyns with the Asian Rebels. *Mustapha*, *Achmet*s brother, ruleth two moneths; he sets free the Persian Ambassador, and imprisoneth the French, upon the escape of *Coresky* the Moldavian; he is thrust into a Cell, and *Achmet* his son ruleth, he sets free the French Ambassador, and makes peace with *Persia*. *Manfredonia* in *Sicily* lost to the Turk, with the Isle of *Iviza*. In the West, *Juliers* is given by the Emperour to the Duke of *Saxony*; *Juliers* taken by *Grave-Maurice*. To *Rodulph* succeeded in the Empire his brother *Matthias* 8 years. *Spinola* takes *Aken* and *Wesel*, and beats down the Fort of *Mulheim*. The Hollanders invade *Munster* and *Paderborn*. The Jewes expelled *Wormes*, and their Synagogue burnt. *Frankfort* rebelleth against their Magistrates. A Lutheran-Jubile kept. The Emperour dieth, to whom succeeds *Ferdinand* his brother. *K. Henry* of *France* slain by *Ravilliac*; his son *Lewis* 13. succeedeth, his mother Regent; the Kings heart is interred by the Jesuites: *Roban* seifeth on *S. John de Angeli*; *Conde* leaveth the Court; *Vendosme* imprisoned, and escapeth; The Jewes banished *France*; *Roban* and the Protestants take arms; *Anchore* made Master of the Horse, and Governor of *Normandy*; *Conde* imprisoned; *Anchore*'s house spoiled, and his treasure seized on by the people; he is slain, and his wife executed. *France* helpeth *Savoy* against *Spain*; *Espenon* joyneth forces with the Queen, they are reconciled to the King, and *Conde* released. Peace between *Spain* and *Savoy*. 900000 Moors expelled *Spain*, after 900 years possession. The Spaniard helps the Duke of *Mantua* against *Savoy*, for the Marquisat of *Monferrat*. The *Polander* beats the Muscovite, and takes *Smolensko*. The Dukedome of *Borussia* confirmed by the *Polander* on *Brandeburg* and his heirs-male. The *Polander* beaten in *Valachia* and *Muscovy*; *Smolensko* recovered by the Muscovite. A Rebellion in *Poland*. *Podolia* wasted by the Tartars; who upon the outrages of the Cossakes, burn 4 Cities, 400 Villages in *Podolia*, and carry away much plunder. In Hungary, the Traitors that conspired against *Battori*, are executed. *Sigmund Battori* dieth, and the Emperesse crowned Queen; *Gabr. Battori* slain, and *Bethlem Gabor* made Prince by the Turk. *Steven Vayvod* of *Moldavia* tyrannifeth, is taken and sent with Prince *Alexander*, his mother and brother, to *Constantinople*, who for feare renounced Christ. The Heyducks beat the Turks. *Ferdinand* is crowned King of Hungary, and then *Bethlem Gabor*. The Dane takes *Calmaria* from the Swedes; they waste *Norway*. The Lubekers beat the Danes at sea. *Calmaria* is restored, and peace with the Swedes is made. New Impositions raised in the *Sound*. The Hollanders help *Lubec*. The Swede leagueth with the Dane against *Poland*. To *Charles* of *Swedeland* succeeded his son *Gustavus Adolphus*: He gaineth upon the Dane and Muscovite. King *James* makes peace between the Swede and Muscovite. Great troubles in *Bohemia*. A Protestant Church built in *Prague*. The Emperor and Archduke of *Austria* crowned at *Prague*. The Protestants cast three of the Emperors Councillors out of a window, and league with *Moravia*, *Silesia*, and *Lusatia*. *Bucquoy* invadeth *Bohemia*. *Frederick* the Palgrave chosen King. *Venice* aideth *Mantua* against *Savoy*; they have war with *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, they are aided by the Hollanders; they make peace with *Ferdinand*; Treason against them discovered, and the Traitors executed. The Archduke stays the Turkish Ambassador going to the States; and they arrest his mony, sent to pay his garrisons. The Spaniard and Hollander fight at the Cape of *S. Vincent*; the Hollander lost their Admiral, and the Spaniard 3 ships and 1500 men. *Grave-Maurice* made Knight of the Garter. 27 Spanish ships going to the Indies, defeated by the Hollanders; they take the Castle of *Mina* in the South-sea; they secure the passage on the River *Ems*, by building two Forts. *Spilberg* beats the Spaniard and Portugal. The Cautionary Towns redeemed. *Maurice* succeedeth to *Philip* in the principality of *Orange*. A Synod

at

at Dort. Bernevelt executed. King James is visited by the Lantgrave of Hesse. The Lord Zanchir hanged. Queen Mary's body removed from Peterburgh to Westminster. The Palsgrave married to the Lady Elizabeth. The Londoners make a Plantation in Ireland. The English plant in Bermudas. The King of Denmark's second coming hither. Middleton's Water brought into London. Sutton's Hospital founded. Overbury poisoned. Spalato cometh hither. King James goeth into Scotland. Raleigh executed. Queen Anne dieth.

In the Church, Paul sitteth yet: He sends the Emperor a golden Rose beset with rich Gems. Bellarmine's and Marian's Books of the Popes power condemned at Paris. Mulheim built by the Protestants, who were expelled Colen. Newburg becomes a Papist. The Protestant Princes meet at Norimberg. Silesia petitioneth the Emperor for continuance of Protestantism; the Bishop of Uratislavia persecutes them; the Emperor intercedes for them. Arminius and Vorstius make troubles in Holland. A Synod called at Dort.

1620

In the East, the Turks take Vatz in Hungary, against the peace; Osman is strangled by the Janisaries, whom he meant to extirpate; Prince Corsey strangled in prison; Mustapha advanced again; peace with Poland; At Babylon a rebellion, and at Arzurum, and in Mesopotamia: The Bassa of Arzurum threateneth Constantinople; the Janisaries refuse to oppose him: Mustapha is removed, and Amurath 4. Osmans son advanced: Babylon taken by the Persian: the Cossacks trouble the Black-sea and Bosphorus: Abassa is pacified, having threatened Constantinople, and defeats the Persians: 20000 Turks defeated at Babylon: the King of Tartaria expelled by his brother: the Janisaries quarrel with the Grand-Signior. In the West, the Duke of Bavaria defeateth the Bohemians; the Emperor nullifieth the election of the Palatine to Bohemia; the Palatine with Brandeburg and others proscribed; Spire wasted by Mansfield, and the Palatinate by Bavaria and the Spaniards; Bucquoi killed; Mansfield proscribed; Westphalia, Paderborn, and Strasburg wasted by the Duke of Brunswick, who loseth an arm in battel; Mannheim and Heidelberg taken; Bavaria made Elector; Gabor invadeth Austria; Brunswick beaten by Tilly; Frankendale submiteth; Saxon-Wymar and Anhalt made friends with the Emperor; Tilly spoileth Brunswick; Mansfield defeated; the Boors of Austria rebell; the Imperialists take many places; A Church and Monastery neer Prague begun by the Emperor; the Palsgraves eldest son drowned. In France, the King takes many Towns from the Protestants, and makes war for the Valtoline; 250 houses burnt in Paris; Sonbize defeated at sea by Montmorency; Vendosme and the Great Prior of France, (Henry 4. his bastards) are imprisoned; Forts built by the King against Rochel; the Isle of Ree lost and regained; Nevers claimeth the Dutchy of Mantua, he is assisted by the French against the Spaniard; the King takes Rochel, and sends his Army for Mantua. In Spain, Philip 4. reigneth: Troubles in Mexico settled; Brasl recovered by the Spaniard from the Hollander: the Tartars do much hurt in Podolia: the Swedes beat the Polanders in Livonia, but the Polanders defeat the Tartars in Borussia; peace between Poland and Sweithland: much of Hungary subdued by Gabor; he disclaimeth it, and makes peace: The Cossacks take Newstadt: Buda almost burnt to the ground: Ferdinand 3. the Emperors son, crowned King of Hungary: Bergen in Norway almost consumed with fire. The King of Denmark is Generall of the united Princes against the Emperor; he is endangered by a fall from his horse; he defeateth, and is defeated. Jutland and most of Holst subdued by the Duke of Fridland; Stralsund besieged by the Cæsarians; Newstadt attempted in vain by the Danes; Livonia and Curland submit to the Swede; the King of Swedes takes divers Towns; Swedenland settled on the Kings Daughter; he takes Strasburg, and besiegeth Thorn, and makes peace with Poland. In Bohemia, the Jesuites are restored; many of the Lords executed. Silesia submits to the Emperor; Ferdinand 3. is crowned King of Bohemia; The Nobility commanded to forsake Religion, by a certain day. The Venetians make a League offensive and defensive with the Turks. The Spaniards besige Sluce and Bergen. Breda taken, and divers other Towns; the Dunkirkers take many Holland and English ships; the Hollanders take Hertogenbosch; Bernevelts sons in Holland degraded; Grotius elscapeth in a Trunk; Bergen relieved; Antwerp attempted by Orange in vaine; Mansfield taketh Embden. Prince Maurice dieth; his brother Henric succeedeth. Baie in Brasil lost and taken. In Leyden and Amsterdam, a sedition by the Arminians and Calvinists. The Hollanders rob the Spaniards in America, and take divers of their ships. Peace between England and France: The Bishop of Spalato returns: Prince Charles goeth into Spaine: Mansfield commeth into England. King James dieth. His sonne

sonne Charles succeedeth: An Expedition to Cadiz: English ships arrested in France: The Duke of Buckingham murdered: peace with France: New-England planted.

In the Church, Gregory 15. sits 2 years. To him succeeded Urban 8. The Archbishop of Spalato's Body burnt at Rome. At Tiran in the Valtolin, the Protestants are massacred in the Church; they are banished Bohemia. The Jesuites restored to Prague; The Protestant Church there given to the Carmelites. The Protestants driven out of Austria, and the Country of Henault punished for receiving them. Amsterdam and Leyden persecute the Arminians. At Vienna is instituted the Order of the Jesuits. The Protestants banished out of Juliers. Heidelberg and Glogovia become Popish.

In the East, the Turks defeat the Christian Fleet at Neapolis, and carry away 800 captives: At Babylon they are beaten by the Persians, but shortly after recover their losses: peace made between the Turk and Persian. At Constantinople, the Turk draweth a great summe of money from the Christians: the French Ambassador troubled about his Chappel: A Venetian Merchant, for looking on the Seraglio through his Perspective, is hanged. The Bassa of Aleppo beheaded; and war denounced against Poland. The Turks take Babylon, with the losse of 40000 Persian horse. The Sultan removes to Aleppo, because of the plague. A Fleet is sent against the Cossacks. Sim Abas, the Parthian King, husband to 800 wives, dieth. A third part of Constantinople burnt. The Turks waste Illyria: The Beglerbeg of Greece rebelleth. In the West, Hanovia besieged by the Cæsarians, and relieved: The Swede invadeth the Isle Rugia: Magdeburg besieged: The Emperress crowned at Ratisbone: Tilly wastes Thuringia, and fights the Swedish King at Lipsic, where 9000 Cæsarians were slain; Tilly being wounded, flieth to Hall. Frederick loseth Bohemia. Wolfstein Duke of Fridland taketh Prague. The Swedes march into Bavaria. Ratisbone besieged, and after 465 sallies is taken by Ferdinand 3. At the Pacification of Prague, the Saxon, Brandenburg, Lunenburg, and Vinarien joyn with the Emperor. Ferdinand 3. chosen King of the Romans, and the yeare following Emperor. Ramsey is taken by Count Nassau. At Hanovia divers encounters between the Imperialists and Swedes, and divers Towns taken by both parties. The French King and his brother the Duke of Orleans reconciled. A League between France and Sweithland. The French invade the Grisons; the French aid the States: France is invaded; the Queen-mother flieth to Amsterdam. Isabella the Infanta dieth at Brussels: The Spaniards have a great losse in America: Ferdinand the Cardinal, Infant of Spaine, prevails at Norlingen; He is made Governor of Brabant. The Spaniards beaten by the Hollanders. The French cut off at Fontenalle. The Spanish Fleet on the English shore, overthrowen by the Hollanders. Poland makes peace with the Turk: in the kingdom, Ladislaus 4. succeedeth to his father Sigismund. The Polanders and Muscovits defeated: peace between Poland and Sweithland. The King of Poland comes to Vienna; The Queen of Sweithland comes to Frankfort. Wars in Hungary. The Swedish King killed, having left one Daughter Christina to succeed him. Spinola the Spanish Generall dieth. The Prince of Orange makes an Expedition into Flanders. Horn takes Colberg; and the Swedish King, not long before his death, Francfort upon the Oder. Tilly, after many Victories, dieth at Ingolstadt. Fridland is murdered. Germany wasted with the sword, plague and famine. The Hollanders take some places in Brasl. Sken-Sconce retaken by the States. Breda taken by Orange. The Hollanders beaten neer Antwerp. 60000 destroyed by an Earthquake in Calabria. At Messina, 300 perished in a Church overthrowen by an Earthquake. In England, a peace is made with Spain: King Charles sends to the Emperor for restitution of the Palatinate: Three Nuncios sent by the Pope, are received into the Queens Court honorably. The English Lyturgie sent into Scotland, occasioned much mischief: The Scots Presbyterians enter into a Covenant, and raise Arms: Preparation in England and Ireland against them, both by Sea and Land.

In the Church, Pope Urban sitteth yet: He exhorteth the Christian Princes to peace, and falls out with the Venetians about their dominion in the Adriatick sea. The Jesuites at Vienna keep a Jubile. In Scotland, a Synod is held at Glascom. At Rome, such a Storm brake out with Darknesse, that at mid day they were forced to light candles. Divers meetings and Synods held this Decad in Germany among the Protestants: But whilst the Princes were consulting at Lipsic, Magdeburg is taken and destroyed by Tilly.

And

1630

AND thus (Good Reader) in this History and Chronologie, as in two small Maps, thou mayest behold the Microcosme of Mankind, in so many Hundred years, acting over & over again the same Tragi-Comedies: Thou seest new Persons and Visards, but the same Scene, and the same Things acted: Thou mayest behold from hence, as Charon did from the top of Parnassus in Lucian, a Clod of Earth full of Bee-hives, an Ant-hill full of Emmets, or a Pool full of Bubbles, some bigger, some lesser, puff'd with aire, and tossed up and down with winds, till they all break, and turn into their original Vapours. And what is it thou seest acted here? Nothing almost but Treacheries, Murthers, Incests, Adulteries, Thefts, Perjuries, Oppressions, Imprisonments, Cares, Watchings, Travellings, Underminings of one another; Princes tyrannizing over their People, Subjects rebelling against their Princes; one Prince thrusting out another, and People quarrelling one with another: Thou seest here Perigrations, Navigations, Toyings, Battels, Law-suits, and a thousand such Vexations, all for an Handfull of Earth: In a word; we see here innumerable Nests of Wasps and Hornets, destroying one another with their stings. And what is the cause of all this mischief? Truly, Pride, Ambition, Covetousnesse, Sacrilege, Tyrannie, Drunkennesse, Whoredoms, Whimsical opinions in Religion, Self-love, every one thinking his own dreams to be oracles, and his conceited fancies to be Inspirations; And above all things, Injustice, for which the World hath suffered so many changes: Justice is the Pillar on which States and Kingdoms stand; Remove that, and down falls the Temple of all Government: Justice is the Sun that illuminates all Societies; Extinguish that, and what will follow but storms, clouds, and darknesse? Justice is the Band that ties People to their Governours, and every man to another; when this Band is broken, nothing follows but Confusion: Justice is the Life of all States and Dominions, which live no longer then they are just; Nothing discriminates Kingdomes and States from Conventicles of Thieves and Robbers, but Justice; Remota Justicia, quid aliud sunt Regna quam magna Latrocinia? Lastly, In this Chronologie, as in an Epitomie, you shall see all the Heretical Opinions which have been spued out in so many Ages, now greedily lick'd up by the Fanatical spirits of this Age. GOD open our eyes, that we may at length see the Truth, and may with one heart and one mind embrace it; and that the Spirit of Truth, which our blessed Saviour promised to his Church, may lead us into all Truth. Amen.

A

## A Catalogue of the *Universities* of Christendom, and of the Time of their Foundations.

Ann. Christ.

636



*F* Cambridge, enlarged by Sigibert King of the East-Angles but erected long before.

640

Of Lindassern in Northumberland, founded by Oswald.

792

Of Park, founded by Charles the Great, at the desire of Alcuin and Bede; and shortly after, he founded the University of Pavia.

809

Of Tholouse, having the same priviledges with the University of Paris.

830

Of Lyons, founded by the Greeks.

895

Of Oxford, founded by Elfred.

926

Of Lovain in Brabant, founded by John Duke of Brabant.

1145

Of Rheims, founded in the Council there; it was enlarged afterward by Charles Guise Cardinal of Lorain, in the year 1560.

1196

Of Montpeler in France; It was first erected for the Law, now for Physick.

1209

Of Palenzia, founded by Alphonfus of Castile, and removed to Salamanca by Ferdinand of Castile, 1240.

1216

Of Naples, founded by Frederick 2.

1221

Of Padua, by Frederick the Emperor, who removed that of Bononia thither.

1227

Of Bourges, by S. Lewis.

1236

Of Vienna, founded by Frederick the Emperor.

1290

Of Perugia, a City in Hetruria.

1306

Of Coimbra, by Dionysius King of Portugal.

1312

Of Orleans, founded by Philip the Fair, King of France.

1316

Of Ferrara, by Albert Duke of that place.

1320

Of Cadurcis, or Quercy in France, by John 22.

1339

Of Pisa; it was afterward enlarged an. 1487. by Laurence de Medices, and then by Cosmo, 1543.

1346

Of Heidelberg, by Robert the Red, Palgrave.

1349

Of Anjou, by Lewis Duke of Anjou and King of Sicily; it was afterward enlarged by Charles 5. of France, an. 1364.

1360

Of Prague in Bohemia, by Charles 4. Emperor and King of Bohemia.

1364

Of Cracovia by Casimir, Jagello enlarged it, an. 1400.

1387

Of Sena in Etruria; Pope Pius 2. enlarged it.

1388

Of Colen, by the Senate; Urban 6. confirmed it.

1389

Of Avignon, by the Popes that resided there.

1390

Of Erford in Thuringia; it was founded before by Dagobert the French King, Boniface 9. enlarged it.

1403

Of Wiritzburg, by John the Bishop; his successor Julius enlarged it.

1404

Of Salamanca, where Pope Clement 5. appointed the Hebrew, Chaldee, and Arabick to be read.

1409

Of Leipsic in Misnia, by Frederick 1. Elector of Saxony.

1411

Of S. Andrews in Scotland, by King Alexander and his sister Isabel.

1412

Of Turin in Savoy, by Duke Lewis.

1415

Of Rostock, by John and Albert Dukes of Meckelburg, and the Senate.

1418

Of Caen in Normandy, by king Henry 5. of England.

1426

Of Dola in Burgundy, by Philip the Good, Duke of Burgundy.

1431

Of Poytiers, by Charles 7.

1438

Of Florence, by Cosmo di Medices, who sent for learned men thither out of Greece and other places, and erected a famous Library.

1454

Of Glascom in Scotland.

1456

Of Grypswald in Pomcran, begun by D. Uratisslaus, and finished by D. Philip, 1547.

1459

Of Basel, by Pope Pius 2.

X x x x

OF




- 1460 Of *Friburg* in *Brisgovia*, by *Albert* Archduke of *Austria*.  
 1472 Of *Ingolstadt* in *Bavaria*, by *Lewis*, and his son *George* Dukes of *Bavare*.  
 1475 Of *Valenciens*, by *Lewis*.  
 1477 Of *Tubing* in the Dukedom of *Wittenberg*, by *D. Eberard*.  
 1480 Of *Aberden* in *Scotland*, by *W. Elphinston* B. of *Aberden*, enlarged since by the  
*E. Marshal* of *Scotland*, and *Senat* of *Aberden*.  
 1482 Of *Mentz*, by the Archbishop *Dietherus*.  
 1491 Of *Munster* in *Westphalia*, by the Bishop there.  
 1498 Of *Copenhagen* in *Denmark*, by King *John* there.  
 1500 Of *Toledo*, by the Archbishop.  
 1502 Of *Wittenberg* in *Saxony*, by *Frederick* the Elector.  
 1506 Of *Francfort* upon *Oder*, by *Joachim* Elector of *Brandeburg*.  
 1517 Of *Complutum*, by *Ximenes* Archbishop of *Toledo*.  
 1517 Of *Sevil*, by *Roderick* of *Santa Elia*.  
 1518 Of *Granado*, by *Ferdinand* of *Calabria*.  
 1526 Of *Marpurg* in *Hassia*, by *Philip* the Lantgrave.  
 1538 Of *Strasburg*, by *John Sturmius*.  
 1540 Of *Bezancan* in *Burgundy*, by *Charles* 5.  
 1541 Of *Evera* in *Portugal*, by *Henry* the Archbishop.  
 1544 Of *Reimont* in *Borussia*, by *Albert* Marquess of *Brandeburg*.  
 1548 Of *Jene* in *Thuring*, by *John* Elector of *Saxony*.  
 1562 Of *Doway* in *Artois*, founded, by King *Philip* 2.  
 1564 Of *Dillengen* in *Swedeland*, by Cardinal *Otho* Bishop of *Auspurg*.  
 1575 Of *Leyden*, by *William* Prince of *Orange*, and the States of *Holland*.  
 1576 Of *Helmstadt* or *Julia*, by *Julius* D. of *Brunswick*.  
 1581 Of *Franequer*, by the Estates of *Frisia*.  
 1581 Of *Altorf* in *Bavaria*, by the *Norimbergers*.  
 1591 Of *Dublin* in *Ireland*, by Queen *Elizabeth*.  
 1592 Of *Venice*, enriched with a Greek Library by Cardinal *Bessarion*, which cost  
 30000. crowns; yet I finde that before this time, there were famous Professors  
 in *Venice*, as *Emanuel Chrysolorus*, *Hermolans Barbarus*, *Egnatius*, *Celins*  
*Secundus*, and divers others.  
 1607 Of *Gieffen*, by *Lewis* Lantgrave of *Hesse*; it was united to *Marpurg*, Ann. 1626.  
 1614 Of *Groning* in *Frisland*.  
 1616 Of *Paderburn*, by *Theodore* the Bishop.  
 1620 Of *Remthen* in the Principality of *Schaumburg*, by Prince *Ernest*.  
 1629 Of *Alba Julia* or *Fayrwar* in *Transilvania*, by *Bethlem Gabor*.

A



## A List of the different sorts of Knights in Christendome, and the Times of their Institution.

Ann. Christ.

- 738  *F Genneta* or *Jennetta* in *France*, instituted by *Charls Martel*, upon the  
 driving out of the *Moors*, or in honour of his Wife *Jean*: The *Moors*  
 they called *Gennets* or *Wesels*.  
 930 Of *S. Andrew* or the *Thistle* in *Scotland*.  
 1070 Of the *Knights of the Dog* in *France*, by *Philip the First*.  
 1090 Of *S. John* of *Jerusalem*, or *Hospitaliers* for entertaining of *Pilgrims*.  
 1117 Of *Knights Templars* in *Syria*, to suppress the robbing of *Pilgrims*.  
 1119 Of the *Knights of our Saviour*, by *Alphonfus* the First.  
 1134 Of *Knights of the Lily* in *Navar*, by *Garciaz*.  
 1161 Of the *Knights of Calatrava*, by *Sancho the Brave* of *Castile*.  
 1165 Of *Montjoy*, founded in *Syria*.  
 1170 Of *S. James* in *Castile*, by *Ferdinand* son to *Peter Albert*.  
 1192 Of *Knights Teutonicks*, as an addition to the *Templars* and *Hospitaliers*, by *Henry Walpot*.  
 1203 Of *Warfare of Christ*, in *Livonia*, by *Albert* Bishop of *Riga*.  
 1213 Of *Portglaive* in *Livonia*, by *Innocent* 3.  
 1213 Of the *Knights of Avis* in *Portugal*, by *Alphonfus* King there.  
 1218 Of the *Knights of Alcantara*, by *Ferdinand* 3. King of *Leon*.  
 1233 Of the *Knights of the Virgin Mary*, by *Bartholomew* of *Viceny*.  
 1279 Of the *Knights of S. George* in *Carinthia*, by *Rodolph* the Emperour.  
 1301 Of the *Knights of the Annunciado* in *Savoy*, by *Amadeus* 6.  
 1317 Of *Warfare of Christ*, in *Portugal*, by *Dionysius* King there; upon the destruction of the  
*Templars*.  
 1318 Of *Monteca* and *S. George* in *Arragon*, by *James* King there.  
 1321 Of *Christ Jesus*, in *Portugal*, by King *Dionysius*.  
 1322 Of *Knights of La Calza* in *Venice*.  
 1330 Of *S. Mark* in *Venice*, which seems to be the same with *La Calza*.  
 1332 Of *Knights of the Band* in *Spain*, by *Alphonfus* King of *Castile*.  
 1343 Of the *Garter* and *Round-Table* at *Windfor*, by King *Edward*.  
 1350 Of the *Star*, by King *John* of *France*.  
 1381 Of *Knights of the Dove* in *Castile*, by *John* 1.  
 1429 Of *Knights De la Scama* in *Spain*, by *John* 2. King of *Castile*.  
 1430 Of the *Golden-Stece*, by *Philip* D. of *Burgundy*.  
 1450 Of *Knights of the Ear* of *Corne* in *Britain*, by *Francis* 1.  
 1451 Of *Knights of S. Maurice* in *Savoy*, by Pope *Felix* 5. and D. of *Savoy*.  
 1469 Of *S. Michael* in *France*, by *Lewis* 11.  
 1531 Of *Knights of the Rhodes*, transplanted to *Malta* by the Pope and Emperour.  
 1534 Of *Knights of the Burgundian-Crosse*, by *Charles* 5.  
 1561 Of *Knights of S. Steven* in *Tuscany*, by *Cosmo di Medice*.  
 1579 Of *Knights of the Holy-Ghost* in *France*, by King *Henry* 3.  
 1608 Of *Knights of the Holy-Blood of Christ*, by *Vincent Gonzaga* D. of *Mantua*. Besides  
 these, I finde the *Knights of Montefio* in the Province of *Valencia*: Of *Redemp-*  
*tion* in *Arragon*: Of *S. Mary* in *Italy*, called also there *Fratri Gaudenti*, be-  
 cause they lived at ease and pleasure: Of *S. Lazaro*, who pledd great Antiquity, Pope  
*Pius* 4. of late revived them, and the Dukes of *Savoy* do much respect them: The  
*Knights of S. Steven*, erected by *Cosmo* Duke of *Florence*, who is great master of this  
*Order*, have their chief residence in *Pisa*: to these may be added, *Knights of the Sepul-*  
*chre*; but I think they be the same with *S. John* of *Jerusalem*, now of *Malta*: We  
 have also in *England* *Knights Bawerets*, *Baronets*, *Batchilours*, and of the *Bath*: The  
*Knights of the Ear* of *Corne* were abolished, upon the union of *Britany* with *France*,  
 by the marriage of *Charles* 8. with *Anne* of *Britany*.

## A List of the Religious Orders since Christ.

Years of Christ. 329

- A**ntony and Paul the Eremita begin the first Monks.  
 402 The Order of Regulars instituted by S. Austin.  
 524 Of Benedictine Monks by S. Bennet.  
 910 Of Clugny by Bernon an Abbot; To this Order belong the Carthusians.  
 1009 Of Camaldulenses by S. Romualdus.  
 1081 Of the Shady Valley by S. John Gualbert.  
 1106 Of the Cisterciens by S. Robert.  
 1118 Of the Canons Regular.  
 1143 Of the Premonstratenses.  
 1180 Of the Carmelites, confirmed by Pope Alexander 3.  
 1197 Of the Crosse-bearers, confirmed by Celestine the 3.  
 1209 Of the Minorites, confirmed by Innocent the 3.  
 1216 Of the Redemption of Captives, confirmed by Innocent the 3.  
 1227 Of the Predicants, confirmed by Hono-

- rius the 3.  
 1227 Of the Nuns of S. Clara, which observe the rule of the Minorites.  
 1241 Of the Eremites of S. Austin.  
 1248 Of the Sylvestrines, confirmed by Innocent the 4.  
 1294 Of the Celestines.  
 1299 Of the Servants of S. Mary. (Sene.)  
 1362 Of the Jesuati by S. John Columbine of  
 1373 Of Mount Olivet.  
 1410 Of S. Jerome: Of the Scopetini: Of S. George de Alga.  
 1480 Of the Minimies by S. Francis de Paula.  
 1530 Of the Capuchins, confirmed by Clement the 7.  
 1533 Of the Clerks of S. Paul, by the same Pope.  
 1540 Of the Society of Jesus, by Ignatius Loyola, and confirmed by Paul the 3.  
 1591 Of those that serve the sick, confirmed by Gregory the 14.

### A List of Heretiques, and such as have been so reputed since Christ.

- 39 Simon Magus.  
 71 Menander, Saturnius, Basilides, Simons Disciples.  
 81 Nicholas the Deacon, who allowed fornication.  
 103 Corinthus, and his Scholar Ebion, denied Christs Divinity.  
 132 Papias Author of the Millenaries.  
 154 Carpocrates, and his Scholars the Gnosticks, denied Works.  
 195 Cajanites, deniers of the Resurrection.  
 203 Valentinians, Authors of many Fables.  
 213 Marcionites Authors of two Gods.  
 219 Gernogines, who held the Eternity of the Matter.  
 220 Montanus the Paraclete, and his Cataphrygians.  
 224 Originists, who saved the Devils.  
 237 Helkefseits, dissemblers of their faith.  
 240 Donatists, who held Rebaptisation.  
 254 Novatians, who denied pardon to the lapsed.  
 261 Sabellians, disciples of Noetus, who denied the Trinity.  
 269 Samosatenis, who denied Christs divinity.  
 278 Manes, father of the Manichees, who held two principles.  
 336 Arius, who denied Christs Divinity.  
 352 Photinus, who also denied Christs divinity.  
 358 Macedonius, who denied the Divinity of the Holy Ghost.  
 361 Aetius and Eunomius his Scholar, who held the Father God only; denied Episcopacy, prayers, fasting, and good works.  
 375 Apollinaris, who denied Christs Soule.  
 395 Padius, father of the Anthropomorphites.  
 398 Helvidius, who held that Mary had other children.  
 408 Priscillianus, who held the soules and God all one substance.  
 417 Jovinianus held all sins equal, and depised Virginity.

- 425 Vigilantius, an enemy to Saints and Reliques.  
 432 Pelagius denied original sin, and slighted Gods grace.  
 451 Nestorius held two persons in Christ.  
 467 Eutyches held but one nature in Christ.  
 475 Pacificants, who would reconcile the Catholiques and Eutychians.  
 542 Julius Hilarianus made Christs Body impassible.  
 566 Agnoits, schollars to Temistius, held Christ ignorant of the last day.  
 607 Armenians enlarged the Eutychian heresy.  
 630 Monothelites held but one wil and operation in Christ.  
 821 Michael Balbus Emperour, denied the Resurrection, &c.  
 1049 The Greeks denied the Procession of the Holy Ghost.  
 1058 Berengarius was condemned of Heresie, for denying Christs Body in the Euchar.  
 1087 Bogomiles held the world was made by Devils.  
 1119 Petrus de Bruis and Henry denied Baptism to Infants.  
 1144 Petrus Abailardus made the Divine persons unequal.  
 1153 Cathari or patareni denied the Sacram.  
 1170 Waldenses were condemned for their doctrines.  
 1241 Albigenes also were condemned.  
 1276 Fraticelli held themselves the onely true Church.  
 1299 Begardi and Beghine denied prayers, Fasting, &c.  
 1309 Lollardus taught that Lucifer was unjustly condemned.  
 1352 The Whippers who denied Sacraments and good works, holding the Baptism of blood the onely Baptism.  
 After these times sprung up some other Hereticks, as Servetus, David Gores, the Libertines, and some others, who were quickly suppressed. A N

## An Alphabetical Table, containing the Persons, Places, and Principall Matters in the Second Part of the History of the World.

- A**  
 Bassa Bassai the Revolted Turk. 483.  
 Abbatiscella its History. 367.  
 Abbot of S. Gall defeated. 362. raiseth a Civil War. 365.  
 Abbots of S. Gall, who Abdise, Patriarch of the East. 432.  
 Aberdene, built. 142.  
 Aberdene Divines, their Queries to the Covenanting Ministers. 642, &c.  
 Abisimarus Emperour. 114. 117.  
 Acephali, who Achæans subdued by the Romans, 5. their insolencie. 4.  
 Achmet the Turk, and his Actions, 480. makes Peace with Caesar. ib.  
 Acho, King of Norway. 243.  
 Adalgisus, Prince of Salernum, 135.  
 Adolphus, Emperour. 254.  
 Enobarb sends the Turks two Barks, which are taken by Garcias. 395.  
 Aetius the Generall. 93, &c.  
 Afric lost. 117.  
 Agrippa, his Actions and death. 41.  
 Agrippina. 42, &c.  
 Aistalphus, King of Lombardie. 121.  
 Aix turns out their Jesuits. 415.  
 Aladulus, King of Armenia beheaded. 473.  
 Alani, who 40. 90. 246.  
 Alanfon, the French Kings brother. 436.  
 Alaricus. 88, 90, 91. Sacks Rome. 92.  
 Duke of Albany, Regent of Scotland, and his Actions. 57, &c.  
 Alberts Posteritie, Marquisses of Austria. 141.  
 Albert of Austria, Emperour. 254.  
 &c. his Lady. 255.  
 Albert Emperour, his Title to Bohemia, and short life, 406.  
 Albert Arch Duke of Austria. 438.  
 Albinus defeated by Severus. 62.  
 Alboinus, King of Lombardy 104.

- Alexander, the supposed son of Antiochus. 3.  
 Alexander, Ptolomies son in Law, 16.  
 Alexander Zebina, King of Syria. 7. his sacrilege. ib. is slain. ib.  
 Alexander Janneus succeeds Aristobulus in Judæa, 10. he murders his brother: his cruelties and death. 10, &c.  
 Alexander Cleopatras son, and his Actions. 11.  
 Alexandra Reigns in Palestine. 17.  
 Alexander Aristobulus his son escapes out of prison, 21. is defeated by Gabinius, 23. is beheaded, 29.  
 Alexander Severus, a good Emperour, 65, &c. his end. 66.  
 Alexander, brother of Leo the Emperour. 140.  
 Alexander, King of Scotland, 233, &c. his death. 44.  
 Alexander King of Scotland his Actions. 74.  
 Pope Alexander's Actions against Barbarossa, and his gift to Venice, 178. his Synod. ibid.  
 Alexander, Lord of the Isles his Rebellion and submission. 537.  
 Alexander, King James the third's brother, escapes out of prison, 565. made Regent. 566.  
 Alexius, Greek Emperour, and his losses. 164.  
 Strangled. 184.  
 Alexius Angelus, Greek Emperour. 186. 188.  
 Alphonfus King of Asturia. 125.  
 Alphonfus King of Arragon. 235.  
 Alphonfus the 11 of Spain. 276.  
 Alphonfus leaves Naples to his bastard son. 491.  
 Amadeus Earl of Savoy, and his Actions. 283.  
 Amadeus the 5 and 6. 284, &c. his Exploits. 285.  
 Amedius the 7th. 286.  
 Amadeus his Commendation of the A a a a privat

## The Alphabetical Table.

*privat Life*, 347. *becomes a Monk*. 348.  
*Amadeus made Pope, and the Ceremonies of his Inauguration*, 350. *he resignes it*, 352. *hath divers Honors and Priviledges given him by the Synod of Laufanna*. 352.  
*Amadeus 3<sup>d</sup> Duke of Savoy his Charity*. 354.  
*Amadeus the 8 of Savoy, and his Actions*, 345, &c. *made Duke*. 346.  
*Amalafunta, the Gothish Queen*. 101.  
*Ambassadors from France and Spain to the Electors*, 420. *and their Mesfage*. *ibid*.  
*Ambassadors questioned, and Merchants imprisoned at Constantinople*. 485  
*Ambrose Bishop*. 26.89  
*America subdued by the Spaniard*. 431  
*Americus Vesputius his Discovery*. 503  
*Amurath the Turk, Invades Hungary, and is defeated by Huniades*. 406, &c.  
*Amurath the second and his Actions*. 463, &c.  
*Amurath the third and his Actions*. 479  
*Amurath, Osmans brother Sultan*. 482  
*Amurath his life and death*. 263  
*Anastafius Emperor, his good and bad Qualities*. 98, &c. *his end*. 100.  
*Anastafius second, Emperor*. 117  
*Anastafius the Patriarch*. 120  
*Ancre the French Favorit, and his end*. 511  
*Andrew, King of Hungary*. 224  
*Cardinall of Saint Andrews Viceroy, complies with the Queen Mother*, 577. *his Pride*. 579. *murdered*. *ib*. *his Castle taken and demolished*. 580  
*Andronicus Greek Emperor, his Actions and miserable end*. 188  
*Andronicus the elder, Emperor*. 247  
*&c. unhappie in his children*. 249  
*Andronicus the younger*. 249. *verseth his Grandfather*. *ib*. *his life and death*. 250  
*Andronicus the blinde Emperor*. 261  
*Angeli, their Dominion cease*. 248

*Anjou, Protector of France*, 296. *con- tests with Burgundy, ib*. *tries all means to raise money*. 297. *his Coronation and death*. *ib*.  
*Queen Ann beheaded, and Queen Jane dieth*. 458. *Ann of Cleve, and Catherin Howard*. 559  
*Antiochus Epiphanes his wicked- ness and Tyranny*. p. 1. *his death*. 2  
*Antiochus Soter, his kindness to Hyrcanus*. 6. *he beats the Parthians*. *ib*. *at last is slain by them*. *ibid*.  
*Antiochus Lyzicenys*. 11  
*Antiochus Gryphus*. *ibid*.  
*Antiochus Eusebes*. 11, &c.  
*Antiochia overthrown by an Earth quake*. 101. *shaken again*. 108.  
*Antipater his Actions*. 20. *made Go- vernor*. 29  
*Antipopes*. 258. 277. *cause great troubles*. 334. 352  
*Antonius hates Octavius, and is hated of the people, he flies into France*. 29. *is invited into Italy*. 30. *loseth two Legions, and is endangered by the Par- thians*. 31. *he crucifies and beheads An- tigonus*. 32. *is defeated by Octavius, and kills himself*. 33. *Antonie's widow of Athens*. 262  
*Antonius, why called Pius*. 55. *his Excellency and Government, and Phi- losophy*. 56. *his excellent Government and Victories*. 57  
*Antony of Portugall*. 435  
*Don Antono of Portugall assisted by the French*. 606. *by the English*. *ibid*.  
*Apicius hanged himself*. 37  
*Appius Claudius his Victory and Triumph*. 8  
*Aquila Ponticus*. 55. *Aquileia*. 67  
*Arbogastus*. 89  
*Arcadius Emperor*. 90, &c.  
*Archelaus accused and banished*. 35  
*Aristobulus wears a Diadem: his murders and bloudie end*. 10. *Aristo- bulus, Alexanders son*. 17. *strives with his brother, is defeated and carried to Rome*. 20. *escapes*. 22. *is poisoned*. 29  
*Aristonicus seizes on the Roman Towns*. 9. *is sent to Rome with the wealth of Attalus*. *ib*. *and there is stran- gled*. *ibid*.  
*Arius, and Arians*. 80, &c.  
*Armes of England used by Queen Mary of Scotland*. 597  
*Armignac*

## The Alphabetical Table.

*Armignac taken prisoner*. 301  
*Arminius in Holland occasioneth much Debate*. 443. *suppressed at U- tricht*. 447  
*Arnulphus Emperor*. 139  
*Arnulphus Duke of Bavaria*. 142  
*Arragonians obtain Sicily and Naples*. 235  
*Kingdom of Arragon in debate*. 303  
*Arragonian Fleet defeated by the Genuois*. 489  
*Arras Rebelleth*. 499  
*Arteman the Gantois Captain*. 300  
*Artenel, Captain of the Gantois*. 298, &c.  
*Articles between King Charls of France, and King Henry 5 of Eng- land*. 522  
*Articles between the English and Scots*. 551  
*Articles between Edw. 4. and the Fr. K. at which Burgundy storms*. 558  
*King Edward 4. kisseth an old wi- dow for 20l.* 558. *is entertained in France*. *ibid*.  
*Assembly of the 3 Estates of France at Blois, for settling of Peace*. 607  
*Athanasius*. 81. 83. 85.  
*Athens destroyed by the Turk*. 262  
*Walter Earl of Athol his Punish- ment*. 539  
*Attalus*. 92.  
*Attila, K. of the Hunns*. 94, 95. 398  
*Atulphus*. 92  
*Aubigney advanced by King James, and is accused falsly*. 628  
*Avenion, the Popes Seat*. 255  
*bought by the Pope*. 260  
*Augustin*. 93  
*Aurelian Emperor*. 72. *his end*. 73  
*Aurelius Probus Emperor*. *ib*. *his end*. 74  
*Auria, Admirall of Genua*. 261.  
*271*  
*Auriflamme the holy Standard*. 299  
*Austrians quarrel with the Switzers*. 357, &c.  
*Austrians make peace with the Ti- gurins*. 361. *make Warr upon the Can- tons*. 362. *make Peace again*. *ib*. *which is shortly after broken*. *ibid*.

Babylon

## B

*Babylon, the Seat of the Sarazens*. 112  
*Bacchides his Actions*. 2  
*Bada its History*. 372  
*Bajazet the Turk*. 261. *his Actions and death*. 264. *his sons*. 265  
*Bajazet the Turk his Actions*. 469, &c.  
*Bajazets Rebellion against Soly- man*. 477. *strangled with his four sons*. *ibid*.  
*Baldwin King of Jerusalem*. 165  
*Baldwin de Burgo*. 166  
*Baldwin Earl of Flanders, Empe- ror of Byzantium*. 186  
*Baldwin Earl of Flanders*. 227, &c.  
*Baldwin the second*. 228  
*Baliol King of Scots*. 242. *doeth homage to King Edward*. 244. *flies out against him*. *ib*. *he submits, and is imprisoned*. 245  
*Edward Baliol King of Scots*. 309  
*Baliol resignes his Right to the Scotch Crown*. 322  
*Baliol Invades Scotland*. 324  
*Bannockbarn Battell*. 320  
*Baras the Persian*. 106. *Bardas Cæ- far*. 134. *Barnabos afflicts Genua*. 272, &c.  
*Barnabos quarrels with the Savoyen*. 286  
*Basil the Emperor, and Basil the Eunuch*. 149. *Basils Actions*. 150. *his crueltie upon the Bulgarians*. *ibid*. *his Victories and death*. 150, &c.  
*Basil its History*. 365  
*Basilus, of an horse-courser, made Emperor*. 135. *his Actions*. 136. *his death*. *ibid*.  
*George Basta forceth Religion*. 404  
*Basta and Batorius strive for Transilvania*. 439  
*Stephen Bathors Valour*. (399)  
*Steven Bator, King of Poland*. 436  
*Bator the Transilvanian*. 438. *An- drew Bator*. 439  
*Battel of Agencourt*. 519. *of Ver- noyle*. 524  
*Gabriel Bator Halts between Cæ- far and the Turk*. 404  
*Thomas Becket his life and death*. 188, &c.  
 aaaaaa 2  
 Belgæ,

## The Alphabetical Table.

Belgæ, *their Army against* Cæsar. 22.  
 Pelisarius. 101, &c. *his exploits*. 102, &c.  
 Bencozba. 54  
 Berengarius *King of Italy*. 139. *fallen Emperor*. 140.  
 Berengarius *murdered*. 143.  
 Berengarius *the younger*. 144.  
 Berengarius *taken, and set free by the Emperor*. 145. *taken again and imprisoned*. *ibid.*  
 Berenice, *Queen of Egypt*. 21  
 Bern *sides with the Switzers*. 361.  
 Bernevild *and his Complices in Holland*. 449  
 Bienna *makes a League with Bern, and other Cantons*. 371  
 Blanca, *mother of Saint Lewis*. 229  
 Blanca Maria *Dutchess of Savoy*. 355, &c.  
 Bocchus *King of Mauritania*. 12  
 Bohemia *troubled with their Kings*, 255. *Enriched and divided by Charls the fourth*. 269  
 Bohemia *troubled with Wars by the Hussits*. 334  
 Bohemians *have Liberty of Religion*. 442  
 Bohemia *Rebels against Cæsar*, 447, &c.  
 Boiebracius *King of Bohemia, a Hussit*. 409, &c.  
 Borgias *poisoned, and recovers*, 504  
 Borussians *fall off from the Marian knights*. 414. *Foyn with Poland*, *ibid.*  
 Bothwells *ill offices between Murry and the Hamiltons*. 617  
 Bothwell *restored to the discontent of Murry*. 618  
 Bothwell *accused of murdering the Kings, and is made D. of Orkney*. 620  
 Married, *ibid.*  
 Bothwell *proclaimed Traytor*, 631  
 Surprised *Leith*. *ibid.*  
 Botoniates *Greek Emperor*. 164  
 Bourdeaux *fals off, and once to the English*. 490  
 Boyds, *their greatnesse and fall in Scotland*. 563, &c.  
 Brigerus *the Tyrant of Swethland*. 266  
 Britan *invaded by Cæsar*, 22. *Base Britany in controversie*. 290  
 Duke of Britany *reconciled to the*

*King*, 302. *Duke of Orleans killed by Burgundy*. 304  
 Duke of Britany *angry for the peace between Lewis and his Subjects*. 493  
 Britany *in France troubled by the Dukes favorite*, 501. *Sues for peace*, 502  
 Bruce *King of Scotland*, 244. *He consults with Cumin, who betrays him*. 246. *Escapes strangely into Scotland, and kills Cumin*. *ibid.*  
 King Bruce *his contestation with K. Edward*. 305  
 Bruce *his good successe*. 306  
 Robert Bruce *King of Scotland his successe*. 320  
 Bruce *and his Nobility differ*. 322  
 Bruce *king of Scots his advice, will and death*. 323  
 Brucius *and Baliolaus have divers encounters*. 324, &c.  
 Bruges *rebellet*. 342  
 Bruges *begs pardon of the Duke*, 448  
 Brunchilde *her punishment*. 111  
 Brunswig *like to be betrayed*. 440  
 Brunswicks *out-rages*, 452. *He is defeated by Tilly*, *ibid.* *Lost his arme*. 453  
 Brunswick *beat again by Tilly*, *ibid.*  
 With other passages *that year*. *ib. &c.*  
 Brutus *his death*. 30  
 Duke of Buckingham *animated by D. Morton, against King Richard*. 554  
 his bad successe, *is betrayed and beheaded*. *ib.*  
 Bucquoi, Brunswick, Spinola, Tilly, *and other Commanders oppress Germany*. 451  
 Bulgarius. 114. 116. 118. 120. 127.  
 Converted *twice*. 132. *Their Battell with Leo*. 143. *Pillage Hadrianople*. 141  
 Burdilex, *Governor of Piemont his Petition to the French King, and his Counsell about the delivery of the Savoyen Towns*. 397. *Answer thereto*. 397, &c.  
 Burgundie *of old a Kingdom, now a Dutchie, and Countie*. 156.  
 Burgundians *Converted to Christ*. 92. *Burgundy annexed to France*. 276  
 Burgundians *3 times defeated by the Switzers*. 363  
 Duke of Burgundy *absolved by the French King, and then takes Paris*. 486  
 Is

## The Alphabetical Table.

*Is murdered by the Dolphin*. 487. *his son makes a League with England*. *ib.*  
 Burgundy *and Orleans reconciled*. 489  
 Burning Glasses. 99  
 Byzantium *the Walls overthrown*. 61. *Rebuilt, and new named*. 81. *Fired*. 96. *Its Library burnt*. 97. *a great Slaughter there*. 101. *Besieged by Fleets*. 112. 118. *Taken by the Latins*. 186.  
 Lost by Baldwin *the 2<sup>d</sup>*. 228. *taken by Palæologus*. 246. *Besieged and taken by Mahumet 2<sup>d</sup>*. 466. *its miserable Condition*. *ibid.*  
 C  
 Cabades *the Persian King*. 100  
 Jack Cade's *Rebellion*. 530  
 Cæsar's *League with Pompey*. 21. *he promotes the Agrarian Laws*. 21. *his Success against Auletes, the Helvetians, and Ariovistus*. 21, &c. *the Belgæ, Gauls, and Britans*. 22, &c. *he envies Pompey*. 24. *subdues the Auverni, Hædud, and others*. *ib.* *refuseth to part with his Army, or lay down his Commission*. 25. *he passeth Rubicon*. *ibid.* *enters Rome, and seizeth on the Treasure*. 26. *attempts to Surprize Pompey, and takes in divers Towns*. *ibid.* *his sayings of Pompey*. *ibid.* *his Pharaasian Army and Fight*. *ib.* &c. *his courage in the Storm*. *ibid.* *his skil in Swimming*. 27. *he overcomes Ptolomie's Army*. *ibid.* *and the African under Juba, Scipio, and Cato*. *ibid.* *his 4 Triumphs, Feast, Magnificence and Clemency*. 28. *his fifth Triumph, Titles, Pride, Death, and Commendations*. *ibid.* 416, &c.  
 Cæsar *Borgias cruelty*.  
 Caganus *King of the Avars*. 165, &c. *Enters Lombardy*. 109  
 Calender *Reformed*. 437  
 Caligula, *his good and bad qualities, his Tyrannies and death*. 40, &c.  
 Callis *Besieged by Burgundy*. 527  
 Callis *left by the English*. 596.  
 Demanded by *Queen Elizabeth*. 597.  
 Calojohannes *Emperor, his Reigne*. 599  
 172  
 Calypha. 119  
 Campobassus *perfidious*. 410  
 Campion *Gaurius, King of Egypt*. 473. *tried to death*. 474

Caire *besieged and taken*. 530  
 Cantacuzenus *his life*. 261  
 Canton Towns *described*. 373. *Cantons beyond the Alpes*. 374  
 Car, *Earl of Sommerfet his Story*. 636, &c.  
 Caracalla *his wicked Reigne and end*. 63  
 Carola, *Queen of Cyprus*. 354  
 Carolus Martellus. 117, &c.  
 Carolomannus. 137  
 Carrarius *his wickedness and end*. 332  
 Carthaginian War *the 3<sup>d</sup>. how occasioned*. 3. *Debated in the Senat, whether Carthage should be overthrown*. 4. *The Carthaginian ships burnt by the Romans, and their City taken and burned*. 4. *Their wrongs to Masaniissa*. *ibid.*  
 Carthage *taken by Genfericus, then by Belisarius*. 102  
 Carus *and Carinus his son emperors*. 74  
 Cassius *his death*, 30. *His Rebellion*. 57  
 Catalani, *who?* 247  
 Cathibaius *Sultan of Egypt*. 469  
 Catalins *conspiracy*. 20  
 Cato *laid in Chains*, 22. *Hee kills himself*. 27  
 Cazanus *the Tartar beats the Sultan of Egypt*. 248. *His error*. 249  
 Prince Charls *sent into Spain with Buckingham*, 639. *Returns*, *ibid.* *The match broken*. 640  
 Charls *K. of great Britain, his actions and end*. 641, &c.  
 K. Charls *grants the Scots Presbyterians their demands*. 644, &c.  
 Charls *the Bellicous*. 343  
 Charls *of Burgundy his losses*. 355  
 Charolois *of Burgundy, quarrels with Lewis the eleventh*, 492. &c. *His hatred to him*. 495  
 Charls *of Burgundies ambition*, 496  
 Full of troubles, *ibid.* *His greatnesse*. 498  
 Charls *of Burgundy beareth, and is beaten by the Switzers*. 498. *Beaten again, and is killed*, *ibid.* *His daughter Mary sends to K. Lewis*. 499  
 Charls *the Great*, 122. 125, &c. *His death and commendations*, 128. *And famous works*. *ibid.* &c.  
 Charls *of Anjou*. 234  
 Charles

## The A lphabetical Table.

Charls the balde. 136,&c.  
 Charls de Blois. 290.&c.  
 Charls of Dyrrachium, 260. Mur-  
 thered. ib.  
 Charls the fair of France. 288  
 Charls the Great's issue fails. 141  
 Charls the Gros. 137,&c.  
 Charls of Moravia Crowned Em-  
 peror at Bonna. 259  
 Charls King of Navarr. 292  
 Charls the simple. 143  
 Charls the fourth Emperor, 267. his  
 Actions and death. 268,&c.  
 Charls the fifth of France. 293, &c.  
 Charls the fifth ends the Venetian  
 Warr. 419. The manner of his Electi-  
 on. 420, &c. Reasons for the same. 421,  
 &c. Is Elected. 423. And Crowned. 424  
 Charls the sixth of France. 296. 486  
 Charls the eighth of France, and  
 his Actions. 415  
 Charls the fifth Emperor his Pede-  
 gree. 344  
 Charls the fifth his Actions. 425,  
 &c. his end. 431  
 Charls 7 of France, his Message to  
 Duke Lewis of Savoy. 353. He makes  
 War against Savoy. 355  
 Charls 7 his Actions. 487, &c.  
 Charls 7 his death. 491  
 Charls 8 of France, his Reigne and  
 Actions. 500, &c. His death. 503  
 Charls 9 of France. 507  
 Charls King of Naples murdered.  
 397  
 Charls 3<sup>d</sup> of Savoy loseth most of  
 his Countrey. 393. is accused by King  
 France. 394  
 Duke Charls of Savoy excused. 394  
 Dieth. 396  
 Charls the fifth Duke of Savoy.  
 356  
 Charls Canutus King of Sweden.  
 336  
 Charls, Sigismunds Uncle, a Pro-  
 testant made King of Sweden. 378. His  
 Actions. 379  
 Charls taken by a Stratagem. 488  
 Childbertus. 104  
 Childericus. 97. 114  
 Chilpericus King of France. 121  
 Christ is born. 34. Disputes being 12  
 years old. 36. his Actions, Preaching and  
 Miracles. 38, &c. His Death, Resurrecti-  
 on, Ascension, and sending of the Holy

Ghost. 39  
 Christians persecuted. 45. 50. 53. Ob-  
 tain Victory by Prayer. 57. Live quietly  
 under Commodus. 59. Falsly accused.  
 63. Quiet under Caracalla. 64. Under  
 Alexander Severus. 65, &c. Persecuted  
 under Maximinus. 68. Under Decius.  
 69. Under Valerian. ib. quiet under  
 Gallienus. 70. Persecuted under Clau-  
 dius. 71. Under Aurelian. 73. Under Di-  
 ocletian. 75. & Maximianus. 76. & Ga-  
 lerus Maximinus. ibid. Licinius. 79  
 Christians, their good success against  
 the Sarazens. 165. Win and lose Da-  
 miata. 224. Defeated at Ptolemais  
 225. They lose it. 236. Their success a-  
 gainst the Moors and Tunis. 237. Per-  
 fidious to the Turks. 248. Slain by the  
 Egyptians. ib. Murdered by the  
 Turks in Hungary. 400. Defeated by  
 Amurath. 408. Their loss in Africa  
 under Sebastian. 435. They lose Byzan-  
 tium, and are invited thither again.  
 466, &c.  
 Christianus the third, King of  
 Denmark. 340  
 Christian fourth of Denmark.  
 440  
 Christianus King of Sweden.  
 338, &c.  
 Christiern a cruel Tyrant. 337. Chri-  
 stiern the 2<sup>d</sup>. 339  
 Chrysothom. 90, &c.  
 Cicero, see. Tully.  
 Cimbrians, their Victories over the  
 Romans. 12. Their Actions about the  
 Alpes in Spain, and in France. 13.  
 Their Women. ib.  
 Cinna his Actions. 15  
 Claudia, Montfort's Wife. 290, &c.  
 Claudius Cæsar, his Reigne, good  
 and bad qualities. 41. His Publick  
 Works. 42. He banisheth the Jews, and  
 is poisoned. 43. Flavius Claudius Em-  
 peror. 71. Claudius Tacitus Emperor.  
 73  
 Clans, Turbulent Families in Scot-  
 land. 537, &c.  
 Cleander, Commodus his Favorit.  
 58  
 Cleopatra, Physcons Queen, and  
 her Actions. 11. Cleopatra made  
 Queen by Cæsar. 27. Defeated by Octa-  
 vius. 33. Poisoneth her self. 33  
 Clergy Revenues aimed at. 518  
 Clodius

## The Alphabetical Table.

Clodius the Tribun. 21. killed by  
 Milo. 24  
 Clodoveus baptiz'd by Remigius.  
 98. his actions. 99  
 Clodoveus his sacrifice. 113  
 Christopher Columbus his Disco-  
 very. 502  
 Columni and Ursini. 256  
 Columnii, their raging against the  
 Clergy in Rome. 425  
 Comæus Comnenus, Greek Empe-  
 ron, is affrighted. 163  
 Commodus Emperor, his bad quali-  
 ties. 58. Escapes divers dangers. ib. his  
 vanities. 99. his end. ib.  
 Computation from the years of Christ,  
 when begun. 138  
 Conclave ordained. 246. revoked and  
 renewed. ib.  
 Conference at Hampton-Court.  
 634. ib.  
 Conradin Sultan of Damascus. 224.  
 Conradinus, son of Conradus. 234  
 Conradus, Emperor. 142  
 Conradus Salicus Emperor, his  
 Actions. 155, &c.  
 Conradus his expedition into Syria.  
 183  
 Conradus, Fredericks son. 226. 234.  
 Constable of France, his pride. 496.  
 would have the King swear. 497  
 Constable of France imprisoned by  
 the Duke of Britany. ib.  
 Constable of France his death plotted  
 by the King and Duke. 497. delivered  
 and beheaded. 498  
 Constantin. 77. he defeats Maxenti-  
 us. 78. and Licinius. 79. is confirmed by  
 the sight of the Cross, and his victories  
 thereby. ibid. his excellent Government  
 and Piety. 80. no friend to Rome. 81.  
 his maverling. ib. his goodness and death  
 82. his sons, Constantin, Constans, and  
 Constantius. ib.  
 Constantin fifth. Emperor. 120. his  
 actions. ib. his death. 121  
 Constantin, Irenes son. 123  
 Constantin, Zoe's son. 141  
 Constantin, Basils brother, his  
 reigne. 151  
 Constantin Monomachus Emperor.  
 158  
 Constantin the last. 466  
 Constantinople much distempered.  
 482. 484.

Constantinus Pogonatus. 113  
 Constantius his actions and end. 83  
 Constantius a great Commander. 92  
 Constans Emperor. 112. his actions  
 and end. ib.  
 Corinth destroyed and burned by the  
 Romans. 5. Corinthian brass. 5.  
 Cornish men defeated. 548  
 Cosroes. 100. 102, &c. his death. 105.  
 a Christian. 106. Cosroes the second.  
 106. his cruelty. ib. will make no peace  
 with Heraclius. 109. urgeth Nestoria-  
 nisme. 110  
 Cossacks and Croats cruelty. 453  
 Cossacks molest the Muscovites and  
 Turk. 480. beat the Tartars. 482.  
 Covenanters, their Forces and de-  
 mands from the King. 641. their inju-  
 lenoies. 645  
 Council of Nice. 80. of Tyre. 81. of  
 Sardica. 83. of Millan. 84. of Arimi-  
 num, of Seleucia. ib. of Alexandria. 84  
 of Antioch. ib. of Constantinople. 88.  
 of Ephesus. 94. of Chalcedon. 95. of  
 Constantinople. 103. of Toledo. 108.  
 of Constantinople. 114. of Trullus.  
 116. of Constantinople. 120. of Nice.  
 123. of Frankford. 124. of Aix. 130. of  
 Constantinople. 136. of Ravenna. 141.  
 of Lateran. 223. of Lions. 226. 275. of  
 Constance. 334. of Basil. ibid. 350. of  
 Pavia. 335. of Florens. 336. 350. of  
 Pisa. 419. of Trent. 429. 432. &c. of  
 Lateran. 172. 192.  
 Conuela of Sutrinum, deposeith 3  
 Popes. 158  
 Craford falls off from Douglass. 544.  
 Crassus sent against Arctonicus, is  
 defeated and killed. 9. Crassus robs the  
 Temple, is defeated, and he is killed by  
 the Parthians. 23  
 Cremona burnt. 48  
 Crescentius rebels, and is hanged at  
 Rome. 152  
 Cromwel, the Clergies great ene-  
 mie. 559. beheaded. ib.  
 Crannus kills Niciphorus the Em-  
 peror. 427. and makes a Cup of his Skull  
 129. subdued. ib.  
 Cumins, Viceroy of Scotland. 325.  
 Cyprus subject to divers changes.  
 166. &c.  
 Cyprus after divers changes becomes  
 the Venetians Island. 414  
 Cyril of Alexandria. 94  
 Dalmatia



## The Alphabetical Table.

**D**almatia subdued by the Romans. 3  
 Damiata taken. 224. and retaken ib. 229  
 Danes, and their Wars. 128. converted to the Faith. 130  
 Danes Massacred, they subdue England, and are defeated in Scotland. 153. poisoned. 156. troubled by their Kings. 230. 251  
 Danes and Hamburgers quarrel. 463  
 Daniel D. of Russia cheats the Pope. 246  
 Danish Ambassador to Queen Elizabeth 609  
 Darby the Queens husband murdered 620  
 Darknes. 120. 124  
 David King of Scots conveyed into France. 324  
 King David returns from France and invades England. 326. is beaten. ib. taken prisoner, Ransomed & died. ib.  
 David Prince of Scotland famished. 535  
 Decius his Reigne and end. 69  
 Demetrius the Son of Seleucus, his actions. 2. why called Soter. 3. he is slain. ib. his son Demetrius overcome by Jonathan. 3. Demetrius Nicanor. 5. he is overthrown. ib. overcomes the Persians, and is taken. 6. he escapes and is retaken by Phraates. 6. regains Syria, and loseth it. 7. is overcome and slain. ib. Demetrius Euseus, K. of Damascus, his Actions. 11. &c.  
 Denholme stoutly resisteth the Enemy. 460  
 Denmark. 265  
 Denmark full of troubles. 171  
 Denmark's History. 338. &c.  
 Denmark's Army defeated by Tilly. 457. his Proceedings in Germany. 458. &c. byeth. 460  
 K. of Denmark entertained by K. James  
 Desiderius last King of the Lombards. 122  
 Didius Julianus Emperor. 60. his end. 61  
 Dioclesian Emperor. 74. 78.  
 Diodatus called Tryphon, murders Jonathan. 5  
 Dioscorus of Alexandria. 94. 97  
 Dithmars subdued by the Duke of

Holst. 432  
 Dolphinat sold. 276. The Dolphins quarrels with the Savoyen. 282  
 Dolphinat annexed to France. 292.  
 The Dolphins care in his fathers absence. 293  
 The Dolphin raiseth the Counsel of Basil. 336  
 Dolphin flies from France to Burgundy. 491. his Zeal against the Turk. ib.  
 Dolphin's and King Henric's Messages. 518  
 Dolphin murders Burgundy, and is complained against. 522  
 Domitian, his good and bad qualities. 50. his ridiculous actions and end. ib. &c. his murderers murdered. 52  
 Donald and Duncan, Kings of Scotland. 174  
 Donald of the Isles submits to the King 545. his insolencie and sacrilege 562. &c.  
 Dort maintains her Priviledges. 253  
 Dort Synod against the Arminians 449  
 Douglass his expedition into Ireland 328  
 Douglass and Percie fight a Duel. 329. the effects thereof. ib.  
 Douglass his greatness and ambition. 540. betrayed and beheaded. 541  
 Douglass persecutes the Chancellor and Regent. 542. is persecuted and slain. 543  
 Douglasses insolencies against the K. 544. they are persecuted. ib. and proscribed. 545  
 Douglasses, Hamiltons and Humes disturb Scotland. 571. &c.  
 Douglasses proscribed, and Tantallon Castle surrendered. 574  
 Douglass Earl of Morton, Regent. 627 is removed. ibid.  
 Drakes Navigation. 602  
 Constantin Ducas, Greek Emperor overcomes his enemy by prayers. 163  
 Dunbar occasions a new War between the two Kingdoms. 330  
 Duncan Earl of Mar, Protector of Scotland. 324

## E

Earls of Holland. 251. &c. 278. &c.  
 Earl of Renessius 277. Earls of Savoy. 279. &c.

Earl

## The Alphabetical Table.

Earl of Orkney beheaded, and his Castles taken. 637  
 Earthquakes. 94. &c. 101, 103, 114, 120, 254, 452, 508.  
 Edinburgh taken by the English. 578  
 Edinburgh Castle battered and surrendered. 646  
 Edward the Confessor Crowned. 159  
 Prince Edwards Actions. 212. &c.  
 Edward Prince of England, marries with Elenor the Spaniards sister. 240  
 His service in the Holy Land. 241  
 His Return, and Actions at home, being King. 242  
 Quarrels with his Clergie, and doeth homage in France. 242. His Expedition into Scotland. ibid. Into Flanders. 243. His dealings with Bruce and Baliol. 244. He runs through Scotland, and brings away their Monuments. 245  
 Edward Earl of Savoy. 284  
 Edward of England denied the Regency of France. 288. Challengeeth the French to fight. 289. Makes a truce with France. 290  
 Prince Edwards Victory at Poitiers. 292  
 Edward the first's Actions. 304  
 Edward the 2<sup>d</sup> of England, his Life & death. 305. &c. He and his Queen at variance. 307  
 Edward the 2<sup>d</sup> resigns his Crown, and is murdered. 308  
 Edward the 3<sup>d</sup> doth homage in France: His cruelty to Seaton. 309. Helps Baliol. ibid.  
 Edward the 3<sup>d</sup> his actions, ib. &c. His Death and Issue. 314  
 Edward King of England sends a Monk to poison Randolph. 323  
 K. Edwards preparation against Scotland. 326  
 Edward the fourth King of England, and his Actions. 546. &c.  
 Edward the fourth furnished with shipping by the Duke of Burgundy: He is received into York. 549. Is received into London. ibid. Defeats Warwick, and takes king Henry prisoner. ibid. The Queen also and Prince. 558. Enters France, and makes peace with the French K. ib.

King Edward the fourth deluded by the French and Scots. 551. Dieth. ib. ibid.  
 Edward the fifth ibid.  
 Edward the sixth his Reign, 586. &c. His charity and Zeal. 590  
 Egypt falls off from the Empire. 117  
 Egyptians take Tripoli. 248. Prevaile. 249  
 Egyptians defeated by the Turks 474  
 Electors of Germanie meet about choosing the Emperor. 420  
 Elinor Qu. of England, 242  
 Lady Elizabeth sent to the Tower, to Richmond, to Woodstock. 592. &c.  
 Lady Elizabeth set at liberty by King Philip. 595  
 Queen Elizabeth her Reign. 597. &c. Helps the Protestants, ibid. Declared an Heretique. 600. Many Treasons against her. ibid. Sends aide into Scotland. ibid. Navigations in her time. 601. &c. Shee protects the Netherlanders. 603. And why. ibid.  
 Qu. Elizabeths preparations against the Spanish Invasion, 604. Shee thanks God for Victory. 606  
 Qu. Elizabeth intercedes for Q. Mary, but is denied by the Scots. 623. Sends Suffex. 624  
 Qu. Elizabeth solicited by the Scots to name them a Regent. ibid.  
 Queen Elizabeth's Treaty with Queen Mary. 629. Her sorrow for her death. 631  
 Qu. Elizabeth's death. 613  
 Bishop of Ely Protector of England in the absence of King Richard. 189. &c.  
 Emanuel Philbert Duke of Savoy, recovers what his Father had lost. 396  
 Charls Emanuel. D. of Savoy takes the towns of Carmaniola and Salufium. 398  
 Emanuel of Thessalonica with his seven sons. 262  
 Empire torn by the Barbarians. 86. 93. Translated. 125  
 Made Tributaries. 127  
 Empire at Trapezantium. 233  
 Emperors Colleagues. 257  
 Emperors of Byzantium. 261  
 Empire proffered to K. Edward of England. 267  
 b b b b b The

## The Alphabetical Table.

*The Emperour sides with England, against France.* 289. *and is taken off again.* *ibid.*  
*Emperor complains to Wolsey against France.* 553  
*Empson and Dudley beheaded for oppression.* 550  
*England by whom called so.* 129. *hath Wars with France.* 230. *Troubled under King John.* 231. *Wars again with France.* 232. *Troubled with the Barons Wars.* 241. *The English trouble Savoy.* 285. *Have Warres with France.* 289. *They beat the French by Sea.* 290. *And by Land at Crescy.* 291. *Their Warres in Britany and Normandy.* 290. *they take Callice.* 291. *Beat the French at Poitiers.* 292. *Spoil and plunder France.* 293. *Are beat by the French at Sea and at Land.* 294. *They complain against the French, and the French against them.* *ib.* & 295.  
*Englands troubles under Henry the fourth.* 515. &c. *English beat the French.* 524  
*Englands troubles under Henry the sixth.* 529, &c. *Under Edward the fourth.* 547, &c.  
*Englands troubles under Henry the 7.* 546, &c.  
*English invade Scotland by Sea and Land.* 324, &c.  
*English lose all their Holds in Scotland.* 325, &c.  
*England and Scotland wast each other.* 327, &c.  
*English plot discovered.* 328  
*English succeffe in France under Edw. the 3<sup>d</sup>.* 310, &c.  
*English massacred in Paris.* 488  
*English lose Guyen and Normandy.* 490  
*English and French quarrell under Henry the 5<sup>th</sup>.* 518, &c.  
*The English good succefs in France.* 519, &c.  
*Their bad succeffe.* 523, 526, &c.  
*English Regents of France.* 524, &c.  
*Their various succeffe in France.* 527, &c.  
*English Lords sollicite king James for aid.* 545.  
*English aide the Britans against the French.* 546

*English invade France under Henry the 8.* 557  
*English beaten by the Scots.* 679  
*Beat the Scots.* 580  
*Beaten by the Scots.* 581  
*English Fleet spoiled upon the Orchades.* 583  
*The English lose all they had gotten in Scotland.* 589  
*English Ambassadors their Conference with the French Councell about Callice.* 599  
*English send a Fleet for Cadiz, which they take, 608, &c. For the Azores.* 609  
*English Army against Q. Maries fastion in Scotland.* 624  
*Epiphanius Bishop.* 91  
*Ericus K. of Denmark.* 251  
*Ericus King of Swedeland.* 336, &c.  
*Essex sent into Ireland to suppress the Rebels.* 610  
*Returns discontented.* 611  
*Essex counsell'd by the Lord Keeper to submit to the Queen, and his Answer thereto.* 612  
*Essex his Discontents and Rebellion.* *ibid.*  
*His apprehension and Death.* 613  
*Eudoxia brings Peters chains.* 93.  
*Eudoxa mother to Childericus.* 102  
*Eutiches the Heretique.* 94. *Eutichians divided.* 97. *Their mouths wittily stopped.* 100  
*Euxin Sea frozen.* 121  
*Exceter besieged and relieved.* 586, &c.

## F

*Faramund.* 93  
*Fausta.* 81  
*The Feast of All Saints Instituted.* 132  
*Ferdinand drives the Moors out of Spain.* 234  
*Ferdinand King of Hungary and Bohemia.* 400  
*Ferdinand hath Wars with Solymán.* 401  
*Ferdinand the Catholick King.* 413  
*Ferdinand buyes his place from Solymán.* 431. *Dyeth.* 433  
*Ferdinand 2<sup>d</sup> Emperour.* 448. *Rejected by the Bohemians.* *ib.*  
*Ferdi.*

## The Alphabetical Table.

*Ferdinand declares against Frederick King of Bohemia.* 449  
*Fetheritone whipped and hanged.* 595  
*Flavianus Bishop.* 94. *banished.* 99  
*Flavius Constantius Chlorus.* 75, &c.  
*Flemins rebell against the French.* 238 *and beat them, ibid.* *And are beaten by them.* 239. *are beaten again.* 288 *their outrage.* 291  
*Florentii Earles of Holland.* 251, &c.  
*Florentius the fifth claims the crown of Scotland.* 253. *Florentines make war against the Pisans.* 259  
*Florianus Emperour.* 73  
*France raiseth a mighty Army against England.* 317  
*Francis the French King complains against D. Charles of Savoy.* 393  
*His reasons.* *ib.*  
*Francis the French King blamed.* 395  
*Complained against by the Emperour.* *ibid.*  
*Francis King of France aims at the Empire, but misseeth it.* 420, 423.  
*Quarrels with Charls the fifth.* 428  
*His Reign and Actions.* 505, &c.  
*Franks and Almains overthrown.* 103  
*French subdued in Spain.* 108.  
*French kings dissolutenesse.* 113.  
*France its twelve Peers* 129. *The French Peers reject the Grecian affinity.* 228. *Have Wars with England.* 230, &c. *Take Sicily, and are destroyed in it.* 234, &c. *Massacred at Bruges.* 238. *Defeated in the battell at Courtray.* *ib.* *They beat the Flemins.* 239. *They fall upon Flanders.* 243. *Driven out of Byzantium.* 247. *French kings when Crowned.* 277. *French reconciled to Flanders.* 287. *They make warre upon England.* 289. *Beaten by the English.* 290, &c. *They beat the English.* 294. *Make a League with Gustavus the King of Sweden.* 382  
*The French succeffe in Savoy.* 394  
*The French Ambassadors shew reasons, why the French king layeth claim to some parts of Savoy.* 397  
*French quarrell with the Pope, and Venetians.* 418. *Driven out of Lombardy.* *ibid.* *In France Civill War between the Papiests and Protestants.* 455. *France much troubled by the D. of Burgundy.* 486

*French, over-run base Britany.* 501 *and Naples, but lose it again; yet found a new Disease.* 502, &c. *beat by the Switzers.* 505. *Their divers actions.* 506  
*France fights for Religion.* 507  
*Pestered with Civill War.* 508, &c.  
*Consult about choosing a new King.* *ib.*  
*More Civill Wars.* 513, &c. *Beaten by the English at Agenconrt.* 519  
*French and English have divers conflicts.* 523. *Beaten by the English.* 524  
*French hinder the Union between England and Scotland.* 560, 562  
*French send a Fleet against the Isle of Wight.* 561  
*French labour with the Scottish Regent to resigne his place to the Q. Mother.* 582  
*French Kings Race.* 150  
*Frasers cut off.* 579  
*Frederick Barbarossa his Actions and end.* 176, &c. *his submission to the Pope.* 178  
*Frederick Barbarossa's end.* 181  
*Frederick of Bohemia quite defeated.* 450. *interceded for.* 453  
*Frederick the first king of Denmark.* 340  
*Frederick the second Emperour.* 222, &c  
*His contestation with the Pope.* 223  
*His expedition into Asia.* *ibid.*  
*Returns, and is reconciled to the Pope.* 224, &c.  
*He contests again with the Pope.* 225  
*Is cursed by him.* 226  
*Builds Victoria; and is beat at Parma.* 226, &c.  
*Is poisoned.* 227  
*His parts, wives and children.* *ibid.*  
*Frederick, Alberts son of Thuringia.* 255  
*Frederick of Austria Emperour.* 257  
*Taken prisoner.* *ib.*  
*Frederick the third Emperour, and his Actions.* 409, &c.  
*Frederick the Palsgrave dyeth.* 391  
*Frederick Palatin sent Ambassador into Spain.* 424  
*French assist the Earle of Flanders against the Flemins.* 299. *prepare a Fleet against England.* 390  
*bbbbb 2 Plunder*

## The Alphabetical Table.

Plunder divers English Towns. 315  
 French King Phrantic. 302. like to be  
 burned in a mask. 303  
 French make divers Leagues with the  
 Switzers. 376  
 French K. in a low condition. 488. and  
 France much distracted. ib.  
 French make peace with England, and  
 pay a Pension to Henry the seventh. 547  
 French send aid to Scotland. 580. with  
 the Scots besiege Haddington. 581  
 French Ambassadors desire crossed by  
 the Scots Parliament. 615  
 Friburg plundered by their Lord. 364.  
 they confederat with the Cantons. 364  
 Duke of Fridland Generalissimo. 388

## G

John Gabeas of Millan, his Actions  
 and Death. 332  
 Gabinus accused, defended, and con-  
 demned. 23  
 Bethleem Gabor swears Fealty to Cæ-  
 sar and the Turk. 404. his other  
 Actions. ib. &c.  
 Bethleem Gabor defeats Batorius.  
 445. reconciled to Cæsar. 451  
 Gainas. 90  
 Galba his Reigne and end. 47  
 Galeacius. 258. Galeacius a lover of  
 Learning. 268  
 Galerius Maximinus Emperor. 74. 76.  
 Galileans sold and murdered. 46  
 Gallia divided. 96  
 Gallienus Emperor. 69. &c. his neglect  
 and folly. 71. his end. ib.  
 Gallus Emperor. 69. Gallus Cæsar.  
 82. &c.  
 Gambalot Satrapa of Alepo, solicits  
 the Pope and Cæsar. 413  
 Gascony fals out with Montfort. 240  
 Gaveston King Edwards Favorit. 305  
 Gauls overthrown by Q. Fab. Max.  
 10. by Cæsar. 22. &c. they rebel. 24.  
 Gaunt full of troubles. 295. rebels and  
 submits. 295. &c.  
 Gant rebels against their Earl. 298. &c.  
 makes a league with France. 300  
 Gantois rebel and are beaten. 290  
 Gantois careful of their Dutcheff. 499

Gazelles Governor of Syria, over-  
 thrown. 475  
 Geberd Bishop of Colen, a Protestants  
 436  
 Gemes, Bajazets brother. 469  
 Geneva its History. 371  
 Geneva's Earls contest with the Savoy-  
 ens. 280. &c. 284.  
 Bishop of Geneva a covetous man. 355.  
 &c. imprisoned by Galeacius. 356.  
 Geneva in danger. 440  
 Genfericus sacks Rome. 96  
 Genua and Venice contend for the ma-  
 stery of the Sea. 167  
 Genua implores the French help against  
 the Pyrats. 301  
 Genuois defeat and are defeated. 261.  
 Their long War with Venice. 271.  
 They reform their City, make league  
 with the Emperor, and beat the Ve-  
 netian Fleet. 271. &c. take Saint  
 Nicholas Church, and the Town  
 Clodia. 272. they beat the Robbers.  
 273. and the Venetians. 274. their  
 error and loss. ib. make peace with  
 Venice. 275. besieged by the Milla-  
 nois. 287  
 Genuois take two Kings prisoners, and  
 are angry they were dismissed with-  
 out ransom. 489. they make Rene  
 King of Naples. ibid.  
 Germany in a bad condition. 381. 388  
 Germanic's miseries presaged. 392  
 Germany troubled with Religions and  
 rebellions. 426. 430.  
 Germany in a woeful condition. 449.  
 &c. 458.  
 Germanicus his victories and death.  
 36. &c.  
 Germans defeated. 22. &c. Germany  
 made a Province. 35. they submit to  
 Probus. 73. slain by Constantius. 75  
 their Nobility killed. 121. their civil  
 wars. 121. &c. their divisions about  
 the Emperor. 235. Germany divided  
 under two Emperors. 257  
 Geta murdered by his brother Cara-  
 calla. 63  
 Gilimer, King of the Vandals. 102  
 Glarona and other Towns joyn with the  
 Switzers. 360  
 Archbishop of Glasco's strange death.  
 542  
 Duke of Gloucester abuses the credu-  
 lous Queen and Earl Rivers. 551.  
 murders

## The Alphabetical Table.

murthers the Lord Grey with others.  
 ib. is made Protector. 552. gets cun-  
 ningly the young Duke of York from  
 the Queen his mother. ibid. puts the  
 King and his brother in the Tower.  
 ibid. his complying with Bucking-  
 ham. ibid. he accuseth the Queen of  
 Witchcraft. ibid. beheadeth Hastings  
 and others. 553. employs Doctor Shaa  
 to Preach, and set forth his Title to  
 the Crown. ibid. cunningly got him-  
 self to be Crowned. ibid. causeth the  
 young King and his brother to be  
 murdered. ib. hinders the Earl of  
 Richmonds marriage. 550. raiseth  
 an Army 556. is slain, and his car-  
 cass dishonorably buried. ib.  
 Godaliscus the Monk. 134  
 Godfride of Bullion. 164. &c.  
 Gordianus Emperor. 67. his end. ibid.  
 Gordian the third his reigne and end  
 68  
 Gordon and Forbese's fight in the  
 North. 626  
 Goths. 87. 89. murdered. 90. &c. In-  
 vade Italy. ib. and Rome. 92. are  
 driven thence. 102. grow stately. 106.  
 driven into Biscay. 117  
 Gowrie seisseth on the King, and is be-  
 headed. 628. &c.  
 Gramc, Archbishop of Saint Andrews  
 persecuted. 564  
 Gratianus Emperor. 86. 88.  
 Greece made a Province. 5. its misera-  
 ble condition. 228. Greeks reconciled  
 to the Latins. 233. &c. 247. Greek  
 Church divided. 248. Greece torne  
 in pieces. 262. Greek Emperor ends.  
 ib. Greek tongue brought back to Ita-  
 ly. 277  
 Greeks their treacheries. 183  
 Gregory the great, King of Scotland.  
 142  
 Pope Gregory seventh. 160. deposeth  
 the Emperor. ib. is imprisoned. ib.  
 Grisons their History. 370  
 Grisons in great trouble. 451  
 Gryphus made King by his mother. 7.  
 whom he poysoneth, quarrels with his  
 brother about the Kingdom of Syria,  
 is slain. ib.  
 Guelfs and Gibellins. 225. 254. 256.  
 287  
 Guido, Marquis of Tufcia. 143  
 Guises murdered by the French King.  
 608

Gunpowder treason. 634  
 Gustavus Adulphus King of Sweden,  
 and his Actions. 379. &c. enters Po-  
 merania. 380. declares the wrongs he  
 sustained by the Emperor. ib. he sends  
 abroad his edicts. 381. his Victories.  
 380. 381. &c. he defeats Tilly. 386.  
 takes in many Towns. 387. endanger-  
 ed at Ingolstadt. 389. he hastneth to  
 relieve Saxony. 391. is wounded and  
 dieth. ib. his corps sent home. 392.  
 Gustavus makes peace with Poland  
 462. he finds Germany in great dis-  
 tempers. 463  
 Guy, Earl of Flanders. 228. assisted by  
 King Edward. 242. taken prisoner.  
 278

## H

Habesburg released. 361  
 Hadrian his Government and  
 Victories. 54. his good and bad qua-  
 lities. ib. &c. his sickness death and  
 Tomb. ib. he vexed the Jews. ib. Ha-  
 drianopolis, the Turks chief Seat.  
 263  
 Hagarius Sultan led in triumph. 136  
 Hall Bussa the Eunuch slain. 472  
 Hamiltons original. 322  
 James Hamilton, Earl of Arran, Vice-  
 roy of Scotland. 576. &c.  
 Hamiltons and other Lords storm at Q.  
 Maries Match. 619. are driven  
 from Edinburgh ib. are banished,  
 and return. ib.  
 Hamilton is denied the Regency. 622.  
 sent to Edinburgh Castle. 623  
 Hans-Towns in Germany. 269  
 Hans-Towns perswaded to side with  
 Cæsar. 459  
 Hatto Bishop of Mints. 142  
 Hatto Bishop of Mints, eat up by rats.  
 146  
 Hay defeats the Danes in Scotl. 147  
 Helena. 81. 85  
 Henry Beauclerk King of England his  
 Reigne. 173. &c.  
 Henry second, King of England. 188.  
 his troubles and Penance. 188. &c.  
 Henry Duke of Lancafter made King.  
 219.  
 Henry King of England, Regent of  
 France. 487  
 Henry third. 507. &c. Henry fourth.  
 508. &c.  
 Henry

## The Alphabetical Table.

Henry fourth of England, and his Reigne. 515. Articled against. 516. Sec. escapes and overcomes divers Treasons. 515. Sec. dieth. 517  
Henry fifth, King of England, his Reigne and Actions. 518  
Henry sixth, Crowned at Paris. 487  
Henry sixth of England, and his reigne 524. Sec. Crowned in France. 526.  
Henry sixth his Marriage. 529. his losses, ib. &c. is taken prisoner. 531. 533  
546  
King Henry restored to his Crown by Warwick. 548  
Henry sixth murdered. 558  
Henry seventh King of England, and his Actions. 545. Sec. his death. 550  
Henry eight, his Actions. ib. &c. grows weary of his Queen. 554  
Henry eight, his eagerness to be divorced. 555. &c. quarrels with the Church. 556  
Henry the eight desires to meet James the fifth, which is denied. 575  
Henry the eight desires to match his son with the Scots Queen, which is denied. 576  
King Henry the eight his Death, Will, Character Wives and Issue. 561. &c.  
Henry made Prince of Wales. 636  
Henry the Fowler, Emperor. 142. &c.  
Henry, Otho's brother. 144.  
Henry, son to Frederick the second. 223  
Henry, Lantgrave of Thuringia. 226  
Henry, Baldwin's brother. 228  
Henry, King John's son of England, 232. his Wars with France. ib.  
Henry the third, his exploits. 240. he quarrels with his Peers. ib.  
Henry of Lucelburg, Emperor. 255. poisoned. 256  
Henry second, Emperor, and his actions. 154. lamed by a leap; his death. ib.  
Henry third, Emperor, his actions. 158. &c. his death. 159  
Henry fourth, Emperor, and his actions. ib. &c. his Penance to the Pope. 160. his end. 161  
Henry fifth, Emperor, his actions. 169. &c. is vexed by the Popes. 170  
Henry sixth, called Asper, Emperor, his actions and end. 192  
Henry of Juliers offended, and reconciled with Brunswick. 446

Henry second, King of France and his actions. 506. &c.  
Henry third of France, entertained at Turin. 398  
Henry the fourth of France, becomes Catholick. 509. is stabbed. 511  
Henry of Navarre excommunicated. 607  
Proclaimed King, and assisted by Elizabeth. 608  
Heraclius, Emper. 109. he subdues his enemies, and recovers the Cross. 110. dieth. 111. his race endeth. 116  
Heresies. 51. &c. 55. &c. 58. 62. &c. 66. 68. &c. 71. 80. 84. 88. 92. 94 &c. 97. 103. 246. 433.  
Herman the Palatin forced to carry a dog on his shoulders. 176  
Hermaphrodites ominous to Rome. 8  
Herod, his actions. 29. he is made King. 31. flatters Hircanus, and drowns Aristobulus. 32. bribes Antony. 33. he doats upon Cleopatra, his insolencies, he is defeated at Actium. ib. he puts Hircanus to death, and makes his peace with Octavius. ib. he defeats the Arabians. ib. he murders Mariamne, Alexandra, and the Sanhedrin. 34. his buildings, murders, and wives, his death. ib.  
Hexamilium the wall in Peloponnesus. 464. 467  
Hierom. 93  
Hircanus succeeds his Father Symon, in Judea. 6. his actions. ib. he overthrows the Temple of Samaria. 7. and the City also. 10. he dieth. ib. Hircanus, Alexander's son. 17. quarrels with his brother. 20. is established in the Pontificat. 29. lost his ears. 31. delivered by Herod. 32. and put to death. 33  
Hollands History. 251. in great troubles. 278  
Hollands History, and their Earls. 341. &c. troubled with civil war. 342  
Hollanders infest the Spaniards. 442  
Holland troubled about their Excesses. 446  
Hollanders good success at sea and land. 461. &c.  
Homar. 113. Homar and Hali. 263.  
Honorius Emperor. 90  
Hormisdas the Persian King. 106  
Horne, the Swedish General. 392  
Hospitalers succeed the Templers. 229 and

## The Alphabetical Table.

and take Rhodes. ib.  
Hugo, Earl of Arles. 143  
Humber, first, second, third, Earls of Savoy. 279. &c.  
Hungarian History. 398. &c.  
Hungarians. 140. beat the Germans. 141. defeated. 143. troubled by their Kings. 250. Hungary in great troubles. 323. their Victories in Germany and Italy. 398. &c. defeated by the Germans. 399. &c. Hungary afflicted by the Turks. 398. 479. and by intestine Factions. 399  
Hungarys miserable condition. 401. &c.  
Hungarians defeated by Solyman, and Buda taken. 476  
Huns. 87. slain. 100. obtain Panonia. 104. 398  
Huniades, John, and Matthew. 398. &c. 407. &c.  
Huntly's hatred to Murry. 617. is deluded by Queen Mary. ib. defeated by Murry. 618.  
Huntly taken, and his son John beheaded. ibid.  
Huntly and Argile favour the Queens side. 623  
Huntly's zeal for Queen Mary. 625. 627. assisted by the Spaniard. ib.  
Huntly defeats Argile in the battell of Avinian. 631. &c.  
John Huffle broacheth his doctrine. 331  
John Huffle and Hierom of Prague burnt. 335  
  
I  
Jacoba, Countess of Holland. 341. &c.  
Jagello, Prince of Lituania. 277  
James the Apostle. 46  
James, Prince of Scotland, a prisoner in England. 535. &c. carried into France. 536  
James, King of Scotland, and his Reigne. 537. &c. his daughter conveyed into France. 538  
James the first, his murder. 539. James the second, his Reigne. 539. &c.  
James the second, much troubled by Factions. 540. his death. 545  
James the third of Scotland, and his Reigne. 562. &c. his Governors. ib. married. 563. his superstition and tyranny. 565. his Courtiers hanged up. ibid.

James the third complained against for his misgovernment. ib. persecuted by his Subjects, and slain. 566. &c. his death grieved at. 567  
James the fourth, his Reigne. 567. &c. defends Warbeck. 568. his match. ib.  
James the fourth, his prodigality and resolution for Syria. ibid. solicited to quarrel with England. ib. his fleet. ib. his message to King Henry 569. he was dissuaded from making war, in vain. 519. he lost the battel and his life. 570  
James the fifth, his Reigne. ib. &c.  
James the fifth, his Navigations, marriages, strange dreams, and death. 575. &c.  
James, Queen Maries brother, hasteneth into France. 614  
James the sixth Crowned. 620  
James the sixth strictly guarded. 627. Governeth with 12 Peers. ib. imprisoned. 628  
King James displeased for his mothers death, but appeased by Queen Elizabeth. 631  
King James proclaimed King of England, and his journey thither. 632. &c. makes peace with Spain, pardoneth and executes some Traitors, sends presents to Spain. 633. and receiveth from thence presents. 634. he detects the gunpowder plot. ib. he is moderator at the Conference of Hampton Court. ib. &c. King of Great Britan. 635. entertained at London. ib. divers Occurrences. ib. &c. Institutes Knights Baronets. 638. Ambassadors to him from Russia and Persia, and goeth into Scotland. 639. his death and happy Government. 640. some strange accidents, and works of charity in his time. ib.  
Jane the Duke of Suffolks Daughter proclaimed Queen of England. 590  
Is beheaded. 591  
Janifaries their Originall. 263  
Janifaries their Institution. 465  
Janifaries, their insolencies at Constantinople. 482. 484  
Jerusalem besieged and stormed. 20. 32  
Jerusalem its last Miseries. 47. &c. Rebuilt and new named. 54. Taken by Cosroes. 109. By the Saracens. 111. by

## The Alphabetical Table.

111. By the Parthians. 229  
 Jerusalem lost by the Christians. 166  
 Iesuites banished out of Turkey. 483, &c  
 Iesuites banished out of France, and why. 510. Restored again. 511  
 Jews infested with three Sects. 10. what these were. ib. they asslt Cleopatra against Lathurus. 11. their great Council destroyed. 29. they complain against Herod. 30. will not admit his Government. 32. are murdered by Archilaus, against whom they complain. 35. they rebel, and are suppressed by Varus. 36. rebel under Theudas. 42, &c. they quarrel with the Samaritans. 43. they rebel, and are murdered. 46. their miseries under Vespasian. 47. and Titus. 49. are murdered every where. ib. their barbarous cruelties. 54. forbid to enter Jerusalem. ib. converted. 84. deluded. 95. Jews found out their tricks. 98. their cruelty. 108, &c. forced to embrace Christianity. 110. follow Mahomet. ib. made slaves in Spain. 116  
 desperat. 118. banished out of England. 242. poison the waters, and are hanged by each other. 287. wear yellow caps. 431  
 Images abolished. 118. 120. restored. 123  
 condemned. 124. 129. restored. 134.  
 Imperialists lose Pomerania. 385. are defeated. 391, &c.  
 Indians, with Hunns and others, become Christians. 103  
 Joan, wife of Andrew of Hungary. 259. her murder, incest, and insatiable lust. 26. 413  
 Iohannes Maria, a bloody Tyrant. 332  
 John Baptist Preacheth, Baptizeth, is beheaded. 38. John the Apostle banished. 50. restored. 52. dieth. 53.  
 John de Bregna, King of Jerusalem. 223. John, King of England. 230. his contestation with, and submission to the Pope. 231. his death, wives, and children. 232. John Cantacuzenus. 249. John, Duke of Brabant. 251.  
 John, King of Bohemia. 258. John, Emperor of Byzantium. 261. John, Earl Nivern, defeated by the Turks, ordains the order of a Golden Fleece. 264. John Wickliff. 276. John Galeacius. 277. John, the Hanonian, Earl of Holland. ibid. John de

Montfort. 290. John, King of France. 291. John Huniades. 398.  
 John Bassilides, Duke of Muscovia. 422. knocks his son on the head. 437.  
 John of Anjou, beate Ferdinand. 491. John Scot, the great Fast. 574. John a Stampis. 473  
 John, otherwise called Robert, King of Scotland. 329  
 John, Duke of Burgundy, with Anna-deus; vex Orleans and Burbon. 346  
 John, Governor of Croatia, his cruelty. 397  
 John of Leyden, his madness. 427  
 John, Prince of Swethiland. 378  
 Iolanda of Savoy imprisoned with her son. 355. dismissed by the French K. ib.  
 Ionathas, Governor of Iudæa, his actions. 2, 3, 5. his death. ib.  
 Iovinian his life and actions. 85. his end. 86  
 Irene, Emperess. 123  
 Ireland rebels. 598. 602. assisted by the Pope and Spaniard. ib.  
 Irish rebels with the Spaniards, defeated by the Lord Montjoy. 611  
 Irish converted. 82  
 Isaacius Angellus; Greek Emperor. 185  
 Issabel, Dutcheß of Anjou; prepares a Fleet for Naples.  
 Ismael, the Sophi of Persia. 470. his actions and victories. 471. wounded. 472  
 Italian troubles. 15. subdued by the Romans. ib. being invaded by Goths, Vandals, Longobards, Hunns, and others is reduced again to the Empire of Iustinian. 103. miseries of Italy under the Guelphs and Gibellins. 225. Italian Cities change their Governors. 256. are punished by the Emperor. ib. fall off from the Pope. 269. Italy disturbed with civil wars. 333.  
 Italies devotion. 345. troubled about Mantua. 462  
 Italy in troubles. 503, &c.  
 Iudas Macchabæus, his actions and death. 2  
 Judgements remarkable. 97, &c. 100. 102, 104, 108, 117, &c. 123, &c. 131. 270. 563. 146. 154.  
 Iuditha, Ludovic's wife. 130, &c.  
 Jugurtha,

## The Alphabetical Table.

Jugurtha his cruelty, cunning, and end. 12  
 Juliers full of troubles. 443  
 Julianus. 83. His Apostacy and wickedness. 84, 85. his end. ib.  
 Julius Agricola's victories. 51  
 Julius Cæsar, see Cæsar.  
 Pope Julius raiseth great troubles. 504  
 Overcom by the French. 305  
 Nicholas Jurith a stout Hungarian. 401  
 Justinus Emperor. 100  
 Justinian Emperor. 101, 103.  
 His Death. 104  
 Justinus the second, his Reign. ib. His end. 105  
 Justinian 2<sup>d</sup> Emperor. 115. Imprisoned and escapes, ib. His cruelty and end. 116  
  
**K**  
 Kennedies blow the coals of sedition in Scotland. 563  
 Kenneth k. of Scotland's stratagem. 134  
 Kent divided about Qu. Maries match with Spain. 591  
 Kets Rebellion and end. 587, &c.  
 Kings of Asturia and Leon, of Navarr and Arragon. 119. of Galicia, ib. of Bulgaria. 120. Lombardie. 116  
 Saxons, ib. Ratchefius and Aistulphus k. of Lombardy. 121. Kings of Spain. 122. kings of Navar. 123  
 of Denmark. 128. of England and Scotl. 134. of Italy. 139. of Spain. 142. of Denmark. 230. of Hungary 250. of Poland. ib. of Denm. 251  
 of Scicily. 254. of Sweden, Denmark & Norway. 265. K. of Morocco defeated. 276. Four kings in the French army. 289. The French and Scots K. taken prisoners. 292, &c  
 K. of Navarr troubles France. 293  
 of Denmark, Sweden and Norway. 336, &c. of Hungarie. 397, &c. of Arragon; Naples, Castile and Scicily. 413. Kings of Arragon faile, 418. K. of Denmark endangered, 435. K. of Sweden invades Livonia, Borussia, and Dantisk. 456. Of Ierusalem. 166. of France. 172  
 Kings, their conditions dangerous and uncertain. 646, &c.

Knox his preaching, and the effects thereof. 584  
 Keyric Elcison when begun. 94

**L**  
 Ladislaus first of Hungary. 398  
 Ladislaus the second. 399  
 Ladislaus king of Hungary. 406, &c.  
 Ladislaus king of Poland. 407  
 Ladislaus, son of Huniades beheaded: 408  
 Duke of Lancaster enriched in Spain. 317  
 Lathurus called Philometor, why, 11  
 his actions. ib.  
 Peter Laudais the Du. of Britanie's favourite, hanged. 501  
 Laws called Agrariæ: what? 8  
 League between Hungary, Bohemia, & Poland 419  
 holy-League in France. 509, &c.  
 Leicester and Hollander disagree. 603, &c.  
 The English and Scots besiege Leith. 614  
 Mathew Earl of Lenox made Regent, ib. Killed. 626  
 Leo Emperor. 96  
 Leontius Emperor. 115  
 Leo Isauricus. 118, &c.  
 Leo the fourth Emperor. 122, &c.  
 Leo the fifth Emperor. 129. Killed in his Chappell. ib.  
 Leo Bishop of Thessalonica. 134  
 Leo, Basil's son, delivered by a Parrot. 138  
 Leo the Philosopher Emperor. 140. Is cudgelled. ib.  
 Leolin Pr. of Wales beheaded. 242  
 And his brother David quartered. ibid.  
 Lepidus his insolency and ruin. 31  
 Lewis the 7<sup>th</sup> of France. 187  
 Lewis the Ninth of France, his holy life and actions. 229. Is canonized, ibid. His Ship. ibid. His Justice at home, and actions abroad. 237  
 Dieth before Tunis ibid.  
 Lewis of Anjou poisoned. 260. Had Wars with Alphonsus of Arragon. ib.  
 Lewis Hutin King of France. 287  
 Lewis of France entertains his sister of Savoy. 355  
 cccccc  
 Lewis



## The Alphabetical Table.

Lewis the eleventh of France, his reign 492, &c. he quarrels with Burgundy and Brittany, ib. and with his Peers. 493. imprisoned by Duke Charls. 494  
Lewis soweth discord among the Princes 493. his double dealing with Burgundy. 495.  
Lewis desires Mary of Burgundy to put her self under the French. 499  
Lewis the twelfth of France, his reign and actions. 503  
Lewis the 13<sup>th</sup> of France. 512, &c.  
Lewis of Anjou takes Rome. 333  
Lewis, Duke of Orleans rejected from being Governor. 501  
Lewis Duke of Savoy, his actions. 353, &c. complains of his son Philip. 354  
Lewis, Marquis of Saluzzes. 356  
Licinius Emperor. 77. his wickedness. 79. is defeated, his end. ibid.  
Liege makes Warre against the Bishop. 345  
Ligeois beaten by Duke Charls. 494. rebel again. ibid. cut in pieces. 495  
The Ligeois defeated by the Duke of Burgandy. 486  
Lipsick surrendered. 386  
Lisbon assaulted by the English. 607  
Livonia wasted by the Muscovit. 432.  
Implores help from the Dane and Polacks. 432  
Loadstone found out. 275  
Locusts infest Affrica with Famine and Plague. 9. and France. 137.  
Waste Thracia. 157  
Longobards. 101. 104. change their Government. 107. their Kings. 116.  
Lorrain in strife between Otho and the French. 148, &c.  
Duke of Lorrain leaves Naples, and fals on Arragon. 494  
Lotharius Cæsar. 130, &c.  
Lotharius Emperor. 132. quarrels and fights with his brothers. ib. &c. divides his Kingdoms, and enters into a Monastery. 133  
Lotharius, Duke of Saxony, Emperor 171. opposed by Conradus. ib. his life and end. ib.  
Lowden is imprisoned and released. 645, &c.

Lucerna like to be surprized. 358  
Lucius Verus, his Government and death. 36, &c.  
Lucullus his actions. 38, &c.  
Ludovic Emperor. 130. his rebellious sons. 131. his death. ib.  
Ludovic the second, Emperor. 135  
Ludovic the younger. 137  
Ludovic the Stammerer. ib.  
Ludovic the fourth, Emperor. 140  
Ludovic Transmarin. 144. Ludovic of Bavaria, Emperor. 257. condemned by the Pope. ib. complains of the Pope. 258. Joynes with England against France. ib. is deposed by the Pope. 259. Ludovic, King of Hungary. 260  
Ludovic the second, King of Hungary. 400  
Martin Luther begins to stirre. 426, &c.  
Lyfius his Army. 1. he invades Judæa. 2. is murdered. ib.

## M

Macedonius. 83  
Magdeburg besieged and taken. 381. its ruine prefaged. 381. 384. its misery. ib.  
Magdeburg again besieged. 461  
Magnentius. 82  
Mahomet his originall. 109. his death. 110.  
Mahumetans 127. Mahumetanisme prevails. 249. Mahumet the first. 463  
Mahumet the second, his cruelty. 465. actions and victories. 466, &c. his aim at an Universal Monarchy, and his end and character. 468  
Mahomet the third, his victories and actions. 480. his cruelties. ib.  
Maide of Norway. 244  
Maide of Orleans. 487  
Malcolme, King of Scotland, his life. 190  
Malcolme, King of Scotland, murdered, and the murderers drowned. 154  
Malta Assaulted by the Turk. 477  
Mamalucks of Egypt. 175, &c. their Kings or Sultans. 176  
Mamalucks, who. 469. 473. destroyed by Selymus. 474  
Manfrid

## The Alphabetical Table.

Manfrid the bastard stifles his Father. 227. his other wicked acts. 234  
George Maniaces, a great Commander. 157, &c.  
Manlius Torquatus puts his son to death. 9  
Mansfield violates his Faith. 451. refuset to fight. 453. is defeated. 456. dieth. 457  
Mantua possessed by Nivern, which causeth great troubles. 462  
Manuel Comnenus, Greek Emperor, his life and end. 183, &c.  
Earl of Mar, made Regent. 626. dieth. 627  
Marcianus Emperor. 95. 96.  
Marcus Antonius de Dominis, burned 455  
Mardacus, his misgovernment of Scotland. 536. his end. 537  
Margaret of Holland. 253  
Margaret, Queen of Denmark. 266, &c. Margaret, the Emperor Lodovics wife. 279  
Marius overthrowes Jugurtha and Bocchus. 12. his triumph. ib. his victory over the Teutons. 13. and Cimbrians. ib. raiseth a civil war. 14. his victory over the Marfians. 15. his quarrel with Sylla. ib. his troubles and death. ib. &c.  
Marquisats erected in Germany. 143  
Marquis of Brandenburg. 222. of Saluzzes. 285  
Martina, her tongue cut out. 111  
Martyrs. 55, &c. 58. 63. 66. 68, &c. 71. 73, &c. 87. 98.  
Mary, last of the house of Burgundy. 343  
Marie, King Henries daughter wooed by divers Princes. 557, &c.  
Mary, of Scotland conveyed into France. 581. there married. 582  
Mary, King Henries daughter, is proclaimed Queen. 590, &c. her Reigne. 591, &c.  
Queen Maries persecutions. 595. with child. ib. her death. 597  
Q. Marie returneth into Scotland. 615  
she with her Lords, sends an Ambassador to Queen Elizabeth, to declare her successor which she refuseth to do. 615, &c.  
Queen Mary and the Ministers of

Edinburgh differ. 616. she makes her brother James, Earl of Murry, which discontents Huntley. ib.

Queen Maries progress into the North. 617, &c.  
She falls in love with young Lenox, and marrieth him. 618  
Her discontent with her husband. 619. escapes by Setons means. ib. persecutes the murderers of David. ib. is delivered of James 6<sup>th</sup>. ib.  
Is abused by her Subjects disgracefully. 620. and forced to resigne her Crown. ib.  
With Bothwel she escapes to Dunbar, they raise an Army. 621. she is brought disgracefully to Edinburgh, and he escapes to Orkney. ib. his end. ib. she escapes to Hamilton, raiseth an Army, and is defeated by Murry Regent. 622  
Her plot with Norfolks detected. 623  
She complains to Queen Elizabeth, and her answer. 628, &c. is removed to Paulet. 629  
Suspected and accused of Treason, is condemned, her last desires. 630. is interceded for by King James, and the French King: her death. 630  
Massaniissa's age, strength, and death. 4  
Matthias the Machabec. 1  
Matthias Corvinus, his actions and death. 398, &c.  
Matthias Emperor. 444  
Matthias, the Emperor's Brother. 403  
Maude the Emperess. 187  
Prior of S. Maurice, his excellent speech to Duke Amadeus. 349  
Maurice, Governor of Holland. 437, &c.  
Mauritius Emperor. 106. his covetousness. 107. his troubles and end. ib. all his children slain. ib.  
Maximilian Emperor. 402  
Maximilian and the French quarrel. 411.  
Maximilian's actions. 415, &c. his end and issue. 419  
Maximilian the second, Emperor. 433  
he dieth. 434  
Maximilian defeated by Mahomet. 480  
Maximinus

## The Alphabetical Table.

Maximinus his wicked Reign. 67  
Is murdered with his Son. ib.  
Maximianus Cæsar. 74, 76  
Maxentius a wicked Tyrant. 78  
Maximinus his cruelty. ib.  
Maxentius overthrown and drowned. ib.  
Maximinus his end. 79  
Maximus the General. 88  
A great Man. 95. Stoned to death. 96  
Metellus banished and brought back. 14  
His Actions. 18  
Michael Curophates Emperor. 127  
Michael Balbus Emperor. 131  
Michael son of Theodora. 134. His Fooleries, Cruelties and death. 135  
Michael Paleologus. 229. His actions and end. 247  
Michael Emperor of Constantinople. 157  
Michael Calaphates Emperor. 158  
Michael Parapinacius Greek Emperor, suffers the Empire to be ruined. 164  
Milcolumbus Cannor k. of Scotland, His life and end. 169  
Millan taken by the Goths. 102. Spared by Frederick, then overthrown. 177. Set at liberty by Henry the Emperor. 256. Entertains Ludovic. 258. Governed by 24 men. ib.  
Sold to John Galeacius. 270. Quarrels with Savoy. 285  
Its greatness torn in pieces. 332. Quarrels again with Savoy. 346  
Struggles for liberty. 353  
Laid claim to by divers. 411. Taken by the French. 412. By Cæsar. ibid.  
414. Taken by Francis Sforza. 360 in great troubles. 499  
Archbishop of Mintz his speeches. 420, &c.  
Mithridates king of Pontus, his parts, actions and languages. 14. Subdued by Scylla. 16. and Fimbria. ib. By Lucullus. 18. By Pompey. 19. His end. 20  
Monks drowned and killed. 99. A Monk invented Guns. 270. Monks called Jesuites. 277. Wicked Monks of Ambrunaya. 283. Franciscans and Dominicans quarrell. 419  
Monks of Saint Maurice in Savoy. 348  
Monsters. 43, &c. 46, 48, 51, 56, 108, 112, 38, 439, 511, 534, 567.

Monteths plot discovered. 321  
Montmorancie taken and beheaded. 515  
Morauid and Silecia in question. 411  
Its troubles. 457  
Mores make peace with the Christians. 237. Driven out of Spain. 444  
Mortimers. 307. Mortimer hanged. 308  
Morton's men, and the Queens party fight. 626  
Is beheaded notwithstanding Q. Elizabeths intercession. 628  
Moscovites. 134. Miraculously converted. 138. Waste Livonia. 433  
Beaten by the Polanders. 436  
Mouns lost and taken again by the English. 525  
Muhavias the Saracen. 113, &c.  
Mülhouse unite with the Cantons. 371  
Andrew Murrey Viceroy of Scotland. 324  
Murry the Regent goeth to Qn. Elizabeth to clear himself. 622. He returns and is opposed by Hamilton. ib. Is killed. 624  
Mustapha, Solymans son strangled. 477. His cruelty. ib.  
Mustapha of a three months Emperor, became a prisoner. 481. Made Emperor again. ibid. And Deposed. 482

**N** Naples in great troubles. 259, &c.  
In great troubles by Arragon and Anjou. 413, 416. Divided. 417  
Taken by Arragon, and Anjou sent away. 489  
Taken by the French and lost again. 502  
Changeth Kings quickly. 503  
Narles 103. deposed. 104. calls the Lombards into Italy. ib. defeats Baras 106  
King of Navair burned with aqua viva 301  
Neochomum, or Neufchâtel annexed to Bern. 372  
Nero, his good and bad conditions, his Tyrannies. 44, &c. his end. 46  
Nerva, his good Government and conditions. 52. and death. ib.  
Nestorius the heretick. 94. Nestorianisme far spread. 111  
Netherlands

## The Alphabetical Table.

Netherlands divided among divers Princes. 268  
Newburg and Brandenburg differ in Religion. 445  
Newport Battel. 439  
Nicephorus Emperor. 126, &c. slain. 127  
Nicephorus Phocas, Emperor of the East, his life and death. 147. &c.  
Nicholaus the Scrivener seisseth on the Capitol. 260. is defeated and imprisoned. ib.  
Nigar, Emperor. 61  
Normans, their Victories. 133. settle in Neustria. 137. rage in Germany ib. defeat, and are defeated. 139. take Calabria from the Greeks. 161.  
Normandy recovered by the French. 222. invaded by the English. 230  
Norvegians. 265  
Norwich pestred by the Rebels. 587  
Novatus. 69  
Numantia's Delinquency and ruin. 9  
Numerianus. 74

**O** Octavius, Cæsars adopted son, is made Emperor against Antony 29. his age and beginning of his Government ib. is slighted by the Senat, and is made Consul. ib. &c. his battel at Phillippi with Brutus and Cassius. 30. he lost many of his ships. 31. honored with Ovatio. ib. his victory at Actium. 33. obtains 3 triumphs. ib. his honors, happiness, and peace with all Nations. ib. &c. he reforms all disorders, and is grieved for the loss of Varus. 34. his death, and excellent parts described. 35  
Odenatus, General. 70  
Odoacer, King of Italy. 97  
Oftida, his strange punishment. 352  
Oheals rebellion and tyranny in Ulster. 598  
Opilius Matrinus his wicked Government. 64. by Martialis he murdered Caracalla. ib. his end. ib.  
Prince of Orange defeated. 347. Murdered. 426  
Orcaues the Turk. 250, 263  
Order of the Annunciada. 285. of Calaturava, and of Saint James. 182. of Carmalites. 182. 192. of Carthians. 279. the Garter. 276. 310. of the

Golden fleece. 264. 342. of Heremits. 182. of the holy Ghost, 508  
of the Humiliati. 177. of Saint John of Jerusalem, of the Templars, of the Tutonicks 166. of the Knights of Jesus Christ. 276. of Marinus. 414. of Saint Michael. 285. of Mount O. livet. 277. of the Premonstratensis 172. of Predicants and Minorits. 192. of the Star. 276. of Stephanits. 433. of Jesuits. 277  
Origen. 63, 69  
Duke of Orleans and Richlieu quarrel. 514. Orleans defeated. ib.  
Osman made Sultan. 481. his actions. ib. strangled by Mustapha. ib.  
Ostend Battel. 439  
Otho, his reign and death. 47  
Otho first bore the 3 Lillies. 139  
Otho the first, German Emperor. 144  
Otho the Emperor, his divers exploits. 145. he makes divers journeys to Rome, and takes it. 145, &c. in a Synod he deposeth Pope John the twelfth. 146. punisheth divers of the Citizens. ib. he wasts Calabria and Apulia, and marrieth Theophanias to his son. ib. erects divers Bishopricks, and dieth. ib.  
Otho the second, Emperor of the West, and his actions. 148, &c.  
Otho the third, Emperor, his reign. 151. &c. his agreement with the Pope 152. his pilgrimage, justice on his wife: and death. 153  
Ottacar, King of Bohemia. 235  
Otterburn battel, and the Scots Stratagem. 329  
Otto, the sonne of Henricus Leo. 221. Emperor, and his contestation with the Pope. 222. resignes his Empire. ib.  
Ottoman Family appeareth. 247. Ottoman the first. 248. his actions and death. 249, 263  
Overberry imprisoned & paysoned. 637

**P** Palatinat. all lost. 453  
Pappenhem slain. 391  
Paris troubled with mutinies. 297. Fined. 300. rebels against the Dolphin. 312  
Parliaments at Edinburgh, two at once 626  
Parma

## The Alphabetical Table.

Parma defeats Fredericks Army. 227  
 Parthians defeated. 31. their civil war.  
 42. subject Trajan. 53. defeated under  
 Antoninus. 56. seize upon Mesopotamia.  
 62. wronged by Caracalla. 63. subdued by  
 the Persian King. Artaxerxes. 66. by Gordian.  
 68. beat the Turks. 479  
 Paul Preacheth the Gospel. 41. &c. 45.  
 his Fourneys and Miracles. ib. his death.  
 Paul the Heremit. 69  
 Paulician Hereticks. 132  
 Peace between Amurath and Ladislaus, made,  
 and broke. 407  
 Peace between Frederick the Emperor, and  
 Charls of Burgundy. 410  
 Between Caesar and the Turk. 442.  
 Between Spain and Holland. ib.  
 Between Spain and Holland expired.  
 452. Between the Danes and Swedes. 445  
 Between Caesar and the Dane. 460.  
 Swedland and Poland. 462  
 Between the Turk and Persian. 481.  
 the Turk and Poland. ib.  
 Between Caesar and the Turk and Gabor.  
 483  
 Between England and France. 293  
 Between France, England, and Burgundy.  
 497  
 Concluded in France. 510. and with Spain. ib. with England. 514  
 Dishonorably concluded with Scotland.  
 308  
 Between France and England. 552.  
 558. Between England and Scotland.  
 562  
 With the French broken, and why. 557  
 Concluded between the English, Scots, and French.  
 614  
 Relagius, the Popes Legat. 224  
 Perennius, Commodus his Favorit. 58  
 Perkin Warbeck his Story. 547, &c. 567, &c.  
 Persians subdued. 70. beat by Maximinus.  
 75. submit to Constantin. 81.  
 Article with the Romans. 85. defeated by  
 Ardaburius. 92. converted. 100. defeated by  
 Martianus. 105 and by Mauritius. 106. they subdue  
 Phenicia, &c. 108. defeated by Mau-

ritius. 109. subdued by the Saracens  
 111. Baptized. 114. their Story under  
 Usumcassanes, Harduelles, Ishmael, &c.  
 471. defeated by Selymus the Turk. 472.  
 Prevail in Asia. 480. their bloodie  
 battel with the Turks. 481. they take  
 Babylon and other places from the Turk.  
 482  
 Perth begins the Protestant reformation.  
 584  
 Pertinax saluted Emperor. 60. his excellent  
 Government and end. ib. his murthers  
 banished. 61  
 Pestilence at Babylon and Rome. 56.  
 58. 70. at Picenum and Constantinople.  
 102. at Rome. 108. 118. at Byzantium  
 and else where. 120. in the Camp at  
 Tunis. 237. 260. at Rome. 438. at  
 Constantinople. 481 at Rome. 508  
 Peter the Apostle. 43. his Miracles and death.  
 45  
 Petrus de Vineis. 227  
 Petrus Antiodorensis. 228  
 Peter of Arragon obtains Sicily. 235  
 Peter de la Broch. 237  
 Peter of Arragon killed. 238  
 Peter of Savoy, his actions. 281. Peter of  
 Castile. 293, &c.  
 Peter, King of Hungary killed. 158  
 Pharnases defeated and murdered. 27  
 Phaselus beats out his own brains. 30  
 Philbert, Duke of Savoy. 355. poisoned.  
 356  
 Philbert the second. ib.  
 Philip, King of Syria. 11, &c.  
 Philip the Apostle. 43  
 Philip the Emperor his Reigne. 68  
 Philippicus Bardanes, Emperor. 117.  
 Philip the German Emperor. 221. slain.  
 222. his contestation with the Pope. 221  
 Philip, the Bold King of France. 237, &c.  
 Philip the Fair. 238. contests with the  
 Pope. 234. like to be killed. ib. defeated  
 of the Empire. 255. Philip, E. of Savoy.  
 282. Philip le Long. 287. Philip Valois  
 declared K. of France. 288. his actions.  
 298, &c.  
 Philip of Burgundy. 342. Philip, Prince  
 of Belgium invited into Spain. 417.  
 King Philip beats the Pope out of  
 Latium. 431  
 Philip Augustus, King of France. 187  
 Philip

## The Alphabetical Table.

Philip Valois, King of France. 308.  
 Philip of Savoy imprisoned. 354  
 Philip Duke of Savoy. 350  
 Philip of Austria entertained in England.  
 550  
 Philip of Spain, his marriage with Mary,  
 and Articles thereupon. 594  
 King Philip deserts Queen Mary, pos-  
 sesses his fathers Dominions, wars a-  
 gainst France. 596  
 King Philip solicited by Queen Eliza-  
 beth, in behalf of the Netherlanders. 602, &c.  
 Phocas Emperor. 107. his wicked life  
 and end. 108  
 Phraates his actions and death. 6, 7.  
 Pyemont joyn'd to Savoy. 280  
 Pipinus. 117. made King. 121. his gift  
 to the Pope. ib. Pipin, King of Aquitania.  
 130  
 Phyccon, King of Egyptr, his actions. 5  
 Plantaginet. 230  
 Plantaginet the true and false. 545, &c.  
 Plato's Coffin. 125.  
 Plautianus, his ambition and end. 62  
 Pliny excuseth the Christians. 53  
 Poliman Knights, their habit. 159  
 Poland in great troubles. 230. dis-  
 tressed by their Kings. 250. their Crown  
 translated. 277  
 Polanders massacred in Russia. 441.  
 disagree at home. ib. beat the Mu-  
 scovir. 443  
 Poland proclaims war against the Turk.  
 451  
 Polands Ambassador to Queen Eliza-  
 beth, and her Answer. 609  
 Pomerania in bad condition. 380, &c.  
 Pompey destroys the Pyrats. 19. his  
 greatness and Command. ib. his actions.  
 20. takes Jerusalem and other places.  
 ib. suspects Caesar. 24. is sup-  
 ported by the Senat against Caesar. 25.  
 he and they also flee to Brundisium.  
 ib. is Master of the Sea. 26. defeats  
 Caesars Army. ib. he chuse Epirus  
 for the seat of the war. ib. his Pharsal-  
 lian Forces, his defeat, flight and death.  
 ib. &c. his head presented to Caesar.  
 27. his son defeated and slain. 28  
 Cardinal Pool, his Story. 594, &c.

Pope Damasus. 86. Innocentius 91.  
 Leo. 94, &c. John the first. 100, &c.  
 Gregory the first. 108. Boniface 3<sup>d</sup>.  
 and fourth. 109. Martin. 112. Vitalianus.  
 113, &c. Eugenius the first. 113. Agatho.  
 114. Leo second. ibid. Sergius. 116. Con-  
 stantin the seventh. 117. Gregory the second.  
 118. Stephen. 121. Zachary. ib. Adrian the first.  
 125. Leo the third. ib. &c. Sergius the second.  
 133. Leo fourth. 134. Formosus. 139, &c.  
 Gregory the ninth. 223. Popes wanting 21  
 months. 226. Innocent fourth. ib. the Popes  
 contestations with England. 231, &c.  
 Gregory the ninth. 234. Clemens the fifth  
 translates his seat to Avinion. 238.  
 Boniface the eighth. 239. Clemens the fourth.  
 246. Popes chosen without the Conclave. ib. Martin the fourth.  
 ib. Celestin the fifth. ib. Boniface the eighth.  
 ib. John the twenty two. 258. Clemens the fifth,  
 his Coronation and Actions. 275. John the 22.  
 his error and actions. 276. Benedict the eleventh.  
 ib. Clemens sixth. ib. Innocent the sixth.  
 ib. Urban sixth. 277. Boniface ninth. ib. Martin  
 the fifth. 334. Eugenius the fourth. Felix 5<sup>th</sup>.  
 336. 350. Pope honors the Switzers. 366. Pius the second.  
 410. Julius second. 412. Leo the tenth.  
 418. Clemens the seventh. 425. Julius the third.  
 429. Paul fourth, a great Antilutherian. 431.  
 Pius fourth. 432. Gregory 13<sup>th</sup>. 437. Sixtus  
 the fifth. ib. Paul the 5<sup>th</sup>. 441. Gregory the 15<sup>th</sup>.  
 452, &c. Urban the eighth. 454. Julius the second.  
 Leo the tenth. 504, &c. Clement seventh.  
 506  
 Popes, divers in few years. 162  
 Pope Paschalis. 169. Pope Adrian. 177.  
 Vittor and Alexander Antipopes. ibid.  
 Pierre de Lalune, a Castilian Pope, removes  
 from Avenion. 303  
 Pope Paul the fourth. 506, &c.  
 Popes power curbed by King Henry the eighth.  
 558  
 Portugall Crown in question. 277  
 Portugals take many places in the East  
 Indies. 431  
 Portugal seized on by the Spaniard. 435  
 Presbyterie

## The Alphabetical Table.

Presbyterie curbed in Scotland. 629.  
their power. 631. force King James.  
631. &c.  
Prodigies. 223. 276. 384. 386. &c. 392.  
437. 447. 454. 460. 462. 504. 534.  
593. 153.  
Protestants differ among themselves.  
426. are gently used by Cæsar. 428.  
Reject the Counsel of Trent. 432. are  
persecuted. *ib.* massacred. 434.  
Their troubles and Doctrins. 429.  
they are dispersed, and allowed. 430.  
435  
Banished out of Styria, &c. 439.  
their troubles in Germany. 442.  
Complain at the Diet of Ratisbon.  
444  
Their Jubilee causeth much trouble.  
447. their proceedings in Bohemia.  
*ib.*  
Are massacred in France. 507. per-  
secuted there. 513  
Persecuted also in Scotland. 575.  
&c. 579. make stirrs in Edin-  
burgh. 583  
In Scotland quarrel with the Queen  
Regent. *ib.* their Violencies. 584.  
Angry at Queen Maries match. 594  
and abuses offered. *ib.*  
In Scotland prevail, and shake off  
the French yoke. 613. Petition the  
Queen Regent to dismiss the  
French. 614  
Province falls to the French King.  
500  
Prusias, King of Bithynia, slain by his  
son. 3  
Prussia, the Turks Capital City. 248  
Ptolomic Philometor, is restored and  
reconciled to his brother. 2. his actions  
and death. 3.  
Ptolomi Euergetes 5  
Ptolomi Philometor, his kindness to  
the Jews. 5.  
Ptolomic Lamyra's, his cruelties. 10.  
Ptolomic is driven out of Egypt.  
21  
Ptolomic Auletes dieth. 25  
Ptolomic Dionysius. 25. Ptolomies  
Library burnt. 27. he is stifled in the  
mud. *ib.*  
Ptolomais taken by Sultan Melech.  
236  
Publicius Malleolus, his murder and  
punishment. 13  
Pulcheria. 59

**Q**  
Queen Mother of France. 511. &c.  
Quintillus Emperor. 72

**R**  
Radbodus, his wicked speech. 118  
Sir Walter Rawleigh beheaded.  
639  
Randolph, Earl of Murry, Protector  
of Scotland. 323  
Ravenna, the Regal Seat of Italy. 97.  
&c. the Exarchat. 104. the Bishop-  
rick. 114. endeth. 121.  
Rebellion of Yorkshire. 547. in the  
North. 545. &c. in Cornwall. 548.  
&c.  
In Lincolnshire, and other Northern  
Parts. 559  
In Cornwall and Devonshire about  
Religion. 586. about inclosures in  
Norfolk. 587. the Rebels stoutness  
and strength. *ib.* &c. North Rebelli-  
ons. 588  
In the North against Queen Eliza-  
beth. 599. &c.  
Regent, his absence from Scotland,  
occasioneth much mischief. 572. &c.  
His actions with the Queen Mother  
581. resignes his place to her. 582  
Queen Regent of Scotland, and her  
actions. *ib.*  
She dieth. 614  
Rhodes and Belgrad taken by Soly-  
man. 475. &c.  
Ricaredus, King of Spain, is called  
Catholick. 108  
Richard cure de Lion, King of Eng-  
land, his actions abroad and at home.  
189. &c.  
Richard Earl of Cornwall. 235. 240.  
&c.  
Richard the Second, King of England.  
315. &c. his misgovernment. 318. &c.  
is deposed. 319  
Earl of Richmond encouraged by Dr.  
Morton, against King Richard.  
554. puts to Sea, and returns into  
Britany. 550. where he was like to  
be betrayed. *ib.* he arrives at Milford  
Haven. *ib.* Fights King Richard,  
gets the day, and is Crowned in the  
field. 556  
Earl of Richmond preserved in a  
Sanctuary. 558  
David

## The Alphabetical Table.

David Riz, great with Queen Mary.  
618.  
His bad counsell and end. 619  
Robert, the Conquerors sonne, rebels.  
167  
Agrees with his brother Henry.  
173. dieth. *ib.*  
Robert, King of Apulia. 256  
Robert de Vere, Duke of Ireland.  
317  
Robert King of Scotland dieth with  
grief. 536  
Rodolphus, Duke of Suevia made Em-  
peror, and lost his Army. 160.  
Rodolphus the second, Emperor. 435  
Rodolphus Emperor, dieth. 444  
Rogation, when instituted. 97  
Roger, King of Sicily. 171  
Rogerius Laurea, the Spanish Admi-  
ral. 247  
Rohan besieged and taken by the En-  
glish. 521  
Rollan, called Rupert. 138  
Roman victories. 4. 5. they degene-  
rate. *ib.*  
troubled by the sedition of Gracchus.  
8. by the slaves of Sicily & Cilicia. *ib.*  
Rome infested with the plague. *ib.*  
the Romans severity against Mati-  
cenus and Mancinus. 9. their success,  
bad and good in Spain. *ib.* against  
Jugurtha. 12. against the Cimbri-  
ans and Teutons. 12. 13. against the  
Thracians. *ib.* against the slaves. *ib.*  
&c. against the Pisentes, Samnites,  
Marfians, and other Italians. 14.  
15. their bloodie civil wars. *ib.* &c.  
their Sertorian, Spartic, Sardanian,  
and Michridatic wars. 18. their  
Pyrratical war. *ib.* and German. 22.  
their success in Gallia and Britan.  
22. &c. their battle at Pharsalia. 26.  
&c. the number of the Citizens. 28  
they defeat the Parthians by Ventidi-  
us. 31. their civil war at Actium.  
32. their miserie under Tiberius. 37.  
&c. under Caligula. 40. &c. their  
number under Claudius. 43. their  
miserie under Nero. 44. are murder-  
ed by the Britans. *ib.* their miseries  
under Commodus. 59. and Cara-  
calla. 64. their victory over the Per-  
sians. 66. their miseries under Gor-  
dianus. 67. the Roman Empire torne  
69. &c. Romes miserie under Ne-

porianus. 82. are defeated by the  
Hunns, Goths, and Vandals. 87.  
Rome taken by Alaricus. 92. sack'd  
by Genfericus. 96. taken by the He-  
ruli and others. 97. ends in Augu-  
stulus. *ib.* taken by Belisarius, then  
by Totilas. 102. &c. Rome surpris-  
ed by a hare. 139. overthrowes Fre-  
dericks Garisons. 226. runs with  
blood under the Columni and Ur-  
fini. 256. taken twice by Ladislaus.  
260. Romans abuse Pope Pauls Sta-  
tue. 432. in Rome, strife about the  
Popes Election. 440. taken by the  
Duke of Burbon. 506  
Romans storm at the Inquisition.  
507  
Romanus the Admiral. 141  
Romanus the younger, Emperor of  
Constantinople. 147  
Romanus Argyropolus, Emperor, his  
life and death. 157  
Romanus Diogines, how used by the  
Turks. 163. and how by Ducas.  
164  
Rome taken, and the Walls overthrowen  
333  
Romilda and her daughters. 109  
Rosimunda, her revenge. 104  
Bishop of Ross, Agent for Queen  
Mary. 627  
Rotchell Besieged. 513. and taken.  
514  
Rotvil, the place of Judicature.  
371  
Rudolphus of Burgundy. 143  
Rudolphus of Haspurg, Emperour.  
235  
his Victories and actions. 236. his  
death. *ib.*  
Ruffinus. 90  
Rupert of Bavaria, Emperour. 331. his  
actions. 332  
Rupert the Palatin occasioneth a War.  
417  
Ruffians defeated. 144. of the Greek-  
Communion. 246  
Russia deluded by Demetrius, the  
Counterfeit Prince. 440  
Russia Molested by the Polander.  
446

d d d d d

Salador

## The Alphabetical Table.

### S

Salador, its History. 364  
 Salique Law. 287. in Savoy. 394  
 Saporès, the Persian King. 68, &c. 81.85  
 Saracens subdue the East. 111. attempt Byzantium, and take Rhodes. 112. &c. fall out about their profit. 113. Waste Afric, and are defeated by Constantin. ibid. &c. Subdue the Persians. 115. defeat Justinian. ibid. Are killed in France. 119. And in Spain. 125. Overrun Cyprus. 127. Defeated in Spain. 130. They Defie Christ and Basil the Emperor. 136. Their Rites and Prayers changed. 138. Beat by the Tartars. 248  
 Sarmatians. 87  
 Saturninus torne in pieces. 14  
 Savoy, and its Earls. 279, &c.  
 Savoyen History prosecuted. 345. 392. &c.  
 Savoy made a Prey to strangers. 393  
 Savoy denies passage to the French. 491  
 Duke of Saxones complaint, and resolution. 386  
 Saxony much troubled, and their Duke taken. 429  
 Saxons called into Brittan. 93. Drive out the Brittons. 95. Erect their Kingdom. 98. Kept off from landing. 102. Take the Isle of VVight. ibid. quarrel with the Suevi. 107. Their Plantations. 129  
 Saxons quarrel with Henry the seventh Emperor. 160, &c.  
 Saxons and Cæsarians at variance. 429, &c.  
 Saxony the seat of war. 455  
 Scaliger, Cajus and Mastinus. 259  
 Scanderbeg revolts from Amurath, 464. with Huniades, spoyle Amurath. 465  
 Scanderbeg is beat, and dieth. 468. His strength and courage. ib.  
 Scaphusa, its History. 366  
 Schismes. 86. 277. 295. 251

Scipio Emilianus. 4. Opposeth Gracchus, and is poisoned. 8. Scipio is sent against Numantia. 9. Scipio, Pompeys Father in law kills himself. 27  
 Bardas Sclerus his actions. 149, &c.  
 Scotland troubled with intestine wars. 325  
 Scotland shelters the English King and his adherents. 534  
 Scotlands friendship sought for by the English and French. 538  
 Scotland disturbed by the Chancellor and Regent. 539. By Douglass. 544  
 Troubled by Courtiers, and Factions. 563, &c.  
 In great troubles in James the fifth's Minority. 570, &c.  
 Troubled with civil wars between Queen Marie's Party and the Regents. 624, &c.  
 Raiseth tumults about the new Service-Book. 642  
 Bishops of Scotland protest against the Covenanters. 643  
 Scots Presbyterians expell the Bishops, and raise great Armies against the King. ibid.  
 Invade England. 646.  
 Take Newcastle. ib.  
 Scots receive the Christian Faith, when. 79  
 Converted by Palladius. 93  
 Destroy the Picts. 134  
 Have Wars with England, and troubles at home. 233  
 They beat the Danes and Norwegians. 243  
 Take the Isle of Man, and aid King Henry against the Barons. 243  
 Scots Clergy contest with the Nobility. 243. they fight the Popes Legat. ib. divided by the factions of Baliol and Bruce. 244. they overthrow the English Fleet. ibid.  
 They lose Barwick, Edinburgh, and Sterling. 245.  
 They invade England. ib.  
 Are beat by King Edward. ib.  
 They defeat three English Armies in one day. ib.  
 Scots overthrow the English at Bannock. 306  
 Invade

## The Alphabetical Table.

Invade England and Wales. 317. are angry with the French. ibid. Their success at home and in Ireland. 321  
 Slight the Popes Legats. 322  
 Invade England again with. 20000 horse. ib.  
 Beaten by Baliol. 324. invade Engl. without their Kings consent. 328  
 Scotch and English bickerings in France. 536. Scots defeated at Floren. 551. Their civil Wars. 536  
 Scots waste the English borders. 579. Their miseries in Queen Maries Minority. 577, &c.  
 Will not hearken to a match with England. 580. are defeated by the English. ib.  
 Send Commissioners into France about the match. 582. are poisoned there. 583  
 Scots Crown demanded by the French. but refused. ib.  
 Scots Protest ants make a League with England against France. 585  
 Scots beaten by Sommerfet, Protector of England. 586  
 Scots beat the French into Leith. 614  
 Will not be induced to admit Queen Mary. 625  
 Scylla, his victories and quarrels with Marius. 15, &c. his cruel acts and success. 16, &c. his Dictatorship and death. 17  
 Sejanus, his wickedness and cruelties. 37  
 &c. his Tragical end. 39  
 Seleucus, son of Antiochus Gryphus. 11  
 Selymus the Turk. 472. his actions and victories. ib. &c. his end. 474  
 Selymus the second, his victories. 478  
 Seneca. 44, &c.  
 Seriphus the Egyptian. 248  
 Sertorius his actions and death. 18  
 Severus Emperor. 61. he defeats Niger. ib. his other actions. 62. his rigid Government. and end. ib. Severus the Eutychian. 99, &c.  
 Sextus Pompeius seisseth upon Sicily. 30  
 is reconciled to Octavius & Antony. 31. is beat at sea, and slain. ibid.  
 Maximilian Sforza's gift to the Switzers. 374  
 Francis Sfortia invades Millan. 411  
 his actions and end. 412. his son re-  
 covers it. ib. 416

Sfortia defeated by the Switzers. 504  
 English Ships, two in number, fight with 30 Turkish Gallies. 485  
 English Ships taken by the Scots. 567  
 Sicily quickly won and lost. 157  
 Sicilian cruelty against the French. 235  
 Sigismund of Austria. 375  
 Sigismund of Swethland deposed. 377. &c.  
 Sigismund Emperor. 333. his actions. ibid. &c.  
 Sigismund, King of Hungarie. 270. 397, &c.  
 Sigismund King of Hungarie imprisoned, and set free. 303  
 Silefia subdued. 257  
 Simon succeeds Jonathas. 6. his actions; is murdered. ib. Symon Magus. 43. 49  
 Sinan the Turk dieth with grief. 403  
 Siroses the Persian King. 110  
 Slaves trouble the Romans. 8. are overthrown in Sicily by Lucullus and Aquilius. 13, &c.  
 Slavi, or Slavonians. 101. 108. 115.  
 Solyman invades Hungary. 400. forced to leave Vienna. ib.  
 Solyman his actions and victories. 475, &c. his end and Character. 478  
 Spain possessed by the Saracens. 117. under Mozarabes and Almod, Arabians. 119  
 Overrun by the Mores. 192  
 Spain defeats the African Kings. 290  
 troubled with civil Wars. 344. Obtains all Naples. 417. beats out the Moors. 419. Spanish Fleet beat by Solyman. 433. Spanish harshness in Belgium. ib. Spaniards beaten out of Africa. 434. rejected by the Netherlanders. 435  
 Spain hath divers disasters. 503  
 Spain prepares a Fleet against England. 604. The greatness thereof. ib.  
 Spanish Fleet encountered with, and defeated by the English. 605. &c.  
 Spain invaded by the English. 606  
 Spaniards beaten by the French. 607  
 d d d d d 2 Spaniards



## The Alphabetical Table.

Spaniards beat and are beaten. 452.  
Spaniards beat the French out of Italy 504  
Spaniards in Ireland article with the Deputy and are sent home. 611  
Spanish Fleet defeated by the Hollanders. 644  
Archbishop of Spalato entertained and sent away. 640  
Spartacus his actions and death. 18  
Spencer. 306, &c.  
Spinola and Maurice, their actions. 454  
Spier Diocefs mutinies. 419  
Stauratius the Patrician. 123, &c. his son. 127. wounded. ib.  
Stephen the Patriarch. 144  
Stephen, King of England. 187  
Stilico. 90  
Michael Stratioticus Greek Emperor. 162  
Robert Stuart, King of Scotland. 327  
Stuarts and Douglasss strive for the young King. 573  
Matthew Stuart, Earl of Lenox, de- luded. 577. beaten, and flies into Eng- land. 578, &c.  
Charls Suderman. 440  
Suffolk accused of high Treason. 530. his end. ib.  
Sultan, his expedition into Persia. 485. he sends home the French Ambassa- dor, and bribes the Janisaries. ib. &c.  
Duke of Sommerfet accused, and slain. 531  
Duke of Sommerfet, protector of Eng- land, executes his brother, and is ac- cused of Treason. 588. is executed. 589  
Swedish History. 377, &c.  
Swedes make Laws for establishing their Kingdom. 379. have wars with the Danes. ib.  
Swethland and its Kings. 265, &c.  
Swethlands History. 336, &c.  
Switzers subdued by Rodolphus. 246.  
Canonize themselves. 253. their va- lour in the Romans time, and their Service against the Sarazens. 357. they rebel against their Nobles. ib. divided into two Religions. ib. their League. 358. they had much bickering with the Austrians. 357, &c. their History. ib. &c. they have divers

enemies. 361. they war amongst them- selves, and with the French 362. they defeat and kill Charls of Bur- gundy. 363. they increas their Can- ton Towns. ib. they quarrel with Mil- lan. ib. their last war for their Liber- ty. 365. are worsted at Naples. 366. they aid the French and the Pope. ib. and Maximilian. 367. their ami- ty sought for. 366. make peace with the French. 368. then fall out with them. ibid. then make a perpetual League with France. ib. &c. their fi- pendiary Towns. 372. other of their Towns. 373. their 9 Bailiages. 374. their free Provinces. ib. their divers Confederacies. 375, &c. they defeat and kill Charls of Burgundy. 410. dissuade the election of King Fran- cis. 421

Synod, see Council.

**T** Amerlan and his Conquests. 264.  
Tartarians, what kinde of people. 182  
Tartars overrun many Countries. 230. are converted ib. send to the Pope. 239. become Mahometans. 247, &c.  
Precopit Tartars made slaves to the Turks. 479  
Taurinum strangely released. 281  
Techelles the Persian Commander. 471 &c.  
Telerichus the Bulgarian. 120. 122  
Temple at Delphos. 85. at Jerusalem. 49. 84. of Apollo at Rome. 85. of S. Sophia. 103. of S. Mark. 104. of the Holy Sepulchre taken. 229  
Templars destroyed. 238, &c.  
Tenedos occasion of much war. 271. slighted and forsaken. 275.  
Terza beats the Turk, 247  
Thalmud. 100  
Theodiscus corrupts Isidor. 113  
Theodosius the Emperor. 88. his ex- cellencies. ib. &c. his death. 89  
Theodosius the younger. 91, &c. The- odosius of Adramyttum. 117. &c.  
Theophilus Emperor. 132  
Theodora Emperess. 134  
Theodoricus the Goth. 94. his ab- sions and death. 98.  
Theodorus Lascalis. 228. Theodori- cius Earls of Holland. 251  
Thomas,

## The Alphabetical Table.

Thomas, surnamed Constantin, his life and death. 132.  
Thomas Earl of Savoy. 280.  
Thracians Rebellion. 13  
Tiberius his victories. 35. his govern- ment and qualities described. 36. his reformation and cruel nature. 37. is persuaded by Sejanus to remove from the City. ib. he lives eleven years at Capreae, and why. 38. his in- humanitie to his mother. ib. he de- stroys Sejanus, and why 39. his death and burial. 40.  
Tiberius, Emperor of Byzantium, his actions. 105. dyeth. 106  
Tiberius Apistmarus, Emperor. 115  
Tigranes and his actions. 17. 19, &c.  
Tigurum changeth its Government. 358. like to be surprized, and quar- rels with Habsburg. 359. and with Rapervil. ib. they waste Marchia. ib. desire peace with Austria, which is denied them. 360. they submit to the Queen of Hungaries verdict. ib. make war with the Austrian. 360, &c.  
Tigurins will make no League with France, and their reasons. 368.  
Tilly, the Cæsarian Generalissimo. 382 takes Magdeburg. 383. his other actions. 384, &c.  
Tilly Defeated and wounded. 386. wounded again. 388. dieth at Ingolstad. 389  
Tillies and Fridlands proceedings. 456 &c. 460  
Tir-Oen rebels in Ulster. 609, &c. his underhand-dealing. 610. he beats the English. ib. he parlies with Essex. ib. spoils Ireland, and is beat by Mont- joy. 611. submits and is pardoned. ibid.  
Tius the Emperor. 46. subdues Jerusa- lem. 49. and Triumpheth with his Father. ib. his sweet nature and con- ditions. 50  
Tomumbeius, King of Egypt, hanged by Selymus. 474.  
Totilas. 102. killed. 103  
Tournay taken by a French Barbar. 499  
Trajan. 52. his good Government and victories. 53. endangered at Antioch ib. his losses and death. ib. his burial and Pillar. 54

Traitors and Treasons against Queen Elizabeth detected. 600, &c.  
Transylvania pestered with civil war. 439  
Treaties between England, Naples and Persia, with the Turk. 483  
Electors of Trevers Speech. 422, &c.  
Troubles between the Queen Regent of Scotland and the Protestants. 584, &c.  
Tryphon obtains Syria. 5. which he loseth again, and is slain. 6. Tryphon the Patriarch. 144  
Tully is questor. 19. Consul. 20. is ban- ished and plundered. 21. returns, and is called Transfuga. 23. and Impera- tor. ib. pleads for Milo. 24. inveighs against Antony. 29. is banished, mur- thered, and after death, abused. 30  
Tunis besieged, which makes peace with the Christians. 302  
Turks. 105. revolt from Heraclius. 110 break out of the Caspian Straits. 121  
Turks employed by Mahomet. 150. whom they subdue with his Saracens. 151. they desire peace with Constan- tin. 158. beaten by Theod. Lascaris. 228. Invade the Greek Empire. 246 defeat the Alani. 247. waste the Ea- stern Empire. 248. take divers Towns. 250. their original and in- crease. 262 &c. their Terrarches. 263 called in by Francis the French king, they besiege Nicæa. 395. waste Hun- gary. 400. they defeat Ferdinand, and are defeated by him. 401. their cruelties in Hungary 403. assault Malta, and take Chios. 433. 477. take Cyprus and Golet. 434. 478. take Constantinople. 466. take di- vers places from the Venetian. 467, &c. they take Rhodes. 476. defeated at Lepanto. 478. their bad success a- gainst the Persians. 479. their per- fidiousness to Hungary. ib. their bad success in the Mediterranean sea. 481  
Wat Tylers Rebellion. 315

**V** Valentinian and Valens, their Government. 86. and end. 87.  
Valentinian the second. 88, &c.  
Valentinian the third. 93. 95  
Valerianus his reign and end. 69  
Valerians

## The Alphabetical Table.

Valesians *their History.* 370  
 Vandals *invade Africa.* 93  
 Varius Antoninus Heliogabalus, *why so*  
*called.* 64. *his wicked, tyrannically,*  
*and ridiculous Governments.* 64, &c.  
*his end.* 65  
 Varus *is defeated in Germany.* 35. *he*  
*defeats the Jews.* 36  
 John Vayvod of Transylvania. 400  
 Confirmed *k.* of Hungary *by the Turk;*  
*ib.* Vayvods *treachery.* 402  
 Venice *founded.* 95. *her first Duke.* 117  
 Venetians *expell the Duke.* 127. *Besiege*  
 Byzantium. 186. *Make a League*  
*with the Comnins against the Las-*  
*carins.* 228. *take Candie.* 233. *quar-*  
*rel with the Genuois about a Church,*  
 236. *they fight the Genuois.* 261.  
*quarrel again.* 269. *their long war*  
*with Genua for the Isle of Tenedos.*  
 271. *are beaten, and sue for peace.*  
 272, &c. *beat off from the walls of*  
*Clodia.* 273. *defeated at Sea by the*  
*Genuois again.* 274. *obtain a victo-*  
*ry.* *ib.* *recover all their losses.* *ib.* &c.  
*are reconciled with the Genuois.* 275  
*are deluded by Fr. Sfortia.* 412. *enter*  
*into a League against him.* 416.  
*their greatness envied.* 417. *their*  
*losses.* 418. *fall out with the Jesuites*  
*and Pope.* 441. *and reconciled.* *ibid.*  
*their ships infested by the Croats.* 446  
*are reconciled to Ferdinand the arch-*  
*Duke.* *ib.* *lose divers places.* 467, &c.  
*make peace with Mahomet.* 468.  
*they quarrel with Bajazet.* 470. *make*  
*peace with him.* *ib.* *lose Cyprus.* 478  
 Vespasian's *actions in Judea.* 46, &c.  
*his reign.* 48. *his good parts and end*  
*of.* 49, &c. *Vesuvius breaks out.* 50, 97  
 Victor *Bishop of Rome.* 59  
 Villiers *D.* of Buckingham. 638  
 Viriatus *a Robber beats the Romans.* 8  
*is betrayed and slain.* *ib.*  
 Virius *the Captain.* 345  
 Visigoths. 93. *subdue Cantabria.* 105  
 Vitalianus *Mastermaster.* 99, &c.  
 Vitellius *his reign and death.* 47, &c.  
 Vitiges *the Goth.* 102.  
 Uladomirus *Pr.* of Russia *defeated.* 158  
 Ulphilas *Bishop.* 86  
 Ulricus *Earl of Cilia.* 408  
 Union of England and Scotland *him-*  
*dered.* 572  
 Universities of Cambridge. 111. *of*

Paris. 125. *Of* ~~Papia~~, Ticinum  
Osnaburg, *and* Bononia. 125. *of*  
Oxford. 136. *of* Bononia *transla-*  
*ted* to Padua. 226. *Of* Naples. 227  
*Of* Salmatica. 234. *Of* Prague. 268  
*Of* Lovain. *ib.* *of* Orleans. 276.  
*of* Cracovia. 277. *Of* Lipsia. 334  
*of* Tubing. 414. *Of* Witteberg,  
*of* Franckfort. 415. *Of* Sena. 431  
*of* Leyden. 434. *Of* Helmeftad. *ib.*  
*Of* Saint Andrews in Scotland. 536  
*of* Lovan in Brabant. 146  
John *Archbifhop* of Upfalìa. 339  
Ufumcaffanes *his* message to Mahomet  
467. 470  
*Bifhops* of Utricht. 344

## W

**V** Aldemar king of Denmark. 177  
Waldemar 2<sup>d</sup> K. of Denmark. 224  
Waldemar 3<sup>d</sup> 266  
Waldenses what? 222. Beaten by Philip, Lewis the 8. and Lewis 9. 229  
Wales subdued. 242. Prince of Wales in France complained against. 294  
Wall of Peloponessus built and demolished. 262  
holy War undertaken. 164. &c. 181  
War begun between Denmark & Tilly 454. In the Valtelin. 455  
Wars between England and France, 291, &c. In Flanders, 295.  
Wars denounced at the Diet of Spire. against K. Francis. 396  
VVars of the Netherlands begun, 433, &c. 436  
Wars between Engl. and France. 551  
Between England & Scotland. 327  
Between England and Scotland again, 542, 560, 578, &c. In Flanders by the Gauntois. 298. Between Lewis 11. and his people. 492, &c.  
Between Mantua and Savoy, 446  
In Germany and Bohemia. 448. Between Poland and the Turk. 481, 482, 485  
Warwicks proceedings against K. Edward. 547, &c.  
Wencefflaus Emperor his flagitious life and death. 269, &c.  
John Wickliffe occasions tumults in London. 314  
A Wild-man in Sardinia. 182  
William the Conqueror. 167, &c. his actions and end. 168. Wil-

## The Alphabetical Table.

William 2<sup>d</sup> *his life and end.* 168.  
 &c.  
 William, *King of Scotland, his actions*  
*and death.* 191, &c.  
 William, *Earl of Holland, against* Fre-  
 derick. 226. *is driven back into* Hol-  
 land. 227  
 William Wallas, *a valiant* Scot.  
 243.  
*he recovers the lost towns, and beats*  
*out the English.* 245. *invades England*  
*ib. is betrayed and slain.* ib.  
 William, *Bishop of Ulricht.* 252  
 William, *Earl of Holland, sails into*  
 Scotland. ib.  
 William, *K. of the Romans, his life &*  
*death.* 253.  
 William, *third and fourth, Earls of*  
 Holland. 278, &c.  
 Wolfardus *the Favorit hanged.* 253  
 Wolfey, *his greatness and pride.* 552.  
 &c. *his oppressions and sacriledge.* 553  
 &c. *his entertainment abroad.* 552,  
 554. *accused and articted against.* 555  
*his downfall.* 556  
 Wyatts *Rebellion.* 591, &c. *he is taken,*  
*and beheaded.* 592

## Y

**A**rchbishop of York defeated by  
the Scots. 321  
Battels between the Yorkshire and Lan-  
cashire Factions. 531, &c.  
D. of York raiseth an Army, & is made  
Protector. 531 is removed, and raiseth  
an Army. 532. flyeth into Ireland, re-  
turns and claims the Crown. 533. is  
slain. 534. young Duke of York fights,  
and is victorious. 534.

## Z

<b>Z</b> Ebina, <i>King of Syria.</i>	7
George Zeck, <i>the factions Hun-</i>	
<i>garian tortured.</i>	399
Zeland <i>united to Holland.</i> 253.	from
<i>bled.</i>	278
Zelots of Judæa.	36
Zeno, <i>an Eurychian.</i> 97. <i>starved in his</i>	
<i>Tombe.</i>	98
Zenobia.	71, &c.
Zimifces, <i>Emperor of the East.</i>	148
Zirizæa <i>Besieged.</i>	278
Zoe, <i>Constantine his mother.</i>	141.
Zoe, <i>the wife of Romanus.</i> 157, &c.	

*F I N I S.*

*Good Reader,* Though care was used to prevent littrell or verball Errors, yet by reason the Book was under Three severall Presses, some *Errata's* have escaped the Eyes of the *Correctors*, which are here set down, and may be mended with thy Pen.

[illegible]

## The Printers to the Reader.

\* Mr. Fuller in  
his Preface to  
a Posthumous  
Book of Dr.  
Holdsworth.

Since it is rather Ingenuity, then otherwise, to confess, The Errata's which have escaped us, will be our charge; though we could say, and it oft falls out, That the best Authors write not always the best Hands; which (as \* one Observes) hath rendred the Writings of a late Reverend and Learned Author, useful to the world; but we cannot apply that to our Author: Besides, he is not only living, but active, and did oft visit us, or we him. That there are some Errors in a Book of this Bulk, is no wonder; That there were not more, we attribute to the Authors Care and Pains, and to the more than ordinary sedulity of the Book-seller to prevent them. The most are but literal, scarce any that do alter the Sense in any place, but what with a Comma (,) Point (.) or Parenthesis ( ) thy Pen may rectifie: Possibly thou mayst finde some of them mended to thy hand, as they were, happily discovered at the Press. So wishing thee to Correct and Read, then our opinions and hopes are, that you will like.

R. Coler  
T. Newcomb

T. Mabb  
&c.  
A. Coler.

## The Book-seller to the Buyer:

\* The ever Re-  
nowned Sir  
WALTER  
RALEIGH  
\* who wrote the  
first Part of the  
History of  
the World.

This Book could not have been published (though intended for a general good) in a more censorious Age; the Test whereof I dare adventure. That which gave encouragement to Print it, is, That our Author in the court of his History, hath comprehended much in a few lines. I shall confidently affirm, it was neither his Design or Work, to Confront his \* Leader (as some pretend) but that the world should have the benefit of \* His History, completed so far, as he might deliver himself freely and impartially without prejudice. Should he have oft digressed, or fraught it with the impertinencies which these later Years would have afforded, it would have swollen into too many Volumes, either to burthen the Stationer, or overcharge the Reader, besides the vast (and peradventure unprofitable) expence of precious Time. If Marrow be better to digest then the Bone, or the Kernel then the Shell, then (instead of a Prolix History) this Epitome may gain thy acceptation; in confidence whereof I shall presume to subscribe myself (at least intentionally)

Thy Friend,  
JOHN SAYWELL.

COURTEOUS READER (having the advantage of a blank Page before me)  
I thought good to minde thee, That (besides this History, &c.) there are extant a few usefull Books, as they may suit the Genius of thy reading.

For PRINCIPLES.

- I. That excellent Book (of John Wollebius, D. D. and ordinary Professor of Divinity in the University of Basil) compendiously containing the whole Body of Christian Divinity, both in the Speculative and Practique Parts thereof, whereof so many thousands have bin sold in Latin, lately (for Britains good) Englished, and in some obscure places cleared and enlarged by Alexander Ross; revised and amended in those misquoted Texts wherewith the Latin Copies do abound.

For PRACTICE.

- II. That experienced Piece of Richard Sibbs, D. D. Entituled The Returning Backslider (& the Saints Priviledge, &c.) or a Commentary on the whole 14. Chapter of Hosea; the third time Reprinted, being one of the Legitimate Pieces of that truly pious Author, there being added in this, an useful Table, wanting in former Editions, together with an account of all the works of the said Learned Author, as yet extant, By one piously affected with his Writings.

For NOTION.

- III. Those Seraphical Sermons of Dr. Donne late Dean of S. Pauls, London, being fourscore in number and usually called his First Volume, containing the Quintessence of Piety and Parts, and dedicated to his late Majesty.

Which are all in the Vendition of John Saywell, at the Greyhound  
in Little Britain. 1652.

A REGISTER for the help of the BOOK-BINDER,  
whereby he may be ascertained of the Perfection of this Book.

The Order of the HISTORY.

The Title. (a) (a2) (b) (b2) (b3) A. A2. (a) B. B2. B3. &c. R3. ends.  
Aa. Aa2. &c. S2. S2. ends. Aaa. Aaa2. &c. Ppp. Ppp2. Ppp3. &c.  
Rrr3. ends. Sff. Sff2. &c. Zzz2. ends. Aaaa. Aaaa2. &c. Hhhh2. ends.

The Order of the CHRONOLOGIE.

Iiii. Kkkk. Kkkk2. &c. Xxxx ends.

The Order of the ALPHABETICAL-TABLE.

aaaaa. aaaaa2. &c. dddddd. dddddd2. eeeee. ends.

Take notice, that in some copies the Signature is (b2) for (b3) C2. for D2. E3. for E3.  
Kkkk to be added.

FINIS.

The